VISIT…

LANZAROTE Caliente.COM

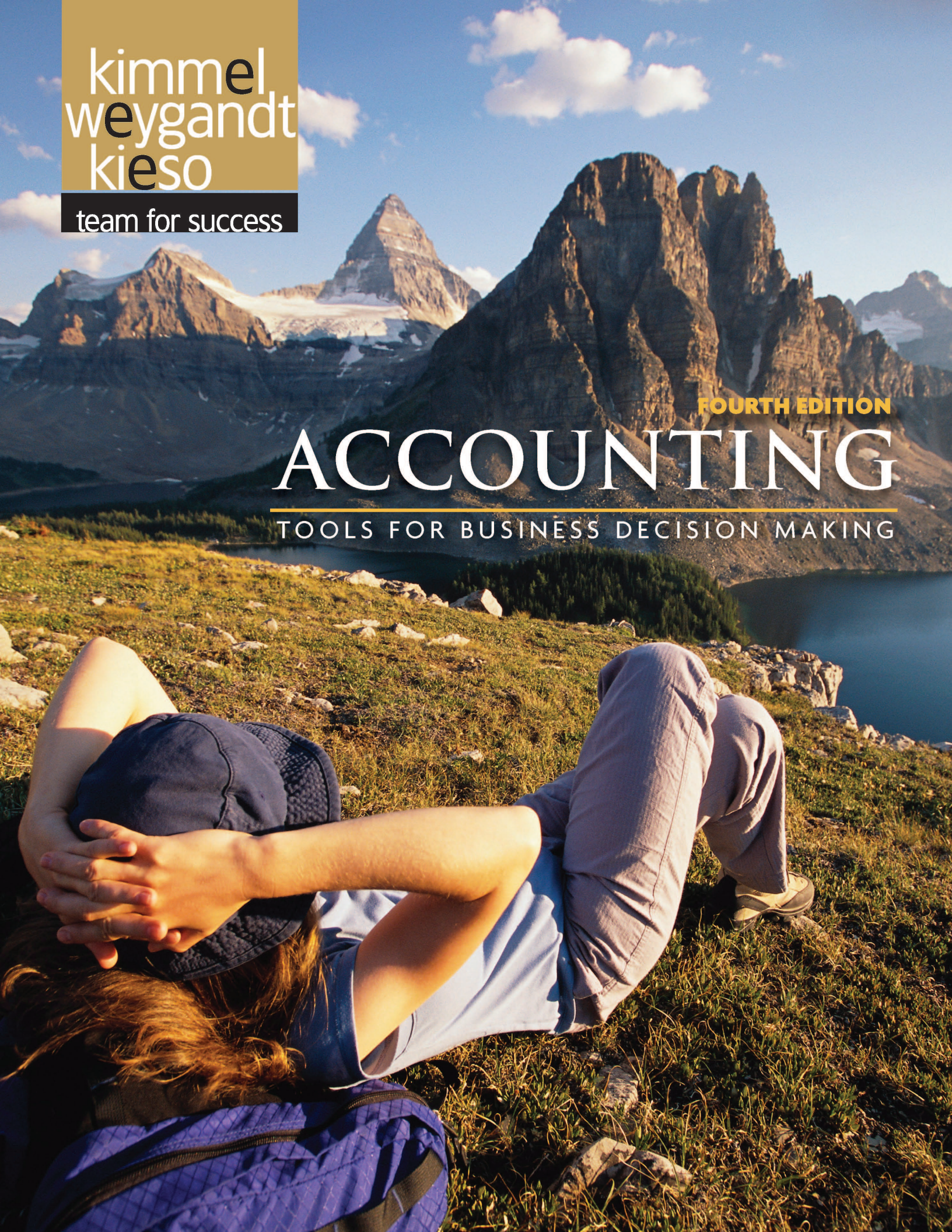
kimmel
weygandt
kieso

team for success

FOURTH EDITION

ACCOUNTING

TOOLS FOR BUSINESS DECISION MAKING



WILEY PLUS
www.wileyplus.com

accessible, affordable, active learning

WileyPLUS is an innovative, research-based, online environment for effective teaching and learning.

WileyPLUS...

...motivates students with confidence-boosting feedback and proof of progress, 24/7.

...supports instructors with reliable resources that reinforce course goals inside and outside of the classroom.

Includes Interactive Textbook & Resources

***WileyPLUS*... Learn More.**

www.wileyplus.com

WILEY PLUS

www.wileyplus.com

ALL THE HELP, RESOURCES, AND PERSONAL SUPPORT YOU AND YOUR STUDENTS NEED!

www.wileyplus.com/resources

1st DAY OF CLASS ... AND BEYOND!

2-Minute Tutorials and all of the resources you & your students need to get started.

WILEY PLUS Student Partner Program

Student support from an experienced student user.

WILEY FACULTY NETWORK

Collaborate with your colleagues, find a mentor, attend virtual and live events, and view resources.
www.WhereFacultyConnect.com

WILEY PLUS QuickStart

Pre-loaded, ready-to-use assignments and presentations. Created by subject matter experts.

Technical Support 24/7 FAQs, online chat, and phone support.
www.wileyplus.com/support

Your *WileyPLUS* Account Manager. Personal training and implementation support.

kimmel
weygandt
kieso

team for success

ACCOUNTING

TOOLS FOR BUSINESS DECISION MAKING

4E

Paul D. Kimmel PhD, CPA
University of Wisconsin—Milwaukee
Milwaukee, Wisconsin

Jerry J. Weygandt PhD, CPA
University of Wisconsin—Madison
Madison, Wisconsin

Donald E. Kieso PhD, CPA
Northern Illinois University
DeKalb, Illinois

WILEY

John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Dedicated to
the ***Wiley sales representatives***
who sell our books and service
our adopters in a professional
and ethical manner and to
Enid, Merlynn, and Donna

Vice President & Publisher	George Hoffman
Associate Publisher	Christopher DeJohn
Project Editor	Ed Brislin
Development Editor	Terry Ann Tatro
Project Manager	Paul Lopez
Production Manager	Dorothy Sinclair
Project Editor	Yana Mermel
Production Editor	Erin Bascom
Senior Production Editor	Trisha McFadden
Associate Director of Marketing	Amy Scholz
Senior Marketing Manager	Ramona Sherman
Executive Media Editor	Allison Morris
Media Editor	Greg Chaput
Creative Director	Harry Nolan
Senior Designer	Madelyn Lesure
Production Management Services	Ingrao Associates
Senior Illustration Editor	Sandra Rigby
Senior Photo Editor	Mary Ann Price
Editorial Assistant	Jacqueline Kepping
Senior Marketing Assistant	Laura Finley
Assistant Marketing Manager	Diane Mars
Cover Design	Maureen Eide
Cover Photo	©Peter McBride/Getty Image, Inc.

This book was set in New Aster by Aptara®, Inc. and printed and bound by RR Donnelley. The cover was printed by RR Donnelley.

Copyright © 2011 John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, website www.copyright.com. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774, (201)748-6011, fax (201)748-6008, website http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions.

To order books or for customer service please, call 1-800-CALL WILEY (225-5945).

Paul D. Kimmel, PhD, CPA; Jerry J. Weygandt, PhD, CPA;
and Donald E. Kieso, PhD, CPA
Accounting, Fourth Edition

ISBN-13 978-0-470-53478-6

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

From the Authors

Dear Student,

Why This Course? *Remember your biology course in high school? Did you have one of those "invisible man" models (or maybe something more high-tech than that) that gave you the opportunity to look "inside" the human body? This accounting course offers something similar: To understand a business, you have to understand the financial insides of a business organization. An accounting course will help you understand the essential financial components of businesses. Whether you are looking at a large multinational company like Microsoft or Starbucks or a single-owner software consulting business or coffee shop, knowing the fundamentals of accounting will help you understand what is happening. As an employee, a manager, an investor, a business owner, or a director of your own personal finances—any of which roles you will have at some point in your life—you will be much the wiser for having taken this course.*

Why This Book? *Hundreds of thousands of students have used this textbook. Your instructor has chosen it for you because of its trusted reputation. The authors have worked hard to keep the book fresh, timely, and accurate.*

This textbook contains features to help you learn best, whatever your learning style. To understand what your learning style is, spend about ten minutes to take the learning style quiz at the textbook companion website. Then, look at page xxv for how you can apply an understanding of your learning style to this course. When you know more about your own learning style, browse through the Student Owner's Manual on pages xxxi–xxxv. It shows you the main features you will find in this textbook and explains their purpose.

How To Succeed? *We've asked many students and many instructors whether there is a secret for success in this course. The nearly unanimous answer turns out to be not much of a secret: "Do the homework." This is one course where doing is learning, and the more time you spend on the homework assignments—using the various tools that this textbook provides—the more likely you are to learn the essential concepts, techniques, and methods of accounting. Besides the textbook itself, the textbook companion website offers various support resources.*

Good luck in this course. We hope you enjoy the experience and that you put to good use throughout a lifetime of success the knowledge you obtain in this course. We are sure you will not be disappointed.

Paul D. Kimmel
Jerry J. Weygandt
Donald E. Kieso

Your Team for Success in Accounting

Wiley Accounting is your partner in accounting education. We want to be the first publisher you think of when it comes to quality content, reliable technology, innovative resources, professional training, and unparalleled support for your accounting classroom.

Your Wiley Accounting Team for Success is comprised of three distinctive advantages that you won't find with any other publisher:

- Author Commitment
- Wiley Faculty Network
- WileyPLUS

kieso
weygandt
kimmel
warfield
team for success

Author Commitment:

A Proven Author Team of Inspired Teachers

The Team for Success authors bring years of industry and academic experience to the development of each textbook that relates accounting concepts to real-world experiences. This cohesive team brings continuity of writing style, pedagogy, and problem material to each course from Principles to Intermediate so you and your students can seamlessly progress from introductory through advanced courses in accounting.

The authors understand the mindset and time limitations of today's students. They demonstrate an intangible ability to effectively deliver complex information so it is clear and understandable while staying one step ahead of emerging global trends in business.

Wiley Faculty Network:

A Team of Educators Dedicated to Your Professional Development

The Wiley Faculty Network (WFN) is a global group of seasoned accounting professionals who share best practices in teaching with their peers. Our Virtual Guest Lecture Series provides the opportunity you need for professional development in an online environment that is relevant, convenient, and collaborative. The quality of these seminars and workshops meet the strictest standards, so we are proud to be able to offer valuable CPE credits to attendees.

With 24 faculty mentors in accounting, it's easy to find help with your most challenging curriculum questions—just ask our experts!

WileyPLUS:

An Experienced Team of Support Professionals

The *WileyPLUS* Account Managers understand the time constraints of busy instructors who want to provide the best resources available to their students with minimal headaches and planning time. They know how intimidating new software can be, so they are sure to make the transition easy and painless.

Account Managers act as your personal contact and expert resource for training, course set-up, and shortcuts throughout the *WileyPLUS* experience.

Your success as an educator directly correlates to student success, and that's our goal. The Wiley Accounting Team for Success truly strives for YOUR success! Partner with us today!

www.wileyteamforsuccess.com

Author Commitment.

Collaboration. Innovation. Experience.

After decades of success as authors of textbooks like this one, Paul Kimmel, Jerry Weygandt, and Don Kieso understand that teaching accounting goes beyond simply presenting data. The authors are truly effective because they know that teaching is about telling compelling stories in ways that make each concept come-to-life.

Teacher / Author / Professional

Through their textbooks, supplements, online learning tools, and classrooms, these authors have developed a comprehensive pedagogy that engages students in learning and faculty with teaching.

These authors collaborate throughout the entire process. The end result is a true collaboration where each author brings his individual experience and talent to the development of every paragraph, page, and chapter, thus creating a truly well-rounded, thorough view on any given accounting topic.

Many Ways in One Direction

Our **Team for Success** has developed a learning system that addresses every learning style. Each year brings new insights, feedback, ideas, and improvements on how to deliver the material to every student with a passion for the subject in a format that gives them the best chance to succeed.

The key to the team's approach is in understanding that, just as there are many different ways to learn, there are also many different ways to teach.

In Their Own Words

Visit the Wiley **Team for Success** website to hear from the authors first-hand as they discuss their teaching styles, collaboration, and the future of accounting.

www.wileyteamforsuccess.com

Author Commitment

Jerry Weygandt

Jerry J. Weygandt, PhD, CPA, is Arthur Andersen Alumni Emeritus Professor of Accounting at the University of Wisconsin—Madison. He holds a Ph.D. in accounting from the University of Illinois. Articles by Professor Weygandt have appeared in the Accounting Review. Journal of Accounting Research, Accounting Horizons, Journal of Accountancy, and other academic and professional journals. These articles have examined such financial reporting issues as accounting for price-level adjustments, pensions, convertible securities, stock option contracts, and interim reports. Professor Weygandt is author of other accounting and financial reporting books and is a member of the American Accounting Association, the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, and the Wisconsin Society of Certified Public Accountants. He has served on numerous committees of the American Accounting Association and as a member of the editorial board of the Accounting Review; he also has served as President and Secretary-Treasurer of the American Accounting Association. In addition, he has been actively involved with the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and has been a member of the Accounting Standards Executive Committee (AcSEC) of that organization. He has served on the FASB task force that examined the reporting issues related to accounting for income taxes and served as a trustee of the Financial Accounting Foundation. Professor Weygandt has received the Chancellor's Award for Excellence in Teaching and the Beta Gamma Sigma Dean's Teaching Award. He is on the board of directors of M & I Bank of Southern Wisconsin. He is the recipient of the Wisconsin Institute of CPA's Outstanding Educator's Award and the Lifetime Achievement Award. In 2001 he received the American Accounting Association's Outstanding Educator Award.

Paul Kimmel

Paul D. Kimmel, PhD, CPA, received his bachelor's degree from the University of Minnesota and his doctorate in accounting from the University of Wisconsin. He is an Associate Professor at the University of Wisconsin—Milwaukee, and has public accounting experience with Deloitte & Touche (Minneapolis). He was the recipient of the UWM School of Business Advisory Council Teaching Award, the Reggie Taite Excellence in Teaching Award and a three-time winner of the Outstanding Teaching Assistant Award at the University of Wisconsin. He is also a recipient of the Elijah Watts Sells Award for Honorary Distinction for his results on the CPA exam. He is a member of the American Accounting Association and the Institute of Management Accountants and has published articles in Accounting Review, Accounting Horizons, Advances in Management Accounting, Managerial Finance, Issues in Accounting Education, Journal of Accounting Education, as well as other journals. His research interests include accounting for financial instruments and innovation in accounting education. He has published papers and given numerous talks on incorporating critical thinking into accounting education, and helped prepare a catalog of critical thinking resources for the Federated Schools of Accountancy.

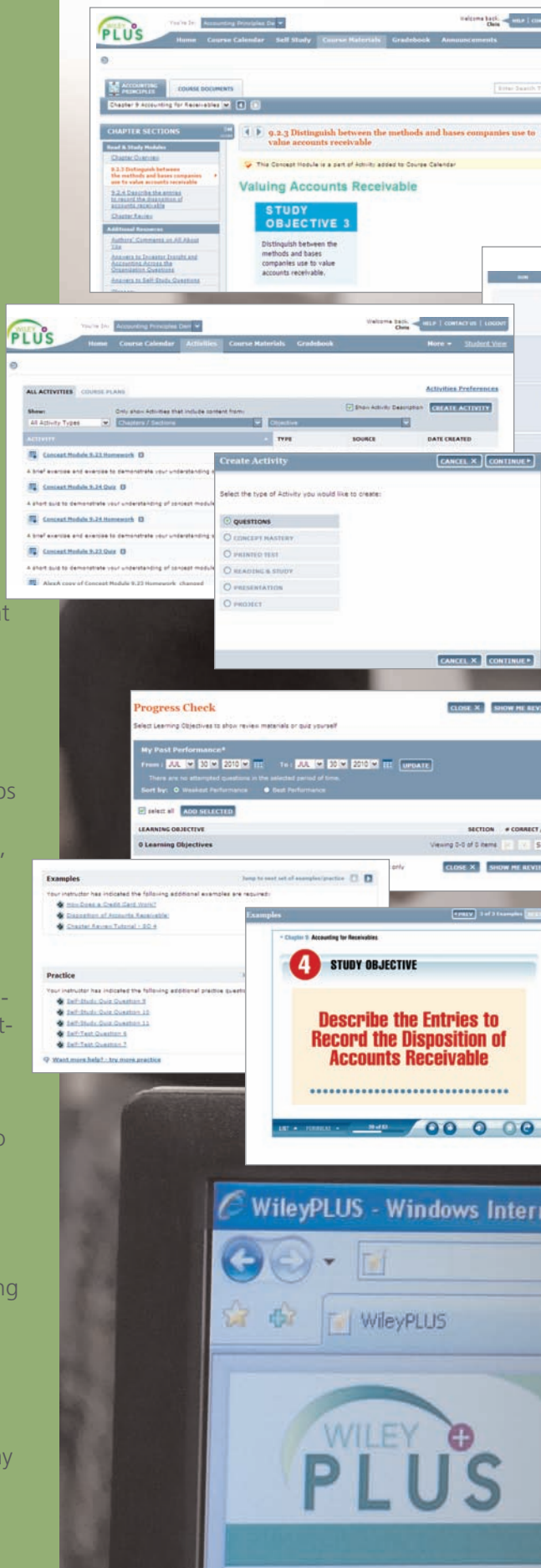
Don Kieso

Donald E. Kieso, PhD, CPA, received his bachelor's degree from Aurora University and his doctorate in accounting from the University of Illinois. He has served as chairman of the Department of Accountancy and is currently the KPMG Emeritus Professor of Accountancy at Northern Illinois University. He has public accounting experience with Price Waterhouse & Co. (San Francisco and Chicago) and Arthur Andersen & Co. (Chicago) and research experience with the Research Division of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (New York). He has done post doctorate work as a Visiting Scholar at the University of California at Berkeley and is a recipient of NIU's Teaching Excellence Award and four Golden Apple Teaching Awards. Professor Kieso is the author of other accounting and business books and is a member of the American Accounting Association, the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, and the Illinois CPA Society. He has served as a member of the Board of Directors of the Illinois CPA Society, then AACSB's Accounting Accreditation Committees, the State of Illinois Comptroller's Commission, as Secretary-Treasurer of the Federation of Schools of Accountancy, and as Secretary-Treasurer of the American Accounting Association. Professor Kieso is currently serving on the Board of Trustees and Executive Committee of Aurora University, as a member of the Board of Directors of Kishwaukee Community Hospital, and as Treasurer and Director of Valley West Community Hospital. From 1989 to 1993 he served as a charter member of the national Accounting Education Change Commission. He is the recipient of the Outstanding Accounting Educator Award from the Illinois CPA Society, the FSA's Joseph A. Silvoso Award of Merit, the NIU Foundation's Humanitarian Award for Service to Higher Education, a Distinguished Service Award from the Illinois CPA Society, and in 2003 an honorary doctorate from Aurora University.

for Students

WileyPLUS

WileyPLUS is an innovative, research-based, online environment for effective teaching and learning.



What do STUDENTS receive with *WileyPLUS*?

WileyPLUS increases confidence through an innovative **design** that allows greater **engagement**, which leads to improved learning **outcomes**.

Design

The *WileyPLUS* design integrates relevant resources, including the entire digital textbook, in an easy-to-navigate framework that helps students study more effectively and ensures student engagement. Innovative features, such as calendars and visual progress tracking, as well as a variety of self-evaluation tools, are all designed to improve time-management and increase student confidence.

Engagement

WileyPLUS organizes the textbook content into smaller, more manageable learning units with demonstrable study objectives and outcomes. Related media, examples, and sample practice items are integrated within each section to reinforce the study objectives. Throughout each study session, students can assess progress and gain immediate feedback on strengths and weaknesses in order to ensure they are spending their time most effectively.

Outcomes

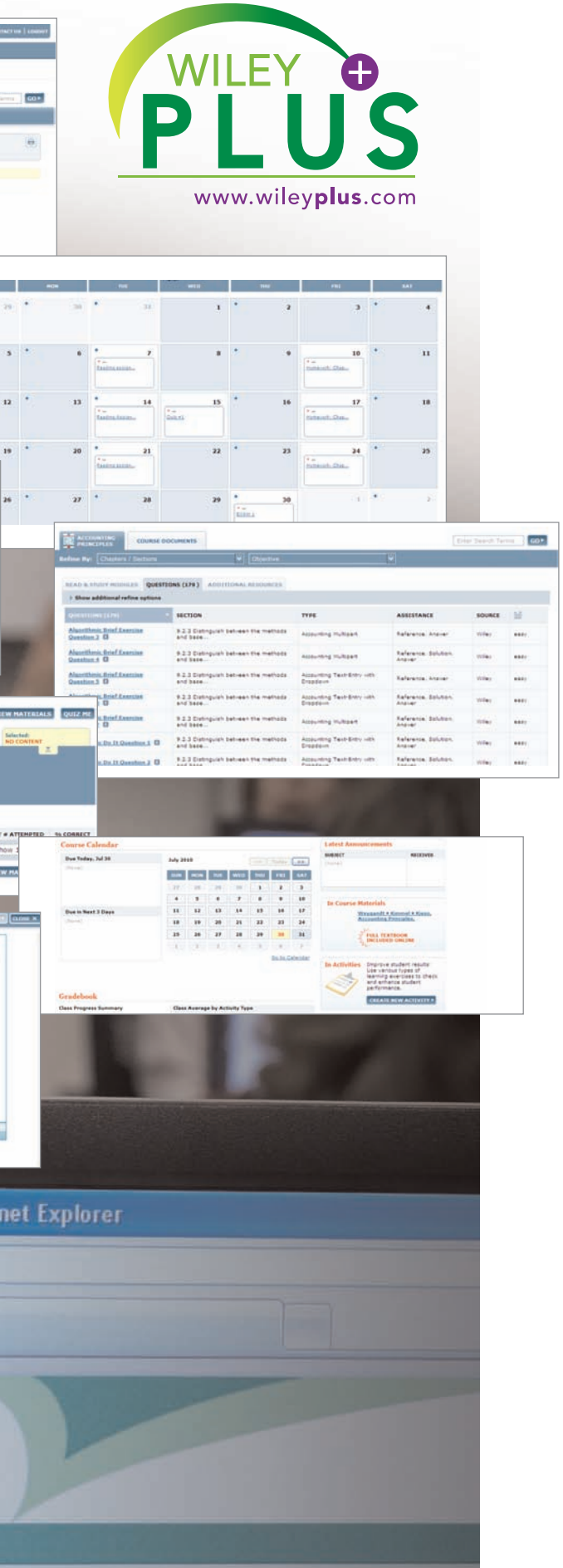
Throughout each study session, students can assess their progress and gain immediate feedback. *WileyPLUS* provides precise reporting of strengths and weaknesses, as well as individualized quizzes, so that students are confident they are spending their time on the right things. With *WileyPLUS*, students always know the exact outcome of their efforts.

With increased confidence, motivation is sustained so students stay on task longer, leading to success.

WILEY PLUS

www.wileyplus.com

for Instructors



What do INSTRUCTORS receive with *WileyPLUS*?
Support and Insight into Student Progress

WileyPLUS provides reliable, customizable resources that reinforce course goals inside and outside of the classroom, as well as visibility into individual student progress. Pre-created materials and activities help instructors optimize their time.

For class preparation and classroom use:

- Lecture Notes, PowerPoint Slides, and Tutorials
- Classroom Response System (Clicker) Questions
- Image Gallery

For assignments and testing:

- Gradable Reading Assignment Questions (embedded with online text)
- Question Assignments: all end-of-chapter problems coded algorithmically with hints, links to text

For course planning: *WileyPLUS* comes with a pre-created **Course Plan** designed by a subject matter expert uniquely for this course. Simple drag-and-drop tools make it easy to assign the course plan as-is or modify it to reflect your course syllabus.

For progress monitoring: *WileyPLUS* provides instant access to reports on trends in class performance, student use of course materials, and progress toward learning objectives, helping inform decisions and drive classroom discussions.

Experience *WileyPLUS* for effective teaching and learning at **www.wileyplus.com**.

Powered by proven technology and built on a foundation of cognitive research, *WileyPLUS* has enriched the education of millions of students, in over 20 countries around the world.

The Wiley Faculty Network

The Place Where Faculty Connect ...

The Wiley Faculty Network is a global community of faculty connected by a passion for teaching and a drive to learn and share. Connect with the Wiley Faculty Network to collaborate with your colleagues, find a mentor, attend virtual and live events, and view a wealth of resources all designed to help you grow as an educator. Embrace the art of teaching—great things happen where faculty connect!

Attend

Discover innovative ideas and gain knowledge you can use.

- Training
- Virtual Guest Lectures
- Live Events

View

Explore your resources and development opportunities.

- Teaching Resources
- Archived Guest Lectures
- Recorded Presentations
- Professional Development Modules

Collaborate

Connect with colleagues—your greatest resource.

- Find a Mentor
- Interest Groups
- Blog

Find out more at
www.WHEREFACULTYCONNECT.com

Virtual Guest Lectures

Connect with recognized leaders across disciplines and collaborate with your peers on timely topics and discipline specific issues, many of which offer CPE credit.

Live and Virtual Events

These invitation-only, discipline-specific events are organized through a close partnership between the WFN, Wiley, and the academic community near the event location.

Technology Training

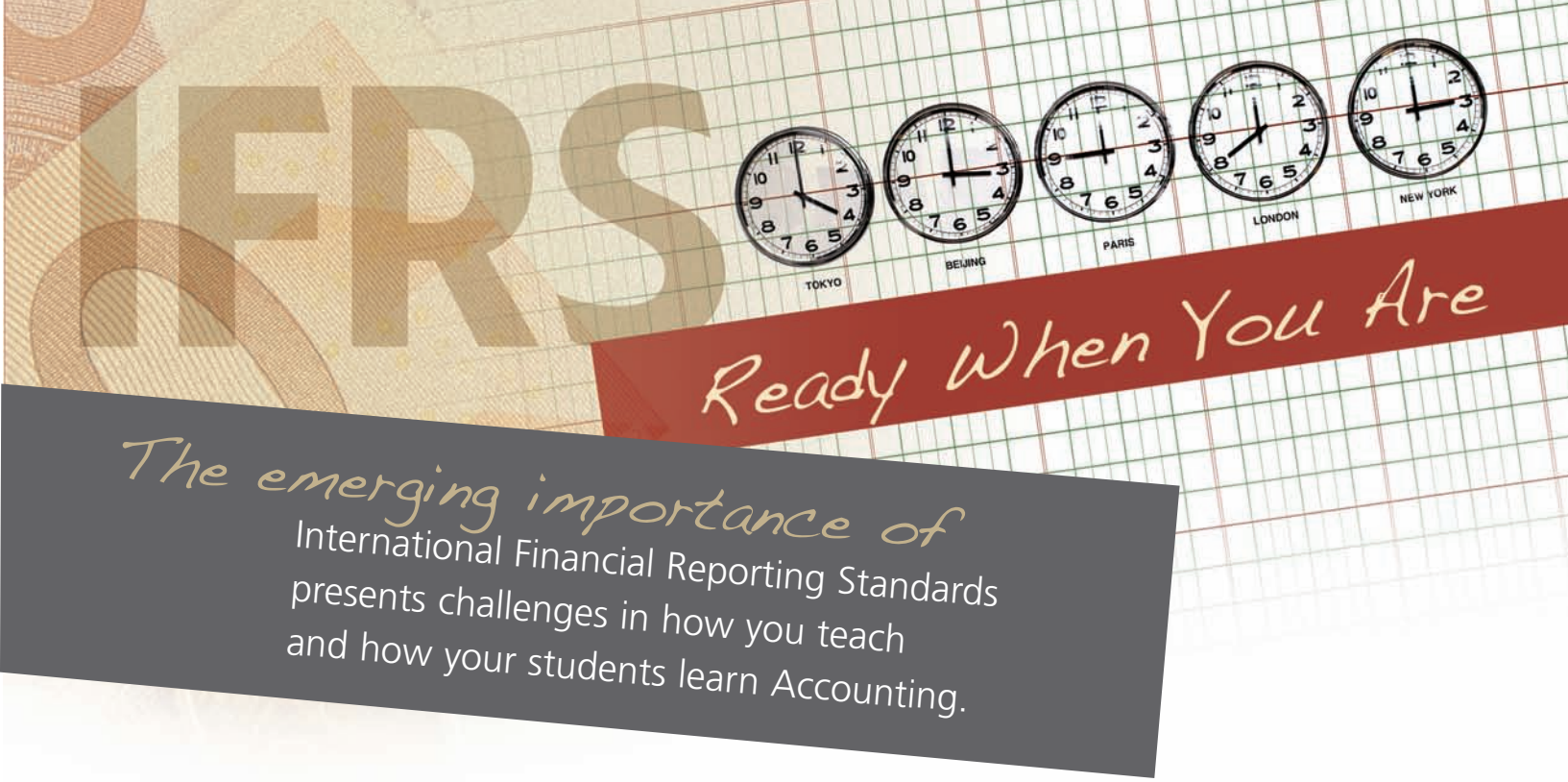
Discover a wealth of topic- and technology-specific training presented by subject matter experts, authors, and faculty where and when you need it.

Teaching Resources

Propel your teaching and student learning to the next level with quality peer-reviewed case studies, testimonials, classroom tools, and checklists.

Connect with Colleagues

Achieve goals and tackle challenges more easily by enlisting the help of your peers. Connecting with colleagues through the WFN can help you improve your teaching experience.



The **Wiley Accounting Team for Success** is ready when you are to help prepare you and your students for the integration of IFRS into your courses.

No matter where you are in this transition, Wiley Accounting is here to provide the tools you need to fully incorporate IFRS into your accounting courses. We offer the most extensive **Products**, **Content**, **Services**, **Support**, and **Training** available today—leading the way to prepare you and your students for success!

Innovative Products: New IFRS Editions of ***Kieso, Intermediate Accounting*** and ***Weygandt, Financial Accounting*** are the most current and only textbooks available based fully on International Financial Reporting Standards. Wiley Accounting also offers numerous IFRS resources that can serve to supplement your course.

Exclusive Content: Our accounting publications feature more quality and current coverage of IFRS topics than any other textbook available today! The Wiley Accounting Team for Success authors integrate IFRS content within each chapter through features like ***A Look at IFRS***, which demonstrates how international standards apply to each U.S. GAAP topic, as well as provides an opportunity for practical application. ***International Insights*** also provide an international perspective of the accounting topic discussed in the text.

Support & Services: Wiley Accounting features a dedicated **IFRS website** (at *www.wileyifrs.com*) and an **Accounting Weekly Updates website** (at *www.wileyaccountingupdates.com*) to make sure you have the most current resources available.

Timely Training: Wiley Accounting and the **Wiley Faculty Network** provides free IFRS virtual training workshops, IFRS Guest Lectures, and IFRS "Boot Camps" featuring authors Paul Kimmel and Terry Warfield. You can also earn **CPE credit** for attending these sessions.

To learn more about how the Wiley Accounting Team for Success can help your students succeed, visit **www.wileyteamforsuccess.com** or contact your Wiley sales representative today.

What's new?

The Fourth Edition expands our emphasis on student learning and improves upon a teaching and learning package that instructors and students have rated the highest in customer satisfaction in the following ways:

The Accounting Cycle
For many students, success in an introductory accounting course hinges on developing a sound conceptual understanding of the accounting cycle. In the past, we have received positive feedback regarding the framework that we have employed to introduce the recording process in Chapter 3. In this edition, we have expanded our use of this framework to cover the entire accounting cycle in Chapters 3 and 4.

Anatomy of a Fraud
In the Third Edition, we added a new feature, called *Anatomy of a Fraud*, to Chapter 7 to illustrate how the lack of specific internal controls resulted in real-world frauds. Many users responded favorably to this new feature and requested that we expand it throughout the textbook to demonstrate the importance of internal controls to all assets and liabilities. Accordingly, in this edition, we have expanded the *Anatomy of a Fraud* feature to Chapters 5–13.

Chart of Accounts
It is important to always try to eliminate unnecessary barriers to student understanding. Sometimes, the accounting course can seem unnecessarily complicated to students because so many account titles are used. In order to reduce possible confusion, and to keep students focused on those concepts that really matter, in this edition of the textbook we undertook to reduce the number of account titles used. In some chapters, we were able to cut the number of accounts used by more than half. See inside the front cover of the textbook for a sample chart of accounts, which represents the majority of account titles used in the text.

Service Company Coverage
Because the U.S. economy is increasingly comprised of service companies, we have expanded our emphasis on service companies in this edition. We have added sections that specifically address the similarities and differences of applying managerial accounting techniques in a service company environment rather than a manufacturing environment, and expanded our use of service company examples.

Enhanced Homework Material
In each chapter, we have revised all Self-Test Questions, Questions, Brief Exercises, Do it! Review, Exercises, Problems, and Research Cases. Financial analysis and reporting problems have been updated in accordance with the new Tootsie Roll and Hershey financial statements. Finally, new *FASB Codification Activities* now appear at the end of every chapter and offer students experience in using this system.

Updated International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) Content
As we continue to strive to reflect the constant changes in the accounting environment, we have added new material on International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS). A new end-of-chapter section, *A Look at IFRS*, includes an overview section, differences between GAAP and IFRS, IFRS/GAAP convergence efforts, and IFRS Self-Test Questions and IFRS Concepts and Applications. An international financial reporting problem is also included, based on Zetar plc (a U.K. candy company) financial statements, provided in a new Appendix C of the textbook. This will allow students to compare Zetar with U.S. companies Tootsie Roll and Hershey.

This edition was also subject to an overall, comprehensive revision to ensure that it is technically accurate, relevant, and up-to-date. A chapter-by-chapter summary of content changes is provided in the chart on the next page.

Chapter 1 Introduction to Financial Statements

- More background information/student involvement with hypothetical company Sierra Corporation.
- Interrelationships of Statements illustration rewritten, using Tootsie Roll instead of Sierra Corporation as example.

Chapter 2 A Further Look at Financial Statements

- Use of hhgregg instead of Circuit City, as comparison to Best Buy performance.
- Using the Statement of Cash Flows section deleted, as material covered in following *Keeping an Eye on Cash* section.
- Financial Reporting Concepts section heavily rewritten. The Standard-Setting Environment now includes IASB/IFRS discussion, as well as most recent conceptual framework material (e.g., fundamental and enhancing qualities of useful accounting information). Measurement principles now include cost and fair value; constraints are now materiality and cost (instead of conservatism).

Chapter 3 The Accounting Information System

- For all transaction events, have reformatted to be consistent, that is, have added Basic Analysis and Equation Analysis sections.

Chapter 4 Accrual Accounting Concepts

- Terminology changes: Matching principle to expense recognition principle; time period assumption to periodicity assumption.
- 2 new *Insight boxes:* one *Business Insight* on iPhone/Apple, other *Int'l Insight* on China's inconsistent use of accrual/cash basis of accounting.
- Consistent use of transaction analysis format (e.g., Basic Analysis, Equation Analysis, Debit-Credit Analysis, Journal Entry, and Posting) for Adjusting Entries examples, carried over from Chapter 3.

Chapter 5 Merchandising Operations and the Multiple-Step Income Statement

- Addition of *Anatomy of a Fraud* box (previously only included in Chapter 7).

Chapter 6 Reporting and Analyzing Inventory

- Addition of *Anatomy of a Fraud* box.

Chapter 7 Fraud, Internal Control, and Cash

- Replaced Investor Insight box with new one on Madoff's Ponzi scheme.

Chapter 8 Reporting and Analyzing Receivables

- More journal entry detail in the Recognizing Accounts Receivable section.
- Additional explanation about percentage of receivables basis.
- New *Anatomy of a Fraud* box.
- Explanation of maturity date of promissory note, in *Determining the Maturity Date* section.
- New *Int'l Insight* box on fair value, and new *AATO* box on eBay for receivables (Receivables Exchange).

Chapter 9 Reporting and Analyzing Long-Lived Assets

- Expanded explanation for how to determine revised depreciation, including new *Do it!* box.
- New *Anatomy of a Fraud* box about WorldCom.

Chapter 10 Reporting and Analyzing Liabilities

- Heavy edit of Feature Story, about U.S. auto industry.
- New *Anatomy of a Fraud* box about school district substitute-teacher fraud scheme.
- New *Investor Insight* box on debt masking.

Chapter 11 Reporting and Analyzing Stockholders' Equity

- New *AATO* box on Facebook maintaining its private-company status.
- New *Anatomy of a Fraud* box on SafeNet's stock options being misused by top officers.
- New *Investor Insight* box on Warren Buffet's philosophy of keeping Berkshire Hathaway's stock prices high as well as avoiding stock splits.

Chapter 12 Statement of Cash Flows

- New *Anatomy of a Fraud* box, about Parmalat's multiple frauds.
- **New Appendix 12B**, on preparing statement of cash flows using T accounts.

Chapter 13 Financial Analysis: The Big Picture

- New Feature Story with profile of Warren Buffett.
- Replaced financial data with hypothetical company, as better basis for later comparison with General Mills.
- New *Anatomy of a Fraud* box, about how relationships between numbers can be used to detect fraud.
- New *Investor Insight* box, about credit rating agencies.

Chapter 14 Managerial Accounting

- Rewritten Feature Story on Dell and Hewlett-Packard.
- Completely revised Cost Concepts section, featuring different company.
- New section, "Product Costing for Service Industries."
- New Service Company Insight box on Allegiant Airlines.

Chapter 15 Job Order Costing

- New sections, "Job Order Costing for Service Companies" and "Advantages and Disadvantages of Job Order Costing."
- New Service Company Insight box, about General Electric's use of job order costing for its sales and service on jet engines.

Chapter 16 Process Costing

- New section, "Process Costing for Service Companies."
- New Ethics Note on equivalent units.

Chapter 17 Activity-Based Costing

- International Insight box, "The Origins of ABC," now incorporated as text discussion.
- New Service Company Insight boxes on baggage fees imposed by the airlines and the use of ABC as an employee evaluation tool in a small service company.

Chapter 18 Cost-Volume-Profit

- New Feature Story on accounting for health-care costs.
- New Management Insight box on how skilled labor is essential to manufacturers.

Chapter 20 Budgetary Planning

- New Service Company Insight box about budgetary concerns at museums and universities.

Chapter 21 Budgetary Control and Responsibility Accounting

- New Feature Story, "Turning Trash into Treasure."
- New Management Insight box, about Honda's flexible manufacturing facilities.

End-of-Textbook

New Appendix C, financial statements of Zetar plc (U.K. candy company).

Acknowledgments

Accounting has benefited greatly from the input of focus group participants, manuscript reviewers, those who have sent comments by letter or e-mail, ancillary authors, and proofers. We greatly appreciate the constructive suggestions and innovative ideas of reviewers and the creativity and accuracy of the ancillary authors and checkers.

Prior Editions

Thanks to the following reviewers and focus group participants of prior editions of Accounting:

Dawn Addington, *Central New Mexico Community College*; Gilda Agacer, *Monmouth University*; Solochidi Ahiarah, *Buffalo State College*; C. Richard Aldridge, *Western Kentucky University*; Sheila Ammons, *Austin Community College*; Thomas G. Amyot, *College of Santa Rose*; Brian Baick, *Montgomery College*; Cheryl Bartlett, *Central New Mexico Community College*; Timothy Baker, *California State University—Fresno*; Benjamin Bean, *Utah Valley State College*.

Victoria Beard, *University of North Dakota*; Angela H. Bell, *Jacksonville State University*; Charles Bokemeier, *Michigan State University*; John A. Booker, *Tennessee Technological University*; Robert L. Braun, *Southeastern Louisiana University*; Daniel Brickner, *Eastern Michigan University*; Sarah Ruth Brown, *University of North Alabama*; Charles Bunn, *Wake Technical Community College*; Thane Butt, *Champlain College*; James Byrne, *Oregon State University*; and Sandra Byrd, *Missouri State University*.

Judy Cadle, *Tarleton State University*; Julia Camp, *University of Massachusetts—Boston*; David Carr, *Austin Community College*; Jack Cathey, *University of North Carolina—Charlotte*; Andy Chen, *Northeast Illinois University*; Jim Christianson, *Austin Community College*; Laura Claus, *Louisiana State University*; Leslie A. Cohen, *University of Arizona*; Teresa L. Conover, *University of North Texas*; Samantha Cox, *Wake Technical Community College*; Janet Courts, *San Bernadino Valley College*; Dori Danko, *Grand Valley State University*; Helen Davis, *Johnson and Wales University*; Cheryl Dickerson, *Western Washington University*; George M. Dow, *Valencia Community College—West*; Kathy J. Dow, *Salem State College*; and Lola Dudley, *Eastern Illinois University*.

Mary Emery, *St. Olaf College*; Martin L. Epstein, *Central New Mexico Community College*; Larry R. Falcetto, *Emporia State University*; Scott Fargason, *Louisiana State University*; Janet Farler, *Pima Community College*; Sheila D. Foster, *The Citadel*; Jessica J. Frazier, *Eastern Kentucky University*; Lisa Gillespie, *Loyola University—Chicago*; Norman H. Godwin, *Auburn University*; David Gotlob, *Indiana University—Purdue University—Fort Wayne*; Emmett Griner, *Georgia State University*; Leon J. Hanouille, *Syracuse University*; Kenneth M. Hiltebeitel, *Villanova University*; Harry Hooper, *Santa Fe Community College*; Judith A. Hora, *University of San Diego*; and Carol Olson Houston, *San Diego State University*; and Sam Isley, *Wake Technical Community College*.

Norma Jacobs, *Austin Community College*; Marianne L. James, *California State University—Los Angeles*; Stanley Jenne, *University of Montana*; Christopher Jones, *George Washington University*; Jane Kaplan, *Drexel University*; John E. Karayan, *California State University—Pomona*; Susan Kattelus, *Eastern Michigan University*; Dawn Kelly, *Texas Tech University*; Cindi Khanlarian, *University of North Carolina—Greensboro*; Robert Kiddoo, *California State University—Northridge*; Robert J. Kirsch, *Southern Connecticut State University*; Frank Korman, *Mountain View College*; and Jerry G. Kreuze, *Western Michigan University*.

John Lacey, *California State University—Long Beach*; Doug Laufer, *Metropolitan State College of Denver*; Doulas Larson, *Salem State College*; Keith Leeseberg, *Manatee Community College*; Glenda Levendowski, *Arizona State University*; Seth Levine, *DeVry University*; James Lukawitz, *University of Memphis*; Noel McKeon, *Florida Community College*; P. Merle Maddocks, *University of Alabama—Huntsville*; Janice Mardon, *Green River Community College*; John Marts, *University of North Carolina—Wilmington*; Alan Mayer-Sommer, *Georgetown University*; Sara Melendy, *Gonzaga University*; Barbara Merino, *University of North Texas*; Jeanne Miller, *Cypress College*; Robert Miller, *California State University—Fullerton*; Elizabeth Minbiole, *Northwood University*; Sherry Mirbod, *Montgomery College*; Andrew Morgret, *University of Memphis*; Michelle Moshier, *SUNY Albany*; Marguerite Muise, *Santa Ana College*; James Neurath, *Central Michigan University*; and Gale E. Newell, *Western Michigan University*; Jim Neurath, *Central Michigan University*; and Garth Novack, *Utah State University*.

Suzanne Ogilby, *Sacramento State University*; Sarah N. Palmer, *University of North Carolina—Charlotte*; Patricia Parker, *Columbus State Community College*; Charles Pier, *Appalachian State University*; Meg Pollard, *American River College*; Franklin J. Plewa, *Idaho State University*; John Purisky, *Salem State College*; Donald J. Raux, *Siena College*; Judith Resnick, *Borough of Manhattan Community College*; Mary Ann Reynolds, *Western Washington University*; Carla Rich, *Pensacola Junior College*; Ray Rigoli, *Ramapo College of New Jersey*; Jeff Ritter, *St. Norbert College*; Brandi Roberts, *Southeastern Louisiana University*; Patricia A. Robinson, *Johnson and Wales University*; Nancy Rochman, *University of Arizona*; Marc A. Rubin, *Miami University*; and John A. Rude, *Bloomsburg University*.

Alfredo Salas, *El Paso Community College*; Christine Schalow, *California State University—San Bernadino*; Michael Schoderbek, *Rutgers University*; Richard Schroeder, *University of North Carolina—Charlotte*; Bill N. Schwartz, *Stevens Institute of Technology*; Jerry Searfoss, *University of Utah*; Cindy Seipel, *New Mexico State University*; Anne E. Selk, *University of Wisconsin—Green Bay*; William Seltz, *University of Massachusetts*; Suzanne Sevalstad, *University of Nevada*; Mary Alice Seville, *Oregon State University*; Donald Smillie, *Southwest Missouri State University*; Aileen Smith, *Stephen F. Austin State University*; Talitha Smith, *Auburn University*; Pam Smith, *Northern Illinois University*; William E. Smith, *Xavier University*; Will Snyder, *San Diego State University*; Chris Solomon, *Trident Technical College*; Teresa A. Speck, *St. Mary's University of Minnesota*; Charles Stanley, *Baylor University*; Ron Stone, *California State University—Northridge*; Gary Stout, *California State University—Northridge*; Gracelyn Stuart, *Palm Beach Community College*; and Ellen L. Sweatt, *Georgia Perimeter College*.

William Talbot, *Montgomery College*; Diane Tanner, *University of North Florida*; Pamadda Tantral, *Fairleigh Dickinson University*; Steve Teeter, *Utah Valley State College*; Andrea B. Weickgenannt, *Northern Kentucky University*; David P. Weiner, *University of San Francisco*; Frederick Weis, *Claremont McKenna College*; T. Sterling Wetzel, *Oklahoma State University*; Allan Young, *DeVry University*; Michael F. van Breda, *Texas Christian University*; Linda G. Wade, *Tarleton State University*; Stuart K. Webster, *University of Wyoming*; V. Joyce Yearley, *New Mexico State University*; and Joan Van Hise, *Fairfield University*.

Fourth Edition

Thanks to the following reviewers, focus group participants, and others who provided suggestions for the Fourth Edition:

Sylvia Allen	*Los Angeles Valley College*
Juanita Ardavany	*Los Angeles Valley College*
Eric Blazer	*Millersville University*
Evangelie Brodie	*North Carolina State University*
Thane Butt	*Champlain College*
Sandra Byrd	*Missouri State University*
Lisa Capozzoli	*College of DuPage*
Siu Chung	*Los Angeles Valley College*
Leslie Cohen	*University of Arizona*
Rita Kingery Cook	*University of Delaware*
Cheryl Copeland	*California State University—Fresno*
Cheryl Crespi	*Central Connecticut State University*
Sue Counte	*St. Louis Community College—Meramec*
Robin D'Agati	*Palm Beach Community College*
Brent W. Darwin	*Allan Hancock College*
Michael Deschamps	*Mira Costa College*
Gadis Dillon	*Oakland University*
Rafik Elias	*University of California, Los Angeles*
Alan Falcon	*Loyola Marymount University*
Annette Fisher	*Glendale Community College*
Lance Fisher	*Oklahoma State University*
Roger Gee	*San Diego Mesa College*
Lisa Gray	*Seminole State College and Valencia Community College*
Michael Haselkorn	*Bentley University*
Hassan Hefzi	*California State PolyTech University—Pomona*
M.A. "Maggie" Houston	*Wright State University*
Ryan Huldah	*Iona College*
Ann Kelly	*Providence College*
Mehmet Kocakulah	*University of Southern Indiana*
Wikil Kwak	*University of Nebraska—Omaha*
Barbara Lamberton	*University of Hartford*
Lihon Liang	*Syracuse University*
D. Jordan Lowe	*Arizona State University*
James Lukawitz	*University of Memphis*
Sue Marcum	*American University*
Sal Marino	*Westchester Community College*
Florence McGovern	*Bergen Community College*
Noel McKeon	*Florida Community College at Jacksonville*
Paul Mihalek	*Central Connecticut State University*
Jeanne Miller	*Cypress College*
William J. Nealon	*Schenectady County Community College*
Joseph M. Nicassio	*Westmoreland County Community College*
Garth Novack	*University of Washington*
Rosemary Nurre	*San Mateo Community College*
Marge O'Reilly-Allen	*Rider University*
Terry Patton	*Midwestern State University*
Sandra Pelfrey	*Oakland University*
Ronald Pierno	*Florida State University*
John Purisky	*Salem State University*
Karl Putnam	*University of Texas—El Paso*
Ray Reisig	*Pace University, Pleasantville*
Rod Ridenour	*Montana State University—Bozeman*
Larry Rittenberg	*University of Wisconsin*
Cecile M. Roberti	*Community College of Rhode Island*
Lawrence Roman	*Cuyahoga Community College*
Luther L. Ross	*Central Piedmont Community College*
Robert Russ	*Northern Kentucky University*
Nancy Sill	*Modesto Junior College*
Gerald Smith	*University of Northern Iowa*
Vic Stanton	*University of California, Berkley*
Howard Switkay	*Community College of Philadelphia*
Diane Tanner	*University of North Florida*
Michael Tydlaska	*Mountain View College*
Joan Van Hise	*Fairfield University*
Richard Van Ness	*Schenectady County Community College*
Ron Vogel	*College of Eastern Utah*
Barbara Warschawski	*Schenectady County Community College*
Wendy Wilson	*Southern Methodist University*

Ancillary Authors, Contributors, and Proofers

We sincerely thank the following individuals for their hard work in preparing the content that accompanies this textbook:

LuAnn Bean	*Florida Institute of Technology*
Jack Borke	*University of Wisconsin—Platteville*
Richard Campbell	*University of Rio Grande*
Sandra Cohen	*Columbia College—Chicago*
Nancy Everett	*Pima Community College*
Larry R. Falcetto	*Emporia State University*
Cecelia M. Fewox	*College of Charleston*
Coby Harmon	*University of California, Santa Barbara*
Harry Howe	*State University of New York—Geneseo*
Laura McNally	*Black Hills State College*
Kevin McNelis	*New Mexico State University*
Barb Muller	*Arizona State University*
Rex Schildhouse	*San Diego Community College*
Eileen M. Shifflett	*James Madison University*
Diane Tanner	*University of North Florida*
Sheila Viel	*University of Wisconsin—Milwaukee*
Dick D. Wasson	*Southwestern College*
Bernie Weinrich	*Lindenwood University*
Melanie Yon	

We also greatly appreciate the expert assistance provided by the following individuals in checking the accuracy of the content that accompanies this textbook:

LuAnn Bean	*Florida Institute of Technology*
Terry Elliott	*Morehead State University*
James M. Emig	*Villanova University*
Larry R. Falcetto	*Emporia State University*
Lance Fisher	*Oklahoma State University*
Kirk Lynch	*Sandhills Community College*
Jill Misuraca	*Central Connecticut State University*
Patricia Mounce	*University of Central Arkansas*
Barb Muller	*Arizona State University*
Yvonne Phang	*Borough of Manhattan Community College*
John Plouffe	*California State University—Los Angeles*
Rex Schildhouse	*San Diego Community College*
Alice Sineath	*Forsyth Technical Community College*
Teresa Speck	*Saint Mary's University of Minnesota*
Lynn Stallworth	*Appalachian State University*
Sheila Viel	*University of Wisconsin*
Dick D. Wasson	*Southwestern College*
Bernie Weinrich	*Lindenwood University*

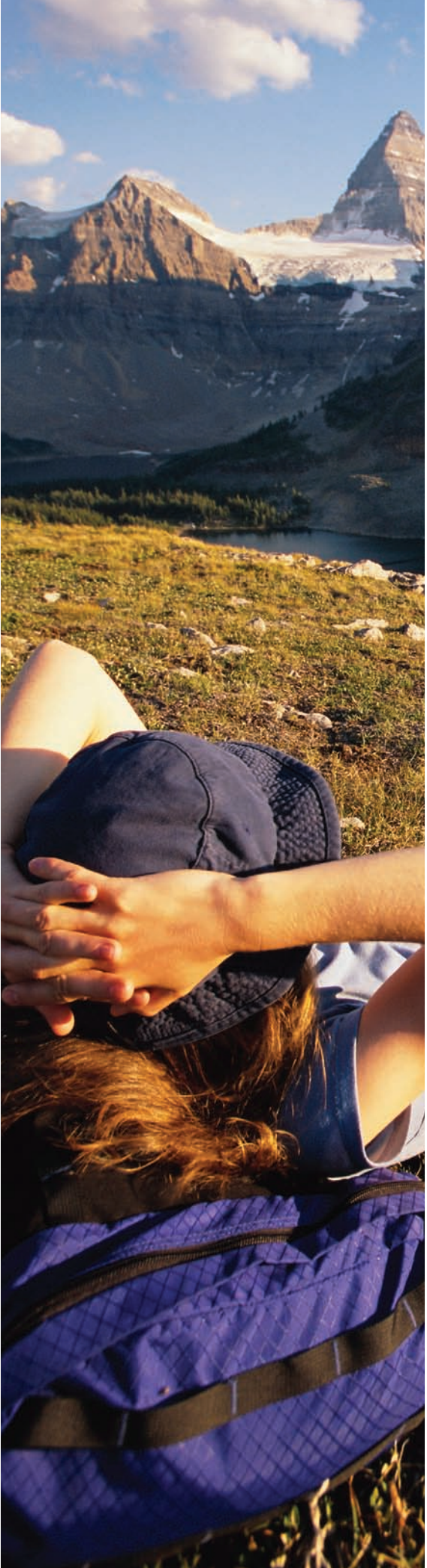
We appreciate the exemplary support and commitment given to us by associate publisher Chris DeJohn, senior marketing manager Ramona Sherman, project editor Ed Brislin, project editor Yana Mermel, development editor Terry Ann Tatro, senior media editor Allie Morris, media editor Greg Chaput, vice president of higher education production and manufacturing Ann Berlin, designer Maddy Lesure, illustration editor Anna Melhorn, photo editor Mary Ann Price, permissions editor Joan Naples, project editor Suzanne Ingrao of Ingrao Associates, indexer Steve Ingle, Denise Showers at Aptara, Cyndy Taylor, and project manager Danielle Urban at Elm Street Publishing Services. All of these professionals provided innumerable services that helped the textbook take shape.

Finally, our thanks to Amy Scholz, Susan Elbe, George Hoffman, Tim Stookesberry Joe Heider, Bonnie Lieberman, and Will Pesce, for their support and leadership in Wiley's College Division. We will appreciate suggestions and comments from users—instructors and students alike. You can send your thoughts and ideas about the textbook to us via email at: *AccountingAuthors@yahoo.com*.

Paul D. Kimmel
Milwaukee, Wisconsin

Jerry J. Weygandt
Madison, Wisconsin

Donald E. Kieso
DeKalb, Illinois



Brief Contents

1 Introduction to Financial Statements 2
2 A Further Look at Financial Statements 46
3 The Accounting Information System 100
4 Accrual Accounting Concepts 162
5 Merchandising Operations and the Multiple-Step Income Statement 226
6 Reporting and Analyzing Inventory 280
7 Fraud, Internal Control, and Cash 334
8 Reporting and Analyzing Receivables 396
9 Reporting and Analyzing Long-Lived Assets 446
10 Reporting and Analyzing Liabilities 504
11 Reporting and Analyzing Stockholders' Equity 568
12 Statement of Cash Flows 622
13 Financial Analysis: The Big Picture 684
14 Managerial Accounting 746
15 Job Order Costing 796
16 Process Costing 838
17 Activity-Based Costing 888
18 Cost-Volume-Profit 938
19 Cost-Volume-Profit Analysis: Additional Issues 976
20 Budgetary Planning 1030
21 Budgetary Control and Responsibility Accounting 1078
22 Standard Costs and Balanced Scorecard 1136
23 Incremental Analysis and Capital Budgeting 1186

APPENDICES

A Specimen Financial Statements: Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc. A-1
B Specimen Financial Statements: The Hershey Company B-1
C Specimen Financial Statements: Zetar plc C-1
D Time Value of Money D-1
E Reporting and Analyzing Investments E-1
F Payroll Accounting F-1
***G** Subsidiary Ledgers and Special Journals G-1
***H** Accounting for Partnerships H-1
***I** Accounting for Sole Proprietorships I-1

*Available at the book's companion website, *www.wiley.com/college/kimmel*.

Contents

chapter 1

Introduction to Financial Statements 2

Knowing the Numbers 3
Forms of Business Organization 4
Internal Users 5
External Users 6
Ethics in Financial Reporting 7
Business Activities 9
Financing Activities 9
Investing Activities 9
Operating Activities 10
Communicating with Users 11
Income Statement 11
Retained Earnings Statement 12
Balance Sheet 13
Statement of Cash Flows 15
Interrelationships of Statements 16
Other Elements of an Annual Report 19
A Look at IFRS 42

chapter 2

A Further Look at Financial Statements 46

Just Fooling Around? 47
The Classified Balance Sheet 48
Current Assets 49
Long-Term Investments 50
Property, Plant, and Equipment 51
Intangible Assets 51
Current Liabilities 52
Long-Term Liabilities 52
Stockholders' Equity 53
Using the Financial Statements 54
Ratio Analysis 54
Using the Income Statement 55
Using the Statement of Stockholders' Equity 56
Using a Classified Balance Sheet 58
Keeping an Eye on Cash 61
Financial Reporting Concepts 63
The Standard-Setting Environment 63
Qualities of Useful Information 64
Assumptions in Financial Reporting 66
Constraints in Financial Reporting 67
A Look at IFRS 96

chapter 3

The Accounting Information System 100

Accidents Happen 101
The Accounting Information System 102
Accounting Transactions 102
Analyzing Transactions 103
Summary of Transactions 109
The Account 111
Debits and Credits 111
Debit and Credit Procedures 112
Stockholders' Equity Relationships 115
Summary of Debit/Credit Rules 116
Steps in the Recording Process 116
The Journal 117
The Ledger 119
Chart of Accounts 120
Posting 120
The Recording Process Illustrated 120
Summary Illustration of Journalizing and Posting 127
The Trial Balance 129
Limitations of a Trial Balance 129
Keeping an Eye on Cash 130
A Look at IFRS 159

chapter 4

Accrual Accounting Concepts 162

What Was Your Profit? 163
Timing Issues 164
The Revenue Recognition Principle 164
The Expense Recognition Principle 165
Accrual versus Cash Basis of Accounting 166
The Basics of Adjusting Entries 167
Types of Adjusting Entries 168
Adjusting Entries for Deferrals 169
Adjusting Entries for Accruals 175
Summary of Basic Relationships 181
The Adjusted Trial Balance and Financial Statements 183
Preparing the Adjusted Trial Balance 183
Preparing Financial Statements 184
Closing the Books 186
Preparing Closing Entries 186
Preparing a Post-Closing Trial Balance 188
Summary of the Accounting Cycle 190

Quality of Earnings 190
Keeping an Eye on Cash 191
APPENDIX 4A **Adjusting Entries in an Automated World–Using a Worksheet 195**
A Look at IFRS 224

chapter 5

Merchandising Operations and the Multiple-Step Income Statement 226

Who Doesn't Shop at Wal-Mart? 227
Merchandising Operations 228
Operating Cycles 229
Flow of Costs 229
Recording Purchases of Merchandise 231
Freight Costs 232
Purchase Returns and Allowances 233
Purchase Discounts 234
Summary of Purchasing Transactions 235
Recording Sales of Merchandise 236
Sales Returns and Allowances 237
Sales Discounts 238
Income Statement Presentation 239
Sales Revenues 241
Gross Profit 241
Operating Expenses 241
Nonoperating Expenses 242
Determining Cost of Goods Sold Under a Periodic System 244
Evaluating Profitability 245
Gross Profit Rate 245
Profit Margin Ratio 247
Keeping an Eye on Cash 248
APPENDIX 5A **Periodic Inventory System 251**
Recording Merchandise Transactions 251
Recording Purchases of Merchandise 251
Freight Costs 251
Recording Sales of Merchandise 252
Comparison of Entries–Perpetual vs. Periodic 253
A Look at IFRS 276

chapter 6

Reporting and Analyzing Inventory 280

"Where Is That Spare Bulldozer Blade?" 281
Classifying Inventory 282
Determining Inventory Quantities 283
Taking a Physical Inventory 283
Determining Ownership of Goods 284
Inventory Costing 286
Specific Identification 286
Cost Flow Assumptions 287
Financial Statement and Tax Effects of Cost Flow Methods 292
Keeping an Eye on Cash 294
Using Inventory Cost Flow Methods Consistently 295
Lower-of-Cost-or-Market 295
Analysis of Inventory 296
Inventory Turnover Ratio 296
Analysts' Adjustments for LIFO Reserve 299
APPENDIX 6A **Inventory Cost Flow Methods in Perpetual Inventory System 303**
First-In, First-Out (FIFO) 304
Last-In, First-Out (LIFO) 304
Average Cost 305
APPENDIX 6B **Inventory Errors 306**
Income Statement Effects 306
Balance Sheet Effects 307
A Look at IFRS 330

chapter 7

Fraud, Internal Control, and Cash 334

Minding the Money in Moose Jaw 335
Fraud and Internal Control 336
Fraud 336
The Sarbanes-Oxley Act 337
Internal Control 337
Principles of Internal Control Activities 338
Limitations of Internal Control 345
Cash Controls 346
Cash Receipts Controls 346
Cash Disbursements Controls 349
Control Features: Use of a Bank 351
Bank Statements 352
Reconciling the Bank Account 353
Reporting Cash 358
Cash Equivalents 358
Restricted Cash 359
Managing and Monitoring Cash 359
Basic Principles of Cash Management 360
Keeping an Eye on Cash 362
APPENDIX 7A **Operation of the Petty Cash Fund 366**
Establishing the Petty Cash Fund 367
Making Payments from Petty Cash 367
Replenishing the Petty Cash Fund 367
A Look at IFRS 393

chapter 8

Reporting and Analyzing Receivables 396

A Dose of Careful Management Keeps Receivables Healthy 397
Types of Receivables 398
Accounts Receivable 399

Recognizing Accounts Receivable 399
Valuing Accounts Receivable 400
Notes Receivable 407
Determining the Maturity Date 408
Computing Interest 408
Recognizing Notes Receivable 409
Valuing Notes Receivable 409
Disposing of Notes Receivable 410
Financial Statement Presentation of Receivables 411
Managing Receivables 412
Extending Credit 412
Establishing a Payment Period 413
Monitoring Collections 413
Evaluating Liquidity of Receivables 415
Accelerating Cash Receipts 417
Keeping an Eye on Cash 420
A Look at IFRS 444

chapter 9

Reporting and Analyzing Long-Lived Assets 446
A Tale of Two Airlines 447
SECTION 1 **Plant Assets 448**
Determining the Cost of Plant Assets 449
Land 449
Land Improvements 450
Buildings 450
Equipment 451
To Buy or Lease? 452
Accounting for Plant Assets 453
Depreciation 453
Factors in Computing Depreciation 454
Depreciation Methods 454
Revising Periodic Depreciation 459
Expenditures During Useful Life 460
Impairments 461
Plant Asset Disposals 462
Analyzing Plant Assets 464
Return on Assets Ratio 464
Asset Turnover Ratio 466
Profit Margin Ratio Revisited 466
SECTION 2 **Intangible Assets 467**
Accounting for Intangible Assets 468
Types of Intangible Assets 469
Patents 469
Research and Development Costs 469
Copyrights 470
Trademarks and Trade Names 470
Franchises and Licenses 470
Goodwill 471
Financial Statement Presentation of Long-Lived Assets 472
Keeping an Eye on Cash 473
APPENDIX 9A **Calculation of Depreciation Using Other Methods 476**
Declining-Balance 476
Units-of-Activity 477
A Look at IFRS 500

chapter 10

Reporting and Analyzing Liabilities 504
And Then There Were Two 505
Current Liabilities 506
What Is a Current Liability? 506
Notes Payable 506
Sales Taxes Payable 507
Unearned Revenues 508
Current Maturities of Long-Term Debt 509
Payroll and Payroll Taxes Payable 510
Bonds: Long-Term Liabilities 512
Types of Bonds 512
Issuing Procedures 513
Determining the Market Value of Bonds 513
Accounting for Bond Issues 515
Issuing Bonds at Face Value 516
Discount or Premium on Bonds 516
Issuing Bonds at a Discount 517
Issuing Bonds at a Premium 519
Accounting for Bond Retirements 520
Redeeming Bonds at Maturity 520
Redeeming Bonds before Maturity 521
Financial Statement Presentation and Analysis 522
Balance Sheet Presentation 522
Keeping an Eye on Cash 522
Analysis 523
Off-Balance-Sheet Financing 526
APPENDIX 10A **Straight-Line Amortization 531**
Amortizing Bond Discount 531
Amortizing Bond Premium 532
APPENDIX 10B **Effective-Interest Amortization 533**
Amortizing Bond Discount 534
Amortizing Bond Premium 536
APPENDIX 10C **Accounting for Long-Term Notes Payable 537**
A Look at IFRS 564

chapter 11

Reporting and Analyzing Stockholders' Equity 568
What's Cooking? 569
The Corporate Form of Organization 570
Characteristics of a Corporation 570
Forming a Corporation 574
Stockholder Rights 574

Stock Issue Considerations 575
Authorized Stock 576
Issuance of Stock 576
Par and No-Par Value Stocks 577
Accounting for Common Stock Issues 577
Accounting for Treasury Stock 579
Purchase of Treasury Stock 580
Preferred Stock 582
Dividend Preferences 582
Liquidation Preference 583
Dividends 584
Cash Dividends 584
Stock Dividends 585
Stock Splits 587
Retained Earnings 589
Retained Earnings Restrictions 590
Financial Statement Presentation of Stockholders' Equity 590
Balance Sheet Presentation 590
Keeping an Eye on Cash 592
Measuring Corporate Performance 593
Dividend Record 593
Earnings Performance 594
Debt versus Equity Decision 594
APPENDIX 11A **Entries for Stock Dividends 598**
A Look at IFRS 619

chapter 12

Statement of Cash Flows 622

Got Cash? 623
The Statement of Cash Flows: Usefulness and Format 624
Usefulness of the Statement of Cash Flows 624
Classification of Cash Flows 625
Significant Noncash Activities 625
Format of the Statement of Cash Flows 627
The Corporate Life Cycle 628
Preparing the Statement of Cash Flows 629
Indirect and Direct Methods 630
Preparation of the Statement of Cash Flows–Indirect Method 631
Step 1: Operating Activities 632
Summary of Conversion to Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities–Indirect Methods 635
Step 2: Investing and Financing Activities 637
Step 3: Net Change in Cash 639
Using Cash Flows to Evaluate a Company 639
Free Cash Flow 639
Keeping an Eye on Cash 641
Assessing Liquidity and Solvency Using Cash Flows 641
APPENDIX 12A **Statement of Cash Flows–Direct Method 646**
Step 1: Operating Activities 648
Step 2: Investing and Financing Activities 652
Step 3: Net Change in Cash 653
APPENDIX 12B **Statement of Cash Flows–T-Account Approach 654**
A Look at IFRS 680

chapter 13

Financial Analysis: The Big Picture 684

It Pays to Be Patient 685
Sustainable Income 686
Irregular Items 687
Changes in Accounting Principle 691
Comprehensive Income 690
Concluding Remarks 690
Comparative Analysis 693
Horizontal Analysis 694
Vertical Analysis 696
Ratio Analysis 699
Liquidity Ratios 700
Solvency Ratios 700
Profitability Ratios 701
Quality of Earnings 701
Alternative Accounting Methods 702
Pro Forma Income 702
Improper Recognition 702
Price-Earnings Ratio 703
APPENDIX 13A **Comprehensive Illustration of Ratio Analysis 708**
Liquidity Ratios 710
Solvency Ratios 712
Profitability Ratios 715
A Look at IFRS 743

chapter 14

Managerial Accounting 746

Think Fast 747
Managerial Accounting Basics 748
Comparing Managerial and Financial Accounting 749
Management Functions 750
Organizational Structure 751
Business Ethics 752
Managerial Cost Concepts 754
Manufacturing Costs 754
Product versus Period Costs 756
Manufacturing Costs in Financial Statements 757
Income Statement 757
Balance Sheet 760
Cost Concepts—A Review 761
Product Costing for Service Industries 763
Managerial Accounting Today 764
The Value Chain 764
Technological Change 765
Just-in-Time Inventory Methods 765

Quality 766
Activity-Based Costing 766
Theory of Constraints 766
Balanced Scorecard 767
APPENDIX 14A **Accounting Cycle for a Manufacturing Company 770**
Worksheet 771
Closing Entries 772

chapter 15

Job Order Costing 796

"…and We'd Like It in Red" 797
Cost Accounting Systems 798
Job Order Cost System 798
Process Cost System 799
Job Order Cost Flow 800
Accumulating Manufacturing Costs 801
Assigning Manufacturing Costs to Work in Process 803
Assigning Costs to Finished Goods 809
Assigning Costs to Cost of Goods Sold 810
Job Order Costing for Service Companies 810
Summary of Job Order Cost Flows 812
Advantages and Disadvantages of Job Order Costing 813
Reporting Job Cost Data 814
Under- or Overapplied Manufacturing Overhead 815

chapter 16

Process Costing 838

Ben & Jerry's Tracks Its Mix-Ups 839
The Nature of Process Cost Systems 840
Uses of Process Cost Systems 840
Process Costing for Service Companies 841
Similarities and Differences Between Job Order Cost and Process Cost Systems 841
Process Cost Flow 843
Assigning Manufacturing Costs—Journal Entries 844
Equivalent Units 847
Weighted-Average Method 847
Refinements on the Weighted-Average Method 848
Production Cost Report 850
Comprehensive Example of Process Costing 850
Compute the Physical Unit Flow (Step 1) 850
Compute Equivalent Units of Production (Step 2) 851
Compute Unit Production Costs (Step 3) 852
Prepare a Cost Reconciliation Schedule (Step 4) 853
Preparing the Production Cost Report 853
Costing Systems—Final Comments 855
APPENDIX 16A **FIFO Method 859**
Equivalent Units Under FIFO 859
Comprehensive Example 860
FIFO and Weighted-Average 864

chapter 17

Activity-Based Costing 888

The ABCs of Doughnut Making—Virtual-Reality Style 889
Traditional Costing and Activity-Based Costing 890
Traditional Costing Systems 890
The Need for a New Approach 891
Activity-Based Costing 891
Example of Traditional Costing versus ABC 893
Identify and Classify Activities and Allocate Overhead to Cost Pools (Step 1) 894
Identify Cost Drivers (Step 2) 894
Compute Overhead Rates (Step 3) 895
Assign Overhead Costs to Products 895
Comparing Unit Costs 896
Activity-Based Costing: A Closer Look 899
Benefits of ABC 899
Limitations of ABC 899
When to Use ABC 900
Value-Added versus Non–Value-Added Activities 901
Classification of Activity Levels 903
Activity-Based Costing in Service Industries 905
Traditional Costing Example 905
Activity-Based Costing Example 906
APPENDIX 17A **Just-in-Time Processing 910**
Objective of JIT Processing 911
Elements of JIT Processing 911
Benefits of JIT Processing 912

chapter 18

Cost-Volume-Profit 938

Understanding Medical Costs Might Lead to Better Health Care 939
Cost Behavior Analysis 940
Variable Costs 940
Fixed Costs 941
Relevant Range 942
Mixed Costs 944
Importance of Identifying Variable and Fixed Costs 947
Cost-Volume-Profit Analysis 947
Basic Components 948
CVP Income Statement 948
Break-Even Analysis 951
Target Net Income 954
Margin of Safety 956

chapter 19

Cost-Volume-Profit Analysis: Additional Issues 976

What Goes Up (Fast), Must Come Down (Fast) 977

Cost-Volume-Profit (CVP) Review 978
- Basic Concepts 978
- Basic Computations 980
- CVP and Changes in the Business Environment 981

Sales Mix 984
- Break-Even Sales in Units 984
- Break-Even Sales in Dollars 985
- Determining Sales Mix with Limited Resources 988

Cost Structure and Operating Leverage 990
- Effect on Contribution Margin Ratio 991
- Effect on Break-even Point 992
- Effect on Margin of Safety Ratio 992
- Operating Leverage 992

APPENDIX 19A **Absorption Costing versus Variable Costing 996**
- Example: Comparing Absorption Costing with Variable Costing 996
- An Extended Example 999
- Decision-Making Concerns 1003
- Potential Advantages of Variable Costing 1004

chapter 20

Budgetary Planning 1030

The Next Amazon.com? Not Quite 1031

Budgeting Basics 1032
- Budgeting and Accounting 1032
- The Benefits of Budgeting 1033
- Essentials of Effective Budgeting 1033
- Length of the Budget Period 1033
- The Budgeting Process 1034
- Budgeting and Human Behavior 1034
- Budgeting and Long-Range Planning 1036
- The Master Budget 1036

Preparing the Operating Budgets 1038
- Sales Budget 1038
- Production Budget 1039
- Direct Materials Budget 1040
- Direct Labor Budget 1042
- Manufacturing Overhead Budget 1043
- Selling and Administrative Expense Budget 1044
- Budgeted Income Statement 1044

Preparing the Financial Budgets 1046
- Cash Budget 1046
- Budgeted Balance Sheet 1049

Budgeting in Nonmanufacturing Companies 1051
- Merchandisers 1051
- Service Companies 1052
- Not-for-Profit Organizations 1053

chapter 21

Budgetary Control and Responsibility Accounting 1078

Turning Trash into Treasure 1079

The Concept of Budgetary Control 1080

Static Budget Reports 1081
- Examples 1081
- Uses and Limitations 1082

Flexible Budgets 1083
- Why Flexible Budgets? 1083
- Developing the Flexible Budget 1085
- Flexible Budget—A Case Study 1086
- Flexible Budget Reports 1088
- Management by Exception 1090

The Concept of Responsibility Accounting 1091
- Controllable versus Noncontrollable Revenues and Costs 1093
- Responsibility Reporting System 1093

Types of Responsibility Centers 1096
- Responsibility Accounting for Cost Centers 1096
- Responsibility Accounting for Profit Centers 1097
- Responsibility Accounting for Investment Centers 1099
- Principles of Performance Evaluation 1102

APPENDIX 21A **Residual Income—Another Performance Measurement 1108**
- Residual Income Compared to ROI 1108
- Residual Income Weakness 1109

chapter 22

Standard Costs and Balanced Scorecard 1136

Highlighting Performance Efficiency 1137

The Need for Standards 1138
- Distinguishing between Standards and Budgets 1138
- Why Standard Costs? 1139

Setting Standard Costs—A Difficult Task 1139
- Ideal versus Normal Standards 1140
- A Case Study 1140

Analyzing and Reporting Variances from Standards 1144
- Direct Materials Variances 1145
- Direct Labor Variances 1147
- Manufacturing Overhead Variances 1150
- Reporting Variances 1150
- Statement Presentation of Variances 1152

Balanced Scorecard 1153

APPENDIX 22A **The Standard Cost Accounting System 1159**
Journal Entries 1160
Ledger Accounts 1161
APPENDIX 22B **A Closer Look at Overhead Variances 1162**
Overhead Controllable Variance 1162
Overhead Volume Variance 1163

chapter 23

Incremental Analysis and Capital Budgeting 1186

Soup Is Good Food 1187
SECTION 1 **Incremental Analysis 1188**
Management's Decision-Making Process 1188
The Incremental Analysis Approach 1189
How Incremental Analysis Works 1189
Types of Incremental Analysis 1190
Accept an Order at a Special Price 1190
Make or Buy 1191
Sell or Process Further 1194
Retain or Replace Equipment 1194
Eliminate an Unprofitable Segment 1195
Allocate Limited Resources 1197
SECTION 2 **Capital Budgeting 1198**
Evaluation Process 1198
Annual Rate of Return 1199
Cash Payback 1200
Discounted Cash Flow 1202
Net Present Value Method 1202
Internal Rate of Return Method 1205
Comparing Discounted Cash Flow Methods 1206

appendix A

Specimen Financial Statements: Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc. A-1

The Annual Report A-1
Financial Highlights A-1
Letter to the Stockholders A-2
Management Discussion and Analysis A-6
Management's Report on Internal Control and Management Certifications of Financial Statements A-16
Financial Statements and Accompanying Notes A-17
Auditor's Report A-32
Supplementary Financial Information A-33

appendix B

Specimen Financial Statements: The Hershey Company B-1

appendix C

Specimen Financial Statements: Zetar plc C-1

appendix D

Time Value of Money D-1

Nature of Interest D-1
Simple Interest D-1
Compound Interest D-2
SECTION 1 **Future Value Concepts D-2**
Future Value of a Single Amount D-2
Future Value of an Annuity D-4
SECTION 2 **Present Value Concepts D-7**
Present Value Variables D-7
Present Value of a Single Amount D-7
Present Value of an Annuity D-9
Time Periods and Discounting D-11
Computing the Present Value of a Long-Term Note or Bond D-11
Computing the Present Value of a Capital Budgeting Decision D-14
SECTION 3 **Using Financial Calculators D-16**
Present Value of a Single Sum D-16
Plus and Minus D-17
Compound Periods D-17
Rounding D-17
Present Value of an Annuity D-17
Useful Applications of the Financial Calculator D-18
Auto Loan D-18
Mortgage Loan Amount D-18

appendix E

Reporting and Analyzing Investments E-1

Why Corporations Invest E-1
Accounting for Debt Investments E-2
Recording Acquisition of Bonds E-2
Recording Bond Interest E-3
Recording Sale of Bonds E-3
Accounting for Stock Investments E-4
Holdings of Less Than 20% E-4
Holdings Between 20% and 50% E-5
Holdings of More Than 50% E-7
Valuing and Reporting Investments E-7
Categories of Securities E-8
Balance Sheet Presentation E-10
Presentation of Realized and Unrealized Gain or Loss E-7
Statement of Cash Flows Presentation E-12

appendix F

Payroll Accounting F-1

Payroll Defined F-1
Internal Control of Payroll F-1
Hiring Employees F-2
Timekeeping F-3
Preparing the Payroll F-3
Paying the Payroll F-4
Determining the Payroll F-4
Gross Earnings F-4
Payroll Deductions F-4
Net Pay F-7
Recording the Payroll F-7
Maintaining Payroll Department Records F-7
Recognizing Payroll Expenses and Liabilities F-9
Recording Payment of the Payroll F-9
Employer Payroll Taxes F-10
FICA Taxes F-10
Federal Unemployment Taxes F-10
State Unemployment Taxes F-11
Recording Employer Payroll Taxes F-11
Filing and Remitting Payroll Taxes F-12

appendix G (available online at *www.wiley.com/college/kimmel*)

Subsidiary Ledgers and Special Journals G-1

SECTION 1 **Expanding the Ledger—Subsidiary Ledgers G-1**
Nature and Purpose of Subsidiary Ledgers G-1
Subsidiary Ledger Example G-2
Advantages of Subsidiary Ledgers G-3
SECTION 2 **Expanding the Journal—Special Journals G-3**
Sales Journal G-4
Journalizing Credit Sales G-4
Posting the Sales Journal G-5
Proving the Ledgers G-6
Advantages of the Sales Journal G-6
Cash Receipts Journal G-6
Journalizing Cash Receipts Transactions G-8
Posting the Cash Receipts Journal G-9
Proving the Ledgers G-9
Purchases Journal G-10
Journalizing Credit Purchases of Merchandise G-10
Posting the Purchases Journal G-10
Expanding the Purchases Journal G-12
Cash Payments Journal G-12
Journalizing Cash Payments Transactions G-12
Posting the Cash Payments Journal G-14
Effects of Special Journals on General Journal G-14

appendix H (available online at *www.wiley.com/college/kimmel*)

Accounting for Partnerships H-1

Partnership Form of Organization H-1
Characteristics of Partnerships H-1
Organizations with Partnership Characteristics H-3
Advantages and Disadvantages of Partnerships H-4
The Partnership Agreement H-4
Basic Partnership Accounting H-4
Forming a Partnership H-5
Dividing Net Income or Net Loss H-6
Partnership Financial Statements H-9
Admission and Withdrawal of Partners H-10
Liquidation of a Partnership H-10
No Capital Deficiency H-11
Capital Deficiency H-12

appendix I (available online at *www.wiley.com/college/kimmel*)

Accounting for Sole Proprietorships I-1

Owner's Equity in a Sole Proprietorship I-2
Increases in Owner's Equity I-2
Decreases in Owner's Equity I-2
Recording Transactions of a Proprietorship I-3
Financial Statements for a Proprietorship I-3
Closing the Books of a Proprietorship I-4
Preparing a Post-Closing Trial Balance for a Proprietorship I-7

photo credits CR-1
company index I-1
subject index I-4

What TYPE of learner are you?

By understanding each of these basic learning styles it enables the authors to engage students minds and motivate them to do their best work, ultimately improving the experience for both students and faculty.

	Intake: To take in the information	To make a study package	Text features that may help you the most	Output: To do well on exams
VISUAL	• Pay close attention to charts, drawings, and handouts your instructors use. • Underline. • Use different colors. • Use symbols, flow charts, graphs, different arrangements on the page, white spaces.	Convert your lecture notes into "page pictures." To do this: • Use the "Intake" strategies. • Reconstruct images in different ways. • Redraw pages from memory. • Replace words with symbols and initials. • Look at your pages.	The Navigator/Feature Story/Preview Infographics/Illustrations Accounting Equation Analyses Highlighted words Demonstration Problem/ Action Plan Questions/Exercises/Problems Financial Reporting Problem Comparative Analysis Problem Exploring the Web	• Recall your "page pictures." • Draw diagrams where appropriate. • Practice turning your visuals back into words.
AURAL	• Attend lectures and tutorials. • Discuss topics with students and instructors. • Explain new ideas to other people. • Use a tape recorder. • Leave spaces in your lecture notes for later recall. • Describe overheads, pictures, and visuals to somebody who was not in class.	You may take poor notes because you prefer to listen. Therefore: • Expand your notes by talking with others and with information from your textbook. • Tape-record summarized notes and listen. • Read summarized notes out loud. • Explain your notes to another "aural" person.	Preview Insight Boxes Review It/Do it!/Action Plan Summary of Study Objectives Glossary Demonstration Problem/Action Plan Self-Study Questions Questions/Exercises/Problems Financial Reporting Problem Comparative Analysis Problem Exploring the Web Decision Making Across the Organization	Communication Activity Ethics Case • Talk with the instructor. • Spend time in quiet places recalling the ideas. • Practice writing answers to old exam questions. • Say your answers out loud.
READING/ WRITING	• Use lists and headings. • Use dictionaries, glossaries, and definitions. • Read handouts, textbooks, and supplementary library readings. • Use lecture notes.	• Write out words again and again. • Reread notes silently. • Rewrite ideas and principles into other words. • Turn charts, diagrams, and other illustrations into statements.	The Navigator/Feature Story/Study Objectives/Preview Review It/Do it!/Action Plan Summary of Study Objectives Glossary/Self-Study Questions Questions/Exercises/Problems Writing Problems Financial Reporting Problem Comparative Analysis Problem "All About You" Activity Exploring the Web Decision Making Across the Organization Communication Activity	• Write exam answers. • Practice with multiple-choice questions. • Write paragraphs, beginnings and endings. • Write your lists in outline form. • Arrange your words into hierarchies and points.
KINESTHETIC	• Use all your senses. • Go to labs, take field trips. • Listen to real-life examples. • Pay attention to applications. • Use hands-on approaches. • Use trial-and-error methods.	You may take poor notes because topics do not seem concrete or relevant. Therefore: • Put examples in your summaries. • Use case studies and applications to help with principles and abstract concepts. • Talk about your notes with another "kinesthetic" person. • Use pictures and photographs that illustrate an idea.	The Navigator/Feature Story/Preview Infographics/Illustrations Review It/Do it!/Action Plan Summary of Study Objectives Demonstration Problem/ Action Plan Self-Study Questions Questions/Exercises/Problems Financial Reporting Problem Comparative Analysis Problem Exploring the Web Decision Making Across the Organization Communication Activity "All About You" Activity	• Write practice answers. • Role-play the exam situation.

Active Teaching and Learning Supplementary Material

Accounting, Fourth Edition, features a full line of teaching and learning resources. Driven by the same basic beliefs as the textbook, these supplements provide a consistent and well-integrated learning system. This hands-on, real-world package guides instructors through the process of active learning and gives them the tools to create an interactive learning environment. With its emphasis on activities, exercises, and the Internet, the package encourages students to take an active role in the course and prepares them for decision making in a real-world context.

KIMMEL'S INTEGRATED TECHNOLOGY SOLUTIONS HELPING TEACHERS TEACH AND STUDENT LEARN—
www.wiley.com/college/kimmel

For Instructors

Textbook Companion Website

On this website, instructors will find electronic versions of the Solutions Manual, Test Bank, Instructor's Manual, Computerized Test Bank, and other resources.

Wiley Faculty Network

When it comes to improving the classroom experience, there is no better source of ideas and inspiration than your fellow colleagues. The Wiley Faculty Network connects teachers with technologies, facilitates the exchange of best practices, and helps to enhance instructional efficiency and effectiveness. For details, visit *www.wherefacultyconnect.com.*

Active-Teaching Aids

An extensive support package, including print and technology tools, helps you maximize your teaching effectiveness. We offer useful supplements for instructors with varying levels of experience and different instructional circumstances.

Instructor's Resource CD.

The Instructor's Resource CD (IRCD) contains an electronic version of all instructor supplements. The IRCD gives you the flexibility to access and prepare instructional materials based on your individual needs.

Solutions Manual.

The Solutions Manual contains detailed solutions to all questions, brief exercises, exercises, and problems in the textbook as well as suggested answers to the questions and cases.

Solution Transparencies.

The solution transparencies feature detailed solutions to brief exercises, exercises, problems, and "Broadening Your Perspectives" activities. Transparencies can be easily ordered from the Instructor's textbook companion website.

Instructor's Manual.

Included in each chapter are lecture outlines with teaching tips, chapter reviews, illustrations, and review quizzes.

Teaching Transparencies.

The teaching transparencies are 4-color acetate images of the illustrations found in the Instructor's Manual. Transparencies can be easily ordered from the Instructor's textbook companion website.

Test Bank and Computerized Test Bank.

The test bank and computerized test bank allow instructors to tailor examinations according to study objectives and Bloom's taxonomy. Achievement tests, comprehensive examinations, and a final exam are included.

PowerPoint™.

The new PowerPoint™ presentations contain a combination of key concepts, images and problems from the textbook. Review exercises and "All About You" summaries are included in each chapter to encourage classroom participation.

WebCT and Desire2Learn.

WebCT or Desire2Learn offer an integrated set of course management tools that enable instructors to easily design, develop, and manage Web-based and Web-enhanced courses.

For Students

Active-Learning Aids

Textbook Companion Website.

The Financial Accounting student website provides a wealth of support materials that will help students develop their conceptual understanding of class material and increase their ability to solve problems. On this website, students will find Excel templates, PowerPoint presentations, web quizzing, and other resources. In addition, students can access the new B Exercises and C Problems at this site. Finally, full versions of the Continuing Cookie Chronicle and Waterways problems are included at the student website.

Excel Working Papers.

Excel working papers are partially completed accounting forms (templates) for all end-of-chapter brief exercises, exercises, problems, and cases. They are a convenient resource for organizing and completing homework assignments, and they demonstrate how to correctly set up solution formats. Also available on CD-ROM and within *WileyPLUS* is an electronic version of the print working papers, which are Excel-formatted templates that will help you learn to properly format and present end-of-chapter textbook solutions.

Study Guide.

The Study Guide is a comprehensive review of accounting. It guides you through chapter content, tied to study objectives. Each chapter of the Study Guide includes a chapter review and for extra practice, true/false, multiple-choice, matching questions, and problems, with solutions. The Study Guide is an excellent tool for use on a regular basis during the course and also when preparing for exams.

Primer on Using Excel in Accounting.

This online manual and collection of Excel templates allow students to complete select end-of-chapter exercises and problems identified by a spreadsheet icon in the textbook.

Mobile Applications.

Quizzing and reviewing content is available for download to an iPod and/or other mobile devices.

Student Owner's Manual

Using Your Textbook Effectively

Helpful Hints in the margins further clarify concepts being discussed. They are like having an instructor with you as you read.

Helpful Hint Stock is sometimes issued in exchange for services (payment to attorneys or consultants, for example) or for noncash assets (land or buildings). The value recorded for the shares issued is determined by either the market value of the shares or the value of the good or service received, depending upon which value the company can more readily determine.

we discuss the accounting for paid-in capital. In a later section, we discuss retained earnings.

Let's now look at how to account for new issues of common stock. The primary objectives in accounting for the issuance of common stock are (1) to identify the specific sources of paid-in capital and (2) to maintain the distinction between paid-in capital and retained earnings. As shown below, **the issuance of common stock affects only paid-in capital accounts**.

As discussed earlier, par value does not indicate a stock's market value. The cash proceeds from issuing par value stock may be equal to, greater than, or less than par value. When a company records the issuance of common stock for cash, it credits the par value of the shares to Common Stock, and records in a separate paid-in capital account the portion of the proceeds that is above or below par value.

Ethics Note Managers who are not owners are often compensated based on the performance of the company. They thus may be tempted to exaggerate company performance by inflating income figures.

The chief executive officer (CEO) has overall responsibility business. As the organization chart shows, the CEO delegates other officers. The chief accounting officer is the **controller**. T sponsibilities are to (1) maintain the accounting records, (2) quate system of internal control, and (3) prepare financial statements, tax returns, and internal reports. The **treasurer** has custody of the corporation's funds and is responsible for maintaining the company's cash position.

The organizational structure of a corporation enables a company to hire professional managers to run the business. On the other hand, the separation of ownership and management often reduces an owner's ability to actively manage the company.

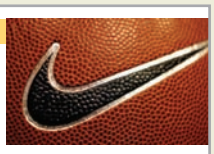
Ethics Notes and International Notes point out ethical and international points related to the nearby text discussion.

Insight examples give you more glimpses into how actual companies make decisions using accounting information. These high-interest boxes focus on various themes—ethics, international, and investor concerns.

A **critical thinking question** asks you to apply your accounting learning to the story in the example. *Guideline Answers* appear at the end of the chapter.

Investor Insight

How to Read Stock Quotes



Organized exchanges trade the stock of publicly held companies at dollar prices per share established by the interaction between buyers and sellers. For each listed security, the financial press reports the high and low prices of the stock during the year, the total volume of stock traded on a given day, the high and low prices for the day, and the closing market price, with the net change for the day. Nike is listed on the New York Stock Exchange. Here is a recent listing for Nike:

	52 Weeks						
Stock	High	Low	Volume	High	Low	Close	Net Change
Nike	78.55	48.76	5,375,651	72.44	69.78	70.61	−1.69

These numbers indicate the following: The high and low market prices for the last 52 weeks have been $78.55 and $48.76. The trading volume for the day was 5,375,651 shares. The high, low, and closing prices for that date were $72.44, $69.78, and $70.61, respectively. The net change for the day was a decrease of $1.69 per share.

? For stocks traded on organized exchanges, how are the dollar prices per share established? What factors might influence the price of shares in the marketplace? (See page 619.)

Accounting Across the Organization examples show the use of accounting by people in non-accounting functions—such as finance, marketing, or management.

Guideline Answers to the critical thinking questions appear at the end of the chapter.

Accounting Across the Organization

Wall Street No Friend of Facebook

In the 1990s, it was the dream of every young technology entrepreneur to start a company and do an initial public offering (IPO), that is, list company shares on a stock exchange. It seemed like there was a never-ending supply of 20-something year-old technology entrepreneurs that made millions doing IPOs of companies that never made a profit and eventually failed. In sharp contrast to this is Mark Zuckerberg, the 25-year-old founder and CEO of Facebook. If Facebook did an IPO, he would make billions of dollars. But, he is in no hurry to go public. Because his company doesn't need to invest in factories, distribution systems, or even marketing, it doesn't need to raise a lot of cash. Also, by not going public, Zuckerberg has more control over the direction of the company. Right now, he and the other founders don't have to answer to outside shareholders, who might be more concerned about short-term investment horizons rather than long-term goals. In addition, publicly traded companies face many more financial reporting disclosure requirements.

Source: Jessica E. Vascellaro, "Facebook CEO in No Rush to 'Friend' Wall Street," *Wall Street Journal Online* (March 4, 2010).

? Why has Mark Zuckerberg, the CEO and founder of Facebook, delayed taking his company's shares public through an initial public offering (IPO)? (See page 618.)

Anatomy of a Fraud boxes illustrate how the lack of specific internal controls resulted in real-world frauds.

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

The president, chief operating officer, and chief financial officer of SafeNet, a software encryption company, were each awarded employee stock options by the company's board of directors as part of their compensation package. Stock options enable an employee to buy a company's stock sometime in the future at the price that existed when the stock option was awarded. For example, suppose that you received stock options today, when the stock price of your company was $30. Three years later, if the stock price rose to $100, you could "exercise" your options and buy the stock for $30 per share, thereby making $70 per share. After being awarded their stock options, the three employees changed the award dates in the company's records to dates in the past, when the company's stock was trading at historical lows. For example, using the previous example, they would choose a past date when the stock was selling for $10 per share, rather than the $30 price on the actual

Brief **Do it!** exercises ask you to put to work your newly acquired knowledge. They outline an **Action Plan** necessary to complete the exercise, and they show a **Solution**.

before you go on...

Do it! Indicate whether each of the following statements is true or false.

CORPORATE ORGANIZATION

____ 1. Similar to partners in a partnership, stockholders of a corporation have unlimited liability.
____ 2. It is relatively easy for a corporation to obtain capital through the issuance of stock.
____ 3. The separation of ownership and management is an advantage of the corporate form of business.
____ 4. The journal entry to record the authorization of capital stock includes a credit to the appropriate capital stock account.
____ 5. All states require a par value per share for capital stock.

Action Plan

- Review the characteristics of a corporation and understand which are advantages and which are disadvantages.
- Understand that corporations

Solution

1. False. The liability of stockholders is normally limited to their investment in the corporation.
2. True.

Comprehensive Do it!

Rolman Corporation is authorized to issue 1,000,000 shares of $5 par value common stock. In its first year, the company has the following stock transactions.

Jan. 10 Issued 400,000 shares of stock at $8 per share.
Sept. 1 Purchased 10,000 shares of common stock for the treasury at $9 per share.
Dec. 24 Declared a cash dividend of 10 cents per share on common stock outstanding.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions.
(b) Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet, assuming the company had retained earnings of $150,600 at December 31.

Comprehensive Do it! problem with **Action Plan** gives students an opportunity to see a detailed solution to a representative problem before they do their homework. Coincides with the Do it! problems within the chapter.

Do it! Review problems appear in the homework material and provide another way for students to determine whether they have mastered the content in the chapters.

Accounting equation analyses appear next to key journal entries. They will help students understand the impact of an accounting transaction on the components of the accounting equation, on the stockholders' equity accounts, and on the company's cash flows.

Declaration Date

				A = L + SE
Dec. 1	Cash Dividends	50,000		−50,000 Div
	Dividends Payable		50,000	+50,000
	(To record declaration of cash dividend)			

Cash Flows
no effect

In Chapter 3, we used an account called Dividends to record a cash dividend. Here, we use the more specific title Cash Dividends to differentiate from other types of dividends, such as stock dividends. Dividends Payable is a current liability: It will normally be paid within the next several months.

At the **record date**, the company determines ownership of the outstanding shares for dividend purposes. The stockholders' records maintained by the corporation supply this information.

For Media General, the record date is December 22. No entry is required on the record date.

Helpful Hint The record date is important in determining the dividend to be paid to each stockholder.

Illustration 11-15
Disclosure of unrestricted retained earnings

TEKTRONIX INC.
Notes to the Financial Statements

Certain of the Company's debt agreements require compliance with debt covenants. The Company had unrestricted retained earnings of $223.8 million after meeting those requirements.

Financial Statements appear regularly. Those from actual companies are identified by a company logo or a photo.

Decision Toolkits highlight the important analytical tools integrated throughout the textbook, designed to assist students in evaluating and using the information at hand.

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Should the company incorporate?	Capital needs, growth expectations, type of business, tax status	Corporations have limited liability, easier capital raising ability, and professional managers; but they suffer from additional taxes, government regulations, and separation of ownership from management.	Must carefully weigh the costs and benefits in light of the particular circumstances.

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

adidas is one of Nike's fiercest competitors. In such a competitive and rapidly changing environment, one wrong step can spell financial disaster.

Instructions

The following facts are available from adidas's annual report. As a German company, adidas reports under International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS). Using this information, evaluate its (1) dividend record and (2) earnings performance, and contrast them with those for Nike for 2009 and 2008. Nike's earnings per share were $3.07 in 2009 and $3.80 in 2008.

(in millions)*	2008	2007	2006
Dividends declared	€99	€85	€66
Net income	€642	€551	€496
Preferred stock dividends	0	0	0
Shares outstanding at end of year	204	204	203
Common stockholders' equity	€3,400	€3,034	€2,836

*Nike has a year-end of May 31, 2009. For comparative purpose, we used adidas's December 31, 2008, data since that represents the closest year-end.

A **Using the Decision Toolkit** exercise, just before the chapter summary, asks students to use the decision tools presented in the chapter and takes them through the problem-solving steps.

KEEPING AN EYE ON CASH

The balance sheet presents the balances of a company's stockholders' equity accounts at a point in time. Companies report in the "Financing Activities" section of the statement of cash flows information regarding cash inflows and outflows during the year that resulted from equity transactions. The excerpt below presents the cash flows from financing activities from the statement of cash flows of Sara Lee Corporation in a recent year. From this information, we learn that the company's purchases of

Keeping an Eye on Cash sections highlight differences between accrual accounting and cash accounting while increasing students' understanding of the statement of cash flows.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises are available online at *www.wiley.com/college/kimmel.*

In the textbook, two similar sets of **Problems—A** and **B**—are keyed to the same study objectives.

Selected problems, identified by this icon, can be solved using the **General Ledger Software (GLS)** package.

An icon identifies **Exercises** and **Problems** that can be solved using Excel templates at the student website.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel,** and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Journalize stock transactions, post, and prepare paid-in capital section.
(SO 2, 4, 7), AN

P11-1A Whitten Corporation was organized on January 1, 2012. It is authorized to issue 20,000 shares of 6%, $50 par value preferred stock and 500,000 shares of no-par common stock with a stated value of $1 per share. The following stock transactions were completed during the first year.

Jan.	10	Issued 70,000 shares of common stock for cash at $4 per share.
Mar.	1	Issued 12,000 shares of preferred stock for cash at $53 per share.
May	1	Issued 120,000 shares of common stock for cash at $6 per share.

Prepare a stockholders' equity section.
(SO 7), AP

P11-6A On January 1, 2012, Neville Inc. had these stockholders' equity balances.

Common Stock, $1 par (2,000,000 shares authorized, 600,000 shares issued and outstanding)	$ 600,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value	1,500,000
Retained Earnings	700,000

Service Company Insight

Sales Are Nice, but Service Revenue Pays the Bills

Jet engines are one of the many products made by the industrial operations division of General Electric (GE). At prices as high as $30 million per engine, you can bet that GE does its best to keep track of costs. It might surprise you that GE doesn't make much profit on the sale of each engine. So why does it bother making them? Service revenue—during one recent year, about 75% of the division's revenues came from servicing its own products. One estimate is that the $13 billion in aircraft engines sold during a recent three-year period will generate about $90 billion in service revenue over the 30-year life of the engines. Because of the high product costs, both the engines themselves and the subsequent service are most likely accounted for using job order costing. Accurate service cost records are important because GE needs to generate high profit margins on its service jobs to make up for the low margins on the original sale. It also needs good cost records for its service jobs in order to control its costs. Otherwise, a competitor, such as Pratt and Whitney, might submit lower bids for service contracts and take lucrative service jobs away from GE.

Those exercises and problems that focus on accounting situations faced by **service companies** are identified by the icon shown here.

An additional parallel set of **C Problems** appears at the textbook companion website.

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Comprehensive Problem: Chapters 14 to 23

CP23 You would like to start a business manufacturing a unique model of bicycle helmet. In preparation for an interview with the bank to discuss your financing needs, you develop answers to the following questions. A number of assumptions are required; clearly note all assumptions that you make.

Comprehensive Problems combine material from the current chapter with previous chapters so that students understand how "it all fits together."

The **Continuing Cookie Chronicle** exercise follows the continuing saga of accounting for a small business begun by an entrepreneurial student.

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapters 1 through 10.)

CCC11

Part 1 Because Natalie has been so successful with Cookie Creations and her friend Curtis Lesperance has been just as successful with his coffee shop, they conclude that they could benefit from each other's business expertise. Curtis and Natalie next evaluate the different types of business organization. Because of the advantage of limited personal liability, they decide to form a corporation.

Natalie and Curtis are very excited about this new business venture. They come to you

Waterways Continuing Problem

(This is a continuation of the Waterways Problem from Chapters 14 through 22.)

WCP23 Waterways Corporation puts much emphasis on cash flow when it plans for capital investments. The company chose its discount rate of 8% based on the rate of return it must pay its owners and creditors. Using that rate, Waterways then uses different methods to determine the best decisions for making capital outlays. Waterways is considering buying five new backhoes to replace the backhoes it now has. This problem asks you to evaluate that decision, using various capital budgeting techniques.

The **Waterways Continuing Problem** uses the business activities of a fictional company, to help students apply managerial accounting topics to a realistic entrepreneurial situation.

The **Broadening Your Perspective** section helps to pull together concepts from the chapter and apply them to real-world business situations.

The **Financial Reporting Problem** focuses on reading and understanding the financial statements of Tootsie Roll, which are printed in Appendix A.

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: ***Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.***

BYP11-1 The stockholders' equity section of Tootsie Roll Industries' balance sheet is shown in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position in Appendix A. You will also find data relative to this problem on other pages of Appendix A. **(Note that Tootsie Roll has two classes of common stock. To answer the following questions, add the two classes of stock together.)**

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) What is the par or stated value per share of Tootsie Roll's common stock?
(b) What percentage of Tootsie Roll's authorized common stock was issued at December 31, 2009? (Round to the nearest full percent.)
(c) How many shares of common stock were outstanding at December 31, 2008, and at December 31, 2009?
(d) Calculate the payout ratio, earnings per share, and return on common stockholders' equity ratio for 2009.

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: ***Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey***

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: ***Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey***

BYP11-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company are presented in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll in Appendix A.

A **Comparative Analysis Problem** compares and contrasts the financial reporting of Tootsie Roll and Hershey.

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP11-5 ***Purpose:*** Use the stockholders' equity section of an annual report and identify the major components.

Address: **www.annualreports.com**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Select a particular company.
2. Search by company name.
3. Follow instructions below.

Exploring the Web exercises guide students to websites where they can find and analyze information related to the chapter topic.

Decision Making Across the Organization cases help students build decision-making skills by analyzing accounting information in a less structured situation. These cases require teams of students to evaluate a manager's decision or lead to a decision among alternative courses of action.

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP11-6 During a recent period, the fast-food chain Wendy's International purchased many treasury shares. This caused the number of shares outstanding to fall from 124 million to 105 million. The following information was drawn from the company's financial statements (in millions).

	Information for the Year after Purchase of Treasury Stock	Information for the Year before Purchase of Treasury Stock
Net income	$ 193.6	$ 123.4
Total assets	2,076.0	1,837.9
Average total assets	2,016.9	1,889.8
Total common stockholders' equity	1,029.8	1,068.1
Average common stockholders' equity	1,078.0	1,126.2
Total liabilities	1,046.3	769.9
Average total liabilities	939.0	763.7
Interest expense	30.2	19.8
Income taxes	113.7	84.3
Cash provided by operations	305.2	233.8
Cash dividends paid on common stock	26.8	31.0
Preferred stock dividends	0	0
Average number of common shares outstanding	109.7	119.9

ETHICS CASES

BYP11-8 The R&D division of Mozy Corp. has just developed a chemical for sterilizing the vicious Brazilian "killer bees" which are invading Mexico and the southern United States. The president of Mozy is anxious to get the chemical on the market because Mozy profits need a boost—and his job is in jeopardy because of decreasing sales and profits. Mozy has an opportunity to sell this chemical in Central American countries, where the laws are much more relaxed than in the United States.

The director of Mozy's R&D division strongly recommends further research in the laboratory to test the side effects of this chemical on other insects, birds, animals, plants, and even humans. He cautions the president, "We could be sued from all sides if the chemical has tragic side effects that we didn't even test for in the lab." The president answers, "We can't wait an additional year for your lab tests. We can avoid losses from such lawsuits by establishing a separate wholly owned

Ethics Cases ask students to reflect on typical ethical dilemmas, analyze the stakeholders and the issues involved, and decide on an appropriate course of action.

Managerial Analysis assignments build analytical and decision-making skills in situations created by managers. They also require students to apply and practice business communication skills.

MANAGERIAL ANALYSIS

***BYP22-2** Al Finney and Associates is a medium-sized company located near a large metropolitan area in the Midwest. The company manufactures cabinets of mahogany, oak, and other fine woods for use in expensive homes, restaurants, and hotels. Although some of the work is custom, many of the cabinets are a standard size.

One such non-custom model is called Luxury Base Frame. Normal production is 1,000 units. Each unit has a direct labor hour standard of 5 hours. Overhead is applied to production based on standard direct labor hours. During the most recent month, only 900 units were produced; 4,500 direct labor hours were allowed for standard production, but only 4,000 hours were used. Standard and actual overhead costs were as follows.

	Standard (1,000 units)	Actual (900 units)
Indirect materials	$ 12,000	$ 12,300
Indirect labor	43,000	51,000
(Fixed) Manufacturing supervisors salaries	22,000	22,000
(Fixed) Manufacturing office employees salaries	13,000	11,500
(Fixed) Engineering costs	27,000	25,000
Computer costs	10,000	10,000

For **Real-World Focus** problems, students apply techniques and concepts presented in the chapter to specific situations faced by actual companies. These problems often have a global focus.

REAL-WORLD FOCUS

BYP23-3 Founded in 1983, the Beverly Hills Fan Company is located in Woodland Hills, California. With 23 employees and sales of less than $10 million, the company is relatively small. Management feels that there is potential for growth in the upscale market for ceiling fans and lighting. They are particularly optimistic about growth in Mexican and Canadian markets.

Presented on the next page is information from the president's letter in the company's annual report.

IFRS **A Look at IFRS**

It is often difficult for companies to determine in what time period they should report particular revenues and expenses. Both the IASB and FASB are working on a joint project to develop a common conceptual framework, as well as a revenue recognition project, that will enable companies to better use the same principles to record transactions consistently over time.

KEY POINTS

- In this chapter, you learned accrual-basis accounting applied under GAAP. Companies applying IFRS also use accrual-basis accounting to ensure that they record transactions that change a company's financial statements in the period in which events occur.
- Similar to GAAP, cash-basis accounting is not in accordance with IFRS.
- IFRS also divides the economic life of companies into artificial time periods. Under both GAAP and IFRS, this is referred to as the *periodicity assumption*.
- IFRS requires that companies present a complete set of financial statements, including comparative information annually.
- GAAP has more than 100 rules dealing with revenue recognition. Many of these rules are industry-specific. In contrast, revenue recognition under IFRS is determined primarily by a single standard. Despite this large disparity in the amount of detailed guidance devoted to revenue recognition, the **general** revenue recognition principles required by GAAP that are used in this textbook are similar to those under IFRS.
- As the Feature Story illustrates, revenue recognition fraud is a major issue in U.S. financial reporting. The same situation occurs in other countries, as evidenced by revenue recognition breakdowns at Dutch software company Baan NV, Japanese electronics giant NEC, and Dutch

A Look at IFRS provides an overview of the International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) that relate to the chapter topics, highlights the differences between GAAP and IFRS, discusses IFRS/GAAP convergence efforts, and tests students' understanding through *IFRS Self-Test Questions* and *IFRS Concepts and Application.*

chapter 1

INTRODUCTION TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 5 ◯ p. 11 ◯ p. 18 ◯ p. 20 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 23 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 42 ◯

study objectives

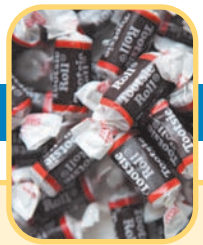
After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Describe the primary forms of business organization.
2. Identify the users and uses of accounting information.
3. Explain the three principal types of business activity.
4. Describe the content and purpose of each of the financial statements.
5. Explain the meaning of assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity, and state the basic accounting equation.
6. Describe the components that supplement the financial statements in an annual report.

the navigator

The Navigator is a learning system designed to prompt you to use the learning aids in the chapter and to set priorities as you study.

feature story



KNOWING THE NUMBERS

Many students who take this course do not plan to be accountants. If you are in that group, you might be thinking, "If I'm not going to be an accountant, why do I need to know accounting?" In response, consider this quote from Harold Geneen, the former chairman of IT&T: "To be good at your business, you have to know the numbers—cold." Success in any business comes back to the numbers. You will rely on them to make decisions, and managers will use them to evaluate your performance. That is true whether your job involves marketing, production, management, or information systems.

In business, accounting and financial statements are the means for communicating the numbers. If you don't know how to read financial statements, you can't really know your business.

Many companies spend significant resources teaching their employees basic accounting so that they can read financial statements and understand how their actions affect the company's financial results. One such company is Springfield ReManufacturing Corporation (SRC). When Jack Stack and 11 other managers purchased SRC for 10 cents a share, it was a failing division of International Harvester. Jack's 119 employees were counting on him for their livelihood. He decided that for the company to survive, every employee needed to think like a businessperson and to act like an owner. To accomplish this, all employees at SRC took basic accounting courses and participated in weekly reviews of the company's financial statements. SRC survived, and eventually thrived. To this day, every employee (now numbering more than 1,000) undergoes this same training.

Many other companies have adopted this approach, which is called "open-book management." Even in companies that do not practice open-book management, employers generally assume that managers in all areas of the company are "financially literate."

Taking this course will go a long way to making you financially literate. In this book you will learn how to read and prepare financial statements, and how to use basic tools to evaluate financial results. In this first chapter we will introduce you to the financial statements of a real company whose products you are probably familiar with—Tootsie Roll. Tootsie Roll's presentation of its financial results is complete, yet also relatively easy to understand.

Tootsie Roll started off humbly in 1896 in a small New York City candy shop owned by an Austrian immigrant, Leo Hirshfield. The candy's name came from his five-year-old daughter's nickname—"Tootsie." Today the Chicago-based company produces more than 49 million Tootsie Rolls and 16 million Tootsie Pops *each day*. In fact, Tootsie Pops are at the center of one of science's most challenging questions: How many licks does it take to get to the Tootsie Roll center of a Tootsie Pop? The answer varies: Licking machines created at Purdue University and the University of Michigan report an average of 364 and 411 licks, respectively. In studies using human lickers, the answer ranges from 144 to 252. We recommend that you take a few minutes today away from your studies to determine your own results.

Source: Tootsie Roll information adapted from *www.tootsie.com.*

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 1 . . .

- **The Scoop on Accounting** *(p. 6)*
- **Spinning the Career Wheel** *(p. 7)*
- **The Numbers Behind Not-for-Profit Organizations** *(p. 8)*
- **Rocking the Bottom Line** *(p. 15)*

preview of chapter 1

How do you start a business? How do you determine whether your business is making or losing money? How should you finance expansion—should you borrow, should you issue stock, should you use your own funds? How do you convince lenders to lend you money or investors to buy your stock? Success in business requires making countless decisions, and decisions require financial information.

The purpose of this chapter is to show you what role accounting plays in providing financial information. The content and organization of the chapter are as follows.

Introduction to Financial Statements

Forms of Business Organization	Users and Uses of Financial Information	Business Activities	Communicating with Users
• Sole proprietorship • Partnership • Corporation	• Internal users • External users • Ethics in financial reporting	• Financing • Investing • Operating	• Income statement • Retained earnings statement • Balance sheet • Statement of cash flows • Interrelationships of statements • Other elements of an annual report

the navigator

Forms of Business Organization

study objective 1

Describe the primary forms of business organization.

Suppose you graduate with a business degree and decide you want to start your own business. But what kind of business? You know that you enjoy working with people, especially teaching them new skills. And, ever since you were young, you have spent most of your free time outdoors, kayaking, backpacking, skiing, rock climbing, and mountain biking. You therefore realize that you might be most successful in opening an outdoor guide service where you grew up, in the Sierra Nevada mountains.

Your next decision is to determine what organizational form your business will have. You have three choices—sole proprietorship, partnership, or corporation.

Sole Proprietorship

-Simple to establish
-Owner controlled
-Tax advantages

You might choose the sole proprietorship form for your outdoor guide service. A business owned by one person is a **sole proprietorship**. It is **simple to set up** and **gives you control** over the business. Small owner-operated businesses such as barber shops, law offices, and auto repair shops are often sole proprietorships, as are farms and small retail stores.

Partnership

-Simple to establish
-Shared control
-Broader skills and resources
-Tax advantages

Another possibility is for you to join forces with other individuals to form a partnership. A business owned by two or more persons associated as partners is a **partnership**. Partnerships often are formed because one individual does not have **enough economic resources** to initiate or expand the business. Sometimes, **partners bring unique skills or resources** to the partnership. You and your partners should formalize your duties and contributions in a written partnership agreement. Retail and service-type businesses, including professional practices (lawyers, doctors, architects, and certified public accountants), often organize as partnerships.

Corporation

-Easier to transfer ownership
-Easier to raise funds
-No personal liability

As a third alternative, you might organize as a corporation. A business organized as a separate legal entity owned by stockholders is a **corporation**. Investors in a corporation receive shares of stock to indicate their ownership claim. Buying stock in a corporation is often more attractive than investing in a partnership because shares of stock are **easy to sell** (transfer ownership). Selling a proprietorship or partnership interest is much more involved. Also, individuals

can become **stockholders** by investing relatively small amounts of money. Therefore, it is **easier for corporations to raise funds**. Successful corporations often have thousands of stockholders, and their stock is traded on organized stock exchanges like the New York Stock Exchange. Many businesses start as sole proprietorships or partnerships and eventually incorporate. For example, in 1896 Leo Hirshfield started Tootsie Roll as a sole proprietorship, and by 1919 the company had incorporated.

Other factors to consider in deciding which organizational form to choose are **taxes and legal liability**. If you choose a sole proprietorship or partnership, you generally receive more favorable tax treatment than a corporation. However, proprietors and partners are personally liable for all debts of the business; corporate stockholders are not. In other words, corporate stockholders generally pay higher taxes but have no personal liability. We will discuss these issues in more depth in a later chapter.

The combined number of proprietorships and partnerships in the United States is more than five times the number of corporations. However, the revenue produced by corporations is eight times greater. Most of the largest enterprises in the United States—for example, Coca-Cola, ExxonMobil, General Motors, Citigroup, and Microsoft—are corporations. Because the majority of U.S. business is transacted by corporations, the emphasis in this book is on the corporate form of organization.

Alternative Terminology
Stockholders are sometimes called *shareholders*.

Alternative Terminology notes present synonymous terms that you may come across in practice.

before you go on...

Do it! In choosing the organizational form for your outdoor guide service, you should consider the pros and cons of each. Identify each of the following organizational characteristics with the organizational form or forms with which it is associated.

1. Easier to raise funds
2. Simple to establish
3. No personal legal liability
4. Tax advantages
5. Easier to transfer ownership

Solution

1. Easier to raise funds: Corporation.
2. Simple to establish: Sole proprietorship and partnership.
3. No personal legal liability: Corporation.
4. Tax advantages: Sole proprietorship and partnership.
5. Easier to transfer ownership: Corporation.

Related exercise material: **BE1-1** and **Do it! 1-1.**

BUSINESS ORGANIZATION FORMS

Do it! exercises prompt you to stop and review the key points you have just studied.

Action Plan

- Know which organizational form best matches the business type, size, and preferences of the owner(s).

Action Plans give you tips about how to approach the problem.

the navigator

Users and Uses of Financial Information

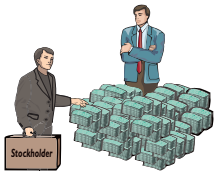
study objective 2
Identify the users and uses of accounting information.

The purpose of financial information is to provide inputs for decision making. **Accounting** is the information system that identifies, records, and communicates the economic events of an organization to interested users. **Users** of accounting information can be divided broadly into two groups: internal users and external users.

INTERNAL USERS

Internal users of accounting information are managers who plan, organize, and run a business. These include **marketing managers**, **production supervisors**, **finance directors**, **and company officers**. In running a business, managers must answer many important questions, as shown in Illustration 1-1 (page 6).

Questions Asked by Internal Users



Finance

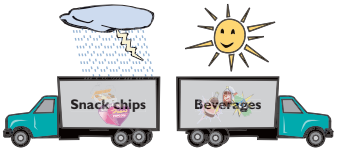
Is cash sufficient to pay dividends to Microsoft stockholders?

Marketing

What price for an Apple iPod will maximize the company's net income?

Human Resources

Can we afford to give General Motors employees pay raises this year?



Management

Which PepsiCo product line is the most profitable? Should any product lines be eliminated?

Illustration 1-1
Questions that internal users ask

Illustrations like this one convey information in pictorial form to help you visualize and apply the ideas as you study.

To answer these and other questions, you need detailed information on a timely basis. For internal users, accounting provides internal reports, such as financial comparisons of operating alternatives, projections of income from new sales campaigns, and forecasts of cash needs for the next year. In addition, companies present summarized financial information in the form of financial statements.

Accounting Across the Organization

The Scoop on Accounting

Accounting can serve as a useful recruiting tool even for the human resources department. Rhino Foods, located in Burlington, Vermont, is a manufacturer of specialty ice cream. Its corporate website includes the following:

> "Wouldn't it be great to work where you were part of a team? Where your input and hard work made a difference? Where you weren't kept in the dark about what management was thinking? . . . Well–it's not a dream! It's the way we do business . . . Rhino Foods believes in family, honesty and open communication–we really care about and appreciate our employees–and it shows. Operating results are posted and monthly group meetings inform all employees about what's happening in the Company. Employees also share in the Company's profits, in addition to having an excellent comprehensive *benefits* package."

Source: *www.rhinofoods.com/workforus/workforus.html*.

Accounting Across the Organization stories show applications of accounting information in various business functions.

? What are the benefits to the company and to the employees of making the financial statements available to all employees? (See page 41.)

EXTERNAL USERS

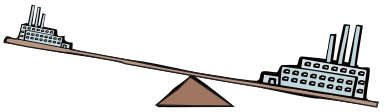
There are several types of **external users** of accounting information. **Investors** (owners) use accounting information to make decisions to buy, hold, or sell stock. **Creditors** such as suppliers and bankers use accounting information to evaluate the risks of selling on credit or lending money. Some questions that investors and creditors may ask about a company are shown in Illustration 1-2.

Illustration 1-2
Questions that external users ask

Questions Asked by External Users

Investors

Is General Electric earning satisfactory income?



Investors

How does Disney compare in size and profitability with Time Warner?

Creditors

Will United Airlines be able to pay its debts as they come due?

The information needs and questions of other external users vary considerably. **Taxing authorities**, such as the Internal Revenue Service, want to know whether the company complies with the tax laws. **Customers** are interested in whether a company like General Motors will continue to honor product warranties and otherwise support its product lines. **Labor unions**, such as the Major League Baseball Players Association, want to know whether the owners have the ability to pay increased wages and benefits. **Regulatory agencies**, such as the Securities and Exchange Commission or the Federal Trade Commission, want to know whether the company is operating within prescribed rules. For example, Enron, Dynegy, Duke Energy, and other big energy-trading companies reported record profits at the same time as California was paying extremely high prices for energy and suffering from blackouts. This disparity caused regulators to investigate the energy traders to make sure that the profits were earned by legitimate and fair practices.

Accounting Across the Organization

Spinning the Career Wheel

One question that business students frequently ask is, "How will the study of accounting help me?" It should help you a great deal, because a working knowledge of accounting is desirable for virtually every field of business. Some examples of how accounting is used in business careers include:

General management: Imagine running Ford Motors, Massachusetts General Hospital, California State University–Fullerton, a McDonald's franchise, a Trek bike shop. All general managers need to understand accounting data in order to make wise business decisions.

Marketing: A marketing specialist at a company like Procter & Gamble develops strategies to help the sales force be successful. But making a sale is meaningless unless it is a profitable sale. Marketing people must be sensitive to costs and benefits, which accounting helps them quantify and understand.

Finance: Do you want to be a banker for Citicorp, an investment analyst for Goldman Sachs, a stock broker for Merrill Lynch? These fields rely heavily on accounting. In all of them you will regularly examine and analyze financial statements. In fact, it is difficult to get a good job in a finance function without two or three courses in accounting.

Real estate: Are you interested in being a real estate broker for Prudential Real Estate? Because a third party—the bank—is almost always involved in financing a real estate transaction, brokers must understand the numbers involved: Can the buyer afford to make the payments to the bank? Does the cash flow from an industrial property justify the purchase price? What are the tax benefits of the purchase?

? How might accounting help you? (See page 41.)

ETHICS IN FINANCIAL REPORTING

People won't gamble in a casino if they think it is "rigged." Similarly, people won't "play" the stock market if they think stock prices are rigged. In recent years the financial press has been full of articles about financial scandals at Enron, WorldCom, HealthSouth, and AIG. As more scandals came to light, a mistrust of financial reporting in general seemed to be developing. One article in the *Wall Street Journal* noted that "repeated disclosures about questionable accounting practices have bruised investors' faith in the reliability of earnings reports, which in turn has sent stock prices tumbling."[1] Imagine trying to carry on a business or invest money if you could not depend on the financial statements to be honestly prepared.

[1]"U.S. Share Prices Slump," *Wall Street Journal* (February 21, 2002).

Information would have no credibility. There is no doubt that a sound, well-functioning economy depends on accurate and dependable financial reporting.

Ethics Note Circus-founder P.T. Barnum is alleged to have said, "Trust everyone, but cut the deck." What Sarbanes-Oxley does is to provide measures that (like cutting the deck of playing cards) help ensure that fraud will not occur.

United States regulators and lawmakers were very concerned that the economy would suffer if investors lost confidence in corporate accounting because of unethical financial reporting. In 2002, Congress passed the **Sarbanes-Oxley Act (SOX)** to reduce unethical corporate behavior and decrease the likelihood of future corporate scandals. As a result of SOX, top management must now certify the accuracy of financial information. In addition, penalties for fraudulent financial activity are much more severe. Also, SOX increased the independence of the outside auditors who review the accuracy of corporate financial statements, and increased the oversight role of boards of directors.

Effective financial reporting depends on sound ethical behavior. To sensitize you to ethical situations and to give you practice at solving ethical dilemmas, we address ethics in a number of ways in this book: (1) A number of the *Feature Stories* and other parts of the text discuss the central importance of ethical behavior to financial reporting. (2) *Insight boxes* with an ethics perspective highlight ethics situations and issues in actual business settings. (3) At the end of the chapter, an *Ethics Case* simulates a business situation and asks you to put yourself in the position of a decision maker in that case.

When analyzing these various ethics cases and your own ethical experiences, you should apply the three steps outlined in Illustration 1-3.

Illustration 1-3 Steps in analyzing ethics cases

Solving an Ethical Dilemma

1. Recognize an ethical situation and the ethical issues involved.
Use your personal ethics to identify ethical situations and issues. Some businesses and professional organizations provide written codes of ethics for guidance in some business situations.

2. Identify and analyze the principal elements in the situation.
Identify the *stakeholders*—persons or groups who may be harmed or benefited. Ask the question: What are the responsibilities and obligations of the parties involved?

3. Identify the alternatives, and weigh the impact of each alternative on various stakeholders.
Select the most ethical alternative, considering all the consequences. Sometimes there will be one right answer. Other situations involve more than one right solution; these situations require you to evaluate each alternative and select the best one.

Insights provide examples of business situations from various perspectives—ethics, investor, and international.

Ethics Insight

The Numbers Behind Not-for-Profit Organizations

Accounting plays an important role for a wide range of business organizations worldwide. Just as the integrity of the numbers matters for business, it matters at least as much for not-for-profit organizations. Proper control and reporting help ensure that money is used the way donors intended. Donors are less inclined to give to an organization if they think the organization is subject to waste or theft. The accounting challenges of some large international not-for-profits rival those of the world's largest businesses. For example, after the Haitian earthquake, the Haitian-born musician Wyclef Jean was criticized for the poor accounting controls in a relief fund that he founded. Since then, he has hired a new accountant and improved the transparency regarding funds raised and spent.

? What benefits does a sound accounting system provide to a not-for-profit organization? (See page 41.)

Business Activities

study objective 3

Explain the three principal types of business activity.

All businesses are involved in three types of activity—financing, investing, and operating. For example, Leo Hirshfield, the founder of Tootsie Roll, obtained cash through financing to start and grow his business. Some of this **financing** came from personal savings, and some likely came from outside sources like banks. Hirshfield then **invested** the cash in equipment to run the business, such as mixing equipment and delivery vehicles. Once this equipment was in place, he could begin the **operating** activities of making and selling candy.

The **accounting information system** keeps track of the results of each of the various business activities—financing, investing, and operating. Let's look in more detail at each type of business activity.

FINANCING ACTIVITIES

Financing

It takes money to make money. The two primary sources of outside funds for corporations are borrowing money and issuing (selling) shares of stock in exchange for cash.

Tootsie Roll Industries may borrow money in a variety of ways. For example, it can take out a loan at a bank or borrow directly from investors by issuing debt securities called bonds. Persons or entities to whom Tootsie Roll owes money are its **creditors**. Amounts owed to creditors—in the form of debt and other obligations—are called **liabilities**. Specific names are given to different types of liabilities, depending on their source. Tootsie Roll may have a **note payable** to a bank for the money borrowed to purchase delivery trucks. Debt securities sold to investors that must be repaid at a particular date some years in the future are **bonds payable**.

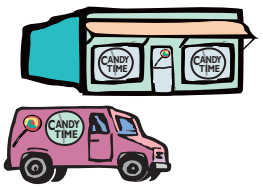
Essential terms are printed in blue. They are defined again in the **glossary** at the end of the chapter.

A corporation may also obtain funds by selling shares of stock to investors. **Common stock** is the term used to describe the total amount paid in by stockholders for the shares they purchase.

The claims of creditors differ from those of stockholders. If you loan money to a company, you are one of its creditors. In lending money, you specify a payment schedule (e.g., payment at the end of three months). As a creditor, you have a legal right to be paid at the agreed time. In the event of nonpayment, you may legally force the company to sell property to pay its debts. In the case of financial difficulty, creditor claims must be paid before stockholders' claims.

Stockholders, on the other hand, have no claim to corporate cash until the claims of creditors are satisfied. If you buy a company's stock instead of loaning it money, you have no legal right to expect any payments until all of its creditors are paid. However, many corporations make payments to stockholders on a regular basis as long as there is sufficient cash to cover required payments to creditors. These payments to stockholders are called **dividends**.

INVESTING ACTIVITIES



Investing

Once the company has raised cash through financing activities, it will then use that cash in investing activities. Investing activities involve the purchase of the resources a company needs in order to operate. A growing company purchases many resources, such as computers, delivery trucks, furniture, and buildings. Resources owned by a business are called **assets**. Different types of assets are given different names. Tootsie Roll's mixing equipment is a type of asset referred to as **property**, **plant**, **and equipment**.

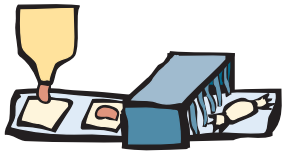
Alternative Terminology

Property, plant, and equipment is sometimes called *fixed assets*.

Cash is one of the more important assets owned by Tootsie Roll or any other business. If a company has excess cash that it does not need for a while, it might

choose to invest in securities (stocks or bonds) of other corporations. **Investments** are another example of an investing activity.

OPERATING ACTIVITIES



Operating

Once a business has the assets it needs to get started, it can begin its operations. Tootsie Roll is in the business of selling all things that taste, look, or smell like candy. It sells Tootsie Rolls, Tootsie Pops, Blow Pops, Caramel Apple Pops, Mason Dots, Mason Crows, Sugar Daddy, and Sugar Babies. We call amounts earned on the sale of these products *revenues*. **Revenue** is the increase in assets resulting from the sale of a product or service in the normal course of business. For example, Tootsie Roll records revenue when it sells a candy product.

Revenues arise from different sources and are identified by various names depending on the nature of the business. For instance, Tootsie Roll's primary source of revenue is the sale of candy products. However, it also generates interest revenue on debt securities held as investments. Sources of revenue common to many businesses are **sales revenue**, **service revenue**, and **interest revenue**.

The company purchases its longer-lived assets through investing activities as described earlier. Other assets with shorter lives, however, result from operating activities. For example, supplies are assets used in day-to-day operations. Goods available for future sales to customers are assets called **inventory**. Also, if Tootsie Roll sells goods to a customer and does not receive cash immediately, then the company has a right to expect payment from that customer in the near future. This right to receive money in the future is called an **account receivable**.

Before Tootsie Roll can sell a single Tootsie Roll, Tootsie Pop, or Blow Pop, it must purchase sugar, corn syrup, and other ingredients, mix these ingredients, process the mix, and wrap and ship the finished product. It also incurs costs like salaries, rents, and utilities. All of these costs, referred to as *expenses*, are necessary to produce and sell the product. In accounting language, **expenses** are the cost of assets consumed or services used in the process of generating revenues.

Expenses take many forms and are identified by various names depending on the type of asset consumed or service used. For example, Tootsie Roll keeps track of these types of expenses: **cost of goods sold** (such as the cost of ingredients); **selling expenses** (such as the cost of salespersons' salaries); **marketing expenses** (such as the cost of advertising); **administrative expenses** (such as the salaries of administrative staff, and telephone and heat costs incurred at the corporate office); **interest expense** (amounts of interest paid on various debts); and **income taxes** (corporate taxes paid to government).

Tootsie Roll may also have liabilities arising from these expenses. For example, it may purchase goods on credit from suppliers; the obligations to pay for these goods are called **accounts payable**. Additionally, Tootsie Roll may have **interest payable** on the outstanding amounts owed to the bank. It may also have **wages payable** to its employees and **sales taxes payable**, **property taxes payable**, and **income taxes payable** to the government.

Tootsie Roll compares the revenues of a period with the expenses of that period to determine whether it earned a profit. When revenues exceed expenses, **net income** results. When expenses exceed revenues, a **net loss** results.

before you go on...

Do it! Classify each item as an asset, liability, common stock, revenue, or expense.

1. Cost of renting property
2. Truck purchased
3. Notes payable
4. Issuance of ownership shares
5. Amount earned from providing service
6. Amounts owed to suppliers

BUSINESS ACTIVITIES

Action Plan

- Classify each item based on its economic characteristics. Proper classification of items is critical if accounting is to provide useful information.

Solution

1. Cost of renting property: Expense.
2. Truck purchased: Asset.
3. Notes payable: Liabilities.
4. Issuance of ownership shares: Common stock.
5. Amount earned from providing service: Revenue.
6. Amounts owed to suppliers: Liabilities.

Related exercise material: **BE1-3, Do it! 1-2,** and **E1-3.**

the navigator

Communicating with Users

study objective 4

Describe the content and purpose of each of the financial statements.

Assets, liabilities, expenses, and revenues are of interest to users of accounting information. This information is arranged in the format of four different **financial statements**, which form the backbone of financial accounting:

- To present a picture at a point in time of what your business owns (its assets) and what it owes (its liabilities), you prepare a **balance sheet**.
- To show how successfully your business performed during a period of time, you report its revenues and expenses in an **income statement**.
- To indicate how much of previous income was distributed to you and the other owners of your business in the form of dividends, and how much was retained in the business to allow for future growth, you present a **retained earnings statement**.
- To show where your business obtained cash during a period of time and how that cash was used, you present a **statement of cash flows**.

To introduce you to these statements, we have prepared the financial statements for your outdoor guide service, Sierra Corporation, after your first month of operations. To summarize, you officially started your business in Truckee, California, on October 1, 2012. Sierra provides guide services in the Lake Tahoe area of the Sierra Nevada mountains. Its promotional materials describe outdoor day trips, such as rafting, snowshoeing, and hiking, as well as multi-day backcountry experiences. To minimize your initial investment, at this point the company has limited outdoor equipment for customer use. Instead, your customers either bring their own equipment or you arrange for them to rent equipment through local outfitters. The financial statements for Sierra's first month of business are provided in the following pages.

International Note The primary types of financial statements required by International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) and U.S. generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) are the same. Neither IFRS nor GAAP is very specific regarding format requirements for the primary financial statements. However, in practice, some format differences do exist in presentations commonly employed by IFRS companies compared to GAAP companies.

INCOME STATEMENT

The **income statement** reports the success or failure of the company's operations for a period of time. To indicate that its income statement reports the

results of operations for a **period of time**, Sierra dates the income statement "For the Month Ended October 31, 2012." The income statement lists the company's revenues followed by its expenses. Finally, Sierra determines the net income (or net loss) by deducting expenses from revenues. Sierra Corporation's income statement is shown in Illustration 1-4. Congratulations, you are already showing a profit!

Illustration 1-4 Sierra Corporation's income statement

SIERRA CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Month Ended October 31, 2012

Revenues		
Service revenue		$10,600
Expenses		
Salaries expense	$5,200	
Supplies expense	1,500	
Rent expense	900	
Insurance expense	50	
Interest expense	50	
Depreciation expense	40	
Total expenses		7,740
Net income		$ 2,860

Helpful Hint The heading identifies the company, the type of statement, and the time period covered. Sometimes, another line indicates the unit of measure, e.g., "in thousands" or "in millions."

Ethics Note When companies find errors in previously released income statements, they restate those numbers. Perhaps because of the increased scrutiny shortly after Sarbanes-Oxley was implemented, companies filed a record 1,195 restatements.

Why are financial statement users interested in net income? **Investors are interested in a company's past net income because it provides useful information for predicting future net income**. Investors buy and sell stock based on their beliefs about a company's future performance. If investors believe that Sierra will be successful in the future and that this will result in a higher stock price, they will buy its stock. Creditors also use the income statement to predict future earnings. When a bank loans money to a company, it believes that it will be repaid in the future. If it didn't think it would be repaid, it wouldn't loan the money. Therefore, prior to making the loan the bank loan officer uses the income statement as a source of information to predict whether the company will be profitable enough to repay its loan. Thus, reporting a strong profit will make it easier for Sierra to raise additional cash either by issuing shares of stock or borrowing.

Amounts received from issuing stock are not revenues, and amounts paid out as dividends are not expenses. As a result, they are not reported on the income statement. For example, Sierra Corporation does not treat as revenue the $10,000 of cash received from issuing new stock, nor does it regard as a business expense the $500 of dividends paid.

Decision Toolkits summarize the financial decision-making process.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Are the company's operations profitable?	Income statement	The income statement reports on the success or failure of the company's operations by reporting its revenues and expenses.	If the company's revenue exceeds its expenses, it will report net income; otherwise it will report a net loss.

RETAINED EARNINGS STATEMENT

If Sierra is profitable, at the end of each period it must decide what portion of profits to pay to shareholders in dividends. In theory, it could pay all of its

current-period profits, but few companies do this. Why? Because they want to retain part of the profits to allow for further expansion. High-growth companies, such as Google and Cisco Systems, often pay no dividends. **Retained earnings** is the net income retained in the corporation.

The **retained earnings statement** shows the amounts and causes of changes in retained earnings during the period. The time period is the same as that covered by the income statement. The beginning retained earnings amount appears on the first line of the statement. Then the company adds net income and deducts dividends to determine the retained earnings at the end of the period. If a company has a net loss, it deducts (rather than adds) that amount in the retained earnings statement. Illustration 1-5 presents Sierra Corporation's retained earnings statement.

SIERRA CORPORATION
Retained Earnings Statement
For the Month Ended October 31, 2012

Retained earnings, October 1	$ 0
Add: Net income	2,860
	2,860
Less: Dividends	500
Retained earnings, October 31	$2,360

Illustration 1-5 Sierra Corporation's retained earnings statement

Helpful Hint The heading of this statement identifies the company, the type of statement, and the time period covered by the statement.

By monitoring the retained earnings statement, financial statement users can evaluate dividend payment practices. Some investors seek companies, such as Dow Chemical, that have a history of paying high dividends. Other investors seek companies, such as Amazon.com, that reinvest earnings to increase the company's growth instead of paying dividends. Lenders monitor their corporate customers' dividend payments because any money paid in dividends reduces a company's ability to repay its debts.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
What is the company's policy toward dividends and growth?	Retained earnings statement	How much of this year's income did the company pay out in dividends to shareholders?	A company striving for rapid growth will pay a low (or no) dividend.

BALANCE SHEET

The **balance sheet** reports assets and claims to assets at a specific **point** in time. Claims to assets are subdivided into two categories: claims of creditors and claims of owners. As noted earlier, claims of creditors are called **liabilities**. Claims of owners are called **stockholders' equity**.

Illustration 1-6 shows the relationship among the categories on the balance sheet in equation form. This equation is referred to as the **basic accounting equation**.

study objective 5

Explain the meaning of assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity, and state the basic accounting equation.

Assets = Liabilities + Stockholders' Equity

Illustration 1-6 Basic accounting equation

This relationship is where the name "balance sheet" comes from. Assets must balance with the claims to assets.

Alternative Terminology
Liabilities are also referred to as *debt*.

As you can see from looking at Sierra's balance sheet in Illustration 1-7, the balance sheet presents the company's financial position as of a specific date—in this case, October 31, 2012. It lists assets first, followed by liabilities and stockholders' equity. Stockholders' equity is comprised of two parts: (1) common stock and (2) retained earnings. As noted earlier, common stock results when the company sells new shares of stock; retained earnings is the net income retained in the corporation. Sierra has common stock of $10,000 and retained earnings of $2,360, for total stockholders' equity of $12,360.

Illustration 1-7 Sierra Corporation's balance sheet

SIERRA CORPORATION
Balance Sheet
October 31, 2012

Assets		
Cash		$15,200
Accounts receivable		200
Supplies		1,000
Prepaid insurance		550
Equipment, net		4,960
Total assets		$21,910
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Liabilities		
Notes payable	$ 5,000	
Accounts payable	2,500	
Salaries payable	1,200	
Unearned service revenue	800	
Interest payable	50	
Total liabilities		$ 9,550
Stockholders' equity		
Common stock	10,000	
Retained earnings	2,360	
Total stockholders' equity		12,360
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity		$21,910

Helpful Hint The heading of a balance sheet must identify the company, the statement, and the date.

Creditors analyze a company's balance sheet to determine the likelihood that they will be repaid. They carefully evaluate the nature of the company's assets and liabilities. In operating the Sierra Corporation guide service, the balance sheet will be used to determine whether cash on hand is sufficient for immediate cash needs. The balance sheet will also be used to evaluate the relationship between debt and stockholders' equity to determine whether the company has a satisfactory proportion of debt and common stock financing.

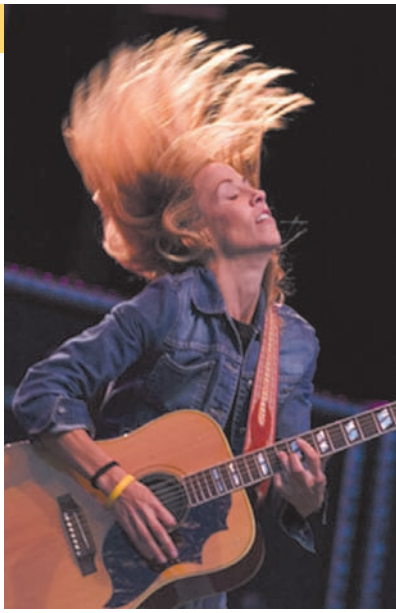
DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Does the company rely primarily on debt or stockholders' equity to finance its assets?	Balance sheet	The balance sheet reports the company's resources and claims to those resources. There are two types of claims: liabilities and stockholders' equity.	Compare the amount of debt versus the amount of stockholders' equity to determine whether the company relies more on creditors or owners for its financing.

Ethics Insight

Rocking the Bottom Line

What topic has performers such as Tom Waits, Clint Black, Sheryl Crow, and Madonna so concerned that they are pushing for new laws regarding its use? Accounting. Recording-company accounting to be more precise. Musicians receive royalty payments based on the accounting done by their recording companies. Many performers say that the recording companies—either intentionally or unintentionally—have very poor accounting systems, which, the performers say, has resulted in many inaccurate royalty payments. They would like to see laws created that would hit the recording companies with stiff fines for accounting errors.



? What is one way that some of these disputes might be resolved? (See page 41.)

STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS

The primary purpose of a **statement of cash flows** is to provide financial information about the cash receipts and cash payments of a business for a specific period of time. To help investors, creditors, and others in their analysis of a company's cash position, the statement of cash flows reports the cash effects of a company's **operating**, **investing**, and **financing** activities. In addition, the statement shows the net increase or decrease in cash during the period, and the amount of cash at the end of the period.

Users are interested in the statement of cash flows because they want to know what is happening to a company's most important resource. In operating Sierra, the statement of cash flows will provide answers to these simple but important questions:

- Where did cash come from during the period?
- How was cash used during the period?
- What was the change in the cash balance during the period?

The statement of cash flows for Sierra, in Illustration 1-8, shows that cash increased $15,200 during the month. This increase resulted because operating

SIERRA CORPORATION
Statement of Cash Flows
For the Month Ended October 31, 2012

Cash flows from **operating** activities		
Cash receipts from operating activities	$11,200	
Cash payments for operating activities	(5,500)	
Net cash provided by operating activities		$ 5,700
Cash flows from **investing** activities		
Purchased office equipment	(5,000)	
Net cash used by investing activities		(5,000)
Cash flows from **financing** activities		
Issuance of common stock	10,000	
Issued note payable	5,000	
Payment of dividend	(500)	
Net cash provided by financing activities		14,500
Net increase in cash		15,200
Cash at beginning of period		0
Cash at end of period		$15,200

Illustration 1-8 Sierra Corporation's statement of cash flows

Helpful Hint The heading of this statement identifies the company, the type of statement, and the time period covered by the statement. Negative numbers are shown in parentheses.

activities (services to clients) increased cash $5,700, and financing activities increased cash $14,500. Investing activities used $5,000 of cash for the purchase of equipment.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Does the company generate sufficient cash from operations to fund its investing activities?	Statement of cash flows	The statement of cash flows shows the amount of cash provided or used by operating activities, investing activities, and financing activities.	Compare the amount of cash provided by operating activities with the amount of cash used by investing activities. Any deficiency in cash from operating activities must be made up with cash from financing activities.

Tootsie Roll Annual Report Walkthrough

INTERRELATIONSHIPS OF STATEMENTS

Illustration 1-9 shows simplified financial statements of Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc. (We have simplified the financial statements to assist your learning.) Tootsie Roll's **actual financial statements** are presented in **Appendix A**, at the end of the textbook. Note that the numbers in Tootsie Roll's statements are presented in thousands—that is, the last three 000s are omitted. Thus, Tootsie Roll's net income in 2009 is $53,475,000, not $53,475. Because the results on some financial statements become inputs to other statements, the statements are interrelated. These interrelationships can be seen in Tootsie Roll's financial statements, as follows.

1. The retained earnings statement depends on the results of the income statement. Tootsie Roll reported net income of $53,475,000 for the period. It adds the net income amount to the beginning amount of retained earnings in order to determine ending retained earnings.
2. The balance sheet and retained earnings statement are also interrelated. Tootsie Roll reports the ending amount of $145,928,000 on the retained earnings statement as the retained earnings amount on the balance sheet.
3. Finally, the statement of cash flows relates to information on the balance sheet. The statement of cash flows shows how the Cash account changed during the period. It shows the amount of cash at the beginning of the period, the sources and uses of cash during the period, and the $90,990,000 of cash at the end of the period. The ending amount of cash shown on the statement of cash flows must agree with the amount of cash on the balance sheet.

Study these interrelationships carefully. To prepare financial statements, you must understand the sequence in which these amounts are determined and how each statement impacts the next.

Illustration 1-9 Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.'s financial statements

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC.
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2009 (in thousands)

Revenues		$499,331
Expenses		
Cost of goods sold	$319,497	
Selling, marketing, and administrative expense and other	115,655	
Income tax expense	10,704	
Total expenses		445,856
Net income		$ 53,475

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC.
Retained Earnings Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2009 (in thousands)

Retained earnings, January 1, 2009	$142,872
Add: Net income	53,475
	196,347
Less: Dividends and other (net)	50,419
Retained earnings, December 31, 2009	$145,928

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC.
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2009 (in thousands)

Assets		
Cash		$ 90,990
Investments		8,663
Accounts receivable		45,909
Inventories		56,387
Prepaid expenses		8,562
Property, plant and equipment, net		220,721
Other assets		407,015
Total assets		$838,247
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Liabilities		
Accounts payable	$ 9,140	
Dividends payable	4,458	
Accrued liabilities	42,468	
Deferred income taxes payable	44,582	
Bonds payable	7,500	
Employee benefits payable and other	77,614	$185,762
Stockholders' equity		
Common stock	506,557	
Retained earnings	145,928	652,485
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity		$838,247

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC.
Statement of Cash Flows
For the Year Ended December 31, 2009 (in thousands)

Cash flows from operating activities		
Cash receipts from operating activities	$491,344	
Cash payments for operating activities	(416,063)	
Net cash provided by operating activities		$ 75,281
Cash flows from investing activities		
Capital expenditures and acquisitions	(20,831)	
Net purchases/sales of investment securities and other	6,180	
Net cash used by investing activities		(14,651)
Cash flows from financing activities		
Repurchase of common stock	(20,723)	
Dividends paid in cash	(17,825)	
Net cash used by financing activities		(38,548)
Net increase (decrease) in cash		22,082
Cash at beginning of year		68,908
Cash at end of year		$ 90,990

Helpful Hint Note that final sums are double-underlined, and negative amounts (in the statement of cash flows) are presented in parentheses.

Helpful Hint The arrows in this illustration show interrelationships of the four financial statements.

before you go on...

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Do it! CSU Corporation began operations on January 1, 2012. The following information is available for CSU Corporation on December 31, 2012:

Accounts receivable	1,800	Retained earnings	?	Supplies expense	200
Accounts payable	2,000	Equipment	16,000	Cash	1,400
Building rental expense	9,000	Insurance expense	1,000	Dividends	600
Notes payable	5,000	Service revenue	17,000		
Common stock	10,000	Supplies	4,000		

Prepare an income statement, a retained earnings statement, and a balance sheet.

Action Plan

- Report the revenues and expenses for a period of time in an income statement.
- Show the amounts and causes (net income and dividends) of changes in retained earnings during the period in the retained earnings statement.
- Present the assets and claims to those assets at a specific point in time in the balance sheet.

Solution

CSU CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Revenues		
Service revenue		$17,000
Expenses		
Rent expense	$9,000	
Insurance expense	1,000	
Supplies expense	200	
Total expenses		10,200
Net income		$ 6,800

CSU CORPORATION
Retained Earnings Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Retained earnings, January 1	$ 0
Add: Net income	6,800
	6,800
Less: Dividends	600
Retained earnings, December 31	$6,200

CSU CORPORATION
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2012

Assets		
Cash		$ 1,400
Accounts receivable		1,800
Supplies		4,000
Equipment		16,000
Total assets		$23,200
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Liabilities		
Notes payable	$ 5,000	
Accounts payable	2,000	
Total liabilities		$ 7,000
Stockholders' equity		
Common stock	10,000	
Retained earnings	6,200	
Total stockholders' equity		16,200
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity		$23,200

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE1-5, BE1-6, BE1-7, BE1-8, BE1-9, BE1-10, Do it! 1-3, E1-4, E1-5, E1-6, E1-7, E1-8, E1-9, E1-10, E1-11,** and **E1-14.**

OTHER ELEMENTS OF AN ANNUAL REPORT

study objective 6

Describe the components that supplement the financial statements in an annual report.

U.S. companies that are publicly traded must provide shareholders with an **annual report**. The annual report always includes the financial statements introduced in this chapter. The annual report also includes other important information such as a management discussion and analysis section, notes to the financial statements, and an independent auditor's report. No analysis of a company's financial situation and prospects is complete without a review of these items.

Management Discussion and Analysis

The **management discussion and analysis (MD&A)** section covers various financial aspects of a company, including **its ability to pay near-term obligations, its ability to fund operations and expansion, and its results of operations**. Management must highlight favorable or unfavorable trends and identify significant events and uncertainties that affect these three factors. This discussion obviously involves a number of subjective estimates and opinions. A brief excerpt from the MD&A section of Tootsie Roll's annual report is presented in Illustration 1-10.

Illustration 1-10 Tootsie Roll's management discussion and analysis

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC.
Management's Discussion and Analysis of
Financial Condition and Results of Operations

The Company has a relatively straightforward financial structure and has historically maintained a conservative financial position. Except for an immaterial amount of operating leases, the Company has no special financing arrangements or "off-balance sheet" special purpose entities. Cash flows from operations plus maturities of short-term investments are expected to be adequate to meet the Company's overall financing needs, including capital expenditures, in 2010.

Notes to the Financial Statements

Explanatory notes and supporting schedules accompany every set of financial statements and are an integral part of the statements. The **notes to the financial statements** clarify the financial statements, and provide additional detail. Information in the notes does not have to be quantifiable (numeric). Examples of notes are descriptions of the significant accounting policies and methods used in preparing the statements, explanations of uncertainties and contingencies, and various statistics and details too voluminous to be included in the statements. The notes are essential to understanding a company's operating performance and financial position.

Illustration 1-11 is an excerpt from the notes to Tootsie Roll's financial statements. It describes the methods that Tootsie Roll uses to account for revenues.

Illustration 1-11 Notes to Tootsie Roll's financial statements

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC.
Notes to Financial Statements

Revenue recognition
Revenue, net of applicable provisions for discounts, returns, allowances, and certain advertising and promotional costs, is recognized when products are delivered to customers based on a customer purchase order, and collectibility is reasonably assured.

Auditor's Report

An **auditor's report** is prepared by an independent outside auditor. It states the auditor's opinion as to the fairness of the presentation of the financial position and results of operations and their conformance with generally accepted accounting standards.

An **auditor** is an accounting professional who conducts an independent examination of a company's financial statements. Only accountants who meet certain criteria and thereby attain the designation **Certified Public Accountant (CPA)** may perform audits. If the auditor is satisfied that the financial statements provide a fair representation of the company's financial position and results of operations in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, then the auditor expresses an **unqualified opinion**. If the auditor expresses anything other than an unqualified opinion, then readers should only use the financial statements with caution. That is, without an unqualified opinion, we cannot have complete confidence that the financial statements give an accurate picture of the company's financial health. For example, in April 2009 Blockbuster, Inc.'s auditor stated that its financial situation raised "substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern."

Illustration 1-12 is an excerpt from the auditor's report from Tootsie Roll's 2009 annual report. Tootsie Roll received an unqualified opinion from its auditor, PricewaterhouseCoopers.

Illustration 1-12 Excerpt from auditor's report on Tootsie Roll's financial statements

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC.
Excerpt from Auditor's Report

To the Board of Directors and Shareholders of Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.

In our opinion, the accompanying consolidated statements of financial position and the related consolidated statements of earnings, comprehensive earnings and retained earnings, and of cash flows present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc. and its subsidiaries at December 31, 2009 and December 31, 2008, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2009 in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Also in our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2009, based on criteria established in Internal Control—Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).

before you go on...

COMPONENTS OF ANNUAL REPORTS

Do it! State whether each of the following items is most closely associated with the management discussion and analysis (MD&A), the notes to the financial statements, or the auditor's report.

1. Descriptions of significant accounting policies
2. Unqualified opinion
3. Explanations of uncertainties and contingencies
4. Description of ability to fund operations and expansion
5. Description of results of operations
6. Certified Public Accountant (CPA)

Action Plan

- Realize that financial statements provide information about a company's performance and financial position.
- Be familiar with the other elements of the annual report in order to gain a fuller understanding of a company.

Solution

1. Descriptions of significant accounting policies: Notes.
2. Unqualified opinion: Auditor's report.
3. Explanations of uncertainties and contingencies: Notes.
4. Description of ability to fund operations and expansion: MD&A.
5. Description of results of operations: MD&A.
6. Certified Public Accountant (CPA): Auditor's report.

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE1-11, Do it! 1-4,** and **E1-17.**

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

The Hershey Company, located in Hershey, Pennsylvania, is the leading North American manufacturer of chocolate—for example, Hershey's Kisses, Reese's Peanut Butter Cups, Kit Kat, and Take 5 bars. Imagine that you are considering the purchase of shares of Hershey's common stock.

Using the Decision Toolkit exercises ask you to use information from financial statements to make financial decisions.

Instructions

Answer these questions related to your decision whether to invest.

(a) What financial statements should you request from the company?
(b) What should these financial statements tell you?
(c) Should you request audited financial statements? Explain.
(d) Appendix B at the end of this book contains financial statements for Hershey. What comparisons can you make between Tootsie Roll and Hershey in terms of their respective results from operations and financial position?

Solution

(a) Before you invest, you should investigate the income statement, retained earnings statement, statement of cash flows, and balance sheet.
(b) You would probably be most interested in the income statement because it tells about past performance and thus gives an indication of future performance. The retained earnings statement provides a record of the company's dividend history. The statement of cash flows reveals where the company is getting and spending its cash. This is especially important for a company that wants to grow. Finally, the balance sheet reveals the relationship between assets and liabilities.
(c) You would want audited financial statements. These statements indicate that a CPA (certified public accountant) has examined and expressed an opinion that the statements present fairly the financial position and results of operations of the company. Investors and creditors should not make decisions without studying audited financial statements.
(d) Many interesting comparisons can be made between the two companies. Tootsie Roll is smaller, with total assets of $838,247,000 versus $3,675,031,000 for Hershey, and it has lower revenue—$499,331,000 versus $5,298,660,000 for Hershey. In addition, Tootsie Roll's cash provided by operating activities of $75,281,000 is less than Hershey's $1,065,749,000.

While useful, these basic measures are not enough to determine whether one company is a better investment than the other. In later chapters, you will learn of tools that will allow you to compare the relative profitability and financial health of these and other companies.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Describe the primary forms of business organization. A sole proprietorship is a business owned by one person. A partnership is a business owned by two or more people associated as partners. A corporation is a separate legal entity for which evidence of ownership is provided by shares of stock.

2 Identify the users and uses of accounting information. Internal users are managers who need accounting information to plan, organize, and run business operations. The primary external users are investors and creditors. Investors (stockholders) use accounting information to help them decide whether to buy, hold, or sell shares of a company's stock. Creditors (suppliers and bankers) use accounting information to assess the risk of granting credit or loaning money to a business. Other groups who have an indirect interest in a business are taxing authorities, customers, labor unions, and regulatory agencies.

3 Explain the three principal types of business activity. Financing activities involve collecting the necessary funds to support the business. Investing activities involve acquiring the resources necessary to run the business. Operating activities involve putting the resources of the business into action to generate a profit.

4 Describe the content and purpose of each of the financial statements. An income statement presents the revenues and expenses of a company for a specific period of time. A retained earnings statement summarizes the changes in retained earnings that have occurred for a specific period of time. A balance sheet reports the assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity of a business at a specific date. A statement of cash flows summarizes information concerning the cash inflows (receipts) and outflows (payments) for a specific period of time.

5 Explain the meaning of assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity, and state the basic accounting equation. Assets are resources owned by a business. Liabilities are the debts and obligations of the business. Liabilities represent claims of creditors on the assets of the business. Stockholders' equity represents the claims of owners on the assets of the business. Stockholders' equity is subdivided into two parts: common stock and retained earnings. The basic accounting equation is: Assets = Liabilities + Stockholders' Equity.

6 Describe the components that supplement the financial statements in an annual report. The management discussion and analysis provides management's interpretation of the company's results and financial position as well as a discussion of plans for the future. Notes to the financial statements provide additional explanation or detail to make the financial statements more informative. The auditor's report expresses an opinion as to whether the financial statements present fairly the company's results of operations and financial position.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Are the company's operations profitable?	Income statement	The income statement reports on the success or failure of the company's operations by reporting its revenues and expenses.	If the company's revenue exceeds its expenses, it will report net income; otherwise it will report a net loss.
What is the company's policy toward dividends and growth?	Retained earnings statement	How much of this year's income did the company pay out in dividends to shareholders?	A company striving for rapid growth will pay a low (or no) dividend.
Does the company rely primarily on debt or stockholders' equity to finance its assets?	Balance sheet	The balance sheet reports the company's resources and claims to those resources. There are two types of claims: liabilities and stockholders' equity.	Compare the amount of debt versus the amount of stockholders' equity to determine whether the company relies more on creditors or owners for its financing.
Does the company generate sufficient cash from operations to fund its investing activities?	Statement of cash flows	The statement of cash flows shows the amount of cash provided or used by operating activities, investing activities, and financing activities.	Compare the amount of cash provided by operating activities with the amount of cash used by investing activities. Any deficiency in cash from operating activities must be made up with cash from financing activities.

Glossary

Accounting *(p. 5)* The information system that identifies, records, and communicates the economic events of an organization to interested users.

Annual report *(p. 19)* A report prepared by corporate management that presents financial information including financial statements, notes, a management discussion and analysis section, and an independent auditor's report.

Assets *(p. 9)* Resources owned by a business.

Auditor's report *(p. 19)* A report prepared by an independent outside auditor stating the auditor's opinion as

to the fairness of the presentation of the financial position and results of operations and their conformance with generally accepted accounting standards.

Balance sheet *(p. 13)* A financial statement that reports the assets and claims to those assets at a specific point in time.

Basic accounting equation *(p. 13)* Assets = Liabilities + Stockholders' Equity.

Certified Public Accountant (CPA) *(p. 20)* An individual who has met certain criteria and is thus allowed to perform audits of corporations.

Common stock *(p. 9)* Term used to describe the total amount paid in by stockholders for the shares they purchase.

Corporation *(p. 4)* A business organized as a separate legal entity having ownership divided into transferable shares of stock.

Dividends *(p. 9)* Payments of cash from a corporation to its stockholders.

Expenses *(p. 10)* The cost of assets consumed or services used in the process of generating revenues.

Income statement *(p. 11)* A financial statement that presents the revenues and expenses and resulting net income or net loss of a company for a specific period of time.

Liabilities *(p. 9)* The debts and obligations of a business. Liabilities represent the amounts owed to creditors.

Management discussion and analysis (MD&A) *(p. 19)* A section of the annual report that presents management's views on the company's ability to pay near-term obligations, its ability to fund operations and expansion, and its results of operations.

Net income *(p. 10)* The amount by which revenues exceed expenses.

Net loss *(p. 10)* The amount by which expenses exceed revenues.

Notes to the financial statements *(p. 19)* Notes that clarify information presented in the financial statements, as well as expand upon it where additional detail is needed.

Partnership *(p. 4)* A business owned by two or more persons associated as partners.

Retained earnings *(p. 13)* The amount of net income retained in the corporation.

Retained earnings statement *(p. 13)* A financial statement that summarizes the amounts and causes of changes in retained earnings for a specific period of time.

Revenue *(p. 10)* The increase in assets that result from the sale of a product or service in the normal course of business.

Sarbanes-Oxley Act *(p. 8)* Regulations passed by Congress in 2002 to try to reduce unethical corporate behavior.

Sole proprietorship *(p. 4)* A business owned by one person.

Statement of cash flows *(p. 15)* A financial statement that provides financial information about the cash receipts and cash payments of a business for a specific period of time.

Stockholders' equity *(p. 13)* The owners' claim to assets.

Comprehensive Do it!

The Comprehensive Do it! is a final review before you begin homework.

Jeff Andringa, a former college hockey player, quit his job and started Ice Camp, a hockey camp for kids ages 8 to 18. Eventually, he would like to open hockey camps nationwide. Jeff has asked you to help him prepare financial statements at the end of his first year of operations. He relates the following facts about his business activities.

In order to get the business off the ground, he decided to incorporate. He sold shares of common stock to a few close friends, as well as buying some of the shares himself. He initially raised $25,000 through the sale of these shares. In addition, the company took out a $10,000 loan at a local bank.

Ice Camp purchased, for $12,000 cash, a bus for transporting kids. The company also bought hockey goals and other miscellaneous equipment with $1,500 cash. The company earned camp tuition during the year of $100,000 but had collected only $80,000 of this amount. Thus, at the end of the year its customers still owed $20,000. The company rents time at a local rink for $50 per hour. Total rink rental costs during the year were $8,000, insurance was $10,000, salary expense was $20,000, and supplies used totaled $9,000, all of which were paid in cash. The company incurred $800 in interest expense on the bank loan, which it still owed at the end of the year.

The company paid dividends during the year of $5,000 cash. The balance in the corporate bank account at December 31, 2012, was $49,500.

Action Plan

- On the income statement: Show revenues and expenses for a period of time.
- On the retained earnings statement: Show the changes in retained earnings for a period of time.
- On the balance sheet: Report assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity at a specific date.
- On the statement of cash flows: Report sources and uses of cash from operating, investing, and financing activities for a period of time.

Instructions

Using the format of the Sierra Corporation statements in this chapter, prepare an income statement, retained earnings statement, balance sheet, and statement of cash flows. (*Hint:* Prepare the statements in the order stated to take advantage of the flow of information from one statement to the next, as shown in Illustration 1-9 on page 17.)

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

ICE CAMP
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Revenues		
Service revenue		$100,000
Expenses		
Salaries and wages expense	$20,000	
Insurance expense	10,000	
Supplies expense	9,000	
Rent expense	8,000	
Interest expense	800	
Total expenses		47,800
Net income		$ 52,200

ICE CAMP
Retained Earnings Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Retained earnings, January 1, 2012	$ 0
Add: Net income	52,200
	52,200
Less: Dividends	5,000
Retained earnings, December 31, 2012	$47,200

ICE CAMP
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2012

Assets		
Cash		$49,500
Accounts receivable		20,000
Equipment		13,500
Total assets		$83,000
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Liabilities		
Notes payable	$10,000	
Interest payable	800	
Total liabilities		$10,800
Stockholders' equity		
Common stock	25,000	
Retained earnings	47,200	
Total stockholders' equity		72,200
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity		$83,000

ICE CAMP
Statement of Cash Flows
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Cash flows from operating activities		
Cash receipts from operating activities	$80,000	
Cash payments for operating activities	(47,000)	
Net cash provided by operating activities		$33,000
Cash flows from investing activities		
Purchase of equipment	(13,500)	
Net cash used by investing activities		(13,500)
Cash flows from financing activities		
Issuance of common stock	25,000	
Issuance of notes payable	10,000	
Dividends paid	(5,000)	
Net cash provided by financing activities		30,000
Net increase in cash		49,500
Cash at beginning of period		0
Cash at end of period		$49,500

the navigator

This would be a good time to look at the **Student Owner's Manual** in the Preface to the book. Knowing the purpose of the different types of homework will help you understand what each contributes to your accounting skills and competencies.

The tool icon indicates that an activity employs one of the decision tools presented in the chapter. The indicates that an activity relates to a business function beyond accounting. The pencil icon indicates that an activity requires written communication.

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 42.

(SO 1) **1.** Which is *not* one of the three forms of business organization?
(a) Sole proprietorship. (c) Partnership.
(b) Creditorship. (d) Corporation.

(SO 1) **2.** Which is an advantage of corporations relative to partnerships and sole proprietorships?
(a) Lower taxes.
(b) Harder to transfer ownership.
(c) Reduced legal liability for investors.
(d) Most common form of organization.

(SO 2) **3.** Which statement about users of accounting information is *incorrect*?
(a) Management is considered an internal user.
(b) Taxing authorities are considered external users.
(c) Present creditors are considered external users.
(d) Regulatory authorities are considered internal users.

(SO 2) **4.** Which of the following did *not* result from the Sarbanes-Oxley Act?
(a) Top management must now certify the accuracy of financial information.
(b) Penalties for fraudulent activity increased.
(c) Independence of auditors increased.
(d) Tax rates on corporations increased.

5. Which is *not* one of the three primary business activities? (SO 3)
(a) Financing. (c) Advertising.
(b) Operating. (d) Investing.

6. Which of the following is an example of a financing activity? (SO 3)
(a) Issuing shares of common stock.
(b) Selling goods on account.
(c) Buying delivery equipment.
(d) Buying inventory.

7. Net income will result during a time period when: (SO 4)
(a) assets exceed liabilities.
(b) assets exceed revenues.
(c) expenses exceed revenues.
(d) revenues exceed expenses.

(SO 4) **8.** The financial statements for Joseph Corporation contained the following information.

Accounts receivable	$ 5,000
Sales revenue	75,000
Cash	15,000
Salaries and wages expense	20,000
Rent expense	10,000

What was Joseph Corporation's net income?
(a) $60,000. (c) $65,000.
(b) $15,000. (d) $45,000.

(SO 4, 5) **9.** What section of a statement of cash flows indicates the cash spent on new equipment during the past accounting period?
(a) The investing section.
(b) The operating section.
(c) The financing section.
(d) The cash flow statement does not give this information.

(SO 4, 5) **10.** Which statement presents information as of a specific point in time?
(a) Income statement.
(b) Balance sheet.
(c) Statement of cash flows.
(d) Retained earnings statement.

(SO 5) **11.** Which financial statement reports assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity?
(a) Income statement.
(b) Retained earnings statement.
(c) Balance sheet.
(d) Statement of cash flows.

12. Stockholders' equity represents: (SO 5)
(a) claims of creditors.
(b) claims of employees.
(c) the difference between revenues and expenses.
(d) claims of owners.

13. As of December 31, 2012, Stoneland Corporation has assets of $3,500 and stockholders' equity of $1,500. What are the liabilities for Stoneland Corporation as of December 31, 2012? (SO 5)
(a) $1,500. (c) $2,500.
(b) $1,000. (d) $2,000.

14. The element of a corporation's annual report that describes the corporation's accounting methods is the: (SO 6)
(a) notes to the financial statements.
(b) management discussion and analysis.
(c) auditor's report.
(d) income statement.

15. The element of the annual report that presents an opinion regarding the fairness of the presentation of the financial position and results of operations is/are the: (SO 6)
(a) income statement.
(b) auditor's opinion.
(c) balance sheet.
(d) comparative statements.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. What are the three basic forms of business organizations?

2. What are the advantages to a business of being formed as a corporation? What are the disadvantages?

3. What are the advantages to a business of being formed as a partnership or sole proprietorship? What are the disadvantages?

4. "Accounting is ingrained in our society and is vital to our economic system." Do you agree? Explain.

5. Who are the internal users of accounting data? How does accounting provide relevant data to the internal users?

6. Who are the external users of accounting data? Give examples.

7. What are the three main types of business activity? Give examples of each activity.

8. Listed here are some items found in the financial statements of Ellyn Toth, Inc. Indicate in which financial statement(s) each item would appear.
(a) Service revenue. (d) Accounts receivable.
(b) Equipment. (e) Common stock.
(c) Advertising expense. (f) Interest payable.

9. Why would a bank want to monitor the dividend payment practices of the corporations it lends money to?

10. "A company's net income appears directly on the income statement and the retained earnings statement, and it is included indirectly in the company's balance sheet." Do you agree? Explain.

11. What is the primary purpose of the statement of cash flows?

12. What are the three main categories of the statement of cash flows? Why do you think these categories were chosen?

13. What is retained earnings? What items increase the balance in retained earnings? What items decrease the balance in retained earnings?

14. What is the basic accounting equation?

15. (a) Define the terms *assets, liabilities*, and *stockholders'* equity.
(b) What items affect stockholders' equity?

16. Which of these items are liabilities of White Glove Cleaning Service?
(a) Cash. (c) Dividends.
(b) Accounts payable. (d) Accounts receivable.

(e) Supplies.
(f) Equipment.
(g) Salaries and wages payable.
(h) Service revenue.
(i) Rent expense.

17. How are each of the following financial statements interrelated? (a) Retained earnings statement and income statement. (b) Retained earnings statement and balance sheet. (c) Balance sheet and statement of cash flows.

18. What is the purpose of the management discussion and analysis section (MD&A)?

19. Why is it important for financial statements to receive an unqualified auditor's opinion?

20. What types of information are presented in the notes to the financial statements?

21. The accounting equation is: Assets = Liabilities + Stockholders' Equity. Appendix A, at the end of this book, reproduces Tootsie Roll's financial statements. Replacing words in the equation with dollar amounts, what is Tootsie Roll's accounting equation at December 31, 2009?

the navigator

Brief Exercises

BE1-1 Match each of the following forms of business organization with a set of characteristics: sole proprietorship (SP), partnership (P), corporation (C).

Describe forms of business organization. (SO 1), K

(a) _____ Shared control, tax advantages, increased skills and resources.
(b) _____ Simple to set up and maintains control with founder.
(c) _____ Easier to transfer ownership and raise funds, no personal liability.

BE1-2 Match each of the following types of evaluation with one of the listed users of accounting information.

Identify users of accounting information. (SO 2), K

1. Trying to determine whether the company complied with tax laws.
2. Trying to determine whether the company can pay its obligations.
3. Trying to determine whether a marketing proposal will be cost effective.
4. Trying to determine whether the company's net income will result in a stock price increase.
5. Trying to determine whether the company should employ debt or equity financing.

(a) _____ Investors in common stock.
(b) _____ Marketing managers.
(c) _____ Creditors.
(d) _____ Chief Financial Officer.
(e) _____ Internal Revenue Service.

BE1-3 Indicate in which part of the statement of cash flows each item would appear: operating activities (O), investing activities (I), or financing activities (F).

Classify items by activity. (SO 3, 4), K

(a) _____ Cash received from customers.
(b) _____ Cash paid to stockholders (dividends).
(c) _____ Cash received from issuing new common stock.
(d) _____ Cash paid to suppliers.
(e) _____ Cash paid to purchase a new office building.

BE1-4 Presented below are a number of transactions. Determine whether each transaction affects common stock (C), dividends (D), revenue (R), expense (E), or does not affect stockholders' equity (NSE). Provide titles for the revenues and expenses.

Determine effect of transactions on stockholders' equity. (SO 4), C

(a) Costs incurred for advertising.
(b) Assets received for services performed.
(c) Costs incurred for insurance.
(d) Amounts paid to employees.
(e) Cash distributed to stockholders.
(f) Assets received in exchange for allowing the use of the company's building.
(g) Costs incurred for utilities used.
(h) Cash purchase of equipment.
(i) Issued common stock for cash.

BE1-5 In alphabetical order below are balance sheet items for Wyoming Company at December 31, 2012. Prepare a balance sheet following the format of Illustration 1-7.

Prepare a balance sheet. (SO 4, 5), AP

Accounts payable	$65,000
Accounts receivable	71,000
Cash	22,000
Common stock	28,000

Determine where items appear on financial statements.
(SO 4, 5), K

BE1-6 Eskimo Pie Corporation markets a broad range of frozen treats, including its famous Eskimo Pie ice cream bars. The following items were taken from a recent income statement and balance sheet. In each case, identify whether the item would appear on the balance sheet (BS) or income statement (IS).

(a) _____ Income tax expense.
(b) _____ Inventories.
(c) _____ Accounts payable.
(d) _____ Retained earnings.
(e) _____ Property, plant, and equipment.
(f) _____ Net sales.
(g) _____ Cost of goods sold.
(h) _____ Common stock.
(i) _____ Receivables.
(j) _____ Interest expense.

Determine proper financial statement.
(SO 4), K

BE1-7 Indicate which statement you would examine to find each of the following items: income statement (I), balance sheet (B), retained earnings statement (R), or statement of cash flows (C).

(a) Revenue during the period.
(b) Supplies on hand at the end of the year.
(c) Cash received from issuing new bonds during the period.
(d) Total debts outstanding at the end of the period.

Use basic accounting equation.
(SO 5), AP

BE1-8 Use the basic accounting equation to answer these questions.

(a) The liabilities of Daley Company are $90,000 and the stockholders' equity is $230,000. What is the amount of Daley Company's total assets?
(b) The total assets of Laven Company are $170,000 and its stockholders' equity is $80,000. What is the amount of its total liabilities?
(c) The total assets of Peterman Co. are $800,000 and its liabilities are equal to one-fourth of its total assets. What is the amount of Peterman Co.'s stockholders' equity?

Use basic accounting equation.
(SO 5), AP

BE1-9 At the beginning of the year, Peale Company had total assets of $800,000 and total liabilities of $500,000.

(a) If total assets increased $150,000 during the year and total liabilities decreased $80,000, what is the amount of stockholders' equity at the end of the year?
(b) During the year, total liabilities increased $100,000 and stockholders' equity decreased $70,000. What is the amount of total assets at the end of the year?
(c) If total assets decreased $80,000 and stockholders' equity increased $110,000 during the year, what is the amount of total liabilities at the end of the year?

Identify assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity.
(SO 5), K

BE1-10 Indicate whether each of these items is an asset (A), a liability (L), or part of stockholders' equity (SE).

(a) Accounts receivable.
(b) Salaries and wages payable.
(c) Equipment.
(d) Supplies.
(e) Common stock.
(f) Notes payable.

Determine required parts of annual report.
(SO 6), K

BE1-11 Which is *not* a required part of an annual report of a publicly traded company?

(a) Statement of cash flows.
(b) Notes to the financial statements.
(c) Management discussion and analysis.
(d) All of these are required.

Do it! Review

Identify benefits of business organization forms.
(SO 1), C

Do it! 1-1 Identify each of the following organizational characteristics with the organizational form or forms with which it is associated.

(a) Easier to transfer ownership
(b) Easier to raise funds
(c) More owner control
(d) Tax advantages
(e) No personal legal liability

Classify business activities.
(SO 3), K

Do it! 1-2 Classify each item as an asset, liability, common stock, revenue, or expense.

(a) Issuance of ownership shares
(b) Land purchased
(c) Amounts owed to suppliers
(d) Bonds payable
(e) Amount earned from selling a product
(f) Cost of advertising

Do it! 1-3 Gould Corporation began operations on January 1, 2012. The following information is available for Gould Corporation on December 31, 2012.

Prepare financial statements.
(SO 4), **AP**

Accounts payable	$ 5,000	Notes payable	$ 7,000
Accounts receivable	2,000	Rent expense	10,000
Advertising expense	4,000	Retained earnings	?
Cash	3,100	Service revenue	25,000
Common stock	15,000	Supplies	1,900
Dividends	2,500	Supplies expense	1,700
Equipment	26,800		

Prepare an income statement, a retained earnings statement, and a balance sheet for Gould Corporation.

Do it! 1-4 Indicate whether each of the following items is most closely associated with the management discussion and analysis (MD&A), the notes to the financial statements, or the auditor's report.

Identify components of annual reports.
(SO 6), **C**

(a) Description of ability to pay near-term obligations
(b) Unqualified opinion
(c) Details concerning liabilities, too voluminous to be included in the statements
(d) Description of favorable and unfavorable trends
(e) Certified Public Accountant (CPA)
(f) Descriptions of significant accounting policies

Exercises

E1-1 Here is a list of words or phrases discussed in this chapter:

Match items with descriptions.
(SO 1, 2, 4, 6), **K**

1. Corporation	4. Partnership	7. Accounts payable
2. Creditor	5. Stockholder	8. Auditor's opinion
3. Accounts receivable	6. Common stock	

Instructions
Match each word or phrase with the best description of it.

_____ (a) An expression about whether financial statements conform with generally accepted accounting principles.
_____ (b) A business enterprise that raises money by issuing shares of stock.
_____ (c) The portion of stockholders' equity that results from receiving cash from investors.
_____ (d) Obligations to suppliers of goods.
_____ (e) Amounts due from customers.
_____ (f) A party to whom a business owes money.
_____ (g) A party that invests in common stock.
_____ (h) A business that is owned jointly by two or more individuals but does not issue stock.

E1-2 All businesses are involved in three types of activities—financing, investing, and operating. Listed below are the names and descriptions of companies in several different industries.

Identify business activities.
(SO 3), **C**

Abitibi Consolidated Inc.—manufacturer and marketer of newsprint
Cal State–Northridge Stdt Union—university student union
Oracle Corporation—computer software developer and retailer
Sportsco Investments—owner of the Vancouver Canucks hockey club
Grant Thornton LLP—professional accounting and business advisory firm
Southwest Airlines—discount airline

Instructions
(a) For each of the above companies, provide examples of (1) a financing activity, (2) an investing activity, and (3) an operating activity that the company likely engages in.
(b) Which of the activities that you identified in (a) are common to most businesses? Which activities are not?

Classify accounts.
(SO 3, 4), C

E1-3 The Fair View Golf & Country Club details the following accounts in its financial statements.

	(a)	(b)
Accounts payable	_____	_____
Accounts receivable	_____	_____
Equipment	_____	_____
Sales revenue	_____	_____
Service revenue	_____	_____
Inventory	_____	_____
Mortgage payable	_____	_____
Supplies expense	_____	_____
Rent expense	_____	_____
Salaries and wages expense	_____	_____

Instructions

(a) Classify each of the above accounts as an asset (A), liability (L), stockholders' equity (SE), revenue (R), or expense (E) item.

(b) Classify each of the above accounts as a financing activity (F), investing activity (I), or operating activity (O). If you believe a particular account doesn't fit in any of these activities, explain why.

Prepare income statement and retained earnings statement.
(SO 4), AP

E1-4 This information relates to Alexis Co. for the year 2012.

Retained earnings, January 1, 2012	$67,000
Advertising expense	1,800
Dividends paid during 2012	6,000
Rent expense	10,400
Service revenue	58,000
Utilities expense	2,400
Salaries and wages expense	30,000

Instructions

After analyzing the data, prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the year ending December 31, 2012.

Prepare income statement and retained earnings statement.
(SO 4), AP

E1-5 The following information was taken from the 2009 financial statements of pharmaceutical giant Merck and Co. All dollar amounts are in millions.

Retained earnings, January 1, 2009	$43,698.8
Materials and production expense	9,018.9
Marketing and administrative expense	8,543.2
Dividends	3,597.7
Sales revenue	27,428.3
Research and development expense	5,845.0
Tax expense	2,267.6
Other revenue	11,147.7

Instructions

(a) After analyzing the data, prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the year ending December 31, 2009.

(b) Suppose that Merck decided to reduce its research and development expense by 50%. What would be the short-term implications? What would be the long-term implications? How do you think the stock market would react?

Prepare a retained earnings statement.
(SO 4), AP

E1-6 Presented here is information for Packee Inc. for 2012.

Retained earnings, January 1	$130,000
Revenue from legal services	400,000
Total expenses	175,000
Dividends	65,000

Instructions

Prepare the 2012 retained earnings statement for Packee Inc.

Interpret financial facts.
(SO 4), AP

E1-7 Consider each of the following independent situations.

(a) The retained earnings statement of Scott Corporation shows dividends of $68,000, while net income for the year was $75,000.

(b) The statement of cash flows for Silberman Corporation shows that cash provided by operating activities was $10,000, cash used in investing activities was $110,000, and cash provided by financing activities was $130,000.

Instructions

For each company provide a brief discussion interpreting these financial facts. For example, you might discuss the company's financial health or its apparent growth philosophy.

E1-8 The following items and amounts were taken from Linus Inc.'s 2012 income statement and balance sheet.

Identify financial statement components and prepare income statement.
(SO 4), **C**

_____	Cash	$ 84,700	_____	Accounts receivable	88,419
_____	Retained earnings	123,192	_____	Sales revenue	584,951
_____	Cost of goods sold	438,458	_____	Income taxes payable	6,499
_____	Salaries and wages expense	115,131	_____	Accounts payable	49,384
_____	Prepaid insurance	7,818	_____	Service revenue	4,806
_____	Inventory	$ 64,618	_____	Interest expense	1,882

Instructions

(a) In each, case, identify on the blank line whether the item is an asset (A), liability (L), stockholder's equity (SE), revenue (R), or expense (E) item.
(b) Prepare an income statement for Linus Inc. for the year ended December 31, 2012.

E1-9 Here are incomplete financial statements for Liam, Inc.

Calculate missing amounts.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

LIAM, INC.
Balance Sheet

Assets		**Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity**	
Cash	$ 7,000	Liabilities	
Inventory	10,000	Accounts payable	$ 5,000
Buildings	45,000	Stockholders' equity	
Total assets	$62,000	Common stock	(a)
		Retained earnings	(b)
		Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$62,000

Income Statement

Revenues	$85,000
Cost of goods sold	(c)
Salaries and wages expense	10,000
Net income	$ (d)

Retained Earnings Statement

Beginning retained earnings	$12,000
Add: Net income	(e)
Less: Dividends	5,000
Ending retained earnings	$27,000

Instructions

Calculate the missing amounts.

E1-10 Deer Track Park is a private camping ground near the Lathom Peak Recreation Area. It has compiled the following financial information as of December 31, 2012.

Compute net income and prepare a balance sheet.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

Revenues during 2012: camping fees	$132,000	Dividends	$ 9,000
Revenues during 2012: general store	25,000	Notes payable	50,000
Accounts payable	11,000	Expenses during 2012	126,000
Cash	8,500	Supplies	5,500
Equipment	114,000	Common stock	40,000
		Retained earnings (1/1/2012)	5,000

Instructions

(a) Determine Deer Track Park's net income for 2012.
(b) Prepare a retained earnings statement and a balance sheet for Deer Track Park as of December 31, 2012.
(c) Upon seeing this income statement, Ken Zilber, the campground manager, immediately concluded, "The general store is more trouble than it is worth—let's get rid of it." The marketing director isn't so sure this is a good idea. What do you think?

Identify financial statement components and prepare an income statement.
(SO 4, 5), AP

E1-11 Kellogg Company is the world's leading producer of ready-to-eat cereal and a leading producer of grain-based convenience foods such as frozen waffles and cereal bars. The following items were taken from its 2009 income statement and balance sheet. All dollars are in millions.

____	Retained earnings	$5,481	____	Long-term debt	$ 4,835
____	Cost of goods sold	7,184	____	Inventories	910
____	Selling and administrative expenses	3,390	____	Net sales	12,575
____	Cash	334	____	Accounts payable	1,077
____	Notes payable	44	____	Common stock	105
____	Interest expense	295	____	Income tax expense	476
			____	Other expense	22

Instructions

Perform each of the following.
(a) In each case identify whether the item is an asset (A), liability (L), stockholders' equity (SE), revenue (R), or expense (E).
(b) Prepare an income statement for Kellogg Company for the year ended December 31, 2009.

Prepare a statement of cash flows.
(SO 5), AP

E1-12 This information is for O'Brien Corporation for the year ended December 31, 2012.

Cash received from lenders	$20,000
Cash received from customers	50,000
Cash paid for new equipment	28,000
Cash dividends paid	8,000
Cash paid to suppliers	16,000
Cash balance 1/1/12	12,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare the 2012 statement of cash flows for O'Brien Corporation.
(b) Suppose you are one of O'Brien's creditors. Referring to the statement of cash flows, evaluate O'Brien's ability to repay its creditors.

Prepare a statement of cash flows.
(SO 5), AP

E1-13 The following data are derived from the 2009 financial statements of Southwest Airlines. All dollars are in millions. Southwest has a December 31 year-end.

Cash balance, January 1, 2009	$1,390
Cash paid for repayment of debt	122
Cash received from issuance of common stock	144
Cash received from issuance of long-term debt	500
Cash received from customers	9,823
Cash paid for property and equipment	1,529
Cash paid for dividends	14
Cash paid for repurchase of common stock	1,001
Cash paid for goods and services	6,978

Instructions

(a) After analyzing the data, prepare a statement of cash flows for Southwest Airlines for the year ended December 31, 2009.
(b) Discuss whether the company's cash from operations was sufficient to finance its investing activities. If it was not, how did the company finance its investing activities?

Correct an incorrectly prepared balance sheet.
(SO 5), AP

E1-14 Andrew Davis is the bookkeeper for Cheyenne Company. Andrew has been trying to get the balance sheet of Cheyenne Company to balance. It finally balanced, but now he's not sure it is correct.

CHEYENNE COMPANY
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2012

Assets		Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity	
Cash	$18,000	Accounts payable	$16,000
Supplies	9,500	Accounts receivable	(12,000)
Equipment	40,000	Common stock	40,000
Dividends	8,000	Retained earnings	31,500
Total assets	$75,500	Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$75,500

Instructions
Prepare a correct balance sheet.

E1-15 The following items were taken from the balance sheet of Nike, Inc.

Classify items as assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity and prepare accounting equation.
(SO 5), **AP**

1. Cash	$2,291.1	7. Inventories	$2,357.0
2. Accounts receivable	2,883.9	8. Income taxes payable	86.3
3. Common stock	2,874.2	9. Property, plant, and equipment	1,957.7
4. Notes payable	342.9	10. Retained earnings	5,818.9
5. Other assets	3,759.9	11. Accounts payable	2,815.8
6. Other liabilities	1,311.5		

Instructions
Perform each of the following.
(a) Classify each of these items as an asset, liability, or stockholders' equity and determine the total dollar amount for each classification. (All dollars are in millions.)
(b) Determine Nike's accounting equation by calculating the value of total assets, total liabilities, and total stockholders' equity.
(c) To what extent does Nike rely on debt versus equity financing?

E1-16 The summaries of data from the balance sheet, income statement, and retained earnings statement for two corporations, Bates Corporation and Wilson Enterprises, are presented below for 2012.

Use financial statement relationships to determine missing amounts.
(SO 5), **AP**

	Bates Corporation	Wilson Enterprises
Beginning of year		
Total assets	$110,000	$150,000
Total liabilities	70,000	(d)
Total stockholders' equity	(a)	70,000
End of year		
Total assets	(b)	180,000
Total liabilities	120,000	55,000
Total stockholders' equity	60,000	(e)
Changes during year in retained earnings		
Dividends	(c)	5,000
Total revenues	215,000	(f)
Total expenses	165,000	80,000

Instructions
Determine the missing amounts. Assume all changes in stockholders' equity are due to changes in retained earnings.

E1-17 The annual report provides financial information in a variety of formats, including the following.

Classify various items in an annual report.
(SO 6), **K**

Management discussion and analysis (MD&A)
Financial statements
Notes to the financial statements
Auditor's opinion

Instructions
For each of the following, state in what area of the annual report the item would be presented. If the item would probably not be found in an annual report, state "Not disclosed."

(a) The total cumulative amount received from stockholders in exchange for common stock.
(b) An independent assessment concerning whether the financial statements present a fair depiction of the company's results and financial position.
(c) The interest rate that the company is being charged on all outstanding debts.
(d) Total revenue from operating activities.
(e) Management's assessment of the company's results.
(f) The names and positions of all employees hired in the last year.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Determine forms of business organization.
(SO 1), C

P1-1A Presented below are five independent situations.
(a) Three physics professors at MIT have formed a business to improve the speed of information transfer over the Internet for stock exchange transactions. Each has contributed an equal amount of cash and knowledge to the venture. Although their approach looks promising, they are concerned about the legal liabilities that their business might confront.
(b) Ed Toth, a college student looking for summer employment, opened a bait shop in a small shed at a local marina.
(c) Joan Stuebben and Ron Klinke each owned separate shoe manufacturing businesses. They have decided to combine their businesses. They expect that within the coming year they will need significant funds to expand their operations.
(d) Crystal, Allie, and Harry recently graduated with marketing degrees. They have been friends since childhood. They have decided to start a consulting business focused on marketing sporting goods over the Internet.
(e) Mark Willis wants to rent CD players and CDs in airports across the country. His idea is that customers will be able to rent equipment and CDs at one airport, listen to the CDs on their flights, and return the equipment and CDs at their destination airport. Of course, this will require a substantial investment in equipment and CDs, as well as employees and locations in each airport. Mark has no savings or personal assets. He wants to maintain control over the business.

Instructions
In each case, explain what form of organization the business is likely to take—sole proprietorship, partnership, or corporation. Give reasons for your choice.

Identify users and uses of financial statements.
(SO 2, 4, 5), K

P1-2A Financial decisions often place heavier emphasis on one type of financial statement over the others. Consider each of the following hypothetical situations independently.
(a) The North Face, Inc. is considering extending credit to a new customer. The terms of the credit would require the customer to pay within 30 days of receipt of goods.
(b) An investor is considering purchasing common stock of Amazon.com. The investor plans to hold the investment for at least 5 years.
(c) Chase Manhattan is considering extending a loan to a small company. The company would be required to make interest payments at the end of each year for 5 years, and to repay the loan at the end of the fifth year.
(d) The president of Campbell Soup is trying to determine whether the company is generating enough cash to increase the amount of dividends paid to investors in this and future years, and still have enough cash to buy equipment as it is needed.

Instructions
In each situation, state whether the decision maker would be most likely to place primary emphasis on information provided by the income statement, balance sheet, or statement of cash flows. In each case provide a brief justification for your choice. Choose only one financial statement in each case.

P1-3A On June 1, Beardsley Service Co. was started with an initial investment in the company of $22,100 cash. Here are the assets and liabilities of the company at June 30, and the revenues and expenses for the month of June, its first month of operations:

Prepare an income statement, retained earnings statement, and balance sheet; discuss results.
(SO 4, 5), AP

Cash	$ 4,600	Notes payable	$12,000
Accounts receivable	4,000	Accounts payable	500
Service revenue	7,500	Supplies expense	1,000
Supplies	2,400	Maintenance and repairs expense	600
Advertising expense	400	Utilities expense	300
Equipment	26,000	Salaries and wages expense	1,400

In June, the company issued no additional stock, but paid dividends of $1,400.

Instructions
(a) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the month of June and a balance sheet at June 30, 2012.
(b) Briefly discuss whether the company's first month of operations was a success.
(c) Discuss the company's decision to distribute a dividend.

Marginal check figures (in blue) provide a key number to let you know you are on the right track.
(a) Net income $3,800
Ret. earnings $2,400
Tot. assets $37,000

P1-4A Presented below is selected financial information for Yvonne Corporation for December 31, 2012.

Determine items included in a statement of cash flows, prepare the statement, and comment.
(SO 4, 5), AP

Inventory	$ 25,000	Cash paid to purchase equipment	$ 12,000
Cash paid to suppliers	104,000	Equipment	40,000
Building	200,000	Revenues	100,000
Common stock	50,000	Cash received from customers	132,000
Cash dividends paid	7,000	Cash received from issuing common stock	22,000

Instructions
(a) Determine which items should be included in a statement of cash flows and then prepare the statement for Yvonne Corporation.
(b) Comment on the adequacy of net cash provided by operating activities to fund the company's investing activities and dividend payments.

(a) Net increase $31,000

P1-5A Gabelli Corporation was formed on January 1, 2012. At December 31, 2012, John Paulus, the president and sole stockholder, decided to prepare a balance sheet, which appeared as follows.

Comment on proper accounting treatment and prepare a corrected balance sheet.
(SO 4, 5), AP

GABELLI CORPORATION
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2012

Assets		Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity	
Cash	$20,000	Accounts payable	$30,000
Accounts receivable	50,000	Notes payable	15,000
Inventory	36,000	Boat loan	22,000
Boat	24,000	Stockholders' equity	64,000

John willingly admits that he is not an accountant by training. He is concerned that his balance sheet might not be correct. He has provided you with the following additional information.

1. The boat actually belongs to Paulus, not to Gabelli Corporation. However, because he thinks he might take customers out on the boat occasionally, he decided to list it as an asset of the company. To be consistent, he also listed as a liability of the corporation his personal loan that he took out at the bank to buy the boat.
2. The inventory was originally purchased for $25,000, but due to a surge in demand John now thinks he could sell it for $36,000. He thought it would be best to record it at $36,000.
3. Included in the accounts receivable balance is $10,000 that John loaned to his brother 5 years ago. John included this in the receivables of Gabelli Corporation so he wouldn't forget that his brother owes him money.

Instructions
(a) Comment on the proper accounting treatment of the three items above.
(b) Provide a corrected balance sheet for Gabelli Corporation. (*Hint:* To get the balance sheet to balance, adjust stockholders' equity.)

Tot. assets $85,000

Problems: Set B

Determine forms of business organization.
(SO 1), **C**

P1-1B Presented below are five independent situations.

(a) Rachel Jackson, a college student looking for summer employment, opened a vegetable stand along a busy local highway. Each morning she buys produce from local farmers, then sells it in the afternoon as people return home from work.

(b) Colin Doyle and Jason Elliot each owned separate swing-set manufacturing businesses. They have decided to combine their businesses and try to expand their reach beyond their local market. They expect that within the coming year they will need significant funds to expand their operations.

(c) Three chemistry professors at FIU have formed a business to employ bacteria to clean up toxic waste sites. Each has contributed an equal amount of cash and knowledge to the venture. The use of bacteria in this situation is experimental, and legal obligations could result.

(d) Brittany Medler has run a successful, but small cooperative health food store for over 20 years. The increased sales of her store have made her believe that the time is right to open a national chain of health food stores across the country. Of course, this will require a substantial investment in stores, inventory, and employees in each store. Brittany has no savings or personal assets. She wants to maintain control over the business.

(e) Cheryl Lamb and Tom Majors recently graduated with masters degrees in economics. They have decided to start a consulting business focused on teaching the basics of international economics to small business owners interested in international trade.

Instructions

In each case, explain what form of organization the business is likely to take—sole proprietorship, partnership, or corporation. Give reasons for your choice.

Identify users and uses of financial statements.
(SO 2, 4, 5), **K**

P1-2B Financial decisions often place heavier emphasis on one type of financial statement over the others. Consider each of the following hypothetical situations independently.

(a) An investor is considering purchasing common stock of the Bally Total Fitness company. The investor plans to hold the investment for at least 3 years.

(b) Boeing is considering extending credit to a new customer. The terms of the credit would require the customer to pay within 60 days of receipt of goods.

(c) The president of Northwest Airlines is trying to determine whether the company is generating enough cash to increase the amount of dividends paid to investors in this and future years, and still have enough cash to buy new flight equipment as it is needed.

(d) Bank of America is considering extending a loan to a small company. The company would be required to make interest payments at the end of each year for 5 years, and to repay the loan at the end of the fifth year.

Instructions

In each of the situations above, state whether the decision maker would be most likely to place primary emphasis on information provided by the income statement, balance sheet, or statement of cash flows. In each case, provide a brief justification for your choice. Choose only one financial statement in each case.

Prepare an income statement, retained earnings statement, and balance sheet; discuss results.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

(a) Net income $4,300
Ret. earnings $2,600
Tot. assets $78,000

P1-3B Special Delivery was started on May 1 with an investment of $45,000 cash. Following are the assets and liabilities of the company on May 31, 2012, and the revenues and expenses for the month of May, its first month of operations.

Accounts receivable	$ 6,200	Notes payable	$28,000
Service revenue	10,400	Salaries and wages expense	2,000
Advertising expense	800	Equipment	56,000
Accounts payable	2,400	Maintenance and repairs expense	2,900
Cash	15,800	Insurance expense	400

No additional common stock was issued in May, but a dividend of $1,700 in cash was paid.

Instructions

(a) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the month of May and a balance sheet at May 31, 2012.

(b) Briefly discuss whether the company's first month of operations was a success.
(c) Discuss the company's decision to distribute a dividend.

P1-4B Presented below are selected financial statement items for Rowe Corporation for December 31, 2012.

Determine items included in a statement of cash flows, prepare the statement, and comment.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

Inventory	$ 55,000	Cash paid to purchase equipment	$ 30,000
Cash paid to suppliers	154,000	Equipment	40,000
Buildings	400,000	Revenues	200,000
Common stock	20,000	Cash received from customers	172,000
Cash dividends paid	6,000	Cash received from issuing bonds payable	40,000

Instructions
(a) Determine which items should be included in a statement of cash flows, and then prepare the statement for Rowe Corporation.
(b) Comment on the adequacy of net cash provided by operating activities to fund the company's investing activities and dividend payments.

(a) Net increase $22,000

P1-5B Austin Corporation was formed during 2011 by Joanna Kay. Joanna is the president and sole stockholder. At December 31, 2012, Joanna prepared an income statement for Austin Corporation. Joanna is not an accountant, but she thinks she did a reasonable job preparing the income statement by looking at the financial statements of other companies. She has asked you for advice. Joanna's income statement appears as follows.

Comment on proper accounting treatment and prepare a corrected income statement.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

AUSTIN CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Accounts receivable	$17,000
Service revenue	47,000
Rent expense	10,000
Insurance expense	7,000
Vacation expense	4,000
Net income	$43,000

Joanna has also provided you with these facts.

1. Included in the service revenue account is $3,000 of revenue that the company earned and received payment for in 2011. She forgot to include it in the 2011 income statement, so she put it in this year's statement.
2. Joanna operates her business out of the basement of her parents' home. They do not charge her anything, but she thinks that if she paid rent it would cost her about $10,000 per year. Therefore, she included $10,000 of rent expense in the income statement.
3. To reward herself for a year of hard work, Joanna went to Greece. She did not use company funds to pay for the trip, but she reported it as an expense on the income statement since it was her job that made her need the vacation.

Instructions
(a) Comment on the proper accounting treatment of the three items above.
(b) Prepare a corrected income statement for Austin Corporation.

(a) Net income $37,000

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

CCC1 Natalie Koebel spent much of her childhood learning the art of cookie-making from her grandmother. They spent many happy hours mastering every type of cookie imaginable and later devised new recipes that were both healthy and delicious. Now at

This serial problem starts in Chapter 1 and continues in every chapter. You can also find this problem at the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**.

the start of her second year in college, Natalie is investigating possibilities for starting her own business as part of the entrepreneurship program in which she is enrolled.

A long-time friend insists that Natalie has to include cookies in her business plan. After a series of brainstorming sessions, Natalie settles on the idea of operating a cookie-making school. She will start on a part-time basis and offer her services in people's homes. Now that she has started thinking about it, the possibilities seem endless. During the fall, she will concentrate on holiday cookies. She will offer group sessions (which will probably be more entertainment than education) and individual lessons. Natalie also decides to include children in her target market. The first difficult decision is coming up with the perfect name for her business. She settles on "Cookie Creations," and then moves on to more important issues.

Instructions

(a) What form of business organization—proprietorship, partnership, or corporation—do you recommend that Natalie use for her business? Discuss the benefits and weaknesses of each form that Natalie might consider.
(b) Will Natalie need accounting information? If yes, what information will she need and why? How often will she need this information?
(c) Identify specific asset, liability, revenue, and expense accounts that Cookie Creations will likely use to record its business transactions.
(d) Should Natalie open a separate bank account for the business? Why or why not?
(e) Natalie expects she will have to use her car to drive to people's homes and to pick up supplies, but she also needs to use her car for personal reasons. She recalls from her first-year accounting course something about keeping business and personal assets separate. She wonders what she should do for accounting purposes. What do you recommend?

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll Industries Inc.*

BYP1-1 The 2009 financial statements of Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc. are provided in Appendix A.

Instructions

Refer to Tootsie Roll's financial statements to answer the following questions.

(a) What were Tootsie Roll's total assets at December 31, 2009? At December 31, 2008?
(b) How much cash did Tootsie Roll have on December 31, 2009?
(c) What amount of accounts payable did Tootsie Roll report on December 31, 2009? On December 31, 2008?
(d) What were Tootsie Roll's total revenues in 2009? In 2008?
(e) What is the amount of the change in Tootsie Roll's net income from 2008 to 2009?

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP1-2 Tootsie Roll's financial statements are presented in Appendix A, and the financial statements of The Hershey Company are presented in Appendix B.

Instructions

(a) Based on the information in these financial statements, determine the following for each company.
    (1) Total assets at December 31, 2009.
    (2) Net property, plant, and equipment at December 31, 2009.
    (3) Total revenue for 2009.
    (4) Net income for 2009.
(b) What conclusions concerning the two companies can you draw from these data?

RESEARCH CASE

BYP1-3 The September 3, 2009, issue of *BusinessWeek* includes an article by Lindsey Gerdes entitled "The Best Places to Launch a Career." It provides interesting information regarding the job opportunities for accounting students.

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following questions. (The article can be found at *www.businessweek.com/magazine/content/09_37/b4146032027785.htm.*)

(a) What position did each of the "Big Four" (the four largest international accounting firms) receive in the survey?
(b) To what did the article attribute the accounting firms' success?
(c) What was the starting salary for a new employee at Deloitte and Touche?
(d) The accounting firms' hiring was affected by the recession although not as much as many of the other employers in the survey. Which one of the Big Four firms had the smallest decline in hiring, and which had the largest?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP1-4 Xerox was not having a particularly pleasant year. The company's stock price had already fallen in the previous year from $60 per share to $30. Just when it seemed things couldn't get worse, Xerox's stock fell to $4 per share. The data below were taken from the statement of cash flows of Xerox. All dollars are in millions.

Cash used in operating activities		$ (663)
Cash used in investing activities		(644)
Financing activities		
Dividends paid	$ (587)	
Net cash received from issuing debt	3,498	
Cash provided by financing activities		2,911

Instructions

Analyze the information above, and then answer the following questions.

(a) If you were a creditor of Xerox, what reaction might you have to the above information?
(b) If you were an investor in Xerox, what reaction might you have to the above information?
(c) If you were evaluating the company as either a creditor or a stockholder, what other information would you be interested in seeing?
(d) Xerox decided to pay a cash dividend. This dividend was approximately equal to the amount paid in the previous year. Discuss the issues that were probably considered in making this decision.

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP1-5 ***Purpose:*** Identify summary information about companies. This information includes basic descriptions of the company's location, activities, industry, financial health, and financial performance.

Address: **http://biz.yahoo.com/i**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Type in a company name, or use the index to find company name.
2. Choose **Quote**, then choose **Profile**, then choose **Income Statement**. Perform instructions (a) and (b) below.
3. Choose **Industry** to identify others in this industry. Perform instructions (c)–(e) below.

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) What was the company's net income? Over what period was this measured?
(b) What was the company's total sales? Over what period was this measured?
(c) What is the company's industry?
(d) What are the names of four companies in this industry?
(e) Choose one of the competitors. What is this competitor's name? What were its sales? What was its net income?

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP1-6 Kim Walters recently accepted a job in the production department at Tootsie Roll. Before she starts work, she decides to review the company's annual report to better understand its operations.

Instructions

Use the annual report provided in Appendix A to answer the following questions.

(a) What CPA firm performed the audit of Tootsie Roll's financial statements?
(b) What was the amount of Tootsie Roll's earnings per share in 2009?
(c) What are the company's net sales in foreign countries in 2009?
(d) What did management suggest as the cause of the decrease in the earnings from operations in 2009?
(e) What were net sales in 2005?
(f) How many shares of Class B common stock have been authorized?
(g) How much cash was spent on capital expenditures in 2009?
(h) Over what life does the company depreciate its buildings?
(i) What was the value of raw material and supplies inventory in 2008?

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP1-7 Jane Noonan is the bookkeeper for Wilson Company, Inc. Jane has been trying to get the company's balance sheet to balance. She finally got it to balance, but she still isn't sure that it is correct.

WILSON COMPANY, INC.

Balance Sheet
For the Month Ended December 31, 2012

Assets		Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity	
Equipment	$18,000	Common stock	$12,000
Cash	9,000	Accounts receivable	(6,000)
Supplies	1,000	Dividends	(2,000)
Accounts payable	(4,000)	Notes payable	10,000
Total assets	$24,000	Retained earnings	10,000
		Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$24,000

Instructions

Explain to Jane Noonan in a memo (a) the purpose of a balance sheet, and (b) why this balance sheet is incorrect and what she should do to correct it.

ETHICS CASE

BYP1-8 Rules governing the investment practices of individual certified public accountants prohibit them from investing in the stock of a company that their firm audits. The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) became concerned that some accountants were violating this rule. In response to an SEC investigation, PricewaterhouseCoopers fired 10 people and spent $25 million educating employees about the investment rules and installing an investment tracking system.

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) Why do you think rules exist that restrict auditors from investing in companies that are audited by their firms?
(b) Some accountants argue that they should be allowed to invest in a company's stock as long as they themselves aren't involved in working on the company's audit or consulting. What do you think of this idea?
(c) Today a very high percentage of publicly traded companies are audited by only four very large public accounting firms. These firms also do a high percentage of the consulting work that

is done for publicly traded companies. How does this fact complicate the decision regarding whether CPAs should be allowed to invest in companies audited by their firm?

(d) Suppose you were a CPA and you had invested in IBM when IBM was not one of your firm's clients. Two years later, after IBM's stock price had fallen considerably, your firm won the IBM audit contract. You will be involved in working with the IBM audit. You know that your firm's rules require that you sell your shares immediately. If you do sell immediately, you will sustain a large loss. Do you think this is fair? What would you do?

(e) Why do you think PricewaterhouseCoopers took such extreme steps in response to the SEC investigation?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP1-9 Some people are tempted to make their finances look worse to get financial aid. Companies sometimes also manage their financial numbers in order to accomplish certain goals. Earnings management is the planned timing of revenues, expenses, gains, and losses to smooth out bumps in net income. In managing earnings, companies' actions vary from being within the range of ethical activity, to being both unethical and illegal attempts to mislead investors and creditors.

Instructions

Provide responses for each of the following questions.

(a) Discuss whether you think each of the following actions (adapted from *www.finaid.org/fafsa/maximize.phtml*) to increase the chances of receiving financial aid is ethical.
   (i) Spend down the student's assets and income first, before spending parents' assets and income.
   (ii) Accelerate necessary expenses to reduce available cash. For example, if you need a new car, buy it before applying for financial aid.
   (iii) State that a truly financially dependent child is independent.
   (iv) Have a parent take an unpaid leave of absence for long enough to get below the "threshold" level of income.

(b) What are some reasons why a *company* might want to overstate its earnings?

(c) What are some reasons why a *company* might want to understate its earnings?

(d) Under what circumstances might an otherwise ethical person decide to illegally overstate or understate earnings?

FASB CODIFICATION ACTIVITY

BYP1-10 The FASB has developed the Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification (or more simply "the Codification"). The FASB's primary goal in developing the Codification is to provide in one place all the authoritative literature related to a particular topic. To provide easy access to the Codification, the FASB also developed the Financial Accounting Standards Board Codification Research System (CRS). CRS is an online, real-time database that provides easy access to the Codification. The Codification and the related CRS provide a topically organized structure, subdivided into topic, subtopics, sections, and paragraphs, using a numerical index system.

You may find this system useful in your present and future studies, and so we have provided an opportunity to use this online system as part of the *Broadening Your Perspective* section.

Instructions

Academic access to the FASB Codification is available through university subscriptions, obtained from the American Accounting Association (at **http://aaahq.org/FASB/Access.cfm**), for an annual fee of $150. This subscription covers an unlimited number of students within a single institution. Once this access has been obtained by your school, you should login (at **http://aaahq.org/ascLogin.cfm**) and familiarize yourself with the resources that are accessible at the FASB Codification site.

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 6 The Scoop on Accounting **Q:** What are the benefits to the company and to the employees of making the financial statements available to all employees? **A:** If employees can read and use financial reports, a company will benefit in the following ways. The *marketing department* will

make better decisions about products to offer and prices to charge. The *finance department* will make better decisions about debt and equity financing and how much to distribute in dividends. The *production department* will make better decisions about when to buy new equipment and how much inventory to produce. The *human resources department* will be better able to determine whether employees can be given raises. Finally, *all employees* will be better informed about the basis on which they are evaluated, which will increase employee morale.

p. 7 Spinning the Career Wheel **Q:** How might accounting help you? **A:** You will need to understand financial reports in any enterprise with which you are associated. Whether you become a manager, a doctor, a lawyer, a social worker, a teacher, an engineer, an architect, or an entrepreneur, a working knowledge of accounting is relevant.

p. 8 The Numbers Behind Not-for-Profit Organizations **Q:** What benefits does a sound accounting system provide to a not-for-profit organization? **A:** Accounting provides at least two benefits to not-for-profit organizations. First, it helps to ensure that money is used in the way that donors intended. Second, it assures donors that their money is not going to waste and thus increases the likelihood of future donations.

p. 15 Rocking the Bottom Line **Q:** What is one way that some of these disputes might be resolved? **A:** Frequently, when contractual payments depend on accounting-based financial results, interested parties employ outside auditors to evaluate whether the financial information has been prepared fairly and accurately. The musicians would like auditors to have easy access to inventory and manufacturing information of the recording companies.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. b **2.** c **3.** d **4.** d **5.** c **6.** a **7.** d **8.** d **9.** a **10.** b **11.** c **12.** d **13.** d **14.** a **15.** b

IFRS A Look at IFRS

Most agree that there is a need for one set of international accounting standards. Here is why:

Multinational corporations. Today's companies view the entire world as their market. For example, Coca-Cola, Intel, and McDonald's generate more than 50% of their sales outside the United States, and many foreign companies, such as Toyota, Nestlé, and Sony, find their largest market to be the United States.

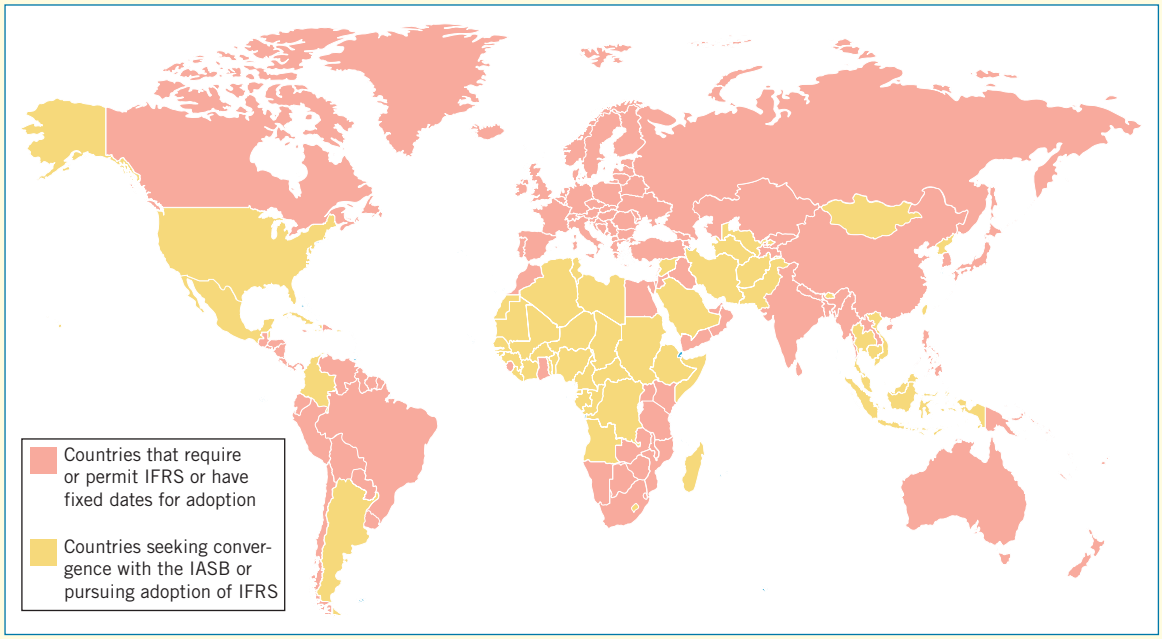
Mergers and acquisitions. The mergers between Fiat/Chrysler and Vodafone/Mannesmann suggest that we will see even more such business combinations in the future.

Information technology. As communication barriers continue to topple through advances in technology, companies and individuals in different countries and markets are becoming more comfortable buying and selling goods and services from one another.

Financial markets. Financial markets are of international significance today. Whether it is currency, equity securities (stocks), bonds, or derivatives, there are active markets throughout the world trading these types of instruments.

KEY POINTS

- International standards are referred to as *International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS)*, developed by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB).
- Recent events in the global capital markets have underscored the importance of financial disclosure and transparency not only in the United States but in markets around the world. As a result, many are examining which accounting and financial disclosure rules should be followed. As indicated in the graphic on the next page, much of the world has voted for the standards issued by the IASB. Over 115 countries require or permit use of IFRS.



Source: http://www.pwc.com/us/en/issues/ifrs-reporting/country-adoption/index.jhtml.

- U.S standards, referred to as generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), are developed by the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB). The fact that there are differences between what is in this textbook (which is based on U.S. standards) and IFRS should not be surprising because the FASB and IASB have responded to different user needs. In some countries, the primary users of financial statements are private investors; in others, the primary users are tax authorities or central government planners. It appears that the United States and the international standard-setting environment are primarily driven by meeting the needs of investors and creditors.
- The internal control standards applicable to Sarbanes-Oxley (SOX) apply only to large public companies listed on U.S. exchanges. There is a continuing debate as to whether non-U.S. companies should have to comply with this extra layer of regulation. Debate about international companies (non-U.S.) adopting SOX-type standards centers on whether the benefits exceed the costs. The concern is that the higher costs of SOX compliance are making the U.S. securities markets less competitive.
- The textbook mentions a number of ethics violations, such as Enron, WorldCom, and AIG. These problems have also occurred internationally, for example, at Satyam Computer Services (India), Parmalat (Italy), and Royal Ahold (the Netherlands).
- IFRS tends to be simpler in its accounting and disclosure requirements; some people say it is more "principles-based." GAAP is more detailed; some people say it is more "rules-based." This difference in approach has resulted in a debate about the merits of "principles-based" versus "rules-based" standards.
- U.S. regulators have recently eliminated the need for foreign companies that trade shares in U.S. markets to reconcile their accounting with GAAP.
- The three most common forms of business organization, proprietorships, partnerships, and corporations, are also found in countries that use IFRS. Because the choice of business organization is influenced by factors such as legal environment, tax rates and regulations, and degree of entrepreneurism, the relative use of each form will vary across countries.
- The conceptual framework that underlies IFRS is very similar to that used to develop GAAP. The basic definitions provided in this textbook for the key elements of financial statements, that is, assets, liabilities, equity, revenues, and expenses, are simplified versions of the official definitions provided by the FASB. The more substantive definitions, using the IASB definitional structure, are as follows.

  Assets. A resource controlled by the entity as a result of past events and from which future economic benefits are expected to flow to the entity.

Liabilities. A present obligation of the entity arising from past events, the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow from the entity of resources embodying economic benefits. Liabilities may be legally enforceable via a contract or law, but need not be, i.e., they can arise due to normal business practice or customs.

Equity. A residual interest in the assets of the entity after deducting all its liabilities.

Income. Increases in economic benefits that result in increases in equity (other than those related to contributions from shareholders). Income includes both revenues (resulting from ordinary activities) and gains.

Expenses. Decreases in economic benefits that result in decreases in equity (other than those related to distributions to shareholders). Expenses includes losses that are not the result of ordinary activities.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

Both the IASB and the FASB are hard at work developing standards that will lead to the elimination of major differences in the way certain transactions are accounted for and reported. In fact, at one time the IASB stated that no new major standards would become effective until 2009. The major reason for this policy was to provide companies the time to translate and implement IFRS into practice, as much has happened in a very short period of time. Consider, for example, that as a result of a joint project on the conceptual framework, the definitions of the most fundamental elements (assets, liabilities, equity, revenues, and expenses) may actually change. However, whether the IASB adopts internal control provisions similar to those in SOX remains to be seen.

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. Which of the following is *not* a reason why a single set of high-quality international accounting standards would be beneficial?
(a) Mergers and acquisition activity.
(b) Financial markets.
(c) Multinational corporations.
(d) GAAP is widely considered to be a superior reporting system.

2. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act determines:
(a) international tax regulations.
(b) internal control standards as enforced by the IASB.
(c) internal control standards of U.S. publicly traded companies.
(d) U.S. tax regulations.

3. IFRS is considered to be more:
(a) principles-based and less rules-based than GAAP.
(b) rules-based and less principles-based than GAAP.
(c) detailed than GAAP.
(d) None of the above.

4. Which of the following statements is *false*?
(a) IFRS is based on a conceptual framework that is similar to that used to develop GAAP.
(b) Assets are defined by the IASB as resources controlled by the entity as a result of past events and from which future economic benefits are expected to flow to the entity.
(c) Non-U.S. companies that trade shares in U.S. markets must reconcile their accounting with GAAP.
(d) Proprietorships, partnerships, and corporations are also found in countries that use IFRS.

5. Which of the following statements is *true*?
(a) Under IFRS, the term income refers to what would be called revenues and gains under GAAP.
(b) The term income is not used under IFRS.
(c) The term income refers only to gains on investments.
(d) Under IFRS, expenses include distributions to owners.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS1–1 Who are the two key international players in the development of international accounting standards? Explain their role.

IFRS1-2 What might explain the fact that different accounting standard-setters have developed accounting standards that are sometimes quite different in nature?

IFRS1-3 What is the benefit of a single set of high-quality accounting standards?

IFRS1-4 Discuss the potential advantages and disadvantages that countries outside the United States should consider before adopting regulations, such as those in the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, that increase corporate internal control requirements.

INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Zetar plc*

IFRS1-5 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C. The company's complete annual report, including the notes to its financial statements, is available at **www.zetarplc.com**.

Instructions

Visit Zetar's corporate website and answer the following questions from Zetar's 2009 annual report.

(a) What accounting firm performed the audit of Zetar's financial statements?
(b) Over what life does the company depreciate its buildings?
(c) What is the address of the company's corporate headquarters?
(d) What is the company's reporting currency?
(e) What two segments does the company operate in, and what were the sales for each segment in the year ended April 30, 2009?

Answers to IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. d **2.** c **3.** a **4.** c **5.** a

the navigator

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 2

A FURTHER LOOK AT FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 52 ◯ p. 53 ◯ p. 62 ◯ p. 68 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 72 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 96 ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Identify the sections of a classified balance sheet.
2. Identify and compute ratios for analyzing a company's profitability.
3. Explain the relationship between a retained earnings statement and a statement of stockholders' equity.
4. Identify and compute ratios for analyzing a company's liquidity and solvency using a balance sheet.
5. Use the statement of cash flows to evaluate solvency.
6. Explain the meaning of generally accepted accounting principles.
7. Discuss financial reporting concepts.

the navigator

JUST FOOLING AROUND?

Few people could have predicted how dramatically the Internet would change the investment world. One of the most interesting results is how it has changed the way ordinary people invest their savings. More and more people are striking out on their own, making their own investment decisions.

Two early pioneers in providing investment information to the masses were Tom and David Gardner, brothers who created an online investor bulletin board called The Motley Fool. The name comes from Shakespeare's *As You Like It*. The fool in Shakespeare's plays was the only one who could speak unpleasant truths to kings and queens without being killed. Tom and David view themselves as 21st-century "fools," revealing the "truths" of Wall Street to the small investor, who they feel has been taken advantage of by Wall Street insiders. Their online bulletin board enables investors to exchange information and insights about companies.

Critics of these bulletin boards contend that they are high-tech rumor mills. They suggest that the fervor created by bulletin board chatter causes investors to bid up stock prices to unreasonable levels. Because bulletin board participants typically use aliases, there is little to stop people from putting misinformation on the board to influence a stock's price. For example, the stock of PairGain Technologies jumped 32 percent in a single day as a result of a bogus takeover rumor on an investment bulletin board. Some observers are concerned that small investors—ironically, the very people the Gardner brothers are trying to help—will be hurt the most by misinformation and intentional scams.

To show how these bulletin boards work, suppose that in a recent year you had $10,000 to invest. You were considering Best Buy Company, the largest seller of electronics equipment in the United States. You scanned the Internet investment bulletin boards and found messages posted by two different investors. Here are excerpts from actual postings during the same year:

> *TMPVenus:* "Where are the prospects for positive movement for this company? Poor margins, poor management, astronomical P/E!"

> *broachman:* "I believe that this is a LONG TERM winner, and presently at a good price."

One says sell, and one says buy. Whom should you believe? If you had taken "broachman's" advice and purchased the stock, the $10,000 you invested would have been worth over $300,000 five years later. Best Buy was one of America's best-performing stocks during that period of time.

Deciding what information to rely on is becoming increasingly complex. For example, shortly before its share price completely collapsed, nearly every professional analyst who followed Enron was recommending its stock as a "buy."

Rather than getting swept away by rumors, investors must sort out the good information from the bad. One thing is certain—as information services such as The Motley Fool increase in number, gathering information will become even easier. Evaluating it will be the harder task.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 2 . . .

- **Can a Company Be Too Liquid?** *(p. 60)*
- **When Debt Is Good** *(p. 61)*
- **The Korean Discount** *(p. 64)*
- **What Do These Companies Have in Common?** *(p. 65)*

preview of chapter 2

If you are thinking of purchasing Best Buy stock, or any stock, how can you decide what the stock is worth? If you manage J. Crew's credit department, how should you determine whether to extend credit to a new customer? If you are a financial executive of IBM, how do you decide whether your company is generating adequate cash to expand operations without borrowing? Your decision in each of these situations will be influenced by a variety of considerations. One of them should be your careful analysis of a company's financial statements. The reason: Financial statements offer relevant and reliable information, which will help you in your decision making.

In this chapter, we take a closer look at the balance sheet and introduce some useful ways for evaluating the information provided by the financial statements. We also examine the financial reporting concepts underlying the financial statements.

A Further Look At Financial Statements

The Classified Balance Sheet	Using the Financial Statements	Financial Reporting Concepts
• Current assets • Long-term investments • Property, plant, and equipment • Intangible assets • Current liabilities • Long-term liabilities • Stockholders' equity	• Ratio analysis • Using the income statement • Using the statement of stockholders' equity • Using a classified balance sheet • Using the statement of cash flows	• The standard-setting environment • Qualities of useful information • Assumptions • Principles • Constraints

the navigator

In Chapter 1, we introduced the four financial statements. In this section, we review the financial statements and present tools that are useful for evaluating them. We begin by introducing the classified balance sheet.

The Classified Balance Sheet

study objective 1

Identify the sections of a classified balance sheet.

In Chapter 1, you learned that a balance sheet presents a snapshot of a company's financial position at a point in time. The balance sheet in Chapter 1 listed individual asset, liability and stockholders' equity items in no particular order. To improve users' understanding of a company's financial position, companies often use a classified balance sheet. A **classified balance sheet** groups together similar assets and similar liabilities, using a number of standard classifications and sections. This is useful because items within a group have similar economic characteristics. A classified balance sheet generally contains the standard classifications listed in Illustration 2-1.

Illustration 2-1 Standard balance sheet classifications

Assets	Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity
Current assets	Current liabilities
Long-term investments	Long-term liabilities
Property, plant, and equipment	Stockholders' equity
Intangible assets	

These groupings help readers determine such things as (1) whether the company has enough assets to pay its debts as they come due, and (2) the claims of short- and long-term creditors on the company's total assets. Many of these

groupings can be seen in the balance sheet of Franklin Corporation shown in Illustration 2-2. In the sections that follow, we explain each of these groupings.

CURRENT ASSETS

Current assets are assets that a company expects to convert to cash or use up within one year or its operating cycle, whichever is longer. In Illustration 2-2, Franklin Corporation had current assets of $22,100. For most businesses, the cutoff for classification as current assets is one year from the balance sheet date. For example, accounts receivable are current assets because the company will

Illustration 2-2 Classified balance sheet

FRANKLIN CORPORATION
Balance Sheet
October 31, 2012

Assets			
Current assets			
Cash		$ 6,600	
Short-term investments		2,000	
Accounts receivable		7,000	
Notes receivable		1,000	
Inventory		3,000	
Supplies		2,100	
Prepaid insurance		400	
Total current assets			$22,100
Long-term investments			
Investment in stock of Walters Corp.		5,200	
Investment in real estate		2,000	7,200
Property, plant, and equipment			
Land		10,000	
Equipment	$24,000		
Less: Accumulated depreciation—equipment	5,000	19,000	29,000
Intangible assets			
Patents			3,100
Total assets			$61,400
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity			
Current liabilities			
Notes payable		$11,000	
Accounts payable		2,100	
Salaries and wages payable		1,600	
Unearned sales revenue		900	
Interest payable		450	
Total current liabilities			$16,050
Long-term liabilities			
Mortgage payable		10,000	
Notes payable		1,300	
Total long-term liabilities			11,300
Total liabilities			27,350
Stockholders' equity			
Common stock		14,000	
Retained earnings		20,050	
Total stockholders' equity			34,050
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity			$61,400

Helpful Hint Recall that the accounting equation is Assets = Liabilities + Stockholders' Equity.

collect them and convert them to cash within one year. Supplies is a current asset because the company expects to use them up in operations within one year.

Some companies use a period longer than one year to classify assets and liabilities as current because they have an operating cycle longer than one year. The **operating cycle** of a company is the average time that it takes to go from cash to cash in producing revenue—to purchase inventory, sell it on account, and then collect cash from customers. For most businesses, this cycle takes less than a year, so they use a one-year cutoff. But, for some businesses, such as vineyards or airplane manufacturers, this period may be longer than a year. **Except where noted, we will assume that companies use one year to determine whether an asset or liability is current or long-term.**

Common types of current assets are (1) cash, (2) short-term investments (such as short-term U.S. government securities), (3) receivables (notes receivable, accounts receivable, and interest receivable), (4) inventories, and (5) prepaid expenses (insurance and supplies). **Companies list current assets in the order in which they expect to convert them into cash**. *Follow this rule when doing your homework.*

Illustration 2-3 presents the current assets of Southwest Airlines Co. in a recent year.

Illustration 2-3 Current assets section

SOUTHWEST AIRLINES CO.
Balance Sheet (partial)
(in millions)

Current assets	
Cash and cash equivalents	$1,390
Short-term investments	369
Accounts receivable	241
Inventories	181
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	420
Total current assets	$2,601

As explained later in the chapter, a company's current assets are important in assessing its short-term debt-paying ability.

LONG-TERM INVESTMENTS

Alternative Terminology Long-term investments are often referred to simply as *investments*.

Long-term investments are generally: (1) investments in stocks and bonds of other corporations that are held for more than one year, and (2) long-term assets such as land or buildings that a company is not currently using in its operating activities. In Illustration 2-2, Franklin Corporation reported total long-term investments of $7,200 on its balance sheet.

Yahoo! Inc. reported long-term investments on its balance sheet in a recent year as shown in Illustration 2-4.

Illustration 2-4 Long-term investments section

YAHOO! INC.
Balance Sheet (partial)
(in thousands)

Long-term investments	
Long-term investments in marketable securities	$90,266

PROPERTY, PLANT, AND EQUIPMENT

Property, plant, and equipment are assets with relatively long useful lives that are currently used in operating the business. This category includes land, buildings, equipment, delivery vehicles, and furniture. In Illustration 2-2, Franklin Corporation reported property, plant, and equipment of $29,000.

Depreciation is the practice of allocating the cost of assets to a number of years. Companies do this by systematically assigning a portion of an asset's cost as an expense each year (rather than expensing the full purchase price in the year of purchase). The assets that the company depreciates are reported on the balance sheet at cost less accumulated depreciation. The **accumulated depreciation** account shows the total amount of depreciation that the company has expensed thus far in the asset's life. In Illustration 2-2, Franklin Corporation reported accumulated depreciation of $5,000.

Illustration 2-5 presents the property, plant, and equipment of Cooper Tire & Rubber Company in a recent year.

Alternative Terminology Property, plant, and equipment is sometimes called *fixed assets* or *plant assets*.

International Note In 2007, China adopted International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS). This was done in an effort to reduce fraud and increase investor confidence in financial reports. Under these standards, many items, such as property, plant, and equipment, may be reported at current fair values, rather than historical cost.

COOPER TIRE & RUBBER COMPANY
Balance Sheet (partial)
(in thousands)

Property, plant, and equipment		
Land and land improvements	$ 41,553	
Buildings	298,706	
Machinery and equipment	1,636,091	
Molds, cores, and rings	268,158	$2,244,508
Less: Accumulated depreciation		1,252,692
		$ 991,816

Illustration 2-5 Property, plant, and equipment section

INTANGIBLE ASSETS

Many companies have assets that do not have physical substance yet often are very valuable. We call these assets **intangible assets.** One common intangible is goodwill. Others include patents, copyrights, and trademarks or trade names that give the company **exclusive right** of use for a specified period of time. Franklin Corporation reported intangible assets of $3,100.

Illustration 2-6 shows the intangible assets of media giant Time Warner, Inc. in a recent year.

Helpful Hint Sometimes intangible assets are reported under a broader heading called "*Other assets*."

TIME WARNER, INC.
Balance Sheet (partial)
(in millions)

Intangible assets	
Goodwill	$40,953
Film library	2,690
Customer lists	2,540
Cable television franchises	38,048
Sports franchises	262
Brands, trademarks, and other intangible assets	8,313
	$92,806

Illustration 2-6 Intangible assets section

before you go on...

ASSETS SECTION OF BALANCE SHEET

Do it! Baxter Hoffman recently received the following information related to Hoffman Corporation's December 31, 2012, balance sheet.

Prepaid insurance	$ 2,300	Inventory	$3,400
Cash	800	Accumulated depreciation—equipment	2,700
Equipment	10,700	Accounts receivable	1,100

Prepare the assets section of Hoffman Corporation's balance sheet.

Action Plan

- Present current assets first. Current assets are cash and other resources that the company expects to convert to cash or use up within one year.
- Present current assets in the order in which the company expects to convert them into cash.
- Subtract accumulated depreciation–equipment from equipment to determine net equipment.

Solution

HOFFMAN CORPORATION
Balance Sheet (partial)
December 31, 2012

Assets		
Current assets		
Cash	$ 800	
Accounts receivable	1,100	
Inventory	3,400	
Prepaid insurance	2,300	
Total current assets		$ 7,600
Equipment	10,700	
Less: Accumulated depreciation—equipment	2,700	8,000
Total assets		$15,600

Related exercise material: **BE2-2, Do it! 2-1,** and **E2-4.**

the navigator

CURRENT LIABILITIES

In the liabilities and stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet, the first grouping is current liabilities. **Current liabilities** are obligations that the company is to pay within the coming year or operating cycle, whichever is longer. Common examples are accounts payable, wages payable, bank loans payable, interest payable, and taxes payable. Also included as current liabilities are current maturities of long-term obligations—payments to be made within the next year on long-term obligations. In Illustration 2-2, Franklin Corporation reported five different types of current liabilities, for a total of $16,050.

Within the current liabilities section, companies usually list notes payable first, followed by accounts payable. Other items then follow in the order of their magnitude. *In your homework, you should present notes payable first, followed by accounts payable.*

Illustration 2-7 shows the current liabilities section adapted from the balance sheet of Marcus Corporation in a recent year.

LONG-TERM LIABILITIES

Long-term liabilities are obligations that a company expects to pay **after** one year. Liabilities in this category include bonds payable, mortgages payable, long-term notes payable, lease liabilities, and pension liabilities. Many companies report long-term debt maturing after one year as a single amount in the balance sheet and show the details of the debt in notes that accompany the financial

MARCUS CORPORATION
Balance Sheet (partial)
(in thousands)

Current liabilities	
Notes payable	$ 239
Accounts payable	24,242
Current maturities of long-term debt	57,250
Other current liabilities	27,477
Taxes payable	11,215
Accrued compensation payable	6,720
Total current liabilities	$127,143

Illustration 2-7 Current liabilities section

statements. Others list the various types of long-term liabilities. In Illustration 2-2, Franklin Corporation reported long-term liabilities of $11,300.

Illustration 2-8 shows the long-term liabilities that The Procter & Gamble Company reported in its balance sheet in a recent year.

THE PROCTER & GAMBLE COMPANY
Balance Sheet (partial)
(in millions)

Long-term liabilities	
Long-term debt	$23,375
Deferred income taxes	12,015
Other noncurrent liabilities	5,147
Total long-term liabilities	$40,537

Illustration 2-8 Long-term liabilities section

STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY

Stockholders' equity consists of two parts: common stock and retained earnings. Companies record as **common stock** the investments of assets into the business by the stockholders. They record as **retained earnings** the income retained for use in the business. These two parts, combined, make up **stockholders' equity** on the balance sheet. In Illustration 2-2, Franklin reported common stock of $14,000 and retained earnings of $20,050.

Alternative Terminology
Common stock is sometimes called *capital stock*.

before you go on...

Do it! The following financial statement items were taken from the financial statements of Callahan Corp.

BALANCE SHEET CLASSIFICATIONS

_____ Salaries and wages payable
_____ Service revenue
_____ Interest payable
_____ Goodwill
_____ Short-term investments
_____ Mortgage payable (due in 3 years)
_____ Investment in real estate
_____ Equipment
_____ Accumulated depreciation—equipment
_____ Depreciation expense
_____ Retained earnings
_____ Unearned service revenue

Match each of the items to its proper balance sheet classification, shown below. If the item would not appear on a balance sheet, use "NA."

Current assets (CA)
Long-term investments (LTI)
Property, plant, and equipment (PPE)
Intangible assets (IA)
Current liabilities (CL)
Long-term liabilities (LTL)
Stockholders' equity (SE)

Action Plan

- Analyze whether each financial statement item is an asset, liability, or stockholders' equity item.
- Determine if asset and liability items are current or long-term.

Solution

CL	Salaries and wages payable	LTI	Investment in real estate
NA	Service revenue	PPE	Equipment
CL	Interest payable	PPE	Accumulated depreciation—equipment
IA	Goodwill	NA	Depreciation expense
CA	Short-term investments	SE	Retained earnings
LTL	Mortgage payable (due in 3 years)	CL	Unearned service revenue

Related exercise material: **BE2-1, Do it! 2-2, E2-1, E2-2, E2-3, E2-5** and **E2-6.**

the navigator

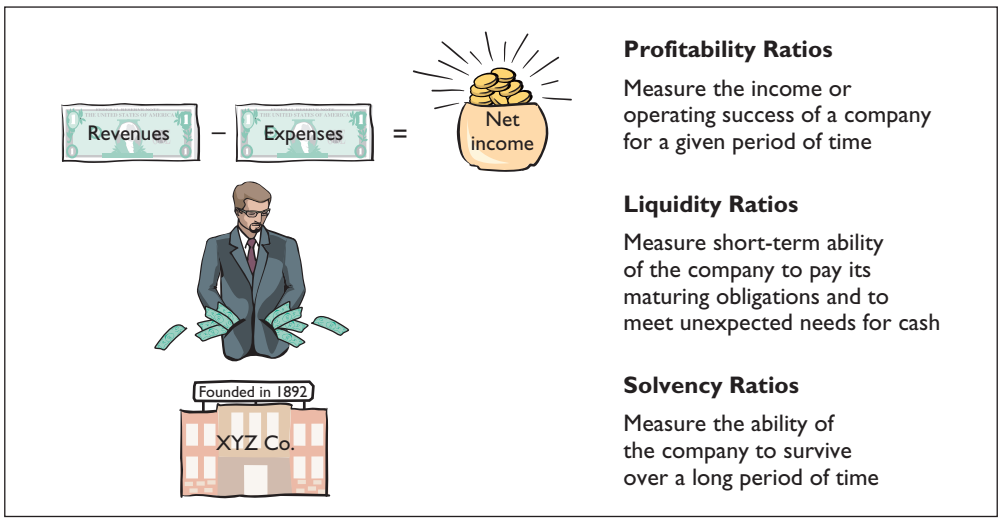
Using the Financial Statements

In Chapter 1, we introduced the four financial statements. We discussed how these statements provide information about a company's performance and financial position. In this chapter, we extend this discussion by showing you specific tools that you can use to analyze financial statements in order to make a more meaningful evaluation of a company.

RATIO ANALYSIS

Ratio analysis expresses the relationship among selected items of financial statement data. A **ratio** expresses the mathematical relationship between one quantity and another. For analysis of the primary financial statements, we classify ratios as follows.

Illustration 2-9 Financial ratio classifications



A single ratio by itself is not very meaningful. Accordingly, in this and the following chapters, we will use various comparisons to shed light on company performance:

1. **Intracompany comparisons** covering two years for the same company.
2. **Industry-average comparisons** based on average ratios for particular industries.
3. **Intercompany comparisons** based on comparisons with a competitor in the same industry.

USING THE INCOME STATEMENT

study objective 2

Identify and compute ratios for analyzing a company's profitability.

Best Buy Company generates profits for its stockholders by selling electronics. The income statement reports how successful it is at generating a profit from its sales. The income statement reports the amount earned during the period (revenues) and the costs incurred during the period (expenses). Illustration 2-10 shows a simplified income statement for Best Buy.

BEST BUY CO., INC.
Income Statements
For the Years Ended February 28, 2009, and March 1, 2008 (in millions)

	2009	2008
Revenues		
Net sales and other revenue	$45,015	$40,023
Expenses		
Cost of goods sold	34,017	30,477
Selling, general, and administrative expenses and other	9,321	7,324
Income tax expense	674	815
Total expenses	44,012	38,616
Net income	$ 1,003	$ 1,407

Illustration 2-10 Best Buy's income statement

From this income statement, we can see that Best Buy's sales increased but net income decreased during the period. Net income decreased from $1,407 million to $1,003 million. A much smaller competitor of Best Buy is hhgregg. It operates 111 stores in 9 states and is headquartered in Indianapolis, Indiana. It reported net income of $36.5 million for the year ended March 31, 2009.

To evaluate the profitability of Best Buy, we will use ratio analysis. **Profitability ratios** measure the operating success of a company for a given period of time.

Earnings per Share

Earnings per share (EPS) measures the net income earned on each share of common stock. We compute EPS by dividing **net income** by the **average number of common shares outstanding during the year**. Stockholders usually think in terms of the number of shares they own or plan to buy or sell, so stating net income earned as a per share amount provides a useful perspective for determining the investment return. Advanced accounting courses present more refined techniques for calculating earnings per share.

For now, a basic approach for calculating earnings per share is to divide earnings available to common stockholders by average common shares outstanding during the year. What is "earnings available to common stockholders"? It is an earnings amount calculated as net income less dividends paid on another type of stock, called preferred stock (Net income − Preferred stock dividends).

By comparing earnings per share of **a single company over time**, one can evaluate its relative earnings performance from the perspective of a stockholder—that is, on a per share basis. It is very important to note that comparisons of earnings per share across companies are **not meaningful** because of the wide variations in the numbers of shares of outstanding stock among companies.

Illustration 2-11 shows the earnings per share calculation for Best Buy in 2009 and 2008, based on the information presented below. (Note that to simplify our calculations, we assumed that any change in the number of shares for Best Buy occurred in the middle of the year.)

(in millions)	2009	2008
Net income	$1,003	$1,407
Preferred stock dividends	–0–	–0–
Shares outstanding at beginning of year	411	481
Shares outstanding at end of year	414	411

Illustration 2-11 Best Buy's earnings per share

$$\text{Earnings per Share} = \frac{\text{Net Income} - \text{Preferred Stock Dividends}}{\text{Average Common Shares Outstanding}}$$

($ and shares in millions)	2009	2008
Earnings per share	$\frac{\$1{,}003 - \$0}{(414 + 411)/2} = \$2.43$	$\frac{\$1{,}407 - \$0}{(411 + 481)/2} = \$3.15$

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How does the company's earnings performance compare with that of previous years?	Net income available to common stockholders and average common shares outstanding	Earnings per share $= \frac{\text{Net income} - \text{Preferred stock dividends}}{\text{Average common shares outstanding}}$	A higher measure suggests improved performance, although the number is subject to manipulation. Values should not be compared across companies.

USING THE STATEMENT OF STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY

study objective 3

Explain the relationship between a retained earnings statement and a statement of stockholders' equity.

As discussed in Chapter 1, the retained earnings statement describes the changes in retained earnings during the year. This statement adds net income and then subtracts dividends from the beginning retained earnings to arrive at ending retained earnings.

Stockholders' equity is comprised of two parts: retained earnings and common stock. Therefore, the stockholders' equity of most companies is affected by factors other than just changes in retained earnings. For example, the company

may issue or retire shares of common stock. Most companies, therefore, use what is called a **statement of stockholders' equity,** rather than a retained earnings statement, so that they can report **all changes** in stockholders' equity accounts. Illustration 2-12 is a simplified statement of stockholders' equity for Best Buy.

BEST BUY CO., INC.
Statement of Stockholders' Equity
(in millions)

	Common Stock	Retained Earnings
Balances at March 3, 2007	$ 478	$5,723
Issuance of common stock	268	
Repurchase of common stock	(697)	
Net income		1,407
Dividends		(204)
Other adjustments		(2,491)
Balances at March 1, 2008	49	4,435
Issuance of common stock	197	
Net income		1,003
Dividends		(222)
Other adjustments		(819)
Balances at February 28, 2009	$ 246	$4,397

Illustration 2-12 Best Buy's statement of stockholders' equity

We can observe from this financial statement that Best Buy's common stock decreased during the first year. Even though it had an issuance of common stock, that increase was much smaller than the decrease caused by a stock repurchase. It increased in the second year as the result of an issuance of shares. Another observation from this financial statement is that Best Buy paid dividends each year. This is a relatively recent practice for Best Buy. Prior to 2003, it did not pay dividends, even though it was profitable and could do so. You might wonder why Best Buy paid no dividends during prior years when it was profitable. In fact, in a prior year, two Best Buy stockholders discussed this question about the company's dividend policy on an investor bulletin board. Here are excerpts:

> *Katwoman:* "Best Buy has a nice price increase. Earnings are on the way up. But why no dividends?"
>
> *AngryCandy:* "I guess they feel they can make better use of the money by investing back in the business. They still view Best Buy as a rapidly growing company and would prefer to invest in expanding the infrastructure (building new stores, advertising, etc.) than in paying out dividends. . . . If Best Buy gets to the stage of 'stable, big company' with little room for expansion, then I'm sure you'll see them elect to pay out a dividend."

AngryCandy's response is an excellent explanation of the thought process that management goes through in deciding whether to pay a dividend. Management must evaluate what its cash needs are. If it has uses for cash that will increase the value of the company (for example, building a new, centralized warehouse), then it should retain cash in the company. However, if it has more cash than it has valuable opportunities, it should distribute its excess cash as a dividend.

study objective 4

Identify and compute ratios for analyzing a company's liquidity and solvency using a balance sheet.

USING A CLASSIFIED BALANCE SHEET

You can learn a lot about a company's financial health by also evaluating the relationship between its various assets and liabilities. Illustration 2-13 provides a simplified balance sheet for Best Buy.

Illustration 2-13 Best Buy's balance sheet

BEST BUY CO., INC.
Balance Sheets
(in millions)

Assets	**February 28, 2009**	**March 1, 2008**
Current assets		
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 498	$ 1,438
Short-term investments	11	64
Receivables	1,868	549
Merchandise inventories	4,753	4,708
Other current assets	1,062	583
Total current assets	8,192	7,342
Property and equipment	6,940	5,608
Less: Accumulated depreciation	2,766	2,302
Net property and equipment	4,174	3,306
Other assets	3,460	2,110
Total assets	$15,826	$12,758
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Current liabilities		
Accounts payable	$ 4,997	$ 4,297
Accrued liabilities	1,382	975
Accrued income taxes	281	404
Accrued compensation payable	459	373
Other current liabilities	1,316	720
Total current liabilities	8,435	6,769
Long-term liabilities		
Long-term debt	1,126	627
Other long-term liabilities	1,622	878
Total long-term liabilities	2,748	1,505
Total liabilities	11,183	8,274
Stockholders' equity		
Common stock	246	49
Retained earnings	4,397	4,435
Total stockholders' equity	4,643	4,484
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$15,826	$12,758

Liquidity

Suppose you are a banker at CitiGroup considering lending money to Best Buy, or you are a sales manager at Hewlett-Packard interested in selling computers to Best Buy on credit. You would be concerned about Best Buy's **liquidity**—its ability to pay obligations expected to become due within the next year or operating cycle. You would look closely at the relationship of its current assets to current liabilities.

WORKING CAPITAL. One measure of liquidity is **working capital**, which is the difference between the amounts of current assets and current liabilities:

Working Capital = Current Assets − Current Liabilities

Illustration 2-14 Working capital

When current assets exceed current liabilities, working capital is positive. When this occurs, there is greater likelihood that the company will pay its liabilities. When working capital is negative, a company might not be able to pay short-term creditors, and the company might ultimately be forced into bankruptcy. Best Buy had working capital in 2009 of −$243 million ($8,192 million − $8,435 million). Best Buy's negative working capital does not necessarily mean the company has liquidity problems. It does warrant further investigation though.

CURRENT RATIO. **Liquidity ratios** measure the short-term ability of the company to pay its maturing obligations and to meet unexpected needs for cash. One liquidity ratio is the **current ratio**, computed as current assets divided by current liabilities.

The current ratio is a more dependable indicator of liquidity than working capital. Two companies with the same amount of working capital may have significantly different current ratios. Illustration 2-15 shows the 2009 and 2008 current ratios for Best Buy and for hhgregg, along with the 2009 industry average.

$$\text{Current Ratio} = \frac{\text{Current Assets}}{\text{Current Liabilities}}$$

Best Buy ($ in millions)		hhgregg	Industry Average
2009	2008	2009	2009
$\frac{\$8,192}{\$8,435} = .97:1$	1.08:1	1.68:1	1.50:1

Illustration 2-15 Current ratio

What does the ratio actually mean? Best Buy's 2009 current ratio of .97:1 means that for every dollar of current liabilities, Best Buy has 97¢ of current assets. Best Buy's current ratio decreased in 2009. When compared to the industry average of 1.5:1, Best Buy's liquidity seems low. It is also less than hhgregg's.

One potential weakness of the current ratio is that it does not take into account the **composition** of the current assets. For example, a satisfactory current ratio does not disclose whether a portion of the current assets is tied up in slow-moving inventory. The composition of the current assets matters because a dollar of cash is more readily available to pay the bills than is a dollar of inventory. For example, suppose a company's cash balance declined while its merchandise inventory increased substantially. If inventory increased because the company is having difficulty selling its products, then the current ratio might not fully reflect the reduction in the company's liquidity.

Ethics Note A company that has more current assets than current liabilities can increase the ratio of current assets to current liabilities by using cash to pay off some current liabilities. This gives the appearance of being more liquid. Do you think this move is ethical?

Accounting Across the Organization

Can a Company Be Too Liquid?

There actually is a point where a company can be too liquid—that is, it can have too much working capital. While it is important to be liquid enough to be able to pay short-term bills as they come due, a company does not want to tie up its cash in extra inventory or receivables that are not earning the company money.

By one estimate from the REL Consultancy Group, the thousand largest U.S. companies have on their books cumulative excess working capital of $764 billion. Based on this figure, companies could have reduced debt by 36% or increased net income by 9%. Given that managers throughout a company are interested in improving profitability, it is clear that they should have an eye toward managing working capital. They need to aim for a "Goldilocks solution"—not too much, not too little, but just right.

Source: K. Richardson, "Companies Fall Behind in Cash Management," *Wall Street Journal* (June 19, 2007).

? What can various company managers do to ensure that working capital is managed efficiently to maximize net income? (See page 96.)

Solvency

Now suppose that instead of being a short-term creditor, you are interested in either buying Best Buy's stock or extending the company a long-term loan. Long-term creditors and stockholders are interested in a company's **solvency**—its ability to pay interest as it comes due and to repay the balance of a debt due at its maturity. **Solvency ratios** measure the ability of the company to survive over a long period of time.

DEBT TO TOTAL ASSETS RATIO. The **debt to total assets ratio** is one source of information about long-term debt-paying ability. It measures the percentage of total financing provided by creditors rather than stockholders. Debt financing is more risky than equity financing because debt must be repaid at specific points in time, whether the company is performing well or not. Thus, the higher the percentage of debt financing, the riskier the company.

Helpful Hint Some users evaluate solvency using a ratio of liabilities divided by stockholders' equity. The higher this "debt to equity" ratio, the lower is a company's solvency.

We compute the debt to total assets ratio as total debt (both current and long-term liabilities) divided by total assets. The higher the percentage of total liabilities (debt) to total assets, the greater the risk that the company may be unable to pay its debts as they come due. Illustration 2-16 shows the debt to total assets ratios for Best Buy and hhgregg, along with the 2009 industry average.

Illustration 2-16 Debt to total assets ratio

$$\text{Debt to Total Assets Ratio} = \frac{\text{Total Liabilities}}{\text{Total Assets}}$$

Best Buy ($ in millions)		hhgregg	Industry Average
2009	2008	2009	2009
$\frac{\$11,183}{\$15,826} = 71\%$	65%	64%	57%

The 2009 ratio of 71% means that every dollar of assets was financed by 71 cents of debt. Best Buy's ratio exceeds the industry average of 57% and is higher than hhgregg's ratio of 64%. The higher the ratio, the more reliant the company is

on debt financing. This means the company has a lower equity "buffer" available to creditors if the company becomes insolvent. Thus, from the creditors' point of view, a high ratio of debt to total assets is undesirable. Best Buy's solvency appears lower than hhgregg's and lower than the average company in the industry.

The adequacy of this ratio is often judged in the light of the company's earnings. Generally, companies with relatively stable earnings, such as public utilities, can support higher debt to total assets ratios than can cyclical companies with widely fluctuating earnings, such as many high-tech companies. In later chapters, you will learn additional ways to evaluate solvency.

Investor Insight

When Debt Is Good

Debt financing differs greatly across industries and companies. Here are some debt to total assets ratios for selected companies in a recent year:

	Debt to Total Assets Ratio
American Pharmaceutical Partners	19%
Callaway Golf Company	20%
Microsoft	21%
Sears Holdings Corporation	73%
Eastman Kodak Company	78%
General Motors Corporation	94%

? Discuss the difference in the debt to total assets ratio of Microsoft and General Motors. (See page 96.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Can the company meet its near-term obligations?	Current assets and current liabilities	Current ratio $= \frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$	Higher ratio suggests favorable liquidity.
Can the company meet its long-term obligations?	Total debt and total assets	Debt to total assets ratio $= \frac{\text{Total liabilities}}{\text{Total assets}}$	Lower value suggests favorable solvency.

KEEPING AN EYE ON CASH

study objective 5

Use the statement of cash flows to evaluate solvency.

In the statement of cash flows, cash provided by operating activities is intended to indicate the cash-generating capability of the company. Analysts have noted, however, that **cash provided by operating activities fails to take into account that a company must invest in new property, plant, and equipment** (capital expenditures) just to maintain its current level of operations. Companies also must at least **maintain dividends at current levels** to satisfy investors. A measurement to provide additional insight regarding a company's cash-generating ability is free cash flow. **Free cash flow** describes the cash remaining from operating activities after adjusting for capital expenditures and dividends paid.

Consider the following example: Suppose that MPC produced and sold 10,000 personal computers this year. It reported $100,000 cash provided by operating

activities. In order to maintain production at 10,000 computers, MPC invested $15,000 in equipment. It chose to pay $5,000 in dividends. Its free cash flow was $80,000 ($100,000 − $15,000 − $5,000). The company could use this $80,000 to purchase new assets to expand the business, to pay off debts, or to increase its dividend distribution. In practice, analysts often calculate free cash flow with the formula shown below. (Alternative definitions also exist.)

Free Cash Flow = Cash Provided by Operations − Capital Expenditures − Cash Dividends

We can calculate Best Buy's 2009 free cash flow as follows (dollars in millions).

Cash provided by operating activities	$1,877
Less: Expenditures on property, plant, and equipment	1,303
Dividends paid	222
Free cash flow	$ 352

Best Buy generated free cash flow of $352 million which is available for the acquisition of new assets, the retirement of stock or debt, or the payment of additional dividends. Long-term creditors consider a high free cash flow amount an indication of solvency. hhgregg's free cash flow for 2009 is $7.7 million. Given that hhgregg is considerably smaller than Best Buy, we would expect its free cash flow to be much lower.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How much cash did the company generate to expand operations, pay off debts, or distribute dividends?	Cash provided by operating activities, cash spent on fixed assets, and cash dividends	Free cash flow = Cash provided by operations − Capital expenditures − Cash dividends	Significant free cash flow indicates greater potential to finance new investment and pay additional dividends.

before you go on...

RATIO ANALYSIS

Do it! The following information is available for Ozone Inc.

	2012	2011
Current assets	$ 88,000	$ 60,800
Total assets	400,000	341,000
Current liabilities	40,000	38,000
Total liabilities	120,000	150,000
Net income	100,000	50,000
Cash provided by operating activities	110,000	70,000
Preferred stock dividends	10,000	10,000
Common stock dividends	5,000	2,500
Expenditures on property, plant, and equipment	45,000	20,000
Shares outstanding at beginning of year	60,000	40,000
Shares outstanding at end of year	120,000	60,000

(a) Compute earnings per share for 2012 and 2011 for Ozone, and comment on the change. Ozone's primary competitor, Frost Corporation, had earnings per share of $2 in 2012. Comment on the difference in the ratios of the two companies.

(b) Compute the current ratio and debt to total assets ratio for each year, and comment on the changes.

(c) Compute free cash flow for each year, and comment on the changes.

Action Plan

- Use the formula for earnings per share (EPS): (Net income − Preferred stock dividends) ÷ (Average common shares outstanding).
- Use the formula for the current ratio: Current assets ÷ Current liabilities.
- Use the formula for the debt to total assets ratio: Total liabilities ÷ Total assets.
- Use the formula for free cash flow: Cash provided by operating activities − Capital expenditures − Cash dividends.

Solution

(a) Earnings per share

2012	2011
$\frac{(\$100{,}000 - \$10{,}000)}{(120{,}000 + 60{,}000)/2} = \$1.00$	$\frac{(\$50{,}000 - \$10{,}000)}{(60{,}000 + 40{,}000)/2} = \$0.80$

Ozone's profitability, as measured by the amount of income available to each share of common stock, increased by 25% [($1.00 − $0.80) ÷ $0.80] during 2012. Earnings per share should not be compared across companies because the number of shares issued by companies varies widely. Thus, we cannot conclude that Frost Corporation is more profitable than Ozone based on its higher EPS.

(b)

	2012	2011
Current ratio	$\frac{\$88{,}000}{\$40{,}000} = 2.20{:}1$	$\frac{\$60{,}800}{\$38{,}000} = 1.60{:}1$
Debt to total assets ratio	$\frac{\$120{,}000}{\$400{,}000} = 30\%$	$\frac{\$150{,}000}{\$341{,}000} = 44\%$

The company's liquidity, as measured by the current ratio, improved from 1:60:1 to 2.20:1. Its solvency also improved, as measured by the debt to total assets ratio, which declined from 44% to 30%.

(c) Free cash flow

2012: $110,000 − $45,000 − ($10,000 + $5,000) = $50,000
2011: $70,000 − $20,000 − ($10,000 + $2,500) = $37,500

The amount of cash generated by the company above its needs for dividends and capital expenditures increased from $37,500 to $50,000.

Related exercise material: **BE2-3, BE2-5, BE2-6, Do it! 2-3, E2-7, E2-9, E2-10,** and **E2-11.**

the navigator

Financial Reporting Concepts

study objective 6

Explain the meaning of generally accepted accounting principles.

In Chapter 1, you learned about the four financial statements, and in this chapter, we introduced you to some basic ways to interpret those statements. In this last section, we will discuss concepts that underly these financial statements. It would be unwise to make business decisions based on financial statements without understanding the implications of these concepts.

THE STANDARD-SETTING ENVIRONMENT

How does Best Buy decide on the type of financial information to disclose? What format should it use? How should it measure assets, liabilities, revenues, and expenses? Best Buy and all other U.S. companies get guidance from a set of rules and practices that have authoritative support, referred to as **generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).** Standard-setting bodies, in consultation with the accounting profession and the business community, determine these accounting standards.

International Note Over 100 countries use international standards (called IFRS). For example, all companies in the European Union follow international standards. The differences between U.S. and international standards are not generally significant. In this book, we highlight any major differences using International Notes like this one, as well as a more in-depth discussion in the *A Look at IFRS* section at the end of each chapter.

The **Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)** is the agency of the U.S. government that oversees U.S. financial markets and accounting standard-setting bodies. The **Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB)** is the primary accounting standard-setting body in the United States. The **International Accounting Standards Board (IASB)** issues standards called **International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS)**, which have been adopted by many countries outside of the United States. Today, the FASB and IASB are working closely together to minimize the differences in their standards. Recently, the SEC announced that foreign companies that wish to have their shares traded on U.S stock exchanges no longer have to prepare reports that conform with GAAP, as long as their reports conform with IFRS. The SEC is currently evaluating whether the United States should eventually adopt IFRS as the required set of standards for U.S. publicly traded companies. Another relatively recent change to the financial reporting environment was that, as a result of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, the **Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB)** was created. Its job is to determine auditing standards and review the performance of auditing firms. If the United States adopts IFRS for its accounting standards, it will also have to coordinate its auditing regulations with those of other countries.

International Insight

The Korean Discount

If you think that accounting standards don't matter, consider recent events in South Korea. For many years, international investors complained that the financial reports of South Korean companies were inadequate and inaccurate. Accounting practices there often resulted in huge differences between stated revenues and actual revenues. Because investors did not have faith in the accuracy of the numbers, they were unwilling to pay as much for the shares of these companies relative to shares of comparable companies in different countries. This difference in share price was often referred to as the "Korean discount."

In response, Korean regulators decided that, beginning in 2011, companies will have to comply with international accounting standards. This change was motivated by a desire to "make the country's businesses more transparent" in order to build investor confidence and spur economic growth. Many other Asian countries, including China, India, Japan, and Hong Kong, have also decided either to adopt international standards or to create standards that are based on the international standards.

Source: Evan Ramstad, "End to 'Korea Discount'?" *Wall Street Journal* (March 16, 2007).

? What is meant by the phrase "make the country's businesses more transparent"? Why would increasing transparency spur economic growth? (See page 96.)

QUALITIES OF USEFUL INFORMATION

study objective 7

Discuss financial reporting concepts.

Recently, the FASB and IASB completed the first phase of a joint project in which they developed a conceptual framework to serve as the basis for future accounting standards. The framework begins by stating that the primary objective of financial reporting is to provide financial information that is **useful** to investors and creditors for making decisions about providing capital. According to the FASB, useful information should possess two fundamental qualities, relevance and faithful representation, as shown in Illustration 2-17.

Relevance Accounting information is considered **relevant** if it would make a difference in a business decision. Information is considered relevant if it provides information that has **predictive value**, that is, helps provide accurate expectations about the future, and has **confirmatory value**, that is, confirms or corrects prior expectations.

Faithful Representation **Faithful representation** means that information accurately depicts what really happened. To provide a faithful representation, information must be **complete** (nothing important has been omitted) and **neutral** (is not biased toward one position or another).

Illustration 2-17
Fundamental qualities of useful information

Enhancing Qualities

In addition to the two fundamental qualities, the FASB and IASB also describe a number of enhancing qualities of useful information. These include **comparability, consistency, verifiability, timeliness,** and **understandability**. In accounting, **comparability** results when different companies use the same accounting principles. Another characteristic that enhances comparability is consistency. **Consistency** means that a company uses the same accounting principles and methods from year to year. Information is **verifiable** if we are able to prove that it is free from error. As noted in Chapter 1, certified public accountants (CPAs) perform audits of financial statements to verify their accuracy. For accounting information to be relevant, it must be **timely**. That is, it must be available to decision makers before it loses its capacity to influence decisions. The SEC requires that public companies provide their annual reports to investors within 60 days of their year-end. Information has the quality of **understandability** if it is presented in a clear and concise fashion, so that reasonably informed users of that information can interpret it and comprehend its meaning.

Accounting Across the Organization

What Do These Companies Have in Common?

Another issue related to comparability is the accounting time period. An accounting period that is one-year long is called a **fiscal year**. But a fiscal year need not match the calendar year. For example, a company could end its fiscal year on April 30, rather than December 31.

Why do companies choose the particular year-ends that they do? For example, why doesn't every company use December 31 as the accounting year-end? Many companies choose to end their accounting year when inventory or operations are at a low point. This is advantageous because compiling accounting information requires much time and effort by managers, so they would rather do it when they aren't as busy operating the business. Also, inventory is easier and less costly to count when its volume is low.

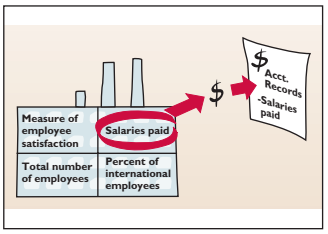
Some companies whose year-ends differ from December 31 are Delta Air Lines, June 30; Walt Disney Productions, September 30; and Dunkin' Donuts, Inc., October 31. In the notes to its financial statements, Best Buy states that its accounting year-end is the Saturday nearest the end of February.

? What problems might Best Buy's year-end create for analysts? (See page 96.)

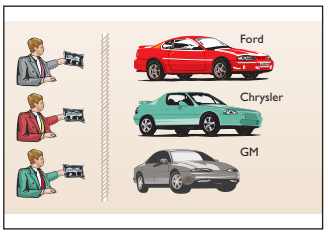
ASSUMPTIONS IN FINANCIAL REPORTING

To develop accounting standards, the FASB relies on some key assumptions, as shown in Illustration 2-18. These include assumptions about the monetary unit, economic entity, periodicity, going concern, and accrual basis.

Illustration 2-18 Key assumptions in financial reporting

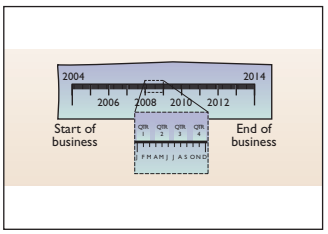


Monetary Unit Assumption The **monetary unit assumption** requires that only those things that can be expressed in money are included in the accounting records. This means that certain important information needed by investors, creditors, and managers, such as customer satisfaction, is not reported in the financial statements.

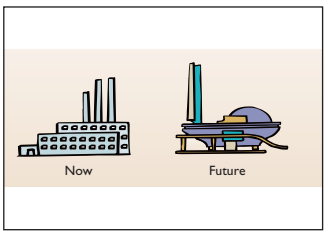


Economic Entity Assumption The **economic entity assumption** states that every economic entity can be separately identified and accounted for. In order to assess a company's performance and financial position accurately, it is important that we not blur company transactions with personal transactions (especially those of its managers) or transactions of other companies.

Ethics Note The importance of the economic entity assumption is illustrated by scandals involving Adelphia. In this case, senior company employees entered into transactions that blurred the line between the employees' financial interests and those of the company. For example, Adelphia guaranteed over $2 billion of loans to the founding family.



Periodicity Assumption Notice that the income statement, retained earnings statement, and statement of cash flows all cover periods of one year, and the balance sheet is prepared at the end of each year. The **periodicity assumption** states that the life of a business can be divided into artificial time periods and that useful reports covering those periods can be prepared for the business.



Going Concern Assumption The **going concern assumption** states that the business will remain in operation for the foreseeable future. Of course, many businesses do fail, but in general, it is reasonable to assume that the business will continue operating.

Accrual Basis **Accrual-basis accounting** means that transactions that change a company's financial statements are recorded in the periods in which the events occur. Accrual-basis accounting is addressed in more detail in Chapter 4.

PRINCIPLES IN FINANCIAL REPORTING

Measurement Principles

GAAP generally uses one of two measurement principles, the cost principle or the fair value principle. Selection of which principle to follow generally relates to trade-offs between relevance and faithful representation.

COST PRINCIPLE. The **cost principle** (or historical cost principle) dictates that companies record assets at their cost. This is true not only at the time the asset is purchased but also over the time the asset is held. For example, if land that was purchased for $30,000 increases in value to $40,000, it continues to be reported at $30,000.

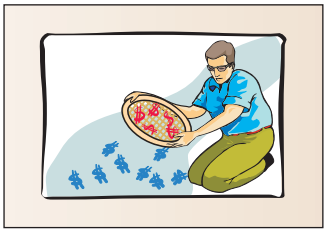
FAIR VALUE PRINCIPLE. The **fair value principle** indicates that assets and liabilities should be reported at fair value (the price received to sell an asset or settle a liability). Fair value information may be more useful than historical cost for certain types of assets and liabilities. For example, certain investment securities are reported at fair value because market price information is often readily available for these types of assets. In choosing between cost and fair value, the FASB uses two qualities that make accounting information useful for decision making—relevance and faithful representation. In determining which measurement principle to use, the FASB weighs the factual nature of cost figures versus the relevance of fair value. In general, the FASB indicates that most assets must follow the cost principle because market values may not be representationally faithful. Only in situations where assets are actively traded, such as investment securities, is the fair value principle applied.

Full Disclosure Principle

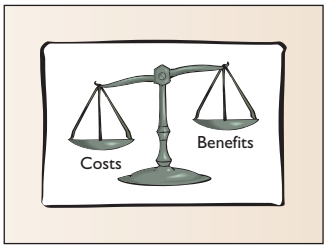
The **full disclosure principle** requires that companies disclose all circumstances and events that would make a difference to financial statement users. If an important item cannot reasonably be reported directly in one of the four types of financial statements, then it should be discussed in notes that accompany the statements.

CONSTRAINTS IN FINANCIAL REPORTING

Efforts to provide useful financial information can be costly to a company. Therefore, the profession has agreed upon **constraints** to ensure that companies apply accounting rules in a reasonable fashion, from the perspectives of both the company and the user. The constraints are the materiality and cost constraints, as shown in Illustration 2-19.



Materiality Constraint The **materiality constraint** relates to a financial statement item's impact on a company's overall financial condition and operations. An item is **material** when its **size** makes it likely to influence the decision of an investor or creditor. It is **immaterial** if it is too small to impact a decision maker. If the item does not make a difference, the company does not have to follow GAAP in reporting it.



Cost Constraint The **cost constraint** relates to the fact that providing information is costly. In deciding whether companies should be required to provide a certain type of information, accounting standard-setters weigh the cost that companies will incur to provide the information against the benefit that financial statement users will gain from having the information available.

Illustration 2-19
Constraints in financial reporting

before you go on...

FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING CONCEPTS AND PRINCIPLES

Do it! The following are characteristics, assumptions, principles, or constraints that guide the FASB when it creates accounting standards.

Relevance	Periodicity assumption
Faithful representation	Going concern assumption
Comparability	Cost principle
Consistency	Full disclosure principle
Monetary unit assumption	Materiality constraint
Economic entity assumption	

Match each item above with a description below.

1. _____ Ability to easily evaluate one company's results relative to another's.
2. _____ Belief that a company will continue to operate for the foreseeable future.
3. _____ The judgment concerning whether an item is large enough to matter to decision makers.
4. _____ The reporting of all information that would make a difference to financial statement users.
5. _____ The practice of preparing financial statements at regular intervals.
6. _____ The quality of information that indicates the information makes a difference in a decision.
7. _____ A belief that items should be reported on the balance sheet at the price that was paid to acquire the item.
8. _____ A company's use of the same accounting principles and methods from year to year.
9. _____ Tracing accounting events to particular companies.
10. _____ The desire to minimize errors and bias in financial statements.
11. _____ Reporting only those things that can be measured in dollars.

Action Plan

- Understand the need for conceptual guidelines in accounting.
- List the characteristics of useful financial information.
- Review the assumptions, principles, and constraints that comprise the guidelines in accounting.

Solution

1. Comparability	7. Cost principle
2. Going concern assumption	8. Consistency
3. Materiality constraint	9. Economic entity assumption
4. Full disclosure principle	10. Faithful representation
5. Periodicity assumption	11. Monetary unit assumption
6. Relevance	

Related exercise material: **BE2-8, BE2-9, BE2-10, BE2-11, Do it! 2-4, E2-12,** and **E2-13.**

the navigator

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

In this chapter, we evaluated a home electronics giant, Best Buy. Tweeter Home Entertainment sold consumer electronics products from 154 stores on the East Coast under various names. It specialized in products with high-end features. Tweeter filed for bankruptcy in June 2007 and was acquired by another company in July 2007. Financial data for Tweeter, prior to its bankruptcy, are provided below.

	September 30	
(amounts in millions)	**2006**	**2005**
Current assets	$146.4	$158.2
Total assets	258.6	284.0
Current liabilities	107.1	119.0
Total liabilities	190.4	201.1
Total common stockholders' equity	68.2	82.9
Net income (loss)	(16.5)	(74.4)
Cash provided (used) by operating activities	15.6	(26.7)
Capital expenditures (net)	17.4	22.2
Dividends paid	0	0
Average shares of common stock (millions)	25.2	24.6

Instructions

Using the data provided, answer the following questions and discuss how these results might have provided an indication of Tweeter's financial troubles.

1. Calculate the current ratio for Tweeter for 2006 and 2005 and discuss its liquidity position.
2. Calculate the debt to total assets ratio and free cash flow for Tweeter for 2006 and 2005 and discuss its solvency.
3. Calculate the earnings per share for Tweeter for 2006 and 2005, and discuss its change in profitability.
4. Best Buy's accounting year-end was February 28, 2007; Tweeter's was September 30, 2006. How does this difference affect your ability to compare their profitability?

Solution

1. Current ratio:

   2006: $146.4 ÷ $107.1 = 1.37:1 *2005:* $158.2 ÷ $119.0 = 1.33:1

   Tweeter's liquidity improved slightly from 2005 to 2006, but in both years it would most likely have been considered inadequate. In 2006 Tweeter had only $1.37 in current assets for every dollar of current liabilities. Sometimes larger companies, such as Best Buy, can function with lower current ratios because they have alternative sources of working capital. But a company of Tweeter's size would normally want a higher ratio.

2. Debt to total assets:

   2006: $190.4 ÷ $258.6 = 73.6% *2005:* $201.1 ÷ $284.0 = 70.8%

   Tweeter's solvency, as measured by its debt to total assets ratio, declined from 2005 to 2006. Its ratio of 73.6% meant that every dollar of assets was financed by 73.6 cents of debt. For a retailer, this is extremely high reliance on debt. This low solvency suggests Tweeter's ability to meet its debt payments was questionable.

   Free cash flow:

   2006: $15.6 − $17.4 − $0 = −$1.8 million
   2005: −$26.7 − $22.2 − $0 = −$48.9 million

   Tweeter's free cash flow was negative in both years. The company did not generate enough cash from operations even to cover its capital expenditures, and it

was not paying a dividend. While this is not unusual for new companies in their early years, it is also not sustainable for very long. Part of the reason that its debt to assets ratio, discussed above, was so high was that it had to borrow money to make up for its deficient free cash flow.

3. Loss per share:

   2006: −$16.5 ÷ 25.2 = −$0.65 per share
   2005: −$74.4 ÷ 24.6 = −$3.02 per share

   Tweeter's loss per share declined substantially. However, this was little consolation for its shareholders, who experienced losses in previous years as well. The company's lack of profitability, combined with its poor liquidity and solvency, increased the likelihood that it would eventually file for bankruptcy.

4. Tweeter's income statement covers 7 months not covered by Best Buy's. Suppose that the economy changed dramatically during this 7-month period, either improving or declining. This change in the economy would be reflected in Tweeter's income statement but would not be reflected in Best Buy's income statement until the following March, thus reducing the usefulness of a comparison of the income statements of the two companies.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Identify the sections of a classified balance sheet. In a classified balance sheet, companies classify assets as current assets; long-term investments; property, plant, and equipment; and intangibles. They classify liabilities as either current or long-term. A stockholders' equity section shows common stock and retained earnings.

2 Identify and compute ratios for analyzing a company's profitability. Profitability ratios, such as earnings per share (EPS), measure aspects of the operating success of a company for a given period of time.

3 Explain the relationship between a retained earnings statement and a statement of stockholders' equity. The retained earnings statement presents the factors that changed the retained earnings balance during the period. A statement of stockholders' equity presents the factors that changed stockholders' equity during the period, including those that changed retained earnings. Thus, a statement of stockholders' equity is more inclusive.

4 Identify and compute ratios for analyzing a company's liquidity and solvency using a balance sheet. Liquidity ratios, such as the current ratio, measure the short-term ability of a company to pay its maturing obligations and to meet unexpected needs for cash. Solvency ratios, such as the debt to total assets ratio, measure the ability of a company to survive over a long period.

5 Use the statement of cash flows to evaluate solvency. Free cash flow indicates a company's ability to generate cash from operations that is sufficient to pay debts, acquire assets, and distribute dividends.

6 Explain the meaning of generally accepted accounting principles. Generally accepted accounting principles are a set of rules and practices recognized as a general guide for financial reporting purposes. The basic objective of financial reporting is to provide information that is useful for decision making.

7 Discuss financial reporting concepts. To be judged useful, information should have the primary characteristics of relevance and faithful representation. In addition, it should be comparable, consistent, verifiable, timely, and understandable.

The *monetary unit assumption* requires that companies include in the accounting records only transaction data that can be expressed in terms of money. The *economic entity assumption* states that economic events can be identified with a particular unit of accountability. The *periodicity assumption* states that the economic life of a business can be divided into artificial time periods and that meaningful accounting reports can be prepared for each period. The *going concern assumption* states that the company will continue in operation long enough to carry out its existing objectives and commitments. *Accrual-basis accounting* means that transactions are recorded in the periods in which the events occur.

The *cost principle* states that companies should record assets at their cost. The *fair value principle* indicates that assets and liabilities should be reported at fair value. The *full disclosure principle* requires that companies disclose circumstances and events that matter to financial statement users.

The major constraints are materiality and cost.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How does the company's earnings performance compare with that of previous years?	Net income available to common stockholders and average common shares outstanding	$\text{Earnings per share} = \frac{\text{Net income} - \text{Preferred stock dividends}}{\text{Average common shares outstanding}}$	A higher measure suggests improved performance, although the number is subject to manipulation. Values should not be compared across companies.
Can the company meet its near-term obligations?	Current assets and current liabilities	$\text{Current ratio} = \frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$	Higher ratio suggests favorable liquidity.
Can the company meet its long-term obligations?	Total debt and total assets	$\text{Debt to total assets ratio} = \frac{\text{Total liabilities}}{\text{Total assets}}$	Lower value suggests favorable solvency.
How much cash did the company generate to expand operations, pay off debts, or distribute dividends?	Cash provided by operating activities, cash spent on fixed assets, and cash dividends	$\text{Free cash flow} = \text{Cash provided by operations} - \text{Capital expenditures} - \text{Cash dividends}$	Significant free cash flow indicates greater potential to finance new investment and pay additional dividends.

Glossary

Accrual-basis accounting *(p. 66)* Transactions that change a company's financial statements are recorded in the periods in which the events occur.

Classified balance sheet *(p. 48)* A balance sheet that contains a number of standard classifications and sections.

Comparability *(p. 65)* Ability to compare the accounting information of different companies because they use the same accounting principles.

Consistency *(p. 65)* Use of the same accounting principles and methods from year to year within a company.

Cost constraint *(p. 67)* Constraint of determining whether the cost that companies will incur to provide the information will outweigh the benefit that financial statement users will gain from having the information available.

Cost principle *(p. 67)* An accounting principle that states that companies should record assets at their cost.

Current assets *(p. 49)* Cash and other resources that companies reasonably expect to convert to cash or use up within one year or the operating cycle, whichever is longer.

Current liabilities *(p. 52)* Obligations that a company reasonably expects to pay within the next year or operating cycle, whichever is longer.

Current ratio *(p. 59)* A measure used to evaluate a company's liquidity and short-term debt-paying ability; computed as current assets divided by current liabilities.

Debt to total assets ratio *(p. 60)* Measures the percentage of total financing provided by creditors; computed as total debt divided by total assets.

Earnings per share (EPS) *(p. 55)* A measure of the net income earned on each share of common stock; computed as net income minus preferred stock dividends divided by the average number of common shares outstanding during the year.

Economic entity assumption *(p. 66)* An assumption that every economic entity can be separately identified and accounted for.

Fair value principle *(p. 67)* Assets and liabilities should be reported at fair value (the price received to sell an asset or settle a liability).

Faithful representation *(p. 65)* Information that is complete, neutral, and free from error.

Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *(p. 64)* The primary accounting standard-setting body in the United States.

Free cash flow *(p. 61)* Cash remaining from operating activities after adjusting for capital expenditures and dividends paid.

Full disclosure principle *(p. 67)* Accounting principle that dictates that companies disclose circumstances and events that make a difference to financial statement users.

Generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) *(p. 63)* A set of rules and practices, having substantial authoritative support, that the accounting profession recognizes as a general guide for financial reporting purposes.

Going concern assumption *(p. 66)* The assumption that the company will continue in operation for the foreseeable future.

Intangible assets *(p. 51)* Assets that do not have physical substance.

International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) *(p. 64)* An accounting standard-setting body that issues standards adopted by many countries outside of the United States.

International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) *(p. 64)* Accounting standards, issued by the IASB, that have been adopted by many countries outside of the United States.

Liquidity *(p. 58)* The ability of a company to pay obligations that are expected to become due within the next year or operating cycle.

Liquidity ratios *(p. 59)* Measures of the short-term ability of the company to pay its maturing obligations and to meet unexpected needs for cash.

Long-term investments *(p. 50)* Generally, (1) investments in stocks and bonds of other corporations that companies hold for more than one year, and (2) long-term assets, such as land and buildings, not currently being used in the company's operations.

Long-term liabilities (Long-term debt) *(p. 52)* Obligations that a company expects to pay after one year.

Materiality constraint *(p. 67)* The constraint of determining whether an item is large enough to likely influence the decision of an investor or creditor.

Monetary unit assumption *(p. 66)* An assumption that requires that only those things that can be expressed in money are included in the accounting records.

Operating cycle *(p. 50)* The average time required to go from cash to cash in producing revenue.

Periodicity assumption *(p. 66)* An assumption that the life of a business can be divided into artificial time periods and that useful reports covering those periods can be prepared for the business.

Profitability ratios *(p. 55)* Measures of the operating success of a company for a given period of time.

Property, plant, and equipment *(p. 51)* Assets with relatively long useful lives that companies use in operating the business.

Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) *(p. 64)* The group charged with determining auditing standards and reviewing the performance of auditing firms.

Ratio *(p. 54)* An expression of the mathematical relationship between one quantity and another.

Ratio analysis *(p. 54)* A technique for evaluating financial statements that expresses the relationship among selected items of financial statement data.

Relevance *(p. 65)* The quality of information that indicates the information makes a difference in a decision.

Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) *(p. 64)* The agency of the U.S. government that oversees U.S. financial markets and accounting standard-setting bodies.

Solvency *(p. 60)* The ability of a company to pay interest as it comes due and to repay the balance of debt at its maturity.

Solvency ratios *(p. 60)* Measures of the ability of the company to survive over a long period of time.

Statement of stockholders' equity *(p. 57)* A financial statement that presents the factors that caused stockholders' equity to change during the period, including those that caused retained earnings to change.

Timely *(p. 65)* Information that is available to decision makers before it loses its capacity to influence decisions.

Understandability *(p. 65)* Information presented in a clear and concise fashion so that users can interpret it and comprehend its meaning.

Verifiable *(p. 65)* Information that is proven to be free from error.

Working capital *(p. 59)* The difference between the amounts of current assets and current liabilities.

Comprehensive Do it!

Listed here are items taken from the income statement and balance sheet of Bargain Electronics, Inc. for the year ended December 31, 2012. Certain items have been combined for simplification. Amounts are given in thousands.

Notes payable (due in 3 years)	$ 50.5
Cash	141.1
Salaries and wages expense	2,933.6
Common stock	454.9
Accounts payable	922.2
Accounts receivable	723.3
Equipment, net	921.0
Cost of goods sold	9,501.4
Income taxes payable	7.2
Interest expense	1.5
Mortgage payable	451.5
Retained earnings	1,336.3
Inventory	1,636.5
Sales revenue	12,456.9
Short-term investments	382.6
Income tax expense	30.5
Goodwill	202.7
Notes payable (due in 6 months)	784.6

Instructions

Prepare an income statement and a classified balance sheet using the items listed. Do not use any item more than once.

Action Plan

- In preparing the income statement, list revenues, then expenses.
- In preparing a classified balance sheet, list current assets in order of liquidity.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

BARGAIN ELECTRONICS, INC.
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012
(in thousands)

Sales revenue		$12,456.9
Cost of goods sold	$9,501.4	
Salaries and wages expense	2,933.6	
Interest expense	1.5	
Income tax expense	30.5	
Total expenses		12,467.0
Net loss		$(10.1)

BARGAIN ELECTRONICS, INC.
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2012
(in thousands)

Assets		
Current assets		
Cash	$ 141.1	
Short-term investments	382.6	
Accounts receivable	723.3	
Inventory	1,636.5	
Total current assets		$2,883.5
Equipment, net		921.0
Goodwill		202.7
Total assets		$4,007.2
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Current liabilities		
Notes payable	$ 784.6	
Accounts payable	922.2	
Income taxes payable	7.2	
Total current liabilities		$1,714.0
Long-term liabilities		
Mortgage payable	451.5	
Notes payable	50.5	502.0
Total liabilities		2,216.0
Stockholders' equity		
Common stock	454.9	
Retained earnings	1,336.3	
Total stockholders' equity		1,791.2
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity		$4,007.2

the navigator

WILEY PLUS
Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 96.

(SO 1) **1.** In a classified balance sheet, assets are usually classified as:
(a) current assets; long-term assets; property, plant, and equipment; and intangible assets.
(b) current assets; long-term investments; property, plant, and equipment; and common stock.
(c) current assets; long-term investments; tangible assets; and intangible assets.
(d) current assets; long-term investments; property, plant, and equipment; and intangible assets.

(SO 1) **2.** Current assets are listed:
(a) by order of expected conversion to cash.
(b) by importance.
(c) by longevity.
(d) alphabetically.

(SO 1) **3.** The correct order of presentation in a classified balance sheet for the following current assets is:
(a) accounts receivable, cash, prepaid insurance, inventory.
(b) cash, inventory, accounts receivable, prepaid insurance.
(c) cash, accounts receivable, inventory, prepaid insurance.
(d) inventory, cash, accounts receivable, prepaid insurance.

(SO 1) **4.** A company has purchased a tract of land. It expects to build a production plant on the land in approximately 5 years. During the 5 years before construction, the land will be idle. The land should be reported as:
(a) property, plant, and equipment.
(b) land expense.
(c) a long-term investment.
(d) an intangible asset.

(SO 2) **5.** Which is an indicator of profitability?
(a) Current ratio.
(b) Earnings per share.
(c) Debt to total assets ratio.
(d) Free cash flow.

(SO 2) **6.** For 2012, Ganos Corporation reported net income $26,000; net sales $400,000; and average shares outstanding 4,000. There were preferred stock dividends of $2,000. What was the 2012 earnings per share?
(a) $6.00
(b) $6.50
(c) $99.50
(d) $100.00

(SO 3) **7.** The balance in retained earnings is *not* affected by:
(a) net income.
(b) net loss.
(c) issuance of common stock.
(d) dividends.

8. Which of these measures is an evaluation of a company's ability to pay current liabilities? (SO 4)
(a) Earnings per share.
(b) Current ratio.
(c) Both (a) and (b).
(d) None of the above.

9. The following ratios are available for Bachus Inc. and Newton Inc. (SO 2, 4)

	Current Ratio	Debt to Assets Ratio	Earnings per Share
Bachus Inc.	2:1	75%	$3.50
Newton Inc.	1.5:1	40%	$2.75

Compared to Newton Inc., Bachus Inc. has:
(a) higher liquidity, higher solvency, and higher profitability.
(b) lower liquidity, higher solvency, and higher profitability.
(c) higher liquidity, lower solvency, and higher profitability.
(d) higher liquidity and lower solvency, but profitability cannot be compared based on information provided.

10. Companies can use free cash flow to: (SO 5)
(a) pay additional dividends.
(b) acquire property, plant, and equipment.
(c) pay off debts.
(d) All of the above.

11. Generally accepted accounting principles are: (SO 6)
(a) a set of standards and rules that are recognized as a general guide for financial reporting.
(b) usually established by the Internal Revenue Service.
(c) the guidelines used to resolve ethical dilemmas.
(d) fundamental truths that can be derived from the laws of nature.

12. What organization issues U.S. accounting standards? (SO 6)
(a) Financial Accounting Standards Board.
(b) International Accounting Standards Committee.
(c) International Auditing Standards Committee.
(d) None of the above.

13. What is the primary criterion by which accounting information can be judged? (SO 7)
(a) Consistency.
(b) Predictive value.
(c) Usefulness for decision making.
(d) Comparability.

(SO 7) **14.** Neutrality is an ingredient of:

	Faithful representation	Relevance
(a)	Yes	Yes
(b)	No	No
(c)	Yes	No
(d)	No	Yes

15. What accounting constraint allows a company to ignore GAAP if an item is too small to impact a decision? (SO 7)
(a) Comparability.
(b) Materiality.
(c) Cost.
(d) Consistency.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. What is meant by the term *operating cycle?*

2. Define current assets. What basis is used for ordering individual items within the current assets section?

3. Distinguish between long-term investments and property, plant, and equipment.

4. How do current liabilities differ from long-term liabilities?

5. Identify the two parts of stockholders' equity in a corporation and indicate the purpose of each.

6.
(a) Julia Alter believes that the analysis of financial statements is directed at two characteristics of a company: liquidity and profitability. Is Julia correct? Explain.
(b) Are short-term creditors, long-term creditors, and stockholders primarily interested in the same characteristics of a company? Explain.

7. Name ratios useful in assessing (a) liquidity, (b) solvency, and (c) profitability.

8. Jon Baird, the founder of Waterboots Inc., needs to raise $500,000 to expand his company's operations. He has been told that raising the money through debt will increase the riskiness of his company much more than issuing stock. He doesn't understand why this is true. Explain it to him.

9. What do these classes of ratios measure?
(a) Liquidity ratios.
(b) Profitability ratios.
(c) Solvency ratios.

10. Holding all other factors constant, indicate whether each of the following signals generally good or bad news about a company.
(a) Increase in earnings per share.
(b) Increase in the current ratio.
(c) Increase in the debt to total assets ratio.
(d) Decrease in free cash flow.

11. Which ratio or ratios from this chapter do you think should be of greatest interest to:
(a) a pension fund considering investing in a corporation's 20-year bonds?
(b) a bank contemplating a short-term loan?
(c) an investor in common stock?

12. (a) What are generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP)?
(b) What body provides authoritative support for GAAP?

13. (a) What is the primary objective of financial reporting?
(b) Identify the characteristics of useful accounting information.

14. Dan Fineman, the president of King Company, is pleased. King substantially increased its net income in 2012 while keeping its unit inventory relatively the same. Howard Gross, chief accountant, cautions Dan, however. Gross says that since King changed its method of inventory valuation, there is a consistency problem and it is difficult to determine whether King is better off. Is Gross correct? Why or why not?

15. What is the distinction between comparability and consistency?

16. Describe the two constraints inherent in the presentation of accounting information.

17. Your roommate believes that international accounting standards are uniform throughout the world. Is your roommate correct? Explain.

18. Laurie Belk is president of Better Books. She has no accounting background. Belk cannot understand why fair value is not used as the basis for all accounting measurement and reporting. Discuss.

19. What is the economic entity assumption? Give an example of its violation.

20. What was Tootsie Roll's largest current asset, largest current liability, and largest item under "Other assets" at December 31, 2009?

Brief Exercises

Classify accounts on balance sheet.
(SO 1), K

BE2-1 The following are the major balance sheet classifications:

Current assets (CA)	Current liabilities (CL)
Long-term investments (LTI)	Long-term liabilities (LTL)
Property, plant, and equipment (PPE)	Common stock (CS)
Intangible assets (IA)	Retained earnings (RE)

Match each of the following accounts to its proper balance sheet classification.

_____ Accounts payable	_____ Income taxes payable
_____ Accounts receivable	_____ Investment in long-term bonds
_____ Accumulated depreciation	_____ Land
_____ Buildings	_____ Inventory
_____ Cash	_____ Patent
_____ Goodwill	_____ Supplies

Prepare the current assets section of a balance sheet.
(SO 1), AP

BE2-2 A list of financial statement items for Georges Company includes the following: accounts receivable $14,000; prepaid insurance $2,600; cash $10,400; supplies $3,800, and short-term investments $8,200. Prepare the current assets section of the balance sheet listing the items in the proper sequence.

Compute earnings per share.
(SO 2), AP

BE2-3 The following information (in millions of dollars) is available for Limited Brands for 2008: Sales revenue $9,043; net income $220; preferred stock dividend $0; average shares outstanding 333 million. Compute the earnings per share for Limited Brands for 2008.

Identify items affecting stockholders' equity.
(SO 3), K

BE2-4 For each of the following events affecting the stockholders' equity of Willis, indicate whether the event would: increase retained earnings (IRE), decrease retained earnings (DRE), increase common stock (ICS), or decrease common stock (DCS).

_____ (a) Issued new shares of common stock.
_____ (b) Paid a cash dividend.
_____ (c) Reported net income of $75,000.
_____ (d) Reported a net loss of $20,000.

Calculate liquidity ratios.
(SO 4), AP

BE2-5 These selected condensed data are taken from a recent balance sheet of Bob Evans Farms (in millions of dollars).

Cash	$ 29.3
Accounts receivable	20.5
Inventory	28.7
Other current assets	24.0
Total current assets	$102.5
Total current liabilities	$201.2

Compute working capital and the current ratio.

Calculate liquidity and solvency ratios.
(SO 4, 5), AP

BE2-6 Kalb's Books & Music Inc. reported the following selected information at March 31.

	2012
Total current assets	$262,787
Total assets	439,832
Total current liabilities	293,625
Total liabilities	376,002
Cash provided by operating activities	62,300

Calculate (a) the current ratio, (b) the debt to total assets ratio, and (c) free cash flow for March 31, 2012. The company paid dividends of $12,000 and spent $24,787 on capital expenditures.

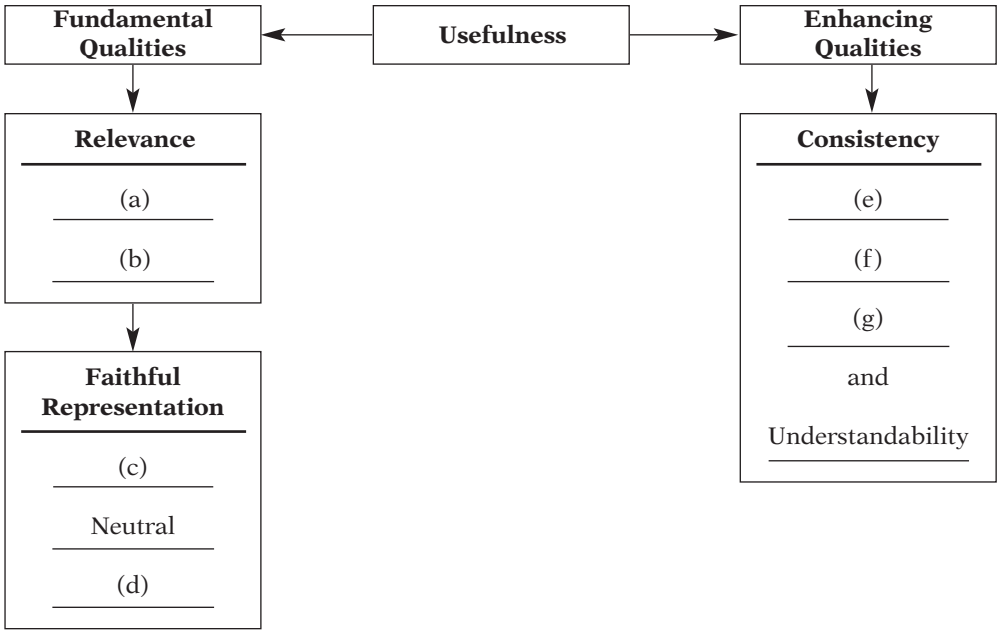
Recognize generally accepted accounting principles.
(SO 6), K

BE2-7 Indicate whether each statement is *true* or *false*.

(a) GAAP is a set of rules and practices established by accounting standard-setting bodies to serve as a general guide for financial reporting purposes.
(b) Substantial authoritative support for GAAP usually comes from two standards-setting bodies: the FASB and the IRS.

BE2-8 The accompanying chart shows the qualitative characteristics of useful accounting information. Fill in the blanks.

Identify characteristics of useful information.
(SO 7), K



BE2-9 Given the *characteristics* of useful accounting information, complete each of the following statements.

Identify characteristics of useful information.
(SO 7), K

(a) For information to be _____, it should have predictive and confirmatory value.
(b) _____ is the quality of information that gives assurance that it is free from error and bias.
(c) _____ means using the same accounting principles and methods from year to year within a company.

BE2-10 Here are some qualitative characteristics of useful accounting information:

Identify characteristics of useful information.
(SO 7), K

1. Predictive value
2. Neutral
3. Verifiable
4. Timely

Match each qualitative characteristic to one of the following statements.

_____ (a) Accounting information should help provide accurate expectations about future events.
_____ (b) Accounting information cannot be selected, prepared, or presented to favor one set of interested users over another.
_____ (c) Accounting information must be proved to be free of error.
_____ (d) Accounting information must be available to decision makers before it loses its capacity to influence their decisions.

BE2-11 The full disclosure principle dictates that:

Define full disclosure principle.
(SO 7), K

(a) financial statements should disclose all assets at their cost.
(b) financial statements should disclose only those events that can be measured in dollars.
(c) financial statements should disclose all events and circumstances that would matter to users of financial statements.
(d) financial statements should not be relied on unless an auditor has expressed an unqualified opinion on them.

Do it! Review

Do it! 2-1 Heather Corporation has collected the following information related to its December 31, 2012, balance sheet.

Prepare assets section of balance sheet.
(SO 1), AP

Accounts receivable	$22,000	Equipment	$180,000
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	50,000	Inventory	58,000
Cash	13,000	Supplies	7,000

Prepare the assets section of Heather Corporation's balance sheet.

Classify financial statement items by balance sheet classification.
(SO 1), AP

Do it! 2-2 The following financial statement items were taken from the financial statements of Jing Corp.

____ Trademarks	____ Inventory
____ Current maturities of long-term debt	____ Accumulated depreciation
____ Interest revenue	____ Land improvements
____ Income taxes payable	____ Common stock
____ Long-term marketable debt securities	____ Advertising expense
____ Unearned consulting fees	____ Mortgage payable (due in 3 years)

Match each of the financial statement items to its proper balance sheet classification. (See E2-1, on page 79, for a list of the balance sheet classifications.) If the item would not appear on a balance sheet, use "NA."

Compute ratios and analyze.
(SO 4, 5), K

Do it! 2-3 The following information is available for Gerard Corporation.

	2012	2011
Current assets	$ 54,000	$ 36,000
Total assets	240,000	205,000
Current liabilities	22,000	30,000
Total liabilities	72,000	100,000
Net income	80,000	40,000
Cash provided by operating activities	90,000	56,000
Preferred stock dividends	6,000	6,000
Common stock dividends	3,000	1,500
Expenditures on property, plant, and equipment	27,000	12,000
Shares outstanding at beginning of year	40,000	30,000
Shares outstanding at end of year	75,000	40,000

(a) Compute earnings per share for 2012 and 2011 for Gerard, and comment on the change. Gerard's primary competitor, Thorpe Corporation, had earnings per share of $1 per share in 2012. Comment on the difference in the ratios of the two companies.
(b) Compute the current ratio and debt to total assets ratio for each year, and comment on the changes.
(c) Compute free cash flow for each year, and comment on the changes.

Identify financial accounting concepts and principles.
(SO 7), K

Do it! 2-4 The following are characteristics, assumptions, principles, or constraints that guide the FASB when it creates accounting standards.

Relevance	Periodicity assumption
Faithful representation	Going concern assumption
Comparability	Cost principle
Consistency	Full disclosure principle
Monetary unit assumption	Materiality constraint
Economic entity assumption	Cost constraint

Match each item above with a description below.

1. _____ Items not easily quantified in dollar terms are not reported in the financial statements.
2. _____ Accounting information must be complete, neutral, and free from error.
3. _____ Personal transactions are not mixed with the company's transactions.
4. _____ The cost to provide information should be weighed against the benefit that users will gain from having the information available.
5. _____ A company's use of the same accounting principles from year to year.
6. _____ Assets are recorded and reported at original purchase price.
7. _____ Accounting information should help users predict future events, and should confirm or correct prior expectations.
8. _____ The life of a business can be divided into artificial segments of time.
9. _____ The reporting of all information that would make a difference to financial statement users.
10. _____ The judgment concerning whether an item's size makes it likely to influence a decision maker.
11. _____ Assumes a business will remain in operation for the foreseeable future.
12. _____ Different companies use the same accounting principles.

Exercises

E2-1 The following are the major balance sheet classifications.

Classify accounts on balance sheet.
(SO 1), **AP**

Current assets (CA)	Current liabilities (CL)
Long-term investments (LTI)	Long-term liabilities (LTL)
Property, plant, and equipment (PPE)	Stockholders' equity (SE)
Intangible assets (IA)	

Instructions
Classify each of the following financial statement items taken from Inshore Corporation's balance sheet.

____ Accounts payable	____ Income taxes payable
____ Accounts receivable	____ Inventory
____ Accumulated depreciation—equipment	____ Investments
____ Buildings	____ Land
____ Cash	____ Mortgage payable
____ Interest payable	____ Supplies
____ Goodwill	____ Equipment
	____ Prepaid rent

E2-2 The major balance sheet classifications are listed in E2-1 above.

Classify financial statement items by balance sheet classification.
(SO 1), **AP**

Instructions
Classify each of the following financial statement items based upon the major balance sheet classifications listed in E2-1.

____ Prepaid advertising	____ Patents
____ Equipment	____ Bonds payable
____ Trademarks	____ Common stock
____ Salaries and wages payable	____ Accumulated depreciation—equipment
____ Income taxes payable	____ Unearned sales revenue
____ Retained earnings	____ Inventory
____ Accounts receivable	
____ Land held for future use	

E2-3 The following items were taken from the December 31, 2009, assets section of the Boeing Company balance sheet. (All dollars are in millions.)

Classify items as current or noncurrent, and prepare assets section of balance sheet.
(SO 1), **AP**

Inventories	$16,933	Other current assets	$ 966
Notes receivable—due after December 31, 2010	5,466	Property, plant, and equipment	21,579
Notes receivable—due before December 31, 2010	368	Cash and cash equivalents	9,215
Accumulated depreciation	12,795	Accounts receivable	5,785
Intangible and other assets	12,528	Short-term investments	2,008

Instructions
Prepare the assets section of a classified balance sheet, listing the current assets in order of their liquidity.

E2-4 The following information (in thousands of dollars) is available for H.J. Heinz Company—famous for ketchup and other fine food products—for the year ended April 29, 2009.

Prepare assets section of a classified balance sheet.
(SO 1), **AP**

Prepaid expenses	$ 125,765	Inventories	$1,237,613
Land	76,193	Buildings and equipment	4,033,369
Other current assets	36,701	Cash and cash equivalents	373,145
Intangible assets	3,982,954	Accounts receivable	1,171,797
Other noncurrent assets	757,907	Accumulated depreciation	2,131,260

Instructions
Prepare the assets section of a classified balance sheet, listing the items in proper sequence and including a statement heading.

Prepare a classified balance sheet.
(SO 1), AP

E2-5 These items are taken from the financial statements of Victory Co. at December 31, 2012.

Buildings	$105,800
Accounts receivable	12,600
Prepaid insurance	3,200
Cash	11,840
Equipment	82,400
Land	61,200
Insurance expense	780
Depreciation expense	5,300
Interest expense	2,600
Common stock	60,000
Retained earnings (January 1, 2012)	40,000
Accumulated depreciation—buildings	45,600
Accounts payable	9,500
Notes payable	93,600
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	18,720
Interest payable	3,600
Service revenue	14,700

Instructions
Prepare a classified balance sheet. Assume that $13,600 of the note payable will be paid in 2013.

Prepare a classified balance sheet.
(SO 1), AP

E2-6 The following items were taken from the 2009 financial statements of Texas Instruments, Inc. (All dollars are in millions.)

Common stock	$2,826	Cash and cash equivalents	$1,182
Prepaid expenses	164	Accumulated depreciation	3,547
Property, plant, and equipment	6,705	Accounts payable	1,344
Other current assets	546	Other noncurrent assets	2,210
Other current liabilities	115	Noncurrent liabilities	810
Long-term investments	637	Retained earnings	6,896
Short-term investments	1,743	Accounts receivable	1,277
Income taxes payable	128	Inventories	1,202

Instructions
Prepare a classified balance sheet in good form as of December 31, 2009.

Compute and interpret profitability ratio.
(SO 2), AP

E2-7 The following information is available for Callaway Golf Company for the years 2008 and 2007. (Dollars are in thousands, except share information.)

	2008	2007
Net sales	$ 1,117,204	$ 1,124,591
Net income (loss)	66,176	54,587
Total assets	855,338	838,078
Share information		
Shares outstanding at year-end	64,507,000	66,282,000
Preferred dividends	–0–	–0–

There were 73,139,000 shares outstanding at the end of 2006.

Instructions
(a) What was the company's earnings per share for each year?
(b) Based on your findings above, how did the company's profitability change from 2007 to 2008?
(c) Suppose the company had paid dividends on preferred stock and on common stock during the year. How would this affect your calculation in part (a)?

Prepare financial statements.
(SO 1, 3, 4), AP

E2-8 These financial statement items are for Whitnall Corporation at year-end, July 31, 2012.

Salaries and wages payable	$ 2,080
Salaries and wages expense	57,500
Supplies expense	15,600

Equipment	$18,500
Accounts payable	4,100
Service revenue	66,100
Rent revenue	8,500
Notes payable (due in 2015)	1,800
Common stock	16,000
Cash	29,200
Accounts receivable	9,780
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	6,000
Dividends	4,000
Depreciation expense	4,000
Retained earnings (beginning of the year)	34,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the year. Whitnall Corporation did not issue any new stock during the year.
(b) Prepare a classified balance sheet at July 31.
(c) Compute the current ratio and debt to total assets ratio.
(d) Suppose that you are the president of Crescent Equipment. Your sales manager has approached you with a proposal to sell $20,000 of equipment to Whitnall. He would like to provide a loan to Whitnall in the form of a 10%, 5-year note payable. Evaluate how this loan would change Whitnall's current ratio and debt to total assets ratio, and discuss whether you would make the sale.

E2-9 Nordstrom, Inc. operates department stores in numerous states. Selected financial statement data (in millions of dollars) for the year ended January 31, 2009, follow.

Compute liquidity ratios and compare results.
(SO 4), **AP**

	End of Year	Beginning of Year
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 72	$ 358
Receivables (net)	1,942	1,788
Merchandise inventory	900	956
Other current assets	303	259
Total current assets	$3,217	$3,361
Total current liabilities	$1,601	$1,635

Instructions

(a) Compute working capital and the current ratio at the beginning of the year and at the end of the current year.
(b) Did Nordstrom's liquidity improve or worsen during the year?
(c) Using the data in the chapter, compare Nordstrom's liquidity with Best Buy's.

E2-10 The chief financial officer (CFO) of Padilla Corporation requested that the accounting department prepare a preliminary balance sheet on December 30, 2012, so that the CFO could get an idea of how the company stood. He knows that certain debt agreements with its creditors require the company to maintain a current ratio of at least 2:1. The preliminary balance sheet is as follows.

Compute liquidity measures and discuss findings.
(SO 4), **AP**

PADILLA CORP.
Balance Sheet
December 30, 2012

Current assets			Current liabilities		
Cash	$25,000		Accounts payable	$ 20,000	
Accounts receivable	30,000		Salaries and wages payable	10,000	$ 30,000
Prepaid insurance	5,000	$ 60,000	Long-term liabilities		
Equipment (net)		200,000	Notes payable		80,000
Total assets		$260,000	Total liabilities		110,000
			Stockholders' equity		
			Common stock	100,000	
			Retained earnings	50,000	150,000
			Total liabilities and stockholders' equity		$260,000

Instructions

(a) Calculate the current ratio and working capital based on the preliminary balance sheet.
(b) Based on the results in (a), the CFO requested that $20,000 of cash be used to pay off the balance of the accounts payable account on December 31, 2012. Calculate the new current ratio and working capital after the company takes these actions.
(c) Discuss the pros and cons of the current ratio and working capital as measures of liquidity.
(d) Was it unethical for the CFO to take these steps?

Compute and interpret solvency ratios.
(SO 4, 5), AP

E2-11 The following data were taken from the 2009 and 2008 financial statements of American Eagle Outfitters. (All dollars are in thousands.)

	2009	2008
Current assets	$ 925,359	$1,020,834
Total assets	1,963,676	1,867,680
Current liabilities	401,763	376,178
Total liabilities	554,645	527,216
Total stockholders' equity	1,409,031	1,340,464
Cash provided by operating activities	302,193	464,270
Capital expenditures	265,335	250,407
Dividends paid	82,394	80,796

Instructions

Perform each of the following.
(a) Calculate the debt to total assets ratio for each year.
(b) Calculate the free cash flow for each year.
(c) Discuss American Eagle's solvency in 2009 versus 2008.
(d) Discuss American Eagle's ability to finance its investment activities with cash provided by operating activities, and how any deficiency would be met.

Identify accounting assumptions and principles.
(SO 7), K

E2-12 Presented below are the assumptions and principles discussed in this chapter.

1. Full disclosure principle.
2. Going concern assumption.
3. Monetary unit assumption.
4. Periodicity assumption.
5. Cost principle.
6. Economic entity assumption.

Instructions

Identify by number the accounting assumption or principle that is described below. Do not use a number more than once.

_____ (a) Is the rationale for why plant assets are not reported at liquidation value. (*Note:* Do not use the cost principle.)
_____ (b) Indicates that personal and business record-keeping should be separately maintained.
_____ (c) Assumes that the dollar is the "measuring stick" used to report on financial performance.
_____ (d) Separates financial information into time periods for reporting purposes.
_____ (e) Measurement basis used when a reliable estimate of fair value is not available.
_____ (f) Dictates that companies should disclose all circumstances and events that make a difference to financial statement users.

Identify the assumption or principle that has been violated.
(SO 7), C

E2-13 Rosman Co. had three major business transactions during 2012.

(a) Reported at its fair value of $260,000 merchandise inventory with a cost of $208,000.
(b) The president of Rosman Co., Jay Rosman, purchased a truck for personal use and charged it to his expense account.
(c) Rosman Co. wanted to make its 2012 income look better, so it added 2 more weeks to the year (a 54-week year). Previous years were 52 weeks.

Instructions

In each situation, identify the assumption or principle that has been violated, if any, and discuss what the company should have done.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

P2-1A The following items are taken from the 2008 balance sheet of Yahoo! Inc. (All dollars are in thousands.)

Prepare a classified balance sheet.
(SO 1), **AP**

Intangible assets	$3,926,749
Common stock	6,282,504
Property and equipment, net	1,536,181
Accounts payable	151,897
Other assets	233,989
Long-term investments	3,247,431
Accounts receivable	1,060,450
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	233,061
Short-term investments	1,159,691
Retained earnings	4,968,438
Cash and cash equivalents	2,292,296
Long-term debt	733,891
Accrued expenses and other current liabilities	1,139,894
Unearned revenue—current	413,224

Instructions
Prepare a classified balance sheet for Yahoo! Inc. as of December 31, 2008.

Tot. current assets $4,745,498
Tot. assets $13,689,848

P2-2A These items are taken from the financial statements of Xenox Corporation for 2012.

Prepare financial statements.
(SO 1, 3), **AP**

Retained earnings (beginning of year)	$31,000
Utilities expense	2,000
Equipment	66,000
Accounts payable	18,300
Cash	10,100
Salaries and wages payable	3,000
Common stock	12,000
Dividends	12,000
Service revenue	68,000
Prepaid insurance	3,500
Maintenance and repairs expense	1,800
Depreciation expense	3,600
Accounts receivable	11,700
Insurance expense	2,200
Salaries and wages expense	37,000
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	17,600

Instructions
Prepare an income statement, a retained earnings statement, and a classified balance sheet as of December 31, 2012.

Net income $21,400
Tot. assets $73,700

P2-3A You are provided with the following information for Merrell Enterprises, effective as of its April 30, 2012, year-end.

Prepare financial statements.
(SO 1, 3), **AP**

Accounts payable	$ 834
Accounts receivable	810
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	670
Cash	1,270
Common stock	900
Cost of goods sold	1,060

Depreciation expense	$ 335
Dividends	325
Equipment	2,420
Income tax expense	165
Income taxes payable	135
Insurance expense	210
Interest expense	400
Inventory	967
Land	3,100
Mortgage payable	3,500
Notes payable	61
Prepaid insurance	60
Retained earnings (beginning)	1,600
Sales revenue	5,100
Short-term investments	1,200
Salaries and wages expense	700
Salaries and wages payable	222

Instructions

Net income $2,230
Tot. current assets $4,307
Tot. assets $9,157

(a) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for Merrell Enterprises for the year ended April 30, 2012.
(b) Prepare a classified balance sheet for Merrell Enterprises as of April 30, 2012.

Compute ratios; comment on relative profitability, liquidity, and solvency.
(SO 2, 4, 5), **AN**

P2-4A Comparative financial statement data for Duran Corporation and Kiepert Corporation, two competitors, appear below. All balance sheet data are as of December 31, 2012.

	Duran Corporation 2012	Kiepert Corporation 2012
Net sales	$1,800,000	$620,000
Cost of goods sold	1,175,000	340,000
Operating expenses	283,000	98,000
Interest expense	9,000	3,800
Income tax expense	85,000	36,000
Current assets	407,200	190,336
Plant assets (net)	532,000	139,728
Current liabilities	66,325	33,716
Long-term liabilities	108,500	40,684
Cash from operating activities	138,000	36,000
Capital expenditures	90,000	20,000
Dividends paid on common stock	36,000	15,000
Average number of shares outstanding	80,000	50,000

Instructions

(a) Comment on the relative profitability of the companies by computing the net income and earnings per share for each company for 2012.
(b) Comment on the relative liquidity of the companies by computing working capital and the current ratios for each company for 2012.
(c) Comment on the relative solvency of the companies by computing the debt to total assets ratio and the free cash flow for each company for 2012.

Compute and interpret liquidity, solvency, and profitability ratios.
(SO 2, 4, 5), **AP**

P2-5A Here and on page 85 are financial statements of Batcha Company.

BATCHA COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Net sales	$2,218,500
Cost of goods sold	1,012,400
Selling and administrative expenses	906,000
Interest expense	78,000
Income tax expense	69,000
Net income	$ 153,100

BATCHA COMPANY
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2012

Assets	
Current assets	
Cash	$ 60,100
Short-term investments	84,000
Accounts receivable (net)	169,800
Inventory	145,000
Total current assets	458,900
Plant assets (net)	575,300
Total assets	$1,034,200
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity	
Current liabilities	
Accounts payable	$ 160,000
Income taxes payable	35,500
Total current liabilities	195,500
Bonds payable	200,000
Total liabilities	395,500
Stockholders' equity	
Common stock	350,000
Retained earnings	288,700
Total stockholders' equity	638,700
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$1,034,200

Additional information: The cash provided by operating activities for 2012 was $190,800. The cash used for capital expenditures was $92,000. The cash used for dividends was $31,000. The average number of shares outstanding during the year was 50,000.

Instructions

(a) Compute the following values and ratios for 2012. (We provide the results from 2011 for comparative purposes.)
  (i) Working capital. (2011: $160,500)
  (ii) Current ratio. (2011: 1.65:1)
  (iii) Free cash flow. (2011: $48,700)
  (iv) Debt to total assets ratio. (2011: 31%)
  (v) Earnings per share. (2011: $3.15)

(b) Using your calculations from part (a), discuss changes from 2011 in liquidity, solvency, and profitability.

P2-6A Condensed balance sheet and income statement data for Sievert Corporation are presented here and on the next page.

Compute and interpret liquidity, solvency, and profitability ratios.
(SO 2, 4, 5), **AP**

SIEVERT CORPORATION
Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	**2012**	**2011**
Cash	$ 28,000	$ 20,000
Receivables (net)	70,000	62,000
Other current assets	90,000	73,000
Long-term investments	62,000	60,000
Plant and equipment (net)	510,000	470,000
Total assets	$760,000	$685,000
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Current liabilities	$ 75,000	$ 70,000
Long-term debt	80,000	90,000
Common stock	330,000	300,000
Retained earnings	275,000	225,000
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$760,000	$685,000

SIEVERT CORPORATION
Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31

	2012	2011
Sales	$750,000	$680,000
Cost of goods sold	440,000	400,000
Operating expenses (including income taxes)	240,000	220,000
Net income	$ 70,000	$ 60,000

Additional information:

Cash from operating activities	$82,000	$56,000
Cash used for capital expenditures	$45,000	$38,000
Dividends paid	$20,000	$15,000
Average number of shares outstanding	33,000	30,000

Instructions

Compute these values and ratios for 2011 and 2012.

(a) Earnings per share.
(b) Working capital.
(c) Current ratio.
(d) Debt to total assets ratio.
(e) Free cash flow.
(f) Based on the ratios calculated, discuss briefly the improvement or lack thereof in financial position and operating results from 2011 to 2012 of Sievert Corporation.

Compute ratios and compare liquidity, solvency, and profitability for two companies.
(SO 2, 4, 5), **AP**

P2-7A Selected financial data of two competitors, Target and Wal-Mart, are presented here. (All dollars are in millions.)

	Target (1/31/09)	Wal-Mart (1/31/09)
Income Statement Data for Year		
Net sales	$64,948	$401,244
Cost of goods sold	44,157	306,158
Selling and administrative expenses	16,389	76,651
Interest expense	894	2,103
Other income	28	4,213
Income taxes	1,322	7,145
Net income	$ 2,214	$ 13,400

	Target	Wal-Mart
Balance Sheet Data (End of Year)		
Current assets	$17,488	$ 48,949
Noncurrent assets	26,618	114,480
Total assets	$44,106	$163,429
Current liabilities	$10,512	$ 55,390
Long-term debt	19,882	42,754
Total stockholders' equity	13,712	65,285
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$44,106	$163,429
Cash from operating activities	$4,430	$23,147
Cash paid for capital expenditures	3,547	11,499
Dividends declared and paid on common stock	465	3,746
Average shares outstanding (millions)	774	3,951

Instructions

For each company, compute these values and ratios.

(a) Working capital.
(b) Current ratio.

(c) Debt to total assets ratio.
(d) Free cash flow.
(e) Earnings per share.
(f) Compare the liquidity and solvency of the two companies.

P2-8A A friend of yours, Ana Gehrig, recently completed an undergraduate degree in science and has just started working with a biotechnology company. Ana tells you that the owners of the business are trying to secure new sources of financing which are needed in order for the company to proceed with development of a new health care product. Ana said that her boss told her that the company must put together a report to present to potential investors.

Comment on the objectives and qualitative characteristics of financial reporting.
(SO 6, 7), **E**

Ana thought that the company should include in this package the detailed scientific findings related to the Phase I clinical trials for this product. She said, "I know that the biotech industry sometimes has only a 10% success rate with new products, but if we report all the scientific findings, everyone will see what a sure success this is going to be! The president was talking about the importance of following some set of accounting principles. Why do we need to look at some accounting rules? What they need to realize is that we have scientific results that are quite encouraging, some of the most talented employees around, and the start of some really great customer relationships. We haven't made any sales yet, but we will. We just need the funds to get through all the clinical testing and get government approval for our product. Then these investors will be quite happy that they bought in to our company early!"

Instructions
(a) What is accounting information? Explain to Ana what is meant by generally accepted accounting principles.
(b) Comment on how Ana's suggestions for what should be reported to prospective investors conforms to the qualitative characteristics of accounting information. Do you think that the things that Ana wants to include in the information for investors will conform to financial reporting guidelines?

Problems: Set B

P2-1B The following items are from the 2009 balance sheet of Kellogg Company. (All dollars are in millions.)

Prepare a classified balance sheet.
(SO 1), **AP**

Common stock	$ 577
Other assets	5,632
Notes payable—current	44
Other current assets	221
Cash and cash equivalents	334
Other long-term liabilities	1,802
Retained earnings	1,698
Accounts payable	1,077
Other current liabilities	1,167
Accounts receivable, net	1,093
Property, net	3,010
Inventories	910
Long-term debt	4,835

Instructions
Prepare a classified balance sheet for Kellogg Company as of December 31, 2009.

Tot. current assets $2,558
Tot. assets $11,200

P2-2B These items are taken from the financial statements of Tilley, Inc.

Prepare financial statements.
(SO 1, 3), **AP**

Prepaid insurance	$ 1,400
Equipment	31,000
Salaries and wages expense	36,000
Utilities expense	2,100
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	8,600
Accounts payable	8,200
Cash	5,100

Accounts receivable	$ 4,900
Salaries and wages payable	2,000
Common stock	6,000
Depreciation expense	4,300
Retained earnings (beginning)	14,000
Dividends	2,600
Service revenue	53,000
Maintenance and repairs expense	2,600
Insurance expense	1,800

Instructions

Net income $6,200
Tot. assets $33,800

Prepare an income statement, a retained earnings statement, and a classified balance sheet as of December 31, 2012.

Prepare financial statements.
(SO 1, 3), **AP**

P2-3B You are provided with the following information for Rapp Corporation, effective as of its April 30, 2012, year-end.

Accounts payable	$ 2,100
Accounts receivable	9,150
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	6,600
Depreciation expense	2,200
Cash	21,955
Common stock	20,000
Dividends	2,800
Equipment	24,250
Sales revenue	21,450
Income tax expense	1,600
Income taxes payable	300
Interest expense	350
Interest payable	175
Notes payable (due in 2016)	5,700
Prepaid rent	380
Rent expense	760
Retained earnings, beginning	13,960
Salaries and wages expense	6,840

Instructions

Net income $9,700
Tot. current assets $31,485
Tot. assets $49,135

(a) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for Rapp Corporation for the year ended April 30, 2012.
(b) Prepare a classified balance sheet for Rapp as of April 30, 2012.
(c) Explain how each financial statement interrelates with the others.

Compute ratios; comment on relative profitability, liquidity, and solvency.
(SO 2, 4, 5), **AN**

P2-4B Comparative statement data for Al Sharif Company and Weber Company, two competitors, are presented below. All balance sheet data are as of December 31, 2012.

	Al Sharif Company 2012	Weber Company 2012
Net sales	$450,000	$890,000
Cost of goods sold	260,000	620,000
Operating expenses	130,000	59,000
Interest expense	6,000	10,000
Income tax expense	10,000	65,000
Current assets	180,000	700,000
Plant assets (net)	600,000	800,000
Current liabilities	75,000	300,000
Long-term liabilities	190,000	200,000
Cash from operating activities	46,000	180,000
Capital expenditures	20,000	50,000
Dividends paid	4,000	15,000
Average number of shares outstanding	200,000	400,000

Instructions

(a) Compute the net income and earnings per share for each company for 2012.

(b) Comment on the relative liquidity of the companies by computing working capital and the current ratio for each company for 2012.
(c) Comment on the relative solvency of the companies by computing the debt to total assets ratio and the free cash flow for each company for 2012.

P2-5B The financial statements of DeVoe Company are presented here.

Compute and interpret liquidity, solvency, and profitability ratios.
(SO 2, 4, 5), **AP**

DEVOE COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Net sales	$700,000
Cost of goods sold	400,000
Selling and administrative expenses	150,000
Interest expense	7,800
Income tax expense	43,000
Net income	$ 99,200

DEVOE COMPANY
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2012

Assets	
Current assets	
Cash	$ 18,100
Short-term investments	34,800
Accounts receivable (net)	90,700
Inventory	155,000
Total current assets	298,600
Plant assets (net)	465,300
Total assets	$763,900
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity	
Current liabilities	
Accounts payable	$119,700
Income taxes payable	29,000
Total current liabilities	148,700
Bonds payable	110,000
Total liabilities	258,700
Stockholders' equity	
Common stock	170,000
Retained earnings	335,200
Total stockholders' equity	505,200
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$763,900
Cash from operating activities	$ 71,300
Capital expenditures	$ 42,000
Dividends paid	$ 10,000
Average number of shares outstanding	65,000

Instructions
(a) Compute the following values and ratios for 2012. (We provide the results from 2011 for comparative purposes.)
  (i) Current ratio. (2011: 2.4:1)
  (ii) Working capital. (2011: $178,000)
  (iii) Debt to total assets ratio. (2011: 31%)
  (iv) Free cash flow. (2011: $13,000)
  (v) Earnings per share. (2011: $1.35)
(b) Using your calculations from part (a), discuss changes from 2011 in liquidity, solvency, and profitability.

Compute and interpret liquidity, solvency, and profitability ratios.
(SO 2, 4, 5), AP

P2-6B Condensed balance sheet and income statement data for Fellenz Corporation are presented below.

FELLENZ CORPORATION
Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	2012	2011
Cash	$ 40,000	$ 24,000
Receivables (net)	90,000	55,000
Other current assets	74,000	73,000
Long-term investments	78,000	60,000
Plant and equipment (net)	520,000	407,000
Total assets	$802,000	$619,000

Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity	2012	2011
Current liabilities	$ 88,000	$ 65,000
Long-term debt	90,000	70,000
Common stock	370,000	320,000
Retained earnings	254,000	164,000
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$802,000	$619,000

FELLENZ CORPORATION
Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31

	2012	2011
Sales	$770,000	$800,000
Cost of goods sold	420,000	400,000
Operating expenses (including income taxes)	200,000	237,000
Net income	$150,000	$163,000
Cash from operating activities	$165,000	$178,000
Cash used for capital expenditures	85,000	45,000
Dividends paid	50,000	43,000
Average number of shares outstanding	370,000	320,000

Instructions
Compute the following values and ratios for 2011 and 2012.
(a) Earnings per share.
(b) Working capital.
(c) Current ratio.
(d) Debt to total assets ratio.
(e) Free cash flow.
(f) Based on the ratios calculated, discuss briefly the improvement or lack thereof in the financial position and operating results of Fellenz from 2011 to 2012.

Compute ratios and compare liquidity, solvency, and profitability for two companies.
(SO 2, 4, 5), AP

P2-7B Selected financial data of two competitors, Blockbuster Inc. and Movie Gallery, Inc., in a recent year are presented below and on page 91. (All dollars are in millions.)

	Blockbuster Inc.	Movie Gallery, Inc.
	Income Statement Data for Year	
Net sales	$ 5,524	$2,542
Cost of goods sold	2,476	1,012
Selling and administrative expenses	2,755	1,431
Interest expense	102	120
Other expense	212	3
Income tax expense (refund)	(76)	2
Net income (loss)	$ 55	$ (26)

	Blockbuster Inc.	Movie Gallery, Inc.
	Balance Sheet Data (End of Year)	
Current assets	$ 1,566	$ 239
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	580	243
Intangible assets	835	297
Other assets	156	374
Total assets	$ 3,137	$1,153
Current liabilities	$ 1,395	$ 268
Long-term debt	851	1,122
Total stockholders' equity	891	(237)
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$ 3,137	$1,153
Cash from operating activities	$329	$(10)
Cash used for capital expenditures	79	20
Dividends paid	11	–0–
Average shares outstanding	189.0	31.8

Instructions

For each company, compute these values and ratios.

(a) Working capital.
(b) Current ratio. (Round to two decimal places.)
(c) Debt to total assets ratio.
(d) Free cash flow.
(e) Earnings per share.
(f) Compare the liquidity, profitability, and solvency of the two companies.

Comment on the objectives and qualitative characteristics of accounting information. (SO 6, 7), **E**

P2-8B Net Nanny Software International Inc., headquartered in Vancouver, specializes in Internet safety and computer security products for both the home and commercial markets. In a recent balance sheet, it reported a deficit (negative retained earnings) of US $5,678,288. It has reported only net losses since its inception. In spite of these losses, Net Nanny's common shares have traded anywhere from a high of $3.70 to a low of $0.32 on the Canadian Venture Exchange.

Net Nanny's financial statements have historically been prepared in Canadian dollars. Recently, the company adopted the U.S. dollar as its reporting currency.

Instructions

(a) What is the objective of financial reporting? How does this objective meet or not meet Net Nanny's investors' needs?
(b) Why would investors want to buy Net Nanny's shares if the company has consistently reported losses over the last few years? Include in your answer an assessment of the relevance of the information reported on Net Nanny's financial statements.
(c) Comment on how the change in reporting information from Canadian dollars to U.S. dollars likely affected the readers of Net Nanny's financial statements. Include in your answer an assessment of the comparability of the information.

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapter 1.)

CCC2 After investigating the different forms of business organization, Natalie Koebel decides to operate her business as a corporation, Cookie Creations Inc., and she begins the process of getting her business running.

While at a trade show, Natalie is introduced to Gerry Richards, operations manager of "Biscuits," a national food retailer. After much discussion, Gerry asks Natalie to consider being Biscuits' major supplier of oatmeal chocolate chip cookies. He provides Natalie with the most recent copy of the financial statements of Biscuits. He expects that Natalie will need to supply Biscuits' Watertown warehouse with approximately 1,500 dozen cookies a week. Natalie is to send Biscuits a monthly invoice, and she will be paid approximately 30 days from the date the invoice is received in Biscuits' Chicago office.

Natalie is thrilled with the offer. However, she has recently read in the newspaper that Biscuits has a reputation for selling cookies and donuts with high amounts of sugar and fat, and as a result, consumer demand for the company's products has decreased.

Instructions

Natalie has several questions. Answer the following questions for Natalie.

(a) What type of information does each financial statement provide?
(b) What financial statements would Natalie need in order to evaluate whether Biscuits will have enough cash to meet its current liabilities? Explain what to look for.
(c) What financial statements would Natalie need in order to evaluate whether Biscuits will be able to survive over a long period of time? Explain what to look for.
(d) What financial statement would Natalie need in order to evaluate Biscuits' profitability? Explain what to look for.
(e) Where can Natalie find out whether Biscuits has outstanding debt? How can Natalie determine whether Biscuits would be able to meet its interest and debt payments on any debts it has?
(f) How could Natalie determine whether Biscuits pays a dividend?
(g) In deciding whether to go ahead with this opportunity, are there other areas of concern that Natalie should be aware of?

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll Industries Inc.*

BYP2-1 The financial statements of Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc., appear in Appendix A at the end of this book.

Instructions

Answer the following questions using the financial statements and the notes to the financial statements.

(a) What were Tootsie Roll's total current assets at December 31, 2009, and December 31, 2008?
(b) Are the assets included in current assets listed in the proper order? Explain.
(c) How are Tootsie Roll's assets classified?
(d) What were Tootsie Roll's current liabilities at December 31, 2009, and December 31, 2008?

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP2-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company appear in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll in Appendix A. Assume Hershey's average number of shares outstanding was 227,517,000, and Tootsie Roll's was 56,072,000.

Instructions

(a) For each company calculate the following values for 2009.
  (1) Working capital.
  (2) Current ratio.
  (3) Debt to total assets ratio
  (4) Free cash flow.
  (5) Earnings per share.
  (*Hint:* When calculating free cash flow, **do not** consider business acquisitions to be part of capital expenditures.)
(b) Based on your findings above, discuss the relative liquidity and solvency of the two companies.

RESEARCH CASE

BYP2-3 The April 27, 2009, edition of the *Wall Street Journal Online* includes an article by Cari Tuna entitled "Corporate Blogs and 'Tweets' Must Keep SEC in Mind."

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following questions.

(a) At the time of the article, how many of the Fortune 500 companies sponsored public blogs? Of these blogs, how many had links to corporate Twitter accounts?

(b) What potential advantages might Twitter provide to companies in their efforts to communicate with investors?

(c) Why are some companies, such as Intel, wary of using Twitter and blogs to communicate to investors?

(d) What recommendations does Lisa Wood, of Foley Hoag LLP, make to companies if they use blogs or Twitter to communicate to investors?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP2-4 The following information was reported by Gap, Inc. in its 2009 annual report.

	2009	2008	2007	2006	2005
Total assets (millions)	$7,985	$7,564	$7,838	$ 8,544	$ 8,821
Working capital	2,533	1,847	1,653	$ 2,757	$ 3,297
Current ratio	2.19:1	1.86:1	1.68:1	2.21:1	2.70:1
Debt to total assets ratio	.39:1	.42:1	.45:1	.39:1	.38:1
Earnings per share	$1.59	$1.35	$1.05	$0.94	$1.26

(a) Determine the overall percentage decrease in Gap's total assets from 2005 to 2009. What was the average decrease per year?

(b) Comment on the change in Gap's liquidity. Does working capital or the current ratio appear to provide a better indication of Gap's liquidity? What might explain the change in Gap's liquidity during this period?

(c) Comment on the change in Gap's solvency during this period.

(d) Comment on the change in Gap's profitability during this period. How might this affect your prediction about Gap's future profitability?

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP2-5 ***Purpose:*** Identify summary liquidity, solvency, and profitability information about companies, and compare this information across companies in the same industry.

Address: **http://biz.yahoo.com/i**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Type in a company name, or use the index to find a company name. Choose **Profile**. Choose **Key Statistics**. Perform instruction (a) below.
2. Go back to **Profile**. Click on the company's particular industry behind the heading "Industry." Perform instructions (b), (c), and (d).

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) What is the company's name? What was the company's current ratio and debt to equity ratio (a variation of the debt to total assets ratio)?

(b) What is the company's industry?

(c) What is the name of a competitor? What is the competitor's current ratio and its debt to equity ratio?

(d) Based on these measures: Which company is more liquid? Which company is more solvent?

BYP2-6 The opening story described the dramatic effect that investment bulletin boards are having on the investment world. This exercise will allow you to evaluate a bulletin board discussing a company of your choice.

Address: **http://biz.yahoo.com/i**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Type in a company name, or use the index to find a company name.
2. Choose **Msgs** or **Message Board**. (for messages).
3. Read the ten most recent messages.

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) State the nature of each of these messages (e.g., offering advice, criticizing company, predicting future results, ridiculing other people who have posted messages).

(b) For those messages that expressed an opinion about the company, was evidence provided to support the opinion?

(c) What effect do you think it would have on bulletin board discussions if the participants provided their actual names? Do you think this would be a good policy?

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP2-7 As a financial analyst in the planning department for Lindemann Industries, Inc., you have been requested to develop some key ratios from the comparative financial statements. This information is to be used to convince creditors that Lindemann Industries, Inc. is liquid, solvent, and profitable, and that it deserves their continued support. Lenders are particularly concerned about the company's ability to continue as a going concern.

Here are the data requested and the computations developed from the financial statements:

	2012	2011
Current ratio	3.1	2.1
Working capital	Up 22%	Down 7%
Free cash flow	Up 25%	Up 18%
Debt to total assets ratio	0.60	0.70
Net income	Up 32%	Down 8%
Earnings per share	$2.40	$1.15

Instructions

Lindemann Industries, Inc. asks you to prepare brief comments stating how each of these items supports the argument that its financial health is improving. The company wishes to use these comments to support presentation of data to its creditors. With the class divided into groups, prepare the comments as requested, giving the implications and the limitations of each item regarding Lindemann's financial well-being.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP2-8 T. J. Cerrillo is the chief executive officer of Tomorrow's Products. T. J. is an expert engineer but a novice in accounting.

Instructions

Write a letter to T. J. Cerrillo that explains (a) the three main types of ratios; (b) examples of each, how they are calculated, and what they measure; and (c) the bases for comparison in analyzing Tomorrow's Products' financial statements.

ETHICS CASE

BYP2-9 At one time, Boeing closed a giant deal to acquire another manufacturer, McDonnell Douglas. Boeing paid for the acquisition by issuing shares of its own stock to the stockholders of McDonnell Douglas. In order for the deal not to be revoked, the value of Boeing's stock could not decline below a certain level for a number of months after the deal.

During the first half of the year, Boeing suffered significant cost overruns because of inefficiencies in its production methods. Had these problems been disclosed in the quarterly financial statements during the first and second quarter of the year, the company's stock most likely would have plummeted, and the deal would have been revoked. Company managers spent considerable time debating when the bad news should be disclosed. One public relations manager suggested that the company's problems be revealed on the date of either Princess Diana's or Mother Teresa's funeral, in the hope that it would be lost among those big stories that day. Instead, the company waited until October 22 of that year to announce a $2.6 billion write-off due to cost overruns. Within one week, the company's stock price had fallen 20%, but by this time the McDonnell Douglas deal could not be reversed.

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?
(b) What are the ethical issues?
(c) What assumptions or principles of accounting are relevant to this case?
(d) Do you think it is ethical to try to "time" the release of a story so as to diminish its effect?
(e) What would you have done if you were the chief executive officer of Boeing?
(f) Boeing's top management maintains that it did not have an obligation to reveal its problems during the first half of the year. What implications does this have for investors and analysts who follow Boeing's stock?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP2-10 Every company needs to plan in order to move forward. Its top management must consider where it wants the company to be in three to five years. Like a company, you need to think about where you want to be three to five years from now, and you need to start taking steps now in order to get there.

Instructions

Provide responses to each of the following items.

(a) Where would you like to be working in three to five years? Describe your plan for getting there by identifying between five and 10 specific steps that you need to take in order to get there.
(b) In order to get the job you want, you will need a résumé. Your résumé is the equivalent of a company's annual report. It needs to provide relevant and reliable information about your past accomplishments so that employers can decide whether to "invest" in you. Do a search on the Internet to find a good résumé format. What are the basic elements of a résumé?
(c) A company's annual report provides information about a company's accomplishments. In order for investors to use the annual report, the information must be reliable; that is, users must have faith that the information is accurate and believable. How can you provide assurance that the information on your résumé is reliable?
(d) Prepare a résumé assuming that you have accomplished the five to 10 specific steps you identified in part (a). Also, provide evidence that would give assurance that the information is reliable.

FASB CODIFICATION ACTIVITY

BYP2-11 If your school has a subscription to the FASB Codification, go to **http://aaahq.org/ascLogin.cfm** to log in and prepare responses to the following.

Instructions

(a) Access the glossary ("Master Glossary") at the FASB Codification website to answer the following.
    (1) What is the definition of current assets?
    (2) What is the definition of current liabilities?
(b) A company wants to offset its accounts payable against its cash account and show a cash amount net of accounts payable on its balance sheet. Identify the criteria (found in the FASB Codification) under which a company has the right of set off. Does the company have the right to offset accounts payable against the cash account?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 60 Can a Company Be Too Liquid? **Q:** What can various company managers do to ensure that working capital is managed efficiently to maximize net income? **A:** Marketing and sales managers must understand that by extending generous repayment terms, they are expanding the company's receivables balance and slowing the company's cash flow. Production managers must strive to minimize the amount of excess inventory on hand. Managers must coordinate efforts to speed up the collection of receivables, while also ensuring that the company pays its payables on time but never too early.

p. 61 When Debt Is Good **Q:** Discuss the difference in the debt to total assets ratio of Microsoft and General Motors. **A:** Microsoft has a very low debt to total assets ratio. The company is in a rapidly changing industry and thus should try to minimize the risk associated with increased debt. Also, because Microsoft generates significant amounts of cash and has minimal needs for large investments in plant assets, it does not need to borrow a lot of cash. General Motors needs to make huge investments in plant assets, and it has a very large credit operation. Thus, it has large borrowing needs.

p. 64 The Korean Discount **Q:** What is meant by the phrase "make the country's businesses more transparent"? Why would increasing transparency spur economic growth? **A:** Transparency refers to the extent to which outsiders have knowledge regarding a company's financial performance and financial position. If a company lacks transparency, its financial reports do not adequately inform investors of critical information that is needed to make investment decisions. If corporate transparency is increased, investors will be more willing to supply the financial capital that businesses need in order to grow, which would spur the country's economic growth.

p. 65 What Do These Companies Have in Common? **Q:** What problems might Best Buy's year-end create for analysts? **A:** First, if Best Buy's competitors use a different year-end, then when you compare their financial results, you are not comparing performance over the same period of time or financial position at the same point in time. Also, by not picking a particular date, the number of weeks in Best Buy's fiscal year will change. For example, fiscal years 2008 and 2009 had 52 weeks, but fiscal year 2007 had 53 weeks.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. d **2.** a **3.** c **4.** c **5.** b **6.** a **7.** c **8.** b **9.** d **10.** d **11.** a **12.** a **13.** c **14.** c **15.** b

IFRS A Look at IFRS

The classified balance sheet, although generally required internationally, contains certain variations in format when reporting under IFRS.

KEY POINTS

- IFRS recommends but does not require the use of the title "statement of financial position" rather than balance sheet.
- The format of statement of financial position information is often presented differently under IFRS. Although no specific format is required, most companies that follow IFRS present statement of financial position information in this order:
  - Noncurrent assets
  - Current assets
  - Equity
  - Noncurrent liabilities
  - Current liabilities
- IFRS requires a classified statement of financial position except in very limited situations. IFRS follows the same guidelines as this textbook for distinguishing between current and noncurrent assets and liabilities.
- Under IFRS, current assets are usually listed in the reverse order of liquidity. For example, under GAAP cash is listed first, but under IFRS it is listed last.
- Some companies report the subtotal *net assets*, which equals total assets minus total liabilities. See, for example, the statement of financial position of Zetar plc in Appendix C.

- IFRS has many differences in terminology that you will notice in this textbook. For example, in the sample statement of financial position illustrated below, notice in the investment category that stock is called shares, and in the equity section common stock is called share capital–ordinary.

FRANKLIN CORPORATION
Statement of Financial Position
October 31, 2012

Assets			
Intangible assets			
Patents			$ 3,100
Property, plant, and equipment			
Land		$10,000	
Office equipment	$24,000		
Less: Accumulated depreciation	5,000	19,000	29,000
Long-term investments			
Investment in shares of Walters Corp.		5,200	
Investment in real estate		2,000	7,200
Current assets			
Prepaid insurance		400	
Supplies		2,100	
Inventories		3,000	
Notes receivable		1,000	
Accounts receivable		7,000	
Short-term investments		2,000	
Cash		6,600	22,100
Total assets			$61,400
Equity and Liabilities			
Equity			
Share capital—ordinary		$20,000	
Retained earnings		14,050	$34,050
Non-current liabilities			
Mortgage note payable		10,000	
Notes payable		1,300	11,300
Current liabilities			
Notes payable		11,000	
Accounts payable		2,100	
Salaries payable		1,600	
Unearned revenue		900	
Interest payable		450	16,050
Total equity and liabilities			$61,400

- Both IFRS and GAAP require disclosures about (1) accounting policies followed, (2) judgments that management has made in the process of applying the entity's accounting policies, and (3) the key assumptions and estimation uncertainty that could result in a material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities within the next financial year.
- Comparative prior-period information must be presented and financial statements must be prepared annually.
- Both GAAP and IFRS are increasing the use of fair value to report assets. However, at this point IFRS has adopted it more broadly. As examples, under IFRS companies can apply fair value to property, plant, and equipment; natural resources; and in some cases intangible assets.
- Recently, the IASB and FASB completed the first phase of a jointly created conceptual framework. In this first phase, they agreed on the objective of financial reporting and a common set of desired qualitative characteristics. These were presented in the Chapter 2 discussion.

- The monetary unit assumption is part of each framework. However, the unit of measure will vary depending on the currency used in the country in which the company is incorporated (e.g., Chinese yuan, Japanese yen, and British pound).
- The economic entity assumption is also part of each framework although some cultural differences result in differences in its application. For example, in Japan many companies have formed alliances that are so strong that they act similar to related corporate divisions although they are not actually part of the same company.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

The IASB and the FASB are working on a project to converge their standards related to financial statement presentation. A key feature of the proposed framework is that each of the statements will be organized in the same format, to separate an entity's financing activities from its operating and investing activities and, further, to separate financing activities into transactions with owners and creditors. Thus, the same classifications used in the statement of financial position would also be used in the income statement and the statement of cash flows. The project has three phases. You can follow the joint financial presentation project at the following link: *http://www.fasb.org/project/financial_statement_presentation.shtml*.

The IASB and the FASB face a difficult task in attempting to update, modify, and complete a converged conceptual framework. For example, how do companies choose between information that is highly relevant but difficult to verify versus information that is less relevant but easy to verify? How do companies define control when developing a definition of an asset? Is a liability the future sacrifice itself or the obligation to make the sacrifice? Should a single measurement method, such as historical cost or fair value, be used, or does it depend on whether it is an asset or liability that is being measured? It appears that the new document will be a significant improvement over its predecessors and will lead to principle-based standards, which will help financial statement users make better decisions.

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. Which of the following statements is *false*?
(a) The monetary unit assumption is used under IFRS.
(b) Under IFRS, companies sometimes net liabilities against assets to report "net assets."
(c) The FASB and IASB are working on a joint conceptual framework project.
(d) Under IFRS, the statement of financial position is usually referred to as the statement of assets and equity.

2. A company has purchased a tract of land and expects to build a production plant on the land in approximately 5 years. During the 5 years before construction, the land will be idle. Under IFRS, the land should be reported as:
(a) land expense.
(b) property, plant, and equipment.
(c) an intangible asset.
(d) a long-term investment.

3. Current assets under IFRS are listed generally:
(a) by importance.
(b) in the reverse order of their expected conversion to cash.
(c) by longevity.
(d) alphabetically.

4. Companies that use IFRS:
(a) may report all their assets on the statement of financial position at fair value.
(b) may offset assets against liabilities and show net assets and net liabilities on their statement of financial positions, rather than the underlying detailed line items.
(c) may report noncurrent assets before current assets on the statement of financial position.
(d) do not have any guidelines as to what should be reported on the statement of financial position.

5. Companies that follow IFRS to prepare a statement of financial position generally use the following order of classification:
(a) current assets, current liabilities, noncurrent assets, noncurrent liabilities, equity.
(b) noncurrent assets, noncurrent liabilities, current assets, current liabilities, equity.
(c) noncurrent assets, current assets, equity, noncurrent liabilities, current liabilities.
(d) equity, noncurrent assets, current assets, noncurrent liabilities, current liabilities.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS2–1 In what ways does the format of a statement of financial of position under IFRS often differ from a balance sheet presented under GAAP?

IFRS2–2 Do the IFRS and GAAP conceptual frameworks differ in terms of the objective of financial reporting? Explain.

IFRS2–3 What terms commonly used under IFRS are synonymous with common stock and balance sheet?

IFRS2–4 The statement of financial position for Diaz Company includes the following accounts: Accounts Receivable £12,500; Prepaid Insurance £3,600; Cash £15,400; Supplies £5,200; and Short-Term Investments £6,700. Prepare the current assets section of the statement of financial position, listing the accounts in proper sequence.

IFRS2–5 Zurich Company recently received the following information related to the company's December 31, 2012, statement of financial position.

Inventories	CHF 2,900	Short-term investments	CHF 120
Cash	13,400	Accumulated depreciation	5,700
Equipment	21,700	Accounts receivable	4,300
Investments in ordinary shares (long-term)	6,500		

Prepare the assets section of the company's classified statement of financial position.

IFRS2–6 The following information is available for Karr Bowling Alley at December 31, 2012.

Buildings	$128,800	Share Capital—Ordinary	$100,000
Accounts Receivable	14,520	Retained Earnings	15,000
Prepaid Insurance	4,680	Accumulated Depreciation—Buildings	42,600
Cash	18,040	Accounts Payable	12,300
Equipment	62,400	Notes Payable	97,780
Land	64,000	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	18,720
Insurance Expense	780	Interest Payable	2,600
Depreciation Expense	7,360	Bowling Revenues	14,180
Interest Expense	2,600		

Prepare a classified statement of financial position; assume that $13,900 of the notes payable will be paid in 2013.

IFRS2–7 Brian Hopkins is interested in comparing the liquidity and solvency of a U.S. software company with a Chinese competitor. Is this possible if the two companies report using different currencies?

INTERNATIONAL COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Zetar plc*

IFRS2–8 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C. The company's complete annual report, including the notes to its financial statements, is available at **www.zetarplc.com**.

Instructions

Identify five differences in the format of the statement of financial position used by Zetar plc compared to a company, such as Tootsie Roll, that follows GAAP. (Tootsie Roll's financial statements are available in Appendix A.)

Answers to IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. d **2.** d **3.** b **4.** c **5.** c

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 3

THE ACCOUNTING INFORMATION SYSTEM

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 110 ◯ p. 116 ◯ p. 119 ◯ p. 128 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 133 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 159 ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Analyze the effect of business transactions on the basic accounting equation.
2. Explain what an account is and how it helps in the recording process.
3. Define debits and credits and explain how they are used to record business transactions.
4. Identify the basic steps in the recording process.
5. Explain what a journal is and how it helps in the recording process.
6. Explain what a ledger is and how it helps in the recording process.
7. Explain what posting is and how it helps in the recording process.
8. Explain the purposes of a trial balance.
9. Classify cash activities as operating, investing, or financing.

the navigator

ACCIDENTS HAPPEN

How organized are you financially? Take a short quiz. Answer *yes* or *no* to each question:

- Does your wallet contain so many cash machine receipts that you've been declared a walking fire hazard?
- Is your wallet such a mess that it is often faster to fish for money in the crack of your car seat than to dig around in your wallet?
- Was Steve Nash playing high school basketball the last time you balanced your bank account?
- Have you ever been tempted to burn down your house so you don't have to try to find all of the receipts and records that you need to fill out your tax returns?

If you think it is hard to keep track of the many transactions that make up *your* life, imagine what it is like for a major corporation like Fidelity Investments. Fidelity is one of the largest mutual fund management firms in the world. If you had your life savings invested at Fidelity Investments, you might be just slightly displeased if, when you called to find out your balance, the representative said, "You know, I kind of remember someone with a name like yours sending us some money—now what did we do with that?"

To ensure the accuracy of your balance and the security of your funds, Fidelity Investments, like all other companies large and small, relies on a sophisticated accounting information system. That's not to say that Fidelity or any other company is error-free. In fact, if you've ever really messed up your checkbook register, you may take some comfort from one accountant's mistake at Fidelity Investments. The accountant failed to include a minus sign while doing a calculation, making what was actually a $1.3 billion loss look like a $1.3 billion gain—yes, *billion!* Fortunately, like most accounting errors, it was detected before any real harm was done.

No one expects that kind of mistake at a company like Fidelity, which has sophisticated computer systems and top investment managers. In explaining the mistake to shareholders, a spokesperson wrote, "Some people have asked how, in this age of technology, such a mistake could be made. While many of our processes are computerized, accounting systems are complex and dictate that some steps must be handled manually by our managers and accountants, and people can make mistakes."

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 3 . . .

- **Why Accuracy Matters** *(p. 109)*
- **Keeping Score** *(p. 115)*
- **Boosting Microsoft's Profits** *(p. 119)*

preview of chapter 3

As indicated in the Feature Story, a reliable information system is a necessity for any company. The purpose of this chapter is to explain and illustrate the features of an accounting information system. The organization and content of the chapter are as follows.

The Accounting Information System

Accounting Transactions	The Account	Steps in the Recording Process	The Recording Process Illustrated	The Trial Balance
• Analyzing transactions • Summary of transactions	• Debits and credits • Debit and credit procedures • Stockholders' equity relationships • Summary of debit/credit rules	• The journal • The ledger • Chart of accounts • Posting	• Summary illustration of journalizing and posting	• Limitations of a trial balance

the navigator

The Accounting Information System

The system of collecting and processing transaction data and communicating financial information to decision makers is known as the **accounting information system**. Factors that shape these systems include: the nature of the company's business, the types of transactions, the size of the company, the volume of data, and the information demands of management and others.

Most businesses use computerized accounting systems—sometimes referred to as electronic data processing (EDP) systems. These systems handle all the steps involved in the recording process, from initial data entry to preparation of the financial statements. In order to remain competitive, companies continually improve their accounting systems to provide accurate and timely data for decision making. For example, in a recent annual report, Tootsie Roll states, "We also invested in additional processing and data storage hardware during the year. We view information technology as a key strategic tool, and are committed to deploying leading edge technology in this area." In addition, many companies have upgraded their accounting information systems in response to the requirements of Sarbanes-Oxley.

In this chapter, we focus on a manual accounting system because the accounting concepts and principles do not change whether a system is computerized or manual, and manual systems are easier to illustrate.

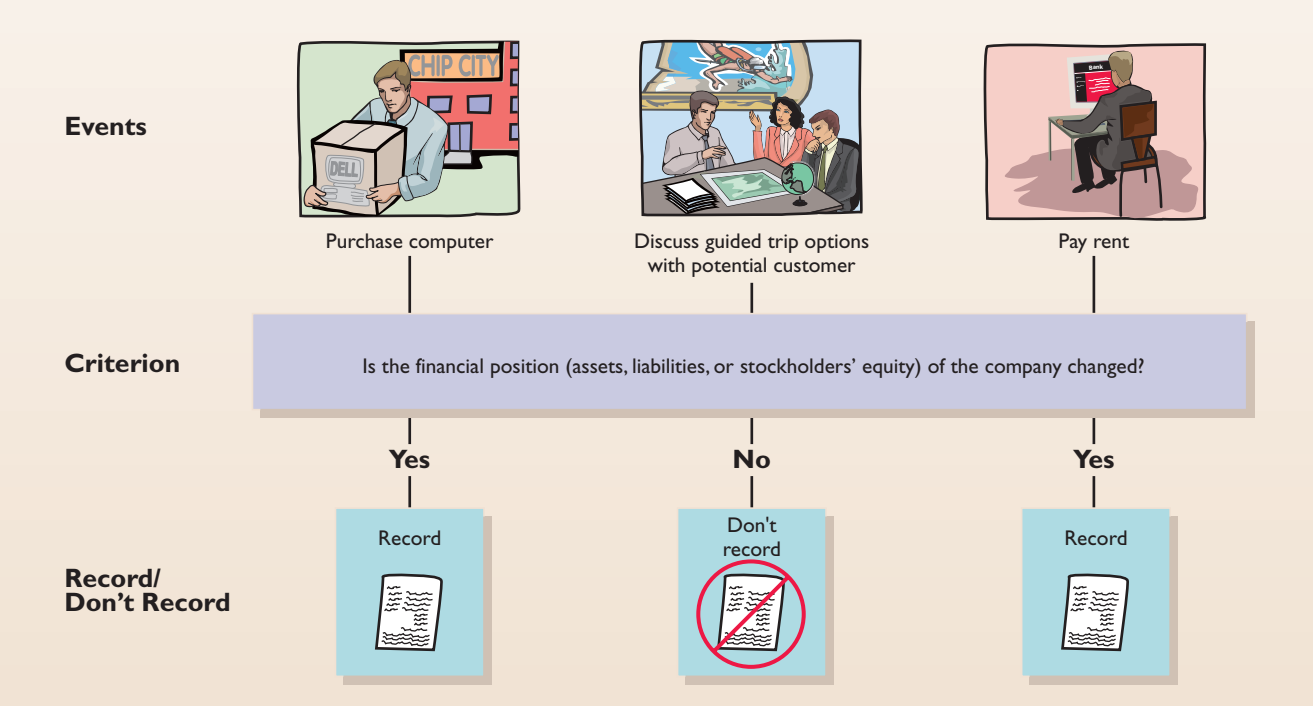
Accounting Transactions

To use an accounting information system, you need to know which economic events to recognize (record). Not all events are recorded and reported in the financial statements. For example, suppose General Motors hired a new employee or purchased a new computer. Are these events entered in its accounting records? The first event would not be recorded, but the second event would. We call economic events that require recording in the financial statements **accounting transactions**.

An accounting transaction occurs when assets, liabilities, or stockholders' equity items change as a result of some economic event. The purchase of a

computer by General Motors, the payment of rent by Microsoft, and the sale of a multi-day guided trip by Sierra Corporation are examples of events that change a company's assets, liabilities, or stockholders' equity. Illustration 3-1 summarizes the decision process companies use to decide whether or not to record economic events.

Illustration 3-1
Transaction identification process



ANALYZING TRANSACTIONS

In Chapter 1, you learned the basic accounting equation:

study objective 1
Analyze the effect of business transactions on the basic accounting equation.

$$\textbf{Assets} = \textbf{Liabilities} + \textbf{Stockholders' Equity}$$

In this chapter, you will learn how to analyze transactions in terms of their effect on assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity. **Transaction analysis** is the process of identifying the specific effects of economic events on the accounting equation.

The accounting equation must always balance. Each transaction has a dual (double-sided) effect on the equation. For example, if an individual asset is increased, there must be a corresponding:

Decrease in another asset, *or*
Increase in a specific liability, *or*
Increase in stockholders' equity.

Two or more items could be affected when an asset is increased. For example, if a company purchases a computer for $10,000 by paying $6,000 in cash and signing a note for $4,000, one asset (equipment) increases $10,000, another asset (cash) decreases $6,000, and a liability (notes payable) increases $4,000.

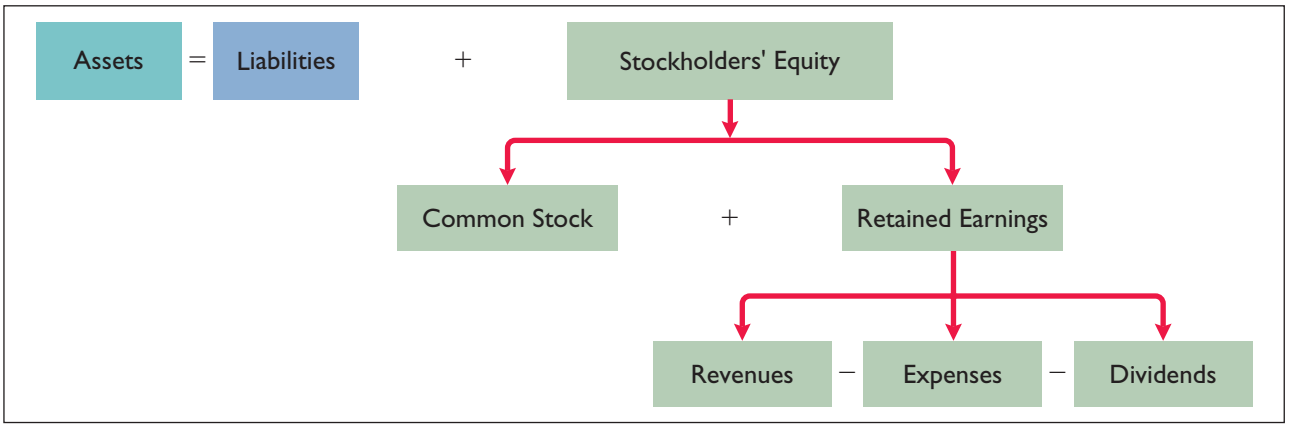
The result is that the accounting equation remains in balance—assets increased by a net $4,000 and liabilities increased by $4,000, as shown below.

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
+$10,000		+$4,000		
− 6,000				
$ 4,000	=	$4,000		

Chapter 1 presented the financial statements for Sierra Corporation for its first month. You should review those financial statements (on page 17) at this time. To illustrate how economic events affect the accounting equation, we will examine events affecting Sierra Corporation during its first month.

In order to analyze the transactions for Sierra Corporation, we will expand the basic accounting equation. This will allow us to better illustrate the impact of transactions on stockholders' equity. Recall from the balance sheets in Chapters 1 and 2 that stockholders' equity is comprised of two parts: common stock and retained earnings. Common stock is affected when the company issues new shares of stock in exchange for cash. Retained earnings is affected when the company earns revenue, incurs expenses, or pays dividends. Illustration 3-2 shows the expanded equation.

Illustration 3-2 Expanded accounting equation



If you are tempted to skip ahead after you've read a few of the following transaction analyses, don't do it. Each has something unique to teach, something you'll need later. (We assure you that we've kept them to the minimum needed!)

EVENT (1). INVESTMENT OF CASH BY STOCKHOLDERS. On October 1, cash of $10,000 is invested in the business by investors (primarily your friends and family) in exchange for $10,000 of common stock. This event is an accounting transaction because it results in an increase in both assets and stockholders' equity.

Basic Analysis	The asset Cash is increased $10,000, and stockholders' equity (specifically Common Stock) is increased $10,000.

Equation Analysis

	Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity	
	Cash	=			Common Stock	
(1)	+$10,000	=			+$10,000	Issued stock

The equation is in balance after the issuance of common stock. Keeping track of the source of each change in stockholders' equity is essential for later accounting activities. In particular, items recorded in the revenue and expense columns are used for the calculation of net income.

EVENT (2). NOTE ISSUED IN EXCHANGE FOR CASH. On October 1, Sierra borrowed $5,000 from Castle Bank by signing a 3-month, 12%, $5,000 note payable. This transaction results in an equal increase in assets and liabilities. The specific effect of this transaction and the cumulative effect of the first two transactions are:

Basic Analysis	The asset Cash is increased $5,000, and the liability Notes Payable is increased $5,000.

Equation Analysis

	Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Cash	=	Notes Payable	+	Common Stock
	$10,000				$10,000
(2)	+5,000		+$5,000		
	$15,000	=	$5,000	+	$10,000
			$15,000		

Total assets are now $15,000, and liabilities plus stockholders' equity also total $15,000.

EVENT (3). PURCHASE OF OFFICE EQUIPMENT FOR CASH. On October 2, Sierra purchased equipment by paying $5,000 cash to Superior Equipment Sales Co. This event is a transaction because an equal increase and decrease in Sierra's assets occur.

Basic Analysis	The asset Equipment is increased $5,000; the asset Cash is decreased $5,000.

Equation Analysis

	Assets			=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Cash	+	Equipment	=	Notes Payable	+	Common Stock
	$15,000				$5,000		$10,000
(3)	−5,000		+$5,000				
	$10,000	+	$5,000	=	$5,000	+	$10,000
	$15,000				$15,000		

The total assets are now $15,000, and liabilities plus stockholders' equity also total $15,000.

EVENT (4). RECEIPT OF CASH IN ADVANCE FROM CUSTOMER. On October 2, Sierra received a $1,200 cash advance from R. Knox, a client. This event is a transaction because Sierra received cash (an asset) for guide services for multi-day trips that are expected to be completed by Sierra in the future. Although Sierra received cash, **it does not record revenue until it has performed the work**. In some industries, such as the magazine and airline industries, customers are expected to prepay. These companies have a liability to the customer until they deliver the magazines or provide the flight. When the company eventually provides the product or service, it records the revenue.

Since Sierra received cash prior to performance of the service, Sierra has a liability for the work due.

Basic Analysis

The asset Cash is increased $1,200; the liability Unearned Service Revenue is increased $1,200 because the service has not been provided yet. That is, when an advance payment is received, an unearned revenue (a liability) should be recorded in order to recognize the obligation that exists.

Equation Analysis

	Assets			=	Liabilities			+	Stockholders' Equity
	Cash	+	Equipment	=	Notes Payable	+	Unearned Service Revenue	+	Common Stock
	$10,000		$5,000		$5,000				$10,000
(4)	+1,200						+$1,200		
	$11,200	+	$5,000	=	$5,000	+	$1,200	+	$10,000
	$16,200				$16,200				

EVENT (5). SERVICES PROVIDED FOR CASH. On October 3, Sierra received $10,000 in cash from Copa Company for guide services performed for a corporate event. This event is a transaction because Sierra received an asset (cash) in exchange for services.

Guide service is the principal revenue-producing activity of Sierra. **Revenue increases stockholders' equity.** This transaction, then, increases both assets and stockholders' equity.

Basic Analysis

The asset Cash is increased $10,000; the revenue Service Revenue is increased $10,000.

Equation Analysis

	Assets			=	Liabilities			+	Stockholders' Equity					
									Retained Earnings					
	Cash	+	Equipment	=	Notes Pay.	+	Unearned Serv. Rev.	+	Common Stock	+	Rev.	−	Exp.	− Div.
	$11,200		$5,000		$5,000		$1,200		$10,000					
(5)	+10,000										+$10,000			Service Revenue
	$21,200	+	$5,000	=	$5,000	+	$1,200	+	$10,000	+	$10,000			
	$26,200				$26,200									

Often companies provide services "on account." That is, they provide service for which they are paid at a later date. Revenue, however, is earned when services are performed. Therefore, revenues would increase when services are performed, even though cash has not been received. Instead of receiving cash, the company receives a different type of asset, an **account receivable**. Accounts receivable represent the right to receive payment at a later date. Suppose that Sierra had provided these services on account rather than for cash. This event would be reported using the accounting equation as:

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity	
Accounts Receivable	=			Revenues	
+$10,000				+$10,000	Service Revenue

Later, when Sierra collects the $10,000 from the customer, Accounts Receivable declines by $10,000, and Cash increases by $10,000.

Assets		=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
Cash	Accounts Receivable				
+$10,000	−$10,000				

Note that in this case, revenues are not affected by the collection of cash. Instead we record an exchange of one asset (Accounts Receivable) for a different asset (Cash).

EVENT (6). PAYMENT OF RENT. On October 3, Sierra Corporation paid its office rent for the month of October in cash, $900. This rent payment is a transaction because it results in a decrease in an asset, cash.

Rent is an expense incurred by Sierra Corporation in its effort to generate revenues. **Expenses decrease stockholders' equity.** Sierra records the rent payment by decreasing cash and increasing expenses to maintain the balance of the accounting equation.

Basic Analysis	The expense account Rent Expense is increased $900 because the payment pertains only to the current month; the asset Cash is decreased $900.

Equation Analysis

	Assets			=	Liabilities			+	Stockholders' Equity							
										Retained Earnings						
	Cash	+	Equipment	=	Notes Pay.	+	Unearned Serv. Rev.	+	Common Stock	+	Rev.	−	Exp.	−	Div.	
	$21,200		$5,000		$5,000		$1,200		$10,000		$10,000					
(6)	−900												−$900			Rent Expense
	$20,300	+	$5,000	=	$5,000	+	$1,200	+	$10,000	+	$10,000	−	$900			
	$25,300				$25,300											

EVENT (7). PURCHASE OF INSURANCE POLICY FOR CASH. On October 4, Sierra paid $600 for a one-year insurance policy that will expire next year on September 30. Payments of expenses that will benefit more than one accounting period are identified as assets called prepaid expenses or prepayments.

Basic Analysis	The asset Cash is decreased $600. The asset Prepaid Insurance is increased $600.

Equation Analysis

	Assets					=	Liabilities			+	Stockholders' Equity						
												Retained Earnings					
	Cash	+	Prepaid Insurance	+	Equipment	=	Notes Pay.	+	Unearned Serv. Rev.	+	Common Stock	+	Rev.	−	Exp.	−	Div.
	$20,300				$5,000		$5,000		$1,200		$10,000		$10,000		$900		
(7)	−600		+$600														
	$19,700	+	$600	+	$5,000	=	$5,000	+	$1,200	+	$10,000	+	$10,000	−	$900		
	$25,300						$25,300										

The balance in total assets did not change; one asset account decreased by the same amount that another increased.

EVENT (8). PURCHASE OF SUPPLIES ON ACCOUNT. On October 5, Sierra purchased supplies on account from Aero Supply for $2,500. In this case, "on account" means that the company receives goods or services that it will pay for at a later date.

Basic Analysis	The asset Supplies is increased $2,500; the liability Accounts Payable is increased $2,500.

Equation Analysis

	Assets					=	Liabilities			+	Stockholders' Equity				
				Prepd.	Equip-		Notes		Accounts		Unearned	Common	Retained Earnings		
	Cash	+	Supplies	+ Insur.	+ ment	=	Pay.	+	Payable	+	Serv. Rev.	+ Stock	+ Rev.	− Exp.	− Div.
	$19,700			$600	$5,000		$5,000				$1,200	$10,000	$10,000	$900	
(8)			+$2,500						+$2,500						
	$19,700	+	$2,500	+ $600	+ $5,000	=	$5,000	+	$2,500	+	$1,200	+ $10,000	+ $10,000	− $900	
	$27,800						$27,800								

EVENT (9). HIRING OF NEW EMPLOYEES. On October 9, Sierra hired four new employees to begin work on October 15. Each employee will receive a weekly salary of $500 for a five-day work week, payable every two weeks. Employees will receive their first paychecks on October 26. On the date Sierra hires the employees, there is no effect on the accounting equation because the assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity of the company have not changed.

Basic Analysis	An accounting transaction has not occurred. There is only an agreement that the employees will begin work on October 15. (See Event (11) for the first payment.)

EVENT (10). PAYMENT OF DIVIDEND. On October 20, Sierra paid a $500 dividend. **Dividends** are a reduction of stockholders' equity but not an expense. Dividends are not included in the calculation of net income. Instead, a dividend is a distribution of the company's assets to its stockholders.

Basic Analysis	The dividends account is increased $500; the asset Cash is decreased $500.

Equation Analysis

	Assets					=	Liabilities			+	Stockholders' Equity				
			Sup-	Prepd.	Equip-		Notes		Accts.		Unearned	Common	Retained Earnings		
	Cash	+	plies	+ Insur.	+ ment	=	Pay.	+	Pay.	+	Serv. Rev.	+ Stock	+ Rev.	− Exp.	− Div.
	$19,700		$2,500	$600	$5,000		$5,000		$2,500		$1,200	$10,000	$10,000	$900	
(10)	−500														− $500
	$19,200	+	$2,500	+ $600	+ $5,000	=	$5,000	+	$2,500	+	$1,200	+ $10,000	+ $10,000	− $900	− $500
	$27,300						$27,300								

EVENT (11). PAYMENT OF CASH FOR EMPLOYEE SALARIES. Employees have worked two weeks, earning $4,000 in salaries, which were paid on October 26.

Salaries Expense is an expense that reduces stockholders' equity. This event is a transaction because assets and stockholders' equity are affected.

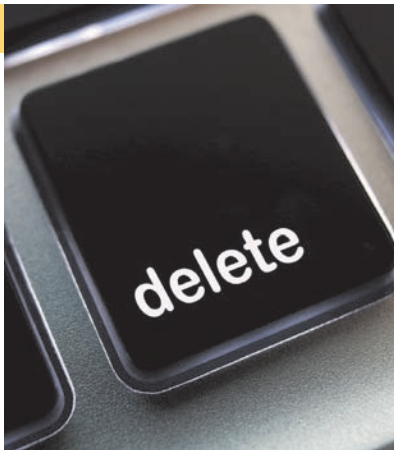
Basic Analysis	The asset Cash is decreased $4,000; the expense account Salaries Expense is increased $4,000.

Equation Analysis

	Assets				=	Liabilities			+	Stockholders' Equity						
											Retained Earnings					
	Cash	+ Supplies	+ Prepd. Insur.	+ Equipment	=	Notes Pay.	+ Accts. Pay.	+ Unearned Serv. Rev.	+	Common Stock	+ Rev.	− Exp.	− Div.		
	$19,200	$2,500	$600	$5,000		$5,000	$2,500	$1,200		$10,000	$10,000	$ 900	$500		
(11)	−4,000											− 4,000		Salaries Expense	
	$15,200	+ $2,500	+ $600	+ $5,000	=	$5,000	+ $2,500	+ $1,200	+	$10,000	+ $10,000	− $4,900	− $500		
		$23,300						$23,300							

Investor Insight

Why Accuracy Matters



While most companies record transactions very carefully, the reality is that mistakes still happen. For example, bank regulators fined Bank One Corporation (now Chase) $1.8 million because they felt that the unreliability of the bank's accounting system caused it to violate regulatory requirements.

Also, in recent years Fannie Mae, the government-chartered mortgage association, announced a series of large accounting errors. These announcements caused alarm among investors, regulators, and politicians because they fear that the errors may suggest larger, undetected problems. This is important because the home-mortgage market depends on Fannie Mae to buy hundreds of billions of dollars of mortgages each year from banks, thus enabling the banks to issue new mortgages.

Finally, before a major overhaul of its accounting system, the financial records of Waste Management Company were in such disarray that of the company's 57,000 employees, 10,000 were receiving pay slips that were in error.

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 was created to minimize the occurrence of errors like these by increasing every employee's responsibility for accurate financial reporting.

? In order for these companies to prepare and issue financial statements, their accounting equations (debits and credits) must have been in balance at year-end. How could these errors or misstatements have occurred? (See page 158.)

SUMMARY OF TRANSACTIONS

Illustration 3-3 (page 110) summarizes the transactions of Sierra Corporation to show their cumulative effect on the basic accounting equation. It includes the transaction number in the first column on the left. The right-most column shows the specific effect of any transaction that affects stockholders' equity. Remember that Event (9) did not result in a transaction, so no entry is included for that event. The illustration demonstrates three important points:

1. Each transaction is analyzed in terms of its effect on assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity.
2. The two sides of the equation must always be equal.
3. The cause of each change in stockholders' equity must be indicated.

Illustration 3-3 Summary of transactions

	Assets				=	Liabilities			+	Stockholders' Equity					
											Retained Earnings				
	Cash	+ Supplies	+ Prepd. Insur.	+ Equipment	=	Notes Pay.	+ Accts. Pay.	+ Unearned Serv. Rev.	+	Common Stock	+ Rev.	− Exp.	− Div.	
(1)	+$10,000				=					+$10,000				Issued stock
(2)	+5,000					+$5,000								
(3)	−5,000			+$5,000										
(4)	+1,200							+$1,200						
(5)	+10,000										+$10,000			Service Revenue
(6)	−900											−$ 900		Rent Expense
(7)	−600		+$600											
(8)		+$2,500					+ $2,500							
(10)	−500												−$500	Dividends
(11)	−4,000											−4,000		Salaries Expense
	$15,200	+ $2,500	+ $600	+ $5,000	=	$5,000	+ $2,500	+ $1,200	+	$10,000	+ $10,000	− $4,900	− $500	
	$23,300					$23,300								

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has an accounting transaction occurred?	Details of the event	Accounting equation	If the event affected assets, liabilities, or stockholders' equity, then record as a transaction.

before you go on...

TRANSACTION ANALYSIS

Do it! A tabular analysis of the transactions made by Roberta Mendez & Co., a certified public accounting firm, for the month of August is shown below. Each increase and decrease in stockholders' equity is explained.

	Assets			=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity					
								Retained Earnings				
	Cash	+	Equipment	=	Accounts Payable	+	Common Stock	+	Revenue	−	Expenses	
1.	+$25,000						+$25,000					Issued stock
2.			+$7,000	=	+$7,000							
3.	+8,000								+$8,000			Service Revenue
4.	−850										−$850	Rent Expense
	$32,150	+	$7,000	=	$7,000	+	$25,000	+	$8,000	−	$850	
	$39,150				$39,150							

Action Plan

- Analyze the tabular analysis to determine the nature and effect of each transaction.
- Keep the accounting equation in balance.
- Remember that a change in an asset will require a change in another asset, a liability, or in stockholders' equity.

Describe each transaction that occurred for the month.

Solution

1. The company issued shares of stock to stockholders for $25,000 cash.
2. The company purchased $7,000 of equipment on account.
3. The company received $8,000 of cash in exchange for services performed.
4. The company paid $850 for this month's rent.

Related exercise material: **BE3-1, BE3-2, BE3-3, Do it! 3-1, E3-1, E3-2, E3-3,** and **E3-4.**

the navigator

The Account

study objective 2

Explain what an account is and how it helps in the recording process.

Rather than using a tabular summary like the one in Illustration 3-3 for Sierra Corporation, an accounting information system uses accounts. An **account** is an individual accounting record of increases and decreases in a specific asset, liability, stockholders' equity, revenue, or expense item. For example, Sierra Corporation has separate accounts for Cash, Accounts Receivable, Accounts Payable, Service Revenue, Salaries Expense, and so on. (Note that whenever we are referring to a specific account, we capitalize the name.)

In its simplest form, an account consists of three parts: (1) the title of the account, (2) a left or debit side, and (3) a right or credit side. Because the alignment of these parts of an account resembles the letter T, it is referred to as a **T account**. The basic form of an account is shown in Illustration 3-4.

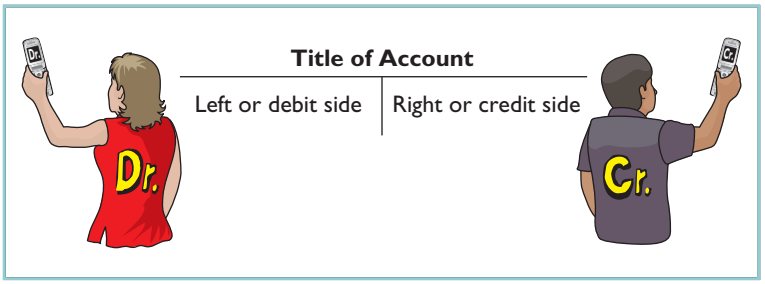


Illustration 3-4 Basic form of account

We use this form of account often throughout this book to explain basic accounting relationships.

DEBITS AND CREDITS

study objective 3

Define debits and credits and explain how they are used to record business transactions.

The term **debit** indicates the left side of an account, and **credit** indicates the right side. They are commonly abbreviated as **Dr.** for debit and **Cr.** for credit. They **do not** mean increase or decrease, as is commonly thought. We use the terms *debit* and *credit* repeatedly in the recording process to describe **where** entries are made in accounts. For example, the act of entering an amount on the left side of an account is called **debiting** the account. Making an entry on the right side is **crediting** the account.

When comparing the totals of the two sides, an account shows a **debit balance** if the total of the debit amounts exceeds the credits. An account shows a **credit balance** if the credit amounts exceed the debits. Note the position of the debit side and credit side in Illustration 3-4.

The procedure of recording debits and credits in an account is shown in Illustration 3-5 for the transactions affecting the Cash account of Sierra Corporation. The data are taken from the Cash column of the tabular summary in Illustration 3-3.

Tabular Summary

Cash
$10,000
5,000
–5,000
1,200
10,000
–900
–600
–500
–4,000
$15,200

Account Form

Cash			
(Debits)	10,000	(Credits)	5,000
	5,000		900
	1,200		600
	10,000		500
			4,000
Balance (Debit)	15,200		

Illustration 3-5 Tabular summary and account form for Sierra Corporation's Cash account

Every positive item in the tabular summary represents a receipt of cash; every negative amount represents a payment of cash. **Notice that in the account form we record the increases in cash as debits, and the decreases in cash as credits.** For example, the $10,000 receipt of cash (in red) is debited to Cash, and the −$5,000 payment of cash (in blue) is credited to Cash.

Having increases on one side and decreases on the other reduces recording errors and helps in determining the totals of each side of the account as well as the account balance. The balance is determined by netting the two sides (subtracting one amount from the other). The account balance, a debit of $15,200, indicates that Sierra had $15,200 more increases than decreases in cash. That is, since it started with a balance of zero, it has $15,200 in its Cash account.

International Note Rules for accounting for specific events sometimes differ across countries. For example, European companies rely less on historical cost and more on fair value than U.S. companies. Despite the differences, the double-entry accounting system is the basis of accounting systems worldwide.

DEBIT AND CREDIT PROCEDURES

Each transaction must affect two or more accounts to keep the basic accounting equation in balance. In other words, **for each transaction, debits must equal credits**. The equality of debits and credits provides the basis for the double-entry accounting system.

Under the **double-entry system**, the two-sided effect of each transaction is recorded in appropriate accounts. This system provides a logical method for recording transactions. The double-entry system also helps to ensure the accuracy of the recorded amounts and helps to detect errors such as those at Fidelity Investments as discussed in the Feature Story. If every transaction is recorded with equal debits and credits, then the sum of all the debits to the accounts must equal the sum of all the credits. The double-entry system for determining the equality of the accounting equation is much more efficient than the plus/minus procedure used earlier.

Dr./Cr. Procedures for Assets and Liabilities

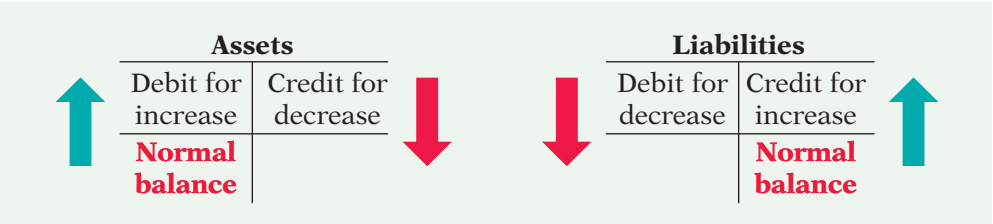
In Illustration 3-5 for Sierra Corporation, increases in Cash—an asset—were entered on the left side, and decreases in Cash were entered on the right side. We know that both sides of the basic equation (Assets = Liabilities + Stockholders' Equity) must be equal. It therefore follows that increases and decreases in liabilities will have to be recorded *opposite from* increases and decreases in assets. Thus, increases in liabilities must be entered on the right or credit side, and decreases in liabilities must be entered on the left or debit side. The effects that debits and credits have on assets and liabilities are summarized in Illustration 3-6.

Illustration 3-6 Debit and credit effects—assets and liabilities

Debits	Credits
Increase assets	Decrease assets
Decrease liabilities	Increase liabilities

Asset accounts normally show debit balances. That is, debits to a specific asset account should exceed credits to that account. Likewise, **liability accounts normally show credit balances**. That is, credits to a liability account should exceed debits to that account. The **normal balances** may be diagrammed as in Illustration 3-7.

Illustration 3-7 Normal balances—assets and liabilities



Knowing which is the normal balance in an account may help when you are trying to identify errors. For example, a credit balance in an asset account, such as Land, or a debit balance in a liability account, such as Salaries Payable, usually indicates errors in recording. Occasionally, however, an abnormal balance may be correct. The Cash account, for example, will have a credit balance when a company has overdrawn its bank balance (written a check that "bounced"). In automated accounting systems, the computer is programmed to flag violations of the normal balance and to print out error or exception reports. In manual systems, careful visual inspection of the accounts is required to detect normal balance problems.

Helpful Hint The normal balance is the side where increases in the account are recorded.

Dr./Cr. Procedures for Stockholders' Equity

In Chapter 1, we indicated that stockholders' equity is comprised of two parts: common stock and retained earnings. In the transaction events earlier in this chapter, you saw that revenues, expenses, and the payment of dividends affect retained earnings. Therefore, the subdivisions of stockholders' equity are: common stock, retained earnings, dividends, revenues, and expenses.

COMMON STOCK. Common stock is issued to investors in exchange for the stockholders' investment. The common stock account is increased by credits and decreased by debits. For example, when cash is invested in the business, cash is debited and common stock is credited. The effects of debits and credits on the common stock account are shown in Illustration 3-8.

Debits	Credits
Decrease Common Stock	Increase Common Stock

Illustration 3-8 Debit and credit effects–Common Stock

The normal balance in the Common Stock account may be diagrammed as in Illustration 3-9.

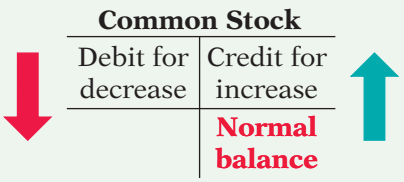


Illustration 3-9 Normal balance–Common Stock

RETAINED EARNINGS. Retained earnings is net income that is retained in the business. It represents the portion of stockholders' equity that has been accumulated through the profitable operation of the company. Retained earnings is increased by credits (for example, by net income) and decreased by debits (for example, by a net loss), as shown in Illustration 3-10.

Debits	Credits
Decrease Retained Earnings	Increase Retained Earnings

Illustration 3-10 Debit and credit effects–Retained Earnings

The normal balance for Retained Earnings may be diagrammed as in Illustration 3-11.

Illustration 3-11 Normal balance—Retained Earnings

Retained Earnings	
Debit for decrease	Credit for increase
	Normal balance

DIVIDENDS. A dividend is a distribution by a corporation to its stockholders. The most common form of distribution is a cash dividend. Dividends result in a reduction of the stockholders' claims on retained earnings. Because dividends reduce stockholders' equity, increases in the Dividends account are recorded with debits. As shown in Illustration 3-12, the Dividends account normally has a debit balance.

Illustration 3-12 Normal balance—Dividends

Dividends	
Debit for increase	Credit for decrease
Normal balance	

REVENUES AND EXPENSES. When a company earns revenues, stockholders' equity is increased. Revenue accounts are increased by credits and decreased by debits.

Expenses decrease stockholders' equity. Thus, expense accounts are increased by debits and decreased by credits. The effects of debits and credits on revenues and expenses are shown in Illustration 3-13.

Illustration 3-13 Debit and credit effects—revenues and expenses

Debits	Credits
Decrease revenue	Increase revenue
Increase expenses	Decrease expenses

Credits to revenue accounts should exceed debits; debits to expense accounts should exceed credits. Thus, **revenue accounts normally show credit balances, and expense accounts normally show debit balances**. The normal balances may be diagrammed as in Illustration 3-14.

Illustration 3-14 Normal balances—revenues and expenses

Expenses	
Debit for increase	Credit for decrease
Normal balance	

Revenues	
Debit for decrease	Credit for increase
	Normal balance

Investor Insight

Keeping Score

The Chicago Cubs baseball team has these major revenue and expense accounts:

Revenues	Expenses
Admissions (ticket sales)	Players' salaries
Concessions	Administrative salaries
Television and radio	Travel
Advertising	Ballpark maintenance

Do you think that the Chicago Bears football team would be likely to have the same major revenue and expense accounts as the Cubs? (See page 158.)

STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY RELATIONSHIPS

Companies report the subdivisions of stockholders' equity in various places in the financial statements:

- Common stock and retained earnings: in the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet.
- Dividends: on the retained earnings statement.
- Revenues and expenses: on the income statement.

Dividends, revenues, and expenses are eventually transferred to retained earnings at the end of the period. As a result, a change in any one of these three items affects stockholders' equity. Illustration 3-15 shows the relationships of the accounts affecting stockholders' equity.

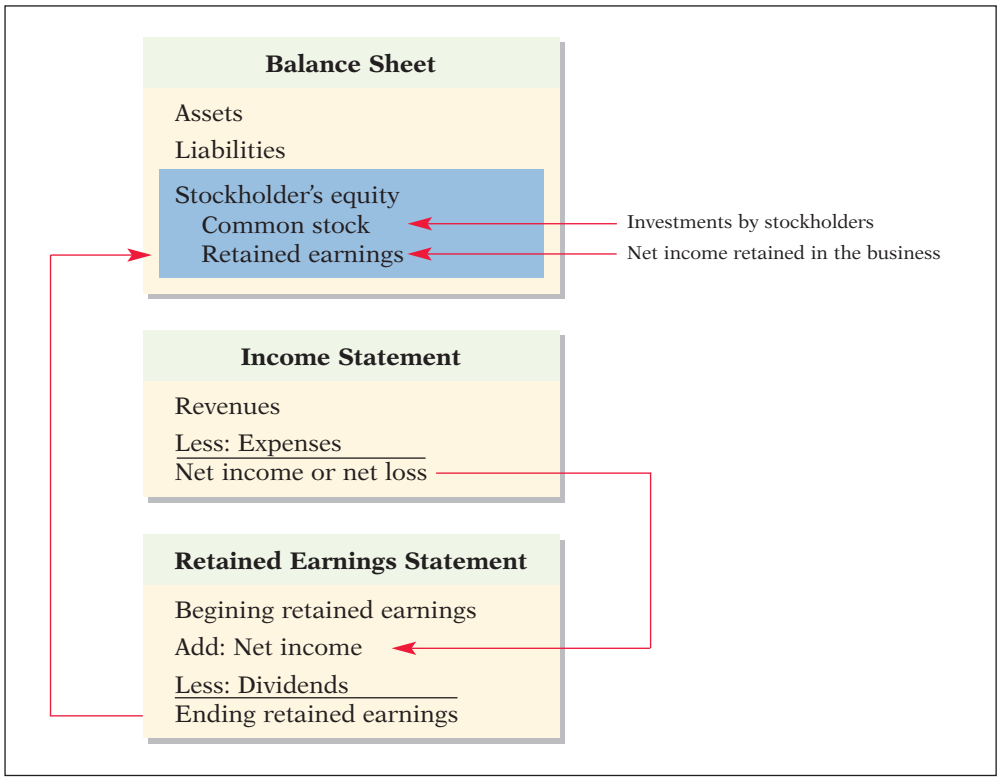
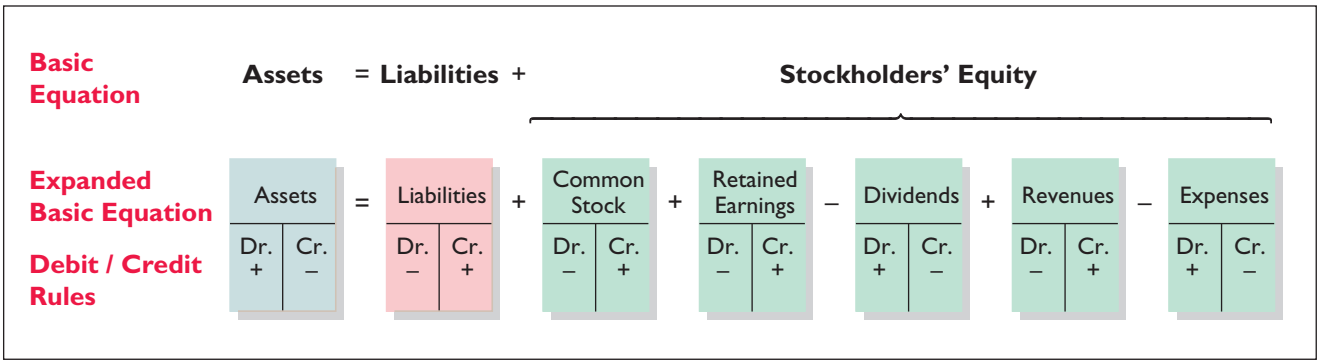


Illustration 3-15 Stockholders' equity relationships

SUMMARY OF DEBIT/CREDIT RULES

Illustration 3-16 summarizes the debit/credit rules and effects on each type of account. **Study this diagram carefully.** It will help you understand the fundamentals of the double-entry system. No matter what the transaction, total debits must equal total credits in order to keep the accounting equation in balance.

Illustration 3-16 Summary of debit/credit rules



before you go on...

DEBITS AND CREDITS FOR BALANCE SHEET ACCOUNTS

Do it! Kate Browne, president of Hair It Is Inc., has just rented space in a shopping mall for the purpose of opening and operating a beauty salon. Long before opening day and before purchasing equipment, hiring assistants, and remodeling the space, Kate was strongly advised to set up a double-entry set of accounting records in which to record all of her business transactions.

Identify the balance sheet accounts that Hair It Is Inc. will likely need to record the transactions necessary to establish and open for business. Also, indicate whether the normal balance of each account is a debit or a credit.

Action Plan

- First identify asset accounts for each different type of asset invested in the business.
- Then identify liability accounts for debts incurred by the business.
- Remember that Hair It Is Inc. will need only one stockholders' equity account for common stock when it begins the business. The other stockholders' equity accounts will be needed only after the business is operating.

Solution

Hair It Is Inc. would likely need the following accounts in which to record the transactions necessary to establish and ready the beauty salon for opening day: Cash (debit balance); Equipment (debit balance); Supplies (debit balance); Accounts Payable (credit balance); Notes Payable (credit balance), if the business borrows money; and Common Stock (credit balance).

Related exercise material: **BE3-4, BE3-5, Do it! 3-2,** and **E3-7.**

the navigator

Steps in the Recording Process

study objective 4

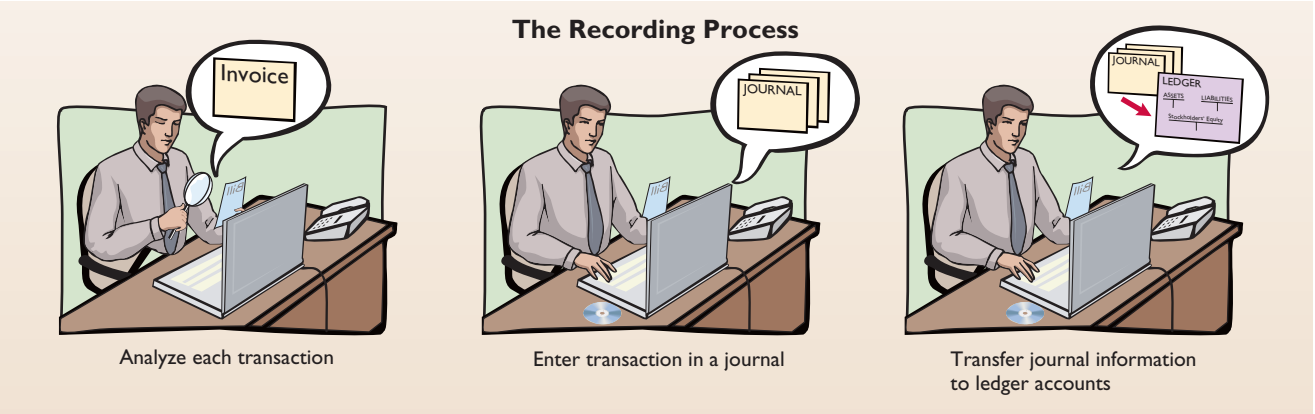
Identify the basic steps in the recording process.

Although it is possible to enter transaction information directly into the accounts, few businesses do so. Practically every business uses these basic steps in the recording process:

1. Analyze each transaction in terms of its effect on the accounts.
2. Enter the transaction information in a journal.
3. Transfer the journal information to the appropriate accounts in the ledger.

The actual sequence of events begins with the transaction. Evidence of the transaction comes in the form of a **source document**, such as a sales slip, a check, a bill, or a cash register tape. This evidence is analyzed to determine the effect of the transaction on specific accounts. The transaction is then entered in the **journal**. Finally, the journal entry is transferred to the designated accounts in the **ledger**. The sequence of events in the recording process is shown in Illustration 3-17.

Illustration 3-17 The recording process



THE JOURNAL

study objective 5

Explain what a journal is and how it helps in the recording process.

Transactions are initially recorded in chronological order in **journals** before they are transferred to the accounts. For each transaction the journal shows the debit and credit effects on specific accounts. (In a computerized system, journals are kept as files, and accounts are recorded in computer databases.)

Companies may use various kinds of journals, but every company has at least the most basic form of journal, a **general journal**. **The journal makes three significant contributions to the recording process:**

1. It discloses in one place the **complete effect of a transaction**.
2. It provides a **chronological record** of transactions.
3. It **helps to prevent or locate errors** because the debit and credit amounts for each entry can be readily compared.

Entering transaction data in the journal is known as **journalizing**. To illustrate the technique of journalizing, let's look at the first three transactions of Sierra Corporation in equation form.

Ethics Note Business documents provide evidence that transactions actually occurred. International Outsourcing Services, LLC, was accused of submitting fraudulent documents (store coupons) to companies such as Kraft Foods and PepsiCo for reimbursement of as much as $250 million. Ensuring that all recorded transactions are backed up by proper business documents reduces the likelihood of fraudulent activity.

On October 1, Sierra issued common stock in exchange for $10,000 cash:

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity	
				Common Stock	
Cash	=				
+$10,000				+$10,000	Issued stock

On October 1, Sierra borrowed $5,000 by signing a note:

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
Cash	=	Notes Payable		
+$5,000		+$5,000		

On October 2, Sierra purchased equipment for $5,000:

Assets		=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
Cash	Equipment				
−$5,000	+$5,000				

Sierra makes separate journal entries for each transaction. A complete entry consists of: (1) the date of the transaction, (2) the accounts and amounts to be debited and credited, and (3) a brief explanation of the transaction. These transactions are journalized in Illustration 3-18.

Illustration 3-18
Recording transactions in journal form

GENERAL JOURNAL

Date		Account Titles and Explanation	Debit	Credit
2012				
Oct.	1	Cash	10,000	
		Common Stock		10,000
		(Issued stock for cash)		
	1	Cash	5,000	
		Notes Payable		5,000
		(Issued 3-month, 12% note payable for cash)		
	2	Equipment	5,000	
		Cash		5,000
		(Purchased equipment for cash)		

Note the following features of the journal entries.

1. The date of the transaction is entered in the Date column.
2. The account to be debited is entered first at the left. The account to be credited is then entered on the next line, indented under the line above. The indentation differentiates debits from credits and decreases the possibility of switching the debit and credit amounts.
3. The amounts for the debits are recorded in the Debit (left) column, and the amounts for the credits are recorded in the Credit (right) column.
4. A brief explanation of the transaction is given.

It is important to use correct and specific account titles in journalizing. Erroneous account titles lead to incorrect financial statements. Some flexibility exists initially in selecting account titles. The main criterion is that each title must appropriately describe the content of the account. For example, a company could use any of these account titles for recording the cost of delivery trucks: Equipment, Delivery Equipment, Delivery Trucks, or Trucks. Once the company chooses the specific title to use, however, it should record under that account title all subsequent transactions involving the account.

Accounting Across the Organization

Boosting Microsoft's Profits

Bryan Lee is head of finance at Microsoft's Home and Entertainment Division. In recent years the division lost over $4 billion, mostly due to losses on the original Xbox videogame player. With the Xbox 360 videogame player, Mr. Lee hoped the division would become profitable. He set strict goals for sales, revenue, and profit. "A manager seeking to spend more on a feature such as a disk drive has to find allies in the group to cut spending elsewhere, or identify new revenue to offset the increase," he explains.

For example, Microsoft originally designed the new Xbox to have 256 megabytes of memory. But the design department said that amount of memory wouldn't support the best special effects. The purchasing department said that adding more memory would cost $30—which was 10% of the estimated selling price of $300. But the marketing department "determined that adding the memory would let Microsoft reduce marketing costs and attract more game developers, boosting royalty revenue. It would also extend the life of the console, generating more sales." Microsoft doubled the memory to 512 megabytes.

Source: Robert A. Guth, "New Xbox Aim for Microsoft: Profitability," *Wall Street Journal* (May 24, 2005), p. C1.

? In what ways is this Microsoft division using accounting to assist in its effort to become more profitable? (See page 158.)

before you go on...

Do it! The following events occurred during the first month of business of Hair It Is Inc., Kate Browne's beauty salon:

1. Issued common stock to shareholders in exchange for $20,000 cash.
2. Purchased $4,800 of equipment on account (to be paid in 30 days).
3. Interviewed three people for the position of beautician.

In what form (type of record) should the company record these three activities? Prepare the entries to record the transactions.

JOURNAL ENTRIES

Action Plan

- Record the transactions in a journal, which is a chronological record of the transactions.
- Make sure to provide a complete and accurate representation of the transactions' effects on the assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity of the business.

Solution

Each transaction that is recorded is entered in the general journal. The three activities are recorded as follows.

1. Cash	20,000	
Common Stock		20,000
(Issued stock for cash)		
2. Equipment	4,800	
Accounts Payable		4,800
(Purchased equipment on account)		
3. No entry because no transaction occurred.		

Related exercise material: **BE3-6, BE3-9, Do it! 3-3, E3-6, E3-8,** and **E3-9.**

the navigator

THE LEDGER

study objective 6

Explain what a ledger is and how it helps in the recording process.

The entire group of accounts maintained by a company is referred to collectively as the **ledger**. The ledger keeps in one place all the information about changes in specific account balances.

Companies may use various kinds of ledgers, but every company has a general ledger. A **general ledger** contains all the assets, liabilities, stockholders' equity, revenue, and expense accounts, as shown in Illustration 3-19 (page 120). Whenever we use the term *ledger* in this textbook without additional specification, it will mean the general ledger.

Illustration 3-19 The general ledger

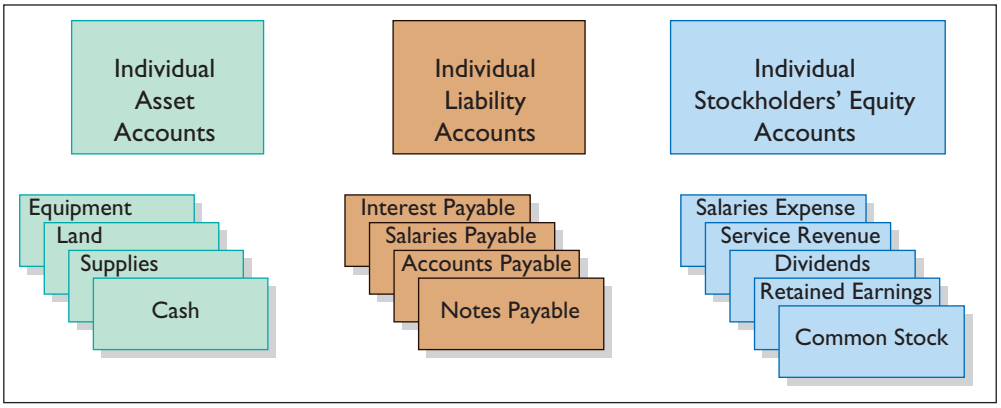


CHART OF ACCOUNTS

The number and type of accounts used differ for each company, depending on the size, complexity, and type of business. For example, the number of accounts depends on the amount of detail desired by management. The management of one company may want one single account for all types of utility expense. Another may keep separate expense accounts for each type of utility expenditure, such as gas, electricity, and water. A small corporation like Sierra Corporation will not have many accounts compared with a corporate giant like Ford Motor Company. Sierra may be able to manage and report its activities in 20 to 30 accounts, whereas Ford requires thousands of accounts to keep track of its worldwide activities.

Most companies list the accounts in a **chart of accounts**. They may create new accounts as needed during the life of the business. Illustration 3-20 shows the chart of accounts for Sierra Corporation in the order that they are typically listed (assets, liabilities, stockholders' equity, revenues, and expenses). **Accounts shown in red are used in this chapter**; accounts shown in black are explained in later chapters.

Illustration 3-20 Chart of accounts for Sierra Corporation

SIERRA CORPORATION—CHART OF ACCOUNTS

Assets	Liabilities	Stockholders' Equity	Revenues	Expenses
Cash	**Notes Payable**	**Common Stock**	**Service Revenue**	**Salaries Expense**
Accounts Receivable	**Accounts Payable**	**Retained Earnings**		Supplies Expense
Supplies	Interest Payable	**Dividends**		**Rent Expense**
Prepaid Insurance	**Unearned Service Revenue**	Income Summary		Insurance Expense
Equipment	Salaries Payable			Interest Expense
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment				Depreciation Expense

study objective 7

Explain what posting is and how it helps in the recording process.

POSTING

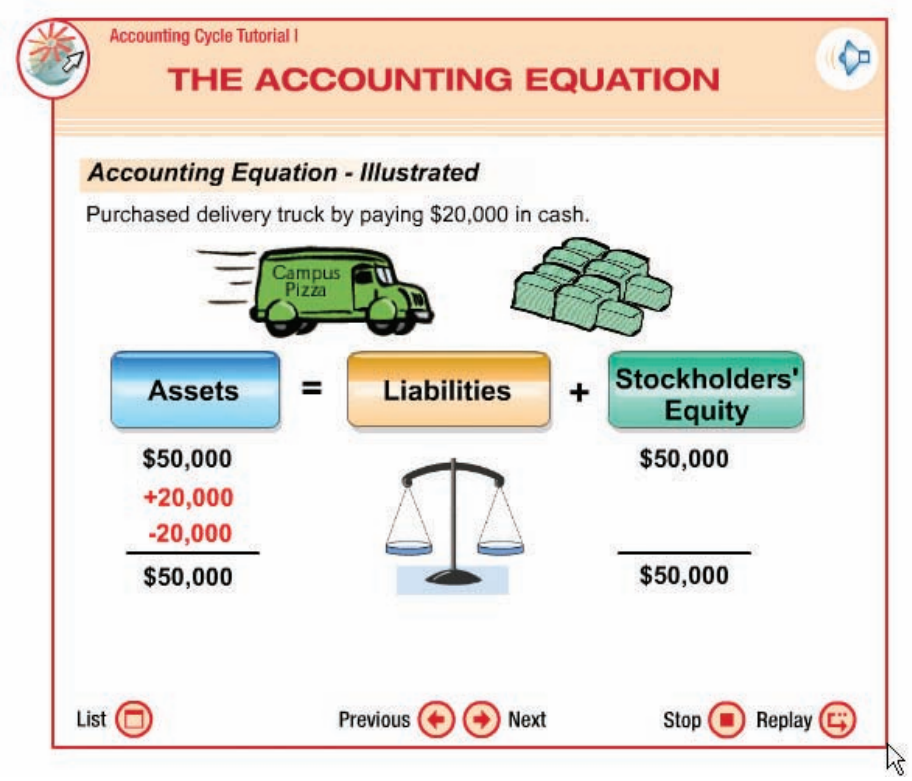
The procedure of transferring journal entry amounts to ledger accounts is called **posting**. **This phase of the recording process accumulates the effects of journalized transactions in the individual accounts.** Posting involves these steps:

1. In the ledger, enter in the appropriate columns of the debited account(s) the date and debit amount shown in the journal.
2. In the ledger, enter in the appropriate columns of the credited account(s) the date and credit amount shown in the journal.

The Recording Process Illustrated

Illustrations 3-21 through 3-31 on the following pages show the basic steps in the recording process using the October transactions of Sierra Corporation. Sierra's accounting period is a month. A basic analysis and a debit–credit analysis precede the journalizing and posting of each transaction. Study these transaction

analyses carefully. **The purpose of transaction analysis is first to identify the type of account involved and then to determine whether a debit or a credit to the account is required.** You should always perform this type of analysis before preparing a journal entry. Doing so will help you understand the journal entries discussed in this chapter as well as more complex journal entries to be described in later chapters.



WILEY PLUS

Accounting Cycle Tutorial

The diagrams in Illustrations 3-21 to 3-31 review the accounting cycle. If you would like additional practice, an Accounting Cycle Tutorial is available on WileyPLUS. The illustration to the left is an example of a screen from the tutorial.

Event 1 On October 1, stockholders invest $10,000 cash in an outdoor guide service company to be known as Sierra Corporation.

Basic Analysis The asset Cash is increased $10,000, and stockholders' equity (specifically Common Stock) is increased $10,000.

Equation Analysis

	Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Cash	=			Common Stock
(1)	+$10,000				+$10,000 Issued stock

Debit–Credit Analysis Debits increase assets: debit Cash $10,000.
Credits increase stockholders' equity: credit Common Stock $10,000.

Journal Entry

Oct. 1	Cash	10,000	
	Common Stock		10,000
	(Issued stock for cash)		

Posting

Cash			
Oct. 1	10,000		

Common Stock			
		Oct. 1	10,000

Illustration 3-21 Investment of cash by stockholders

Illustration 3-22 Issue of note payable

Event 2 On October 1, Sierra borrows cash of $5,000 by signing a 3-month, 12%, $5,000 note payable.

Basic Analysis

The asset Cash is increased $5,000, and the liability Notes Payable is increased $5,000.

Equation Analysis

	Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Cash	=	Notes Payable		
(2)	+$5,000		+$5,000		

Debit–Credit Analysis

Debits increase assets: debit Cash $5,000.
Credits increase liabilities: credit Notes Payable $5,000.

Journal Entry

Oct. 1	Cash	5,000	
	Notes Payable		5,000
	(Issued 3-month, 12% note payable for cash)		

Posting

Cash			
Oct. 1	10,000		
1	5,000		

Notes Payable			
		Oct. 1	5,000

Illustration 3-23 Purchase of equipment

Event 3 On October 2, Sierra used $5,000 cash to purchase equipment.

Basic Analysis

The asset Equipment is increased $5,000; the asset Cash is decreased $5,000.

Equation Analysis

	Assets			=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Cash	+	Equipment				
(3)	–$5,000		+$5,000				

Debit–Credit Analysis

Debits increase assets: debit Equipment $5,000.
Credits decrease assets: credit Cash $5,000.

Journal Entry

Oct. 2	Equipment	5,000	
	Cash		5,000
	(Purchased equipment for cash)		

Posting

Cash			
Oct. 1	10,000	Oct. 2	5,000
1	5,000		

Equipment			
Oct. 2	5,000		

Event 4

On October 2, Sierra received a $1,200 cash advance from R. Knox, a client, for guide services for multi-day trips that are expected to be completed in the future.

Basic Analysis

The asset Cash is increased $1,200; the liability Unearned Service Revenue is increased $1,200 because the service has not been provided yet. That is, when an advance payment is received, an unearned revenue (a liability) should be recorded in order to recognize the obligation that exists.

Equation Analysis

	Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Cash	=	Unearned Serv. Rev.		
(4)	+$1,200		+$1,200		

Debit–Credit Analysis

Debits increase assets: debit Cash $1,200.
Credits increase liabilities: credit Unearned Service Revenue $1,200.

Journal Entry

Oct. 2	Cash	1,200	
	Unearned Service Revenue		1,200
	(Received advance from R. Knox for future service)		

Posting

Cash			
Oct. 1	10,000	Oct. 2	5,000
1	5,000		
2	1,200		

Unearned Service Revenue			
		Oct. 2	1,200

Illustration 3-24
Receipt of cash in advance from customer

Helpful Hint Many liabilities have the word "payable" in their title. But, note that Unearned Service Revenue is considered a liability even though the word *payable* is not used.

Event 5

On October 3, Sierra received $10,000 in cash from Copa Company for guide services provided in October.

Basic Analysis

The asset Cash is increased $10,000; the revenue Service Revenue is increased $10,000.

Equation Analysis

	Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Cash	=			Revenues
(5)	+$10,000				+$10,000 Service Revenue

Debit–Credit Analysis

Debits increase assets: debit Cash $10,000.
Credits increase revenues: credit Service Revenue $10,000.

Journal Entry

Oct. 3	Cash	10,000	
	Service Revenue		10,000
	(Received cash for services provided)		

Posting

Cash			
Oct. 1	10,000	Oct. 2	5,000
1	5,000		
2	1,200		
3	10,000		

Service Revenue			
		Oct. 3	10,000

Illustration 3-25
Services provided for cash

Illustration 3-26
Payment of rent with cash

Event 6 On October 3, Sierra paid office rent for October in cash, $900.

Basic Analysis

The expense account Rent Expense is increased $900 because the payment pertains only to the current month; the asset Cash is decreased $900.

Equation Analysis

	Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Cash	=			Expenses
(6)	–$900				–$900 Rent Expense

Debit–Credit Analysis

Debits increase expenses: debit Rent Expense $900.
Credits decrease assets: credit Cash $900.

Journal Entry

Oct. 3	Rent Expense Cash (Paid cash for October office rent)	900	900

Posting

Cash			
Oct. 1	10,000	Oct. 2	5,000
1	5,000	3	900
2	1,200		
3	10,000		

Rent Expense			
Oct. 3	900		

Illustration 3-27
Purchase of insurance policy with cash

Event 7 On October 4, Sierra paid $600 for a 1-year insurance policy that will expire next year on September 30.

Basic Analysis

The asset Cash is decreased $600. Payments of expenses that will benefit more than one accounting period are identified as prepaid expenses or prepayments. When a payment is made, an asset account is debited in order to show the service or benefit that will be received in the future. Therefore, the asset Prepaid Insurance is increased $600.

Equation Analysis

	Assets			=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Cash	+	Prepaid Insurance				
(7)	–$600		+$600				

Debit–Credit Analysis

Debits increase assets: debit Prepaid Insurance $600.
Credits decrease assets: credit Cash $600.

Journal Entry

Oct. 4	Prepaid Insurance Cash (Paid 1-year policy; effective date October 1)	600	600

Posting

Cash			
Oct. 1	10,000	Oct. 2	5,000
1	5,000	3	900
2	1,200	4	600
3	10,000		

Prepaid Insurance			
Oct. 4	600		

Illustration 3-28 Purchase of supplies on account

Event 8

On October 5, Sierra purchased an estimated 3 months of supplies on account from Aero Supply for $2,500.

Basic Analysis

The asset Supplies is increased $2,500; the liability Accounts Payable is increased $2,500.

Equation Analysis

	Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Supplies	=	Accounts Payable		
(8)	+$2,500		+$2,500		

Debit–Credit Analysis

Debits increase assets: debit Supplies $2,500.
Credits increase liabilities: credit Accounts Payable $2,500.

Journal Entry

Oct. 5	Supplies	2,500	
	Accounts Payable		2,500
	(Purchased supplies on account from Aero Supply)		

Posting

Supplies			Accounts Payable		
Oct. 5	2,500			Oct. 5	2,500

Illustration 3-29 Hiring of new employees

Event 9

On October 9, Sierra hired four employees to begin work on October 15. Each employee will receive a weekly salary of $500 for a 5-day work week, payable every 2 weeks—first payment made on October 26.

Basic Analysis

An accounting transaction has not occurred. There is only an agreement that the employees will begin work on October 15. Thus, a debit–credit analysis is not needed because there is no accounting entry. (See transaction of October 26 (Event 11) for first payment.)

Illustration 3-30
Payment of dividend

Event 10 On October 20, Sierra paid a $500 cash dividend to stockholders.

Basic Analysis
The Dividends account is increased $500; the asset Cash is decreased $500.

Equation Analysis

	Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Cash	=			Dividends
(10)	–$500				–$500

Debit–Credit Analysis
Debits increase dividends: debit Dividends $500.
Credits decrease assets: credit Cash $500.

Journal Entry

Oct. 20	Dividends	500	
	Cash		500
	(Declared and paid a cash dividend)		

Posting

Cash			
Oct. 1	10,000	Oct. 2	5,000
1	5,000	3	900
2	1,200	4	600
3	10,000	20	500

Dividends			
Oct. 20	500		

Illustration 3-31 Payment of cash for employee salaries

Event 11 On October 26, Sierra paid employee salaries of $4,000 in cash. (See October 9 event.)

Basic Analysis
The expense account Salaries Expense is increased $4,000; the asset Cash is decreased $4,000.

Equation Analysis

	Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Cash	=			Expenses
(11)	–$4,000				–$4,000 Salaries Expense

Debit–Credit Analysis
Debits increase expenses: debit Salaries Expense $4,000.
Credits decrease assets: credit Cash $4,000.

Journal Entry

Oct. 26	Salaries Expense	4,000	
	Cash		4,000
	(Paid salaries to date)		

Posting

Cash			
Oct. 1	10,000	Oct. 2	5,000
1	5,000	3	900
2	1,200	4	600
3	10,000	20	500
		26	4,000

Salaries Expense			
Oct. 26	4,000		

SUMMARY ILLUSTRATION OF JOURNALIZING AND POSTING

The journal for Sierra Corporation for the month of October is summarized in Illustration 3-32. The ledger is shown in Illustration 3-33 (on page 128) with all balances highlighted in red.

Illustration 3-32 General journal for Sierra Corporation

GENERAL JOURNAL

Date		Account Titles and Explanation	Debit	Credit
2012				
Oct.	1	Cash	10,000	
		Common Stock		10,000
		(Issued stock for cash)		
	1	Cash	5,000	
		Notes Payable		5,000
		(Issued 3-month, 12% note payable for cash)		
	2	Equipment	5,000	
		Cash		5,000
		(Purchased equipment for cash)		
	2	Cash	1,200	
		Unearned Service Revenue		1,200
		(Received advance from R. Knox for future service)		
	3	Cash	10,000	
		Service Revenue		10,000
		(Received cash for services provided)		
	3	Rent Expense	900	
		Cash		900
		(Paid cash for October office rent)		
	4	Prepaid Insurance	600	
		Cash		600
		(Paid 1-year policy; effective date October 1)		
	5	Supplies	2,500	
		Accounts Payable		2,500
		(Purchased supplies on account from Aero Supply)		
	20	Dividends	500	
		Cash		500
		(Paid a cash dividend)		
	26	Salaries Expense	4,000	
		Cash		4,000
		(Paid salaries to date)		

Illustration 3-33 General ledger for Sierra Corporation

GENERAL LEDGER

Cash

Oct.	1	10,000	Oct.	2	5,000
	1	5,000		3	900
	2	1,200		4	600
	3	10,000		20	500
				26	4,000
Bal.		15,200			

Unearned Service Revenue

			Oct.	2	1,200
			Bal.		1,200

Supplies

Oct.	5	2,500			
Bal.		2,500			

Common Stock

			Oct.	1	10,000
			Bal.		10,000

Prepaid Insurance

Oct.	4	600			
Bal.		600			

Dividends

Oct.	20	500			
Bal.		500			

Equipment

Oct.	2	5,000			
Bal.		5,000			

Service Revenue

			Oct.	3	10,000
			Bal.		10,000

Notes Payable

			Oct.	1	5,000
			Bal.		5,000

Salaries Expense

Oct.	26	4,000			
Bal.		4,000			

Accounts Payable

			Oct.	5	2,500
			Bal.		2,500

Rent Expense

Oct.	3	900			
Bal.		900			

before you go on...

POSTING

Do it! Selected transactions from the journal of Faital Inc. during its first month of operations are presented below. Post these transactions to T accounts.

Date		Account Titles	Debit	Credit
July	1	Cash	30,000	
		Common Stock		30,000
	9	Accounts Receivable	6,000	
		Service Revenue		6,000
	24	Cash	4,000	
		Accounts Receivable		4,000

Action Plan

- Journalize transactions to keep track of financial activities (receipts, payments, receivables, payables, etc.).
- To make entries useful, classify and summarize them by posting the entries to specific ledger accounts.

the navigator

Solution

Cash

July	1	30,000			
	24	4,000			

Accounts Receivable

July	9	6,000	July	24	4,000

Common Stock

			July	1	30,000

Service Revenue

			July	9	6,000

Related exercise material: **BE3-10,** **Do it!** **3-4,** and **E3-11.**

The Trial Balance

study objective 8

Explain the purposes of a trial balance.

A **trial balance** lists accounts and their balances at a given time. A company usually prepares a trial balance at the end of an accounting period. The accounts are listed in the order in which they appear in the ledger. Debit balances are listed in the left column and credit balances in the right column. The totals of the two columns must be equal.

The trial balance proves the mathematical equality of debits and credits after posting. Under the double-entry system this equality occurs when the sum of the debit account balances equals the sum of the credit account balances. **A trial balance may also uncover errors in journalizing and posting.** For example, a trial balance may well have detected the error at Fidelity Investments discussed in the Feature Story. **In addition, a trial balance is useful in the preparation of financial statements.**

These are the procedures for preparing a trial balance:

1. List the account titles and their balances.
2. Total the debit column and total the credit column.
3. Verify the equality of the two columns.

Illustration 3-34 presents the trial balance prepared from the ledger of Sierra Corporation. Note that the total debits, $28,700, equal the total credits, $28,700.

SIERRA CORPORATION
Trial Balance
October 31, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$15,200	
Supplies	2,500	
Prepaid Insurance	600	
Equipment	5,000	
Notes Payable		$ 5,000
Accounts Payable		2,500
Unearned Service Revenue		1,200
Common Stock		10,000
Dividends	500	
Service Revenue		10,000
Salaries Expense	4,000	
Rent Expense	900	
	$28,700	$28,700

Illustration 3-34 Sierra Corporation trial balance

Helpful Hint Note that the order of presentation in the trial balance is:
Assets
Liabilities
Stockholders' equity
Revenues
Expenses

LIMITATIONS OF A TRIAL BALANCE

A trial balance does not prove that all transactions have been recorded or that the ledger is correct. Numerous errors may exist even though the trial balance column totals agree. For example, the trial balance may balance even when any of the following occurs: (1) a transaction is not journalized, (2) a correct journal entry is not posted, (3) a journal entry is posted twice, (4) incorrect accounts are used in journalizing or posting, or (5) offsetting errors are made in recording the amount of a transaction. In other words, as long as equal debits and credits are posted, even to the wrong account or in the wrong amount, the total debits will equal the total credits. Nevertheless, despite these limitations, the trial balance is a useful screen for finding errors and is frequently used in practice.

Ethics Note An *error* is the result of an unintentional mistake; it is neither ethical nor unethical. An *irregularity* is an intentional misstatement, which *is* viewed as unethical.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How do you determine that debits equal credits?	All account balances	Trial balance	List the account titles and their balances; total the debit and credit columns; verify equality.

KEEPING AN EYE ON CASH

The Cash account shown below reflects all of the inflows and outflows of cash that occurred during October. We have also provided a description of each transaction that affected the Cash account.

Cash

Oct.	1	10,000	Oct.	2	5,000
	1	5,000		3	900
	2	1,200		4	600
	3	10,000		20	500
				26	4,000
Bal.		**15,200**			

1. Oct. 1 Issued stock for $10,000 cash.
2. Oct. 1 Issued note payable for $5,000 cash.
3. Oct. 2 Purchased equipment for $5,000 cash.
4. Oct. 2 Received $1,200 cash in advance from customer.
5. Oct. 3 Received $10,000 cash for services provided.
6. Oct. 3 Paid $900 cash for October rent.
7. Oct. 4 Paid $600 cash for one-year insurance policy.
8. Oct. 20 Paid $500 cash dividend to stockholders.
9. Oct. 26 Paid $4,000 cash salaries.

The Cash account and the related cash transactions indicate why cash changed during October. However, to make this information useful for analysis, it is summarized in a statement of cash flows. The statement of cash flows classifies each transaction as an operating activity, an investing activity, or a financing activity. A user of this statement can then determine the amount of cash provided by operations, the amount of cash used for investing purposes, and the amount of cash provided by financing activities.

study objective 9

Classify cash activities as operating, investing, or financing.

Operating activities are the types of activities the company performs to generate profits. Sierra Corporation is an outdoor guide business, so its operating activities involve providing guide services. Activities 4, 5, 6, 7, and 9 relate to cash received or spent to directly support its guide services.

Investing activities include the purchase or sale of long-lived assets used in operating the business, or the purchase or sale of investment securities (stocks and bonds of companies other than Sierra). Activity 3, the purchase of equipment, is an investment activity.

The primary types of *financing activities* are borrowing money, issuing shares of stock, and paying dividends. The financing activities of Sierra Corporation are activities 1, 2, and 8.

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

The Kansas Farmers' Vertically Integrated Cooperative, Inc. (K-VIC) was formed by over 200 northeast Kansas farmers in the late 1980s. Its purpose is to use raw materials, primarily grain and meat products grown by K-VIC's members, to process this material into end-user food products, and to distribute the products nationally. Profits not needed for expansion or investment are returned to the members annually, on a pro-rata basis, according to the fair value of the grain and meat products received from each farmer.

Assume that the following trial balance was prepared for K-VIC.

KANSAS FARMERS' VERTICALLY INTEGRATED COOPERATIVE, INC.
Trial Balance
December 31, 2012
(in thousands)

	Debit	Credit
Accounts Receivable	$ 712,000	
Accounts Payable		$ 673,000
Buildings	365,000	
Cash	32,000	
Cost of Goods Sold	2,384,000	
Notes Payable (due in 2013)		12,000
Inventory	1,291,000	
Land	110,000	
Mortgage Payable		873,000
Equipment	63,000	
Retained Earnings		822,000
Sales Revenue		3,741,000
Salaries and Wages Payable		62,000
Salaries and Wages Expense	651,000	
Maintenance and Repairs Expense	500,000	
	$6,108,000	$6,183,000

Because the trial balance is not in balance, you have checked with various people responsible for entering accounting data and have discovered the following.

1. The purchase of 35 new trucks, costing $7 million and paid for with cash, was not recorded.
2. A data entry clerk accidentally deleted the account name for an account with a credit balance of $472 million, so the amount was added to the Mortgage Payable account in the trial balance.
3. December cash sales revenue of $75 million was credited to the Sales Revenue account, but the other half of the entry was not made.
4. $50 million of salaries expenses were mistakenly charged to Maintenance and Repairs Expense.

Instructions

Answer these questions.

(a) Which mistake(s) have caused the trial balance to be out of balance?

(b) Should all of the items be corrected? Explain.

(c) What is the name of the account the data entry clerk deleted?

(d) Make the necessary corrections and prepare a correct trial balance with accounts listed in proper order.

(e) On your trial balance, write BAL beside the accounts that go on the balance sheet and INC beside those that go on the income statement.

Solution

(a) Only mistake #3 has caused the trial balance to be out of balance.

(b) All of the items should be corrected. The misclassification error (mistake #4) on the salaries expense would not affect bottom-line net income, but it does affect the amounts reported in the two expense accounts.

(c) There is no Common Stock account, so that must be the account that was deleted by the data entry clerk.

(d) and (e):

KANSAS FARMERS' VERTICALLY INTEGRATED COOPERATIVE, INC.
Trial Balance
December 31, 2012
(in thousands)

	Debit	Credit	
Cash ($32,000 − $7,000 + $75,000)	$ 100,000		BAL
Accounts Receivable	712,000		BAL
Inventory	1,291,000		BAL
Land	110,000		BAL
Equipment ($63,000 + $7,000)	70,000		BAL
Buildings	365,000		BAL
Accounts Payable		$ 673,000	BAL
Salaries and Wages Payable		62,000	BAL
Notes Payable (due in 2013)		12,000	BAL
Mortgage Payable ($873,000 − $472,000)		401,000	BAL
Common Stock		472,000	BAL
Retained Earnings		822,000	BAL
Sales Revenue		3,741,000	INC
Cost of Goods Sold	2,384,000		INC
Salaries and Wages Expense	701,000		INC
Maintenance and Repairs Expense	450,000		INC
	$6,183,000	$6,183,000	

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Analyze the effect of business transactions on the basic accounting equation. Each business transaction must have a dual effect on the accounting equation. For example, if an individual asset is increased, there must be a corresponding (a) decrease in another asset, or (b) increase in a specific liability, or (c) increase in stockholders' equity.

2 Explain what an account is and how it helps in the recording process. An account is an individual accounting record of increases and decreases in specific asset, liability, and stockholders' equity items.

3 Define debits and credits and explain how they are used to record business transactions. The terms *debit* and *credit* are synonymous with *left* and *right*. Assets, dividends, and expenses are increased by debits and decreased by credits. Liabilities, common stock, retained earnings, and revenues are increased by credits and decreased by debits.

4 Identify the basic steps in the recording process. The basic steps in the recording process are: (a) analyze each transaction in terms of its effect on the accounts, (b) enter the transaction information in a journal, and (c) transfer the journal information to the appropriate accounts in the ledger.

5 Explain what a journal is and how it helps in the recording process. The initial accounting record of a transaction is entered in a journal before the data are entered in the accounts. A journal (a) discloses in one place the complete effect of a transaction, (b) provides a chronological record of transactions, and (c) prevents or locates errors because the debit and credit amounts for each entry can be readily compared.

6 Explain what a ledger is and how it helps in the recording process. The entire group of accounts maintained by a company is referred to collectively as a ledger. The ledger keeps in one place all the information about changes in specific account balances.

7 Explain what posting is and how it helps in the recording process. Posting is the procedure of transferring journal entries to the ledger accounts. This phase of the recording process accumulates the effects of journalized transactions in the individual accounts.

8 Explain the purposes of a trial balance. A trial balance is a list of accounts and their balances at a given time. The primary purpose of the trial balance is to prove the mathematical equality of debits and credits after posting. A trial balance also uncovers errors in journalizing and posting and is useful in preparing financial statements.

9 **Classify cash activities as operating, investing, or financing.** Operating activities are the types of activities the company uses to generate profits. Investing activities relate to the purchase or sale of long-lived assets used in operating the business, or to the purchase or sale of investment securities (stock and bonds of other companies). Financing activities are borrowing money, issuing shares of stock, and paying dividends.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has an accounting transaction occurred?	Details of the event	Accounting equation	If the event affected assets, liabilities, or stockholders' equity, then record as a transaction.
How do you determine that debits equal credits?	All account balances	Trial balance	List the account titles and their balances; total the debit and credit colums; verify equality.

Glossary

Account *(p. 111)* An individual accounting record of increases and decreases in specific asset, liability, stockholders' equity, revenue or expense items.

Accounting information system *(p. 102)* The system of collecting and processing transaction data and communicating financial information to decision makers.

Accounting transactions *(p. 102)* Events that require recording in the financial statements because they affect assets, liabilities, or stockholders' equity.

Chart of accounts *(p. 120)* A list of a company's accounts.

Credit *(p. 111)* The right side of an account.

Debit *(p. 111)* The left side of an account.

Double-entry system *(p. 112)* A system that records the two-sided effect of each transaction in appropriate accounts.

General journal *(p. 117)* The most basic form of journal.

General ledger *(p. 119)* A ledger that contains all asset, liability, stockholders' equity, revenue, and expense accounts.

Journal *(p. 117)* An accounting record in which transactions are initially recorded in chronological order.

Journalizing *(p. 117)* The procedure of entering transaction data in the journal.

Ledger *(p. 119)* The group of accounts maintained by a company.

Posting *(p. 120)* The procedure of transferring journal entry amounts to the ledger accounts.

T account *(p. 111)* The basic form of an account.

Trial balance *(p. 129)* A list of accounts and their balances at a given time.

Comprehensive Do it!

Bob Sample and other student investors opened Campus Carpet Cleaning, Inc. on September 1, 2012. During the first month of operations, the following transactions occurred.

Sept. 1	Stockholders invested $20,000 cash in the business.
2	Paid $1,000 cash for store rent for the month of September.
3	Purchased industrial carpet-cleaning equipment for $25,000, paying $10,000 in cash and signing a $15,000 6-month, 12% note payable.
4	Paid $1,200 for 1-year accident insurance policy.
10	Received bill from the *Daily News* for advertising the opening of the cleaning service, $200.
15	Performed services on account for $6,200.
20	Paid a $700 cash dividend to stockholders.
30	Received $5,000 from customers billed on September 15.

The chart of accounts for the company is the same as for Sierra Corporation except for the following additional account: Advertising Expense.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the September transactions.
(b) Open ledger accounts and post the September transactions.
(c) Prepare a trial balance at September 30, 2012.

Action Plan

- Proceed through the accounting cycle in the following sequence:

1. Make separate journal entries for each transaction.
2. Note that all debits precede all credit entries.
3. In journalizing, make sure debits equal credits.
4. In journalizing, use specific account titles taken from the chart of accounts.
5. Provide an appropriate explanation of each journal entry.
6. Arrange ledger in statement order, beginning with the balance sheet accounts.
7. Post in chronological order.
8. Prepare a trial balance, which lists accounts in the order in which they appear in the ledger.
9. List debit balances in the left column and credit balances in the right column.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

(a) **GENERAL JOURNAL**

Date	Account Titles and Explanation	Debit	Credit
2012			
Sept. 1	Cash	20,000	
	Common Stock		20,000
	(Issued stock for cash)		
2	Rent Expense	1,000	
	Cash		1,000
	(Paid September rent)		
3	Equipment	25,000	
	Cash		10,000
	Notes Payable		15,000
	(Purchased cleaning equipment for cash and 6-month, 12% note payable)		
4	Prepaid Insurance	1,200	
	Cash		1,200
	(Paid 1-year insurance policy)		
10	Advertising Expense	200	
	Accounts Payable		200
	(Received bill from *Daily News* for advertising)		
15	Accounts Receivable	6,200	
	Service Revenue		6,200
	(Services performed on account)		
20	Dividends	700	
	Cash		700
	(Declared and paid a cash dividend)		
30	Cash	5,000	
	Accounts Receivable		5,000
	(Collection of accounts receivable)		

(b) **GENERAL LEDGER**

Cash

Sept.	1	20,000	Sept.	2	1,000
	30	5,000		3	10,000
				4	1,200
				20	700
Bal.		12,100			

Common Stock

			Sept.	1	20,000
			Bal.		20,000

Accounts Receivable

Sept.	15	6,200	Sept.	30	5,000
Bal.		1,200			

Dividends

Sept.	20	700			
Bal.		700			

Prepaid Insurance			
Sept. 4	1,200		
Bal.	1,200		

Service Revenue			
		Sept. 15	6,200
		Bal.	6,200

Equipment			
Sept. 3	25,000		
Bal.	25,000		

Advertising Expense			
Sept. 10	200		
Bal.	200		

Notes Payable			
		Sept. 3	15,000
		Bal.	15,000

Rent Expense			
Sept. 2	1,000		
Bal.	1,000		

Accounts Payable			
		Sept. 10	200
		Bal.	200

(c)

CAMPUS CARPET CLEANING, INC.
Trial Balance
September 30, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$12,100	
Accounts Receivable	1,200	
Prepaid Insurance	1,200	
Equipment	25,000	
Notes Payable		$15,000
Accounts Payable		200
Common Stock		20,000
Dividends	700	
Service Revenue		6,200
Advertising Expense	200	
Rent Expense	1,000	
	$41,400	$41,400

the navigator

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 159.

(SO 1) **1.** The effects on the basic accounting equation of performing services for cash are to:
(a) increase assets and decrease stockholders' equity.
(b) increase assets and increase stockholders' equity.
(c) increase assets and increase liabilities.
(d) increase liabilities and increase stockholders' equity.

2. Genesis Company buys a $900 machine on credit. (SO 1) This transaction will affect the:
(a) income statement only.
(b) balance sheet only.
(c) income statement and retained earnings statement only.
(d) income statement, retained earnings statement, and balance sheet.

(SO 1) **3.** Which of the following events is *not* recorded in the accounting records?
(a) Equipment is purchased on account.
(b) An employee is terminated.
(c) A cash investment is made into the business.
(d) Company pays dividend to stockholders.

(SO 1) **4.** During 2012, Gibson Company assets decreased $50,000 and its liabilities decreased $90,000. Its stockholders' equity therefore:
(a) increased $40,000.
(b) decreased $140,000.
(c) decreased $40,000.
(d) increased $140,000.

(SO 2) **5.** Which statement about an account is *true?*
(a) In its simplest form, an account consists of two parts.
(b) An account is an individual accounting record of increases and decreases in specific asset, liability, and stockholders' equity items.
(c) There are separate accounts for specific assets and liabilities but only one account for stockholders' equity items.
(d) The left side of an account is the credit or decrease side.

(SO 3) **6.** Debits:
(a) increase both assets and liabilities.
(b) decrease both assets and liabilities.
(c) increase assets and decrease liabilities.
(d) decrease assets and increase liabilities.

(SO 3) **7.** A revenue account:
(a) is increased by debits.
(b) is decreased by credits.
(c) has a normal balance of a debit.
(d) is increased by credits.

(SO 3) **8.** Which accounts normally have debit balances?
(a) Assets, expenses, and revenues.
(b) Assets, expenses, and retained earnings.
(c) Assets, liabilities, and dividends.
(d) Assets, dividends, and expenses.

(SO 3) **9.** Paying an account payable with cash affects the components of the accounting equation in the following way:
(a) Decreases stockholders' equity and decreases liabilities.
(b) Increases assets and decreases liabilities.
(c) Decreases assets and increases stockholders' equity.
(d) Decreases assets and decreases liabilities.

10. Which is *not* part of the recording process? (SO 4)
(a) Analyzing transactions.
(b) Preparing a trial balance.
(c) Entering transactions in a journal.
(d) Posting transactions.

11. Which of these statements about a journal is *false?* (SO 5)
(a) It contains only revenue and expense accounts.
(b) It provides a chronological record of transactions.
(c) It helps to locate errors because the debit and credit amounts for each entry can be readily compared.
(d) It discloses in one place the complete effect of a transaction.

12. A ledger: (SO 6)
(a) contains only asset and liability accounts.
(b) should show accounts in alphabetical order.
(c) is a collection of the entire group of accounts maintained by a company.
(d) provides a chronological record of transactions.

13. Posting: (SO 7)
(a) normally occurs before journalizing.
(b) transfers ledger transaction data to the journal.
(c) is an optional step in the recording process.
(d) transfers journal entries to ledger accounts.

14. A trial balance: (SO 8)
(a) is a list of accounts with their balances at a given time.
(b) proves that proper account titles were used.
(c) will not balance if a correct journal entry is posted twice.
(d) proves that all transactions have been recorded.

15. A trial balance will *not* balance if: (SO 8)
(a) a correct journal entry is posted twice.
(b) the purchase of supplies on account is debited to Supplies and credited to Cash.
(c) a $100 cash dividend is debited to Dividends for $1,000 and credited to Cash for $100.
(d) a $450 payment on account is debited to Accounts Payable for $45 and credited to Cash for $45.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. Describe the accounting information system.

2. Can a business enter into a transaction that affects only the left side of the basic accounting equation? If so, give an example.

3. Are the following events recorded in the accounting records? Explain your answer in each case.
(a) A major stockholder of the company dies.
(b) Supplies are purchased on account.
(c) An employee is fired.
(d) The company pays a cash dividend to its stockholders.

4. Indicate how each business transaction affects the basic accounting equation.
(a) Paid cash for janitorial services.
(b) Purchased equipment for cash.

(c) Issued common stock to investors in exchange for cash.
(d) Paid an account payable in full.

5. Why is an account referred to as a T account?

6. The terms *debit* and *credit* mean "increase" and "decrease," respectively. Do you agree? Explain.

7. James Quest, a fellow student, contends that the double-entry system means each transaction must be recorded twice. Is James correct? Explain.

8. Gayle Weir, a beginning accounting student, believes debit balances are favorable and credit balances are unfavorable. Is Gayle correct? Discuss.

9. State the rules of debit and credit as applied to (a) asset accounts, (b) liability accounts, and (c) the common stock account.

10. What is the normal balance for each of these accounts?
(a) Accounts Receivable.
(b) Cash.
(c) Dividends.
(d) Accounts Payable.
(e) Service Revenue.
(f) Salaries and Wages Expense.
(g) Common Stock.

11. Indicate whether each account is an asset, a liability, or a stockholders' equity account, and whether it would have a normal debit or credit balance.
(a) Accounts Receivable.
(b) Accounts Payable.
(c) Equipment.
(d) Dividends.
(e) Supplies.

12. For the following transactions, indicate the account debited and the account credited.
(a) Supplies are purchased on account.
(b) Cash is received on signing a note payable.
(c) Employees are paid salaries in cash.

13. For each account listed here, indicate whether it generally will have debit entries only, credit entries only, or both debit and credit entries.
(a) Cash.
(b) Accounts Receivable.
(c) Dividends.
(d) Accounts Payable.
(e) Salaries and Wages Expense.
(f) Service Revenue.

14. What are the normal balances for the following accounts of Tootsie Roll Industries? (a) Accounts Receivable, (b) Income Taxes Payable, (c) Sales, and (d) Selling, Marketing, and Administrative Expenses.

15. What are the basic steps in the recording process?

16. (a) When entering a transaction in the journal, should the debit or credit be written first?
(b) Which should be indented, the debit or the credit?

17. (a) Should accounting transaction debits and credits be recorded directly in the ledger accounts?
(b) What are the advantages of first recording transactions in the journal and then posting to the ledger?

18. Journalize these accounting transactions.
(a) Stockholders invested $12,000 in the business in exchange for common stock.
(b) Insurance of $800 is paid for the year.
(c) Supplies of $1,800 are purchased on account.
(d) Cash of $7,500 is received for services rendered.

19. (a) What is a ledger?
(b) Why is a chart of accounts important?

20. What is a trial balance and what are its purposes?

21. Kevin Haden is confused about how accounting information flows through the accounting system. He believes information flows in this order:
(a) Debits and credits are posted to the ledger.
(b) Accounting transaction occurs.
(c) Information is entered in the journal.
(d) Financial statements are prepared.
(e) Trial balance is prepared.
Indicate to Kevin the proper flow of the information.

22. Two students are discussing the use of a trial balance. They wonder whether the following errors, each considered separately, would prevent the trial balance from balancing. What would you tell them?
(a) The bookkeeper debited Cash for $600 and credited Wages Expense for $600 for payment of wages.
(b) Cash collected on account was debited to Cash for $800, and Service Revenue was credited for $80.

Brief Exercises

BE3-1 Presented below are three economic events. On a sheet of paper, list the letters (a), (b), and (c) with columns for assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity. In each column, indicate whether the event increased (+), decreased (−), or had no effect (NE) on assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity.
(a) Purchased supplies on account.
(b) Received cash for providing a service.
(c) Expenses paid in cash.

Determine effect of transactions on basic accounting equation.
(SO 1), **C**

BE3-2 During 2012, Gavin Corp. entered into the following transactions.
1. Borrowed $60,000 by issuing bonds.
2. Paid $9,000 cash dividend to stockholders.
3. Received $13,000 cash from a previously billed customer for services provided.
4. Purchased supplies on account for $3,100.

Determine effect of transactions on basic accounting equation.
(SO 1), **AP**

Using the following tabular analysis, show the effect of each transaction on the accounting equation. Put explanations for changes to Stockholders' Equity in the right-hand margin. For Retained Earnings, use separate columns for Revenues, Expenses, and Dividends if necessary. Use Illustration 3-3 (page 110) as a model.

Assets				=	Liabilities		+	Stockholders' Equity		
Cash	+	Accounts Receivable	+	Supplies	=	Accounts Payable	+	Bonds Payable	+	Common Stock	+	Retained Earnings

Determine effect of transactions on basic accounting equation.
(SO 1), **AP**

BE3-3 During 2012, Newberry Company entered into the following transactions.

1. Purchased equipment for $286,176 cash.
2. Issued common stock to investors for $137,590 cash.
3. Purchased inventory of $68,480 on account.

Using the following tabular analysis, show the effect of each transaction on the accounting equation. Put explanations for changes to Stockholders' Equity in the right-hand margin. For Retained Earnings, use separate columns for Revenues, Expenses, and Dividends if necessary. Use Illustration 3-3 (page 110) as a model.

Assets					=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity		
Cash	+	Inventory	+	Equipment	=	Accounts Payable	+	Common Stock	+	Retained Earnings

Indicate debit and credit effects.
(SO 3), **K**

BE3-4 For each of the following accounts, indicate the effect of a debit or a credit on the account and the normal balance.

(a) Accounts Payable.
(b) Advertising Expense.
(c) Service Revenue.
(d) Accounts Receivable.
(e) Retained Earnings.
(f) Dividends.

Identify accounts to be debited and credited.
(SO 3), **C**

BE3-5 Transactions for Marlin Company for the month of June are presented below. Identify the accounts to be debited and credited for each transaction.

June 1 Issues common stock to investors in exchange for $5,000 cash.
2 Buys equipment on account for $1,100.
3 Pays $740 to landlord for June rent.
12 Bills Matt Wilfer $700 for welding work done.

Journalize transactions.
(SO 5), **AP**

BE3-6 Use the data in BE3-5 and journalize the transactions. (You may omit explanations.)

Identify steps in the recording process.
(SO 4), **C**

BE3-7 Eugenie Steckler, a fellow student, is unclear about the basic steps in the recording process. Identify and briefly explain the steps in the order in which they occur.

Indicate basic debit–credit analysis.
(SO 4), **C**

BE3-8 Acker Corporation has the following transactions during August of the current year. Indicate (a) the basic analysis and (b) the debit–credit analysis illustrated on pages 121–126.

Aug. 1 Issues shares of common stock to investors in exchange for $10,000.
4 Pays insurance in advance for 3 months, $1,500.
16 Receives $900 from clients for services rendered.
27 Pays the secretary $620 salary.

Journalize transactions.
(SO 5), **AP**

BE3-9 Use the data in BE3-8 and journalize the transactions. (You may omit explanations.)

Post journal entries to T accounts.
(SO 7), **AP**

BE3-10 Selected transactions for Rojas Company are presented below in journal form (without explanations). Post the transactions to T accounts.

Date	Account Title	Debit	Credit
May 5	Accounts Receivable	3,800	
	Service Revenue		3,800
12	Cash	1,600	
	Accounts Receivable		1,600
15	Cash	2,000	
	Service Revenue		2,000

BE3-11 From the ledger balances below, prepare a trial balance for Lyndon Company at June 30, 2012. All account balances are normal.

Prepare a trial balance. (SO 8), **AP**

Accounts Payable	$ 1,000	Service Revenue	$8,600
Cash	5,400	Accounts Receivable	3,000
Common Stock	18,000	Salaries and Wages Expense	4,000
Dividends	1,200	Rent Expense	1,000
Equipment	13,000		

BE3-12 An inexperienced bookkeeper prepared the following trial balance that does not balance. Prepare a correct trial balance, assuming all account balances are normal.

Prepare a corrected trial balance. (SO 8), **AP**

PELICAN COMPANY
Trial Balance
December 31, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$20,800	
Prepaid Insurance		$ 3,500
Accounts Payable		2,500
Unearned Service Revenue	1,800	
Common Stock		10,000
Retained Earnings		6,600
Dividends		5,000
Service Revenue		25,600
Salaries and Wages Expense	14,600	
Rent Expense		2,600
	$37,200	$55,800

Do it! Review

Do it! 3-1 Transactions made by Leonardo Bloom Co. for the month of March are shown below. Prepare a tabular analysis that shows the effects of these transactions on the expanded accounting equation, similar to that shown in Illustration 3-3 (page 110).

Prepare tabular analysis. (SO 1), **C**

1. The company provided $20,000 of services for customers on account.
2. The company received $20,000 in cash from customers who had been billed for services [in transaction (1)].
3. The company received a bill for $1,800 of advertising but will not pay it until a later date.
4. Leonardo Bloom Co. paid a cash dividend of $3,000.

Do it! 3-2 Phil Eubanks has just rented space in a strip mall. In this space, he will open a photography studio, to be called Picture This! A friend has advised Phil to set up a double-entry set of accounting records in which to record all of his business transactions.

Identify normal balances. (SO 2, 3), **C**

Identify the balance sheet accounts that Phil will likely need to record the transactions needed to open his business (a corporation). Indicate whether the normal balance of each account is a debit or credit.

Do it! 3-3 Phil Eubanks engaged in the following activities in establishing his photography studio, Picture This!:

Record business activities. (SO 4, 5), **AP**

1. Opened a bank account in the name of Picture This! and deposited $8,000 of his own money into this account in exchange for common stock.
2. Purchased photography supplies at a total cost of $950. The business paid $400 in cash, and the balance is on account.
3. Obtained estimates on the cost of photography equipment from three different manufacturers.

In what form (type of record) should Phil record these three activities? Prepare the entries to record the transactions.

Post transactions.
(SO 6, 7), AP

Do it! 3-4 Phil Eubanks recorded the following transactions during the month of April.

Apr. 3	Cash	3,400	
	Service Revenue		3,400
16	Rent Expense	500	
	Cash		500
20	Salaries and Wages Expense	300	
	Cash		300

Post these entries to the Cash account of the general ledger to determine the ending balance in cash. The beginning balance in cash on April 1 was $1,900.

Exercises

Analyze the effect of transactions.
(SO 1), C

E3-1 Selected transactions for Arnett Advertising Company, Inc., are listed here.

1. Issued common stock to investors in exchange for cash received from investors.
2. Paid monthly rent.
3. Received cash from customers when service was provided.
4. Billed customers for services performed.
5. Paid dividend to stockholders.
6. Incurred advertising expense on account.
7. Received cash from customers billed in (4).
8. Purchased additional equipment for cash.
9. Purchased equipment on account.

Instructions
Describe the effect of each transaction on assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity. For example, the first answer is: (1) Increase in assets and increase in stockholders' equity.

Analyze the effect of transactions on assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equity.
(SO 1), AP

E3-2 Delmont Company entered into these transactions during May 2012.

1. Purchased computers for office use for $30,000 from Dell on account.
2. Paid $4,000 cash for May rent on storage space.
3. Received $12,000 cash from customers for contracts billed in April.
4. Provided computer services to Lawton Construction Company for $5,000 cash.
5. Paid Southern States Power Co. $8,000 cash for energy usage in May.
6. Stockholders invested an additional $40,000 in the business in exchange for common stock of the company.
7. Paid Dell for the computers purchased in (1).
8. Incurred advertising expense for May of $1,300 on account.

Instructions
Using the following tabular analysis, show the effect of each transaction on the accounting equation. Put explanations for changes to Stockholders' Equity in the right-hand margin. Use Illustration 3-3 (page 110) as a model.

Assets							=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity						
												Retained Earnings				
Cash	+	Accounts Receivable	+	Equipment	=	Accounts Payable	+	Common Stock	+	Revenues	−	Expenses	−	Dividends		

Determine effect of transactions on basic accounting equation.
(SO 1), AP

E3-3 During 2012, its first year of operations as a delivery service, Underwood Corp. entered into the following transactions.

1. Issued shares of common stock to investors in exchange for $100,000 in cash.
2. Borrowed $45,000 by issuing bonds.
3. Purchased delivery trucks for $60,000 cash.
4. Received $16,000 from customers for services provided.
5. Purchased supplies for $4,700 on account.
6. Paid rent of $5,200.
7. Performed services on account for $10,000.

8. Paid salaries of $28,000.
9. Paid a dividend of $11,000 to shareholders.

Instructions
Using the following tabular analysis, show the effect of each transaction on the accounting equation. Put explanations for changes to Stockholders' Equity in the right-hand margin. Use Illustration 3-3 (page 110) as a model.

Assets							=	Liabilities			+	Stockholders' Equity						
		Accounts				Equip-		Accounts		Bonds		Common		Retained Earnings				
Cash	+	Receivable	+	Supplies	+	ment	=	Payable	+	Payable	+	Stock	+	Revenues	−	Expenses	−	Dividends

E3-4 A tabular analysis of the transactions made during August 2012 by Nigel Company during its first month of operations is shown below. Each increase and decrease in stockholders' equity is explained.

Analyze transactions and compute net income.
(SO 1), **AP**

	Assets				=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity						
						Accounts		Common		Retained Earnings				
	Cash	+ A/R	+ Supp.	+ Equip.	=	Payable	+	Stock	+	Rev.	− Exp.	− Div.		
1.	+$20,000							+$20,000						Com. Stock
2.	−1,000			+$5,000		+$4,000								
3.	−750		+$750											
4.	+4,100	+$5,400								+$9,500				Serv. Rev.
5.	−1,500					−1,500								
6.	−2,000											−$2,000		Div.
7.	−800										−$ 800			Rent Exp.
8.	+450	−450												
9.	−3,000										−3,000			Sal. Exp.
10.						+300					−300			Util. Exp.

Instructions
(a) Describe each transaction.
(b) Determine how much stockholders' equity increased for the month.
(c) Compute the net income for the month.

E3-5 The tabular analysis of transactions for Nigel Company is presented in E3-4.

Prepare an income statement, retained earnings statement, and balance sheet.
(SO 1), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for August and a classified balance sheet at August 31, 2012.

E3-6 Selected transactions for Home Place, an interior decorator corporation, in its first month of business, are as follows.

Identify debits, credits, and normal balances and journalize transactions.
(SO 3, 5), **AP**

1. Issued stock to investors for $15,000 in cash.
2. Purchased used car for $10,000 cash for use in business.
3. Purchased supplies on account for $300.
4. Billed customers $3,700 for services performed.
5. Paid $200 cash for advertising start of the business.
6. Received $1,100 cash from customers billed in transaction (4).
7. Paid creditor $300 cash on account.
8. Paid dividends of $400 cash to stockholders.

Instructions
(a) For each transaction indicate (a) the basic type of account debited and credited (asset, liability, stockholders' equity); (b) the specific account debited and credited (Cash, Rent Expense, Service Revenue, etc.); (c) whether the specific account is increased or decreased; and (d) the normal balance of the specific account. Use the format shown on page 142, in which transaction 1 is given as an example.

	Account Debited				Account Credited			
Transaction	(a) Basic Type	(b) Specific Account	(c) Effect	(d) Normal Balance	(a) Basic Type	(b) Specific Account	(c) Effect	(d) Normal Balance
1	Asset	Cash	Increase	Debit	Stockholders' equity	Common Stock	Increase	Credit

(b) Journalize the transactions. Do not provide explanations.

Analyze transactions and determine their effect on accounts.
(SO 3), **C**

E3-7 This information relates to Plunkett Real Estate Agency.

Oct. 1 Stockholders invest $30,000 in exchange for common stock of the corporation.
2 Hires an administrative assistant at an annual salary of $36,000.
3 Buys office furniture for $3,800, on account.
6 Sells a house and lot for M.E. Petty; commissions due from Petty, $10,800 (not paid by Petty at this time).
10 Receives cash of $140 as commission for acting as rental agent renting an apartment.
27 Pays $700 on account for the office furniture purchased on October 3.
30 Pays the administrative assistant $3,000 in salary for October.

Instructions
Prepare the debit–credit analysis for each transaction, as illustrated on pages 121–126.

Journalize transactions.
(SO 5), **AP**

E3-8 Transaction data for Plunkett Real Estate Agency are presented in E3-7.

Instructions
Journalize the transactions. Do not provide explanations.

Journalize a series of transactions.
(SO 3, 4, 5), **AP**

E3-9 The May transactions of StepAside Corporation were as follows.

May 4 Paid $700 due for supplies previously purchased on account.
7 Performed advisory services on account for $6,800.
8 Purchased supplies for $850 on account.
9 Purchased equipment for $1,000 in cash.
17 Paid employees $530 in cash.
22 Received bill for equipment repairs of $900.
29 Paid $1,200 for 12 months of insurance policy. Coverage begins June 1.

Instructions
Journalize the transactions. Do not provide explanations.

Post journal entries and prepare a trial balance.
(SO 7, 8), **AP**

E3-10 Transaction data and journal entries for Plunkett Real Estate Agency are presented in E3-7 and E3-8.

Instructions
(a) Post the transactions to T accounts.
(b) Prepare a trial balance at October 31, 2012.

Analyze transactions, prepare journal entries, and post transactions to T accounts.
(SO 1, 5, 7), **AP**

E3-11 Selected transactions for Charlotte Corporation during its first month in business are presented below.

Sept. 1 Issued common stock in exchange for $20,000 cash received from investors.
5 Purchased equipment for $9,000, paying $3,000 in cash and the balance on account.
25 Paid $4,000 cash on balance owed for equipment.
30 Paid $500 cash dividend.

Charlotte's chart of accounts shows: Cash, Equipment, Accounts Payable, Common Stock, and Dividends.

Instructions
(a) Prepare a tabular analysis of the September transactions. The column headings should be: Cash + Equipment = Accounts Payable + Stockholders' Equity. For transactions affecting stockholders' equity, provide explanations in the right margin, as shown on page 110.
(b) Journalize the transactions. Do not provide explanations.
(c) Post the transactions to T accounts.

Journalize transactions from T accounts and prepare a trial balance.
(SO 5, 8), **AP**

E3-12 The T accounts on the next page summarize the ledger of McGregor Gardening Company, Inc. at the end of the first month of operations.

Cash					
Apr.	1	15,000	Apr.	15	800
	12	700		25	3,500
	29	800			
	30	900			

Unearned Service Revenue		
	Apr. 30	900

Accounts Receivable					
Apr.	7	3,400	Apr.	29	800

Common Stock		
	Apr. 1	15,000

Supplies					
Apr.	4	5,200			

Service Revenue		
	Apr. 7	3,400
	12	700

Accounts Payable					
Apr.	25	3,500	Apr.	4	5,200

Salaries and Wages Expense					
Apr.	15	800			

Instructions

(a) Prepare in the order they occurred the journal entries (including explanations) that resulted in the amounts posted to the accounts.

(b) Prepare a trial balance at April 30, 2012. (*Hint:* Compute ending balances of T accounts first.)

E3-13 Selected transactions from the journal of Galaxy Inc. during its first month of operations are presented here.

Post journal entries and prepare a trial balance. (SO 7, 8), **AP**

Date		Account Titles	Debit	Credit
Aug.	1	Cash	8,000	
		Common Stock		8,000
	10	Cash	1,700	
		Service Revenue		1,700
	12	Equipment	6,200	
		Cash		1,200
		Notes Payable		5,000
	25	Accounts Receivable	3,400	
		Service Revenue		3,400
	31	Cash	600	
		Accounts Receivable		600

Instructions

(a) Post the transactions to T accounts.

(b) Prepare a trial balance at August 31, 2012.

E3-14 Here is the ledger for Stampfer Co.

Journalize transactions from T accounts and prepare a trial balance. (SO 5, 8), **AP**

Cash					
Oct.	1	7,000	Oct.	4	400
	10	980		12	1,500
	10	8,000		15	250
	20	700		30	300
	25	2,000		31	500

Common Stock		
	Oct. 1	7,000
	25	2,000

Accounts Receivable					
Oct.	6	800	Oct.	20	700
	20	920			

Dividends		
Oct. 30	300	

Supplies					
Oct.	4	400	Oct.	31	180

Service Revenue		
	Oct. 6	800
	10	980
	20	920

Equipment		
Oct. 3	3,000	

Salaries and Wages Expense		
Oct. 31	500	

Notes Payable					
			Oct.	10	8,000

Supplies Expense		
Oct. 31	180	

Accounts Payable					
Oct.	12	1,500	Oct.	3	3,000

Rent Expense		
Oct. 15	250	

Instructions

(a) Reproduce the journal entries for only the transactions that ***occurred on October 1, 10, and 20***, and provide explanations for each.

(b) Prepare a trial balance at October 31, 2012. (*Hint:* Compute ending balances of T accounts first.)

Analyze errors and their effects on trial balance.
(SO 8), AN

E3-15 The bookkeeper for Bullwinkle Corporation made these errors in journalizing and posting.

1. A credit posting of $400 to Accounts Receivable was omitted.
2. A debit posting of $750 for Prepaid Insurance was debited to Insurance Expense.
3. A collection on account of $100 was journalized and posted as a debit to Cash $100 and a credit to Accounts Payable $100.
4. A credit posting of $300 to Property Taxes Payable was made twice.
5. A cash purchase of supplies for $250 was journalized and posted as a debit to Supplies $25 and a credit to Cash $25.
6. A debit of $395 to Advertising Expense was posted as $359.

Instructions

For each error, indicate (a) whether the trial balance will balance; if the trial balance will not balance, indicate (b) the amount of the difference, and (c) the trial balance column that will have the larger total. Consider each error separately. Use the following form, in which error 1 is given as an example.

Error	(a) In Balance	(b) Difference	(c) Larger Column
1	No	$400	Debit

Prepare a trial balance and financial statements.
(SO 8), AP

E3-16 The accounts in the ledger of Roshek Delivery Service contain the following balances on July 31, 2012.

Accounts Receivable	$13,400	Prepaid Insurance	$ 2,200
Accounts Payable	8,400	Service Revenue	15,500
Cash	?	Dividends	700
Equipment	59,360	Common Stock	40,000
Maintenance and Repairs Expense	1,958	Salaries and Wages Expense	7,428
Insurance Expense	900	Salaries and Wages Payable	820
Notes Payable (due 2015)	28,450	Retained Earnings (July 1, 2012)	5,200

Instructions

(a) Prepare a trial balance with the accounts arranged as illustrated in the chapter, and fill in the missing amount for Cash.

(b) Prepare an income statement, a retained earnings statement, and a classified balance sheet for the month of July 2012.

Identify normal account balance and corresponding financial statement.
(SO 3), K

E3-17 The following accounts, in alphabetical order, were selected from recent financial statements of Krispy Kreme Doughnuts, Inc.

Accounts payable	Interest income
Accounts receivable	Inventories
Common stock	Prepaid expenses
Depreciation expense	Property and equipment
Interest expense	Revenues

Instructions

For each account, indicate (a) whether the normal balance is a debit or a credit, and (b) the financial statement—balance sheet or income statement—where the account should be presented.

Classify transactions as cash-flow activities.
(SO 9), AP

E3-18 Review the transactions listed in E3-1 for Arnett Advertising Company, and classify each transaction as either an operating activity, investing activity, or financing activity, or if no cash is exchanged, as a noncash event.

Classify transactions as cash-flow activities.
(SO 9), AP

E3-19 Review the transactions listed in E3-3 for Underwood Corp. and classify each transaction as either an operating activity, investing activity, or financing activity, or if no cash is exchanged, as a noncash event.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

P3-1A On April 1, Vagabond Travel Agency Inc. was established. These transactions were completed during the month.

Analyze transactions and compute net income.
(SO 1), **AP**

1. Stockholders invested $30,000 cash in the company in exchange for common stock.
2. Paid $900 cash for April office rent.
3. Purchased office equipment for $3,400 cash.
4. Purchased $200 of advertising in the *Chicago Tribune*, on account.
5. Paid $500 cash for office supplies.
6. Earned $12,000 for services provided: Cash of $3,000 is received from customers, and the balance of $9,000 is billed to customers on account.
7. Paid $400 cash dividends.
8. Paid *Chicago Tribune* amount due in transaction (4).
9. Paid employees' salaries $1,800.
10. Received $9,000 in cash from customers billed previously in transaction (6).

Instructions

(a) Prepare a tabular analysis of the transactions using these column headings: Cash, Accounts Receivable, Supplies, Equipment, Accounts Payable, Common Stock, and Retained Earnings (with separate columns for Revenues, Expenses, and Dividends). Include margin explanations for any changes in Retained Earnings.

(b) From an analysis of the Retained Earnings columns, compute the net income or net loss for April.

(a) Cash $34,800
Total assets $38,700

P3-2A Susan Taylor started her own consulting firm, Taylor Made Consulting Inc., on May 1, 2012. The following transactions occurred during the month of May.

Analyze transactions and prepare financial statements.
(SO 1), **AP**

May	1	Stockholders invested $15,000 cash in the business in exchange for common stock.
	2	Paid $600 for office rent for the month.
	3	Purchased $500 of supplies on account.
	5	Paid $150 to advertise in the *County News*.
	9	Received $1,400 cash for services provided.
	12	Paid $200 cash dividend.
	15	Performed $4,200 of services on account.
	17	Paid $2,500 for employee salaries.
	20	Paid for the supplies purchased on account on May 3.
	23	Received a cash payment of $1,200 for services provided on account on May 15.
	26	Borrowed $5,000 from the bank on a note payable.
	29	Purchased office equipment for $2,000 paying $200 in cash and the balance on account.
	30	Paid $180 for utilities.

Instructions

(a) Show the effects of the previous transactions on the accounting equation using the following format. Assume the note payable is to be repaid within the year.

(a) Cash $18,270
Total assets $23,770

	Assets					=	Liabilities			+	Stockholders' Equity				
			Accounts				Notes		Accounts		Common	Retained Earnings			
Date	Cash	+	Receivable	+	Supplies	+	Equipment	=	Payable	+	Payable	+	Stock	+	Revenues	−	Expenses	−	Dividends

Include margin explanations for any changes in Retained Earnings.

(b) Net income $2,170

(b) Prepare an income statement for the month of May 2012.

(c) Prepare a classified balance sheet at May 31, 2012.

Analyze transactions and prepare an income statement, retained earnings statement, and balance sheet.

(SO 1), **AP**

P3-3A Robin Klann created a corporation providing legal services, Robin Klann Inc., on July 1, 2012. On July 31 the balance sheet showed: Cash $4,000; Accounts Receivable $2,500; Supplies $500; Equipment $5,000; Accounts Payable $4,200; Common Stock $6,200; and Retained Earnings $1,600. During August the following transactions occurred.

Aug.	1	Collected $1,100 of accounts receivable due from customers.
	4	Paid $2,700 cash for accounts payable due.
	9	Earned revenue of $5,400, of which $3,600 is collected in cash and the balance is due in September.
	15	Purchased additional office equipment for $4,000, paying $700 in cash and the balance on account.
	19	Paid salaries $1,400, rent for August $700, and advertising expenses $350.
	23	Paid a cash dividend of $700.
	26	Received $5,000 from Standard Federal Bank; the money was borrowed on a 4-month note payable.
	31	Incurred utility expenses for the month on account $380.

Instructions

(a) Cash $7,150

(a) Prepare a tabular analysis of the August transactions beginning with July 31 balances. The column heading should be: Cash + Accounts Receivable + Supplies + Equipment = Notes Payable + Accounts Payable + Common Stock + Retained Earnings + Revenues − Expenses − Dividends. Include margin explanations for any changes in Retained Earnings.

(b) Ret. earnings $3,470
Net income $2,570

(b) Prepare an income statement for August, a retained earnings statement for August, and a classified balance sheet at August 31.

Journalize a series of transactions.

(SO 3, 5), **AP**

P3-4A Clear View Miniature Golf and Driving Range Inc. was opened on March 1 by Roger Prince. These selected events and transactions occurred during March.

Mar.	1	Stockholders invested $50,000 cash in the business in exchange for common stock of the corporation.
	3	Purchased Arnie's Golf Land for $38,000 cash. The price consists of land $23,000, building $9,000, and equipment $6,000. (Record this in a single entry.)
	5	Advertised the opening of the driving range and miniature golf course, paying advertising expenses of $1,200 cash.
	6	Paid cash $2,400 for a 1-year insurance policy.
	10	Purchased golf clubs and other equipment for $5,500 from Golden Bear Company, payable in 30 days.
	18	Received golf fees of $1,600 in cash from customers for golf fees earned.
	19	Sold 100 coupon books for $25 each in cash. Each book contains ten coupons that enable the holder to play one round of miniature golf or to hit one bucket of golf balls. (*Hint:* The revenue is not earned until the customers use the coupons.)
	25	Paid a $500 cash dividend.
	30	Paid salaries of $800.
	30	Paid Golden Bear Company in full for equipment purchased on March 10.
	31	Received $900 in cash from customers for golf fees earned.

The company uses these accounts: Cash, Prepaid Insurance, Land, Buildings, Equipment, Accounts Payable, Unearned Service Revenue, Common Stock, Retained Earnings, Dividends, Service Revenue, Advertising Expense, and Salaries and Wages Expense.

Instructions

Journalize the March transactions, including explanations. Clear View records golf fees as service revenue.

P3-5A Towne Architects incorporated as licensed architects on April 1, 2012. During the first month of the operation of the business, these events and transactions occurred:

Journalize transactions, post, and prepare a trial balance.
(SO 3, 5, 6, 7, 8), **AP**

GLS

Apr.	1	Stockholders invested $18,000 cash in exchange for common stock of the corporation.
	1	Hired a secretary-receptionist at a salary of $375 per week, payable monthly.
	2	Paid office rent for the month $900.
	3	Purchased architectural supplies on account from Spring Green Company $1,300.
	10	Completed blueprints on a carport and billed client $1,900 for services.
	11	Received $700 cash advance from J. Madison to design a new home.
	20	Received $2,800 cash for services completed and delivered to M. Svetlana.
	30	Paid secretary-receptionist for the month $1,500.
	30	Paid $300 to Spring Green Company for accounts payable due.

The company uses these accounts: Cash, Accounts Receivable, Supplies, Accounts Payable, Unearned Service Revenue, Common Stock, Service Revenue, Salaries and Wages Expense, and Rent Expense.

Instructions
(a) Journalize the transactions, including explanations.
(b) Post to the ledger T accounts.
(c) Prepare a trial balance on April 30, 2012.

(c) Cash $18,800
Tot. trial balance $24,400

P3-6A This is the trial balance of Mimosa Company on September 30.

Journalize transactions, post, and prepare a trial balance.
(SO 3, 5, 6, 7, 8), **AP**

GLS

MIMOSA COMPANY
Trial Balance
September 30, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$ 8,200	
Accounts Receivable	2,600	
Supplies	2,100	
Equipment	8,000	
Accounts Payable		$ 4,800
Unearned Service Revenue		1,100
Common Stock		15,000
	$20,900	$20,900

The October transactions were as follows.

Oct.	5	Received $1,300 in cash from customers for accounts receivable due.
	10	Billed customers for services performed $5,100.
	15	Paid employee salaries $1,200.
	17	Performed $600 of services for customers who paid in advance in August.
	20	Paid $1,900 to creditors for accounts payable due.
	29	Paid a $300 cash dividend.
	31	Paid utilities $400.

Instructions
(a) Prepare a general ledger using T accounts. Enter the opening balances in the ledger accounts as of October 1. Provision should be made for these additional accounts: Dividends, Service Revenue, Salaries and Wages Expense, and Utilities Expense.
(b) Journalize the transactions, including explanations.
(c) Post to the ledger accounts.
(d) Prepare a trial balance on October 31, 2012.

(d) Cash $ 5,700
Tot. trial balance $24,100

Prepare a correct trial balance.
(SO 8), **AN**

P3-7A This trial balance of Michels Co. does not balance.

MICHELS CO.
Trial Balance
June 30, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash		$ 3,090
Accounts Receivable	$ 3,190	
Supplies	800	
Equipment	3,000	
Accounts Payable		3,686
Unearned Service Revenue	1,200	
Common Stock		9,000
Dividends	800	
Service Revenue		3,480
Salaries and Wages Expense	3,600	
Utilities Expense	910	
	$13,500	$19,256

Each of the listed accounts has a normal balance per the general ledger. An examination of the ledger and journal reveals the following errors:

1. Cash received from a customer on account was debited for $780, and Accounts Receivable was credited for the same amount. The actual collection was for $870.
2. The purchase of a printer on account for $340 was recorded as a debit to Supplies for $340 and a credit to Accounts Payable for $340.
3. Services were performed on account for a client for $900. Accounts Receivable was debited for $90 and Service Revenue was credited for $900.
4. A debit posting to Salaries and Wages Expense of $700 was omitted.
5. A payment on account for $206 was credited to Cash for $206 and credited to Accounts Payable for $260.
6. Payment of a $600 cash dividend to Michels' stockholders was debited to Salaries and Wages Expense for $600 and credited to Cash for $600.

Instructions

Tot. trial balance $16,900

Prepare the correct trial balance. (*Hint:* All accounts have normal balances.)

Journalize transactions, post, and prepare a trial balance.
(SO 3, 5, 6, 7, 8), **AP**

P3-8A The SciFi Theater Inc. was recently formed. It began operations in March 2012. The SciFi is unique in that it will show only triple features of sequential theme movies. On March 1, the ledger of The SciFi showed: Cash $16,000; Land $38,000; Buildings (concession stand, projection room, ticket booth, and screen) $22,000; Equipment $16,000; Accounts Payable $12,000; and Common Stock $80,000. During the month of March the following events and transactions occurred.

Mar.	2	Rented the three Star Wars movies (*Star Wars®, The Empire Strikes Back*, and *The Return of the Jedi*) to be shown for the first three weeks of March. The film rental was $10,000; $2,000 was paid in cash and $8,000 will be paid on March 10.
	3	Ordered the first three *Star Trek* movies to be shown the last 10 days of March. It will cost $500 per night.
	9	Received $9,900 cash from admissions.
	10	Paid balance due on *Star Wars* movies rental and $2,900 on March 1 accounts payable.
	11	Hired J. Carne to operate the concession stand. Carne agrees to pay The SciFi Theater 15% of gross receipts, payable monthly.
	12	Paid advertising expenses $500.
	20	Received $8,300 cash from customers for admissions.
	20	Received the *Star Trek* movies and paid rental fee of $5,000.
	31	Paid salaries of $3,800.

31 Received statement from J. Carne showing gross receipts from concessions of $10,000 and the balance due to The SciFi of $1,500 for March. Carne paid half the balance due and will remit the remainder on April 5.
31 Received $20,000 cash from customers for admissions.

In addition to the accounts identified above, the chart of accounts includes: Accounts Receivable, Service Revenue, Sales Revenue, Advertising Expense, Rent Expense, and Salaries and Wages Expense.

Instructions

(a) Using T accounts, enter the beginning balances to the ledger.
(b) Journalize the March transactions, including explanations. SciFi records admission revenue as service revenue, concession revenue as sales revenue, and film rental expense as rent expense.
(c) Post the March journal entries to the ledger.
(d) Prepare a trial balance on March 31, 2012.

(d) Cash $ 32,750
Tot. trial balance $128,800

P3-9A The bookkeeper for Fred Kelley's dance studio made the following errors in journalizing and posting.

Analyze errors and their effects on the trial balance. (SO 8), **AN**

1. A credit to Supplies of $600 was omitted.
2. A debit posting of $300 to Accounts Payable was inadvertently debited to Accounts Receivable.
3. A purchase of supplies on account of $450 was debited to Supplies for $540 and credited to Accounts Payable for $540.
4. A credit posting of $680 to Interest Payable was posted twice.
5. A debit posting to Income Taxes Payable for $250 and a credit posting to Cash for $250 were made twice.
6. A debit posting for $1,200 of Dividends was inadvertently posted to Salaries and Wages Expense instead.
7. A credit to Service Revenue for $450 was inadvertently posted as a debit to Service Revenue.
8. A credit to Accounts Receivable of $250 was credited to Accounts Payable.

Instructions

For each error, indicate (a) whether the trial balance will balance; (b) the amount of the difference if the trial balance will not balance; and (c) the trial balance column that will have the larger total. Consider each error separately. Use the following form, in which error 1 is given as an example.

Error	(a) In Balance	(b) Difference	(c) Larger Column
1.	No	$600	Debit

Problems: Set B

P3-1B New Dawn Window Washing Inc. was started on May 1. Here is a summary of the May transactions.

Analyze transactions and compute net income. (SO 1), **AP**

1. Stockholders invested $20,000 cash in the company in exchange for common stock.
2. Purchased equipment for $9,000 cash.
3. Paid $700 cash for May office rent.
4. Paid $300 cash for supplies.
5. Purchased $750 of advertising in the *Beacon News* on account.
6. Received $7,200 in cash from customers for service.
7. Paid a $500 cash dividend.
8. Paid part-time employee salaries $1,700.
9. Paid utility bills $140.
10. Provided service on account to customers $1,000.
11. Collected cash of $650 for services billed in transaction (10).

Instructions

(a) Prepare a tabular analysis of the transactions using these column headings: Cash, Accounts Receivable, Supplies, Equipment, Accounts Payable, Common Stock, and Retained Earnings (with separate columns for Revenues, Expenses, and Dividends). Revenue is called Service Revenue. Include margin explanations for any changes in Retained Earnings.

(b) Net income $4,910

(b) From an analysis of the Retained Earnings columns, compute the net income or net loss for May.

Analyze transactions and prepare financial statements.
(SO 1), **AP**

P3-2B Samuel Aldrich started his own delivery service, Aldrich Service Inc., on June 1, 2012. The following transactions occurred during the month of June.

June	1	Stockholders invested $15,000 cash in the business in exchange for common stock.
	2	Purchased a used van for deliveries for $15,000. Samuel paid $2,000 cash and signed a note payable for the remaining balance.
	3	Paid $600 for office rent for the month.
	5	Performed $2,400 of services on account.
	9	Paid $300 in cash dividends.
	12	Purchased supplies for $240 on account.
	15	Received a cash payment of $750 for services provided on June 5.
	17	Received a bill for $200 to cover advertisements in *Tri-State News*.
	20	Received a cash payment of $1,500 for services provided.
	23	Made a cash payment of $500 on the note payable.
	26	Paid $180 for utilities.
	29	Paid for the supplies purchased on account on June 12.
	30	Paid $750 for employee salaries.

Instructions

(a) Cash $12,680

(a) Show the effects of the previous transactions on the accounting equation using the following format. Assume the note payable is to be repaid within the year.

	Assets					=	Liabilities			+	Stockholders' Equity				
			Accounts				Notes		Accounts		Common		Retained Earnings		
Date	Cash	+	Receivable	+	Supplies	+	Equipment	=	Payable	+	Payable	+	Stock	+	Revenues − Expenses − Dividends

Include margin explanations for any changes in Retained Earnings.

(b) Net income $2,170

(b) Prepare an income statement for the month of June.

(c) Prepare a classified balance sheet at June 30, 2012.

Analyze transactions and prepare an income statement, retained earnings statement, and balance sheet.
(SO 1), **AP**

P3-3B Joy Tiede opened Tiede Company, a veterinary business in Neosho, Wisconsin, on August 1, 2012. On August 31, the balance sheet showed: Cash $9,000; Accounts Receivable $1,700; Supplies $600; Equipment $5,000; Accounts Payable $3,600; Common Stock $12,000; and Retained Earnings $700. During September, the following transactions occurred.

Sept.	2	Paid $3,400 cash for accounts payable due.
	5	Received $1,200 from customers in payment of accounts receivable.
	8	Purchased additional office equipment for $5,100, paying $1,000 in cash and the balance on account.
	13	Earned revenue of $10,600, of which $2,300 is paid in cash and the balance is due in October.
	17	Paid a $600 cash dividend.
	22	Paid salaries $900, rent for September $1,100, and advertising expense $250.
	26	Incurred utility expenses for the month on account $220.
	30	Received $5,000 from Hilldale Bank on a 6-month note payable.

Instructions

(a) Cash $10,250

(a) Prepare a tabular analysis of the September transactions beginning with August 31 balances. The column headings should be: Cash + Accounts Receivable + Supplies + Equipment = Notes Payable + Accounts Payable + Common Stock + Retained Earnings + Revenues − Expenses − Dividends. Include margin explanations for any changes in Retained Earnings.

(b) Ret. earnings $ 8,230

(b) Prepare an income statement for September, a retained earnings statement for September, and a classified balance sheet at September 30, 2012.

P3-4B RV Oasis was started on April 1 by Taras Dankert. These selected events and transactions occurred during April.

Journalize a series of transactions.
(SO 3, 5), **AP**

GLS

Apr.	1	Stockholders invested $70,000 cash in the business in exchange for common stock.
	4	Purchased land costing $50,000 for cash.
	8	Purchased advertising in local newspaper for $1,200 on account.
	11	Paid salaries to employees $2,700.
	12	Hired park manager at a salary of $3,600 per month, effective May 1.
	13	Paid $7,200 for a 1-year insurance policy.
	17	Paid $600 cash dividends.
	20	Received $6,000 in cash from customers for admission fees.
	25	Sold 100 coupon books for $90 each. Each book contains ten coupons that entitle the holder to one admission to the park. (*Hint*: The revenue is not earned until the coupons are used.)
	30	Received $7,900 in cash from customers for admission fees.
	30	Paid $400 of the balance owed for the advertising purchased on account on April 8.

The company uses the following accounts: Cash, Prepaid Insurance, Land, Accounts Payable, Unearned Service Revenue, Common Stock, Dividends, Service Revenue, Advertising Expense, and Salaries and Wages Expense.

Instructions

Journalize the April transactions, including explanations. (*Note*: RV Oasis records admission revenue as service revenue.)

P3-5B Troy Ridgell incorporated Ridgell Consulting, an accounting practice, on May 1, 2012. During the first month of operations, these events and transactions occurred.

Journalize transactions, post, and prepare a trial balance.
(SO 3, 5, 6, 7, 8), **AP**

GLS

May	1	Stockholders invested $40,000 cash in exchange for common stock of the corporation.
	2	Hired a secretary-receptionist at a salary of $2,000 per month.
	3	Purchased $800 of supplies on account from Fleming Supply Company.
	7	Paid office rent of $1,400 for the month.
	11	Completed a tax assignment and billed client $1,500 for services provided.
	12	Received $4,200 advance on a management consulting engagement.
	17	Received cash of $3,300 for services completed for Goodman Co.
	31	Paid secretary-receptionist $2,000 salary for the month.
	31	Paid 50% of balance due Fleming Supply Company.

The company uses the following chart of accounts: Cash, Accounts Receivable, Supplies, Accounts Payable, Unearned Service Revenue, Common Stock, Service Revenue, Salaries and Wages Expense, and Rent Expense.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions, including explanations.
(b) Post to the ledger T accounts.
(c) Prepare a trial balance on May 31, 2012.

(c) Cash $43,700
Tot. trial balance $49,400

P3-6B The trial balance of Kinnear Dry Cleaners on June 30 is given here.

Journalize transactions, post, and prepare a trial balance.
(SO 3, 5, 6, 7, 8), **AP**

GLS

KINNEAR DRY CLEANERS
Trial Balance
June 30, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$12,532	
Accounts Receivable	10,536	
Supplies	3,592	
Equipment	25,950	
Accounts Payable		$15,800
Unearned Service Revenue		1,810
Common Stock		35,000
	$52,610	$52,610

The July transactions were as follows.

July	8	Received $5,189 in cash on June 30 accounts receivable.
	9	Paid employee salaries $2,100.
	11	Received $7,320 in cash for services provided.
	14	Paid creditors $9,810 of accounts payable.
	17	Purchased supplies on account $720.
	22	Billed customers for services provided $4,700.
	30	Paid employee salaries $3,114, utilities $1,767, and repairs $386.
	31	Paid $400 cash dividend.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a general ledger using T accounts. Enter the opening balances in the ledger accounts as of July 1. Provision should be made for the following additional accounts: Dividends, Service Revenue, Maintenance and Repairs Expense, Salaries and Wages Expense, and Utilities Expense.

(d) Cash $ 7,464
Tot. trial balance $55,540

(b) Journalize the transactions, including explanations.
(c) Post to the ledger accounts.
(d) Prepare a trial balance on July 31, 2012.

Prepare a correct trial balance.
(SO 8), **AN**

P3-7B This trial balance of Lagerstrom Company does not balance.

LAGERSTROM COMPANY
Trial Balance
May 31, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$ 6,340	
Accounts Receivable		$ 2,750
Prepaid Insurance	700	
Equipment	8,000	
Accounts Payable		4,100
Income Taxes Payable	850	
Common Stock		5,700
Retained Earnings		6,000
Service Revenue	7,690	
Salaries and Wages Expense	4,200	
Advertising Expense		1,100
Income Tax Expense	900	
	$28,680	$19,650

Your review of the ledger reveals that each account has a normal balance. You also discover the following errors.

1. The totals of the debit sides of Prepaid Insurance, Accounts Payable, and Income Tax Expense were each understated $100.
2. Transposition errors were made in Accounts Receivable and Service Revenue. Based on postings made, the correct balances were $2,570 and $7,960, respectively.
3. A debit posting to Salaries and Wages Expense of $500 was omitted.
4. A $600 cash dividend was debited to Common Stock for $600 and credited to Cash for $600.
5. A $350 purchase of supplies on account was debited to Equipment for $350 and credited to Cash for $350.
6. A cash payment of $490 for advertising was debited to Advertising Expense for $49 and credited to Cash for $49.
7. A collection from a customer for $240 was debited to Cash for $240 and credited to Accounts Payable for $240.

Instructions

Cash $ 6,249
Tot. trial balance $25,220

Prepare the correct trial balance, assuming all accounts have normal balances. (*Note:* The chart of accounts also includes the following: Dividends and Supplies.)

P3-8B Riviera Theater Inc. was recently formed. All facilities were completed on March 31. On April 1, the ledger showed: Cash $6,300; Land $10,000; Buildings (concession stand,

projection room, ticket booth, and screen) $8,000; Equipment $6,000; Accounts Payable $2,300; Mortgage Payable $8,000; and Common Stock $20,000. During April, the following events and transactions occurred.

Journalize transactions, post, and prepare a trial balance.
(SO 3, 5, 6, 7, 8), **AP**

GLS

Apr.	2	Paid film rental fee of $800 on first movie.
	3	Ordered two additional films at $750 each.
	9	Received $4,700 cash from admissions.
	10	Paid $2,000 of mortgage payable and $1,200 of accounts payable.
	11	Hired M. Gavin to operate the concession stand. Gavin agrees to pay Riviera Theater 17% of gross receipts, payable monthly.
	12	Paid advertising expenses $410.
	20	Received one of the films ordered on April 3 and was billed $750. The film will be shown in April.
	25	Received $3,000 cash from customers for admissions.
	29	Paid salaries $1,900.
	30	Received statement from M. Gavin showing gross receipts of $2,000 and the balance due to Riviera Theater of $340 for April. Gavin paid half of the balance due and will remit the remainder on May 5.
	30	Prepaid $1,200 rental fee on special film to be run in May.

In addition to the accounts identified above, the chart of accounts shows: Accounts Receivable, Prepaid Rent, Service Revenue, Sales Revenue, Advertising Expense, Rent Expense, Salaries and Wages Expense.

Instructions

(a) Enter the beginning balances in the ledger T accounts as of April 1.
(b) Journalize the April transactions, including explanations. (*Note:* Riviera records admission revenue as service revenue, concession revenue as sales revenue, and film rental expense as rent expense.)
(c) Post the April journal entries to the ledger T accounts.
(d) Prepare a trial balance on April 30, 2012.

(d) Cash $ 6,660
Tot. trial balance $35,890

P3-9B A first year co-op student working for Solutions.com recorded the transactions for the month. He wasn't exactly sure how to journalize and post, but he did the best he could. He had a few questions, however, about the following transactions.

Analyze errors and their effects on the trial balance.
(SO 8), **AN**

1. Cash received from a customer on account was recorded as a debit to Cash of $360 and a credit to Accounts Receivable of $630, instead of $360.
2. A service provided for cash was posted as a debit to Cash of $2,000 and a credit to Service Revenue of $2,000.
3. A debit of $880 for services provided on account was neither recorded nor posted. The credit was recorded correctly.
4. The debit to record $1,000 of cash dividends was posted to the Salaries and Wages Expense account.
5. The purchase, on account, of a computer that cost $2,500 was recorded as a debit to Supplies and a credit to Accounts Payable.
6. A cash payment of $495 for salaries was recorded as a debit to Dividends and a credit to Cash.
7. Payment of month's rent was debited to Rent Expense and credited to Cash, $850.
8. Issue of $5,000 of common shares was credited to the Common Stock account, but no debit was recorded.

Instructions

(a) Indicate which of the above transactions are correct, and which are incorrect.
(b) For each error identified in (a), indicate (1) whether the trial balance will balance; (2) the amount of the difference if the trial balance will not balance; and (3) the trial balance column that will have the larger total. Consider each error separately. Use the following form, in which transaction 1 is given as an example.

Error	(1) In Balance	(2) Difference	(3) Larger Column
1.	No	$270	Credit

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note*: This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapters 1 and 2.)

CCC3 In November 2011, after having incorporated Cookie Creations Inc., Natalie begins operations. She has decided not to pursue the offer to supply cookies to Biscuits. Instead, she will focus on offering cooking classes. The following events occur.

Nov. 8	Natalie cashes in her U.S. Savings Bonds and receives $520, which she deposits in her personal bank account.
8	Natalie opens a bank account for Cookie Creations Inc.
8	Natalie purchases $500 of Cookie Creations' common stock.
11	Cookie Creations purchases paper and other office supplies for $95. (Use Supplies.)
14	Cookie Creations pays $125 to purchase baking supplies, such as flour, sugar, butter, and chocolate chips. (Use Supplies.)
15	Natalie starts to gather some baking equipment to take with her when teaching the cookie classes. She has an excellent top-of-the-line food processor and mixer that originally cost her $550. Natalie decides to start using it only in her new business. She estimates that the equipment is currently worth $300, and she transfers the equipment into the business in exchange for additional common stock.
16	The company needs more cash to sustain its operations. Natalie's grandmother lends the company $2,000 cash, in exchange for a two-year, 9% note payable. Interest and the principal are repayable at maturity.
17	Cookie Creations pays $900 for additional baking equipment.
18	Natalie schedules her first class for November 29. She will receive $100 on the date of the class.
25	Natalie books a second class for December 5 for $150. She receives a $60 cash down payment, in advance.
29	Natalie teaches her first class, booked on November 18, and collects the $100 cash.
30	Natalie's brother develops a website for Cookie Creations Inc. that the company will use for advertising. He charges the company $600 for his work, payable at the end of December. (Because the website is expected to have a useful life of two years before upgrades are needed, it should be treated as an asset called Website.)
30	Cookie Creations pays $1,200 for a one-year insurance policy.
30	Natalie teaches a group of elementary school students how to make Santa Claus cookies. At the end of the class, Natalie leaves an invoice for $300 with the school principal. The principal says that he will pass it along to the business office and it will be paid some time in December.
30	Natalie receives a $50 invoice for use of her cell phone. She uses the cell phone exclusively for Cookie Creations Inc. business. The invoice is for services provided in November, and payment is due on December 15.

Instructions

(a) Prepare journal entries to record the November transactions.

(b) Post the journal entries to the general ledger accounts.

(c) Trial balance total 3,910 (c) Prepare a trial balance at November 30, 2011.

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll Industries Inc.*

BYP3-1 The financial statements of Tootsie Roll in Appendix A at the back of this book contain the following selected accounts, all in thousands of dollars.

Common Stock	$ 24,862
Accounts Payable	9,140
Accounts Receivable	37,512
Selling, Marketing, and Administrative Expenses	103,755
Prepaid Expenses	8,562
Net Property, Plant, and Equipment	220,721
Net Product Sales	495,592

Instructions

(a) What is the increase and decrease side for each account? What is the normal balance for each account?

(b) Identify the probable other account in the transaction and the effect on that account when:
(1) Accounts Receivable is decreased.
(2) Accounts Payable is decreased.
(3) Prepaid Expenses is increased.

(c) Identify the other account(s) that ordinarily would be involved when:
(1) Interest Expense is increased.
(2) Property, Plant, and Equipment is increased.

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP3-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company appear in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll in Appendix A.

Instructions

(a) Based on the information contained in these financial statements, determine the normal balance for:

Tootsie Roll Industries	The Hershey Company
(1) Accounts Receivable	(1) Inventories
(2) Net Property, Plant, and Equipment	(2) Provision for Income Taxes
(3) Accounts Payable	(3) Accrued Liabilities
(4) Retained Earnings	(4) Common Stock
(5) Net Product Sales	(5) Interest Expense

(b) Identify the other account ordinarily involved when:
(1) Accounts Receivable is increased.
(2) Notes Payable is decreased.
(3) Machinery is increased.
(4) Interest Revenue is increased.

RESEARCH CASE

BYP3-3 Sid Cato provides critiques of corporate annual reports. He maintains a website at **www.sidcato.com** that provides many useful resources for those who are interested in preparing or using annual reports.

Instructions

Go to the website and answer the following questions.

(a) Read the section, "What makes a good annual report?" and choose which three factors you think are most important. Explain why you think each item is important.

(b) For the most recent year presented, which companies were listed in the section "Producers of the best annuals for (*most recent year*)"?

(c) What potential benefits might a company gain by receiving a high rating from Sid Cato's organization?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP3-4 Chieftain International, Inc., is an oil and natural gas exploration and production company. A recent balance sheet reported $208 million in assets with only $4.6 million in liabilities, all of which were short-term accounts payable.

During the year, Chieftain expanded its holdings of oil and gas rights, drilled 37 new wells, and invested in expensive 3-D seismic technology. The company generated $19 million cash from operating activities and paid no dividends. It had a cash balance of $102 million at the end of the year.

Instructions

(a) Name at least two advantages to Chieftain from having no long-term debt. Can you think of disadvantages?
(b) What are some of the advantages to Chieftain from having this large a cash balance? What is a disadvantage?
(c) Why do you suppose Chieftain has the $4.6 million balance in accounts payable, since it appears that it could have made all its purchases for cash?

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP3-5 ***Purpose:*** This activity provides information about career opportunities for CPAs.

Address: **www.icpas.org**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Go to the address shown above and click on **Students/Educators**.
2. Click on **High School**, then **CPA101** for parts a, b, and c.
3. Click **College** to answer part d.

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) What does CPA stand for? Where do CPAs work?
(b) What is meant by "public accounting"?
(c) What skills does a CPA need?
(d) What is the salary range for a CPA at a large firm during the first three years? What is the salary range for chief financial officers and treasurers at large corporations?

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP3-6 Donna Dye operates Double D Riding Academy, Inc. The academy's primary sources of revenue are riding fees and lesson fees, which are provided on a cash basis. Donna also boards horses for owners, who are billed monthly for boarding fees. In a few cases, boarders pay in advance of expected use. For its revenue transactions, the academy maintains these accounts: Cash, Accounts Receivable, Unearned Revenue, Riding Revenue, Lesson Revenue, and Boarding Revenue.

The academy owns 10 horses, a stable, a riding corral, riding equipment, and office equipment. These assets are accounted for in the following accounts: Horses, Building, Riding Corral, Riding Equipment, and Office Equipment.

The academy employs stable helpers and an office employee, who receive weekly salaries. At the end of each month, the mail usually brings bills for advertising, utilities, and veterinary service. Other expenses include feed for the horses and insurance. For its expenses, the academy maintains the following accounts: Hay and Feed Supplies, Prepaid Insurance, Accounts Payable, Salaries Expense, Advertising Expense, Utilities Expense, Veterinary Expense, Hay and Feed Expense, and Insurance Expense.

Donna Dye's sole source of personal income is dividends from the academy. Thus, the corporation declares and pays periodic dividends. To account for stockholders' equity in the business and dividends, two accounts are maintained: Common Stock and Dividends.

During the first month of operations an inexperienced bookkeeper was employed. Donna Dye asks you to review the following eight entries of the 50 entries made during the month. In each case, the explanation for the entry is correct.

May	1	Cash	15,000	
		Unearned Revenue		15,000
		(Issued common stock in exchange for $15,000 cash)		
	5	Cash	250	
		Lesson Revenue		250
		(Received $250 cash for lesson fees)		
	7	Cash	500	
		Boarding Revenue		500
		(Received $500 for boarding of horses beginning June 1)		
	9	Hay and Feed Expense	1,500	
		Cash		1,500
		(Purchased estimated 5 months' supply of feed and hay for $1,500 on account)		
	14	Riding Equipment	80	
		Cash		800
		(Purchased desk and other office equipment for $800 cash)		
	15	Salaries Expense	400	
		Cash		400
		(Issued check to Donna Dye for personal use)		
	20	Cash	145	
		Riding Revenue		154
		(Received $154 cash for riding fees)		
	31	Veterinary Expense	75	
		Accounts Receivable		75
		(Received bill of $75 from veterinarian for services provided)		

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following.

(a) For each journal entry that is correct, so state. For each journal entry that is incorrect, prepare the entry that should have been made by the bookkeeper.

(b) Which of the incorrect entries would prevent the trial balance from balancing?

(c) What was the correct net income for May, assuming the bookkeeper originally reported net income of $4,500 after posting all 50 entries?

(d) What was the correct cash balance at May 31, assuming the bookkeeper reported a balance of $12,475 after posting all 50 entries?

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP3-7 Clean Sweep Company offers home cleaning service. Two recurring transactions for the company are billing customers for services provided and paying employee salaries. For example, on March 15 bills totaling $6,000 were sent to customers, and $2,000 was paid in salaries to employees.

Instructions

Write a memorandum to your instructor that explains and illustrates the steps in the recording process for each of the March 15 transactions. Use the format illustrated in the text under the heading "The Recording Process Illustrated" (pp. 121–126).

ETHICS CASES

BYP3-8 Courtney Delacey is the assistant chief accountant at BIT Company, a manufacturer of computer chips and cellular phones. The company presently has total sales of $20 million. It is the end of the first quarter and Courtney is hurriedly trying to prepare a general ledger trial balance so that quarterly financial statements can be prepared and released to management and the regulatory agencies. The total credits on the trial balance exceed the debits by $1,000.

In order to meet the 4 P.M. deadline, Courtney decides to force the debits and credits into balance by adding the amount of the difference to the Equipment account. She chose Equipment because it is one of the larger account balances; percentage-wise it will be the least misstated. Courtney plugs the difference! She believes that the difference is quite small and will not affect anyone's decisions. She wishes that she had another few days to find the error but realizes that the financial statements are already late.

Instructions

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?
(b) What ethical issues are involved?
(c) What are Courtney's alternatives?

BYP3-9 The July 28, 2007, issue of the *Wall Street Journal* includes an article by Kathryn Kranhold entitled "GE's Accounting Draws Fresh Focus on News of Improper Sales Bookings."

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following questions.

(a) What improper activity did the employees at GE engage in?
(b) Why might the employees have engaged in this activity?
(c) What were the implications for the employees who engaged in this activity?
(d) What does it mean to "restate" financial results? Why didn't GE restate its results to correct for the improperly reported locomotive sales?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP3-10 In their annual reports to stockholders, companies must report or disclose information about all liabilities, including potential liabilities related to environmental clean-up. There are many situations in which you will be asked to provide personal financial information about your assets, liabilities, revenue, and expenses. Sometimes you will face difficult decisions regarding what to disclose and how to disclose it.

Instructions

Suppose that you are putting together a loan application to purchase a home. Based on your income and assets, you qualify for the mortgage loan, but just barely. How would you address each of the following situations in reporting your financial position for the loan application? Provide responses for each of the following questions.

(a) You signed a guarantee for a bank loan that a friend took out for $20,000. If your friend doesn't pay, you will have to pay. Your friend has made all of the payments so far, and it appears he will be able to pay in the future.
(b) You were involved in an auto accident in which you were at fault. There is the possibility that you may have to pay as much as $50,000 as part of a settlement. The issue will not be resolved before the bank processes your mortgage request.
(c) The company at which you work isn't doing very well, and it has recently laid off employees. You are still employed, but it is quite possible that you will lose your job in the next few months.

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 109 Why Accuracy Matters **Q:** In order for these companies to prepare and issue financial statements, their accounting equations (debit and credits) must have been in balance at year-end. How could these errors or misstatements have occurred? **A:** A company's accounting equation (its books) can be in balance yet its financial statements have errors or misstatements because of the following: entire transactions were not recorded; transactions were recorded at wrong amounts; transactions were recorded in the wrong accounts; transactions were recorded in the wrong accounting period. Audits of financial statements uncover some, but obviously not all, errors or misstatements.

p. 115 Keeping Score **Q:** Do you think that the Chicago Bears football team would be likely to have the same major revenue and expense accounts as the Cubs? **A:** Because their businesses are similar—professional sports—many of the revenue and expense accounts for the baseball and football teams might be similar.

p. 119 Boosting Microsoft's Profits **Q:** In what ways is this Microsoft division using accounting to assist in its effort to become more profitable? **A:** The division has used accounting to set very strict sales, revenue, and profit goals. In addition, the managers in this division use accounting

to keep a tight reign on product costs. Also, accounting serves as the basis of communication so that the marketing managers and product designers can work with production managers, engineers, and accountants to create an exciting product within specified cost constraints.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. b **2.** b **3.** b **4.** a (−$50,000 = −$90,000 + $40,000) **5.** b **6.** c **7.** d **8.** d **9.** d **10.** b **11.** a **12.** c **13.** d **14.** a **15.** c

IFRS A Look at IFRS

International companies use the same set of procedures and records to keep track of transaction data. Thus, the material in Chapter 3 dealing with the account, general rules of debit and credit, and steps in the recording process—the journal, ledger, and chart of accounts—is the same under both GAAP and IFRS.

KEY POINTS

- Transaction analysis is the same under IFRS and GAAP but, as you will see in later chapters, different standards sometimes impact how transactions are recorded.
- Rules for accounting for specific events sometimes differ across countries. For example, European companies rely less on historical cost and more on fair value than U.S. companies. Despite the differences, the double-entry accounting system is the basis of accounting systems worldwide.
- Both the IASB and FASB go beyond the basic definitions provided in this textbook for the key elements of financial statements, that is, assets, liabilities, equity, revenues, and expenses. The more substantive definitions, using the IASB definitional structure, are provided in the Chapter 1 *A Look at IFRS* discussion.
- A trial balance under IFRS follows the same format as shown in the textbook.
- As shown in the textbook, dollars signs are typically used only in the trial balance and the financial statements. The same practice is followed under IFRS, using the currency of the country that the reporting company is headquartered.
- In February 2010, the SEC expressed a desire to continue working toward a single set of high-quality standards. In deciding whether the United States should adopt IFRS, some of the issues the SEC said should be considered are:
  - Whether IFRS is sufficiently developed and consistent in application.
  - Whether the IASB is sufficiently independent.
  - Whether IFRS is established for the benefit of investors.
  - The issues involved in educating investors about IFRS.
  - The impact of a switch to IFRS on U.S. laws and regulations.
  - The impact on companies including changes to their accounting systems, contractual arrangements, corporate governance, and litigation.
  - The issues involved in educating accountants, so they can prepare statements under IFRS.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

The basic recording process shown in this textbook is followed by companies across the globe. It is unlikely to change in the future. The definitional structure of assets, liabilities, equity, revenues, and expenses may change over time as the IASB and FASB evaluate their overall conceptual framework for establishing accounting standards.

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. Which statement is *correct* regarding IFRS?
   (a) IFRS reverses the rules of debits and credits, that is, debits are on the right and credits are on the left.
   (b) IFRS uses the same process for recording transactions as GAAP.
   (c) The chart of accounts under IFRS is different because revenues follow assets.
   (d) None of the above statements are correct.
2. The expanded accounting equation under IFRS is as follows:
   (a) Assets = Liabilities + Share Capital + Dividends + Revenues − Expenses.
   (b) Assets + Liabilities = Share Capital + Dividends + Revenues − Expenses.
   (c) Assets = Liabilities + Share Capital − Dividends + Revenues − Expenses.
   (d) Assets = Liabilities + Share Capital + Dividends − Revenues − Expenses.
3. A trial balance:
   (a) is the same under IFRS and GAAP.
   (b) proves that transactions are recorded correctly.
   (c) proves that all transactions have been recorded.
   (d) will not balance if a correct journal entry is posted twice.
4. One difference between IFRS and GAAP is that:
   (a) GAAP uses accrual-accounting concepts and IFRS uses primarily the cash basis of accounting.
   (b) IFRS uses a different posting process than GAAP.
   (c) IFRS uses more fair value measurements than GAAP.
   (d) the limitations of a trial balance are different between IFRS and GAAP.
5. The general policy for using proper currency signs (dollar, yen, pound, etc.) is the same for both IFRS and this textbook. This policy is as follows:
   (a) Currency signs only appear in ledgers and journal entries.
   (b) Currency signs are only shown in the trial balance.
   (c) Currency signs are shown for all compound journal entries.
   (d) Currency signs are shown in trial balances and financial statements.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS3–1 Describe some of the issues the SEC must consider in deciding whether the United States should adopt IFRS.

INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Zetar plc*

IFRS3–2 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C. The company's complete annual report, including the notes to its financial statements, is available at **www.zetarplc.com.**

Instructions

Describe in which statement each of the following items is reported, and the position in the statement (e.g., current asset).

(a) Share capital.
(b) Goodwill.
(c) Borrowings and overdrafts.
(d) Amortisation of intangible assets.
(e) Derivative financial asset.

Answers to IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. b **2.** c **3.** a **4.** c **5.** d

the navigator

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 4

ACCRUAL ACCOUNTING CONCEPTS

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 175 ◯ p. 180 ◯ p. 185 ◯ p. 189 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 197 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 224 ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Explain the revenue recognition principle and the expense recognition principle.
2. Differentiate between the cash basis and the accrual basis of accounting.
3. Explain why adjusting entries are needed, and identify the major types of adjusting entries.
4. Prepare adjusting entries for deferrals.
5. Prepare adjusting entries for accruals.
6. Describe the nature and purpose of the adjusted trial balance.
7. Explain the purpose of closing entries.
8. Describe the required steps in the accounting cycle.
9. Understand the causes of differences between net income and cash provided by operating activities.

the navigator

feature story

WHAT WAS YOUR PROFIT?

The accuracy of the financial reporting system depends on answers to a few fundamental questions. At what point has revenue been earned? At what point is the earnings process complete? When have expenses really been incurred?

During the 1990s, the stock prices of dot-com companies boomed. Many dot-com companies earned most of their revenue from selling advertising space on their websites. To boost reported revenue, some dot-coms began swapping website ad space. Company A would put an ad for its website on company B's website, and company B would put an ad for its website on company A's website. No money ever changed hands, but each company recorded revenue (for the value of the space that it gave up on its site). This practice did little to boost net income and resulted in no additional cash flow—but it did boost *reported revenue*. Regulators eventually put an end to the practice.

Another type of transgression results from companies recording revenue or expenses in the wrong year. In fact, shifting revenues and expenses is one of the most common abuses of financial accounting. Xerox admitted reporting billions of dollars of lease revenue in periods earlier than it should have been reported. And WorldCom stunned the financial markets with its admission that it had boosted net income by billions of dollars by delaying the recognition of expenses until later years.

Unfortunately, revelations such as these have become all too common in the corporate world. It is no wonder that the U.S. Trust Survey of affluent Americans reported that 85 percent of its respondents believed that there should be tighter regulation of financial disclosures, and 66 percent said they did not trust the management of publicly traded companies.

Why did so many companies violate basic financial reporting rules and sound ethics? Many speculate that as stock prices climbed, executives were under increasing pressure to meet higher and higher earnings expectations. If actual results weren't as good as hoped for, some gave in to temptation and "adjusted" their numbers to meet market expectations.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 4 . . .

- **Cooking the Books?** *(p. 166)*
- **Reporting Revenue Accurately** *(p. 167)*
- **Turning Gift Cards into Revenue** *(p. 174)*
- **Cashing In on Accrual Accounting** *(p. 178)*

preview of chapter 4

As indicated in the Feature Story, making adjustments is necessary to avoid misstatement of revenues and expenses such as those at Xerox and WorldCom. In this chapter, we introduce you to the accrual accounting concepts that make such adjustments possible.

The organization and content of the chapter are as follows.

Accrual Accounting Concepts

Timing Issues	The Basics of Adjusting Entries	The Adjusted Trial Balance and Financial Statements	Closing the Books	Quality of Earnings
• Revenue recognition principle • Expense recognition principle • Accrual versus cash basis of accounting	• Types of adjusting entries • Adjusting entries for deferrals • Adjusting entries for accruals • Summary of basic relationships	• Preparing the adjusted trial balance • Preparing financial statements	• Preparing closing entries • Preparing a post-closing trial balance • Summary of the accounting cycle	• Earnings management • Sarbanes-Oxley

the navigator

Timing Issues

study objective 1

Explain the revenue recognition principle and the expense recognition principle.

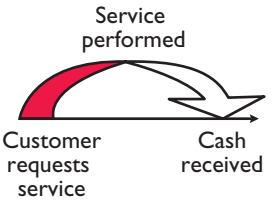
Most businesses need immediate feedback about how well they are doing. For example, management usually wants monthly reports on financial results, most large corporations are required to present quarterly and annual financial statements to stockholders, and the Internal Revenue Service requires all businesses to file annual tax returns. **Accounting divides the economic life of a business into artificial time periods.** As indicated in Chapter 2, this is the **periodicity assumption**. **Accounting time periods are generally a month, a quarter, or a year.**

Helpful Hint An accounting time period that is one year long is called a fiscal year.

Many business transactions affect more than one of these arbitrary time periods. For example, a new building purchased by Citigroup or a new airplane purchased by Delta Air Lines will be used for many years. It doesn't make sense to expense the full cost of the building or the airplane at the time of purchase because each will be used for many subsequent periods. Instead, we determine the impact of each transaction on specific accounting periods.

Determining the amount of revenues and expenses to report in a given accounting period can be difficult. Proper reporting requires an understanding of the nature of the company's business. Two principles are used as guidelines: the revenue recognition principle and the expense recognition principle.

Revenue Recognition



Revenue should be recognized in the accounting period in which it is earned (generally when service is performed).

THE REVENUE RECOGNITION PRINCIPLE

The **revenue recognition principle** requires that companies recognize revenue in the accounting period **in which it is earned**. In a service company, revenue is considered to be earned at the time the service is performed. To illustrate, assume Conrad Dry Cleaners cleans clothing on June 30, but customers do not claim and pay for their clothes until the first week of July. Under the revenue recognition principle, Conrad earns revenue in June when it performs the service, not in July when it receives the cash. At June 30, Conrad would report a receivable on its balance sheet and revenue in its income statement for the service performed. The journal entries for June and July would be as follows.

June	Accounts Receivable	xxx	
	Service Revenue		xxx
July	Cash	xxx	
	Accounts Receivable		xxx

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
At what point should the company record revenue?	Need to understand the nature of the company's business	Record revenue when earned. A service business earns revenue when it performs a service.	Recognizing revenue too early overstates current period revenue; recognizing it too late understates current period revenue.

THE EXPENSE RECOGNITION PRINCIPLE

In recognizing expenses, a simple rule is followed: "Let the expenses follow the revenues." Thus, expense recognition is tied to revenue recognition. Applied to the preceding example, this means that the salary expense Conrad incurred in performing the cleaning service on June 30 should be reported in the same period in which it recognizes the service revenue. The critical issue in expense recognition is determining when the expense makes its contribution to revenue. This may or may not be the same period in which the expense is paid. If Conrad does not pay the salary incurred on June 30 until July, it would report salaries payable on its June 30 balance sheet.

The practice of expense recognition is referred to as the **expense recognition principle** (often referred to as the **matching principle**). It dictates that efforts (expenses) be matched with results (revenues). Illustration 4-1 shows these relationships.

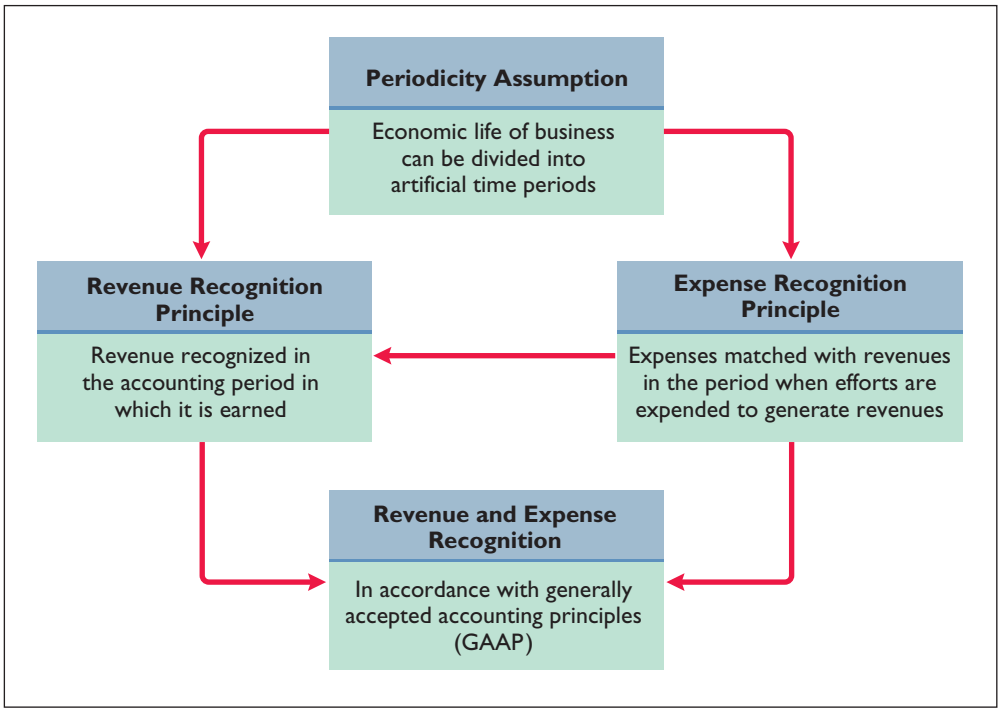


Illustration 4-1 GAAP relationships in revenue and expense recognition

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
At what point should the company record expenses?	Need to understand the nature of the company's business	Expenses should "follow" revenues–that is, match the effort (expense) with the result (revenue).	Recognizing expenses too early overstates current period expense; recognizing them too late understates current period expense.

Ethics Insight

Cooking the Books?

Allegations of abuse of the revenue recognition principle have become all too common in recent years. For example, it was alleged that Krispy Kreme sometimes doubled the number of doughnuts shipped to wholesale customers at the end of a quarter to boost quarterly results. The customers shipped the unsold doughnuts back after the beginning of the next quarter for a refund. Conversely, Computer Associates International was accused of backdating sales–that is, saying that a sale that occurred at the beginning of one quarter occurred at the end of the previous quarter in order to achieve the previous quarter's sales targets.

? What motivates sales executives and finance and accounting executives to participate in activities that result in inaccurate reporting of revenues? (See page 223.)

ACCRUAL VERSUS CASH BASIS OF ACCOUNTING

study objective 2

Differentiate between the cash basis and the accrual basis of accounting.

Accrual-basis accounting means that transactions that change a company's financial statements are recorded **in the periods in which the events occur**, even if cash was not exchanged. For example, using the accrual basis means that companies recognize revenues **when earned** (the revenue recognition principle), even if cash was not received. **Likewise, under the accrual basis, companies recognize expenses when incurred** (the expense recognition principle), even if cash was not paid.

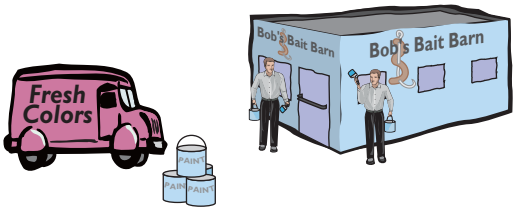
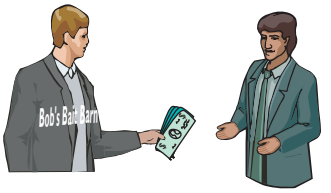
International Note Although different accounting standards are often used by companies in other countries, the accrual basis of accounting is central to all of these standards.

An alternative to the accrual basis is the cash basis. Under **cash-basis accounting**, **companies record revenue only when cash is received. They record expense only when cash is paid. The cash basis of accounting is prohibited under generally accepted accounting principles.** Why? Because it does not record revenue when earned, thus violating the revenue recognition principle. Similarly, it does not record expenses when incurred, which violates the expense recognition principle.

Illustration 4-2 compares accrual-based numbers and cash-based numbers. Suppose that Fresh Colors paints a large building in 2011. In 2011, it incurs and pays total expenses (salaries and paint costs) of $50,000. It bills the customer $80,000, but does not receive payment until 2012. On an accrual basis, Fresh Colors reports $80,000 of revenue during 2011 because that is when it is earned. The company matches expenses of $50,000 to the $80,000 of revenue. Thus, 2011 net income is $30,000 ($80,000 − $50,000). The $30,000 of net income reported for 2011 indicates the profitability of Fresh Colors' efforts during that period.

If, instead, Fresh Colors were to use cash-basis accounting, it would report $50,000 of expenses in 2011 and $80,000 of revenues during 2012. As shown in Illustration 4-2, it would report a loss of $50,000 in 2011 and would report net income of $80,000 in 2012. Clearly, the cash-basis measures are misleading because the financial performance of the company would be misstated for both 2011 and 2012.

Illustration 4-2 Accrual- versus cash-basis accounting

	2011	2012
Activity	 Purchased paint, painted building, paid employees	 Received payment for work done in 2011
Accrual basis	Revenue $80,000 Expense 50,000 Net income $30,000	Revenue $ 0 Expense 0 Net income $ 0
Cash basis	Revenue $ 0 Expense 50,000 Net loss $(50,000)	Revenue $80,000 Expense 0 Net income $80,000

Investor Insight

Reporting Revenue Accurately

Until recently, electronics manufacturer Apple was required to spread the revenues earned from iPhone sales over the two-year period following the sale of the phone. Accounting standards required this because it was argued that Apple was obligated to provide software updates after the phone was sold. Therefore, since Apple had service obligations after the initial date of sale, it was forced to spread the revenue over a two-year period. However, since the company received full payment upfront, the cash flows from iPhones significantly exceeded the revenue reported from iPhone sales in each accounting period. It also meant that the rapid growth of iPhone sales was not fully reflected in the revenue amounts reported in Apple's income statement. A new accounting standard now enables Apple to report nearly all of its iPhone revenue at the point of sale. It was estimated that 2009 revenues would have been about 17% higher, and earnings per share would have been almost 50% higher, under the new rule.

? In the past, why was it argued that Apple should spread the recognition of iPhone revenue over a two-year period, rather than recording it upfront? (See page 223.)

The Basics of Adjusting Entries

study objective 3

Explain why adjusting entries are needed, and identify the major types of adjusting entries.

In order for revenues to be recorded in the period in which they are earned, and for expenses to be recognized in the period in which they are incurred, companies make adjusting entries. **Adjusting entries ensure that the revenue recognition and expense recognition principles are followed**.

Adjusting entries are necessary because the **trial balance**—the first pulling together of the transaction data—may not contain up-to-date and complete data. This is true for several reasons:

1. Some events are not recorded daily because it is not efficient to do so. Examples are the use of supplies and the earning of wages by employees.

International Note Internal controls are a system of checks and balances designed to detect and prevent fraud and errors. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires U.S. companies to enhance their systems of internal control. However, many foreign companies do not have to meet strict internal control requirements. Some U.S. companies believe that this gives foreign firms an unfair advantage because developing and maintaining internal controls can be very expensive.

2. Some costs are not recorded during the accounting period because these costs expire with the passage of time rather than as a result of recurring daily transactions. Examples are charges related to the use of buildings and equipment, rent, and insurance.
3. Some items may be unrecorded. An example is a utility service bill that will not be received until the next accounting period.

Adjusting entries are required every time a company prepares financial statements. The company analyzes each account in the trial balance to determine whether it is complete and up to date for financial statement purposes. **Every adjusting entry will include one income statement account and one balance sheet account.**

TYPES OF ADJUSTING ENTRIES

Adjusting entries are classified as either deferrals or accruals. As Illustration 4-3 shows, each of these classes has two subcategories.

Illustration 4-3 Categories of adjusting entries

Deferrals:

1. Prepaid expenses: Expenses paid in cash and recorded as assets before they are used or consumed.
2. Unearned revenues: Cash received and recorded as liabilities before revenue is earned.

Accruals:

1. Accrued revenues: Revenues earned but not yet received in cash or recorded.
2. Accrued expenses: Expenses incurred but not yet paid in cash or recorded.

Subsequent sections give examples of each type of adjustment. Each example is based on the October 31 trial balance of Sierra Corporation, from Chapter 3, reproduced in Illustration 4-4. Note that Retained Earnings, with a zero balance, has been added to this trial balance. We will explain its use later.

Illustration 4-4 Trial balance

SIERRA CORPORATION
Trial Balance
October 31, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$15,200	
Supplies	2,500	
Prepaid Insurance	600	
Equipment	5,000	
Notes Payable		$ 5,000
Accounts Payable		2,500
Unearned Service Revenue		1,200
Common Stock		10,000
Retained Earnings		0
Dividends	500	
Service Revenue		10,000
Salaries Expense	4,000	
Rent Expense	900	
	$28,700	$28,700

We assume that Sierra Corporation uses an accounting period of one month. Thus, monthly adjusting entries are made. The entries are dated October 31.

ADJUSTING ENTRIES FOR DEFERRALS

study objective 4

Prepare adjusting entries for deferrals.

To defer means to postpone or delay. Deferrals are costs or revenues that are recognized at a date later than the point when cash was originally exchanged. Companies make adjusting entries for deferrals to record the portion of the deferred item that was incurred as an expense or earned as revenue during the current accounting period. The two types of deferrals are prepaid expenses and unearned revenues.

Prepaid Expenses

Companies record payments of expenses that will benefit more than one accounting period as assets called **prepaid expenses** or **prepayments**. When expenses are prepaid, an asset account is increased (debited) to show the service or benefit that the company will receive in the future. Examples of common prepayments are insurance, supplies, advertising, and rent. In addition, companies make prepayments when they purchase buildings and equipment.

Prepaid expenses are costs that expire either with the passage of time (e.g., rent and insurance) **or through use** (e.g., supplies). The expiration of these costs does not require daily entries, which would be impractical and unnecessary. Accordingly, companies postpone the recognition of such cost expirations until they prepare financial statements. At each statement date, they make adjusting entries to record the expenses applicable to the current accounting period and to show the remaining amounts in the asset accounts.

Prior to adjustment, assets are overstated and expenses are understated. Therefore, as shown in Illustration 4-5, **an adjusting entry for prepaid expenses results in an increase (a debit) to an expense account and a decrease (a credit) to an asset account**.

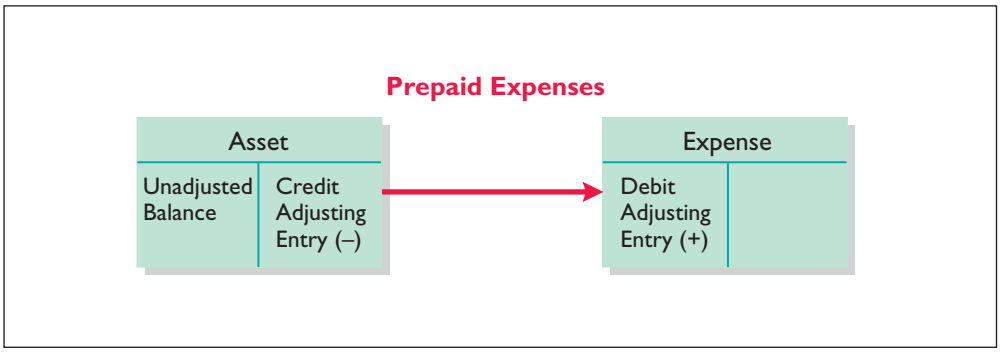


Illustration 4-5 Adjusting entries for prepaid expenses

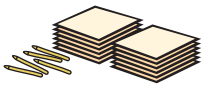
Let's look in more detail at some specific types of prepaid expenses, beginning with supplies.

SUPPLIES. The purchase of supplies, such as paper and envelopes, results in an increase (a debit) to an asset account. During the accounting period, the company uses supplies. Rather than record supplies expense as the supplies are used, companies recognize supplies expense at the **end** of the accounting period. At the end of the accounting period, the company counts the remaining supplies. The difference between the unadjusted balance in the Supplies (asset) account and the actual cost of supplies on hand represents the supplies used (an expense) for that period.

Recall from Chapter 3 that Sierra Corporation purchased supplies costing $2,500 on October 5. Sierra recorded the purchase by increasing (debiting) the asset Supplies. This account shows a balance of $2,500 in the October 31 trial balance. An inventory count at the close of business on October 31 reveals that $1,000 of supplies are still on hand. Thus, the cost of supplies used is

Supplies

Oct. 5



Supplies purchased; record asset

Oct. 31

Supplies used; record supplies expense

$1,500 ($2,500 − $1,000). This use of supplies decreases an asset, Supplies. It also decreases stockholders' equity by increasing an expense account, Supplies Expense. This is shown in Illustration 4-6.

Illustration 4-6
Adjustment for supplies

Basic Analysis	The expense Supplies Expense is increased $1,500, and the asset Supplies is decreased $1,500.
Equation Analysis	(1) Assets: Supplies −$1,500 = Liabilities + Stockholders' Equity: Supplies Expense −$1,500
Debit–Credit Analysis	Debits increase expenses: debit Supplies Expense $1,500. Credits decrease assets: credit Supplies $1,500.
Journal Entry	Oct. 31 Supplies Expense 1,500; Supplies 1,500 (To record supplies used)
Posting	Supplies: Oct. 5 2,500; Oct. 31 Adj. 1,500; Oct. 31 Bal. 1,000. Supplies Expense: Oct. 31 Adj. 1,500; Oct. 31 Bal. 1,500

After adjustment, the asset account Supplies shows a balance of $1,000, which is equal to the cost of supplies on hand at the statement date. In addition, Supplies Expense shows a balance of $1,500, which equals the cost of supplies used in October. **If Sierra does not make the adjusting entry, October expenses will be understated and net income overstated by $1,500. Moreover, both assets and stockholders' equity will be overstated by $1,500 on the October 31 balance sheet.**

Insurance

Oct. 4

Insurance purchased; record asset

Insurance Policy			
Oct $50	Nov $50	Dec $50	Jan $50
Feb $50	March $50	April $50	May $50
June $50	July $50	Aug $50	Sept $50
1 YEAR $600			

Oct. 31
Insurance expired; record insurance expense

INSURANCE. Companies purchase insurance to protect themselves from losses due to fire, theft, and unforeseen events. Insurance must be paid in advance, often for more than one year. The cost of insurance (premiums) paid in advance is recorded as an increase (debit) in the asset account Prepaid Insurance. At the financial statement date, companies increase (debit) Insurance Expense and decrease (credit) Prepaid Insurance for the cost of insurance that has expired during the period.

On October 4, Sierra Corporation paid $600 for a one-year fire insurance policy. Coverage began on October 1. Sierra recorded the payment by increasing (debiting) Prepaid Insurance. This account shows a balance of $600 in the October 31 trial balance. Insurance of $50 ($600 ÷ 12) expires each month. The expiration of prepaid insurance decreases an asset, Prepaid Insurance. It also decreases stockholders' equity by increasing an expense account, Insurance Expense.

As shown in Illustration 4-7, the asset Prepaid Insurance shows a balance of $550, which represents the unexpired cost for the remaining 11 months of coverage. At the same time, the balance in Insurance Expense equals the insurance cost that expired in October. If Sierra does not make this adjustment, October expenses are understated by $50 and net income is overstated by $50. Moreover,

as the accounting equation shows, both assets and stockholders' equity will be overstated by $50 on the October 31 balance sheet.

Illustration 4-7
Adjustment for insurance

Basic Analysis	The expense Insurance Expense is increased $50, and the asset Prepaid Insurance is decreased $50.
Equation Analysis	(2) Assets: Prepaid Insurance −$50 = Liabilities + Stockholders' Equity: Insurance Expense −$50
Debit–Credit Analysis	Debits increase expenses: debit Insurance Expense $50. Credits decrease assets: credit Prepaid Insurance $50.
Journal Entry	Oct. 31 Insurance Expense 50; Prepaid Insurance 50 (To record insurance expired)
Posting	Prepaid Insurance: Oct. 4 600; Oct. 31 Adj. 50; Oct. 31 Bal. 550 — Insurance Expense: Oct. 31 Adj. 50; Oct. 31 Bal. 50

DEPRECIATION. A company typically owns a variety of assets that have long lives, such as buildings, equipment, and motor vehicles. The period of service is referred to as the **useful life** of the asset. Because a building is expected to provide service for many years, it is recorded as an asset, rather than an expense, on the date it is acquired. As explained in chapter 2, companies record such assets **at cost**, as required by the cost principle. To follow the expense recognition principle, companies allocate a portion of this cost as an expense during each period of the asset's useful life. **Depreciation** is the process of allocating the cost of an asset to expense over its useful life.

Need for adjustment. The acquisition of long-lived assets is essentially a long-term prepayment for the use of an asset. An adjusting entry for depreciation is needed to recognize the cost that has been used (an expense) during the period and to report the unused cost (an asset) at the end of the period. One very important point to understand: **Depreciation is an allocation concept, not a valuation concept.** That is, depreciation **allocates an asset's cost to the periods in which it is used. Depreciation does not attempt to report the actual change in the value of the asset.**

For Sierra Corporation, assume that depreciation on the equipment is $480 a year, or $40 per month. As shown in Illustration 4-8 (page 172), rather than decrease (credit) the asset account directly, Sierra instead credits Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment. Accumulated Depreciation is called a **contra asset account**. Such an account is offset against an asset account on the balance sheet. Thus, the Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment account offsets the asset Equipment. This account keeps track of the total amount of depreciation expense taken over the life of the asset. To keep the accounting equation in balance, Sierra decreases stockholders' equity by increasing an expense account, Depreciation Expense.

The balance in the Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment account will increase $40 each month, and the balance in Equipment remains $5,000.

Depreciation

Oct. 2

Equipment purchased; record asset

Equipment			
Oct $40	Nov $40	Dec $40	Jan $40
Feb $40	March $40	April $40	May $40
June $40	July $40	Aug $40	Sept $40
Depreciation = $480/year			

Oct. 31
Depreciation recognized; record depreciation expense

Illustration 4-8
Adjustment for depreciation

Basic Analysis	The expense Depreciation Expense is increased $40, and the contra asset Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment is increased $40.
Equation Analysis	Assets: Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment −$40 = Liabilities + Stockholders' Equity: Depreciation Expense −$40
Debit–Credit Analysis	Debits increase expenses: debit Depreciation Expense $40. Credits increase contra assets: credit Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment $40.
Journal Entry	Oct. 31 Depreciation Expense 40; Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment 40 (To record monthly depreciation)
Posting	Equipment: Oct. 2 5,000; Oct. 31 Bal. 5,000. Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment: Oct. 31 Adj. 40; Oct. 31 Bal. 40. Depreciation Expense: Oct. 31 Adj. 40; Oct. 31 Bal. 40

Helpful Hint All contra accounts have increases, decreases, and normal balances **opposite to** the account to which they relate.

Statement presentation. As noted above, Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment is a contra asset account. It is offset against Equipment on the balance sheet. The normal balance of a contra asset account is a credit. A theoretical alternative to using a contra asset account would be to decrease (credit) the asset account by the amount of depreciation each period. But using the contra account is preferable for a simple reason: It discloses *both* the original cost of the equipment *and* the total cost that has expired to date. Thus, in the balance sheet, Sierra deducts Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment from the related asset account, as shown in Illustration 4-9.

Illustration 4-9 Balance sheet presentation of accumulated depreciation

Equipment	$ 5,000
Less: Accumulated depreciation—equipment	40
	$4,960

Alternative Terminology Book value is also referred to as *carrying value*.

Book value is the difference between the cost of any depreciable asset and its related accumulated depreciation. In Illustration 4-9, the book value of the equipment at the balance sheet date is $4,960. The book value and the fair value of the asset are generally two different values. As noted earlier, **the purpose of depreciation is not valuation but a means of cost allocation.**

Depreciation expense identifies the portion of an asset's cost that expired during the period (in this case, in October). The accounting equation shows that without this adjusting entry, total assets, total stockholders' equity, and net income are overstated by $40 and depreciation expense is understated by $40.

Illustration 4-10 summarizes the accounting for prepaid expenses.

Unearned Revenues

Companies record cash received before revenue is earned by increasing (crediting) a liability account called **unearned revenues**. Items like rent, magazine subscriptions,

Illustration 4-10
Accounting for prepaid expenses

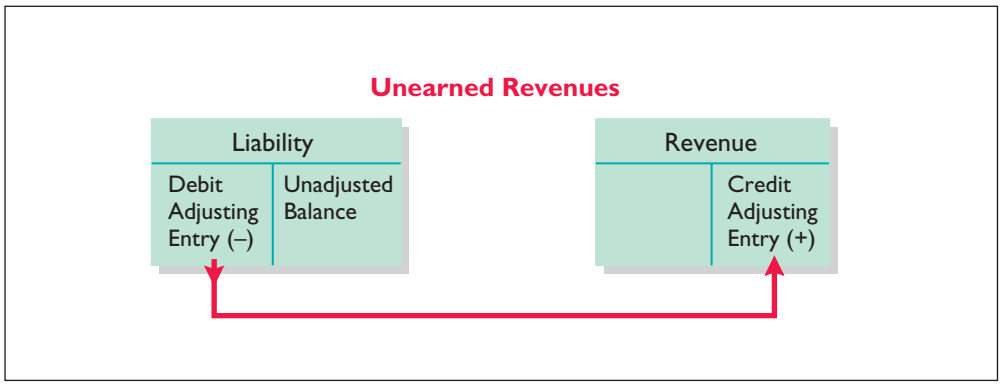
ACCOUNTING FOR PREPAID EXPENSES			
Examples	**Reason for Adjustment**	**Accounts Before Adjustment**	**Adjusting Entry**
Insurance, supplies, advertising, rent, depreciation	Prepaid expenses recorded in asset accounts have been used.	Assets overstated. Expenses understated.	Dr. Expenses Cr. Assets

and customer deposits for future service may result in unearned revenues. Airlines such as United, American, and Delta, for instance, treat receipts from the sale of tickets as unearned revenue until the flight service is provided.

Unearned revenues are the opposite of prepaid expenses. Indeed, unearned revenue on the books of one company is likely to be a prepaid expense on the books of the company that has made the advance payment. For example, if identical accounting periods are assumed, a landlord will have unearned rent revenue when a tenant has prepaid rent.

When a company receives payment for services to be provided in a future accounting period, it increases (credits) an unearned revenue (a liability) account to recognize the liability that exists. The company subsequently earns revenues by providing service. During the accounting period it is not practical to make daily entries as the company earns the revenue. Instead, we delay recognition of earned revenue until the adjustment process. Then the company makes an adjusting entry to record the revenue earned during the period and to show the liability that remains at the end of the accounting period. Typically, prior to adjustment, liabilities are overstated and revenues are understated. Therefore, as shown in Illustration 4-11, **the adjusting entry for unearned revenues results in a decrease (a debit) to a liability account and an increase (a credit) to a revenue account**.

Illustration 4-11
Adjusting entries for unearned revenues



Sierra Corporation received $1,200 on October 2 from R. Knox for guide services for multi-day trips expected to be completed by December 31. Sierra credited the payment to Unearned Service Revenue, and this liability account shows a balance of $1,200 in the October 31 trial balance. From an evaluation of the service Sierra performed for Knox during October, the company determines that it has earned $400 in October. The liability (Unearned Service Revenue) is therefore decreased, and stockholders' equity (Service Revenue) is increased.

As shown in Illustration 4-12 (page 174), the liability Unearned Service Revenue now shows a balance of $800. That amount represents the remaining guide services expected to be performed in the future. At the same time, Service Revenue shows total revenue earned in October of $10,400. **Without this adjustment, revenues and net income are understated by $400 in the income statement.**

Illustration 4-12 Service revenue accounts after adjustment

Moreover, liabilities are overstated and stockholders' equity is understated by $400 on the October 31 balance sheet.

Basic Analysis

The liability Unearned Service Revenue is decreased $400, and the revenue Service Revenue is increased $400.

Equation Analysis

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
		Unearned Service Revenue −$400		Service Revenue +$400

Debit–Credit Analysis

Debits decrease liabilities: debit Unearned Service Revenue $400.
Credits increase revenues: credit Service Revenue $400.

Journal Entry

Oct. 31	Unearned Service Revenue Service Revenue (To record revenue earned)	400	400

Posting

Unearned Service Revenue			
Oct. 31	Adj. 400	Oct. 2	1,200
		Oct. 31	Bal. 800

Service Revenue			
		Oct. 3	10,000
		31 Adj.	400
		Oct. 31 Bal.	10,400

Illustration 4-13 summarizes the accounting for unearned revenues.

Illustration 4-13 Accounting for unearned revenues

ACCOUNTING FOR UNEARNED REVENUES

Examples	Reason for Adjustment	Accounts Before Adjustment	Adjusting Entry
Rent, magazine subscriptions, customer deposits for future service	Unearned revenues recorded in liability accounts have been earned.	Liabilities overstated. Revenues understated.	Dr. Liabilities Cr. Revenues

Accounting Across the Organization

Turning Gift Cards into Revenue

Those of you who are marketing majors (and even most of you who are not) know that gift cards are among the hottest marketing tools in merchandising today. Customers purchase gift cards and give them to someone for later use. In a recent year, gift-card sales topped $95 billion.

Although these programs are popular with marketing executives, they create accounting questions. Should revenue be recorded at the time the gift card is sold, or when it is exercised? How should expired gift cards be accounted for? In its 2009 balance sheet, Best Buy reported unearned revenue related to gift cards of $479 million.

Source: Robert Berner, "Gift Cards: No Gift to Investors," *Business Week* (March 14, 2005), p. 86.

? Suppose that Robert Jones purchases a $100 gift card at Best Buy on December 24, 2011, and gives it to his wife, Mary Jones, on December 25, 2011. On January 3, 2012, Mary uses the card to purchase $100 worth of CDs. When do you think Best Buy should recognize revenue and why? (See page 223.)

before you go on...

Do it! The ledger of Hammond, Inc., on March 31, 2012, includes these selected accounts before adjusting entries are prepared.

ADJUSTING ENTRIES FOR DEFERRALS

	Debit	Credit
Prepaid Insurance	$ 3,600	
Supplies	2,800	
Equipment	25,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		$5,000
Unearned Service Revenue		9,200

An analysis of the accounts shows the following.

1. Insurance expires at the rate of $100 per month.
2. Supplies on hand total $800.
3. The equipment depreciates $200 a month.
4. One-half of the unearned service revenue was earned in March.

Prepare the adjusting entries for the month of March.

Solution

1. Insurance Expense	100	
Prepaid Insurance		100
(To record insurance expired)		
2. Supplies Expense	2,000	
Supplies		2,000
(To record supplies used)		
3. Depreciation Expense	200	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		200
(To record monthly depreciation)		
4. Unearned Service Revenue	4,600	
Service Revenue		4,600
(To record revenue earned)		

Action Plan

- Make adjusting entries at the end of the period for revenues earned and expenses incurred in the period.
- Don't forget to make adjusting entries for deferrals. Failure to adjust for deferrals leads to overstatement of the asset or liability and understatement of the related expense or revenue.

Related exercise material: **BE4-4, BE4-5, BE4-6, BE4-7,** and **Do it! 4-1.**

the navigator

ADJUSTING ENTRIES FOR ACCRUALS

study objective 5
Prepare adjusting entries for accruals.

The second category of adjusting entries is **accruals**. Prior to an accrual adjustment, the revenue account (and the related asset account) or the expense account (and the related liability account) are understated. Thus, the adjusting entry for accruals will **increase both a balance sheet and an income statement account**.

Accrued Revenues

Revenues earned but not yet recorded at the statement date are **accrued revenues**. Accrued revenues may accumulate (accrue) with the passing of time, as in the case of interest revenue. These are unrecorded because the earning of interest does not involve daily transactions. Companies do not record interest revenue on a daily basis because it is often impractical to do so. Accrued revenues also may result from services that have been performed but not yet billed nor collected, as in the case of commissions and fees. These may be unrecorded because only a portion of the total service has been provided and the clients won't be billed until the service has been completed.

An adjusting entry records the receivable that exists at the balance sheet date and the revenue earned during the period. Prior to adjustment, both assets and revenues are understated. As shown in Illustration 4-14 (page 176), **an adjusting entry for accrued revenues results in an increase (a debit) to an asset account and an increase (a credit) to a revenue account**.

Accrued Revenues

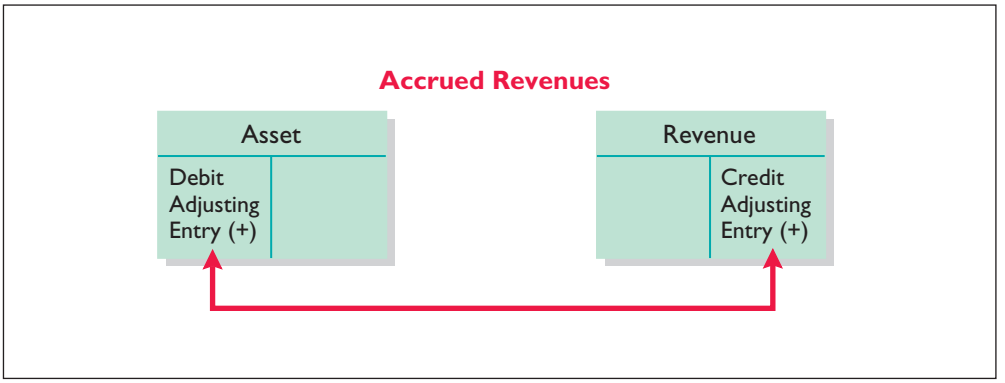
Oct. 31

Revenue and receivable are recorded for unbilled services

Nov. 10

Cash is received; receivable is reduced

Illustration 4-14 Adjusting entries for accrued revenues

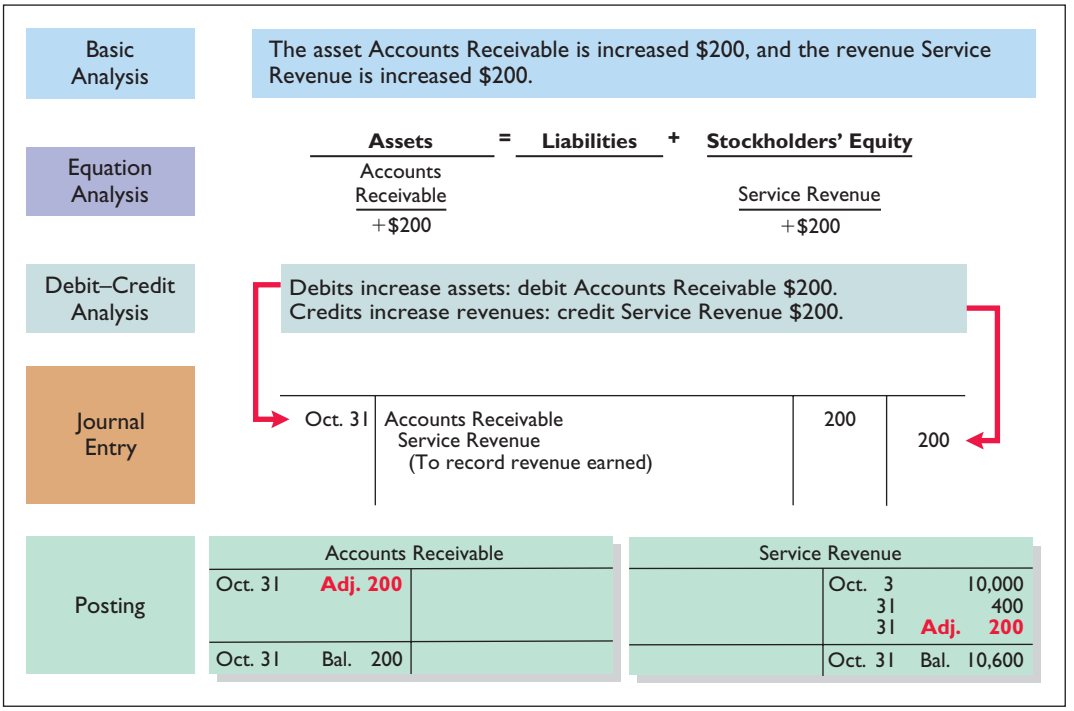


Helpful Hint For accruals, there may have been no prior entry, and the accounts requiring adjustment may both have zero balances prior to adjustment.

Ethics Note Computer Associates International was accused of backdating sales–that is, saying that a sale that occurred at the beginning of one quarter occurred at the end of the previous quarter, in order to achieve the previous quarter's sales targets.

In October, Sierra Corporation earned $200 for guide services that were not billed to clients on or before October 31. Because these services are not billed, they are not recorded. The accrual of unrecorded service revenue increases an asset account, Accounts Receivable. It also increases stockholders' equity by increasing a revenue account, Service Revenue, as shown in Illustration 4-15.

Illustration 4-15 Adjustment for accrued revenue



Equation analyses summarize the effects of transactions on the three elements of the accounting equation, as well as the effect on cash flows.

A	=	L	+	SE
+200				
−200				

Cash Flows
+200

The asset Accounts Receivable shows that clients owe Sierra $200 at the balance sheet date. The balance of $10,600 in Service Revenue represents the total revenue Sierra earned during the month ($10,000 + $400 + $200). **Without the adjusting entry, assets and stockholders' equity on the balance sheet and revenues and net income on the income statement are understated.**

On November 10, Sierra receives cash of $200 for the services performed in October and makes the following entry.

Nov. 10	Cash	200	
	Accounts Receivable		200
	(To record cash collected on account)		

The company records the collection of the receivables by a debit (increase) to Cash and a credit (decrease) to Accounts Receivable.

Illustration 4-16 summarizes the accounting for accrued revenues.

Illustration 4-16 Accounting for accrued revenues

ACCOUNTING FOR ACCRUED REVENUES			
Examples	**Reason for Adjustment**	**Accounts Before Adjustment**	**Adjusting Entry**
Interest, rent, services performed but not collected	Revenues have been earned but not yet received in cash or recorded.	Assets understated. Revenues understated.	Dr. Assets Cr. Revenues

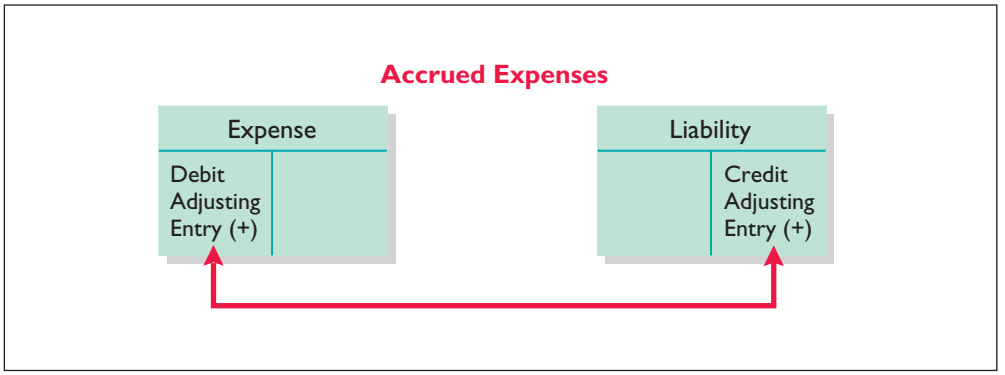
Accrued Expenses

Expenses incurred but not yet paid or recorded at the statement date are called **accrued expenses**. Interest, taxes, and salaries are common examples of accrued expenses.

Companies make adjustments for accrued expenses to record the obligations that exist at the balance sheet date and to recognize the expenses that apply to the current accounting period. Prior to adjustment, both liabilities and expenses are understated. Therefore, **an adjusting entry for accrued expenses results in an increase (a debit) to an expense account and an increase (a credit) to a liability account.**

Ethics Note A report released by Fannie Mae's board of directors stated that improper adjusting entries at the mortgage-finance company resulted in delayed recognition of expenses caused by interest-rate changes. The motivation for such accounting apparently was the desire to hit earnings estimates.

Illustration 4-17 Adjusting entries for accrued expenses



Let's look in more detail at some specific types of accrued expenses, beginning with accrued interest.

ACCRUED INTEREST. Sierra Corporation signed a three-month note payable in the amount of $5,000 on October 1. The note requires Sierra to pay interest at an annual rate of 12%.

The amount of the interest recorded is determined by three factors: (1) the face value of the note; (2) the interest rate, which is always expressed as an annual rate; and (3) the length of time the note is outstanding. For Sierra, the total interest due on the $5,000 note at its maturity date three months in the future is $150 ($5,000 × 12% × $\frac{3}{12}$), or $50 for one month. Illustration 4-18 shows the formula for computing interest and its application to Sierra Corporation for the month of October.

Illustration 4-18 Formula for computing interest

Face Value of Note	×	Annual Interest Rate	×	Time in Terms of One Year	=	Interest
$5,000	×	12%	×	$\frac{1}{12}$	=	$50

Helpful Hint In computing interest, we express the time period as a fraction of a year.

As Illustration 4-19 shows, the accrual of interest at October 31 increases a liability account, Interest Payable. It also decreases stockholders' equity by increasing an expense account, Interest Expense.

Illustration 4-19
Adjustment for accrued interest

Basic Analysis	The expense Interest Expense is increased $50, and the liability Interest Payable is increased $50.
Equation Analysis	Assets = Liabilities (Interest Payable +$50) + Stockholders' Equity (Interest Expense −$50)
Debit–Credit Analysis	Debits increase expenses: debit Interest Expense $50. Credits increase liabilities: credit Interest Payable $50.
Journal Entry	Oct. 31 Interest Expense 50; Interest Payable 50 (To record interest on notes payable)
Posting	Interest Expense: Oct. 31 Adj. 50; Oct. 31 Bal. 50. Interest Payable: Oct. 31 Adj. 50; Oct. 31 Bal. 50

Interest Expense shows the interest charges for the month of October. Interest Payable shows the amount of interest the company owes at the statement date. Sierra will not pay the interest until the note comes due at the end of three months. Companies use the Interest Payable account, instead of crediting Notes Payable, to disclose the two different types of obligations—interest and principal—in the accounts and statements. **Without this adjusting entry, liabilities and interest expense are understated, and net income and stockholders' equity are overstated.**

International Insight

Cashing In on Accrual Accounting

The Chinese government, like most governments, uses cash accounting. It was therefore interesting when it was recently reported that for about $38 billion of expenditures in a recent budget projection, the Chinese government decided to use accrual accounting versus cash accounting. It decided to expense the amount in the year in which it was originally allocated rather than when the payments would be made. Why did it do this? It enabled the government to keep its projected budget deficit below a 3% threshold. While it was able to keep its projected shortfall below 3%, China did suffer some criticism for its inconsistent accounting. Critics charge that this inconsistent treatment reduces the transparency of China's accounting information. That is, it is not easy for outsiders to accurately evaluate what is really going on.

Source: Andrew Batson, "China Altered Budget Accounting to Reduce Deficit Figure," *Wall Street Journal Online* (March 15, 2010).

? Accrual accounting is often considered superior to cash accounting. Why, then, were some people critical of China's use of accrual accounting in this instance? (See page 223.)

ACCRUED SALARIES. Companies pay for some types of expenses, such as employee salaries and commissions, after the services have been performed. Sierra paid salaries on October 26 for its employees' first two weeks of work; the next payment of salaries will not occur until November 9. As Illustration 4-20 shows, three working days remain in October (October 29–31).

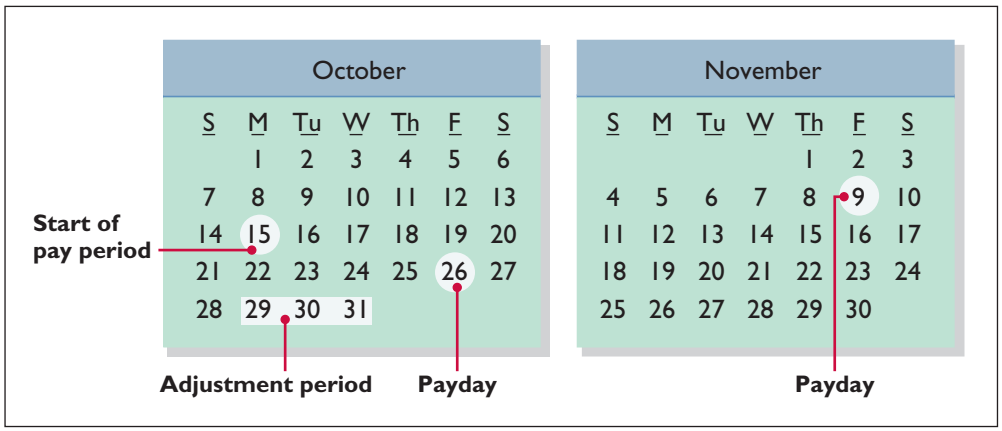


Illustration 4-20 Calendar showing Sierra Corporation's pay periods

At October 31, the salaries for these three days represent an accrued expense and a related liability to Sierra. The employees receive total salaries of $2,000 for a five-day work week, or $400 per day. Thus, accrued salaries at October 31 are $1,200 ($400 × 3). This accrual increases a liability, Salaries Payable. It also decreases stockholders' equity by increasing an expense account, Salaries Expense, as shown in Illustration 4-21.

Illustration 4-21 Adjustment for accrued salaries

Basic Analysis

The expense Salaries Expense is increased $1,200, and the liability account Salaries Payable is decreased $1,200.

Equation Analysis

Assets =	Liabilities	+	Stockholders' Equity
	Salaries Payable		Salaries Expense
	+$1,200		−$1,200

Debit–Credit Analysis

Debits increase expenses: debit Salaries Expense $1,200.
Credits increase liabilities: credit Salaries Payable $1,200.

Journal Entry

Oct. 31	Salaries Expense	1,200	
	Salaries Payable		1,200
	(To record accrued salaries)		

Posting

Salaries Expense				Salaries Payable			
Oct. 26	4,000				Oct. 31	Adj.	1,200
31	Adj. 1,200						
Oct. 31	Bal. 5,200				Oct. 31	Bal.	1,200

After this adjustment, the balance in Salaries Expense of $5,200 (13 days × $400) is the actual salary expense for October. The balance in Salaries Payable

of $1,200 is the amount of the liability for salaries Sierra owes as of October 31. **Without the $1,200 adjustment for salaries, Sierra's expenses are understated $1,200 and its liabilities are understated $1,200.**

Sierra Corporation pays salaries every two weeks. Consequently, the next payday is November 9, when the company will again pay total salaries of $4,000. The payment consists of $1,200 of salaries payable at October 31 plus $2,800 of salaries expense for November (7 working days, as shown in the November calendar × $400). Therefore, Sierra makes the following entry on November 9.

Nov. 9	Salaries Payable	1,200	
	Salaries Expense	2,800	
	Cash		4,000
	(To record November 9 payroll)		

This entry eliminates the liability for Salaries Payable that Sierra recorded in the October 31 adjusting entry, and it records the proper amount of Salaries Expense for the period between November 1 and November 9.

Illustration 4-22 summarizes the accounting for accrued expenses.

Illustration 4-22
Accounting for accrued expenses

ACCOUNTING FOR ACCRUED EXPENSES

Examples	Reason for Adjustment	Accounts Before Adjustment	Adjusting Entry
Interest, rent, salaries	Expenses have been incurred but not yet paid in cash or recorded.	Expenses understated. Liabilities understated.	Dr. Expenses Cr. Liabilities

before you go on...

ADJUSTING ENTRIES FOR ACCRUALS

Do it! Micro Computer Services Inc. began operations on August 1, 2012. At the end of August 2012, management attempted to prepare monthly financial statements. The following information relates to August.

1. At August 31, the company owed its employees $800 in salaries that will be paid on September 1.
2. On August 1, the company borrowed $30,000 from a local bank on a 15-year mortgage. The annual interest rate is 10%.
3. Revenue earned but unrecorded for August totaled $1,100.

Prepare the adjusting entries needed at August 31, 2012.

Action Plan

- Make adjusting entries at the end of the period for revenues earned and expenses incurred in the period.
- Don't forget to make adjusting entries for accruals. Adjusting entries for accruals will increase both a balance sheet and an income statement account.

Solution

1. Salaries Expense	800	
Salaries Payable		800
(To record accrued salaries)		
2. Interest Expense	250	
Interest Payable		250
(To record accrued interest: $30,000 × 10% × $\frac{1}{12}$ = $250)		
3. Accounts Receivable	1,100	
Service Revenue		1,100
(To record revenue earned)		

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE4-8, Do it! 4-2, E4-8, E4-9, E4-10,** and **E4-11.**

SUMMARY OF BASIC RELATIONSHIPS

Illustration 4-23 summarizes the four basic types of adjusting entries. Take some time to study and analyze the adjusting entries. Be sure to note that **each adjusting entry affects one balance sheet account and one income statement account**.

Type of Adjustment	Accounts Before Adjustment	Adjusting Entry
Prepaid expenses	Assets overstated Expenses understated	Dr. Expenses Cr. Assets
Unearned revenues	Liabilities overstated Revenues understated	Dr. Liabilities Cr. Revenues
Accrued revenues	Assets understated Revenues understated	Dr. Assets Cr. Revenues
Accrued expenses	Expenses understated Liabilities understated	Dr. Expenses Cr. Liabilities

Illustration 4-23 Summary of adjusting entries

Illustrations 4-24 and 4-25 (page 182) show the journalizing and posting of adjusting entries for Sierra Corporation on October 31. When reviewing the general ledger in Illustration 4-25, note that for learning purposes, we have highlighted the adjustments in color.

GENERAL JOURNAL

Date	Account Titles and Explanation	Debit	Credit
2010	Adjusting Entries		
Oct. 31	Supplies Expense	1,500	
	Supplies		1,500
	(To record supplies used)		
31	Insurance Expense	50	
	Prepaid Insurance		50
	(To record insurance expired)		
31	Depreciation Expense	40	
	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		40
	(To record monthly depreciation)		
31	Unearned Service Revenue	400	
	Service Revenue		400
	(To record revenue earned)		
31	Accounts Receivable	200	
	Service Revenue		200
	(To record revenue earned)		
31	Interest Expense	50	
	Interest Payable		50
	(To record interest on notes payable)		
31	Salaries Expense	1,200	
	Salaries Payable		1,200
	(To record accrued salaries)		

Illustration 4-24 General journal showing adjusting entries

Illustration 4-25 General ledger after adjustments

GENERAL LEDGER

Cash

Oct. 1	10,000	Oct. 2	5,000
1	5,000	3	900
2	1,200	4	600
3	10,000	20	500
		26	4,000
Oct. 31	Bal. 15,200		

Accounts Receivable

Oct. 31	**200**		
Oct. 31	Bal. 200		

Supplies

Oct. 5	2,500	Oct. 31	**1,500**
Oct. 31	Bal. 1,000		

Prepaid Insurance

Oct. 4	600	Oct. 31	**50**
Oct. 31	Bal. 550		

Equipment

Oct. 2	5,000		
Oct. 31	Bal. 5,000		

Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment

		Oct. 31	**40**
		Oct. 31	Bal. 40

Notes Payable

		Oct. 1	5,000
		Oct. 31	Bal. 5,000

Accounts Payable

		Oct. 5	2,500
		Oct. 31	Bal. 2,500

Interest Payable

		Oct. 31	**50**
		Oct. 31	Bal. 50

Unearned Service Revenue

Oct. 31	**400**	Oct. 2	1,200
		Oct. 31	Bal. 800

Salaries Payable

		Oct. 31	**1,200**
		Oct. 31	Bal. 1,200

Common Stock

		Oct. 1	10,000
		Oct. 31	Bal. 10,000

Retained Earnings

		Oct. 31	Bal. 0

Dividends

Oct. 20	500		
Oct. 31	Bal. 500		

Service Revenue

		Oct. 3	10,000
		31	**400**
		31	**200**
		Oct. 31	Bal. 10,600

Salaries Expense

Oct. 26	4,000		
31	**1,200**		
Oct. 31	Bal. 5,200		

Supplies Expense

Oct. 31	**1,500**		
Oct. 31	Bal. 1,500		

Rent Expense

Oct. 3	900		
Oct. 31	Bal. 900		

Insurance Expense

Oct. 31	**50**		
Oct. 31	Bal. 50		

Interest Expense

Oct. 31	**50**		
Oct. 31	Bal. 50		

Depreciation Expense

Oct. 31	**40**		
Oct. 31	Bal. 40		

The Adjusted Trial Balance and Financial Statements

study objective 6

Describe the nature and purpose of the adjusted trial balance.

After a company has journalized and posted all adjusting entries, it prepares another trial balance from the ledger accounts. This trial balance is called an **adjusted trial balance**. It shows the balances of all accounts, including those adjusted, at the end of the accounting period. The purpose of an adjusted trial balance is to **prove the equality** of the total debit balances and the total credit balances in the ledger after all adjustments. Because the accounts contain all data needed for financial statements, the adjusted trial balance is the **primary basis for the preparation of financial statements**.

PREPARING THE ADJUSTED TRIAL BALANCE

Illustration 4-26 presents the adjusted trial balance for Sierra Corporation prepared from the ledger accounts in Illustration 4-25. The amounts affected by the adjusting entries are highlighted in color.

SIERRA CORPORATION
Adjusted Trial Balance
October 31, 2012

	Dr.	Cr.
Cash	$ 15,200	
Accounts Receivable	200	
Supplies	1,000	
Prepaid Insurance	550	
Equipment	5,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		$ 40
Notes Payable		5,000
Accounts Payable		2,500
Interest Payable		50
Unearned Service Revenue		800
Salaries Payable		1,200
Common Stock		10,000
Retained Earnings		0
Dividends	500	
Service Revenue		10,600
Salaries Expense	5,200	
Supplies Expense	1,500	
Rent Expense	900	
Insurance Expense	50	
Interest Expense	50	
Depreciation Expense	40	
	$30,190	$30,190

Illustration 4-26
Adjusted trial balance

PREPARING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Companies can prepare financial statements directly from an adjusted trial balance. Illustrations 4-27 and 4-28 present the interrelationships of data in the adjusted trial balance of Sierra Corporation. As Illustration 4-27 shows, companies prepare the income statement from the revenue and expense accounts. Similarly, they derive the retained earnings statement from the retained earnings account, dividends account, and the net income (or net loss) shown in the income statement. As Illustration 4-28 shows, companies then prepare the balance sheet from the asset, liability, and stockholders' equity accounts. They obtain the amount reported for retained earnings on the balance sheet from the ending balance in the retained earnings statement.

Illustration 4-27
Preparation of the income statement and retained earnings statement from the adjusted trial balance

SIERRA CORPORATION
Adjusted Trial Balance
October 31, 2012

Account	Debit	Credit
Cash	$15,200	
Accounts Receivable	200	
Supplies	1,000	
Prepaid Insurance	550	
Equipment	5,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		$ 40
Notes Payable		5,000
Accounts Payable		2,500
Interest Payable		50
Unearned Service Revenue		800
Salaries Payable		1,200
Common Stock		10,000
Retained Earnings		0
Dividends	500	
Service Revenue		10,600
Salaries Expense	5,200	
Supplies Expense	1,500	
Rent Expense	900	
Insurance Expense	50	
Interest Expense	50	
Depreciation Expense	40	
	$30,190	$30,190

SIERRA CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Month Ended October 31, 2012

Revenues		
Service revenue		$10,600
Expenses		
Salaries expense	$5,200	
Supplies expense	1,500	
Rent expense	900	
Insurance expense	50	
Interest expense	50	
Depreciation expense	40	
Total expenses		7,740
Net income		$ 2,860

SIERRA CORPORATION
Retained Earnings Statement
For the Month Ended October 31, 2012

Retained earnings, October 1	$ 0
Add: Net income	2,860
	2,860
Less: Dividends	500
Retained earnings, October 31	$ 2,360

To balance sheet

Illustration 4-28
Preparation of the balance sheet from the adjusted trial balance

SIERRA CORPORATION
Adjusted Trial Balance
October 31, 2012

Account	Debit	Credit
Cash	$15,200	
Accounts Receivable	200	
Supplies	1,000	
Prepaid Insurance	550	
Equipment	5,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		$ 40
Notes Payable		5,000
Accounts Payable		2,500
Interest Payable		50
Unearned Service Revenue		800
Salaries Payable		1,200
Common Stock		10,000
Retained Earnings		0
Dividends	500	
Service Revenue		10,600
Salaries Expense	5,200	
Supplies Expense	1,500	
Rent Expense	900	
Insurance Expense	50	
Interest Expense	50	
Depreciation Expense	40	
	$30,190	$30,190

SIERRA CORPORATION
Balance Sheet
October 31, 2012

Assets		
Cash		$15,200
Accounts receivable		200
Supplies		1,000
Prepaid insurance		550
Equipment	$5,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation—equipment	40	4,960
Total assets		$21,910
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Liabilities		
Notes payable	$ 5,000	
Accounts payable	2,500	
Salaries payable	1,200	
Unearned service revenue	800	
Interest payable	50	
Total liabilities		$ 9,550
Stockholders' equity		
Common stock	10,000	
Retained earnings	2,360	
Total stockholders' equity		12,360
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity		$21,910

Balance at Oct. 31 from Retained Earnings Statement in Illustration 4-27

before you go on...

Do it! Skolnick Co. was organized on April 1, 2012. The company prepares quarterly financial statements. The adjusted trial balance amounts at June 30 are shown below:

TRIAL BALANCE

	Debits		Credits
Cash	$ 6,700	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	$ 850
Accounts Receivable	600	Notes Payable	5,000
Prepaid Rent	900	Accounts Payable	1,510
Supplies	1,000	Salaries and Wages Payable	400
Equipment	15,000	Interest Payable	50
Dividends	600	Unearned Rent Revenue	500
Salaries and Wages Expense	9,400	Common Stock	14,000
Rent Expense	1,500	Service Revenue	14,200
Depreciation Expense	850	Rent Revenue	800
Supplies Expense	200		
Utilities Expense	510		
Interest Expense	50		
Total debits	$37,310	Total credits	$37,310

(a) Determine the net income for the quarter April 1 to June 30.
(b) Determine the total assets and total liabilities at June 30, 2012 for Skolnick Co.
(c) Determine the amount that appears for Retained Earnings.

Action Plan

- In an adjusted trial balance, all asset, liability, revenue, and expense accounts are properly stated.
- To determine the ending balance in Retained Earnings, add net income and subtract dividends.

Solution

(a) The net income is determined by adding revenues and subtracting expenses. The net income is computed as follows.

Revenues		
Service revenue	$14,200	
Rent revenue	800	
Total revenues		$15,000
Expenses		
Salaries and wages expense	$ 9,400	
Rent expense	1,500	
Depreciation expense	850	
Utilities expense	510	
Supplies expense	200	
Interest expense	50	
Total expenses		12,510
Net income		$ 2,490

(b) Total assets and liabilities are computed as follows.

Assets			Liabilities	
Cash		$ 6,700	Notes payable	$5,000
Accounts receivable		600	Accounts payable	1,510
Supplies		1,000	Unearned rent revenue	500
Prepaid rent		900	Salaries and wages payable	400
Equipment	15,000		Interest payable	50
Less: Accumulated depreciation—equipment	850	14,150		
Total assets		$23,350	Total liabilities	$7,460

(c)

Retained earnings, April 1	$ 0
Add: Net income	2,490
Less: Dividends	600
Retained earnings, June 30	$1,890

Related exercise material: **BE4-9, BE4-10, BE4-11, BE4-12, Do it! 4-3, E4-12, E4-13, E4-15,** and **E4-16.**

the navigator

Closing the Books

Alternative Terminology
Temporary accounts are sometimes called *nominal accounts*, and permanent accounts are sometimes called *real accounts*.

In previous chapters, you learned that revenue and expense accounts and the dividends account are subdivisions of retained earnings, which is reported in the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet. Because revenues, expenses, and dividends relate to only a given accounting period, they are considered **temporary accounts**. In contrast, all balance sheet accounts are considered **permanent accounts** because their balances are carried forward into future accounting periods. Illustration 4-29 identifies the accounts in each category.

study objective 7
Explain the purpose of closing entries.

PREPARING CLOSING ENTRIES

At the end of the accounting period, companies transfer the temporary account balances to the permanent stockholders' equity account—Retained Earnings—through the preparation of closing entries. **Closing entries** transfer net income

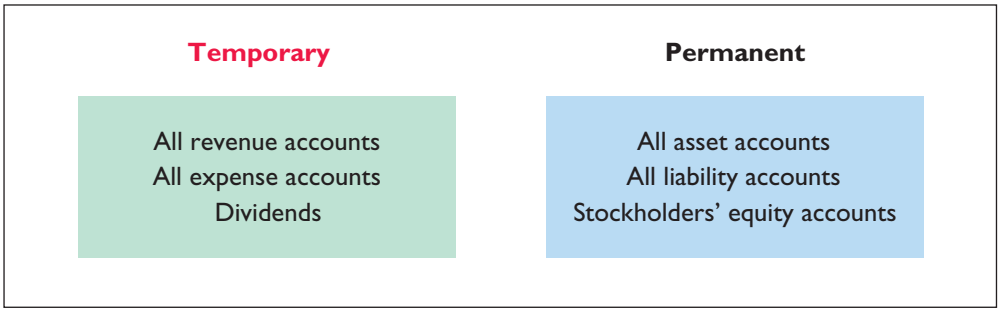


Illustration 4-29 Temporary versus permanent accounts

(or net loss) and dividends to Retained Earnings, so the balance in Retained Earnings agrees with the retained earnings statement. For example, notice that in the adjusted trial balance in Illustration 4-24 (page 183). Retained Earnings has a balance of zero. Prior to the closing entries, the balance in Retained Earnings will be its beginning-of-the-period balance. (For Sierra, this is zero because it is Sierra's first month of operations.)

In addition to updating Retained Earnings to its correct ending balance, closing entries produce a **zero balance in each temporary account**. As a result, these accounts are ready to accumulate data about revenues, expenses, and dividends that occur in the next accounting period. **Permanent accounts are not closed.**

When companies prepare closing entries, they could close each income statement account directly to Retained Earnings. However, to do so would result in excessive detail in the retained earnings account. Accordingly, companies close the revenue and expense accounts to another temporary account, **Income Summary**, and they transfer only the resulting net income or net loss from this account to Retained Earnings. Illustration 4-30 depicts the closing process. While it still takes the average large company seven days to close, some companies such as Cisco employ technology that allows them to do a so-called "virtual close" almost instantaneously any time during the year. Besides dramatically reducing the cost of closing, the virtual close provides companies with accurate data for decision making whenever they desire it.

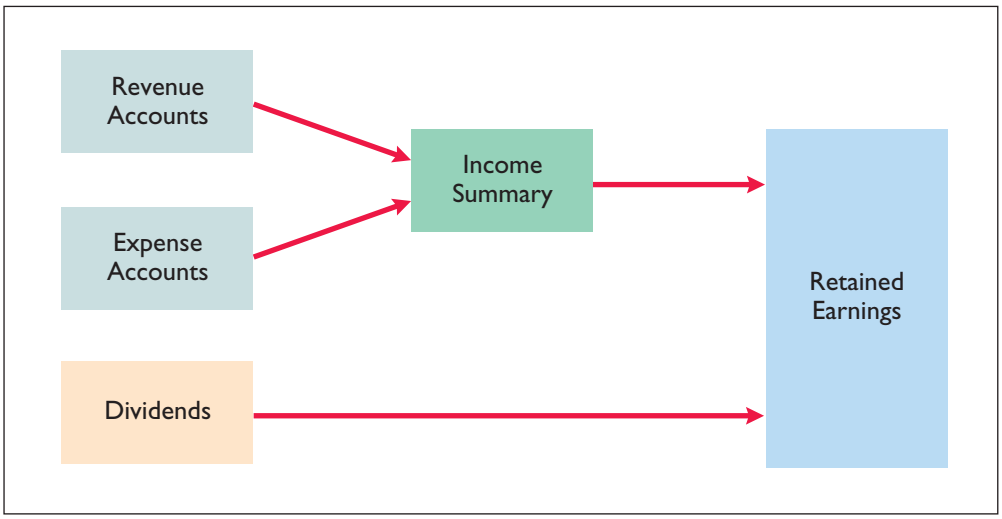


Illustration 4-30 The closing process

Illustration 4-31 shows the closing entries for Sierra Corporation. Illustration 4-32 diagrams the posting process for Sierra Corporation's closing entries.

Illustration 4-31 Closing entries journalized

Helpful Hint Income Summary is a very descriptive title: Companies close total revenues to Income Summary and total expenses to Income Summary. The balance in the Income Summary is a net income or net loss.

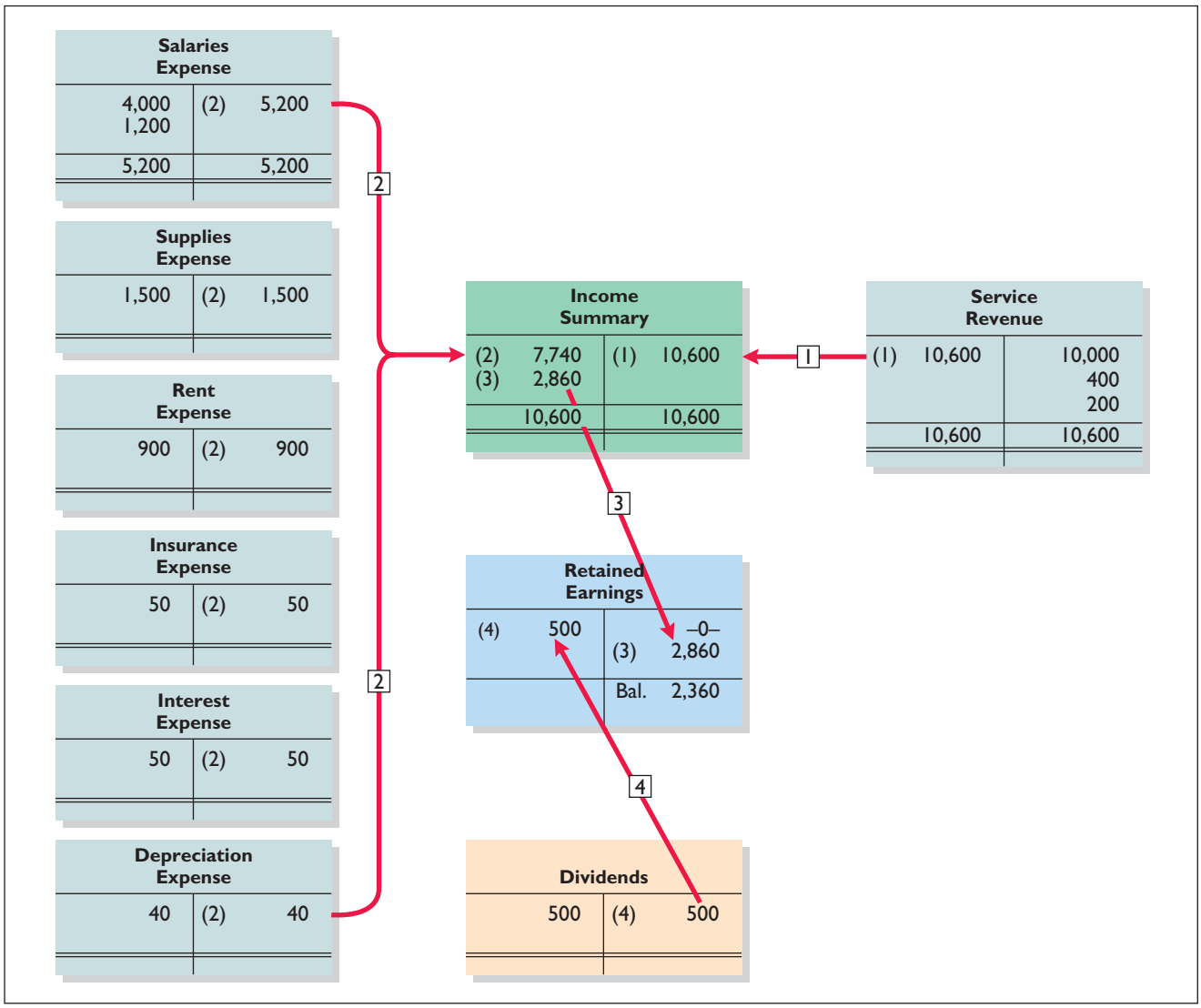
GENERAL JOURNAL

Date	Account Titles and Explanation	Debit	Credit
	Closing Entries		
2012	(1)		
Oct. 31	Service Revenue	10,600	
	Income Summary		10,600
	(To close revenue account)		
	(2)		
31	Income Summary	7,740	
	Salaries Expense		5,200
	Supplies Expense		1,500
	Rent Expense		900
	Insurance Expense		50
	Interest Expense		50
	Depreciation Expense		40
	(To close expense accounts)		
	(3)		
31	Income Summary	2,860	
	Retained Earnings		2,860
	(To close net income to retained earnings)		
	(4)		
31	Retained Earnings	500	
	Dividends		500
	(To close dividends to retained earnings)		

PREPARING A POST-CLOSING TRIAL BALANCE

After a company journalizes and posts all closing entries, it prepares another trial balance, called a **post-closing trial balance**, from the ledger. A post-closing trial balance is a list of all permanent accounts and their balances after closing entries are journalized and posted. **The purpose of this trial balance is to prove the equality of the permanent account balances that the company carries forward into the next accounting period.** Since all temporary accounts will have zero balances, **the post-closing trial balance will contain only permanent—balance sheet—accounts**.

Illustration 4-32 Posting of closing entries



before you go on...

Do it!

After making entries to close its revenue and expense accounts to Income Summary, Hancock Company has the following balances.

Dividends	$15,000	
Retained Earnings	42,000	
Income Summary	18,000	(credit balance)

Prepare the closing entries at December 31 that affect the stockholders' equity accounts.

Solution

Dec. 31	Income Summary Retained Earnings (To close net income to retained earnings)	18,000	18,000
31	Retained Earnings Dividends (To close dividends to retained earnings)	15,000	15,000

Related exercise material: **BE4-13, BE4-14, Do it! 4-4, E4-14,** and **E4-18.**

CLOSING ENTRIES

Action Plan

- Close Income Summary to Retained Earnings.
- Close Dividends to Retained Earnings.

the navigator

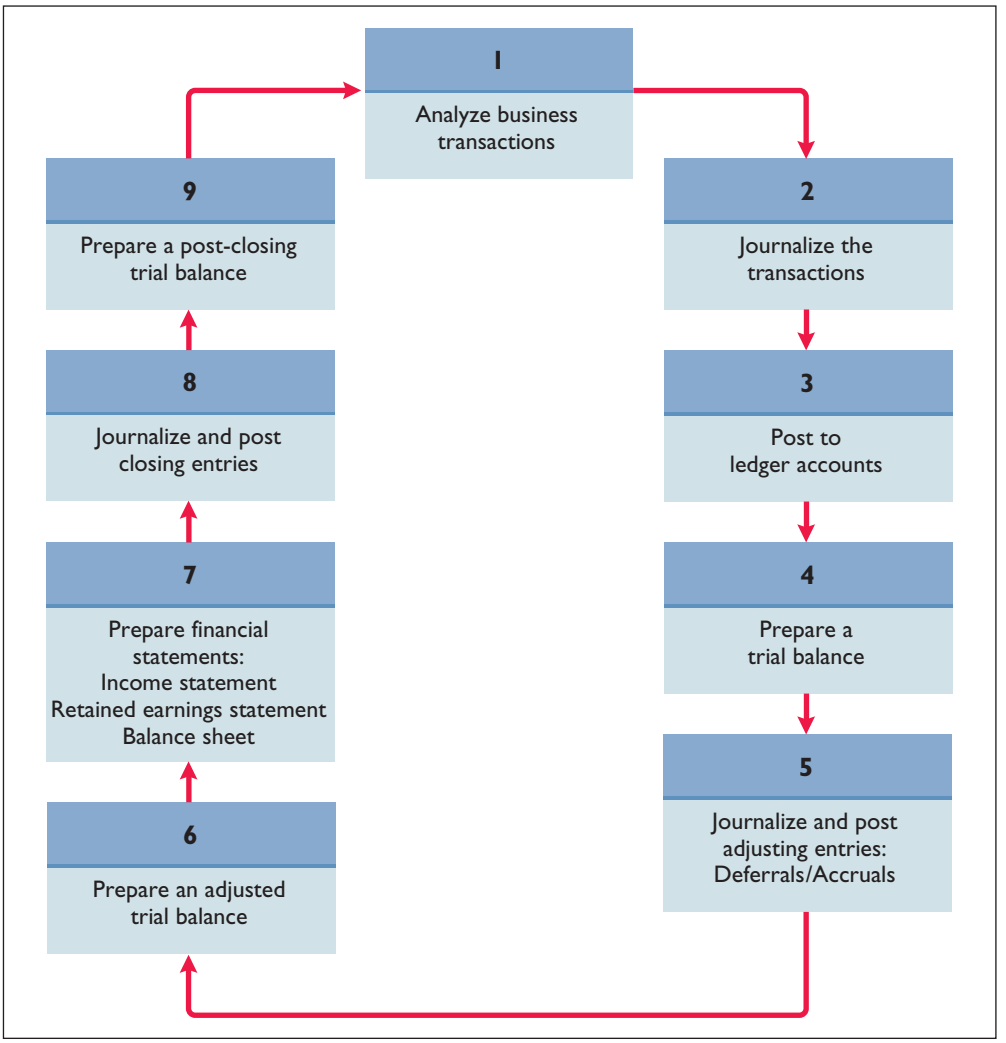
SUMMARY OF THE ACCOUNTING CYCLE

study objective 8

Describe the required steps in the accounting cycle.

Illustration 4-33 shows the required steps in the accounting cycle. You can see that the cycle begins with the analysis of business transactions and ends with the preparation of a post-closing trial balance. Companies perform the steps in the cycle in sequence and repeat them in each accounting period.

Illustration 4-33
Required steps in the accounting cycle



Helpful Hint Some companies prefer to reverse certain adjusting entries at the beginning of a new accounting period. The company makes a **reversing entry** at the beginning of the next accounting period; this entry is the exact opposite of the adjusting entry made in the previous period.

Steps 1–3 may occur daily during the accounting period, as explained in Chapter 3. Companies perform Steps 4–7 on a periodic basis, such as monthly, quarterly, or annually. Steps 8 and 9, closing entries and a post-closing trial balance, usually take place only at the end of a company's **annual** accounting period.

Quality of Earnings

"Did you make your numbers today?" is a question asked often in both large and small businesses. Companies and employees are continually under pressure to "make the numbers"—that is, to have earnings that are in line with expectations. As a consequence it is not surprising that many companies practice earnings management. **Earnings management** is the planned timing of revenues, expenses, gains, and losses to smooth out bumps in net income. The quality of

earnings is greatly affected when a company manages earnings up or down to meet some targeted earnings number. A company that has a high **quality of earnings** provides full and transparent information that will not confuse or mislead users of the financial statements. A company with questionable quality of earnings may mislead investors and creditors, who believe they are relying on relevant and reliable information. As a consequence, investors and creditors lose confidence in financial reporting, and it becomes difficult for our capital markets to work efficiently.

Companies manage earnings in a variety of ways. One way is through the use of **one-time items** to prop up earnings numbers. For example, ConAgra Foods recorded a nonrecurring gain from the sale of Pilgrim's Pride stock for $186 million to help meet an earnings projection for the quarter.

Another way is to **inflate revenue** numbers in the short-run to the detriment of the long-run. For example, Bristol-Myers Squibb provided sales incentives to its wholesalers to encourage them to buy products at the end of the quarter (often referred to as channel-stuffing). As a result Bristol-Myers was able to meet its sales projections. The problem was that the wholesalers could not sell that amount of merchandise and ended up returning it to Bristol-Myers. The result was that Bristol-Myers had to restate its income numbers.

Companies also manage earnings through **improper adjusting entries**. Regulators investigated Xerox for accusations that it was booking too much revenue up-front on multi-year contract sales. Financial executives at Office Max resigned amid accusations that the company was recognizing rebates from its vendors too early and therefore overstating revenue. Finally, WorldCom's abuse of adjusting entries to meet its net income targets is unsurpassed: It used adjusting entries to increase net income by reclassifying liabilities as revenue and reclassifying expenses as assets. Investigations of the company's books after it went bankrupt revealed adjusting entries of more than a billion dollars that had no supporting documentation.

The good news is that, as a result of investor pressure as well as the **Sarbanes-Oxley Act**, many companies are trying to improve the quality of their financial reporting. For example, hotel operator Marriott is now providing detailed information on the write-offs it has on loan guarantees it gives hotels. General Electric has decided to provide more detail on its revenues and operating profits for individual businesses it owns. IBM is attempting to provide a better breakdown of its earnings. At the same time, regulators are taking a tough stand on the issue of quality of earnings. For example, one regulator noted that companies may be required to restate their financials every single time that they account for any transaction that had no legitimate purpose but was done solely for an accounting purpose, such as to smooth net income.

KEEPING AN EYE ON CASH

study objective 9

Understand the causes of differences between net income and cash provided by operating activities.

In this chapter, you learned that adjusting entries are used to adjust numbers that would otherwise be stated on a cash basis. Sierra Corporation's income statement (Illustration 4-27, page 184) shows net income of $2,860. The statement of cash flows reports a form of cash basis income referred to as "Net cash provided by operating activities." For example, Illustration 1-8 (page 15), which shows a statement of cash flows, reports net cash provided by operating activities of $5,700 for Sierra. Net income and net cash provided by operating activities often differ. The difference for Sierra is $2,840 ($5,700 − $2,860). The following summary shows the causes of this difference of $2,840.

	Computation of Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities	Computation of Net Income
(1) Cash received in advance from customer	$ 1,200	$ 0
(2) Cash received from customers for services provided	10,000	10,000
(3) Services provided for cash received previously in (1)	0	400
(4) Services provided on account	0	200
(5) Payment of rent	(900)	(900)
(6) Purchase of insurance	(600)	0
(7) Payment of employee salaries	(4,000)	(4,000)
(8) Use of supplies	0	(1,500)
(9) Use of insurance	0	(50)
(10) Depreciation	0	(40)
(11) Interest cost incurred, but not paid	0	(50)
(12) Salaries incurred, but not paid	0	(1,200)
	$ 5,700	$ 2,860

For each item included in the computation of net cash provided by operating activities, you should confirm that cash was either received or paid. For each item in the income statement, the company should confirm that revenue was earned (even when cash was not received) or that an expense was incurred (even when cash was not paid).

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

Humana Corporation provides managed health care services to approximately 7 million people. Headquartered in Louisville, Kentucky, it has over 13,700 employees in 15 states and Puerto Rico. A simplified version of Humana's December 31, 2009, adjusted trial balance is shown at the top of the next page.

Instructions

From the trial balance, prepare an income statement, retained earnings statement, and classified balance sheet. **Be sure to prepare them in that order, since each statement depends on information determined in the preceding statement.**

HUMANA CORPORATION
Adjusted Trial Balance
December 31, 2009
(in millions)

Account	Dr.	Cr.
Cash	$ 1,613	
Short-Term Investments	6,190	
Receivables	824	
Other Current Assets	626	
Property and Equipment, Net	679	
Long-Term Investments	1,307	
Goodwill	1,993	
Other Long-Term Assets	921	
Benefits Payable		$ 3,222
Accounts Payable		1,308
Other Current Liabilities		730
Long-Term Debt		3,117
Common Stock		1,690
Dividends	0	
Retained Earnings		3,046
Revenues		30,960
Medical Cost Expense	24,775	
Selling, General, and Administrative Expense	4,227	
Depreciation Expense	250	
Interest Expense	106	
Income Tax Expense	562	
	$44,073	$44,073

Solution

HUMANA CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2009
(in millions)

Revenues		$30,960
Medical cost expense	$24,775	
Selling, general, and administrative expense	4,227	
Depreciation expense	250	
Interest expense	106	
Income tax expense	562	29,920
Net income		$ 1,040

HUMANA CORPORATION
Retained Earnings Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2009
(in millions)

Beginning retained earnings	$3,046
Add: Net income	1,040
Less: Dividends	0
Ending retained earnings	$4,086

HUMANA CORPORATION
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2009
(in millions)

Assets		
Current assets		
Cash	$ 1,613	
Short-term investments	6,190	
Receivables	824	
Other current assets	626	
Total current assets		$9,253
Long-term investments		1,307
Property and equipment, net of accumulated depreciation		679
Goodwill		1,993
Other long-term assets		921
Total assets		$14,153
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Liabilities		
Current liabilities		
Accounts payable	$1,308	
Benefits payable	3,222	
Other current liabilities	730	
Total current liabilities		$5,260
Long-term debt		3,117
Total liabilities		8,377
Stockholders' equity		
Common stock	1,690	
Retained earnings	4,086	
Total stockholders' equity		5,776
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity		$14,153

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Explain the revenue recognition principle and the expense recognition principle. The revenue recognition principle dictates that companies recognize revenue in the accounting period in which it is earned. The expense recognition principle dictates that companies recognize expenses when expenses make their contribution to revenues.

2 Differentiate between the cash basis and the accrual basis of accounting. Under the cash basis, companies record events only in the periods in which the company receives or pays cash. Accrual-based accounting means that companies record, in the periods in which the events occur, events that change a company's financial statements even if cash has not been exchanged.

3 Explain why adjusting entries are needed, and identify the major types of adjusting entries. Companies make adjusting entries at the end of an accounting period. These entries ensure that companies record revenues in the period in which they are earned and that companies recognize expenses in the period in which they are incurred. The major types of adjusting entries are prepaid expenses, unearned revenues, accrued revenues, and accrued expenses.

4 Prepare adjusting entries for deferrals. Deferrals are either prepaid expenses or unearned revenues. Companies make adjusting entries for deferrals at the statement date to record the portion of the deferred item that represents the expense incurred or the revenue earned in the current accounting period.

5 Prepare adjusting entries for accruals. Accruals are either accrued revenues or accrued expenses. Adjusting entries for accruals record revenues earned and expenses incurred in the current accounting period that have not been recognized through daily entries.

6 Describe the nature and purpose of the adjusted trial balance. An adjusted trial balance is a trial balance that shows the balances of all accounts, including those that have been adjusted, at the end of an accounting period. The purpose of an adjusted trial balance is to show the effects of all financial events that have occurred during the accounting period.

7 Explain the purpose of closing entries. One purpose of closing entries is to transfer net income or net loss for the period to Retained Earnings. A second purpose is to "zero-out" all temporary accounts (revenue accounts, expense accounts, and dividends) so that they start each new period with a zero balance. To accomplish this, companies "close" all temporary accounts at the end of an accounting period. They make separate entries to close revenues and expenses to Income Summary; Income Summary to Retained Earnings; and Dividends to Retained Earnings. Only temporary accounts are closed.

8 Describe the required steps in the accounting cycle. The required steps in the accounting cycle are: (a) analyze business transactions, (b) journalize the transactions, (c) post to ledger accounts, (d) prepare a trial balance, (e) journalize and post adjusting entries, (f) prepare an adjusted trial balance, (g) prepare financial statements, (h) journalize and post closing entries, and (i) prepare a post-closing trial balance.

9 Understand the causes of differences between net income and net cash provided by operating activities. Net income is based on accrual accounting, which relies on the adjustment process. Net cash provided by operating activities is determined by adding cash received from operating the business and subtracting cash expended during operations.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
At what point should the company record revenue?	Need to understand the nature of the company's business	Record revenue when earned. A service business earns revenue when it performs a service.	Recognizing revenue too early overstates current period revenue; recognizing it too late understates current period revenue.
At what point should the company record expenses?	Need to understand the nature of the company's business	Expenses should "follow" revenues–that is, match the effort (expense) with the result (revenue).	Recognizing expenses too early overstates current period expense; recognizing them too late understates current period expense.

appendix 4A

Adjusting Entries in an Automated World—Using a Worksheet

study objective 10
Describe the purpose and the basic form of a worksheet.

In the previous discussion, we used T accounts and trial balances to arrive at the amounts used to prepare financial statements. Accountants frequently use a device known as a worksheet to determine these amounts. A **worksheet** is a multiple-column form that may be used in the adjustment process and in preparing financial statements. Accountants can prepare worksheets manually, but today most use computer spreadsheets.

As its name suggests, the worksheet is a working tool for the accountant. **A worksheet is not a permanent accounting record**; it is neither a journal nor a part of the general ledger. The worksheet is merely a supplemental device used to make it easier to prepare adjusting entries and the financial statements. Small companies with relatively few accounts and adjustments may not need a worksheet. In large companies with numerous accounts and many adjustments, a worksheet is almost indispensable.

Illustration 4A-1 Form and procedure for a worksheet

Sierra Corporation.xls

File Exit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

SIERRA CORPORATION
Worksheet
For the Month Ended October 31, 2012

Account Titles	Trial Balance Dr.	Trial Balance Cr.	Adjustments Dr.	Adjustments Cr.	Adjusted Trial Balance Dr.	Adjusted Trial Balance Cr.	Income Statement Dr.	Income Statement Cr.	Balance Sheet Dr.	Balance Sheet Cr.
Cash	15,200				15,200				15,200	
Supplies	2,500			(a) 1,500	1,000				1,000	
Prepaid Insurance	600			(b) 50	550				550	
Equipment	5,000				5,000				5,000	
Notes Payable		5,000				5,000				5,000
Accounts Payable		2,500				2,500				2,500
Unearned Service Revenue		1,200	(d) 400			800				800
Common Stock		10,000				10,000				10,000
Retained Earnings		–0–				–0–				–0–
Dividends	500				500				500	
Service Revenue		10,000		(d) 400		10,600		10,600		
				(e) 200						
Salaries Expense	4,000		(g) 1,200		5,200		5,200			
Rent Expense	900				900		900			
Totals	28,700	28,700								
Supplies Expense			(a) 1,500		1,500		1,500			
Insurance Expense			(b) 50		50		50			
Accum. Depreciation—Equipment				(c) 40		40				40
Depreciation Expense			(c) 40		40		40			
Interest Expense			(f) 50		50		50			
Accounts Receivable			(e) 200		200				200	
Interest Payable				(f) 50		50				50
Salaries Payable				(g) 1,200		1,200				1,200
Totals			3,440	3,440	30,190	30,190	7,740	10,600	22,450	19,590
Net Income							2,860			2,860
Totals							10,600	10,600	22,450	22,450

1. Prepare a trial balance on the worksheet

2. Enter adjustment data

3. Enter adjusted balances

4. Extend adjusted balances to appropriate statement columns

5. Total the statement columns, compute net income (or net loss), and complete worksheet

Illustration 4A-1 shows the basic form of a worksheet. Note the headings: The worksheet starts with two columns for the Trial Balance. The next two columns record all Adjustments. Next is the Adjusted Trial Balance. The last two sets of columns correspond to the Income Statement and the Balance Sheet. All items listed in the Adjusted Trial Balance columns are included in either the Income Statement or the Balance Sheet columns.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 4A

10 Describe the purpose and the basic form of a worksheet. The worksheet is a device to make it easier to prepare adjusting entries and the financial statements. Companies often prepare a worksheet on a computer spreadsheet. The sets of columns of the worksheet are, from left to right, the unadjusted trial balance, adjustments, adjusted trial balance, income statement, and balance sheet.

Glossary

Accrual-basis accounting *(p. 166)* Accounting basis in which companies record, in the periods in which the events occur, transactions that change a company's financial statements, even if cash was not exchanged.

Accrued expenses *(p. 177)* Expenses incurred but not yet paid in cash or recorded.

Accrued revenues *(p. 175)* Revenues earned but not yet received in cash or recorded.

Adjusted trial balance *(p. 183)* A list of accounts and their balances after all adjustments have been made.

Adjusting entries *(p. 167)* Entries made at the end of an accounting period to ensure that the revenue recognition and expense recognition principles are followed.

Book value *(p. 172)* The difference between the cost of a depreciable asset and its related accumulated depreciation.

Cash-basis accounting *(p. 166)* Accounting basis in which a company records revenue only when it receives cash, and an expense only when it pays cash.

Closing entries *(p. 186)* Entries at the end of an accounting period to transfer the balances of temporary accounts to a permanent stockholders' equity account, Retained Earnings.

Contra asset account *(p. 171)* An account that is offset against an asset account on the balance sheet.

Depreciation *(p. 171)* The process of allocating the cost of an asset to expense over its useful life.

Earnings management *(p. 190)* The planned timing of revenues, expenses, gains, and losses to smooth out bumps in net income.

Expense recognition principle (matching principle) *(p. 165)* The principle that dictates that companies match efforts (expenses) with results (revenues).

Fiscal year *(p. 164, in margin)* An accounting period that is one year long.

Income Summary *(p. 187)* A temporary account used in closing revenue and expense accounts.

Periodicity assumption *(p. 164)* An assumption that the economic life of a business can be divided into artificial time periods.

Permanent accounts *(p. 186)* Balance sheet accounts whose balances are carried forward to the next accounting period.

Post-closing trial balance *(p. 188)* A list of permanent accounts and their balances after a company has journalized and posted closing entries.

Prepaid expenses (prepayments) *(p. 169)* Assets that result from the payment of expenses that benefit more than one accounting period.

Quality of earnings *(p. 191)* Indicates the level of full and transparent information that a company provides to users of its financial statements.

Revenue recognition principle *(p. 164)* The principle that companies recognize revenue in the accounting period in which it is earned.

Reversing entry *(p. 190, in margin)* An entry made at the beginning of the next accounting period; the exact opposite of the adjusting entry made in the previous period.

Temporary accounts *(p. 186)* Revenue, expense, and dividend accounts whose balances a company transfers to Retained Earnings at the end of an accounting period.

Unearned revenues *(p. 172)* Cash received before a company earns revenues and recorded as a liability until earned.

Useful life *(p. 171)* The length of service of a productive asset.

Worksheet *(p. 195)* A multiple-column form that companies may use in the adjustment process and in preparing financial statements.

Comprehensive Do it!

Terry Thomas and a group of investors incorporate the Green Thumb Lawn Care Corporation on April 1. At April 30, the trial balance shows the following balances for selected accounts.

Prepaid Insurance	$ 3,600
Equipment	28,000
Notes Payable	20,000
Unearned Service Revenue	4,200
Service Revenue	1,800

Analysis reveals the following additional data pertaining to these accounts.

1. Prepaid insurance is the cost of a 2-year insurance policy, effective April 1.
2. Depreciation on the equipment is $500 per month.
3. The note payable is dated April 1. It is a 6-month, 12% note.

4. Seven customers paid for the company's 6-month lawn service package of $600 beginning in April. These customers received the first month of services in April.
5. Lawn services performed for other customers but not billed at April 30 totaled $1,500.

Instructions

Prepare the adjusting entries for the month of April. Show computations.

Action Plan

- Note that adjustments are being made for one month.
- Make computations carefully.
- Select account titles carefully.
- Make sure debits are made first and credits are indented.
- Check that debits equal credits for each entry.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

GENERAL JOURNAL

Date	Account Titles and Explanation	Debit	Credit
	Adjusting Entries		
Apr. 30	Insurance Expense	150	
	Prepaid Insurance		150
	(To record insurance expired: $3,600 ÷ 24 = $150 per month)		
30	Depreciation Expense	500	
	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		500
	(To record monthly depreciation)		
30	Interest Expense	200	
	Interest Payable		200
	(To accrue interest on notes payable: $20,000 × 12% × $\frac{1}{12}$ = $200)		
30	Unearned Service Revenue	700	
	Service Revenue		700
	(To record revenue earned: $600 ÷ 6 = $100; $100 per month × 7 = $700)		
30	Accounts Receivable	1,500	
	Service Revenue		1,500
	(To accrue revenue earned but not billed or collected)		

the navigator

WILEY PLUS Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 223.

(SO 1) **1.** What is the periodicity assumption?
(a) Companies should recognize revenue in the accounting period in which it is earned.
(b) Companies should match expenses with revenues.
(c) The economic life of a business can be divided into artificial time periods.
(d) The fiscal year should correspond with the calendar year.

(SO 1) **2.** Which principle dictates that efforts (expenses) be recorded with accomplishments (revenues)?
(a) Expense recognition principle.
(b) Cost principle.
(c) Periodicity principle.
(d) Revenue recognition principle.

3. Which one of these statements about the accrual basis of accounting is *false?* (SO 2)
(a) Companies record events that change their financial statements in the period in which events occur, even if cash was not exchanged.
(b) Companies recognize revenue in the period in which it is earned.
(c) This basis is in accord with generally accepted accounting principles.
(d) Companies record revenue only when they receive cash, and record expense only when they pay out cash.

4. Adjusting entries are made to ensure that: (SO 3)
(a) expenses are recognized in the period in which they are incurred.

(b) revenues are recorded in the period in which they are earned.
(c) balance sheet and income statement accounts have correct balances at the end of an accounting period.
(d) All of the above.

(SO 4, 5) **5.** Each of the following is a major type (or category) of adjusting entry *except:*
(a) prepaid expenses. (c) accrued expenses.
(b) accrued revenues. (d) earned expenses.

(SO 4) **6.** The trial balance shows Supplies $1,350 and Supplies Expense $0. If $600 of supplies are on hand at the end of the period, the adjusting entry is:

(a) Supplies	600	
Supplies Expense		600
(b) Supplies	750	
Supplies Expense		750
(c) Supplies Expense	750	
Supplies		750
(d) Supplies Expense	600	
Supplies		600

(SO 4) **7.** Adjustments for unearned revenues:
(a) decrease liabilities and increase revenues.
(b) increase liabilities and increase revenues.
(c) increase assets and increase revenues.
(d) decrease revenues and decrease assets.

(SO 4) **8.** Adjustments for prepaid expenses:
(a) decrease assets and increase revenues.
(b) decrease expenses and increase assets.
(c) decrease assets and increase expenses.
(d) decrease revenues and increase assets.

(SO 4) **9.** Queenan Company computes depreciation on delivery equipment at $1,000 for the month of June. The adjusting entry to record this depreciation is as follows:

(a) Depreciation Expense	1,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Queenan Company		1,000
(b) Depreciation Expense	1,000	
Equipment		1,000
(c) Depreciation Expense	1,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		1,000
(d) Equipment Expense	1,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		1,000

(SO 5) **10.** Adjustments for accrued revenues:
(a) increase assets and increase liabilities.
(b) increase assets and increase revenues.
(c) decrease assets and decrease revenues.
(d) decrease liabilities and increase revenues.

11. Colleen Mooney earned a salary of $400 for the last week of September. She will be paid on October 1. The adjusting entry for Colleen's employer at September 30 is: (SO 5)
(a) No entry is required.

(b) Salaries and Wages Expense	400	
Salaries and Wages Payable		400
(c) Salaries and Wages Expense	400	
Cash		400
(d) Salaries and Wages Payable	400	
Cash		400

12. Which statement is *incorrect* concerning the adjusted trial balance? (SO 6)
(a) An adjusted trial balance proves the equality of the total debit balances and the total credit balances in the ledger after all adjustments are made.
(b) The adjusted trial balance provides the primary basis for the preparation of financial statements.
(c) The adjusted trial balance does not list temporary accounts.
(d) The company prepares the adjusted trial balance after it has journalized and posted the adjusting entries.

13. Which account will have a zero balance after a company has journalized and posted closing entries? (SO 7)
(a) Service Revenue.
(b) Supplies.
(c) Prepaid Insurance.
(d) Accumulated Depreciation.

14. Which types of accounts will appear in the post-closing trial balance? (SO 7)
(a) Permanent accounts.
(b) Temporary accounts.
(c) Expense accounts.
(d) None of the above.

15. All of the following are required steps in the accounting cycle *except:* (SO 8)
(a) journalizing and posting closing entries.
(b) preparing an adjusted trial balance.
(c) preparing a post-closing trial balance.
(d) reversing entries.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Note: All asterisked Questions relate to material in the appendix to the chapter.

Questions

1. (a) How does the periodicity assumption affect an accountant's analysis of accounting transactions?
(b) Explain the term *fiscal year.*

2. Identify and state two generally accepted accounting principles that relate to adjusting the accounts.

3. Don Wishne, a lawyer, accepts a legal engagement in March, performs the work in April, and is paid in May. If Wishne's law firm prepares monthly financial statements, when should it recognize revenue from this engagement? Why?

4. In completing the engagement in question 3, Wishne pays no costs in March, $2,500 in April, and $2,200 in May (incurred in April). How much expense should the firm deduct from revenues in the month when it recognizes the revenue? Why?

5. "The cost principle of accounting requires adjusting entries." Do you agree? Explain.

6. Why may the financial information in an unadjusted trial balance not be up-to-date and complete?

7. Distinguish between the two categories of adjusting entries, and identify the types of adjustments applicable to each category.

8. What types of accounts does a company debit and credit in a prepaid expense adjusting entry?

9. "Depreciation is a process of valuation that results in the reporting of the fair value of the asset." Do you agree? Explain.

10. Explain the differences between depreciation expense and accumulated depreciation.

11. Greenstreet Company purchased equipment for $15,000. By the current balance sheet date, the company had depreciated $7,000. Indicate the balance sheet presentation of the data.

12. What types of accounts are debited and credited in an unearned revenue adjusting entry?

13. Data Technologies provides maintenance service for computers and office equipment for companies throughout the Northeast. The sales manager is elated because she closed a $300,000 three-year maintenance contract on December 29, 2011, two days before the company's year-end. "Now we will hit this year's net income target for sure," she crowed. The customer is required to pay $100,000 on December 29 (the day the deal was closed). Two more payments of $100,000 each are also required on December 29, 2012 and 2013. Discuss the effect that this event will have on the company's financial statements.

14. ValuMart, a large national retail chain, is nearing its fiscal year-end. It appears that the company is not going to hit its revenue and net income targets. The company's marketing manager, Chris Ahrentzen, suggests running a promotion selling $50 gift cards for $45. He believes that this would be very popular and would enable the company to meet its targets for revenue and net income. What do you think of this idea?

15. A company fails to recognize revenue earned but not yet received. Which of the following types of accounts are involved in the adjusting entry: (a) asset, (b) liability, (c) revenue, or (d) expense? For the accounts selected, indicate whether they would be debited or credited in the entry.

16. A company fails to recognize an expense incurred but not paid. Indicate which of the following types of accounts is debited and which is credited in the adjusting entry: (a) asset, (b) liability, (c) revenue, or (d) expense.

17. A company makes an accrued revenue adjusting entry for $780 and an accrued expense adjusting entry for $510. How much was net income understated prior to these entries? Explain.

18. On January 9 a company pays $6,200 for salaries, of which $1,100 was reported as Salaries and Wages Payable on December 31. Give the entry to record the payment.

19. For each of the following items before adjustment, indicate the type of adjusting entry—prepaid expense, unearned revenue, accrued revenue, and accrued expense—that is needed to correct the misstatement. If an item could result in more than one type of adjusting entry, indicate each of the types.
(a) Assets are understated.
(b) Liabilities are overstated.
(c) Liabilities are understated.
(d) Expenses are understated.
(e) Assets are overstated.
(f) Revenue is understated.

20. One-half of the adjusting entry is given below. Indicate the account title for the other half of the entry.
(a) Salaries and Wages Expense is debited.
(b) Depreciation Expense is debited.
(c) Interest Payable is credited.
(d) Supplies is credited.
(e) Accounts Receivable is debited.
(f) Unearned Service Revenue is debited.

21. "An adjusting entry may affect more than one balance sheet or income statement account." Do you agree? Why or why not?

22. Which balance sheet account provides evidence that Tootsie Roll records sales on an accrual basis rather than a cash basis? Explain.

23. Why is it possible to prepare financial statements directly from an adjusted trial balance?

24.
(a) What information do accrual basis financial statements provide that cash basis statements do not?
(b) What information do cash basis financial statements provide that accrual basis statements do not?

25. What is the relationship, if any, between the amount shown in the adjusted trial balance column for an account and that account's ledger balance?

26. Identify the account(s) debited and credited in each of the four closing entries, assuming the company has net income for the year.

27. Some companies employ technologies that allow them to do a so-called "virtual close." This enables them to close their books nearly instantaneously any time during the year. What advantages does a "virtual close" provide?

28. Describe the nature of the Income Summary account, and identify the types of summary data that may be posted to this account.

29. What items are disclosed on a post-closing trial balance, and what is its purpose?

30. Which of these accounts would not appear in the post-closing trial balance? Interest Payable, Equipment, Depreciation Expense, Dividends, Unearned Service Revenue, Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment, and Service Revenue.

31. Indicate, in the sequence in which they are made, the three required steps in the accounting cycle that involve journalizing.

32. Identify, in the sequence in which they are prepared, the three trial balances that are required in the accounting cycle.

33. Explain the terms earnings management and quality of earnings.

34. Give examples of how companies manage earnings.

***35.** What is the purpose of a worksheet?

***36.** What is the basic form of a worksheet?

Brief Exercises

BE4-1 Transactions that affect earnings do not necessarily affect cash. Identify the effect, if any, that each of the following transactions would have upon cash and net income. The first transaction has been completed as an example.

Identify impact of transactions on cash and net income.
(SO 2, 9), **C**

	Cash	Net Income
(a) Purchased $100 of supplies for cash.	−$100	$ 0
(b) Recorded an adjusting entry to record use of $20 of the above supplies.		
(c) Made sales of $1,300, all on account.		
(d) Received $800 from customers in payment of their accounts.		
(e) Purchased equipment for cash, $2,500.		
(f) Recorded depreciation of building for period used, $600.		

BE4-2 The ledger of Hubbard Company includes the following accounts. Explain why each account may require adjustment.
(a) Prepaid Insurance.
(b) Depreciation Expense.
(c) Unearned Service Revenue.
(d) Interest Payable.

Indicate why adjusting entries are needed.
(SO 3), **C**

BE4-3 Dicker Company accumulates the following adjustment data at December 31. Indicate (1) the type of adjustment (prepaid expense, accrued revenue, and so on) and (2) the status of the accounts before adjustment (overstated or understated).
(a) Supplies of $400 are on hand. Supplies account shows $1,600 balance.
(b) Service Revenue earned but unbilled total $700.
(c) Interest of $300 has accumulated on a note payable.
(d) Rent collected in advance totaling $1,100 has been earned.

Identify the major types of adjusting entries.
(SO 3), **AN**

BE4-4 Stagg Advertising Company's trial balance at December 31 shows Supplies $8,800 and Supplies Expense $0. On December 31 there are $1,100 of supplies on hand. Prepare the adjusting entry at December 31 and, using T accounts, enter the balances in the accounts, post the adjusting entry, and indicate the adjusted balance in each account.

Prepare adjusting entry for supplies.
(SO 4), **AP**

BE4-5 At the end of its first year, the trial balance of Jules Company shows Equipment $22,000 and zero balances in Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment and Depreciation Expense. Depreciation for the year is estimated to be $2,750. Prepare the adjusting entry for depreciation at December 31, post the adjustments to T accounts, and indicate the balance sheet presentation of the equipment at December 31.

Prepare adjusting entry for depreciation.
(SO 4), **AP**

BE4-6 On July 1, 2012, Ryhn Co. pays $12,400 to Craig Insurance Co. for a 2-year insurance contract. Both companies have fiscal years ending December 31. For Ryhn Co., journalize and post the entry on July 1 and the adjusting entry on December 31.

Prepare adjusting entry for prepaid expense.
(SO 4), **AP**

BE4-7 Using the data in BE4-6, journalize and post the entry on July 1 and the adjusting entry on December 31 for Craig Insurance Co. Craig uses the accounts Unearned Service Revenue and Service Revenue.

Prepare adjusting entry for unearned revenue.
(SO 4), **AP**

BE4-8 The bookkeeper for Forseth Company asks you to prepare the following accrual adjusting entries at December 31.

Prepare adjusting entries for accruals.
(SO 5), **AP**

(a) Interest on notes payable of $300 is accrued.
(b) Service revenue earned but unbilled totals $1,700.
(c) Salaries of $780 earned by employees have not been recorded.
Use these account titles: Service Revenue, Accounts Receivable, Interest Expense, Interest Payable, Salaries and Wages Expense, and Salaries and Wages Payable.

Analyze accounts in an adjusted trial balance.
(SO 6), AN

BE4-9 The trial balance of LaGrace Company includes the following balance sheet accounts. Identify the accounts that might require adjustment. For each account that requires adjustment, indicate (1) the type of adjusting entry (prepaid expenses, unearned revenues, accrued revenues, and accrued expenses) and (2) the related account in the adjusting entry.

(a) Accounts Receivable.
(b) Prepaid Insurance.
(c) Equipment.
(d) Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment.
(e) Notes Payable.
(f) Interest Payable.
(g) Unearned Service Revenue.

Prepare an income statement from an adjusted trial balance.
(SO 6), AP

BE4-10 The adjusted trial balance of Hanlon Corporation at December 31, 2012, includes the following accounts: Retained Earnings $17,200; Dividends $6,000; Service Revenue $32,000; Salaries and Wages Expense $14,000; Insurance Expense $1,800; Rent Expense $3,900; Supplies Expense $1,500; and Depreciation Expense $1,000. Prepare an income statement for the year.

Prepare a retained earnings statement from an adjusted trial balance.
(SO 6), AP

BE4-11 Partial adjusted trial balance data for Hanlon Corporation are presented in BE4-10. The balance in Retained Earnings is the balance as of January 1. Prepare a retained earnings statement for the year assuming net income is $10,400.

Identify financial statement for selected accounts.
(SO 6), K

BE4-12 The following selected accounts appear in the adjusted trial balance for Cohen Company. Indicate the financial statement on which each account would be reported.

(a) Accumulated Depreciation.
(b) Depreciation Expense.
(c) Retained Earnings (beginning).
(d) Dividends.
(e) Service Revenue.
(f) Supplies.
(g) Accounts Payable.

Identify post-closing trial balance accounts.
(SO 7), K

BE4-13 Using the data in BE4-12, identify the accounts that would be included in a post-closing trial balance.

Prepare and post closing entries.
(SO 7), AP

BE4-14 The income statement for the Timberline Golf Club Inc. for the month ended July 31 shows Service Revenue $16,000; Salaries and Wages Expense $8,400; Maintenance and Repairs Expense $2,500; and Income Tax Expense $1,000. The statement of retained earnings shows an opening balance for Retained Earnings of $20,000 and Dividends $1,300.

(a) Prepare closing journal entries.
(b) What is the ending balance in Retained Earnings?

List required steps in the accounting cycle sequence.
(SO 8), K

BE4-15 The required steps in the accounting cycle are listed in random order below. List the steps in proper sequence.

(a) Prepare a post-closing trial balance.
(b) Prepare an adjusted trial balance.
(c) Analyze business transactions.
(d) Prepare a trial balance.
(e) Journalize the transactions.
(f) Journalize and post closing entries.
(g) Prepare financial statements.
(h) Journalize and post adjusting entries.
(i) Post to ledger accounts.

Do it! Review

Prepare adjusting entries for deferrals.
(SO 4), AP

Do it! 4-1 The ledger of Witzling, Inc. on March 31, 2012, includes the following selected accounts before adjusting entries.

	Debit	Credit
Prepaid Insurance	2,400	
Supplies	2,500	
Equipment	30,000	
Unearned Service Revenue		10,000

An analysis of the accounts shows the following:

1. Insurance expires at the rate of $300 per month.
2. Supplies on hand total $900.
3. The office equipment depreciates $200 per month.
4. 2/5 of the unearned service revenue was earned in March.

Prepare the adjusting entries for the month of March.

Do it! 4-2 Tammy Krause is the new owner of Tammy's Computer Services. At the end of July 2012, her first month of ownership, Tammy is trying to prepare monthly financial statements. She has the following information for the month.

Prepare adjusting entries for accruals.
(SO 5), **AP**

1. At July 31, Krause owed employees $1,100 in salaries that the company will pay in August.
2. On July 1, Krause borrowed $20,000 from a local bank on a 10-year note. The annual interest rate is 9%.
3. Service revenue unrecorded in July totaled $1,600.

Prepare the adjusting entries needed at July 31, 2012.

Do it! 4-3 Indicate in which financial statement each of the following adjusted trial balance accounts would be presented.

Prepare financial statements from adjusted trial balance.
(SO 6), **C**

Service Revenue	Accounts Receivable
Notes Payable	Accumulated Depreciation
Common Stock	Utilities Expense

Do it! 4-4 After closing revenues and expense, Natraj Company shows the following account balances.

Prepare closing entries.
(SO 7), **AP**

Dividends	$22,000
Retained Earnings	70,000
Income Summary	36,000 (credit balance)

Prepare the remaining closing entries at December 31.

Exercises

E4-1 The following independent situations require professional judgment for determining when to recognize revenue from the transactions.

Identify point of revenue recognition.
(SO 1), **C**

(a) Southwest Airlines sells you an advance-purchase airline ticket in September for your flight home at Christmas.
(b) Ultimate Electronics sells you a home theatre on a "no money down and full payment in three months" promotional deal.
(c) The Toronto Blue Jays sell season tickets online to games in the Skydome. Fans can purchase the tickets at any time, although the season doesn't officially begin until April. The major league baseball season runs from April through October.
(d) You borrow money in August from RBC Financial Group. The loan and the interest are repayable in full in November.
(e) In August, you order a sweater from Sears using its online catalog. The sweater arrives in September, and you charge it to your Sears credit card. You receive and pay the Sears bill in October.

Instructions
Identify when revenue should be recognized in each of the above situations.

E4-2 These are the assumptions, principles, and constraints discussed in this and previous chapters.

Identify accounting assumptions, principles, and constraints.
(SO 1), **K**

1. Economic entity assumption.
2. Expense recognition principle.
3. Monetary unit assumption.
4. Periodicity assumption.
5. Cost principle.
6. Materiality constraint.
7. Full disclosure principle.
8. Going concern assumption.
9. Revenue recognition principle.
10. Cost constraint.

Instructions

Identify by number the accounting assumption, principle, or constraint that describes each situation below. Do not use a number more than once.

_____ (a) Is the rationale for why plant assets are not reported at liquidation value. (Do not use the cost principle.)
_____ (b) Indicates that personal and business record-keeping should be separately maintained.
_____ (c) Ensures that all relevant financial information is reported.
_____ (d) Assumes that the dollar is the "measuring stick" used to report on financial performance.
_____ (e) Requires that accounting standards be followed for all *significant* items.
_____ (f) Separates financial information into time periods for reporting purposes.
_____ (g) Requires recognition of expenses in the same period as related revenues.
_____ (h) Indicates that fair value changes subsequent to purchase are not recorded in the accounts.

Identify the violated assumption, principle, or constraint.
(SO 1), C

E4-3 Here are some accounting reporting situations.

(a) Dorfner Company recognizes revenue at the end of the production cycle but before sale. The price of the product, as well as the amount that can be sold, is not certain.
(b) Rayms Company is in its fifth year of operation and has yet to issue financial statements. (Do not use the full disclosure principle.)
(c) Tariq, Inc. is carrying inventory at its original cost of $100,000. Inventory has a fair value of $110,000.
(d) Leer Hospital Supply Corporation reports only current assets and current liabilities on its balance sheet. Property, plant, and equipment and bonds payable are reported as current assets and current liabilities, respectively. Liquidation of the company is unlikely.
(e) Kim Company has inventory on hand that cost $400,000. Kim reports inventory on its balance sheet at its current fair value of $425,000.
(f) Kris Piwek, president of Classic Music Company, bought a computer for her personal use. She paid for the computer by using company funds and debited the "Computers" account.

Instructions

For each situation, list the assumption, principle, or constraint that has been violated, if any. Some of these assumptions, principles, and constraints were presented in earlier chapters. List only one answer for each situation.

Convert earnings from cash to accrual basis.
(SO 2, 4, 5, 9), AP

E4-4 Your examination of the records of a company that follows the cash basis of accounting tells you that the company's reported cash basis earnings in 2012 are $33,640. If this firm had followed accrual basis accounting practices, it would have reported the following year-end balances.

	2012	2011
Accounts receivable	$3,400	$2,800
Supplies on hand	1,300	1,460
Unpaid wages owed	2,000	2,400
Other unpaid amounts	1,400	1,100

Instructions

Determine the company's net earnings on an accrual basis for 2012. Show all your calculations in an orderly fashion.

Determine cash-basis and accrual-basis earnings.
(SO 2, 9), AP

E4-5 In its first year of operations, Lazirko Company earned $28,000 in service revenue, $6,000 of which was on account and still outstanding at year-end. The remaining $22,000 was received in cash from customers.

The company incurred operating expenses of $15,800. Of these expenses, $12,000 were paid in cash; $3,800 was still owed on account at year-end. In addition, Lazirko prepaid $2,400 for insurance coverage that would not be used until the second year of operations.

Instructions

(a) Calculate the first year's net earnings under the cash basis of accounting, and calculate the first year's net earnings under the accrual basis of accounting.

(b) Which basis of accounting (cash or accrual) provides more useful information for decision makers?

E4-6 Mt. Horeb Company, a ski tuning and repair shop, opened in November 2011. The company carefully kept track of all its cash receipts and cash payments. The following information is available at the end of the ski season, April 30, 2012.

Convert earnings from cash to accrual basis; prepare accrual-based financial statements.
(SO 2, 4, 5, 9), **AP**

	Cash Receipts	Cash Payments
Issue of common shares	$20,000	
Payment for repair equipment		$ 9,200
Rent payments		1,225
Newspaper advertising payment		375
Utility bills payments		970
Part-time helper's wages payments		2,600
Income tax payment		10,000
Cash receipts from ski and snowboard repair services	32,150	
Subtotals	52,150	24,370
Cash balance		27,780
Totals	$52,150	$52,150

You learn that the repair equipment has an estimated useful life of 4 years. The company rents space at a cost of $175 per month on a one-year lease. The lease contract requires payment of the first and last months' rent in advance, which was done. The part-time helper is owed $420 at April 30, 2012, for unpaid wages. At April 30, 2012, customers owe Mt. Horeb Company $420 for services they have received but have not yet paid for.

Instructions
(a) Prepare an accrual-basis income statement for the 6 months ended April 30, 2012.
(b) Prepare the April 30, 2012, classified balance sheet.

E4-7 KidVid, a maker of electronic games for kids, has just completed its first year of operations. The company's sales growth was explosive. To encourage large national stores to carry its products, KidVid offered 180-day financing—meaning its largest customers do not pay for nearly 6 months. Because KidVid is a new company, its components suppliers insist on being paid cash on delivery. Also, it had to pay up front for 2 years of insurance. At the end of the year, KidVid owed employees for one full month of salaries, but due to a cash shortfall, it promised to pay them the first week of next year.

Identify differences between cash and accrual accounting.
(SO 2, 3, 9), **C**

Instructions
(a) Explain how cash and accrual accounting would differ for each of the events listed above and describe the proper accrual accounting.
(b) Assume that at the end of the year KidVid reported a favorable net income, yet the company's management is concerned because the company is very short of cash. Explain how KidVid could have positive net income and yet run out of cash.

E4-8 Peng Company accumulates the following adjustment data at December 31.
(a) Service Revenue earned but unbilled totals $600.
(b) Store supplies of $160 are on hand. Supplies account shows $1,900 balance.
(c) Utility expenses of $275 are unpaid.
(d) Service revenue of $490 collected in advance has been earned.
(e) Salaries of $620 are unpaid.
(f) Prepaid insurance totaling $400 has expired.

Identify types of adjustments and accounts before adjustment.
(SO 3, 4, 5), **AN**

Instructions
For each item, indicate (1) the type of adjustment (prepaid expense, unearned revenue, accrued revenue, or accrued expense) and (2) the status of the accounts before adjustment (overstated or understated).

E4-9 The ledger of Sagovic Rental Agency on March 31 of the current year includes the selected accounts on page 206 before adjusting entries have been prepared.

Prepare adjusting entries from selected account data.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

	Debits	Credits
Prepaid Insurance	$ 3,600	
Supplies	3,000	
Equipment	25,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		$ 8,400
Notes Payable		20,000
Unearned Rent Revenue		12,400
Rent Revenue		60,000
Interest Expense	0	
Salaries and Wages Expense	14,000	

An analysis of the accounts shows the following.

1. The equipment depreciates $280 per month.
2. Half of the unearned rent revenue was earned during the quarter.
3. Interest of $400 is accrued on the notes payable.
4. Supplies on hand total $850.
5. Insurance expires at the rate of $400 per month.

Instructions

Prepare the adjusting entries at March 31, assuming that adjusting entries are made quarterly. Additional accounts are: Depreciation Expense, Insurance Expense, Interest Payable, and Supplies Expense.

Prepare adjusting entries.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

E4-10 Adam Singh, D.D.S., opened an incorporated dental practice on January 1, 2012. During the first month of operations the following transactions occurred:

1. Performed services for patients who had dental plan insurance. At January 31, $760 of such services was earned but not yet billed to the insurance companies.
2. Utility expenses incurred but not paid prior to January 31 totaled $450.
3. Purchased dental equipment on January 1 for $80,000, paying $20,000 in cash and signing a $60,000, 3-year note payable (Interest is paid each December 31). The equipment depreciates $400 per month. Interest is $500 per month.
4. Purchased a 1-year malpractice insurance policy on January 1 for $24,000.
5. Purchased $1,750 of dental supplies (recorded as increase to Supplies). On January 31 determined that $550 of supplies were on hand.

Instructions

Prepare the adjusting entries on January 31. Account titles are: Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment, Depreciation Expense, Service Revenue, Accounts Receivable, Insurance Expense, Interest Expense, Interest Payable, Prepaid Insurance, Supplies, Supplies Expense, Utilities Expense, and Utilities Payable.

Prepare adjusting entries.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

E4-11 The unadjusted trial balance for Sierra Corp. is shown in Illustration 4-4 (page 168). In lieu of the adjusting entries shown in the text at October 31, assume the following adjustment data.

1. Supplies on hand at October 31 total $500.
2. Expired insurance for the month is $100.
3. Depreciation for the month is $75.
4. As of October 31, $800 of the previously recorded unearned revenue had been earned.
5. Services provided but unbilled (and no receivable has been recorded) at October 31 are $280.
6. Interest expense accrued at October 31 is $70.
7. Accrued salaries at October 31 are $1,400.

Instructions

Prepare the adjusting entries for the items above.

Prepare a correct income statement.
(SO 1, 4, 5, 6), **AP**

E4-12 The income statement of Kaleta Co. for the month of July shows net income of $1,500 based on Service Revenue $5,500; Salaries and Wages Expense $2,100; Supplies Expense $900, and Utilities Expense $500. In reviewing the statement, you discover the following:

1. Insurance expired during July of $350 was omitted.
2. Supplies expense includes $200 of supplies that are still on hand at July 31.
3. Depreciation on equipment of $150 was omitted.
4. Accrued but unpaid wages at July 31 of $360 were not included.
5. Revenue earned but unrecorded totaled $700.

Instructions
Prepare a correct income statement for July 2012.

E4-13 This is a partial adjusted trial balance of Fenske Company.

Analyze adjusted data.
(SO 1, 4, 5, 6), **AN**

FENSKE COMPANY
Adjusted Trial Balance
January 31, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Supplies	$ 700	
Prepaid Insurance	1,560	
Salaries and Wages Payable		$1,060
Unearned Service Revenue		750
Supplies Expense	950	
Insurance Expense	520	
Salaries and Wages Expense	1,800	
Service Revenue		2,000

Instructions
Answer these questions, assuming the year begins January 1.
(a) If the amount in Supplies Expense is the January 31 adjusting entry, and $300 of supplies was purchased in January, what was the balance in Supplies on January 1?
(b) If the amount in Insurance Expense is the January 31 adjusting entry, and the original insurance premium was for 1 year, what was the total premium and when was the policy purchased?
(c) If $2,500 of salaries was paid in January, what was the balance in Salaries and Wages Payable at December 31, 2011?
(d) If $1,800 was received in January for services performed in January, what was the balance in Unearned Service Revenue at December 31, 2011?

E4-14 A partial adjusted trial balance for Fenske Company is given in E4-13.

Prepare closing entries.
(SO 7), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the closing entries at January 31, 2012.

E4-15 Selected accounts of Sandin Company are shown here.

Journalize basic transactions and adjusting entries.
(SO 4, 5, 6), **AN**

Supplies Expense

July 31	750		

Salaries and Wages Payable

		July 31	1,000

Salaries and Wages Expense

July 15	1,000		
31	1,000		

Accounts Receivable

July 31	500		

Service Revenue

		July 14	3,800
		31	900
		31	500

Unearned Service Revenue

July 31	900	July 1	Bal. 1,500
		20	600

Supplies

July 1	Bal. 1,100	July 31	750
10	200		

Instructions
After analyzing the accounts, journalize (a) the July transactions and (b) the adjusting entries that were made on July 31. (*Hint:* July transactions were for cash.)

E4-16 The trial balances shown on page 208 are before and after adjustment for Amit Company at the end of its fiscal year.

Prepare adjusting entries from analysis of trial balance.
(SO 4, 5, 6), **AP**

AMIT COMPANY
Trial Balance
August 31, 2012

	Before Adjustment		After Adjustment	
	Dr.	**Cr.**	**Dr.**	**Cr.**
Cash	$10,900		$10,900	
Accounts Receivable	8,800		9,400	
Supplies	2,500		500	
Prepaid Insurance	4,000		2,500	
Equipment	16,000		16,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		$ 3,600		$ 4,800
Accounts Payable		5,800		5,800
Salaries and Wages Payable		0		1,100
Unearned Rent Revenue		1,800		800
Common Stock		10,000		10,000
Retained Earnings		5,500		5,500
Dividends	2,800		2,800	
Service Revenue		34,000		34,600
Rent Revenue		12,100		13,100
Salaries and Wages Expense	17,000		18,100	
Supplies Expense	0		2,000	
Rent Expense	10,800		10,800	
Insurance Expense	0		1,500	
Depreciation Expense	0		1,200	
	$72,800	$72,800	$75,700	$75,700

Instructions
Prepare the adjusting entries that were made.

Prepare financial statements from adjusted trial balance.
(SO 6), **AP**

E4-17 The adjusted trial balance for Amit Company is given in E4-16.

Instructions
Prepare the income and retained earnings statements for the year and the classified balance sheet at August 31.

Prepare closing entries.
(SO 7), **AP**

E4-18 The adjusted trial balance for Amit Company is given in E4-16.

Instructions
Prepare the closing entries for the temporary accounts at August 31.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Record transactions on accrual basis; convert revenue to cash receipts.
(SO 2, 4, 9), **AP**

P4-1A The following selected data are taken from the comparative financial statements of Superior Curling Club. The club prepares its financial statements using the accrual basis of accounting.

September 30	**2012**	**2011**
Accounts receivable for member dues	$ 15,000	$ 19,000
Unearned sales revenue	20,000	23,000
Service revenue (from member dues)	151,000	$135,000

Dues are billed to members based upon their use of the club's facilities. Unearned sales revenues arise from the sale of tickets to events, such as the Skins Game.

Instructions

(*Hint:* You will find it helpful to use T accounts to analyze the following data. You must analyze these data sequentially, as missing information must first be deduced before moving on. Post your journal entries as you progress, rather than waiting until the end.)

(a) Prepare journal entries for each of the following events that took place during 2012.
   1. Dues receivable from members from 2011 were all collected during 2012.
   2. Unearned sales revenue at the end of 2011 was all earned during 2012.
   3. Additional tickets were sold for $44,000 cash during 2012; a portion of these were used by the purchasers during the year. The entire balance remaining in Unearned Sales Revenue relates to the upcoming Skins Game in 2012.
   4. Dues for the 2011–2012 fiscal year were billed to members.
   5. Dues receivable for 2012 (i.e., those billed in item (4) above) were partially collected.

(b) Determine the amount of cash received by the Club from the above transactions during the year ended September 30, 2012.

(b) Cash received $199,000

P4-2A Gil Vogel started his own consulting firm, Vogel Consulting, on June 1, 2012. The trial balance at June 30 is as follows.

Prepare adjusting entries, post to ledger accounts, and prepare adjusted trial balance.

(SO 4, 5, 6), **AP**

VOGEL CONSULTING
Trial Balance
June 30, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$ 6,850	
Accounts Receivable	7,000	
Prepaid Insurance	2,880	
Supplies	2,000	
Equipment	15,000	
Accounts Payable		$ 4,230
Unearned Service Revenue		5,200
Common Stock		22,000
Service Revenue		8,300
Salaries and Wages Expense	4,000	
Rent Expense	2,000	
	$39,730	$39,730

In addition to those accounts listed on the trial balance, the chart of accounts for Vogel also contains the following accounts: Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment, Utilities Payable, Salaries and Wages Payable, Depreciation Expense, Insurance Expense, Utilities Expense, and Supplies Expense.

Other data:

1. Supplies on hand at June 30 total $720.
2. A utility bill for $180 has not been recorded and will not be paid until next month.
3. The insurance policy is for a year.
4. $4,100 of unearned service revenue has been earned at the end of the month.
5. Salaries of $1,250 are accrued at June 30.
6. The equipment has a 5-year life with no salvage value and is being depreciated at $250 per month for 60 months.
7. Invoices representing $3,900 of services performed during the month have not been recorded as of June 30.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the adjusting entries for the month of June.

(b) Post the adjusting entries to the ledger accounts. Enter the totals from the trial balance as beginning account balances. Use T accounts.

(c) Prepare an adjusted trial balance at June 30, 2012.

(b) Service rev. $16,300
(c) Tot. trial balance $45,310

Prepare adjusting entries, adjusted trial balance, and financial statements.
(SO 4, 5, 6, 7), **AP**

GLS

P4-3A The Vang Hotel opened for business on May 1, 2012. Here is its trial balance before adjustment on May 31.

VANG HOTEL
Trial Balance
May 31, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$ 2,500	
Prepaid Insurance	1,800	
Supplies	2,600	
Land	15,000	
Buildings	70,000	
Equipment	16,800	
Accounts Payable		$ 4,700
Unearned Rent Revenue		3,300
Mortgage Payable		36,000
Common Stock		60,000
Rent Revenue		9,000
Salaries and Wages Expense	3,000	
Utilities Expense	800	
Advertising Expense	500	
	$113,000	$113,000

Other data:

1. Insurance expires at the rate of $450 per month.
2. A count of supplies shows $1,050 of unused supplies on May 31.
3. Annual depreciation is $3,600 on the building and $3,000 on equipment.
4. The mortgage interest rate is 6%. (The mortgage was taken out on May 1.)
5. Unearned rent of $2,500 has been earned.
6. Salaries of $900 are accrued and unpaid at May 31.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the adjusting entries on May 31.
(b) Prepare a ledger using T accounts. Enter the trial balance amounts and post the adjusting entries.
(c) Prepare an adjusted trial balance on May 31.
(d) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the month of May and a classified balance sheet at May 31.
(e) Identify which accounts should be closed on May 31.

(c) Rent revenue $11,500
Tot. adj. trial balance $114,630
(d) Net income $3,570

Prepare adjusting entries and financial statements; identify accounts to be closed.
(SO 4, 5, 6, 7), **AP**

GLS

P4-4A Rolling Hills Golf Inc. was organized on July 1, 2012. Quarterly financial statements are prepared. The trial balance and adjusted trial balance on September 30 are shown here.

ROLLING HILLS GOLF INC.
Trial Balance
September 30, 2012

	Unadjusted		Adjusted	
	Dr.	Cr.	Dr.	Cr.
Cash	$ 6,700		$ 6,700	
Accounts Receivable	400		1,000	
Prepaid Rent	1,800		900	
Supplies	1,200		180	
Equipment	15,000		15,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment				$ 350
Notes Payable		$ 5,000		5,000
Accounts Payable		1,070		1,070
Salaries and Wages Payable				600
Interest Payable				50
Unearned Rent Revenue		1,000		800
Common Stock		14,000		14,000
Retained Earnings		0		0
Dividends	600		600	

	Unadjusted		Adjusted	
	Dr.	Cr.	Dr.	Cr.
Service Revenue		14,100		14,700
Rent Revenue		700		900
Salaries and Wages Expense	8,800		9,400	
Rent Expense	900		1,800	
Depreciation Expense			350	
Supplies Expense			1,020	
Utilities Expense	470		470	
Interest Expense			50	
	$35,870	$35,870	$37,470	$37,470

Instructions

(a) Journalize the adjusting entries that were made.

(b) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the 3 months ending September 30 and a classified balance sheet at September 30.

(c) Identify which accounts should be closed on September 30.

(d) If the note bears interest at 12%, how many months has it been outstanding?

(b) Net income $2,510
Tot. assets $23,430

P4-5A A review of the ledger of Terrell Company at December 31, 2012, produces these data pertaining to the preparation of annual adjusting entries.

Prepare adjusting entries.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

1. Prepaid Insurance $15,200. The company has separate insurance policies on its buildings and its motor vehicles. Policy B4564 on the building was purchased on July 1, 2011, for $9,600. The policy has a term of 3 years. Policy A2958 on the vehicles was purchased on January 1, 2012, for $7,200. This policy has a term of 18 months.
2. Unearned Sales Revenue $22,800: The company began selling magazine subscriptions on October 1, 2012, on an annual basis. The selling price of a subscription is $24. A review of subscription contracts reveals the following.

Subscription Start Date	Number of Subscriptions
October 1	250
November 1	300
December 1	400
	950

3. Notes Payable, $40,000: This balance consists of a note for 6 months at an annual interest rate of 7%, dated October 1.
4. Salaries Payable $0: There are eight salaried employees. Salaries are paid every Friday for the current week. Five employees receive a salary of $600 each per week, and three employees earn $700 each per week. Assume December 31 is a Wednesday. Employees do not work weekends. All employees worked the last 3 days of December.

Instructions

Prepare the adjusting entries at December 31, 2012.

P4-6A Open Road Travel Court was organized on July 1, 2011, by Tiffany Lampkins. Tiffany is a good manager but a poor accountant. From the trial balance prepared by a part-time bookkeeper, Tiffany prepared the following income statement for her fourth quarter, which ended June 30, 2012.

Prepare adjusting entries and a corrected income statement.
(SO 4, 5), **AN**

OPEN ROAD TRAVEL COURT
Income Statement
For the Quarter Ended June 30, 2012

Revenues		
Rent revenues		$212,000
Operating expenses		
Advertising	$ 3,800	
Salaries and wages	80,500	
Utilities	900	
Depreciation	2,700	
Maintenance and repairs	4,300	
Total operating expenses		92,200
Net income		$119,800

Tiffany suspected that something was wrong with the statement because net income had never exceeded $30,000 in any one quarter. Knowing that you are an experienced accountant, she asks you to review the income statement and other data.

You first look at the trial balance. In addition to the account balances reported above in the income statement, the trial balance contains the following additional selected balances at June 30, 2012.

Supplies	$ 8,200
Prepaid Insurance	14,400
Note Payable	14,000

You then make inquiries and discover the following.

1. Travel court rental revenues include advanced rental payments received for summer occupancy, in the amount of $57,000.
2. There were $1,800 of supplies on hand at June 30.
3. Prepaid insurance resulted from the payment of a one-year policy on April 1, 2012.
4. The mail in July 2012 brought the following bills: advertising for the week of June 24, $110; repairs made June 18, $4,450; and utilities for the month of June, $215.
5. There are three employees who receive wages that total $300 per day. At June 30, four days' wages have been incurred but not paid.
6. The note payable is a 6% note dated May 1, 2012, and due on July 31, 2012.
7. Income tax of $13,400 for the quarter is due in July but has not yet been recorded.

Instructions

(a) Prepare any adjusting journal entries required at June 30, 2012.

(b) Prepare a correct income statement for the quarter ended June 30, 2012.

(b) Net income $33,285

(c) Explain to Tiffany the generally accepted accounting principles that she did not recognize in preparing her income statement and their effect on her results.

Journalize transactions and follow through accounting cycle to preparation of financial statements.

(SO 4, 5, 6), **AP**

GLS

P4-7A On November 1, 2012, the following were the account balances of Tate Equipment Repair.

	Debits		Credits
Cash	$ 2,790	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	$ 500
Accounts Receivable	2,910	Accounts Payable	2,300
Supplies	1,120	Unearned Service Revenue	400
Equipment	10,000	Salaries and Wages Payable	620
		Common Stock	10,000
		Retained Earnings	3,000
	$16,820		$16,820

During November, the following summary transactions were completed.

Nov.	8	Paid $1,220 for salaries due employees, of which $600 is for November and $620 is for October salaries payable.
	10	Received $1,800 cash from customers in payment of account.
	12	Received $1,700 cash for services performed in November.
	15	Purchased store equipment on account $3,600.
	17	Purchased supplies on account $1,300.
	20	Paid creditors $2,500 of accounts payable due.
	22	Paid November rent $480.
	25	Paid salaries $1,000.
	27	Performed services on account and billed customers for services provided $900.
	29	Received $750 from customers for services to be provided in the future.

Adjustment data:

1. Supplies on hand are valued at $1,100.
2. Accrued salaries payable are $480.
3. Depreciation for the month is $250.
4. Unearned service revenue of $500 is earned.

Instructions

(a) Enter the November 1 balances in the ledger accounts. (Use T accounts.)
(b) Journalize the November transactions.
(c) Post to the ledger accounts. Use Service Revenue, Depreciation Expense, Supplies Expense, Salaries and Wages Expense, and Rent Expense.
(d) Prepare a trial balance at November 30.
(e) Journalize and post adjusting entries.
(f) Prepare an adjusted trial balance.
(g) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for November and a classified balance sheet at November 30.

(f) Cash $1,840
Tot. adj. trial balance $22,680
(g) Net loss $ 1,030

P4-8A Dana La Fontsee opened Pro Window Washing Inc. on July 1, 2012. During July the following transactions were completed.

Complete all steps in accounting cycle.
(SO 4, 5, 6, 7, 8), **AP**

GLS

July	1	Issued 12,000 shares of common stock for $12,000 cash.
	1	Purchased used truck for $8,000, paying $2,000 cash and the balance on account.
	3	Purchased cleaning supplies for $900 on account.
	5	Paid $1,800 cash on 1-year insurance policy effective July 1.
	12	Billed customers $3,700 for cleaning services.
	18	Paid $1,000 cash on amount owed on truck and $500 on amount owed on cleaning supplies.
	20	Paid $2,000 cash for employee salaries.
	21	Collected $1,600 cash from customers billed on July 12.
	25	Billed customers $2,500 for cleaning services.
	31	Paid $290 for maintenance of the truck during month.
	31	Declared and paid $600 cash dividend.

The chart of accounts for Pro Window Washing contains the following accounts: Cash, Accounts Receivable, Supplies, Prepaid Insurance, Equipment, Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment, Accounts Payable, Salaries and Wages Payable, Common Stock, Retained Earnings, Dividends, Income Summary, Service Revenue, Maintenance and Repairs Expense, Supplies Expense, Depreciation Expense, Insurance Expense, Salaries and Wages Expense.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the July transactions.
(b) Post to the ledger accounts. (Use T accounts.)
(c) Prepare a trial balance at July 31.
(d) Journalize the following adjustments.
  (1) Services provided but unbilled and uncollected at July 31 were $1,700.
  (2) Depreciation on equipment for the month was $180.
  (3) One-twelfth of the insurance expired.
  (4) An inventory count shows $320 of cleaning supplies on hand at July 31.
  (5) Accrued but unpaid employee salaries were $400.
(e) Post adjusting entries to the T accounts.
(f) Prepare an adjusted trial balance.
(g) Prepare the income statement and a retained earnings statement for July and a classified balance sheet at July 31.
(h) Journalize and post closing entries and complete the closing process.
(i) Prepare a post-closing trial balance at July 31.

(f) Cash $5,410
(g) Tot. assets $21,500

Problems: Set B

P4-1B The following data are taken from the comparative balance sheets of Glenview Club, which prepares its financial statements using the accrual basis of accounting.

Record transactions on accrual basis; convert revenue to cash receipts.
(SO 2, 4, 9), **AP**

December 31	2012	2011
Accounts receivable for member fees	$12,000	$18,000
Unearned service revenue	17,000	11,000

Fees are billed to members based upon their use of the club's facilities. Unearned service revenues arise from the sale of gift certificates, which members can apply to their future

use of club facilities. The 2012 income statement for the club showed that service revenue of $172,000 was earned during the year.

Instructions

(*Hint:* You will find it helpful to use T accounts to analyze these data.)

(a) Prepare journal entries for each of the following events that took place during 2012.

1. Fees receivable from 2011 were all collected during 2012.
2. Gift certificates outstanding at the end of 2011 were all redeemed during 2012.
3. An additional $40,000 worth of gift certificates were sold during 2012; a portion of these were used by the recipients during the year; the remainder were still outstanding at the end of 2012.
4. Fees for 2012 were billed to members.
5. Fees receivable for 2012 (i.e., those billed in item (4) above) were partially collected.

(b) Cash received $184,000

(b) Determine the amount of cash received by the club with respect to fees during 2012.

Prepare adjusting entries, post to ledger accounts, and prepare an adjusted trial balance.

(SO 4, 5, 6), **AP**

P4-2B Pamela Quinn started her own consulting firm, Quinn Consulting, on May 1, 2012. The trial balance at May 31 is as shown below.

QUINN CONSULTING
Trial Balance
May 31, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$ 7,500	
Accounts Receivable	3,000	
Prepaid Insurance	3,600	
Supplies	2,500	
Equipment	12,000	
Accounts Payable		$ 3,500
Unearned Service Revenue		4,000
Common Stock		19,100
Service Revenue		7,500
Salaries and Wages Expense	4,000	
Rent Expense	1,500	
	$34,100	$34,100

In addition to those accounts listed on the trial balance, the chart of accounts for Quinn Consulting also contains the following accounts: Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment, Salaries and Wages Payable, Depreciation Expense, Insurance Expense, Utilities Expense, and Supplies Expense.

Other data:

1. $750 of supplies have been used during the month.
2. Utility costs incurred but not paid are $260.
3. The insurance policy is for 2 years.
4. $1,500 of the balance in the Unearned Service Revenue account remains unearned at the end of the month.
5. Assume May 31 is a Thursday and employees are paid on Fridays. Quinn Consulting has two employees that are paid $600 each for a 5-day work week.
6. The equipment has a 5-year life with no salvage value and is being depreciated at $200 per month for 60 months.
7. Invoices representing $1,980 of services performed during the month have not been recorded as of May 31.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the adjusting entries for the month of May.

(b) Post the adjusting entries to the ledger accounts. Enter the totals from the trial balance as beginning account balances. Use T accounts.

(c) Tot. trial balance $37,500

(c) Prepare an adjusted trial balance at May 31, 2012.

P4-3B Maquoketa Valley Resort opened for business on June 1 with eight air-conditioned units. Its trial balance before adjustment on August 31 is presented here.

Prepare adjusting entries, adjusted trial balance, and financial statements.
(SO 4, 5, 6, 7), **AP**

GLS

MAQUOKETA VALLEY RESORT
Trial Balance
August 31, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$ 24,600	
Prepaid Insurance	5,400	
Supplies	4,300	
Land	40,000	
Buildings	132,000	
Equipment	36,000	
Accounts Payable		$ 6,500
Unearned Rent Revenue		6,800
Mortgage Payable		120,000
Common Stock		100,000
Dividends	5,000	
Rent Revenue		80,000
Salaries and Wages Expense	53,000	
Utilities Expense	9,400	
Maintenance and Repairs Expense	3,600	
	$313,300	$313,300

Other data:

1. Insurance expires at the rate of $450 per month.
2. A count of supplies on August 31 shows $700 of supplies on hand.
3. Annual depreciation is $6,600 on buildings and $4,000 on equipment.
4. Unearned rent of $5,000 was earned prior to August 31.
5. Salaries of $600 were unpaid at August 31.
6. Rentals of $1,600 were due from tenants at August 31. (Use Accounts Receivable.)
7. The mortgage interest rate is 9% per year. (The mortgage was taken out August 1.)

Instructions

(a) Journalize the adjusting entries on August 31 for the 3-month period June 1–August 31.
(b) Prepare a ledger using T accounts. Enter the trial balance amounts and post the adjusting entries.
(c) Prepare an adjusted trial balance on August 31.
(d) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the 3 months ended August 31 and a classified balance sheet as of August 31.
(e) Identify which accounts should be closed on August 31.

(c) Tot. adj. trial balance $319,050
(d) Net income $11,500

P4-4B Vedula Advertising Agency was founded by Murali Vedula in January 2007. Presented here are both the adjusted and unadjusted trial balances as of December 31, 2012.

Prepare adjusting entries and financial statements; identify accounts to be closed.
(SO 4, 5, 6, 7), **AP**

GLS

VEDULA ADVERTISING AGENCY
Trial Balance
December 31, 2012

	Unadjusted		Adjusted	
	Dr.	Cr.	Dr.	Cr.
Cash	$ 11,000		$ 11,000	
Accounts Receivable	16,000		19,500	
Supplies	9,400		6,500	
Prepaid Insurance	3,350		1,790	
Equipment	60,000		60,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		$ 25,000		$ 30,000
Notes Payable		8,000		8,000
Accounts Payable		2,000		2,000
Interest Payable		0		560

	Unadjusted		Adjusted	
	Dr.	Cr.	Dr.	Cr.
Unearned Service Revenue		5,000		3,100
Salaries and Wages Payable		0		820
Common Stock		20,000		20,000
Retained Earnings		5,500		5,500
Dividends	10,000		10,000	
Service Revenue		57,600		63,000
Salaries and Wages Expense	9,000		9,820	
Insurance Expense			1,560	
Interest Expense			560	
Depreciation Expense			5,000	
Supplies Expense			2,900	
Rent Expense	4,350		4,350	
	$123,100	$123,100	$132,980	$132,980

Instructions

(a) Journalize the annual adjusting entries that were made.

(b) Net income $38,810
Tot. assets $68,790

(b) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the year ended December 31, and a classified balance sheet at December 31.

(c) Identify which accounts should be closed on December 31.

(d) If the note has been outstanding 10 months, what is the annual interest rate on that note?

(e) If the company paid $10,500 in salaries in 2012, what was the balance in Salaries and Wages Payable on December 31, 2011?

Prepare adjusting entries.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

P4-5B A review of the ledger of Felipe Company at December 31, 2012, produces the following data pertaining to the preparation of annual adjusting entries.

1. Salaries and Wages Payable $0: There are eight salaried employees. Salaries are paid every Friday for the current week. Six employees receive a salary of $800 each per week, and two employees earn $600 each per week. Assume December 31 is a Tuesday. Employees do not work weekends. All employees worked the last 2 days of December.
2. Unearned Rent Revenue $300,000: The company began subleasing office space in its new building on November 1. Each tenant is required to make a $5,000 security deposit that is not refundable until occupancy is terminated. At December 31 the company had the following rental contracts that are paid in full for the entire term of the lease.

Date	Term (in months)	Monthly Rent	Number of Leases
Nov. 1	6	$4,000	5
Dec. 1	6	7,500	4

3. Prepaid Advertising $13,200: This balance consists of payments on two advertising contracts. The contracts provide for monthly advertising in two trade magazines. The terms of the contracts are as follows.

Contract	Date	Amount	Number of Magazine Issues
A650	May 1	$6,000	12
B974	Sept. 1	7,200	18

The first advertisement runs in the month in which the contract is signed.

4. Notes Payable $80,000: This balance consists of a note for 1 year at an annual interest rate of 8%, dated April 1, 2012.

Instructions

Prepare the adjusting entries at December 31, 2012. Show all computations.

P4-6B The Fly Right Travel Agency was organized on January 1, 2010, by Joe Kirkpatrick. Joe is a good manager but a poor accountant. From the trial balance prepared by a part-time bookkeeper, Joe prepared the following income statement for the quarter that ended March 31, 2012.

Prepare adjusting entries and a corrected income statement.
(SO 4, 5), **AN**

FLY RIGHT TRAVEL AGENCY
Income Statement
For the Quarter Ended March 31, 2012

Revenues		
Service revenue		$50,000
Operating expenses		
Advertising	$ 2,600	
Depreciation	400	
Income tax	1,500	
Salaries and wages	11,000	
Utilities	400	15,900
Net income		$34,100

Joe knew that something was wrong with the statement because net income had never exceeded $8,000 in any one quarter. Knowing that you are an experienced accountant, he asks you to review the income statement and other data.

You first look at the trial balance. In addition to the account balances reported above in the income statement, the trial balance contains the following additional selected balances at March 31, 2012.

Supplies	$ 2,900
Prepaid insurance	3,360
Notes payable	12,000

You then make inquiries and discover the following:

1. Travel service revenue includes advance payments for cruises, $20,000.
2. There were $800 of supplies on hand at March 31.
3. Prepaid insurance resulted from the payment of a one-year policy on January 1, 2012.
4. The mail on April 1, 2012, brought the utility bill for the month of March's heat, light, and power, $210.
5. There are two employees who receive salaries of $80 each per day. At March 31, four days' salaries have been incurred but not paid.
6. The note payable is a 6-month, 7% note dated January 1, 2012.

Instructions

(a) Prepare any adjusting journal entries required at March 31, 2012.
(b) Prepare a correct income statement for the quarter ended March 31, 2012.
(c) Explain to Joe the generally accepted accounting principles that he did not recognize in preparing his income statement and their effect on his results.

(b) Net income $10,100

P4-7B On September 1, 2012, the following were the account balances of Worthington Equipment Repair.

Journalize transactions and follow through accounting cycle to preparation of financial statements.
(SO 4, 5, 6), **AP**

GLS

	Debits		Credits
Cash	$ 4,880	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	$ 1,600
Accounts Receivable	3,420	Accounts Payable	3,100
Supplies	800	Unearned Service Revenue	400
Equipment	15,000	Salaries and Wages Payable	700
		Common Stock	10,000
		Retained Earnings	8,300
	$24,100		$24,100

During September, the following summary transactions were completed.

Sept. 8 Paid $1,100 for salaries due employees, of which $400 is for September and $700 is for August salaries payable.
10 Received $1,500 cash from customers in payment of account.
12 Received $3,400 cash for services performed in September.
15 Purchased store equipment on account $3,000.

Sept. 17 Purchased supplies on account $2,000.
20 Paid creditors $4,500 of accounts payable due.
22 Paid September rent $520.
25 Paid salaries $1,200.
27 Performed services on account and billed customers for services provided $2,040.
29 Received $650 from customers for services to be provided in the future.

Adjustment data:

1. Supplies on hand $1,100.
2. Accrued salaries payable $400.
3. Depreciation $200 per month.
4. Unearned service revenue of $280 earned.

Instructions

(a) Enter the September 1 balances in the ledger T accounts.
(b) Journalize the September transactions.
(c) Post to the ledger T accounts. Use Service Revenue, Depreciation Expense, Supplies Expense, Salaries and Wages Expense, and Rent Expense.
(d) Prepare a trial balance at September 30.
(e) Journalize and post adjusting entries.
(f) Prepare an adjusted trial balance.
(g) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for September and a classified balance sheet at September 30.

(f) Tot. adj. trial balance $30,590
(g) Tot. assets $24,370

Complete all steps in accounting cycle.
(SO 4, 5, 6, 7, 8), **AP**

GLS

P4-8B Gina Balistrieri opened Genie Cleaners on March 1, 2012. During March, the following transactions were completed.

Mar. 1 Issued 10,000 shares of common stock for $15,000 cash.
1 Purchased used truck for $8,000, paying $3,000 cash and the balance on account.
3 Purchased cleaning supplies for $1,500 on account.
5 Paid $2,400 cash on a 6-month insurance policy effective March 1.
14 Billed customers $3,700 for cleaning services.
18 Paid $1,500 cash on amount owed on truck and $500 on amount owed on cleaning supplies.
20 Paid $1,750 cash for employee salaries.
21 Collected $1,600 cash from customers billed on March 14.
28 Billed customers $4,200 for cleaning services.
31 Paid $350 for gas and oil used in truck during month (use Maintenance and Repairs Expense).
31 Declared and paid a $900 cash dividend.

The chart of accounts for Genie Cleaners contains the following accounts: Cash, Accounts Receivable, Supplies, Prepaid Insurance, Equipment, Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment, Accounts Payable, Salaries and Wages Payable, Common Stock, Retained Earnings, Dividends, Income Summary, Service Revenue, Maintenance and Repairs Expense, Supplies Expense, Depreciation Expense, Insurance Expense, Salaries and Wages Expense.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the March transactions.
(b) Post to the ledger accounts. (Use T accounts.)
(c) Prepare a trial balance at March 31.
(d) Journalize the following adjustments.
1. Earned but unbilled revenue at March 31 was $200.
2. Depreciation on equipment for the month was $250.
3. One-sixth of the insurance expired.
4. An inventory count shows $280 of cleaning supplies on hand at March 31.
5. Accrued but unpaid employee salaries were $1,080.
(e) Post adjusting entries to the T accounts.
(f) Prepare an adjusted trial balance.
(g) Prepare the income statement and a retained earnings statement for March and a classified balance sheet at March 31.
(h) Journalize and post closing entries and complete the closing process.
(i) Prepare a post-closing trial balance at March 31.

(f) Tot. adj. trial balance $28,930
(g) Tot. assets $22,730

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapters 1 through 3.)

CCC4 Cookie Creations is gearing up for the winter holiday season. During the month of December 2011, the following transactions occur.

Dec.	1	Natalie hires an assistant at an hourly wage of $8 to help with cookie making and some administrative duties.
	5	Natalie teaches the class that was booked on November 25. The balance outstanding is received.
	8	Cookie Creations receives a check for the amount due from the neighborhood school for the class given on November 30.
	9	Cookie Creations receives $750 in advance from the local school board for five classes that the company will give during December and January.
	15	Pays the cell phone invoice outstanding at November 30.
	16	Issues a check to Natalie's brother for the amount owed for the design of the website.
	19	Receives a deposit of $60 on a cookie class scheduled for early January.
	23	Additional revenue earned during the month for cookie-making classes amounts to $4,000. (Natalie has not had time to account for each class individually.) $3,000 in cash has been collected and $1,000 is still outstanding. (This is in addition to the December 5 and December 9 transactions.)
	23	Additional baking supplies purchased during the month for sugar, flour, and chocolate chips amount to $1,250 cash.
	23	Issues a check to Natalie's assistant for $800. Her assistant worked approximately 100 hours from the time in which she was hired until December 23.
	28	Pays a dividend of $500 to the common shareholder (Natalie).

As of December 31, Cookie Creations' year-end, the following adjusting entry data are provided.

1. A count reveals that $45 of brochures and posters were used.
2. Depreciation is recorded on the baking equipment purchased in November. The baking equipment has a useful life of 5 years. Assume that 2 months' worth of depreciation is required.
3. Amortization (which is similar to depreciation) is recorded on the website. (Credit the Website account directly for the amount of the amortization.) The website is amortized over a useful life of 2 years and was available for use on December 1.
4. Interest on the note payable is accrued. (Assume that 1.5 months of interest accrued during November and December.) Round to nearest dollar.
5. One month's worth of insurance has expired.
6. Natalie is unexpectedly telephoned on December 28 to give a cookie class at the neighborhood community center on December 31. In early January Cookie Creations sends an invoice for $450 to the community center.
7. A count reveals that $1,025 of baking supplies were used.
8. A cell phone invoice is received for $75. The invoice is for services provided during the month of December and is due on January 15.
9. Because the cookie-making class occurred unexpectedly on December 28 and is for such a large group of children, Natalie's assistant helps out. Her assistant worked 7 hours at a rate of $8 per hour.
10. An analysis of the unearned revenue account reveals that two of the five classes paid for by the local school board on December 9 still have not been taught by the end of December. The $60 deposit received on December 19 for another class also remains unearned.

Instructions

Using the information that you have gathered and the general ledger accounts that you have prepared through Chapter 3, plus the new information above, do the following.

(a) Journalize the above transactions.

(b) Post the December transactions. (Use the general ledger accounts prepared in Chapter 3.)

(c) Totals	$8,160	(c) Prepare a trial balance at December 31, 2011.
		(d) Prepare and post adjusting journal entries for the month of December.
(e) Totals	$8,804	(e) Prepare an adjusted trial balance as of December 31, 2011.
(f) Net income	$3,211	(f) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the 2-month period ending December 31, 2011, and a classified balance sheet as of December 31, 2011.
		(g) Prepare and post closing entries as of December 31, 2011.
(h) Totals	$6,065	(h) Prepare a post-closing trial balance.

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.*

BYP4-1 The financial statements of Tootsie Roll are presented in Appendix A at the end of this book.

Instructions

(a) Using the consolidated income statement and balance sheet, identify items that may result in adjusting entries for deferrals.

(b) Using the consolidated income statement, identify two items that may result in adjusting entries for accruals.

(c) What was the amount of depreciation expense for 2009 and 2008? (You will need to examine the notes to the financial statements or the statement of cash flows.) Where was accumulated depreciation reported?

(d) What was the cash paid for income taxes during 2009, reported at the bottom of the consolidated statement of cash flows? What was income tax expense (provision for income taxes) for 2009?

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP4-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company are presented in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll in Appendix A.

Instructions

(a) Identify two accounts on Hershey's balance sheet that provide evidence that Hershey uses accrual accounting. In each case, identify the income statement account that would be affected by the adjustment process.

(b) Identify two accounts on Tootsie Roll's balance sheet that provide evidence that Tootsie Roll uses accrual accounting (different from the two you listed for Hershey). In each case, identify the income statement account that would be affected by the adjustment process.

RESEARCH CASE

BYP4-3 The February 13, 2010, issue of the *Wall Street Journal* includes an article by Scott Thurm entitled "For Some Firms, a Case of 'Quadrophobia'."

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following.

(a) What method did the study's authors use to determine that companies were "managing" their earnings per share calculation?

(b) For the average company in the study, how much would the company have to boost earnings in order to increase earnings per share by 1/10 of a cent?

(c) What examples did the authors cite of accounting adjustments that companies can make to boost net income enough that they can round up to the next highest cent? Why aren't these methods of adjustment considered illegal?

(d) What is an earnings restatement? What relationship did the authors identify about companies that restate earnings?
(e) What incentive do companies have to round up their earnings per share to the next highest cent?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP4-4 Laser Recording Systems, founded in 1981, produces disks for use in the home market. The following is an excerpt from Laser Recording Systems' financial statements (all dollars in thousands).

LASER RECORDING SYSTEMS
Management Discussion

Accrued liabilities increased to $1,642 at January 31, from $138 at the end of the previous fiscal year. Compensation and related accruals increased $195 due primarily to increases in accruals for severance, vacation, commissions, and relocation expenses. Accrued professional services increased by $137 primarily as a result of legal expenses related to several outstanding contractual disputes. Other expenses increased $35, of which $18 was for interest payable.

Instructions
(a) Can you tell from the discussion whether Laser Recording Systems has prepaid its legal expenses and is now making an adjustment to the asset account Prepaid Legal Expenses, or whether the company is handling the legal expense via an accrued expense adjustment?
(b) Identify each of the adjustments Laser Recording Systems is discussing as one of the four types of possible adjustments discussed in the chapter. How is net income ultimately affected by each of the adjustments?
(c) What journal entry did Laser Recording make to record the accrued interest?

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP4-5 ***Purpose:*** To learn about the functions of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC).

Address: **www.sec.gov/about/whatwedo.shtml,** or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Instructions
Use the information in this site to answer the following questions.
(a) What event spurred the creation of the SEC? Why was the SEC created?
(b) What are the four divisions of the SEC? Briefly describe the purpose of each.
(c) What are the responsibilities of the chief accountant?

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP4-6 Council Bluff Park was organized on April 1, 2011, by Lori Delzer. Lori is a good manager but a poor accountant. From the trial balance prepared by a part-time bookkeeper, Lori prepared the following income statement for the quarter that ended March 31, 2012.

COUNCIL BLUFF PARK
Income Statement
For the Quarter Ended March 31, 2012

Revenues		
Rental revenues		$83,000
Operating expenses		
Advertising	$ 4,200	
Wages	27,600	
Utilities	1,500	
Depreciation	800	
Repairs	2,800	
Total operating expenses		36,900
Net income		$46,100

Lori knew that something was wrong with the statement because net income had never exceeded $20,000 in any one quarter. Knowing that you are an experienced accountant, she asks you to review the income statement and other data.

You first look at the trial balance. In addition to the account balances reported in the income statement, the ledger contains these selected balances at March 31, 2012.

Supplies	$ 4,500
Prepaid Insurance	7,200
Notes Payable	20,000

You then make inquiries and discover the following.

1. Rental revenues include advanced rentals for summer-month occupancy, $21,000.
2. There were $600 of supplies on hand at March 31.
3. Prepaid insurance resulted from the payment of a 1-year policy on January 1, 2012.
4. The mail on April 1, 2012, brought the following bills: advertising for week of March 24, $110; repairs made March 10, $1,040; and utilities $240.
5. There are four employees who receive wages totaling $290 per day. At March 31, 3 days' wages have been incurred but not paid.
6. The note payable is a 3-month, 7% note dated January 1, 2012.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following.

(a) Prepare a correct income statement for the quarter ended March 31, 2012.

(b) Explain to Lori the generally accepted accounting principles that she did not follow in preparing her income statement and their effect on her results.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP4-7 On numerous occasions, proposals have surfaced to put the federal government on the accrual basis of accounting. This is no small issue because if this basis were used, it would mean that billions in unrecorded liabilities would have to be booked and the federal deficit would increase substantially.

Instructions

(a) What is the difference between accrual-basis accounting and cash-basis accounting?

(b) Comment on why politicians prefer a cash-basis accounting system over an accrual-basis system.

(c) Write a letter to your senators explaining why you think the federal government should adopt the accrual basis of accounting.

ETHICS CASE

BYP4-8 Prism Company is a pesticide manufacturer. Its sales declined greatly this year due to the passage of legislation outlawing the sale of several of Prism's chemical pesticides. During the coming year, Prism will have environmentally safe and competitive replacement chemicals to replace these discontinued products. Sales in the next year are expected to greatly exceed those of any prior year. Therefore, the decline in this year's sales and profits appears to be a one-year aberration.

Even so, the company president believes that a large dip in the current year's profits could cause a significant drop in the market price of Prism's stock and make it a takeover target. To avoid this possibility, he urges Brad Ellis, controller, in making this period's year-end adjusting entries to accrue every possible revenue and to defer as many expenses as possible. The president says to Brad, "We need the revenues this year, and next year we can easily absorb expenses deferred from this year. We can't let our stock price be hammered down!" Brad didn't get around to recording the adjusting entries until January 17, but she dated the entries December 31 as if they were recorded then. Brad also made every effort to comply with the president's request.

Instructions

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?

(b) What are the ethical considerations of the president's request and Brad's dating the adjusting entries December 31?

(c) Can Brad accrue revenues and defer expenses and still be ethical?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP4-9 Companies prepare balance sheets in order to know their financial position at a specific point in time. This enables them to make a comparison to their position at previous points in time and gives them a basis for planning for the future. In order to evaluate *your* financial position, you

can prepare a personal balance sheet. Assume that you have compiled the following information regarding your finances. (*Hint:* Some of the items might not be used in your personal balance sheet.)

Amount owed on student loan balance (long-term)	$5,000
Balance in checking account	1,200
Certificate of deposit (6-month)	3,000
Annual earnings from part-time job	11,300
Automobile	7,000
Balance on automobile loan (current portion)	1,500
Balance on automobile loan (long-term portion)	4,000
Home computer	800
Amount owed to you by younger brother	300
Balance in money market account	1,800
Annual tuition	6,400
Video and stereo equipment	1,250
Balance owed on credit card (current portion)	150
Balance owed on credit card (long-term portion)	1,650

Instructions

Prepare a personal balance sheet using the format you have learned for a classified balance sheet for a company. For the equity account, use M. Y. Own, Capital.

FASB CODIFICATION ACTIVITY

BYP4-10 If your school has a subscription to the FASB Codification, go to **http://aaahq.org/ascLogin.cfm** to log in and prepare responses to the following.

Instructions

Access the glossary ("Master Glossary") to answer the following.

(a) What is the definition of revenue?

(b) What is the definition of compensation?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 166 Cooking the Books? Q: What motivates sales executives and finance and accounting executives to participate in activities that result in inaccurate reporting of revenues? **A:** Sales executives typically receive bonuses based on their ability to meet quarterly sales targets. In addition, they often face the possibility of losing their jobs if they miss those targets. Executives in accounting and finance are very aware of the earnings targets of Wall Street analysts and investors. If they fail to meet these targets, the company's stock price will fall. As a result of these pressures, executives sometimes knowingly engage in unethical efforts to misstate revenues. As a result of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, the penalties for such behavior are now much more severe.

p. 167 Reporting Revenue Accurately Q: In the past, why was it argued that Apple should spread the recognition of iPhone revenue over a two-year period, rather than recording it upfront? **A:** Apple promises to provide software updates over the life of the phone's use. Because this represents an unfulfilled service obligation, it was argued that Apple should spread its revenue recognition over a two-year estimated life of the phone.

p. 174 Turning Gift Cards into Revenue Q: Suppose that Robert Jones purchases a $100 gift card at Best Buy on December 24, 2011, and gives it to his wife, Mary Jones, on December 25, 2011. On January 3, 2012, Mary uses the card to purchase $100 worth of CDs. When do you think Best Buy should recognize revenue and why? **A:** According to the revenue recognition principle, companies should recognize revenue when earned. In this case, revenue is not earned until Best Buy provides the goods. Thus, when Best Buy receives cash in exchange for the gift card on December 24, 2011, it should recognize a liability, Unearned Revenue, for $100. On January 3, 2012, when Mary Jones exchanges the card for merchandise, Best Buy should recognize revenue and eliminate $100 from the balance in the Unearned Revenue account.

p. 178 Cashing In on Accrual Accounting Q: Accrual accounting is often considered superior to cash accounting. Why, then, were some people critical of China's use of accrual accounting in this instance? **A:** In this case, some people were critical because, in general, China uses cash accounting. By switching to accrual accounting for this transaction, China was not being consistent in its accounting practices. Lack of consistency reduces the transparency and usefulness of accounting information.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. c **2.** a **3.** d **4.** d **5.** d **6.** c ($1,350 − $600 = $750) **7.** a **8.** c **9.** c **10.** b **11.** b **12.** c **13.** a **14.** a **15.** d

IFRS A Look at IFRS

It is often difficult for companies to determine in what time period they should report particular revenues and expenses. Both the IASB and FASB are working on a joint project to develop a common conceptual framework, as well as a revenue recognition project, that will enable companies to better use the same principles to record transactions consistently over time.

KEY POINTS

- In this chapter, you learned accrual-basis accounting applied under GAAP. Companies applying IFRS also use accrual-basis accounting to ensure that they record transactions that change a company's financial statements in the period in which events occur.
- Similar to GAAP, cash-basis accounting is not in accordance with IFRS.
- IFRS also divides the economic life of companies into artificial time periods. Under both GAAP and IFRS, this is referred to as the *periodicity assumption*.
- IFRS requires that companies present a complete set of financial statements, including comparative information annually.
- GAAP has more than 100 rules dealing with revenue recognition. Many of these rules are industry-specific. In contrast, revenue recognition under IFRS is determined primarily by a single standard. Despite this large disparity in the amount of detailed guidance devoted to revenue recognition, the **general** revenue recognition principles required by GAAP that are used in this textbook are similar to those under IFRS.
- As the Feature Story illustrates, revenue recognition fraud is a major issue in U.S. financial reporting. The same situation occurs in other countries, as evidenced by revenue recognition breakdowns at Dutch software company Baan NV, Japanese electronics giant NEC, and Dutch grocer AHold NV.
- A specific standard exists for revenue recognition under IFRS *(IAS 18)*. In general, the standard is based on the **probability that the economic benefits associated with the transaction will flow to the company** selling the goods, providing the service, or receiving investment income. In addition, the revenues and costs **must be capable of being measured reliably**. GAAP uses concepts such as *realized*, *realizable* (that is, it is received, or expected to be received), and *earned* as a basis for revenue recognition.
- Under IFRS, revaluation of items such as land and buildings is permitted. IFRS allows depreciation based on revaluation of assets, which is not permitted under GAAP.
- The terminology used for revenues and gains, and expenses and losses, differs somewhat between IFRS and GAAP. For example, income is defined as:

  > Increases in economic benefits during the accounting period in the form of inflows or enhancements of assets or decreases of liabilities that result in increases in equity, other than those relating to contributions from shareholders.

  Income includes *both* revenues, which arise during the normal course of operating activities, and gains, which arise from activities outside of the normal sales of goods and services. The term income is not used this way under GAAP. Instead, under GAAP income refers to the net difference between revenues and expenses. Expenses are defined as:

  > Decreases in economic benefits during the accounting period in the form of outflows or depletions of assets or incurrences of liabilities that result in decreases in equity other than those relating to distributions to shareholders.

  Note that under IFRS, expenses include both those costs incurred in the normal course of operations, as well as losses that are not part of normal operations. This in contrast to GAAP, which defines each separately.
- The procedures of the closing process are applicable to all companies whether they are using IFRS or GAAP.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

The IASB and FASB are now involved in a joint project on revenue recognition. The purpose of this project is to develop comprehensive guidance on when to recognize revenue. Presently, the Boards are considering an approach that focuses on changes in assets and liabilities (rather than on earned and

realized) as the basis for revenue recognition. It is hoped that this approach will lead to more consistent accounting in this area. For more on this topic, see *www.fasb.org/project/revenue_recognition.shtml*.

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. GAAP:
   (a) provides very detailed, industry-specific guidance on revenue recognition, compared to the general guidance provided by IFRS.
   (b) provides only general guidance on revenue recognition, compared to the detailed guidance provided by IFRS.
   (c) allows revenue to be recognized when a customer makes an order.
   (d) requires that revenue not be recognized until cash is received.
2. Which of the following statements is *false*?
   (a) IFRS employs the periodicity assumption.
   (b) IFRS employs accrual accounting.
   (c) IFRS requires that revenues and costs must be capable of being measured reliably.
   (d) IFRS uses the cash basis of accounting.
3. As a result of the revenue recognition project being undertaken by the FASB and IASB:
   (a) revenue recognition will place more emphasis on when revenue is earned.
   (b) revenue recognition will place more emphasis on when revenue is realized.
   (c) revenue recognition will place more emphasis on when changes occur in assets and liabilities.
   (d) revenue will no longer be recorded unless cash has been received.
4. Which of the following is *false*?
   (a) Under IFRS, the term *income* describes both revenues and gains.
   (b) Under IFRS, the term *expenses* includes losses.
   (c) Under IFRS, firms do not engage in the closing process.
   (d) IFRS has fewer standards than GAAP that address revenue recognition.
5. Accrual-basis accounting:
   (a) is optional under IFRS.
   (b) results in companies recording transactions that change a company's financial statements in the period in which events occur.
   (c) will likely be eliminated as a result of the IASB/FASB joint project on revenue recognition.
   (d) is not consistent with the IASB conceptual framework.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS4-1 Compare and contrast the rules regarding revenue recognition under IFRS versus GAAP.

IFRS4-2 Under IFRS, do the definitions of revenues and expenses include gains and losses? Explain.

INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Zetar plc*

IFRS4-3 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C. The company's complete annual report, including the notes to its financial statements, is available at **www.zetarplc.com**. Visit Zetar's corporate website and answer the following questions from Zetar's 2009 annual report.

(a) From the notes to the financial statements, how does the company determine the amount of revenue to record at the time of a sale?
(b) From the notes to the financial statements, how does the company determine whether a sale has occurred?
(c) Using the consolidated income statement and consolidated statement of financial position, identify items that may result in adjusting entries for deferrals.
(d) Using the consolidated income statement, identify two items that may result in adjusting entries for accruals.

Answers to IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. a **2.** d **3.** c **4.** c **5.** b

the navigator

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 5

MERCHANDISING OPERATIONS AND THE MULTIPLE-STEP INCOME STATEMENT

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 235 ◯ p. 239 ◯ p. 243 ◯ p. 245 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 254 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 276 ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Identify the differences between a service company and a merchandising company.
2. Explain the recording of purchases under a perpetual inventory system.
3. Explain the recording of sales revenues under a perpetual inventory system.
4. Distinguish between a single-step and a multiple-step income statement.
5. Determine cost of goods sold under a periodic system.
6. Explain the factors affecting profitability.
7. Identify a quality of earnings indicator.

the navigator

WHO DOESN'T SHOP AT WAL-MART?

In his book *The End of Work,* Jeremy Rifkin notes that until the 20th century the word *consumption* evoked negative images; to be labeled a "consumer" was an insult. (In fact, one of the deadliest diseases in history, tuberculosis, was often referred to as "consumption.") Twentieth-century merchants realized, however, that in order to prosper, they had to convince people of the need for things not previously needed. For example, General Motors made annual changes in its cars so that people would be discontented with the cars they already owned. Thus began consumerism.

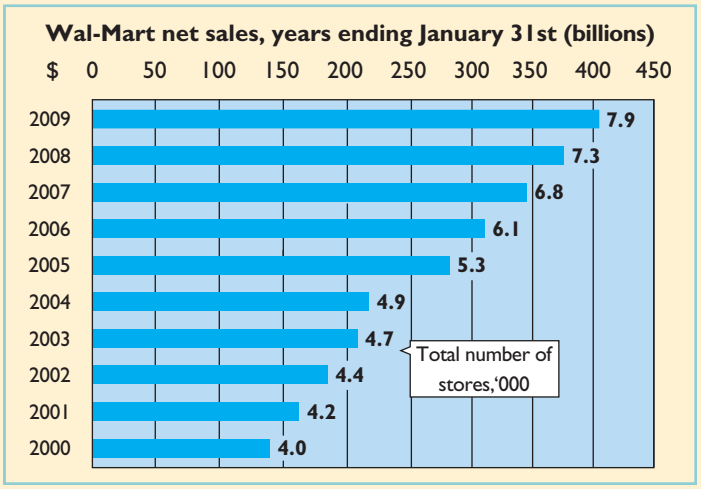
Today, consumption describes the U.S. lifestyle in a nutshell. We consume twice as much today per person as we did at the end of World War II. The amount of U.S. retail space per person is vastly greater than that of any other country. It appears that we live to shop.

The first great retail giant was Sears, Roebuck. It started as a catalog company enabling people in rural areas to buy things by mail. For decades it was the uncontested merchandising leader.

Today, Wal-Mart is the undisputed champion provider of basic (and perhaps not-so-basic) human needs. Wal-Mart opened its first store in 1962, and it now has almost 8,000 stores, serving more than 100 million customers every week. A key cause of Wal-Mart's incredible growth is its amazing system of inventory control and distribution. Wal-Mart has a management information system that employs six satellite channels, from which company computers receive 8.4 million updates every minute on what items customers buy and the relationship among items sold to each person.

Measured by sales revenues, Wal-Mart is the largest company in the world. In six years, it went from selling almost no groceries to being America's largest grocery retailer.

It would appear that things have never looked better at Wal-Mart. On the other hand, a *Wall Street Journal* article, entitled "How to Sell More to Those Who Think It's Cool to Be Frugal," suggests that consumerism as a way of life might be dying. Don't bet your high-definition 3D TV on it though.



Source: "How Big Can It Grow?" *The Economist* (April 17, 2004), pp. 67–69, and *www.walmart.com* (accessed March 17, 2008).

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 5 . . .

- **Morrow Snowboards Improves Its Stock Appeal** *(p. 231)*
- **Should Costco Change Its Return Policy?** *(p. 238)*
- **Disclosing More Details** *(p. 242)*
- **Strategic Errors Can Be Costly** *(p. 248)*

preview of chapter 5

Merchandising is one of the largest and most influential industries in the United States. It is likely that a number of you will work for a merchandiser. Therefore, understanding the financial statements of merchandising companies is important. In this chapter, you will learn the basics about reporting merchandising transactions. In addition, you will learn how to prepare and analyze a commonly used form of the income statement—the multiple-step income statement. The content and organization of the chapter are as follows.

Merchandising Operations

Merchandising Operations	Recording Purchases of Merchandise	Recording Sales of Merchandise	Income Statement Presentation	Evaluating Profitability
• Operating cycles • Flow of costs—perpetual and periodic inventory systems	• Freight costs • Purchase returns and allowances • Purchase discounts • Summary of purchasing transactions	• Sales returns and allowances • Sales discounts	• Sales revenues • Gross profit • Operating expenses • Nonoperating activities • Determining cost of goods sold—periodic system	• Gross profit rate • Profit margin ratio

the navigator

Merchandising Operations

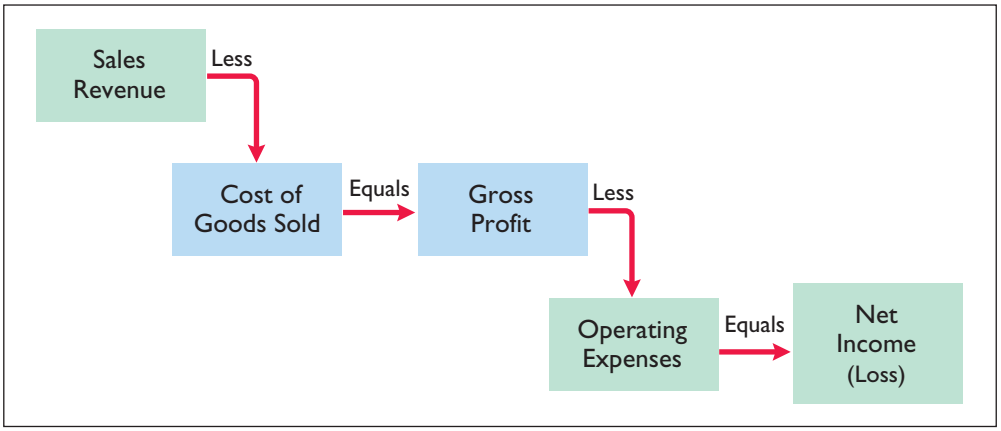
study objective 1

Identify the differences between a service company and a merchandising company.

Wal-Mart, Kmart, and Target are called merchandising companies because they buy and sell merchandise rather than perform services as their primary source of revenue. Merchandising companies that purchase and sell directly to consumers are called **retailers**. Merchandising companies that sell to retailers are known as **wholesalers**. For example, retailer Walgreens might buy goods from wholesaler McKesson; retailer Office Depot might buy office supplies from wholesaler United Stationers. The primary source of revenues for merchandising companies is the sale of merchandise, often referred to simply as **sales revenue** or **sales**. A merchandising company has two categories of expenses: the cost of goods sold and operating expenses.

The **cost of goods sold** is the total cost of merchandise sold during the period. This expense is directly related to the revenue recognized from the sale of goods. Illustration 5-1 shows the income measurement process for a merchandising company. The items in the two blue boxes are unique to a merchandising company; they are not used by a service company.

Illustration 5-1 Income measurement process for a merchandising company



OPERATING CYCLES

The operating cycle of a merchandising company ordinarily is longer than that of a service company. The purchase of merchandise inventory and its eventual sale lengthen the cycle. Illustration 5-2 contrasts the operating cycles of service and merchandising companies. Note that the added asset account for a merchandising company is the Inventory account.

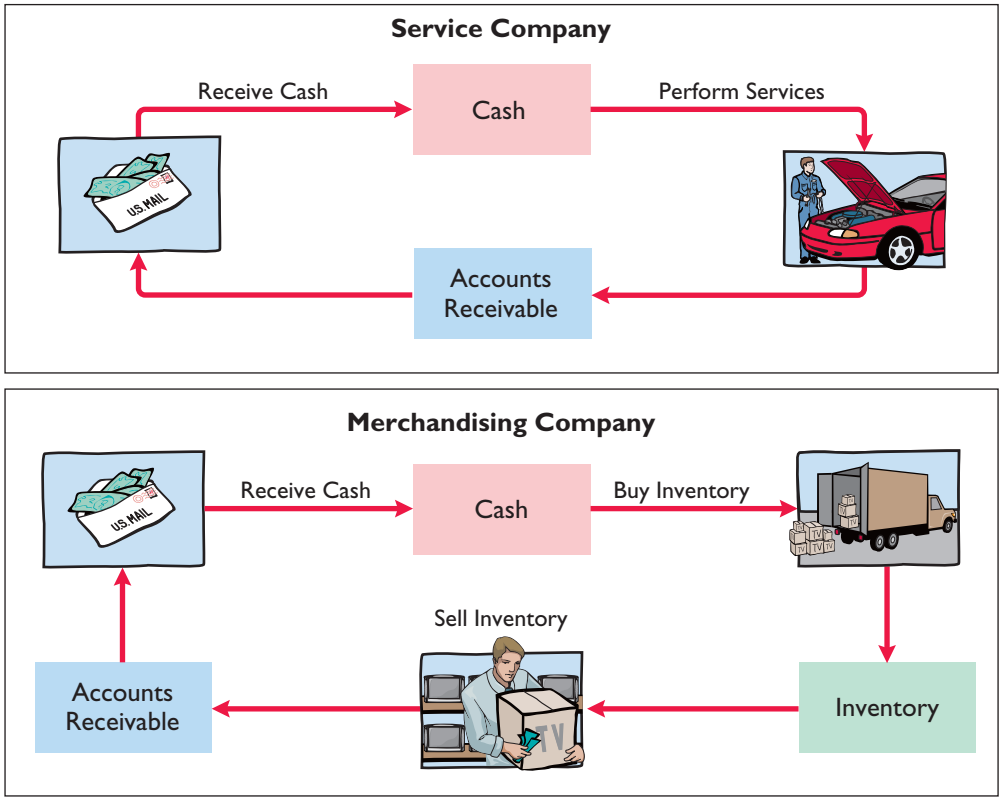


Illustration 5-2 Operating cycles for a service company and a merchandising company

FLOW OF COSTS

The flow of costs for a merchandising company is as follows: Beginning inventory plus the cost of goods purchased is the cost of goods available for sale. As goods are sold, they are assigned to cost of goods sold. Those goods that are not sold by the end of the accounting period represent ending inventory. Illustration 5-3 describes these relationships. Companies use one of two systems to account for inventory: a **perpetual inventory system** or a **periodic inventory system**.

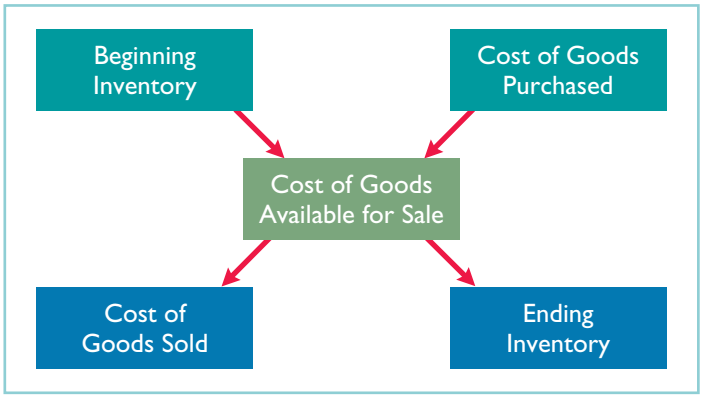


Illustration 5-3 Flow of costs

Helpful Hint Even under perpetual inventory systems, companies perform physical inventories. This is done as a control procedure to verify inventory levels, in order to detect theft or "shrinkage."

Perpetual System

In a **perpetual inventory system**, companies maintain detailed records of the cost of each inventory purchase and sale. These records continuously—perpetually—show the inventory that should be on hand for every item. For example, a Ford dealership has separate inventory records for each automobile, truck, and van on its lot and showroom floor. Similarly, a grocery store uses bar codes and optical scanners to keep a daily running record of every box of cereal and every jar of jelly that it buys and sells. Under a perpetual inventory system, a company determines the cost of goods sold **each time a sale occurs**.

Periodic System

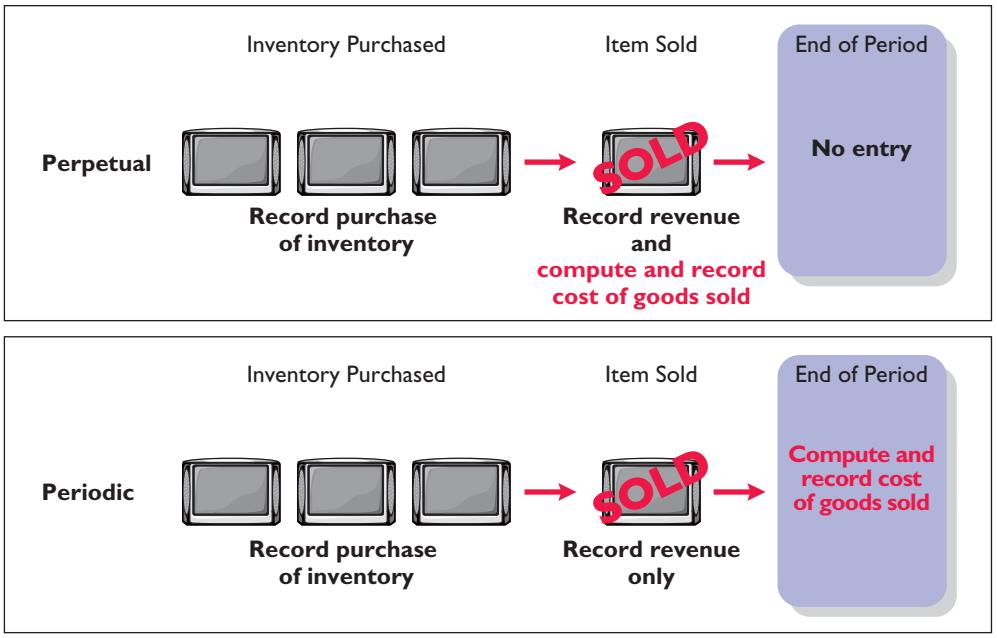
In a **periodic inventory system**, companies do not keep detailed inventory records of the goods on hand throughout the period. They determine the cost of goods sold **only at the end of the accounting period**—that is, periodically. At that point, the company takes a physical inventory count to determine the cost of goods on hand.

To determine the cost of goods sold under a periodic inventory system, the following steps are necessary:

1. Determine the cost of goods on hand at the beginning of the accounting period.
2. Add to it the cost of goods purchased.
3. Subtract the cost of goods on hand at the end of the accounting period.

Illustration 5-4 graphically compares the sequence of activities and the timing of the cost of goods sold computation under the two inventory systems.

Illustration 5-4
Comparing perpetual and periodic inventory systems



Additional Considerations

Companies that sell merchandise with high unit values, such as automobiles, furniture, and major home appliances, have traditionally used perpetual systems. The growing use of computers and electronic scanners has enabled many more companies to install perpetual inventory systems. The perpetual inventory system is so named because the accounting records continuously—perpetually—show the quantity and cost of the inventory that should be on hand at any time.

A perpetual inventory system provides better control over inventories than a periodic system. Since the inventory records show the quantities that should be on hand, the company can count the goods at any time to see whether the amount of goods actually on hand agrees with the inventory records. If shortages are uncovered, the company can investigate immediately. Although a perpetual inventory system requires additional clerical work and additional cost to maintain inventory records, a computerized system can minimize this cost. As noted in the Feature Story, much of Wal-Mart's success is attributed to its sophisticated inventory system.

Some businesses find it either unnecessary or uneconomical to invest in a sophisticated, computerized perpetual inventory system such as Wal-Mart's. However, many small merchandising businesses, in particular, find that basic computerized accounting packages provide some of the essential benefits of a perpetual inventory system. Yet, managers of some small businesses still find that they can control their merchandise and manage day-to-day operations using a periodic inventory system.

Because the perpetual inventory system is growing in popularity and use, we illustrate it in this chapter. An appendix to this chapter describes the journal entries for the periodic system.

Investor Insight

Morrow Snowboards Improves Its Stock Appeal

Investors are often eager to invest in a company that has a hot new product. However, when snowboard maker Morrow Snowboards, Inc., issued shares of stock to the public for the first time, some investors expressed reluctance to invest in Morrow because of a number of accounting control problems. To reduce investor concerns, Morrow implemented a perpetual inventory system to improve its control over inventory. In addition, it stated that it would perform a physical inventory count every quarter until it felt that the perpetual inventory system was reliable.

? If a perpetual system keeps track of inventory on a daily basis, why do companies ever need to do a physical count? (See page 276.)

Recording Purchases of Merchandise

study objective 2

Explain the recording of purchases under a perpetual inventory system.

Companies may purchase inventory for cash or on account (credit). They normally record purchases when they receive the goods from the seller. Every purchase should be supported by business documents that provide written evidence of the transaction. Each cash purchase should be supported by a canceled check or a cash register receipt indicating the items purchased and amounts paid. Companies record cash purchases by an increase in Inventory and a decrease in Cash.

Each purchase should be supported by a **purchase invoice**, which indicates the total purchase price and other relevant information. However, the purchaser does not prepare a separate purchase invoice. Instead, the purchaser uses as a purchase invoice the copy of the sales invoice sent by the seller. In Illustration 5-5 (page 232), for example, Sauk Stereo (the buyer) uses as a purchase invoice the sales invoice prepared by PW Audio Supply, Inc. (the seller).

The associated entry for Sauk Stereo for the invoice from PW Audio Supply increases Inventory and increases Accounts Payable.

May	4	Inventory	3,800	
		Accounts Payable		3,800
		(To record goods purchased on account from PW Audio Supply)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+3,800				
		+3,800		

Cash Flows
no effect

Illustration 5-5 Sales invoice used as purchase invoice by Sauk Stereo

INVOICE NO. 731

PW AUDIO SUPPLY, INC.
27 CIRCLE DRIVE
HARDING, MICHIGAN 48281

SOLD TO
Firm Name Sauk Stereo
Attention of James Hoover, Purchasing Agent
Address 125 Main Street
Chelsea (City) Illinois (State) 60915 (Zip)

Date 5/4/12	Salesperson Malone	Terms 2/10, n/30	FOB Shipping Point	
Catalog No.	Description	Quantity	Price	Amount
X572Y9820	Printed Circuit Board-prototype	1	2,300	$2,300
A2547Z45	Production Model Circuits	5	300	1,500
IMPORTANT: ALL RETURNS MUST BE MADE WITHIN 10 DAYS			TOTAL	$3,800

Helpful Hint To better understand the contents of this invoice, identify these items:
1. Seller
2. Invoice date
3. Purchaser
4. Salesperson
5. Credit terms
6. Freight terms
7. Goods sold: catalog number, description, quantity, price per unit
8. Total invoice amount

Under the perpetual inventory system, companies record purchases of merchandise for sale in the Inventory account. Thus, Wal-Mart would increase (debit) Inventory for clothing, sporting goods, and anything else purchased for resale to customers. Not all purchases are debited to Inventory, however. Companies record purchases of assets acquired for use and not for resale, such as supplies, equipment, and similar items, as increases to specific asset accounts rather than to Inventory. For example, to record the purchase of materials used to make shelf signs or for cash register receipt paper, Wal-Mart would increase (debit) Supplies.

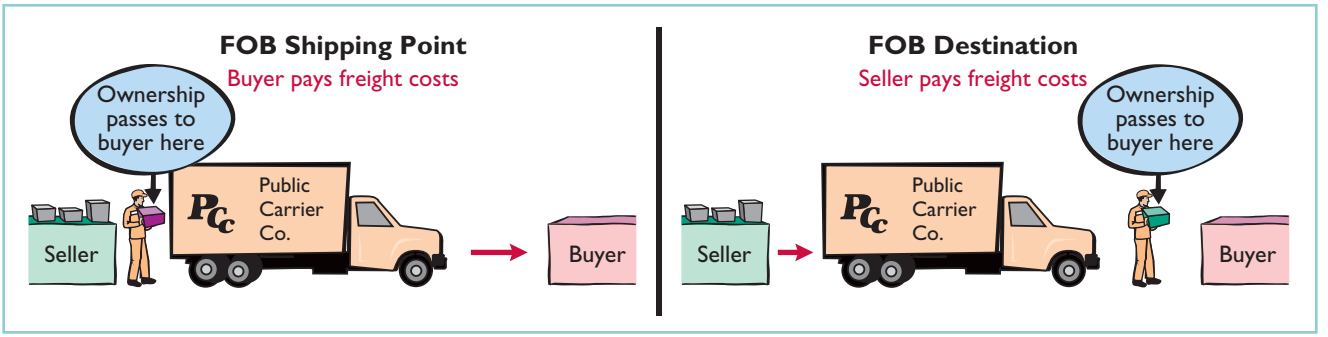
FREIGHT COSTS

The sales agreement should indicate who—the seller or the buyer—is to pay for transporting the goods to the buyer's place of business. When a common carrier such as a railroad, trucking company, or airline transports the goods, the carrier prepares a freight bill in accord with the sales agreement.

Freight terms are expressed as either FOB shipping point or FOB destination. The letters FOB mean **free on board**. Thus, **FOB shipping point** means that the seller places the goods free on board the carrier, and the buyer pays the freight costs. Conversely, **FOB destination** means that the seller places the goods free on board to the buyer's place of business, and the seller pays the freight. For example, the sales invoice in Illustration 5-5 indicates FOB shipping point.

Thus, the buyer (Sauk Stereo) pays the freight charges. Illustration 5-6 illustrates these shipping terms.

Illustration 5-6 Shipping terms



Freight Costs Incurred by Buyer

When the buyer pays the transportation costs, these costs are considered part of the cost of purchasing inventory. As a result, the account **Inventory is increased**. For example, if Sauk Stereo (the buyer) pays Haul-It Freight Company $150 for freight charges on May 6, the entry on Sauk Stereo's books is:

May	6	Inventory	150	
		Cash		150
		(To record payment of freight on goods purchased)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+150				
−150				

Cash Flows
−150

Thus, any freight costs incurred by the buyer are part of the cost of merchandise purchased. The reason: Inventory cost should include any freight charges necessary to deliver the goods to the buyer.

Freight Costs Incurred by Seller

In contrast, **freight costs incurred by the seller on outgoing merchandise are an operating expense to the seller**. These costs increase an expense account titled Freight-out or Delivery Expense. For example, if the freight terms on the invoice in Illustration 5-5 had required that PW Audio Supply (the seller) pay the $150 freight charges, the entry by PW Audio Supply would be:

May	4	Freight-out	150	
		Cash		150
		(To record payment of freight on goods sold)		

A	=	L	+	SE
				−150 Exp
−150				

Cash Flows
−150

When the seller pays the freight charges, the seller will usually establish a higher invoice price for the goods, to cover the expense of shipping.

PURCHASE RETURNS AND ALLOWANCES

A purchaser may be dissatisfied with the merchandise received because the goods are damaged or defective, of inferior quality, or do not meet the purchaser's specifications. In such cases, the purchaser may return the goods to the seller for

credit if the sale was made on credit, or for a cash refund if the purchase was for cash. This transaction is known as a **purchase return**. Alternatively, the purchaser may choose to keep the merchandise if the seller is willing to grant a reduction of the purchase price. This transaction is known as a **purchase allowance**.

Assume that Sauk Stereo returned goods costing $300 to PW Audio Supply on May 8. The following entry by Sauk Stereo for the returned merchandise decreases Accounts Payable and decreases Inventory.

A	=	L	+	SE
		−300		
−300				

Cash Flows
no effect

May	8	Accounts Payable	300	
		Inventory		300
		(To record return of goods purchased from PW Audio Supply)		

Because Sauk Stereo increased Inventory when the goods were received, Inventory is decreased (credited) when Sauk Stereo returns the goods.

Suppose instead that Sauk Stereo chose to keep the goods after being granted a $50 allowance (reduction in price). It would reduce (debit) Accounts Payable and reduce (credit) Inventory for $50.

PURCHASE DISCOUNTS

The credit terms of a purchase on account may permit the buyer to claim a cash discount for prompt payment. The buyer calls this cash discount a **purchase discount**. This incentive offers advantages to both parties: The purchaser saves money, and the seller is able to shorten the operating cycle by converting the accounts receivable into cash earlier.

Helpful Hint The term *net* in "net 30" means the remaining amount due after subtracting any returns and allowances and partial payments.

The **credit terms** specify the amount of the cash discount and time period during which it is offered. They also indicate the length of time in which the purchaser is expected to pay the full invoice price. In the sales invoice in Illustration 5-5 (page 232), credit terms are 2/10, n/30, which is read "two-ten, net thirty." This means that a 2% cash discount may be taken on the invoice price less ("net of") any returns or allowances, if payment is made within 10 days of the invoice date (the **discount period**). Otherwise, the invoice price, less any returns or allowances, is due 30 days from the invoice date. Alternatively, the discount period may extend to a specified number of days following the month in which the sale occurs. For example, 1/10 EOM (end of month) means that a 1% discount is available if the invoice is paid within the first 10 days of the next month.

When the seller elects not to offer a cash discount for prompt payment, credit terms will specify only the maximum time period for paying the balance due. For example, the credit terms may state the time period as n/30, n/60, or n/10 EOM. This means, respectively, that the buyer must pay the net amount in 30 days, 60 days, or within the first 10 days of the next month.

When an invoice is paid within the discount period, the amount of the discount decreases Inventory. Why? Because the merchandiser records inventory at its cost and, by paying within the discount period, it has reduced that cost. To illustrate, assume Sauk Stereo pays the balance due of $3,500 (gross invoice price of $3,800 less purchase returns and allowances of $300) on May 14, the last day of the discount period. The cash discount is $70 ($3,500 × 2%), and the amount of cash Sauk Stereo paid is $3,430 ($3,500 − $70). The entry Sauk Stereo makes to record its May 14 payment decreases (debits) Accounts Payable by the amount of the gross invoice price, reduces (credits) Inventory by the $70 discount, and reduces (credits) Cash by the net amount owed.

May 14	Accounts Payable	3,500	
	Cash		3,430
	Inventory		70
	(To record payment within discount period)		

A	=	L	+	SE
−3,430		−3,500		
−70				

Cash Flows
−3,430

If Sauk Stereo failed to take the discount and instead made full payment of $3,500 on June 3, Sauk Stereo would reduce (debit) Accounts Payable and reduce (credit) Cash for $3,500 each.

June 3	Accounts Payable	3,500	
	Cash		3,500
	(To record payment with no discount taken)		

A	=	L	+	SE
−3,500		−3,500		

Cash Flows
−3,500

A merchandising company usually should take all available discounts. Passing up the discount may be viewed as **paying interest** for use of the money. For example, passing up the discount offered by PW Audio Supply would be like Sauk Stereo paying an interest rate of 2% for the use of $3,500 for 20 days. This is the equivalent of an annual interest rate of approximately 36.5% (2% × 365/20). Obviously, it would be better for Sauk Stereo to borrow at prevailing bank interest rates of 6% to 10% than to lose the discount.

SUMMARY OF PURCHASING TRANSACTIONS

The following T account (with transaction descriptions in blue) provides a summary of the effect of the previous transactions on Inventory. Sauk Stereo originally purchased $3,800 worth of inventory for resale. It then returned $300 of goods. It paid $150 in freight charges, and finally, it received a $70 discount off the balance owed because it paid within the discount period. This results in a balance in Inventory of $3,580.

	Inventory				
Purchase	May 4	3,800	May 8	300	Purchase return
Freight-in	6	150	14	70	Purchase discount
Balance		3,580			

before you go on...

Do it! On September 5, De La Hoya Company buys merchandise on account from Junot Diaz Company. The selling price of the goods is $1,500. On September 8, De La Hoya returns defective goods with a selling price of $200. Record the transactions on the books of De La Hoya Company.

PURCHASE TRANSACTIONS

Action Plan

- Purchaser records goods at cost.
- When goods are returned, purchaser reduces Inventory.

Solution

Sept. 5	Inventory	1,500	
	Accounts Payable		1,500
	(To record goods purchased on account)		
8	Accounts Payable	200	
	Inventory		200
	(To record return of defective goods)		

Related exercise material: **BE5-4,** **Do it!** **5-1,** and **E5-1.**

the navigator

Recording Sales of Merchandise

study objective 3

Explain the recording of sales revenues under a perpetual inventory system.

Companies record sales revenues, like service revenues, when earned, in compliance with the revenue recognition principle. Typically, companies earn sales revenues when the goods are transferred from the seller to the buyer. At this point the sales transaction is completed and the sales price is established.

Sales may be made on credit or for cash. Every sales transaction should be supported by a **business document** that provides written evidence of the sale. **Cash register tapes** provide evidence of cash sales. A **sales invoice**, like the one that was shown in Illustration 5-5 (page 232), provides support for each sale. The original copy of the invoice goes to the customer, and the seller keeps a copy for use in recording the sale. The invoice shows the date of sale, customer name, total sales price, and other relevant information.

The seller makes two entries for each sale: (1) It increases (debits) Accounts Receivable or Cash, as well as increases (credits) Sales Revenue. (2) It increases (debits) Cost of Goods Sold and decreases (credits) Inventory. As a result, the Inventory account will show at all times the amount of inventory that should be on hand.

To illustrate a credit sales transaction, PW Audio Supply records the sale of $3,800 on May 4 to Sauk Stereo (see Illustration 5-5) as follows (assume the merchandise cost PW Audio Supply $2,400).

A = L + SE
+3,800 | +3,800 Rev
Cash Flows
no effect

May	4	Accounts Receivable	3,800	
		Sales Revenue		3,800
		(To record credit sale to Sauk Stereo per invoice #731)		

A = L + SE
−2,400 | −2,400 Exp
Cash Flows
no effect

	4	Cost of Goods Sold	2,400	
		Inventory		2,400
		(To record cost of merchandise sold on invoice #731 to Sauk Stereo)		

Helpful Hint The merchandiser credits the Sales Revenue account only for sales of goods held for resale. Sales of assets not held for resale, such as equipment or land, are credited directly to the asset account.

For internal decision-making purposes, merchandising companies may use more than one sales account. For example, PW Audio Supply may decide to keep separate sales accounts for its sales of TV sets, DVD players, and microwave ovens. Wal-Mart might use separate accounts for sporting goods, children's clothing, and hardware—or it might have even more narrowly defined accounts. By using separate sales accounts for major product lines, rather than a single combined sales account, company management can monitor sales trends more closely and respond more strategically to changes in sales patterns. For example, if TV sales are increasing while microwave oven sales are decreasing, the company might reevaluate both its advertising and pricing policies on each of these items to ensure they are optimal.

Ethics Note Many companies are trying to improve the quality of their financial reporting. For example, General Electric now provides more detail on its revenues and operating profits.

On its income statement presented to outside investors a merchandising company would normally provide only a single sales figure—the sum of all of its individual sales accounts. This is done for two reasons. First, providing detail on all of its individual sales accounts would add considerable length to its income statement. Second, companies do not want their competitors to know the details of their operating results. However, at one time Microsoft expanded its disclosure of revenue from three to five types. The reason: The additional categories will better enable financial statement users to evaluate the growth of the company's consumer and Internet businesses.

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD[1]

Holly Harmon was a cashier at a national superstore for only a short while when she began stealing merchandise using three methods. First, her husband or friends took UPC labels from cheaper items and put them on more expensive items. Holly then scanned the goods at the register. Second, Holly rang an item up but then voided the sale and left the merchandise in the shopping cart. A third approach was to put goods into large plastic containers. She rang up the plastic containers but not the goods within them. One day, Holly did not call in sick or show up for work. In such instances, the company reviews past surveillance tapes to look for suspicious activity by employees. This enabled the store to observe the thefts and to identify the participants.

Total take: $12,000

THE MISSING CONTROLS

Human resource controls. A background check would have revealed Holly's previous criminal record. She would not have been hired as a cashier.

Physical controls. Software can flag high numbers of voided transactions or a high number of sales of low-priced goods. Random comparisons of video records with cash register records can ensure that the goods reported as sold on the register are the same goods that are shown being purchased on the video recording. Finally, employees should be aware that they are being monitored.

Source: Adapted from Wells, *Fraud Casebook* (2007), pp. 251–259.

At the end of "Anatomy of a Fraud" stories, which describe real-world frauds, we discuss the missing control activity that would likely have presented or uncovered the fraud.

SALES RETURNS AND ALLOWANCES

We now look at the "flipside" of purchase returns and allowances, which the seller records as **sales returns and allowances**. These are transactions where the seller either accepts goods back from a purchaser (a return) or grants a reduction in the purchase price (an allowance) so that the buyer will keep the goods. PW Audio Supply's entries to record credit for returned goods involve (1) an increase (debit) in Sales Returns and Allowances (a contra account to Sales Revenue) and a decrease (credit) in Accounts Receivable at the $300 selling price, and (2) an increase (debit) in Inventory (assume a $140 cost) and a decrease (credit) in Cost of Goods Sold, as shown below. (We have assumed that the goods were not defective. If they were defective, PW Audio Supply would make an adjustment to the Inventory account to reflect their decline in value.)

May	8	Sales Returns and Allowances Accounts Receivable (To record credit granted to Sauk Stereo for returned goods)	300	300
	8	Inventory Cost of Goods Sold (To record cost of goods returned)	140	140

A	=	L	+	SE
−300				−300 Rev

Cash Flows
no effect

A	=	L	+	SE
+140				+140 Exp

Cash Flows
no effect

Suppose instead that the goods were not returned, but the seller granted the buyer an allowance by reducing the purchase price. In this case, the seller would debit Sales Returns and Allowances and credit Accounts Receivable for the amount of the allowance.

[1]The "Anatomy of a Fraud" stories in this textbook are adapted from *Fraud Casebook: Lessons from the Bad Side of Business,* edited by Joseph T. Wells (Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 2007). Used by permission. The names of some of the people and organizations in the stories are fictitious, but the facts in the stories are true.

As mentioned previously, Sales Returns and Allowances is a **contra revenue account** to Sales Revenue. The normal balance of Sales Returns and Allowances is a debit. Companies use a contra account, instead of debiting Sales Revenue, to disclose in the accounts and in the income statement the amount of sales returns and allowances. Disclosure of this information is important to management. Excessive returns and allowances suggest problems—inferior merchandise, inefficiencies in filling orders, errors in billing customers, or mistakes in delivery or shipment of goods. Moreover, a decrease (debit) recorded directly to Sales Revenue would obscure the relative importance of sales returns and allowances as a percentage of sales. It also could distort comparisons between total sales in different accounting periods.

Accounting Across the Organization

Should Costco Change Its Return Policy?

In most industries, sales returns are relatively minor. But returns of consumer electronics can really take a bite out of profits. Recently, the marketing executives at Costco Wholesale Corp. faced a difficult decision. Costco has always prided itself on its generous return policy. Most goods have had an unlimited grace period for returns. A new policy will require that certain electronics must be returned within 90 days of their purchase. The reason? The cost of returned products such as high-definition TVs, computers, and iPods cut an estimated 8¢ per share off Costco's earnings per share, which was $2.30.

Source: Kris Hudson, "Costco Tightens Policy on Returning Electronics," *Wall Street Journal* (February 27, 2007), p. B4.

? If a company expects significant returns, what are the implications for revenue recognition? (See page 276.)

SALES DISCOUNTS

As mentioned in our discussion of purchase transactions, the seller may offer the customer a cash discount—called by the seller a **sales discount**—for the prompt payment of the balance due. Like a purchase discount, a sales discount is based on the invoice price less returns and allowances, if any. The seller increases (debits) the Sales Discounts account for discounts that are taken. The entry by PW Audio Supply to record the cash receipt on May 14 from Sauk Stereo within the discount period is:

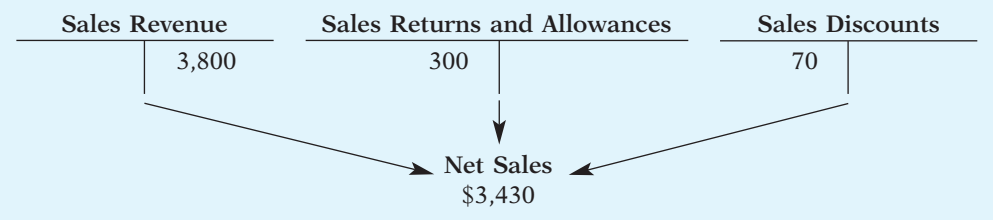
A	=	L	+	SE
+3,430				
				−70 Rev
−3,500				

Cash Flows
+3,430

May 14	Cash	3,430	
	Sales Discounts	70	
	Accounts Receivable		3,500
	(To record collection within 2/10, n/30 discount period from Sauk Stereo)		

Like Sales Returns and Allowances, Sales Discounts is a **contra revenue account** to Sales Revenue. Its normal balance is a debit. Sellers use this account, instead of debiting sales, to disclose the amount of cash discounts taken by customers. If the customer does not take the discount, PW Audio Supply increases (debits) Cash for $3,500 and decreases (credits) Accounts Receivable for the same amount at the date of collection.

The following T accounts summarize the three sales-related transactions and show their combined effect on net sales.



before you go on...

Do it! On September 5, De La Hoya Company buys merchandise on account from Junot Diaz Company. The selling price of the goods is $1,500, and the cost to Diaz Company was $800. On September 8, De La Hoya returns goods with a selling price of $200 and a cost of $105. Record the transactions on the books of Junot Diaz Company.

SALES TRANSACTIONS

Action Plan

- Seller records both the sale and the cost of goods sold at the time of the sale.
- When goods are returned, the seller records the return in a contra account, Sales Returns and Allowances, and reduces Accounts Receivable.
- Any goods returned increase Inventory and reduce Cost of Goods Sold. The merchandise inventory should be recorded at its fair value (scrap value).

Solution

Sept.	5	Accounts Receivable Sales Revenue (To record credit sale)	1,500	1,500
	5	Cost of Goods Sold Inventory (To record cost of goods sold on account)	800	800
Sept.	8	Sales Returns and Allowances Accounts Receivable (To record credit granted for receipt of returned goods)	200	200
	8	Inventory Cost of Goods Sold (To record cost of goods returned)	105	105

Related exercise material: **BE5-2, BE5-3, Do it! 5-2, E5-2, E5-3,** and **E5-4.**

the navigator

Income Statement Presentation

study objective 4
Distinguish between a single-step and a multiple-step income statement.

Companies widely use two forms of the income statement. One is the **single-step income statement**. The statement is so named because only one step, subtracting total expenses from total revenues, is required in determining net income (or net loss).

In a single-step statement, all data are classified into two categories: (1) **revenues**, which include both operating revenues and nonoperating revenues and gains (for example, interest revenue and gain on sale of equipment); and (2) **expenses**, which include cost of goods sold, operating expenses, and nonoperating expenses and losses (for example, interest expense, loss on sale of equipment, or income tax expense). The single-step income statement is the form we have used thus far in the text. Illustration 5-7 (page 240) shows a single-step statement for Wal-Mart.

There are two primary reasons for using the single-step form: (1) A company does not realize any type of profit or income until total revenues exceed total expenses, so it makes sense to divide the statement into these two categories. (2) The form is simple and easy to read.

Illustration 5-7 Single-step income statements

WAL-MART STORES, INC.
Income Statements
(in millions)

	For the years ended January 31	
	2009	**2008**
Revenues		
Net sales	$401,244	$374,307
Other revenues	4,363	4,169
	405,607	378,476
Expenses		
Cost of goods sold	306,158	286,350
Selling, general, and administrative expenses	76,651	70,174
Interest expense	1,900	1,794
Other expense	353	538
Income taxes	7,145	6,889
	392,207	365,745
Net income	$ 13,400	$ 12,731

International Note The IASB and FASB are involved in a joint project to evaluate the format of financial statements. The first phase of that project involves a focus on how to best present revenues and expenses. One longer-term result of the project may well be an income statement format that better reflects how businesses are run.

A second form of the income statement is the **multiple-step income statement**. The multiple-step income statement is often considered more useful because it highlights the components of net income. The Wal-Mart income statement in Illustration 5-8 is an example.

The multiple-step income statement has three important line items: gross profit, income from operations, and net income. They are determined as follows.

1. Subtract cost of goods sold from net sales to determine **gross profit**.
2. Deduct operating expenses from gross profit to determine **income from operations**.
3. Add or subtract the results of activities not related to operations to determine **net income**.

Illustration 5-8 Multiple-step income statements

WAL-MART STORES, INC.
Income Statements
(in millions)

	For the years ended January 31	
	2009	**2008**
Net sales	$401,244	$374,307
Cost of goods sold	306,158	286,350
Gross profit	95,086	87,957
Operating expenses		
Selling, general, and administrative expenses	76,651	70,174
Income from operations	18,435	17,783
Other revenues and gains		
Other revenues	4,363	4,169
Other expenses and losses		
Interest expense	1,900	1,794
Other expense	353	538
Income before income taxes	20,545	19,620
Income tax expense	7,145	6,889
Net income	$ 13,400	$ 12,731

Note that companies report income tax expense in a separate section of the income statement before net income. The net incomes in Illustrations 5-7 and 5-8 are the same. The difference in the two income statements is the amount of detail displayed and the order presented. The following discussion provides additional information about the components of a multiple-step income statement.

SALES REVENUES

The income statement for a merchandising company typically presents gross sales revenues for the period. The company deducts sales returns and allowances and sales discounts (both contra accounts) from sales revenue in the income statement to arrive at **net sales**. Illustration 5-9 shows the sales revenues section of the income statement for PW Audio Supply.

Illustration 5-9 Statement presentation of sales revenues section

PW AUDIO SUPPLY, INC. Income Statement (partial)		
Sales revenues		
Sales revenue		$ 480,000
Less: Sales returns and allowances	$12,000	
Sales discounts	8,000	20,000
Net sales		**$460,000**

GROSS PROFIT

Companies deduct **cost of goods sold** from sales revenue to determine **gross profit**. As shown in Illustration 5-8, for example, Wal-Mart had a gross profit of $95.1 billion in fiscal year 2009. Sales revenue used for this computation is **net sales**, which takes into account sales returns and allowances and sales discounts.

Alternative Terminology Gross profit is sometimes referred to as *gross margin.*

On the basis of the PW Audio Supply sales data presented in Illustration 5-9 (net sales of $460,000) and the cost of goods sold (assume a balance of $316,000), PW Audio Supply's gross profit is $144,000, computed as follows.

Net sales	$ 460,000
Cost of goods sold	316,000
Gross profit	**$144,000**

It is important to understand what gross profit is—and what it is not. Gross profit represents the **merchandising profit** of a company. Because operating expenses have not been deducted, it is *not* a measure of the overall profit of a company. Nevertheless, management and other interested parties closely watch the amount and trend of gross profit. Comparisons of current gross profit with past amounts and rates and with those in the industry indicate the effectiveness of a company's purchasing and pricing policies.

OPERATING EXPENSES

Operating expenses are the next component in measuring net income for a merchandising company. At Wal-Mart, for example, operating expenses were $76.7 billion in fiscal year 2009.

At PW Audio Supply, operating expenses were $114,000. The firm determines its income from operations by subtracting operating expenses from gross profit. Thus, income from operations is $30,000, as shown below.

Gross profit	$144,000
Operating expenses	**114,000**
Income from operations	$ 30,000

NONOPERATING ACTIVITIES

Nonoperating activities consist of various revenues and expenses and gains and losses that are unrelated to the company's main line of operations. When nonoperating items are included, the label "**Income from operations**" (or "Operating income") precedes them. This label clearly identifies the results of the company's normal operations, an amount determined by subtracting cost of goods sold and operating expenses from net sales. The results of nonoperating activities are shown in the categories "**Other revenues and gains**" and "**Other expenses and losses**." Illustration 5-10 lists examples of each.

Nonoperating income is sometimes very significant. For example, in a recent quarter Sears Holdings earned more than half of its net income from investments in derivative securities.

Illustration 5-10
Examples of nonoperating activities

Other Revenues and Gains
Interest revenue from notes receivable and marketable securities.
Dividend revenue from investments in capital stock.
Rent revenue from subleasing a portion of the store.
Gain from the sale of property, plant, and equipment.
Other Expenses and Losses
Interest expense on notes and loans payable.
Casualty losses from recurring causes, such as vandalism and accidents.
Loss from the sale or abandonment of property, plant, and equipment.
Loss from strikes by employees and suppliers.

Ethics Note Companies manage earnings in various ways. ConAgra Foods recorded a nonrecurring gain for $186 million from the sale of Pilgrim's Pride stock to help meet an earnings projection for the quarter.

The distinction between operating and nonoperating activities is crucial to external users of financial data. These users view operating income as sustainable and many nonoperating activities as nonrecurring. When forecasting next year's income, analysts put the most weight on this year's operating income, and less weight on this year's nonoperating activities.

Ethics Insight

Disclosing More Details

After Enron, increased investor criticism and regulator scrutiny forced many companies to improve the clarity of their financial disclosures. For example, IBM announced that it would begin providing more detail regarding its "Other gains and losses." It had previously included these items in its selling, general, and administrative expenses, with little disclosure.

Disclosing other gains and losses in a separate line item on the income statement will not have any effect on bottom-line income. However, analysts complained that burying these details in the selling, general, and administrative expense line reduced their ability to fully understand how well IBM was performing. For example, previously if IBM sold off one of its buildings at a gain, it would include this gain in the selling, general, and administrative expense line item, thus reducing that expense. This made it appear that the company had done a better job of controlling operating expenses than it actually had.

Other companies that also recently announced changes to increase the informativeness of their income statements included PepsiCo and General Electric.

? Why have investors and analysts demanded more accuracy in isolating "Other gains and losses" from operating items? (See page 276.)

The nonoperating activities are reported in the income statement immediately after the operating activities. Included among these activities in Illustration 5-8

(page 240) for Wal-Mart is interest expense of $1.9 billion for fiscal year 2009. The amount remaining, after adding the operating and nonoperating sections together, is Wal-Mart's net income of $13.4 billion.

In Illustration 5-11 we have provided the multiple-step income statement of a hypothetical company. This statement provides more detail than that of Wal-Mart and thus is useful as a guide for homework. **(For WileyPLUS homework, individual revenues and expenses are listed in order of magnitude.)** *For homework problems, use the multiple-step form of the income statement unless the requirements state otherwise.*

Illustration 5-11 Multiple-step income statement

PW AUDIO SUPPLY, INC.
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales revenues			
Sales revenue		$480,000	Calculation of gross profit
Less: Sales returns and allowances	$12,000		
Sales discounts	8,000	20,000	
Net sales		460,000	
Cost of goods sold		316,000	
Gross profit		144,000	
Operating expenses			Calculation of income from operations
Salaries and wages expense	64,000		
Utilities expense	17,000		
Advertising expense	16,000		
Depreciation expense	8,000		
Freight-out	7,000		
Insurance expense	2,000		
Total operating expenses		114,000	
Income from operations		30,000	
Other revenues and gains			Results of activities not related to operations
Interest revenue	3,000		
Gain on disposal of plant assets	600		
	3,600		
Other expenses and losses			
Interest expense	1,800		
Casualty loss from vandalism	200		
	2,000		
		1,600	
Income before income taxes		31,600	
Income tax expense		10,100	
Net income		$ 21,500	

before you go on...

Do it! The following information is available for Art Center Corp. for the year ended December 31, 2012.

MULTIPLE-STEP INCOME STATEMENT

Other revenues and gains	$ 8,000	Net sales	$442,000
Other expenses and losses	3,000	Operating expenses	187,000
Cost of goods sold	147,000		

Prepare a multiple-step income statement for Art Center Corp. The company has a tax rate of 25%.

Action Plan

- Subtract cost of goods sold from net sales to determine gross profit.
- Subtract operating expenses from gross profit to determine income from operations.
- Multiply the tax rate by income before tax to determine tax expense.

the navigator

Solution

ART CENTER CORP.
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Net sales		$442,000
Cost of goods sold		147,000
Gross profit		295,000
Operating expenses		187,000
Income from operations		108,000
Other revenues and gains	8,000	
Other expenses and losses	3,000	5,000
Income before income taxes		113,000
Income tax expense		28,250
Net income		$ 84,750

Related exercise material: **BE5-5, BE5-6, Do it! 5-3,** and **E5-5.**

DETERMINING COST OF GOODS SOLD UNDER A PERIODIC SYSTEM

study objective 5

Determine cost of goods sold under a periodic system.

Determining cost of goods sold is different when a periodic inventory system is used rather than a perpetual system. As you have seen, a company using a **perpetual system** makes an entry to record cost of goods sold and to reduce inventory *each time a sale is made*. A company using a **periodic system** does not determine cost of goods sold *until the end of the period*. At the end of the period the company performs a count to determine the ending balance of inventory. It then **calculates cost of goods sold by subtracting ending inventory from the goods available for sale.** Goods available for sale is the sum of beginning inventory plus purchases, as shown in Illustration 5-12.

Illustration 5-12 Basic formula for cost of goods sold using the periodic system

	Beginning Inventory
+	Cost of Goods Purchased
	Cost of Goods Available for Sale
−	Ending Inventory
	Cost of Goods Sold

Another difference between the two approaches is that the perpetual system directly adjusts the Inventory account for any transaction that affects inventory (such as freight costs, returns, and discounts). The periodic system does not do this. Instead, it creates different accounts for purchases, freight costs, returns, and discounts. These various accounts are shown in Illustration 5-13 (page 245), which presents the calculation of cost of goods sold for PW Audio Supply using the periodic approach. Note that the basic elements from Illustration 5-12 are highlighted in Illustration 5-13. You will learn more in Chapter 6 about how to determine cost of goods sold using the periodic system.

The use of the periodic inventory system does not affect the form of presentation in the balance sheet. As under the perpetual system, a company reports inventory in the current assets section.

Appendix 5A provides further detail on the use of the periodic system.

PW AUDIO SUPPLY, INC.
Cost of Goods Sold
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Cost of goods sold			
Inventory, January 1			**$ 36,000**
Purchases		$325,000	
Less: Purchase returns and allowances	$10,400		
Purchase discounts	6,800	17,200	
Net purchases		307,800	
Add: Freight-in		12,200	
Cost of goods purchased			**320,000**
Cost of goods available for sale			356,000
Inventory, December 31			**40,000**
Cost of goods sold			**$316,000**

Illustration 5-13 Cost of goods sold for a merchandiser using a periodic inventory system

Helpful Hint The far right column identifies the primary items that make up cost of goods sold of $316,000. The middle column explains cost of goods purchased of $320,000. The left column reports contra purchase items of $17,200.

before you go on...

Do it! Aerosmith Company's accounting records show the following at the year-end December 31, 2012.

COST OF GOODS SOLD–PERIODIC SYSTEM

Purchase Discounts	$ 3,400
Freight-in	6,100
Purchases	162,500
Beginning Inventory	18,000
Ending Inventory	20,000
Purchase Returns	5,200

Assuming that Aerosmith Company uses the periodic system, compute (a) cost of goods purchased and (b) cost of goods sold.

Action Plan

- To determine cost of goods purchased, adjust purchases for returns, discounts, and freight-in.
- To determine cost of goods sold, add cost of goods purchased to beginning inventory, and subtract ending inventory.

Solution

(a) Cost of goods purchased = $160,000:
Purchases − Purchase returns − Purchase discounts + Freight-in
$162,500 − $5,200 − $3,400 + $6,100 = $160,000

(b) Cost of goods sold = $158,000:
Beginning inventory + Cost of goods purchased − Ending inventory
$18,000 + $160,000 − $20,000 = $158,000

Related exercise material: **BE5-7, BE5-8, BE5-9, Do it! 5-4, E5-10,** and **E5-11.**

the navigator

Evaluating Profitability

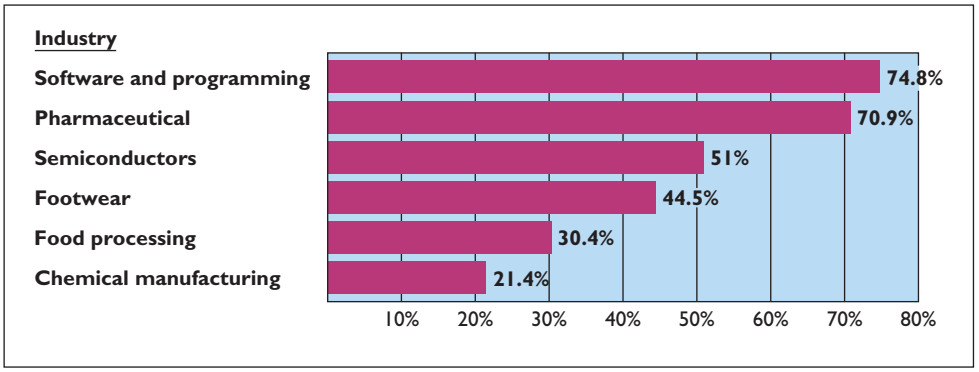
study objective 6
Explain the factors affecting profitability.

GROSS PROFIT RATE

A company's gross profit may be expressed as a **percentage** by dividing the amount of gross profit by net sales. This is referred to as the **gross profit rate**. For PW Audio Supply, the gross profit rate is 31.3% ($144,000 ÷ $460,000).

Analysts generally consider the gross profit *rate* to be more informative than the gross profit *amount* because it expresses a more meaningful (qualitative) relationship between gross profit and net sales. For example, a gross profit amount of $1,000,000 may sound impressive. But if it was the result of sales of $100,000,000, the company's gross profit rate was only 1%. A 1% gross profit rate is acceptable in very few industries. Illustration 5-14 (page 246) demonstrates that gross profit rates differ greatly across industries.

Illustration 5-14 Gross profit rate by industry



A decline in a company's gross profit rate might have several causes. The company may have begun to sell products with a lower "markup"—for example, budget blue jeans versus designer blue jeans. Increased competition may have resulted in a lower selling price. Or, the company may be forced to pay higher prices to its suppliers without being able to pass these costs on to its customers. The gross profit rates for Wal-Mart and Target, and the industry average, are presented in Illustration 5-15.

Illustration 5-15 Gross profit rate

$$\text{Gross Profit Rate} = \frac{\text{Gross Profit}}{\text{Net Sales}}$$

Wal-Mart ($ in millions)		Target	Industry Average
2009	2008	2009	2009
$\frac{\$95{,}086}{\$401{,}244} = 23.7\%$	23.5%	30.0%	25.1%

Wal-Mart's gross profit rate increased from 23.5% in 2008 to 23.7% in 2009. In its Management Discussion and Analysis (MD&A), Wal-Mart explained, "The gross profit margin increase in fiscal 2009 compared to fiscal 2008 was primarily due to lower inventory shrinkage and less markdown activity as a result of more effective merchandising in the Wal-Mart U.S. segment. Additionally, the increase in gross profit margin in fiscal 2008 included a $97 million refund of excise taxes previously paid on past merchandise sales of prepaid phone cards."

At first glance, it might be surprising that Wal-Mart has a lower gross profit rate than Target and the industry average. It is likely, however, that this can be explained by the fact that grocery products are becoming an increasingly large component of Wal-Mart's sales. (In 2010, Wal-Mart announced that groceries now represent more than 50% of its sales.) In fact, in its MD&A, Wal-Mart once stated, "Because food items carry a lower gross margin than our other merchandise, increasing food sales tends to have an unfavorable impact on our total gross margin." Also, Wal-Mart has substantial warehouse-style sales in its Sam's Club stores, which are a low-margin, high-volume operation. In later chapters, we will provide further discussion of the trade-off between sales volume and gross profit.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the price of goods keeping pace with changes in the cost of inventory?	Gross profit and net sales	Gross profit rate $= \frac{\text{Gross profit}}{\text{Net sales}}$	Higher ratio suggests the average margin between selling price and inventory cost is increasing. Too high a margin may result in lost sales.

PROFIT MARGIN RATIO

The **profit margin ratio** measures the percentage of each dollar of sales that results in net income. We compute this ratio by dividing net income by net sales (revenue) for the period.

How do the gross profit rate and profit margin ratio differ? The gross profit rate measures the margin by which selling price exceeds cost of goods sold. **The profit margin ratio measures the extent by which selling price covers all expenses** (including cost of goods sold). A company can improve its profit margin ratio by either increasing its gross profit rate and/or by controlling its operating expenses and other costs. For example, at one time Radio Shack reported increased profit margins which it accomplished by closing stores and slashing costs. While its total sales have been declining, its profitability as measured by its profit margin has increased.

Profit margins vary across industries. Businesses with high turnover, such as grocery stores (Safeway and Kroger) and discount stores (Target and Wal-Mart), generally experience low profit margins. Low-turnover businesses, such as high-end jewelry stores (Tiffany and Co.) or major drug manufacturers (Merck), have high profit margins. Illustration 5-16 shows profit margin ratios from a variety of industries.

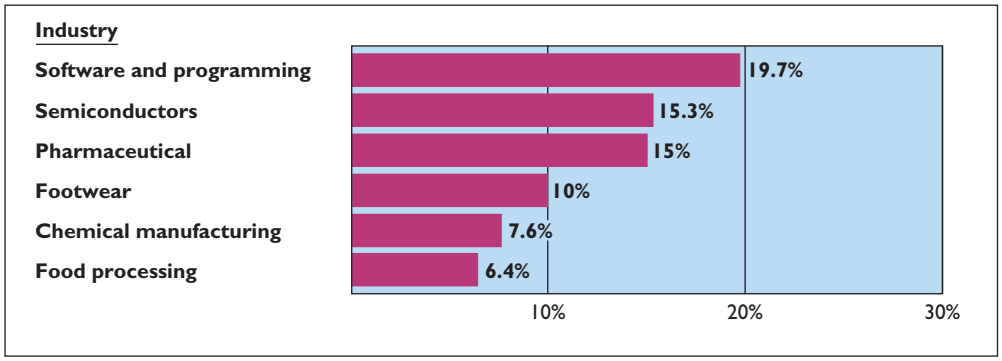


Illustration 5-16 Profit margin ratio by industry

Profit margins for Wal-Mart and Target and the industry average are presented in Illustration 5-17.

Profit Margin Ratio $= \frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{Net Sales}}$

Wal-Mart ($ in millions)		Target	Industry Average
2009	2008	2009	2009
$\frac{\$13{,}400}{\$401{,}244} = 3.3\%$	3.4%	3.4%	3.5%

Illustration 5-17 Profit margin ratio

Wal-Mart's profit margin declined from 3.4% to 3.3% between 2008 and 2009. This means that the company generated 3.3¢ of profit on each dollar of sales. This occurred even though the gross profit rate increased. The cause of the decline in the profit margin ratio was increased operating expenses. Wal-Mart's MD&A discussion states: "In fiscal 2009, operating expenses increased primarily due to higher utility costs, a pre-tax charge of approximately $352 million resulting from the settlement of 63 wage and hour class action lawsuits, higher health benefit costs and increased corporate expenses compared to fiscal 2008. Corporate expenses have increased primarily due to our long-term transformation projects to enhance our information systems for merchandising, finance and human resources."

How does Wal-Mart compare to its competitors? Its profit margin ratio was lower than Target's in 2009 and was less than the industry average. Thus, its profit margin ratio does not suggest exceptional profitability. However, we must again keep in mind that an increasing percentage of Wal-Mart's sales is from low-margin groceries.

Accounting Across the Organization

Strategic Errors Can Be Costly

In its death spiral toward bankruptcy, Kmart appeared to make two very costly strategic errors. First, in an effort to attract customers, it decided to reduce selling prices on over 30,000 items. The problem was that this reduced its gross profit rate—and didn't even have the intended effect of increasing sales because Wal-Mart quickly matched these price cuts. Because Wal-Mart operated much more efficiently than Kmart, Wal-Mart could afford to absorb these price cuts and still operate at a profit. Kmart could not. Its second error was to try to reduce operating costs by cutting its advertising expenditures. This resulted in a reduction in customers—and sales revenue.

? Explain how Wal-Mart's profitability gave it a strategic advantage over Kmart. (See page 276.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the company maintaining an adequate margin between sales and expenses?	Net income and net sales	Profit margin ratio $= \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Net sales}}$	Higher value suggests favorable return on each dollar of sales.

KEEPING AN EYE ON CASH

study objective 7

Identify a quality of earnings indicator.

In Chapter 4, you learned that **earnings have high quality if they provide a full and transparent depiction of how a company performed**. In order to quickly assess earnings quality, analysts sometimes employ the **quality of earnings ratio**. It is calculated as net cash provided by operating activities divided by net income.

$$\text{Quality of Earnings Ratio} = \frac{\text{Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities}}{\text{Net Income}}$$

In general, a measure significantly less than 1 suggests that a company may be using more aggressive accounting techniques in order to accelerate income recognition (record income in earlier periods). A measure significantly greater than 1 suggests that a company is using conservative accounting techniques, which cause it to delay the recognition of income.

Measures that are significantly less than 1 do not provide definitive evidence of low-quality earnings. Low measures do, however, indicate that analysts should investigate the company's earnings quality by evaluating the causes of the difference between net income and net cash provided by operating activities. Examples of factors that would cause differences are presented in Chapter 4 (pp. 191–192).

Here are recent quality of earnings ratios for a number of well-known companies, all of which have measures in excess of 1.

Company Name ($ in millions)	Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities	÷	Net Income	=	Quality of Earnings Ratio
DuPont	$4,741		$1,769		2.7
Intel	$11,170		$4,369		2.6
Nike	$1,736		$1,487		1.2
Microsoft	$19,037		$14,569		1.3
Wal-Mart	$26,249		$14,335		1.8

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

After having once been as dominant as Wal-Mart, in recent years Sears has struggled to survive. It has enacted many changes trying to turn itself around. In the 1990s, it shocked and disappointed many loyal customers by closing its catalog business. It also closed 113 stores and eliminated 50,000 jobs. None of these changes was enough to make Sears truly competitive, so in March 2005 Sears merged with Kmart to form the third largest U.S. retailer. Here is recent data for Sears Holdings, Inc.

	Year ended	
($ in millions)	01/30/10	01/31/09
Net income	$ 235	$ 53
Sales revenue	44,043	46,770
Cost of goods sold	31,824	34,118

Instructions

Using the basic facts in the table, evaluate the following components of Sears's profitability for the years ended January 30, 2010, and January 31, 2009.

Profit margin ratio
Gross profit rate

How do Sears's profit margin ratio and gross profit rate compare to those of Wal-Mart and Target for 2009?

Solution

	Year ended	
($ in millions)	01/30/10	01/31/09
Profit margin ratio	$\frac{\$235}{\$44,043} = 0.5\%$	$\frac{\$53}{\$46,770} = 0.1\%$
Gross profit rate	$\frac{\$12,219^*}{\$44,043} = 27.7\%$	$\frac{\$12,652^{**}}{\$46,770} = 27.1\%$

*$44,043 − $31,824 **$46,770 − $34,118

Sears's profit margin ratio (income per dollar of sales) increased from 0.1% to 0.5%. This is well below both Wal-Mart's (3.3%) and Target's (3.4%). Thus, Sears is not as effective at turning its sales into net income as these two competitors.

Sears's gross profit rate improved from 27.1% to 27.7%. This suggests that its ability to maintain its mark-up above its cost of goods sold improved during this period. Sears's gross profit rate of 27.7% is lower than Target's (30.0%) but higher than Wal-Mart's (23.7%). As discussed in the chapter, Wal-Mart's gross profit is depressed by the fact that it sells many grocery products, which are very low-margin. Target is superior to Sears both in its ability to maintain its mark-up above its costs of goods sold (its gross profit rate) and in its ability to control operating costs (its profit margin ratio).

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 **Identify the differences between a service company and a merchandising company.** Because of the presence of inventory, a merchandising company has sales revenue, cost of goods sold, and gross profit. To account for inventory, a merchandising company must choose between a perpetual inventory system and a periodic inventory system.

2 **Explain the recording of purchases under a perpetual inventory system.** The Inventory account is debited for all purchases of merchandise and for freight costs, and it is credited for purchase discounts and purchase returns and allowances.

3 **Explain the recording of sales revenues under a perpetual inventory system.** When inventory is sold, Accounts Receivable (or Cash) is debited and Sales Revenue is credited for the selling price of the merchandise. At the same time, Cost of Goods Sold is debited and Inventory is credited for the cost of inventory items sold. Subsequent entries are required for (a) sales returns and allowances and (b) sales discounts.

4 **Distinguish between a single-step and a multiple-step income statement.** In a single-step income statement, companies classify all data under two categories, revenues or expenses, and net income is determined in one step. A multiple-step income statement shows numerous steps in determining net income, including results of nonoperating activities.

5 **Determine cost of goods sold under a periodic system.** The periodic system uses multiple accounts to keep track of transactions that affect inventory. To determine cost of goods sold, first calculate cost of goods purchased by adjusting purchases for returns, allowances, discounts, and freight-in. Then calculate cost of goods sold by adding cost of goods purchased to beginning inventory and subtracting ending inventory.

6 **Explain the factors affecting profitability.** Profitability is affected by gross profit, as measured by the gross profit rate, and by management's ability to control costs, as measured by the profit margin ratio.

7 **Identify a quality of earnings indicator.** Earnings have high quality if they provide a full and transparent depiction of how a company performed. An indicator of the quality of earnings is the quality of earnings ratio, which is net cash provided by operating activities divided by net income. Measures above 1 suggest the company is employing conservative accounting practices. Measures significantly below 1 might suggest the company is using aggressive accounting to accelerate the recognition of income.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the price of goods keeping pace with changes in the cost of inventory?	Gross profit and net sales	Gross profit rate $= \frac{\text{Gross profit}}{\text{Net sales}}$	Higher ratio suggests the average margin between selling price and inventory cost is increasing. Too high a margin may result in lost sales.
Is the company maintaining an adequate margin between sales and expenses?	Net income and net sales	Profit margin ratio $= \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Net sales}}$	Higher value suggests favorable return on each dollar of sales.

appendix 5A

Periodic Inventory System

study objective 8

Explain the recording of purchases and sales of inventory under a periodic inventory system.

As described in this chapter, companies may use one of two basic systems of accounting for inventories: (1) the perpetual inventory system or (2) the periodic inventory system. In the chapter, we focused on the characteristics of the perpetual inventory system. In this appendix, we discuss and illustrate the **periodic inventory system**. One key difference between the two systems is the point at which the company computes cost of goods sold. For a visual reminder of this difference, you may want to refer back to Illustration 5-4 on page 230.

RECORDING MERCHANDISE TRANSACTIONS

In a **periodic inventory system**, companies record revenues from the sale of merchandise when sales are made, just as in a perpetual system. Unlike the perpetual system, however, companies **do not attempt on the date of sale to record the cost of the merchandise sold**. Instead, they take a physical inventory count at the **end of the period** to determine (1) the cost of the merchandise then on hand and (2) the cost of the goods sold during the period. And, **under a periodic system**, **companies record purchases of merchandise in the Purchases account rather than the Inventory account**. Also, in a periodic system, purchase returns and allowances, purchase discounts, and freight costs on purchases are recorded in separate accounts.

To illustrate the recording of merchandise transactions under a periodic inventory system, we will use purchase/sale transactions between PW Audio Supply, Inc. and Sauk Stereo, as illustrated for the perpetual inventory system in this chapter.

RECORDING PURCHASES OF MERCHANDISE

On the basis of the sales invoice (Illustration 5-5, shown on page 232) and receipt of the merchandise ordered from PW Audio Supply, Sauk Stereo records the $3,800 purchase as follows.

May	4	Purchases	3,800	
		Accounts Payable		3,800
		(To record goods purchased on account from PW Audio Supply)		

Purchases is a temporary account whose normal balance is a debit.

FREIGHT COSTS

When the purchaser directly incurs the freight costs, it debits the account Freight-in (or Transportation-in). For example, if Sauk Stereo pays Haul-It Freight Company $150 for freight charges on its purchase from PW Audio Supply on May 6, the entry on Sauk Stereo's books is:

May	6	Freight-in (Transportation-in)	150	
		Cash		150
		(To record payment of freight on goods purchased)		

Like Purchases, Freight-in is a temporary account whose normal balance is a debit. **Freight-in is part of cost of goods purchased**. The reason is that cost

of goods purchased should include any freight charges necessary to bring the goods to the purchaser. Freight costs are not subject to a purchase discount. Purchase discounts apply on the invoice cost of the merchandise.

Purchase Returns and Allowances

Because $300 of merchandise received from PW Audio Supply is inoperable, Sauk Stereo returns the goods and prepares the following entry to recognize the return.

May 8	Accounts Payable	300	
	Purchase Returns and Allowances		300
	(To record return of goods purchased from PW Audio Supply)		

Purchase Returns and Allowances is a temporary account whose normal balance is a credit.

Purchase Discounts

On May 14, Sauk Stereo pays the balance due on account to PW Audio Supply, taking the 2% cash discount allowed by PW Audio Supply for payment within 10 days. Sauk Stereo records the payment and discount as follows.

May 14	Accounts Payable ($3,800 − $300)	3,500	
	Purchase Discounts ($3,500 ×.02)		70
	Cash		3,430
	(To record payment within the discount period)		

Purchase Discounts is a temporary account whose normal balance is a credit.

RECORDING SALES OF MERCHANDISE

The seller, PW Audio Supply, records the sale of $3,800 of merchandise to Sauk Stereo on May 4 (sales invoice No. 731, Illustration 5-5, page 232) as follows.

May 4	Accounts Receivable	3,800	
	Sales Revenue		3,800
	(To record credit sales to Sauk Stereo per invoice #731)		

Sales Returns and Allowances

To record the returned goods received from Sauk Stereo on May 8, PW Audio Supply records the $300 sales return as follows.

May 8	Sales Returns and Allowances	300	
	Accounts Receivable		300
	(To record credit granted to Sauk Stereo for returned goods)		

Sales Discounts

On May 14, PW Audio Supply receives payment of $3,430 on account from Sauk Stereo. PW Audio Supply honors the 2% cash discount and records the payment of Sauk Stereo's account receivable in full as follows.

May 14	Cash	3,430	
	Sales Discounts ($3,500 ×.02)	70	
	Accounts Receivable ($3,800 − $300)		3,500
	(To record collection within 2/10, n/30 discount period from Sauk Stereo)		

COMPARISON OF ENTRIES–PERPETUAL vs. PERIODIC

ENTRIES ON SAUK STEREO'S BOOKS

Transaction		Perpetual Inventory System			Periodic Inventory System		
May 4	Purchase of merchandise on credit.	Inventory	3,800		Purchases	3,800	
		Accounts Payable		3,800	Accounts Payable		3,800
May 6	Freight costs on purchases.	Inventory	150		Freight-in	150	
		Cash		150	Cash		150
May 8	Purchase returns and allowances.	Accounts Payable	300		Accounts Payable	300	
		Inventory		300	Purchase Returns and Allowances		300
May 14	Payment on account with a discount.	Accounts Payable	3,500		Accounts Payable	3,500	
		Cash		3,430	Cash		3,430
		Inventory		70	Purchase Discounts		70

ENTRIES ON PW AUDIO SUPPLY'S BOOKS

Transaction		Perpetual Inventory System			Periodic Inventory System		
May 4	Sale of merchandise on credit.	Accounts Receivable	3,800		Accounts Receivable	3,800	
		Sales Revenue		3,800	Sales Revenue		3,800
		Cost of Goods Sold	2,400		No entry for cost of goods sold		
		Inventory		2,400			
May 8	Return of merchandise sold.	Sales Returns and Allowances	300		Sales Returns and Allowances	300	
		Accounts Receivable		300	Accounts Receivable		300
		Inventory	140		No entry		
		Cost of Goods Sold		140			
May 14	Cash received on account with a discount.	Cash	3,430		Cash	3,430	
		Sales Discounts	70		Sales Discounts	70	
		Accounts Receivable		3,500	Accounts Receivable		3,500

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 5A

8 Explain the recording of purchases and sales of inventory under a periodic inventory system. To record purchases, entries are required for (a) cash and credit purchases, (b) purchase returns and allowances, (c) purchase discounts, and (d) freight costs. To record sales, entries are required for (a) cash and credit sales, (b) sales returns and allowances, and (c) sales discounts.

Glossary

Contra revenue account *(p. 238)* An account that is offset against a revenue account on the income statement.

Cost of goods sold *(p. 228)* The total cost of merchandise sold during the period.

Gross profit *(p. 241)* The excess of net sales over the cost of goods sold.

Gross profit rate *(p. 245)* Gross profit expressed as a percentage by dividing the amount of gross profit by net sales.

Net sales *(p. 241)* Sales less sales returns and allowances and sales discounts.

Periodic inventory system *(p. 230)* An inventory system in which a company does not maintain detailed records of goods on hand and determines the cost of goods sold only at the end of an accounting period.

Perpetual inventory system *(p. 230)* A detailed inventory system in which a company maintains the cost of each inventory item and the records continuously show the inventory that should be on hand.

Profit margin ratio *(p. 247)* Measures the percentage of each dollar of sales that results in net income, computed by dividing net income by net sales.

Purchase allowance *(p. 234)* A deduction made to the selling price of merchandise, granted by the seller so that the buyer will keep the merchandise.

Purchase discount *(p. 234)* A cash discount claimed by a buyer for prompt payment of a balance due.

Purchase invoice *(p. 231)* A document that supports each purchase.

Purchase return *(p. 234)* A return of goods from the buyer to the seller for cash or credit.

Quality of earnings ratio *(p. 248)* A measure used to indicate the extent to which a company's earnings provide a full and transparent depiction of its performance; computed as net cash provided by operating activities divided by net income.

Sales discount *(p. 238)* A reduction given by a seller for prompt payment of a credit sale.

Sales invoice *(p. 236)* A document that provides support for each sale.

Sales returns and allowances *(p. 237)* Transactions in which the seller either accepts goods back from the purchaser (a return) or grants a reduction in the purchase price (an allowance) so that the buyer will keep the goods.

Sales revenue *(p. 228)* Primary source of revenue in a merchandising company.

Comprehensive Do it!

The adjusted trial balance for the year ended December 31, 2012, for Dykstra Company is shown below.

DYKSTRA COMPANY
Adjusted Trial Balance
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

	Dr.	Cr.
Cash	$ 14,500	
Accounts Receivable	11,100	
Inventory	29,000	
Prepaid Insurance	2,500	
Equipment	95,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		$ 18,000
Notes Payable		25,000
Accounts Payable		10,600
Common Stock		70,000
Retained Earnings		11,000
Dividends	12,000	
Sales Revenue		536,800
Sales Returns and Allowances	6,700	
Sales Discounts	5,000	
Cost of Goods Sold	363,400	
Freight-out	7,600	
Advertising Expense	12,000	
Salaries and Wages Expense	56,000	
Utilities Expense	18,000	
Rent Expense	24,000	
Depreciation Expense	9,000	
Insurance Expense	4,500	
Interest Expense	3,600	
Interest Revenue		2,500
	$673,900	$673,900

Instructions

Prepare a multiple-step income statement for Dykstra Company. Assume a tax rate of 30 percent.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

DYKSTRA COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales revenues		
Sales revenue		$536,800
Less: Sales returns and allowances	$ 6,700	
Sales discounts	5,000	11,700
Net sales		525,100
Cost of goods sold		363,400
Gross profit		161,700
Operating expenses		
Salaries and wages expense	56,000	
Rent expense	24,000	
Utilities expense	18,000	
Advertising expense	12,000	
Depreciation expense	9,000	
Freight-out	7,600	
Insurance expense	4,500	
Total operating expenses		131,100
Income from operations		30,600
Other revenues and gains		
Interest revenue	2,500	
Other expenses and losses		
Interest expense	3,600	1,100
Income before income taxes		29,500
Income tax expense		8,850
Net income		$ 20,650

Action Plan

- In preparing the income statement, remember that the key components are net sales, cost of goods sold, gross profit, total operating expenses, and net income (loss). These components are reported in the right-hand column of the income statement.
- Present nonoperating items after income from operations.

the navigator

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Note: All Questions, Exercises, and Problems marked with an asterisk relate to material in the appendix to the chapter.

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 276.

(SO 1) **1.** Which of the following statements about a periodic inventory system is true?
(a) Companies determine cost of goods sold only at the end of the accounting period.
(b) Companies continuously maintain detailed records of the cost of each inventory purchase and sale.
(c) The periodic system provides better control over inventories than a perpetual system.
(d) The increased use of computerized systems has increased the use of the periodic system.

2. Which of the following items does *not* result in an adjustment in the Inventory account under a perpetual system? (SO 2)
(a) A purchase of merchandise.
(b) A return of merchandise inventory to the supplier.
(c) Payment of freight costs for goods shipped to a customer.
(d) Payment of freight costs for goods received from a supplier.

3. Which sales accounts normally have a debit balance? (SO 3)
(a) Sales discounts.
(b) Sales returns and allowances.

(c) Both (a) and (b).
(d) Neither (a) nor (b).

(SO 3) **4.** A company makes a credit sale of $750 on June 13, terms 2/10, n/30, on which it grants a return of $50 on June 16. What amount is received as payment in full on June 23?
(a) $700. (c) $685.
(b) $686. (d) $650.

(SO 3) **5.** To record the sale of goods for cash in a perpetual inventory system:
(a) only one journal entry is necessary to record cost of goods sold and reduction of inventory.
(b) only one journal entry is necessary to record the receipt of cash and the sales revenue.
(c) two journal entries are necessary: one to record the receipt of cash and sales revenue, and one to record the cost of goods sold and reduction of inventory.
(d) two journal entries are necessary: one to record the receipt of cash and reduction of inventory, and one to record the cost of goods sold and sales revenue.

(SO 4) **6.** Gross profit will result if:
(a) operating expenses are less than net income.
(b) sales revenues are greater than operating expenses.
(c) sales revenues are greater than cost of goods sold.
(d) operating expenses are greater than cost of goods sold.

(SO 4) **7.** If sales revenues are $400,000, cost of goods sold is $310,000, and operating expenses are $60,000, what is the gross profit?
(a) $30,000. (c) $340,000.
(b) $90,000. (d) $400,000.

(SO 4) **8.** The multiple-step income statement for a merchandising company shows each of these features *except*:
(a) gross profit.
(b) cost of goods sold.
(c) a sales revenue section.
(d) All of these are present.

(SO 5) **9.** If beginning inventory is $60,000, cost of goods purchased is $380,000, and ending inventory is $50,000, what is cost of goods sold under a periodic system?
(a) $390,000. (c) $330,000.
(b) $370,000. (d) $420,000.

(SO 5) **10.** Bufford Corporation had reported the following amounts at December 31, 2012: Sales revenue $184,000; ending inventory $11,600; beginning inventory $17,200; purchases $60,400; purchase discounts $3,000; purchase returns and allowances $1,100; freight-in $600; freight-out $900. Calculate the cost of goods available for sale.
(a) $69,400. (c) $56,900.
(b) $74,100. (d) $197,700.

11. Which of the following would affect the gross profit rate? (Assume sales remains constant.) (SO 6)
(a) An increase in advertising expense.
(b) A decrease in depreciation expense.
(c) An increase in cost of goods sold.
(d) A decrease in insurance expense.

12. The gross profit *rate* is equal to: (SO 6)
(a) net income divided by sales.
(b) cost of goods sold divided by sales.
(c) net sales minus cost of goods sold, divided by net sales.
(d) sales minus cost of goods sold, divided by cost of goods sold.

13. During the year ended December 31, 2012, Bjornstad Corporation had the following results: Sales revenue $267,000; cost of good sold $107,000; net income $92,400; operating expenses $55,400; net cash provided by operating activities $108,950. What was the company's profit margin ratio? (SO 6)
(a) 40%. (c) 20.5%.
(b) 60%. (d) 34.6%.

14. A quality of earnings ratio: (SO 7)
(a) is computed as net income divided by net cash provided by operating activities.
(b) that is less than 1 indicates that a company might be using aggressive accounting tactics.
(c) that is greater than 1 indicates that a company might be using aggressive accounting tactics.
(d) is computed as net cash provided by operating activities divided by total assets.

***15.** When goods are purchased for resale by a company using a periodic inventory system: (SO 8)
(a) purchases on account are debited to Inventory.
(b) purchases on account are debited to Purchases.
(c) purchase returns are debited to Purchase Returns and Allowances.
(d) freight costs are debited to Purchases.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. (a) "The steps in the accounting cycle for a merchandising company differ from the steps in the accounting cycle for a service company." Do you agree or disagree?
(b) Is the measurement of net income in a merchandising company conceptually the same as in a service company? Explain.

2. How do the components of revenues and expenses differ between a merchandising company and a service company?

3. Rachel Harpole, CEO of Bargain Den Stores, is considering a recommendation made by both the company's purchasing manager and director of

finance that the company should invest in a sophisticated new perpetual inventory system to replace its periodic system. Explain the primary difference between the two systems, and discuss the potential benefits of a perpetual inventory system.

4. (a) Explain the income measurement process in a merchandising company.
(b) How does income measurement differ between a merchandising company and a service company?

5. Markoff Co. has sales revenue of $100,000, cost of goods sold of $70,000, and operating expenses of $18,000. What is its gross profit?

6. Peggy Wilder believes revenues from credit sales may be earned before they are collected in cash. Do you agree? Explain.

7. (a) What is the primary source document for recording (1) cash sales and (2) credit sales?
(b) Using XXs for amounts, give the journal entry for each of the transactions in part (a), assuming perpetual inventory.

8. A credit sale is made on July 10 for $900, terms 1/15, n/30. On July 12, the purchaser returns $100 of goods for credit. Give the journal entry on July 19 to record the receipt of the balance due within the discount period.

9. As the end of Agnew Company's fiscal year-end approached, it became clear that the company had considerable excess inventory. Belden Glass, the head of marketing and sales, ordered salespeople to "add 20% more units to each order that you ship. The customers can always ship the extra back next period if they decide they don't want it. We've got to do it to meet this year's sales goal." Discuss the accounting implications of Belden's action.

10. To encourage bookstores to buy a broader range of book titles, and to discourage price discounting, the publishing industry allows bookstores to return unsold books to the publisher. This results in very significant returns each year. To ensure proper recognition of revenues, how should publishing companies account for these returns?

11. Goods costing $1,900 are purchased on account on July 15 with credit terms of 2/10, n/30. On July 18, the purchaser receives a $300 credit from the supplier for damaged goods. Give the journal entry on July 24 to record payment of the balance due within the discount period.

12. Frattura Company reports net sales of $800,000, gross profit of $560,000, and net income of $230,000. What are its operating expenses?

13. Rai Company has always provided its customers with payment terms of 1/10, n/30. Members of its sale force have commented that competitors are offering customers 2/10, n/45. Explain what these terms mean, and discuss the implications to Rai of switching its payment terms to those of its competitors.

14. In its year-end earnings announcement press release, Longwell Corp. announced that its earnings increased by $15 million relative to the previous year. This represented a 20% increase. Inspection of its income statement reveals that the company reported a $20 million gain under "Other revenues and gains" from the sale of one of its factories. Discuss the implications of this gain from the perspective of a potential investor.

15. Identify the distinguishing features of an income statement for a merchandising company.

16. Why is the normal operating cycle for a merchandising company likely to be longer than for a service company?

17. Tootsie Roll What title does Tootsie Roll use for gross profit? How did it present gross profit? By how much did its total gross profit change, and in what direction, in 2009?

18. What merchandising account(s) will appear in the post-closing trial balance?

19. What types of businesses are most likely to use a perpetual inventory system?

20. Identify the accounts that are added to or deducted from purchases to determine the cost of goods purchased under a periodic system. For each account, indicate (a) whether it is added or deducted, and (b) its normal balance.

21. In the following cases, use a periodic inventory system to identify the item(s) designated by the letters X and Y.
(a) Purchases $-X - Y =$ Net purchases.
(b) Cost of goods purchased $-$ Net purchases $= X$.
(c) Beginning inventory $+ X =$ Cost of goods available for sale.
(d) Cost of goods available for sale $-$ Cost of goods sold $= X$.

22. What two ratios measure factors that affect profitability?

23. What factors affect a company's gross profit rate—that is, what can cause the gross profit rate to increase and what can cause it to decrease?

24. Corliss Ford, director of marketing, wants to reduce the selling price of his company's products by 15% to increase market share. He says, "I know this will reduce our gross profit rate, but the increased number of units sold will make up for the lost margin." Before this action is taken, what other factors does the company need to consider?

25. Howard Paulson is considering investing in Stevenson Pet Food Company. Stevenson's net income increased considerably during the most recent year, even though many other companies in the same industry reported disappointing earnings. Howard wants to know whether the company's earnings provide a reasonable depiction of its results. What initial step can Howard take to help determine whether he needs to investigate further?

***26.** On July 15, a company purchases on account goods costing $1,900, with credit terms of 2/10, n/30. On July 18, the company receives a $400 credit memo from the supplier for damaged goods. Give the journal entry on July 24 to record payment of the balance due within the discount period assuming a periodic inventory system.

Brief Exercises

Compute missing amounts in determining net income.
(SO 1, 4), AP

BE5-1 Presented here are the components in Korinek Company's income statement. Determine the missing amounts.

Sales Revenue	Cost of Goods Sold	Gross Profit	Operating Expenses	Net Income
$ 71,200	(b)	$ 30,000	(d)	$12,100
$108,000	$70,000	(c)	(e)	$29,500
(a)	$71,900	$109,600	$46,200	(f)

Journalize perpetual inventory entries.
(SO 2, 3), AP

BE5-2 Pocras Company buys merchandise on account from Wedell Company. The selling price of the goods is $900 and the cost of the goods sold is $590. Both companies use perpetual inventory systems. Journalize the transactions on the books of both companies.

Journalize sales transactions.
(SO 3), AP

BE5-3 Prepare the journal entries to record the following transactions on Graff Company's books using a perpetual inventory system.

(a) On March 2, Graff Company sold $800,000 of merchandise to Rodriguez Company, terms 2/10, n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $540,000.
(b) On March 6, Rodriguez Company returned $140,000 of the merchandise purchased on March 2. The cost of the merchandise returned was $94,000.
(c) On March 12, Graff Company received the balance due from Rodriguez Company.

Journalize purchase transactions.
(SO 2), AP

BE5-4 From the information in BE5-3, prepare the journal entries to record these transactions on Rodriguez Company's books under a perpetual inventory system.

Prepare sales revenue section of income statement.
(SO 4), AP

BE5-5 Bangura Company provides this information for the month ended October 31, 2012: sales on credit $300,000; cash sales $150,000; sales discounts $5,000; and sales returns and allowances $19,000. Prepare the sales revenues section of the income statement based on this information.

Identify placement of items on a multiple-step income statement.
(SO 4), AP

BE5-6 Explain where each of these items would appear on a multiple-step income statement: gain on disposal of plant assets; cost of goods sold; depreciation expense; and sales returns and allowances.

Determine cost of goods sold using basic periodic formula.
(SO 5), AP

BE5-7 Berry Company sold goods with a total selling price of $800,000 during the year. It purchased goods for $380,000 and had beginning inventory of $67,000. A count of its ending inventory determined that goods on hand was $50,000. What was its cost of goods sold?

Compute net purchases and cost of goods purchased.
(SO 5), AP

BE5-8 Assume that Logan Company uses a periodic inventory system and has these account balances: Purchases $404,000; Purchase Returns and Allowances $13,000; Purchase Discounts $9,000; and Freight-in $16,000. Determine net purchases and cost of goods purchased.

Compute cost of goods sold and gross profit.
(SO 5), C

BE5-9 Assume the same information as in BE5-8 and also that Logan Company has beginning inventory of $60,000, ending inventory of $90,000, and net sales of $612,000. Determine the amounts to be reported for cost of goods sold and gross profit.

Calculate profitability ratios.
(SO 6), AP

BE5-10 Modder Corporation reported net sales of $250,000, cost of goods sold of $150,000, operating expenses of $50,000, net income of $32,500, beginning total assets of $520,000, and ending total assets of $600,000. Calculate each of the following values and explain what they mean: (a) profit margin ratio and (b) gross profit rate.

Calculate profitability ratios.
(SO 6), AP

BE5-11 Delzer Corporation reported net sales $800,000; cost of goods sold $520,000; operating expenses $210,000; and net income $68,000. Calculate the following values and explain what they mean: (a) profit margin ratio and (b) gross profit rate.

Evaluate quality of earnings.
(SO 7), C

BE5-12 Wasley Corporation reported net income of $346,000, cash of $67,800, and net cash provided by operating activities of $221,200. What does this suggest about the quality of the company's earnings? What further steps should be taken?

Journalize purchase transactions.
(SO 8), AP

***BE5-13** Prepare the journal entries to record these transactions on Koeller Company's books using a periodic inventory system.

(a) On March 2, Koeller Company purchased $800,000 of merchandise from Reeves Company, terms 2/10, n/30.
(b) On March 6, Koeller Company returned $95,000 of the merchandise purchased on March 2.
(c) On March 12, Koeller Company paid the balance due to Reeves Company.

Do it! Review

Do it! 5-1 On October 5, Longhini Company buys merchandise on account from Okern Company. The selling price of the goods is $5,000, and the cost to Okern Company is $3,000. On October 8, Longhini returns defective goods with a selling price of $640 and a scrap value of $240. Record the transactions of Longhini Company, assuming a perpetual approach.

Record transactions of purchasing company. (SO 2), AP

Do it! 5-2 Assume information similar to that in **Do it!** 5-1. That is: On October 5, Longhini Company buys merchandise on account from Okern Company. The selling price of the goods is $5,000, and the cost to Okern Company is $3,000. On October 8, Longhini returns defective goods with a selling price of $640 and a scrap value of $240. Record the transactions on the books of Okern Company, assuming a perpetual approach.

Record transactions of selling company. (SO 3), AP

Do it! 5-3 The following information is available for Jain Corp. for the year ended December 31, 2012:

Prepare multiple-step income statement. (SO 4), AP

Other revenues and gains	$ 12,700	Net sales	$552,000
Other expenses and losses	13,300	Operating expenses	186,000
Cost of goods sold	156,000		

Prepare a multiple-step income statement for Jain Corp. The company has a tax rate of 30%.

Do it! 5-4 Crystal Lake Corporation's accounting records show the following at year-end December 31, 2012:

Determine cost of goods sold using periodic system. (SO 5), AP

Purchase Discounts	$ 5,900	Beginning Inventory	$31,720
Freight-in	8,400	Ending Inventory	27,950
Freight-out	11,100	Purchase Returns	3,600
Purchases	162,500		

Assuming that Crystal Lake Corporation uses the periodic system, compute (a) cost of goods purchased and (b) cost of goods sold.

Exercises

E5-1 This information relates to Percy Co.

Journalize purchase transactions. (SO 2), AP

1. On April 5, purchased merchandise from Lyman Company for $28,000, terms 2/10, n/30.
2. On April 6, paid freight costs of $700 on merchandise purchased from Lyman.
3. On April 7, purchased equipment on account for $30,000.
4. On April 8, returned some of April 5 merchandise to Lyman Company, which cost $3,600.
5. On April 15, paid the amount due to Lyman Company in full.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the journal entries to record the transactions listed above on the books of Percy Co. Percy Co. uses a perpetual inventory system.

(b) Assume that Percy Co. paid the balance due to Lyman Company on May 4 instead of April 15. Prepare the journal entry to record this payment.

E5-2 Assume that on September 1, Office Depot had an inventory that included a variety of calculators. The company uses a perpetual inventory system. During September, these transactions occurred.

Journalize perpetual inventory entries. (SO 2, 3), AP

Sept.	6	Purchased calculators from Abacus Co. at a total cost of $1,650, terms n/30.
	9	Paid freight of $50 on calculators purchased from Abacus Co.
	10	Returned calculators to Abacus Co. for $66 credit because they did not meet specifications.
	12	Sold calculators costing $520 for $690 to Union Book Store, terms n/30.
	14	Granted credit of $45 to Union Book Store for the return of one calculator that was not ordered. The calculator cost $34.
	20	Sold calculators costing $570 for $760 to Commons Card Shop, terms n/30.

Instructions
Journalize the September transactions.

Journalize sales transactions.
(SO 3), **AP**

E5-3 The following transactions are for Masland Company.

1. On December 3, Masland Company sold $500,000 of merchandise to Parker Co., terms 1/10, n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $330,000.
2. On December 8, Parker Co. was granted an allowance of $25,000 for merchandise purchased on December 3.
3. On December 13, Masland Company received the balance due from Parker Co.

Instructions
(a) Prepare the journal entries to record these transactions on the books of Masland Company. Masland uses a perpetual inventory system.
(b) Assume that Masland Company received the balance due from Parker Co. on January 2 of the following year instead of December 13. Prepare the journal entry to record the receipt of payment on January 2.

Journalize perpetual inventory entries.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

E5-4 On June 10, Harris Company purchased $9,000 of merchandise from Goetz Company, terms 3/10, n/30. Harris pays the freight costs of $400 on June 11. Goods totaling $600 are returned to Goetz for credit on June 12. On June 19, Harris Company pays Goetz Company in full, less the purchase discount. Both companies use a perpetual inventory system.

Instructions
(a) Prepare separate entries for each transaction on the books of Harris Company.
(b) Prepare separate entries for each transaction for Goetz Company. The merchandise purchased by Harris on June 10 cost Goetz $5,000, and the goods returned cost Goetz $310.

Prepare sales revenues section of income statement.
(SO 4), **AP**

E5-5 The adjusted trial balance of Dredge Company shows these data pertaining to sales at the end of its fiscal year, October 31, 2012: Sales Revenue $900,000; Freight-out $14,000; Sales Returns and Allowances $22,000; and Sales Discounts $13,500.

Instructions
Prepare the sales revenues section of the income statement.

Prepare an income statement and calculate profitability ratios.
(SO 4, 6), **AP**

E5-6 Presented below is information for Yu Co. for the month of January 2012.

Cost of goods sold	$212,000	Rent expense	$32,000
Freight-out	7,000	Sales discounts	8,000
Insurance expense	12,000	Sales returns and allowances	20,000
Salaries and wages expense	60,000	Sales revenue	370,000

Instructions
(a) Prepare an income statement using the format presented on page 243. Assume a 25% tax rate.
(b) Calculate the profit margin ratio and the gross profit rate.

Compute missing amounts and calculate profitability ratios.
(SO 4, 6), **AP**

E5-7 Financial information is presented here for two companies.

	Indig Company	**Perez Company**
Sales revenue	$90,000	?
Sales returns	?	$ 5,000
Net sales	84,000	100,000
Cost of goods sold	58,000	?
Gross profit	?	40,000
Operating expenses	14,380	?
Net income	?	17,000

Prepare multiple-step income statement and calculate profitability ratios.
(SO 4, 6), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Fill in the missing amounts. Show all computations.
(b) Calculate the profit margin ratio and the gross profit rate for each company.
(c) Discuss your findings in part (b).

E5-8 In its income statement for the year ended December 31, 2012, Misra Company reported the following condensed data.

Administrative expenses	$465,000	Loss on disposal of plant assets	$ 83,500
Cost of goods sold	987,000	Net sales	2,050,000
Interest expense	71,000	Income tax expense	25,000
Interest revenue	65,000		
Selling expenses	420,000		

Instructions

(a) Prepare a multiple-step income statement.
(b) Calculate the profit margin ratio and gross profit rate.
(c) In 2011, Misra had a profit margin ratio of 5%. Is the decline in 2012 a cause for concern? (Ignore income tax effects.)

E5-9 In its income statement for the year ended June 30, 2009, The Clorox Company reported the following condensed data (dollars in millions).

Prepare multiple-step income statement and calculate profitability ratios.
(SO 4, 6), **C**

Selling and administrative expenses	$ 715	Research and development expense	$ 114
Net sales	5,450	Income tax expense	274
Interest expense	161	Other expense	46
Advertising expense	499	Cost of goods sold	3,104

Instructions

(a) Prepare a multiple-step income statement.
(b) Calculate the gross profit rate and the profit margin ratio and explain what each means.
(c) Assume the marketing department has presented a plan to increase advertising expenses by $340 million. It expects this plan to result in an increase in both net sales and cost of goods sold of 25%. Redo parts (a) and (b) and discuss whether this plan has merit. (Assume a tax rate of 34%, and round all amounts to whole dollars.)

E5-10 The trial balance of Pollard Company at the end of its fiscal year, August 31, 2012, includes these accounts: Beginning Inventory $18,700; Purchases $154,000; Sales Revenue $190,000; Freight-in $8,000; Sales Returns and Allowances $3,000; Freight-out $1,000; and Purchase Returns and Allowances $5,000. The ending merchandise inventory is $21,000.

Prepare cost of goods sold section using periodic system.
(SO 5), **AP**

Instructions

Prepare a cost of goods sold section (periodic system) for the year ending August 31.

E5-11 Below is a series of cost of goods sold sections for companies A, F, L, and V.

Prepare cost of goods sold section using periodic system.
(SO 5), **AP**

	A	F	L	V
Beginning inventory	$ 250	$ 120	$ 700	$ (j)
Purchases	1,500	1,080	(g)	43,590
Purchase returns and allowances	80	(d)	290	(k)
Net purchases	(a)	1,040	7,410	42,290
Freight-in	130	(e)	(h)	2,240
Cost of goods purchased	(b)	1,230	8,050	(l)
Cost of goods available for sale	1,800	1,350	(i)	49,530
Ending inventory	310	(f)	1,150	6,230
Cost of goods sold	(c)	1,230	7,600	43,300

Instructions

Fill in the lettered blanks to complete the cost of goods sold sections.

E5-12 Pardow Corporation reported sales revenue of $257,000, net income of $45,300, cash of $9,300, and net cash provided by operating activities of $23,200. Accounts receivable have increased at three times the rate of sales during the last 3 years.

Evaluate quality of earnings.
(SO 7), **C**

Instructions

(a) Explain what is meant by high quality of earnings.
(b) Evaluate the quality of the company's earnings. Discuss your findings.
(c) What factors might have contributed to the company's quality of earnings?

***E5-13** This information relates to Edyburn Co.

Journalize purchase transactions.
(SO 8), **AP**

1. On April 5, purchased merchandise from Hansen Company for $27,000, terms 2/10, n/30.
2. On April 6, paid freight costs of $1,200 on merchandise purchased from Hansen Company.

3. On April 7, purchased equipment on account for $30,000.
4. On April 8, returned some of the April 5 merchandise to Hansen Company, which cost $3,600.
5. On April 15, paid the amount due to Hansen Company in full.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the journal entries to record these transactions on the books of Edyburn Co. using a periodic inventory system.

(b) Assume that Edyburn Co. paid the balance due to Hansen Company on May 4 instead of April 15. Prepare the journal entry to record this payment.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Journalize, post, prepare partial income statement, and calculate ratios.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 6), **AP**

P5-1A Janssen Hardware Store completed the following merchandising transactions in the month of May. At the beginning of May, Janssen's ledger showed Cash of $8,000 and Common Stock of $8,000.

May	1	Purchased merchandise on account from Vanco Wholesale Supply for $8,000, terms 1/10, n/30.
	2	Sold merchandise on account for $4,400, terms 2/10, n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $3,300.
	5	Received credit from Vanco Wholesale Supply for merchandise returned $200.
	9	Received collections in full, less discounts, from customers billed on May 2.
	10	Paid Vanco Wholesale Supply in full, less discount.
	11	Purchased supplies for cash $900.
	12	Purchased merchandise for cash $3,100.
	15	Received $230 refund for return of poor-quality merchandise from supplier on cash purchase.
	17	Purchased merchandise from Strickler Distributors for $2,500, terms 2/10, n/30.
	19	Paid freight on May 17 purchase $250.
	24	Sold merchandise for cash $5,500. The cost of the merchandise sold was $4,100.
	25	Purchased merchandise from Fasteners Inc. for $800, terms 3/10, n/30.
	27	Paid Strickler Distributors in full, less discount.
	29	Made refunds to cash customers for returned merchandise $124. The returned merchandise had cost $90.
	31	Sold merchandise on account for $1,280, terms n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $830.

Janssen Hardware's chart of accounts includes Cash, Accounts Receivable, Inventory, Supplies, Accounts Payable, Common Stock, Sales Revenue, Sales Returns and Allowances, Sales Discounts, and Cost of Goods Sold.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions using a perpetual inventory system.

(b) Post the transactions to T accounts. Be sure to enter the beginning cash and common stock balances.

(c) Prepare an income statement through gross profit for the month of May 2012.

(c) Gross profit $2,828

(d) Calculate the profit margin ratio and the gross profit rate. (Assume operating expenses were $1,400.)

Journalize purchase and sale transactions under a perpetual system.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

P5-2A Hayes Warehouse distributes hardback books to retail stores and extends credit terms of 2/10, n/30 to all of its customers. During the month of June, the following merchandising transactions occurred.

June	1	Purchased books on account for $1,040 (including freight) from Brooks Publishers, terms 2/10, n/30.
	3	Sold books on account to the Mission Viejo bookstore for $1,200. The cost of the merchandise sold was $720.
	6	Received $40 credit for books returned to Brooks Publishers.
	9	Paid Brooks Publishers in full.
	15	Received payment in full from the Mission Viejo bookstore.
	17	Sold books on account to Book Nook for $1,200. The cost of the merchandise sold was $730.
	20	Purchased books on account for $720 from Cook Book Publishers, terms 1/15, n/30.
	24	Received payment in full from Book Nook.
	26	Paid Cook Book Publishers in full.
	28	Sold books on account to NewTown Bookstore for $1,300. The cost of the merchandise sold was $780.
	30	Granted NewTown Bookstore $130 credit for books returned costing $80.

Instructions

Journalize the transactions for the month of June for Hayes Warehouse, using a perpetual inventory system.

P5-3A At the beginning of the current season on April 1, the ledger of Thousand Oaks Pro Shop showed Cash $2,500; Inventory $3,500; and Common Stock $6,000. The following transactions were completed during April 2012.

Journalize, post, and prepare trial balance and partial income statement.

(SO 2, 3, 4), **AP**

Apr.	5	Purchased golf bags, clubs, and balls on account from Ryder Co. $1,500, terms 3/10, n/60.
	7	Paid freight on Ryder purchase $80.
	9	Received credit from Ryder Co. for merchandise returned $200.
	10	Sold merchandise on account to members $1,340, terms n/30. The merchandise sold had a cost of $820.
	12	Purchased golf shoes, sweaters, and other accessories on account from Birdie Sportswear $830, terms 1/10, n/30.
	14	Paid Ryder Co. in full.
	17	Received credit from Birdie Sportswear for merchandise returned $30.
	20	Made sales on account to members $810, terms n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $550.
	21	Paid Birdie Sportswear in full.
	27	Granted an allowance to members for clothing that did not fit properly $80.
	30	Received payments on account from members $1,220.

The chart of accounts for the pro shop includes Cash, Accounts Receivable, Inventory, Accounts Payable, Common Stock, Sales Revenue, Sales Returns and Allowances, and Cost of Goods Sold.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the April transactions using a perpetual inventory system.
(b) Using T accounts, enter the beginning balances in the ledger accounts and post the April transactions.
(c) Prepare a trial balance on April 30, 2012.
(d) Prepare an income statement through gross profit.

(c) Tot. trial balance $8,150
(d) Gross profit $ 700

P5-4A Chapman Department Store is located in midtown Metropolis. During the past several years, net income has been declining because suburban shopping centers have been attracting business away from city areas. At the end of the company's fiscal year on November 30, 2012, these accounts appeared in its adjusted trial balance.

Prepare financial statements and calculate profitability ratios.

(SO 4, 6), **AP**

Accounts Payable	$ 26,800
Accounts Receivable	17,200
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	68,000
Cash	8,000
Common Stock	35,000
Cost of Goods Sold	614,300
Freight-out	6,200

Equipment	$157,000
Depreciation Expense	13,500
Dividends	12,000
Gain on Disposal of Plant Assets	2,000
Income Tax Expense	10,000
Insurance Expense	9,000
Interest Expense	5,000
Inventory	26,200
Notes Payable	43,500
Prepaid Insurance	6,000
Advertising Expense	33,500
Rent Expense	34,000
Retained Earnings	14,200
Salaries and Wages Expense	117,000
Sales Revenue	904,000
Salaries and Wages Payable	6,000
Sales Returns and Allowances	20,000
Utilities Expense	10,600

Additional data: Notes payable are due in 2016.

Instructions

(a) Net income $ 32,900
Tot. assets $146,400

(a) Prepare a multiple-step income statement, a retained earnings statement, and a classified balance sheet.
(b) Calculate the profit margin ratio and the gross profit rate.
(c) The vice president of marketing and the director of human resources have developed a proposal whereby the company would compensate the sales force on a strictly commission basis. Given the increased incentive, they expect net sales to increase by 15%. As a result, they estimate that gross profit will increase by $40,443 and expenses by $58,600. Compute the expected new net income. (*Hint*: You do not need to prepare an income statement.) Then, compute the revised profit margin ratio and gross profit rate. Comment on the effect that this plan would have on net income and on the ratios, and evaluate the merit of this proposal. (Ignore income tax effects.)

Prepare a correct multiple-step income statement.
(SO 4), **AP**

P5-5A An inexperienced accountant prepared this condensed income statement for McDowell Company, a retail firm that has been in business for a number of years.

MCDOWELL COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Revenues	
Net sales	$850,000
Other revenues	22,000
	872,000
Cost of goods sold	555,000
Gross profit	317,000
Operating expenses	
Selling expenses	109,000
Administrative expenses	103,000
	212,000
Net earnings	$105,000

As an experienced, knowledgeable accountant, you review the statement and determine the following facts.

1. Net sales consist of sales $911,000, less freight-out expense on merchandise sold $33,000, and sales returns and allowances $28,000.
2. Other revenues consist of sales discounts $18,000 and rent revenue $8,000.
3. Selling expenses consist of salespersons' salaries $80,000; depreciation on equipment $10,000; advertising $15,000; and sales commissions $6,000. The commissions represent commissions paid. At December 31, $3,000 of commissions have been earned by salespersons but have not been paid. All compensation should be recorded as Salaries and Wages Expense.

4. Administrative expenses consist of office salaries $47,000; dividends $18,000; utilities $12,000; interest expense $2,000; and rent expense $24,000, which includes prepayments totaling $6,000 for the first quarter of 2013.

Instructions
Prepare a correct detailed multiple-step income statement. Assume a 25% tax rate.

Net income $69,500

P5-6A The trial balance of Dealer's Choice Wholesale Company contained the accounts shown at December 31, the end of the company's fiscal year.

Journalize, post, and prepare adjusted trial balance and financial statements.
(SO 4), **AP**

DEALER'S CHOICE WHOLESALE COMPANY
Trial Balance
December 31, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$ 31,400	
Accounts Receivable	37,600	
Inventory	70,000	
Land	92,000	
Buildings	200,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Buildings		$ 60,000
Equipment	83,500	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		40,500
Notes Payable		54,700
Accounts Payable		17,500
Common Stock		160,000
Retained Earnings		67,200
Dividends	10,000	
Sales Revenue		922,100
Sales Discounts	6,000	
Cost of Goods Sold	709,900	
Salaries and Wages Expense	51,300	
Utilities Expense	11,400	
Maintenance and Repairs Expense	8,900	
Advertising Expense	5,200	
Insurance Expense	4,800	
	$1,322,000	$1,322,000

Adjustment data:
1. Depreciation is $8,000 on buildings and $7,000 on equipment. (Both are operating expenses.)
2. Interest of $4,500 is due and unpaid on notes payable at December 31.
3. Income tax due and unpaid at December 31 is $24,000.

Other data: $15,000 of the notes payable are payable next year.

Instructions
(a) Journalize the adjusting entries.
(b) Create T accounts for all accounts used in part (a). Enter the trial balance amounts into the T accounts and post the adjusting entries.
(c) Prepare an adjusted trial balance.
(d) Prepare a multiple-step income statement and a retained earnings statement for the year, and a classified balance sheet at December 31, 2012.

(c) Tot. trial balance $1,365,500
(d) Net income $81,100
Tot. assets $399,000

P5-7A At the end of Snyder Department Store's fiscal year on November 30, 2012, these accounts appeared in its adjusted trial balance.

Determine cost of goods sold and gross profit under a periodic system.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

Freight-in	$ 5,060
Inventory (beginning)	41,300
Purchases	613,000
Purchase Discounts	7,000
Purchase Returns and Allowances	6,760
Sales Revenue	902,000
Sales Returns and Allowances	20,000

Additional facts:
1. Merchandise inventory on November 30, 2012, is $36,200.
2. Note that Snyder Department Store uses a periodic system.

Instructions

Gross profit $272,600

Prepare an income statement through gross profit for the year ended November 30, 2012.

Calculate missing amounts and assess profitability.
(SO 4, 5, 6), **AN**

P5-8A Reza Inc. operates a retail operation that purchases and sells snowmobiles, amongst other outdoor products. The company purchases all merchandise inventory on credit and uses a periodic inventory system. The Accounts Payable account is used for recording inventory purchases only; all other current liabilities are accrued in separate accounts. You are provided with the following selected information for the fiscal years 2010 through 2013, inclusive.

	2010	2011	2012	2013
Income Statement Data				
Sales revenue		$96,890	$ (e)	$82,220
Cost of goods sold		(a)	28,060	26,490
Gross profit		67,800	59,620	(i)
Operating expenses		63,640	(f)	52,870
Net income		$ (b)	$ 3,510	$ (j)
Balance Sheet Data				
Inventory	$13,000	$ (c)	$14,700	$ (k)
Accounts payable	5,800	6,500	4,600	(l)
Additional Information				
Purchases of merchandise inventory on account		$25,890	$ (g)	$24,050
Cash payments to suppliers		(d)	(h)	24,650

Instructions

(a) Calculate the missing amounts.

(b) The vice presidents of sales, marketing, production, and finance are discussing the company's results with the CEO. They note that sales declined over the 3-year fiscal period, 2011–2013. Does that mean that profitability necessarily also declined? Explain, computing the gross profit rate and the profit margin ratio for each fiscal year to help support your answer.

Journalize, post, and prepare trial balance and partial income statement under a periodic system.
(SO 5, 8), **AP**

***P5-9A** At the beginning of the current season on April 1, the ledger of Thousand Oaks Pro Shop showed Cash $2,500; Inventory $3,500; and Common Stock $6,000. These transactions occurred during April 2012.

Apr.	5	Purchased golf bags, clubs, and balls on account from Ryder Co. $1,500, terms 3/10, n/60.
	7	Paid freight on Ryder Co. purchases $80.
	9	Received credit from Ryder Co. for merchandise returned $200.
	10	Sold merchandise on account to members $1,340, terms n/30.
	12	Purchased golf shoes, sweaters, and other accessories on account from Birdie Sportswear $830, terms 1/10, n/30.
	14	Paid Ryder Co. in full.
	17	Received credit from Birdie Sportswear for merchandise returned $30.
	20	Made sales on account to members $810, terms n/30.
	21	Paid Birdie Sportswear in full.
	27	Granted credit to members for clothing that did not fit properly $80.
	30	Received payments on account from members $1,220.

The chart of accounts for the pro shop includes Cash, Accounts Receivable, Inventory, Accounts Payable, Common Stock, Sales Revenue, Sales Returns and Allowances, Purchases, Purchase Returns and Allowances, Purchase Discounts, and Freight-in.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the April transactions using a periodic inventory system.

(b) Using T accounts, enter the beginning balances in the ledger accounts and post the April transactions.

(c) Tot. trial balance $8,427
Gross profit $700

(c) Prepare a trial balance on April 30, 2012.

(d) Prepare an income statement through gross profit, assuming merchandise inventory on hand at April 30 is $4,263.

Problems: Set B

P5-1B Curtain Distributing Company completed these merchandising transactions in the month of April. At the beginning of April, the ledger of Curtain showed Cash of $9,000 and Common Stock of $9,000.

Journalize, post, prepare partial income statement, and calculate ratios.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 6), **AP**

Apr.	2	Purchased merchandise on account from Luebke Supply Co. $8,700, terms 2/10, n/30.
	4	Sold merchandise on account $6,000, terms 2/10, n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $3,700.
	5	Paid $200 freight on April 4 sale.
	6	Received credit from Luebke Supply Co. for merchandise returned $400.
	11	Paid Luebke Supply Co. in full, less discount.
	13	Received collections in full, less discounts, from customers billed on April 4.
	14	Purchased merchandise for cash $4,700.
	16	Received refund from supplier for returned merchandise on cash purchase of April 14, $500.
	18	Purchased merchandise from Cascade Distributors $5,500, terms 2/10, n/30.
	20	Paid freight on April 18 purchase $180.
	23	Sold merchandise for cash $8,300. The cost of the merchandise sold was $5,580.
	26	Purchased merchandise for cash $2,300.
	27	Paid Cascade Distributors in full, less discount.
	29	Made refunds to cash customers for returned merchandise $180. The returned merchandise had a cost of $120.
	30	Sold merchandise on account $3,980, terms n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $2,500.

Curtain Distributing Company's chart of accounts includes Cash, Accounts Receivable, Inventory, Accounts Payable, Common Stock, Sales Revenue, Sales Returns and Allowances, Sales Discounts, Cost of Goods Sold, and Freight-out.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions.
(b) Post the transactions to T accounts. Be sure to enter the beginning cash and common stock balances.
(c) Prepare the income statement through gross profit for the month of April 2012. (c) Gross profit $6,320
(d) Calculate the profit margin ratio and the gross profit rate. (Assume operating expenses were $2,050.)

P5-2B Holiday Warehouse distributes suitcases to retail stores and extends credit terms of 1/10, n/30 to all of its customers. During the month of July, the following merchandising transactions occurred.

Journalize purchase and sale transactions under a perpetual system.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

July	1	Purchased suitcases on account for $2,700 from Satchel Manufacturers, terms 2/15, n/30.
	3	Sold suitcases on account to Triptik for $2,900. The cost of the merchandise sold was $1,800.
	9	Paid Satchel Manufacturers in full.
	12	Received payment in full from Triptik.
	17	Sold suitcases on account to PassPort for $2,000. The cost of the merchandise sold was $1,200.
	18	Purchased suitcases on account for $2,200 (including freight) from Steamer Manufacturers, terms 1/10, n/30.
	20	Received $300 credit for suitcases returned to Steamer Manufacturers.
	21	Received payment in full from PassPort.
	22	Sold suitcases on account to Carry On for $3,120. The cost of the merchandise sold was $1,800.
	30	Paid Steamer Manufacturers in full.
	31	Granted Carry On $310 credit for suitcases returned costing $170.

Instructions

Journalize the transactions for the month of July for Holiday Warehouse, using a perpetual inventory system.

Journalize, post, and prepare trial balance and partial income statement.
(SO 2, 3, 4), **AP**

P5-3B At the beginning of the current season, the ledger of Highland Tennis Shop showed Cash $2,500; Inventory $1,700; and Common Stock $4,200. The following transactions were completed during April.

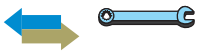
Apr.	4	Purchased racquets and balls from Harris Co. $980, terms 2/10, n/30.
	6	Paid freight on Harris Co. purchase $60.
	8	Sold merchandise to members $750, terms n/30. The merchandise sold cost $480.
	10	Received credit of $130 from Harris Co. for damaged racquets that were returned.
	11	Purchased tennis shoes from Happy Feet for cash $300.
	13	Paid Harris Co. in full.
	14	Purchased tennis shirts and shorts from Rivera Sportswear $1,300, terms 3/10, n/60.
	15	Received cash refund of $50 from Happy Feet for damaged merchandise that was returned.
	17	Paid freight on Rivera Sportswear purchase $60.
	18	Sold merchandise to members $660, terms n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $440.
	20	Received $500 in cash from members in settlement of their accounts.
	21	Paid Rivera Sportswear in full.
	27	Granted an allowance of $30 to members for tennis clothing that did not fit properly.
	30	Received cash payments on account from members $550.

The chart of accounts for the tennis shop includes Cash, Accounts Receivable, Inventory, Accounts Payable, Common Stock, Sales Revenue, Sales Returns and Allowances, and Cost of Goods Sold.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the April transactions using a perpetual inventory system.
(b) Using T accounts, enter the beginning balances in the ledger accounts and post the April transactions.
(c) Prepare a trial balance on April 30, 2012. — (c) Tot. trial balance $5,610
(d) Prepare an income statement through gross profit. — (d) Gross profit $460

Prepare financial statements and calculate profitability ratios.
(SO 4, 6), **AP**



P5-4B Parkland Department Store is located near the Lyndale Shopping Mall. At the end of the company's fiscal year on December 31, 2012, the following accounts appeared in its adjusted trial balance.

Accounts Payable	$ 73,300
Accounts Receivable	45,500
Accumulated Depreciation—Buildings	52,500
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	42,600
Buildings	190,000
Cash	28,000
Common Stock	140,000
Cost of Goods Sold	412,000
Depreciation Expense	23,400
Dividends	15,000
Equipment	100,000
Gain on Disposal of Plant Assets	4,300
Income Tax Expense	15,000
Insurance Expense	8,400
Interest Expense	7,000
Interest Payable	2,000
Inventory	43,000
Mortgage Payable	62,500
Prepaid Insurance	2,400

Maintenance and Repairs Expense	$ 6,200
Retained Earnings	19,200
Salaries and Wages Expense	111,000
Sales Revenue	626,000
Salaries and Wages Payable	3,500
Sales Returns and Allowances	8,000
Utilities Expense	11,000

Additional data: $20,000 of the mortgage payable is due for payment next year.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a multiple-step income statement, a retained earnings statement, and a classified balance sheet.
(b) Calculate the profit margin ratio and the gross profit rate.
(c) The vice president of marketing and the director of human resources have developed a proposal whereby the company would compensate the sales force on a strictly commission basis. Given the increased incentive, they expect net sales to increase by 25%. As a result, they estimate that gross profit will increase by $50,500 and expenses by $27,800. Compute the expected new net income. (*Hint*: You do not need to prepare an income statement.) Then, compute the revised profit margin ratio and gross profit rate. Comment on the effect that this plan would have on net income and the ratios, and evaluate the merit of this proposal.

(a) Net income $28,300
Tot. assets $313,800

P5-5B A part-time bookkeeper prepared this income statement for Kritek Company for the year ending December 31, 2012.

Prepare a correct multiple-step income statement.
(SO 4), **AP**

KRITEK COMPANY
Income Statement
December 31, 2012

Revenues		
Sales revenue		$720,000
Less: Freight-out	$14,000	
Sales discounts	11,300	25,300
Net sales		694,700
Other revenues (net)		1,300
Total revenues		696,000
Expenses		
Cost of goods sold		460,000
Selling expenses		103,000
Administrative expenses		54,000
Dividends		12,000
Total expenses		629,000
Net income		$ 67,000

As an experienced, knowledgeable accountant, you review the statement and determine the following facts.

1. Sales include $12,000 of deposits from customers for future sales orders.
2. Other revenues contain two items: interest expense $4,000 and interest revenue $5,300.
3. Selling expenses consist of sales salaries and wages $82,500, advertising $13,000, and depreciation on store equipment $7,500.
4. Administrative expenses consist of office salaries $23,000; utilities expense $9,500; rent expense $14,500; and insurance expense $7,000. Insurance expense includes $1,200 of insurance applicable to 2013.

Operating expenses $169,800
Net income $51,150

Instructions

Prepare a correct detailed multiple-step income statement. Assume a tax rate of 25%.

Journalize, post, and prepare adjusted trial balance and financial statements.
(SO 4), **AP**

P5-6B The trial balance of Runway Fashion Center contained the accounts on the next page at November 30, the end of the company's fiscal year.

RUNWAY FASHION CENTER
Trial Balance
November 30, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$ 37,700	
Accounts Receivable	33,700	
Inventory	43,000	
Supplies	8,800	
Equipment	143,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		$ 41,000
Notes Payable		62,000
Accounts Payable		17,800
Common Stock		80,000
Retained Earnings		30,000
Dividends	12,000	
Sales Revenue		757,200
Sales Returns and Allowances	6,200	
Cost of Goods Sold	505,400	
Salaries and Wages Expense	110,000	
Advertising Expense	26,400	
Utilities Expense	14,000	
Maintenance and Repairs Expense	12,100	
Freight-out	11,700	
Rent Expense	24,000	
	$988,000	$988,000

Adjustment data:

1. Store supplies on hand total $3,100.
2. Depreciation is $14,000 on the store equipment and $6,000 on the delivery equipment.
3. Interest of $4,400 is accrued on notes payable at November 30.
4. Income tax due and unpaid at November 30 is $3,000.

Other data: $24,000 of notes payable are due for payment next year.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the adjusting entries.
(b) Prepare T accounts for all accounts used in part (a). Enter the trial balance amounts into the T accounts and post the adjusting entries.
(c) Prepare an adjusted trial balance.
(d) Prepare a multiple-step income statement and a retained earnings statement for the year, and a classified balance sheet at November 30, 2012.

(c) Tot. trial balance $1,015,400
(d) Net income $14,300
Tot. assets $199,500

Determine cost of goods sold and gross profit under a periodic system.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

P5-7B At the end of Ehlinger Department Store's fiscal year on December 31, 2012, these accounts appeared in its adjusted trial balance.

Freight-in	$ 7,200
Inventory (beginning)	40,500
Purchases	456,000
Purchase Discounts	12,000
Purchase Returns and Allowances	6,400
Sales Revenue	702,000
Sales Returns and Allowances	8,000

Additional facts:

1. Merchandise inventory on December 31, 2012, is $58,300.
2. Note that Ehlinger Department Store uses a periodic system.

Instructions

Prepare an income statement through gross profit for the year ended December 31, 2012.

Gross profit $267,000

Calculate missing amounts and assess profitability.
(SO 4, 5, 6), **AN**

P5-8B Sandra McLellan operates a clothing retail operation. She purchases all merchandise inventory on credit and uses a periodic inventory system. The Accounts Payable account is used for recording inventory purchases only; all other current liabilities are accrued in separate accounts. You are provided with the following selected information for the fiscal years 2010, 2011, 2012, and 2013.

	2010	2011	2012	2013
Inventory (ending)	$16,000	$ 11,300	$ 16,400	$ 12,200
Accounts payable (ending)	17,000			
Sales revenue		229,700	227,600	222,000
Purchases of merchandise inventory on account		146,900	155,700	139,200
Cash payments to suppliers		135,900	159,000	127,000

Instructions

(a) Calculate cost of goods sold for each of the 2011, 2012, and 2013 fiscal years.
(b) Calculate the gross profit for each of the 2011, 2012, and 2013 fiscal years.
(c) Calculate the ending balance of accounts payable for each of the 2011, 2012, and 2013 fiscal years. (a) 2012 $150,600
(d) The vice presidents of sales, marketing, production, and finance are discussing the company's results with the CEO. They note that sales declined in fiscal 2013. They wonder whether that means that profitability, as measured by the gross profit rate, necessarily also declined. Explain, calculating the gross profit rate for each fiscal year to help support your answer. (c) 2012 $24,700

***P5-9B** At the beginning of the current season, the ledger of Highland Tennis Shop showed Cash $2,500; Inventory $1,700; and Common Stock $4,200. The following transactions were completed during April.

Journalize, post, and prepare trial balance and partial income statement under a periodic system. (SO 5, 8), **AP**

GLS

Apr.	4	Purchased racquets and balls from Harris Co. $980, terms 2/10, n/30.
	6	Paid freight on Harris Co. purchase $60.
	8	Sold merchandise to members $750, terms n/30.
	10	Received credit of $130 from Harris Co. for damaged racquets that were returned.
	11	Purchased tennis shoes from Happy Feet for cash $300.
	13	Paid Harris Co. in full.
	14	Purchased tennis shirts and shorts from Rivera Sportswear $1,300, terms 3/10, n/60.
	15	Received cash refund of $50 from Happy Feet for damaged merchandise that was returned.
	17	Paid freight on Rivera Sportswear purchase $60.
	18	Sold merchandise to members $660, terms n/30.
	20	Received $500 in cash from members in settlement of their accounts.
	21	Paid Rivera Sportswear in full.
	27	Granted an allowance of $30 to members for tennis clothing that did not fit properly.
	30	Received cash payments on account from members $550.

The chart of accounts for the tennis shop includes Cash, Accounts Receivable, Inventory, Accounts Payable, Common Stock, Sales Revenue, Sales Returns and Allowances, Purchases, Purchase Returns and Allowances, Purchase Discounts, and Freight-in.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the April transactions using a periodic inventory system.
(b) Using T accounts, enter the beginning balances in the ledger accounts and post the April transactions.
(c) Prepare a trial balance on April 30, 2012. (c) Tot. trial balance $5,846
(d) Prepare an income statement through Gross Profit, assuming merchandise inventory on hand at April 30 is $3,244. (d) Gross profit $460

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Comprehensive Problem

CP5 On December 1, 2012, Shiras Distributing Company had the following account balances.

	Debits		Credits
Cash	$ 7,200	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	$ 2,200
Accounts Receivable	4,600	Accounts Payable	4,500
Inventory	12,000	Salaries and Wages Payable	1,000
Supplies	1,200	Common Stock	15,000
Equipment	22,000	Retained Earnings	24,300
	$47,000		$47,000

During December, the company completed the following summary transactions.

Dec. 6 Paid $1,600 for salaries due employees, of which $600 is for December and $1,000 is for November salaries payable.
8 Received $1,900 cash from customers in payment of account (no discount allowed).
10 Sold merchandise for cash $6,300. The cost of the merchandise sold was $4,100.
13 Purchased merchandise on account from Gong Co. $9,000, terms 2/10, n/30.
15 Purchased supplies for cash $2,000.
18 Sold merchandise on account $12,000, terms 3/10, n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $8,000.
20 Paid salaries $1,800.
23 Paid Gong Co. in full, less discount.
27 Received collections in full, less discounts, from customers billed on December 18.

Adjustment data:

1. Accrued salaries payable $800.
2. Depreciation $200 per month.
3. Supplies on hand $1,500.
4. Income tax due and unpaid at December 31 is $200.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the December transactions using a perpetual inventory system.
(b) Enter the December 1 balances in the ledger T accounts and post the December transactions. Use Cost of Goods Sold, Depreciation Expense, Salaries and Wages Expense, Sales Revenue, Sales Discounts, Supplies Expense, Income Tax Expense, and Income Taxes Payable.
(c) Journalize and post adjusting entries.
(d) Prepare an adjusted trial balance. (d) Totals $65,500
(e) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for December and a classified balance sheet at December 31. (e) Net income $540

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapters 1 through 4.)

CCC5 Because Natalie has had such a successful first few months, she is considering other opportunities to develop her business. One opportunity is to become the exclusive distributor of a line of fine European mixers. Natalie comes to you for advice on how to account for these mixers.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to see the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll Industries Inc.*

BYP5-1 The financial statements for Tootsie Roll Industries appear in Appendix A at the end of this book.

Instructions

Answer these questions using the Consolidated Income Statement.

(a) What was the percentage change in total revenue and in net income from 2008 to 2009?

(b) What was the profit margin ratio in each of the 3 years? (Use "Total Revenue.") Comment on the trend.

(c) What was Tootsie Roll's gross profit rate in each of the 3 years? (Use "Product" amounts.) Comment on the trend.

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP5-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company appear in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll in Appendix A.

Instructions

(a) Based on the information contained in these financial statements, determine the following values for each company.

(1) Profit margin ratio for 2009. (For Tootsie Roll, use "Total Revenue.")

(2) Gross profit for 2009. (For Tootsie Roll, use "Product" amounts.)

(3) Gross profit rate for 2009. (For Tootsie Roll, use "Product" amounts.)

(4) Operating income for 2009.

(5) Percentage change in operating income from 2009 to 2008.

(b) What conclusions concerning the relative profitability of the two companies can be drawn from these data?

RESEARCH CASE

BYP5-3 The April 23, 2008, issue of the *Wall Street Journal* includes an article by Vanessa O'Connell entitled "Coach Profit Is Up but Margins Are Tightening."

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following questions.

(a) Referring to the ratios that were presented in this chapter, interpret the first paragraph of the article.

(b) Explain why investors would be angry that the company has stopped reporting the amount of its sales from outlet malls separately from its sales at full-priced stores.

(c) The article says that the gross margin (gross profit rate) fell from 77.8% to 75%. According to the article, what were the two causes of this decline?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP5-4 Recently, it was announced that two giant French retailers, Carrefour SA and Promodes SA, would merge. A headline in the *Wall Street Journal* blared, "French Retailers Create New Wal-Mart Rival." While Wal-Mart's total sales would still exceed those of the combined company, Wal-Mart's international sales are far less than those of the combined company. This is a serious concern for Wal-Mart, since its primary opportunity for future growth lies outside of the United States.

Below are basic financial data for the combined corporation (in euros) and Wal-Mart (in U.S. dollars). Even though their results are presented in different currencies, by employing ratios we can make some basic comparisons.

	Carrefour (in millions)	Wal-Mart (in millions)
Sales	€70,486	$256,329
Cost of goods sold	54,630	198,747
Net income	1,738	9,054
Total assets	39,063	104,912
Current assets	14,521	34,421
Current liabilities	13,660	37,418
Total liabilities	29,434	61,289

Instructions

Compare the two companies by answering the following.

(a) Calculate the gross profit rate for each of the companies, and discuss their relative abilities to control cost of goods sold.

(b) Calculate the profit margin ratio, and discuss the companies' relative profitability.

(c) Calculate the current ratio and debt to total assets ratios for the two companies, and discuss their relative liquidity and solvency.

(d) What concerns might you have in relying on this comparison?

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP5-5 ***Purpose***: No financial decision maker should ever rely solely on the financial information reported in the annual report to make decisions. It is important to keep abreast of financial news. This activity demonstrates how to search for financial news on the Web.

Address: **http://biz.yahoo.com/i**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Type in either Wal-Mart, Target Corp., or Kmart.
2. Choose **News**.
3. Select an article that sounds interesting to you and that would be relevant to an investor in these companies.

Instructions

(a) What was the source of the article (e.g., Reuters, Businesswire, Prnewswire)?

(b) Assume that you are a personal financial planner and that one of your clients owns stock in the company. Write a brief memo to your client summarizing the article and explaining the implications of the article for their investment.

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP5-6 Three years ago, Amy Blodgett and her brother-in-law Dennis Torres opened Megamart Department Store. For the first 2 years, business was good, but the following condensed income statement results for 2012 were disappointing.

MEGAMART DEPARTMENT STORE
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Net sales		$700,000
Cost of goods sold		560,000
Gross profit		140,000
Operating expenses		
Selling expenses	$100,000	
Administrative expenses	20,000	
		120,000
Net income		$ 20,000

Amy believes the problem lies in the relatively low gross profit rate of 20%. Dennis believes the problem is that operating expenses are too high. Amy thinks the gross profit rate can be improved by making two changes: (1) Increase average selling prices by 15%; this increase is expected to lower sales volume so that total sales dollars will increase only 4%. (2) Buy merchandise in larger quantities and take all purchase discounts; these changes are expected to increase the gross profit rate from 20% to 25%. Amy does not anticipate that these changes will have any effect on operating expenses.

Dennis thinks expenses can be cut by making these two changes: (1) Cut 2012 sales salaries of $60,000 in half and give sales personnel a commission of 2% of net sales. (2) Reduce store deliveries to one day per week rather than twice a week; this change will reduce 2012 delivery expenses of $40,000 by 40%. Dennis feels that these changes will not have any effect on net sales.

Amy and Dennis come to you for help in deciding the best way to improve net income.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following.

(a) Prepare a condensed income statement for 2013 assuming (1) Amy's changes are implemented and (2) Dennis's ideas are adopted.

(b) What is your recommendation to Amy and Dennis?

(c) Prepare a condensed income statement for 2013 assuming both sets of proposed changes are made.

(d) Discuss the impact that other factors might have. For example, would increasing the quantity of inventory increase costs? Would a salary cut affect employee morale? Would decreased morale affect sales? Would decreased store deliveries decrease customer satisfaction? What other suggestions might be considered?

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP5-7 The following situation is presented in chronological order.

1. Finley decides to buy a surfboard.
2. He calls Surfing USA Co. to inquire about their surfboards.
3. Two days later he requests Surfing USA Co. to make him a surfboard.
4. Three days later Surfing USA Co. sends him a purchase order to fill out.
5. He sends back the purchase order.
6. Surfing USA Co. receives the completed purchase order.
7. Surfing USA Co. completes the surfboard.
8. Finley picks up the surfboard.
9. Surfing USA Co. bills Finley.
10. Surfing USA Co. receives payment from Finley.

Instructions

In a memo to the president of Surfing USA Co., answer the following questions.

(a) When should Surfing USA Co. record the sale?

(b) Suppose that with his purchase order, Finley is required to make a down payment. Would that change your answer to part (a)?

ETHICS CASE

BYP5-8 Margie Anunson was just hired as the assistant treasurer of Northshore Stores, a specialty chain store company that has nine retail stores concentrated in one metropolitan area. Among other things, the payment of all invoices is centralized in one of the departments Margie will manage. Her primary responsibility is to maintain the company's high credit rating by paying all bills when due and to take advantage of all cash discounts.

Michael Hauer, the former assistant treasurer, who has been promoted to treasurer, is training Margie in her new duties. He instructs Margie that she is to continue the practice of preparing all checks "net of discount" and dating the checks the last day of the discount period. "But," Michael continues, "we always hold the checks at least 4 days beyond the discount period before mailing them. That way we get another 4 days of interest on our money. Most of our creditors need our business and don't complain. And, if they scream about our missing the discount period, we blame it on the mail room or the post office. We've only lost one discount out of every hundred we take that way. I think everybody does it. By the way, welcome to our team!"

Instructions

(a) What are the ethical considerations in this case?

(b) What stakeholders are harmed or benefited?

(c) Should Margie continue the practice started by Michael? Does she have any choice?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP5-9 There are many situations in business where it is difficult to determine the proper period in which to record revenue. Suppose that after graduation with a degree in finance, you take a job as a manager at a consumer electronics store called Pacifica Electronics. The company has expanded rapidly in order to compete with Best Buy.

Pacifica has also begun selling gift cards. The cards are available in any dollar amount and allow the holder of the card to purchase an item for up to 2 years from the time the card is purchased. If the card is not used during that 2 years, it expires.

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

At what point should the revenue from the gift cards be recognized? Should the revenue be recognized at the time the card is sold, or should it be recorded when the card is redeemed? Explain the reasoning to support your answers.

FASB CODIFICATION ACTIVITY

BYP5-10 Access the FASB Codification at *http://asc.fasb.org* to prepare responses to the following

(a) Access the glossary ("Master Glossary") to answer the following.
  (1) What is the definition provided for inventory?
  (2) What is a customer?

(b) What guidance does the Codification provide concerning reporting inventories above cost?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 231 Morrow Snowboards Improves Its Stock Appeal **Q:** If a perpetual system keeps track of inventory on a daily basis, why do companies ever need to do a physical count? **A:** A perpetual system keeps track of all sales and purchases on a continuous basis. This provides a constant record of the number of units in the inventory. However, if employees make errors in recording sales or purchases, or if there is theft, the inventory value will not be correct. As a consequence, all companies do a physical count of inventory at least once a year.

p. 238 Should Costco Change Its Return Policy? **Q:** If a company expects significant returns, what are the implications for revenue recognition? **A:** If a company expects significant returns, it should make an adjusting entry at the end of the year reducing sales by the estimated amount of sales returns. This is necessary so as not to overstate the amount of revenue recognized in the period.

p. 242 Disclosing More Details **Q:** Why have investors and analysts demanded more accuracy in isolating "Other gains and losses" from operating items? **A:** Greater accuracy in the classification of operating versus nonoperating ("Other gains and losses") items permits investors and analysts to judge the real operating margin, the results of continuing operations, and management's ability to control operating expenses.

p. 248 Strategic Errors Can Be Costly **Q:** Explain how Wal-Mart's profitability gave it a strategic advantage over Kmart. **A:** If two competitors get into a "price war," the company with the lower costs can reduce prices further (thus eroding its gross profit rate), but still operate at a profit. Thus, Wal-Mart's success at minimizing its operating costs has enabled it to drive many competitors out of business.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. a **2.** c **3.** c **4.** b (($750 − $50) × .98) **5.** c **6.** c **7.** b ($400,000 − $310,000) **8.** d **9.** a ($60,000 + $380,000 − $50,000) **10.** b ($17,200 + ($60,400 − $3,000 − $1,100 + $600)) **11.** c **12.** c **13.** d ($92,400 ÷ $267,000) **14.** b ***15.** b

IFRS A Look at IFRS

The basic accounting entries for merchandising are the same under both GAAP and IFRS. The income statement is a required statement under both sets of standards. The basic format is similar although some differences do exist.

KEY POINTS

- Under both GAAP and IFRS, a company can choose to use either a perpetual or a periodic system.
- Inventories are defined by IFRS as held-for-sale in the ordinary course of business, in the process of production for such sale, or in the form of materials or supplies to be consumed in the production process or in the providing of services.

- Under GAAP, companies generally classify income statement items by function. Classification by function leads to descriptions like administration, distribution, and manufacturing. Under IFRS, companies must classify expenses by either nature or function. Classification by nature leads to descriptions such as the following: salaries, depreciation expense, and utilities expense. If a company uses the functional-expense method on the income statement, disclosure by nature is required in the notes to the financial statements.
- Presentation of the income statement under GAAP follows either a single-step or multiple-step format. IFRS does not mention a single-step or multiple-step approach.
- Under IFRS, revaluation of land, buildings, and intangible assets is permitted. The initial gains and losses resulting from this revaluation are reported as adjustments to equity, often referred to as *other comprehensive income*. The effect of this difference is that the use of IFRS results in more transactions affecting equity (other comprehensive income) but not net income.
- *IAS 1*, "Presentation of Financial Statements," provides general guidelines for the reporting of income statement information. Subsequently, a number of international standards have been issued that provide additional guidance to issues related to income statement presentation.
- Similar to GAAP, comprehensive income under IFRS includes unrealized gains and losses (such as those on so-called "available-for-sale securities") that are not included in the calculation of net income.
- IFRS requires that two years of income statement information be presented, whereas GAAP requires three years.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

The IASB and FASB are working on a project that would rework the structure of financial statements. Specifically, this project will address the issue of how to classify various items in the income statement. A main goal of this new approach is to provide information that better represents how businesses are run. In addition, this approach draws attention away from just one number—net income. It will adopt major groupings similar to those currently used by the statement of cash flows (operating, investing, and financing), so that numbers can be more readily traced across statements. For example, the amount of income that is generated by operations would be traceable to the assets and liabilities used to generate the income. Finally, this approach would also provide detail, beyond that currently seen in most statements (either GAAP or IFRS), by requiring that line items be presented both by function and by nature. The new financial statement format was heavily influenced by suggestions from financial statement analysts.

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. Which of the following would *not* be included in the definition of inventory under IFRS?
(a) Photocopy paper held for sale by an office-supply store.
(b) Stereo equipment held for sale by an electronics store.
(c) Used office equipment held for sale by the human relations department of a plastics company.
(d) All of the above would meet the definition.

2. Which of the following would *not* be a line item of a company reporting costs by nature?
(a) Depreciation expense.
(b) Salaries expense.
(c) Interest expense.
(d) Manufacturing expense.

3. Which of the following would *not* be a line item of a company reporting costs by function?
(a) Administration.
(b) Manufacturing.
(c) Utilities expense.
(d) Distribution.

4. Which of the following statements is *false*?
(a) IFRS specifically requires use of a multiple-step income statement.
(b) Under IFRS, companies can use either a perpetual or periodic system.
(c) The proposed new format for financial statements was heavily influenced by the suggestions of financial statement analysts.
(d) The new income statement format will try to de-emphasize the focus on the "net income" line item.

5. Under the new format for financial statements being proposed under a joint IASB/FASB project:
   (a) all financial statements would adopt headings similar to the current format of the balance sheet.
   (b) financial statements would be presented consistent with the way management usually run companies.
   (c) companies would be required to report income statement line items by function only.
   (d) the amount of detail shown in the income statement would decrease compared to current presentations.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS5–1 Explain the difference between the "nature-of-expense" and "function-of-expense" classifications.

IFRS5–2 For each of the following income statement line items, state whether the item is a "by nature" expense item or a "by function" expense item.

_____ Cost of goods sold
_____ Depreciation expense
_____ Wages and salaries expense
_____ Selling expenses
_____ Utilities expense
_____ Delivery expense
_____ General and administrative expenses

IFRS5–3 Gribble Company reported the following amounts in 2012: Net income, €150,000; Unrealized gain related to revaluation of buildings, €10,000; and Unrealized loss on available-for-sale securities, €(35,000). Determine Gribble's total comprehensive income for 2012.

INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Zetar plc*

IFRS5–4 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C. The company's complete annual report, including the notes to its financial statements, is available at **www.zetarplc.com.**

Instructions

(a) Is Zetar using a multiple-step or a single-step income statement format? Explain how you made your determination.
(b) Instead of "interest expense," what label does Zetar use for interest costs that it incurs?
(c) What is the approximate tax rate of Zetar's "Tax on profit from continuing activities"?
(d) Using the notes to the company's financial statements, explain what each of the following are:
   (1) Adjusted results.
   (2) One-off items.

Answers to IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. c **2.** d **3.** c **4.** a **5.** b

the navigator

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 6

REPORTING AND ANALYZING INVENTORY

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 285 ◯ p. 291 ◯ p. 296 ◯ p. 298 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 308 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 330 ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Describe the steps in determining inventory quantities.
2. Explain the basis of accounting for inventories and apply the inventory cost flow methods under a periodic inventory system.
3. Explain the financial statement and tax effects of each of the inventory cost flow assumptions.
4. Explain the lower-of-cost-or-market basis of accounting for inventories.
5. Compute and interpret the inventory turnover ratio.
6. Describe the LIFO reserve and explain its importance for comparing results of different companies.

the navigator

feature story

Let's talk inventory—big, bulldozer-size inventory. Caterpillar Inc. is the world's largest manufacturer of construction and mining equipment, diesel and natural gas engines, and industrial gas turbines. It sells its products in over 200 countries, making it one of the most successful U.S. exporters. More than 70% of its productive assets are located domestically, and nearly 50% of its sales are foreign.

During the 1980s, Caterpillar's profitability suffered, but today it is very successful. A big part of this turnaround can be attributed to effective management of its inventory. Imagine what a bulldozer costs. Now imagine what it costs Caterpillar to have too many bulldozers sitting around in inventory—a situation the company definitely wants to avoid. Conversely, Caterpillar must make sure it has enough inventory to meet demand.

"WHERE IS THAT SPARE BULLDOZER BLADE?"

At one time during a 7-year period, Caterpillar's sales increased by 100%, while its inventory increased by only 50%. To achieve this dramatic reduction in the amount of resources tied up in inventory, while continuing to meet customers' needs, Caterpillar used a two-pronged approach. First, it completed a factory modernization program, which dramatically increased its production efficiency. The program reduced by 60% the amount of inventory the company processed at any one time. It also reduced by an incredible 75% the time it takes to manufacture a part.

Second, Caterpillar dramatically improved its parts distribution system. It ships more than 100,000 items daily from its 23 distribution centers strategically located around the world (10 *million* square feet of warehouse space—remember, we're talking bulldozers). The company can virtually guarantee that it can get any part to anywhere in the world within 24 hours.

After these changes, Caterpillar had record exports, profits, and revenues. It would have seemed that things couldn't have been better. But industry analysts, as well as the company's managers, thought otherwise. In order to maintain Caterpillar's position as the industry leader, management began another major overhaul of inventory production and inventory management processes. The goal: to cut the number of repairs in half, increase productivity by 20%, and increase inventory turnover by 40%. In short, Caterpillar's ability to manage its inventory has been a key reason for its past success, and inventory management will very likely play a huge part in its ability to succeed in the future.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 6 . . .

- **A Big Hiccup** *(p. 283)*
- **Falsifying Inventory to Boost Income** *(p. 284)*
- **Is LIFO Fair?** *(p. 294)*
- **Improving Inventory Control with RFID** *(p. 298)*

preview of chapter 6

In the previous chapter, we discussed the accounting for merchandise inventory using a perpetual inventory system. In this chapter, we explain the methods used to calculate the cost of inventory on hand at the balance sheet date and the cost of goods sold. We conclude by illustrating methods for analyzing inventory.

The content and organization of this chapter are as follows.

Reporting and Analyzing Inventory

Classifying Inventory	Determining Inventory Quantities	Inventory Costing	Analysis of Inventory
• Merchandising • Manufacturing • Just-in-time	• Taking a physical inventory • Determining ownership of goods	• Specific identification • Cost flow assumptions • Financial statement and tax effects • Consistent use • Lower-of-cost-or-market	• Inventory turnover ratio • LIFO reserve

the navigator

Classifying Inventory

How a company classifies its inventory depends on whether the firm is a merchandiser or a manufacturer. In a **merchandising** company, such as those described in Chapter 5, inventory consists of many different items. For example, in a grocery store, canned goods, dairy products, meats, and produce are just a few of the inventory items on hand. These items have two common characteristics: (1) They are owned by the company, and (2) they are in a form ready for sale to customers in the ordinary course of business. Thus, merchandisers need only one inventory classification, **merchandise inventory**, to describe the many different items that make up the total inventory.

In a **manufacturing** company, some inventory may not yet be ready for sale. As a result, manufacturers usually classify inventory into three categories: finished goods, work in process, and raw materials. **Finished goods inventory** is manufactured items that are completed and ready for sale. **Work in process** is that portion of manufactured inventory that has begun the production process but is not yet complete. **Raw materials** are the basic goods that will be used in production but have not yet been placed into production.

Helpful Hint Regardless of the classification, companies report all inventories under Current Assets on the balance sheet.

For example, Caterpillar classifies earth-moving tractors completed and ready for sale as **finished goods**. It classifies the tractors on the assembly line in various stages of production as **work in process**. The steel, glass, tires, and other components that are on hand waiting to be used in the production of tractors are identified as **raw materials**.

The accounting concepts discussed in this chapter apply to the inventory classifications of both merchandising and manufacturing companies. Our focus throughout most of this chapter is on merchandise inventory.

By observing the levels and changes in the levels of these three inventory types, financial statement users can gain insight into management's production plans. For example, low levels of raw materials and high levels of finished goods suggest that management believes it has enough inventory on hand, and production will be slowing down—perhaps in anticipation of a recession. On the other hand, high levels of raw materials and low levels of finished goods probably indicate that management is planning to step up production.

Many companies have significantly lowered inventory levels and costs using **just-in-time (JIT) inventory** methods. Under a just-in-time method, companies manufacture or purchase goods just in time for use. Dell is famous for having developed a system for making computers in response to individual customer requests. Even though it makes computers to meet a customer's particular specifications, Dell is able to assemble the computer and put it on a truck in less than 48 hours. The success of a JIT system depends on reliable suppliers. By integrating its information systems with those of its suppliers, Dell reduced its inventories to nearly zero. This is a huge advantage in an industry where products become obsolete nearly overnight.

Accounting Across the Organization

A Big Hiccup

JIT can save a company a lot of money, but it isn't without risk. An unexpected disruption in the supply chain can cost a company a lot of money. Japanese automakers experienced just such a disruption when a 6.8-magnitude earthquake caused major damage to the company that produces 50% of their piston rings. The rings themselves cost only $1.50, but without them you cannot make a car. No other supplier could quickly begin producing sufficient quantities of the rings to match the desired specifications. As a result, the automakers were forced to shut down production for a few days—a loss of tens of thousands of cars.

Source: Amy Chozick, "A Key Strategy of Japan's Car Makers Backfires," *Wall Street Journal* (July 20, 2007).

? What steps might the companies take to avoid such a serious disruption in the future? (See page 330.)

Determining Inventory Quantities

study objective 1

Describe the steps in determining inventory quantities.

No matter whether they are using a periodic or perpetual inventory system, all companies need to determine inventory quantities at the end of the accounting period. If using a perpetual system, companies take a physical inventory for two purposes: The first purpose is to check the accuracy of their perpetual inventory records. The second is to determine the amount of inventory lost due to wasted raw materials, shoplifting, or employee theft.

Companies using a periodic inventory system must take a physical inventory for two *different* purposes: to determine the inventory on hand at the balance sheet date, and to determine the cost of goods sold for the period.

Determining inventory quantities involves two steps: (1) taking a physical inventory of goods on hand and (2) determining the ownership of goods.

TAKING A PHYSICAL INVENTORY

Companies take the physical inventory at the end of the accounting period. Taking a physical inventory involves actually counting, weighing, or measuring each kind of inventory on hand. In many companies, taking an inventory is a formidable task. Retailers such as Target, True Value Hardware, or Home Depot have thousands of different inventory items. An inventory count is generally more accurate when a limited number of goods are being sold or received during the counting. Consequently, companies often "take inventory" when the business is closed or when business is slow. Many retailers close early on a chosen day in January—after the holiday sales and returns, when inventories are at their lowest level—to count inventory. Recall from Chapter 5 that Wal-Mart had a year-end of January 31.

Ethics Note In a famous fraud, a salad oil company filled its storage tanks mostly with water. The oil rose to the top, so auditors thought the tanks were full of oil. The company also said it had more tanks than it really did: it repainted numbers on the tanks to confuse auditors.

Ethics Insight

Falsifying Inventory to Boost Income

Managers at women's apparel maker Leslie Fay were convicted of falsifying inventory records to boost net income—and consequently to boost management bonuses. In another case, executives at Craig Consumer Electronics were accused of defrauding lenders by manipulating inventory records. The indictment said the company classified "defective goods as new or refurbished" and claimed that it owned certain shipments "from overseas suppliers" when, in fact, Craig either did not own the shipments or the shipments did not exist.

? What effect does an overstatement of inventory have on a company's financial statements? (See page 330.)

DETERMINING OWNERSHIP OF GOODS

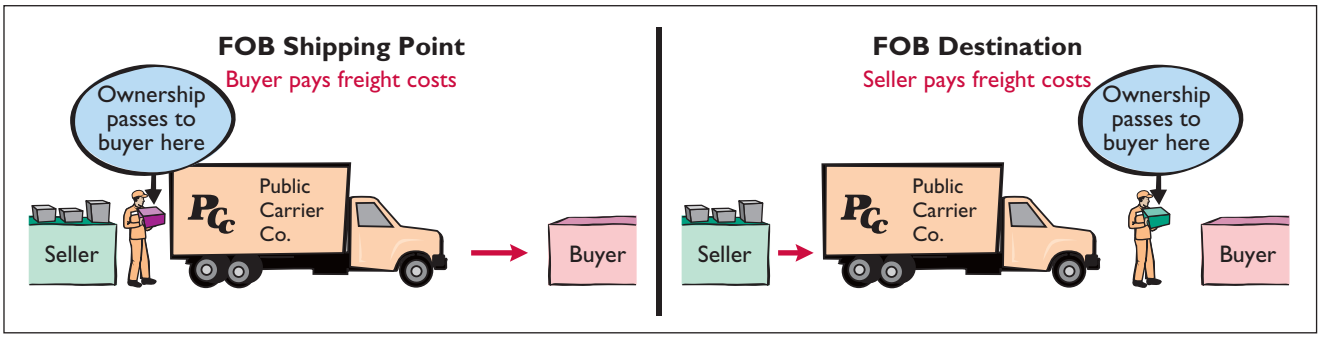
One challenge in determining inventory quantities is making sure a company owns the inventory. To determine ownership of goods, two questions must be answered: Do all of the goods included in the count belong to the company? Does the company own any goods that were not included in the count?

Goods in Transit

A complication in determining ownership is **goods in transit** (on board a truck, train, ship, or plane) at the end of the period. The company may have purchased goods that have not yet been received, or it may have sold goods that have not yet been delivered. To arrive at an accurate count, the company must determine ownership of these goods.

Goods in transit should be included in the inventory of the company that has legal title to the goods. Legal title is determined by the terms of the sale, as shown in Illustration 6-1 and described below.

Illustration 6-1 Terms of sale



1. When the terms are **FOB (free on board) shipping point**, ownership of the goods passes to the buyer when the public carrier accepts the goods from the seller.
2. When the terms are **FOB destination**, ownership of the goods remains with the seller until the goods reach the buyer.

Consigned Goods

In some lines of business, it is common to hold the goods of other parties and try to sell the goods for them for a fee, but without taking ownership of the goods. These are called **consigned goods**.

For example, you might have a used car that you would like to sell. If you take the item to a dealer, the dealer might be willing to put the car on its lot and

charge you a commission if it is sold. Under this agreement, the dealer **would not take ownership** of the car, which would still belong to you. If an inventory count were taken, the car would not be included in the dealer's inventory because the dealer does not own it.

Many car, boat, and antique dealers sell goods on consignment to keep their inventory costs down and to avoid the risk of purchasing an item that they won't be able to sell. Today, even some manufacturers are making consignment agreements with their suppliers in order to keep their inventory levels low.

before you go on...

Do it! Hasbeen Company completed its inventory count. It arrived at a total inventory value of $200,000. You have been given the information listed below. Discuss how this information affects the reported cost of inventory.

RULES OF OWNERSHIP

1. Hasbeen included in the inventory goods held on consignment for Falls Co., costing $15,000.
2. The company did not include in the count purchased goods of $10,000, which were in transit (terms: FOB shipping point).
3. The company did not include in the count inventory that had been sold with a cost of $12,000, which was in transit (terms: FOB shipping point).

Action Plan

- Apply the rules of ownership to goods held on consignment.
- Apply the rules of ownership to goods in transit.

the navigator

Solution

The goods of $15,000 held on consignment should be deducted from the inventory count. The goods of $10,000 purchased FOB shipping point should be added to the inventory count. Sold goods of $12,000 which were in transit FOB shipping point should not be included in the ending inventory. Inventory should be $195,000 ($200,000 − $15,000 + $10,000).

Related exercise material: **BE6-1, Do it! 6-1, E6-1, E6-2,** and **E6-3.**

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

Ted Nickerson, CEO of clock manufacturer Dally Industries, was feared by all of his employees. Ted had expensive tastes. To support his expensive tastes, Ted took out large loans, which he collateralized with his shares of Dally Industries stock. If the price of Dally's stock fell, he was required to provide the bank with more shares of stock. To achieve target net income figures and thus maintain the stock price, Ted coerced employees in the company to alter inventory figures. Inventory quantities were manipulated by changing the amounts on inventory control tags after the year-end physical inventory count. For example, if a tag said there were 20 units of a particular item, the tag was changed to 220. Similarly, the unit costs that were used to determine the value of ending inventory were increased from, for example, $125 per unit to $1,250. Both of these fraudulent changes had the effect of increasing the amount of reported ending inventory. This reduced cost of goods sold and increased net income.

Total take: $245,000

THE MISSING CONTROL

Independent internal verification. The company should have spot-checked its inventory records periodically, verifying that the number of units in the records agreed with the amount on hand and that the unit costs agreed with vendor price sheets.

Source: Adapted from Wells, *Fraud Casebook* (2007), pp. 502–509.

Inventory Costing

study objective 2

Explain the basis of accounting for inventories and apply the inventory cost flow methods under a periodic inventory system.

Inventory is accounted for at cost. Cost includes all expenditures necessary to acquire goods and place them in a condition ready for sale. For example, freight costs incurred to acquire inventory are added to the cost of inventory, but the cost of shipping goods to a customer are a selling expense. After a company has determined the quantity of units of inventory, it applies unit costs to the quantities to determine the total cost of the inventory and the cost of goods sold. This process can be complicated if a company has purchased inventory items at different times and at different prices.

For example, assume that Crivitz TV Company purchases three identical 50-inch TVs on different dates at costs of $700, $750, and $800. During the year, Crivitz sold two sets at $1,200 each. These facts are summarized in Illustration 6-2.

Illustration 6-2 Data for inventory costing example

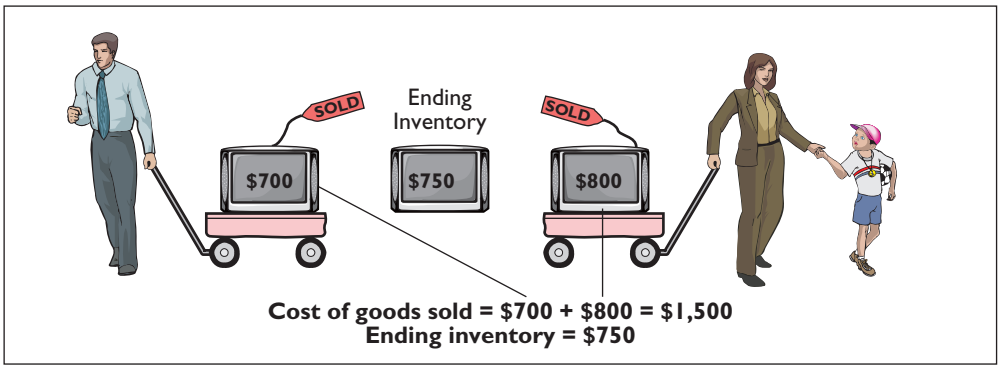
Purchases			
Feb. 3	1 TV	at	$700
March 5	1 TV	at	$750
May 22	1 TV	at	$800
Sales			
June 1	2 TVs	for	$2,400 ($1,200 × 2)

Cost of goods sold will differ depending on which two TVs the company sold. For example, it might be $1,450 ($700 + $750), or $1,500 ($700 + $800), or $1,550 ($750 + $800). In this section, we discuss alternative costing methods available to Crivitz.

SPECIFIC IDENTIFICATION

If Crivitz can positively identify which particular units it sold and which are still in ending inventory, it can use the **specific identification method** of inventory costing. For example, if Crivitz sold the TVs it purchased on February 3 and May 22, then its cost of goods sold is $1,500 ($700 + $800), and its ending inventory is $750 (see Illustration 6-3). Using this method, companies can accurately determine ending inventory and cost of goods sold.

Illustration 6-3 Specific identification method



Specific identification requires that companies keep records of the original cost of each individual inventory item. Historically, specific identification was possible only when a company sold a limited variety of high-unit-cost items that could be identified clearly from the time of purchase through the time of sale. Examples of such products are cars, pianos, or expensive antiques.

Today, with bar coding, electronic product codes, and radio frequency identification, it is theoretically possible to do specific identification with nearly any type of product. The reality is, however, that this practice is still relatively rare. Instead, rather than keep track of the cost of each particular item sold, most companies make assumptions, called **cost flow assumptions**, about which units were sold.

Ethics Note A major disadvantage of the specific identification method is that management may be able to manipulate net income. For example, it can boost net income by selling units purchased at a low cost, or reduce net income by selling units purchased at a high cost.

COST FLOW ASSUMPTIONS

Because specific identification is often impractical, other cost flow methods are permitted. These differ from specific identification in that they **assume** flows of costs that may be unrelated to the actual physical flow of goods. There are three assumed cost flow methods:

1. First-in, first-out (FIFO)
2. Last-in, first-out (LIFO)
3. Average-cost

There is no accounting requirement that the cost flow assumption be consistent with the physical movement of the goods. Company management selects the appropriate cost flow method.

To demonstrate the three cost flow methods, we will use a ***periodic*** inventory system. We assume a periodic system for two main reasons. First, many small companies use periodic rather than perpetual systems. Second, **very few companies use *perpetual* LIFO, FIFO, or average-cost** to cost their inventory and related cost of goods sold. Instead, companies that use perpetual systems often use an assumed cost (called a standard cost) to record cost of goods sold at the time of sale. Then, at the end of the period when they count their inventory, they **recalculate cost of goods sold using *periodic* FIFO, LIFO, or average-cost** and adjust cost of goods sold to this recalculated number.[1]

To illustrate the three inventory cost flow methods, we will use the data for Houston Electronics' Astro condensers, shown in Illustration 6-4.

Illustration 6-4 Data for Houston Electronics

HOUSTON ELECTRONICS
Astro Condensers

Date	Explanation	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Jan. 1	Beginning inventory	100	$10	$ 1,000
Apr. 15	Purchase	200	11	2,200
Aug. 24	Purchase	300	12	3,600
Nov. 27	Purchase	400	13	5,200
	Total units available for sale	1,000		$12,000
	Units in ending inventory	450		
	Units sold	550		

From Chapter 5, the cost of goods sold formula in a periodic system is:

(Beginning Inventory + Purchases) − Ending Inventory = Cost of Goods Sold

Houston Electronics had a total of 1,000 units available to sell during the period (beginning inventory plus purchases). The total cost of these 1,000 units is $12,000, referred to as *cost of goods available for sale*. A physical inventory taken at December 31 determined that there were 450 units in ending inventory. Therefore, Houston sold 550 units (1,000 − 450) during the period. To determine the cost of the 550 units that were sold (the cost of goods sold), we assign a cost to the ending inventory and subtract that value from the cost of goods available for sale. The

[1]Also, some companies use a perpetual system to keep track of units, but they do not make an entry for perpetual cost of goods sold. In addition, firms that employ LIFO tend to use *dollar-value LIFO*, a method discussed in upper-level courses. FIFO periodic and FIFO perpetual give the same result; therefore firms should not incur the additional cost to use FIFO perpetual. Few firms use perpetual average-cost because of the added cost of record-keeping. Finally, for instructional purposes, we believe it is easier to demonstrate the cost flow assumptions under the periodic system, which makes it more pedagogically appropriate.

value assigned to the ending inventory **will depend on which cost flow method we use**. No matter which cost flow assumption we use, though, the sum of cost of goods sold plus the cost of the ending inventory must equal the cost of goods available for sale—in this case, $12,000.

First-In, First-Out (FIFO)

The **FIFO (first-in, first-out) method** assumes that the **earliest goods** purchased are the first to be sold. FIFO often parallels the actual physical flow of merchandise because it generally is good business practice to sell the oldest units first. Under the FIFO method, therefore, the **costs** of the earliest goods purchased are the first to be recognized in determining cost of goods sold, regardless which units were actually sold. (Note that this does not mean that the oldest units *are* sold first, but that the costs of the oldest units are *recognized* first. In a bin of picture hangers at the hardware store, for example, no one really knows, nor would it matter, which hangers are sold first.) Illustration 6-5 shows the allocation of the cost of goods available for sale at Houston Electronics under FIFO.

Illustration 6-5 Allocation of costs—FIFO method

Helpful Hint Note the sequencing of the allocation: (1) Compute ending inventory, and (2) determine cost of goods sold.

COST OF GOODS AVAILABLE FOR SALE

Date	Explanation	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Jan. 1	Beginning inventory	100	$10	$ 1,000
Apr. 15	Purchase	200	11	2,200
Aug. 24	Purchase	300	12	3,600
Nov. 27	Purchase	400	13	5,200
	Total	1,000		$12,000

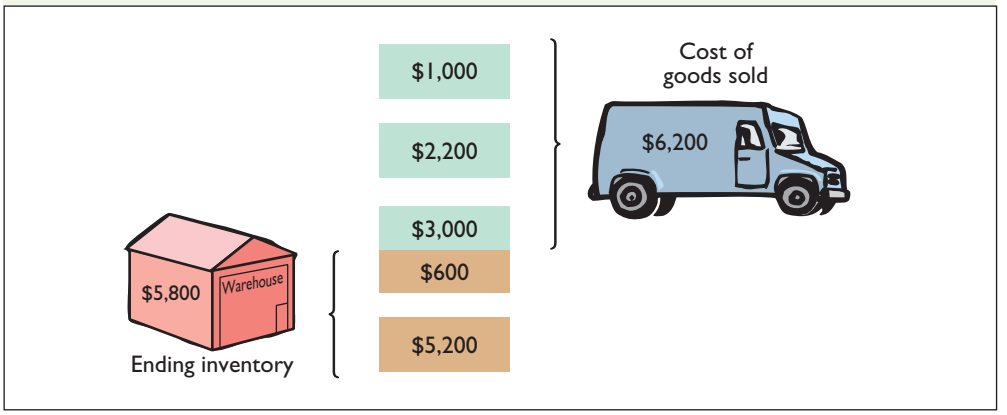
STEP 1: ENDING INVENTORY

Helpful Hint Another way of thinking about the calculation of FIFO **ending inventory** is the *LISH assumption*–last in still here.

Date	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Nov. 27	400	$13	$ 5,200
Aug. 24	50	12	600
Total	450		$5,800

STEP 2: COST OF GOODS SOLD

Cost of goods available for sale	$12,000
Less: Ending inventory	5,800
Cost of goods sold	$ 6,200



Under FIFO, since it is assumed that the first goods purchased were the first goods sold, ending inventory is based on the prices of the most recent units purchased. That is, **under FIFO, companies determine the cost of the ending inventory by taking the unit cost of the most recent purchase and working backward until all units of inventory have been costed.** In this example, Houston Electronics prices the 450 units of ending inventory using the *most recent* prices. The last purchase was 400 units at $13 on November 27. The remaining 50 units are priced using the unit cost of the second most recent

purchase, $12, on August 24. Next, Houston Electronics calculates cost of goods sold by subtracting the cost of the units **not sold** (ending inventory) from the cost of all goods available for sale.

Illustration 6-6 demonstrates that companies also can calculate cost of goods sold by pricing the 550 units sold using the prices of the first 550 units acquired. Note that of the 300 units purchased on August 24, only 250 units are assumed sold. This agrees with our calculation of the cost of ending inventory, where 50 of these units were assumed unsold and thus included in ending inventory.

Date	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Jan. 1	100	$10	$ 1,000
Apr. 15	200	11	2,200
Aug. 24	250	12	3,000
Total	550		$6,200

Illustration 6-6 Proof of cost of goods sold

Last-In, First-Out (LIFO)

The **LIFO (last-in, first-out) method** assumes that the **latest goods** purchased are the first to be sold. LIFO seldom coincides with the actual physical flow of inventory. (Exceptions include goods stored in piles, such as coal or hay, where goods are removed from the top of the pile as they are sold.) Under the LIFO method, the **costs** of the latest goods purchased are the first to be recognized in determining cost of goods sold. Illustration 6-7 shows the allocation of the cost of goods available for sale at Houston Electronics under LIFO.

Illustration 6-7 Allocation of costs—LIFO method

COST OF GOODS AVAILABLE FOR SALE

Date	Explanation	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Jan. 1	Beginning inventory	100	$10	$ 1,000
Apr. 15	Purchase	200	11	2,200
Aug. 24	Purchase	300	12	3,600
Nov. 27	Purchase	400	13	5,200
	Total	1,000		$12,000

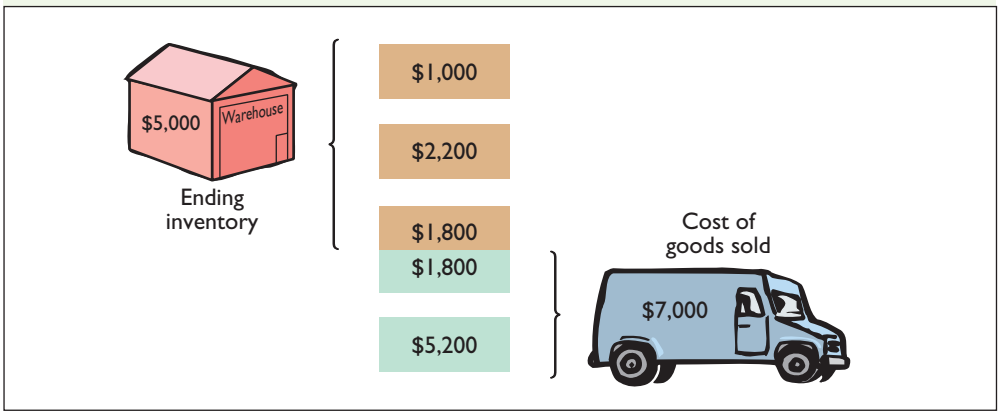
STEP 1: ENDING INVENTORY

Date	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Jan. 1	100	$10	$ 1,000
Apr. 15	200	11	2,200
Aug. 24	150	12	1,800
Total	450		$5,000

STEP 2: COST OF GOODS SOLD

Cost of goods available for sale	$12,000
Less: Ending inventory	5,000
Cost of goods sold	$ 7,000

Helpful Hint Another way of thinking about the calculation of LIFO **ending inventory** is the *FISH assumption*—first in still here.



Under LIFO, since it is assumed that the first goods sold were those that were most recently purchased, ending inventory is based on the prices of the oldest units purchased. That is, **under LIFO, companies obtain the cost of the ending inventory by taking the unit cost of the earliest goods available for sale and working forward until all units of inventory have been costed**. In this example, Houston Electronics prices the 450 units of ending inventory using the *earliest* prices. The first purchase was 100 units at $10 in the January 1 beginning inventory. Then 200 units were purchased at $11. The remaining 150 units needed are priced at $12 per unit (August 24 purchase). Next, Houston Electronics calculates cost of goods sold by subtracting the cost of the units **not sold** (ending inventory) from the cost of all goods available for sale.

Illustration 6-8 demonstrates that we can also calculate cost of goods sold by pricing the 550 units sold using the prices of the last 550 units acquired. Note that of the 300 units purchased on August 24, only 150 units are assumed sold. This agrees with our calculation of the cost of ending inventory, where 150 of these units were assumed unsold and thus included in ending inventory.

Illustration 6-8 Proof of cost of goods sold

Date	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Nov. 27	400	$13	$ 5,200
Aug. 24	150	12	1,800
Total	550		$7,000

Under a periodic inventory system, which we are using here, **all goods purchased during the period are assumed to be available for the first sale, regardless of the date of purchase**.

Average-Cost

The **average-cost method** allocates the cost of goods available for sale on the basis of the **weighted-average unit cost** incurred. Illustration 6-9 presents the formula and a sample computation of the weighted-average unit cost.

Illustration 6-9 Formula for weighted-average unit cost

Cost of Goods Available for Sale	÷	Total Units Available for Sale	=	Weighted-Average Unit Cost
$12,000	÷	1,000	=	$12.00

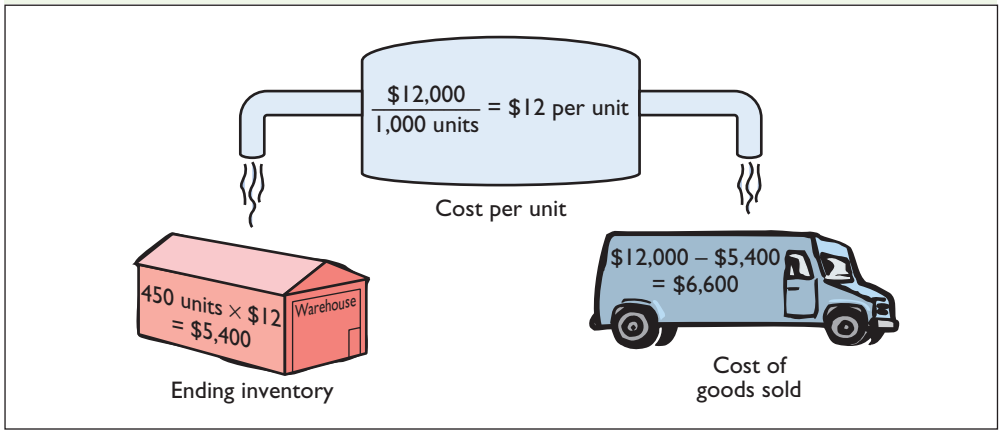
The company then applies the weighted-average unit cost to the units on hand to determine the cost of the ending inventory. Illustration 6-10 shows the allocation of the cost of goods available for sale at Houston Electronics using average-cost.

We can verify the cost of goods sold under this method by multiplying the units sold times the weighted-average unit cost (550 × $12 = $6,600). Note that this method does not use the simple average of the unit costs. That average is $11.50 ($10 + $11 + $12 + $13 = $46; $46 ÷ 4). The average-cost method instead uses the average **weighted by** the quantities purchased at each unit cost.

Illustration 6-10
Allocation of costs—average-cost method

COST OF GOODS AVAILABLE FOR SALE				
Date	**Explanation**	**Units**	**Unit Cost**	**Total Cost**
Jan. 1	Beginning inventory	100	$10	$ 1,000
Apr. 15	Purchase	200	11	2,200
Aug. 24	Purchase	300	12	3,600
Nov. 27	Purchase	400	13	5,200
	Total	1,000		$12,000

STEP 1: ENDING INVENTORY					STEP 2: COST OF GOODS SOLD	
$12,000	÷	1,000	=	$12.00	Cost of goods available for sale	$12,000
		Unit		**Total**	Less: Ending inventory	5,400
Units		**Cost**		**Cost**	Cost of goods sold	$ 6,600
450		$12.00		$5,400		



before you go on...

Do it! The accounting records of Shumway Ag Implement show the following data.

Beginning inventory	4,000 units at $3
Purchases	6,000 units at $4
Sales	7,000 units at $12

Determine (a) the cost of goods available for sale and (b) the cost of goods sold during the period under a periodic system using (i) FIFO, (ii) LIFO, and (iii) average-cost.

Solution

(a) Cost of goods available for sale: (4,000 × $3) + (6,000 × $4) = $36,000
(b) Cost of goods sold using:
  (i) FIFO: $36,000 − (3,000* × $4) = $24,000
  (ii) LIFO: $36,000 − (3,000 × $3) = $27,000
  (iii) Average-cost: Weighted-average price = ($36,000 ÷ 10,000) = $3.60
  $36,000 − (3,000 × $3.60) = $25,200

*(4,000 + 6,000 − 7,000)

Related exercise material: **BE6-2, BE6-3, Do it! 6-2, E6-4,** and **E6-5.**

COST FLOW METHODS

Action Plan

- Understand the periodic inventory system.
- Allocate costs between goods sold and goods on hand (ending inventory) for each cost flow method.
- Compute cost of goods sold for each cost flow method.

the navigator

FINANCIAL STATEMENT AND TAX EFFECTS OF COST FLOW METHODS

study objective 3

Explain the financial statement and tax effects of each of the inventory cost flow assumptions.

Each of the three assumed cost flow methods is acceptable for use under GAAP. For example, Reebok International Ltd. and Wendy's International currently use the FIFO method of inventory costing. Campbell Soup Company, Krogers, and Walgreens use LIFO for part or all of their inventory. Bristol-Myers Squibb, Starbucks, and Motorola use the average-cost method. In fact, a company may also use more than one cost flow method at the same time. Stanley Black & Decker Manufacturing Company, for example, uses LIFO for domestic inventories and FIFO for foreign inventories. Illustration 6-11 shows the use of the three cost flow methods in the 600 largest U.S. companies.

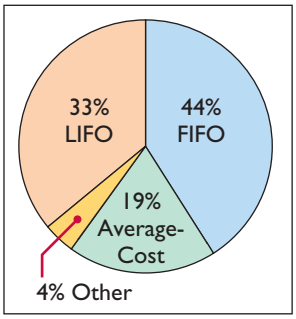


Illustration 6-11 Use of cost flow methods in major U.S. companies

The reasons companies adopt different inventory cost flow methods are varied, but they usually involve at least one of the following three factors:

1. Income statement effects
2. Balance sheet effects
3. Tax effects

Income Statement Effects

To understand why companies might choose a particular cost flow method, let's examine the effects of the different cost flow assumptions on the financial statements of Houston Electronics. The condensed income statements in Illustration 6-12 assume that Houston sold its 550 units for $18,500, had operating expenses of $9,000, and is subject to an income tax rate of 30%.

Illustration 6-12 Comparative effects of cost flow methods

HOUSTON ELECTRONICS
Condensed Income Statements

	FIFO	LIFO	Average-Cost
Sales revenue	$18,500	$18,500	$18,500
Beginning inventory	1,000	1,000	1,000
Purchases	11,000	11,000	11,000
Cost of goods available for sale	12,000	12,000	12,000
Less: Ending inventory	**5,800**	**5,000**	**5,400**
Cost of goods sold	6,200	7,000	6,600
Gross profit	12,300	11,500	11,900
Operating expenses	9,000	9,000	9,000
Income before income taxes	3,300	2,500	2,900
Income tax expense (30%)	990	750	870
Net income	**$ 2,310**	**$ 1,750**	**$ 2,030**

Note the cost of goods available for sale ($12,000) is the same under each of the three inventory cost flow methods. However, the ending inventories and the costs of goods sold are different. This difference is due to the unit costs that the company allocated to cost of goods sold and to ending inventory. Each dollar of difference in ending inventory results in a corresponding dollar difference in income before income taxes. For Houston, an $800 difference exists between FIFO and LIFO cost of goods sold.

In periods of changing prices, the cost flow assumption can have a significant impact on income and on evaluations based on income. In most instances, prices are rising (inflation). In a period of inflation, FIFO produces a higher net

income because the lower unit costs of the first units purchased are matched against revenues. In a period of rising prices (as is the case in the Houston example), FIFO reports the highest net income ($2,310) and LIFO the lowest ($1,750); average-cost falls in the middle ($2,030). If prices are falling, the results from the use of FIFO and LIFO are reversed: FIFO will report the lowest net income and LIFO the highest.

To management, higher net income is an advantage: It causes external users to view the company more favorably. In addition, management bonuses, if based on net income, will be higher. Therefore, when prices are rising (which is usually the case), companies tend to prefer FIFO because it results in higher net income.

Some argue that the use of LIFO in a period of inflation reduces the likelihood that the company will report **paper** (or **phantom**) **profit** as economic gain. To illustrate, assume that Kralik Company buys 200 units of a product at $20 per unit on January 10 and 200 more on December 31 at $24 each. During the year, Kralik sells 200 units at $30 each. Illustration 6-13 shows the results under FIFO and LIFO.

Illustration 6-13 Income statement effects compared

	FIFO		LIFO	
Sales revenue (200 × $30)	$6,000		$6,000	
Cost of goods sold	**4,000**	**(200 × $20)**	**4,800**	**(200 × $24)**
Gross profit	$2,000		$1,200	

Under LIFO, Kralik Company has recovered the current replacement cost ($4,800) of the units sold. Thus, the gross profit in economic terms is real. However, under FIFO, the company has recovered only the January 10 cost ($4,000). To replace the units sold, it must reinvest $800 (200 × $4) of the gross profit. Thus, $800 of the gross profit is said to be phantom or illusory. As a result, reported net income is also overstated in real terms.

Balance Sheet Effects

A major advantage of the FIFO method is that in a period of inflation, the costs allocated to ending inventory will approximate their current cost. For example, for Houston Electronics, 400 of the 450 units in the ending inventory are costed under FIFO at the higher November 27 unit cost of $13.

Conversely, a major shortcoming of the LIFO method is that in a period of inflation, the costs allocated to ending inventory may be significantly understated in terms of current cost. The understatement becomes greater over prolonged periods of inflation if the inventory includes goods purchased in one or more prior accounting periods. For example, Caterpillar has used LIFO for 50 years. Its balance sheet shows ending inventory of $4,675 million. But, the inventory's actual current cost if FIFO had been used is $6,799 million.

Helpful Hint A tax rule, often referred to as the *LIFO conformity rule*, requires that if companies use LIFO for tax purposes, they must also use it for financial reporting purposes. This means that if a company chooses the LIFO method to reduce its tax bills, it will also have to report lower net income in its financial statements.

Tax Effects

We have seen that both inventory on the balance sheet and net income on the income statement are higher when companies use FIFO in a period of inflation. Yet, many companies use LIFO. Why? The reason is that LIFO results in the lowest income taxes (because of lower net income) during times of rising prices. For example, in Illustration 6-12, income taxes are $750 under LIFO, compared to $990 under FIFO. The tax savings of $240 makes more cash available for use in the business.

International Insight

Is LIFO Fair?

ExxonMobil Corporation, like many U.S. companies, uses LIFO to value its inventory for financial reporting and tax purposes. In one recent year, this resulted in a cost of goods sold figure that was $5.6 billion higher than under FIFO. By increasing cost of goods sold, ExxonMobil reduces net income, which reduces taxes. Critics say that LIFO provides an unfair "tax dodge." As Congress looks for more sources of tax revenue, some lawmakers favor the elimination of LIFO. Supporters of LIFO argue that the method is conceptually sound because it matches current costs with current revenues. In addition, they point out that this matching provides protection against inflation.

International accounting standards do not allow the use of LIFO. Because of this, the net income of foreign oil companies, such as BP and Royal Dutch Shell, are not directly comparable to U.S. companies, which makes analysis difficult.

Source: David Reilly, "Big Oil's Accounting Methods Fuel Criticism," *Wall Street Journal* (August 8, 2006), p. C1.

? What are the arguments for and against the use of LIFO? (See page 330.)

KEEPING AN EYE ON CASH

You have just seen that when prices are rising the use of LIFO can have a big effect on taxes. The lower taxes paid using LIFO can significantly increase cash flows. To demonstrate the effect of the cost flow assumptions on cash flow, we will calculate net cash provided by operating activities, using the data for Houston Electronics from Illustration 6-12. To simplify our example, we assume that Houston's sales and purchases are all cash transactions. We also assume that operating expenses, other than $4,600 of depreciation, are cash transactions.

	FIFO	LIFO	Average-Cost
Cash received from customers	$18,500	$18,500	$18,500
Cash purchases of goods	11,000	11,000	11,000
Cash paid for operating expenses ($9,000 − $4,600)	4,400	4,400	4,400
Cash paid for taxes	990	750	870
Net cash provided by operating activities	$ 2,110	$ 2,350	$ 2,230

LIFO has the highest net cash provided by operating activities because it results in the lowest tax payments. Since cash flow is the lifeblood of any organization, the choice of inventory method is very important.

LIFO also impacts the quality of earnings ratio. Recall that the quality of earnings ratio is net cash provided by operating activities divided by net income. Here, we calculate the quality earnings ratio under each cost flow assumption.

	FIFO	LIFO	Average-Cost
Net income (from Illustration 6-12)	$2,310	$1,750	$2,030
Quality of earnings ratio	0.91	1.34	1.1

LIFO has the highest quality of earnings ratio for two reasons: (1) It has the highest net cash provided by operating activities, which increases the ratio's numerator. (2) It reports a conservative measure of net income, which decreases the ratio's denominator. As discussed earlier, LIFO provides a conservative measure of net income because it does not include the phantom profits reported under FIFO.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Which inventory costing method should be used?	Are prices increasing, or are they decreasing?	Income statement, balance sheet, and tax effects	Depends on objective. In a period of rising prices, income and inventory are higher and cash flow is lower under FIFO. LIFO provides opposite results. Average-cost can moderate the impact of changing prices.

USING INVENTORY COST FLOW METHODS CONSISTENTLY

Whatever cost flow method a company chooses, it should use that method consistently from one accounting period to another. Consistent application enhances the ability to analyze a company's financial statements over successive time periods. In contrast, using the FIFO method one year and the LIFO method the next year would make it difficult to compare the net incomes of the two years.

Although consistent application is preferred, it does not mean that a company may *never* change its method of inventory costing. When a company adopts a different method, it should disclose in the financial statements the change and its effects on net income. A typical disclosure is shown in Illustration 6-14, using information from recent financial statements of the Quaker Oats Company.

Helpful Hint As you learned in Chapter 2, consistency and comparability are important characteristics of accounting information.

QUAKER OATS COMPANY
Notes to the Financial Statements

Note 1: Effective July 1, the Company adopted the LIFO cost flow assumption for valuing the majority of U.S. Grocery Products inventories. The Company believes that the use of the LIFO method better matches current costs with current revenues. The effect of this change on the current year was to decrease net income by $16.0 million.

Illustration 6-14
Disclosure of change in cost flow method

LOWER-OF-COST-OR-MARKET

study objective 4
Explain the lower-of-cost-or-market basis of accounting for inventories.

The value of inventory for companies selling high-technology or fashion goods can drop very quickly due to changes in technology or changes in fashions. These circumstances sometimes call for inventory valuation methods other than those presented so far. For example, in a recent year, purchasing managers at Ford decided to make a large purchase of palladium, a precious metal used in vehicle emission devices. They made this large purchase because they feared a future shortage. The shortage did not materialize, and by the end of the year the price of palladium had plummeted. Ford's inventory was then worth $1 billion less than its original cost. Do you think Ford's inventory should have been stated at cost, in accordance with the cost principle, or at its lower replacement cost?

As you probably reasoned, this situation requires a departure from the cost basis of accounting. When the value of inventory is lower than its cost, companies write down the inventory to its market value. This is done by valuing the inventory at the **lower-of-cost-or-market (LCM)** in the period in which the price decline occurs. LCM is an example of the accounting **concept of conservatism**, which means that the best choice among accounting alternatives is the method that is least likely to overstate assets and net income.

International Note Under U.S. GAAP, companies cannot reverse inventory write-downs if inventory increases in value in subsequent periods. IFRS permits companies to reverse write-downs in some circumstances.

Companies apply LCM to the items in inventory after they have used one of the cost flow methods (specific identification, FIFO, LIFO, or average-cost) to determine cost. Under the LCM basis, market is defined as **current replacement cost**, not selling price. For a merchandising company, market is the cost of

purchasing the same goods at the present time from the usual suppliers in the usual quantities. Current replacement cost is used because a decline in the replacement cost of an item usually leads to a decline in the selling price of the item.

To illustrate the application of LCM, assume that Ken Tuckie TV has the following lines of merchandise with costs and market values as indicated. LCM produces the results shown in Illustration 6-15. Note that the amounts shown in the final column are the lower-of-cost-or-market amounts for each item.

Illustration 6-15
Computation of inventory at lower-of-cost-or-market

	Cost	Market	Lower-of-Cost-or-Market
Flat-panel TVs	$60,000	$55,000	$ 55,000
Satellite radios	45,000	52,000	45,000
DVD recorders	48,000	45,000	45,000
DVDs	15,000	14,000	14,000
Total inventory			$159,000

Adherence to LCM is important. A Chinese manufacturer of silicon wafers for solar energy panels, LDK Solar Co., was accused of violating LCM. When the financial press reported accusations that two-thirds of its inventory of silicon was unsuitable for processing, the company's stock price fell by 40%.

before you go on...

LCM BASIS

Do it! Tracy Company sells three different types of home heating stoves (wood, gas, and pellet). The cost and market value of its inventory of stoves are as follows.

	Cost	Market
Gas	$ 84,000	$ 79,000
Wood	250,000	280,000
Pellet	112,000	101,000

Determine the value of the company's inventory under the lower-of-cost-or-market approach.

Action Plan

- Determine whether cost or market value is lower for each inventory type.
- Sum the lower value of each inventory type to determine the total value of inventory.

Solution

The lower value for each inventory type is: gas $79,000, wood $250,000, and pellet $101,000. The total inventory value is the sum of these figures, $430,000.

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE6-7, Do it! 6-3,** and **E6-9.**

Analysis of Inventory

For companies that sell goods, managing inventory levels can be one of the most critical tasks. Having too much inventory on hand costs the company money in storage costs, interest cost (on funds tied up in inventory), and costs associated with the obsolescence of technical goods (e.g., computer chips) or shifts in fashion (e.g., clothes). But having too little inventory on hand results in lost sales. In this section, we discuss some issues related to evaluating inventory levels.

study objective 5
Compute and interpret the inventory turnover ratio.

INVENTORY TURNOVER RATIO

The **inventory turnover ratio** is calculated as cost of goods sold divided by average inventory. It indicates how quickly a company sells its goods—the number of times the average inventory "turns over" (is sold) during the year.

Inventory turnover can be divided into 365 days to compute **days in inventory**, which indicates the average number of days inventory is held.

High inventory turnover (low days in inventory) indicates the company has minimal funds tied up in inventory—that it has a minimal amount of inventory on hand at any one time. Although minimizing the funds tied up in inventory is efficient, too high an inventory turnover ratio may indicate that the company is losing sales opportunities because of inventory shortages. For example, investment analysts at one time suggested that Office Depot had gone too far in reducing its inventory—they said they were seeing too many empty shelves. Thus, management should closely monitor this ratio to achieve the best balance between too much and too little inventory.

In Chapter 5, we discussed the increasingly competitive environment of retailers like Wal-Mart and Target. Wal-Mart has implemented **just-in-time inventory procedures** as well as many technological innovations to improve the efficiency of its inventory management. The following data are available for Wal-Mart.

(in millions)	2009	2008
Ending inventory	$ 34,511	$35,159
Cost of goods sold	306,158	

Illustration 6-16 presents the inventory turnover ratios and days in inventory for Wal-Mart and Target, using data from the financial statements of those corporations for 2009 and 2008.

Illustration 6-16 Inventory turnover ratio and days in inventory

$$\text{Inventory Turnover Ratio} = \frac{\text{Cost of Goods Sold}}{\text{Average Inventory}}$$

$$\text{Days in Inventory} = \frac{365}{\text{Inventory Turnover Ratio}}$$

Ratio	Wal-Mart ($ in millions)		Target	Industry Average
	2009	2008	2009	2009
Inventory turnover ratio	$\frac{\$306,158}{(\$34,511 + \$35,159)/2}$ = 8.8 times	7.8 times	6.5 times	8.6 times
Days in inventory	$\frac{365 \text{ days}}{8.8}$ = 41.5 days	46.8 days	56.2 days	42.4 days

The calculations in Illustration 6-16 show that Wal-Mart turns its inventory more frequently than Target and the industry average (8.8 times for Wal-Mart versus 6.5 times for Target and 8.6 for the industry). Consequently, the average time an item spends on a Wal-Mart shelf is shorter (41.5 days for Wal-Mart versus 56.2 days for Target and 42.4 days for the industry). This suggests that Wal-Mart is more efficient than Target in its inventory management.

Note also that Wal-Mart's inventory turnover, which was already very good in 2008, improved significantly in 2009. Wal-Mart's sophisticated inventory tracking and distribution system allows it to keep minimum amounts of inventory on hand, while still keeping the shelves full of what customers are looking for.

Accounting Across the Organization

Improving Inventory Control with RFID

Wal-Mart improved its inventory control with the introduction of radio frequency identification (RFID). Much like bar codes, which tell a retailer the number of boxes of a specific product it has, RFID goes a step farther, helping to distinguish one box of a specific product from another. RFID uses technology similar to that used by keyless remotes that unlock car doors.

Companies currently use RFID to track shipments from supplier to distribution center to store. Other potential uses include monitoring product expiration dates and acting quickly on product recalls. Wal-Mart also anticipates faster returns and warranty processing using RFID. This technology will further assist Wal-Mart managers in their efforts to ensure that their store has just the right type of inventory, in just the right amount, in just the right place. Other companies are also interested in RFID. Best Buy has spent millions researching possible applications in its stores.

? Why is inventory control important to managers such as those at Wal-Mart and Best Buy? (See page 330.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How long is an item in inventory?	Cost of goods sold; beginning and ending inventory	$\text{Inventory turnover ratio} = \frac{\text{Cost of goods sold}}{\text{Average inventory}}$ $\text{Days in inventory} = \frac{365 \text{ days}}{\text{Inventory turnover ratio}}$	A higher inventory turnover ratio or lower average days in inventory suggests that management is reducing the amount of inventory on hand, relative to cost of goods sold.

before you go on...

INVENTORY TURNOVER

Do it! Early in 2012, Westmoreland Company switched to a just-in-time inventory system. Its sales, cost of goods sold, and inventory amounts for 2011 and 2012 are shown below.

	2011	2012
Sales revenue	$2,000,000	$1,800,000
Cost of goods sold	1,000,000	910,000
Beginning inventory	290,000	210,000
Ending inventory	210,000	50,000

Determine the inventory turnover and days in inventory for 2011 and 2012. Discuss the changes in the amount of inventory, the inventory turnover and days in inventory, and the amount of sales across the two years.

Solution

	2011		2012	
Inventory turnover ratio	$\frac{\$1,000,000}{(\$290,000 + \$210,000)/2}$	= 4	$\frac{\$910,000}{(\$210,000 + \$50,000)/2}$	= 7
Days in inventory	365 ÷ 4 = 91.3 days		365 ÷ 7 = 52.1 days	

The company experienced a very significant decline in its ending inventory as a result of the just-in-time inventory. This decline improved its inventory turnover ratio and its days in inventory. However, its sales declined by 10%. It is possible that this decline was caused by the dramatic reduction in the amount of inventory that was on hand, which increased the likelihood of "stock-outs." To determine the optimal inventory level, management must weigh the benefits of reduced inventory against the potential lost sales caused by stock-outs.

Related exercise material: **BE6-8,** ***Do it!*** **6-4,** and **E6-10.**

Action Plan

- To find the inventory turnover ratio, divide cost of goods sold by average inventory.
- To determine days in inventory, divide 365 days by the inventory turnover ratio.
- Just-in-time inventory reduces the amount of inventory on hand, which reduces carrying costs. Reducing inventory levels by too much has potential negative implications for sales.

the navigator

ANALYSTS' ADJUSTMENTS FOR LIFO RESERVE

study objective 6

Describe the LIFO reserve and explain its importance for comparing results of different companies.

Earlier we noted that using LIFO rather than FIFO can result in significant differences in the results reported in the balance sheet and the income statement. With increasing prices, FIFO will result in higher income than LIFO. On the balance sheet, FIFO will result in higher reported inventory. The financial statement differences from using LIFO normally increase the longer a company uses LIFO.

Use of different inventory cost flow assumptions complicates analysts' attempts to compare companies' results. Fortunately, companies using LIFO are required to report the difference between inventory reported using LIFO and inventory using FIFO. This amount is referred to as the **LIFO reserve**. Reporting the LIFO reserve enables analysts to make adjustments to compare companies that use different cost flow methods.

Illustration 6-17 presents an excerpt from the notes to Caterpillar's 2009 financial statements that discloses and discusses Caterpillar's LIFO reserve.

CATERPILLAR INC.
Notes to the Financial Statements

Inventories: Inventories are stated at the lower of cost or market. Cost is principally determined using the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method . . . . If the FIFO (first-in, first-out) method had been in use, inventories would have been $3,003, $3,183, and $2,617 million higher than reported at December 31, 2009, 2008, and 2007, respectively.

Illustration 6-17
Caterpillar LIFO reserve

Caterpillar has used LIFO for over 50 years. Thus, the cumulative difference between LIFO and FIFO reflected in the Inventory account is very large. In fact, the 2009 LIFO reserve of $3,003 million is 47% of the 2009 LIFO inventory of $6,360 million. Such a huge difference would clearly distort any comparisons you might try to make with one of Caterpillar's competitors that used FIFO.

To adjust Caterpillar's inventory balance, we add the LIFO reserve to reported inventory, as shown in Illustration 6-18. That is, if Caterpillar had used FIFO all along, its inventory would be $9,363 million, rather than $6,360 million.

Illustration 6-18 Conversion of inventory from LIFO to FIFO

	(in millions)
2009 inventory using LIFO	$ 6,360
2009 LIFO reserve	3,003
2009 inventory assuming FIFO	**$9,363**

The LIFO reserve can have a significant effect on ratios that analysts commonly use. Using the LIFO reserve adjustment, Illustration 6-19 calculates the value of the current ratio (current assets ÷ current liabilities) for Caterpillar under both the LIFO and FIFO cost flow assumptions.

Illustration 6-19 Impact of LIFO reserve on ratios

($ in millions)	LIFO	FIFO
Current ratio	$\frac{\$26,789}{\$19,292} = 1.39:1$	$\frac{\$26,789 + \$3,003}{\$19,292} = 1.54:1$

As Illustration 6-19 shows, if Caterpillar used FIFO, its current ratio would be 1.54:1 rather than 1.39:1 under LIFO. Thus, Caterpillar's liquidity appears stronger if a FIFO assumption were used in valuing inventories. If a similar adjustment is made for the inventory turnover ratio, Caterpillar's inventory turnover actually would look worse under FIFO than under LIFO, dropping from 3.2 times for LIFO to 2.3 times for FIFO.[2] The reason: LIFO reports low inventory amounts, which cause inventory turnover to be higher.

CNH Global, a competitor of Caterpillar, uses FIFO to account for its inventory. Comparing Caterpillar to CNH without converting Caterpillar's inventory to FIFO would lead to distortions and potentially erroneous decisions.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
What is the impact of LIFO on the company's reported inventory?	LIFO reserve, cost of goods sold, ending inventory, current assets, current liabilities	LIFO inventory + LIFO reserve = FIFO inventory	If these adjustments are material, they can significantly affect such measures as the current ratio and the inventory turnover ratio.

[2]The LIFO reserve also affects cost of goods sold although typically by a much less material amount. The cost of goods sold adjustment is discussed in more advanced financial statement analysis texts.

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

The Manitowoc Company is located in Manitowoc, Wisconsin. In recent years, it has made a series of strategic acquisitions to grow and enhance its market-leading positions in each of its three business segments. These include: cranes and related products (crawler cranes, tower cranes, and boom trucks); food service equipment (commercial ice-cube machines, ice-beverage dispensers, and commercial refrigeration equipment); and marine operations (shipbuilding and ship-repair services). The company reported inventory of $595.5 million for 2009 and of $925.3 million for 2008. Here is the inventory note taken from the 2009 financial statements.

THE MANITOWOC COMPANY
Notes to the Financial Statements

Inventories: The components of inventories at December 31 are summarized as follows (in millions).

	2009	2008
Inventories—gross		
Raw materials	$244.5	$ 416.0
Work-in-process	163.5	262.9
Finished goods	310.8	352.3
Total	718.8	1,031.2
Less: Excess and obsolete inventory reserve	(90.9)	(70.1)
Net inventories at FIFO cost	627.9	961.1
Less: Excess of FIFO costs over LIFO value	(32.4)	(35.8)
Inventories—net (as reported on balance sheet)	$595.5	$ 925.3

Manitowoc carries inventory at the lower-of-cost-or-market using the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method for approximately 90% of total inventory for 2009 and 2008. The remainder of the inventory is costed using the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method.

Additional facts:

2009 Current liabilities	$1,142.2
2009 Current assets (as reported)	1,259.9
2009 Cost of goods sold	2,958.0

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

1. Why does the company report its inventory in three components?
2. Why might the company use two methods (LIFO and FIFO) to account for its inventory?
3. Perform each of the following.
   (a) Calculate the inventory turnover ratio and days in inventory using the LIFO inventory.
   (b) Calculate the 2009 current ratio using LIFO and the current ratio using FIFO. Discuss the difference.

Solution

1. The Manitowoc Company is a manufacturer, so it purchases raw materials and makes them into finished products. At the end of each period, it has some goods that have been started but are not yet complete (work in process).

By reporting all three components of inventory, a company reveals important information about its inventory position. For example, if amounts of raw materials have increased significantly compared to the previous year, we might assume the company is planning to step up production. On the other hand, if levels of finished goods have increased relative to last year and raw materials have declined, we might conclude that sales are slowing down—that the company has too much inventory on hand and is cutting back production.

2. Companies are free to choose different cost flow assumptions for different types of inventory. A company might choose to use FIFO for a product that is expected to decrease in price over time. One common reason for choosing a method other than LIFO is that many foreign countries do not allow LIFO; thus, the company cannot use LIFO for its foreign operations.

3. (a) $$\text{Inventory turnover ratio} = \frac{\text{Cost of goods sold}}{\text{Average inventory}} = \frac{\$2{,}958.0}{(\$595.5 + \$925.3)/2} = 3.9$$

$$\text{Days in inventory} = \frac{365}{\text{Inventory turnover ratio}} = \frac{365}{3.9} = 93.6 \text{ days}$$

(b) Current ratio

	LIFO	FIFO
$\frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$	$\frac{\$1{,}259.9}{\$1{,}142.2} = 1.10{:}1$	$\frac{\$1{,}259.9 + \$32.4}{\$1{,}142.2} = 1.13{:}1$

This represents a 2.7% increase in the current ratio (1.13 − 1.10)/1.10.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Describe the steps in determining inventory quantities. The steps are (1) take a physical inventory of goods on hand and (2) determine the ownership of goods in transit or on consignment.

2 Explain the basis of accounting for inventories and apply the inventory cost flow methods under a periodic inventory system. The primary basis of accounting for inventories is cost. Cost includes all expenditures necessary to acquire goods and place them in a condition ready for sale. Cost of goods available for sale includes (a) cost of beginning inventory and (b) cost of goods purchased. The inventory cost flow methods are: specific identification and three assumed cost flow methods—FIFO, LIFO, and average-cost.

3 Explain the financial statement and tax effects of each of the inventory cost flow assumptions. The cost of goods available for sale may be allocated to cost of goods sold and ending inventory by specific identification or by a method based on an assumed cost flow. When prices are rising, the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method results in lower cost of goods sold and higher net income than the average-cost and the last-in, first-out (LIFO) methods. The reverse is true when prices are falling. In the balance sheet, FIFO results in an ending inventory that is closest to current value, whereas the inventory under LIFO is the farthest from current value. LIFO results in the lowest income taxes (because of lower taxable income).

4 Explain the lower-of-cost-or-market basis of accounting for inventories. Companies use the lower-of-cost-or-market (LCM) basis when the current replacement cost (market) is less than cost. Under LCM, companies recognize the loss in the period in which the price decline occurs.

5 Compute and interpret the inventory turnover ratio. The inventory turnover ratio is calculated as cost of goods sold divided by average inventory. It can be converted to average days in inventory by dividing 365 days by the inventory turnover ratio. A higher turnover ratio or lower average days in inventory suggests that management is trying to keep inventory levels low relative to its sales level.

6 Describe the LIFO reserve and explain its importance for comparing results of different companies. The LIFO reserve represents the difference between ending inventory using LIFO and ending inventory if FIFO were employed instead. For some companies this difference can be significant, and ignoring it can lead to inappropriate conclusions when using the current ratio or inventory turnover ratio.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Which inventory costing method should be used?	Are prices increasing, or are they decreasing?	Income statement, balance sheet, and tax effects	Depends on objective. In a period of rising prices, income and inventory are higher and cash flow is lower under FIFO. LIFO provides opposite results. Average-cost can moderate the impact of changing prices.
How long is an item in inventory?	Cost of goods sold; beginning and ending inventory	Inventory turnover ratio $= \frac{\text{Cost of goods sold}}{\text{Average inventory}}$ Days in inventory $= \frac{365 \text{ days}}{\text{Inventory turnover ratio}}$	A higher inventory turnover ratio or lower average days in inventory suggests that management is reducing the amount of inventory on hand, relative to cost of goods sold.
What is the impact of LIFO on the company's reported inventory?	LIFO reserve, cost of goods sold, ending inventory, current assets, current liabilities	LIFO inventory + LIFO reserve = FIFO inventory	If these adjustments are material, they can significantly affect such measures as the current ratio and the inventory turnover ratio.

appendix 6A

Inventory Cost Flow Methods in Perpetual Inventory Systems

Each of the inventory cost flow methods described in the chapter for a periodic inventory system may be used in a perpetual inventory system. To illustrate the application of the three assumed cost flow methods (FIFO, LIFO, and average-cost), we will use the data shown in Illustration 6A-1 and in this chapter for Houston Electronics' Astro condensers.

study objective 7

Apply the inventory cost flow methods to perpetual inventory records.

Illustration 6A-1
Inventoriable units and costs

HOUSTON ELECTRONICS
Astro Condensers

Date	Explanation	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost	Balance in Units
1/1	Beginning inventory	100	$10	$ 1,000	100
4/15	Purchase	200	11	2,200	300
8/24	Purchase	300	12	3,600	600
9/10	Sale	550			50
11/27	Purchase	400	13	5,200	450
				$12,000	

FIRST-IN, FIRST-OUT (FIFO)

Under FIFO, the cost of the earliest goods on hand **prior to each sale** is charged to cost of goods sold. Therefore, the cost of goods sold on September 10 consists of the units on hand January 1 and the units purchased April 15 and August 24. Illustration 6A-2 shows the inventory under a FIFO method perpetual system.

Illustration 6A-2
Perpetual system–FIFO

Date	Purchases	Cost of Goods Sold	Balance	
Jan. 1			(100 @ $10)	$1,000
Apr. 15	(200 @ $11) $2,200		(100 @ $10) (200 @ $11)	$3,200
Aug. 24	(300 @ $12) $3,600		(100 @ $10) (200 @ $11) (300 @ $12)	$6,800
Sept. 10		(100 @ $10) (200 @ $11) (250 @ $12) **$6,200**	(50 @ $12)	$ 600
Nov. 27	(400 @ $13) $5,200		(50 @ $12) (400 @ $13)	**$5,800**

The ending inventory in this situation is $5,800, and the cost of goods sold is $6,200 [(100 @ $10) + (200 @ $11) + (250 @ $12)].

The results under FIFO in a perpetual system are the **same as in a periodic system**. (See Illustration 6-5 on page 288 where, similarly, the ending inventory is $5,800 and cost of goods sold is $6,200.) Regardless of the system, the first costs in are the costs assigned to cost of goods sold.

LAST-IN, FIRST-OUT (LIFO)

Under the LIFO method using a perpetual system, the cost of the most recent purchase prior to sale is allocated to the units sold. Therefore, the cost of the goods sold on September 10 consists of all the units from the August 24 and April 15 purchases plus 50 of the units in beginning inventory. The ending inventory under the LIFO method is computed in Illustration 6A-3.

Illustration 6A-3
Perpetual system–LIFO

Date	Purchases	Cost of Goods Sold	Balance	
Jan. 1			(100 @ $10)	$1,000
Apr. 15	(200 @ $11) $2,200		(100 @ $10) (200 @ $11)	$3,200
Aug. 24	(300 @ $12) $3,600		(100 @ $10) (200 @ $11) (300 @ $12)	$6,800
Sept. 10		(300 @ $12) (200 @ $11) (50 @ $10) **$6,300**	(50 @ $10)	$ 500
Nov. 27	(400 @ $13) $5,200		(50 @ $10) (400 @ $13)	**$5,700**

The use of LIFO in a perpetual system will usually produce cost allocations that differ from use of LIFO in a periodic system. In a perpetual system, the

latest units purchased *prior to each sale* are allocated to cost of goods sold. In contrast, in a periodic system, the latest units purchased *during the period* are allocated to cost of goods sold. Thus, when a purchase is made after the last sale, the LIFO periodic system will apply this purchase to the previous sale. See Illustration 6-8 (on page 290) where the proof shows the 400 units at $13 purchased on November 27 applied to the sale of 550 units on September 10.

As shown above, under the LIFO perpetual system the 400 units at $13 purchased on November 27 are all applied to the ending inventory.

The ending inventory in this LIFO perpetual illustration is $5,700 and cost of goods sold is $6,300. Compare this to the LIFO periodic illustration (Illustration 6-7 on page 289) where the ending inventory is $5,000 and cost of goods sold is $7,000.

AVERAGE-COST

The average-cost method in a perpetual inventory system is called the **moving-average method**. Under this method, the company computes a new average **after each purchase**. The average cost is computed by dividing the cost of goods available for sale by the units on hand. The average cost is then applied to: (1) the units sold, to determine the cost of goods sold, and (2) the remaining units on hand, to determine the ending inventory amount. Illustration 6A-4 shows the application of the average-cost method by Houston Electronics.

Illustration 6A-4
Perpetual system—average-cost method

Date	Purchases		Cost of Goods Sold	Balance	
Jan. 1				(100 @ $10)	$ 1,000
Apr. 15	(200 @ $11)	$2,200		(300 @ $10.667)	$ 3,200
Aug. 24	(300 @ $12)	$3,600		(600 @ $11.333)	$ 6,800
Sept. 10			(550 @ $11.333) **$6,233**	(50 @ $11.333)	$ 567
Nov. 27	(400 @ $13)	$5,200		(450 @ $12.816)	**$5,767**

As indicated above, the company computes **a new average each time it makes a purchase**. On April 15, after 200 units are purchased for $2,200, a total of 300 units costing $3,200 ($1,000 + $2,200) are on hand. The average unit cost is $10.667 ($3,200 ÷ 300). On August 24, after 300 units are purchased for $3,600, a total of 600 units costing $6,800 ($1,000 + $2,200 + $3,600) are on hand at an average cost per unit of $11.333 ($6,800 ÷ 600). Houston Electronics uses this unit cost of $11.333 in costing sales until another purchase is made, when the company computes a new unit cost. Accordingly, the unit cost of the 550 units sold on September 10 is $11.333, and the total cost of goods sold is $6,233. On November 27, following the purchase of 400 units for $5,200, there are 450 units on hand costing $5,767 ($567 + $5,200) with a new average cost of $12.816 ($5,767 ÷ 450).

Compare this moving-average cost under the perpetual inventory system to Illustration 6-10 (on page 291) showing the weighted-average method under a periodic inventory system.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 6A

7 Apply the inventory cost flow methods to perpetual inventory records. Under FIFO, the cost of the earliest goods on hand prior to each sale is charged to cost of goods sold. Under LIFO, the cost of the most recent purchase prior to sale is charged to cost of goods sold. Under the average-cost method, a new average cost is computed after each purchase.

appendix 6B

Inventory Errors

study objective 8

Indicate the effects of inventory errors on the financial statements.

Unfortunately, errors occasionally occur in accounting for inventory. In some cases, errors are caused by failure to count or price the inventory correctly. In other cases, errors occur because companies do not properly recognize the transfer of legal title to goods that are in transit. When inventory errors occur, they affect both the income statement and the balance sheet.

INCOME STATEMENT EFFECTS

Under a periodic inventory system, both the beginning and ending inventories appear in the income statement. The ending inventory of one period automatically becomes the beginning inventory of the next period. Thus, inventory errors affect the computation of cost of goods sold and net income in two periods.

The effects on cost of goods sold can be computed by entering incorrect data in the formula in Illustration 6B-1 and then substituting the correct data.

Illustration 6B-1 Formula for cost of goods sold

Beginning Inventory	+	Cost of Goods Purchased	−	Ending Inventory	=	Cost of Goods Sold

If *beginning* inventory is understated, cost of goods sold will be understated. If *ending* inventory is understated, cost of goods sold will be overstated. Illustration 6B-2 shows the effects of inventory errors on the current year's income statement.

Illustration 6B-2 Effects of inventory errors on current year's income statement

Inventory Error	Cost of Goods Sold	Net Income
Beginning inventory understated	Understated	Overstated
Beginning inventory overstated	Overstated	Understated
Ending inventory understated	Overstated	Understated
Ending inventory overstated	Understated	Overstated

Ethics Note Inventory fraud increases during recessions. Such fraud includes pricing inventory at amounts in excess of its actual value, or claiming to have inventory when no inventory exists. Inventory fraud is usually done to overstate ending inventory, thereby understating cost of goods sold and creating higher income.

An error in the ending inventory of the current period will have a **reverse effect on net income of the next accounting period**. This is shown in Illustration 6B-3. Note that the understatement of ending inventory in 2011 results in an understatement of beginning inventory in 2012 and an overstatement of net income in 2012.

Over the two years, total net income is correct because the errors offset each other. Notice that total income using incorrect data is $35,000 ($22,000 + $13,000), which is the same as the total income of $35,000 ($25,000 + $10,000) using correct data. Also note in this example that an error in the beginning inventory does not result in a corresponding error in the ending inventory for that period. The correctness of the ending inventory depends entirely on the accuracy of taking and costing the inventory at the balance sheet date under the periodic inventory system.

SAMPLE COMPANY
Condensed Income Statements

	2011				2012			
	Incorrect		Correct		Incorrect		Correct	
Sales revenue		$80,000		$80,000		$90,000		$90,000
Beginning inventory	$20,000		$20,000		**$12,000**		**$15,000**	
Cost of goods purchased	40,000		40,000		68,000		68,000	
Cost of goods available for sale	60,000		60,000		80,000		83,000	
Ending inventory	**12,000**		**15,000**		23,000		23,000	
Cost of goods sold		48,000		45,000		57,000		60,000
Gross profit		32,000		35,000		33,000		30,000
Operating expenses		10,000		10,000		20,000		20,000
Net income		$22,000		$25,000		$13,000		$10,000

$(3,000)
Net income
understated

$3,000
Net income
overstated

The errors cancel. Thus, the combined total income for the 2-year period is correct.

Illustration 6B-3 Effects of inventory errors on two years' income statements

BALANCE SHEET EFFECTS

The effect of ending inventory errors on the balance sheet can be determined by using the basic accounting equation: Assets = Liabilities + Stockholders' equity. Errors in the ending inventory have the effects shown in Illustration 6B-4.

Ending Inventory Error	Assets	Liabilities	Stockholders' Equity
Overstated	Overstated	No effect	Overstated
Understated	Understated	No effect	Understated

Illustration 6B-4 Effects of ending inventory errors on balance sheet

The effect of an error in ending inventory on the subsequent period was shown in Illustration 6B-3. Recall that if the error is not corrected, the combined total net income for the two periods would be correct. Thus, total stockholders' equity reported on the balance sheet at the end of 2012 will also be correct.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 6B

8 Indicate the effects of inventory errors on the financial statements. In the income statement of the current year: (1) An error in beginning inventory will have a reverse effect on net income (e.g., overstatement of inventory results in understatement of net income, and vice versa). (2) An error in ending inventory will have a similar effect on net income (e.g., overstatement of inventory results in overstatement of net income). If ending inventory errors are not corrected in the following period, their effect on net income for that period is reversed, and total net income for the two years will be correct.

In the balance sheet: Ending inventory errors will have the same effect on total assets and total stockholders' equity and no effect on liabilities.

Glossary

Average-cost method *(p. 290)* An inventory costing method that uses the weighted-average unit cost to allocate the cost of goods available for sale to ending inventory and cost of goods sold.

Consigned goods *(p. 284)* Goods held for sale by one party although ownership of the goods is retained by another party.

Current replacement cost *(p. 295)* The cost of purchasing the same goods at the present time from the usual suppliers in the usual quantities.

Days in inventory *(p. 297)* Measure of the average number of days inventory is held; calculated as 365 divided by inventory turnover ratio.

Finished goods inventory *(p. 282)* Manufactured items that are completed and ready for sale.

First-in, first-out (FIFO) method *(p. 288)* An inventory costing method that assumes that the earliest goods purchased are the first to be sold.

FOB destination *(p. 284)* Freight terms indicating that ownership of goods remains with the seller until the goods reach the buyer.

FOB shipping point *(p. 284)* Freight terms indicating that ownership of goods passes to the buyer when the public carrier accepts the goods from the seller.

Inventory turnover ratio *(p. 296)* A ratio that measures the liquidity of inventory by measuring the number of times average inventory sold during the period; computed by dividing cost of goods sold by the average inventory during the period.

Just-in-time (JIT) inventory *(p. 283)* Inventory system in which companies manufacture or purchase goods just in time for use.

Last-in, first-out (LIFO) method *(p. 289)* An inventory costing method that assumes that the latest units purchased are the first to be sold.

LIFO reserve *(p. 299)* For a company using LIFO, the difference between inventory reported using LIFO and inventory using FIFO.

Lower-of-cost-or-market (LCM) *(p. 295)* A basis whereby inventory is stated at the lower of either its cost or its market value as determined by current replacement cost.

Raw materials *(p. 282)* Basic goods that will be used in production but have not yet been placed in production.

Specific identification method *(p. 286)* An actual physical flow costing method in which items sold and items still in inventory are specifically costed to arrive at cost of goods sold and ending inventory.

Weighted-average unit cost *(p. 290)* Average cost that is weighted by the number of units purchased at each unit cost.

Work in process *(p. 282)* That portion of manufactured inventory that has begun the production process but is not yet complete.

Comprehensive Do it!

Englehart Company has the following inventory, purchases, and sales data for the month of March.

Inventory, March 1	200 units @ $4.00	$ 800
Purchases		
March 10	500 units @ $4.50	2,250
March 20	400 units @ $4.75	1,900
March 30	300 units @ $5.00	1,500
Sales		
March 15	500 units	
March 25	400 units	

The physical inventory count on March 31 shows 500 units on hand.

Instructions

Under a **periodic inventory system**, determine the cost of inventory on hand at March 31 and the cost of goods sold for March under (a) the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method; (b) the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method; and (c) the average-cost method. (For average-cost, carry cost per unit to three decimal places.)

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

The cost of goods available for sale is $6,450:

Inventory Purchases	200 units @ $4.00	$ 800
March 10	500 units @ $4.50	2,250
March 20	400 units @ $4.75	1,900
March 30	300 units @ $5.00	1,500
Total cost of goods available for sale		$6,450

(a) **FIFO Method**

Ending inventory:

Date	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost	
Mar. 30	300	$5.00	$1,500	
Mar. 20	200	4.75	950	$2,450
Cost of goods sold: $6,450 − $2,450 =				$4,000

(b) **LIFO Method**

Ending inventory:

Date	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost	
Mar. 1	200	$4.00	$ 800	
Mar. 10	300	4.50	1,350	$2,150
Cost of goods sold: $6,450 − $2,150 =				$4,300

(c) **Average-Cost Method**

Weighted-average unit cost: $6,450 ÷ 1,400 = $4.607

Ending inventory: 500 × $4.607 = $2,303.50

Cost of goods sold: $6,450 − $2,303.50 = $4,146.50

Action Plan

- For FIFO, allocate the latest costs to inventory.
- For LIFO, allocate the earliest costs to inventory.
- For average-cost, use a weighted average.
- Remember, the costs allocated to cost of goods sold can be proved.
- Total purchases are the same under all three cost flow assumptions.

the navigator

WILEY PLUS Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Note: All Questions, Exercises, and Problems marked with an asterisk relate to material in the appendices to the chapter.

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 330.

(SO 1) **1.** When is a physical inventory usually taken?
(a) When the company has its greatest amount of inventory.
(b) When a limited number of goods are being sold or received.
(c) At the end of the company's fiscal year.
(d) Both (b) and (c).

(SO 1) **2.** Which of the following should *not* be included in the physical inventory of a company?
(a) Goods held on consignment from another company.
(b) Goods shipped on consignment to another company.
(c) Goods in transit from another company shipped FOB shipping point.
(d) All of the above should be included.

(SO 1) **3.** As a result of a thorough physical inventory, Railway Company determined that it had inventory worth $180,000 at December 31, 2012. This count did not take into consideration the following facts: Rogers Consignment store currently has goods worth $35,000 on its sales floor that belong to Railway but

are being sold on consignment by Rogers. The selling price of these goods is $50,000. Railway purchased $13,000 of goods that were shipped on December 27, FOB destination, that will be received by Railway on January 3. Determine the correct amount of inventory that Railway should report.
(a) $230,000.
(b) $215,000.
(c) $228,000.
(d) $193,000.

(SO 2) **4.** Kam Company has the following units and costs.

	Units	Unit Cost
Inventory, Jan. 1	8,000	$11
Purchase, June 19	13,000	12
Purchase, Nov. 8	5,000	13

If 9,000 units are on hand at December 31, what is the cost of the ending inventory under FIFO?
(a) $99,000.
(b) $108,000.
(c) $113,000.
(d) $117,000.

(SO 2) **5.** From the data in question 4, what is the cost of the ending inventory under LIFO?
(a) $113,000.
(b) $108,000.
(c) $99,000.
(d) $100,000.

(SO 2) **6.** Davidson Electronics has the following:

	Units	Unit Cost
Inventory, Jan. 1	5,000	$ 8
Purchase, April 2	15,000	10
Purchase, Aug. 28	20,000	12

If Davidson has 7,000 units on hand at December 31, the cost of ending inventory under the average-cost method is:
(a) $84,000.
(b) $70,000.
(c) $56,000.
(d) $75,250.

(SO 3) **7.** In periods of rising prices, LIFO will produce:
(a) higher net income than FIFO.
(b) the same net income as FIFO.
(c) lower net income than FIFO.
(d) higher net income than average-cost.

(SO 3) **8.** Considerations that affect the selection of an inventory costing method do *not* include:
(a) tax effects.
(b) balance sheet effects.
(c) income statement effects.
(d) perpetual versus periodic inventory system.

(SO 4) **9.** The lower-of-cost-or-market rule for inventory is an example of the application of:
(a) the conservatism constraint.
(b) the historical cost principle.
(c) the materiality constraint.
(d) the economic entity assumption.

(SO 5) **10.** Which of these would cause the inventory turnover ratio to increase the most?
(a) Increasing the amount of inventory on hand.
(b) Keeping the amount of inventory on hand constant but increasing sales.
(c) Keeping the amount of inventory on hand constant but decreasing sales.
(d) Decreasing the amount of inventory on hand and increasing sales.

11. Carlos Company had beginning inventory of $80,000, ending inventory of $110,000, cost of goods sold of $285,000, and sales of $475,000. Carlos's days in inventory is: (SO 5)
(a) 73 days.
(b) 121.7 days.
(c) 102.5 days.
(d) 84.5 days.

12. The LIFO reserve is: (SO 6)
(a) the difference between the value of the inventory under LIFO and the value under FIFO.
(b) an amount used to adjust inventory to the lower-of-cost-or-market.
(c) the difference between the value of the inventory under LIFO and the value under average-cost.
(d) an amount used to adjust inventory to historical cost.

***13.** In a perpetual inventory system, (SO 7)
(a) LIFO cost of goods sold will be the same as in a periodic inventory system.
(b) average costs are based entirely on unit-cost simple averages.
(c) a new average is computed under the average-cost method after each sale.
(d) FIFO cost of goods sold will be the same as in a periodic inventory system.

***14.** Fran Company's ending inventory is understated by $4,000. The effects of this error on the current year's cost of goods sold and net income, respectively, are: (SO 8)
(a) understated and overstated.
(b) overstated and understated.
(c) overstated and overstated.
(d) understated and understated.

***15.** Harold Company overstated its inventory by $15,000 at December 31, 2012. It did not correct the error in 2012 or 2013. As a result, Harold's stockholders' equity was: (SO 4)
(a) overstated at December 31, 2012, and understated at December 31, 2013.
(b) overstated at December 31, 2012, and properly stated at December 31, 2013.
(c) understated at December 31, 2012, and understated at December 31, 2013.
(d) overstated at December 31, 2012, and overstated at December 31, 2013.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. "The key to successful business operations is effective inventory management." Do you agree? Explain.
2. An item must possess two characteristics to be classified as inventory. What are these two characteristics?
3. What is just-in-time inventory management? What are its potential advantages?
4. Your friend Sara Hovey has been hired to help take the physical inventory in Malaby's Hardware Store. Explain to Sara what this job will entail.
5. (a) Brandt Company ships merchandise to England Corporation on December 30. The merchandise reaches the buyer on January 5. Indicate the terms of sale that will result in the goods being included in (1) Brandt's December 31 inventory and (2) England's December 31 inventory.
   (b) Under what circumstances should Brandt Company include consigned goods in its inventory?
6. Katz Hat Shop received a shipment of hats for which it paid the wholesaler $2,940. The price of the hats was $3,000, but Katz was given a $60 cash discount and required to pay freight charges of $75. What amount should Katz include in inventory? Why?
7. What is the primary basis of accounting for inventories? What is the major objective in accounting for inventories?
8. Brad Watters believes that the allocation of cost of goods available for sale should be based on the actual physical flow of the goods. Explain to Brad why this may be both impractical and inappropriate.
9. What is the major advantage and major disadvantage of the specific identification method of inventory costing?
10. "The selection of an inventory cost flow method is a decision made by accountants." Do you agree? Explain. Once a method has been selected, what accounting requirement applies?
11. Which assumed inventory cost flow method:
    (a) usually parallels the actual physical flow of merchandise?
    (b) divides cost of goods available for sale by total units available for sale to determine a unit cost?
    (c) assumes that the latest units purchased are the first to be sold?
12. In a period of rising prices, the inventory reported in King Company's balance sheet is close to the current cost of the inventory, whereas Ritchie Company's inventory is considerably below its current cost. Identify the inventory cost flow method used by each company. Which company probably has been reporting the higher gross profit?
13. Azenabor Corporation has been using the FIFO cost flow method during a prolonged period of inflation. During the same time period, Azenabor has been paying out all of its net income as dividends. What adverse effects may result from this policy?
14. Thomas Holme, a mid-level product manager for Dorothy's Shoes, thinks his company should switch from LIFO to FIFO. He says, "My bonus is based on net income. If we switch it will increase net income and increase my bonus. The company would be better off and so would I." Is he correct? Explain.
15. Discuss the impact the use of LIFO has on taxes paid, cash flows, and the quality of earnings ratio relative to the impact of FIFO when prices are increasing.
16. What inventory cost flow method does Tootsie Roll Industries use for U.S. inventories? What method does it use for foreign inventories? (*Hint:* You will need to examine the notes for Tootsie Roll's financial statements.) Why does it use a different method for foreign inventories?
17. Olivia Dietz is studying for the next accounting midterm examination. What should Olivia know about (a) departing from the cost basis of accounting for inventories and (b) the meaning of "market" in the lower-of-cost-or-market method?
18. Cataldi Music Center has five TVs on hand at the balance sheet date that cost $400 each. The current replacement cost is $350 per unit. Under the lower-of-cost-or-market basis of accounting for inventories, what value should Cataldi report for the TVs on the balance sheet? Why?
19. What cost flow assumption may be used under the lower-of-cost-or-market basis of accounting for inventories?
20. Why is it inappropriate for a company to include freight-out expense in the Cost of Goods Sold account?
21. Berges Company's balance sheet shows Inventory $162,800. What additional disclosures should be made?
22. Under what circumstances might the inventory turnover ratio be too high—that is, what possible negative consequences might occur?
23. What is the LIFO reserve? What are the consequences of ignoring a large LIFO reserve when analyzing a company?

*24. "When perpetual inventory records are kept, the results under the FIFO and LIFO methods are the same as they would be in a periodic inventory system." Do you agree? Explain.

*25. How does the average-cost method of inventory costing differ between a perpetual inventory system and a periodic inventory system?

*26. Nicholas Company discovers in 2012 that its ending inventory at December 31, 2011, was $5,000 understated. What effect will this error have on (a) 2011 net income, (b) 2012 net income, and (c) the combined net income for the 2 years?

Brief Exercises

Identify items to be included in taking a physical inventory.
(SO 1), C

BE6-1 Susan Cashin Company identifies the following items for possible inclusion in the physical inventory. Indicate whether each item should be included or excluded from the inventory taking.
(a) 900 units of inventory shipped on consignment by Cashin to another company.
(b) 3,000 units of inventory in transit from a supplier shipped FOB destination.
(c) 1,200 units of inventory sold but being held for customer pickup.
(d) 500 units of inventory held on consignment from another company.

Compute ending inventory using FIFO and LIFO.
(SO 2), AP

BE6-2 In its first month of operations, Cisler Company made three purchases of merchandise in the following sequence: (1) 300 units at $6, (2) 400 units at $8, and (3) 500 units at $9. Assuming there are 200 units on hand at the end of the period, compute the cost of the ending inventory under (a) the FIFO method and (b) the LIFO method. Cisler uses a periodic inventory system.

Compute the ending inventory using average-cost.
(SO 2), AP

BE6-3 Data for Cisler Company are presented in BE6-2. Compute the cost of the ending inventory under the average-cost method, assuming there are 300 units on hand. (Round the cost per unit to three decimal places.)

Explain the financial statement effect of inventory cost flow assumptions.
(SO 3), C

BE6-4 The management of Easterling Corp. is considering the effects of various inventory-costing methods on its financial statements and its income tax expense. Assuming that the price the company pays for inventory is increasing, which method will:
(a) provide the highest net income?
(b) provide the highest ending inventory?
(c) result in the lowest income tax expense?
(d) result in the most stable earnings over a number of years?

Explain the financial statement effect of inventory cost flow assumptions.
(SO 3), AP

BE6-5 In its first month of operation, Moraine Company purchased 100 units of inventory for $6, then 200 units for $7, and finally 140 units for $8. At the end of the month, 180 units remained. Compute the amount of phantom profit that would result if the company used FIFO rather than LIFO. Explain why this amount is referred to as phantom profit. The company uses the periodic method.

Identify the impact of LIFO versus FIFO.
(SO 3), C

BE6-6 For each of the following cases, state whether the statement is true for LIFO or for FIFO. Assume that prices are rising.
(a) Results in a higher quality of earnings ratio.
(b) Results in higher phantom profits.
(c) Results in higher net income.
(d) Results in lower taxes.
(e) Results in lower net cash provided by operating activities.

Determine the LCM valuation.
(SO 4), AP

BE6-7 Olsson Video Center accumulates the following cost and market data at December 31.

Inventory Categories	Cost Data	Market Data
Cameras	$12,500	$13,400
Camcorders	9,000	9,500
DVDs	13,000	12,200

Compute the lower-of-cost-or-market valuation for Olsson inventory.

Compute inventory turnover ratio and days in inventory.
(SO 5), AP

BE6-8 At December 31 of a recent year, the following information (in thousands) was available for sunglasses manufacturer Oakley, Inc.: ending inventory $155,377; beginning inventory $119,035; cost of goods sold $349,114; and sales revenue $761,865. Calculate the inventory turnover ratio and days in inventory for Oakley, Inc.

Determine ending inventory and cost of goods sold using LIFO reserve.
(SO 6), C

BE6-9 Winnebago Industries, Inc. is a leading manufacturer of motor homes. Winnebago reported ending inventory at August 29, 2009, of $46,850,000 under the LIFO inventory method. In the notes to its financial statements, Winnebago reported a LIFO reserve of $30,346,000 at August 29, 2009. What would Winnebago Industries' ending inventory have been if it had used FIFO?

Apply cost flow methods to perpetual inventory records.
(SO 7), AP

***BE6-10** Dewey's Department Store uses a perpetual inventory system. Data for product E2-D2 include the purchases shown on page 313.

Date	Number of Units	Unit Price
May 7	50	$10
July 28	30	15

On June 1, Dewey sold 25 units, and on August 27, 30 more units. Compute the cost of goods sold using (1) FIFO, (2) LIFO, and (3) average-cost. (Round the cost per unit to three decimal places.)

***BE6-11** Roskopf Company reports net income of $92,000 in 2012. However, ending inventory was understated by $7,000. What is the correct net income for 2012? What effect, if any, will this error have on total assets as reported in the balance sheet at December 31, 2012?

Determine correct financial statement amount.
(SO 8), **AN**

Do it! Review

Do it! 6-1 Newell Company just took its physical inventory. The count of inventory items on hand at the company's business locations resulted in a total inventory cost of $300,000. In reviewing the details of the count and related inventory transactions, you have discovered the following items that had not been considered.

Apply rules of ownership to determine inventory cost.
(SO 1), **AN**

1. Newell has sent inventory costing $28,000 on consignment to Victoria Company. All of this inventory was at Victoria's showrooms on December 31.
2. The company did not include in the count inventory (cost, $20,000) that was sold on December 28, terms FOB shipping point. The goods were in transit on December 31.
3. The company did not include in the count inventory (cost, $13,000) that was purchased with terms of FOB shipping point. The goods were in transit on December 31.

Compute the correct December 31 inventory.

Do it! 6-2 The accounting records of Orth Electronics show the following data.

Compute cost of goods sold under different cost flow methods.
(SO 2), **AP**

Beginning inventory	3,000 units at $5
Purchases	8,000 units at $7
Sales	9,400 units at $10

Determine cost of goods sold during the period under a periodic inventory system using (a) the FIFO method, (b) the LIFO method, and (c) the average-cost method. (Round unit cost to three decimal places.)

Do it! 6-3 Bardell Company sells three different categories of tools (small, medium and large). The cost and market value of its inventory of tools are as follows.

Compute inventory value under LCM.
(SO 4), **AP**

	Cost	Market
Small	$ 64,000	$ 61,000
Medium	290,000	260,000
Large	152,000	167,000

Determine the value of the company's inventory under the lower-of-cost-or-market approach.

Do it! 6-4 Early in 2012, Aragon Company switched to a just-in-time inventory system. Its sales and inventory amounts for 2011 and 2012 are shown below.

Compute inventory turnover ratio and assess inventory level.
(SO 5), **AN**

	2011	2012
Sales revenue	$3,120,000	$3,713,000
Cost of goods sold	1,200,000	1,425,000
Beginning inventory	170,000	210,000
Ending inventory	210,000	90,000

Determine the inventory turnover and days in inventory for 2011 and 2012. Discuss the changes in the amount of inventory, the inventory turnover and days in inventory, and the amount of sales across the two years.

Exercises

Determine the correct inventory amount.
(SO 1), AN

E6-1 Worthmore Bank and Trust is considering giving Madsen Company a loan. Before doing so, it decides that further discussions with Madsen's accountant may be desirable. One area of particular concern is the Inventory account, which has a year-end balance of $275,000. Discussions with the accountant reveal the following.

1. Madsen sold goods costing $55,000 to Allen Company FOB shipping point on December 28. The goods are not expected to reach Allen until January 12. The goods were not included in the physical inventory because they were not in the warehouse.
2. The physical count of the inventory did not include goods costing $95,000 that were shipped to Madsen FOB destination on December 27 and were still in transit at year-end.
3. Madsen received goods costing $25,000 on January 2. The goods were shipped FOB shipping point on December 26 by Lynch Co. The goods were not included in the physical count.
4. Madsen sold goods costing $51,000 to Finet of Canada FOB destination on December 30. The goods were received in Canada on January 8. They were not included in Madsen's physical inventory.
5. Madsen received goods costing $42,000 on January 2 that were shipped FOB destination on December 29. The shipment was a rush order that was supposed to arrive December 31. This purchase was included in the ending inventory of $275,000.

Instructions
Determine the correct inventory amount on December 31.

Determine the correct inventory amount.
(SO 1), AN

E6-2 Jerry Karron, an auditor with Joshi CPAs, is performing a review of Duncan Company's Inventory account. Duncan did not have a good year, and top management is under pressure to boost reported income. According to its records, the inventory balance at year-end was $740,000. However, the following information was not considered when determining that amount.

1. Included in the company's count were goods with a cost of $228,000 that the company is holding on consignment. The goods belong to Arnold Corporation.
2. The physical count did not include goods purchased by Duncan with a cost of $40,000 that were shipped FOB shipping point on December 28 and did not arrive at Duncan's warehouse until January 3.
3. Included in the Inventory account was $17,000 of office supplies that were stored in the warehouse and were to be used by the company's supervisors and managers during the coming year.
4. The company received an order on December 29 that was boxed and was sitting on the loading dock awaiting pick-up on December 31. The shipper picked up the goods on January 1 and delivered them on January 6. The shipping terms were FOB shipping point. The goods had a selling price of $40,000 and a cost of $29,000. The goods were not included in the count because they were sitting on the dock.
5. On December 29, Duncan shipped goods with a selling price of $80,000 and a cost of $50,000 to Siebring Sales Corporation FOB shipping point. The goods arrived on January 3. Siebring Sales had only ordered goods with a selling price of $10,000 and a cost of $6,000. However, a sales manager at Duncan had authorized the shipment and said that if Siebring wanted to ship the goods back next week, it could.
6. Included in the count was $50,000 of goods that were parts for a machine that the company no longer made. Given the high-tech nature of Duncan's products, it was unlikely that these obsolete parts had any other use. However, management would prefer to keep them on the books at cost, "since that is what we paid for them, after all."

Instructions
Prepare a schedule to determine the correct inventory amount. Provide explanations for each item above, stating why you did or did not make an adjustment for each item.

Identify items in inventory.
(SO 1), K

E6-3 Trinh Inc. had the following inventory situations to consider at January 31, its year-end.

(a) Goods held on consignment for MailBoxes Corp. since December 12.
(b) Goods shipped on consignment to Reddy Holdings Inc. on January 5.
(c) Goods shipped to a customer, FOB destination, on January 29 that are still in transit.

(d) Goods shipped to a customer, FOB shipping point, on January 29 that are still in transit.
(e) Goods purchased FOB destination from a supplier on January 25, that are still in transit.
(f) Goods purchased FOB shipping point from a supplier on January 25, that are still in transit.
(g) Office supplies on hand at January 31.

Instructions
Identify which of the preceding items should be included in inventory. If the item should not be included in inventory, state in what account, if any, it should have been recorded.

E6-4 Sunburst sells a snowboard, Xpert, that is popular with snowboard enthusiasts. Below is information relating to Sunburst's purchases of Xpert snowboards during September. During the same month, 116 Xpert snowboards were sold. Sunburst uses a periodic inventory system.

Compute inventory and cost of goods sold using periodic FIFO and LIFO.
(SO 2), **AN**

Date	Explanation	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Sept. 1	Inventory	12	$100	$ 1,200
Sept. 12	Purchases	45	103	4,635
Sept. 19	Purchases	20	104	2,080
Sept. 26	Purchases	50	105	5,250
	Totals	127		$13,165

Instructions
(a) Compute the ending inventory at September 30 using the FIFO and LIFO methods. Prove the amount allocated to cost of goods sold under each method.
(b) For both FIFO and LIFO, calculate the sum of ending inventory and cost of goods sold. What do you notice about the answers you found for each method?

E6-5 Klumb Inc. uses a periodic inventory system. Its records show the following for the month of May, in which 74 units were sold.

Calculate inventory and cost of goods sold using FIFO, average-cost, and LIFO in a periodic inventory system.
(SO 2), **AP**

Date	Explanation	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
May 1	Inventory	30	$ 9	$270
15	Purchase	25	10	250
24	Purchase	38	11	418
	Total	93		$938

Instructions
Calculate the ending inventory at May 31 using the (a) FIFO, (b) average-cost, and (c) LIFO methods. (For average-cost, round the average unit cost to three decimal places.) Prove the amount allocated to cost of goods sold under each method.

E6-6 On December 1, LoPrice Electronics has three DVD players left in stock. All are identical, all are priced to sell at $85. One of the three DVD players left in stock, with serial #1012, was purchased on June 1 at a cost of $52. Another, with serial #1045, was purchased on November 1 for $48. The last player, serial #1056, was purchased on November 30 for $40.

Calculate cost of goods sold using specific identification and FIFO periodic.
(SO 2, 3), **AN**

Instructions
(a) Calculate the cost of goods sold using the FIFO periodic inventory method, assuming that two of the three players were sold by the end of December, LoPrice Electronics' year-end.
(b) If LoPrice Electronics used the specific identification method instead of the FIFO method, how might it alter its earnings by "selectively choosing" which particular players to sell to the two customers? What would LoPrice's cost of goods sold be if the company wished to minimize earnings? Maximize earnings?
(c) Which inventory method, FIFO or specific identification, do you recommend that LoPrice use? Explain why.

Compute inventory and cost of goods sold using periodic FIFO, LIFO, and average-cost.
(SO 2, 3), AP

E6-7 Kuchin Company reports the following for the month of June.

Date	Explanation	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
June 1	Inventory	120	$5	$ 600
12	Purchase	370	6	2,220
23	Purchase	500	7	3,500
30	Inventory	240		

Instructions
(a) Compute the cost of the ending inventory and the cost of goods sold under (1) FIFO, (2) LIFO, and (3) average-cost.
(b) Which costing method gives the highest ending inventory? The highest cost of goods sold? Why?
(c) How do the average-cost values for ending inventory and cost of goods sold relate to ending inventory and cost of goods sold for FIFO and LIFO?
(d) Explain why the average cost is not $6.

Evaluate impact of LIFO and FIFO on cash flows and earnings quality.
(SO 3), AP

E6-8 The following comparative information is available for Prasad Company for 2012.

	LIFO	FIFO
Sales revenue	$86,000	$86,000
Cost of goods sold	38,000	29,000
Operating expenses (including depreciation)	27,000	27,000
Depreciation	10,000	10,000
Cash paid for inventory purchases	32,000	32,000

Instructions
(a) Determine net income under each approach. Assume a 30% tax rate.
(b) Determine net cash provided by operating activities under each approach. Assume that all sales were on a cash basis and that income taxes and operating expenses, other than depreciation, were on a cash basis.
(c) Calculate the quality of earnings ratio under each approach and explain your findings.

Determine LCM valuation.
(SO 4), AP

E6-9 Laib Camera Shop Inc. uses the lower-of-cost-or-market basis for its inventory. The following data are available at December 31.

	Units	Cost/Unit	Market Value/Unit
Cameras			
Minolta	5	$170	$158
Canon	7	145	152
Light Meters			
Vivitar	12	125	114
Kodak	10	120	135

Instructions
What amount should be reported on Laib Camera Shop's financial statements, assuming the lower-of-cost-or-market rule is applied?

Compute inventory turnover ratio, days in inventory, and gross profit rate.
(SO 5), AP

E6-10 This information is available for PepsiCo, Inc. for 2007, 2008, and 2009.

(in millions)	2007	2008	2009
Beginning inventory	$ 1,926	$ 2,290	$ 2,522
Ending inventory	2,290	2,522	2,618
Cost of goods sold	18,038	20,351	20,099
Sales revenue	39,474	43,251	43,232

Instructions
Calculate the inventory turnover ratio, days in inventory, and gross profit rate for PepsiCo., Inc. for 2007, 2008, and 2009. Comment on any trends.

E6-11 Deere & Company is a global manufacturer and distributor of agricultural, construction, and forestry equipment. It reported the following information in its 2009 annual report.

Determine the effect of the LIFO reserve on current ratio.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

(in millions)	2009	2008
Inventories (LIFO)	$ 2,397	3,042
Current assets	30,857	
Current liabilities	12,753	
LIFO reserve	1,367	
Cost of goods sold	16,255	

Instructions
(a) Compute Deere's inventory turnover ratio and days in inventory for 2009.
(b) Compute Deere's current ratio using the 2009 data as presented, and then again after adjusting for the LIFO reserve.
(c) Comment on how ignoring the LIFO reserve might affect your evaluation of Deere's liquidity.

***E6-12** Inventory data for Kuchin Company are presented in E6-7.

Calculate inventory and cost of goods sold using three cost flow methods in a perpetual inventory system.
(SO 7), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Calculate the cost of the ending inventory and the cost of goods sold for each cost flow assumption, using a perpetual inventory system. Assume a sale of 410 units occurred on June 15 for a selling price of $8 and a sale of 340 units on June 27 for $9. (*Note:* For the moving-average method, round unit cost to three decimal places.)
(b) How do the results differ from E6-7?
(c) Why is the average unit cost not $6 [($5 + $6 + $7) ÷ 3 = $6]?

***E6-13** Information about Sunburst is presented in E6-4. Additional data regarding the company's sales of Xpert snowboards are provided below. Assume that Sunburst uses a perpetual inventory system.

Apply cost flow methods to perpetual records.
(SO 7), **AP**

Date		Units
Sept. 5	Sale	8
Sept. 16	Sale	48
Sept. 29	Sale	60
	Totals	116

Instructions
Compute ending inventory at September 30 using FIFO, LIFO, and moving-average. (*Note:* For moving-average, round unit cost to three decimal places.)

***E6-14** Brooks Hardware reported cost of goods sold as follows.

Determine effects of inventory errors.
(SO 8), **AN**

	2012	2011
Beginning inventory	$ 30,000	$ 20,000
Cost of goods purchased	175,000	164,000
Cost of goods available for sale	205,000	184,000
Less: Ending inventory	37,000	30,000
Cost of goods sold	$168,000	$154,000

Brooks made two errors:
1. 2011 ending inventory was overstated by $2,000.
2. 2012 ending inventory was understated by $5,000.

Instructions
Compute the correct cost of goods sold for each year.

Prepare correct income statements.
(SO 8), AN

***E6-15** Sprague Company reported these income statement data for a 2-year period.

	2012	2011
Sales revenue	$250,000	$210,000
Beginning inventory	40,000	32,000
Cost of goods purchased	202,000	173,000
Cost of goods available for sale	242,000	205,000
Less: Ending inventory	55,000	40,000
Cost of goods sold	187,000	165,000
Gross profit	$ 63,000	$ 45,000

Sprague Company uses a periodic inventory system. The inventories at January 1, 2011, and December 31, 2012, are correct. However, the ending inventory at December 31, 2011, is overstated by $8,000.

Instructions

(a) Prepare correct income statement data for the 2 years.
(b) What is the cumulative effect of the inventory error on total gross profit for the 2 years?
(c) Explain in a letter to the president of Sprague Company what has happened—that is, the nature of the error and its effect on the financial statements.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Determine items and amounts to be recorded in inventory.
(SO 1), AN

P6-1A Kirk Limited is trying to determine the value of its ending inventory as of February 28, 2012, the company's year-end. The accountant counted everything that was in the warehouse, as of February 28, which resulted in an ending inventory valuation of $48,000. However, she didn't know how to treat the following transactions so she didn't record them.

(a) On February 26, Kirk shipped to a customer goods costing $800. The goods were shipped FOB shipping point, and the receiving report indicates that the customer received the goods on March 2.
(b) On February 26, Seller Inc. shipped goods to Kirk FOB destination. The invoice price was $350 plus $25 for freight. The receiving report indicates that the goods were received by Kirk on March 2.
(c) Kirk had $500 of inventory at a customer's warehouse "on approval." The customer was going to let Kirk know whether it wanted the merchandise by the end of the week, March 4.
(d) Kirk also had $400 of inventory at a Balena craft shop, on consignment from Kirk.
(e) On February 26, Kirk ordered goods costing $750. The goods were shipped FOB shipping point on February 27. Kirk received the goods on March 1.
(f) On February 28, Kirk packaged goods and had them ready for shipping to a customer FOB destination. The invoice price was $350 plus $25 for freight; the cost of the items was $280. The receiving report indicates that the goods were received by the customer on March 2.
(g) Kirk had damaged goods set aside in the warehouse because they are no longer saleable. These goods originally cost $400 and, originally, Kirk expected to sell these items for $600.

Instructions
For each of the above transactions, specify whether the item in question should be included in ending inventory, and if so, at what amount. For each item that is not included in ending inventory, indicate who owns it and what account, if any, it should have been recorded in.

P6-2A Turner Distribution markets CDs of numerous performing artists. At the beginning of March, Turner had in beginning inventory 2,500 CDs with a unit cost of $7. During March, Turner made the following purchases of CDs.

Determine cost of goods sold and ending inventory using FIFO, LIFO, and average-cost with analysis.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

March 5	2,000 @ $8	March 21	5,000 @ $10
March 13	3,500 @ $9	March 26	2,000 @ $11

During March 12,000 units were sold. Turner uses a periodic inventory system.

Instructions
(a) Determine the cost of goods available for sale.
(b) Determine (1) the ending inventory and (2) the cost of goods sold under each of the assumed cost flow methods (FIFO, LIFO, and average-cost). Prove the accuracy of the cost of goods sold under the FIFO and LIFO methods. (*Note:* For average-cost, round cost per unit to three decimal places.)
(c) Which cost flow method results in (1) the highest inventory amount for the balance sheet and (2) the highest cost of goods sold for the income statement?

Cost of goods sold:

FIFO	$105,000
LIFO	$115,500
Average	$109,601

P6-3A Remsen Company Inc. had a beginning inventory of 100 units of Product MLN at a cost of $8 per unit. During the year, purchases were:

Determine cost of goods sold and ending inventory using FIFO, LIFO, and average-cost in a periodic inventory system and assess financial statement effects.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

Feb. 20	600 units at $ 9	Aug. 12	400 units at $11
May 5	500 units at $10	Dec. 8	100 units at $12

Remsen Company uses a periodic inventory system. Sales totalled 1,500 units.

Instructions
(a) Determine the cost of goods available for sale.
(b) Determine the ending inventory and the cost of goods sold under each of the assumed cost flow methods (FIFO, LIFO, and average-cost). Prove the accuracy of the cost of goods sold under the FIFO and LIFO methods. (Round average unit cost to three decimal places.)
(c) Which cost flow method results in the lowest inventory amount for the balance sheet? The lowest cost of goods sold for the income statement?

Cost of goods sold:

FIFO	$14,500
LIFO	$15,100
Average	$14,824

P6-4A The management of Kuiper Inc. asks your help in determining the comparative effects of the FIFO and LIFO inventory cost flow methods. For 2012, the accounting records show these data.

Compute ending inventory, prepare income statements, and answer questions using FIFO and LIFO.
(SO 2, 3), **AN**

Inventory, January 1 (10,000 units)	$ 35,000
Cost of 120,000 units purchased	468,500
Selling price of 98,000 units sold	750,000
Operating expenses	124,000

Units purchased consisted of 35,000 units at $3.70 on May 10; 60,000 units at $3.90 on August 15; and 25,000 units at $4.20 on November 20. Income taxes are 28%.

Instructions
(a) Prepare comparative condensed income statements for 2012 under FIFO and LIFO. (Show computations of ending inventory.)
(b) Answer the following questions for management in the form of a business letter.
  (1) Which inventory cost flow method produces the inventory amount that most closely approximates the amount that would have to be paid to replace the inventory? Why?
  (2) Which inventory cost flow method produces the net income amount that is a more likely indicator of next period's net income? Why?
  (3) Which inventory cost flow method is most likely to approximate the actual physical flow of the goods? Why?
  (4) How much more cash will be available under LIFO than under FIFO? Why?
  (5) How much of the gross profit under FIFO is illusionary in comparison with the gross profit under LIFO?

Gross profit:

FIFO	$378,800
LIFO	$362,900

Calculate ending inventory, cost of goods sold, gross profit, and gross profit rate under periodic method; compare results.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

P6-5A You have the following information for McBride Inc. for the month ended October 31, 2012. McBride uses a periodic method for inventory.

Date	Description	Units	Unit Cost or Selling Price
Oct. 1	Beginning inventory	60	$24
Oct. 9	Purchase	120	26
Oct. 11	Sale	100	35
Oct. 17	Purchase	100	27
Oct. 22	Sale	60	40
Oct. 25	Purchase	70	29
Oct. 29	Sale	110	40

Gross profit:
LIFO $2,970
FIFO $3,310
Average $3,133

Instructions
(a) Calculate (i) ending inventory, (ii) cost of goods sold, (iii) gross profit, and (iv) gross profit rate under each of the following methods.
(1) LIFO.
(2) FIFO.
(3) Average-cost. (Round cost per unit to three decimal places.)
(b) Compare results for the three cost flow assumptions.

Compare specific identification, FIFO, and LIFO under periodic method; use cost flow assumption to influence earnings.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

P6-6A You have the following information for Prospector Gems. Prospector uses the periodic method of accounting for its inventory transactions. Prospector only carries one brand and size of diamonds—all are identical. Each batch of diamonds purchased is carefully coded and marked with its purchase cost.

March 1 Beginning inventory 150 diamonds at a cost of $310 per diamond.
March 3 Purchased 200 diamonds at a cost of $350 each.
March 5 Sold 180 diamonds for $600 each.
March 10 Purchased 330 diamonds at a cost of $375 each.
March 25 Sold 390 diamonds for $650 each.

Gross profit:
Maximum $162,500
Minimum $155,350

Instructions
(a) Assume that Prospector Gems uses the specific identification cost flow method.
(1) Demonstrate how Prospector could maximize its gross profit for the month by specifically selecting which diamonds to sell on March 5 and March 25.
(2) Demonstrate how Prospector could minimize its gross profit for the month by selecting which diamonds to sell on March 5 and March 25.
(b) Assume that Prospector uses the FIFO cost flow assumption. Calculate cost of goods sold. How much gross profit would Prospector report under this cost flow assumption?
(c) Assume that Prospector uses the LIFO cost flow assumption. Calculate cost of goods sold. How much gross profit would the company report under this cost flow assumption?
(d) Which cost flow method should Prospector Gems select? Explain.

Compute inventory turnover ratio and days in inventory; compute current ratio based on LIFO and after adjusting for LIFO reserve.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

P6-7A This information (in millions) is available for the Automotive and Other Operations Divisions of General Motors Corporation for a recent year. General Motors uses the LIFO inventory method.

Beginning inventory	$ 13,921
Ending inventory	14,939
LIFO reserve	1,423
Current assets	60,135
Current liabilities	70,308
Cost of goods sold	166,259
Sales revenue	178,199

Instructions
(a) Calculate the inventory turnover ratio and days in inventory.
(b) Calculate the current ratio based on inventory as reported using LIFO.
(c) Calculate the current ratio after adjusting for the LIFO reserve.
(d) Comment on any difference between parts (b) and (c).

***P6-8A** Singer Inc. is a retailer operating in Edmonton, Alberta. Singer uses the perpetual inventory method. All sales returns from customers result in the goods being returned to inventory. (Assume that the inventory is not damaged.) Assume that there are no credit transactions; all amounts are settled in cash. You are provided with the following information for Singer Inc. for the month of January 2012.

Calculate cost of goods sold, ending inventory, and gross profit for LIFO, FIFO, and moving-average under the perpetual system; compare results.

(SO 3, 7), **AP**

Date	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost or Selling Price
Dec. 31	Ending inventory	160	$20
Jan. 2	Purchase	100	22
Jan. 6	Sale	180	40
Jan. 9	Sale return	10	40
Jan. 9	Purchase	75	24
Jan. 10	Purchase return	15	24
Jan. 10	Sale	50	45
Jan. 23	Purchase	100	25
Jan. 30	Sale	130	48

Instructions

(a) For each of the following cost flow assumptions, calculate (i) cost of goods sold, (ii) ending inventory, and (iii) gross profit.
  (1) LIFO. (Assume sales returns had a cost of $20 and purchase returns had a cost of $24.)
  (2) FIFO. (Assume sales returns had a cost of $20 and purchase returns had a cost of $24.)
  (3) Moving-average. (Round cost per unit to three decimal places.)

(b) Compare results for the three cost flow assumptions.

Gross profit:
LIFO $7,350
FIFO $7,700
Average $7,597

***P6-9A** Premier Center began operations on July 1. It uses a perpetual inventory system. During July, the company had the following purchases and sales.

Determine ending inventory under a perpetual inventory system.

(SO 3, 7), **AP**

	Purchases		
Date	Units	Unit Cost	Sales Units
July 1	7	$62	
July 6			5
July 11	3	$66	
July 14			3
July 21	4	$71	
July 27			3

Instructions

(a) Determine the ending inventory under a perpetual inventory system using (1) FIFO, (2) moving-average (round unit cost to three decimal places), and (3) LIFO.

(b) Which costing method produces the highest ending inventory valuation?

FIFO $213
Average $207
LIFO $195

Problems: Set B

P6-1B Equitz Limited is trying to determine the value of its ending inventory as of February 28, 2012, the company's year-end. The following transactions occurred, and the accountant asked your help in determining whether they should be recorded or not.

Determine items and amounts to be recorded in inventory.

(SO 1), **AN**

(a) On February 26, Equitz shipped goods costing $800 to a customer and charged the customer $1,000. The goods were shipped with terms FOB destination and the receiving report indicates that the customer received the goods on March 2.

(b) On February 26, Seller Inc. shipped goods to Equitz under terms FOB shipping point. The invoice price was $300 plus $25 for freight. The receiving report indicates that the goods were received by Equitz on March 2.
(c) Equitz had $500 of inventory isolated in the warehouse. The inventory is designated for a customer who has requested that the goods be shipped on March 10.
(d) Also included in Equitz's warehouse is $400 of inventory that Meredith Producers shipped to Equitz on consignment.
(e) On February 26, Equitz issued a purchase order to acquire goods costing $750. The goods were shipped with terms FOB destination on February 27. Equitz received the goods on March 2.
(f) On February 26, Equitz shipped goods to a customer under terms FOB shipping point. The invoice price was $350 plus $25 for freight; the cost of the items was $260. The receiving report indicates that the goods were received by the customer on March 2.

Instructions
For each of the above transactions, specify whether the item in question should be included in ending inventory, and if so, at what amount.

Determine cost of goods sold and ending inventory using FIFO, LIFO, and average-cost with analysis.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

P6-2B Savage Distribution markets CDs of the performing artist Little Sister. At the beginning of October, Savage had in beginning inventory 1,200 Sister's CDs with a unit cost of $5. During October, Savage made the following purchases of Sister's CDs.

Oct. 3	4,000 @ $6	Oct. 19	2,500 @ $8
Oct. 9	3,000 @ $7	Oct. 25	2,000 @ $9

During October 9,400 units were sold. Savage uses a periodic inventory system.

Instructions
(a) Determine the cost of goods available for sale.
(b) Determine (1) the ending inventory and (2) the cost of goods sold under each of the assumed cost flow methods (FIFO, LIFO, and average-cost). Prove the accuracy of the cost of goods sold under the FIFO and LIFO methods. (Round cost per unit to three decimal places.)
(c) Which cost flow method results in (1) the highest inventory amount for the balance sheet and (2) the highest cost of goods sold for the income statement?

Cost of goods sold:

FIFO	$60,600
LIFO	$70,400
Average	$65,867

Determine cost of goods sold and ending inventory using FIFO, LIFO, and average-cost in a periodic inventory system and assess financial statement effects.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

P6-3B Trattner Company had a beginning inventory on January 1 of 100 units of Product SXL at a cost of $20 per unit. During the year, purchases were:

Mar. 15	300 units at $23	Sept. 4	290 units at $28
July 20	250 units at $25	Dec. 2	130 units at $30

Trattner Company sold 800 units, and it uses a periodic inventory system.

Instructions
(a) Determine the cost of goods available for sale.
(b) Determine the ending inventory and the cost of goods sold under each of the assumed cost flow methods (FIFO, LIFO, and average-cost). Prove the accuracy of the cost of goods sold under each method. (Round cost per unit to three decimal places.)
(c) Which cost flow method results in the highest inventory amount for the balance sheet? The highest cost of goods sold for the income statement?

Cost of goods sold:

FIFO	$19,350
LIFO	$21,260
Average	$20,314

Compute ending inventory, prepare income statements, and answer questions using FIFO and LIFO.
(SO 2, 3), **AN**

P6-4B The management of Howland is reevaluating the appropriateness of using its present inventory cost flow method, which is average-cost. The company requests your help in determining the results of operations for 2012 if either the FIFO or the LIFO method had been used. For 2012, the accounting records show these data:

Inventories		Purchases and Sales	
Beginning (10,000 units)	$22,500	Total net sales (220,000 units)	$862,000
Ending (20,000 units)		Total cost of goods purchased (230,000 units)	567,500

Purchases were made quarterly as follows.

Quarter	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
1	60,000	$2.30	$138,000
2	50,000	2.40	120,000
3	50,000	2.55	127,500
4	70,000	2.60	182,000
	230,000		$567,500

Operating expenses were $147,000, and the company's income tax rate is 32%.

Instructions

(a) Prepare comparative condensed income statements for 2012 under FIFO and LIFO. (Show computations of ending inventory.)

(b) Answer the following questions for management in business-letter form.

(1) Which cost flow method (FIFO or LIFO) produces the inventory amount that most closely approximates the amount that would have to be paid to replace the inventory? Why?

(2) Which cost flow method (FIFO or LIFO) produces the net income amount that is a more likely indicator of next period's net income? Why?

(3) Which cost flow method (FIFO or LIFO) is more likely to approximate the actual physical flow of goods? Why?

(4) How much more cash will be available for management under LIFO than under FIFO? Why?

(5) Will gross profit under the average-cost method be higher or lower than FIFO? Than LIFO? (*Note:* It is not necessary to quantify your answer.)

Gross profit:
FIFO $324,000
LIFO $317,500

P6-5B You have the following information for Wirth Inc. for the month ended June 30, 2012. Wirth uses the periodic method for inventory.

Calculate ending inventory, cost of goods sold, gross profit, and gross profit rate under periodic method; compare results.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

Date	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost or Selling Price
June 1	Beginning inventory	25	$60
June 4	Purchase	85	63
June 10	Sale	60	90
June 11	Sale return	5	90
June 18	Purchase	35	66
June 18	Purchase return	15	66
June 25	Sale	55	95
June 28	Purchase	20	70

Instructions

(a) Calculate (i) ending inventory, (ii) cost of goods sold, (iii) gross profit, and (iv) gross profit rate under each of the following methods.

(1) LIFO.

(2) FIFO.

(3) Average-cost. (Round cost per unit to three decimal places.)

(b) Compare results for the three cost flow assumptions.

Gross profit:
LIFO $3,045
FIFO $3,320
Average $3,153

P6-6B You have the following information for Gas Saver Plus. Gas Saver Plus uses the periodic method of accounting for its inventory transactions.

Compare specific identification, FIFO, and LIFO under periodic method; use cost flow assumption to justify price increase.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

March 1 Beginning inventory 1,500 litres at a cost of 40¢ per litre.
March 3 Purchased 2,200 litres at a cost of 45¢ per litre.
March 5 Sold 1,800 litres for 60¢ per litre.
March 10 Purchased 3,500 litres at a cost of 49¢ per litre.
March 20 Purchased 2,000 litres at a cost of 52¢ per litre.
March 30 Sold 5,000 litres for 70¢ per litre.

Instructions

(a) Prepare partial income statements through gross profit, and calculate the value of ending inventory that would be reported on the balance sheet, under each of the cost flow assumptions on the next page.

Gross profit:
Specific identification $1,371
FIFO $1,471
LIFO $1,240

(1) Specific identification method assuming:
  (i) the March 5 sale consisted of 800 litres from the March 1 beginning inventory and 1,000 litres from the March 3 purchase; and
  (ii) the March 30 sale consisted of the following number of units sold from each purchase: 400 litres from March 1; 500 litres from March 3; 2,600 litres from March 10; 1,500 litres from March 20.
(2) FIFO.
(3) LIFO.

(b) How can companies use a cost flow method to justify price increases? Which cost flow method would best support an argument to increase prices?

Compute inventory turnover ratio and days in inventory; compute current ratio based on LIFO and after adjusting for LIFO reserve.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

P6-7B The following information is available for the automotive division of Ford Motor Company for 2009. The company uses the LIFO inventory method.

(in millions)	2009
Beginning inventory	$ 6,988
Ending inventory	5,450
LIFO reserve	798
Current assets	40,560
Current liabilities	37,037
Cost of goods sold	100,016
Sales revenue	105,893

Instructions
(a) Calculate the inventory turnover ratio and days in inventory.
(b) Calculate the current ratio based on LIFO inventory.
(c) After adjusting for the LIFO reserve, calculate the current ratio.
(d) Comment on any difference between parts (b) and (c).

Calculate cost of goods sold, ending inventory, and gross profit under LIFO, FIFO, and moving-average under the perpetual system; compare results.
(SO 3, 7), **AP**

***P6-8B** Morse Inc. is a retail company that uses the perpetual inventory method. All sales returns from customers result in the goods being returned to inventory. (Assume that the inventory is not damaged.) Assume that there are no credit transactions; all amounts are settled in cash. You have the following information for Morse Inc. for the month of January 2012.

Date	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost or Selling Price
January 1	Beginning inventory	40	$13
January 5	Purchase	90	16
January 8	Sale	75	25
January 10	Sale return	10	25
January 15	Purchase	30	18
January 16	Purchase return	5	18
January 20	Sale	80	25
January 25	Purchase	20	21

Gross profit:

LIFO	$1,345
FIFO	$1,395
Average	$1,374

Instructions
(a) For each of the following cost flow assumptions, calculate (i) cost of goods sold, (ii) ending inventory, and (iii) gross profit.
  (1) LIFO. (Assume sales returns had a cost of $16 and purchase returns had a cost of $18.)
  (2) FIFO. (Assume sales returns had a cost of $16 and purchase returns had a cost of $18.)
  (3) Moving-average. (Round cost per unit to three decimal places.)
(b) Compare results for the three cost flow assumptions.

***P6-9B** Dollar Saver Center began operations on July 1. It uses a perpetual inventory system. During July, the company had the following purchases and sales.

Determine ending inventory under a perpetual inventory system.
(SO 3, 7), **AP**

	Purchases		
Date	**Units**	**Unit Cost**	**Sales Units**
July 1	7	$47	
July 6			3
July 11	5	$50	
July 14			4
July 21	3	$54	
July 27			2

Instructions

(a) Determine the ending inventory under a perpetual inventory system using (1) FIFO, (2) moving-average, and (3) LIFO. (*Note:* For moving-average, round cost per unit to three decimal places.)

(b) Which costing method produces the highest ending inventory valuation?

FIFO	$312
Average	$304
LIFO	$292

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Comprehensive Problem

CP6 On December 1, 2012, Ruggiero Company had the account balances shown below.

	Debits		Credits
Cash	$ 4,800	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	$ 1,500
Accounts Receivable	3,900	Accounts Payable	3,000
Inventory	1,800*	Common Stock	10,000
Equipment	21,000	Retained Earnings	17,000
	$31,500		$31,500

*(3,000 × $0.60)

The following transactions occurred during December.

Dec.	3	Purchased 4,000 units of inventory on account at a cost of $0.72 per unit.
	5	Sold 4,400 units of inventory on account for $0.90 per unit. (It sold 3,000 of the $0.60 units and 1,400 of the $0.72.)
	7	Granted the December 5 customer $180 credit for 200 units of inventory returned costing $150. These units were returned to inventory.
	17	Purchased 2,200 units of inventory for cash at $0.80 each.
	22	Sold 2,000 units of inventory on account for $0.95 per unit. (It sold 2,000 of the $0.72 units.)

Adjustment data:

1. Accrued salaries payable $400.
2. Depreciation $200 per month.
3. Income tax expense was $215, to be paid next year.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the December transactions and adjusting entries, assuming Ruggiero uses the perpetual inventory method.

(b) Enter the December 1 balances in the ledger T accounts and post the December transactions. In addition to the accounts mentioned above, use the following additional accounts: Cost of Goods Sold, Depreciation Expense, Salaries and Wages Expense, Salaries and Wages Payable, Sales Revenue, Sales Returns and Allowances, Income Tax Expense, and Income Taxes Payable.
(c) Prepare an adjusted trial balance as of December 31, 2012.
(d) Prepare an income statement for December 2012 and a classified balance sheet at December 31, 2012.
(e) Compute ending inventory and cost of goods sold under FIFO, assuming Ruggiero Company uses the periodic inventory system.
(f) Compute ending inventory and cost of goods sold under LIFO, assuming Ruggiero Company uses the periodic inventory system.

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapters 1 through 5.)

CCC6 Natalie is busy establishing both divisions of her business (cookie classes and mixer sales) and completing her business degree. Her goals for the next 11 months are to sell one mixer per month and to give two to three classes per week. Natalie has decided to use a periodic inventory system and now must choose a cost flow assumption for her mixer inventory.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to see the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll, Industries Inc.*

BYP6-1 The notes that accompany a company's financial statements provide informative details that would clutter the amounts and descriptions presented in the statements. Refer to the financial statements of Tootsie Roll and the accompanying Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Appendix A.

Instructions

Answer the following questions. (Give the amounts in thousands of dollars, as shown in Tootsie Roll's annual report.)

(a) What did Tootsie Roll report for the amount of inventories in its Consolidated Balance Sheet at December 31, 2009? At December 31, 2008?
(b) Compute the dollar amount of change and the percentage change in inventories between 2008 and 2009. Compute inventory as a percentage of current assets for 2009.
(c) What are the (product) cost of goods sold reported by Tootsie Roll for 2009, 2008, and 2007? Compute the ratio of (product) cost of goods sold to net (product) sales in 2009.

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP6-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company appear in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll in Appendix A.

Instructions

(a) Based on the information in the financial statements, compute these 2009 values for each company. (Do not adjust for the LIFO reserve.)
  (1) Inventory turnover ratio. (Use product cost of goods sold and total inventory.)
  (2) Days in inventory.
(b) What conclusions concerning the management of the inventory can you draw from these data?

RESEARCH CASE

BYP6-3 The January 27, 2010, issue of the *Wall Street Journal* contains an article by Timothy Aeppel entitled "'Bullwhip' Hits Firms as Growth Snaps Back."

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following questions.

(a) Explain why Caterpillar would more than double its purchases of steel this year even if its own sales don't rise relative to the previous year.
(b) Why did Caterpillar meet with its key suppliers during the previous year?
(c) What are some of the barriers and concerns that suppliers faced at the time of the article?
(d) How rapidly did Caterpillar grow in recent years and what did it learn from that experience, that is, what changes did it implement with regard to suppliers?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP6-4 The following information is from the 2009 annual report of American Greetings Corporation (all dollars in thousands).

	Feb. 28, 2009	Feb. 29, 2008
Inventories		
Finished goods	$232,893	$244,379
Work in process	7,068	10,516
Raw materials and supplies	49,937	43,861
	289,898	298,756
Less: LIFO reserve	86,025	82,085
Total (as reported)	$203,873	$216,671
Cost of goods sold	$809,956	$780,771
Current assets (as reported)	$561,395	$669,340
Current liabilities	$343,405	$432,321

The following information comes from the notes to the company's financial statements.

> Finished products, work in process, and raw material inventories are carried at the lower-of-cost-or-market. The last-in, first-out (LIFO) cost method is used for approximately 75% of the domestic inventories in 2009 and approximately 70% in 2008. The foreign subsidiaries principally use the first-in, first-out method. Display material and factory supplies are carried at average-cost.

Instructions

(a) Define each of the following: finished goods, work in process, and raw materials.
(b) What might be a possible explanation for why the company uses FIFO for its nondomestic inventories?
(c) Calculate the company's inventory turnover ratio and days in inventory for 2008 and 2009. (2007 inventory was $182,618.) Discuss the implications of any change in the ratios.
(d) What percentage of total inventory does the 2009 LIFO reserve represent? If the company used FIFO in 2009, what would be the value of its inventory? Do you consider this difference a "material" amount from the perspective of an analyst? Which value accurately represents the value of the company's inventory?
(e) Calculate the company's 2009 current ratio with the numbers as reported, then recalculate after adjusting for the LIFO reserve.

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP6-5 ***Purpose:*** Use SEC filings to learn about a company's inventory accounting practices.

Address: **http://biz.yahoo.com/p/_capgds-bldmch.html**,
or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Go to this site and click on the name of an equipment manufacturer other than those discussed in the chapter.
2. Click on **SEC filings**.
3. Under "Recent filings" choose **Form 10K** (annual report) and click on **Full Filing at Edgar Online**.
4. Choose option "3," **Online HTML Version**.

If the 10K is not listed among the recent filings then click on **View All Filings on EDGAR Online**.

Instructions

Review the 10K to answer the following questions.

(a) What is the name of the company?
(b) How has its inventory changed from the previous year?
(c) What is the amount of raw materials, work in process, and finished goods inventory?
(d) What inventory method does the company use?
(e) Calculate the inventory turnover ratio and days in inventory for the current year.
(f) If the company uses LIFO, what was the amount of its LIFO reserve?

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP6-6 Crescent Electronics has enjoyed tremendous sales growth during the last 10 years. However, even though sales have steadily increased, the company's CEO, Anne Healy, is concerned about certain aspects of its performance. She has called a meeting with the corporate controller and the vice presidents of finance, operations, sales, and marketing to discuss the company's performance. Anne begins the meeting by making the following observations:

> We have been forced to take significant write-downs on inventory during each of the last three years because of obsolescence. In addition, inventory storage costs have soared. We rent four additional warehouses to store our increasingly diverse inventory. Five years ago inventory represented only 20% of the value of our total assets. It now exceeds 35%. Yet, even with all of this inventory, "stockouts" (measured by complaints by customers that the desired product is not available) have increased by 40% during the last three years. And worse yet, it seems that we constantly must discount merchandise that we have too much of.

Anne asks the group to review the following data and make suggestions as to how the company's performance might be improved.

(in millions)	2012	2011	2010	2009
Inventory				
Raw materials	$242	$198	$155	$128
Work in process	116	77	49	33
Finished goods	567	482	398	257
Total inventory	$925	$757	$602	$418
Current assets	$1,800	$1,423	$1,183	$841
Total assets	$2,643	$2,523	$2,408	$2,090
Current liabilities	$600	$590	$525	$420
Sales revenue	$9,428	$8,674	$7,536	$6,840
Cost of goods sold	$6,328	$5,474	$4,445	$3,557
Net income	$754	$987	$979	$958

Instructions

Using the information provided, answer the following questions.

(a) Compute the current ratio, gross profit rate, profit margin ratio, inventory turnover ratio, and days in inventory for 2010, 2011, and 2012.
(b) Discuss the trends and potential causes of the changes in the ratios in part (a).
(c) Discuss potential remedies to any problems discussed in part (b).
(d) What concerns might be raised by some members of management with regard to your suggestions in part (c)?

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITIES

BYP6-7 In a discussion of dramatic increases in coffee bean prices, a *Wall Street Journal* article noted the following fact about Starbucks.

> Before this year's bean-price hike, Starbucks added several defenses that analysts say could help it maintain earnings and revenue. The company last year began accounting for its coffee-bean purchases by taking the average price of all beans in inventory.
>
> *Source:* Aaron Lucchetti, "Crowded Coffee Market May Keep a Lid on Starbucks After Price Rise Hurt Stock," *Wall Street Journal* (June 4, 1997), p. C1.

Prior to this change the company was using FIFO.

Instructions
Your client, the CEO of Supreme Coffee, Inc., read this article and sent you an e-mail message requesting that you explain why Starbucks might have taken this action. Your response should explain what impact this change in accounting method has on earnings, why the company might want to do this, and any possible disadvantages of such a change.

***BYP6-8** You are the controller of Emjay Inc. M. J. Danner, the president, recently mentioned to you that she found an error in the 2011 financial statements which she believes has corrected itself. She determined, in discussions with the purchasing department, that 2011 ending inventory was overstated by $1 million. M. J. says that the 2012 ending inventory is correct, and she assumes that 2012 income is correct. M. J. says to you, "What happened has happened—there's no point in worrying about it anymore."

Instructions
You conclude that M. J. is incorrect. Write a brief, tactful memo to her, clarifying the situation.

ETHICS CASE

BYP6-9 Yelich Wholesale Corp. uses the LIFO cost flow method. In the current year, profit at Yelich is running unusually high. The corporate tax rate is also high this year, but it is scheduled to decline significantly next year. In an effort to lower the current year's net income and to take advantage of the changing income tax rate, the president of Yelich Wholesale instructs the plant accountant to recommend to the purchasing department a large purchase of inventory for delivery 3 days before the end of the year. The price of the inventory to be purchased has doubled during the year, and the purchase will represent a major portion of the ending inventory value.

Instructions
(a) What is the effect of this transaction on this year's and next year's income statement and income tax expense? Why?
(b) If Yelich Wholesale had been using the FIFO method of inventory costing, would the president give the same directive?
(c) Should the plant accountant order the inventory purchase to lower income? What are the ethical implications of this order?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP6-10 Some of the largest business frauds ever perpetrated have involved the misstatement of inventory. Two classics were at Leslie Fay Cos, and McKesson Corporation.

Instructions
There is considerable information regarding inventory frauds available on the Internet. Search for information about one of the two cases mentioned above, or inventory fraud at any other company, and prepare a short explanation of the nature of the inventory fraud.

FASB CODIFICATION ACTIVITY

BYP6-11 If your school has a subscription to the FASB Codification, go to **http://aaahq.org/ascLogin.cfm** to log in and prepare responses to the following.
(a) The primary basis for accounting for inventories is cost. How is cost defined in the Codification?
(b) What does the Codification state regarding the use of consistency in the selection or employment of a basis for inventory?
(c) What does the Codification indicate is a justification for the use of the lower-of-cost-or-market for inventory valuation?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 283 A Big Hiccup **Q:** What steps might the companies take to avoid such a serious disruption in the future? **A:** The manufacturer of the piston rings should spread its manufacturing facilities across a few locations that are far enough apart that they would not all be at risk at once. In addition, the automakers might consider becoming less dependent on a single supplier.

p. 284 Falsifying Inventory to Boost Income **Q:** What effect does an overstatement of inventory have on a company's financial statements? **A:** The balance sheet looks stronger because inventory and retained earnings are overstated. The income statement looks better because cost of goods sold is understated and income is overstated.

p. 294 Is LIFO Fair? **Q:** What are the arguments for and against the use of LIFO? **A:** Proponents of LIFO argue that it is conceptually superior because it matches the most recent cost with the most recent selling price. Critics contend that it artificially understates the company's net income and consequently reduces tax payments. Also, because most foreign companies are not allowed to use LIFO, its use by U.S. companies reduces the ability of investors to compare U.S. companies with foreign companies.

p. 298 Improving Inventory Control with RFID **Q:** Why is inventory control important to managers such as those at Wal-Mart and Best Buy? **A:** In the very competitive environment of discount retailing, where Wal-Mart and Best Buy are the major players, small differences in price matter to the customer. Wal-Mart sells a high volume of inventory at a low gross profit rate. When operating in a high-volume, low-margin environment, small cost savings can mean the difference between being profitable or going out of business.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. d **2.** a **3.** b ($180,000 + $35,000) **4.** c ((5,000 × $13) + (4,000 × $12)) **5.** d ((8,000 × $11) + (1,000 × $12)) **6.** d ((5,000 × $8) + (15,000 × $10) + (20,000 × $12)) ÷ 40,000 = $10.75; $10.75 × 7,000 **7.** c **8.** d **9.** a **10.** d **11.** b ($285,000 ÷ (($80,000 + $110,000) ÷ 2) = 3; 365 ÷ 3) **12.** a ***13.** d ***14.** b ***15.** b

IFRS A Look at IFRS

The major IFRS requirements related to accounting and reporting for inventories are the same as GAAP. The major differences are that IFRS prohibits the use of the LIFO cost flow assumption and determines market in the lower-of-cost-or-market inventory valuation differently.

KEY POINTS

- The requirements for accounting for and reporting inventories are more principles-based under IFRS. That is, GAAP provides more detailed guidelines in inventory accounting.
- The definitions for inventory are essentially similar under IFRS and GAAP. Both define inventory as assets held-for-sale in the ordinary course of business, in the process of production for sale (work in process), or to be consumed in the production of goods or services (e.g., raw materials).
- Who owns the goods—goods in transit or consigned goods—as well as the costs to include in inventory, are accounted for the same under IFRS and GAAP.
- Both GAAP and IFRS permit specific identification where appropriate. IFRS actually requires that the specific identification method be used where the inventory items are not interchangeable (i.e., can be specifically identified). If the inventory items are not specifically identifiable, a cost flow assumption is used. GAAP does not specify situations in which specific identification must be used.
- A major difference between IFRS and GAAP relates to the LIFO cost flow assumption. GAAP permits the use of LIFO for inventory valuation. IFRS prohibits its use. FIFO and average-cost are the only two acceptable cost flow assumptions permitted under IFRS.
- IFRS requires companies to use the same cost flow assumption for all goods of a similar nature. GAAP has no specific requirement in this area.
- In the lower-of-cost-or-market test for inventory valuation, IFRS defines market as net realizable value. Net realizable value is the estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business,

less the estimated costs of completion and estimated selling expenses. In other words, net realizable value is the best estimate of the net amounts that inventories are expected to realize. GAAP, on the other hand, defines market as essentially replacement cost.

- Under GAAP, if inventory is written down under the lower-of-cost-or-market valuation, the new value becomes its cost basis. As a result, the inventory may not be written back up to its original cost in a subsequent period. Under IFRS, the write-down may be reversed in a subsequent period up to the amount of the previous write-down. Both the write-down and any subsequent reversal should be reported on the income statement as an expense. An item-by-item approach is generally followed under IFRS.
- An example of the use of lower-of-cost-or-net realizable value under IFRS follows.

Mendel Company has the following four items in its ending inventory as of December 31, 2012. The company uses the lower-of-cost-or-net realizable value approach for inventory valuation following IFRS.

Item No.	Cost	Net Realizable Value
1320	$3,600	$3,400
1333	4,000	4,100
1428	2,800	2,100
1510	5,000	4,700

The computation of the ending inventory value to be reported in the financial statements at December 31, 2012, is as follows.

Item No.	Cost	Net Realizable Value	Lower-of-Cost-or-NRV
1320	$ 3,600	$ 3,400	$ 3,400
1333	4,000	4,100	4,000
1428	2,800	2,100	2,100
1510	5,000	4,700	4,700
Total	$15,400	$14,300	$14,200

- Unlike property, plant, and equipment, IFRS does not permit the option of valuing inventories at fair value. As indicated above, IFRS requires inventory to be written down, but inventory cannot be written up above its original cost.
- Similar to GAAP, certain agricultural products and mineral products can be reported at net realizable value using IFRS.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

One convergence issue that will be difficult to resolve relates to the use of the LIFO cost flow assumption. As indicated, IFRS specifically prohibits its use. Conversely, the LIFO cost flow assumption is widely used in the United States because of its favorable tax advantages. In addition, many argue that LIFO from a financial reporting point of view provides a better matching of current costs against revenue and, therefore, enables companies to compute a more realistic income.

With a new conceptual framework being developed, it is highly probable that the use of the concept of conservatism will be eliminated. Similarly, the concept of "prudence" in the IASB literature will also be eliminated. This may ultimately have implications for the application of the lower-of-cost-or-net realizable value.

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. Which of the following should *not* be included in the inventory of a company using IFRS?
(a) Goods held on consignment from another company.
(b) Goods shipped on consignment to another company.
(c) Goods in transit from another company shipped FOB shipping point.
(d) None of the above.

2. Which method of inventory costing is prohibited under IFRS?
   (a) Specific identification. (c) FIFO.
   (b) LIFO. (d) Average-cost.
3. Yang Company purchased 2,000 phones and has 400 phones in its ending inventory at a cost of $90 each and a current replacement cost of $80 each. The net realizable value of each phone in the ending inventory is $70. The ending inventory under lower-of-cost-or-net realizable value is:
   (a) $36,000. (c) $28,000.
   (b) $32,000. (d) None of the above.
4. Specific identification:
   (a) must be used under IFRS if the inventory items are not interchangeable.
   (b) cannot be used under IFRS.
   (c) cannot be used under GAAP.
   (d) must be used under IFRS if it would result in the most conservative net income.
5. IFRS requires the following:
   (a) Ending inventory is written up and down to net realizable value each reporting period.
   (b) Ending inventory is written down to net realizable value but cannot be written up.
   (c) Ending inventory is written down to net realizable value and may be written up in future periods to its net realizable value but not above its original cost.
   (d) Ending inventory is written down to net realizable value and may be written up in future periods to its net realizable value.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS6–1 Briefly describe some of the similarities and differences between GAAP and IFRS with respect to the accounting for inventories.

IFRS6–2 LaTour Inc. is based in France and prepares its financial statements in accordance with IFRS. In 2012, it reported cost of goods sold of €578 million and average inventory of €154 million. Briefly discuss how analysis of LaTour's inventory turnover ratio (and comparisons to a company using GAAP) might be affected by differences in inventory accounting between IFRS and GAAP.

IFRS6–3 Franklin Company has the following four items in its ending inventory as of December 31, 2012. The company uses the lower-of-cost-or-net realizable value approach for inventory valuation following IFRS.

Item No.	Cost	Net Realizable Value
AB	$1,700	$1,400
TRX	2,200	2,300
NWA	7,800	7,100
SGH	3,000	3,700

Compute the lower-of-cost-or-net realizable value.

INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Zetar plc*

IFRS6–4 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C. The company's complete annual report, including the notes to its financial statements, is available at **www.zetarplc.com**. Using the notes to the company's financial statements, answer the following questions.

Instructions

(a) What cost flow assumption does the company use to value inventory?
(b) What was the amount of expense that the company reported for inventory write-downs during 2009?
(c) What amount of raw materials, work in process, and finished goods inventory did the company report at April 30, 2009?

Answers to IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. a **2.** b **3.** c **4.** a **5.** c

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 7

FRAUD, INTERNAL CONTROL, AND CASH

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives**
- Read **Feature Story**
- Scan **Preview**
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 346 p. 349 p. 358 p. 363
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit**
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives**
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 369
- Answer **Self-Test Questions**
- Complete **Assignments**
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 393

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Define fraud and internal control.
2. Identify the principles of internal control activities.
3. Explain the applications of internal control principles to cash receipts.
4. Explain the applications of internal control principles to cash disbursements.
5. Prepare a bank reconciliation.
6. Explain the reporting of cash.
7. Discuss the basic principles of cash management.
8. Identify the primary elements of a cash budget.

the navigator

feature story

MINDING THE MONEY IN MOOSE JAW

If you're ever looking for a cappuccino in Moose Jaw, Saskatchewan, stop by Stephanie's Gourmet Coffee and More, located on Main Street. Staff there serve, on average, 650 cups of coffee a day, including both regular and specialty coffees, not to mention soups, Italian sandwiches, and a wide assortment of gourmet cheesecakes.

"We've got high school students who come here, and students from the community college," says owner/manager Stephanie Mintenko, who has run the place since opening it in 1995. "We have customers who are retired, and others who are working people and have only 30 minutes for lunch. We have to be pretty quick."

That means that the cashiers have to be efficient. Like most businesses where purchases are low-cost and high-volume, cash control has to be simple.

"We have an electronic cash register, but it's not the fancy new kind where you just punch in the item," explains Ms. Mintenko. "You have to punch in the prices." The machine does keep track of sales in several categories, however. Cashiers punch a button to indicate whether each item is a beverage, a meal, or a charge for the cafe's Internet connections. An internal tape in the machine keeps a record of all transactions; the customer receives a receipt only upon request.

There is only one cash register. "Up to three of us might operate it on any given shift, including myself," says Ms. Mintenko.

She and her staff do two "cashouts" each day—one with the shift change at 5:00 p.m. and one when the shop closes at 10:00 p.m. At each cashout, they count the cash in the register drawer. That amount, minus the cash change carried forward (the float), should match the shift total on the register tape. If there's a discrepancy, they do another count. Then, if necessary, "we go through the whole tape to find the mistake," she explains. "It usually turns out to be someone who punched in $18 instead of $1.80, or something like that."

Ms. Mintenko sends all the cash tapes and float totals to a bookkeeper, who double-checks everything and provides regular reports. "We try to keep the accounting simple, so we can concentrate on making great coffee and food."

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 7 . . .

- **SOX Boosts the Role of Human Resources** *(p. 345)*
- **Big Theft at Small Companies** *(p. 345)*
- **How Employees Steal** *(p. 351)*
- **Madoff's Ponzi Scheme** *(p. 357)*

preview of chapter 7

As the story about recording cash sales at Stephanie's Gourmet Coffee and More indicates, control of cash is important to ensure that fraud does not occur. Companies also need controls to safeguard other types of assets. For example, Stephanie's undoubtedly has controls to prevent the theft of food and supplies, and controls to prevent the theft of tableware and dishes from its kitchen.

In this chapter, we explain the essential features of an internal control system and how it prevents fraud. We also describe how those controls apply to a specific asset—cash. The applications include some controls with which you may be already familiar, such as the use of a bank.

The content and organization of Chapter 7 are as follows.

Fraud, Internal Control, and Cash

Fraud and Internal Control	Cash Controls	Use of a Bank	Reporting Cash	Managing and Monitoring Cash
• Fraud • The Sarbanes-Oxley Act • Internal control • Principles of internal control activities • Limitations	• Cash receipts controls • Cash disbursements controls	• Bank statements • Reconciling the bank account	• Cash equivalents • Restricted cash	• Basic principles

the navigator

Fraud and Internal Control

study objective 1

Define fraud and internal control.

The Feature Story describes many of the internal control procedures used by Stephanie's Gourmet Coffee and More. These procedures are necessary to discourage employees from fraudulent activities.

FRAUD

A **fraud** is a dishonest act by an employee that results in personal benefit to the employee at a cost to the employer. Examples of fraud reported in the financial press include:

- A bookkeeper in a small company diverted $750,000 of bill payments to a personal bank account over a three-year period.
- A shipping clerk with 28 years of service shipped $125,000 of merchandise to himself.
- A computer operator embezzled $21 million from Wells Fargo Bank over a two-year period.
- A church treasurer "borrowed" $150,000 of church funds to finance a friend's business dealings.

Why does fraud occur? The three main factors that contribute to fraudulent activity are depicted by the **fraud triangle** in Illustration 7-1.

The most important element of the fraud triangle is **opportunity**. For an employee to commit fraud, the workplace environment must provide opportunities that an employee can exploit. Opportunities occur when the workplace lacks sufficient controls to deter and detect fraud. For example, inadequate

monitoring of employee actions can create opportunities for theft and can embolden employees because they believe they will not be caught.

A second factor that contributes to fraud is **financial pressure**. Employees sometimes commit fraud because of personal financial problems caused by too much debt. Or they might commit fraud because they want to lead a lifestyle that they cannot afford on their current salary.

The third factor that contributes to fraud is **rationalization**. In order to justify their fraud, employees rationalize their dishonest actions. For example, employees sometimes justify fraud because they believe they are underpaid while the employer is making lots of money. These employees feel justified in stealing because they believe they deserve to be paid more.

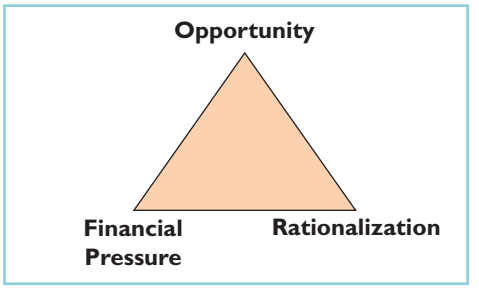


Illustration 7-1 Fraud triangle

THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT

What can be done to prevent or to detect fraud? After numerous corporate scandals came to light in the early 2000s, Congress addressed this issue by passing the **Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (SOX)**. Under SOX, all publicly traded U.S. corporations are required to maintain an adequate system of internal control. Corporate executives and boards of directors must ensure that these controls are reliable and effective. In addition, independent outside auditors must attest to the adequacy of the internal control system. Companies that fail to comply are subject to fines, and company officers can be imprisoned. SOX also created the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) to establish auditing standards and regulate auditor activity.

One poll found that 60% of investors believe that SOX helps safeguard their stock investments. Many say they would be unlikely to invest in a company that fails to follow SOX requirements. Although some corporate executives have criticized the time and expense involved in following the SOX requirements, SOX appears to be working well. For example, the chief accounting officer of Eli Lily noted that SOX triggered a comprehensive review of how the company documents controls. This review uncovered redundancies and pointed out controls that needed to be added. In short, it added up to time and money well spent. And the finance chief at General Electric noted, "We have seen value in SOX. It helps build investors' trust and gives them more confidence."[1]

INTERNAL CONTROL

Internal control consists of all the related methods and measures adopted within an organization to safeguard its assets, enhance the reliability of its accounting records, increase efficiency of operations, and ensure compliance with laws and regulations. Internal control systems have five primary components as listed below.[2]

- **A control environment.** It is the responsibility of top management to make it clear that the organization values integrity and that unethical activity will not be tolerated. This component is often referred to as the "tone at the top."

[1]"Corporate Regulation Must Be Working—There's a Backlash," *Wall Street Journal* (June 16, 2004), p. C1; and Judith Burns, "Is Sarbanes-Oxley Working?" *Wall Street Journal* (June 21, 2004), pp. R8–R9.
[2]The Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission, "Internal Control—Integrated Framework," *www.coso.org/publications/executive_summary_integrated_framework.htm* (accessed March 2008).

- **Risk assessment.** Companies must identify and analyze the various factors that create risk for the business and must determine how to manage these risks.
- **Control activities.** To reduce the occurrence of fraud, management must design policies and procedures to address the specific risks faced by the company.
- **Information and communication.** The internal control system must capture and communicate all pertinent information both down and up the organization, as well as communicate information to appropriate external parties.
- **Monitoring.** Internal control systems must be monitored periodically for their adequacy. Significant deficiencies need to be reported to top management and/or the board of directors.

PRINCIPLES OF INTERNAL CONTROL ACTIVITIES

study objective 2

Identify the principles of internal control activities.

Each of the five components of an internal control system is important. Here, we will focus on one component, the control activities. The reason? These activities are the backbone of the company's efforts to address the risks it faces, such as fraud. The specific control activities used by a company will vary, depending on management's assessment of the risks faced. This assessment is heavily influenced by the size and nature of the company.

The six principles of control activities are as follows.

- Establishment of responsibility
- Segregation of duties
- Documentation procedures
- Physical controls
- Independent internal verification
- Human resource controls

We explain these principles in the following sections. You should recognize that they apply to most companies and are relevant to both manual and computerized accounting systems.

Establishment of Responsibility

An essential principle of internal control is to assign responsibility to specific employees. **Control is most effective when only one person is responsible for a given task.**

To illustrate, assume that the cash on hand at the end of the day in a Safeway supermarket is $10 short of the cash rung up on the cash register. If only one person has operated the register, the shift manager can quickly determine responsibility for the shortage. If two or more individuals have worked the register, it may be impossible to determine who is responsible for the error. In the Feature Story, the principle of establishing responsibility does not appear to be strictly applied by Stephanie's, since three people operate the cash register on any given shift.

Establishing responsibility often requires limiting access only to authorized personnel, and then identifying those personnel. For example, the automated systems used by many companies have mechanisms such as identifying passcodes that keep track of who made a journal entry, who rang up a sale, or who entered an inventory storeroom at a particular time. Use of identifying passcodes enables the company to establish responsibility by identifying the particular employee who carried out the activity.

Transfer of cash drawers

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

Maureen Frugali was a training supervisor for claims processing at Colossal Healthcare. As a standard part of the claims processing training program, Maureen created fictitious claims for use by trainees. These fictitious claims were then sent to the accounts payable department. After the training claims had been processed, she was to notify Accounts Payable of all fictitious claims, so that they would not be paid. However, she did not inform Accounts Payable about every fictitious claim. She created some fictitious claims for entities that she controlled (that is, she would receive the payment), and she let Accounts Payable pay her.

Total take: $11 million

THE MISSING CONTROL

Establishment of responsibility. The healthcare company did not adequately restrict the responsibility for authoring and approving claims transactions. The training supervisor should not have been authorized to create claims in the company's "live" system.

Source: Adapted from Wells, *Fraud Casebook* (2007), pp. 61–70.

Segregation of Duties

Segregation of duties is indispensable in an internal control system. There are two common applications of this principle:

1. Different individuals should be responsible for related activities.
2. The responsibility for record-keeping for an asset should be separate from the physical custody of that asset.

The rationale for segregation of duties is this: **The work of one employee should, without a duplication of effort, provide a reliable basis for evaluating the work of another employee.** For example, the personnel that design and program computerized systems should not be assigned duties related to day-to-day use of the system. Otherwise, they could design the system to benefit them personally and conceal the fraud through day-to-day use.

SEGREGATION OF RELATED ACTIVITIES. Making one individual responsible for related activities increases the potential for errors and irregularities.

For example, companies should assign related *purchasing activities* to different individuals. Related purchasing activities include ordering merchandise, order approval, receiving goods, authorizing payment, and paying for goods or services. Various frauds are possible when one person handles related purchasing activities. For example:

- If a purchasing agent is allowed to order goods without supervisory approval, the likelihood of the agent receiving kickbacks from suppliers increases.
- If an employee who orders goods also handles receipt of the goods and invoice, as well as payment authorization, he or she might authorize payment for a fictitious invoice.

These abuses are less likely to occur when companies divide the purchasing tasks.

Similarly, companies should assign related *sales activities* to different individuals. Related selling activities include making a sale, shipping (or delivering) the goods to the customer, billing the customer, and receiving payment. Various frauds are possible when one person handles related sales transactions. For example:

- If a salesperson can make a sale without obtaining supervisory approval, he or she might make sales at unauthorized prices to increase sales commissions.

- A shipping clerk who also has access to accounting records could ship goods to himself.
- A billing clerk who handles billing and cash receipts could understate the amount billed for sales made to friends and relatives.

These abuses are less likely to occur when companies divide the sales tasks: the salespeople make the sale; the shipping department ships the goods on the basis of the sales order; and the billing department prepares the sales invoice after comparing the sales order with the report of goods shipped.

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

Lawrence Fairbanks, the assistant vice-chancellor of communications at Aesop University, was allowed to make purchases of under $2,500 for his department without external approval. Unfortunately, he also sometimes bought items for himself, such as expensive antiques and other collectibles. How did he do it? He replaced the vendor invoices he received with fake vendor invoices that he created. The fake invoices had descriptions that were more consistent with communications department purchases. He submitted these fake invoices to the accounting department as the basis for their journal entries and to the accounts payable department as the basis for payment.

Total take: $475,000

THE MISSING CONTROL

Segregation of duties. The university had not properly segregated related purchasing activities. Lawrence was ordering items, receiving the items, and receiving the invoice. By receiving the invoice, he had control over the documents that were used to account for the purchase and thus was able to substitute a fake invoice.

Source: Adapted from Wells, *Fraud Casebook* (2007), pp. 3–15.

Accounting employee A
Maintains cash balances per books

Segregation of duties
(Accountability for assets)

Assistant cashier B
Maintains custody of cash on hand

SEGREGATION OF RECORD-KEEPING FROM PHYSICAL CUSTODY. The accountant should have neither physical custody of the asset nor access to it. Likewise, the custodian of the asset should not maintain or have access to the accounting records. **The custodian of the asset is not likely to convert the asset to personal use when one employee maintains the record of the asset, and a different employee has physical custody of the asset.** The separation of accounting responsibility from the custody of assets is especially important for cash and inventories because these assets are very vulnerable to fraud.

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

Angela Bauer was an accounts payable clerk for Aggasiz Construction Company. She prepared and issued checks to vendors and reconciled bank statements. She perpetrated a fraud in this way: She wrote checks for costs that the company had not actually incurred (e.g., fake taxes). A supervisor then approved and signed the checks. Before issuing the check, though, Angela would "white-out" the payee line on the check and change it to personal accounts that she controlled. She was able to conceal the theft because she also reconciled the bank account. That is, nobody else ever saw that the checks had been altered.

Total take: $570,000

THE MISSING CONTROL

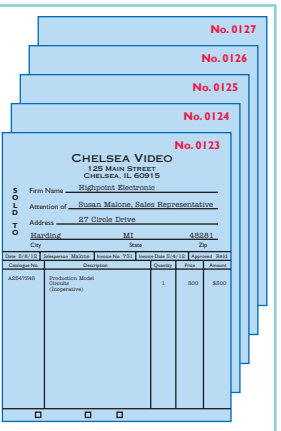
Segregation of duties. Aggasiz Construction Company did not properly segregate record-keeping from physical custody. Angela had physical custody of the blank checks, which essentially was control of the cash. She also had record-keeping responsibility because she prepared the bank reconciliation.

Source: Adapted from Wells, *Fraud Casebook* (2007), pp. 100–107.

Documentation Procedures

Documents provide evidence that transactions and events have occurred. At Stephanie's Gourmet Coffee and More, the cash register tape is the restaurant's documentation for the sale and the amount of cash received. Similarly, a shipping document indicates that the goods have been shipped, and a sales invoice indicates that the company has billed the customer for the goods. By requiring signatures (or initials) on the documents, the company can identify the individual(s) responsible for the transaction or event. Companies should document transactions when the transaction occurs.

Companies should establish procedures for documents. First, whenever possible, companies should use **prenumbered documents, and all documents should be accounted for**. Prenumbering helps to prevent a transaction from being recorded more than once, or conversely, from not being recorded at all. Second, the control system should require that employees **promptly forward source documents for accounting entries to the accounting department**. **This control measure helps to ensure timely recording of the transaction** and contributes directly to the accuracy and reliability of the accounting records.



Prenumbered invoices

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

To support their reimbursement requests for travel costs incurred, employees at Mod Fashions Corporation's design center were required to submit receipts. The receipts could include the detailed bill provided for a meal, or the credit card receipt provided when the credit card payment is made, or a copy of the employee's monthly credit card bill that listed the item. A number of the designers who frequently traveled together came up with a fraud scheme: They submitted claims for the same expenses. For example, if they had a meal together that cost $200, one person submitted the detailed meal bill, another submitted the credit card receipt, and a third submitted a monthly credit card bill showing the meal as a line item. Thus, all three received a $200 reimbursement.

Total take: $75,000

THE MISSING CONTROL

Documentation procedures. Mod Fashions should require the original, detailed receipt. It should not accept photocopies, and it should not accept credit card statements. In addition, documentation procedures could be further improved by requiring the use of a corporate credit card (rather than personal credit card) for all business expenses.

Source: Adapted from Wells, *Fraud Casebook* (2007), pp. 79–90.

Physical Controls

Use of physical controls is essential. *Physical controls* relate to the safeguarding of assets and enhance the accuracy and reliability of the accounting records. Illustration 7-2 (page 342) shows examples of these controls.

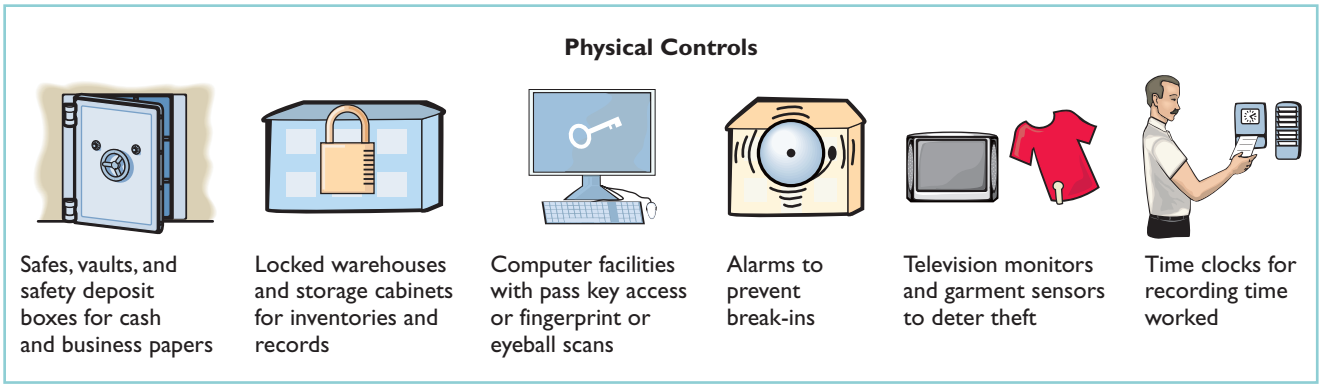


Illustration 7-2 Physical controls

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

At Centerstone Health, a large insurance company, the mailroom each day received insurance applications from prospective customers. Mailroom employees scanned the applications into electronic documents before the applications were processed. Once the applications are scanned they can be accessed online by authorized employees.

Insurance agents at Centerstone Health earn commissions based upon successful applications. The sales agent's name is listed on the application. However, roughly 15% of the applications are from customers who did not work with a sales agent. Two friends—Alex, an employee in record keeping, and Parviz, a sales agent—thought up a way to perpetrate a fraud. Alex identified scanned applications that did not list a sales agent. After business hours, he entered the mailroom and found the hardcopy applications that did not show a sales agent. He wrote in Parviz's name as the sales agent and then rescanned the application for processing. Parviz received the commission, which the friends then split.

Total take: $240,000

THE MISSING CONTROL

Physical controls. Centerstone Health lacked two basic physical controls that could have prevented this fraud. First, the mailroom should have been locked during nonbusiness hours, and access during business hours should have been tightly controlled. Second, the scanned applications supposedly could be accessed only by authorized employees using their password. However, the password for each employee was the same as the employee's user ID. Since employee user ID numbers were available to all other employees, all employees knew all other employees' passwords. Thus, Alex could enter the system using another employee's password and access the scanned applications.

Source: Adapted from Wells, *Fraud Casebook* (2007), pp. 316–326.

Independent Internal Verification

Most internal control systems provide for **independent internal verification**. This principle involves the review of data prepared by employees. To obtain maximum benefit from independent internal verification:

1. Companies should verify records periodically or on a surprise basis.
2. An employee who is independent of the personnel responsible for the information should make the verification.
3. Discrepancies and exceptions should be reported to a management level that can take appropriate corrective action.

Independent internal verification is especially useful in comparing recorded transactions with existing assets. The reconciliation of the cash register tape with the cash in the register at Stephanie's Gourmet Coffee and More is an example of this internal control principle. Another common example is the reconciliation of a company's cash balance per books with the cash balance per bank and the verification of the perpetual inventory records through a count of physical inventory. Illustration 7-3 shows the relationship between this principle and the segregation of duties principle.

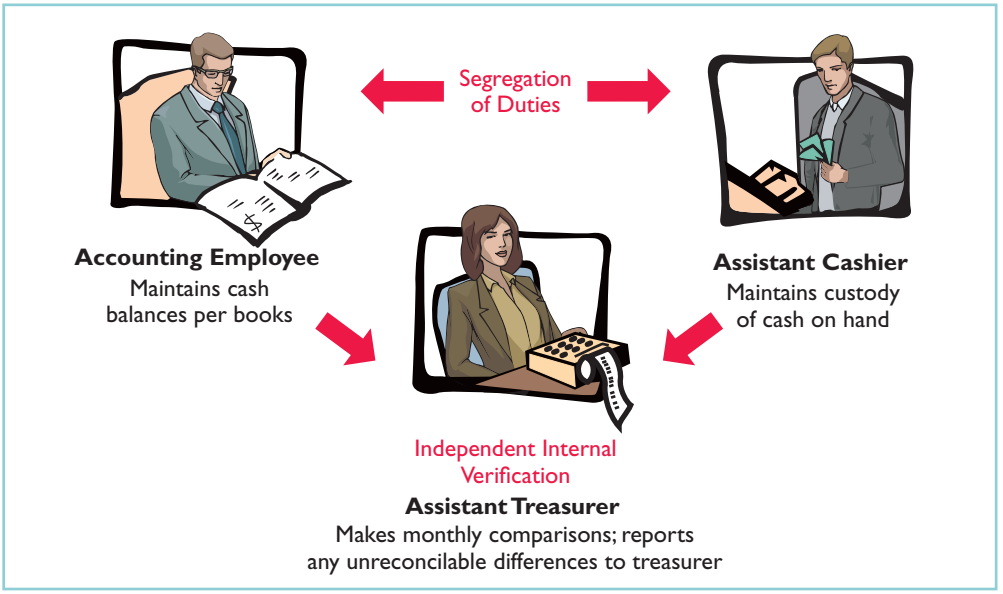


Illustration 7-3
Comparison of segregation of duties principle with independent internal verification principle

Large companies often assign independent internal verification to internal auditors. **Internal auditors** are company employees who continuously evaluate the effectiveness of the company's internal control systems. They review the activities of departments and individuals to determine whether prescribed internal controls are being followed. They also recommend improvements when needed. In fact, most fraud is discovered by the company through internal mechanisms such as existing internal controls and internal audits. For example, the fraud at WorldCom, involving billions of dollars, was uncovered by an internal auditor.

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

Bobbi Jean Donnelly, the office manager for Mod Fashions Corporation's design center, was responsible for preparing the design center budget and reviewing expense reports submitted by design center employees. Her desire to upgrade her wardrobe got the better of her, and she enacted a fraud that involved filing expense-reimbursement requests for her own personal clothing purchases. She was able to conceal the fraud because she was responsible for reviewing all expense reports, including her own. In addition, she sometimes was given ultimate responsibility for signing off on the expense reports when her boss was "too busy." Also, because she controlled the budget, when she submitted her expenses, she coded them to budget items that she knew were running under budget, so that they would not catch anyone's attention.

Total take: $275,000

THE MISSING CONTROL

Independent internal verification. Bobbi Jean's boss should have verified her expense reports. When asked what he thought her expenses for a year were, the boss said about $10,000. At $115,000 per year, her actual expenses were more than ten times what would have been expected. However, because he was "too busy" to verify her expense reports or to review the budget, he never noticed.

Source: Adapted from Wells, *Fraud Casebook* (2007), pp. 79–90.

Human Resource Controls

Human resource control activities include the following.

1. **Bond employees who handle cash.** **Bonding** involves obtaining insurance protection against theft by employees. It contributes to the safeguarding of cash in two ways: First, the insurance company carefully screens all individuals before adding them to the policy and may reject risky applicants. Second, bonded employees know that the insurance company will vigorously prosecute all offenders.
2. **Rotate employees' duties and require employees to take vacations.** These measures deter employees from attempting thefts since they will not be able to permanently conceal their improper actions. Many banks, for example, have discovered employee thefts when the employee was on vacation or assigned to a new position.
3. **Conduct thorough background checks.** Many believe that the most important and inexpensive measure any business can take to reduce employee theft and fraud is for the human resources department to conduct thorough background checks. Two tips: (1) Check to see whether job applicants actually graduated from the schools they list. (2) Never use the telephone numbers for previous employers given on the reference sheet; always look them up yourself.

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

Ellen Lowry was the desk manager and Josephine Rodriquez was the head of housekeeping at the Excelsior Inn, a luxury hotel. The two best friends were so dedicated to their jobs that they never took vacations, and they frequently filled in for other employees. In fact, Ms. Rodriquez, whose job as head of housekeeping did not include cleaning rooms, often cleaned rooms herself, "just to help the staff keep up." These two "dedicated" employees, working as a team, found a way to earn a little more cash. Ellen, the desk manager, provided significant discounts to guests who paid with cash. She kept the cash and did not register the guest in the hotel's computerized system. Instead, she took the room out of circulation "due to routine maintenance." Because the room did not show up as being used, it did not receive a normal housekeeping assignment. Instead, Josephine, the head of housekeeping, cleaned the rooms during the guests' stay.

Total take: $95,000

THE MISSING CONTROL

Human resource controls. Ellen, the desk manager, had been fired by a previous employer after being accused of fraud. If the Excelsior Inn had conducted a thorough background check, it would not have hired her. The hotel fraud was detected when Ellen missed work for a few days due to illness. A system of mandatory vacations and rotating days off would have increased the chances of detecting the fraud before it became so large.

Source: Adapted from Wells, *Fraud Casebook* (2007), pp. 145–155.

Accounting Across the Organization

SOX Boosts the Role of Human Resources

Under SOX, a company needs to keep track of employees' degrees and certifications to ensure that employees continue to meet the specified requirements of a job. Also, to ensure proper employee supervision and proper separation of duties, companies must develop and monitor an organizational chart. When one corporation went through this exercise it found that out of 17,000 employees, there were 400 people who did not report to anyone, and they had 35 people who reported to each other. In addition, SOX also mandates that, if an employee complains of an unfair firing and mentions financial issues at the company, HR must refer the case to the company audit committee and possibly to its legal counsel.

? Why would unsupervised employees or employees who report to each other represent potential internal control threats? (See page 392.)

LIMITATIONS OF INTERNAL CONTROL

Companies generally design their systems of internal control to provide **reasonable assurance** of proper safeguarding of assets and reliability of the accounting records. The concept of reasonable assurance rests on the premise that the costs of establishing control procedures should not exceed their expected benefit.

Helpful Hint Controls may vary with the risk level of the activity. For example, management may consider cash to be high risk and maintaining inventories in the stockroom as lower risk. Thus, management would have stricter controls for cash.

To illustrate, consider shoplifting losses in retail stores. Stores could eliminate such losses by having a security guard stop and search customers as they leave the store. But store managers have concluded that the negative effects of such a procedure cannot be justified. Instead, stores have attempted to control shoplifting losses by less costly procedures: They post signs saying, "We reserve the right to inspect all packages" and "All shoplifters will be prosecuted." They use hidden TV cameras and store detectives to monitor customer activity, and they install sensor equipment at exits.

The **human element** is an important factor in every system of internal control. A good system can become ineffective as a result of employee fatigue, carelessness, or indifference. For example, a receiving clerk may not bother to count goods received and may just "fudge" the counts. Occasionally, two or more individuals may work together to get around prescribed controls. Such **collusion** can significantly reduce the effectiveness of a system, eliminating the protection offered by segregation of duties. No system of internal control is perfect.

The size of the business also may impose limitations on internal control. A small company, for example, may find it difficult to segregate duties or to provide for independent internal verification.

Ethics Insight

Big Theft at Small Companies

A study by the Association of Certified Fraud Examiners indicates that businesses with fewer than 100 employees are most at risk for employee theft. In fact, 38% of frauds occurred at companies with fewer than 100 employees. The median loss at small companies was $200,000, which was higher than the median fraud at companies with more than 10,000 employees ($147,000). A $200,000 loss can threaten the very existence of a small company.

Source: 2008 Report to the Nation on Occupational Fraud and Abuse, Association of Certified Fraud Examiners, *www.acfe.com/documents/2008-rttn.pdf,* p. 26.

? Why are small companies more susceptible to employee theft? (See page 392.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Are the company's financial statements supported by adequate internal controls?	Auditor's report, management discussion and analysis, articles in financial press	The principles of internal control activities are (1) establishment of responsibility, (2) segregation of duties, (3) documentation procedures, (4) physical controls, (5) independent internal verification, and (6) human resource controls.	If any indication is given that these or other controls are lacking, use the financial statements with caution.

before you go on...

CONTROL ACTIVITIES

Do it! Identify which control activity is violated in each of the following situations, and explain how the situation creates an opportunity for a fraud.

1. The person with primary responsibility for reconciling the bank account is also the company's accountant and makes all bank deposits.
2. Wellstone Company's treasurer received an award for distinguished service because he had not taken a vacation in 30 years.
3. In order to save money on order slips, and to reduce time spent keeping track of order slips, a local bar/restaurant does not buy prenumbered order slips.

Action Plan

- Familiarize yourself with each of the control activities listed on page 338.
- Understand the nature of the frauds that each control activity is intended to address.

Solution

1. Violates the control activity of segregation of duties. Record-keeping should be separate from physical custody. As a consequence, the employee could embezzle cash and make journal entries to hide the theft.
2. Violates the control activity of human resource controls. Key employees, such as a treasurer, should be required to take vacations. The treasurer, who manages the company's cash, might embezzle cash and use his position to conceal the theft.
3. Violates the control activity of documentation procedures. If pre-numbered documents are not used, then it is virtually impossible to account for the documents. As a consequence, an employee could write up a dinner sale, receive the cash from the customer, and then throw away the order slip and keep the cash.

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE7-1, BE7-2, BE7-3, Do it! 7-1, E7-1,** and **E7-2.**

Cash Controls

Cash is the one asset that is readily convertible into any other type of asset. It also is easily concealed and transported, and is highly desired. Because of these characteristics, **cash is the asset most susceptible to fraudulent activities**. In addition, because of the large volume of cash transactions, numerous errors may occur in executing and recording them. To safeguard cash and to ensure the accuracy of the accounting records for cash, effective internal control over cash is critical.

study objective 3

Explain the applications of internal control principles to cash receipts.

CASH RECEIPTS CONTROLS

Illustration 7-4 shows how the internal control principles explained earlier apply to cash receipts transactions. As you might expect, companies vary considerably in how they apply these principles. To illustrate internal control over

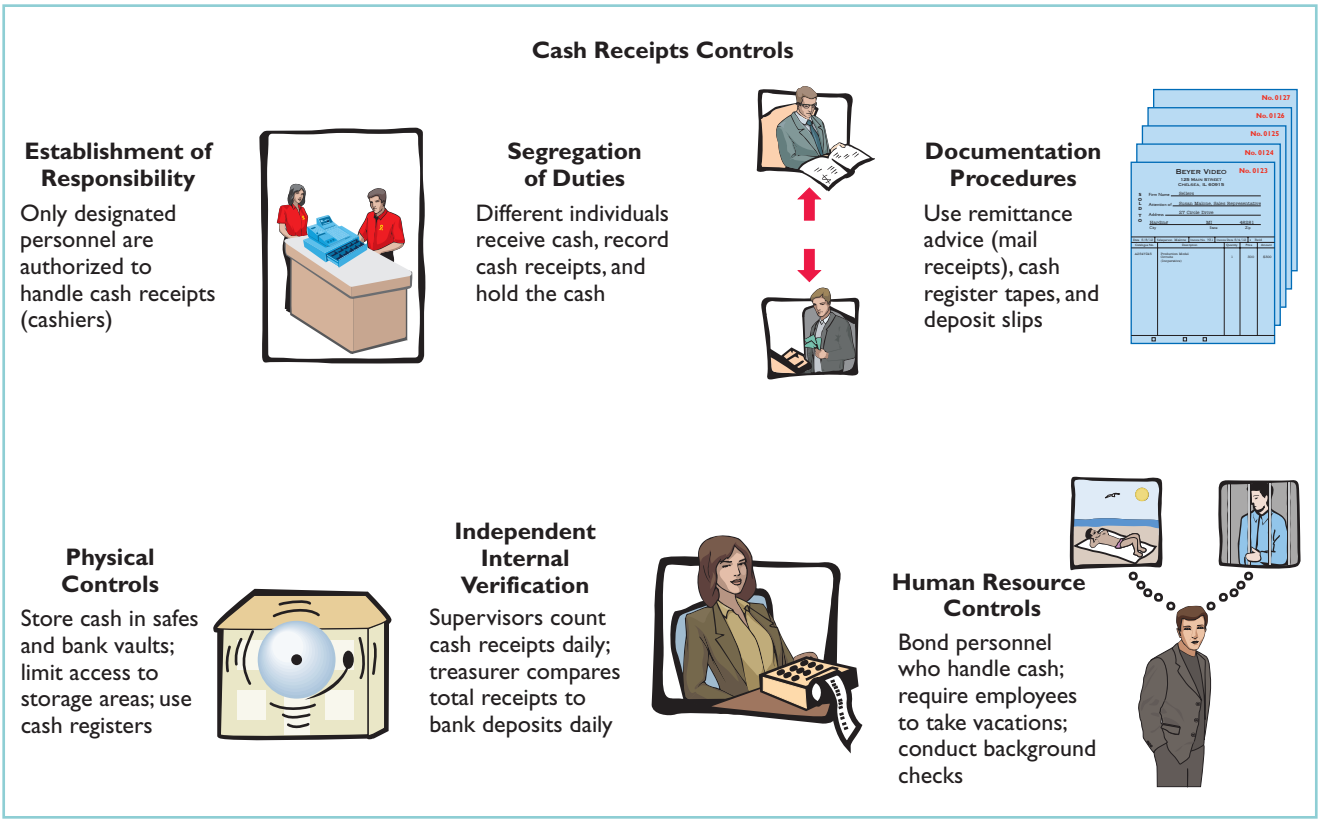


Illustration 7-4
Application of internal control principles to cash receipts

cash receipts, we will examine control activities for a retail store with both over-the-counter and mail receipts.

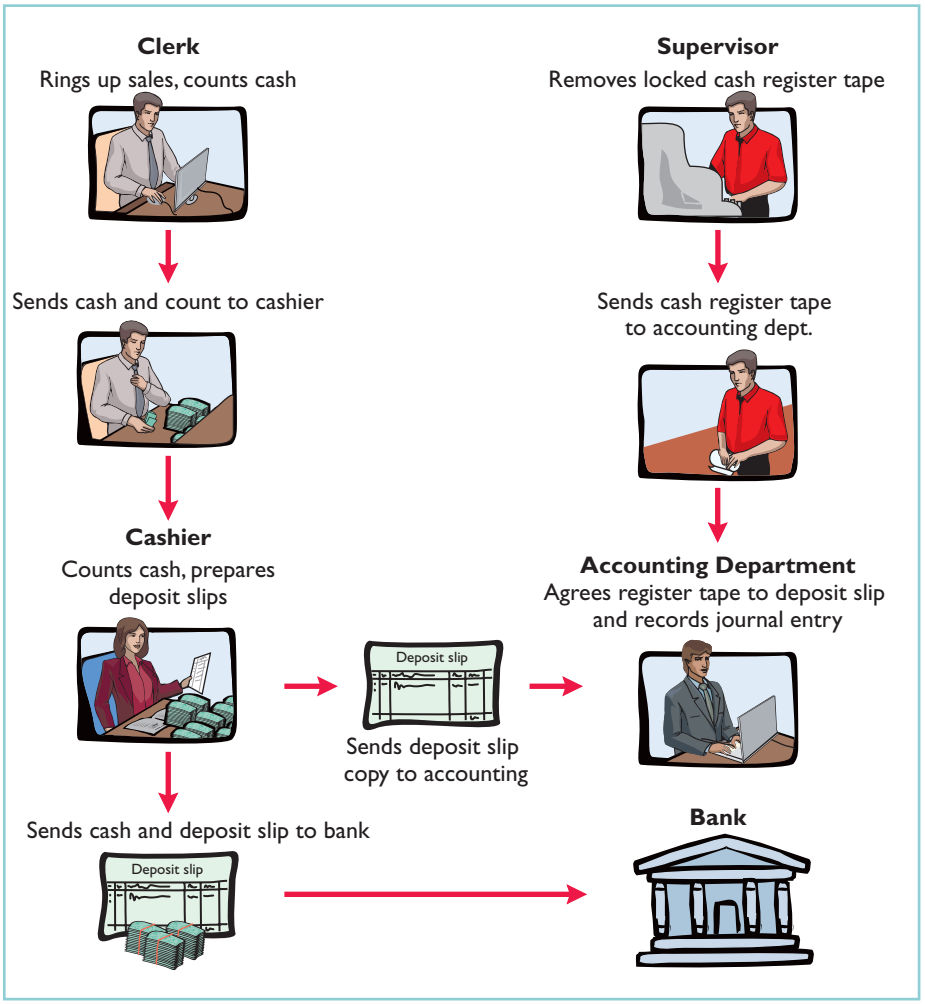
Over-the-Counter Receipts

In retail businesses, control of over-the-counter receipts centers on cash registers that are visible to customers. A cash sale is rung-up on a cash register with the amount clearly visible to the customer. This activity prevents the cashier from ringing up a lower amount and pocketing the difference. The customer receives an itemized cash register receipt slip and is expected to count the change received. The cash register's tape is locked in the register until a supervisor removes it. This tape accumulates the daily transactions and totals.

At the end of the clerk's shift, the clerk counts the cash and sends the cash and the count to the cashier. The cashier counts the cash, prepares a deposit slip, and deposits the cash at the bank. The cashier also sends a duplicate of the deposit slip to the accounting department to indicate cash received. The supervisor removes the cash register tape and sends it to the accounting department as the basis for a journal entry to record the cash received. The tape is compared to the deposit slip for any discrepancies. Illustration 7-5 (page 348) summarizes this process.

This system for handling cash receipts uses an important internal control principle—segregation of record-keeping from physical custody. The supervisor has access to the cash register tape, but **not** to the cash. The clerk and the cashier have access to the cash, but **not** to the register tape. In addition, the cash register tape provides documentation and enables independent internal verification with the deposit slip. Use of these three principles of internal control (segregation of record-keeping from physical custody, documentation, and independent internal verification) provides an effective system of internal control. Any attempt at fraudulent activity should be detected unless there is collusion among the employees.

Illustration 7-5 Control of over-the-counter receipts



Helpful Hint Flowcharts such as this one enhance the understanding of the flow of documents, the processing steps, and the internal control procedures.

In some instances, the amount deposited at the bank will not agree with the cash recorded in the accounting records based on the cash register tape. These differences often result because the clerk hands incorrect change back to the retail customer. In this case, the difference between the actual cash and the amount reported on the cash register tape is reported in a Cash Over and Short account. For example, suppose that the cash register tape indicated sales of $6,956.20 but the amount of cash was only $6,946.10. A cash shortfall of $10.10 exists. To account for this cash shortfall and related cash, the company makes the following entry.

A	=	L	+	SE
+6,946.10				
		−10.10		
		+6,956.20		

Cash Flows
+6,946.10

Cash	6,946.10	
Cash Over and Short	10.10	
Sales Revenue		6,956.20
(To record cash shortfall)		

Cash Over and Short is an income statement item. It is reported as miscellaneous expense when there is a cash shortfall, and as miscellaneous revenue when there is an overage. Clearly, the amount should be small. Any material amounts in this account should be investigated.

Mail Receipts

All mail receipts should be opened in the presence of at least two mail clerks. These receipts are generally in the form of checks. A mail clerk should endorse each check "For Deposit Only." This restrictive endorsement reduces the likelihood that

someone could divert the check to personal use. Banks will not give an individual cash when presented with a check that has this type of endorsement.

The mail-receipt clerks prepare, in triplicate, a list of the checks received each day. This list shows the name of the check issuer, the purpose of the payment, and the amount of the check. Each mail clerk signs the list to establish responsibility for the data. The original copy of the list, along with the checks, is then sent to the cashier's department. A copy of the list is sent to the accounting department for recording in the accounting records. The clerks also keep a copy.

This process provides excellent internal control for the company. By employing two clerks, the chance of fraud is reduced; each clerk knows he or she is being observed by the other clerk(s). To engage in fraud, they would have to collude. The customers who submit payments also provide control, because they will contact the company with a complaint if they are not properly credited for payment. Because the cashier has access to cash but not the records, and the accounting department has access to records but not cash, neither can engage in undetected fraud.

before you go on...

Do it! L. R. Cortez is concerned about the control over cash receipts in his fast-food restaurant, Big Cheese. The restaurant has two cash registers. At no time do more than two employees take customer orders and ring up sales. Work shifts for employees range from 4 to 8 hours. Cortez asks your help in installing a good system of internal control over cash receipts.

CONTROL OVER CASH RECEIPTS

Action Plan

- Differentiate among the internal control principles of (1) establishment of responsibility, (2) physical controls, and (3) independent internal verification.
- Design an effective system of internal control over cash receipts.

the navigator

Solution

Cortez should assign a cash register to each employee at the start of each work shift, with register totals set at zero. Each employee should be instructed to use only the assigned register and to ring up all sales. Each customer should be given a receipt. At the end of the shift, the employee should do a cash count. A separate employee should compare the cash count with the register tape, to be sure they agree. In addition, Cortez should install an automated system that would enable the company to compare orders rung up on the register to orders processed by the kitchen.

Related exercise material: **BE7-4, BE7-5, Do it! 7-2,** and **E7-3.**

CASH DISBURSEMENTS CONTROLS

study objective 4

Explain the applications of internal control principles to cash disbursements.

Companies disburse cash for a variety of reasons, such as to pay expenses and liabilities or to purchase assets. **Generally, internal control over cash disbursements is more effective when companies pay by check, rather than by cash.** One exception is **for incidental amounts that are paid out of petty cash.**[3]

Companies generally issue checks only after following specified control procedures. Illustration 7-6 (page 350) shows how principles of internal control apply to cash disbursements.

Voucher System Controls

Most medium and large companies use vouchers as part of their internal control over cash disbursements. A **voucher system** is a network of approvals by authorized individuals, acting independently, to ensure that all disbursements by check are proper.

[3]We explain the operation of a petty cash fund in the appendix to this chapter on pages 366–368.

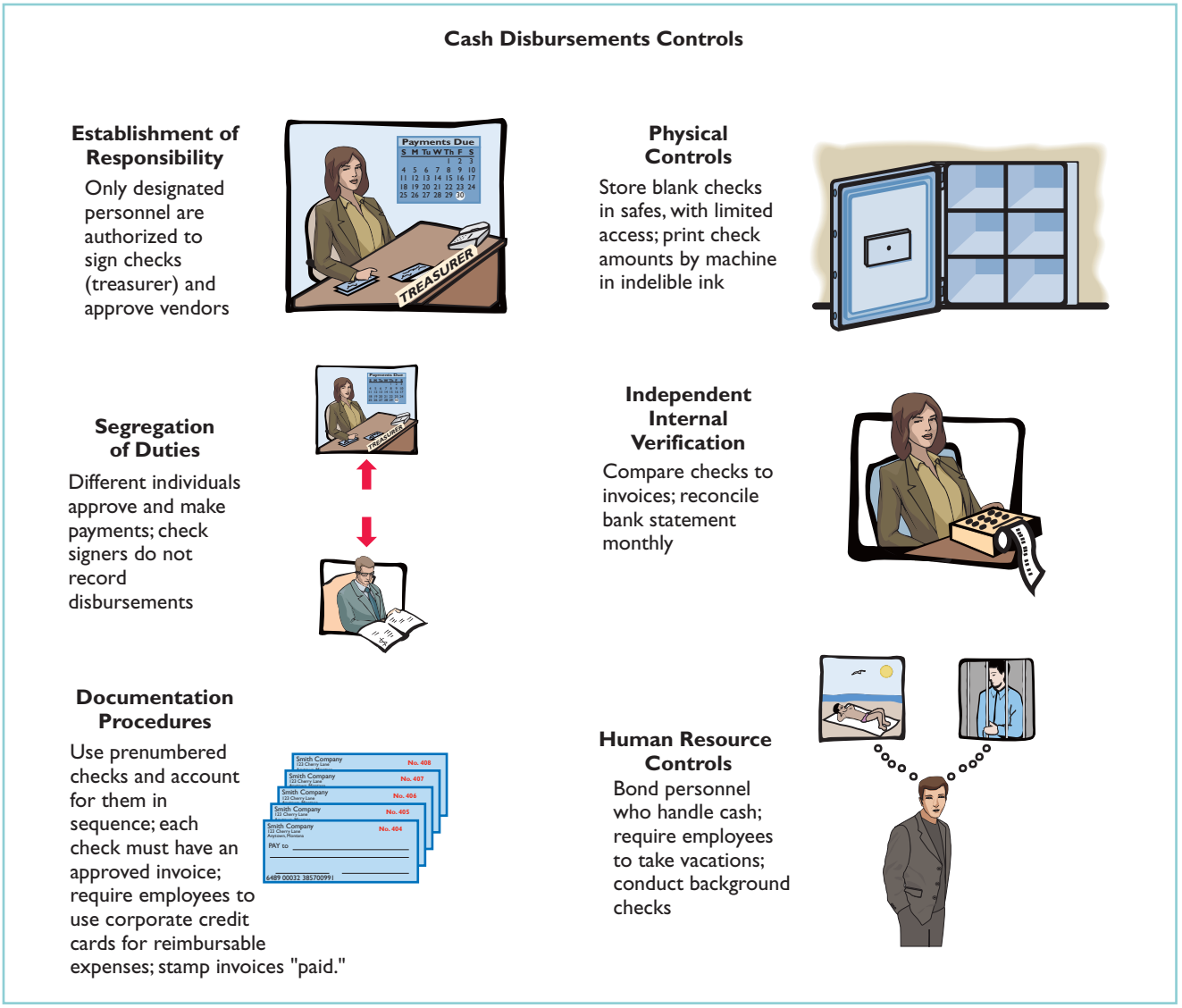


Illustration 7-6
Application of internal control principles to cash disbursements

The system begins with the authorization to incur a cost or expense. It ends with the issuance of a check for the liability incurred. A **voucher** is an authorization form prepared for each expenditure in a voucher system. Companies require vouchers for all types of cash disbursements except those from petty cash.

The starting point in preparing a voucher is to fill in the appropriate information about the liability on the face of the voucher. The vendor's invoice provides most of the needed information. Then, an employee in accounts payable records the voucher (in a journal called a **voucher register**) and files it according to the date on which it is to be paid. The company issues and sends a check on that date, and stamps the voucher "paid." The paid voucher is sent to the accounting department for recording (in a journal called the **check register**). A voucher system involves two journal entries, one to record the liability when the voucher is issued and a second to pay the liability that relates to the voucher.

The use of a voucher system improves internal control over cash disbursements. First, the authorization process inherent in a voucher system establishes responsibility. Each individual has responsibility to review the underlying documentation to ensure that it is correct. In addition, the voucher system keeps track of the documents that back up each transaction. By keeping these documents in one place, a supervisor can independently verify the authenticity of

each transaction. Consider, for example, the case of Aesop University presented on page 340. Aesop did not use a voucher system for transactions under $2,500. As a consequence, there was no independent verification of the documents, which enabled the employee to submit fake invoices to hide his unauthorized purchases.

Petty Cash Fund

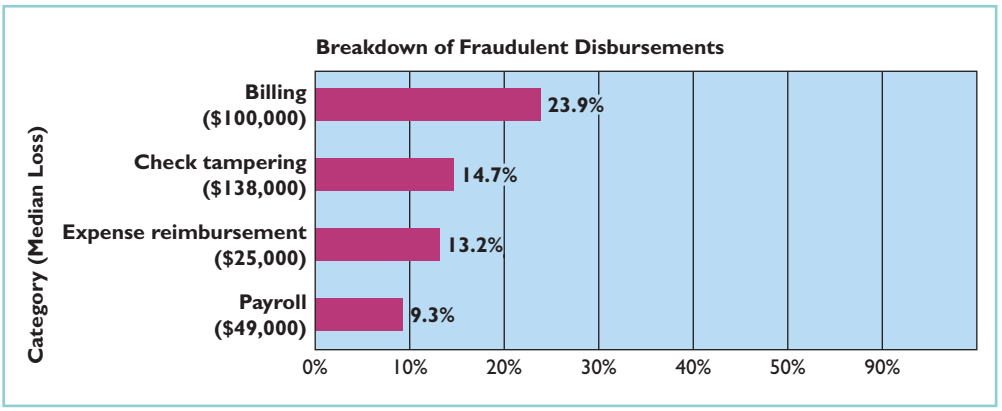
As you learned earlier in the chapter, better internal control over cash disbursements is possible when companies make payments by check. However, using checks to pay such small amounts as those for postage due, employee working lunches, and taxi fares is both impractical and a nuisance. A common way of handling such payments, while maintaining satisfactory control, is to use a petty cash fund. A **petty cash fund** is a cash fund used to pay relatively small amounts. We explain the operation of a petty cash fund in the appendix at the end of this chapter.

Ethics Note Internal control over a petty cash fund is strengthened by: (1) having a supervisor make surprise counts of the fund to confirm whether the paid petty cash receipts and fund cash equal the fund amount, and (2) canceling or mutilating the paid petty cash receipts so they cannot be resubmitted for reimbursement.

Ethics Insight

How Employees Steal

A recent study by the Association of Certified Fraud Examiners found that two-thirds of all employee thefts involved a fraudulent disbursement by an employee. The most common form (28.3% of cases) was fraudulent billing schemes. In these, the employee causes the company to issue a payment to the employee by submitting a bill for nonexistent goods or services, purchases of personal goods by the employee, or inflated invoices. The following graph shows various types of fraudulent disbursements and the median loss from each.



Source: 2008 Report to the Nation on Occupational Fraud and Abuse, Association of Certified Fraud Examiners, *www.acfe.com/documents/2008_rttn.pdf,* p. 13.

? How can companies reduce the likelihood of fraudulent disbursements? (See page 392.)

Control Features: Use of a Bank

The use of a bank contributes significantly to good internal control over cash. A company can safeguard its cash by using a bank as a depository and clearinghouse for checks received and checks written. The use of a bank checking account minimizes the amount of currency that must be kept on hand. It also facilitates control of cash because a double record is maintained of all bank transactions—one by the business and the other by the bank. The asset account

Cash maintained by the company is the "flip-side" of the bank's liability account for that company. A **bank reconciliation** is the process of comparing the bank's balance with the company's balance, and explaining the differences to make them agree.

Many companies have more than one bank account. For efficiency of operations and better control, national retailers like Wal-Mart and Target often have regional bank accounts. Similarly, a company such as ExxonMobil with more than 100,000 employees may have a payroll bank account as well as one or more general bank accounts. In addition, a company may maintain several bank accounts in order to have more than one source for short-term loans.

BANK STATEMENTS

Each month, the company receives from the bank a **bank statement** showing its bank transactions and balances.[4] For example, the statement for Laird Company in Illustration 7-7 shows the following: (1) checks paid and other debits that reduce the balance in the depositor's account, (2) deposits and other credits that increase the balance in the depositor's account, and (3) the account balance after each day's transactions.

Illustration 7-7 Bank statement

National Bank & Trust
Midland, Michigan 48654 Member FDIC

ACCOUNT STATEMENT

LAIRD COMPANY
77 WEST CENTRAL AVENUE
MIDLAND, MICHIGAN 48654

Statement Date/Credit Line Closing Date: April 30, 2012

457923
ACCOUNT NUMBER

Balance Last Statement	Deposits and Credits		Checks and Debits		Balance This Statement
	No.	Total Amount	No.	Total Amount	
13,256.90	20	34,805.10	26	32,154.55	15,907.45

CHECKS AND DEBITS			DEPOSITS AND CREDITS		DAILY BALANCE	
Date	No.	Amount	Date	Amount	Date	Amount
4–2	435	644.95	4–2	4,276.85	4–2	16,888.80
4–5	436	3,260.00	4–3	2,137.50	4–3	18,249.65
4–4	437	1,185.79	4–5	1,350.47	4–4	17,063.86
4–3	438	776.65	4–7	982.46	4–5	15,154.33
4–8	439	1,781.70	4–8	1,320.28	4–7	14,648.89
4–7	440	1,487.90	4–9 CM	1,035.00	4–8	11,767.47
4–8	441	2,420.00	4–11	2,720.00	4–9	12,802.47
4–11	442	1,585.60	4–12	757.41	4–11	13,936.87
4–12	443	1,226.00	4–13	1,218.56	4–12	13,468.28
4–29	NSF	425.60	4–27	1,545.57	4–27	13,005.45
4–29	459	1,080.30	4–29	2,929.45	4–29	14,429.00
4–30	DM	30.00	4–30	2,128.60	4–30	15,907.45
4–30	461	620.15				

Symbols: **CM** Credit Memo **EC** Error Correction **NSF** Not Sufficient Funds
DM Debit Memo **INT** Interest Earned **SC** Service Charge

Reconcile Your Account Promptly

[4]Our presentation assumes that a company makes all adjustments at the end of the month. In practice, a company may also make journal entries during the month as it receives information from the bank regarding its account.

Remember that bank statements are prepared from the *bank's* perspective. For example, every deposit the bank receives is an increase in the bank's liabilities (an account payable to the depositor). Therefore, in Illustration 7-7, National Bank and Trust *credits* to Laird Company every deposit it received from Laird. The reverse occurs when the bank "pays" a check issued by Laird Company on its checking account balance: Payment reduces the bank's liability and is therefore *debited* to Laird's account with the bank.

The bank statement lists in numerical sequence all paid checks along with the date the check was paid and its amount. Upon paying a check, the bank stamps the check "paid"; a paid check is sometimes referred to as a **canceled** check. In addition, the bank includes with the bank statement memoranda explaining other debits and credits it made to the depositor's account.

Helpful Hint Essentially, the bank statement is a copy of the bank's records sent to the customer for periodic review.

A check that is not paid by a bank because of insufficient funds in a bank account is called an **NSF check** (not sufficient funds). The bank uses a debit memorandum when a previously deposited customer's check "bounces" because of insufficient funds. In such a case, the customer's bank marks the check NSF (not sufficient funds) and returns it to the depositor's bank. The bank then debits (decreases) the depositor's account, as shown by the symbol NSF in Illustration 7-7, and sends the NSF check and debit memorandum to the depositor as notification of the charge. The NSF check creates an account receivable for the depositor and reduces cash in the bank account.

RECONCILING THE BANK ACCOUNT

study objective 5

Prepare a bank reconciliation.

Because the bank and the company maintain independent records of the company's checking account, you might assume that the respective balances will always agree. In fact, the two balances are seldom the same at any given time, and both balances differ from the "correct or true" balance. Therefore, it is necessary to make the balance per books and the balance per bank agree with the correct or true amount—a process called **reconciling the bank account**. The need for reconciliation has two causes:

1. **Time lags** that prevent one of the parties from recording the transaction in the same period.
2. **Errors** by either party in recording transactions.

Time lags occur frequently. For example, several days may elapse between the time a company pays by check and the date the bank pays the check. Similarly, when a company uses the bank's night depository to make its deposits, there will be a difference of one day between the time the company records the receipts and the time the bank does so. A time lag also occurs whenever the bank mails a debit or credit memorandum to the company.

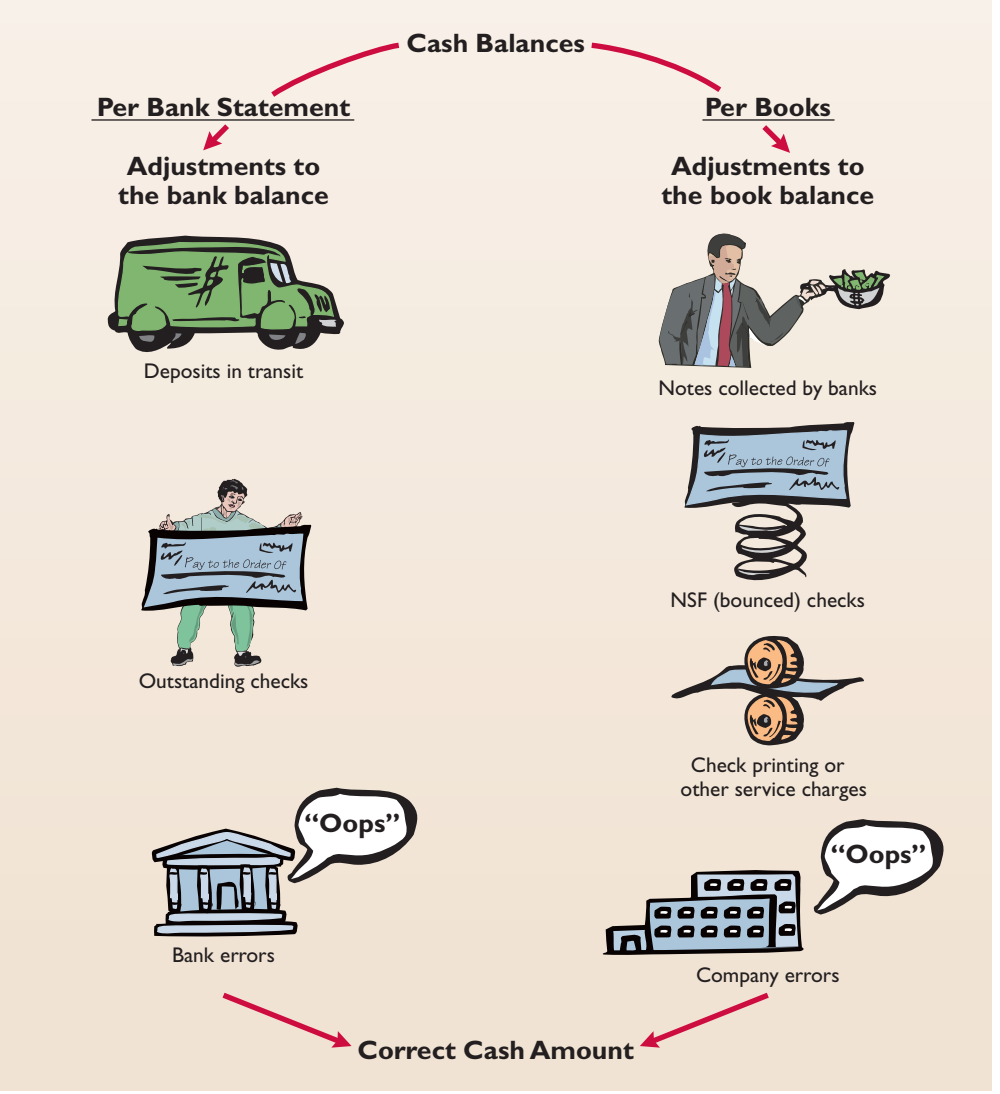
The incidence of errors depends on the effectiveness of the internal controls maintained by the company and the bank. Bank errors are infrequent. However, either party could accidentally record a $450 check as $45 or $540. In addition, the bank might mistakenly charge a check drawn by C. D. Berg to the account of C. D. Burg.

Reconciliation Procedure

In reconciling the bank account, it is customary to reconcile the balance per books and balance per bank to their adjusted (correct or true) cash balances. **To obtain maximum benefit from a bank reconciliation, an employee who has no other responsibilities related to cash should prepare the reconciliation.** When companies do not follow the internal control principle of independent internal verification in preparing the reconciliation, cash embezzlements may escape unnoticed. For example, in the Anatomy of a Fraud box at the bottom of page 340, a bank reconciliation by someone other than Angela Bauer might have exposed her embezzlement.

Illustration 7-8 shows the reconciliation process. The starting point in preparing the reconciliation is to enter the balance per bank statement and balance per books on a schedule. The following steps should reveal all the reconciling items that cause the difference between the two balances.

Illustration 7-8 Bank reconciliation adjustments



Helpful Hint Deposits in transit and outstanding checks are reconciling items because of time lags.

Step 1. **Deposits in transit.** Compare the individual deposits on the bank statement with the deposits in transit from the preceding bank reconciliation and with the deposits per company records or copies of duplicate deposit slips. Deposits recorded by the depositor that have not been recorded by the bank represent **deposits in transit**. Add these deposits to the balance per bank.

Step 2. **Outstanding checks.** Compare the paid checks shown on the bank statement or the paid checks returned with the bank statement with (a) checks outstanding from the preceding bank reconciliation, and (b) checks issued by the company as recorded in the cash payments journal. Issued checks recorded by the company that have not been paid by the bank represent **outstanding checks**. Deduct outstanding checks from the balance per the bank.

Step 3. **Errors.** Note any errors discovered in the previous steps and list them in the appropriate section of the reconciliation schedule. For example,

if the company mistakenly recorded as $159 a paid check correctly written for $195, the company would deduct the error of $36 from the balance per books. All errors made by the depositor are reconciling items in determining the adjusted cash balance per books. In contrast, all errors made by the bank are reconciling items in determining the adjusted cash balance per the bank.

Step 4. Bank memoranda. Trace bank memoranda to the depositor's records. The company lists in the appropriate section of the reconciliation schedule any unrecorded memoranda. For example, the company would deduct from the balance per books a $5 debit memorandum for bank service charges. Similarly, it would add to the balance per books a $32 credit memorandum for interest earned.

Bank Reconciliation Illustrated

Illustration 7-7 presented the bank statement for Laird Company. It shows a balance per bank of $15,907.45 on April 30, 2012. On this date the balance of cash per books is $11,589.45. From the foregoing steps, Laird determines the following reconciling items.

Helpful Hint Note in the bank statement that the bank has paid checks No. 459 and 461, but check No. 460 is not listed. Thus, this check is outstanding. If a complete bank statement were provided, checks No. 453 and 457 also would not be listed. Laird obtains the amounts for these three checks from its cash payments records.

Step 1.	**Deposits in transit:** April 30 deposit (received by bank on May 1).	$2,201.40
Step 2.	**Outstanding checks:** No. 453, $3,000.00; No. 457, $1,401.30; No. 460, $1,502.70.	5,904.00
Step 3.	**Errors:** Check No. 443 was correctly written by Laird for $1,226.00 and was correctly paid by the bank. However, Laird recorded the check as $1,262.00.	36.00
Step 4.	**Bank memoranda:**	
	(a) Debit—NSF check from J. R. Baron for $425.60	425.60
	(b) Debit—Printing company checks charge, $30	30.00
	(c) Credit—Collection of note receivable for $1,000 plus interest earned $50, less bank collection fee $15	1,035.00

Illustration 7-9 shows Laird's bank reconciliation.

Illustration 7-9 Bank reconciliation

LAIRD COMPANY
Bank Reconciliation
April 30, 2012

Cash balance per bank statement		$ 15,907.45
Add: Deposits in transit		2,201.40
		18,108.85
Less: Outstanding checks		
No. 453	$3,000.00	
No. 457	1,401.30	
No. 460	1,502.70	5,904.00
Adjusted cash balance per bank		**$12,204.85**
Cash balance per books		$ 11,589.45
Add: Collection of note receivable for $1,000 plus interest earned $50, less collection fee $15	$1,035.00	
Error in recording check No. 443	36.00	1,071.00
		12,660.45
Less: NSF check	425.60	
Bank service charge	30.00	455.60
Adjusted cash balance per books		**$12,204.85**

Alternative Terminology The terms *adjusted cash balance, true cash balance,* and *correct cash balance* are used interchangeably.

Helpful Hint These entries are adjusting entries. In prior chapters, we considered Cash an account that did not require adjustment because we had not yet explained a bank reconciliation.

Entries from Bank Reconciliation

The depositor (that is, the company) next must record each reconciling item used to determine the **adjusted cash balance per books**. If the company does not journalize and post these items, the Cash account will not show the correct balance. The adjusting entries for the Laird Company bank reconciliation on April 30 are as follows.

COLLECTION OF NOTE RECEIVABLE. This entry involves four accounts. Assuming that the interest of $50 has not been recorded and the collection fee is charged to Miscellaneous Expense, the entry is:

A	=	L	+	SE
+1,035				
				−15 Exp
−1,000				
				+50 Rev

Cash Flows
+1,035

Apr.	30	Cash	1,035	
		Miscellaneous Expense	15	
		Notes Receivable		1,000
		Interest Revenue		50
		(To record collection of note receivable by bank)		

BOOK ERROR. An examination of the cash disbursements journal shows that check No. 443 was a payment on account to Andrea Company, a supplier. The correcting entry is:

A	=	L	+	SE
+36				
		+36		

Cash Flows
+36

Apr.	30	Cash	36	
		Accounts Payable—Andrea Company		36
		(To correct error in recording check No. 443)		

NSF CHECK. As indicated earlier, an NSF check becomes an accounts receivable to the depositor. The entry is:

A	=	L	+	SE
+425.60				
−425.60				

Cash Flows
−425.60

Apr.	30	Accounts Receivable—J. R. Baron	425.60	
		Cash		425.60
		(To record NSF check)		

BANK SERVICE CHARGES. Companies typically debit to Miscellaneous Expense the check printing charges (DM) and other bank service charges (SC) because they are usually small in amount. Laird's entry is:

A	=	L	+	SE
				−30 Exp
−30				

Cash Flows
−30

Apr.	30	Miscellaneous Expense	30	
		Cash		30
		(To record charge for printing company checks)		

The foregoing entries could also be combined into one compound entry.

After Laird posts the entries, the Cash account will appear as in Illustration 7-10. The adjusted cash balance in the ledger should agree with the adjusted cash balance per books in the bank reconciliation in Illustration 7-9 (page 355).

Illustration 7-10
Adjusted balance in Cash account

Cash					
Apr. 30	Bal.	11,589.45	Apr. 30		425.60
30		1,035.00	30		30.00
30		36.00			
Apr. 30	Bal.	**12,204.85**			

What entries does the bank make? If the company discovers any bank errors in preparing the reconciliation, it should notify the bank so the bank can make the necessary corrections on its records. The bank does not make any entries for deposits in transit or outstanding checks. Only when these items reach the bank will the bank record these items.

Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) System

It is not surprising that companies and banks have developed approaches to transfer funds among parties without the use of paper (deposit tickets, checks, etc.). Such procedures, called **electronic funds transfers (EFTs)**, are disbursement systems that use wire, telephone, or computers to transfer cash from one location to another. Use of EFT is quite common. For example, many employees receive no formal payroll checks from their employers. Instead, employers send electronic payroll data to the appropriate banks. Also, individuals now frequently make regular payments such as those for house, car, and utilities by EFT.

EFT transactions normally result in better internal control since no cash or checks are handled by company employees. This does not mean that opportunities for fraud are eliminated. In fact, the same basic principles related to internal control apply to EFT transactions. For example, without proper segregation of duties and authorizations, an employee might be able to redirect electronic payments into a personal bank account and conceal the theft with fraudulent accounting entries.

Investor Insight

Madoff's Ponzi Scheme

No recent fraud has generated more interest and rage than the one perpetrated by Bernard Madoff. Madoff was an elite New York investment fund manager who was highly regarded by securities regulators. Investors flocked to him because he delivered very steady returns of between 10% and 15%, no matter whether the market was going up or going down. However, for many years, Madoff did not actually invest the cash that people gave to him. Instead, he was running a Ponzi scheme: He paid returns to existing investors using cash received from new investors. As long as the size of his investment fund continued to grow from new investments at a rate that exceeded the amounts that he needed to pay out in returns, Madoff was able to operate his fraud smoothly. To conceal his misdeeds, he fabricated false investment statements that were provided to investors. In addition, Madoff hired an auditor that never verified the accuracy of the investment records but automatically issued unqualified opinions each year. Although a competing fund manager warned the SEC a number of times over a nearly 10-year period that he thought Madoff was engaged in fraud, the SEC never aggressively investigated the allegations. Investors, many of which were charitable organizations, lost more than $18 billion. Madoff was sentenced to a jail term of 150 years.

? How was Madoff able to conceal such a giant fraud? (See page 392.)

before you go on...

BANK RECONCILIATION

Action Plan

- Understand the purpose of a bank reconciliation.
- Identify time lags and explain how they cause reconciling items.

Do it! Sally Kist owns Linen Kist Fabrics. Sally asks you to explain how she should treat the following reconciling items when reconciling the company's bank account: (1) a debit memorandum for an NSF check, (2) a credit memorandum for a note collected by the bank, (3) outstanding checks, and (4) a deposit in transit.

Solution

Sally should treat the reconciling items as follows.

(1) NSF check: Deduct from balance per books.
(2) Collection of note: Add to balance per books.
(3) Outstanding checks: Deduct from balance per bank.
(4) Deposit in transit: Add to balance per bank.

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE7-8, BE7-9, BE7-10, BE7-11, Do it! 7-3, E7-6, E7-7, E7-8, E7-9, E7-10,** and **E7-11.**

Reporting Cash

study objective 6

Explain the reporting of cash.

Cash consists of coins, currency (paper money), checks, money orders, and money on hand or on deposit in a bank or similar depository. Checks that are dated later than the current date (post-dated checks) are not included in cash. Companies report cash in two different statements: the balance sheet and the statement of cash flows. The balance sheet reports the amount of cash available at a given point in time. The statement of cash flows shows the sources and uses of cash during a period of time. The cash flow statement was introduced in Chapters 1 and 2 and will be discussed in much detail in Chapter 12. In this section, we discuss some important points regarding the presentation of cash in the balance sheet.

When presented in a balance sheet, cash on hand, cash in banks, and petty cash are often combined and reported simply as **Cash**. Because it is the most liquid asset owned by the company, cash is listed first in the current assets section of the balance sheet.

CASH EQUIVALENTS

Many companies use the designation "Cash and cash equivalents" in reporting cash. (See Illustration 7-11 for an example.) **Cash equivalents** are short-term, highly liquid investments that are both:

1. Readily convertible to known amounts of cash, and
2. So near their maturity that their market value is relatively insensitive to changes in interest rates.

Illustration 7-11 Balance sheet presentation of cash

DELTA AIR LINES, INC.
Balance Sheet (partial)
December 31, 2009
(in millions)

Assets	
Current assets	
Cash and cash equivalents	**$4,607**
Short-term investments	71
Restricted cash	**423**
Accounts receivable and other, net	1,360
Parts inventories	327
Prepaid expenses and other	953
Total current assets	$7,741

Examples of cash equivalents are Treasury bills, commercial paper (short-term corporate notes), and money market funds. All typically are purchased with cash that is in excess of immediate needs.

Occasionally a company will have a net negative balance in its bank account. In this case, the company should report the negative balance among current liabilities. For example, farm equipment manufacturer Ag-Chem recently reported "Checks outstanding in excess of cash balances" of $2,145,000 among its current liabilities.

Ethics Note Recently, some companies were forced to restate their financial statements because they had too broadly interpreted which types of investments could be treated as cash equivalents. By reporting these items as cash equivalents, the companies made themselves look more liquid.

RESTRICTED CASH

A company may have **restricted cash**, cash that is not available for general use but rather is restricted for a special purpose. For example, landfill companies are often required to maintain a fund of restricted cash to ensure they will have adequate resources to cover closing and clean-up costs at the end of a landfill site's useful life. McKesson Corp. recently reported restricted cash of $962 million to be paid out as the result of investor lawsuits.

Cash restricted in use should be reported separately on the balance sheet as restricted cash. If the company expects to use the restricted cash within the next year, it reports the amount as a current asset. When this is not the case, it reports the restricted funds as a noncurrent asset.

Illustration 7-11 shows restricted cash reported in the financial statements of Delta Air Lines. The company is required to maintain restricted cash as collateral to support insurance obligations related to workers' compensation claims. Delta does not have access to these funds for general use, and so it must report them separately, rather than as part of cash and cash equivalents.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is all of the company's cash available for general use?	Balance sheet and notes to financial statements	Does the company report any cash as being restricted?	A restriction on the use of cash limits management's ability to use those resources for general obligations. This might be considered when assessing liquidity.

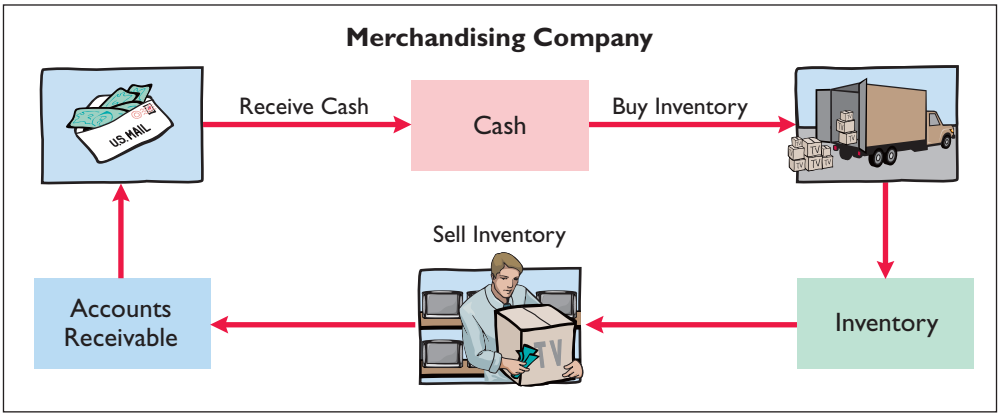
Managing and Monitoring Cash

Many companies struggle, not because they fail to generate sales, but because they can't manage their cash. A real-life example of this is a clothing manufacturing company owned by Sharon McCollick. McCollick gave up a stable, high-paying marketing job with Intel Corporation to start her own company. Soon she had more orders from stores such as JC Penney and Dayton Hudson (now Target) than she could fill. Yet she found herself on the brink of financial disaster, owing three mortgage payments on her house and $2,000 to the IRS. Her company could generate sales, but it was not collecting cash fast enough to support its operations. The bottom line is that a business must have cash.[5]

A merchandising company's operating cycle is generally shorter than that of a manufacturing company. Illustration 7-12 (page 360) shows the cash to cash operating cycle of a merchandising operation.

[5]Adapted from T. Petzinger, Jr., "The Front Lines—Sharon McCollick Got Mad and Tore Down a Bank's Barriers," *Wall Street Journal* (May 19, 1995), p. B1.

Illustration 7-12
Operating cycle of a merchandising company



To understand cash management, consider the operating cycle of Sharon McCollick's clothing manufacturing company. First, it purchases cloth. Let's assume that it purchases the cloth on credit provided by the supplier, so the company owes its supplier money. Next, employees convert the cloth to clothing. Now the company also owes its employees money. Next, it sells the clothing to retailers, on credit. McCollick's company will have no money to repay suppliers or employees until it receives payments from customers. In a manufacturing operation there may be a significant lag between the original purchase of raw materials and the ultimate receipt of cash from customers.

Managing the often-precarious balance created by the ebb and flow of cash during the operating cycle is one of a company's greatest challenges. The objective is to ensure that a company has sufficient cash to meet payments as they come due, yet minimize the amount of non-revenue-generating cash on hand.

BASIC PRINCIPLES OF CASH MANAGEMENT

study objective 7
Discuss the basic principles of cash management.

Management of cash is the responsibility of the company **treasurer**. Any company can improve its chances of having adequate cash by following five basic principles of cash management.

1. **Increase the speed of receivables collection.** Money owed Sharon McCollick by her customers is money that she can't use. The more quickly customers pay her, the more quickly she can use those funds. Thus, rather than have an average collection period of 30 days, she may want an average collection period of 15 days. However, she must carefully weigh any attempt to force her customers to pay earlier against the possibility that she may anger or alienate customers. Perhaps her competitors are willing to provide a 30-day grace period. As noted in Chapter 5, one common way to encourage customers to pay more quickly is to offer cash discounts for early payment under such terms as 2/10, n/30.
2. **Keep inventory levels low.** Maintaining a large inventory of cloth and finished clothing is costly. It ties up large amounts of cash, as well as warehouse space. Increasingly, companies are using techniques to reduce the inventory on hand, thus conserving their cash. Of course, if Sharon McCollick has inadequate inventory, she will lose sales. The proper level of inventory is an important decision.
3. **Monitor payment of liabilities.** Sharon McCollick should monitor when her bills are due, so she avoids paying bills too early. Let's say her supplier

allows 30 days for payment. If she pays in 10 days, she has lost the use of that cash for 20 days. Therefore, she should use the full payment period. But, she should not pay late. This could damage her credit rating (and future borrowing ability). Also, late payments to suppliers can damage important supplier relationships and may even threaten a supplier's viability. Sharon McCollick's company also should conserve cash by taking cash discounts offered by suppliers, when possible.

4. **Plan the timing of major expenditures.** To maintain operations or to grow, all companies must make major expenditures. These often require some form of outside financing. In order to increase the likelihood of obtaining outside financing, McCollick should carefully consider the timing of major expenditures in light of her company's operating cycle. If at all possible, she should make any major expenditure when the company normally has excess cash—usually during the off-season.

5. **Invest idle cash.** Cash on hand earns nothing. An important part of the treasurer's job is to ensure that the company invests any excess cash, even if it is only overnight. Many businesses, such as Sharon McCollick's clothing company, are seasonal. During her slow season, when she has excess cash, she should invest it.

   To avoid a cash crisis, however, it is very important that investments of idle cash be highly liquid and risk-free. A *liquid investment* is one with a market in which someone is always willing to buy or sell the investment. A *risk-free investment* means there is no concern that the party will default on its promise to pay its principal and interest. For example, using excess cash to purchase stock in a small company because you heard that it was probably going to increase in value in the near term is totally inappropriate. First, the stock of small companies is often illiquid. Second, if the stock suddenly decreases in value, you might be forced to sell the stock at a loss in order to pay your bills as they come due. The most common form of liquid investments is interest-paying U.S. government securities.

International Note International sales complicate cash management. For example, if Nike must repay a Japanese supplier 30 days from today in Japanese yen, Nike will be concerned about how the exchange rate of U.S. dollars for yen might change during those 30 days. Often, corporate treasurers make investments known as *hedges* to lock in an exchange rate to reduce the company's exposure to exchange-rate fluctuation.

Illustration 7-13 summarizes these five principles of cash management.

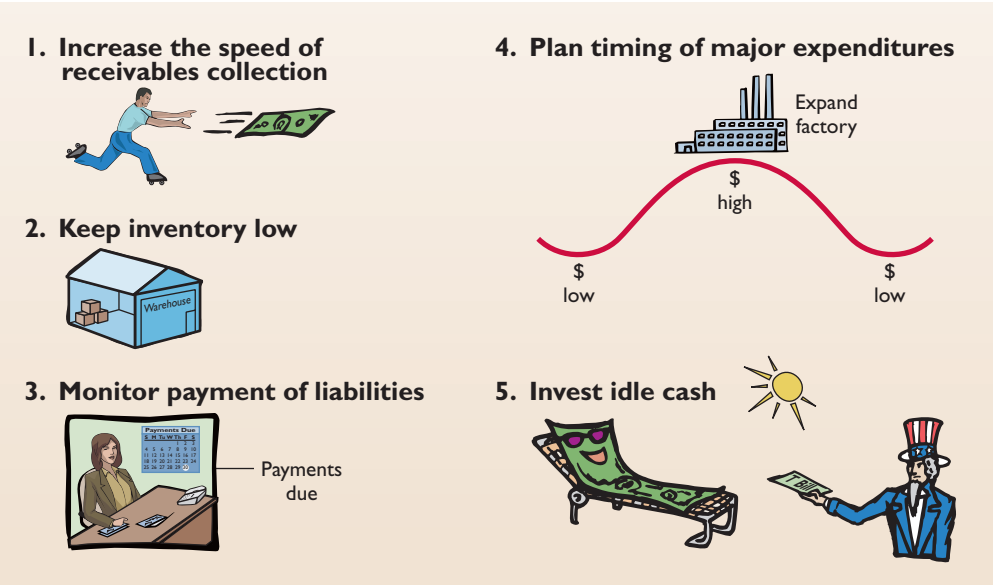


Illustration 7-13 Five principles of sound cash management

KEEPING AN EYE ON CASH

study objective 8

Identify the primary elements of a cash budget.

Because cash is so vital to a company, **planning the company's cash needs** is a key business activity. It enables the company to plan ahead to cover possible cash shortfalls and to make investments of idle funds. The **cash budget** shows anticipated cash flows, usually over a one- to two-year period. In this section, we introduce the basics of cash budgeting. More advanced discussion of cash budgets and budgets in general is provided in managerial accounting texts.

As shown below, the cash budget contains three sections—cash receipts, cash disbursements, and financing—and the beginning and ending cash balances.

ANY COMPANY Cash Budget	
Beginning cash balance	$X,XXX
Add: **Cash receipts** (itemized)	X,XXX
Total available cash	X,XXX
Less: **Cash disbursements** (itemized)	X,XXX
Excess (deficiency) of available cash over cash disbursements	X,XXX
Financing	
Add: Borrowings	X,XXX
Less: Repayments	X,XXX
Ending cash balance	$X,XXX

The **Cash receipts** section includes expected receipts from the company's principal source(s) of cash, such as cash sales and collections from customers on credit sales. This section also shows anticipated receipts of interest and dividends, and proceeds from planned sales of investments, plant assets, and the company's capital stock.

The **Cash disbursements** section shows expected payments for inventory, labor, overhead, and selling and administrative expenses. It also includes projected payments for income taxes, dividends, investments, and plant assets. Note that it does not include depreciation since depreciation expense does not use cash.

The **Financing** section shows expected borrowings and repayments of borrowed funds plus interest. Financing is needed when there is a cash deficiency or when the cash balance is less than management's minimum required balance.

Companies must prepare multi-period cash budgets in sequence because the ending cash balance of one period becomes the beginning cash balance for the next period. In practice, companies often prepare cash budgets for the next 12 months on a monthly basis.

To minimize detail, we will assume that Hayes Company prepares an annual cash budget by quarters. Preparing a cash budget requires making some assumptions. For example, Hayes makes assumptions regarding collection of accounts receivable, sales of securities, payments for materials and salaries, and purchases of property, plant, and equipment. The accuracy of the cash budget is very dependent on the accuracy of these assumptions.

On the next page, we present the cash budget for Hayes Company. The budget indicates that the company will need $3,000 of financing in the second quarter to maintain a minimum cash balance of $15,000. Since there is an excess of available cash over disbursements of $22,500 at the end of the third quarter, Hayes will repay the borrowing, plus $100 interest, in that quarter.

A cash budget contributes to more effective cash management. For example, it can show when a company will need additional financing, well before the actual need arises. Conversely, it can indicate when the company will have excess cash available for investments or other purposes.

HAYES COMPANY
Cash Budget
For the Year Ending December 31, 2012

	Quarter			
	1	2	3	4
Beginning cash balance	$ 38,000	$ 25,500	$ 15,000	$ 19,400
Add: **Cash receipts**				
Collections from customers	168,000	198,000	228,000	258,000
Sale of securities	2,000	0	0	0
Total receipts	170,000	198,000	228,000	258,000
Total available cash	208,000	223,500	243,000	277,400
Less: **Cash disbursements**				
Inventory	23,200	27,200	31,200	35,200
Salaries	62,000	72,000	82,000	92,000
Selling and administrative expenses (excluding depreciation)	94,300	99,300	104,300	109,300
Purchase of truck	0	10,000	0	0
Income tax expense	3,000	3,000	3,000	3,000
Total disbursements	182,500	211,500	220,500	239,500
Excess (deficiency) of available cash over disbursements	25,500	12,000	22,500	37,900
Financing				
Add: Borrowings	0	3,000	0	0
Less: Repayments—plus $100 interest	0	0	3,100	0
Ending cash balance	$ 25,500	$ 15,000	$ 19,400	$ 37,900

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Will the company be able to meet its projected cash needs?	Cash budget (typically available only to management)	The cash budget shows projected sources and uses of cash. If cash uses exceed internal cash sources, then the company must look for outside sources.	Two issues: (1) Are management's projections reasonable? (2) If outside sources are needed, are they available?

before you go on...

Do it! **CASH BUDGET**

Martian Company's management wants to maintain a minimum monthly cash balance of $15,000. At the beginning of March, the cash balance is $16,500; expected cash receipts for March are $210,000; and cash disbursements are expected to be $220,000. How much cash, if any, must Martian borrow to maintain the desired minimum monthly balance?

Action Plan

- Add the beginning cash balance to receipts to determine total available cash.
- Subtract disbursements to determine excess or deficiency.
- Compare excess or deficiency with desired minimum cash to determine borrowing needs.

the navigator

Solution

Beginning cash balance	$ 16,500
Add: Cash receipts for March	210,000
Total available cash	226,500
Less: Cash disbursements for March	220,000
Excess of available cash over cash disbursements	6,500
Financing	
Add: **Borrowings**	**8,500**
Ending cash balance	$ 15,000

To maintain the desired minimum cash balance of $15,000, Martian Company must borrow $8,500 of cash.

Related exercise material: **BE7-13,** **Do it!** **7-4,** and **E7-14.**

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

Presented below is hypothetical financial information for Mattel Corporation. Included in this information is financial statement data from the year ended December 31, 2011, which should be used to evaluate Mattel's cash position.

Selected Financial Information
Year Ended December 31, 2011
(in millions)

Net cash provided by operations	$325
Capital expenditures	162
Dividends paid	80
Total expenses	680
Depreciation expense	40
Cash balance	206

Also provided are projected data which are management's best estimate of its sources and uses of cash during 2012. This information should be used to prepare a cash budget for 2012.

Projected Sources and Uses of Cash
(in millions)

Beginning cash balance	$206
Cash receipts from sales of product	355
Cash receipts from sale of short-term investments	20
Cash payments for inventory	357
Cash payments for selling and administrative costs	201
Cash payments for property, plant, and equipment	45
Cash payments for taxes	17

Mattel Corporation's management believes it should maintain a balance of $200 million cash.

Instructions

(a) Using the hypothetical projected sources and uses of cash information presented above, prepare a cash budget for 2012 for Mattel Corporation.

(b) Comment on the company's cash adequacy, and discuss steps that might be taken to improve its cash position.

Solution

(a)

MATTEL CORPORATION
Cash Budget
For the Year 2012
(in millions)

Beginning cash balance		$206
Add: Cash receipts		
From sales of product	$355	
From sale of short-term investments	20	375
Total available cash		581
Less: Cash disbursements		
Payments for inventory	357	
Payments for selling and administrative costs	201	
Payments for property, plant, and equipment	45	
Payments for taxes	17	
Total disbursements		620
Excess (deficiency) of available cash over disbursements		(39)
Financing		
Add: **Borrowings**		**239**
Ending cash balance		$200

(b) Using these hypothetical data, Mattel's cash position appears adequate. For 2012, Mattel is projecting a cash shortfall. This is not necessarily of concern, but it should be investigated. Given that its primary line of business is toys, and that most toys are sold during December, we would expect Mattel's cash position to vary significantly during the course of the year. After the holiday season, it probably has a lot of excess cash. Earlier in the year, when it is making and selling its product but has not yet been paid, it may need to borrow to meet any temporary cash shortfalls.

If Mattel's management is concerned with its cash position, it could take the following steps: (1) Offer its customers cash discounts for early payment, such as 2/10, n/30. (2) Implement inventory management techniques to reduce the need for large inventories of such things as the plastics used to make its toys. (3) Carefully time payments to suppliers by keeping track of when payments are due, so as not to pay too early. (4) If it has plans for major expenditures, time those expenditures to coincide with its seasonal period of excess cash.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Define fraud and internal control. A fraud is a dishonest act by an employee that results in personal benefit to the employee at a cost to the employer. The fraud triangle refers to the three factors that contribute to fraudulent activity by employees: opportunity, financial pressure, and rationalization. Internal control consists of all the related methods and measures adopted within an organization to safeguard its assets, enhance the reliability of its accounting records, increase efficiency of operations, and ensure compliance with laws and regulations.

2 Identify the principles of internal control activities. The principles of internal control are: establishment of responsibility; segregation of duties; documentation procedures; physical controls; independent internal verification; and human resource controls.

3 Explain the applications of internal control principles to cash receipts. Internal controls over cash receipts include: (a) designating only personnel such as cashiers to handle cash; (b) assigning the duties of receiving cash, recording cash, and having custody of cash to different individuals; (c) obtaining remittance advices for mail receipts, cash register tapes for over-the-counter receipts, and deposit slips for bank deposits; (d) using company safes and bank vaults to store cash with access limited to authorized personnel, and using cash registers in executing over-the-counter receipts; (e) making independent daily counts of register receipts and daily comparisons of total receipts with total deposits; and (f) conducting background checks and bonding personnel who handle cash, as well as requiring them to take vacations.

4 Explain the applications of internal control principles to cash disbursements. Internal controls over cash disbursements include: (a) having only specified individuals such as the treasurer authorized to sign checks; (b) assigning the duties of approving items for payment, paying the items, and recording the payment to different individuals; (c) using prenumbered checks and accounting for all checks, with each check supported by an approved invoice; after payment, stamping each approved invoice "paid"; (d) storing blank checks in a safe or vault with access restricted to authorized personnel, and using a machine with indelible ink to imprint amounts on checks; (e) comparing each check with the approved invoice before issuing the check, and making monthly reconciliations of bank and book balances; and (f) bonding personnel who handle cash, requiring employees to take vacations, and conducting background checks.

5 Prepare a bank reconciliation. In reconciling the bank account, it is customary to reconcile the balance per books and the balance per bank to their adjusted balance. The steps reconciling the Cash account are to determine deposits in transit, outstanding checks, errors by the depositor or the bank, and unrecorded bank memoranda.

6 Explain the reporting of cash. Cash is listed first in the current assets section of the balance sheet. Companies often report cash together with cash equivalents. Cash restricted for a special purpose is reported separately as a current asset or as a noncurrent asset, depending on when the company expects to use the cash.

7 Discuss the basic principles of cash management. The basic principles of cash management include: (a) increase the speed of receivables collection, (b) keep inventory levels low, (c) monitor the timing of payment of liabilities, (d) plan timing of major expenditures, and (e) invest idle cash.

8 Identify the primary elements of a cash budget. The three main elements of a cash budget are the cash receipts section, cash disbursements section, and financing section.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Are the company's financial statements supported by adequate internal controls?	Auditor's report, management discussion and analysis, articles in financial press	The principles of internal control activities are (1) establishment of responsibility, (2) segregation of duties, (3) documentation procedures, (4) physical controls, (5) independent internal verification, and (6) human resource controls.	If any indication is given that these or other controls are lacking, use the financial statements with caution.
Is all of the company's cash available for general use?	Balance sheet and notes to financial statements	Does the company report any cash as being restricted?	A restriction on the use of cash limits management's ability to use those resources for general obligations. This might be considered when assessing liquidity.
Will the company be able to meet its projected cash needs?	Cash budget (typically available only to management)	The cash budget shows projected sources and uses of cash. If cash uses exceed internal cash sources, then the company must look for outside sources.	Two issues: (1) Are management's projections reasonable? (2) If outside sources are needed, are they available?

appendix 7A

Operation of the Petty Cash Fund

study objective 9

Explain the operation of a petty cash fund.

The operation of a petty cash fund involves (1) establishing the fund, (2) making payments from the fund, and (3) replenishing the fund.

ESTABLISHING THE PETTY CASH FUND

Two essential steps in establishing a petty cash fund are: (1) appointing a petty cash custodian who will be responsible for the fund, and (2) determining the size of the fund. Ordinarily, a company expects the amount in the fund to cover anticipated disbursements for a three- to four-week period.

When the company establishes the petty cash fund, it issues a check payable to the petty cash custodian for the stipulated amount. If Laird Company decides to establish a $100 fund on March 1, the entry in general journal form is:

Mar.	1	Petty Cash	100	
		Cash		100
		(To establish a petty cash fund)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+100				
−100				

Cash Flows
no effect

The fund custodian cashes the check and places the proceeds in a locked petty cash box or drawer. Most petty cash funds are established on a fixed-amount basis. Moreover, the company will make no additional entries to the Petty Cash account unless the stipulated amount of the fund is changed. For example, if Laird Company decides on July 1 to increase the size of the fund to $250, it would debit Petty Cash $150 and credit Cash $150.

Ethics Note Petty cash funds are authorized and legitimate. In contrast, "slush" funds are unauthorized and hidden (under the table).

MAKING PAYMENTS FROM PETTY CASH

The custodian of the petty cash fund has the authority to make payments from the fund that conform to prescribed management policies. Usually, management limits the size of expenditures that come from petty cash and does not permit use of the fund for certain types of transactions (such as making short-term loans to employees).

Each payment from the fund must be documented on a prenumbered petty cash receipt (or petty cash voucher). The signatures of both the custodian and the individual receiving payment are required on the receipt. If other supporting documents such as a freight bill or invoice are available, they should be attached to the petty cash receipt.

Helpful Hint From the standpoint of internal control, the receipt satisfies two principles: (1) establishing responsibility (signature of custodian), and (2) documentation procedures.

The custodian keeps the receipts in the petty cash box until the fund is replenished. As a result, the sum of the petty cash receipts and money in the fund should equal the established total at all times. This means that management can make surprise counts at any time by an independent person, such as an internal auditor, to determine the correctness of the fund.

The company does not make an accounting entry to record a payment at the time it is taken from petty cash. It is considered both inexpedient and unnecessary to do so. Instead, the company recognizes the accounting effects of each payment when the fund is replenished.

REPLENISHING THE PETTY CASH FUND

When the money in the petty cash fund reaches a minimum level, the company replenishes the fund. The petty cash custodian initiates a request for reimbursement. This individual prepares a schedule (or summary) of the payments that have been made and sends the schedule, supported by petty cash receipts and other documentation, to the treasurer's office. The receipts and supporting documents are examined in the treasurer's office to verify that they were proper payments from the fund. The treasurer then approves the request, and a check is prepared to restore the fund to its established amount. At the same time, all supporting documentation is stamped "paid" so that it cannot be submitted again for payment.

Helpful Hint Replenishing involves three internal control procedures: segregation of duties, documentation procedures, and independent internal verification.

To illustrate, assume that on March 15 the petty cash custodian requests a check for $87. The fund contains $13 cash and petty cash receipts for postage

$44, supplies $38, and miscellaneous expenses $5. The entry, in general journal form, to record the check is:

A	=	L	+	SE
				−44 Exp
+38				
				−5 Exp
−87				

Cash Flows
−87

Mar. 15	Postage Expense	44	
	Supplies	38	
	Miscellaneous Expense	5	
	Cash		87
	(To replenish petty cash fund)		

Note that the reimbursement entry does not affect the Petty Cash account. Replenishment changes the composition of the fund by replacing the petty cash receipts with cash, but it does not change the balance in the fund.

Occasionally, in replenishing a petty cash fund the company may need to recognize a cash shortage or overage. To illustrate, assume in the preceding example that the custodian had only $12 in cash in the fund plus the receipts as listed. The request for reimbursement would therefore be for $88, and the following entry would be made.

A	=	L	+	SE
				−44 Exp
+38				
				−5 Exp
				−1 Exp
−88				

Cash Flows
−88

Mar. 15	Postage Expense	44	
	Supplies	38	
	Miscellaneous Expense	5	
	Cash Over and Short	1	
	Cash		88
	(To replenish petty cash fund)		

Conversely, if the custodian had $14 in cash, the reimbursement request would be for $86, and Cash Over and Short would be credited for $1. A debit balance in Cash Over and Short is reported in the income statement as miscellaneous expense; a credit balance is reported as miscellaneous revenue. The company closes Cash Over and Short to Income Summary at the end of the year.

Companies should replenish a petty cash fund **at the end of the accounting period**, **regardless of the cash in the fund**. Replenishment at this time is necessary in order to recognize the effects of the petty cash payments on the financial statements.

Internal control over a petty cash fund is strengthened by (1) having a supervisor make surprise counts of the fund to ascertain whether the paid petty cash receipts and fund cash equal the designated amount, and (2) canceling or mutilating the paid petty cash receipts so they cannot be resubmitted for reimbursement.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 7A

9 Explain the operation of a petty cash fund. In operating a petty cash fund, a company establishes the fund by appointing a custodian and determining the size of the fund. The custodian makes payments from the fund for documented expenditures. The company replenishes the fund as needed, and at the end of each accounting period. Accounting entries to record payments are made each time the fund is replenished.

Glossary

Bank reconciliation *(p. 352)* The process of comparing the bank's account balance with the company's balance, and explaining the differences to make them agree.

Bank statement *(p. 352)* A statement received monthly from the bank that shows the depositor's bank transactions and balances.

Bonding *(p. 344)* Obtaining insurance protection against theft by employees.

Cash *(p. 358)* Resources that consist of coins, currency, checks, money orders, and money on hand or on deposit in a bank or similar depository.

Cash budget *(p. 362)* A projection of anticipated cash flows, usually over a one- to two-year period.

Cash equivalents *(p. 358)* Short-term, highly liquid investments that can be readily converted to a specific amount of cash.

Deposits in transit *(p. 354)* Deposits recorded by the depositor that have not been recorded by the bank.

Electronic funds transfer (EFT) *(p. 357)* A disbursement system that uses wire, telephone, or computer to transfer cash from one location to another.

Fraud *(p. 336)* A dishonest act by an employee that results in personal benefit to the employee at a cost to the employer.

Fraud triangle *(p. 336)* The three factors that contribute to fraudulent activity by employees: opportunity, financial pressure, and rationalization.

Internal auditors *(p. 343)* Company employees who continuously evaluate the effectiveness of the company's internal control systems.

Internal control *(p. 337)* All the related methods and measures adopted within an organization to safeguard its assets and enhance the reliability of its accounting records, increase efficiency of operations, and ensure compliance with laws and regulations.

NSF check *(p. 353)* A check that is not paid by a bank because of insufficient funds in a bank account.

Outstanding checks *(p. 354)* Checks issued and recorded by a company that have not been paid by the bank.

Petty cash fund *(p. 351)* A cash fund used to pay relatively small amounts.

Restricted cash *(p. 359)* Cash that is not available for general use but instead is restricted for a particular purpose.

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (SOX) *(p. 337)* Law that requires companies to maintain adequate systems of internal control.

Treasurer *(p. 360)* Employee responsible for the management of a company's cash.

Voucher *(p. 350)* An authorization form prepared for each expenditure in a voucher system.

Voucher system *(p. 349)* A network of approvals by authorized individuals, acting independently, to ensure that all disbursements by check are proper.

Comprehensive Do it!

Trillo Company's bank statement for May 2012 shows these data.

Balance May 1	$12,650	Balance May 31	$14,280
Debit memorandum:		Credit memorandum:	
NSF check	175	Collection of note receivable	505

The cash balance per books at May 31 is $13,319. Your review of the data reveals the following.

1. The NSF check was from Hup Co., a customer.
2. The note collected by the bank was a $500, 3-month, 12% note. The bank charged a $10 collection fee. No interest has been previously accrued.
3. Outstanding checks at May 31 total $2,410.
4. Deposits in transit at May 31 total $1,752.
5. A Trillo Company check for $352 dated May 10 cleared the bank on May 25. This check, which was a payment on account, was journalized for $325.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a bank reconciliation at May 31.
(b) Journalize the entries required by the reconciliation.

Action Plan

- Follow the four steps used in reconciling items (pp. 354–355).
- Work carefully to minimize mathematical errors in the reconciliation.
- Prepare entries based on reconciling items per books.
- Make sure the cash ledger balance after posting the reconciling entries agrees with the adjusted cash balance per books.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

(a)

Cash balance per bank statement		$14,280
Add: Deposits in transit		1,752
		16,032
Less: Outstanding checks		2,410
Adjusted cash balance per bank		$13,622
Cash balance per books		$13,319
Add: Collection of note receivable $500, plus $15 interest less collection fee $10		505
		13,824
Less: NSF check	$175	
Error in recording check	27	202
Adjusted cash balance per books		$13,622

the navigator

(b)

May 31	Cash	505	
	Miscellaneous Expense	10	
	Notes Receivable		500
	Interest Revenue		15
	(To record collection of note by bank)		
31	Accounts Receivable—Hup Co.	175	
	Cash		175
	(To record NSF check from Hup Co.)		
31	Accounts Payable	27	
	Cash		27
	(To correct error in recording check)		

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Note: All Questions, Exercises, and Problems marked with an asterisk relate to material in the appendix to the chapter.

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 392.

(SO 1) **1.** Which of the following is *not* an element of the fraud triangle?
(a) Rationalization.
(b) Financial pressure.
(c) Segregation of duties.
(d) Opportunity.

(SO 1) **2.** Internal control is used in a business to enhance the accuracy and reliability of its accounting records and to:
(a) safeguard its assets.
(b) create fraud.
(c) analyze financial statements.
(d) determine employee bonuses.

(SO 2) **3.** The principles of internal control do *not* include:
(a) establishment of responsibility.
(b) documentation procedures.
(c) financial performance measures.
(d) independent internal verification.

(SO 2) **4.** Physical controls do *not* include:
(a) safes and vaults to store cash.
(b) independent bank reconciliations.
(c) locked warehouses for inventories.
(d) bank safety deposit boxes for important papers.

(SO 1) **5.** Which of the following was *not* a result of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act?
(a) Companies must file financial statements with the Internal Revenue Service.
(b) All publicly traded companies must maintain adequate internal controls.
(c) The Public Company Accounting Oversight Board was created to establish auditing standards and regulate auditor activity.
(d) Corporate executives and boards of directors must ensure that controls are reliable and effective, and they can be fined or imprisoned for failure to do so.

6. Permitting only designated personnel such as cashiers to handle cash receipts is an application of the principle of: (SO 3)
(a) documentation procedures.
(b) establishment of responsibility.
(c) independent internal verification.
(d) other controls.

7. The use of prenumbered checks in disbursing cash is an application of the principle of: (SO 4)
(a) establishment of responsibility.
(b) segregation of duties.
(c) physical controls.
(d) documentation procedures.

8. The control features of a bank account do *not* include: (SO 4)
(a) having bank auditors verify the correctness of the bank balance per books.
(b) minimizing the amount of cash that must be kept on hand.
(c) providing a double record of all bank transactions.
(d) safeguarding cash by using a bank as a depository.

9. Which of the following control activities is *not* relevant when a company uses a computerized (rather than manual) accounting system? (SO 2)
(a) Establishment of responsibility.
(b) Segregation of duties.
(c) Independent internal verification.
(d) All of these control activities are relevant to a computerized system.

10. In a bank reconciliation, deposits in transit are: (SO 5)
(a) deducted from the book balance.
(b) added to the book balance.
(c) added to the bank balance.
(d) deducted from the bank balance.

(SO 6) **11.** Which of the following items in a cash drawer at November 30 is *not* cash?
(a) Money orders.
(b) Coins and currency.
(c) A customer check dated December 1.
(d) A customer check dated November 28.

(SO 6) **12.** Which statement correctly describes the reporting of cash?
(a) Cash cannot be combined with cash equivalents.
(b) Restricted cash funds may be combined with Cash.
(c) Cash is listed first in the current assets section.
(d) Restricted cash funds cannot be reported as a current asset.

(SO 7) **13.** Which of the following would *not* be an example of good cash management?
(a) Provide discounts to customers to encourage early payment.
(b) Invest temporary excess cash in stock of a small company.
(c) Carefully monitor payments so that payments are not made early.
(d) Employ just-in-time inventory methods to keep inventory low.

14. Which of the following is *not* one of the sections of a cash budget? (SO 8)
(a) Cash receipts section.
(b) Cash disbursements section.
(c) Financing section.
(d) Cash from operations section.

***15.** A check is written to replenish a $100 petty cash fund when the fund contains receipts of $94 and $2 in cash. In recording the check: (SO 9)
(a) Cash Over and Short should be debited for $4.
(b) Petty Cash should be debited for $94.
(c) Cash should be credited for $94.
(d) Petty Cash should be credited for $4.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. A local bank reported that it lost $150,000 as the result of employee fraud. Doug Steeber is not clear on what is meant by "employee fraud." Explain the meaning of fraud to Doug and give an example of fraud that might occur at a bank.

2. Fraud experts often say that there are three primary factors that contribute to employee fraud. Identify the three factors and explain what is meant by each.

3. Identify the five components of a good internal control system.

4. "Internal control is concerned only with enhancing the accuracy of the accounting records." Do you agree? Explain.

5. Discuss how the Sarbanes-Oxley Act has increased the importance of internal control to top managers of a company.

6. What principles of internal control apply to most businesses?

7. In the corner grocery store, all sales clerks make change out of one cash register drawer. Is this a violation of internal control? Why?

8. Graham Moran is reviewing the principle of segregation of duties. What are the two common applications of this principle?

9. How do documentation procedures contribute to good internal control?

10. What internal control objectives are met by physical controls?

11. (a) Explain the control principle of independent internal verification.
(b) What practices are important in applying this principle?

12. As the company accountant, explain the following ideas to the management of Kovacic Company.
(a) The concept of reasonable assurance in internal control.
(b) The importance of the human factor in internal control.

13. Discuss the human resources department's involvement in internal controls.

14. Coggins Inc. owns the following assets at the balance sheet date.

Cash in bank—savings account	$ 8,000
Cash on hand	1,100
Cash refund due from the IRS	1,000
Checking account balance	12,000
Postdated checks	500

What amount should be reported as Cash in the balance sheet?

15. What principle(s) of internal control is (are) involved in making daily cash counts of over-the-counter receipts?

16. Assume that Kohl's Department Stores installed new cash registers in its stores. How do cash registers improve internal control over cash receipts?

17. At Yorio Wholesale Company, two mail clerks open all mail receipts. How does this strengthen internal control?

18. "To have maximum effective internal control over cash disbursements, all payments should be made by check." Is this true? Explain.

19. Remsen Company's internal controls over cash disbursements provide for the treasurer to sign checks imprinted by a checkwriter after comparing the check

with the approved invoice. Identify the internal control principles that are present in these controls.

20. How do these principles apply to cash disbursements?
(a) Physical controls.
(b) Human resource controls.

21. What is the essential feature of an electronic funds transfer (EFT) procedure?

22. "The use of a bank contributes significantly to good internal control over cash." Is this true? Why?

23. Peter Dunn is confused about the lack of agreement between the cash balance per books and the balance per bank. Explain the causes for the lack of agreement to Peter and give an example of each cause.

24. Identify the basic principles of cash management.

25. Jennifer Earl asks your help concerning an NSF check. Explain to Jennifer (a) what an NSF check is, (b) how it is treated in a bank reconciliation, and (c) whether it will require an adjusting entry on the company's books.

26.
(a) Describe cash equivalents and explain how they are reported.
(b) How should restricted cash funds be reported on the balance sheet?

27. What was Tootsie Roll's balance in cash and cash equivalents at December 31, 2009? Did it report any restricted cash? How did Tootsie Roll define cash equivalents?

***28.** (a) Identify the three activities that pertain to a petty cash fund, and indicate an internal control principle that is applicable to each activity.
(b) When are journal entries required in the operation of a petty cash fund?

Brief Exercises

Identify fraud-triangle concepts.
(SO 1), C

BE7-1 Match each situation with the fraud triangle factor (opportunity, financial pressure, or rationalization) that best describes it.
(a) An employee's monthly credit card payments are nearly 75% of their monthly earnings.
(b) An employee earns minimum wage at a firm that has reported record earnings for each of the last five years.
(c) An employee has an expensive gambling habit.
(d) An employee has check writing and signing responsibilities for a small company, and is also responsible for reconciling the bank account.

Explain the importance of internal control.
(SO 2), C

BE7-2 Gwyn Wallander is the new owner of Bennett Co. She has heard about internal control but is not clear about its importance for her business. Explain to Gwyn the four purposes of internal control, and give her one application of each purpose for Bennett Co.

Identify internal control principles.
(SO 2), C

BE7-3 The internal control procedures in Phillips Company make the following provisions. Identify the principles of internal control that are being followed in each case.
(a) Employees who have physical custody of assets do not have access to the accounting records.
(b) Each month the assets on hand are compared to the accounting records by an internal auditor.
(c) A prenumbered shipping document is prepared for each shipment of goods to customers.

Identify the internal control principles applicable to cash receipts.
(SO 3), C

BE7-4 Aldstadt Company has the following internal control procedures over cash receipts. Identify the internal control principle that is applicable to each procedure.
(a) All over-the-counter receipts are registered on cash registers.
(b) All cashiers are bonded.
(c) Daily cash counts are made by cashier department supervisors.
(d) The duties of receiving cash, recording cash, and having custody of cash are assigned to different individuals.
(e) Only cashiers may operate cash registers.

Make journal entry using cash count sheet.
(SO 3), AP

BE7-5 While examining cash receipts information, the accounting department determined the following information: opening cash balance $150, cash on hand $1,125.74, and cash sales per register tape $988.62. Prepare the required journal entry based upon the cash count sheet.

Identify the internal control principles applicable to cash disbursements.
(SO 4), C

BE7-6 Ndon Company has the following internal control procedures over cash disbursements. Identify the internal control principle that is applicable to each procedure.
(a) Company checks are prenumbered.
(b) The bank statement is reconciled monthly by an internal auditor.

(c) Blank checks are stored in a safe in the treasurer's office.
(d) Only the treasurer or assistant treasurer may sign checks.
(e) Check signers are not allowed to record cash disbursement transactions.

BE7-7 Jay Bauer is uncertain about the control features of a bank account. Explain the control benefits of (a) a checking account and (b) a bank statement.

Identify the control features of a bank account.
(SO 4), **C**

BE7-8 The following reconciling items are applicable to the bank reconciliation for Gratz Co. Indicate how each item should be shown on a bank reconciliation.
(a) Outstanding checks.
(b) Bank debit memorandum for service charge.
(c) Bank credit memorandum for collecting a note for the depositor.
(d) Deposit in transit.

Indicate location of reconciling items in a bank reconciliation.
(SO 5), **C**

BE7-9 Using the data in BE7-8, indicate (a) the items that will result in an adjustment to the depositor's records and (b) why the other items do not require adjustment.

Identify reconciling items that require adjusting entries.
(SO 5), **C**

BE7-10 At July 31, Cisler Company has this bank information: cash balance per bank $7,291; outstanding checks $762; deposits in transit $1,350; and a bank service charge $40. Determine the adjusted cash balance per bank at July 31.

Prepare partial bank reconciliation.
(SO 5), **AP**

BE7-11 In the month of November, Hasbrook Company Inc. wrote checks in the amount of $9,750. In December, checks in the amount of $11,762 were written. In November, $8,800 of these checks were presented to the bank for payment, and $10,889 in December. What is the amount of outstanding checks at the end of November? At the end of December?

Analyze outstanding checks.
(SO 5), **AP**

BE7-12 Laib Company has these cash balances: cash in bank $12,742; payroll bank account $6,000; and plant expansion fund cash $25,000. Explain how each balance should be reported on the balance sheet.

Explain the statement presentation of cash balances.
(SO 6), **C**

BE7-13 The following information is available for Eckman Company for the month of January: expected cash receipts $59,000; expected cash disbursements $67,000; and cash balance on January 1, $12,000. Management wishes to maintain a minimum cash balance of $9,000. Prepare a basic cash budget for the month of January.

Prepare a cash budget.
(SO 8), **AP**

***BE7-14** On March 20, Palasz's petty cash fund of $100 is replenished when the fund contains $19 in cash and receipts for postage $40, supplies $26, and travel expense $15. Prepare the journal entry to record the replenishment of the petty cash fund.

Prepare entry to replenish a petty cash fund.
(SO 9), **AP**

Do it! Review

Do it! 7-1 Identify which control activity is violated in each of the following situations, and explain how the situation creates an opportunity for fraud or inappropriate accounting practices.
1. Once a month, the sales department sends sales invoices to the accounting department to be recorded.
2. Greg Mursky orders merchandise for Ross Company; he also receives merchandise and authorizes payment for merchandise.
3. Several clerks at Terando's Groceries use the same cash register drawer.

Identify violations of control activities.
(SO 2), **C**

Do it! 7-2 Mark Graziano is concerned with control over mail receipts at Grazi's Sporting Goods. All mail receipts are opened by Glen Schrag. Glen sends the checks to the accounting department, where they are stamped "For Deposit Only." The accounting department records and deposits the mail receipts weekly. Mark asks your help in installing a good system of internal control over mail receipts.

Design system of internal control over cash receipts.
(SO 3), **C**

Do it! 7-3 Leon Holzner owns Leon Blankets. Leon asks you to explain how he should treat the following reconciling items when reconciling the company's bank account.
1. Outstanding checks
2. A deposit in transit
3. The bank charged to our account a check written by another company
4. A debit memorandum for a bank service charge

Explain treatment of items in bank reconciliation.
(SO 5), **K**

Prepare a cash budget.
(SO 8), AP

Do it! 7-4 Ross Corporation's management wants to maintain a minimum monthly cash balance of $8,000. At the beginning of September, the cash balance is $12,270; expected cash receipts for September are $97,200; cash disbursements are expected to be $115,000. How much cash, if any, must Ross borrow to maintain the desired minimum monthly balance? Determine your answer by using the basic form of the cash budget.

Exercises

Identify the principles of internal control.
(SO 2), C

E7-1 Bank employees use a system known as the "maker-checker" system. An employee will record an entry in the appropriate journal, and then a supervisor will verify and approve the entry. These days, as all of a bank's accounts are computerized, the employee first enters a batch of entries into the computer, and then the entries are posted automatically to the general ledger account after the supervisor approves them on the system.

Access to the computer system is password-protected and task-specific, which means that the computer system will not allow the employee to approve a transaction or the supervisor to record a transaction.

Instructions
Identify the principles of internal control inherent in the "maker-checker" procedure used by banks.

Identify the principles of internal control.
(SO 2), C

E7-2 Lisa's Pizza operates strictly on a carryout basis. Customers pick up their orders at a counter where a clerk exchanges the pizza for cash. While at the counter, the customer can see other employees making the pizzas and the large ovens in which the pizzas are baked.

Instructions
Identify the six principles of internal control and give an example of each principle that you might observe when picking up your pizza. (*Note:* It may not be possible to observe all the principles.)

List internal control weaknesses over cash receipts and suggest improvements.
(SO 2, 3), E

E7-3 The following control procedures are used in Danner Company for over-the-counter cash receipts.

1. Cashiers are experienced; thus, they are not bonded.
2. All over-the-counter receipts are registered by three clerks who share a cash register with a single cash drawer.
3. To minimize the risk of robbery, cash in excess of $100 is stored in an unlocked attaché case in the stock room until it is deposited in the bank.
4. At the end of each day the total receipts are counted by the cashier on duty and reconciled to the cash register total.
5. The company accountant makes the bank deposit and then records the day's receipts.

Instructions
(a) For each procedure, explain the weakness in internal control and identify the control principle that is violated.
(b) For each weakness, suggest a change in the procedure that will result in good internal control.

List internal control weaknesses for cash disbursements and suggest improvements.
(SO 2, 4), E

E7-4 The following control procedures are used in Katja's Boutique Shoppe for cash disbursements.

1. Each week, Katja leaves 100 company checks in an unmarked envelope on a shelf behind the cash register.
2. The store manager personally approves all payments before signing and issuing checks.
3. The company checks are unnumbered.
4. After payment, bills are "filed" in a paid invoice folder.
5. The company accountant prepares the bank reconciliation and reports any discrepancies to the owner.

Instructions
(a) For each procedure, explain the weakness in internal control and identify the internal control principle that is violated.
(b) For each weakness, suggest a change in the procedure that will result in good internal control.

E7-5 At Reyes Company, checks are not prenumbered because both the purchasing agent and the treasurer are authorized to issue checks. Each signer has access to unissued checks kept in an unlocked file cabinet. The purchasing agent pays all bills pertaining to goods purchased for resale. Prior to payment, the purchasing agent determines that the goods have been received and verifies the mathematical accuracy of the vendor's invoice. After payment, the invoice is filed by vendor and the purchasing agent records the payment in the cash disbursements journal. The treasurer pays all other bills following approval by authorized employees. After payment, the treasurer stamps all bills "paid," files them by payment date, and records the checks in the cash disbursements journal. Reyes Company maintains one checking account that is reconciled by the treasurer.

Identify internal control weaknesses for cash disbursements and suggest improvements.
(SO 2, 4), **E**

Instructions
(a) List the weaknesses in internal control over cash disbursements.
(b) Identify improvements for correcting these weaknesses.

E7-6 Tasha Orin is unable to reconcile the bank balance at January 31. Tasha's reconciliation is shown here.

Prepare bank reconciliation and adjusting entries.
(SO 5), **AP**

Cash balance per bank	$3,677.20
Add: NSF check	450.00
Less: Bank service charge	28.00
Adjusted balance per bank	$4,099.20
Cash balance per books	$3,975.20
Less: Deposits in transit	590.00
Add: Outstanding checks	770.00
Adjusted balance per books	$4,155.20

Instructions
(a) What is the proper adjusted cash balance per bank?
(b) What is the proper adjusted cash balance per books?
(c) Prepare the adjusting journal entries necessary to determine the adjusted cash balance per books.

E7-7 At April 30, the bank reconciliation of Silvestre Company shows three outstanding checks: No. 254 $650, No. 255 $700, and No. 257 $410. The May bank statement and the May cash payments journal are given here.

Determine outstanding checks.
(SO 5), **AP**

Bank Statement Checks Paid

Date	Check No.	Amount
5-4	254	$650
5-2	257	410
5-17	258	159
5-12	259	275
5-20	260	925
5-29	263	480
5-30	262	750

Cash Payments Journal Checks Issued

Date	Check No.	Amount
5-2	258	$159
5-5	259	275
5-10	260	925
5-15	261	500
5-22	262	750
5-24	263	480
5-29	264	360

Instructions
Using step 2 in the reconciliation procedure (see page 354), list the outstanding checks at May 31.

E7-8 The following information pertains to Ghose Company.

Prepare bank reconciliation and adjusting entries.
(SO 5), **AP**

1. Cash balance per bank, July 31, $7,328.
2. July bank service charge not recorded by the depositor $38.
3. Cash balance per books, July 31, $7,364.
4. Deposits in transit, July 31, $2,700.
5. Note for $2,000 collected for Ghose in July by the bank, plus interest $36 less fee $20. The collection has not been recorded by Ghose, and no interest has been accrued.
6. Outstanding checks, July 31, $686.

Instructions
(a) Prepare a bank reconciliation at July 31, 2012.
(b) Journalize the adjusting entries at July 31 on the books of Ghose Company.

Prepare bank reconciliation and adjusting entries.
(SO 5), AP

E7-9 This information relates to the Cash account in the ledger of Hawkins Company.

Balance September 1—$16,400; Cash deposited—$64,000
Balance September 30—$17,600; Checks written—$62,800

The September bank statement shows a balance of $16,500 at September 30 and the following memoranda.

Credits		Debits	
Collection of $1,800 note plus interest $30	$1,830	NSF check: H. Juno	$560
Interest earned on checking account	45	Safety deposit box rent	60

At September 30, deposits in transit were $4,738 and outstanding checks totaled $2,383.

Instructions
(a) Prepare the bank reconciliation at September 30, 2012.
(b) Prepare the adjusting entries at September 30, assuming (1) the NSF check was from a customer on account, and (2) no interest had been accrued on the note.

Compute deposits in transit and outstanding checks for two bank reconciliations.
(SO 5), AP

E7-10 The cash records of Arora Company show the following.

For July:

1. The June 30 bank reconciliation indicated that deposits in transit total $580. During July, the general ledger account Cash shows deposits of $16,900, but the bank statement indicates that only $15,600 in deposits were received during the month.
2. The June 30 bank reconciliation also reported outstanding checks of $940. During the month of July, Arora Company books show that $17,500 of checks were issued, yet the bank statement showed that $16,400 of checks cleared the bank in July.

For September:

3. In September, deposits per bank statement totaled $25,900, deposits per books were $26,400, and deposits in transit at September 30 were $2,200.
4. In September, cash disbursements per books were $23,500, checks clearing the bank were $24,000, and outstanding checks at September 30 were $2,100.

There were no bank debit or credit memoranda, and no errors were made by either the bank or Arora Company.

Instructions
Answer the following questions.
(a) In situation 1, what were the deposits in transit at July 31?
(b) In situation 2, what were the outstanding checks at July 31?
(c) In situation 3, what were the deposits in transit at August 31?
(d) In situation 4, what were the outstanding checks at August 31?

Prepare bank reconciliation and adjusting entries.
(SO 5), AP

E7-11 Mazor Inc.'s bank statement from Hometown Bank at August 31, 2012, gives the following information.

Balance, August 1	$18,400	Bank debit memorandum:	
August deposits	71,000	Safety deposit box fee	$ 25
Checks cleared in August	68,678	Service charge	50
Bank credit memorandum:		Balance, August 31	20,692
Interest earned	45		

A summary of the Cash account in the ledger for August shows the following: balance, August 1, $18,700; receipts $74,000; disbursements $73,570; and balance, August 31, $19,130. Analysis reveals that the only reconciling items on the July 31 bank reconciliation were a deposit in transit for $4,800 and outstanding checks of $4,500. In addition, you determine that there was an error involving a company check drawn in August: A check for $400 to a creditor on account that cleared the bank in August was journalized and posted for $40.

Instructions
(a) Determine deposits in transit.
(b) Determine outstanding checks. (*Hint*: You need to correct disbursements for the check error.)
(c) Prepare a bank reconciliation at August 31.
(d) Journalize the adjusting entry(ies) to be made by Mazor Inc. at August 31.

Identify reporting of cash.
(SO 6), AP

E7-12 A new accountant at Netzloff Inc. is trying to identify which of the amounts shown on page 377 should be reported as the current asset "Cash and cash equivalents" in the year-end balance sheet, as of April 30, 2012.

1. $60 of currency and coin in a locked box used for incidental cash transactions.
2. A $10,000 U.S. Treasury bill, due May 31, 2012.
3. $260 of April-dated checks that Netzloff has received from customers but not yet deposited.
4. An $85 check received from a customer in payment of its April account, but post-dated to May 1.
5. $2,500 in the company's checking account.
6. $4,800 in its savings account.
7. $75 of prepaid postage in its postage meter.
8. A $25 IOU from the company receptionist.

Instructions

(a) What balance should Netzloff report as its "Cash and cash equivalents" balance at April 30, 2012?

(b) In what account(s) and in what financial statement(s) should the items not included in "Cash and cash equivalents" be reported?

E7-13 Amster, Lasca, and Vang, three law students who have joined together to open a law practice, are struggling to manage their cash flow. They haven't yet built up sufficient clientele and revenues to support their legal practice's ongoing costs. Initial costs, such as advertising, renovations to their premises, and the like, all result in outgoing cash flow at a time when little is coming in. Amster, Lasca, and Vang haven't had time to establish a billing system since most of their clients' cases haven't yet reached the courts, and the lawyers didn't think it would be right to bill them until "results were achieved."

Review cash management practices.
(SO 7), **C**

Unfortunately, Amster, Lasca, and Vang's suppliers don't feel the same way. Their suppliers expect them to pay their accounts payable within a few days of receiving their bills. So far, there hasn't even been enough money to pay the three lawyers, and they are not sure how long they can keep practicing law without getting some money into their pockets.

Instructions

Can you provide any suggestions for Amster, Lasca, and Vang to improve their cash management practices?

E7-14 Merrick Company expects to have a cash balance of $46,000 on January 1, 2012. These are the relevant monthly budget data for the first two months of 2012.

Prepare a cash budget for two months.
(SO 8), **AP**

1. Collections from customers: January $71,000, February $146,000
2. Payments to suppliers: January $40,000, February $75,000
3. Wages: January $30,000, February $40,000. Wages are paid in the month they are incurred.
4. Administrative expenses: January $21,000, February $24,000. These costs include depreciation of $1,000 per month. All other costs are paid as incurred.
5. Selling expenses: January $15,000, February $20,000. These costs are exclusive of depreciation. They are paid as incurred.
6. Sales of short-term investments in January are expected to realize $12,000 in cash. Merrick has a line of credit at a local bank that enables it to borrow up to $25,000. The company wants to maintain a minimum monthly cash balance of $20,000.

Instructions

Prepare a cash budget for January and February.

***E7-15** During October, Central Light Company experiences the following transactions in establishing a petty cash fund.

Prepare journal entries for a petty cash fund.
(SO 9), **AP**

Oct. 1 A petty cash fund is established with a check for $150 issued to the petty cash custodian.

31 A check was written to reimburse the fund and increase the fund to $200. A count of the petty cash fund disclosed the following items:

Currency		$59.00
Coins		0.70
Expenditure receipts (vouchers):		
Supplies	$26.10	
Telephone, Internet, and fax	16.40	
Postage	39.70	
Freight-out	6.80	

Instructions
Journalize the entries in October that pertain to the petty cash fund.

Journalize and post petty cash fund transactions.
(SO 9), AP

***E7-16** Paik Company maintains a petty cash fund for small expenditures. These transactions occurred during the month of August.

Aug.	1	Established the petty cash fund by writing a check on Westown Bank for $200.
	15	Replenished the petty cash fund by writing a check for $175. On this date, the fund consisted of $25 in cash and these petty cash receipts: freight-out $74.40, entertainment expense $36, postage expense $33.70 and miscellaneous expense $27.50.
	16	Increased the amount of the petty cash fund to $400 by writing a check for $200.
	31	Replenished the petty cash fund by writing a check for $283. On this date, the fund consisted of $117 in cash and these petty cash receipts: postage expense $145, entertainment expense $90.60, and freight-out $46.40.

Instructions
(a) Journalize the petty cash transactions.
(b) Post to the Petty Cash account.
(c) What internal control features exist in a petty cash fund?

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Identify internal control weaknesses for cash receipts.
(SO 2, 3), C

P7-1A Classic Theater is in the Greenbelt Mall. A cashier's booth is located near the entrance to the theater. Two cashiers are employed. One works from 1:00 to 5:00 P.M., the other from 5:00 to 9:00 P.M. Each cashier is bonded. The cashiers receive cash from customers and operate a machine that ejects serially numbered tickets. The rolls of tickets are inserted and locked into the machine by the theater manager at the beginning of each cashier's shift.

After purchasing a ticket, the customer takes the ticket to a doorperson stationed at the entrance of the theater lobby some 60 feet from the cashier's booth. The doorperson tears the ticket in half, admits the customer, and returns the ticket stub to the customer. The other half of the ticket is dropped into a locked box by the doorperson.

At the end of each cashier's shift, the theater manager removes the ticket rolls from the machine and makes a cash count. The cash count sheet is initialed by the cashier. At the end of the day, the manager deposits the receipts in total in a bank night deposit vault located in the mall. In addition, the manager sends copies of the deposit slip and the initialed cash count sheets to the theater company treasurer for verification and to the company's accounting department. Receipts from the first shift are stored in a safe located in the manager's office.

Instructions
(a) Identify the internal control principles and their application to the cash receipts transactions of Classic Theater.
(b) If the doorperson and cashier decided to collaborate to misappropriate cash, what actions might they take?

Identify internal control weaknesses in cash receipts and cash disbursements.
(SO 2, 3, 4), C

P7-2A Nature Hill Middle School wants to raise money for a new sound system for its auditorium. The primary fund-raising event is a dance at which the famous disc jockey Jay Dee will play classic and not-so-classic dance tunes. Barry Cameron, the music and

theater instructor, has been given the responsibility for coordinating the fund-raising efforts. This is Barry's first experience with fund-raising. He decides to put the eighth-grade choir in charge of the event; he will be a relatively passive observer.

Barry had 500 unnumbered tickets printed for the dance. He left the tickets in a box on his desk and told the choir students to take as many tickets as they thought they could sell for $5 each. In order to ensure that no extra tickets would be floating around, he told them to dispose of any unsold tickets. When the students received payment for the tickets, they were to bring the cash back to Barry, and he would put it in a locked box in his desk drawer.

Some of the students were responsible for decorating the gymnasium for the dance. Barry gave each of them a key to the money box and told them that if they took money out to purchase materials, they should put a note in the box saying how much they took and what it was used for. After two weeks, the money box appeared to be getting full, so Barry asked Robin Herbert to count the money, prepare a deposit slip, and deposit the money in a bank account Barry had opened.

The day of the dance, Barry wrote a check from the account to pay Jay Dee. The DJ said, however, that he accepted only cash and did not give receipts. So Barry took $200 out of the cash box and gave it to Jay. At the dance, Barry had Amy Kuether working at the entrance to the gymnasium, collecting tickets from students and selling tickets to those who had not pre-purchased them. Barry estimated that 400 students attended the dance.

The following day, Barry closed out the bank account, which had $250 in it, and gave that amount plus the $180 in the cash box to Principal Skinner. Principal Skinner seemed surprised that, after generating roughly $2,000 in sales, the dance netted only $430 in cash. Barry did not know how to respond.

Instructions

Identify as many internal control weaknesses as you can in this scenario, and suggest how each could be addressed.

P7-3A On July 31, 2012, Fraiser Company had a cash balance per books of $6,140. The statement from Nashota State Bank on that date showed a balance of $7,690.80. A comparison of the bank statement with the Cash account revealed the following facts.

Prepare a bank reconciliation and adjusting entries.
(SO 5), **AP**

1. The bank service charge for July was $25.
2. The bank collected a note receivable of $1,500 for Fraiser Company on July 15, plus $30 of interest. The bank made a $10 charge for the collection. Fraiser has not accrued any interest on the note.
3. The July 31 receipts of $1,193.30 were not included in the bank deposits for July. These receipts were deposited by the company in a night deposit vault on July 31.
4. Company check No. 2480 issued to T. Crain, a creditor, for $384 that cleared the bank in July was incorrectly entered in the cash payments journal on July 10 for $348.
5. Checks outstanding on July 31 totaled $1,860.10.
6. On July 31, the bank statement showed an NSF charge of $575 for a check received by the company from K. Fonner, a customer, on account.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the bank reconciliation as of July 31.
(b) Prepare the necessary adjusting entries at July 31.

(a) Cash bal. $7,024.00

P7-4A The bank portion of the bank reconciliation for Horsman Company at October 31, 2012, is shown here and on the next page.

Prepare a bank reconciliation and adjusting entries from detailed data.
(SO 5), **AP**

HORSMAN COMPANY
Bank Reconciliation
October 31, 2012

Cash balance per bank	$12,367.90
Add: Deposits in transit	1,530.20
	13,898.10

Less: Outstanding checks

Check Number	Check Amount	
2451	$ 1,260.40	
2470	684.20	
2471	844.50	
2472	426.80	
2474	1,050.00	4,265.90
Adjusted cash balance per bank		$ 9,632.20

The adjusted cash balance per bank agreed with the cash balance per books at October 31. The November bank statement showed the following checks and deposits.

Bank Statement

Checks			Deposits	
Date	Number	Amount	Date	Amount
11-1	2470	$ 684.20	11-1	$ 1,530.20
11-2	2471	844.50	11-4	1,211.60
11-5	2474	1,050.00	11-8	990.10
11-4	2475	1,640.70	11-13	2,575.00
11-8	2476	2,830.00	11-18	1,472.70
11-10	2477	600.00	11-21	2,945.00
11-15	2479	1,750.00	11-25	2,567.30
11-18	2480	1,330.00	11-28	1,650.00
11-27	2481	695.40	11-30	1,186.00
11-30	2483	575.50	Total	$16,127.90
11-29	2486	940.00		
	Total	$12,940.30		

The cash records per books for November showed the following.

Cash Payments Journal

Date	Number	Amount	Date	Number	Amount
11-1	2475	$1,640.70	11-20	2483	$ 575.50
11-2	2476	2,830.00	11-22	2484	829.50
11-2	2477	600.00	11-23	2485	974.80
11-4	2478	538.20	11-24	2486	940.00
11-8	2479	1,705.00	11-29	2487	398.00
11-10	2480	1,330.00	11-30	2488	800.00
11-15	2481	695.40	Total		$14,469.10
11-18	2482	612.00			

Cash Receipts Journal

Date	Amount
11-3	$ 1,211.60
11-7	990.10
11-12	2,575.00
11-17	1,472.70
11-20	2,954.00
11-24	2,567.30
11-27	1,650.00
11-29	1,186.00
11-30	1,304.00
Total	$15,910.70

The bank statement contained two bank memoranda:

1. A credit of $2,242 for the collection of a $2,100 note for Horsman Company plus interest of $157 and less a collection fee of $15. Horsman Company has not accrued any interest on the note.
2. A debit for the printing of additional company checks $85.

At November 30, the cash balance per books was $11,073.80 and the cash balance per bank statement was $17,712.50. The bank did not make any errors, but **Horsman Company made two errors.**

Instructions

(a) Using the four steps in the reconciliation procedure described on pages 354–355, prepare a bank reconciliation at November 30, 2012. (a) Cash bal. $13,176.80

(b) Prepare the adjusting entries based on the reconciliation. (*Note:* The correction of any errors pertaining to recording checks should be made to Accounts Payable. The correction of any errors relating to recording cash receipts should be made to Accounts Receivable.)

P7-5A Stromberg Company of Zwingle, Kansas, spreads herbicides and applies liquid fertilizer for local farmers. On May 31, 2012, the company's Cash account per its general ledger showed a balance of $6,738.90.

Prepare a bank reconciliation and adjusting entries. (SO 5), **AP**

The bank statement from Zwingle State Bank on that date showed the following balance.

ZWINGLE STATE BANK

Checks and Debits	Deposits and Credits	Daily Balance
XXX	XXX	5-31 6,968.00

A comparison of the details on the bank statement with the details in the Cash account revealed the following facts.

1. The statement included a debit memo of $40 for the printing of additional company checks.
2. Cash sales of $883.15 on May 12 were deposited in the bank. The cash receipts journal entry and the deposit slip were incorrectly made for $933.15. The bank credited Stromberg Company for the correct amount.
3. Outstanding checks at May 31 totaled $276.25, and deposits in transit were $1,880.15.
4. On May 18, the company issued check No. 1181 for $685 to M. Dornbos, on account. The check, which cleared the bank in May, was incorrectly journalized and posted by Stromberg Company for $658.
5. A $2,600 note receivable was collected by the bank for Stromberg Company on May 31 plus $110 interest. The bank charged a collection fee of $20. No interest has been accrued on the note.
6. Included with the cancelled checks was a check issued by Strongberg Company to P. Jordan for $360 that was incorrectly charged to Stromberg Company by the bank.
7. On May 31, the bank statement showed an NSF charge of $380 for a check issued by Bev Fountain, a customer, to Stromberg Company on account.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the bank reconciliation at May 31, 2012. (a) Cash bal. $8,931.90

(b) Prepare the necessary adjusting entries for Stromberg Company at May 31, 2012.

P7-6A You are provided with the following information taken from Washburne Inc.'s March 31, 2012, balance sheet.

Prepare a cash budget. (SO 8), **AP**

Cash	$ 11,000
Accounts receivable	20,000
Inventory	36,000
Property, plant, and equipment, net of depreciation	120,000
Accounts payable	22,400
Common stock	150,000
Retained earnings	11,600

Additional information concerning Washburne Inc. is as follows.

1. Gross profit is 25% of sales.
2. Actual and budgeted sales data:

March (actual)	$46,000
April (budgeted)	70,000

3. Sales are both cash and credit. Cash collections expected in April are:

March	$18,400	(40% of $46,000)
April	42,000	(60% of $70,000)
	$60,400	

4. Half of a month's purchases are paid for in the month of purchase and half in the following month. Cash disbursements expected in April are:

Purchases March	$22,400
Purchases April	28,100
	$50,500

5. Cash operating costs are anticipated to be $11,200 for the month of April.
6. Equipment costing $2,500 will be purchased for cash in April.
7. The company wishes to maintain a minimum cash balance of $9,000. An open line of credit is available at the bank. All borrowing is done at the beginning of the month, and all repayments are made at the end of the month. The interest rate is 12% per year, and interest expense is accrued at the end of the month and paid in the following month.

Instructions

Apr. borrowings $1,800

Prepare a cash budget for the month of April. Determine how much cash Washburne Inc. must borrow, or can repay, in April.

Prepare a cash budget. (SO 8), **AP**

P7-7A Austin Corporation prepares monthly cash budgets. Here are relevant data from operating budgets for 2012.

	January	February
Sales	$360,000	$400,000
Purchases	120,000	130,000
Salaries	84,000	81,000
Administrative expenses	72,000	75,000
Selling expenses	79,000	88,000

All sales and purchases are on account. Budgeted collections and disbursement data are given below. All other expenses are paid in the month incurred except for administrative expenses, which include $1,000 of depreciation per month.

Other data.

1. Collections from customers: January $326,000; February $378,000.
2. Payments for purchases: January $110,000; February $135,000.
3. Other receipts: January: collection of December 31, 2011, notes receivable $15,000; February: proceeds from sale of securities $4,000.
4. Other disbursements: February $10,000 cash dividend.

The company's cash balance on January 1, 2012, is expected to be $46,000. The company wants to maintain a minimum cash balance of $40,000.

Instructions

Jan. 31 cash bal. $ 43,000

Prepare a cash budget for January and February.

Prepare a comprehensive bank reconciliation with theft and internal control deficiencies. (SO 2, 3, 4, 5), **E**

P7-8A Fetter Company is a very profitable small business. It has not, however, given much consideration to internal control. For example, in an attempt to keep clerical and office expenses to a minimum, the company has combined the jobs of cashier and bookkeeper. As a result, Allan Donay handles all cash receipts, keeps the accounting records, and prepares the monthly bank reconciliations.

The balance per the bank statement on October 31, 2012, was $18,380. Outstanding checks were: No. 62 for $140.75, No. 183 for $180, No. 284 for $253.25, No. 862 for $190.71, No. 863 for $226.80, and No. 864 for $165.28. Included with the statement was

a credit memorandum of $185 indicating the collection of a note receivable for Fetter Company by the bank on October 25. This memorandum has not been recorded by Fetter.

The company's ledger showed one Cash account with a balance of $21,877.72. The balance included undeposited cash on hand. Because of the lack of internal controls, Allan took for personal use all of the undeposited receipts in excess of $3,795.51. He then prepared the following bank reconciliation in an effort to conceal his theft of cash.

Cash balance per books, October 31		$21,877.72
Add: Outstanding checks		
No. 862	$190.71	
No. 863	226.80	
No. 864	165.28	482.79
		22,360.51
Less: Undeposited receipts		3,795.51
Unadjusted balance per bank, October 31		18,565.00
Less: Bank credit memorandum		185.00
Cash balance per bank statement, October 31		$18,380.00

Instructions

(a) Prepare a correct bank reconciliation. (*Hint:* Deduct the amount of the theft from the adjusted balance per books.) (a) Cash bal. $21,018.72

(b) Indicate the three ways that Allan attempted to conceal the theft and the dollar amount involved in each method.

(c) What principles of internal control were violated in this case?

Problems: Set B

P7-1B Erin Company recently changed its system of internal control over cash disbursements. The system includes the following features.

Identify internal control principles for cash disbursements.
(SO 2, 4), **C**

1. Instead of being unnumbered and manually prepared, all checks must now be prenumbered and written by using the new checkwriter purchased by the company.
2. Before a check can be issued, each invoice must have the approval of Karen Noonan, the purchasing agent, and Tom Fah, the receiving department supervisor.
3. Checks must be signed by either Carl Merfeld, the treasurer, or Bonnie Kurt, the assistant treasurer. Before signing a check, the signer is expected to compare the amounts of the check with the amounts on the invoice.
4. After signing a check, the signer stamps the invoice "paid" and inserts within the stamp, the date, check number, and amount of the check. The "paid" invoice is then sent to the accounting department for recording.
5. Blank checks are stored in a safe in the treasurer's office. The combination to the safe is known by only the treasurer and assistant treasurer.
6. Each month the bank statement is reconciled with the bank balance per books by the assistant chief accountant.
7. All employees who handle or account for cash are bonded.

Instructions

Identify the internal control principles and their application to cash disbursements of Erin Company.

P7-2B The board of trustees of a local church is concerned about the internal accounting controls pertaining to the offering collections made at weekly services. They ask you to serve on a three-person audit team with the internal auditor of a local university and a CPA who has just joined the church. At a meeting of the audit team and the board of trustees, you learn the following.

Identify internal control weaknesses in cash receipts.
(SO 2, 3), **C**

1. The church's board of trustees has delegated responsibility for the financial management and audit of the financial records to the finance committee. This group prepares

the annual budget and approves major disbursements but is not involved in collections or recordkeeping. No audit has been made in recent years because the same trusted employee has kept church records and served as financial secretary for 15 years. The church does not carry any fidelity insurance.

2. The collection at the weekly service is taken by a team of ushers who volunteer to serve for 1 month. The ushers take the collection plates to a basement office at the rear of the church. They hand their plates to the head usher and return to the church service. After all plates have been turned in, the head usher counts the cash received. The head usher then places the cash in the church safe along with a notation of the amount counted. The head usher volunteers to serve for 3 months.
3. The next morning, the financial secretary opens the safe and recounts the collection. The secretary withholds $150–$200 in cash, depending on the cash expenditures expected for the week, and deposits the remainder of the collections in the bank. To facilitate the deposit, church members who contribute by check are asked to make their checks payable to "Cash."
4. Each month, the financial secretary reconciles the bank statement and submits a copy of the reconciliation to the board of trustees. The reconciliations have rarely contained any bank errors and have never shown any errors per books.

Instructions

(a) Indicate the weaknesses in internal accounting control in the handling of collections.
(b) List the improvements in internal control procedures that you plan to make at the next meeting of the audit team for (1) the ushers, (2) the head usher, (3) the financial secretary, and (4) the finance committee.
(c) What church policies should be changed to improve internal control?

Prepare a bank reconciliation and adjusting entries.
(SO 5), **AP**

P7-3B On May 31, 2012, Laban Company had a cash balance per books of $5,681.50. The bank statement from Citizens Bank on that date showed a balance of $7,964.60. A comparison of the statement with the Cash account revealed the following facts.

1. The statement included a debit memo of $70 for the printing of additional company checks.
2. Cash sales of $786.15 on May 12 were deposited in the bank. The cash receipts journal entry and the deposit slip were incorrectly made for $796.15. The bank credited Laban Company for the correct amount.
3. Outstanding checks at May 31 totaled $1,106.25, and deposits in transit were $799.15.
4. On May 18, the company issued check No. 1181 for $685 to A. Hawkins, on account. The check, which cleared the bank in May, was incorrectly journalized and posted by Laban Company for $658.
5. A $2,500 note receivable was collected by the bank for Laban Company on May 31 plus $80 interest. The bank charged a collection fee of $42. No interest has been accrued on the note.
6. Included with the cancelled checks was a check issued by Logan Company to D. Reyes for $290 that was incorrectly charged to Laban Company by the bank.
7. On May 31, the bank statement showed an NSF charge of $165 for a check issued by G. Verdier, a customer, to Laban Company on account.

Instructions

(a) Cash bal. $7,947.50

(a) Prepare the bank reconciliation as of May 31, 2012.
(b) Prepare the necessary adjusting entries at May 31, 2012.

Prepare a bank reconciliation and adjusting entries from detailed data.
(SO 5), **AP**

P7-4B The bank portion of the bank reconciliation for Carlin Company at November 30, 2012, is shown here and on the next page.

CARLIN COMPANY
Bank Reconciliation
November 30, 2012

Cash balance per bank	$14,367.90
Add: Deposits in transit	2,530.20
	16,898.10

Less: Outstanding checks

Check Number	Check Amount	
3451	$ 2,260.40	
3470	1,100.10	
3471	844.50	
3472	1,426.80	
3474	1,050.00	6,681.80
Adjusted cash balance per bank		$10,216.30

The adjusted cash balance per bank agreed with the cash balance per books at November 30. The December bank statement showed the following checks and deposits.

Bank Statement

Checks			Deposits	
Date	Number	Amount	Date	Amount
12-1	3451	$ 2,260.40	12-1	$ 2,530.20
12-2	3470	1,100.10	12-4	1,211.60
12-7	3472	1,426.80	12-8	2,365.10
12-4	3475	1,640.70	12-16	2,632.70
12-8	3476	1,300.00	12-21	2,945.00
12-10	3477	2,130.00	12-26	2,567.30
12-15	3479	3,080.00	12-29	2,836.00
12-27	3480	600.00	12-30	1,025.00
12-30	3482	475.50	Total	$18,112.90
12-29	3484	764.00		
12-31	3485	540.80		
	Total	$15,318.30		

The cash records per books for December showed the following.

Cash Payments Journal

Date	Number	Amount	Date	Number	Amount
12-1	3475	$1,640.70	12-20	3482	$ 475.50
12-2	3476	1,300.00	12-22	3483	1,340.00
12-2	3477	2,130.00	12-23	3484	764.00
12-4	3478	538.20	12-24	3485	450.80
12-8	3479	3,080.00	12-30	3486	1,389.50
12-10	3480	600.00	Total		$14,516.10
12-17	3481	807.40			

Cash Receipts Journal

Date	Amount
12-3	$ 1,211.60
12-7	2,365.10
12-15	2,672.70
12-20	2,945.00
12-25	2,567.30
12-28	2,836.00
12-30	1,025.00
12-31	1,190.40
Total	$16,813.10

The bank statement contained two memoranda.

1. A credit of $2,645 for the collection of a $2,500 note for Carlin Company plus interest of $160 and less a collection fee of $15. Carlin Company has not accrued any interest on the note.
2. A debit of $819.10 for an NSF check written by K. Webster, a customer. At December 31, the check had not been redeposited in the bank.

At December 31, the cash balance per books was $12,513.30, and the cash balance per bank statement was $18,988.40. The bank did not make any errors, **but Carlin Company made two errors.**

Instructions

(a) Cash bal. $14,209.20

(a) Using the four steps in the reconciliation procedure described on pages 354–355, prepare a bank reconciliation at December 31, 2012.
(b) Prepare the adjusting entries based on the reconciliation. (*Note:* The correction of any errors pertaining to recording checks should be made to Accounts Payable. The correction of any errors relating to recording cash receipts should be made to Accounts Receivable.)

Prepare a bank reconciliation and adjusting entries.
(SO 5), **AP**

P7-5B Grossfeld Company of Omaha, Nebraska, provides liquid fertilizer and herbicides to regional farmers. On July 31, 2012, the company's Cash account per its general ledger showed a balance of $5,876.70.

The bank statement from Tri-State Bank on that date showed the following balance.

TRI-STATE BANK

Checks and Debits	Deposits and Credits	Daily Balance
XXX	XXX	7-31 7,043.80

A comparison of the details on the bank statement with the details in the Cash account revealed the following facts.

1. The bank service charge for July was $32.
2. The bank collected a note receivable of $900 for Grossfeld Company on July 15, plus $48 of interest. The bank made an $18 charge for the collection. Grossfeld has not accrued any interest on the note.
3. The July 31 receipts of $1,339 were not included in the bank deposits for July. These receipts were deposited by the company in a night deposit vault on July 31.
4. Company check No. 2480 issued to S. Tully, a creditor, for $471 that cleared the bank in July was incorrectly entered in the cash payments journal on July 10 for $417.
5. Checks outstanding on July 31 totaled $2,480.10.
6. On July 31, the bank statement showed an NSF charge of $818 for a check received by the company from L. Weare, a customer, on account.

Instructions

(a) Cash bal. $5,902.70

(a) Prepare the bank reconciliation as of July 31, 2012.
(b) Prepare the necessary adjusting entries at July 31, 2012.

Prepare a cash budget.
(SO 8), **AP**

P7-6B Pincus Co. expects to have a cash balance of $26,000 on January 1, 2012. Relevant monthly budget data for the first two months of 2012 are as follows.

Collections from customers: January $70,000; February $147,000
Payments to suppliers: January $45,000; February $69,000
Salaries: January $38,000; February $40,000. Salaries are paid in the month they are incurred.
Selling and administrative expenses: January $27,000; February $32,000. These costs are exclusive of depreciation and are paid as incurred.
Sales of short-term investments in January are expected to realize $7,000 in cash.

Pincus has a line of credit at a local bank that enables it to borrow up to $45,000. The company wants to maintain a minimum monthly cash balance of $25,000. Any excess cash above the $25,000 minimum is used to pay off the line of credit.

Instructions

(a) Jan. cash bal. $25,000

(a) Prepare a cash budget for January and February.
(b) Explain how a cash budget contributes to effective management.

Prepare a cash budget.
(SO 8), **AP**

P7-7B Vaux Inc. prepares monthly cash budgets. Shown on page 387 are relevant data from operating budgets for 2012.

	January	February
Sales	$330,000	$400,000
Purchases	110,000	130,000
Salaries	80,000	95,000
Selling and administrative expenses	132,000	150,000

All sales and purchases are on account. Collections and disbursement data are given below. All other items above are paid in the month incurred. Depreciation has been excluded from selling and administrative expenses.

Other data.

1. Collections from customers: January $293,000; February $358,000.
2. Payments for purchases: January $98,000; February $118,000.
3. Other receipts: January: collection of December 31, 2011, interest receivable $2,000; February: proceeds from sale of short-term investments $5,000
4. Other disbursements: February payment of $20,000 for land

The company's cash balance on January 1, 2012, is expected to be $58,000. The company wants to maintain a minimum cash balance of $40,000.

Instructions

Prepare a cash budget for January and February.

Jan. 31 cash bal. $43,000

P7-8B Monti Company is a very profitable small business. It has not, however, given much consideration to internal control. For example, in an attempt to keep clerical and office expenses to a minimum, the company has combined the jobs of cashier and bookkeeper. As a result, L. Stark handles all cash receipts, keeps the accounting records, and prepares the monthly bank reconciliations.

Prepare a comprehensive bank reconciliation with theft and internal control deficiencies.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5), **E**

The balance per the bank statement on October 31, 2012, was $13,600. Outstanding checks were: No. 62 for $126.75, No. 183 for $190, No. 284 for $253.25, No. 862 for $190.71, No. 863 for $226.80, and No. 864 for $165.28. Included with the statement was a credit memorandum of $440 indicating the collection of a note receivable for Monti Company by the bank on October 25. This memorandum has not been recorded by Monti Company.

The company's ledger showed one Cash account with a balance of $15,797.21. The balance included undeposited cash on hand. Because of the lack of internal controls, Stark took for personal use all of the undeposited receipts in excess of $2,240. He then prepared the following bank reconciliation in an effort to conceal his theft of cash.

Cash balance per books, October 31		$15,797.21
Add: Outstanding checks		
No. 862	$190.71	
No. 863	226.80	
No. 864	165.28	482.79
		16,280.00
Less: Undeposited receipts		2,240.00
Unadjusted balance per bank, October 31		14,040.00
Less: Bank credit memorandum		440.00
Cash balance per bank statement, October 31		$13,600.00

Instructions

(a) Prepare a correct bank reconciliation. (*Hint:* Deduct the amount of the theft from the adjusted balance per books.)

(a) Cash bal. $14,687.21

(b) Indicate the three ways that Stark attempted to conceal the theft and the dollar amount pertaining to each method.

(c) What principles of internal control were violated in this case?

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Comprehensive Problem

CP7 On December 1, 2012, Bluemound Company had the following account balances.

	Debits		Credits
Cash	$18,200	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	$ 3,000
Notes Receivable	2,200	Accounts Payable	6,100
Accounts Receivable	7,500	Common Stock	20,000
Inventory	16,000	Retained Earnings	44,400
Prepaid Insurance	1,600		$73,500
Equipment	28,000		
	$73,500		

During December, the company completed the following transactions.

Dec. 7 Received $3,600 cash from customers in payment of account (no discount allowed).
12 Purchased merchandise on account from Klump Co. $12,000, terms 1/10, n/30.
17 Sold merchandise on account $15,000, terms 2/10, n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $10,000.
19 Paid salaries $2,500.
22 Paid Klump Co. in full, less discount.
26 Received collections in full, less discounts, from customers billed on December 17.

Adjustment data:

1. Depreciation $200 per month.
2. Insurance expired $400.
3. Income tax expense was $425. It was unpaid at December 31.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the December transactions. (Assume a perpetual inventory system.)
(b) Enter the December 1 balances in the ledger T accounts and post the December transactions. Use Cost of Goods Sold, Depreciation Expense, Insurance Expense, Salaries and Wages Expense, Sales Revenue, Sales Discounts, Income Taxes Payable, and Income Tax Expense.
(c) The statement from Jackson County Bank on December 31 showed a balance of $21,994. A comparison of the bank statement with the Cash account revealed the following facts.
   1. The bank collected a note receivable of $2,200 for Bluemound Company on December 15.
   2. The December 31 receipts of $2,736 were not included in the bank deposits for December. The company deposited these receipts in a night deposit vault on December 31.
   3. Checks outstanding on December 31 totaled $1,210.
   4. On December 31, the bank statement showed a NSF charge of $800 for a check received by the company from L. Shur, a customer, on account.

   Prepare a bank reconciliation as of December 31 based on the available information. (*Hint:* The cash balance per books is $22,120. This can be proven by finding the balance in the Cash account from parts (a) and (b).)
(d) Journalize the adjusting entries resulting from the bank reconciliation and adjustment data.
(e) Post the adjusting entries to the ledger T accounts.
(f) Prepare an adjusted trial balance.
(g) Prepare an income statement for December and a classified balance sheet at December 31.

(f) Totals $89,125
(g) Net income $ 1,175
Total assets $72,100

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapters 1 through 6.)

CCC7 Part 1 Natalie is struggling to keep up with the recording of her accounting transactions. She is spending a lot of time marketing and selling mixers and giving her cookie classes. Her friend John is an accounting student who runs his own accounting service. He has asked Natalie if she would like to have him do her accounting. John and Natalie meet and discuss her business.

Part 2 Natalie decides that she cannot afford to hire John to do her accounting. One way that she can ensure that her Cash account does not have any errors and is accurate and up-to-date is to prepare a bank reconciliation at the end of each month. Natalie would like you to help her.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to see the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll Industries Inc.*

BYP7-1 The financial statements of Tootsie Roll are presented in Appendix A of this book, together with an auditor's report—Report of Independent Auditors.

Instructions

Using the financial statements and reports, answer these questions about Tootsie Roll's internal controls and cash.

(a) What comments, if any, are made about cash in the "Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm"?
(b) What data about cash and cash equivalents are shown in the consolidated balance sheet (statement of financial position)?
(c) What activities are identified in the consolidated statement of cash flows as being responsible for the changes in cash during 2009?
(d) How are cash equivalents defined in the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements?
(e) Read the section of the report titled "Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting." Summarize the statements made in that section of the report.

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP7-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company are presented in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll in Appendix A.

Instructions

Answer the following questions for each company.

(a) What is the balance in cash and cash equivalents at December 31, 2009?
(b) What percentage of total assets does cash represent for each company over the last two years? Has it changed significantly for either company?
(c) How much cash was provided by operating activities during 2009?
(d) Comment on your findings in parts (a) through (c).

RESEARCH CASE

BYP7-3 The website **www.cpa2biz.com** has an article dated February 4, 2010, by Mary Schaeffer entitled "Emerging Issues: Demise of Paper Checks."

Instructions
Go to the website and do a search on the article title. Read the article and answer the following questions.
(a) How many different forms of payment types does the article list? What are the payment types?
(b) What problems does the shift away from paper checks to alternative payment options present for companies?
(c) What five controls does the article suggest incorporating, to decrease problems associated with multiple payment options?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP7-4 The international accounting firm Ernst and Young performed a global survey. The results of that survey are summarized in a report titled "Fraud Risk in Emerging Markets." You can find this report at:
http://www.ey.com/Global/assets.nsf/International/FIDS_-_9th_Global_Fraud_Survey_2006/$file/EY_Fraud_Survey_June2006.pdf, or do an Internet search for "9th Global Fraud Survey—Fraud Risk in Emerging Markets."

Instructions
Read the Executive Summary section, and then skim the remainder of the report to answer the following questions.
(a) What did survey respondents consider to be the top three factors to prevent fraud?
(b) What type of fraud poses the greatest threat in developed markets? What type of fraud poses the greatest threat in emerging markets?
(c) In what three regions are anti-fraud measures most likely to be considered when deciding whether to begin doing business in that region?

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP7-5 The Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) is a private organization established to improve accounting standards and financial reporting. The FASB conducts extensive research before issuing a "Statement of Financial Accounting Standards," which represents an authoritative expression of generally accepted accounting principles.

Address: **www.fasb.org**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps
Choose **About FASB**.

Instructions
Answer the following questions.
(a) What is the mission of the FASB?
(b) How are topics added to the FASB technical agenda? (*Hint:* See Project Plans in Our Rules of Procedure.)
(c) What characteristics make the FASB's procedures an "open" decision-making process? (*Hint:* See Due Process in Our Rules of Procedure.)

BYP7-6 The Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) was created as a result of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. It has oversight and enforcement responsibilities over accounting firms in the U.S.

Address: **http://www.pcaobus.org/**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Instructions
Answer the following questions.
(a) What is the mission of the PCAOB?
(b) Briefly summarize its responsibilities related to inspections.
(c) Briefly summarize its responsibilities related to enforcement.

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP7-7 Alternative Distributor Corp., a distributor of groceries and related products, is headquartered in Medford, Massachusetts.

During a recent audit, Alternative Distributor Corp. was advised that existing internal controls necessary for the company to develop reliable financial statements were inadequate. The audit

report stated that the current system of accounting for sales, receivables, and cash receipts constituted a material weakness. Among other items, the report focused on nontimely deposit of cash receipts, exposing Alternative Distributor to potential loss or misappropriation, excessive past due accounts receivable due to lack of collection efforts, disregard of advantages offered by vendors for prompt payment of invoices, absence of appropriate segregation of duties by personnel consistent with appropriate control objectives, inadequate procedures for applying accounting principles, lack of qualified management personnel, lack of supervision by an outside board of directors, and overall poor recordkeeping.

Instructions

(a) Identify the principles of internal control violated by Alternative Distributor Corporation.
(b) Explain why managers of various functional areas in the company should be concerned about internal controls.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP7-8 As a new auditor for the CPA firm of Ticke and Tie, you have been assigned to review the internal controls over mail cash receipts of Perso Company. Your review reveals that checks are promptly endorsed "For Deposit Only," but no list of the checks is prepared by the person opening the mail. The mail is opened either by the cashier or by the employee who maintains the accounts receivable records. Mail receipts are deposited in the bank weekly by the cashier.

Instructions

Write a letter to S. A. Davis, owner of the Perso Company, explaining the weaknesses in internal control and your recommendations for improving the system.

ETHICS CASES

BYP7-9 Banks charge fees for "bounced" checks—that is, checks that exceed the balance in the account. It has been estimated that processing bounced checks costs a bank roughly $1.50 per check. Thus, the profit margin on bounced checks is very high. Recognizing this, some banks have started to process checks from largest to smallest. By doing this, they maximize the number of checks that bounce if a customer overdraws an account. For example, NationsBank (now Bank of America) projected a $14 million increase in fee revenue as a result of processing largest checks first. In response to criticism, banks have responded that their customers prefer to have large checks processed first, because those tend to be the most important. At the other extreme, some banks will cover their customers' bounced checks, effectively extending them an interest-free loan while their account is overdrawn.

Instructions

Answer each of the following questions.

(a) William Preston had a balance of $1,500 in his checking account at First National Bank on a day when the bank received the following five checks for processing against his account.

Check Number	Amount	Check Number	Amount
3150	$ 35	3165	$ 550
3162	400	3166	1,510
		3169	180

Assuming a $30 fee assessed by the bank for each bounced check, how much fee revenue would the bank generate if it processed checks (1) from largest to smallest, (2) from smallest to largest, and (3) in order of check number?

(b) Do you think that processing checks from largest to smallest is an ethical business practice?
(c) In addition to ethical issues, what other issues must a bank consider in deciding whether to process checks from largest to smallest?
(d) If you were managing a bank, what policy would you adopt on bounced checks?

BYP7-10 The NFIC was originally established in 1992 by the National Consumers League, the oldest nonprofit consumer organization in the United States, to fight the growing menace of telemarketing fraud by improving prevention and enforcement. It maintains a website that provides many useful fraud related resources.

Address: **www.fraud.org/scamsagainstbusinesses/bizscams.htm** or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Instructions
Go to the site and find an item of interest to you. Write a short summary of your findings.

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP7-11 The print and electronic media are full of stories about potential security risks that can arise from your personal computer. It is important to keep in mind, however, that there are also many ways that your identity can be stolen other than from your computer. The federal government provides many resources to help protect you from identity thieves.

Instructions
Go to **http://onguardonline.gov/idtheft.html**, and click Games, then click ID Theft Faceoff. Complete the quiz provided there.

FASB CODIFICATION ACTIVITY

BYP7-12 If your school has a subscription to the FASB Codification, go to **http://aaahq.org/ascLogin.cfm** to log in and prepare responses to the following.
(a) How is cash defined in the Codification?
(b) How are cash equivalents defined in the Codification?
(c) What are the disclosure requirements related to cash and cash equivalents?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 345 SOX Boosts the Role of Human Resources **Q:** Why would unsupervised employees or employees who report to each other represent potential internal control threats? **A:** An unsupervised employee may have a fraudulent job (or may even be a fictitious person)—e.g., a person drawing a paycheck without working. Or, if two employees supervise each other, there is no real separation of duties, and they can conspire to defraud the company.

p. 345 Big Theft at Small Companies **Q:** Why are small companies more susceptible to employee theft? **A:** The high degree of trust often found in small companies makes them more vulnerable. Also, small companies tend to have less sophisticated systems of internal control, and they usually lack internal auditors. In addition, it is very hard to achieve some internal control features, such as segregation of duties, when you have very few employees.

p. 351 How Employees Steal **Q:** How can companies reduce the likelihood of fraudulent disbursements? **A:** To reduce the occurrence of fraudulent disbursements, a company should follow the procedures discussed in this chapter. These include having only designated personnel sign checks; having different personnel approve payments and make payments; ensuring that check signers do not record disbursements; using prenumbered checks and matching each check to an approved invoice; storing blank checks securely; reconciling the bank statement; and stamping invoices PAID.

p. 357 Madoff's Ponzi Scheme **Q:** How was Madoff able to conceal such a giant fraud? **A:** Madoff fabricated false investment statements that were provided to investors. In addition, his auditor never verified these investment statements even though the auditor gave him an unqualified opinion each year.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. c **2.** a **3.** c **4.** b **5.** a **6.** b **7.** d **8.** a **9.** d **10.** c **11.** c **12.** c **13.** b **14.** d
***15.** a ($100 − ($94 + $2))

IFRS A Look at IFRS

Fraud can occur anywhere. And because the three main factors that contribute to fraud are universal in nature, the principles of internal control activities are used globally by companies. While Sarbanes-Oxley (SOX) does not apply to international companies, most large international companies have internal controls similar to those indicated in the chapter. IFRS and GAAP are very similar in accounting for cash. *IAS No. 1 (revised)*, "Presentation of Financial Statements," is the only standard that discusses issues specifically related to cash.

KEY POINTS

- The fraud triangle discussed in this chapter is applicable to all international companies. Some of the major frauds on an international basis are Parmalat (Italy), Royal Ahold (the Netherlands), and Satyam Computer Services (India).
- Rising economic crime poses a growing threat to companies, with nearly half of all organizations worldwide being victims of fraud in a recent two-year period (*PricewaterhouseCoopers' Global Economic Crime Survey,* 2005). Specifically, 44% of Romanian companies surveyed experienced fraud in the past two years.
- Globally, the number of companies reporting fraud increased from 37% to 45% since 2003, a 22% increase. The cost to companies was an average $1.7 million in losses from "tangible frauds," that is, those that result in an immediate and direct financial loss. These include asset misappropriation, false pretenses, and counterfeiting (*PricewaterhouseCoopers' Global Economic Crime Survey*, 2005).
- Accounting scandals both in the United States and internationally have re-ignited the debate over the relative merits of GAAP, which takes a "rules-based" approach to accounting, versus IFRS, which takes a "principles-based" approach. The FASB announced that it intends to introduce more principles-based standards.
- On a lighter note, at one time the Ig Nobel Prize in Economics went to the CEOs of those companies involved in the corporate accounting scandals of that year for "adapting the mathematical concept of imaginary numbers for use in the business world." The Ig Nobel Prizes (read Ignoble, as not noble) are a parody of the Nobel Prizes and are given each year in early October for 10 achievements that "first make people laugh, and then make them think." Organized by the scientific humor magazine *Annals of Improbable Research* (*AIR*), they are presented by a group that includes genuine Nobel laureates at a ceremony at Harvard University's Sanders Theater. (See *en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ig_Nobel_Prize*.)
- Internal controls are a system of checks and balances designed to prevent and detect fraud and errors. While most companies have these systems in place, many have never completely documented them, nor had an independent auditor attest to their effectiveness. Both of these actions are required under SOX.
- Companies find that internal control review is a costly process but badly needed. One study estimates the cost of SOX compliance for U.S. companies at over $35 billion, with audit fees doubling in the first year of compliance. At the same time, examination of internal controls indicates lingering problems in the way companies operate. One study of first compliance with the internal-control testing provisions documented material weaknesses for about 13% of companies reporting in a two-year period (*PricewaterhouseCoopers' Global Economic Crime Survey*, 2005).
- The SOX internal control standards apply only to companies listed on U.S. exchanges. There is continuing debate over whether foreign issuers should have to comply with this extra layer of regulation.
- The accounting and internal control procedures related to cash are essentially the same under both IFRS and this textbook. In addition, the definition used for cash equivalents is the same.
- Most companies report cash and cash equivalents together under IFRS, as shown in this textbook. In addition, IFRS follows the same accounting policies related to the reporting of restricted cash.
- IFRS defines cash and cash equivalents as follows.
  - **Cash** is comprised of cash on hand and demand deposits.
  - **Cash equivalents** are short-term, highly liquid investments that are readily convertible to known amounts of cash and which are subject to an insignificant risk of changes in value.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

Ethics has become a very important aspect of reporting. Different cultures have different perspectives on bribery and other questionable activities, and consequently penalties for engaging in such activities vary considerably across countries.

High-quality international accounting requires both high-quality accounting standards and high-quality auditing. Similar to the convergence of GAAP and IFRS, there is movement to improve international auditing standards. The International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB) functions as an independent standard-setting body. It works to establish high-quality auditing and assurance and quality-control standards throughout the world. Whether the IAASB adopts internal control provisions similar to those in SOX remains to be seen. You can follow developments in the international audit arena at *http://www.ifac.org/iaasb/*.

Under proposed new standards for financial statements, companies would not be allowed to combine cash equivalents with cash.

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. Non-U.S companies that follow IFRS:
(a) do not normally use the principles of internal control activities used in this textbook.
(b) often offset cash with accounts payable on the balance sheet.
(c) are not required to follow SOX.
(d) None of the above.

2. Which of the following is the correct accounting under IFRS for cash?
(a) Cash cannot be combined with cash equivalents.
(b) Restricted cash funds may be reported as a current or non-current asset depending on the circumstances.
(c) Restricted cash funds cannot be reported as a current asset.
(d) Cash on hand is not reported on the balance sheet as Cash.

3. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 applies to:
(a) all U.S. companies listed on U.S. exchanges.
(b) all companies that list stock on any stock exchange in any country.
(c) all European companies listed on European exchanges.
(d) Both (a) and (c).

4. High-quality international accounting requires both high-quality accounting standards and:
(a) a reconsideration of SOX to make it less onerous.
(b) high-quality auditing standards.
(c) government intervention to ensure that the public interest is protected.
(d) the development of new principles of internal control activities.

5. Cash equivalents under IFRS:
(a) are significantly different than the cash equivalents discussed in the textbook.
(b) are generally disclosed separately from cash.
(c) may be required to be reported separately from cash in the future.
(d) None of the above.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS7–1 Some people argue that the internal control requirements of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act (SOX) put U.S. companies at a competitive disadvantage to companies outside the United States. Discuss the competitive implications (both pros and cons) of SOX.

IFRS7–2 State whether each of the following is true or false. For those that are false, explain why.
(a) A proposed new financial accounting standard would not allow cash equivalents to be reported in combination with cash.
(b) Perspectives on bribery and penalties for engaging in bribery are the same across all countries.
(c) Cash equivalents are comprised of cash on hand and demand deposits.
(d) SOX was created by the International Accounting Standards Board.

INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Zetar plc*

IFRS7–3 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C. The company's complete annual report, including the notes to its financial statements, is available at **www.zetarplc.com.**

Instructions

(a) Which committee of the board of directors is responsible for considering management's reports on internal control?
(b) What are the company's key control procedures?
(c) Does the company have an internal audit department?
(d) In what section or sections does Zetar report its bank overdrafts?

Answers to IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. c **2.** b **3.** a **4.** b **5.** c

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 8

REPORTING AND ANALYZING RECEIVABLES

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives**
- Read **Feature Story**
- Scan **Preview**
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 407 p. 411 p. 416 p. 420
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit**
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives**
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 423
- Answer **Self-Test Questions**
- Complete **Assignments**
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 444

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Identify the different types of receivables.
2. Explain how accounts receivable are recognized in the accounts.
3. Describe the methods used to account for bad debts.
4. Compute the interest on notes receivable.
5. Describe the entries to record the disposition of notes receivable.
6. Explain the statement presentation of receivables.
7. Describe the principles of sound accounts receivable management.
8. Identify ratios to analyze a company's receivables.
9. Describe methods to accelerate the receipt of cash from receivables.

the navigator

DOSE OF CAREFUL MANAGEMENT KEEPS RECEIVABLES HEALTHY

"Sometimes you have to know when to be very tough, and sometimes you can give them a bit of a break," says Vivi Su. She's not talking about her children, but about the customers of a subsidiary of pharmaceutical company Whitehall-Robins, where she works as supervisor of credit and collections.

For example, while the company's regular terms are 1/15, n/30 (1% discount if paid within 15 days), a customer might ask for and receive a few days of grace and still get the discount. Or a customer might place orders above its credit limit, in which case, depending on its payment history and the circumstances, Ms. Su might authorize shipment of the goods anyway.

"It's not about drawing a line in the sand, and that's all," she explains. "You want a good relationship with your customers—but you also need to bring in the money."

"The money," in Whitehall-Robins's case amounts to some $170 million in sales a year. Nearly all of it comes in through the credit accounts Ms. Su manages. The process starts with the decision to grant a customer an account in the first place, Ms. Su explains. The sales rep gives the customer a credit application. "My department reviews this application very carefully; a customer needs to supply three good references, and we also run a check with a credit firm like Equifax. If we accept them, then based on their size and history, we assign a credit limit."

Once accounts are established, the company supervises them very carefully. "I get an aging report every single day," says Ms. Su.

"The rule of thumb is that we should always have at least 85% of receivables current—meaning they were billed less than 30 days ago," she continues. "But we try to do even better than that—I like to see 90%." Similarly, her guideline is never to have more than 5% of receivables at over 90 days. But long before that figure is reached, "we jump on it," she says firmly.

At 15 days overdue, Whitehall-Robins phones the client. Often there's a reasonable explanation for the delay—an invoice may have gone astray, or the payables clerk is away. "But if a customer keeps on delaying, and tells us several times that it'll only be a few more days, we know there's a problem," says Ms. Su. After 45 days, "I send a letter. Then a second notice is sent in writing. After the third and final notice, the client has 10 days to pay, and then I hand it over to a collection agency, and it's out of my hands."

Ms. Su's boss, Terry Norton, records an estimate for bad debts every year, based on a percentage of receivables. The percentage depends on the current aging history. He also calculates and monitors the company's receivables turnover ratio, which the company reports in its financial statements. "I think of it in terms of collection period of DSO—days of sales outstanding," he explains.

Ms. Su knows that she and Mr. Norton are crucial to the profitability of Whitehall-Robins. "Receivables are generally the second-largest asset of any company (after its capital assets)," she points out. "So it's no wonder we keep a very close eye on them."

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 8 . . .

- **When Investors Ignore Warning Signs** *(p. 406)*
- **Can Fair Value Be Unfair?** *(p. 409)*
- **Bad Information Can Lead to Bad Loans** *(p. 413)*
- **eBay for Receivables** *(p. 419)*

preview of chapter 8

In this chapter, we discuss some of the decisions related to reporting and analyzing receivables. As indicated in the Feature Story, receivables are a significant asset on the books of pharmaceutical company Whitehall-Robins. Receivables are significant to companies in other industries as well, because a significant portion of sales are made on credit in the United States. As a consequence, companies must pay close attention to their receivables balances and manage them carefully.

The organization and content of the chapter are as follows.

Reporting and Analyzing Receivables

Types of Receivables	Accounts Receivable	Notes Receivable	Statement Presentation of Receivables	Managing Receivables
• Accounts receivable • Notes receivable • Other receivables	• Recognizing accounts receivable • Valuing accounts receivable	• Determining the maturity date • Computing interest • Recognizing notes receivable • Valuing notes receivable • Disposing of notes receivable	• Balance sheet and notes • Income statement	• Extending credit • Establishing a payment period • Monitoring collections • Evaluating liquidity of receivables • Accelerating cash receipts

the navigator

Types of Receivables

study objective 1

Identify the different types of receivables.

The term **receivables** refers to amounts due from individuals and companies. Receivables are claims that are expected to be collected in cash. The management of receivables is a very important activity for any company that sells goods or services on credit.

Receivables are important because they represent one of a company's most liquid assets. For many companies, receivables are also one of the largest assets. For example, receivables represented 30.8% of the current assets of pharmaceutical giant Rite Aid in 2009. Illustration 8-1 lists receivables as a percentage of total assets for five other well-known companies in a recent year.

Illustration 8-1
Receivables as a percentage of assets

Company	Receivables as a Percentage of Total Assets
General Electric	52%
Ford Motor Company	42%
Minnesota Mining and Manufacturing Company (3M)	14%
DuPont Co.	17%
Intel Corporation	5%

The relative significance of a company's receivables as a percentage of its assets depends on various factors: its industry, the time of year, whether it extends long-term financing, and its credit policies. To reflect important differences among receivables, they are frequently classified as (1) accounts receivable, (2) notes receivable, and (3) other receivables.

Accounts receivable are amounts customers owe on account. They result from the sale of goods and services. Companies generally expect to collect

accounts receivable within 30 to 60 days. They are usually the most significant type of claim held by a company.

Notes receivable represent claims for which formal instruments of credit are issued as evidence of the debt. The credit instrument normally requires the debtor to pay interest and extends for time periods of 60–90 days or longer. Notes and accounts receivable that result from sales transactions are often called **trade receivables**.

Other receivables include nontrade receivables such as interest receivable, loans to company officers, advances to employees, and income taxes refundable. These do not generally result from the operations of the business. Therefore, they are generally classified and reported as separate items in the balance sheet.

Ethics Note Companies report receivables from employees separately in the financial statements. The reason: Sometimes those assets are not the result of an "arm's-length" transaction.

Accounts Receivable

Two accounting issues associated with accounts receivable are:

1. Recognizing accounts receivable.
2. Valuing accounts receivable.

A third issue, accelerating cash receipts from receivables, is discussed later in the chapter.

RECOGNIZING ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE

study objective 2

Explain how accounts receivable are recognized in the accounts.

Recognizing accounts receivable is relatively straightforward. A service organization records a receivable when it provides service on account. A merchandiser records accounts receivable at the point of sale of merchandise on account. When a merchandiser sells goods, it increases (debits) Accounts Receivable and increases (credits) Sales Revenue.

The seller may offer terms that encourage early payment by providing a discount. Sales returns also reduce receivables. The buyer might find some of the goods unacceptable and choose to return the unwanted goods.

To review, assume that Jordache Co. on July 1, 2012, sells merchandise on account to Polo Company for $1,000, terms 2/10, n/30. On July 5, Polo returns merchandise worth $100 to Jordache Co. On July 11, Jordache receives payment from Polo Company for the balance due. The journal entries to record these transactions on the books of Jordache Co. are as follows. **(Cost of goods sold entries are omitted.)**

July 1	Accounts Receivable—Polo Company	1,000	
	Sales Revenue		1,000
	(To record sales on account)		
July 5	Sales Returns and Allowances	100	
	Accounts Receivable—Polo Company		
	(To record merchandise returned)		100
July 11	Cash ($900 − $18)	882	
	Sales Discounts ($900 × .02)	18	
	Accounts Receivable—Polo Company		900
	(To record collection of accounts receivable)		

Helpful Hint These entries are the same as those described in Chapter 5. For simplicity, we have omitted inventory and cost of goods sold from this set of journal entries and from end-of-chapter material.

Some retailers issue their own credit cards. When you use a retailer's credit card (JCPenney, for example), the retailer charges interest on the balance due if not paid within a specified period (usually 25–30 days).

To illustrate, assume that you use your JCPenney Company credit card to purchase clothing with a sales price of $300. JCPenney will increase (debit)

Accounts Receivable for $300 and increase (credit) Sales Revenue for $300 (cost of goods sold entry omitted) as follows.

A = L + SE	
+300	
	+300 Rev

Cash Flows
no effect

Accounts Receivable	300	
Sales Revenue		300
(To record sale of merchandise)		

Assuming that you owe $300 at the end of the month, and JCPenney charges 1.5% per month on the balance due, the adjusting entry that JCPenney makes to record interest revenue of $4.50 ($300 × 1.5%) is as follows.

A = L + SE	
+4.50	
	+4.50 Rev

Cash Flows
no effect

Accounts Receivable	4.50	
Interest Revenue		4.50
(To record interest on amount due)		

Interest revenue is often substantial for many retailers.

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

Tasanee was the accounts receivable clerk for a large non-profit foundation that provided performance and exhibition space for the performing and visual arts. Her responsibilities included activities normally assigned to an accounts receivable clerk, such as recording revenues from various sources that included donations, facility rental fees, ticket revenue, and bar receipts. However, she was also responsible for handling all cash and checks from the time they were received until the time she deposited them, as well as preparing the bank reconciliation. Tasanee took advantage of her situation by falsifying bank deposits and bank reconciliations so that she could steal cash from the bar receipts. Since nobody else logged the donations or matched the donation receipts to pledges prior to Tasanee receiving them, she was able to offset the cash that was stolen against donations that she received but didn't record. Her crime was made easier by the fact that her boss, the company's controller, only did a very superficial review of the bank reconciliation and thus didn't notice that some numbers had been cut out from other documents and taped onto the bank reconciliation.

Total take: $1.5 million

THE MISSING CONTROLS

Segregation of duties. The foundation should not have allowed an accounts receivable clerk, whose job was to record receivables, to also handle cash, record cash, and make deposits, and especially prepare the bank reconciliation.

Independent internal verification. The controller was supposed to perform a thorough review of the bank reconciliation. Because he did not, he was terminated from his position.

Source: Adapted from Wells, *Fraud Casebook* (2007), pp. 183–194.

VALUING ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE

study objective 3
Describe the methods used to account for bad debts.

Once companies record receivables in the accounts, the next question is: How should they report receivables in the financial statements? Companies report accounts receivable on the balance sheet as an asset. Determining the **amount** to report is sometimes difficult because some receivables will become uncollectible.

Although each customer must satisfy the credit requirements of the seller before the credit sale is approved, inevitably some accounts receivable become uncollectible. For example, a corporate customer may not be able to pay because it experienced a sales decline due to an economic downturn. Similarly, individuals may be laid off from their jobs or be faced with unexpected hospital bills. The seller

records these losses that result from extending credit as **Bad Debts Expense**. Such losses are a normal and necessary risk of doing business on a credit basis.

Recently, when U.S. home prices fell, home foreclosures rose, and the economy in general slowed, lenders experienced huge increases in their bad debts expense. For example, during a recent quarter Wachovia, the fourth largest U.S. bank, increased bad debts expense from $108 million to $408 million. Similarly, American Express increased its bad debts expense by 70%.

The accounting profession uses two methods for uncollectible accounts: (1) the direct write-off method, and (2) the allowance method. We explain each of these methods in the following sections.

Alternative Terminology You will sometimes see *Bad Debts Expense* called *Uncollectible Accounts Expense*.

Direct Write-Off Method for Uncollectible Accounts

Under the **direct write-off method**, when a company determines receivables from a particular company to be uncollectible, it charges the loss to Bad Debts Expense. Assume, for example, that Warden Co. writes off M. E. Doran's $200 balance as uncollectible on December 12. Warden's entry is:

Dec. 12	Bad Debts Expense	200	
	Accounts Receivable—M. E. Doran		200
	(To record write-off of M. E. Doran account)		

A	=	L	+	SE
−200				−200 Exp

Cash Flows
no effect

Under this method, bad debts expense will show only **actual losses** from uncollectibles. The company reports accounts receivable at its gross amount without any adjustment for estimated losses for bad debts.

Use of the direct write-off method can reduce the usefulness of both the income statement and balance sheet. Consider the following example. In 2012, Quick Buck Computer Company decided it could increase its revenues by offering computers to college students without requiring any money down, and with no credit-approval process. It went on campuses across the country and sold one million computers at a selling price of $800 each. This promotion increased Quick Buck's revenues and receivables by $800,000,000. It was a huge success: The 2012 balance sheet and income statement looked wonderful. Unfortunately, during 2013, nearly 40% of the college student customers defaulted on their loans. The 2013 income statement and balance sheet looked terrible. Illustration 8-2 shows the effect of these events on the financial statements using the direct write-off method.

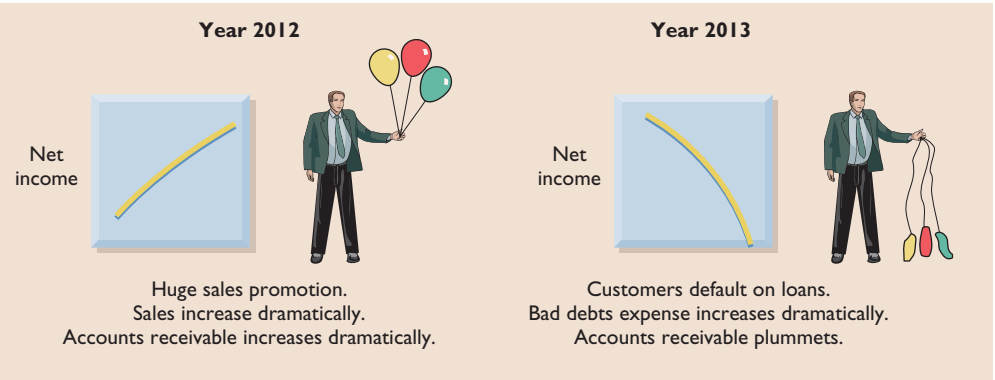


Illustration 8-2 Effects of direct write-off method

Under the direct write-off method, companies often record bad debts expense in a period different from the period in which they recorded the revenue. Thus, no attempt is made to match bad debts expense to sales revenues in the income statement. Nor does the company try to show accounts receivable in the balance sheet at the amount actually expected to be received. **Consequently, unless a company expects bad debts losses to be insignificant, the direct write-off method is not acceptable for financial reporting purposes.**

Allowance Method for Uncollectible Accounts

The **allowance method** of accounting for bad debts involves estimating uncollectible accounts at the end of each period. This provides better matching of expenses with revenues on the income statement. It also ensures that receivables are stated at their cash (net) realizable value on the balance sheet. **Cash (net) realizable value** is the net amount a company expects to receive in cash from receivables. It excludes amounts that the company estimates it will not collect. Estimated uncollectible receivables therefore reduce receivables on the balance sheet through use of the allowance method.

Helpful Hint In this context, *material* means significant or important to financial statement users.

Companies must use the allowance method for financial reporting purposes when bad debts are material in amount. It has three essential features:

1. Companies **estimate** uncollectible accounts receivable and **match them against revenues** in the same accounting period in which the revenues are recorded.
2. Companies record estimated uncollectibles as an increase (a debit) to Bad Debts Expense and an increase (a credit) to Allowance for Doubtful Accounts through an adjusting entry at the end of each period. Allowance for Doubtful Accounts is a contra account to Accounts Receivable.
3. Companies debit actual uncollectibles to Allowance for Doubtful Accounts and credit them to Accounts Receivable at the time the specific account is written off as uncollectible.

RECORDING ESTIMATED UNCOLLECTIBLES. To illustrate the allowance method, assume that Hampson Furniture has credit sales of $1,200,000 in 2012, of which $200,000 remains uncollected at December 31. The credit manager estimates that $12,000 of these sales will prove uncollectible. The adjusting entry to record the estimated uncollectibles increases (debits) Bad Debts Expense and increases (credits) Allowance for Doubtful Accounts, as follows.

A	=	L	+	SE
				−12,000 Exp
−12,000				

Cash Flows
no effect

Dec. 31	Bad Debts Expense	12,000	
	Allowance for Doubtful Accounts		12,000
	(To record estimate of uncollectible accounts)		

Companies report Bad Debts Expense in the income statement as an operating expense (usually as a selling expense). Thus, Hampson matches the estimated uncollectibles with sales in 2012 because the expense is recorded in the same year the company makes the sales.

Allowance for Doubtful Accounts shows the estimated amount of claims on customers that companies expect will become uncollectible in the future. Companies use a contra account instead of a direct credit to Accounts Receivable because they do not know *which* customers will not pay. The credit balance in the allowance account will absorb the specific write-offs when they occur. The company deducts the allowance account from Accounts Receivable in the current assets section of the balance sheet, as shown in Illustration 8-3.

Illustration 8-3
Presentation of allowance for doubtful accounts

HAMPSON FURNITURE
Balance Sheet (partial)

Current assets		
Cash		$ 14,800
Accounts receivable	**$200,000**	
Less: Allowance for doubtful accounts	**12,000**	**188,000**
Inventory		310,000
Supplies		25,000
Total current assets		$537,800

The amount of $188,000 in Illustration 8-3 represents the expected **cash realizable value** of the accounts receivable at the statement date. **Companies do not close Allowance for Doubtful Accounts at the end of the fiscal year.**

RECORDING THE WRITE-OFF OF AN UNCOLLECTIBLE ACCOUNT. Various methods are used to collect past-due accounts, as discussed in the Feature Story. When a company exhausts all means of collecting a past-due account and collection appears unlikely, the company writes off the account. In the credit card industry, it is standard practice to write off accounts that are 210 days past due. To prevent premature or unauthorized write-offs, authorized management personnel should formally approve each write-off. **To maintain good internal control, companies should not authorize someone to write off accounts who also has daily responsibilities related to cash or receivables.**

To illustrate a receivables write-off, assume that the vice president of finance of Hampson Furniture on March 1, 2013, authorizes a write-off of the $500 balance owed by R. A. Ware. The entry to record the write-off is:

Mar. 1	Allowance for Doubtful Accounts	500	
	Accounts Receivable—R. A. Ware		500
	(Write-off of R. A. Ware account)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+500				
−500				

Cash Flows
no effect

The company does not increase Bad Debts Expense when the write-off occurs. **Under the allowance method, a company debits every bad debt write-off to the allowance account and not to Bad Debts Expense.** A debit to Bad Debts Expense would be incorrect because the company has already recognized the expense when it made the adjusting entry for estimated bad debts. Instead, the entry to record the write-off of an uncollectible account reduces both Accounts Receivable and the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts. After posting, the general ledger accounts will appear as in Illustration 8-4.

Illustration 8-4 General ledger balances after write-off

Accounts Receivable			
Jan. 1	Bal. 200,000	Mar. 1	500
Mar. 1	Bal. 199,500		

Allowance for Doubtful Accounts			
Mar. 1	500	Jan. 1	Bal. 12,000
		Mar. 1	Bal. 11,500

A write-off affects only balance sheet accounts. Cash realizable value in the balance sheet, therefore, remains the same before and after the write-off, as shown in Illustration 8-5.

Illustration 8-5 Cash realizable value comparison

	Before Write-Off	After Write-Off
Accounts receivable	$ 200,000	$ 199,500
Allowance for doubtful accounts	12,000	11,500
Cash realizable value	**$188,000**	**$188,000**

RECOVERY OF AN UNCOLLECTIBLE ACCOUNT. Occasionally, a company collects from a customer after the account has been written off as uncollectible. The company must make two entries to record the recovery of a bad debt: (1) It reverses the entry made in writing off the account. This reinstates the customer's account. (2) It journalizes the collection in the usual manner.

To illustrate, assume that on July 1, R. A. Ware pays the $500 amount that Hampson Furniture had written off on March 1. Hampson makes these entries:

A = L + SE
+500
−500
Cash Flows
no effect

		(1)		
July	1	Accounts Receivable—R. A. Ware	500	
		Allowance for Doubtful Accounts		500
		(To reverse write-off of R. A. Ware account)		

A = L + SE
+500
−500
Cash Flows
+500

		(2)		
	1	Cash	500	
		Accounts Receivable—R. A. Ware		500
		(To record collection from R. A. Ware)		

Helpful Hint Like the write-off, a recovery does not involve the income statement.

Note that the recovery of a bad debt, like the write-off of a bad debt, affects only balance sheet accounts. The net effect of the two entries is an increase in Cash and an increase in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts for $500. Accounts Receivable and the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts both increase in entry (1) for two reasons: First, the company made an error in judgment when it wrote off the account receivable. Second, R. A. Ware did pay, and therefore the Accounts Receivable account should show this reinstatement and collection for possible future credit purposes.

ESTIMATING THE ALLOWANCE. For Hampson Furniture in Illustration 8-3, the amount of the expected uncollectibles was given. However, in "real life," companies must estimate the amount of expected uncollectible accounts if they use the allowance method. Frequently they estimate the allowance as a percentage of the outstanding receivables.

Under the **percentage of receivables basis**, management establishes a percentage relationship between the amount of receivables and expected losses from uncollectible accounts. For example, suppose Steffen Company has an ending balance in Accounts Receivable of $200,000, and an unadjusted credit balance in the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts of $1,500. If it estimates that 5% of its accounts receivable will eventually be uncollectible, then it should report a balance in the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts of $10,000 (.05 × $200,000). This would require a debit to Bad Debts Expense and a credit to Allowance for Doubtful Accounts of $8,500.

To more accurately estimate the ending balance in the allowance account, a company often prepares a schedule, called **aging the accounts receivable**, in which customer balances are classified by the length of time they have been unpaid.

After the company arranges the accounts by age, it determines the expected bad debts losses by applying percentages, based on past experience, to the totals of each category. The longer a receivable is past due, the less likely it is to be collected. As a result, the estimated percentage of uncollectible debts increases as the number of days past due increases. Illustration 8-6 shows an aging schedule for Dart Company. Note the increasing uncollectible percentages from 2% to 40%.

Total estimated uncollectible accounts for Dart Company ($2,228) represent the existing customer claims expected to become uncollectible in the future. Thus, this amount represents the **required balance** in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts at the balance sheet date. Accordingly, **the amount of the bad debts expense adjusting entry is the difference between the required balance and the existing balance in the allowance account**. The existing, unadjusted balance in the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts is the net result of the beginning balance (a normal credit balance) less the write-offs of specific accounts during the year (debits to the allowance account).

Illustration 8-6 Aging schedule

Customer	Total	Not Yet Due	Number of Days Past Due 1–30	31–60	61–90	Over 90
T. E. Adert	$ 600		$ 300		$ 200	$ 100
R. C. Bortz	300	$ 300				
B. A. Carl	450		200	$ 250		
O. L. Diker	700	500			200	
T. O. Ebbet	600			300		300
Others	36,950	26,200	5,200	2,450	1,600	1,500
	$39,600	$27,000	$5,700	$3,000	$2,000	$1,900
Estimated percentage uncollectible		2%	4%	10%	20%	40%
Total estimated uncollectible accounts	**$ 2,228**	**$ 540**	**$ 228**	**$ 300**	**$ 400**	**$ 760**

For example, if the unadjusted trial balance shows Allowance for Doubtful Accounts with a credit balance of $528, then an adjusting entry for $1,700 ($2,228 − $528) is necessary:

Dec. 31	Bad Debts Expense	1,700	
	Allowance for Doubtful Accounts		1,700
	(To adjust allowance account to total estimated uncollectibles)		

A = L + SE
−1,700 Exp
−1,700
Cash Flows
no effect

After Dart posts the adjusting entry, its accounts will appear as in Illustration 8-7.

Illustration 8-7 Bad debts accounts after posting

Bad Debts Expense		Allowance for Doubtful Accounts	
Dec. 31 Adj. **1,700**			Dec. 31 Unadj. Bal. 528
			Dec. 31 Adj. **1,700**
			Dec. 31 Bal. 2,228

An important aspect of accounts receivable management is simply maintaining a close watch on the accounts. Studies have shown that accounts more than 60 days past due lose approximately 50% of their value if no payment activity occurs within the next 30 days. For each additional 30 days that pass, the collectible value halves once again. As noted in our Feature Story, Vivi Su of Whitehall-Robins monitors accounts receivable closely, using an aging schedule to set the percentage of bad debts and computing the company's receivables turnover.

Occasionally, the allowance account will have a **debit balance** prior to adjustment. This occurs because the debits to the allowance account from write-offs during the year **exceeded** the beginning balance in the account which was based on previous estimates for bad debts. In such a case, the company **adds the debit balance to the required balance** when it makes the adjusting entry. Thus, if there had been a $500 debit balance in the allowance account before adjustment, the adjusting entry would have been for $2,728 ($2,228 + $500) in order to arrive at a credit balance of $2,228.

The percentage of receivables basis provides an estimate of the cash realizable value of the receivables. It also provides a reasonable matching of expense to revenue.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the amount of past due accounts increasing? Which accounts require management's attention?	List of outstanding receivables and their due dates	Prepare an aging schedule showing the receivables in various stages: outstanding 0–30 days, 31–60 days, 61–90 days, and over 90 days.	Accounts in the older categories require follow-up: letters, phone calls, and possible renegotiation of terms.

The following note regarding accounts receivable comes from the annual report of healthcare company McKesson Corp.

Illustration 8-8 Note disclosure of accounts receivable

McKESSON CORP.
Notes to the Financial Statements

Receivables, net

(In millions)	March 31, 2009	March 31, 2008
Customer accounts	$6,902	$6,390
Other	1,033	984
Total	7,935	7,374
Allowances	(161)	(161)
Net	$7,774	$7,213

The allowances are primarily for uncollectible accounts and sales returns.

Ethics Insight

When Investors Ignore Warning Signs

At one time, Nortel Networks announced that half of its previous year's earnings were "fake." Should investors have seen this coming? Well, there were issues in its annual report that should have caused investors to ask questions. The company had cut its allowance for doubtful accounts on all receivables from $1,253 million to $544 million, even though its total balance of receivables remained relatively unchanged.

This reduction in bad debts expense was responsible for a very large part of the company's earnings that year. At the time, it was unclear whether Nortel might have set the reserves too high originally and needed to reduce them, or whether it slashed the allowance to artificially boost earnings. But one thing is certain—when a company makes an accounting change of this magnitude, investors need to ask questions.

Source: Jonathan Weil, "Outside Audit: At Nortel, Warning Signs Existed Months Ago," *Wall Street Journal* (May 18, 2004), p. C3.

? When would it be appropriate for a company to lower its allowance for doubtful accounts as a percentage of its receivables? (See page 443.)

before you go on...

Do it! Brule Corporation has been in business for 5 years. The ledger at the end of the current year shows: Accounts Receivable $30,000; Sales Revenue $180,000; and Allowance for Doubtful Accounts with a debit balance of $2,000. Brule estimates bad debts to be 10% of accounts receivable. Prepare the entry necessary to adjust the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts.

Solution

Brule should make the following entry to bring the debit balance in the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts up to a normal, credit balance of $3,000 (.1 × $30,000):

Bad Debts Expense	5,000	
Allowance for Doubtful Accounts		5,000
(To record estimate of uncollectible accounts)		

Related exercise material: **BE8-3, BE8-4, BE8-5, Do it! 8-1, E8-3, E8-4, E8-5,** and **E8-6**.

BAD DEBTS EXPENSE

Action Plan

- Report receivables at their cash (net) realizable value–that is, the amount the company expects to collect in cash.
- Estimate the amount the company does not expect to collect.
- Consider the existing balance in the allowance account when using the percentage of receivables basis.

the navigator

Notes Receivable

Companies also may grant credit in exchange for a formal credit instrument known as a promissory note. A **promissory note** is a written promise to pay a specified amount of money on demand or at a definite time. Promissory notes may be used (1) when individuals and companies lend or borrow money, (2) when the amount of the transaction and the credit period exceed normal limits, and (3) in settlement of accounts receivable.

In a promissory note, the party making the promise to pay is called the **maker**. The party to whom payment is to be made is called the **payee**. The promissory note may specifically identify the payee by name or may designate the payee simply as the bearer of the note.

In the note shown in Illustration 8-9, Brent Company is the maker, and Wilma Company is the payee. To Wilma Company, the promissory note is a note receivable; to Brent Company, the note is a note payable.

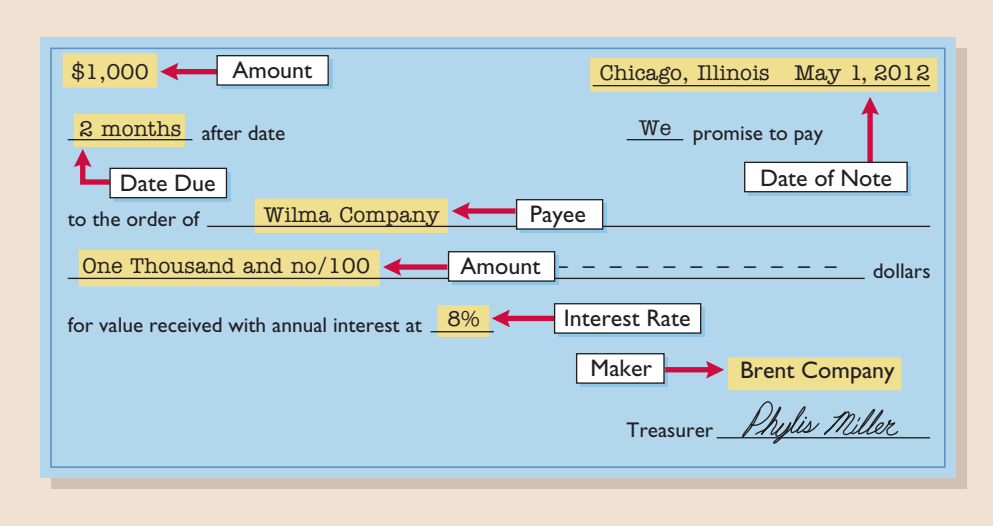


Illustration 8-9
Promissory note

Helpful Hint Who are the two key parties to a note? What entry does each party make when the note is issued?
Answer:
1. The maker, Brent Company, credits Notes Payable.
2. The payee, Wilma Company, debits Notes Receivable.

Notes receivable give the holder a stronger legal claim to assets than do accounts receivable. Like accounts receivable, notes receivable can be readily sold

to another party. Promissory notes are negotiable instruments (as are checks), which means that, when sold, the seller can transfer them to another party by endorsement.

Companies frequently accept notes receivable from customers who need to extend the payment of an outstanding account receivable, and they often require them from high-risk customers. In some industries (e.g., the pleasure and sport boat industry), all credit sales are supported by notes. The majority of notes, however, originate from lending transactions.

There are three basic issues in accounting for notes receivable:

1. **Recognizing** notes receivable.
2. **Valuing** notes receivable.
3. **Disposing** of notes receivable.

We will look at each of these issues, but first we need to consider an issue that did not apply to accounts receivable: computing interest.

DETERMINING THE MATURITY DATE

Helpful Hint The maturity date of a 60-day note dated July 17 is determined as follows:

Term of note		60 days
July (31 − 17)	14	
August	31	45
September		15
(Maturity date)		

The maturity date of a promissory note may be stated in one of three ways: (1) on demand, (2) on a stated date, and (3) at the end of a stated period of time. When it is stated to be at the end of a period of time, the parties to the note will need to determine the maturity date.

When the life of a note is expressed in terms of months, you find the date when it matures by counting the months from the date of issue. For example, the maturity date of a three-month note dated May 1 is August 1. A note drawn on the last day of a month matures on the last day of a subsequent month. That is, a July 31 note due in two months matures on September 30.

When the due date is stated in terms of days, you need to count the exact number of days to determine the maturity date. In counting, **omit the date the note is issued but include the due date**.

study objective 4

Compute the interest on notes receivable.

COMPUTING INTEREST

Illustration 8-10 gives the basic formula for computing interest on an interest-bearing note.

Illustration 8-10 Formula for computing interest

Face Value of Note × Annual Interest Rate × Time in Terms of One Year = Interest

The interest rate specified on the note is an **annual** rate of interest. The time factor in the computation expresses the fraction of a year that the note is outstanding. When the maturity date is stated in days, the time factor is frequently the number of days divided by 360. **When counting days, omit the date the note is issued but include the due date.** When the due date is stated in months, the time factor is the number of months divided by 12. Illustration 8-11 shows computation of interest for various time periods.

Illustration 8-11 Computation of interest

Terms of Note	Interest Computation						
	Face	×	Rate	×	Time	=	Interest
$ 730, 12%, 120 days	$ 730	×	12%	×	120/360	=	$ 29.20
$1,000, 9%, 6 months	$1,000	×	9%	×	6/12	=	$ 45.00
$2,000, 6%, 1 year	$2,000	×	6%	×	1/1	=	$120.00

There are different ways to calculate interest. For example, the computation in Illustration 8-11 assumed 360 days for the year. Most financial institutions

use 365 days to compute interest. *For homework problems, assume 360 days to simplify computations*.

RECOGNIZING NOTES RECEIVABLE

To illustrate the basic entry for notes receivable, we will use Brent Company's $1,000, two-month, 8% promissory note dated May 1. Assuming that Brent Company wrote the note to settle an open account, Wilma Company makes the following entry for the receipt of the note.

May	1	Notes Receivable	1,000	
		Accounts Receivable—Brent Company		1,000
		(To record acceptance of Brent Company note)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+1,000				
−1,000				

Cash Flows
no effect

The company records the note receivable at its **face value**, the value shown on the face of the note. No interest revenue is reported when the company accepts the note because the revenue recognition principle does not recognize revenue until earned. Interest is earned (accrued) as time passes.

If a company issues cash in exchange for a note, the entry is a debit to Notes Receivable and a credit to Cash in the amount of the loan.

VALUING NOTES RECEIVABLE

Like accounts receivable, companies report short-term notes receivable at their **cash (net) realizable value**. The notes receivable allowance account is Allowance for Doubtful Accounts. Valuing short-term notes receivable is the same as valuing accounts receivable. The computations and estimations involved in determining cash realizable value and in recording the proper amount of bad debts expense and related allowance are similar.

Long-term notes receivable, however, pose additional estimation problems. As an example, we need only look at the problems large U.S. banks sometimes have in collecting their receivables. Loans to less-developed countries are particularly worrisome. Developing countries need loans for development but often find repayment difficult. U.S. loans (notes) to less-developed countries at one time totaled approximately $135 billion. In Brazil alone, **Citigroup** at one time had loans equivalent to 80% of its stockholders' equity. In some cases, developed nations have intervened to provide financial assistance to the financially troubled borrowers so as to minimize the political and economic turmoil to the borrower and to ensure the survival of the lender.

International Insight

Can Fair Value Be Unfair?

The FASB and the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) are considering proposals for how to account for financial instruments. The FASB has proposed that loans and receivables be accounted for at their fair value (the amount they could currently be sold for), as are most investments. The FASB believes that this would provide a more accurate view of a company's financial position. It might be especially useful as an early warning when a bank is in trouble because of poor-quality loans. But, banks argue that fair values are difficult to estimate accurately. They are also concerned that volatile fair values could cause large swings in a bank's reported net income.

Source: David Reilly, "Banks Face a Mark-to-Market Challenge," *Wall Street Journal Online* (March 15, 2010).

? What are the arguments in favor of and against fair value accounting for loans and receivables? (See page 443.)

DISPOSING OF NOTES RECEIVABLE

study objective 5

Describe the entries to record the disposition of notes receivable.

Notes may be held to their maturity date, at which time the face value plus accrued interest is due. In some situations, the maker of the note defaults, and the payee must make an appropriate adjustment. In other situations, similar to accounts receivable, the holder of the note speeds up the conversion to cash by selling the receivables as described later in this chapter.

Honor of Notes Receivable

A note is **honored** when its maker pays in full at its maturity date. For each interest-bearing note, the **amount due at maturity** is the face value of the note plus interest for the length of time specified on the note.

Helpful Hint How many days of interest should be accrued at September 30 for a 90-day note issued on August 16? *Answer:* 45 days (15 days in August plus 30 days in September).

To illustrate, assume that Wolder Co. lends Higley Inc. $10,000 on June 1, accepting a five-month, 9% interest note. In this situation, interest is $375 ($10,000 × 9% × $\frac{5}{12}$). The amount due, the maturity value, is $10,375 ($10,000 + $375). To obtain payment, Wolder (the payee) must present the note either to Higley Inc. (the maker) or to the maker's agent, such as a bank. If Wolder presents the note to Higley Inc. on November 1, the maturity date, Wolder's entry to record the collection is:

A	=	L	+	SE
+10,375				
−10,000				
				+375 Rev

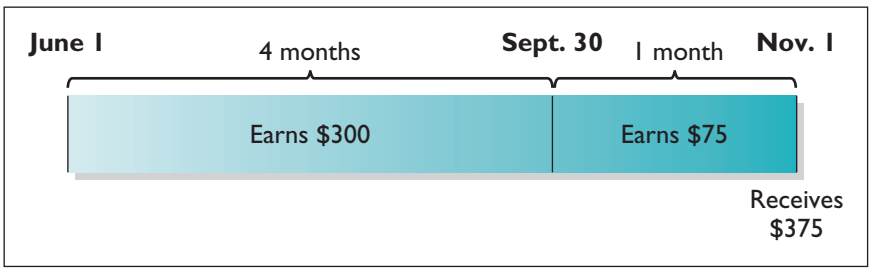
Cash Flows
+10,375

Nov. 1	Cash	10,375	
	Notes Receivable		10,000
	Interest Revenue ($10,000 × 9% × $\frac{5}{12}$)		375
	(To record collection of Higley Inc. note and interest)		

Accrual of Interest Receivable

Suppose instead that Wolder Co. prepares financial statements as of September 30. The timeline in Illustration 8-12 presents this situation.

Illustration 8-12 Timeline of interest earned



To reflect interest earned but not yet received, Wolder must accrue interest on September 30. In this case, the adjusting entry by Wolder is for four months of interest, or $300, as shown below.

A	=	L	+	SE
+300				
				+300 Rev

Cash Flows
no effect

Sept. 30	Interest Receivable ($10,000 × 9% × $\frac{4}{12}$)	300	
	Interest Revenue		300
	(To accrue 4 months' interest on Higley note)		

At the note's maturity on November 1, Wolder receives $10,375. This amount represents repayment of the $10,000 note as well as five months of interest, or $375, as shown on the next page. The $375 is comprised of the $300 Interest

Receivable accrued on September 30 plus $75 earned during October. Wolder's entry to record the honoring of the Higley note on November 1 is:

Nov. 1	Cash [$10,000 + ($10,000 × 9% × $\frac{5}{12}$)]	10,375	
	Notes Receivable		10,000
	Interest Receivable		300
	Interest Revenue ($10,000 × 9% × $\frac{1}{12}$)		75
	(To record collection of Higley Inc. note and interest)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+10,375				
−10,000				
−300				
				+75 Rev

Cash Flows
+10,375

In this case, Wolder credits Interest Receivable because the receivable was established in the adjusting entry on September 30.

Dishonor of Notes Receivable

A **dishonored note** is a note that is not paid in full at maturity. A dishonored note receivable is no longer negotiable; however, the payee still has a claim against the maker of the note for both the note and the interest. If the lender expects that it eventually will be able to collect, the two parties negotiate new terms to make it easier for the borrower to repay the debt. If there is no hope of collection, the payee should write off the face value of the note.

before you go on...

Do it! Gambit Stores accepts from Leonard Co. a $3,400, 90-day, 6% note dated May 10 in settlement of Leonard's overdue open account. The note matures on August 8. What entry does Gambit make at the maturity date, assuming Leonard pays the note and interest in full at that time?

NOTES RECEIVABLE

Action Plan

- Determine whether interest was accrued.
- Compute the accrued interest.
- Prepare the entry for payment of the note and the interest. The entry to record interest at maturity in this solution assumes that no interest has been previously accrued on this note.

Solution

The interest payable at maturity date is $51, computed as follows.

$$\text{Face} \times \text{Rate} \times \text{Time} = \text{Interest}$$

$$\$3{,}400 \times 6\% \times \frac{90}{360} = \$51$$

Gambit Stores records this entry at the maturity date:

Cash	3,451	
Notes Receivable		3,400
Interest Revenue		51
(To record collection of Leonard note and interest)		

Related exercise material: **BE8-6, BE8-7, Do it! 8-2, E8-7,** and **E8-8**.

the navigator

Financial Statement Presentation of Receivables

study objective 6
Explain the statement presentation of receivables.

Companies should identify in the balance sheet or in the notes to the financial statements each of the major types of receivables. Short-term receivables are reported in the current assets section of the balance sheet, below short-term investments. Short-term investments appear before short-term receivables because these investments are nearer to cash. Companies report both the gross amount of receivables and the allowance for doubtful accounts.

Receivables represent 53% of the total assets of heavy equipment manufacturer Deere & Company. Illustration 8-13 shows a presentation of receivables for Deere & Company from its 2009 balance sheet and notes.

Illustration 8-13 Balance sheet presentation of receivables

DEERE & COMPANY
Balance Sheet (partial)
(in millions)

Receivables	
Receivables from unconsolidated subsidiaries	$ 38
Trade accounts and notes receivable	2,694
Financing receivables	15,469
Restricted financing receivables	3,108
Other receivables	864
Total receivables	22,173
Less: Allowance for doubtful trade receivables	290
Net receivables	$21,883

In the income statement, companies report bad debts expense under "Selling expenses" in the operating expenses section. They show interest revenue under "Other revenues and gains" in the nonoperating section of the income statement.

If a company has significant risk of uncollectible accounts or other problems with its receivables, it is required to discuss this possibility in the notes to the financial statements.

Managing Receivables

study objective 7

Describe the principles of sound accounts receivable management.

Managing accounts receivable involves five steps:

1. Determine to whom to extend credit.
2. Establish a payment period.
3. Monitor collections.
4. Evaluate the liquidity of receivables.
5. Accelerate cash receipts from receivables when necessary.

EXTENDING CREDIT

A critical part of managing receivables is determining who should be extended credit and who should not. Many companies increase sales by being generous with their credit policy, but they may end up extending credit to risky customers who do not pay. If the credit policy is too tight, you will lose sales. If it is too loose, you may sell to "deadbeats" who will pay either very late or not at all. One CEO noted that prior to getting his credit and collection department in order, his salespeople had 300 square feet of office space **per person**, while the people in credit and collections had six people crammed into a single 300-square-foot space. Although this focus on sales boosted sales revenue, it had very expensive consequences in bad debts expense.

Companies can take certain steps to help minimize losses due to bad debts when they decide to relax credit standards for new customers. They might require risky customers to provide letters of credit or bank guarantees. Then, if the customer does not pay, the bank that provided the guarantee will do so. Particularly risky customers might be required to pay cash on delivery. For example, retailer Linens 'n Things, Inc. recently reported that it was paying its largest vendors cash before it had even received the goods. The vendors had cut off shipments because the company had been slow in paying. Kmart's suppliers also required it to pay cash in advance when it was financially troubled.

In addition, companies should ask potential customers for references from banks and suppliers, to determine their payment history. It is important to check these references on potential new customers as well as periodically to check the financial health of continuing customers. Many resources are available for investigating customers. For example, *The Dun & Bradstreet Reference Book of American Business* (*www.dnb.com*) lists millions of companies and provides credit ratings for many of them.

Accounting Across the Organization

Bad Information Can Lead to Bad Loans

Many factors have contributed to the recent credit crisis. One significant factor that resulted in many bad loans was a failure by lenders to investigate loan customers sufficiently. For example, Countrywide Financial Corporation wrote many loans under its "Fast and Easy" loan program. That program allowed borrowers to provide little or no documentation for their income or their assets. Other lenders had similar programs, which earned the nickname "liars' loans." One study found that in these situations 60% of applicants overstated their incomes by more than 50% in order to qualify for a loan. Critics of the banking industry say that because loan officers were compensated for loan volume, and because banks were selling the loans to investors rather than holding them, the lenders had little incentive to investigate the borrowers' creditworthiness.

Source: Glenn R. Simpson and James R. Hagerty, "Countrywide Loss Focuses Attention on Underwriting," *Wall Street Journal* (April 30, 2008), p. B1; and Michael Corkery, "Fraud Seen as Driver in Wave of Foreclosures," *Wall Street Journal* (December 21, 2007), p. A1.

? What steps should the banks have taken to ensure the accuracy of financial information provided on loan applications? (See page 443.)

ESTABLISHING A PAYMENT PERIOD

Companies that extend credit should determine a required payment period and communicate that policy to their customers. It is important that the payment period is consistent with that of competitors. For example, if you decide to require payment within 15 days, but your competitors require payment within 45 days, you may lose sales to your competitors. However, to match competitors' terms yet still encourage prompt payment of accounts, you might allow up to 45 days to pay but offer a sales discount for people paying within 15 days.

MONITORING COLLECTIONS

We discussed preparation of the accounts receivable aging schedule earlier in the chapter (pages 404–405). Companies should prepare an accounts receivable aging schedule at least monthly. In addition to estimating the allowance for doubtful accounts, the aging schedule has other uses: It helps managers estimate the timing of future cash inflows, which is very important to the treasurer's efforts to prepare a cash budget. It provides information about the overall collection experience of the company and identifies problem accounts. For example, as discussed in the Feature Story about Whitehall-Robins, management would compute and compare the percentage of receivables that are over 90 days past due.

The aging schedule identifies problem accounts that the company needs to pursue with phone calls, letters, and occasionally legal action. Sometimes, special arrangements must be made with problem accounts. For example, it was reported that Intel Corporation (a major manufacturer of computer chips) required that Packard Bell (at one time one of the largest U.S. sellers of personal computers) exchange its past-due account receivable for an interest-bearing note receivable. This

caused concern within the investment community. The move suggested that Packard Bell was in trouble, which worried Intel investors concerned about Intel's accounts receivable.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the company's credit risk increasing?	Customer account balances and due dates	Accounts receivable aging schedule	Compute and compare the percentage of receivables over 90 days old.

If a company has significant concentrations of credit risk, it must discuss this risk in the notes to its financial statements. A **concentration of credit risk** is a threat of nonpayment from a single large customer or class of customers that could adversely affect the financial health of the company. Illustration 8-14 shows an excerpt from the credit risk note from the 2009 annual report of McKesson Corp. McKesson reports that its ten largest customers account for 52% of its total revenues and 49% of its receivables.

Illustration 8-14 Excerpt from note on concentration of credit risk

McKESSON CORP.
Notes to the Financial Statements

Concentrations of Credit Risk and Receivables: Our trade receivables subject us to a concentration of credit risk with customers primarily in our Distribution Solutions segment. At March 31, 2009, revenues and accounts receivable from our ten largest customers accounted for approximately 52% of consolidated revenues and approximately 49% of accounts receivable. At March 31, 2009, revenues and accounts receivable from our two largest customers, CVS Caremark Corporation and Rite Aid Corporation, represented approximately 14% and 12% of total consolidated revenues and 14% and 10% of accounts receivable.

This note to McKesson Corp.'s financial statements indicates it has a high level of credit concentration. A default by any of these large customers could have a significant negative impact on its financial performance.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Does the company have significant concentrations of credit risk?	Note to the financial statements on concentrations of credit risk	If risky credit customers are identified, the financial health of those customers should be evaluated to gain an independent assessment of the potential for a material credit loss.	If a material loss appears likely, the potential negative impact of that loss on the company should be carefully evaluated, along with the adequacy of the allowance for doubtful accounts.

EVALUATING LIQUIDITY OF RECEIVABLES

study objective 8

Identify ratios to analyze a company's receivables.

Investors and managers keep a watchful eye on the relationship among sales, accounts receivable, and cash collections. If sales increase, then accounts receivable are also expected to increase. But a disproportionate increase in accounts receivable might signal trouble. Perhaps the company increased its sales by loosening its credit policy, and these receivables may be difficult or impossible to collect. Such receivables are considered less liquid. Recall that liquidity is measured by how quickly certain assets can be converted to cash.

The ratio that analysts use to assess the liquidity of receivables is the **receivables turnover ratio**, computed by dividing net credit sales (net sales less cash sales) by the average net accounts receivables during the year. This ratio measures the number of times, on average, a company collects receivables during the period. Unless seasonal factors are significant, **average** accounts receivable outstanding can be computed from the beginning and ending balances of the net receivables.[1]

A popular variant of the receivables turnover ratio is the **average collection period**, which measures the average amount of time that a receivable is outstanding. This is done by dividing the receivables turnover ratio into 365 days. Companies use the average collection period to assess the effectiveness of a company's credit and collection policies. The average collection period should not greatly exceed the credit term period (i.e., the time allowed for payment).

The following data (in millions) are available for McKesson Corp.

	For the year ended March 31,	
	2009	**2008**
Sales	$106,632	$101,703
Accounts receivable (net)	7,774	7,213

Illustration 8-15 shows the receivables turnover ratio and average collection period for McKesson Corp., along with comparative industry data. These calculations assume that all sales were credit sales.

Illustration 8-15
Receivables turnover and average collection period

$$\text{Receivables Turnover Ratio} = \frac{\text{Net Credit Sales}}{\text{Average Net Receivables}}$$

$$\text{Average Collection Period} = \frac{365}{\text{Receivables Turnover Ratio}}$$

Ratio	McKesson ($ in millions)		Cardinal Health	Industry Average
	2009	2008	2009	2009
Receivables turnover	$\frac{\$106,632}{(\$7,774 + \$7,213)/2}$ = 14.2 times	14.8 times	18.7 times	16.2 times
Average collection period	$\frac{365 \text{ days}}{14.2}$ = 25.7 days	24.7 days	19.5 days	22.5 days

[1]If seasonal factors are significant, the company might determine the average accounts receivable balance by using monthly or quarterly amounts.

McKesson's receivables turnover was 14.2 times in 2009, with a corresponding average collection period of 25.7 days. This was slightly slower than its 2008 collection period. It was also slower than the industry average collection period of 22.5 days and considerably slower than Cardinal Health, which was 19.5 days. What this means is that McKesson turned its receivables into cash more slowly than most of its competitors. Therefore, it was less likely to pay its current obligations than a company with a quicker receivables turnover and is more likely to need outside financing to meet cash shortfalls.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Are collections being made in a timely fashion?	Net credit sales and average net receivables balance	Receivables turnover ratio $= \frac{\text{Net credit sales}}{\text{Average net receivables}}$ Average collection period $= \frac{365 \text{ days}}{\text{Receivables turnover ratio}}$	Average collection period should be consistent with corporate credit policy. An increase may suggest a decline in financial health of customers.

In some cases, receivables turnover may be misleading. Some large retail chains that issue their own credit cards encourage customers to use these cards for purchases. If customers pay slowly, the stores earn a healthy return on the outstanding receivables in the form of interest at rates of 18% to 22%. On the other hand, companies that sell (factor) their receivables on a consistent basis will have a faster turnover than those that do not. Thus, to interpret receivables turnover, you must know how a company manages its receivables. In general, the faster the turnover, the greater the reliability of the current ratio for assessing liquidity.

before you go on...

ANALYSIS OF RECEIVABLES

Action Plan

- Review the formula to compute the receivables turnover.
- Make sure that both the beginning and ending accounts receivable are considered in the computation.
- Review the formula to compute the average collection period in days.

the navigator

Do it! In 2012, Lebron James Company had net credit sales of $923,795 for the year. It had a beginning accounts receivable (net) balance of $38,275 and an ending accounts receivable (net) balance of $35,988. Compute Lebron James Company's (a) receivables turnover and (b) average collection period in days.

Solution

(a)

Net credit sales	÷	Average net receivables	=	Receivables turnover
$923,795	÷	$\frac{\$38,275 + \$35,988}{2}$	=	24.9 times

(b)

Days in year	÷	Receivables turnover	=	Average collection period in days
365	÷	24.9 times	=	14.7 days

Related exercise material: **BE8-10,** **Do it!** **8-3, E8-11,** and **E8-12.**

ACCELERATING CASH RECEIPTS

study objective 9

Describe methods to accelerate the receipt of cash from receivables.

In the normal course of events, companies collect accounts receivable in cash and remove them from the books. However, as credit sales and receivables have grown in size and significance, the "normal course of events" has changed. Two common expressions apply to the collection of receivables: (1) "Time is money"—that is, waiting for the normal collection process costs money. (2) "A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush"—that is, getting the cash now is better than getting it later or not at all. Therefore, in order to accelerate the receipt of cash from receivables, companies frequently sell their receivables to another company for cash, thereby shortening the cash-to-cash operating cycle.

There are three reasons for the sale of receivables. The first is their **size**. In recent years, for competitive reasons, sellers (retailers, wholesalers, and manufacturers) often have provided financing to purchasers of their goods. For example, many major companies in the automobile, truck, industrial and farm equipment, computer, and appliance industries have created companies that accept responsibility for accounts receivable financing. Caterpillar has Caterpillar Financial Services, General Electric has GE Capital, and Ford has Ford Motor Credit Corp. (FMCC). These companies are referred to as **captive finance companies** because they are owned by the company selling the product. The purpose of captive finance companies is to encourage the sale of the company's products by assuring financing to buyers. However, the parent companies involved do not necessarily want to hold large amounts of receivables, so they may sell them.

Second, **companies may sell receivables because they may be the only reasonable source of cash**. When credit is tight, companies may not be able to borrow money in the usual credit markets. Even if credit is available, the cost of borrowing may be prohibitive.

A final reason for selling receivables is that **billing and collection are often time-consuming and costly**. As a result, it is often easier for a retailer to sell the receivables to another party that has expertise in billing and collection matters. Credit card companies such as MasterCard, Visa, American Express, and Discover specialize in billing and collecting accounts receivable.

National Credit Card Sales

Approximately one billion credit cards were in use recently—more than three credit cards for every man, woman, and child in this country. A common type of credit card is a national credit card such as Visa and MasterCard. Three parties are involved when national credit cards are used in making retail sales: (1) the credit card issuer, who is independent of the retailer, (2) the retailer, and (3) the customer. **A retailer's acceptance of a national credit card is another form of selling—factoring—the receivable by the retailer.**

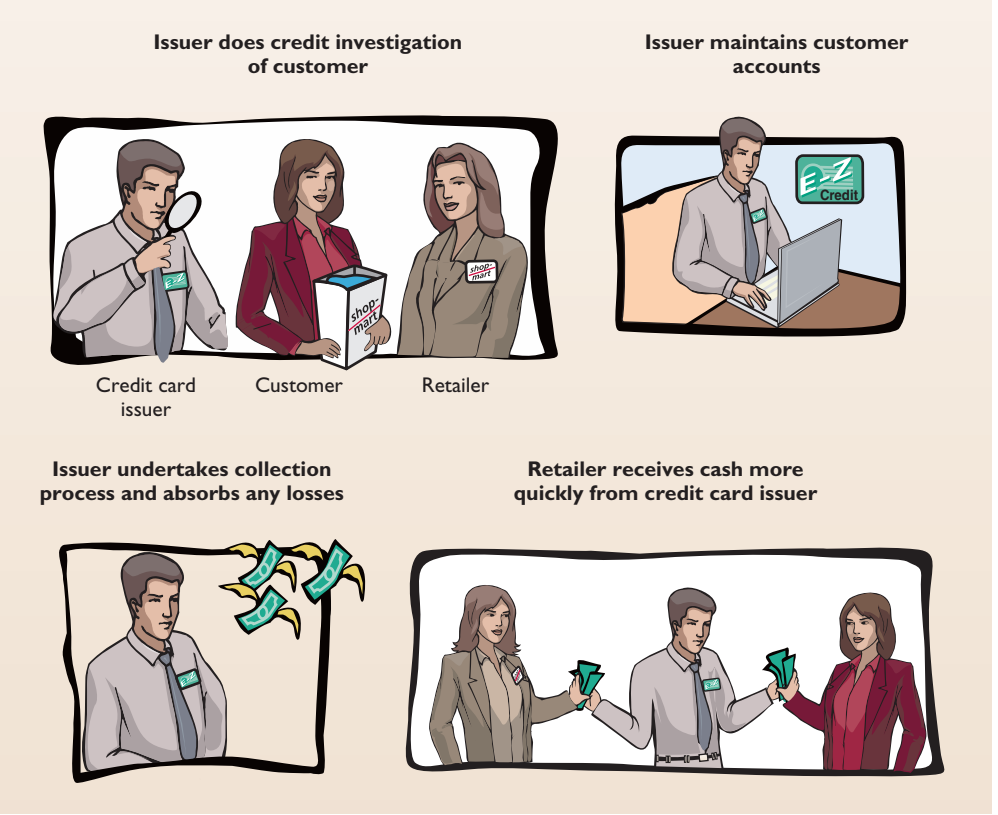
Ethics Note In exchange for lower interest rates, some companies have eliminated the 25-day grace period before finance charges kick in. Be sure you read the fine print in any credit agreement you sign.

The use of national credit cards translates to more sales and zero bad debts for the retailer. Both are powerful reasons for a retailer to accept such cards. Illustration 8-16 (page 418) shows the major advantages of national credit cards to the retailer. In exchange for these advantages, the retailer pays the credit card issuer a fee of 2% to 4% of the invoice price for its services.

The retailer considers sales resulting from the use of Visa and MasterCard as **cash sales**. Upon notification of a credit card charge from a retailer, the bank that issued the card immediately adds the amount to the seller's bank balance. Companies therefore record these credit card charges in the same manner as checks deposited from a cash sale.

To illustrate, Morgan Marie purchases $1,000 of compact discs for her restaurant from Sondgeroth Music Co., and she charges this amount on her Visa First

Illustration 8-16
Advantages of credit cards to the retailer



Bank Card. The service fee that First Bank charges Sondgeroth Music is 3%. Sondgeroth Music's entry to record this transaction is:

A	=	L	+	SE
+970				−30 Exp
				+1,000 Rev

Cash Flows
+970

Cash	970	
Service Charge Expense	30	
Sales Revenue		1,000
(To record Visa credit card sales)		

Sale of Receivables to a Factor

A common way to accelerate receivables collection is a sale to a factor. A **factor** is a finance company or bank that buys receivables from businesses for a fee and then collects the payments directly from the customers.

Factoring was traditionally associated with the textiles, apparel, footwear, furniture, and home furnishing industries. It has now spread to other types of businesses and is a multibillion dollar industry. For example, Sears, Roebuck & Co. (now Sears Holdings) once sold $14.8 billion of customer accounts receivable. McKesson has a pre-arranged agreement allowing it to sell up to $700 million of its receivables.

Factoring arrangements vary widely, but typically the factor charges a commission. It ranges from 1% to 3% of the amount of receivables purchased. To illustrate, assume that Hendredon Furniture factors $600,000 of receivables to Federal Factors, Inc. Federal Factors assesses a service charge of 2% of the amount of receivables sold. The following journal entry records Hendredon's sale of receivables.

International Note GAAP has less stringent requirements regarding the sale of receivables. Thus, GAAP companies can more easily use factoring transactions as a form of financing without showing a related liability on their books. Some argue that this type of so-called "off-balance-sheet financing" would be more difficult to achieve under IFRS.

Cash	588,000	
Service Charge Expense (2% × $600,000)	12,000	
Accounts Receivable		600,000
(To record the sale of accounts receivable)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+588,000				−12,000 Exp
−600,000				

Cash Flows
+588,000

If the company usually sells its receivables, it records the service charge expense as a selling expense. If the company sells receivables infrequently, it may report this amount under "Other expenses and losses" in the income statement.

Accounting Across the Organization

eBay for Receivables

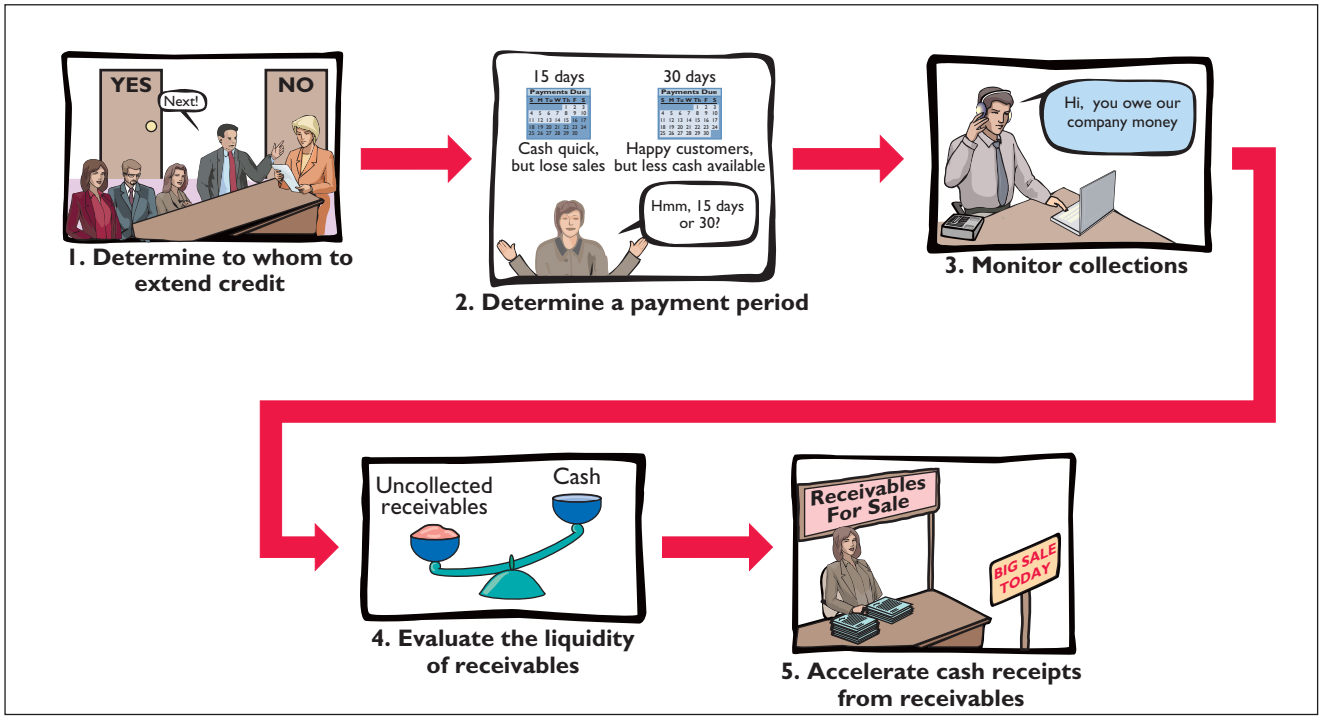
The credit crunch has hit small businesses especially hard. Because banks have been very reluctant to loan, entrepreneurs have had to look more frequently to factoring as a source of cash. This created an opportunity for a new business called The Receivables Exchange. It offers a website where small companies can anonymously display a list of their receivables that they would like to factor in exchange for cash. Parties that are interested in providing cash in exchange for the receivables can also view the receivables and bid on those they like without revealing their identity. It has been described as "eBay for receivables." Because of his continued use of the service, one experienced participant has reduced the monthly rate that he pays to The Receivables Exchange from 4% to below 3%.

Source: Simona Covel, "Getting Your Due," *Wall Street Journal Online* (May 11, 2009).

? What issues should management consider in deciding whether to factor its receivables? (See page 444.)

Illustration 8-17 summarizes the basic principles of managing accounts receivable.

Illustration 8-17
Managing receivables



before you go on...

FACTORING

Do it! Peter M. Kell Wholesalers Co. needs to raise $120,000 in cash to safely cover next Friday's employee payroll. Kell has reached its debt ceiling. Kell's present balance of outstanding receivables totals $750,000. What might Kell do to alleviate this cash crunch? Record the entry that Kell would make when it raises the needed cash. (Assume a 1% service charge.)

Action Plan

- Consider sale of receivables to a factor.
- Weigh cost of factoring against benefit of having cash in hand.

Solution

If Kell Co. factors $125,000 of its accounts receivable at a 1% service charge, it would make this entry:

Cash	123,750	
Service Charge Expense	1,250	
Accounts Receivable		125,000
(To record sale of receivables to factor)		

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE8-11,** **Do it!** **8-4, E8-13,** and **E8-14.**

KEEPING AN EYE ON CASH

A lot of companies report strong sales growth but have cash flow problems. How can this be? The reason for the difference is timing: Sales revenue is recorded when goods are delivered, even if cash is not received until later. For example, McKesson Corp. had sales of $106,632 million during 2009. Does that mean it received cash of $106,632 million from its customers? Most likely not. So how do we determine the amount of cash related to sales revenue that is actually received from customers? We analyze the changes that take place in Accounts Receivable.

To illustrate, suppose Bestor Corporation started the year with $10,000 in accounts receivable. During the year, it had sales of $100,000. At the end of the year, the balance in accounts receivable was $25,000. As a result, accounts receivable increased $15,000 during the year. How much cash did Bestor collect from customers during the year? Using the following T account, we can determine that collections were $85,000.

Accounts Receivable			
Beginning balance	10,000	85,000	Collections
Sales	100,000		
Ending balance	25,000		

As shown, the difference between sales and cash collections is explained by the change in Accounts Receivable. Accounts Receivable increased by $15,000. Therefore, since sales were $100,000, cash collections were only $85,000.

To illustrate another situation, let's use McKesson Corporation (see page 415). Recall that it had sales of $106,632 million. Its ending receivable balance was $7,774 million, and its beginning receivables balance was $7,213 million—an increase of $561 million. Given this change, we can determine that the cash collected from customers during the year was $106,071 million ($106,632 − $561). This is shown in the following T account.

Accounts Receivable			
Beginning balance	7,213	106,071	Collections
Sales	106,632		
Ending balance	7,774		

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

The information below was taken from the September 30, 2009, financial statements of AmerisourceBergen Corp., Inc. Similar to McKesson Corp., AmerisourceBergen distributes drugs and related services to pharmaceutical manufacturers and health-care providers in the United States and Puerto Rico.

Instructions

Comment on AmerisourceBergen's accounts receivable management and liquidity relative to that of McKesson, using (1) the current ratio and (2) the receivables turnover ratio and average collection period. McKesson's current ratio was 1.16:1. The other ratio values for McKesson were calculated earlier in the chapter.

AMERISOURCEBERGEN CORP., INC.
Selected Financial Information
(in millions)

	2009	2008
Sales	$71,760	$70,190
Current assets		
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 1,009	$ 878
Short-term investment securities	—	—
Accounts receivable (net)	3,917	3,480
Merchandise inventories	4,973	4,212
Other	—	44
Total current assets	$ 9,899	$ 8,614
Total current liabilities	$ 9,480	$ 8,168

Solution

1. Here is the current ratio (Current assets ÷ Current liabilities) for each company.

McKesson	AmerisourceBergen
1.16:1	$\frac{\$9{,}899}{\$9{,}480} = 1.04:1$

This suggests that McKesson and AmerisourceBergen have similar liquidity, with McKesson slightly more liquid. Both have relatively low current ratios.

2. The receivables turnover ratio and average collection period for each company are:

	McKesson	AmerisourceBergen
Receivables turnover ratio	14.2 times	$\frac{\$71{,}760}{(\$3{,}917 + \$3{,}480)/2} = 19.4$ times
Average collection period	25.7 days	$\frac{365}{19.4} = 18.8$ days

AmerisourceBergen's receivables turnover ratio of 19.4 compared to McKesson's 14.2, and its average collection period of 18.8 days versus McKesson's 25.7 days, suggest that AmerisourceBergen is able to collect from its customers much more rapidly. The high receivables turnover ratios of both companies help to compensate for their relatively low current ratios when evaluating their liquidity.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Identify the different types of receivables. Receivables are frequently classified as accounts, notes, and other. Accounts receivable are amounts customers owe on account. Notes receivable represent claims that are evidenced by formal instruments of credit. Other receivables include nontrade receivables such as interest receivable, loans to company officers, advances to employees, and income taxes refundable.

2 Explain how accounts receivable are recognized in the accounts. Accounts receivable are recorded at invoice price. They are reduced by sales returns and allowances. Cash discounts reduce the amount received on accounts receivable.

3 Describe the methods used to account for bad debts. The two methods of accounting for uncollectible accounts are the allowance method and the direct write-off method. Under the allowance method, companies estimate uncollectible accounts as a percentage of receivables. It emphasizes the cash realizable value of the accounts receivable. An aging schedule is frequently used with this approach.

4 Compute the interest on notes receivable. The formula for computing interest is: Face value × Interest rate × Time.

5 Describe the entries to record the disposition of notes receivable. Notes can be held to maturity, at which time the borrower (maker) pays the face value plus accrued interest and the payee removes the note from the accounts. In many cases, however, similar to accounts receivable, the holder of the note speeds up the conversion by selling the receivable to another party. In some situations, the maker of the note dishonors the note (defaults), and the note is written off.

6 Explain the statement presentation of receivables. Companies should identify each major type of receivable in the balance sheet or in the notes to the financial statements. Short-term receivables are considered current assets. Companies report the gross amount of receivables and allowance for doubtful accounts. They report bad debts and service charge expenses in the income statement as operating (selling) expenses, and interest revenue as other revenues and gains in the nonoperating section of the statement.

7 Describe the principles of sound accounts receivable management. To properly manage receivables, management must (a) determine to whom to extend credit, (b) establish a payment period, (c) monitor

(Summary continues on next page)

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the amount of past due accounts increasing? Which accounts require management's attention?	List of outstanding receivables and their due dates	Prepare an aging schedule showing the receivables in various stages: outstanding 0–30 days, 31–60 days, 61–90 days, and over 90 days.	Accounts in the older categories require follow-up: letters, phone calls, and possible renegotiation of terms.
Is the company's credit risk increasing?	Customer account balances and due dates	Accounts receivable aging schedule	Compute and compare the percentage of receivables over 90 days old.
Does the company have significant concentrations of credit risk?	Note to the financial statements on concentrations of credit risk	If risky credit customers are identified, the financial health of those customers should be evaluated to gain an independent assessment of the potential for a material credit loss.	If a material loss appears likely, the potential negative impact of that loss on the company should be carefully evaluated, along with the adequacy of the allowance for doubtful accounts.
Are collections being made in a timely fashion?	Net credit sales and average net receivables balance	Receivables turnover ratio $= \frac{\text{Net credit sales}}{\text{Average net receivables}}$ Average collection period $= \frac{365 \text{ days}}{\text{Receivables turnover ratio}}$	Average collection period should be consistent with corporate credit policy. An increase may suggest a decline in financial health of customers.

collections, (d) evaluate the liquidity of receivables, and (e) accelerate cash receipts from receivables when necessary.

8 Identify ratios to analyze a company's receivables. The receivables turnover ratio and the average collection period both are useful in analyzing management's effectiveness in managing receivables. The accounts receivable aging schedule also provides useful information.

9 Describe methods to accelerate the receipt of cash from receivables. If the company needs additional cash, management can accelerate the collection of cash from receivables by selling (factoring) its receivables or by allowing customers to pay with bank credit cards.

the navigator

Glossary

Accounts receivable *(p. 398)* Amounts customers owe on account.

Aging the accounts receivable *(p. 404)* A schedule of customer balances classified by the length of time they have been unpaid.

Allowance method *(p. 402)* A method of accounting for bad debts that involves estimating uncollectible accounts at the end of each period.

Average collection period *(p. 415)* The average amount of time that a receivable is outstanding, calculated by dividing 365 days by the receivables turnover ratio.

Bad Debts Expense *(p. 401)* An expense account to record losses from extending credit.

Cash (net) realizable value *(p. 402)* The net amount a company expects to receive in cash from receivables.

Concentration of credit risk *(p. 414)* The threat of nonpayment from a single large customer or class of customers that could adversely affect the financial health of the company.

Direct write-off method *(p. 401)* A method of accounting for bad debts that involves charging receivable balances to Bed Debts Expense at the time receivables from a particular company are determined to be uncollectible.

Dishonored note *(p. 411)* A note that is not paid in full at maturity.

Factor *(p. 418)* A finance company or bank that buys receivables from businesses for a fee and then collects the payments directly from the customers.

Maker *(p. 407)* The party in a promissory note who is making the promise to pay.

Notes receivable *(p. 399)* Claims for which formal instruments of credit are issued as evidence of the debt.

Payee *(p. 407)* The party to whom payment of a promissory note is to be made.

Percentage of receivables basis *(p. 404)* A method of estimating the amount of bad debts expense whereby management establishes a percentage relationship between the amount of receivables and the expected losses from uncollectible accounts.

Promissory note *(p. 407)* A written promise to pay a specified amount of money on demand or at a definite time.

Receivables *(p. 398)* Amounts due from individuals and companies that are expected to be collected in cash.

Receivables turnover ratio *(p. 415)* A measure of the liquidity of receivables, computed by dividing net credit sales by average net accounts receivables.

Trade receivables *(p. 399)* Notes and accounts receivable that result from sales transactions.

Comprehensive Do it!

Presented here are selected transactions related to B. Dylan Corp.

Mar.	1	Sold $20,000 of merchandise to Potter Company, terms 2/10, n/30.
	11	Received payment in full from Potter Company for balance due.
	12	Accepted Juno Company's $20,000, 6-month, 12% note for balance due on outstanding account receivable.
	13	Made B. Dylan Corp. credit card sales for $13,200.
	15	Made Visa credit sales totaling $6,700. A 5% service fee is charged by Visa.
Apr.	11	Sold accounts receivable of $8,000 to Harcot Factor. Harcot Factor assesses a service charge of 2% of the amount of receivables sold.
	13	Received collections of $8,200 on B. Dylan Corp. credit card sales.
May	10	Wrote off as uncollectible $16,000 of accounts receivable. (B. Dylan Corp. uses the percentage of receivables basis to estimate bad debts.)
June	30	The balance in accounts receivable at the end of the first 6 months is $200,000 and the bad debts percentage is 10%. At June 30 the credit balance in the allowance account prior to adjustment is $3,500. Recorded bad debt expense.
July	16	One of the accounts receivable written off in May pays the amount due, $4,000, in full.

Action Plan

- Generally, record accounts receivable at invoice price.
- Recognize that sales returns and allowances and cash discounts reduce the amount received on accounts receivable.
- Record a service charge expense on the seller's books when accounts receivable are sold.
- Prepare an adjusting entry for bad debts expense.
- Recognize the balance in the allowance account under the percentage of receivables basis.
- Record write-offs of accounts receivable only in balance sheet accounts.

Instructions

Prepare the journal entries for the transactions. (Omit cost of goods sold entries.)

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

Mar.	1	Accounts Receivable—Potter Company	20,000	
		Sales Revenue		20,000
		(To record sales on account)		
		*		
	11	Cash	19,600	
		Sales Discounts (2% × $20,000)	400	
		Accounts Receivable—Potter Company		20,000
		(To record collection of accounts receivable)		
	12	Notes Receivable	20,000	
		Accounts Receivable—Juno Company		20,000
		(To record acceptance of Juno Company note)		
	13	Accounts Receivable	13,200	
		Sales Revenue		13,200
		(To record company credit card sales)		
	15	Cash	6,365	
		Service Charge Expense (5% × $6,700)	335	
		Sales Revenue		6,700
		(To record credit card sales)		
Apr.	11	Cash	7,840	
		Service Charge Expense (2% × $8,000)	160	
		Accounts Receivable		8,000
		(To record sale of receivables to factor)		
	13	Cash	8,200	
		Accounts Receivable		8,200
		(To record collection of accounts receivable)		
May	10	Allowance for Doubtful Accounts	16,000	
		Accounts Receivable		16,000
		(To record write-off of accounts receivable)		
June	30	Bad Debts Expense	16,500	
		Allowance for Doubtful Accounts		16,500
		[($200,000 × 10%) − $3,500]		
		(To record estimate of uncollectible accounts)		
July	16	Accounts Receivable	4,000	
		Allowance for Doubtful Accounts		4,000
		(To reverse write-off of accounts receivable)		
		Cash	4,000	
		Accounts Receivable		4,000
		(To record collection of accounts receivable)		

*Cost of goods sold entries are omitted here as well as in homework material.

the navigator

WILEY PLUS
Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 444.

(SO 1) **1.** A receivable that is evidenced by a formal instrument and that normally requires the payment of interest is:
(a) an account receivable.
(b) a trade receivable.
(c) a note receivable.
(d) a classified receivable.

(SO 2) **2.** Kersee Company on June 15 sells merchandise on account to Soo Eng Co. for $1,000, terms 2/10, n/30. On June 20, Eng Co. returns merchandise worth $300 to Kersee Company. On June 24, payment is received from Eng Co. for the balance due. What is the amount of cash received?
(a) $700. (c) $686.
(b) $680. (d) None of the above.

(SO 3, 6) **3.** Accounts and notes receivable are reported in the current assets section of the balance sheet at:
(a) cash (net) realizable value
(b) net book value.
(c) lower-of-cost-or-market value.
(d) invoice cost.

(SO 3) **4.** Net credit sales for the month are $800,000. The accounts receivable balance is $160,000. The allowance is calculated as 7.5% of the receivables balance using the percentage of receivables basis. If the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts has a credit balance of $5,000 before adjustment, what is the balance after adjustment?
(a) $12,000. (c) $17,000.
(b) $7,000. (d) $31,000.

(SO 3) **5.** In 2012, Patterson Wholesale Company had net credit sales of $750,000. On January 1, 2012, Allowance for Doubtful Accounts had a credit balance of $18,000. During 2012, $30,000 of uncollectible accounts receivable were written off. Past experience indicates that the allowance should be 10% of the balance in receivables (percentage of receivables basis). If the accounts receivable balance at December 31 was $200,000, what is the required adjustment to the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts at December 31, 2012?
(a) $20,000. (c) $32,000.
(b) $75,000. (d) $30,000.

(SO 3) **6.** An analysis and aging of the accounts receivable of Raja Company at December 31 reveal these data:

Accounts receivable	$800,000
Allowance for doubtful accounts per books before adjustment (credit)	50,000
Amounts expected to become uncollectible	65,000

What is the cash realizable value of the accounts receivable at December 31, after adjustment?
(a) $685,000. (c) $800,000.
(b) $750,000. (d) $735,000.

(SO 4) **7.** Which of these statements about promissory notes is *incorrect*?
(a) The party making the promise to pay is called the maker.
(b) The party to whom payment is to be made is called the payee.
(c) A promissory note is not a negotiable instrument.
(d) A promissory note is more liquid than an account receivable.

(SO 4) **8.** Michael Co. accepts a $1,000, 3-month, 12% promissory note in settlement of an account with Tani Co. The entry to record this transaction is:

(a) Notes Receivable	1,030	
Accounts Receivable		1,030
(b) Notes Receivable	1,000	
Accounts Receivable		1,000
(c) Notes Receivable	1,000	
Sales Revenue		1,000
(d) Notes Receivable	1,020	
Accounts Receivable		1,020

(SO 5) **9.** Schleis Co. holds Murphy Inc.'s $10,000, 120-day, 9% note. The entry made by Schleis Co. when the note is collected, assuming no interest has previously been accrued, is:

(a) Cash	10,300	
Notes Receivable		10,300
(b) Cash	10,000	
Notes Receivable		10,000
(c) Accounts Receivable	10,300	
Notes Receivable		10,000
Interest Revenue		300
(d) Cash	10,300	
Notes Receivable		10,000
Interest Revenue		300

(SO 7) **10.** If a company is concerned about extending credit to a risky customer, it could do any of the following *except*:
(a) require the customer to pay cash in advance.
(b) require the customer to provide a letter of credit or a bank guarantee.
(c) contact references provided by the customer, such as banks and other suppliers.
(d) provide the customer a lengthy payment period to increase the chance of paying.

(SO 8) **11.** Eddy Corporation had net credit sales during the year of $800,000 and cost of goods sold of $500,000. The balance in receivables at the beginning of the year was $100,000 and at the end of the year was $150,000. What was the receivables turnover ratio?
(a) 6.4 (c) 5.3
(b) 8.0 (d) 4.0

(SO 8) **12.** Prall Corporation sells its goods on terms of 2/10, n/30. It has a receivables turnover ratio of 7. What is its average collection period (days)?
(a) 2,555 (b) 30 (c) 52 (d) 210

(SO 9) **13.** Which of these statements about Visa credit card sales is *incorrect*?
(a) The credit card issuer conducts the credit investigation of the customer.
(b) The retailer is not involved in the collection process.
(c) The retailer must wait to receive payment from the issuer.
(d) The retailer receives cash more quickly than it would from individual customers.

(SO 9) **14.** Good Stuff Retailers accepted $50,000 of Citibank Visa credit card charges for merchandise sold on July 1. Citibank charges 4% for its credit card use. The entry to record this transaction by Good Stuff Retailers will include a credit to Sales Revenue of $50,000 and a debit(s) to:
(a) Cash $48,000 and Service Charge Expense $2,000.
(b) Accounts Receivable $48,000 and Service Charge Expense $2,000.
(c) Cash $50,000.
(d) Accounts Receivable $50,000.

(SO 9) **15.** A company can accelerate its cash receipts by all of the following *except*:
(a) offering discounts for early payment.
(b) accepting national credit cards for customer purchases.
(c) selling receivables to a factor.
(d) writing off receivables.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. What is the difference between an account receivable and a note receivable?

2. What are some common types of receivables other than accounts receivable or notes receivable?

3. What are the essential features of the allowance method of accounting for bad debts?

4. Tracy Buss cannot understand why the cash realizable value does not decrease when an uncollectible account is written off under the allowance method. Clarify this point for Tracy.

5. Coffaro Company has a credit balance of $2,200 in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts before adjustment. The estimated uncollectibles under the percentage of receivables basis is $5,100. Prepare the adjusting entry.

6. What types of receivables does Tootsie Roll report on its balance sheet? Does it use the allowance method or the direct write-off method to account for uncollectibles?

7. How are bad debts accounted for under the direct write-off method? What are the disadvantages of this method?

8. Andrea Herbert, the vice president of sales for Tropical Pools and Spas, wants the company's credit department to be less restrictive in granting credit. "How can we sell anything when you guys won't approve anybody?" she asks. Discuss the pros and cons of "easy credit." What are the accounting implications?

9. Your roommate is uncertain about the advantages of a promissory note. Compare the advantages of a note receivable with those of an account receivable.

10. How may the maturity date of a promissory note be stated?

11. Compute the missing amounts for each of the following notes.

Principal	Annual Interest Rate	Time	Total Interest
(a)	6%	60 days	$ 270
$30,000	8%	3 years	(d)
$60,000	(b)	5 months	$2,500
$50,000	11%	(c)	$2,750

12. DeSousa Company dishonors a note at maturity. What are the options available to the lender?

13. General Motors Company has accounts receivable and notes receivable. How should the receivables be reported on the balance sheet?

14. What are the steps to good receivables management?

15. How might a company monitor the risk related to its accounts receivable?

16. What is meant by a concentration of credit risk?

17. The president of Gruenwald Inc. proudly announces her company's improved liquidity since its current ratio has increased substantially from one year to the next. Does an increase in the current ratio always indicate improved liquidity? What other ratio or ratios might you review to determine whether or not the increase in the current ratio is an improvement in financial health?

18. Since hiring a new sales director, Palasz Inc. has enjoyed a 50% increase in sales. The CEO has also noticed, however, that the company's average collection period has increased from 17 days to 38 days. What might be the cause of this increase? What are the implications to management of this increase?

19. The Coca-Cola Company's receivables turnover ratio was 9.05 in 2009, and its average amount of net receivables during the period was

$3,424 million. What is the amount of its net credit sales for the period? What is the average collection period in days?

20. JCPenney Company accepts both its own credit cards and national credit cards. What are the advantages of accepting both types of cards?

21. An article in the *Wall Street Journal* indicated that companies are selling their receivables at a record rate. Why do companies sell their receivables?

22. Calico Corners decides to sell $400,000 of its accounts receivable to First Central Factors Inc. First Central Factors assesses a service charge of 3% of the amount of receivables sold. Prepare the journal entry that Calico Corners makes to record this sale.

23. Ross Corp. has experienced tremendous sales growth this year, but it is always short of cash. What is one explanation for this occurrence?

24. How can the amount of collections from customers be determined?

Brief Exercises

BE8-1 Presented below are three receivables transactions. Indicate whether these receivables are reported as accounts receivable, notes receivable, or other receivables on a balance sheet.

(a) Advanced $10,000 to an employee.
(b) Received a promissory note of $34,000 for services performed.
(c) Sold merchandise on account for $60,000 to a customer.

Identify different types of receivables. (SO 1), **C**

BE8-2 Record the following transactions on the books of Kuist Co. (Omit cost of goods sold entries.)

(a) On July 1, Kuist Co. sold merchandise on account to Firer Inc. for $23,000, terms 2/10, n/30.
(b) On July 8, Firer Inc. returned merchandise worth $2,400 to Kuist Co.
(c) On July 11, Firer Inc. paid for the merchandise.

Record basic accounts receivable transactions. (SO 2), **AP**

BE8-3 At the end of 2011, Tatham Co. has accounts receivable of $700,000 and an allowance for doubtful accounts of $25,000. On January 24, 2012, it is learned that the company's receivable from Nardin Inc. is not collectible and therefore management authorizes a write-off of $4,300.

(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the write-off.
(b) What is the cash realizable value of the accounts receivable (1) before the write-off and (2) after the write-off?

Prepare entry for write-off, and determine cash realizable value. (SO 3), **AP**

BE8-4 Assume the same information as BE8-3 and that on March 4, 2012, Tatham Co. receives payment of $4,300 in full from Nardin Inc. Prepare the journal entries to record this transaction.

Prepare entries for collection of bad debt write-off. (SO 3), **AP**

BE8-5 Lynch Co. uses the percentage of receivables basis to record bad debts expense and concludes that 2% of accounts receivable will become uncollectible. Accounts receivable are $400,000 at the end of the year, and the allowance for doubtful accounts has a credit balance of $2,800.

(a) Prepare the adjusting journal entry to record bad debts expense for the year.
(b) If the allowance for doubtful accounts had a debit balance of $900 instead of a credit balance of $2,800, prepare the adjusting journal entry for bad debts expense.

Prepare entry using percentage of receivables method. (SO 3), **AP**

BE8-6 Compute interest and find the maturity date for the following notes.

	Date of Note	Principal	Interest Rate (%)	Terms
(a)	June 10	$80,000	6%	60 days
(b)	July 14	$50,000	7%	90 days
(c)	April 27	$12,000	8%	75 days

Compute interest and determine maturity dates on notes. (SO 4), **AP**

BE8-7 Presented below are data on three promissory notes. Determine the missing amounts.

	Date of Note	Terms	Maturity Date	Principal	Annual Interest Rate	Total Interest
(a)	April 1	60 days	?	$600,000	9%	?
(b)	July 2	30 days	?	90,000	?	$600
(c)	March 7	6 months	?	120,000	10%	?

Determine maturity dates and compute interest and rates on notes. (SO 4), **AP**

BE8-8 On January 10, 2012, Ruggiero Co. sold merchandise on account to Edwards for $8,000, terms n/30. On February 9, Edwards gave Ruggiero Co. a 7% promissory note in settlement of this account. Prepare the journal entry to record the sale and the settlement of the accounts receivable. (Omit cost of goods sold entries.)

Prepare entry for note receivable exchanged for accounts receivable. (SO 4), **AP**

Prepare entry for estimated uncollectibles and classifications, and compute ratios.
(SO 3, 6, 7, 8), AP

BE8-9 During its first year of operations, Ketter Company had credit sales of $3,000,000, of which $400,000 remained uncollected at year-end. The credit manager estimates that $18,000 of these receivables will become uncollectible.

(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the estimated uncollectibles. (Assume an unadjusted balance of zero in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts.)
(b) Prepare the current assets section of the balance sheet for Ketter Company, assuming that in addition to the receivables it has cash of $90,000, merchandise inventory of $180,000, and supplies of $13,000.
(c) Calculate the receivables turnover ratio and average collection period. Assume that average net receivables were $300,000. Explain what these measures tell us.

Analyze accounts receivable.
(SO 8), AP

BE8-10 The 2009 financial statements of 3M Company report net sales of $23.1 billion. Accounts receivable (net) are $3.2 billion at the beginning of the year and $3.25 billion at the end of the year. Compute 3M's receivables turnover ratio. Compute 3M's average collection period for accounts receivable in days.

Prepare entries for credit card sale and sale of accounts receivable.
(SO 9), AP

BE8-11 Consider these transactions:

(a) Galvao Restaurant accepted a Visa card in payment of a $200 lunch bill. The bank charges a 3% fee. What entry should Galvao make?
(b) Stone Company sold its accounts receivable of $65,000. What entry should Stone make, given a service charge of 3% on the amount of receivables sold?

Determine cash collections.
(SO 9), AP

BE8-12 Roberts Corp. had a beginning balance in accounts receivable of $70,000 and an ending balance of $91,000. Sales during the period were $598,000. Determine cash collections.

Do it! Review

Prepare entry for uncollectible accounts.
(SO 3), AP

Do it! 8-1 Else Company has been in business several years. At the end of the current year, the ledger shows:

Accounts Receivable	$ 310,000 Dr.
Sales Revenue	2,200,000 Cr.
Allowance for Doubtful Accounts	5,700 Cr.

Bad debts are estimated to be 7% of receivables. Prepare the entry to adjust the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts.

Prepare entries for notes receivable.
(SO 4, 5), AP

Do it! 8-2 Gilliam Wholesalers accepts from Perlman Stores a $6,200, 4-month, 9% note dated May 31 in settlement of Perlman's overdue account. The maturity date of the note is September 30. What entry does Gilliam make at the maturity date, assuming Perlman pays the note and interest in full at that time?

Compute ratios for receivables.
(SO 8), AP

Do it! 8-3 In 2012, Grossfeld Company has net credit sales of $1,600,000 for the year. It had a beginning accounts receivable (net) balance of $108,000 and an ending accounts receivable (net) balance of $120,000. Compute Grossfeld Company's (a) receivables turnover and (b) average collection period in days.

Prepare entry for factored accounts.
(SO 9), AP

Do it! 8-4 Vesely Distributors is a growing company whose ability to raise capital has not been growing as quickly as its expanding assets and sales. Vesely's local banker has indicated that the company cannot increase its borrowing for the foreseeable future. Vesely's suppliers are demanding payment for goods acquired within 30 days of the invoice date, but Vesely's customers are slow in paying for their purchases (60–90 days). As a result, Vesely has a cash flow problem.

Vesely needs $160,000 to cover next Friday's payroll. Its balance of outstanding accounts receivable totals $800,000. To alleviate this cash crunch, the company sells $170,000 of its receivables. Record the entry that Vesely would make. (Assume a 2% service charge.)

Exercises

Prepare entries for recognizing accounts receivable.
(SO 2), AP

E8-1 On January 6, Petro Co. sells merchandise on account to Chose Inc. for $9,200, terms 1/10, n/30. On January 16, Chose pays the amount due.

Instructions

Prepare the entries on Petro Co.'s books to record the sale and related collection. (Omit cost of goods sold entries.)

E8-2 On January 10, Kristin Pitt uses her Stampfer Co. credit card to purchase merchandise from Stampfer Co. for $1,700. On February 10, Pitt is billed for the amount due of $1,700. On February 12, Pitt pays $1,100 on the balance due. On March 10, Pitt is billed for the amount due, including interest at 1% per month on the unpaid balance as of February 12.

Prepare entries for recognizing accounts receivable.
(SO 2), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the entries on Stampfer Co.'s books related to the transactions that occurred on January 10, February 12, and March 10. (Omit cost of goods sold entries.)

E8-3 At the beginning of the current period, Engseth Corp. had balances in Accounts Receivable of $200,000 and in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts of $9,000 (credit). During the period, it had net credit sales of $800,000 and collections of $763,000. It wrote off as uncollectible accounts receivable of $7,300. However, a $3,100 account previously written off as uncollectible was recovered before the end of the current period. Uncollectible accounts are estimated to total $25,000 at the end of the period. (Omit cost of goods sold entries.)

Journalize receivables transactions.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Prepare the entries to record sales and collections during the period.
(b) Prepare the entry to record the write-off of uncollectible accounts during the period.
(c) Prepare the entries to record the recovery of the uncollectible account during the period.
(d) Prepare the entry to record bad debts expense for the period.
(e) Determine the ending balances in Accounts Receivable and Allowance for Doubtful Accounts.
(f) What is the net realizable value of the receivables at the end of the period?

E8-4 The ledger of Montgomery Company at the end of the current year shows Accounts Receivable $78,000; Credit Sales $810,000; and Sales Returns and Allowances $40,000.

Prepare entries to record allowance for doubtful accounts.
(SO 3), **AP**

Instructions
(a) If Montgomery uses the direct write-off method to account for uncollectible accounts, journalize the adjusting entry at December 31, assuming Montgomery determines that Baruth's $900 balance is uncollectible.
(b) If Allowance for Doubtful Accounts has a credit balance of $1,100 in the trial balance, journalize the adjusting entry at December 31, assuming bad debts are expected to be 10% of accounts receivable.
(c) If Allowance for Doubtful Accounts has a debit balance of $500 in the trial balance, journalize the adjusting entry at December 31, assuming bad debts are expected to be 8% of accounts receivable.

E8-5 Parry Company has accounts receivable of $95,400 at March 31, 2012. An analysis of the accounts shows these amounts.

Determine bad debts expense, and prepare the adjusting entry.
(SO 3), **AP**

	Balance, March 31	
Month of Sale	**2012**	**2011**
March	$65,000	$75,000
February	12,900	8,000
December and January	10,100	2,400
November and October	7,400	1,100
	$95,400	$86,500

Credit terms are 2/10, n/30. At March 31, 2012, there is a $2,100 credit balance in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts prior to adjustment. The company uses the percentage of receivables basis for estimating uncollectible accounts. The company's estimates of bad debts are as shown below.

Age of Accounts	Estimated Percentage Uncollectible
Current	2%
1–30 days past due	5
31–90 days past due	30
Over 90 days past due	50

Instructions
(a) Determine the total estimated uncollectibles.
(b) Prepare the adjusting entry at March 31, 2012, to record bad debts expense.
(c) Discuss the implications of the changes in the aging schedule from 2011 to 2012.

Prepare entry for estimated uncollectibles, write-off, and recovery.
(SO 3), AP

E8-6 On December 31, 2011, when its Allowance for Doubtful Accounts had a debit balance of $1,400, Nova Co. estimates that 9% of its accounts receivable balance of $90,000 will become uncollectible and records the necessary adjustment to the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts. On May 11, 2012, Nova Co. determined that J. Rast's account was uncollectible and wrote off $1,200. On June 12, 2012, Rast paid the amount previously written off.

Instructions
Prepare the journal entries on December 31, 2011, May 11, 2012, and June 12, 2012.

Prepare entries for notes receivable transactions.
(SO 4, 5), AP

E8-7 Gwynne Supply Co. has the following transactions related to notes receivable during the last 2 months of the year.

Nov.	1	Loaned $60,000 cash to B. Akey on a 1-year, 7% note.
Dec.	11	Sold goods to R. P. Mayrl, Inc., receiving a $3,600, 90-day, 8% note.
	16	Received a $12,000, 6-month, 9% note to settle an open account from M. Colvin.
	31	Accrued interest revenue on all notes receivable.

Instructions
Journalize the transactions for Gwynne Supply Co. (Omit cost of goods sold entries.)

Journalize notes receivable transactions.
(SO 4, 5), AP

E8-8 These transactions took place for Renda Co.

2011		
May	1	Received a $5,000, 1-year, 6% note in exchange for an outstanding account receivable from S. Dorsey.
Dec.	31	Accrued interest revenue on the S. Dorsey note.
2012		
May	1	Received principal plus interest on the S. Dorsey note. (No interest has been accrued since December 31, 2011.)

Instructions
Record the transactions in the general journal.

Prepare a balance sheet presentation of receivables.
(SO 6), AP

E8-9 Kopecky Corp. had the following balances in receivable accounts at October 31, 2012 (in thousands): Allowance for Doubtful Accounts $52; Accounts Receivable $2,910; Other Receivables $189; Notes Receivable $1,353.

Instructions
Prepare the balance sheet presentation of Kopecky Corp.'s receivables in good form.

Identify the principles of receivables management.
(SO 7), K

E8-10 The following is a list of activities that companies perform in relation to their receivables.

1. Selling receivables to a factor.
2. Reviewing company ratings in *The Dun and Bradstreet Reference Book of American Business*.
3. Collecting information on competitors' payment period policies.
4. Preparing monthly accounts receivable aging schedule and investigating problem accounts.
5. Calculating the receivables turnover ratio and average collection period.

Instructions
Match each of the activities listed above with a purpose of the activity listed below.
(a) Determine to whom to extend credit.
(b) Establish a payment period.
(c) Monitor collections.
(d) Evaluate the liquidity of receivables.
(e) Accelerate cash receipts from receivables when necessary.

Compute ratios to evaluate a company's receivables balance.
(SO 7, 8), AN

E8-11 The following information was taken from the 2009 financial statements of FedEx Corporation, a major global transportation/delivery company.

(in millions)	2009	2008
Accounts receivable (gross)	$ 3,587	$ 4,517
Accounts receivable (net)	3,391	4,359
Allowance for doubtful accounts	196	158
Sales	35,497	37,953
Total current assets	7,116	7,244

Instructions
Answer each of the following questions.
(a) Calculate the receivables turnover ratio and the average collection period for 2009 for FedEx.
(b) Is accounts receivable a material component of the company's total current assets?
(c) Evaluate the balance in FedEx's allowance for doubtful accounts.

E8-12 The following ratios are available for Tym Inc.

Evaluate liquidity.
(SO 7, 8, 9), **AN**

	2012	2011
Current ratio	1.3:1	1.5:1
Receivables turnover	12 times	10 times
Inventory turnover	11 times	9 times

Instructions
(a) Is Tym's short-term liquidity improving or deteriorating in 2012? Be specific in your answer, referring to relevant ratios.
(b) Do changes in turnover ratios affect profitability? Explain.
(c) Identify any steps Tym might have taken, or might wish to take, to improve its management of its receivables and inventory turnover.

E8-13 On March 3, Pitrof Appliances sells $710,000 of its receivables to American Factors Inc. American Factors Inc. assesses a service charge of 4% of the amount of receivables sold.

Prepare entry for sale of accounts receivable.
(SO 9), **AN**

Instructions
Prepare the entry on Pitrof Appliances' books to record the sale of the receivables.

E8-14 In a recent annual report, Office Depot, Inc. notes that the company entered into an agreement to sell all of its credit card program receivables to financial service companies.

Identify reason for sale of receivables.
(SO 9), **C**

Instructions
Explain why Office Depot, a financially stable company with positive cash flow, would choose to sell its receivables.

E8-15 On May 10, Rose Company sold merchandise for $4,000 and accepted the customer's First Business Bank MasterCard. At the end of the day, the First Business Bank MasterCard receipts were deposited in the company's bank account. First Business Bank charges a 3.8% service charge for credit card sales.

Prepare entry for credit card sale.
(SO 9), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the entry on Rose Company's books to record the sale of merchandise.

E8-16 On July 4, Kathi's Restaurant accepts a Visa card for a $250 dinner bill. Visa charges a 4% service fee.

Prepare entry for credit card sale.
(SO 9), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the entry on Kathi's books related to the transaction.

E8-17 Redding Corp. significantly reduced its requirements for credit sales. As a result, sales during the current year increased dramatically. It had receivables at the beginning of the year of $38,000 and ending receivables of $191,000. Sales were $380,000.

Determine cash flows and evaluate quality of earnings.
(SO 9), **AN**

Instructions
(a) Determine cash collections during the period.
(b) Discuss how your findings in part (a) would affect Redding Corp.'s quality of earnings ratio. (Do not compute.)
(c) What concerns might you have regarding Redding's accounting?

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Journalize transactions related to bad debts.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

P8-1A Sellmore.com uses the allowance method of accounting for bad debts. The company produced the following aging of the accounts receivable at year-end.

		Number of Days Outstanding				
	Total	**0–30**	**31–60**	**61–90**	**91–120**	**Over 120**
Accounts receivable	$377,000	$222,000	$90,000	$38,000	$15,000	$12,000
% uncollectible		1%	4%	5%	8%	10%
Estimated bad debts						

Instructions

(a) Tot. est. bad debts $10,120

(a) Calculate the total estimated bad debts based on the above information.
(b) Prepare the year-end adjusting journal entry to record the bad debts using the aged uncollectible accounts receivable determined in (a). Assume the unadjusted balance in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts is a $4,000 debit.
(c) Of the above accounts, $5,000 is determined to be specifically uncollectible. Prepare the journal entry to write off the uncollectible account.
(d) The company collects $5,000 subsequently on a specific account that had previously been determined to be uncollectible in (c). Prepare the journal entry(ies) necessary to restore the account and record the cash collection.
(e) Comment on how your answers to (a)–(d) would change if Sellmore.com used 3% of total accounts receivable, rather than aging the accounts receivable. What are the advantages to the company of aging the accounts receivable rather than applying a percentage to total accounts receivable?

Prepare journal entries related to bad debts expense, and compute ratios.
(SO 2, 3, 8), **AP**

P8-2A At December 31, 2011, Ihrke Imports reported this information on its balance sheet.

Accounts receivable	$600,000
Less: Allowance for doubtful accounts	37,000

During 2012, the company had the following transactions related to receivables.

1. Sales on account	$2,500,000
2. Sales returns and allowances	50,000
3. Collections of accounts receivable	2,200,000
4. Write-offs of accounts receivable deemed uncollectible	41,000
5. Recovery of bad debts previously written off as uncollectible	15,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare the journal entries to record each of these five transactions. Assume that no cash discounts were taken on the collections of accounts receivable. (Omit cost of goods sold entries.)

(b) A/R bal. $809,000

(b) Enter the January 1, 2012, balances in Accounts Receivable and Allowance for Doubtful Accounts, post the entries to the two accounts (use T accounts), and determine the balances.
(c) Prepare the journal entry to record bad debts expense for 2012, assuming that aging the accounts receivable indicates that estimated bad debts are $46,000.
(d) Compute the receivables turnover ratio and average collection period.

P8-3A Presented below is an aging schedule for Gille Company.

Journalize transactions related to bad debts.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

Customer	Total	Not Yet Due	Number of Days Past Due 1–30	31–60	61–90	Over 90
Aneesh	$ 24,000		$ 9,000	$15,000		
Bird	30,000	$ 30,000				
Cope	50,000	5,000	5,000		$40,000	
DeSpears	38,000					$38,000
Others	120,000	72,000	35,000	13,000		
	$262,000	$107,000	$49,000	$28,000	$40,000	$38,000
Estimated percentage uncollectible		3%	7%	12%	24%	60%
Total estimated bad debts	$ 42,400	$ 3,210	$ 3,430	$ 3,360	$ 9,600	$22,800

At December 31, 2011, the unadjusted balance in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts is a credit of $8,000.

Instructions

(a) Journalize and post the adjusting entry for bad debts at December 31, 2011. (Use T accounts.)

(b) Journalize and post to the allowance account these 2012 events and transactions:
1. March 1, a $600 customer balance originating in 2011 is judged uncollectible.
2. May 1, a check for $600 is received from the customer whose account was written off as uncollectible on March 1.

(c) Journalize the adjusting entry for bad debts at December 31, 2012, assuming that the unadjusted balance in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts is a debit of $1,400 and the aging schedule indicates that total estimated bad debts will be $36,700.

P8-4A Here is information related to Shashko Company for 2012.

Compute bad debts amounts.
(SO 3), **AP**

Total credit sales	$1,500,000
Accounts receivable at December 31	840,000
Bad debts written off	37,000

Instructions

(a) What amount of bad debts expense will Shashko Company report if it uses the direct write-off method of accounting for bad debts?

(b) Assume that Shashko Company decides to estimate its bad debts expense based on 4% of accounts receivable. What amount of bad debts expense will the company record if Allowance for Doubtful Accounts has a credit balance of $3,000?

(c) Assume the same facts as in part (b), except that there is a $1,000 debit balance in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts. What amount of bad debts expense will Shashko record?

(d) What is a weakness of the direct write-off method of reporting bad debts expense?

P8-5A At December 31, 2012, the trial balance of Oliker Company contained the following amounts before adjustment.

Journalize entries to record transactions related to bad debts.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

	Debits	Credits
Accounts Receivable	$180,000	
Allowance for Doubtful Accounts		$ 1,500
Sales Revenue		875,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare the adjusting entry at December 31, 2012, to record bad debts expense, assuming that the aging schedule indicates that $10,200 of accounts receivable will be uncollectible.

(b) Repeat part (a), assuming that instead of a credit balance there is a $1,500 debit balance in the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts.
(c) During the next month, January 2013, a $2,100 account receivable is written off as uncollectible. Prepare the journal entry to record the write-off.
(d) Repeat part (c), assuming that Oliker Company uses the direct write-off method instead of the allowance method in accounting for uncollectible accounts receivable.
(e) What are the advantages of using the allowance method in accounting for uncollectible accounts as compared to the direct write-off method?

Journalize various receivables transactions.
(SO 1, 2, 4, 5), **AP**

P8-6A On January 1, 2012, Sather Company had Accounts Receivable of $54,200 and Allowance for Doubtful Accounts of $3,700. Sather Company prepares financial statements annually. During the year, the following selected transactions occurred.

Jan.	5	Sold $4,000 of merchandise to Noel Company, terms n/30.
Feb.	2	Accepted a $4,000, 4-month, 9% promissory note from Noel Company for balance due.
	12	Sold $12,000 of merchandise to Lima Company and accepted Lima's $12,000, 2-month, 10% note for the balance due.
	26	Sold $5,200 of merchandise to Hubbard Co., terms n/10.
Apr.	5	Accepted a $5,200, 3-month, 8% note from Hubbard Co. for balance due.
	12	Collected Lima Company note in full.
June	2	Collected Noel Company note in full.
	15	Sold $2,000 of merchandise to Matthews Inc. and accepted a $2,000, 6-month, 12% note for the amount due.

Instructions
Journalize the transactions. (Omit cost of goods sold entries.)

Explain the impact of transactions on ratios.
(SO 8), **C**

P8-7A The president of Screven Enterprises asks if you could indicate the impact certain transactions have on the following ratios.

Transaction	Current Ratio (2:1)	Receivables Turnover (10×)	Average Collection Period (36.5 days)
1. Received $5,000 on cash sale. The cost of the goods sold was $2,600.			
2. Recorded bad debts expense of $500 using allowance method.			
3. Wrote off a $100 account receivable as uncollectible (Uses allowance method.)			
4. Recorded $2,500 sales on account. The cost of the goods sold was $1,500.			

Instructions
Complete the table, indicating whether each transaction will increase (I), decrease (D), or have no effect (NE) on the specific ratios provided for Screven Enterprises.

Prepare entries for various credit card and notes receivable transactions.
(SO 2, 4, 5, 6, 9), **AP**

P8-8A Jander Company closes its books on July 31. On June 30, the Notes Receivable account balance is $23,800. Notes Receivable include the following.

Date	Maker	Face Value	Term	Maturity Date	Interest Rate
April 21	Allen Inc.	$ 6,000	90 days	July 20	8%
May 25	Garnham Co.	7,800	60 days	July 24	10%
June 30	ERV Corp.	10,000	6 months	December 31	6%

During July, the following transactions were completed.

July	5	Made sales of $4,500 on Jander credit cards.
	14	Made sales of $600 on Visa credit cards. The credit card service charge is 3%.
	20	Received payment in full from Allen Inc. on the amount due.
	24	Received payment in full from Garnham Co. on the amount due.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the July transactions and the July 31 adjusting entry for accrued interest receivable. (Interest is computed using 360 days; omit cost of goods sold entries.)

(b) Enter the balances at July 1 in the receivable accounts and post the entries to all of the receivable accounts. (Use T accounts.)

(c) Show the balance sheet presentation of the receivable accounts at July 31.

(b) A/R bal. $ 4,500

(c) Tot. receivables $14,550

P8-9A Presented here is basic financial information (in millions) from the 2009 annual reports of Nike and Adidas.

Calculate and interpret various ratios.
(SO 7, 8), **AN**

	Nike	Adidas
Sales	$19,176.1	$10,381
Allowance for doubtful accounts, beginning	78.4	119
Allowance for doubtful accounts, ending	110.8	124
Accounts receivable balance (gross), beginning	2,873.7	1,743
Accounts receivable balance (gross), ending	2,994.7	1,553

Instructions

Calculate the receivables turnover ratio and average collection period for both companies. Comment on the difference in their collection experiences.

Problems: Set B

P8-1B The following represents selected information taken from a company's aging schedule to estimate uncollectible accounts receivable at year-end.

Journalize transactions related to bad debts.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

	Total	Number of Days Outstanding				
		0–30	31–60	61–90	91–120	Over 120
Accounts receivable	$285,000	$107,000	$60,000	$50,000	$38,000	$30,000
% uncollectible		2%	5%	7.5%	10%	14%
Estimated bad debts						

Instructions

(a) Calculate the total estimated bad debts based on the above information.

(b) Prepare the year-end adjusting journal entry to record the bad debts using the allowance method and the aged uncollectible accounts receivable determined in (a). Assume the unadjusted balance in the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts account is a $7,000 credit.

(c) Of the above accounts, $2,600 is determined to be specifically uncollectible. Prepare the journal entry to write off the uncollectible accounts.

(d) The company subsequently collects $1,200 on a specific account that had previously been determined to be uncollectible in (c). Prepare the journal entry(ies) necessary to restore the account and record the cash collection.

(e) Explain how establishing an allowance account satisfies the expense recognition principle.

(a) Tot. est. bad debts $16,890

Prepare journal entries related to bad debts expense, and compute ratios.
(SO 2, 3, 8), **AP**

P8-2B At December 31, 2011, Littman Company reported this information on its balance sheet.

Accounts receivable	$960,000
Less: Allowance for doubtful accounts	78,000

During 2012, the company had the following transactions related to receivables.

1. Sales on account	$3,600,000
2. Sales returns and allowances	50,000
3. Collections of accounts receivable	3,100,000
4. Write-offs of accounts receivable deemed uncollectible	92,000
5. Recovery of bad debts previously written off as uncollectible	28,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare the journal entries to record each of these five transactions. Assume that no cash discounts were taken on the collections of accounts receivable. (Omit cost of goods sold entries.)

(b) A/R bal. $1,318,000

(b) Enter the January 1, 2012, balances in Accounts Receivable and Allowance for Doubtful Accounts, post the entries to the two accounts (use T accounts), and determine the balances.

(c) Prepare the journal entry to record bad debts expense for 2012, assuming that aging the accounts receivable indicates that expected bad debts are $109,000.

(d) Compute the receivables turnover ratio and average collection period.

Journalize transactions related to bad debts.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

P8-3B Presented here is an aging schedule for Zander Company.

Customer	Total	Not Yet Due	Number of Days Past Due 1–30	31–60	61–90	Over 90
Amy	$ 22,000		$12,000	$10,000		
Bergin	40,000	$ 40,000				
Curt	65,000	14,000	6,000		$45,000	
David	28,000					$28,000
Others	126,000	96,000	16,000	14,000		
	$281,000	$150,000	$34,000	$24,000	$45,000	$28,000
Estimated percentage uncollectible		4%	9%	15%	25%	50%
Total estimated bad debts	$ 37,910	$ 6,000	$ 3,060	$ 3,600	$11,250	$14,000

At December 31, 2011, the unadjusted balance in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts is a credit of $11,700.

Instructions

(a) Journalize and post the adjusting entry for bad debts at December 31, 2011. (Use T accounts.)

(b) Journalize and post to the allowance account these 2012 events and transactions:
1. March 31, a $500 customer balance originating in 2011 is judged uncollectible.
2. May 31, a check for $500 is received from the customer whose account was written off as uncollectible on March 31.

(c) Journalize the adjusting entry for bad debts on December 31, 2012, assuming that the unadjusted balance in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts is a debit of $800 and the aging schedule indicates that total estimated bad debts will be $35,300.

Compute bad debts amounts.
(SO 3), **AP**

P8-4B Here is information related to Vansen Company for 2012.

Total credit sales	$2,000,000
Accounts receivable at December 31	400,000
Bad debts written off	15,000

Instructions

(a) What amount of bad debts expense will Vansen Company report if it uses the direct write-off method of accounting for bad debts?

(b) Assume that Vansen Company decides to estimate its bad debts expense based on 4% of accounts receivable. What amount of bad debts expense will the company record if it has an Allowance for Doubtful Accounts credit balance of $3,700?

(c) Assume the same facts as in part (b), except that there is a $2,000 debit balance in Allowance for Doubtful Accounts. What amount of bad debts expense will Vansen record?

(d) What is the weakness of the direct write-off method of reporting bad debts expense?

P8-5B At December 31, 2012, the trial balance of Seidl Company contained the following amounts before adjustment.

Journalize entries to record transactions related to bad debts.
(SO 2, 3), **AP**

	Debits	Credits
Accounts Receivable	$500,000	
Allowance for Doubtful Accounts		$ 4,800
Sales Revenue		2,400,000

Instructions

(a) Based on the information given, which method of accounting for bad debts is Seidl Company using—the direct write-off method or the allowance method? How can you tell?

(b) Prepare the adjusting entry at December 31, 2012, for bad debts expense assuming that the aging schedule indicates that $26,000 of accounts receivable will be uncollectible.

(c) Repeat part (b), assuming that instead of a credit balance there is a $4,800 debit balance in the Allowance for Doubtful Accounts.

(d) During the next month, January 2013, a $5,000 account receivable is written off as uncollectible. Prepare the journal entry to record the write-off.

(e) Repeat part (d), assuming that Seidl uses the direct write-off method instead of the allowance method in accounting for uncollectible accounts receivable.

(f) What type of account is the allowance for doubtful accounts? How does it affect how accounts receivable is reported on the balance sheet at the end of the accounting period?

P8-6B On January 1, 2012, Moline Company had Accounts Receivable $154,000; Notes Receivable of $12,000; and Allowance for Doubtful Accounts of $13,200. The note receivable is from Hartwig Company. It is a 4-month, 9% note dated December 31, 2011. Moline Company prepares financial statements annually. During the year, the following selected transactions occurred.

Journalize various receivables transactions.
(SO 1, 2, 4, 5), **AP**

Jan.	5	Sold $10,000 of merchandise to Flint Company, terms n/15.
	20	Accepted Flint Company's $10,000, 3-month, 9% note for balance due.
Feb.	18	Sold $4,000 of merchandise to Zinck Company and accepted Zinck's $4,000, 6-month, 8% note for the amount due.
Apr.	20	Collected Flint Company note in full.
	30	Received payment in full from Hartwig Company on the amount due.
May	25	Accepted Aberd Inc.'s $9,000, 6-month, 8% note in settlement of a past-due balance on account.
Aug.	18	Received payment in full from Zinck Company on note due.
Sept.	1	Sold $5,000 of merchandise to Cosier Company and accepted a $5,000, 6-month, 9% note for the amount due.

Instructions

Journalize the transactions. (Omit cost of goods sold entries.)

P8-7B The president of Felder Enterprises Ltd., Emma Felder, is considering the impact that certain transactions have on the company's receivables turnover and average collection period ratios. Prior to the transactions on the next page, Felder's receivables turnover was 6 times, and its average collection period was 61 days.

Explain the impact of transactions on ratios: discuss acceleration of receipt of cash from receivables.
(SO 8, 9), **C**

Transaction	Receivables Turnover (6×)	Average Collection Period (61 days)
1. Recorded sales on account $100,000.		
2. Collected $25,000 owed by customers.		
3. Wrote off a $2,500 account from a customer as uncollectible. (Uses allowance method.)		
4. Recorded sales returns of $1,800 and credited the customers' accounts.		
5. Recorded bad debts expense for the year $7,900, using the allowance method.		

Instructions

(a) Complete the table, indicating whether each transaction will increase (I), decrease (D), or have no effect (NE) on the ratios.

(b) Emma was reading through the financial statements for some publicly traded companies and noticed that they had recorded an expense related to the sale of receivables. She would like you to explain why companies sell their receivables.

Prepare entries for various credit card and notes receivable transactions.
(SO 2, 4, 5, 6, 9), **AP**

P8-8B Brockman Company closes its books on October 31. On September 30, the Notes Receivable account balance is $18,800. Notes Receivable include the following.

Date	Maker	Face Value	Term	Maturity Date	Interest Rate
Aug. 16	Stuhmer Inc.	$6,000	60 days	Oct. 15	9%
Aug. 25	Moberg Co.	3,000	2 months	Oct. 25	7%
Sept. 30	Earnest Corp.	9,800	6 months	Mar. 30	6%

Interest is computed using a 360-day year. During October, the following transactions were completed.

Oct. 7 Made sales of $4,600 on Brockman credit cards.
12 Made sales of $600 on Visa credit cards. The credit card service charge is 3%.
15 Received payment in full from Stuhmer Inc. on the amount due.
25 Received payment in full from Moberg Co. on amount due.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the October transactions and the October 31 adjusting entry for accrued interest receivable. (Interest is computed using 360 days; omit cost of goods sold entries.)

(b) A/R bal. $ 4,600

(b) Enter the balances at October 1 in the receivable accounts and post the entries to all of the receivable accounts. (Use T accounts.)

(c) Tot. receivables $14,449

(c) Show the balance sheet presentation of the receivable accounts at October 31.

Calculate and interpret various ratios.
(SO 7, 8), **AN**

P8-9B Presented here is basic financial information from the 2009 annual reports of Intel and Advanced Micro Devices (AMD), the two primary manufacturers of silicon chips for personal computers.

(in millions)	Intel	AMD
Sales	$35,127	$5,403
Allowance for doubtful accounts, Jan. 1	17	8
Allowance for doubtful accounts, Dec. 31	19	7
Accounts receivable balance (gross), Jan. 1	1,729	328
Accounts receivable balance (gross), Dec. 31	2,292	752

Instructions

Calculate the receivables turnover ratio and average collection period for both companies. Comment on the difference in their collection experiences.

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Comprehensive Problem

CP8 Porter Corporation's balance sheet at December 31, 2011, is presented below.

PORTER CORPORATION
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2011

Cash	$13,100	Accounts payable	$ 8,750
Accounts receivable	19,780	Common stock	20,000
Allowance for doubtful accounts	(800)	Retained earnings	12,730
Inventory	9,400		$41,480
	$41,480		

During January 2012, the following transactions occurred. Porter uses the perpetual inventory method.

Jan.	1	Porter accepted a 4-month, 8% note from Anderko Company in payment of Anderko's $1,200 account.
	3	Porter wrote off as uncollectible the accounts of Elrich Corporation ($450) and Rios Company ($280).
	8	Porter purchased $17,200 of inventory on account.
	11	Porter sold for $25,000 on account inventory that cost $17,500.
	15	Porter sold inventory that cost $700 to Fred Berman for $1,000. Berman charged this amount on his Visa First Bank card. The service fee charged Porter by First Bank is 3%.
	17	Porter collected $22,900 from customers on account.
	21	Porter paid $16,300 on accounts payable.
	24	Porter received payment in full ($280) from Rios Company on the account written off on January 3.
	27	Porter purchased advertising supplies for $1,400 cash.
	31	Porter paid other operating expenses, $3,218.

Adjustment data:

1. Interest is recorded for the month on the note from January 1.
2. Bad debts are expected to be 6% of the January 31, 2012, accounts receivable.
3. A count of advertising supplies on January 31, 2012, reveals that $560 remains unused.
4. The income tax rate is 30%. (*Hint:* Prepare the income statement up to "Income before taxes" and multiply by 30% to compute the amount; round to whole dollars.)

Instructions

(You may want to set up T accounts to determine ending balances.)

(a) Prepare journal entries for the transactions listed above and adjusting entries. (Include entries for cost of goods sold using the perpetual system.)

(b) Prepare an adjusted trial balance at January 31, 2012.

(c) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the month ending January 31, 2012, and a classified balance sheet as of January 31, 2012.

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapters 1 through 7.)

CCC8 One of Natalie's friends, Curtis Lesperance, runs a coffee shop where he sells specialty coffees and prepares and sells muffins and cookies. He is eager to buy one of Natalie's fine European mixers, which would enable him to make larger batches of muffins and cookies. However, Curtis cannot afford to pay for the mixer for at least 30 days. He asks Natalie if she would be willing to sell him the mixer on credit. Natalie comes to you for advice.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to see the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll Industries Inc.*

BYP8-1 Refer to the financial statements of Tootsie Roll Industries and the accompanying notes to its financial statements in Appendix A.

Instructions

(a) Calculate the receivables turnover ratio and average collection period for 2009. (Use "Net Product Sales." Assume all sales were credit sales.)

(b) Did Tootsie Roll have any potentially significant credit risks in 2009? (*Hint:* Review Note 1 under Revenue recognition and Note 9 to the financial statements.)

(c) What conclusions can you draw from the information in parts (a) and (b)?

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP8-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company are presented in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll in Appendix A.

Instructions

(a) Based on the information contained in these financial statements, compute the following 2009 values for each company.
  (1) Receivables turnover ratio. (For Tootsie Roll use "Net product sales." Assume all sales were credit sales.)
  (2) Average collection period for receivables.

(b) What conclusions concerning the management of accounts receivable can be drawn from these data?

RESEARCH CASE

BYP8-3 The August 31, 2009, issue of the *Wall Street Journal* includes an article by Serena Ng and Cari Tuna entitled "Big Firms Are Quick to Collect, Slow to Pay."

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following questions.

(a) How many days did InBev tell its suppliers that it was going to take to pay? How many days did it take previously?

(b) What steps did General Electric take to free up cash? How much cash did it free up?

(c) On average, how many days did companies with more than $5 billion take to pay suppliers, and how many days did they take to collect from their customers? How did this compare to companies with less than $500 million in sales?

(d) Are there any risks involved with being too tough in negotiating delayed payment terms with suppliers?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP8-4 The information below is from the 2008 financial statements and accompanying notes of The Scotts Company, a major manufacturer of lawn-care products.

(in millions)	2008	2007
Accounts receivable	$ 270.4	$ 259.7
Allowance for uncollectible accounts	10.6	11.4
Sales	2,981.8	2,871.8
Total current assets	1,044.9	999.3

THE SCOTTS COMPANY
Notes to the Financial Statements

Note 19. Concentrations of Credit Risk

Financial instruments which potentially subject the Company to concentration of credit risk consist principally of trade accounts receivable. The Company sells its consumer products to a wide variety of retailers, including mass merchandisers, home centers, independent hardware stores, nurseries, garden outlets, warehouse clubs, food and drug stores and local and regional chains. Professional products are sold to commercial nurseries, greenhouses, landscape services and growers of specialty agriculture crops. Concentrations of accounts receivable at September 30, net of accounts receivable pledged under the terms of the New MARP Agreement whereby the purchaser has assumed the risk associated with the debtor's financial inability to pay ($146.6 million and $149.5 million for 2008 and 2007, respectively), were as follows:

	2008	2007
Due from customers geographically located in North America	53%	52%
Applicable to the consumer business	61%	54%
Applicable to Scotts LawnService®, the professional businesses (primarily distributors), Smith & Hawken® and Morning Song®	39%	46%
Top 3 customers within consumer business as a percent of total consumer accounts receivable	0%	0%

The remainder of the Company's accounts receivable at September 30, 2008 and 2007, were generated from customers located outside of North America, primary retailers, distributors, nurseries and growers in Europe. No concentrations of customers of individual customers within this group account for more than 10% of the Company's accounts receivable at either balance sheet date.

The Company's three largest customers are reported within the Global Consumer segment, and are the only customers that individually represent more than 10% of reported consolidated net sales for each of the last three fiscal years. These three customers accounted for the following percentages of consolidated net sales for the fiscal years ended September 30:

	Largest Customer	2nd Largest Customer	3rd Largest Customer
2008	21.0%	13.5%	13.4%
2007	20.2%	10.9%	10.2%
2006	21.5%	11.2%	10.5%

Instructions

Answer each of the following questions.

(a) Calculate the receivables turnover ratio and average collection period for 2008 for the company.
(b) Is accounts receivable a material component of the company's total 2008 current assets?
(c) Scotts sells seasonal products. How might this affect the accuracy of your answer to part (a)?
(d) Evaluate the credit risk of Scotts' 2008 concentrated receivables.
(e) Comment on the informational value of Scotts' Note 19 on concentrations of credit risk.

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP8-5 ***Purpose:*** To learn more about factoring from websites that provide factoring services.

Address: **www.ccapital.net**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Instructions

Go to the website, click on **Invoice Factoring**, and answer the following questions.

(a) What are some of the benefits of factoring?
(b) What is the range of the percentages of the typical discount rate?
(c) If a company factors its receivables, what percentage of the value of the receivables can it expect to receive from the factor in the form of cash, and how quickly will it receive the cash?

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP8-6 Sue and Sam Ristic own Club Fab. From its inception, Club Fab has sold merchandise on either a cash or credit basis, but no credit cards have been accepted. During the past several months, the Ristics have begun to question their credit-sales policies. First, they have lost some sales because of their refusal to accept credit cards. Second, representatives of two metropolitan banks have convinced them to accept their national credit cards. One bank, City National Bank, has stated that (1) its credit card fee is 4% and (2) it pays the retailer 96 cents on each $1 of sales within 3 days of receiving the credit card billings.

The Ristics decide that they should determine the cost of carrying their own credit sales. From the accounting records of the past 3 years, they accumulate these data:

	2012	2011	2010
Net credit sales	$500,000	$600,000	$400,000
Collection agency fees for slow-paying customers	2,900	2,600	1,600
Salary of part-time accounts receivable clerk	4,400	4,400	4,400

Credit and collection expenses as a percentage of net credit sales are as follows: uncollectible accounts 1.6%, billing and mailing costs .5%, and credit investigation fee on new customers .2%.

Sue and Sam also determine that the average accounts receivable balance outstanding during the year is 5% of net credit sales. The Ristics estimate that they could earn an average of 10% annually on cash invested in other business opportunities.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following.

(a) Prepare a tabulation for each year showing total credit and collection expenses in dollars and as a percentage of net credit sales.
(b) Determine the net credit and collection expenses in dollars and as a percentage of sales after considering the revenue not earned from other investment opportunities. (*Note:* The income lost on the cash held by the bank for 3 days is considered to be immaterial.)
(c) Discuss both the financial and nonfinancial factors that are relevant to the decision.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP8-7 Stropes Corporation is a recently formed business selling the "World's Best Doormat." The corporation is selling doormats faster than Stropes can make them. It has been selling the product on a credit basis, telling customers to "pay when they can." Oddly, even though sales are tremendous, the company is having trouble paying its bills.

Instructions

Write a memo to the president of Stropes Corporation discussing these questions:

(a) What steps should be taken to improve the company's ability to pay its bills?
(b) What accounting steps should be taken to measure its success in improving collections and in recording its collection success?
(c) If the corporation is still unable to pay its bills, what additional steps can be taken with its receivables to ease its liquidity problems?

ETHICS CASE

BYP8-8 As its year-end approaches, it appears that Lopez Corporation's net income will increase 10% this year. The president of Lopez Corporation, nervous that the stockholders might expect the company to sustain this 10% growth rate in net income in future years, suggests that the controller increase the allowance for doubtful accounts to 4% of receivables in order to lower this year's net income. The president thinks that the lower net income, which reflects a 6% growth rate, will be a more sustainable rate of growth for Lopez Corporation in future years. The controller of Lopez Corporation believes that the company's yearly allowance for doubtful accounts should be 2% of receivables.

Instructions

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this case?
(b) Does the president's request pose an ethical dilemma for the controller?
(c) Should the controller be concerned with Lopez Corporation's growth rate in estimating the allowance? Explain your answer.

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP8-9 Credit card usage in the United States is substantial. Many startup companies use credit cards as a way to help meet short-term financial needs. The most common forms of debt for startups are use of credit cards and loans from relatives.

Suppose that you start up Brothers Sandwich Shop. You invested your savings of $20,000 and borrowed $70,000 from your relatives. Although sales in the first few months are good, you see that you may not have sufficient cash to pay expenses and maintain your inventory at acceptable levels, at least in the short term. You decide you may need to use one or more credit cards to fund the possible cash shortfall.

Instructions

(a) Go to the Internet and find two sources that provide insight into how to compare credit card terms.
(b) Develop a list, in descending order of importance, as to what features are most important to you in selecting a credit card for your business.
(c) Examine the features of your present credit card. (If you do not have a credit card, select a likely one online for this exercise.) Given your analysis above, what are the three major disadvantages of your present credit card?

FASB CODIFICATION ACTIVITY

BYP8-10 If your school has a subscription to the FASB Codification, go to **http://aaahq.org/ascLogin.cfm** to log in and prepare responses to the following.

(a) How are receivables defined in the Codification?
(b) What are the conditions under which losses from uncollectible receivables (Bad Debts Expense) should be reported?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 406 When Investors Ignore Warning Signs **Q:** When would it be appropriate for a company to lower its allowance for doubtful accounts as a percentage of its receivables? **A:** It would be appropriate for a company to lower its allowance for doubtful accounts as a percentage of receivables if the company's collection experience had improved, or was expected to improve, and therefore the company expected lower defaults as a percentage of receivables.

p. 409 Can Fair Value Be Unfair? **Q:** What are the arguments in favor of and against fair value accounting for loans and receivables? **A:** Arguments in favor of fair value accounting for loans and receivables are that fair value would provide a more accurate view of a company's financial position. This might provide a useful early warning of when a bank or other financial institution was in trouble because its loans were of poor quality. But, banks argue that estimating fair values is very difficult to do accurately. They are also concerned that volatile fair values could cause large swings in a bank's reported net income.

p. 413 Bad Information Can Lead to Bad Loans **Q:** What steps should the banks have taken to ensure the accuracy of financial information provided on loan applications? **A:** At a minimum, the bank should have requested copies of recent income tax forms and contacted the supposed employer to verify income. To verify ownership and value of assets, it should have examined bank statements, investment statements, and title documents and should have employed appraisers.

p. 419 eBay for Receivables **Q:** What issues should management consider in deciding whether to factor its receivables? **A:** Management must prepare a cash budget and evaluate its projected cash needs. If it projects a cash deficiency, it should first pursue traditional bank financing, since it tends to be less expensive than factoring. If traditional financing is not available, management could pursue factoring. If carefully structured, a factoring arrangement can be cost-effective since it can enable the company to outsource many billing and collection activities.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. c **2.** c ($1,000 − $300) × (100% − 2%) **3.** a **4.** a ($160,000 × .075) **5.** c ($200,000 ×.10) + ($30,000 − $18,000) **6.** d ($800,000 − $65,000) **7.** c **8.** b **9.** d **10.** d **11.** a $800,000 ÷ (($100,000 + $150,000) ÷ 2) **12.** c (365 days ÷ 7) **13.** c **14.** a **15.** d

IFRS A Look at IFRS

The basic accounting and reporting issues related to recognition and measurement of receivables, such as the use of allowance accounts, how to record discounts, use of the allowance method to account for bad debts, and factoring, are essentially the same between IFRS and GAAP.

KEY POINTS

- IFRS requires that loans and receivables be accounted for at amortized cost, adjusted for allowances for doubtful accounts. IFRS sometimes refers to these allowances as *provisions*. The entry to record the allowance would be:

Bad Debts Expense	xxxxxx	
Allowance for Doubtful Accounts		xxxxxx

- Although IFRS implies that receivables with different characteristics should be reported separately, there is no standard that mandates this segregation.
- The FASB and IASB have worked to implement fair value measurement (the amount they currently could be sold for) for financial instruments. Both Boards have faced bitter opposition from various factions. As a consequence, the Boards have adopted a piecemeal approach; the first step is disclosure of fair value information in the notes. The second step is the fair value option, which permits, but does not require, companies to record some types of financial instruments at fair values in the financial statements.
- IFRS requires a two-tiered approach to test whether the value of loans and receivables are impaired. First, a company should look at specific loans and receivables to determine whether they are impaired. Then, the loans and receivables as a group should be evaluated for impairment. GAAP does not prescribe a similar two-tiered approach.
- IFRS and GAAP differ in the criteria used to determine how to record a factoring transaction. IFRS is a combination of an approach focused on risks and rewards and loss of control. GAAP uses loss of control as the primary criterion. In addition, IFRS permits partial derecognition of receivables; GAAP does not.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

It appears likely that the question of recording fair values for financial instruments will continue to be an important issue to resolve as the Boards work toward convergence. Both the IASB and the FASB have indicated that they believe that financial statements would be more transparent and understandable if companies recorded and reported all financial instruments at fair value. That said, in *IFRS 9*, which was issued in 2009, the IASB created a split model, where some financial instruments are recorded at fair value, but other financial assets, such as loans and receivables, can be accounted for at amortized cost if certain criteria are met. Critics say that this can result in two companies with identical securities accounting for those securities in different ways. A proposal by the FASB would require that nearly all financial instruments, including loans and receivables, be accounted for at fair value. It has been suggested that *IFRS 9* will likely be changed or replaced as the FASB and IASB continue to deliberate the best treatment for financial instruments.

In fact, one past member of the IASB said that companies should ignore *IFRS 9* and continue to report under the old standard, because in his opinion, it was extremely likely that it would be changed before the mandatory adoption date of the standard arrived in 2013.

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. Under IFRS, loans and receivables are to be reported on the balance sheet at:
(a) amortized cost.
(b) amortized cost adjusted for estimated loss provisions.
(c) historical cost.
(d) replacement cost.

2. Which of the following statements is *false*?
(a) Loans and receivables include equity securities purchased by the company.
(b) Loans and receivables include credit card receivables.
(c) Loans and receivables include amounts owed by employees as a result of company loans to employees.
(d) Loans and receivables include amounts resulting from transactions with customers.

3. In recording a factoring transaction:
(a) IFRS focuses on loss of control.
(b) GAAP focuses on loss of control and risks and rewards.
(c) IFRS and GAAP allow partial derecognition.
(d) IFRS allows partial derecognition

4. Under IFRS:
(a) the entry to record estimated uncollected accounts is the same as GAAP.
(b) loans and receivables should only be tested for impairment as a group.
(c) it is always acceptable to use the direct write-off method.
(d) all financial instruments are recorded at fair value.

5. Which of the following statements is *true*?
(a) The fair value option requires that some types of financial instruments be recorded at fair value.
(b) The fair value option allows, but does not require, that some types of financial instruments be recorded at amortized cost.
(c) The fair value option requires that all types of financial instruments be recorded at fair value.
(d) The FASB and IASB would like to reduce the reliance on fair value accounting for financial instruments in the future.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS8–1 What are some steps taken by both the FASB and IASB to move to fair value measurement for financial instruments? In what ways have some of the approaches differed?

INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Zetar plc*

IFRS8–2 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C. The company's complete annual report, including the notes to its financial statements, is available at **www.zetarplc.com.**

Instructions

Use the company's annual report to answer the following questions.
(a) According to the Operational Review of Financial Performance, what was one reason why the balance in receivables increased relative to the previous year?
(b) According to the notes to the financial statements, how are loans and receivables defined?
(c) In the notes to the financial statements, the company reports a "one off item" related to receivables. Explain what this item was.
(d) Using information in the notes to the financial statements, determine what percentage the provision for impairment of receivables was as a percentage of total trade receivables for 2009 and 2008. How did the ratio change from 2008 to 2009, and what does this suggest about the company's receivables?

Answers to IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. b **2.** a **3.** d **4.** a **5.** c

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 9

REPORTING AND ANALYZING LONG-LIVED ASSETS

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives**
- Read **Feature Story**
- Scan **Preview**
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 453 p. 457 p. 460 p. 464 p. 472
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit**
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives**
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 480
- Answer **Self-Test Questions**
- Complete **Assignments**
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 500

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Describe how the cost principle applies to plant assets.
2. Explain the concept of depreciation.
3. Compute periodic depreciation using the straight-line method, and contrast its expense pattern with those of other methods.
4. Describe the procedure for revising periodic depreciation.
5. Explain how to account for the disposal of plant assets.
6. Describe methods for evaluating the use of plant assets.
7. Identify the basic issues related to reporting intangible assets.
8. Indicate how long-lived assets are reported in the financial statements.

the navigator

feature story

A TALE OF TWO AIRLINES

So, you're interested in starting a new business. Have you thought about the airline industry? Your only experience with airlines is as a passenger? Don't let that stop you. Today, the most profitable airlines in the industry are not well-known majors like American Airlines and United. In fact, most giant, old airlines are either bankrupt or on the verge of bankruptcy. In a recent year, five major airlines representing 24% of total U.S. capacity were operating under bankruptcy protection.

Not all airlines are hurting. The growth and profitability in the airline industry today is found at relative newcomers like Southwest Airlines and JetBlue. These and other new airlines compete primarily on ticket prices. During a recent five-year period, the low-fare airline market share increased by 47%; the low-fare airlines now have over 22% of U.S. airline capacity.

Southwest was the first upstart to make it big. It did so by taking a different approach. It bought small, new, fuel-efficient planes. Also, instead of the "hub-and-spoke" approach used by the majors, it opted for direct, short hop, no frills flights. It was all about controlling costs—getting the most out of its efficient new planes.

Other upstarts, such as Valujet, chose a different approach. They bought planes that were 20 to 30 years old (known in the industry as *zombies*). By buying used planes, Valujet was able to add one or two planes a month to its fleet—an unheard of expansion. Valujet started with a $3.4 million investment and grew to be worth $630 million in its first three years.

But, a terrible crash of a Valujet aircraft focused the spotlight on its strategy of using old planes. Although the cause of the crash appears to have been unrelated to the age of its planes, in the aftermath of the crash Valujet struggled to survive under the weight of government scrutiny and lack of customer confidence. In the face of continuing financial problems and customer skepticism, Valujet merged with AirWays Corp. and took the name of its airline, AirTran Airways. AirTran is currently one of the most profitable airlines in the industry.

But with fuel costs at record high levels, AirTran is no longer in the market for old planes. Nobody is. In fact, the old Boeing 727, which until very recently was a mainstay of nearly every airline, is no longer used for passenger flights because it couldn't be operated efficiently. Today, success in the airline business comes from owning the newest and most efficient equipment, and knowing how to get the most out of it.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 9 . . .

- **Many U.S. Firms Use Leases** *(p. 452)*
- **Marketing ROI as Profit Indicator** *(p. 465)*
- **Should Companies Write Up Goodwill?** *(p. 471)*

preview of chapter 9

Was Valujet's strategy of buying used equipment really the "right formula," or was it a recipe for disaster? For airlines and many other companies, making the right decisions regarding long-lived assets is critical because these assets represent huge investments. Management must make many ongoing decisions about long-lived assets—what assets to acquire and when, how to finance them, how to account for them, and when to dispose of them.

In this chapter, we address these and other issues surrounding long-lived assets. The discussion is in two parts: plant assets and intangible assets. *Plant assets* are the property, plant, and equipment (physical assets) that commonly come to mind when we think of what a company owns. Companies also have many important *intangible assets*. These assets, such as copyrights and patents, lack physical substance but can be extremely valuable and vital to a company's success.

The content and organization of this chapter are as follows.

Reporting and Analyzing Long-Lived Assets

Plant Assets	Intangible Assets
• Determining the cost of plant assets • Accounting for plant assets • Analyzing plant assets	• Accounting for intangible assets • Types of intangible assets • Financial statement presentation of long-lived assets

the navigator

section one

Plant Assets

Plant assets are resources that have physical substance (a definite size and shape), are used in the operations of a business, and are not intended for sale to customers. They are called various names—*property, plant, and equipment; plant and equipment;* and *fixed assets*. By whatever name, these assets are expected to provide service to the company for a number of years. Except for land, plant assets decline in service potential (value) over their useful lives.

Plant assets are critical to a company's success because they determine the company's capacity and therefore its ability to satisfy customers. With too few planes, for example, AirTran and Southwest Airlines would lose customers to their competitors. But with too many planes, they would be flying with empty seats. Management must constantly monitor its needs and acquire assets accordingly. Failure to do so results in lost business opportunities or inefficient use of existing assets and is likely to show up eventually in poor financial results.

It is important for a company to (1) keep assets in good operating condition, (2) replace worn-out or outdated assets, and (3) expand its productive assets as needed. The decline of rail travel in the United States can be traced in part to the failure of railroad companies to maintain and update their assets. Conversely, the growth of air travel in this country can be attributed in part to the general willingness of airline companies to follow these essential guidelines.

For many companies, investments in plant assets are substantial. Illustration 9-1 shows the percentages of plant assets in relation to total assets in various companies in a recent year.

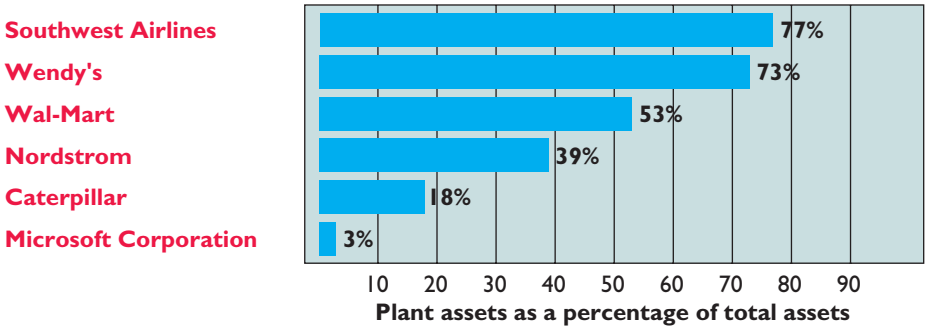


Illustration 9-1
Percentages of plant assets in relation to total assets

Determining the Cost of Plant Assets

study objective 1
Describe how the cost principle applies to plant assets.

The **cost principle** requires that companies record plant assets at cost. Thus, AirTran and Southwest Airlines record their planes at cost. **Cost consists of all expenditures necessary to acquire an asset and make it ready for its intended use.** For example, the purchase price, freight costs paid by the purchaser, and installation costs are all part of the cost of factory machinery.

Determining which costs to include in a plant asset account and which costs not to include is very important. If a cost is not included in a plant asset account, then it must be expensed immediately. Such costs are referred to as **revenue expenditures**. On the other hand, costs that are not expensed immediately but are instead included in a plant asset account are referred to as **capital expenditures**.

This distinction is important; it has immediate, and often material, implications for the income statement. Some companies, in order to boost current income, have **improperly capitalized expenditures** that they should have expensed. For example, suppose that a company improperly capitalizes to a building account $1,000 of maintenance costs incurred at the end of the year. (That is, the costs are included in the asset account Buildings rather than being expensed immediately as Maintenance and Repairs Expense.) If the company is allocating the cost of the building as an expense (depreciating it) over a 40-year life, then the maintenance cost of $1,000 will be incorrectly spread across 40 years instead of being expensed in the current year. As a result, the company will understate current-year expenses by $1,000, and will overstate current-year income by $1,000. Thus, determining which costs to capitalize and which to expense is very important.

Cost is measured by the cash paid in a cash transaction or by the **cash equivalent price** paid when companies use noncash assets in payment. **The cash equivalent price is equal to the fair value of the asset given up or the fair value of the asset received, whichever is more clearly determinable.** Once cost is established, it becomes the basis of accounting for the plant asset over its useful life. Current fair value is not used to increase the recorded cost after acquisition. We explain the application of the cost principle to each of the major classes of plant assets in the following sections.

International Note IFRS is flexible regarding asset valuation. Companies revalue to fair value when they believe this information is more relevant.

LAND

Companies often use land as a building site for a manufacturing plant or office site. The cost of land includes (1) the cash purchase price, (2) closing costs such as title and attorney's fees, (3) real estate brokers' commissions, and (4) accrued property taxes and other liens on the land assumed by the purchaser. For example, if the cash price is $50,000 and the purchaser agrees to pay accrued taxes of $5,000, the cost of the land is $55,000.

All necessary costs incurred in making land **ready for its intended use** increase (debit) the Land account. When a company acquires vacant land, its cost includes expenditures for clearing, draining, filling, and grading. If the land has a building on it that must be removed to make the site suitable for construction of a new building, the company includes all demolition and removal costs, less any proceeds from salvaged materials, in the Land account.

To illustrate, assume that Hayes Manufacturing Company acquires real estate at a cash cost of $100,000. The property contains an old warehouse that is razed at a net cost of $6,000 ($7,500 in costs less $1,500 proceeds from salvaged materials). Additional expenditures are for the attorney's fee $1,000 and the real estate broker's commission $8,000. Given these factors, the cost of the land is $115,000, computed as shown in Illustration 9-2.

Illustration 9-2
Computation of cost of land

Land	
Cash price of property	$ 100,000
Net removal cost of warehouse	6,000
Attorney's fee	1,000
Real estate broker's commission	8,000
Cost of land	**$115,000**

When Hayes records the acquisition, it debits Land and credits Cash for $115,000.

LAND IMPROVEMENTS

Land improvements are structural additions made to land, such as driveways, parking lots, fences, landscaping, and underground sprinklers. The cost of land improvements includes all expenditures necessary to make the improvements ready for their intended use. For example, the cost of a new company parking lot includes the amount paid for paving, fencing, and lighting. Thus, the company would debit the total of all of these costs to Land Improvements.

Land improvements have limited useful lives, and their maintenance and replacement are the responsibility of the company. Because of their limited useful life, companies expense (depreciate) the cost of land improvements over their useful lives.

BUILDINGS

Buildings are facilities used in operations, such as stores, offices, factories, warehouses, and airplane hangars. Companies charge to the Buildings account all necessary expenditures relating to the purchase or construction of a building. When a building is **purchased**, such costs include the purchase price, closing costs (attorney's fees, title insurance, etc.), and real estate broker's commission. Costs to make the building ready for its intended use consist of expenditures for remodeling rooms and offices and replacing or repairing the roof, floors, electrical wiring, and plumbing. When a new building is **constructed**, its cost consists of the contract price plus payments made by the owner for architects' fees, building permits, and excavation costs.

In addition, companies add certain interest costs to the cost of a building: Interest costs incurred to finance a construction project are included in the cost of the asset when a significant period of time is required to get the asset ready for use. In these circumstances, interest costs are considered as necessary as materials and labor. However, the inclusion of interest costs in the cost of a constructed building is **limited to interest costs incurred during the construction period**. When construction has been completed, subsequent interest payments on funds borrowed to finance the construction are recorded as increases (debits) to Interest Expense.

EQUIPMENT

Equipment includes assets used in operations, such as store check-out counters, office furniture, factory machinery, delivery trucks, and airplanes. The cost of equipment consists of the cash purchase price, sales taxes, freight charges, and insurance during transit paid by the purchaser. It also includes expenditures required in assembling, installing, and testing the unit. However, companies treat as expenses the costs of motor vehicle licenses and accident insurance on company trucks and cars. Such items are **annual recurring expenditures and do not benefit future periods**. Two criteria apply in determining the cost of equipment: (1) the frequency of the cost—one time or recurring, and (2) the benefit period—the life of the asset or one year.

To illustrate, assume that Lenard Company purchases a delivery truck at a cash price of $22,000. Related expenditures are sales taxes $1,320, painting and lettering $500, motor vehicle license $80, and a three-year accident insurance policy $1,600. The cost of the delivery truck is $23,820, computed as shown in Illustration 9-3.

Illustration 9-3
Computation of cost of delivery truck

Delivery Truck	
Cash price	$ 22,000
Sales taxes	1,320
Painting and lettering	500
Cost of delivery truck	**$23,820**

Lenard treats the cost of a motor vehicle license as an expense and the cost of an insurance policy as a prepaid asset. Thus, the company records the purchase of the truck and related expenditures as follows.

Equipment	23,820	
License Expense	80	
Prepaid Insurance	1,600	
Cash		25,500
(To record purchase of delivery truck and related expenditures)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+23,820				
				−80 Exp
+1,600				
−25,500				

Cash Flows
−25,500

For another example, assume Merten Company purchases factory machinery at a cash price of $50,000. Related expenditures are sales taxes $3,000, insurance during shipping $500, and installation and testing $1,000. The cost of the factory machinery is $54,500, computed as in Illustration 9-4.

Illustration 9-4
Computation of cost of factory machinery

Factory Machinery	
Cash price	$ 50,000
Sales taxes	3,000
Insurance during shipping	500
Installation and testing	1,000
Cost of factory machinery	**$54,500**

Thus, Merten records the purchase and related expenditures as follows.

Equipment	54,500	
Cash		54,500
(To record purchase of factory machinery and related expenditures)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+54,500				
−54,500				

Cash Flows
−54,500

TO BUY OR LEASE?

In this chapter, we focus on purchased assets, but we want to expose you briefly to an alternative—leasing. A lease is a contractual agreement in which the owner of an asset (the **lessor**) allows another party (the **lessee**) to use the asset for a period of time at an agreed price. In many industries, leasing is quite common. For example, one-third of heavy-duty commercial trucks are leased.

Some advantages of leasing an asset versus purchasing it are:

1. **Reduced risk of obsolescence.** Frequently, lease terms allow the party using the asset (the lessee) to exchange the asset for a more modern one if it becomes outdated. This is much easier than trying to sell an obsolete asset.
2. **Little or no down payment.** To purchase an asset, most companies must borrow money, which usually requires a down payment of at least 20%. Leasing an asset requires little or no down payment.
3. **Shared tax advantages.** Startup companies typically earn little or no profit in their early years, and so they have little need for the tax deductions available from owning an asset. In a lease, the lessor gets the tax advantage because it owns the asset. It often will pass these tax savings on to the lessee in the form of lower lease payments.
4. **Assets and liabilities not reported.** Many companies prefer to keep assets and especially liabilities off their books. Reporting lower assets improves the return on assets ratio (discussed later in this chapter). Reporting fewer liabilities makes the company look less risky. Certain types of leases, called **operating leases**, allow the lessee to account for the transaction as a rental, with neither an asset nor a liability recorded.

Airlines often choose to lease many of their airplanes in long-term lease agreements. In recent financial statements, Southwest Airlines stated that it leased 88 of its 417 planes under operating leases. Because operating leases are accounted for as rentals, these 88 planes did not show up on its balance sheet.

Under another type of lease, a **capital lease**, lessees show both the asset and the liability on the balance sheet. The lessee accounts for capital lease agreements in a way that is very similar to purchases: The lessee shows the leased item as an asset on its balance sheet, and the obligation owed to the lessor as a liability. The lessee depreciates the leased asset in a manner similar to purchased assets. Capital leases represent only about 0.5% of Southwest Airlines' property, plant, and equipment. We discuss leasing further in Chapter 10.

Accounting Across the Organization

Many U.S. Firms Use Leases

Leasing is big business for U.S. companies. For example, in a recent year leasing accounted for about 31% of all business investment ($218 billion).

Who does the most leasing? Interestingly, major banks such as Continental Bank, J.P. Morgan Leasing, and US Bancorp Equipment Finance are the major lessors. Also, many companies have established separate leasing companies, such as Boeing Capital Corporation, Dell Financial Services, and John Deere Capital Corporation. And, as an excellent example of the magnitude of leasing, leased planes account for nearly 40% of the U.S. fleet of commercial airlines. Lease Finance Corporation in Los Angeles owns more planes than any airline in the world.

In addition, leasing is becoming increasingly common in the hotel industry. Marriott, Hilton, and InterContinental are increasingly choosing to lease hotels that are owned by someone else.

? Why might airline managers choose to lease rather than purchase their planes? (See page 499.)

before you go on...

Do it! Assume that Drummond Corp. purchases a delivery truck for $15,000 cash plus sales taxes of $900 and delivery costs of $500. The buyer also pays $200 for painting and lettering, $600 for an annual insurance policy, and $80 for a motor vehicle license. Explain how the company should account for each of these costs.

COST OF PLANT ASSETS

Action Plan

- Identify expenditures made in order to get delivery equipment ready for its intended use.
- Expense operating costs incurred during the useful life of the equipment.

Solution

The first four payments ($15,000 purchase price, $900 sales taxes, $500 delivery, and $200 painting and lettering) are expenditures necessary to make the truck ready for its intended use. Thus, the cost of the truck is $16,600. The payments for insurance and the license are operating expenses incurred during the useful life of the asset.

Related exercise material: **BE9-1, BE9-2, Do it! 9-1, E9-1, E9-2,** and **E9-3.**

the navigator

Accounting for Plant Assets

DEPRECIATION

study objective 2
Explain the concept of depreciation.

As explained in Chapter 4, **depreciation is the process of allocating to expense the cost of a plant asset over its useful (service) life in a rational and systematic manner**. Such cost allocation is designed to properly match expenses with revenues. (See Illustration 9-5.)

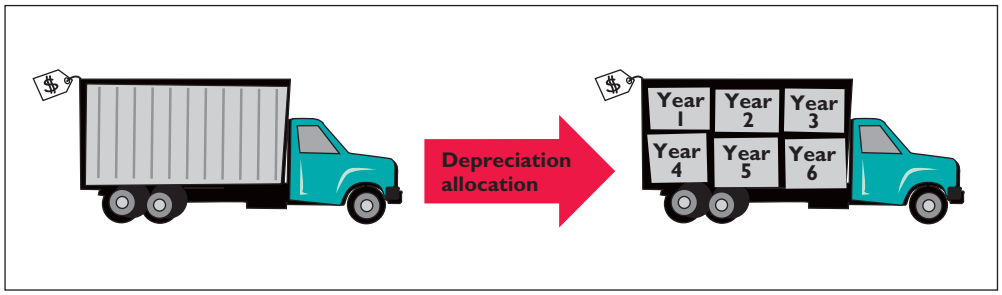


Illustration 9-5 Depreciation as a cost allocation concept

WILEY PLUS
Depreciation Tutorial

Depreciation affects the balance sheet through accumulated depreciation, which companies report as a deduction from plant assets. It affects the income statement through depreciation expense.

It is important to understand that **depreciation is a cost allocation process, not an asset valuation process**. No attempt is made to measure the change in an asset's fair value during ownership. Thus, the **book value**—cost less accumulated depreciation—of a plant asset may differ significantly from its **fair value**. In fact, if an asset is fully depreciated, it can have zero book value but still have a significant fair value.

Helpful Hint Remember that depreciation is the process of *allocating cost* over the useful life of an asset. It is not a measure of value.

Depreciation applies to **three classes of plant assets**: land improvements, buildings, and equipment. Each of these classes is considered to be a **depreciable asset** because the usefulness to the company and the revenue-producing ability of each class decline over the asset's useful life. Depreciation **does not apply to land** because its usefulness and revenue-producing ability generally remain intact as long as the land is owned. In fact, in many cases, the usefulness of land increases over time because of the scarcity of good sites. Thus, **land is not a depreciable asset**.

Helpful Hint Land does not depreciate because it does not wear out.

During a depreciable asset's useful life, its revenue-producing ability declines because of wear and tear. A delivery truck that has been driven 100,000 miles will be less useful to a company than one driven only 800 miles.

A decline in revenue-producing ability may also occur because of obsolescence. **Obsolescence** is the process by which an asset becomes out of date before it physically wears out. The rerouting of major airlines from Chicago's

Ethics Note When a business is acquired, proper allocation of the purchase price to various asset classes is important, since different depreciation treatment can materially affect income. For example, buildings are depreciated, but land is not.

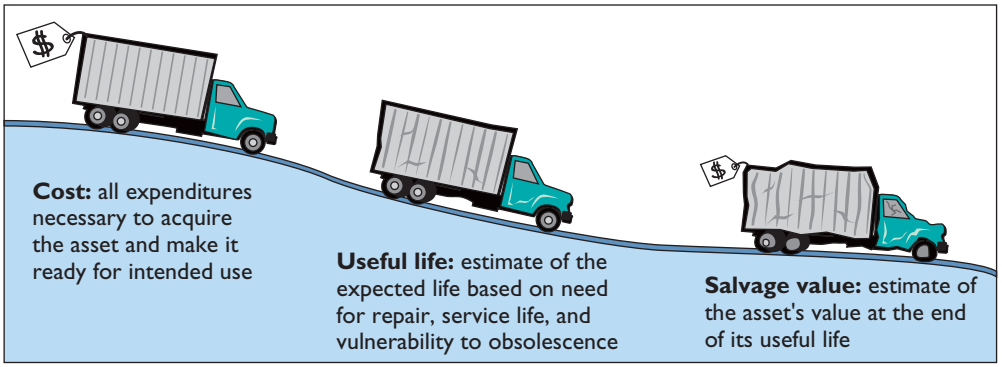
Midway Airport to Chicago-O'Hare International Airport because Midway's runways were too short for giant jets is an example. Similarly, many companies replace their computers long before they originally planned to do so because improvements in new computers make their old computers obsolete.

Recognizing depreciation for an asset does not result in the accumulation of cash for replacement of the asset. The balance in Accumulated Depreciation represents the total amount of the asset's cost that the company has charged to expense to date; **it is not a cash fund**.

FACTORS IN COMPUTING DEPRECIATION

Three factors affect the computation of depreciation, as shown in Illustration 9-6.

Illustration 9-6 Three factors in computing depreciation



Helpful Hint Depreciation expense is reported on the income statement. Accumulated depreciation is reported on the balance sheet as a deduction from plant assets.

1. **Cost.** Earlier in the chapter, we explained the considerations that affect the cost of a depreciable asset. Remember that companies record plant assets at cost, in accordance with the cost principle.
2. **Useful life.** Useful life is an estimate of the expected productive life, also called *service life,* of the asset for its owner. Useful life may be expressed in terms of time, units of activity (such as machine hours), or units of output. Useful life is an estimate. In making the estimate, management considers such factors as the intended use of the asset, repair and maintenance policies, and vulnerability of the asset to obsolescence. The company's past experience with similar assets is often helpful in deciding on expected useful life.
3. **Salvage value.** Salvage value is an estimate of the asset's value at the end of its useful life for its owner. Companies may base the value on the asset's worth as scrap or on its expected trade-in value. Like useful life, salvage value is an estimate. In making the estimate, management considers how it plans to dispose of the asset and its experience with similar assets.

DEPRECIATION METHODS

study objective 3

Compute periodic depreciation using the straight-line method, and contrast its expense pattern with those of other methods.

Although a number of methods exist, depreciation is generally computed using one of three methods:

1. Straight-line
2. Declining-balance
3. Units-of-activity

Like the alternative inventory methods discussed in Chapter 6, each of these depreciation methods is acceptable under generally accepted accounting principles. Management selects the method it believes best measures an asset's contribution to revenue over its useful life. Once a company chooses a method, it should apply that method consistently over the useful life of the asset. Consistency enhances the ability to analyze financial statements over multiple years.

Illustration 9-7 shows the distribution of the *primary* depreciation methods in 600 of the largest U.S. companies. Clearly, straight-line depreciation is the most

widely used approach. In fact, because some companies use more than one method, **straight-line depreciation is used for some or all of the depreciation taken by more than 95% of U.S. companies**. For this reason, we illustrate procedures for straight-line depreciation and discuss the alternative depreciation approaches only at a conceptual level. This coverage introduces you to the basic idea of depreciation as an allocation concept without entangling you in too much procedural detail. (Also, note that many hand-held calculators are preprogrammed to perform the basic depreciation methods.) Details on the alternative approaches are presented in Appendix 9A (pages 476–478).

Our illustration of depreciation methods, both here and in the appendix, is based on the following data relating to a small delivery truck purchased by Bill's Pizzas on January 1, 2012.

Cost	$13,000
Expected salvage value	$1,000
Estimated useful life (in years)	5
Estimated useful life (in miles)	100,000

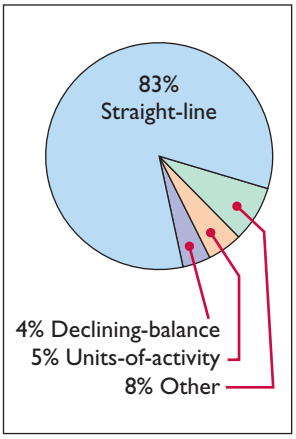


Illustration 9-7 Use of depreciation methods in major U.S. companies

Straight-Line

Under the **straight-line method**, companies expense an equal amount of depreciation each year of the asset's useful life. Management must choose the useful life of an asset based on its own expectations and experience.

To compute the annual depreciation expense, we divide depreciable cost by the estimated useful life. **Depreciable cost** represents the total amount subject to depreciation; it is calculated as the cost of the plant asset less its salvage value. Illustration 9-8 shows the computation of depreciation expense in the first year for Bill's Pizzas' delivery truck.

Cost	–	Salvage Value	=	Depreciable Cost
$13,000	–	$1,000	=	$12,000

Depreciable Cost	÷	Useful Life (in years)	=	Depreciation Expense
$12,000	÷	5	=	$2,400

Illustration 9-8 Formula for straight-line method

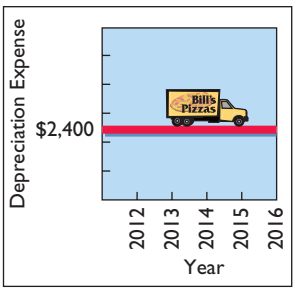
Alternatively, we can compute an annual *rate* at which the company depreciates the delivery truck. In this case, the rate is 20% (100% ÷ 5 years). When an annual rate is used under the straight-line method, the company applies the percentage rate to the depreciable cost of the asset, as shown in the **depreciation schedule** in Illustration 9-9.

BILL'S PIZZAS

	Computation					End of Year	
Year	Depreciable Cost	×	Depreciation Rate	=	Annual Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Depreciation	Book Value
2012	$12,000		20%		$ 2,400	$ 2,400	$10,600*
2013	12,000		20		2,400	4,800	8,200
2014	12,000		20		2,400	7,200	5,800
2015	12,000		20		2,400	9,600	3,400
2016	12,000		20		2,400	12,000	1,000
				Total	$12,000		

*$13,000 – $2,400

Illustration 9-9 Straight-line depreciation schedule



Note that the depreciation expense of $2,400 is the same each year. The book value at the end of the useful life is equal to the estimated $1,000 salvage value.

What happens when an asset is purchased **during** the year, rather than on January 1 as in our example? In that case, it is necessary to **prorate the annual depreciation** for the portion of a year used. If Bill's Pizzas had purchased the delivery truck on April 1, 2012, the company would use the truck for 9 months in 2012. The depreciation for 2012 would be $1,800 ($12,000 × 20% × $\frac{9}{12}$ of a year).

As indicated earlier, the straight-line method predominates in practice. For example, such large companies as Campbell Soup, Marriott, and General Mills use the straight-line method. It is simple to apply, and it matches expenses with revenues appropriately when the use of the asset is reasonably uniform throughout the service life. The types of assets that give equal benefits over useful life generally are those for which daily use does not affect productivity. Examples are office furniture and fixtures, buildings, warehouses, and garages for motor vehicles.

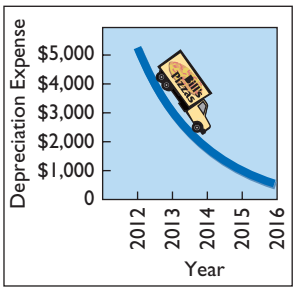
Declining-Balance

The **declining-balance method** computes periodic depreciation using a declining book value. This method is called an **accelerated-depreciation method** because it results in higher depreciation in the early years of an asset's life than does the straight-line approach. However, because the total amount of depreciation (the depreciable cost) taken over an asset's life is the same **no matter what approach** is used, the declining-balance method produces a decreasing annual depreciation expense over the asset's useful life. In early years, declining-balance depreciation expense will exceed straight-line, but in later years, it will be less than straight-line. Managers might choose an accelerated approach if they think that an asset's utility will decline quickly.

Companies can apply the declining-balance approach at different rates, which result in varying speeds of depreciation. A common declining-balance rate is double the straight-line rate. Using that rate, the method is referred to as the **double-declining-balance method**.

If we apply the double-declining-balance method to Bill's Pizzas' delivery truck, assuming a five-year life, we get the pattern of depreciation shown in Illustration 9-10. **Illustration 9A-2, page 477, presents the computations behind these numbers.** Again, note that total depreciation over the life of the truck is $12,000, the depreciable cost.

Illustration 9-10
Declining-balance depreciation schedule



BILL'S PIZZAS

Year	Annual Depreciation Expense	End of Year: Accumulated Depreciation	End of Year: Book Value
2012	$ 5,200	$ 5,200	$7,800
2013	3,120	8,320	4,680
2014	1,872	10,192	2,808
2015	1,123	11,315	1,685
2016	685	12,000	1,000
Total	$12,000		

Units-of-Activity

As indicated earlier, useful life can be expressed in ways other than a time period. Under the **units-of-activity method**, useful life is expressed in terms of the total units of production or the use expected from the asset. The units-of-activity method

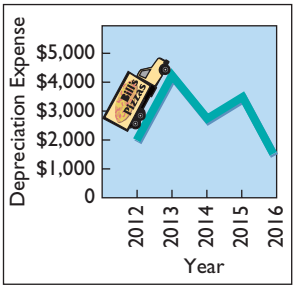
is ideally suited to factory machinery: Companies can measure production in terms of units of output or in terms of machine hours used in operating the machinery. It is also possible to use the method for such items as delivery equipment (miles driven) and airplanes (hours in use). The units-of-activity method is generally not suitable for such assets as buildings or furniture because activity levels are difficult to measure for these assets.

Applying the units-of-activity method to the delivery truck owned by Bill's Pizzas, we first must know some basic information. Bill's expects to be able to drive the truck a total of 100,000 miles. Illustration 9-11 shows depreciation over the five-year life based on an assumed mileage pattern. **Illustration 9A-4, pages 476–478, presents the computations used to arrive at these results.**

BILL'S PIZZAS

Year	Units of Activity (miles)	Annual Depreciation Expense	End of Year: Accumulated Depreciation	End of Year: Book Value
2012	15,000	$ 1,800	$ 1,800	$11,200
2013	30,000	3,600	5,400	7,600
2014	20,000	2,400	7,800	5,200
2015	25,000	3,000	10,800	2,200
2016	10,000	1,200	12,000	1,000
Total	100,000	$12,000		

Illustration 9-11 Units-of-activity depreciation schedule



As the name implies, under units-of-activity depreciation, the amount of depreciation is proportional to the activity that took place during that period. For example, the delivery truck was driven twice as many miles in 2013 as in 2012, and depreciation was exactly twice as much in 2013 as it was in 2012.

before you go on...

Do it! On January 1, 2012, Iron Mountain Ski Corporation purchased a new snow grooming machine for $50,000. The machine is estimated to have a 10-year life with a $2,000 salvage value. What journal entry would Iron Mountain Ski Corporation make at December 31, 2012, if it uses the straight-line method of depreciation?

STRAIGHT-LINE DEPRECIATION

Action Plan

- Calculate depreciable cost (Cost − Salvage value).
- Divide the depreciable cost by the asset's estimated useful life.

Solution

$$\text{Depreciation expense} = \frac{\text{Cost} - \text{Salvage value}}{\text{Useful life}} = \frac{\$50{,}000 - \$2{,}000}{10} = \$4{,}800$$

Iron Mountain would record the first year's depreciation as follows.

Dec. 31	Depreciation Expense	4,800	
	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		4,800
	(To record annual depreciation on snow grooming machine)		

Related exercise material: **BE9-3, BE9-4, Do it! 9-2,** and **E9-5**.

the navigator

Management's Choice: Comparison of Methods

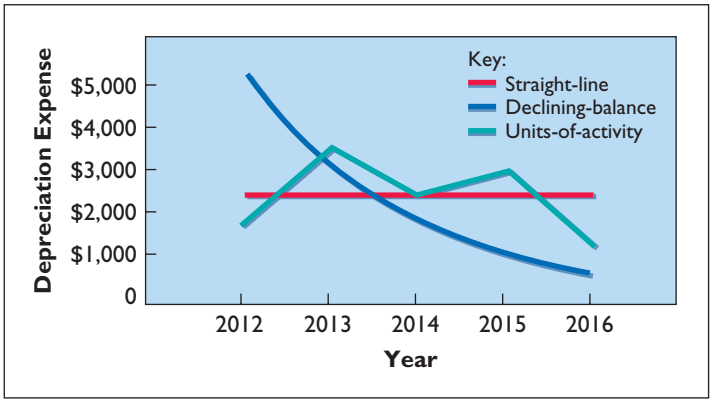
Illustration 9-12 compares annual and total depreciation expense for Bill's Pizzas under the three methods.

Illustration 9-12 Comparison of depreciation methods

Year	Straight-Line	Declining-Balance	Units-of-Activity
2012	$ 2,400	$ 5,200	$ 1,800
2013	2,400	3,120	3,600
2014	2,400	1,872	2,400
2015	2,400	1,123	3,000
2016	2,400	685	1,200
	$12,000	$12,000	$12,000

Periodic depreciation varies considerably among the methods, but **total depreciation is the same for the five-year period**. Each method is acceptable in accounting because each recognizes the decline in service potential of the asset in a rational and systematic manner. Illustration 9-13 graphs the depreciation expense pattern under each method.

Illustration 9-13 Patterns of depreciation



Depreciation and Income Taxes

Helpful Hint Depreciation per financial statements is usually different from depreciation per tax returns.

The Internal Revenue Service (IRS) allows corporate taxpayers to deduct depreciation expense when computing taxable income. However, the tax regulations of the IRS do not require the taxpayer to use the same depreciation method on the tax return that it uses in preparing financial statements.

Consequently, many large corporations use straight-line depreciation in their financial statements in order to maximize net income; at the same time, they use a special accelerated-depreciation method on their tax returns in order to minimize their income taxes. For tax purposes, taxpayers must use on their tax returns either the straight-line method or a special accelerated-depreciation method called the **Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System** (MACRS).

Depreciation Disclosure in the Notes

Companies must disclose the choice of depreciation method in their financial statements or in related notes that accompany the statements. Illustration 9-14 shows excerpts from the "Property and equipment" notes from the financial statements of Southwest Airlines.

SOUTHWEST AIRLINES
Notes to the Financial Statements

Property and equipment Depreciation is provided by the straight-line method to estimated residual values over periods ranging from 20 to 25 years for flight equipment and 5 to 30 years for ground property and equipment once the asset is placed in service. Amortization of property under capital leases is on a straight-line basis over the lease term and is included in depreciation expense.

Illustration 9-14 Disclosure of depreciation policies

From this note, we learn that Southwest Airlines uses the straight-line method to depreciate its planes over periods of 20 to 25 years.

REVISING PERIODIC DEPRECIATION

study objective 4
Describe the procedure for revising periodic depreciation.

Management should periodically review annual depreciation expense. If wear and tear or obsolescence indicates that annual depreciation is either inadequate or excessive, the company should change the depreciation expense amount.

When a change in an estimate is required, the company makes the change in **current and future years but not to prior periods**. Thus, when making the change, the company (1) does not correct previously recorded depreciation expense, but (2) revises depreciation expense for current and future years. The rationale for this treatment is that continual restatement of prior periods would adversely affect users' confidence in financial statements.

Helpful Hint Use a step-by-step approach: (1) determine new depreciable cost; (2) divide by remaining useful life.

To determine the new annual depreciation expense, the company first computes the asset's depreciable cost at the time of the revision. It then allocates the revised depreciable cost to the remaining useful life.

To illustrate, assume that Bill's Pizzas decides at the end of 2014 (prior to the year-end adjusting entries) to extend the estimated useful life of the truck one year (a total life of six years) and increase its salvage value to $2,200. The company has used the straight-line method to depreciate the asset to date. Depreciation per year was $2,400 (($13,000 − $1,000) ÷ 5). Accumulated depreciation after three years (2011–2013) is $7,200 ($2,400 × 3), and book value is $5,800 ($13,000 − $7,200). The new annual depreciation is $1,200, computed on December 31, 2014, as follows.

Illustration 9-15 Revised depreciation computation

Book value, 1/1/14	$ 5,800	
Less: New salvage value	2,200	
Depreciable cost	$ 3,600	
Remaining useful life	3 years	(2014–2016)
Revised annual depreciation ($3,600 ÷ 3)	**$1,200**	

Bill's Pizzas does not make a special entry for the change in estimate. On December 31, 2014, during the preparation of adjusting entries, it records depreciation expense of $1,200.

Companies must disclose in the financial statements significant changes in estimates. Although a company may have a legitimate reason for changing an estimated life, financial statement users should be aware that some companies might change an estimate simply to achieve financial statement goals. For example, extending an asset's estimated life reduces depreciation expense and increases current period income.

In a recent year, AirTran Airways increased the estimated useful lives of some of its planes from 25 to 30 years and increased the estimated lives of related aircraft parts from 5 years to 30 years. It disclosed that the change in estimate decreased its net loss for the year by approximately $0.6 million, or about $0.01 per share. Whether these changes were appropriate depends on how reasonable it is to assume that planes will continue to be used for a long time. Our Feature Story suggests that although in the past many planes lasted a long time, it is also clear that because of high fuel costs, airlines are now scrapping many of their old, inefficient planes.

before you go on...

REVISED DEPRECIATION

Action Plan

- Calculate remaining depreciable cost.
- Divide remaining depreciable cost by new remaining life.

Do it! Chambers Corporation purchased a piece of equipment for $36,000. It estimated a 6-year life and $6,000 salvage value. Thus, straight-line depreciation was $5,000 per year (($36,000 − $6,000) ÷ 6). At the end of year three (before the depreciation adjustment), it estimated the new total life to be 10 years and the new salvage value to be $2,000. Compute the revised depreciation.

Solution

Original depreciation expense = ($36,000 − $6,000 ÷ 6) = $5,000
Accumulated depreciation after 2 years = 2 × $5,000 = $10,000
Book value = $36,000 − $10,000 = $26,000

Book value after 2 years of depreciation	$26,000
Less: New salvage value	2,000
Depreciable cost	24,000
Remaining useful life	8 years
Revised annual depreciation ($24,000 ÷ 8)	$3,000

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE9-5, Do it! 9-3,** and **E9-6.**

EXPENDITURES DURING USEFUL LIFE

During the useful life of a plant asset, a company may incur costs for ordinary repairs, additions, and improvements. **Ordinary repairs** are expenditures to maintain the operating efficiency and expected productive life of the unit. They usually are fairly small amounts that occur frequently throughout the service life. Examples are motor tune-ups and oil changes, the painting of buildings, and the replacing of worn-out gears on factory machinery. Ordinary repairs are debited to Maintenance and Repairs Expense as incurred.

In contrast, **additions and improvements** are costs incurred to **increase** the operating efficiency, productive capacity, or expected useful life of the plant asset. These expenditures are usually material in amount and occur infrequently during the period of ownership. Expenditures for additions and improvements increase the company's investment in productive facilities and are generally debited to the plant asset affected. Thus, they are **capital expenditures**. The accounting for capital expenditures varies depending on the nature of the expenditure.

Northwest Airlines at one time spent $120 million to spruce up 40 jets. The improvements were designed to extend the lives of the planes, meet stricter government noise limits, and save money. The capital expenditure was expected to extend the life of the jets by 10 to 15 years and save about $560 million compared to the cost of buying new planes. The jets were, on average, 24 years old.

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

Bernie Ebbers was the founder and CEO of the phone company WorldCom. The company engaged in a series of increasingly large, debt-financed acquisitions of other companies. These acquisitions made the company grow quickly, which made the stock price increase dramatically. However, because the acquired companies all had different accounting systems, WorldCom's financial records were a mess. When WorldCom's performance started to flatten out, Bernie coerced WorldCom's accountants to engage in a number of fraudulent activities to make net income look better than it really was and thus prop up the stock price. One of these frauds involved treating $7 billion of line costs as capital expenditures. The line costs, which were rental fees paid to other phone companies to use their phone lines, had always been properly expensed in previous years. Capitalization delayed expense recognition to future periods and thus boosted current-period profits.

Total take: $7 billion

THE MISSING CONTROLS

Documentation procedures. The company's accounting system was a disorganized collection of non-integrated systems, which resulted from a series of corporate acquisitions. Top management took advantage of this disorganization to conceal its fraudulent activities.

Independent internal verification. A fraud of this size should have been detected by a routine comparison of the actual physical assets with the list of physical assets shown in the accounting records.

IMPAIRMENTS

As noted earlier, the book value of plant assets is rarely the same as the fair value. In instances where the value of a plant asset declines substantially, its market value might fall materially below book value. This may happen because a machine has become obsolete, or the market for the product made by the machine has dried up or has become very competitive. A **permanent decline** in the market value of an asset is referred to as an **impairment**. So as not to overstate the asset on the books, the company writes the asset down to its new fair value during the year in which the decline in value occurs. For example, at one time AirTran announced a $28 million impairment loss on its DC9 jets and a $10.8 million impairment loss on its B737 jets. AirTran used appraisals and considered recent transactions and market trends involving similar aircraft in determining the fair values.

In the past, some companies **improperly** delayed recording losses on impairments until a year when it was "convenient" to do so—when the impact on the company's reported results was minimized. For example, in a year when a company has record profits, it can afford to write down some of its bad assets without hurting its reported results too much. As discussed in Chapter 4, the practice of timing the recognition of gains and losses to achieve certain income results is known as **earnings management**. Earnings management reduces earnings quality. To minimize earnings management, accounting standards now require immediate recognition of impaired assets.

Write-downs can create problems for users of financial statements. Critics of write-downs note that after a company writes down assets, its depreciation expense will be lower in all subsequent periods. Some companies improperly inflate asset write-downs in bad years, when they are going to report poor results anyway. (This practice is referred to as "taking a big bath.") Then in subsequent years, when the company recovers, its results will look even better because of lower depreciation expense.

PLANT ASSET DISPOSALS

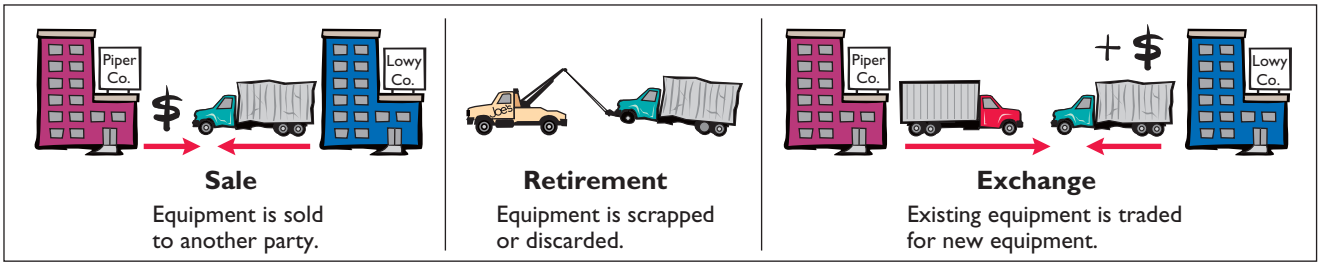
study objective 5

Explain how to account for the disposal of plant assets.

Companies dispose of plant assets that are no longer useful to them. Illustration 9-16 shows the three ways in which companies make plant asset disposals.

Whatever the disposal method, the company must determine the book value of the plant asset at the time of disposal in order to determine the gain or loss. Recall that the book value is the difference between the cost of the plant asset and the accumulated depreciation to date. If the disposal occurs at any time during the year, the company must record depreciation for the fraction of the year to the date of disposal. The company then eliminates the book value by reducing (debiting) Accumulated Depreciation for the total depreciation associated with that asset to the date of disposal and reducing (crediting) the asset account for the cost of the asset.

Illustration 9-16
Methods of plant asset disposal



Sale of Plant Assets

In a disposal by sale, the company compares the book value of the asset with the proceeds received from the sale. If the proceeds from the sale **exceed** the book value of the plant asset, a **gain on disposal** occurs. If the proceeds from the sale **are less than** the book value of the plant asset sold, a **loss on disposal** occurs.

Only by coincidence will the book value and the fair value of the asset be the same at the time the asset is sold. Gains and losses on sales of plant assets are therefore quite common. As an example, Delta Air Lines reported a $94,343,000 gain on the sale of five Boeing B-727-200 aircraft and five Lockheed L-1011-1 aircraft.

GAIN ON SALE. To illustrate a gain on sale of plant assets, assume that on July 1, 2012, Wright Company sells office furniture for $16,000 cash. The office furniture originally cost $60,000 and as of January 1, 2012, had accumulated depreciation of $41,000. Depreciation for the first six months of 2012 is $8,000. Wright records depreciation expense and updates accumulated depreciation to July 1 as follows.

A	=	L	+	SE
−8,000				−8,000 Exp

Cash Flows
no effect

July	1	Depreciation Expense	8,000	
		Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		8,000
		(To record depreciation expense for the first 6 months of 2012)		

After the accumulated depreciation balance is updated, the company computes the gain or loss as the difference between the proceeds from sale and the book value at the date of disposal. Wright Company has a gain on disposal of $5,000, as computed in Illustration 9-17.

Cost of office furniture	$60,000
Less: Accumulated depreciation ($41,000 + $8,000)	49,000
Book value at date of disposal	11,000
Proceeds from sale	16,000
Gain on disposal of plant asset	**$ 5,000**

Illustration 9-17
Computation of gain on disposal

Wright records the sale and the gain on sale of the plant asset as follows.

July 1	Cash	16,000		
	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	49,000		
	Equipment		60,000	
	Gain on Disposal of Plant Assets		5,000	
	(To record sale of office furniture at a gain)			

A	=	L	+	SE
+16,000				
+49,000				
−60,000				
				+5,000 Rev

Cash Flows
+16,000

Companies report a gain on disposal of plant assets in the "Other revenues and gains" section of the income statement.

LOSS ON SALE. Assume that instead of selling the office furniture for $16,000, Wright sells it for $9,000. In this case, Wright experiences a loss of $2,000, as computed in Illustration 9-18.

Cost of office furniture	$60,000
Less: Accumulated depreciation	49,000
Book value at date of disposal	11,000
Proceeds from sale	9,000
Loss on disposal of plant asset	**$ 2,000**

Illustration 9-18
Computation of loss on disposal

Wright records the sale and the loss on sale of the plant asset as follows.

July 1	Cash	9,000		
	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	49,000		
	Loss on Disposal of Plant Assets	2,000		
	Equipment		60,000	
	(To record sale of office furniture at a loss)			

A	=	L	+	SE
+9,000				
+49,000				
				−2,000 Exp
−60,000				

Cash Flows
+9,000

Companies report a loss on disposal of the plant asset in the "Other expenses and losses" section of the income statement.

Retirement of Plant Assets

Companies simply retire, rather than sell, some assets at the end of their useful life. For example, some productive assets used in manufacturing may have very specific uses, and they consequently have no ready market when the company no longer needs them. In such a case, the asset is simply retired.

Companies record retirement of an asset as a special case of a disposal where no cash is received. They decrease (debit) Accumulated Depreciation for the full amount of depreciation taken over the life of the asset and decrease (credit) the

asset account for the original cost of the asset. The loss (a gain is not possible on a retirement) is equal to the asset's book value on the date of retirement.[1]

before you go on...

PLANT ASSET DISPOSALS

Do it! Overland Trucking has an old truck that cost $30,000 and has accumulated depreciation of $16,000. Assume two different situations:

1. The company sells the old truck for $17,000 cash.
2. The truck is worthless, so the company simply retires it.

What entry should Overland use to record each scenario?

Action Plan

- Compare the asset's book value and its fair value to determine whether a gain or loss has occurred.
- Make sure that both the Equipment account and Accumulated Depreciation–Equipment are reduced upon disposal.

Solution

1. Sale of truck for cash:

Cash	17,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	16,000	
Equipment		30,000
Gain on Disposal of Plant Assets [$17,000 − ($30,000 − $16,000)]		3,000
(To record sale of truck at a gain)		

2. Retirement of truck:

Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	16,000	
Loss on Disposal of Plant Assets	14,000	
Equipment		30,000
(To record retirement of truck at a loss)		

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE9-7, BE9-8, Do it! 9-4, E9-7,** and **E9-8.**

Analyzing Plant Assets

study objective 6

Describe methods for evaluating the use of plant assets.

The presentation of financial statement information about plant assets enables decision makers to analyze the company's use of its plant assets. We will use two measures to analyze plant assets: return on assets ratio, and asset turnover ratio.

RETURN ON ASSETS RATIO

An overall measure of profitability is the **return on assets ratio**. This ratio is computed by dividing net income by average assets. (Average assets are commonly calculated by adding the beginning and ending values of assets and dividing by 2.) The return on assets ratio indicates the amount of net income generated by each dollar of assets. Thus, the higher the return on assets, the more profitable the company.

Information is provided below related to AirTran.

	AirTran (in millions)
Net income, 2009	$ 135
Total assets, 12/31/09	2,284
Total assets, 12/31/08	2,085
Net sales, 2009	2,341

[1]More advanced courses discuss the accounting for exchanges, the third method of plant asset disposal.

Illustration 9-19 presents the 2009 and 2008 return on assets of AirTran, Southwest Airlines, and industry averages.

Illustration 9-19 Return on assets ratio

Return on Assets Ratio = Net Income / Average Total Assets

AirTran ($ in millions)		Southwest Airlines	Industry Average
2009	2008	2009	2009
$\frac{\$135}{(\$2{,}085 + \$2{,}284)/2} = 6.2\%$	−12.9%	0.7%	3.8%

AirTran's return on assets was better than that of Southwest's and the airline industry. The airline industry has experienced financial difficulties in recent years as it attempted to cover high labor, fuel, and security costs while offering fares low enough to attract customers. Such difficulties are reflected in the very low industry average for return on assets and in the volatility of this ratio between years for AirTran.

Accounting Across the Organization

Marketing ROI as Profit Indicator

Marketing executives use the basic finance concept underlying return on assets to determine "marketing return on investment (ROI)." They calculate *marketing ROI* as the profit generated by a marketing initiative divided by the investment in that initiative.

It can be tricky to determine what to include in the "investment" amount and how to attribute profit to a particular marketing initiative. However, many firms feel that measuring marketing ROI is worth the effort because it allows managers to evaluate the relative effectiveness of various programs. In addition, it helps quantify the benefits that marketing provides to the organization. In periods of tight budgets, the marketing ROI number can provide particularly valuable evidence to help a marketing manager avoid budget cuts.

Source: James O. Mitchel, "Marketing ROI," *LIMRA's MarketFacts Quarterly* (Summer 2004), p. 15.

? How does measuring marketing ROI support the overall efforts of the organization? (See page 499.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the company using its assets effectively?	Net income and average assets	Return on assets ratio = Net income / Average total assets	Higher value suggests favorable efficiency (use of assets).

ASSET TURNOVER RATIO

The **asset turnover ratio** indicates how efficiently a company uses its assets to generate sales—that is, how many dollars of sales a company generates for each dollar invested in assets. It is calculated by dividing net sales by average total assets. When we compare two companies in the same industry, the one with the higher asset turnover ratio is operating more *efficiently:* It is generating more sales per dollar invested in assets. Illustration 9-20 presents the asset turnover ratios for AirTran and Southwest Airlines.

Illustration 9-20 Asset turnover ratios for AirTran and Southwest Airlines

$$\text{Asset Turnover Ratio} = \frac{\text{Net Sales}}{\text{Average Total Assets}}$$

AirTran ($ in millions)		Southwest Airlines	Industry Average
2009	2008	2009	2009
$\frac{\$2{,}341}{(\$2{,}085 + \$2{,}284)/2}$ = 1.07 times	1.23 times	0.73 times	0.60 times

These asset turnover ratios tell us that for each dollar of assets, AirTran generates sales of $1.07 and Southwest $0.73. AirTran is more successful in generating sales per dollar invested in assets. The average asset turnover ratio for the airline industry is 0.60 times, more in line with Southwest's asset turnover.

Asset turnover ratios vary considerably across industries. The average asset turnover for electric utility companies is 0.34; the grocery industry has an average asset turnover of 2.89. Asset turnover ratios, therefore, are only comparable within—not between—industries.

PROFIT MARGIN RATIO REVISITED

In Chapter 5, you learned about the profit margin ratio. That ratio is calculated by dividing net income by net sales. It tells how effective a company is in turning its sales into income—that is, how much income each dollar of sales provides. Illustration 9-21 shows that the return on assets ratio can be computed as the product of the profit margin ratio and the asset turnover ratio.

Illustration 9-21 Composition of return on assets ratio

Profit Margin	×	Asset Turnover	=	Return on Assets
$\frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{Net Sales}}$	×	$\frac{\text{Net Sales}}{\text{Average Total Assets}}$	=	$\frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{Average Total Assets}}$

This relationship has very important strategic implications for management. From Illustration 9-21, we can see that if a company wants to increase its return on assets, it can do so in two ways: (1) by increasing the margin it generates from each dollar of goods that it sells (the profit margin ratio), or (2) by increasing the volume of goods that it sells (the asset turnover). For example, most grocery stores have very low profit margins, often in the range of 1 or 2 cents for

every dollar of goods sold. Grocery stores, therefore, focus on asset turnover: They rely on high turnover to increase their return on assets. Alternatively, a store selling luxury goods, such as expensive jewelry, doesn't generally have a high turnover. Consequently, a seller of luxury goods focuses on having a high profit margin. Recently, Apple decided to offer a less expensive version of its popular iPod. This new product would provide a lower margin, but higher volume, than Apple's more expensive version.

Let's evaluate the return on assets ratio of AirTran for 2009 by evaluating its components—the profit margin ratio and the asset turnover ratio. See Illustration 9-22.

	Profit Margin	×	Asset Turnover	=	Return on Assets
AirTran	5.8%	×	1.07	=	6.2%
Southwest Airlines	0.95%	×	0.73	=	0.7%

Illustration 9-22
Components of rate of return for AirTran and Southwest Airlines

AirTran's return on asset ratio of 6.2% versus Southwest's 0.7% means that AirTran generates approximately 6 cents per each dollar invested in assets, while Southwest generates less than 1 cent. Illustration 9-22 reveals that this superior performance occurs for two reasons. First, AirTran's profit margin ratio of 5.8% versus Southwest's of 0.95% means that for every dollar of sales, AirTran generates approximately 6 cents of net income, while Southwest generates approximately 1 cent. In addition, AirTran's asset turnover ratio of 1.07 means that it generates $1.07 of sales per each dollar invested in assets, while Southwest only generates 73 cents. Therefore, in 2009 AirTran was more effective at generating sales from its assets, and it was better at deriving profit from those sales.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How effective is the company at generating sales from its assets?	Net sales and average total assets	Asset turnover ratio $= \frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Average total assets}}$	Indicates the sales dollars generated per dollar of assets. A high value suggests the company is effective in using its resources to generate sales.

section two

Intangible Assets

Intangible assets are rights, privileges, and competitive advantages that result from ownership of long-lived assets that do not possess physical substance. Many companies' most valuable assets are intangible. Some widely known intangibles are Microsoft's patents, McDonalds's franchises, the trade name iPod, and Nike's trademark "swoosh."

Analysts estimated that in the early 1980s, the fair value of intangible assets to total assets was close to 40%. By 2000, the percentage was over 80%— quite a difference. What has happened is that research and development (e.g., hi-tech and bio-tech) has grown substantially. At the same time, many companies (e.g., Nike and Gatorade) have developed brand power which enables them to maintain their market position.

As you will learn in this section, financial statements do report numerous intangibles. Yet, many other financially significant intangibles are not reported. To give an example, according to its financial statements in a recent year, Google had total stockholders' equity of $22.7 billion. But its *market* value—the total market price of all its shares on that same date—was roughly $178.5 billion. Thus, its actual market value was about $155.8 billion greater than the amount reported for stockholders' equity on the balance sheet. It is not uncommon for a company's reported book value to differ from its market value, because balance sheets are reported at historical cost. But such an extreme difference seriously diminishes the usefulness of the balance sheet to decision makers. In the case of Google, the difference is due to unrecorded intangibles. For many high-tech or so-called intellectual-property companies, most of their value is from intangibles, many of which are not reported under current accounting rules.

Intangibles may be evidenced by contracts, licenses, and other documents. Intangibles may arise from the following sources:

1. Government grants, such as patents, copyrights, licenses, trademarks, and trade names.
2. Acquisition of another business in which the purchase price includes a payment for goodwill.
3. Private monopolistic arrangements arising from contractual agreements, such as franchises and leases.

Accounting for Intangible Assets

study objective 7

Identify the basic issues related to reporting intangible assets.

Companies record intangible assets at cost. Intangibles are categorized as having either a limited life or an indefinite life. If an intangible has a **limited life**, the company allocates its cost over the asset's useful life using a process similar to depreciation. The process of allocating to expense the cost of intangibles is referred to as **amortization**. The cost of intangible assets with **indefinite lives should not be amortized**.

To record amortization of an intangible asset, a company increases (debits) Amortization Expense, and decreases (credits) the specific intangible asset. (Unlike depreciation, no contra account, such as Accumulated Amortization, is usually used.)

Intangible assets are typically amortized on a straight-line basis. For example, the legal life of a patent is 20 years. Companies **amortize the cost of a patent over its 20-year life or its useful life, whichever is shorter.** To illustrate the computation of patent amortization, assume that National Labs purchases a patent at a cost of $60,000 on June 30. If National estimates the useful life of the patent to be eight years, the annual amortization expense is $7,500 ($60,000 ÷ 8) per year. National records $3,750 ($7,500 × $\frac{6}{12}$) of amortization for the six-month period ended December 31 as follows.

A	=	L	+	SE
−3,750				−3,750 Exp

Cash Flows
no effect

Dec. 31	Amortization Expense	3,750	
	Patent		3,750
	(To record patent amortization)		

When a company has significant intangibles, analysts should evaluate the reasonableness of the useful life estimates that the company discloses in the notes to its financial statements. In determining useful life, the company should consider obsolescence, inadequacy, and other factors. These may cause a patent or other intangible to become economically ineffective before the end of its legal life.

For example, suppose Intel obtained a patent on a new computer chip it had developed. The legal life of the patent is 20 years. From experience, however, we know that the useful life of a computer chip patent is rarely more than five years. Because new superior chips are developed so rapidly, existing chips become obsolete. Consequently, we would question the amortization expense of Intel if it amortized its patent on a computer chip for a life significantly longer than a five-year period. Amortizing an intangible over a period that is too long will understate amortization expense, overstate Intel's net income, and overstate its assets.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the company's amortization of intangibles reasonable?	Estimated useful life of intangibles from notes to financial statements of this company and its competitors	If the company's estimated useful life significantly exceeds that of competitors or does not seem reasonable in light of the circumstances, the reason for the difference should be investigated.	Too high an estimated useful life will result in understating amortization expense and overstating net income.

Types of Intangible Assets

PATENTS

A **patent** is an exclusive right issued by the U.S. Patent Office that enables the recipient to manufacture, sell, or otherwise control an invention for a period of 20 years from the date of the grant. **The initial cost of a patent is the cash or cash equivalent price paid to acquire the patent.**

The saying "A patent is only as good as the money you're prepared to spend defending it" is very true. Most patents are subject to some type of litigation by competitors. A well-known example is the patent infringement suit brought by Amazon.com against Barnes & Noble.com regarding its online shopping software. If the owner incurs legal costs in successfully defending the patent in an infringement suit, such costs are considered necessary to establish the validity of the patent. Thus, **the owner adds those costs to the Patent account and amortizes them over the remaining life of the patent**.

RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT COSTS

Research and development costs are expenditures that may lead to patents, copyrights, new processes, and new products. Many companies spend considerable sums of money on research and development (R&D) in an ongoing effort to develop new products or processes. For example, in a recent year IBM spent over $5.1 billion on research and development. There are uncertainties in identifying the extent and timing of the future benefits of these expenditures. As a result, companies usually record research and development costs **as an expense when incurred**, whether the R&D is successful or not.

Helpful Hint Research and development costs are not intangible costs, but because these expenditures may lead to patents and copyrights, we discuss them in this section.

International Note IFRS allows capitalization of some development costs. This may contribute to differences in R&D expenditures across nations.

To illustrate, assume that Laser Scanner Company spent $3 million on research and development that resulted in two highly successful patents. It spent $20,000 on legal fees for the patents. It can include the legal fees in the cost of the patents but cannot include the R&D costs in the cost of the patents. Instead, Laser Scanner records the R&D costs as an expense when incurred.

Many disagree with this accounting approach. They argue that to expense these costs leads to understated assets and net income. Others argue that capitalizing these costs would lead to highly speculative assets on the balance sheet. Who is right is difficult to determine.

COPYRIGHTS

The federal government grants **copyrights**, which give the owner the exclusive right to reproduce and sell an artistic or published work. Copyrights last for the life of the creator plus 70 years. The cost of the copyright consists of the **cost of acquiring and defending it**. The cost may be only the small fee paid to the U.S. Copyright Office, or it may amount to a great deal more if a copyright is acquired from another party. The useful life of a copyright generally is significantly shorter than its legal life.

TRADEMARKS AND TRADE NAMES

A **trademark** or **trade name** is a word, phrase, jingle, or symbol that distinguishes or identifies a particular enterprise or product. Trade names like Wheaties, Monopoly, Sunkist, Kleenex, Coca-Cola, Big Mac, and Jeep create immediate product identification and generally enhance the sale of the product. The creator or original user may obtain the exclusive legal right to the trademark or trade name by registering it with the U.S. Patent Office. Such registration provides 20 years' protection and may be renewed indefinitely as long as the trademark or trade name is in use.

If a company purchases the trademark or trade name, the cost is the purchase price. If the company develops the trademark or trade name itself, the cost includes attorney's fees, registration fees, design costs, successful legal defense costs, and other expenditures directly related to securing it. Because trademarks and trade names have indefinite lives, they are not amortized.

FRANCHISES AND LICENSES

When you drive down the street in your RAV4 purchased from a Toyota dealer, fill up your tank at the corner Shell station, eat lunch at Subway, or make plans to vacation at a Marriott resort, you are dealing with franchises. A **franchise** is a contractual arrangement under which the franchisor grants the franchisee the right to sell certain products, to provide specific services, or to use certain trademarks or trade names, usually within a designated geographic area.

Another type of franchise, granted by a governmental body, permits the business to use public property in performing its services. Examples are the use of city streets for a bus line or taxi service; the use of public land for telephone, electric, and cable television lines; and the use of airwaves for radio or TV broadcasting. Such operating rights are referred to as **licenses**.

Franchises and licenses may be granted for a definite period of time, an indefinite period, or perpetual. **When a company can identify costs with the acquisition of the franchise or license, it should recognize an intangible asset.** Companies record as **operating expenses** annual payments made under

a franchise agreement in the period in which they are incurred. In the case of a limited life, a company amortizes the cost of a franchise (or license) as operating expense over the useful life. If the life is indefinite or perpetual, the cost is not amortized.

GOODWILL

Usually, the largest intangible asset that appears on a company's balance sheet is goodwill. **Goodwill** represents the value of all favorable attributes that relate to a company that are not attributable to any other specific asset. These include exceptional management, desirable location, good customer relations, skilled employees, high-quality products, fair pricing policies, and harmonious relations with labor unions. Goodwill is unique because unlike other assets such as investments, plant assets, and even other intangibles, which can be sold *individually* in the marketplace, goodwill can be identified only with the business *as a whole*.

If goodwill can be identified only with the business as a whole, how can it be determined? Certainly, many business enterprises have many of the factors cited above (exceptional management, desirable location, and so on). However, to determine the amount of goodwill in these situations would be difficult and very subjective. In other words, to recognize goodwill without an exchange transaction that puts a value on the goodwill would lead to subjective valuations that do not contribute to the reliability of financial statements. **Therefore, companies record goodwill only when there is an exchange transaction that involves the purchase of an entire business. When an entire business is purchased, goodwill is the excess of cost over the fair value of the net assets (assets less liabilities) acquired.**

In recording the purchase of a business, a company debits the identifiable acquired assets and credits liabilities at their fair values, credits cash for the purchase price, and records the difference as the cost of goodwill. Goodwill is not amortized because it is considered to have an indefinite life. However, it must be written down if a company determines the value of goodwill has been permanently impaired.

International Insight

Should Companies Write Up Goodwill?

Softbank Corp. is Japan's biggest Internet company. At one time, it boosted the profit margin of its mobile-phone unit from 3.2% to 11.2% through what appeared to some as accounting tricks. What did it do? It wrote down the value of its mobile-phone-unit assets by half. This would normally result in a huge loss. But rather than take a loss, the company wrote up goodwill by the same amount. How did this move increase earnings? The assets were being depreciated over 10 years, but the company amortizes goodwill over 20 years. (Amortization of goodwill was allowed under the accounting standards it followed at that time.) While the new treatment did not break any rules, the company was criticized by investors for not providing sufficient justification or a detailed explanation for the sudden shift in policy.

Source: Andrew Morse and Yukari Iwatani Kane, "Softbank's Accounting Shift Raises Eyebrows," *Wall Street Journal* (August 28, 2007), p. C1.

? Do you think that this treatment would be allowed under U.S. GAAP? (See page 499.)

before you go on...

CLASSIFICATION CONCEPTS

Do it!

Match the statement with the term most directly associated with it.

Copyright	Amortization
Intangible assets	Franchise
Research and development costs	

1. _____ The allocation to expense of the cost of an intangible asset over the asset's useful life.
2. _____ Rights, privileges, and competitive advantages that result from the ownership of long-lived assets that do not possess physical substance.
3. _____ An exclusive right granted by the federal government to reproduce and sell an artistic or published work.
4. _____ A right to sell certain products or services or to use certain trademarks or trade names within a designated geographic area.
5. _____ Costs incurred by a company that often lead to patents or new products. These costs must be expensed as incurred.

Action Plan

- Know that the accounting for intangibles often depends on whether the item has a finite or indefinite life.
- Recognize the many similarities and differences between the accounting for plant assets and intangible assets.

Solution

1. Amortization
2. Intangible assets
3. Copyright
4. Franchise
5. Research and development costs

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE9-10,** **Do it!** **9-5, E9-13, E9-14,** and **E9-15**.

Financial Statement Presentation of Long-Lived Assets

study objective 8

Indicate how long-lived assets are reported in the financial statements.

Usually, companies show plant assets in the financial statements under "Property, plant, and equipment," and they show intangibles separately under "Intangible assets." Illustration 9-23 shows a typical balance sheet presentation of long-lived assets, adapted from The Coca-Cola Company's 2009 balance sheet.

Illustration 9-23
Presentation of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets

The Coca-Cola Company

THE COCA-COLA COMPANY
Balance Sheet (partial)
(in millions)

Property, plant, and equipment	
Land	$ 699
Buildings and improvements	3,816
Machinery and equipment	10,355
Containers and other	1,597
	16,467
Less: Accumulated depreciation	6,906
	9,561
Intangible assets	
Trademarks with indefinite lives	6,183
Goodwill	4,224
Other intangible assets	2,421
	$12,828

Intangibles do not usually use a contra asset account like the contra asset account Accumulated Depreciation used for plant assets. Instead, companies record amortization of intangibles as a direct decrease (credit) to the asset account.

Either within the balance sheet or in the notes, companies should disclose the balances of the major classes of assets, such as land, buildings, and equipment, and of accumulated depreciation by major classes or in total. In addition, they should describe the depreciation and amortization methods used and disclose the amount of depreciation and amortization expense for the period.

KEEPING AN EYE ON CASH

Depreciation and amortization expense are among the biggest causes of differences between accrual-accounting net income and net cash provided by operating activities. Depreciation and amortization reduce net income, but they do not use up any cash. Therefore, to determine net cash provided by operating activities, companies add depreciation and amortization back to net income. For example, if a company reported net income of $175,000 during the year and had depreciation expense of $40,000, net cash provided by operating activities would be $215,000 (assuming no other accrual-accounting differences). The operating activities section of Coca-Cola's statement of cash flows reports the following adjustment for depreciation and amortization.

The Coca-Cola Company

THE COCA-COLA COMPANY
Statement of Cash Flows (partial)
(in millions)

Cash flow from operating activities	
Net income	$6,906
Plus: Depreciation and amortization	1,236

The adjustment for depreciation and amortization was more than twice as big as any other adjustment required to convert net income to net cash provided by operating activities.

It is also interesting to examine the statement of cash flows to determine the amount of property, plant, and equipment a company purchased and the cash it received from property, plant, and equipment sold in a given year. For example, the investing activities section of Coca-Cola reports the following.

The Coca-Cola Company

THE COCA-COLA COMPANY
Statement of Cash Flows (partial)
(in millions)

Cash flow from investing activities	
Acquisitions and investments	$(2,452)
Purchases of property, plant, and equipment	(1,993)
Proceeds from disposals of property, plant, and equipment	104
Other	192

As indicated, Coca-Cola made significant purchases and sales of property, plant, and equipment. The level of purchases suggests that Coca-Cola believes that it can earn a reasonable rate of return on these assets.

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

JetBlue Airways Corporation is a low-cost airline operating primarily out of New York. It operates hundreds of flights to 51 destinations daily. Although it has operated for only eight years, it is now the tenth largest U.S. airline based on total passenger miles. It currently operates 104 planes.

Instructions

Review the excerpts from the company's 2009 annual report that follow and then answer the following questions.

1. What method does the company use to depreciate its aircraft? Over what period is the company depreciating these aircraft?
2. What type of intangible assets does the company have, and how are they being accounted for?
3. Compute the company's return on assets ratio, asset turnover ratio, and profit margin ratio for 2009 and 2008. Comment on your results.

(in millions)	2009	2008
Net income (loss)	$ 58	$ (85)
Net sales	3,286	3,388
Beginning total assets	6,020	5,598
Ending total assets	6,554	6,020

JETBLUE AIRWAYS CORPORATION
Notes to the Financial Statements

Property and Equipment: We record our property and equipment at cost and depreciate these assets on a straight-line basis to their estimated residual values over their estimated useful lives. Additions, modifications that enhance the operating performance of our assets, and interest related to predelivery deposits to acquire new aircraft and for the construction of facilities are capitalized.

Estimated useful lives and residual values for our property and equipment are as follows.

	Estimated Useful Life	Residual Value
Aircraft	25 years	20%
In-flight entertainment systems	12 years	0%
Aircraft parts	Fleet life	10%
Flight equipment leasehold improvements	Lease term	0%
Ground property and equipment	3–10 years	0%
Leasehold improvements	15 years or lease term	0%

We record impairment losses on long-lived assets used in operations when events and circumstances indicate that the assets may be impaired and the undiscounted future cash flows estimated to be generated by these assets are less than the assets' net book value. If impairment occurs, the loss is measured by comparing the fair value of the asset to its carrying amount.

Note 8—LiveTV Purchased technology, which is an intangible asset related to our September 2002 acquisition of the membership interests of LiveTV, was being amortized over seven years based on the average number of aircraft expected to be in service as of the date of acquisition.

Solution

1. The company depreciates property and equipment using the straight-line approach. It depreciates aircraft over a 25-year life.
2. The company has an intangible asset called "purchased technology" related to its purchase of membership interests in "LiveTV." It amortizes this intangible asset based on the company's estimate of the average number of aircraft expected to be in service over a seven-year period.
3.

	2009	2008
Return on assets	$\frac{\$58}{(\$6{,}020+\$6{,}554)/2}=0.9\%$	$\frac{\$(85)}{(\$5{,}598+\$6{,}020)/2}=-1.5\%$
Asset turnover	$\frac{\$3{,}286}{(\$6{,}020+\$6{,}554)/2}=0.52$ times	$\frac{\$3{,}388}{(\$5{,}598+\$6{,}020)/2}=.58$ times
Profit margin	$\frac{\$58}{\$3{,}286}=1.8\%$	$\frac{\$(85)}{\$3{,}388}=-2.5\%$

JetBlue's return on assets ratio increased slightly from 2008 to 2009. While its profit margin was very low in both years, JetBlue was not able to increase its asset turnover. This suggests that its ability to generate sales from its planes remained constant, while its ability to generate profits from sales remained very low.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Describe how the cost principle applies to plant assets. The cost of plant assets includes all expenditures necessary to acquire the asset and make it ready for its intended use. Cost is measured by the cash or cash equivalent price paid.

2 Explain the concept of depreciation. Depreciation is the process of allocating to expense the cost of a plant asset over its useful (service) life in a rational and systematic manner. Depreciation is not a process of valuation, and it is not a process that results in an accumulation of cash. Depreciation reflects an asset's decreasing usefulness and revenue-producing ability, resulting from wear and tear and from obsolescence.

3 Compute periodic depreciation using the straight-line method, and contrast its expense pattern with those of other methods. The formula for straight-line depreciation is:

$$\frac{\text{Cost} - \text{Salvage value}}{\text{Useful life (in years)}}$$

The expense patterns of the three depreciation methods are as follows.

Method	Annual Depreciation Pattern
Straight-line	Constant amount
Declining-balance	Decreasing amount
Units-of-activity	Varying amount

4 Describe the procedure for revising periodic depreciation. Companies make revisions of periodic depreciation in present and future periods, not retroactively.

5 Explain how to account for the disposal of plant assets. The procedure for accounting for the disposal of a plant asset through sale or retirement is: (a) Eliminate the book value of the plant asset at the date of disposal. (b) Record cash proceeds, if any. (c) Account for the difference between the book value and the cash proceeds as a gain or a loss on disposal.

6 Describe methods for evaluating the use of plant assets. Plant assets may be analyzed using the return on assets ratio and the asset turnover ratio. The return on assets ratio consists of two components: the asset turnover ratio and the profit margin ratio.

7 Identify the basic issues related to reporting intangible assets. Companies report intangible assets at their cost less any amounts amortized. If an intangible asset has a limited life, its cost should be allocated (amortized) over its useful life. Intangible assets with indefinite lives should not be amortized.

8 Indicate how long-lived assets are reported in the financial statements. Companies usually show plant assets under "Property, plant, and equipment"; they show intangibles separately under "Intangible assets." Either within the balance sheet or in the notes, companies disclose the balances of the major classes of assets, such as land, buildings, and equipment, and accumulated depreciation by major classes or in total. They describe the depreciation and amortization methods used, and disclose the amount of depreciation and amortization expense for the period. In the statement of cash flows, depreciation and amortization expense are added back to net income to determine net cash provided by operating activities. The investing section reports cash paid or received to purchase or sell property, plant, and equipment.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the company using its assets effectively?	Net income and average assets	Return on assets ratio $= \frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average total assets}}$	Higher value suggests favorable efficiency (use of assets).
How effective is the company at generating sales from its assets?	Net sales and average total assets	Asset turnover ratio $= \frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Average total assets}}$	Indicates the sales dollars generated per dollar of assets. A high value suggests the company is effective in using its resources to generate sales.
Is the company's amortization of intangibles reasonable?	Estimated useful life of intangibles from notes to financial statements of this company and its competitors	If the company's estimated useful life significantly exceeds that of competitors or does not seem reasonable in light of the circumstances, the reason for the difference should be investigated.	Too high an estimated useful life will result in understating amortization expense and overstating net income.

appendix 9A

Calculation of Depreciation Using Other Methods

study objective 9

Compute periodic depreciation using the declining-balance method and the units-of-activity method.

In this appendix, we show the calculations of the depreciation expense amounts that we used in the chapter for the declining-balance and units-of-activity methods.

DECLINING-BALANCE

The **declining-balance method** produces a decreasing annual depreciation expense over the useful life of the asset. The method is so named because the computation of periodic depreciation is based on a **declining book value** (cost less accumulated depreciation) of the asset. Annual depreciation expense is computed by multiplying the book value at the beginning of the year by the declining-balance depreciation rate. **The depreciation rate remains constant from year to year, but the book value to which the rate is applied declines each year.**

Book value for the first year is the cost of the asset because the balance in accumulated depreciation at the beginning of the asset's useful life is zero. In subsequent years, book value is the difference between cost and accumulated depreciation at the beginning of the year. **Unlike other depreciation methods, the declining-balance method ignores salvage value in determining the amount to which the declining-balance rate is applied.** Salvage value, however, does limit the total depreciation that can be taken. Depreciation stops when the asset's book value equals its expected salvage value.

As noted in the chapter, a common declining-balance rate is double the straight-line rate—the **double-declining-balance method**. If Bill's Pizzas uses the double-declining-balance method, the depreciation rate is 40% (2 × the straight-line rate of 20%). Illustration 9A-1 presents the formula and computation of depreciation for the first year on the delivery truck.

Helpful Hint The straight-line rate is approximated as 1 ÷ Estimated life. In this case, it is 1 ÷ 5 = 20%.

Book Value at Beginning of Year	×	Declining-Balance Rate	=	Depreciation Expense
$13,000	×	40%	=	$5,200

Illustration 9A-1 Formula for declining-balance method

Illustration 9A-2 presents the depreciation schedule under this method.

BILL'S PIZZAS

	Computation				End of Year	
Year	Book Value Beginning of Year	×	Depreciation Rate	=	Annual Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Depreciation	Book Value
2012	$13,000		40%		$5,200	$ 5,200	$ 7,800*
2013	7,800		40		3,120	8,320	4,680
2014	4,680		40		1,872	10,192	2,808
2015	2,808		40		1,123	11,315	1,685
2016	1,685		40		685**	12,000	1,000

*$13,000 − $5,200
**Computation of $674 ($1,685 × 40%) is adjusted to $685 in order for book value to equal salvage value.

Illustration 9A-2 Double-declining-balance depreciation schedule

Helpful Hint Depreciation stops when the asset's book value equals its expected salvage value.

The delivery equipment is 69% depreciated ($8,320 ÷ $12,000) at the end of the second year. Under the straight-line method, it would be depreciated 40% ($4,800 ÷ $12,000) at that time. Because the declining-balance method produces higher depreciation expense in the early years than in the later years, it is considered an **accelerated-depreciation method**.

The declining-balance method is compatible with the expense recognition principle. It matches the higher depreciation expense in early years with the higher benefits received in these years. Conversely, it recognizes lower depreciation expense in later years when the asset's contribution to revenue is less. Also, some assets lose their usefulness rapidly because of obsolescence. In these cases, the declining-balance method provides a more appropriate depreciation amount.

When an asset is purchased during the year, it is necessary to prorate the declining-balance depreciation in the first year on a time basis. For example, if Bill's Pizzas had purchased the delivery equipment on April 1, 2012, depreciation for 2012 would be $3,900 ($13,000 × 40% × $\frac{9}{12}$). The book value for computing depreciation in 2013 then becomes $9,100 ($13,000 − $3,900), and the 2013 depreciation is $3,640 ($9,100 × 40%).

UNITS-OF-ACTIVITY

Under the **units-of-activity method**, useful life is expressed in terms of the total units of production or use expected from the asset. The units-of-activity method is ideally suited to equipment whose activity can be measured in units of output, miles driven, or hours in use. The units-of-activity method is generally not suitable for assets for which depreciation is a function more of time than of use.

Alternative Terminology Another term often used is the *units-of-production method.*

To use this method, a company estimates the total units of activity for the entire useful life and divides that amount into the depreciable cost to determine the depreciation cost per unit. It then multiplies the depreciation cost per unit by the units of activity during the year to find the annual depreciation for that year.

To illustrate, assume that Bill's Pizzas estimates it will drive its new delivery truck 15,000 miles in the first year. Illustration 9A-3 presents the formula and computation of depreciation expense in the first year.

Illustration 9A-3 Formula for units-of-activity method

Depreciable Cost	÷	Total Units of Activity	=	Depreciation Cost per Unit
$12,000	÷	100,000 miles	=	$0.12

Depreciation Cost per Unit	×	Units of Activity during the Year	=	Depreciation Expense
$0.12	×	15,000 miles	=	**$1,800**

Illustration 9A-4 shows the depreciation schedule, using assumed mileage data.

Illustration 9A-4 Units-of-activity depreciation schedule

BILL'S PIZZAS

	Computation					End of Year	
Year	Units of Activity	×	Depreciation Cost/Unit	=	Annual Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Depreciation	Book Value
2012	15,000		$0.12		**$1,800**	$ 1,800	$11,200*
2013	30,000		0.12		**3,600**	5,400	7,600
2014	20,000		0.12		**2,400**	7,800	5,200
2015	25,000		0.12		**3,000**	10,800	2,200
2016	10,000		0.12		**1,200**	12,000	**1,000**

*$13,000 − $1,800

Helpful Hint Depreciation stops when the asset's book value equals its expected salvage value.

The units-of-activity method is not nearly as popular as the straight-line method, primarily because it is often difficult to make a reasonable estimate of total activity. However, this method is used by some very large companies, such as Standard Oil Company of California and Boise Cascade Corporation. When the productivity of the asset varies significantly from one period to another, the units-of-activity method results in the best matching of expenses with revenues.

This method is easy to apply when assets are purchased during the year. In such a case, companies use the productivity of the asset for the partial year in computing the depreciation.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 9A

9 Compute periodic depreciation using the declining-balance method and the units-of-activity method. The depreciation expense calculation for each of these methods is:

Declining-balance:

$$\text{Book value at beginning of year} \times \text{Declining-balance rate} = \text{Depreciation expense}$$

Units-of-activity:

$$\text{Depreciable cost} \div \text{Total units of activity} = \text{Depreciation cost per unit}$$

$$\text{Depreciation cost per unit} \times \text{Units of activity during year} = \text{Depreciation expense}$$

Glossary

Accelerated-depreciation method *(p. 456)* A depreciation method that produces higher depreciation expense in the early years than the straight-line approach.

Additions and improvements *(p. 460)* Costs incurred to increase the operating efficiency, productive capacity, or expected useful life of a plant asset.

Amortization *(p. 468)* The process of allocating to expense the cost of an intangible asset.

Asset turnover ratio *(p. 466)* Indicates how efficiently a company uses its assets to generate sales; calculated as net sales divided by average total assets.

Capital expenditures *(p. 449)* Expenditures that increase the company's investment in plant assets.

Capital lease *(p. 452)* A contractual agreement allowing one party (the lessee) to use another party's asset (the lessor); accounted for like a debt-financed purchase by the lessee.

Cash equivalent price *(p. 449)* An amount equal to the fair value of the asset given up or the fair value of the asset received, whichever is more clearly determinable.

Copyright *(p. 470)* An exclusive right granted by the federal government allowing the owner to reproduce and sell an artistic or published work.

Declining-balance method *(pp. 456, 476)* A depreciation method that applies a constant rate to the declining book value of the asset and produces a decreasing annual depreciation expense over the asset's useful life.

Depreciable cost *(p. 455)* The cost of a plant asset less its salvage value.

Depreciation *(p. 453)* The process of allocating to expense the cost of a plant asset over its useful life in a rational and systematic manner.

Franchise *(p. 470)* A contractual arrangement under which the franchisor grants the franchisee the right to sell certain products, to provide specific services, or to use certain trademarks or trade names, usually within a designated geographic area.

Goodwill *(p. 471)* The value of all favorable attributes that relate to a company that are not attributable to any other specific asset.

Impairment *(p. 461)* A permanent decline in the fair value of an asset.

Intangible assets *(p. 467)* Rights, privileges, and competitive advantages that result from the ownership of long-lived assets that do not possess physical substance.

Lessee *(p. 452)* A party that has made contractual arrangements to use another party's asset for a period at an agreed price.

Lessor *(p. 452)* A party that has agreed contractually to let another party use its asset for a period at an agreed price.

Licenses *(p. 470)* Operating rights to use public property, granted by a governmental agency to a business.

Operating lease *(p. 452)* A contractual agreement allowing one party (the lessee) to use the asset of another party (the lessor); accounted for as a rental by the lessee.

Ordinary repairs *(p. 460)* Expenditures to maintain the operating efficiency and expected productive life of the asset.

Patent *(p. 469)* An exclusive right issued by the U.S. Patent Office that enables the recipient to manufacture, sell, or otherwise control an invention for a period of 20 years from the date of the grant.

Plant assets *(p. 448)* Tangible resources that have physical substance, are used in the operations of the business, and are not intended for sale to customers.

Research and development costs *(p. 469)* Expenditures that may lead to patents, copyrights, new processes, and new products; must be expensed as incurred.

Return on assets ratio *(p. 464)* A profitability measure that indicates the amount of net income generated by each dollar of assets; computed as net income divided by average assets.

Revenue expenditures *(p. 449)* Expenditures that are immediately charged against revenues as an expense.

Straight-line method *(p. 455)* A method in which companies expense an equal amount of depreciation for each year of the asset's useful life.

Trademark (trade name) *(p. 470)* A word, phrase, jingle, or symbol that distinguishes or identifies a particular enterprise or product.

Units-of-activity method *(pp. 456, 477)* A depreciation method in which useful life is expressed in terms of the total units of production or use expected from the asset.

Comprehensive Do it! 1

DuPage Company purchased a factory machine at a cost of $18,000 on January 1, 2012. DuPage expected the machine to have a salvage value of $2,000 at the end of its 4-year useful life.

Instructions

Prepare a depreciation schedule using the straight-line method.

Action Plan

- Under the straight-line method, apply the depreciation rate to depreciable cost.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it! 1

DUPAGE COMPANY
Depreciation Schedule—Straight-Line Method

	Computation					End of Year	
Year	Depreciable Cost (a)	×	Depreciation Rate (b)	=	Annual Depreciation Expense	Accumulated Depreciation	Book Value (c)
2012	$16,000		25%		$4,000	$ 4,000	$14,000
2013	16,000		25		4,000	8,000	10,000
2014	16,000		25		4,000	12,000	6,000
2015	16,000		25		4,000	16,000	2,000

(a) $18,000 − $2,000 (b) $\frac{1}{4}$ = 25% (c) Cost less accumulated depreciation.

the navigator

Comprehensive Do it! 2

On January 1, 2009, Skyline Limousine Co. purchased a limousine at an acquisition cost of $28,000. Skyline depreciated the vehicle by the straight-line method using a 4-year service life and a $4,000 salvage value. The company's fiscal year ends on December 31.

Instructions

Prepare the journal entry or entries to record the disposal of the limousine, assuming that it was:

(a) Retired and scrapped with no salvage value on January 1, 2013.
(b) Sold for $5,000 on July 1, 2012.

Action Plan

- Calculate accumulated depreciation (Depreciation expense per year × Years in use).
- At the time of disposal, determine the book value of the asset.
- Recognize any gain or loss from disposal of the asset.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it! 2

(a) Jan. 1, 2013	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	24,000*	
	Loss on Disposal of Plant Assets	4,000	
	Equipment		28,000
	(To record retirement of limousine)		

*(($28,000 − $4,000) ÷ 4) × 4

(b) July 1, 2012	Depreciation Expense	3,000*	
	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		3,000
	(To record depreciation to date of disposal)		

*(($28,000 − $4,000) ÷ 4) × $\frac{1}{2}$

	Cash	5,000	
	Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	21,000**	
	Loss on Disposal of Plant Assets	2,000	
	Equipment		28,000
	(To record sale of limousine)		

**(($28,000 − $4,000) ÷ 4) × 3.5

the navigator

WILEY PLUS
Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Note: All Questions, Exercises, and Problems marked with an asterisk relate to material in the appendix to the chapter.

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 499.

(SO 1) **1.** Corrieten Company purchased equipment and incurred these costs:

Cash price	$24,000
Sales taxes	1,200
Insurance during transit	200
Installation and testing	400
Total costs	$25,800

What amount should be recorded as the cost of the equipment?
(a) $24,000. (c) $25,400.
(b) $25,200. (d) $25,800.

(SO 1) **2.** Harrington Corporation recently leased a number of trucks from Andre Corporation. In inspecting the books of Harrington Corporation, you notice that the trucks have not been recorded as assets on its balance sheet. From this, you can conclude that Harrington is accounting for this transaction as a/an:
(a) operating lease. (c) purchase.
(b) capital lease. (d) None of the above.

(SO 2) **3.** Depreciation is a process of:
(a) valuation. (c) cash accumulation.
(b) cost allocation. (d) appraisal.

(SO 3) **4.** Cuso Company purchased equipment on January 1, 2011, at a total invoice cost of $400,000. The equipment has an estimated salvage value of $10,000 and an estimated useful life of 5 years. What is the amount of accumulated depreciation at December 31, 2012, if the straight-line method of depreciation is used?
(a) $80,000. (c) $78,000.
(b) $160,000. (d) $156,000.

(SO 3) **5.** A company would minimize its depreciation expense in the first year of owning an asset if it used:
(a) a high estimated life, a high salvage value, and declining-balance depreciation.
(b) a low estimated life, a high salvage value, and straight-line depreciation.
(c) a high estimated life, a high salvage value, and straight-line depreciation.
(d) a low estimated life, a low salvage value, and declining-balance depreciation.

(SO 4) **6.** When there is a change in estimated depreciation:
(a) previous depreciation should be corrected.
(b) current and future years' depreciation should be revised.
(c) only future years' depreciation should be revised.
(d) None of the above.

(SO 4) **7.** Able Towing Company purchased a tow truck for $60,000 on January 1, 2012. It was originally depreciated on a straight-line basis over 10 years with an assumed salvage value of $12,000. On December 31, 2014, before adjusting entries had been made, the company decided to change the remaining estimated life to 4 years (including 2014) and the salvage value to $2,000. What was the depreciation expense for 2014?
(a) $6,000. (c) $15,000.
(b) $4,800. (d) $12,100.

(SO 4) **8.** Additions to plant assets:
(a) decrease liabilities.
(b) increase a repair expense account.
(c) increase a purchases account.
(d) are capital expenditures.

(SO 5) **9.** Bennie Razor Company has decided to sell one of its old manufacturing machines on June 30, 2012. The machine was purchased for $80,000 on January 1, 2008, and was depreciated on a straight-line basis for 10 years assuming no salvage value. If the machine was sold for $26,000, what was the amount of the gain or loss recorded at the time of the sale?
(a) $18,000 loss. (c) $22,000 gain.
(b) $54,000 loss. (d) $46,000 gain.

(SO 6) **10.** Which of the following measures provides an indication of how efficient a company is in employing its assets?
(a) Current ratio.
(b) Profit margin ratio.
(c) Debt to total assets ratio.
(d) Asset turnover ratio.

(SO 6) **11.** Lake Coffee Company reported net sales of $180,000, net income of $54,000, beginning total assets of $200,000, and ending total assets of $300,000. What was the company's asset turnover ratio?
(a) 0.90 (c) 0.72
(b) 0.20 (d) 1.39

(SO 7) **12.** Pierce Company incurred $150,000 of research and development costs in its laboratory to develop a new product. It spent $20,000 in legal fees for a patent granted on January 2, 2012. On July 31, 2012, Pierce paid $15,000 for legal fees in a successful defense of the patent. What is the total amount that should be debited to Patents through July 31, 2012?
(a) $150,000. (c) $185,000.
(b) $35,000. (d) Some other amount.

(SO 7) **13.** Indicate which one of these statements is *true*.
(a) Since intangible assets lack physical substance, they need to be disclosed only in the notes to the financial statements.

(b) Goodwill should be reported as a contra account in the stockholders' equity section.
(c) Totals of major classes of assets can be shown in the balance sheet, with asset details disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.
(d) Intangible assets are typically combined with plant assets and inventory and then shown in the property, plant, and equipment section.

(SO 7) **14.** If a company reports goodwill as an intangible asset on its books, what is the one thing you know with certainty?
(a) The company is a valuable company worth investing in.
(b) The company has a well-established brand name.
(c) The company purchased another company.
(d) The goodwill will generate a lot of positive business for the company for many years to come.

(SO 7) **15.** Which of the following statements is *false*?
(a) If an intangible asset has a finite life, it should be amortized.
(b) The amortization period of an intangible asset can exceed 20 years.
(c) Goodwill is recorded only when a business is purchased.
(d) Research and development costs are expensed when incurred, except when the research and development expenditures result in a successful patent.

***16.** Kant Enterprises purchased a truck for $11,000 on January 1, 2011. The truck will have an estimated salvage value of $1,000 at the end of 5 years. If you use the units-of-activity method, the balance in accumulated depreciation at December 31, 2012, can be computed by the following formula: (SO 9)
(a) ($11,000 ÷ Total estimated activity) × Units of activity for 2012.
(b) ($10,000 ÷ Total estimated activity) × Units of activity for 2012.
(c) ($11,000 ÷ Total estimated activity) × Units of activity for 2011 and 2012.
(d) ($10,000 ÷ Total estimated activity) × Units of activity for 2011 and 2012.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. Mrs. Villarreal is uncertain about how the cost principle applies to plant assets. Explain the principle to Mrs. Villarreal.

2. How is the cost for a plant asset measured in a cash transaction? In a noncash transaction?

3. Johnstone Company acquires the land and building owned by Briggs Company. What types of costs may be incurred to make the asset ready for its intended use if Johnstone Company wants to use only the land? If it wants to use both the land and the building?

4. Pryor Inc. needs to upgrade its diagnostic equipment. At the time of purchase, Pryor had expected the equipment to last 8 years. Unfortunately, it was obsolete after only 4 years. Justin Meyer, CFO of Pryor Inc., is considering leasing new equipment rather than buying it. What are the potential benefits of leasing?

5. In a recent newspaper release, the president of Franklin Company asserted that something has to be done about depreciation. The president said, "Depreciation does not come close to accumulating the cash needed to replace the asset at the end of its useful life." What is your response to the president?

6. Carmelita is studying for the next accounting examination. She asks your help on two questions: (a) What is salvage value? (b) How is salvage value used in determining depreciable cost under the straight-line method? Answer Carmelita's questions.

7. Contrast the straight-line method and the units-of-activity method in relation to (a) useful life and (b) the pattern of periodic depreciation over useful life.

8. Contrast the effects of the three depreciation methods on annual depreciation expense.

9. In the fourth year of an asset's 5-year useful life, the company decides that the asset will have a 6-year service life. How should the revision of depreciation be recorded? Why?

10. Distinguish between ordinary repairs and capital expenditures during an asset's useful life.

11. How is a gain or a loss on the sale of a plant asset computed?

12. Folstein Corporation owns a machine that is fully depreciated but is still being used. How should Folstein account for this asset and report it in the financial statements?

13. What does Tootsie Roll use as the estimated useful life on its buildings? On its machinery and equipment?

14. What are the similarities and differences between depreciation and amortization?

15. During a recent management meeting, Steve Micke, director of marketing, proposed that the company begin capitalizing its marketing expenditures as goodwill. In his words, "Marketing expenditures create goodwill for the company which benefits the company for multiple periods. Therefore it doesn't make

good sense to have to expense it as it is incurred. Besides, if we capitalize it as goodwill, we won't have to amortize it, and this will boost reported income." Discuss the merits of Steve's proposal.

16. Alford Company hires an accounting intern who says that intangible assets should always be amortized over their legal lives. Is the intern correct? Explain.

17. Goodwill has been defined as the value of all favorable attributes that relate to a business enterprise. What types of attributes could result in goodwill?

18. Janis Ford, a business major, is working on a case problem for one of her classes. In this case problem, the company needs to raise cash to market a new product it developed. Mark Gordon, an engineering major, takes one look at the company's balance sheet and says, "This company has an awful lot of goodwill. Why don't you recommend that they sell some of it to raise cash?" How should Janis respond to Mark?

19. Under what conditions is goodwill recorded? What is the proper accounting treatment for amortizing goodwill?

20. Often research and development costs provide companies with benefits that last a number of years. (For example, these costs can lead to the development of a patent that will increase the company's income for many years.) However, generally accepted accounting principles require that such costs be recorded as an expense when incurred. Why?

21. In 2009, Campbell Soup Company reported average total assets of $6,265 million, net sales of $7,586 million, and net income of $736 million. What was Campbell Soup's return on assets ratio?

22. Lauren Rado, a marketing executive for Fresh Views Inc., has proposed expanding its product line of framed graphic art by producing a line of lower-quality products. These would require less processing by the company and would provide a lower profit margin. Tom Hogle, the company's CFO, is concerned that this new product line would reduce the company's return on assets. Discuss the potential effect on return on assets that this product might have.

23. Give an example of an industry that would be characterized by (a) a high asset turnover ratio and a low profit margin ratio, and (b) a low asset turnover ratio and a high profit margin ratio.

24. Allman Corporation and Bryant Corporation operate in the same industry. Allman uses the straight-line method to account for depreciation, whereas Bryant uses an accelerated method. Explain what complications might arise in trying to compare the results of these two companies.

25. Guzman Corporation uses straight-line depreciation for financial reporting purposes but an accelerated method for tax purposes. Is it acceptable to use different methods for the two purposes? What is Guzman Corporation's motivation for doing this?

26. You are comparing two companies in the same industry. You have determined that Morris Corp. depreciates its plant assets over a 40-year life, whereas Kiram Corp. depreciates its plant assets over a 20-year life. Discuss the implications this has for comparing the results of the two companies.

27. Explain how transactions related to plant assets and intangibles are reported in the statement of cash flows.

Brief Exercises

BE9-1 These expenditures were incurred by Patnode Company in purchasing land: cash price $60,000; accrued taxes $5,000; attorney's fees $2,100; real estate broker's commission $3,300; and clearing and grading $3,500. What is the cost of the land?

Determine the cost of land. (SO 1), **AP**

BE9-2 Deutsch Company incurs these expenditures in purchasing a truck: cash price $24,000; accident insurance (during use) $2,000; sales taxes $1,080; motor vehicle license $300; and painting and lettering $1,700. What is the cost of the truck?

Determine the cost of a truck. (SO 1), **AP**

BE9-3 Alan Chemicals Company acquires a delivery truck at a cost of $31,000 on January 1, 2012. The truck is expected to have a salvage value of $4,000 at the end of its 4-year useful life. Compute annual depreciation for the first and second years using the straight-line method.

Compute straight-line depreciation. (SO 3), **AP**

BE9-4 Erin Company purchased land and a building on January 1, 2012. Management's best estimate of the value of the land was $100,000 and of the building $250,000. However, management told the accounting department to record the land at $230,000 and the building at $120,000. The building is being depreciated on a straight-line basis over 20 years with no salvage value. Why do you suppose management requested this accounting treatment? Is it ethical?

Compute depreciation and evaluate treatment. (SO 3), **AN**

BE9-5 On January 1, 2012, the Eugene Company ledger shows Equipment $36,000 and Accumulated Depreciation $13,600. The depreciation resulted from using the straight-line method with a useful life of 10 years and a salvage value of $2,000. On this date, the

Compute revised depreciation. (SO 4), **AP**

company concludes that the equipment has a remaining useful life of only 2 years with the same salvage value. Compute the revised annual depreciation.

Prepare entries for delivery truck costs.
(SO 4), AP

BE9-6 Sabina Company had the following two transactions related to its delivery truck.
1. Paid $38 for an oil change.
2. Paid $400 to install special shelving units, which increase the operating efficiency of the truck.

Prepare Sabina's journal entries to record these two transactions.

Journalize entries for disposal of plant assets.
(SO 5), AP

BE9-7 Prepare journal entries to record these transactions: (a) Benton Company retires its delivery equipment, which cost $41,000. Accumulated depreciation is also $41,000 on this delivery equipment. No salvage value is received. (b) Assume the same information as in part (a), except that accumulated depreciation for the equipment is $37,200 instead of $41,000.

Journalize entries for sale of plant assets.
(SO 5), AP

BE9-8 Clark Company sells office equipment on July 31, 2012, for $21,000 cash. The office equipment originally cost $72,000 and as of January 1, 2012, had accumulated depreciation of $42,000. Depreciation for the first 7 months of 2012 is $4,600. Prepare the journal entries to (a) update depreciation to July 31, 2012, and (b) record the sale of the equipment.

Compute return on assets ratio and asset turnover ratio.
(SO 6), AP

BE9-9 In its 2009 annual report, McDonald's Corporation reports beginning total assets of $28.46 billion; ending total assets of $30.22 billion; net sales of $22.74 billion; and net income of $4.55 billion.
(a) Compute McDonald's return on assets ratio.
(b) Compute McDonald's asset turnover ratio.

Account for intangibles—patents.
(SO 7), AP

BE9-10 Tanya Company purchases a patent for $156,000 on January 2, 2012. Its estimated useful life is 6 years.
(a) Prepare the journal entry to record amortization expense for the first year.
(b) Show how this patent is reported on the balance sheet at the end of the first year.

Classification of long-lived assets on balance sheet.
(SO 8), AP

BE9-11 Nike, Inc. reported the following plant assets and intangible assets for the year ended May 31, 2009 (in millions): other plant assets $965.8; land $221.6; patents and trademarks (at cost) $515.1; machinery and equipment $2,094.3; buildings $974.0; goodwill (at cost) $193.5; accumulated amortization $47.7; and accumulated depreciation $2,298.0. Prepare a partial balance sheet for Nike for these items.

Determine net cash provided by operating activities.
(SO 8), AP

BE9-12 Ndon Company reported net income of $157,000. It reported depreciation expense of $12,000 and accumulated depreciation of $47,000. Amortization expense was $8,000. Ndon purchased new equipment during the year for $50,000. Show how this information would be used to determine net cash provided by operating activities.

Compute declining-balance depreciation.
(SO 9), AP

***BE9-13** Depreciation information for Alan Chemicals Company is given in BE9-3. Assuming the declining-balance depreciation rate is double the straight-line rate, compute annual depreciation for the first and second years under the declining-balance method.

Compute depreciation using units-of-activity method.
(SO 9), AP

***BE9-14** DriveUp Taxi Service uses the units-of-activity method in computing depreciation on its taxicabs. Each cab is expected to be driven 150,000 miles. Taxi 10 cost $27,500 and is expected to have a salvage value of $500. Taxi 10 was driven 32,000 miles in 2011 and 33,000 miles in 2012. Compute the depreciation for each year.

Do it! Review

Explain accounting for cost of plant assets
(SO 1), C

Do it! 9-1 Hidden Lakes Company purchased a delivery truck. The total cash payment was $30,020, including the following items.

Negotiated purchase price	$24,000
Installation of special shelving	1,100
Painting and lettering	900
Motor vehicle license	180
Annual insurance policy	2,400
Sales tax	1,440
Total paid	$30,020

Explain how each of these costs would be accounted for.

Do it! 9-2 On January 1, 2012, Willow Way Country Club purchased a new riding mower for $15,000. The mower is expected to have a 10-year life with a $1,000 salvage value. What journal entry would Willow Way make on December 31, 2012, if it uses straight-line depreciation?

Calculate depreciation expense and make journal entry.
(SO 2), **AP**

Do it! 9-3 Whistler Corporation purchased a piece of equipment for $50,000. It estimated an 8-year life and $2,000 salvage value. At the end of year four (before the depreciation adjustment), it estimated the new total life to be 10 years and the new salvage value to be $4,000. Compute the revised depreciation.

Calculated revised depreciation
(SO 4), **AP**

Do it! 9-4 Reinbold Manufacturing has an old factory machine that cost $50,000. The machine has accumulated depreciation of $28,000. Reinbold has decided to sell the machine.

(a) What entry would Reinbold make to record the sale of the machine for $25,000 cash?
(b) What entry would Reinbold make to record the sale of the machine for $15,000 cash?

Make journal entries to record plant asset disposal.
(SO 5), **AP**

Do it! 9-5 Match the statement with the term most directly associated with it.

Match intangible assets with concepts.
(SO 7), **C**

Goodwill	Amortization
Intangible assets	Franchise
Research and development costs	

1. _____ Rights, privileges, and competitive advantages that result from the ownership of long-lived assets that do not possess physical substance.
2. _____ The allocation of the cost of an intangible asset to expense in a rational and systematic manner.
3. _____ A right to sell certain products or services, or use certain trademarks or trade names within a designated geographic area.
4. _____ Costs incurred by a company that often lead to patents or new products. These costs must be expensed as incurred.
5. _____ The excess of the cost of a company over the fair value of the net assets required.

Exercises

E9-1 The following expenditures relating to plant assets were made by Newport Company during the first 2 months of 2012.

Determine cost of plant acquisitions.
(SO 1), **C**

1. Paid $7,000 of accrued taxes at the time the plant site was acquired.
2. Paid $200 insurance to cover a possible accident loss on new factory machinery while the machinery was in transit.
3. Paid $850 sales taxes on a new delivery truck.
4. Paid $21,000 for parking lots and driveways on the new plant site.
5. Paid $250 to have the company name and slogan painted on the new delivery truck.
6. Paid $8,000 for installation of new factory machinery.
7. Paid $900 for a 1-year accident insurance policy on the new delivery truck.
8. Paid $75 motor vehicle license fee on the new truck.

Instructions

(a) Explain the application of the cost principle in determining the acquisition cost of plant assets.
(b) List the numbers of the transactions, and opposite each indicate the account title to which each expenditure should be debited.

E9-2 Ramona Company incurred the following costs.

Determine property, plant, and equipment costs.
(SO 1), **C**

1. Sales tax on factory machinery purchased	$ 5,000
2. Painting of and lettering on truck immediately upon purchase	700
3. Installation and testing of factory machinery	2,000
4. Real estate broker's commission on land purchased	3,500
5. Insurance premium paid for first year's insurance on new truck	880
6. Cost of landscaping on property purchased	7,200
7. Cost of paving parking lot for new building constructed	17,900
8. Cost of clearing, draining, and filling land	13,300
9. Architect's fees on self-constructed building	10,000

Instructions

Indicate to which account Ramona would debit each of the costs.

Determine acquisition costs of land.
(SO 1), AP

E9-3 On March 1, 2012, Enrique Company acquired real estate, on which it planned to construct a small office building, by paying $80,000 in cash. An old warehouse on the property was demolished at a cost of $8,200; the salvaged materials were sold for $1,700. Additional expenditures before construction began included $1,900 attorney's fee for work concerning the land purchase, $5,200 real estate broker's fee, $9,100 architect's fee, and $14,000 to put in driveways and a parking lot.

Instructions
(a) Determine the amount to be reported as the cost of the land.
(b) For each cost not used in part (a), indicate the account to be debited.

Understand depreciation concepts.
(SO 2), C

E9-4 Belinda Lorenz has prepared the following list of statements about depreciation.
1. Depreciation is a process of asset valuation, not cost allocation.
2. Depreciation provides for the proper matching of expenses with revenues.
3. The book value of a plant asset should approximate its fair value.
4. Depreciation applies to three classes of plant assets: land, buildings, and equipment.
5. Depreciation does not apply to a building because its usefulness and revenue-producing ability generally remain intact over time.
6. The revenue-producing ability of a depreciable asset will decline due to wear and tear and to obsolescence.
7. Recognizing depreciation on an asset results in an accumulation of cash for replacement of the asset.
8. The balance in accumulated depreciation represents the total cost that has been charged to expense.
9. Depreciation expense and accumulated depreciation are reported on the income statement.
10. Four factors affect the computation of depreciation: cost, useful life, salvage value, and residual value.

Instructions
Identify each statement as true or false. If false, indicate how to correct the statement.

Determine straight-line depreciation for partial period.
(SO 3), AP

E9-5 Deloise Company purchased a new machine on October 1, 2012, at a cost of $90,000. The company estimated that the machine has a salvage value of $8,000. The machine is expected to be used for 70,000 working hours during its 8-year life.

Instructions
Compute the depreciation expense under the straight-line method for 2012 and 2013, assuming a December 31 year-end.

Compute revised annual depreciation.
(SO 3, 4), AN

E9-6 Brett Richard, the new controller of Maldonado Company, has reviewed the expected useful lives and salvage values of selected depreciable assets at the beginning of 2012. Here are his findings:

Type of Asset	Date Acquired	Cost	Accumulated Depreciation, Jan. 1, 2012	Useful Life (in years)		Salvage Value	
				Old	Proposed	Old	Proposed
Building	Jan. 1, 2004	$700,000	$130,000	40	48	$50,000	$35,000
Warehouse	Jan. 1, 2007	120,000	23,000	25	20	5,000	3,600

All assets are depreciated by the straight-line method. Maldonado Company uses a calendar year in preparing annual financial statements. After discussion, management has agreed to accept Brett's proposed changes. (The "Proposed" useful life is total life, not remaining life.)

Instructions
(a) Compute the revised annual depreciation on each asset in 2012. (Show computations.)
(b) Prepare the entry (or entries) to record depreciation on the building in 2012.

Journalize transactions related to disposals of plant assets.
(SO 5), AP

E9-7 Kemp Co. has delivery equipment that cost $50,000 and has been depreciated $24,000.

Instructions
Record entries for the disposal under the following assumptions.
(a) It was scrapped as having no value.
(b) It was sold for $37,000.
(c) It was sold for $20,000.

E9-8 Here are selected 2012 transactions of Eghan Corporation.

Record disposal of equipment.
(SO 5), **AP**

Jan.	1	Retired a piece of machinery that was purchased on January 1, 2002. The machine cost $62,000 and had a useful life of 10 years with no salvage value.
June	30	Sold a computer that was purchased on January 1, 2010. The computer cost $36,000 and had a useful life of 3 years with no salvage value. The computer was sold for $5,000 cash.
Dec.	31	Sold a delivery truck for $9,000 cash. The truck cost $25,000 when it was purchased on January 1, 2009, and was depreciated based on a 5-year useful life with a $4,000 salvage value.

Instructions
Journalize all entries required on the above dates, including entries to update depreciation on assets disposed of, where applicable. Eghan Corporation uses straight-line depreciation.

E9-9 The following situations are independent of one another.

Apply accounting concepts.
(SO 1, 2, 6, 7), **C**

1. An accounting student recently employed by a small company doesn't understand why the company is only depreciating its buildings and equipment, but not its land. The student prepared journal entries to depreciate all the company's property, plant, and equipment for the current year-end.
2. The same student also thinks the company's amortization policy on its intangible assets is wrong. The company is currently amortizing its patents but not its goodwill. The student fixed that for the current year-end by adding goodwill to her adjusting entry for amortization. She told a fellow employee that she felt she had improved the consistency of the company's accounting policies by making these changes.
3. The same company has a building still in use that has a zero book value but a substantial fair value. The student felt that this practice didn't benefit the company's users—especially the bank—and wrote the building up to its fair value. After all, she reasoned, you can write down assets if fair values are lower. Writing them up if fair value is higher is yet another example of the improved consistency that she has brought to the company's accounting practices.

Instructions
Explain whether or not the accounting treatment in each of the above situations is in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Explain what accounting principle or assumption, if any, has been violated and what the appropriate accounting treatment should be.

E9-10 During 2009, Federal Express reported the following information (in millions): net sales of $35,497 and net income of $98. Its balance sheet also showed total assets at the beginning of the year of $25,633 and total assets at the end of the year of $24,244.

Calculate asset turnover ratio and return on assets ratio.
(SO 6), **AP**

Instructions
Calculate the (a) asset turnover ratio and (b) return on assets ratio.

E9-11 Mangrich International is considering a significant expansion to its product line. The sales force is excited about the opportunities that the new products will bring. The new products are a significant step up in quality above the company's current offerings, but offer a complementary fit to its existing product line. Michael Powell, senior production department manager, is very excited about the high-tech new equipment that will have to be acquired to produce the new products. Linda Huang, the company's CFO, has provided the following projections based on results with and without the new products.

Calculate and interpret ratios.
(SO 6), **AP**

	Without New Products	With New Products
Sales	$10,000,000	$16,000,000
Net income	$500,000	$960,000
Average total assets	$5,000,000	$12,000,000

Instructions
(a) Compute the company's return on assets ratio, profit margin ratio, and asset turnover ratio, both with and without the new product line.
(b) Discuss the implications that your findings in part (a) have for the company's decision.

Calculate and interpret ratios.
(SO 6), AP

E9-12 Tobias Company reports the following information (in millions) during a recent year: net sales, $11,408.5; net earnings, $264.8; total assets, ending, $4,312.6; and total assets, beginning, $4,254.3.

Instructions
(a) Calculate the (1) return on assets, (2) asset turnover, and (3) profit margin ratios.
(b) Prove mathematically how the profit margin and asset turnover ratios work together to explain return on assets, by showing the appropriate calculation.
(c) Tobias Company owns Villas (grocery), Tobias Theaters, Kurt Drugstores, and Cepeda (heavy equipment), and manages commercial real estate, among other activities. Does this diversity of activities affect your ability to interpret the ratios you calculated in (a)? Explain.

Prepare adjusting entries for amortization.
(SO 7), AN

E9-13 These are selected 2012 transactions for Jendusa Corporation:

Jan.	1	Purchased a copyright for $120,000. The copyright has a useful life of 6 years and a remaining legal life of 30 years.
Mar.	1	Purchased a patent with an estimated useful life of 4 years and a legal life of 20 years for $54,000.
Sept.	1	Purchased a small company and recorded goodwill of $150,000. Its useful life is indefinite.

Instructions
Prepare all adjusting entries at December 31 to record amortization required by the events.

Prepare entries to set up appropriate accounts for different intangibles; calculate amortization.
(SO 7), AN

E9-14 Kopke Company, organized in 2012, has these transactions related to intangible assets in that year:

Jan.	2	Purchased a patent (5-year life) $280,000.
Apr.	1	Goodwill acquired as a result of purchased business (indefinite life) $360,000.
July	1	Acquired a 9-year franchise; expiration date July 1, 2021, $540,000.
Sept.	1	Research and development costs $185,000.

Instructions
(a) Prepare the necessary entries to record these transactions related to intangibles. All costs incurred were for cash.
(b) Make the entries as of December 31, 2012, recording any necessary amortization.
(c) Indicate what the balances should be on December 31, 2012.

Discuss implications of amortization period.
(SO 7), C

E9-15 Alliance Atlantis Communications Inc. changed its accounting policy to amortize broadcast rights over the contracted exhibition period, which is based on the estimated useful life of the program. Previously, the company amortized broadcast rights over the lesser of 2 years or the contracted exhibition period.

Instructions
Write a short memo to your client explaining the implications this has for the analysis of Alliance Atlantis's results.

Answer questions on depreciation and intangibles.
(SO 2, 7), C

E9-16 The questions listed below are independent of one another.

Instructions
Provide a brief answer to each question.
(a) Why should a company depreciate its buildings?
(b) How can a company have a building that has a zero reported book value but substantial fair value?
(c) What are some examples of intangibles that you might find on your college campus?
(d) Give some examples of company or product trademarks or trade names. Are trade names and trademarks reported on a company's balance sheet?

Determine net cash provided by operating activities.
(SO 8), AN

E9-17 Elmbrook Corporation reported net income of $58,000. Depreciation expense for the year was $132,000. The company calculates depreciation expense using the straight-line method, with a useful life of 10 years. Top management would like to switch to a 15-year useful life because depreciation expense would be reduced to $88,000. The CEO says, "Increasing the useful life would increase net income and net cash provided by operating activities."

Instructions
Provide a comparative analysis showing net income and net cash provided by operating activities (ignoring other accrual adjustments) using a 10-year and a 15-year useful life. (Ignore income taxes.) Evaluate the CEO's suggestion.

***E9-18** Buckeye Bus Lines uses the units-of-activity method in depreciating its buses. One bus was purchased on January 1, 2012, at a cost of $100,000. Over its 4-year useful life, the bus is expected to be driven 160,000 miles. Salvage value is expected to be $8,000.

Compute depreciation under units-of-activity method.
(SO 9), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Compute the depreciation cost per unit.
(b) Prepare a depreciation schedule assuming actual mileage was: 2012, 40,000; 2013, 52,000; 2014, 41,000; and 2015, 27,000.

***E9-19** Basic information relating to a new machine purchased by Deloise Company is presented in E9-5.

Compute declining-balance and units-of-activity depreciation.
(SO 9), **AP**

Instructions
Using the facts presented in E9-5, compute depreciation using the following methods in the year indicated.
(a) Declining-balance using double the straight-line rate for 2012 and 2013.
(b) Units-of-activity for 2012, assuming machine usage was 3,900 hours. (Round depreciation per unit to the nearest cent.)

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

P9-1A Irina Company was organized on January 1. During the first year of operations, the following plant asset expenditures and receipts were recorded in random order.

Determine acquisition costs of land and building.
(SO 1), **C**

Debits

1. Cost of real estate purchased as a plant site (land $255,000 and building $25,000)	$ 280,000
2. Installation cost of fences around property	6,800
3. Cost of demolishing building to make land suitable for construction of new building	31,000
4. Excavation costs for new building	23,000
5. Accrued real estate taxes paid at time of purchase of real estate	3,170
6. Cost of parking lots and driveways	29,000
7. Architect's fees on building plans	33,000
8. Real estate taxes paid for the current year on land	6,400
9. Full payment to building contractor	640,000
	$1,052,370

Credits

10. Proceeds from salvage of demolished building	$ 12,000

Instructions
Analyze the transactions using the following table column headings. Enter the number of each transaction in the Item column, and enter the amounts in the appropriate columns. For amounts in the Other Accounts column, also indicate the account title.

Item	Land	Buildings	Other Accounts

Land $302,170

Journalize equipment transactions related to purchase, sale, retirement, and depreciation.
(SO 3, 5, 8), AP

P9-2A At December 31, 2012, Rivera Corporation reported the following plant assets.

Land		$ 3,000,000
Buildings	$26,500,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation—buildings	11,925,000	14,575,000
Equipment	40,000,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation—equipment	5,000,000	35,000,000
Total plant assets		$52,575,000

During 2013, the following selected cash transactions occurred.

Apr.	1	Purchased land for $2,200,000.
May	1	Sold equipment that cost $600,000 when purchased on January 1, 2006. The equipment was sold for $170,000.
June	1	Sold land for $1,600,000. The land cost $1,000,000.
July	1	Purchased equipment for $1,100,000.
Dec.	31	Retired equipment that cost $700,000 when purchased on December 31, 2003. No salvage value was received.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions. (*Hint:* You may wish to set up T accounts, post beginning balances, and then post 2013 transactions.) Rivera uses straight-line depreciation for buildings and equipment. The buildings are estimated to have a 40-year useful life and no salvage value; the equipment is estimated to have a 10-year useful life and no salvage value. Update depreciation on assets disposed of at the time of sale or retirement.

(b) Record adjusting entries for depreciation for 2013.

(c) Prepare the plant assets section of Rivera's balance sheet at December 31, 2013.

(c) Tot. plant assets $50,037,500

Journalize entries for disposal of plant assets.
(SO 5), AP

P9-3A Presented here are selected transactions for Snow Company for 2012.

Jan.	1	Retired a piece of machinery that was purchased on January 1, 2002. The machine cost $71,000 on that date and had a useful life of 10 years with no salvage value.
June	30	Sold a computer that was purchased on January 1, 2009. The computer cost $30,000 and had a useful life of 5 years with no salvage value. The computer was sold for $12,000.
Dec.	31	Discarded a delivery truck that was purchased on January 1, 2007. The truck cost $33,400 and was depreciated based on an 8-year useful life with a $3,000 salvage value.

Instructions

Journalize all entries required on the above dates, including entries to update depreciation, where applicable, on assets disposed of. Snow Company uses straight-line depreciation. (Assume depreciation is up to date as of December 31, 2011.)

Prepare entries to record transactions related to acquisition and amortization of intangibles; prepare the intangible assets section and note.
(SO 7, 8), AP

P9-4A The intangible assets section of Cepeda Corporation's balance sheet at December 31, 2012, is presented here.

Patents ($60,000 cost less $6,000 amortization)	$54,000
Copyrights ($36,000 cost less $25,200 amortization)	10,800
Total	$64,800

The patent was acquired in January 2012 and has a useful life of 10 years. The copyright was acquired in January 2006 and also has a useful life of 10 years. The following cash transactions may have affected intangible assets during 2013.

Jan.	2	Paid $46,800 legal costs to successfully defend the patent against infringement by another company.
Jan.–June		Developed a new product, incurring $230,000 in research and development costs. A patent was granted for the product on July 1, and its useful life is equal to its legal life. Legal and other costs for the patent were $20,000.
Sept.	1	Paid $40,000 to a quarterback to appear in commercials advertising the company's products. The commercials will air in September and October.
Oct.	1	Acquired a copyright for $200,000. The copyright has a useful life and legal life of 50 years.

Instructions

(a) Prepare journal entries to record the transactions.
(b) Prepare journal entries to record the 2013 amortization expense for intangible assets.
(c) Prepare the intangible assets section of the balance sheet at December 31, 2013. (c) Tot. intangibles $315,300
(d) Prepare the note to the financial statements on Cepeda Corporation's intangible assets as of December 31, 2013.

P9-5A Due to rapid employee turnover in the accounting department, the following transactions involving intangible assets were improperly recorded by Neitzke Corporation in 2012.

Prepare entries to correct errors in recording and amortizing intangible assets. (SO 7), **AP**

1. Neitzke developed a new manufacturing process, incurring research and development costs of $160,000. The company also purchased a patent for $40,000. In early January, Neitzke capitalized $200,000 as the cost of the patents. Patent amortization expense of $10,000 was recorded based on a 20-year useful life.
2. On July 1, 2012, Neitzke purchased a small company and as a result acquired goodwill of $80,000. Neitzke recorded a half-year's amortization in 2012, based on a 20-year life ($2,000 amortization). The goodwill has an indefinite life.

Instructions

Prepare all journal entries necessary to correct any errors made during 2012. Assume the books have not yet been closed for 2012.

P9-6A Phelan Corporation and Keevin Corporation, two companies of roughly the same size, are both involved in the manufacture of shoe-tracing devices. Each company depreciates its plant assets using the straight-line approach. An investigation of their financial statements reveals the information shown below.

Calculate and comment on return on assets, profit margin, and asset turnover ratio. (SO 6), **AN**

	Phelan Corp.	Keevin Corp.
Net income	$ 240,000	$ 300,000
Sales	1,150,000	1,200,000
Total assets (average)	3,200,000	3,000,000
Plant assets (average)	2,400,000	1,800,000
Intangible assets (goodwill)	300,000	0

Instructions

(a) For each company, calculate these values:
  (1) Return on assets ratio.
  (2) Profit margin.
  (3) Asset turnover ratio.
(b) Based on your calculations in part (a), comment on the relative effectiveness of the two companies in using their assets to generate sales. What factors complicate your ability to compare the two companies?

***P9-7A** In recent years, Walz Company has purchased three machines. Because of frequent employee turnover in the accounting department, a different accountant was in charge of selecting the depreciation method for each machine, and various methods have been used. Information concerning the machines is summarized in the table below.

Compute depreciation under different methods. (SO 3, 9), **AP**

Machine	Acquired	Cost	Salvage Value	Useful Life (in years)	Depreciation Method
1	Jan. 1, 2010	$96,000	$12,000	8	Straight-line
2	July 1, 2011	85,000	10,000	5	Declining-balance
3	Nov. 1, 2011	66,000	6,000	6	Units-of-activity

For the declining-balance method, Walz Company uses the double-declining rate. For the units-of-activity method, total machine hours are expected to be 30,000. Actual hours of use in the first 3 years were: 2011, 800; 2012, 4,500; and 2013, 6,000.

Instructions

(a) Compute the amount of accumulated depreciation on each machine at December 31, 2013. (a) Machine 2 $60,520
(b) If machine 2 was purchased on April 1 instead of July 1, what would be the depreciation expense for this machine in 2011? In 2012?

Compute depreciation under different methods.
(SO 3, 9), **AP**

***P9-8A** Rogers Corporation purchased machinery on January 1, 2012, at a cost of $250,000. The estimated useful life of the machinery is 4 years, with an estimated salvage value at the end of that period of $30,000. The company is considering different depreciation methods that could be used for financial reporting purposes.

Instructions

(a) Double-declining-balance expense 2014 $31,250

(a) Prepare separate depreciation schedules for the machinery using the straight-line method, and the declining-balance method using double the straight-line rate. Round to the nearest dollar.
(b) Which method would result in the higher reported 2012 income? In the highest total reported income over the 4-year period?
(c) Which method would result in the lower reported 2012 income? In the lowest total reported income over the 4-year period?

Problems: Set B

Determine acquisition costs of land and building.
(SO 1), **C**

P9-1B Franz Company was organized on January 1. During the first year of operations, the following plant asset expenditures and receipts were recorded in random order.

	Debits	
1.	Cost of real estate purchased as a plant site (land $190,000 and building $80,000)	$ 270,000
2.	Accrued real estate taxes paid at time of purchase of real estate	6,000
3.	Cost of demolishing building to make land suitable for construction of new building	32,000
4.	Cost of filling and grading the land	6,700
5.	Excavation costs for new building	21,900
6.	Architect's fees on building plans	44,000
7.	Full payment to building contractor	629,500
8.	Cost of parking lots and driveways	36,000
9.	Real estate taxes paid for the current year on land	7,300
		$1,053,400
	Credits	
10.	Proceeds for salvage of demolished building	$ 12,700

Instructions

Analyze the transactions using the table column headings provided here. Enter the number of each transaction in the Item column, and enter the amounts in the appropriate columns. For amounts in the Other Accounts column, also indicate the account titles.

Land $302,000

Item	Land	Buildings	Other Accounts

Journalize equipment transactions related to purchase, sale, retirement, and depreciation.
(SO 3, 5, 8), **AP**

P9-2B At December 31, 2011, Craig Corporation reported these plant assets.

Land		$ 4,000,000
Buildings	$28,800,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation—buildings	11,520,000	17,280,000
Equipment	48,000,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation—equipment	5,000,000	43,000,000
Total plant assets		$64,280,000

During 2012, the following selected cash transactions occurred.

Apr.	1	Purchased land for $2,600,000.
May	1	Sold equipment that cost $750,000 when purchased on January 1, 2007. The equipment was sold for $367,000.
June	1	Sold land purchased on June 1, 2000, for $1,800,000. The land cost $800,000.
Sept.	1	Purchased equipment for $840,000.
Dec.	31	Retired fully depreciated equipment that cost $470,000 when purchased on December 31, 2002. No salvage value was received.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions. (*Hint:* You may wish to set up T accounts, post beginning balances, and then post 2012 transactions.) Craig uses straight-line depreciation for buildings and equipment. The buildings are estimated to have a 40-year life and no salvage value; the equipment is estimated to have a 10-year useful life and no salvage value. Update depreciation on assets disposed of at the time of sale or retirement.

(b) Record adjusting entries for depreciation for 2012. (*Note:* The only assets that are fully depreciated are those that were retired on December 31.)

(c) Prepare the plant assets section of Craig's balance sheet at December 31, 2012.

(c) Tot. plant assets $61,072,000

P9-3B Here are selected transactions for Halverson Corporation for 2012.

Journalize entries for disposal of plant assets.
(SO 5), **AP**

Jan.	1	Retired a piece of machinery that was purchased on January 1, 2002. The machine cost $47,000 and had a useful life of 10 years with no salvage value.
Mar.	31	Sold a computer that was purchased on January 1, 2009. The computer cost $43,400 and had a useful life of 7 years with no salvage value. The computer was sold for $25,000.
Dec.	31	Discarded a delivery truck that was purchased on January 1, 2009. The truck cost $30,000 and was depreciated based on a 6-year useful life with a $3,000 salvage value.

Instructions

Journalize all entries required on the above dates, including entries to update depreciation on assets disposed of, where applicable. Halverson Corporation uses straight-line depreciation.

P9-4B The intangible assets section of the balance sheet for Vincent Company at December 31, 2012, is presented here.

Prepare entries to record transactions related to acquisition and amortization of intangibles; prepare the intangible assets section and note.
(SO 7, 8), **AP**

Patents ($70,000 cost less $7,000 amortization)	$63,000
Copyrights ($48,000 cost less $18,000 amortization)	30,000
Total	$93,000

The patent was acquired in January 2012 and has a useful life of 10 years. The copyright was acquired in January 2010 and also has a useful life of 8 years. The following cash transactions may have affected intangible assets during 2013.

Jan.	2	Paid $36,000 legal costs to successfully defend the patent against infringement by another company.
Jan.–June		Developed a new product, incurring $220,000 in research and development costs. A patent was granted for the product on July 1, and its useful life is equal to its legal life. Legal and other costs for the patent were $18,000.
Sept.	1	Paid $110,000 to an extremely large defensive lineman to appear in commercials advertising the company's products. The commercials will air in September and October.
Oct.	1	Acquired a copyright for $120,000. The copyright has a useful life and legal life of 50 years.

Instructions

(a) Prepare journal entries to record the transactions.

(b) Prepare journal entries to record the 2013 amortization expense.

(c) Prepare the intangible assets section of the balance sheet at December 31, 2013.

(d) Prepare the note to the financial statements on Vincent Company's intangible assets as of December 31, 2013.

(c) Tot. intangibles $248,950

P9-5B Due to rapid employee turnover in the accounting department, the following transactions involving intangible assets were improperly recorded by the Demeyer Company in 2012.

Prepare entries to correct errors in recording and amortizing intangible assets.
(SO 7), **AP**

1. Demeyer developed a new manufacturing process, incurring research and development costs of $150,000. The company also purchased a patent for $96,000. In early January, Demeyer capitalized $246,000 as the cost of the patents. Patent amortization expense of $24,600 was recorded based on a 10-year useful life.
2. On July 1, 2012, Demeyer purchased a small company and as a result acquired goodwill of $40,000. Demeyer recorded a half-year's amortization in 2012, based on a 40-year life ($500 amortization). The goodwill has an indefinite life.

Instructions

Prepare all journal entries necessary to correct any errors made during 2012. Assume the books have not yet been closed for 2012.

Calculate and comment on return on assets, profit margin, and asset turnover ratio.

(SO 6), **AN**

P9-6B Culver Corporation and Kiltie Corporation, two corporations of roughly the same size, are both involved in the manufacture of umbrellas. Each company depreciates its plant assets using the straight-line approach. An investigation of their financial statements reveals the following information.

	Culver Corp.	Kiltie Corp.
Net income	$ 780,000	$ 900,000
Sales	2,400,000	2,500,000
Total assets (average)	3,000,000	2,700,000
Plant assets (average)	1,400,000	1,200,000
Intangible assets (goodwill)	480,000	0

Instructions

(a) For each company, calculate these values:
  (1) Return on assets ratio.
  (2) Profit margin.
  (3) Asset turnover ratio.

(b) Based on your calculations in part (a), comment on the relative effectiveness of the two companies in using their assets to generate sales. What factors complicate your ability to compare the two companies?

Compute depreciation under different methods.

(SO 3, 9), **AP**

***P9-7B** In recent years, Harper Transportation purchased three used buses. Because of frequent employee turnover in the accounting department, a different accountant selected the depreciation method for each bus, and various methods have been used. Information concerning the buses is summarized in the table below.

Bus	Acquired	Cost	Salvage Value	Useful Life (in years)	Depreciation Method
1	Jan. 1, 2011	$ 96,000	$ 6,000	5	Straight-line
2	Jan. 1, 2011	135,000	10,000	4	Declining-balance
3	Jan. 1, 2011	100,000	4,000	5	Units-of-activity

For the declining-balance method, Harper Transportation uses the double-declining rate. For the units-of-activity method, total miles are expected to be 160,000. Actual miles of use in the first 3 years were: 2011, 29,000; 2012, 34,000; and 2013, 35,000.

Instructions

(a) Bus 1 $54,000

(a) Compute the amount of accumulated depreciation on each bus at December 31, 2013.

(b) If Bus 2 was purchased on March 1 instead of January 1, what would be the depreciation expense for this bus in 2011? In 2012?

Compute depreciation under different methods.

(SO 3, 9), **AP**

***P9-8B** Kiram Corporation purchased machinery on January 1, 2012, at a cost of $350,000. The estimated useful life of the machinery is 5 years, with an estimated salvage value at the end of that period of $20,000. The company is considering different depreciation methods that could be used for financial reporting purposes.

Instructions

(a) Double-declining-balance exp. 2013 $84,000

(a) Prepare separate depreciation schedules for the machinery using the straight-line method, and the declining-balance method using double the straight-line rate.

(b) Which method would result in the higher reported 2012 income? In the higher total reported income over the 5-year period?

(c) Which method would result in the lower reported 2012 income? In the lower total reported income over the 5-year period?

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Comprehensive Problem

CP9 Paulson Corporation's unadjusted trial balance at December 1, 2012, is presented below.

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$ 22,000	
Accounts Receivable	36,800	
Notes Receivable	10,000	
Interest Receivable	–0–	
Inventory	36,200	
Prepaid Insurance	3,600	
Land	20,000	
Buildings	150,000	
Equipment	60,000	
Patent	9,000	
Allowance for Doubtful Accounts		$ 500
Accumulated Depreciation—Buildings		50,000
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		24,000
Accounts Payable		27,300
Salaries and Wages Payable		–0–
Notes Payable (due April 30, 2013)		11,000
Interest Payable		–0–
Notes Payable (due in 2018)		35,000
Common Stock		50,000
Retained Earnings		63,600
Dividends	12,000	
Sales Revenue		900,000
Interest Revenue		–0–
Gain on Disposal of Plant Assets		–0–
Bad Debts Expense	–0–	
Cost of Goods Sold	630,000	
Depreciation Expense	–0–	
Insurance Expense	–0–	
Interest Expense	–0–	
Other Operating Expenses	61,800	
Amortization Expense	–0–	
Salaries and Wages Expense	110,000	
Total	$1,161,400	$1,161,400

The following transactions occurred during December.

Dec. 2 Paulson purchased equipment for $16,000, plus sales taxes of $800 (all paid in cash).

2 Paulson sold for $3,500 equipment which originally cost $5,000. Accumulated depreciation on this equipment at January 1, 2012, was $1,800; 2012 depreciation prior to the sale of equipment was $450.

15 Paulson sold for $5,000 on account inventory that cost $3,500.

23 Salaries and wages of $6,600 were paid.

Adjustment data:

1. Paulson estimates that uncollectible accounts receivable at year-end are $4,000.
2. The note receivable is a one-year, 8% note dated April 1, 2012. No interest has been recorded.
3. The balance in prepaid insurance represents payment of a $3,600, 6-month premium on September 1, 2012.
4. The building is being depreciated using the straight-line method over 30 years. The salvage value is $30,000.
5. The equipment owned prior to this year is being depreciated using the straight-line method over 5 years. The salvage value is 10% of cost.
6. The equipment purchased on December 2, 2012, is being depreciated using the straight-line method over 5 years, with a salvage value of $1,800.

7. The patent was acquired on January 1, 2012, and has a useful life of 9 years from that date.
8. Unpaid salaries at December 31, 2012, total $2,200.
9. Both the short-term and long-term notes payable are dated January 1, 2012, and carry a 10% interest rate. All interest is payable in the next 12 months.
10. Income tax expense was $15,000. It was unpaid at December 31.

Instructions

(a) Prepare journal entries for the transactions listed above and adjusting entries.
(b) Prepare an adjusted trial balance at December 31, 2012.
(c) Prepare a 2012 income statement and a 2012 retained earnings statement.
(d) Prepare a December 31, 2012, balance sheet.

(b) Totals $1,205,400
(c) Net income $51,150
(d) Total assets $247,850

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapters 1 through 8.)

CCC9

Part 1 Now that she is selling mixers and her customers can use credit cards to pay for them, Natalie is thinking of upgrading her website so that she can sell mixers online, to broaden her range of customers. She will need to known how to account for the costs of upgrading the site.

Part 2 Natalie is also thinking of buying a van that will be used only for business. Natalie is concerned about the impact of the van's cost on her income statement and balance sheet. She has come to you for advice on calculating the van's depreciation.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to see the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.*

BYP9-1 Refer to the financial statements and the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements of Tootsie Roll Industries in Appendix A.

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) What were the total cost and book value of property, plant, and equipment at December 31, 2009?
(b) What method or methods of depreciation are used by Tootsie Roll for financial reporting purposes?
(c) What was the amount of depreciation and amortization expense for each of the 3 years 2007–2009? (*Hint:* Use the statement of cash flows.)
(d) Using the statement of cash flows, what are the amounts of property, plant, and equipment purchased (capital expenditures) in 2009 and 2008?
(e) Explain how Tootsie Roll accounted for its intangible assets in 2009.

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP9-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company are presented in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll Industries in Appendix A.

Instructions

(a) Based on the information in these financial statements and the accompanying notes and schedules, compute the following values for each company in 2009.
  (1) Return on assets ratio.
  (2) Profit margin (use "Total Revenue").
  (3) Asset turnover ratio.
(b) What conclusions concerning the management of plant assets can be drawn from these data?

RESEARCH CASE

BYP9-3 The September 9, 2007, issue of the *New York Times* includes an article by Denise Caruso entitled "When Balance Sheets Collide with the New Economy."

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following questions.

(a) What are some examples of "valuable assets" that the article says currently do not have a home on the balance sheet?

(b) What examples does the company give of the value of reputation and how it can affect a stock price?

(c) What justification does the article give for having companies report on their environmental and social responsibility, and their strategy for dealing with disasters?

(d) Are any initiatives currently being used that try to account for intangible assets that do not currently show up on the balance sheet?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP9-4 Bob Evans Farms, Inc. operates 714 restaurants in 31 states and produces fresh and fully cooked sausage products, fresh salads, and related products distributed to grocery stores in the Midwest, Southwest, and Southeast. For a recent 3-year period, Bob Evans Farms reported the following selected income statement data (in millions of dollars).

	2009	2008	2007
Sales	$1,750.5	$1,737.0	$1,654.5
Cost of goods sold	537.1	517.4	482.1
Net income	62.9*	64.9	60.5
Total assets	1,147.6	1,207.0	1,197.9

*In 2009, the company wrote off $68.0 million of goodwill and reported a net loss of $5.1 million. Since no similar write-offs occurred in 2007 or 2008, we are using income before the write-off as net income.

Instructions

(a) Compute the percentage change in sales and in net income from 2007 to 2009.

(b) What contribution, if any, did the company's gross profit rate make to the change in earnings from 2007 to 2009?

(c) What was Bob Evans's profit margin ratio in each of the 3 years? Comment on any trend in this percentage.

(d) The chief executive officer's letter stated that the company slowed its expansion, opening 1 new restaurant in 2009 and 2 in 2008, compared to 10 openings in 2007. What effect would you expect this change, along with the write-off of goodwill in 2009, to have on return on assets? Calculate the company's return on assets for 2008 and 2009 to support your answer.

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP9-5 ***Purpose:*** Use an annual report to identify a company's plant assets and the depreciation method used.

Address: **www.annualreports.com**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Select a particular company.
2. Search by company name.
3. Follow instructions below.

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) What is the name of the company?

(b) What is the Internet address of the annual report?

(c) At fiscal year-end, what is the net amount of its plant assets?

(d) What is the accumulated depreciation?

(e) Which method of depreciation does the company use?

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP9-6 Delzer Furniture Corp. is nationally recognized for making high-quality products. Management is concerned that it is not fully exploiting its brand power. Delzer's production managers are also concerned because their plants are not operating at anywhere near full capacity. Management is currently considering a proposal to offer a new line of affordable furniture.

Those in favor of the proposal (including the vice president of production) believe that, by offering these new products, the company could attract a clientele that it is not currently servicing. Also, it could operate its plants at full capacity, thus taking better advantage of its assets.

The vice president of marketing, however, believes that the lower-priced (and lower-margin) product would have a negative impact on the sales of existing products. The vice president believes that $10,000,000 of the sales of the new product will be from customers that would have purchased the more expensive product but switched to the lower-margin product because it was available. (This is often referred to as cannibalization of existing sales.) Top management feels, however, that even with cannibalization, the company's sales will increase and the company will be better off.

The following data are available.

(in thousands)	Current Results	Proposed Results without Cannibalization	Proposed Results with Cannibalization
Sales	$45,000	$60,000	$50,000
Net income	$12,000	$13,500	$12,000
Average total assets	$100,000	$100,000	$100,000

Instructions

(a) Compute Delzer's return on assets ratio, profit margin ratio, and asset turnover ratio, both with and without the new product line.
(b) Discuss the implications that your findings in part (a) have for Delzer's decision.
(c) Are there any other options that Delzer should consider? What impact would each of these have on the above ratios?

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP9-7 The chapter presented some concerns regarding the current accounting standards for research and development expenditures.

Instructions

Assume that you are either (a) the president of a company that is very dependent on ongoing research and development, writing a memo to the FASB complaining about the current accounting standards regarding research and development, or (b) the FASB member defending the current standards regarding research and development. Your memo should address the following questions.

1. By requiring expensing of R&D, do you think companies will spend less on R&D? Why or why not? What are the possible implications for the competitiveness of U.S. companies?
2. If a company makes a commitment to spend money for R&D, it must believe it has future benefits. Shouldn't these costs therefore be capitalized just like the purchase of any long-lived asset that you believe will have future benefits?

ETHICS CASE

BYP9-8 Clean Air Anti-Pollution Company is suffering declining sales of its principal product, nonbiodegradable plastic cartons. The president, Dixon Nuber, instructs his controller, Gavin Wood, to lengthen asset lives to reduce depreciation expense. A processing line of automated plastic extruding equipment, purchased for $3.5 million in January 2011, was originally estimated to have a useful life of 8 years and a salvage value of $400,000. Depreciation has been recorded for 2 years on that basis. Dixon wants the estimated life changed to 12 years total and the straight-line method continued. Gavin is hesitant to make the change, believing it is unethical to increase net income in this manner. Dixon says, "Hey, the life is only an estimate, and I've heard that our competition uses a 12-year life on their production equipment."

Instructions

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?
(b) Is the proposed change in asset life unethical, or is it simply a good business practice by an astute president?
(c) What is the effect of Dixon's proposed change on income before taxes in the year of change?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP9-9 A company's tradename is a very important asset to the company, as it creates immediate product identification. Companies invest substantial sums to ensure that their product is well-known to the consumer. Test your knowledge of who owns some famous brands and their impact on the financial statements.

Instructions

(a) Provide an answer to the five multiple-choice questions below.

(1) Which company owns both Taco Bell and Pizza Hut?
(a) McDonald's. (c) Yum Brands.
(b) CKE. (d) Wendy's.

(2) Dairy Queen belongs to:
(a) Breyer. (c) GE.
(b) Berkshire Hathaway. (d) The Coca-Cola Company.

(3) Phillip Morris, the cigarette maker, is owned by:
(a) Altria. (c) Boeing.
(b) GE. (d) ExxonMobil.

(4) AOL, a major Internet provider, belongs to:
(a) Microsoft. (c) NBC.
(b) Cisco. (d) Time Warner.

(5) ESPN, the sports broadcasting network, is owned by:
(a) Procter & Gamble. (c) Walt Disney.
(b) Altria. (d) The Coca-Cola Company.

(b) How do you think the value of these brands is reported on the appropriate company's balance sheet?

FASB CODIFICATION ACTIVITY

BYP9-10 If your school has a subscription to the FASB Codification, go to **http://aaahq.org/ascLogin.cfm** to log in and prepare responses to the following.

(a) What does it mean to capitalize an item?
(b) What is the definition provided for an intangible asset?
(c) Your great-uncle, who is a CPA, is impressed that you are taking an accounting class. Based on his experience, he believes that depreciation is something that companies do based on past practice, not on the basis of authoritative guidance. Provide the authoritative literature to support the practice of fixed-asset depreciation.

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 452 Many U.S. Firms Use Leases **Q:** Why might airline managers choose to lease rather than purchase their planes? **A:** The reasons for leasing include favorable tax treatment, better financing options, increased flexibility, reduced risk of obsolescence, and low airline income.

p. 465 Marketing ROI as Profit Indicator **Q:** How does measuring marketing ROI support the overall efforts of the organization? **A:** Top management is ultimately concerned about maximizing the company's return on assets. Holding marketing managers accountable for the marketing ROI will contribute to the company's overall goal of maximizing return on assets.

p. 471 Should Companies Write Up Goodwill? **Q:** Do you think that this treatment would be allowed under U.S. GAAP? **A:** The write-down of assets would have been allowed if it could be shown that the assets had declined in value (an impairment). However, the creation of goodwill to offset the write-down would not have been allowed. Goodwill can be recorded only when it results from the acquisition of a business. It cannot be recorded as the result of being created internally.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. d ($24,000 + $1,200 + $200 + $400) **2.** a **3.** b **4.** d (($400,000 − $10,000) ÷ 5) × 2 **5.** c **6.** b **7.** d (($60,000 − $12,000) ÷ 10) × 2 = $9,600; ($60,000 − $9,600 − $2,000) ÷ 4 **8.** d **9.** a (($80,000 − 0) ÷ 10) × 4.5 = $36,000; ($26,000 − ($80,000 − $36,000)) **10.** d **11.** c $180,000 ÷ (($200,000 + $300,000) ÷ 2) **12.** b ($20,000 + $15,000) **13.** c **14.** c **15.** d ***16.** d

IFRS A Look at IFRS

IFRS related to property, plant, and equipment is found in *IAS 16* ("Property, Plant and Equipment") and *IAS 23* ("Borrowing Costs"). IFRS follows most of the same principles as GAAP in the accounting for property, plant, and equipment. There are, however, some significant differences in the implementation: IFRS allows the use of revaluation of property, plant, and equipment, and it also requires the use of component depreciation. In addition, there are some significant differences in the accounting for both intangible assets and impairments. IFRS related to intangible assets is presented in *IAS 38* ("Intangible Assets"). IFRS related to impairments is found in *IAS 36* ("Impairment of Assets").

KEY POINTS

- The definition for plant assets for both IFRS and GAAP is essentially the same.
- Both international standards and GAAP follow the cost principle when accounting for property, plant, and equipment at date of acquisition. Cost consists of all expenditures necessary to acquire the asset and make it ready for its intended use.
- Under both IFRS and GAAP, interest costs incurred during construction are capitalized. Recently, IFRS converged to GAAP requirements in this area.
- IFRS, like GAAP, capitalizes all direct costs in self-constructed assets such as raw materials and labor. IFRS does not address the capitalization of fixed overhead, although in practice these costs are generally capitalized.
- IFRS also views depreciation as an allocation of cost over an asset's useful life. IFRS permits the same depreciation methods (e.g., straight-line, accelerated, and units-of-activity) as GAAP. However, a major difference is that IFRS requires component depreciation. *Component depreciation* specifies that any significant parts of a depreciable asset that have different estimated useful lives should be separately depreciated. Component depreciation is allowed under GAAP but is seldom used.

  To illustrate, assume that Lexure Construction builds an office building for $4,000,000, not including the cost of the land. If the $4,000,000 is allocated over the 40-year useful life of the building, Lexure reports $100,000 of depreciation per year, assuming straight-line depreciation and no disposal value. However, assume that $320,000 of the cost of the building relates to personal property and $600,000 relates to land improvements. The personal property has a depreciable life of 5 years, and the land improvements have a depreciable life of 10 years. In accordance with IFRS, Lexure must use component depreciation. It must reclassify $320,000 of the cost of the building to personal property and $600,000 to the cost of land improvements. Assuming that Lexure uses straight-line depreciation, component depreciation for the first year of the office building is computed as follows.

Building cost adjusted ($4,000,000 − $320,000 − $600,000)	$3,080,000
Building cost depreciation per year ($3,080,000/40)	$ 77,000
Personal property depreciation ($320,000/5)	64,000
Land improvements depreciation ($600,000/10)	60,000
Total component depreciation in first year	$ 201,000

- IFRS uses the term *residual value,* rather than salvage value, to refer to an owner's estimate of an asset's value at the end of its useful life for that owner.
- IFRS allows companies to revalue plant assets to fair value at the reporting date. Companies that choose to use the revaluation framework must follow revaluation procedures. If revaluation is used, it must be applied to all assets in a class of assets. Assets that are experiencing rapid price changes must be revalued on an annual basis, otherwise less frequent revaluation is acceptable.

  To illustrate asset revaluation accounting, assume that Pernice Company applies revaluation to plant assets with a carrying value of $1,000,000, a useful life of 5 years, and no residual value. Pernice makes the following journal entries in year 1, assuming straight-line depreciation.

Depreciation Expense	200,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Plant Assets		200,000
(To record depreciation expense in year 1)		

After this entry, Pernice's plant assets have a carrying amount of $800,000 ($1,000,000 − $200,000). At the end of year 1, independent appraisers determine that the asset has a fair value of $850,000. To report the plant assets at fair value, or $850,000, Pernice eliminates the Accumulated Depreciation—Plant Assets account, reduces Plant Assets to its fair value of $850,000, and records Revaluation Surplus of $50,000.The entry to record the revaluation is as follows.

Accumulated Depreciation—Plant Assets	200,000	
Plant Assets		150,000
Revaluation Surplus		50,000
(To record adjusting the plant assets to fair value)		

Thus, Pernice follows a two-step process. First, Pernice records depreciation based on the cost basis of $1,000,000. As a result, it reports depreciation expense of $200,000 on the income statement. Second, it records the revaluation. It does this by eliminating any accumulated depreciation, adjusting the recorded value of the plant assets to fair value, and debiting or crediting the Revaluation Surplus account. In this example, the revaluation surplus is $50,000, which is the difference between the fair value of $850,000 and the book value of $800,000. Revaluation surplus is an example of an item reported as other comprehensive income, as discussed in the *A Look at IFRS* section of Chapter 5. Pernice now reports the following information in its statement of financial position at the end of year 1.

Plant assets ($1,000,000 − $150,000)	$850,000
Accumulated depreciation—plant assets	0
	$850,000
Revaluation surplus (equity)	$ 50,000

As indicated, $850,000 is the new basis of the asset. Pernice reports depreciation expense of $200,000 in the income statement and $50,000 in other comprehensive income. Assuming no change in the total useful life, depreciation in year 2 will be $212,500 ($850,000 ÷ 4).

- Under both GAAP and IFRS, changes in the depreciation method used and changes in useful life are handled in current and future periods. Prior periods are not affected. GAAP recently conformed to international standards in the accounting for changes in depreciation methods.
- The accounting for subsequent expenditures, such as ordinary repairs and additions, are essentially the same under IFRS and GAAP.
- The accounting for plant asset disposals is essentially the same under IFRS and GAAP.
- Initial costs to acquire natural resources are essentially the same under IFRS and GAAP.
- The definition of intangible assets is essentially the same under IFRS and GAAP.
- Intangibles generally arise when a company buys another company. In this case, specific criteria are needed to separate goodwill from other intangibles. Both GAAP and IFRS follow the same approach to make this separation, that is, companies recognize an intangible asset separately from goodwill if the intangible represents contractual or legal rights or is capable of being separated or divided and sold, transferred, licensed, rented, or exchanged. In addition, under both GAAP and IFRS, companies recognize acquired in-process research and development (IPR&D) as a separate intangible asset if it meets the definition of an intangible asset and its fair value can be measured reliably.
- As in GAAP, under IFRS the costs associated with research and development are segregated into the two components. Costs in the research phase are always expensed under both IFRS and GAAP. Under IFRS, however, costs in the development phase are capitalized as Development Costs once technological feasibility is achieved.

To illustrate, assume that Laser Scanner Company spent $1 million on research and $2 million on development of new products. Of the $2 million in development costs, $500,000 was incurred prior to technological feasibility and $1,500,000 was incurred after technological feasibility had been demonstrated. The company would record these costs as follows.

Research Expense	1,000,000	
Development Expense	500,000	
Development Costs	1,500,000	
Cash		3,000,000
(To record research and development costs)		

- IFRS permits revaluation of intangible assets (except for goodwill). GAAP prohibits revaluation of intangible assets.
- IFRS requires an impairment test at each reporting date for plant assets and intangibles and records an impairment if the asset's carrying amount exceeds its recoverable amount. The recoverable amount is the higher of the asset's fair value less costs to sell or its value-in-use. Value-in-use is the future cash flows to be derived from the particular asset, discounted to present value. Under GAAP, impairment loss is measured as the excess of the carrying amount over the asset's fair value.
- IFRS allows reversal of impairment losses when there has been a change in economic conditions or in the expected use of the asset. Under GAAP, impairment losses cannot be reversed for assets to be held and used; the impairment loss results in a new cost basis for the asset. IFRS and GAAP are similar in the accounting for impairments of assets held for disposal.
- The accounting for exchanges of nonmonetary assets has recently converged between IFRS and GAAP. GAAP now requires that gains on exchanges of nonmonetary assets be recognized if the exchange has commercial substance. This is the same framework used in IFRS.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

With respect to revaluations, as part of the conceptual framework project, the Boards will examine the measurement bases used in accounting. It is too early to say whether a converged conceptual framework will recommend fair value measurement (and revaluation accounting) for plant assets and intangibles. However, this is likely to be one of the more contentious issues, given the long-standing use of historical cost as a measurement basis in GAAP.

The IASB and FASB have identified a project that would consider expanded recognition of internally generated intangible assets. IFRS permits more recognition of intangibles compared to GAAP. Thus, it will be challenging to develop converged standards for intangible assets, given the long-standing prohibition on capitalizing internally generated intangible assets and research and development costs in GAAP.

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. Which of the following statements is *correct*?
(a) Both IFRS and GAAP permit revaluation of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets (except for goodwill).
(b) IFRS permits revaluation of property, plant, and equipment and intangible assets (except for goodwill).
(c) Both IFRS and GAAP permit revaluation of property, plant, and equipment but not intangible assets.
(d) GAAP permits revaluation of property, plant, and equipment but not intangible assets.

2. International Company has land that cost $450,000 but now has a fair value of $600,000. International Company decides to use the revaluation method specified in IFRS to account for the land. Which of the following statements is *correct*?
(a) International Company must continue to report the land at $450,000.
(b) International Company would report a net income increase of $150,000 due to an increase in the value of the land.
(c) International Company would debit Revaluation Surplus for $150,000.
(d) International Company would credit Revaluation Surplus by $150,000.

3. Francisco Corporation is constructing a new building at a total initial cost of $10,000,000. The building is expected to have a useful live of 50 years with no residual value. The building's finished surfaces (e.g., roof cover and floor cover) are 5% of this cost and have a useful life of 20 years. Building services systems (e.g., electric, heating, and plumbing) are 20% of the cost and have a useful life of 25 years. The depreciation in the first year using component depreciation, assuming straight-line depreciation with no residual value, is:
(a) $200,000.
(b) $215,000.
(c) $255,000.
(d) None of the above.

4. Research and development costs are:
(a) expensed under GAAP.
(b) expensed under IFRS.
(c) expensed under both GAAP and IFRS.
(d) None of the above.

5. Under IFRS, value-in-use is defined as:
(a) net realizable value.
(b) fair value.
(c) future cash flows discounted to present value.
(d) total future undiscounted cash flows.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS9–1 What is component depreciation, and when must it be used?

IFRS9–2 What is revaluation of plant assets? When should revaluation be applied?

IFRS9–3 Some product development expenditures are recorded as development expenses and others as development costs. Explain the difference between these accounts and how a company decides which classification is appropriate.

IFRS9–4 Mandall Company constructed a warehouse for $280,000. Mandall estimates that the warehouse has a useful life of 20 years and no residual value. Construction records indicate that $40,000 of the cost of the warehouse relates to its heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) system, which has an estimated useful life of only 10 years. Compute the first year of depreciation expense using straight-line component depreciation.

IFRS9–5 At the end of its first year of operations, Brianna Company chose to use the revaluation framework allowed under IFRS. Brianna's ledger shows Plant Assets $480,000 and Accumulated Depreciation—Plant Assets $60,000. Prepare journal entries to record the following.
(a) Independent appraisers determine that the plant assets have a fair value of $460,000.
(b) Independent appraisers determine that the plant assets have a fair value of $400,000.

IFRS9–6 Newell Industries spent $300,000 on research and $600,000 on development of a new product. Of the $600,000 in development costs, $400,000 was incurred prior to technological feasibility and $200,000 after technological feasibility had been demonstrated. Prepare the journal entry to record research and development costs.

INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL STATEMENT ANALYSIS: *Zetar plc*

IFRS9–7 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C.

Instructions
Use the company's annual report, available at **www.zetarplc.com**, to answer the following questions.
(a) According to the notes to the financial statements, what method or methods does the company use to depreciate "plant and equipment?" What rate does it use to depreciate plant and equipment?
(b) According to the notes to the financial statements, how often is goodwill tested for impairment?
(c) Using the notes to the financial statements, as well as information from the statement of cash flows, prepare the journal entry to record the disposal of property, plant and equipment during 2009. (Round your amounts to the nearest thousand.)

Answers to IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. b **2.** d **3.** c (($10,000,000 × .05)/20) + (($10,000,000 × .20)/25) + (($10,000,000 × .75)/50)
4. a **5.** c

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 10

REPORTING AND ANALYZING LIABILITIES

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** **Do it!**
  p. 509 ◯ p. 512 ◯ p. 515 ◯
  p. 520 ◯ p. 521 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** **Do it!** p. 539 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 564 ◯

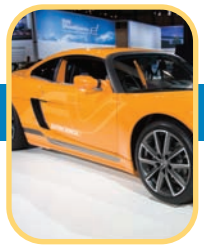
study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Explain a current liability and identify the major types of current liabilities.
2. Describe the accounting for notes payable.
3. Explain the accounting for other current liabilities.
4. Identify the types of bonds.
5. Prepare the entries for the issuance of bonds and interest expense.
6. Describe the entries when bonds are redeemed.
7. Identify the requirements for the financial statement presentation and analysis of liabilities.

the navigator

feature story



AND THEN THERE WERE TWO

Debt can help a company acquire the things it needs to grow, but it is often the very thing that kills a company. A brief history of Maxwell Car Company illustrates the role of debt in the U.S. auto industry. In 1920, Maxwell Car Company was on the brink of financial ruin. Because it was unable to pay its bills, its creditors stepped in and took over. They hired a former General Motors executive named Walter Chrysler to reorganize the company. By 1925, he had taken over the company and renamed it Chrysler. By 1933, Chrysler was booming, with sales surpassing even those of Ford.

But the next few decades saw Chrysler make a series of blunders. By 1980, with its creditors pounding at the gates, Chrysler was again on the brink of financial ruin.

At that point, Chrysler brought in a former Ford executive named Lee Iacocca to save the company. Iacocca argued that the United States could not afford to let Chrysler fail because of the loss of jobs. He convinced the federal government to grant loan guarantees—promises that if Chrysler failed to pay its creditors, the government would pay them. Iacocca then streamlined operations and brought out some profitable products. Chrysler repaid all of its government-guaranteed loans by 1983, seven years ahead of the scheduled final payment.

To compete in today's global vehicle market, you must be big—really big. So in 1998, Chrysler merged with German automaker Daimler-Benz, to form DaimlerChrysler. For a time, this left just two U.S.-based auto manufacturers—General Motors and Ford. But in 2007, DaimlerChrysler sold 81% of Chrysler to Cerberus, an investment group, to provide much-needed cash infusions to the automaker. In 2009, Daimler turned over its remaining stake to Cerberus. Three days later, Chrysler filed for bankruptcy. But by 2010, it was beginning to show signs of a turnaround.

These companies are giants. General Motors and Ford typically rank among the top five U.S. firms in total assets. But General Motors and Ford have accumulated a truckload of debt on their way to getting this big. Although debt has made it possible to get so big, the Chrysler story makes it clear that debt can also threaten a company's survival.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 10 . . .

- **When Convertible Bonds Don't** *(p. 513)*
- **Debt Masking** *(p. 526)*
- **"Covenant-Lite" Debt** *(p. 528)*

preview of chapter 10

The Feature Story suggests that General Motors and Ford have tremendous amounts of debt. It is unlikely that they could have grown so large without this debt, but at times the debt threatens their very existence. Given this risk, why do companies borrow money? Why do they sometimes borrow short-term and other times long-term? Besides bank borrowings, what other kinds of debts do companies incur? In this chapter, we address these issues.

The content and organization of the chapter are as follows.

Reporting and Analyzing Liabilities

Current Liabilities	Bonds: Long-Term Liabilities	Accounting for Bond Issues	Accounting for Bond Retirements	Financial Statement Presentation and Analysis
• What is a current liability? • Notes payable • Sales taxes payable • Unearned revenues • Current maturities of long-term debt • Payroll and payroll taxes payable	• Types of bonds • Issuing procedures • Determining the market value of bonds	• Issuing bonds at face value • Discount or premium on bonds • Issuing bonds at a discount • Issuing bonds at a premium	• Redeeming bonds at maturity • Redeeming bonds before maturity	• Balance sheet presentation • Analysis • Off-balance-sheet financing

the navigator

Current Liabilities

WHAT IS A CURRENT LIABILITY?

study objective 1

Explain a current liability and identify the major types of current liabilities.

You have learned that liabilities are defined as "creditors' claims on total assets" and as "existing debts and obligations." Companies must settle or pay these claims, debts, and obligations at some time in the future by transferring assets or services. The future date on which they are due or payable (the maturity date) is a significant feature of liabilities.

As explained in Chapter 2, a **current liability** is a debt that a company reasonably expects to pay (1) from existing current assets or through the creation of other current liabilities, and (2) within one year or the operating cycle,whichever is longer. Debts that do not meet both criteria are **long-term liabilities**.

Financial statement users want to know whether a company's obligations are current or long-term. A company that has more current liabilities than current assets often lacks liquidity, or short-term debt-paying ability. In addition, users want to know the types of liabilities a company has. If a company declares bankruptcy, a specific, predetermined order of payment to creditors exists. Thus, the amount and type of liabilities are of critical importance.

Helpful Hint In previous chapters, we explained the entries for accounts payable and the adjusting entries for some current liabilities.

The different types of current liabilities include notes payable, accounts payable, unearned revenues, and accrued liabilities such as taxes, salaries and wages, and interest. In the sections that follow, we discuss a few of the common types of current liabilities.

NOTES PAYABLE

study objective 2

Describe the accounting for notes payable.

Companies record obligations in the form of written notes as **notes payable**. They often use notes payable instead of accounts payable because notes payable give the lender written documentation of the obligation in case legal remedies are needed to collect the debt. Companies frequently issue notes payable to meet short-term financing needs. Notes payable usually require the borrower to pay interest.

Notes are issued for varying periods of time. **Those due for payment within one year of the balance sheet date are usually classified as current liabilities.** Most notes are interest-bearing.

To illustrate the accounting for notes payable, assume that First National Bank agrees to lend $100,000 on September 1, 2012, if Cole Williams Co. signs a $100,000, 12%, four-month note maturing on January 1. When a company issues an interest-bearing note, the amount of assets it receives generally equals the note's face value. Cole Williams Co. therefore will receive $100,000 cash and will make the following journal entry.

Sept. 1	Cash	100,000	
	Notes Payable		100,000
	(To record issuance of 12%, 4-month note to First National Bank)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+100,000				
		+100,000		

Cash Flows
+100,000

Interest accrues over the life of the note, and the issuer must periodically record that accrual. (You may find it helpful to review the discussion of interest computations that was provided in Chapter 8, page 408, with regard to notes receivable.) If Cole Williams Co. prepares financial statements annually, it makes an adjusting entry at December 31 to recognize four months of interest expense and interest payable of $4,000 ($100,000 × 12% × $\frac{4}{12}$):

Dec. 31	Interest Expense	4,000	
	Interest Payable		4,000
	(To accrue interest for 4 months on First National Bank note)		

A	=	L	+	SE
				−4,000 Exp
		+4,000		

Cash Flows
no effect

In the December 31 financial statements, the current liabilities section of the balance sheet will show notes payable $100,000 and interest payable $4,000. In addition, the company will report interest expense of $4,000 under "Other expenses and losses" in the income statement.

At maturity (January 1), Cole Williams Co. must pay the face value of the note ($100,000) plus $4,000 interest ($100,000 × 12% × $\frac{4}{12}$). It records payment of the note and accrued interest as follows.

Jan. 1	Notes Payable	100,000	
	Interest Payable	4,000	
	Cash		104,000
	(To record payment of First National Bank interest-bearing note and accrued interest at maturity)		

A	=	L	+	SE
		−100,000		
		−4,000		
−104,000				

Cash Flows
−104,000

Appendix 10C at the end of this chapter discusses the accounting for long-term installment notes payable.

SALES TAXES PAYABLE

study objective 3
Explain the accounting for other current liabilities.

Many of the products we purchase at retail stores are subject to sales taxes. Many states are now implementing sales taxes on purchases made on the Internet as well. Sales taxes are expressed as a percentage of the sales price. The selling company collects the tax from the customer when the sale occurs and periodically (usually monthly) remits the collections to the state's department of revenue.

Helpful Hint Watch how sales are rung up at local retailers to see whether the sales tax is computed separately.

Under most state laws, the selling company must ring up separately on the cash register the amount of the sale and the amount of the sales tax collected. (Gasoline sales are a major exception.) The company then uses the cash register readings to credit Sales and Sales Taxes Payable. For example, if the March 25 cash register readings for Cooley Grocery show sales of $10,000 and sales taxes of $600 (sales tax rate of 6%), the journal entry is:

A =	L +	SE
+10,600		
		+10,000 Rev
	+600	

Cash Flows
+10,600

Mar. 25	Cash	10,600	
	Sales Revenue		10,000
	Sales Taxes Payable		600
	(To record daily sales and sales taxes)		

When the company remits the taxes to the taxing agency, it decreases (debits) Sales Taxes Payable and decreases (credits) Cash. The company does not report sales taxes as an expense; it simply forwards to the government the amount paid by the customer. Thus, Cooley Grocery serves only as a **collection agent** for the taxing authority.

Sometimes, companies do not ring up sales taxes separately on the cash register. To determine the amount of sales in such cases, divide total receipts by 100% plus the sales tax percentage. For example, assume that Cooley Grocery rings up total receipts of $10,600. Because the amount received from the sale is equal to the sales price 100% plus 6% of sales, or 1.06 times the sales total, we can compute sales as follows: $10,600 ÷ 1.06 = $10,000. Thus, we can find the sales tax amount of $600 by either (1) subtracting sales from total receipts ($10,600 − $10,000) or (2) multiplying sales by the sales tax rate ($10,000 × 6%).

UNEARNED REVENUES

A magazine publisher such as Sports Illustrated may receive a customer's check when magazines are ordered. An airline company such as American Airlines often receives cash when it sells tickets for future flights. Season tickets for concerts, sporting events, and theatre programs are also paid for in advance. How do companies account for unearned revenues that are received before goods are delivered or services are provided?

1. When the company receives an advance, it increases (debits) Cash and also increases (credits) a current liability account identifying the source of the unearned revenue.
2. When the company earns the revenue, it decreases (debits) the unearned revenue account and increases (credits) an earned revenue account.

To illustrate, assume that Superior University sells 10,000 season football tickets at $50 each for its five-game home schedule. The entry is:

A =	L +	SE
+500,000		
		+500,000

Cash Flows
+500,000

Aug. 6	Cash	500,000	
	Unearned Ticket Revenue		500,000
	(To record sale of 10,000 season tickets)		

As each game is completed, Superior records the earning of revenue with the following entry.

A =	L +	SE
	−100,000	
		+100,000 Rev

Cash Flows
no effect

Sept. 7	Unearned Ticket Revenue	100,000	
	Ticket Revenue		100,000
	(To record football ticket revenues earned)		

The account Unearned Ticket Revenue represents unearned revenue, and the university would report it as a current liability. As the school earns the revenue, it reclassifies the amount from unearned revenue to earned revenue. Unearned revenue is material for some companies: In the airline industry, tickets sold for future flights represent almost 50% of total current liabilities. At United Airlines, unearned ticket revenue recently was the largest current liability, amounting to more than $1 billion.

Illustration 10-1 shows specific unearned and earned revenue accounts used in selected types of businesses.

Illustration 10-1
Unearned and earned revenue accounts

Type of Business	Account Title	
	Unearned Revenue	Earned Revenue
Airline	Unearned Passenger Ticket Revenue	Passenger Ticket Revenue
Magazine publisher	Unearned Subscription Revenue	Subscription Revenue
Hotel	Unearned Rental Revenue	Rental Revenue

CURRENT MATURITIES OF LONG-TERM DEBT

Companies often have a portion of long-term debt that comes due in the current year. As an example, assume that Wendy Construction issues a five-year, interest-bearing $25,000 note on January 1, 2011. This note specifies that each January 1, starting January 1, 2012, Wendy should pay $5,000 of the note. When the company prepares financial statements on December 31, 2011, it should report $5,000 as a current liability and $20,000 as a long-term liability. (The $5,000 amount is the portion of the note that is due to be paid within the next 12 months.) Companies often identify current maturities of long-term debt on the balance sheet as **long-term debt due within one year**. At December 31, 2009, General Motors had $724 million of such debt.

It is not necessary to prepare an adjusting entry to recognize the current maturity of long-term debt. At the balance sheet date, all obligations due within one year are classified as current, and all other obligations are long-term.

before you go on...

Do it! You and several classmates are studying for the next accounting examination. They ask you to answer the following questions.

1. If cash is borrowed on a $50,000, 6-month, 12% note on September 1, how much interest expense would be incurred by December 31?
2. How is the sales tax amount determined when the cash register total includes sales taxes?
3. If $15,000 is collected in advance on November 1 for 3-months' rent, what amount of rent revenue is earned by December 31?

CURRENT LIABILITIES

Action Plan

- Use the interest formula: Face value of note × Annual interest rate × Time in terms of one year.
- Divide total receipts by 100% plus the tax rate to determine sales; then subtract sales from the total receipts.
- Determine what fraction of the total unearned rent was earned this year.

Solution

1. $50,000 × 12% × 4/12 = $2,000
2. First, divide the total cash register receipts by 100% plus the sales tax percentage to find the sales amount. Second, subtract the sales amount from the total cash register receipts to determine the sales taxes.
3. $15,000 × 2/3 = $10,000

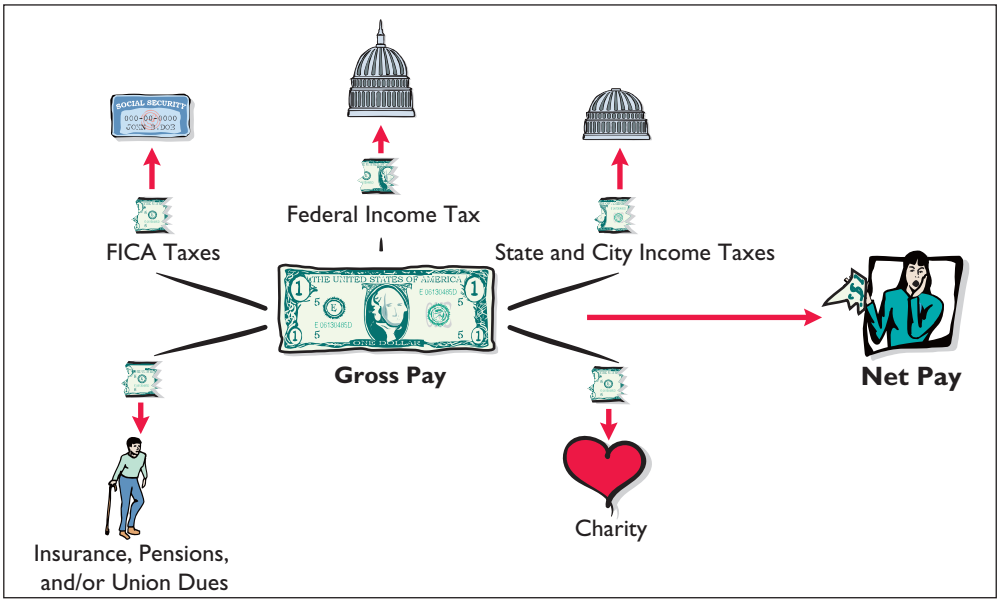
Related exercise material: **BE10-2, BE10-3, BE10-4, Do it! 10-1, E10-1, E10-2, E10-3, E10-4, E10-6,** and **E10-7.**

the navigator

PAYROLL AND PAYROLL TAXES PAYABLE

Assume that Susan Alena works 40 hours this week for Pepitone Inc., earning a wage of $10 per hour. Will Susan receive a $400 check at the end of the week? Not likely. The reason: Pepitone is required to withhold amounts from her wages to pay various governmental authorities. For example, Pepitone will withhold amounts for Social Security taxes[1] and for federal and state income taxes. If these withholdings total $100, Susan will receive a check for only $300. Illustration 10-2 summarizes the types of payroll deductions that normally occur for most companies.

Illustration 10-2 Payroll deductions



As a result of these deductions, companies withhold from employee paychecks amounts that must be paid to other parties. Pepitone therefore has incurred a liability to pay these third parties and must report this liability in its balance sheet.

As a second illustration, assume that Cargo Corporation records its payroll for the week of March 7 with the journal entry shown below.

A	=	L	+	SE
				−100,000 Exp
		+7,650		
		+21,864		
		+2,922		
		+67,564		

Cash Flows
no effect

Mar.	7	Salaries and Wages Expense	100,000	
		FICA Taxes Payable		7,650
		Federal Income Taxes Payable		21,864
		State Income Taxes Payable		2,922
		Salaries and Wages Payable		67,564
		(To record payroll and withholding taxes for the week ending March 7)		

[1]Social Security taxes are commonly called FICA taxes. In 1937, Congress enacted the Federal Insurance Contribution Act (FICA). As can be seen in the journal entry and the payroll tax journal entry on the next page, the employee and employer must make equal contributions to Social Security. The Social Security rate in 2010 was 7.65% for each.

Cargo then records payment of this payroll on March 7 as follows.

Mar. 7	Salaries and Wages Payable	67,564	
	Cash		67,564
	(To record payment of the March 7 payroll)		

A	=	L	+	SE
		−67,564		
−67,564				

Cash Flows
−67,564

In this case, Cargo reports $100,000 in salaries and wages expense. In addition, it reports liabilities for the salaries and wages payable as well as liabilities to governmental agencies. Rather than pay the employees $100,000, Cargo instead must withhold the taxes and make the tax payments directly. In summary, Cargo is essentially serving as a tax collector.

In addition to the liabilities incurred as a result of withholdings, employers also incur a second type of payroll-related liability. With every payroll, the employer incurs liabilities to pay various **payroll taxes** levied upon the employer. These payroll taxes include the *employer's share* of Social Security (FICA) taxes and state and federal unemployment taxes. Based on Cargo Corp.'s $100,000 payroll, the company would record the employer's expense and liability for these payroll taxes as follows.

Mar. 7	Payroll Tax Expense	13,850	
	FICA Taxes Payable		7,650
	Federal Unemployment Taxes Payable		800
	State Unemployment Taxes Payable		5,400
	(To record employer's payroll taxes on March 7 payroll)		

A	=	L	+	SE
				−13,850 Exp
		+7,650		
		+800		
		+5,400		

Cash Flows
no effect

Companies classify the payroll and payroll tax liability accounts as current liabilities because they must be paid to employees or remitted to taxing authorities periodically and in the near term. Taxing authorities impose substantial fines and penalties on employers if the withholding and payroll taxes are not computed correctly and paid on time.

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

Art was a custodial supervisor for a large school district. The district was supposed to employ between 35 and 40 regular custodians, as well as 3 or 4 substitute custodians to fill in when regular custodians were missing. Instead, in addition to the regular custodians, Art "hired" 77 substitutes. In fact, almost none of these people worked for the district. Instead, Art submitted time cards for these people, collected their checks at the district office, and personally distributed the checks to the "employees." If a substitute's check was for $1,200, that person would cash the check, keep $200, and pay Art $1,000.

Total take: $150,000

THE MISSING CONTROLS

Human Resource Controls. Thorough background checks should be performed. No employees should begin work until they have been approved by the Board of Education and entered into the payroll system. No employees should be entered into the payroll system until they have been approved by a supervisor. All paychecks should be distributed directly to employees at the official school locations by designated employees.

Independent internal verification. Budgets should be reviewed monthly to identify situations where actual costs significantly exceed budgeted amounts.

Source: Adapted from Wells, *Fraud Casebook* (2007), pp. 164–171.

before you go on...

WAGES AND PAYROLL TAXES

Do it! During the month of September, Lake Corporation's employees earned wages of $60,000. Withholdings related to these wages were $3,500 for Social Security (FICA), $6,500 for federal income tax, and $2,000 for state income tax. Costs incurred for unemployment taxes were $90 for federal and $150 for state.

Prepare the September 30 journal entries for (a) wages expense and wages payable, assuming that all September wages will be paid in October, and (b) the company's payroll tax expense.

Action Plan

- Remember that wages earned are an expense to the company, but withholdings reduce the amount due to be paid to the employee.
- Payroll taxes are taxes the company incurs related to its employees.

Solution

(a) To determine wages payable, reduce wages expense by the withholdings for FICA, federal income tax, and state income tax.

Sept. 30	Salaries and Wages Expense	60,000	
	FICA Taxes Payable		3,500
	Federal Income Taxes Payable		6,500
	State Income Taxes Payable		2,000
	Salaries and Wages Payable		48,000

(b) Payroll taxes would be for the company's share of FICA, as well as for federal and state unemployment tax.

Sept. 30	Payroll Tax Expense	3,740	
	FICA Taxes Payable		3,500
	Federal Unemployment Taxes Payable		90
	State Unemployment Taxes Payable		150

the navigator

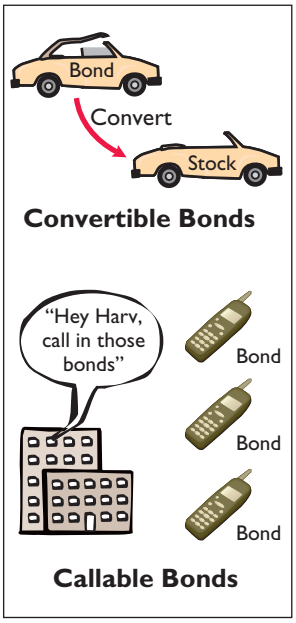
Related exercise material: **BE10-5, BE10-6, Do it! 10-2,** and **E10-5.**

Bonds: Long-Term Liabilities

study objective 4
Identify the types of bonds.

Long-term liabilities are obligations that a company expects to pay more than one year in the future. In this section, we explain the accounting for the principal types of obligations reported in the long-term liabilities section of the balance sheet. These obligations often are in the form of bonds or long-term notes.

Bonds are a form of interest-bearing note payable issued by corporations, universities, and governmental agencies. Bonds, like common stock, are sold in small denominations (usually $1,000 or multiples of $1,000). As a result, bonds attract many investors.



TYPES OF BONDS

Bonds may have different features. In the following sections, we describe some commonly issued types of bonds.

Secured and Unsecured Bonds

Secured bonds have specific assets of the issuer pledged as collateral for the bonds. **Unsecured bonds** are issued against the general credit of the borrower. Large corporations with good credit ratings use unsecured bonds extensively. For example, at one time DuPont reported more than $2 billion of unsecured bonds outstanding.

Convertible and Callable Bonds

Bonds that can be converted into common stock at the bondholder's option are **convertible bonds**. Bonds that the issuing company can retire at a stated dollar amount prior to maturity are **callable bonds**. Convertible bonds have

features that are attractive both to bondholders and to the issuer. The conversion often gives bondholders an opportunity to benefit if the market price of the common stock increases substantially. Furthermore, until conversion, the bondholder receives interest on the bond. For the issuer, the bonds sell at a higher price and pay a lower rate of interest than comparable debt securities that do not have a conversion option. Many corporations, such as USAir, United States Steel Corp., and General Motors Corporation, have convertible bonds outstanding.

Accounting Across the Organization

When Convertible Bonds Don't

During the boom times of the late 1990s, many rapidly growing companies issued large quantities of convertible bonds. Investors found the convertible bonds attractive because they paid regular interest but also had the upside potential of being converted to stock if the stock price increased. At the time, stock prices were increasing rapidly, so many investors viewed convertible bonds as a cheap and safe way to buy stock.

As a consequence, companies were able to pay much lower interest rates on convertible bonds than on standard bonds. When the bonds were issued, company managers assumed that the bonds would be converted. Thus, the company would never have to repay the debt with cash. It seemed too good to be true—and it was.

When stock prices plummeted in the early 2000s, investors no longer had an incentive to convert, since the market price was below the conversion price. When many of these massive bonds came due, companies were forced either to pay them off or to issue new debt at much higher rates.

? The drop in stock prices did not change the debt to total assets ratios of these companies. Discuss how the perception of a high debt to total assets ratio changed before and after the fall in stock prices. (See page 563.)

ISSUING PROCEDURES

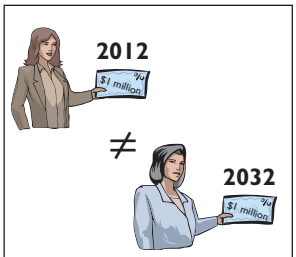
A **bond certificate** is issued to the investor to provide evidence of the investor's claim against the company. As Illustration 10-3 (page 514) shows, the bond certificate provides information such as the name of the company that issued the bonds, the face value of the bonds, the maturity date of the bonds, and the contractual interest rate. The **face value** is the amount of principal due at the maturity date. The **maturity date** is the date that the final payment is due to the investor from the issuing company. The **contractual interest rate** is the rate used to determine the amount of cash interest the borrower pays and the investor receives. Usually, the contractual rate is stated as an annual rate, and interest is generally paid semiannually. (We use annual payments in our examples to simplify.)

Alternative Terminology The contractual rate is often referred to as the *stated rate*.

DETERMINING THE MARKET VALUE OF BONDS

If you were an investor wanting to purchase a bond, how would you determine how much to pay? To be more specific, assume that Coronet, Inc. issues a zero-interest (pays no interest) bond with a face value of $1,000,000 due in 20 years. For this bond, the only cash you receive is $1 million at the end of 20 years. Would you pay $1 million for this bond? We hope not, because $1 million received 20 years from now is not the same as $1 million received today.

The term **time value of money** is used to indicate the relationship between time and money—that a dollar received today is worth more than a dollar promised at some time in the future. If you had $1 million today, you would invest it and earn interest so that at the end of 20 years, your investment would be worth much more than $1 million. Thus, if someone is going to pay you $1 million 20 years



Same dollars at different times are not equal.

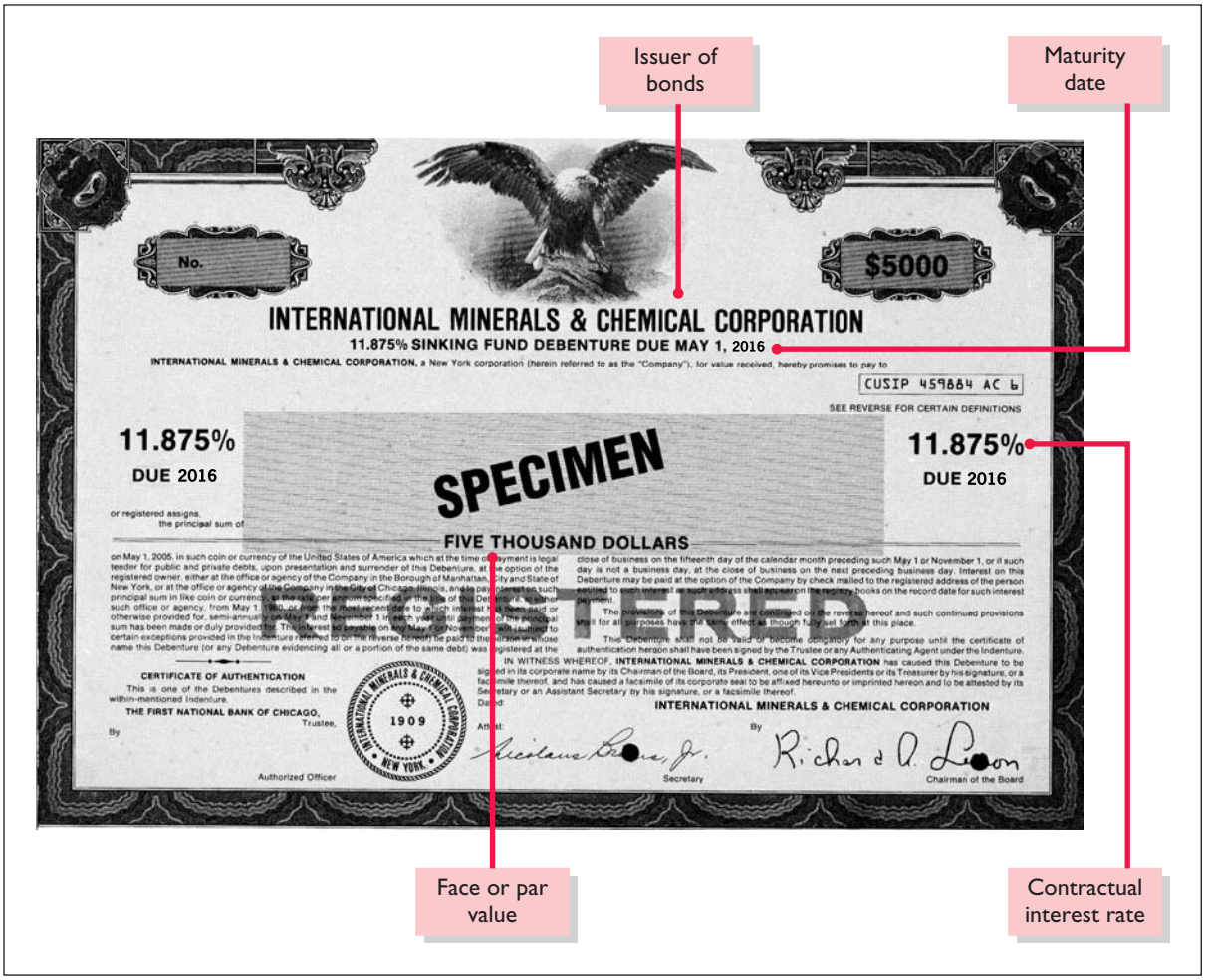


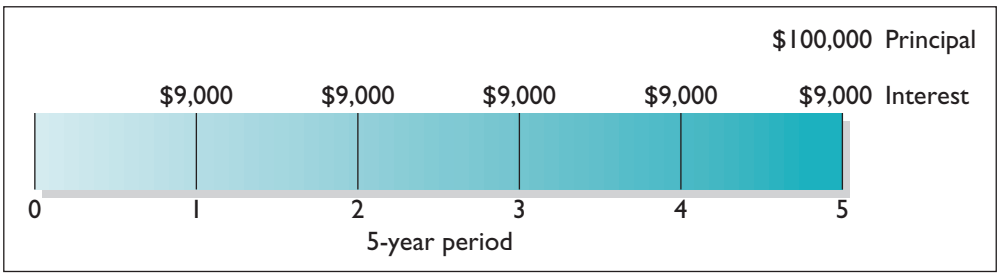
Illustration 10-3 Bond certificate

from now, you would want to find its equivalent today, or its **present value**. In other words, you would want to determine the value today of the amount to be received in the future after taking into account current interest rates.

The current market value (present value) of a bond is therefore a function of three factors: (1) the dollar amounts to be received, (2) the length of time until the amounts are received, and (3) the market interest rate. The **market interest rate** is the rate investors demand for loaning funds. The process of finding the present value is referred to as **discounting** the future amounts.

To illustrate, assume that Acropolis Company on January 1, 2012, issues $100,000 of 9% bonds, due in five years, with interest payable annually at year-end. The purchaser of the bonds would receive the following two types of cash payments: (1) **principal** of $100,000 to be paid at maturity, and (2) five $9,000 **interest payments** ($100,000 × 9%) over the term of the bonds. Illustration 10-4 shows a time diagram depicting both cash flows.

Illustration 10-4 Time diagram depicting cash flows



The current market value of a bond is equal to the present value of all the future cash payments promised by the bond. Illustration 10-5 lists and totals the present values of these amounts, assuming the market rate of interest is 9%.

Present value of $100,000 received in 5 years	$ 64,993
Present value of $9,000 received annually for 5 years	35,007
Market price of bonds	**$100,000**

Illustration 10-5
Computing the market price of bonds

Tables are available to provide the present value numbers to be used, or these values can be determined mathematically.[2] Appendix D, near the end of the book, provides further discussion of the concepts and the mechanics of the time value of money computations.

before you go on...

Do it! State whether each of the following statements is true or false.

BOND TERMINOLOGY

_____ 1. Secured bonds have specific assets of the issuer pledged as collateral.
_____ 2. Callable bonds can be retired by the issuing company at a stated dollar amount prior to maturity.
_____ 3. The contractual rate is the rate investors demand for loaning funds.
_____ 4. The face value is the amount of principal the issuing company must pay at the maturity date.
_____ 5. The market value of a bond is equal to its maturity value.

Action Plan

- Review the types of bonds and the basic terms associated with bonds.

Solution

1. True.
2. True.
3. False. The contractual interest rate is used to determine the amount of cash interest the borrower pays.
4. True.
5. False. The market value of a bond is equal to the present value of all the future cash payments promised by the bond.

Related exercise material: **Do it! 10-3.**

the navigator

Accounting for Bond Issues

study objective 5
Prepare the entries for the issuance of bonds and interest expense.

A corporation records bond transactions when it issues (sells) or retires (buys back) bonds and when bondholders convert bonds into common stock. If bondholders sell their bond investments to other investors, the issuing firm receives no further money on the transaction, **nor does the issuing corporation journalize the transaction** (although it does keep records of the names of bondholders in some cases).

Bonds may be issued at face value, below face value (discount), or above face value (premium). Bond prices for both new issues and existing bonds are

[2]For those knowledgeable in the use of present value tables, the computations in this example are: $100,000 ×.64993 = $64,993 and $9,000 × 3.88965 = $35,007 (rounded).

quoted as **a percentage of the face value of the bond**. **Face value is usually $1,000.** Thus, a $1,000 bond with a quoted price of 97 means that the selling price of the bond is 97% of face value, or $970.

ISSUING BONDS AT FACE VALUE

To illustrate the accounting for bonds issued at face value, assume that Devor Corporation issues 100, five-year, 10%, $1,000 bonds dated January 1, 2012, at 100 (100% of face value). The entry to record the sale is:

A	=	L	+	SE
+100,000				
		+100,000		

Cash Flows
+100,000

Jan.	1	Cash	100,000	
		Bonds Payable		100,000
		(To record sale of bonds at face value)		

Devor reports bonds payable in the long-term liabilities section of the balance sheet because the maturity date is January 1, 2017 (more than one year away).

Over the term (life) of the bonds, companies make entries to record bond interest. Interest on bonds payable is computed in the same manner as interest on notes payable, as explained earlier. If we assume that interest is payable annually on January 1 on the bonds described above, Devor accrues interest of $10,000 ($100,000 × 10% × $\frac{12}{12}$) on December 31.

At December 31 Devor recognizes the $10,000 of interest expense incurred with the following adjusting entry.

A	=	L	+	SE
				−10,000 Exp
		+10,000		

Cash Flows
no effect

Dec.	31	Interest Expense	10,000	
		Interest Payable		10,000
		(To accrue bond interest)		

The company classifies **interest payable as a current liability** because it is scheduled for payment within the next year. When Devor pays the interest on January 1, 2013, it decreases (debits) Interest Payable and decreases (credits) Cash for $10,000.

Devor records the payment on January 1 as follows.

A	=	L	+	SE
		−10,000		
−10,000				

Cash Flows
−10,000

Jan.	1	Interest Payable	10,000	
		Cash		10,000
		(To record payment of bond interest)		

DISCOUNT OR PREMIUM ON BONDS

The previous illustrations assumed that the contractual (stated) interest rate and the market (effective) interest rate paid on bonds were the same. Recall that the **contractual interest rate** is the rate applied to the face (par) value to arrive at the interest paid in a year. The **market interest rate** is the rate investors demand for loaning funds to the corporation. When the contractual interest rate and the market interest rate are the same, **bonds sell at face value**.

However, market interest rates change daily. The type of bond issued, the state of the economy, current industry conditions, and the company's individual performance all affect market interest rates. As a result, the contractual and market interest rates often differ. To make bonds salable when the two rates differ, bonds sell below or above face value.

To illustrate, suppose that a company issues 10% bonds at a time when other bonds of similar risk are paying 12%. Investors will not be interested in buying the 10% bonds, so their value will fall below their face value. When a bond is sold for less than its face value, the difference between the face value of a bond and its selling price is called a **discount**. As a result of the decline in the bonds' selling price, the actual interest rate incurred by the company increases to the level of the current market interest rate.

Conversely, if the market rate of interest is **lower than** the contractual interest rate, investors will have to pay more than face value for the bonds. That is, if the market rate of interest is 8% but the contractual interest rate on the bonds is 10%, the price on the bonds will be bid up. When a bond is sold for more than its face value, the difference between the face value and its selling price is called a **premium**. Illustration 10-6 shows these relationships graphically.

Helpful Hint Bond prices *vary inversely* with changes in the market interest rate: As market interest rates decline, bond prices will increase. When a bond is issued, if the market interest rate is below the contractual rate, the price will be higher than the face value.

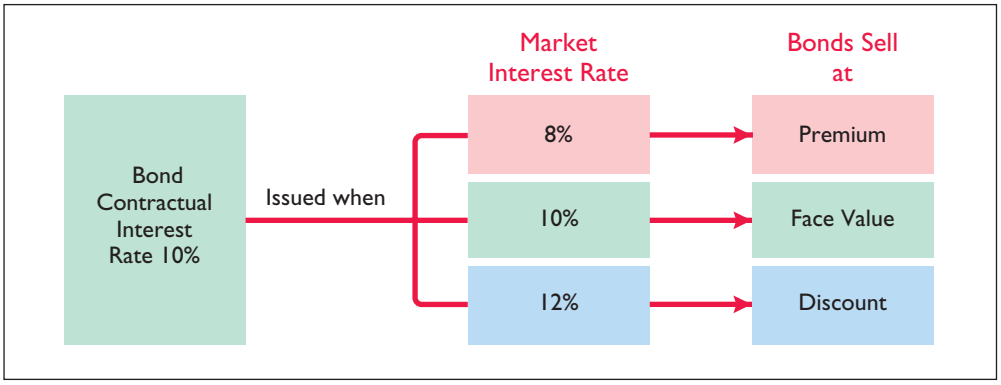


Illustration 10-6 Interest rates and bond prices

Issuance of bonds at an amount different from face value is quite common. By the time a company prints the bond certificates and markets the bonds, it will be a coincidence if the market rate and the contractual rate are the same. Thus, the issuance of bonds at a discount does not mean that the financial strength of the issuer is suspect. Conversely, the sale of bonds at a premium does not indicate that the financial strength of the issuer is exceptional.

Helpful Hint Some bonds are sold at a discount by design. "Zero-coupon" bonds, which pay no interest, sell at a deep discount to face value.

ISSUING BONDS AT A DISCOUNT

To illustrate the issuance of bonds at a discount, assume that on January 1, 2012, Candlestick Inc. sells $100,000, five-year, 10% bonds at 98 (98% of face value) with interest payable on January 1. The entry to record the issuance is:

Jan.	1	Cash	98,000	
		Discount on Bonds Payable	2,000	
		Bonds Payable		100,000
		(To record sale of bonds at a discount)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+98,000				
		−2,000		
		+100,000		

Cash Flows
+98,000

Although Discount on Bonds Payable has a debit balance, **it is not an asset**. Rather it is a **contra account**, which is **deducted from bonds payable** on the balance sheet as shown in Illustration 10-7.

Illustration 10-7 Statement presentation of discount on bonds payable

CANDLESTICK INC. Balance Sheet (partial)		
Long-term liabilities		
Bonds payable	$100,000	
Less: Discount on bonds payable	**2,000**	$98,000

Helpful Hint The carrying value (book value) of bonds issued at a discount is determined by subtracting the balance of the discount account from the balance of the Bonds Payable account.

The $98,000 represents the **carrying (or book) value** of the bonds. On the date of issue, this amount equals the market price of the bonds.

The issuance of bonds below face value causes the total cost of borrowing to differ from the bond interest paid. That is, the issuing corporation not only must pay the contractual interest rate over the term of the bonds but also must pay the face value (rather than the issuance price) at maturity. Therefore, the difference between the issuance price and the face value of the bonds-the discount—is an **additional cost of borrowing**. The company records this cost as **interest expense** over the life of the bonds. The total cost of borrowing $98,000 for Candlestick Inc. is $52,000, computed as shown in Illustration 10-8.

Illustration 10-8
Computation of total cost of borrowing—bonds issued at discount

Bonds Issued at a Discount	
Annual interest payments ($100,000 × 10% = $10,000; $10,000 × 5)	$ 50,000
Add: Bond discount ($100,000 − $98,000)	2,000
Total cost of borrowing	**$52,000**

Alternatively, we can compute the total cost of borrowing as shown in Illustration 10-9.

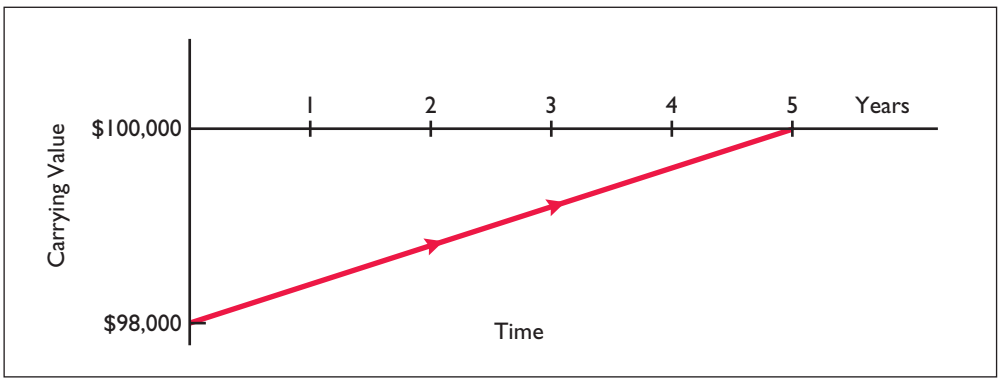
Illustration 10-9
Alternative computation of total cost of borrowing—bonds issued at discount

Bonds Issued at a Discount	
Principal at maturity	$100,000
Annual interest payments ($10,000 × 5)	50,000
Cash to be paid to bondholders	150,000
Cash received from bondholders	98,000
Total cost of borrowing	**$ 52,000**

To follow the expense recognition principle, companies allocate bond discount to expense in each period in which the bonds are outstanding. This is referred to as **amortizing the discount**. Amortization of the discount **increases** the amount of interest expense reported each period. That is, after the company amortizes the discount, the amount of interest expense it reports in a period will exceed the contractual amount. As shown in Illustration 10-8, for the bonds issued by Candlestick Inc., total interest expense will exceed the contractual interest by $2,000 over the life of the bonds.

As the discount is amortized, its balance declines. As a consequence, the carrying value of the bonds will increase, until at maturity the carrying value of the bonds equals their face amount. This is shown in Illustration 10-10.

Illustration 10-10
Amortization of bond discount



Appendix 10A and Appendix 10B at the end of this chapter discuss procedures for amortizing bond discount.

Helpful Hint Both a discount and a premium account are valuation accounts. A *valuation account* is one that is needed to value properly the item to which it relates.

ISSUING BONDS AT A PREMIUM

We can illustrate the issuance of bonds at a premium by now assuming the Candlestick Inc. bonds described above sell at 102 (102% of face value) rather than at 98. The entry to record the sale is:

Jan.	1	Cash	102,000	
		Bonds Payable		100,000
		Premium on Bonds Payable		2,000
		(To record sale of bonds at a premium)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+102,000				
		+100,000		
				+2,000

Cash Flows
+102,000

Candlestick adds the premium on bonds payable **to the bonds payable** amount on the balance sheet, as shown in Illustration 10-11.

Illustration 10-11
Statement presentation of bond premium

CANDLESTICK INC. Balance Sheet (partial)		
Long-term liabilities		
Bonds payable	$100,000	
Add: Premium on bonds payable	**2,000**	$102,000

The sale of bonds above face value causes the total cost of borrowing to be **less than the bond interest paid** because the borrower is not required to pay the bond premium at the maturity date of the bonds. Thus, the premium is considered to be **a reduction in the cost of borrowing** that reduces bond interest expense over the life of the bonds. The total cost of borrowing $102,000 for Candlestick Inc. is $48,000, computed as in Illustration 10-12.

Illustration 10-12
Computation of total cost of borrowing—bonds issued at a premium

Bonds Issued at a Premium	
Annual interest payments ($100,000 × 10% = $10,000; $10,000 × 5)	$ 50,000
Less: Bond premium ($102,000 − $100,000)	2,000
Total cost of borrowing	**$48,000**

Alternatively, we can compute the cost of borrowing as shown in Illustration10-13.

Illustration 10-13
Alternative computation of total cost of borrowing—bonds issued at a premium

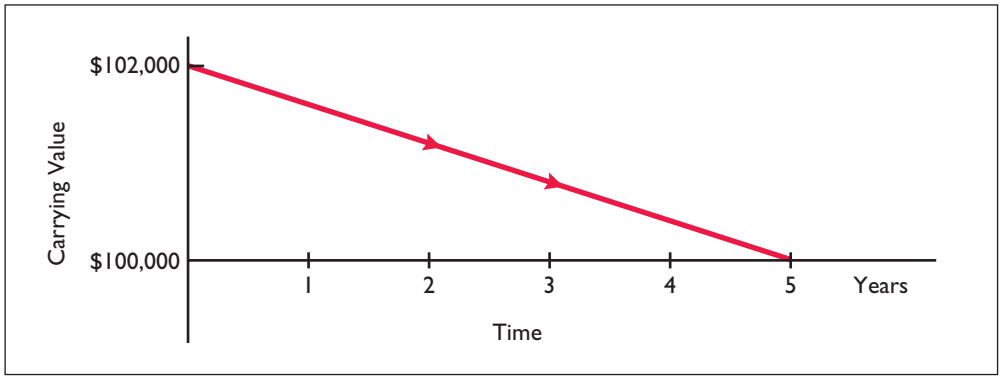
Bonds Issued at a Premium	
Principal at maturity	$100,000
Annual interest payments ($10,000 × 5)	50,000
Cash to be paid to bondholders	150,000
Cash received from bondholders	102,000
Total cost of borrowing	**$ 48,000**

Similar to bond discount, companies allocate bond premium to expense in each period in which the bonds are outstanding. This is referred to as **amortizing the premium**. Amortization of the premium **decreases** the amount of interest

expense reported each period. That is, after the company amortizes the premium, the amount of interest expense it reports in a period will be less than the contractual amount. As shown in Illustration 10-12, for the bonds issued by Candlestick Inc., contractual interest will exceed the interest expense by $2,000 over the life of the bonds.

As the premium is amortized, its balance declines. As a consequence, the carrying value of the bonds will decrease, until at maturity the carrying value of the bonds equals their face amount. This is shown in Illustration 10-14. Appendices 10A and 10B at the end of this chapter discuss procedures for amortizing bond premium.

Illustration 10-14
Amortization of bond premium



before you go on...

BOND ISSUANCE

Action Plan

- Record cash received, bonds payable at face value, and the difference as a discount or premium.
- Report discount as a deduction from bonds payable and premium as an addition to bonds payable.

the navigator

Do it! Giant Corporation issues $200,000 of bonds for $189,000. (a) Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds, and (b) show how the bonds would be reported on the balance sheet at the date of issuance.

Solution

(a)

Cash	189,000	
Discount on Bonds Payable	11,000	
Bonds Payable		200,000
(To record sale of bonds at a discount)		

(b)

Long-term liabilities		
Bonds payable	$200,000	
Less: Discount on bonds payable	(11,000)	$189,000

Related exercise material: **BE10-7, Do it! 10-4, E10-8, E10-9,** and **E10-10.**

Accounting for Bond Retirements

study objective 6
Describe the entries when bonds are redeemed.

Bonds are retired when the issuing corporation buys back (redeems) them. The appropriate entries for these transactions are explained next.

REDEEMING BONDS AT MATURITY

Regardless of the issue price of bonds, the book value of the bonds at maturity will equal their face value. Assuming that the company pays and records sepa-

rately the interest for the last interest period, Candlestick records the redemption of its bonds at maturity as:

Bonds Payable	100,000	
Cash		100,000
(To record redemption of bonds at maturity)		

A	=	L	+	SE
		−100,000		
−100,000				

Cash Flows
−100,000

REDEEMING BONDS BEFORE MATURITY

Bonds may be redeemed before maturity. A company may decide to retire bonds before maturity in order to reduce interest cost and remove debt from its balance sheet. A company should retire debt early only if it has sufficient cash resources.

When bonds are retired before maturity, it is necessary to: (1) eliminate the carrying value of the bonds at the redemption date, (2) record the cash paid, and (3) recognize the gain or loss on redemption. The **carrying value** of the bonds is the face value of the bonds less unamortized bond discount or plus unamortized bond premium at the redemption date.

To illustrate, assume at the end of the fourth period, Candlestick Inc., having sold its bonds at a premium, retires the $100,000 face value bonds at 103 after paying the annual interest. Assume that the carrying value of the bonds at the redemption date is $100,400 (principal $100,000 and premium $400). Candlestick records the redemption at the end of the fourth interest period (January 1, 2016) as:

Jan.	1	Bonds Payable	100,000	
		Premium on Bonds Payable	400	
		Loss on Bond Redemption	2,600	
		Cash		103,000
		(To record redemption of bonds at 103)		

A	=	L	+	SE
		−100,000		
		−400		
				−2,600 Exp
−103,000				

Cash Flows
−103,000

Note that the loss of $2,600 is the difference between the $103,000 cash paid and the $100,400 carrying value of the bonds.

before you go on...

Do it! R & B Inc. issued $500,000, 10-year bonds at a discount. Prior to maturity, when the carrying value of the bonds is $496,000, the company retires the bonds at 98. Prepare the entry to record the redemption of the bonds.

Solution

There is a loss on redemption: The cash paid, $490,000 ($500,000 × 98%), is less than the carrying value of $496,000. The entry is:

Bonds Payable	500,000	
Cash		490,000
Discount on Bonds Payable		4,000
Gain on Bond Redemption		6,000
(To record redemption of bonds at 98)		

BOND REDEMPTION

Action Plan

- Determine and eliminate the carrying value of the bonds.
- Record the cash paid.
- Compute and record the gain or loss (the difference between the first two items).

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE10-8, Do it! 10-5, E10-11,** and **E10-12.**

Financial Statement Presentation and Analysis

BALANCE SHEET PRESENTATION

study objective 7

Identify the requirements for the financial statement presentation and analysis of liabilities.

Current liabilities are the first category under "Liabilities" on the balance sheet. Companies list each of the principal types of current liabilities separately within the category.

Within the current liabilities section, companies usually list notes payable first, followed by accounts payable. Other items sometimes are listed in the order of their magnitude. *In your homework, you should present notes payable first, followed by accounts payable, and then other liabilities in order of magnitude.*

Companies report long-term liabilities in a separate section of the balance sheet immediately following "Current liabilities." Illustration 10-15 shows an example.

Illustration 10-15
Balance sheet presentation of liabilities

MARAIS COMPANY Balance Sheet (partial)		
Liabilities		
Current liabilities		
Notes payable	$ 250,000	
Accounts payable	125,000	
Current maturities of long-term debt	300,000	
Accrued liabilities	75,000	
Total current liabilities		$ 750,000
Long-term liabilities		
Bonds payable	1,000,000	
Less: Discount on bonds payable	80,000	920,000
Notes payable, secured by plant assets		540,000
Lease liability		500,000
Total long-term liabilities		1,960,000
Total liabilities		$2,710,000

Ethics Note Some companies try to minimize the amount of debt reported on their balance sheet by not reporting certain types of commitments as liabilities. This subject is of intense interest in the financial community.

Disclosure of debt is very important. Failures at Enron, WorldCom, and Global Crossing have made investors very concerned about companies' debt obligations. Summary data regarding debts may be presented in the balance sheet with detailed data (such as interest rates, maturity dates, conversion privileges, and assets pledged as collateral) shown in a supporting schedule in the notes. Companies should report current maturities of long-term debt as a current liability.

KEEPING AN EYE ON CASH

The balance sheet presents the balances of a company's debts at a point in time. The statement of cash flows also presents information about a company's debts. Information regarding cash inflows and outflows during the year that resulted from the principal portion of debt transactions appears in the "Financing activities" section of the statement of cash flows. Interest expense is reported in the "Operating activities" section, even though it resulted from debt transactions.

The statement of cash flows shown below presents the cash flows from financing activities for Toyota Motor Corporation. From this we learn that the company issued new long-term debt of $24,481 million and repaid long-term debt of $14,628 million.

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Statement of Cash Flows (partial)
2007
(in millions)

Cash flows from financing activities	
Purchase of common stock	$ (2,505)
Proceeds from issuance of long-term debt	24,481
Payments of long-term debt	(14,628)
Increase in short-term borrowings	2,994
Dividends paid	(2,873)
Net cash provided by financing activities	$ 7,469

ANALYSIS

Careful examination of debt obligations helps you assess a company's ability to pay its current and long-term obligations. It also helps you determine whether a company can obtain debt financing in order to grow. We will use the following information from the financial statements of Toyota Motor Corporation to illustrate the analysis of a company's liquidity and solvency.[3]

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Balance Sheets
December 31, 2007 and 2006
(in millions)

Assets	**2007**	**2006**
Total current assets	$ 99,823	$ 91,387
Noncurrent assets	176,118	153,200
Total assets	$275,941	$244,587
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Total current liabilities	$ 99,680	$ 85,373
Noncurrent liabilities	75,998	69,315
Total liabilities	175,678	154,688
Total stockholders' equity	100,263	89,899
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$275,941	$244,587

Illustration 10-16
Simplified balance sheets for Toyota Motor Corporation

Liquidity

Liquidity ratios measure the short-term ability of a company to pay its maturing obligations and to meet unexpected needs for cash. A commonly used measure of liquidity is the current ratio (presented in Chapter 2). The current ratio

[3]We chose to use 2007 and 2006 (instead of more recent financial information) because the large losses in the auto industry during 2008 and 2009 reduce the instructional usefulness of some of the ratios in this chapter.

is calculated as current assets divided by current liabilities. Illustration 10-17 presents the current ratio for Toyota along with the industry average.

Illustration 10-17
Current ratio

	Toyota ($ in millions)		Industry Average
Ratio	2007	2006	2007
Current Ratio	$\frac{\$99,823}{\$99,680} = 1.0:1$	$\frac{\$91,387}{\$85,373} = 1.07:1$	1.08:1

Toyota's current assets are approximately equal to its current liabilities. Therefore, its current ratio is about 1 in both 2006 and 2007. The industry average current ratio for manufacturers of autos and trucks is 1.08:1. Thus, Toyota's current ratio, like the industry average, is quite low.

Many companies today minimize their liquid assets (such as accounts receivable, and inventory) in order to improve profitability measures, such as return on assets. This is particularly true of large companies such as GM and Toyota. Companies that keep fewer liquid assets on hand must rely on other sources of liquidity. One such source is a **bank line of credit**. A line of credit is a prearranged agreement between a company and a lender that permits the company, should it be necessary, to borrow up to an agreed-upon amount. For example, a recent disclosure regarding debt in General Motors' financial statements states that it has $3.3 billion of unused lines of credit. This represents a substantial amount of available cash. In addition, the Management Discussion and Analysis section of GM's annual report provides an extensive discussion of the company's liquidity. In it, GM notes that even though its credit rating was downgraded during the year, its "access to the capital markets remained sufficient to meet the Corporation's capital needs." Thus, even though General Motors had a low current ratio, it believed that its available lines of credit as well as other sources of financing were adequate to meet any short-term cash deficiency it might experience.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Can the company obtain short-term financing when necessary?	Available lines of credit, from notes to the financial statements.	Compare available lines of credit to current liabilities. Also, evaluate liquidity ratios.	If liquidity ratios are low, then lines of credit should be high to compensate.

Solvency

Solvency ratios measure the ability of a company to survive over a long period of time. The Feature Story in this chapter mentioned that although there once were many U.S. automobile manufacturers, only three U.S.-based companies remain today. Many of the others went bankrupt. This highlights the fact that when making a long-term loan or purchasing a company's stock, you must give consideration to a company's solvency.

To reduce the risks associated with having a large amount of debt during an economic downturn, some U.S. automobile manufacturers took two precautionary steps while they enjoyed strong profits. First, they built up large balances of cash and cash equivalents to avoid a cash crisis. Second, they were

reluctant to build new plants or hire new workers to meet their production needs. Instead, they asked workers to put in overtime, or they "outsourced" work to other companies. In this way, when the economic downturn occurred, they hoped to avoid having to make debt payments on idle production plants and to minimize layoffs. As a result, in the middle of 2008 Ford still had cash of $29 billion, about double the amount of cash it would expect to use over a two-year period.

In Chapter 2, you learned that one measure of a company's solvency is the debt to total assets ratio. This is calculated as total liabilities divided by total assets. This ratio indicates the extent to which a company's assets are financed with debt.

Another useful solvency measure is the **times interest earned ratio**. It provides an indication of a company's ability to meet interest payments as they come due. It is computed by dividing income before interest expense and income taxes by interest expense. It uses income before interest expense and taxes because this number best represents the amount available to pay interest.

We can use the balance sheet information presented on page 523 and the additional information below to calculate solvency ratios for Toyota.

($ in millions)	2007	2006
Net income	$13,927	$11,681
Interest expense	418	184
Income tax expense	7,609	6,769

The debt to total assets ratios and times interest earned ratios for Toyota and averages for the industry are shown in Illustration 10-18.

Illustration 10-18
Solvency ratios

$$\text{Debt to Total Assets Ratio} = \frac{\text{Total Liabilities}}{\text{Total Assets}}$$

$$\text{Times Interest Earned Ratio} = \frac{\text{Net Income} + \text{Interest Expense} + \text{Tax Expense}}{\text{Interest Expense}}$$

	Toyota ($ in millions)		Industry Average
Ratio	2007	2006	2007
Debt to Total Assets Ratio	$\frac{\$175{,}678}{\$275{,}941} = 64\%$	$\frac{\$154{,}688}{\$244{,}587} = 63\%$	65.0%
Times Interest Earned Ratio	$\frac{\$13{,}927 + \$418 + \$7{,}609}{\$418} = 52.5$ times	$\frac{\$11{,}681 + \$184 + \$6{,}769}{\$184} = 101.3$ times	3.0 times

Toyota's debt to total assets ratio was 64%. The industry average for manufacturers of autos and trucks is 65%. Thus, Toyota is approximately as reliant on debt financing as the average firm in the auto and truck industry.

Toyota's times interest earned ratio declined from 101.3 times in 2006 to 52.5 in 2007. This means that in 2007 Toyota had earnings before interest and taxes that were more than 50 times the amount needed to pay interest. The

higher the multiple, the lower the likelihood that the company will default on interest payments. Because many of the companies in this industry had huge losses in 2007, the industry average was only 3.0. This suggests that while Toyota's ability to meet interest payments was extremely high, the average company in the industry had a much lower ability to meet interest payments.

Investor Insight

Debt Masking

In the wake of the financial crisis, many financial institutions are wary of reporting too much debt on their financial statements, for fear that investors will consider them too risky. The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) is concerned that some companies engage in "debt masking" to make it appear that they use less debt than they actually do. These companies enter into transactions at the end of the accounting period that essentially remove debt from their books. Shortly after the end of the period, they reverse the transaction and the debt goes back on their books. The *Wall Street Journal* reported that 18 large banks "had consistently lowered one type of debt at the end of each of the past five quarters, reducing it on average by 42% from quarterly peaks."

Source: Tom McGinty, Kate Kelly, and Kara Scannell, "Debt 'Masking' Under Fire," *Wall Street Journal Online* (April 21, 2010).

? What implications does debt masking have for an investor that is using the debt to total assets ratio to evaluate a company's solvency? (See page 564.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Can the company meet its obligations in the long term?	Interest expense and net income before interest and taxes	Times interest earned ratio $= \frac{\text{Net Income} + \text{Interest expense} + \text{Tax expense}}{\text{Interest expense}}$	High ratio indicates ability to meet interest payments as scheduled.

OFF-BALANCE-SHEET FINANCING

A concern for analysts when they evaluate a company's liquidity and solvency is whether that company has properly recorded all of its obligations. The bankruptcy of Enron Corporation, one of the largest bankruptcies in U.S. history, demonstrated how much damage can result when a company does not properly record or disclose all of its debts. Many would say Enron was practicing off-balance-sheet financing. **Off-balance-sheet financing** is an intentional effort by a company to structure its financing arrangements so as to avoid showing liabilities on its balance sheet. Two common types of off-balance-sheet financing result from unreported contingencies and lease transactions.

Contingencies

One reason a company's balance sheet might not fully reflect its potential obligations is due to contingencies. **Contingencies** are events with uncertain outcomes that may represent potential liabilities. A common type of contingency is lawsuits. Suppose, for example, that you were analyzing the financial statements

of a cigarette manufacturer and did not consider the possible negative implications of existing unsettled lawsuits. Your analysis of the company's financial position would certainly be misleading. Other common types of contingencies are product warranties and environmental clean-up obligations. For example, in a recent year, Novartis AG began offering a money-back guarantee on its blood-pressure medications. This guarantee would necessitate an accrual for the estimated claims that will result from returns.

Accounting rules require that companies disclose contingencies in the notes; in some cases, they must accrue them as liabilities. For example, suppose that Waterbury Inc. is sued by a customer for $1 million due to an injury sustained by a defective product. If at the company's year-end, the lawsuit had not yet been resolved, how should Waterbury account for this event? If the company can determine **a reasonable estimate** of the expected loss and if it is **probable** it will lose the suit, then the company should accrue for the loss. It records the loss by increasing (debiting) a loss account and increasing (crediting) a liability such as Lawsuit Liability. If *both* of these conditions are not met, then the company discloses the basic facts regarding this suit in the notes to its financial statements.

Leasing

One common type of off-balance-sheet financing results from leasing. Most lessees do not like to report leases on their balance sheets because the lease increases the company's total liabilities. Recall from Chapter 9 that **operating leases** are treated like rentals—no asset or liabilities show on the books. **Capital leases** are treated like a debt-financed purchase—increasing both assets and liabilities. **As a result, many companies structure their lease agreements to avoid meeting the criteria of a capital lease.**

Recall from Chapter 9 that many U.S. airlines lease a large portion of their planes without showing any debt related to them on their balance sheets. For example, the total increase in assets and liabilities that would result if Southwest Airlines recorded on the balance sheet its off-balance-sheet **"operating" leases** would be approximately $2.3 billion. Illustration 10-19 presents Southwest Airlines' debt to total assets ratio using the numbers presented in its balance sheet and also shows the ratio after adjusting for the off-balance-sheet leases. After those adjustments, Southwest has a ratio of 62% versus 67% before. This means that of every dollar of assets, 67 cents was funded by debt. This would be of interest to analysts evaluating Southwest's solvency.

Ethics Note Accounting standard-setters are attempting to rewrite rules on lease accounting because of concerns that abuse of the current standards is reducing the usefulness of financial statements.

	Using numbers as presented on balance sheet	Adjusted for off-balance-sheet leases
Debt to total assets ratio	$\frac{\$8{,}803}{\$14{,}269} = 62\%$	$\frac{\$8{,}803 + \$2{,}371}{\$14{,}269 + \$2{,}371} = 67\%$

Illustration 10-19 Debt to total assets ratio adjusted for leases

International Note GAAP accounting for leases is more "rules-based" than IFRS. GAAP relies on precisely defined cut-offs to determine whether an item is treated as a capital or operating lease. This rules-based approach may enable companies to structure leases "around the rules." Creating a jointly prepared leasing standard is a top priority for the IASB and FASB.

Critics of off-balance-sheet financing contend that many leases represent unavoidable obligations that meet the definition of a liability, and therefore companies should report them as liabilities on the balance sheet. To reduce these concerns, companies are required to report their operating lease obligations for subsequent years in a note. This allows analysts and other financial statement users to adjust a company's financial statements by adding leased assets and lease liabilities if they feel that this treatment is more appropriate.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Does the company have any contingent liabilities?	Knowledge of events with uncertain negative outcomes	Notes to financial statements and financial statements	If negative outcomes are possible, determine the probability, the amount of loss, and the potential impact on financial statements.
Does the company have significant off-balance-sheet financing, such as unrecorded lease obligations?	Information on unrecorded obligations, such as a schedule of minimum lease payments from the notes to the financial statements	Compare liquidity and solvency ratios with and without unrecorded obligations included	If ratios differ significantly after including unrecorded obligations, these obligations should not be ignored in analysis.

Investor Insight

"Covenant-Lite" Debt

In many corporate loans and bond issuances, the lending agreement specifies *debt covenants*. These covenants typically are specific financial measures, such as minimum levels of retained earnings, cash flows, times interest earned ratios, or other measures that a company must maintain during the life of the loan. If the company violates a covenant, it is considered to have violated the loan agreement; the creditors can demand immediate repayment, or they can renegotiate the loan's terms. Covenants protect lenders because they enable lenders to step in and try to get their money back before the borrower gets too deep into trouble.

During the 1990s, most traditional loans specified between three to six covenants or "triggers." In more recent years, however, when there was lots of cash available, lenders began reducing or completely eliminating covenants from loan agreements in order to be more competitive with other lenders. When the economy declined, these lenders lost big money when companies defaulted.

Source: Cynthia Koons, "Risky Business: Growth of 'Covenant-Lite' Debt," *Wall Street Journal* (June 18, 2007), p. C2.

? How can financial ratios such as those covered in this chapter provide protection for creditors? (See page 564.)

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

Ford Motor Company has enjoyed some tremendous successes, including its popular Taurus and Explorer vehicles. Yet observers are looking for the next big hit. Development of a new vehicle costs billions. A flop is financially devastating, and the financial effect is magnified if the company has large amounts of outstanding debt.

The balance sheets on the next page provide financial information for the Automotive Division of Ford Motor Company as of December 31, 2007 and 2006. We have chosen to analyze only the Automotive Division rather than the total corporation, which includes Ford's giant financing division. In an actual analysis, you would want to analyze the major divisions individually as well as the combined corporation as a whole.

Instructions

1. Evaluate Ford's liquidity using appropriate ratios, and compare to those of Toyota and to industry averages.
2. Evaluate Ford's solvency using appropriate ratios, and compare to those of Toyota and to industry averages.
3. Comment on Ford's available lines of credit.

FORD MOTOR COMPANY—
AUTOMOTIVE DIVISION
Balance Sheets
December 31, 2007 and 2006*
(in millions)

Assets	**2007**	**2006**
Current assets	$ 54,243	$ 54,953
Noncurrent assets	64,246	67,681
Total assets	$118,489	$ 122,634
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Current liabilities	$ 50,218	$ 51,690
Noncurrent liabilities	73,317	83,725
Total liabilities	123,535	135,415
Total shareholders' equity	(5,046)	(12,781)
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	$118,489	$ 122,634
Other Information		
Net income (loss)	$ (4,970)	$(17,040)
Tax expense (refund)	(1,541)	(5,282)
Interest expense	2,252	995
Available lines of credit (Automotive Division)	10,900	

*We chose to use 2007 and 2006 because the large losses in the auto industry during 2008 and 2009 reduce the instructional usefulness of some of the ratios in this discussion.

Solution

1. Ford's liquidity can be measured using the current ratio:

	2007	**2006**
Current ratio	$\frac{\$54,243}{\$50,218} = 1.08:1$	$\frac{\$54,953}{\$51,690} = 1.06:1$

Ford's current ratio is approximately the same as the industry average of 1.08:1 and roughly the same as Toyota's. These are increasingly common levels for large companies that have reduced the amount of inventory and receivables they hold. As noted earlier, these low current ratios are not necessarily cause for concern, but they do require more careful monitoring. Ford must also make sure to have other short-term financing options available, such as lines of credit.

2. Ford's solvency can be measured with the debt to total assets ratio and the times interest earned ratio:

	2007	**2006**
Debt to total assets ratio	$\frac{\$123,535}{\$118,489} = 104\%$	$\frac{\$135,415}{\$122,634} = 110\%$
Times interest earned ratio	$\frac{\$(4,970) + \$2,252 - \$1,541}{\$2,252} = 0$ times	$\frac{\$(17,040) + \$995 - \$5,282}{\$995} = 0$ times

The debt to total assets ratio suggests that Ford relies very heavily on debt financing. The ratio decreased from 2006 to 2007, indicating that the company's solvency improved slightly. But in both years it exceeded 100%. This is possible because we have calculated the ratio for the Automotive Division only, rather than the whole company. The debt to total assets ratio for the entire company is 94.5%. This is extremely high.

The times interest earned ratio is zero in both years. The ratio is zero because, even after adding back interest and taxes, the company's income was negative. This is well below the industry average of 3.0 times. It is likely that the company's solvency was a concern to investors and creditors and would be closely monitored. Note that because Ford reported net losses, it had tax refunds rather than tax expense. Since tax expense is added in the numerator, tax refunds are subtracted.

3. Ford has available lines of credit of $10.9 billion. These financing sources significantly improve its liquidity and help reduce the concerns of its short-term creditors.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Explain a current liability and identify the major types of current liabilities. A current liability is a debt that a company can reasonably expect to pay (a) from existing current assets or through the creation of other current liabilities, and (b) within one year or the operating cycle, whichever is longer. The major types of current liabilities are notes payable, accounts payable, sales taxes payable, unearned revenues, and accrued liabilities such as taxes, salaries and wages, and interest payable.

2 Describe the accounting for notes payable. When a promissory note is interest-bearing, the amount of assets received upon the issuance of the note is generally equal to the face value of the note, and interest expense is accrued over the life of the note. At maturity, the amount paid is equal to the face value of the note plus accrued interest.

3 Explain the accounting for other current liabilities. Companies record sales taxes payable at the time the related sales occur. The company serves as a collection agent for the taxing authority. Sales taxes are not an expense to the company. Companies hold employee withholding taxes, and credit them to appropriate liability accounts, until they remit these taxes to the governmental taxing authorities. Unearned revenues are initially recorded in an unearned revenue account. As the company earns the revenue, a transfer from unearned revenue to earned revenue occurs. Companies should report the current maturities of long-term debt as a current liability in the balance sheet.

4 Identify the types of bonds. The following different types of bonds may be issued: secured and unsecured bonds, and convertible and callable bonds.

5 Prepare the entries for the issuance of bonds and interest expense. When companies issue bonds, they debit Cash for the cash proceeds and credit Bonds Payable for the face value of the bonds. In addition, they use the accounts Premium on Bonds Payable and Discount on Bonds Payable to show the bond premium and bond discount, respectively. Bond discount and bond premium are amortized over the life of the bond, which increases or decreases interest expense, respectively.

6 Describe the entries when bonds are redeemed. When companies redeem bonds at maturity, they credit Cash and debit Bonds Payable for the face value of the bonds. When companies redeem bonds before maturity, they (a) eliminate the carrying value of the bonds at the redemption date, (b) record the cash paid, and (c) recognize the gain or loss on redemption.

7 Identify the requirements for the financial statement presentation and analysis of liabilities. Current liabilities appear first on the balance sheet, followed by long-term liabilities. Companies should report the nature and amount of each liability in the balance sheet or in schedules in the notes accompanying the statements. They report inflows and outflows of cash related to the principal portion of long-term debt in the financing section of the statement of cash flows.

The liquidity of a company may be analyzed by computing the current ratio. The long-run solvency of a company may be analyzed by computing the debt to total assets ratio and the times interest earned ratio. Other factors to consider are contingent liabilities and lease obligations.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Can the company obtain short-term financing when necessary?	Available lines of credit, from notes to the financial statements	Compare available lines of credit to current liabilities. Also, evaluate liquidity ratios.	If liquidity ratios are low, then lines of credit should be high to compensate.
Can the company meet its obligations in the long term?	Interest expense and net income before interest and taxes	Times interest earned ratio $= \frac{\text{Net income} + \text{Interest expense} + \text{Tax expense}}{\text{Interest expense}}$	High ratio indicates ability to meet interest payments as scheduled.
Does the company have any contingent liabilities?	Knowledge of events with uncertain negative outcomes	Notes to financial statements and financial statements	If negative outcomes are possible, determine the probability, the amount of loss, and the potential impact on financial statements.

(*continued*)

Does the company have significant off-balance-sheet financing, such as unrecorded lease obligations?	Information on unrecorded obligations, such as a schedule of minimum lease payments from the notes to the financial statements	Compare liquidity and solvency ratios with and without unrecorded obligations included	If ratios differ significantly after including unrecorded obligations, these obligations should not be ignored in analysis.

appendix 10A

Straight-Line Amortization

AMORTIZING BOND DISCOUNT

study objective 8

Apply the straight-line method of amortizing bond discount and bond premium.

To follow the expense recognition principle, companies allocate bond discount to expense in each period in which the bonds are outstanding. The **straight-line method of amortization** allocates the same amount to interest expense in each interest period. The calculation is presented in Illustration 10A-1.

Bond Discount	÷	Number of Interest Periods	=	Bond Discount Amortization

Illustration 10A-1 Formula for straight-line method of bond discount amortization

In the Candlestick Inc. example (page 517), the company sold $100,000, five-year, 10% bonds on January 1, 2012, for $98,000. This resulted in a $2,000 bond discount ($100,000 − $98,000). The bond discount amortization is $400 ($2,000 ÷ 5) for each of the five amortization periods. Candlestick records the first accrual of bond interest and the amortization of bond discount on December 31 as follows.

				A = L + SE
Dec. 31	Interest Expense	10,400		−10,400 Exp
	Discount on Bonds Payable		400	+400
	Interest Payable		10,000	+10,000
	(To record accrued bond interest and amortization of bond discount)			

Cash Flows
no effect

Over the term of the bonds, the balance in Discount on Bonds Payable will decrease annually by the same amount until it has a zero balance at the maturity date of the bonds. Thus, the carrying value of the bonds at maturity will be equal to the face value of the bonds.

Alternative Terminology The amount in the Discount on Bonds Payable account is often referred to as *Unamortized Discount on Bonds Payable*.

Preparing a bond discount amortization schedule, as shown in Illustration 10A-2 (page 532), is useful to determine interest expense, discount amortization, and the carrying value of the bond. As indicated, the interest expense recorded each period is $10,400. Also note that the carrying value of the bond increases $400 each period until it reaches its face value of $100,000 at the end of period 5.

CANDLESTICK INC.
Bond Discount Amortization Schedule
Straight-Line Method–Annual Interest Payments
$100,000 of 10%, 5-Year Bonds

Interest Periods	(A) Interest to Be Paid (10% × $100,000)	(B) Interest Expense to Be Recorded (A) + (C)	(C) Discount Amortization ($2,000 ÷ 5)	(D) Unamortized Discount (D) − (C)	(E) Bond Carrying Value ($100,000 − D)
Issue date				$2,000	$ 98,000
1	$10,000	$10,400	$ 400	1,600	98,400
2	10,000	10,400	400	1,200	98,800
3	10,000	10,400	400	800	99,200
4	10,000	10,400	400	400	99,600
5	10,000	10,400	400	0	100,000
	$50,000	$52,000	$2,000		

Column **(A)** remains constant because the face value of the bonds ($100,000) is multiplied by the annual contractual interest rate (10%) each period.
Column **(B)** is computed as the interest paid (Column A) plus the discount amortization (Column C).
Column **(C)** indicates the discount amortization each period.
Column **(D)** decreases each period by the same amount until it reaches zero at maturity.
Column **(E)** increases each period by the amount of discount amortization until it equals the face value at maturity.

Illustration 10A-2 Bond discount amortization schedule

AMORTIZING BOND PREMIUM

The amortization of bond premium parallels that of bond discount. Illustration 10A-3 presents the formula for determining bond premium amortization under the straight-line method.

Illustration 10A-3 Formula for straight-line method of bond premium amortization

Bond Premium	÷	Number of Interest Periods	=	Bond Premium Amortization

Continuing our example, assume Candlestick Inc., sells the bonds described above for $102,000, rather than $98,000. This results in a bond premium of $2,000 ($102,000 − $100,000). The premium amortization for each interest period is $400 ($2,000 ÷ 5). Candlestick records the first accrual of interest on December 31 as follows.

A =	L +	SE
		−9,600 Exp
	−400	
	+10,000	

Cash Flows
no effect

Dec. 31	Interest Expense	9,600	
	Premium on Bonds Payable	400	
	Interest Payable		10,000
	(To record accrued bond interest and amortization of bond premium)		

Over the term of the bonds, the balance in Premium on Bonds Payable will decrease annually by the same amount until it has a zero balance at maturity.

A bond premium amortization schedule, as shown in Illustration 10A-4, is useful to determine interest expense, premium amortization, and the carrying value of the bond. As indicated, the interest expense Candlestick records each period is $9,600. Note that the carrying value of the bond decreases $400 each period until it reaches its face value of $100,000 at the end of period 5.

Illustration 10A-4 Bond premium amortization schedule

CANDLESTICK INC.
Bond Premium Amortization Schedule
Straight-Line Method–Annual Interest Payments
$100,000 of 10%, 5-Year Bonds

Interest Periods	(A) Interest to Be Paid (10% × $100,000)	(B) Interest Expense to Be Recorded (A) − (C)	(C) Premium Amortization ($2,000 ÷ 5)	(D) Unamortized Premium (D) − (C)	(E) Bond Carrying Value ($100,000 + D)
Issue date				$2,000	$ 102,000
1	$10,000	$ 9,600	$ 400	1,600	101,600
2	10,000	9,600	400	1,200	101,200
3	10,000	9,600	400	800	100,800
4	10,000	9,600	400	400	100,400
5	10,000	9,600	400	0	100,000
	$50,000	$48,000	$2,000		

Column **(A)** remains constant because the face value of the bonds ($100,000) is multiplied by the annual contractual interest rate (10%) each period.
Column **(B)** is computed as the interest paid (Column A) less the premium amortization (Column C).
Column **(C)** indicates the premium amortization each period.
Column **(D)** decreases each period by the same amount until it reaches zero at maturity.
Column **(E)** decreases each period by the amount of premium amortization until it equals the face value at maturity.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 10A

8 Apply the straight-line method of amortizing bond discount and bond premium. The straight-line method of amortization results in a constant amount of amortization and interest expense per period.

appendix 10B

Effective-Interest Amortization

study objective 9
Apply the effective-interest method of amortizing bond discount and bond premium.

To follow the expense recognition principle, companies allocate bond discount to expense in each period in which the bonds are outstanding. However, to completely comply with the expense recognition principle, interest expense as a percentage of carrying value should not change over the life of the bonds.

This percentage, referred to as the **effective-interest rate**, is established when the bonds are issued and remains constant in each interest period. Unlike the straight-line method, the effective-interest method of amortization accomplishes this result.

Under the **effective-interest method**, the amortization of bond discount or bond premium results in periodic interest expense equal to a constant percentage of the carrying value of the bonds. The effective-interest method results in **varying amounts** of amortization and interest expense per period but a **constant percentage rate.** In contrast, the straight-line method results in constant amounts of amortization and interest expense per period but a varying percentage rate.

Companies follow three steps under the effective-interest method:

1. Compute the **bond interest expense** by multiplying the carrying value of the bonds at the beginning of the interest period by the effective-interest rate.
2. Compute the **bond interest paid** (or accrued) by multiplying the face value of the bonds by the contractual interest rate.
3. Compute the **amortization amount** by determining the difference between the amounts computed in steps (1) and (2).

Illustration 10B-1 depicts these steps.

Illustration 10B-1
Computation of amortization using effective-interest method

(1) Bond Interest Expense		(2) Bond Interest Paid		(3)
[Carrying Value of Bonds at Beginning of Period × Effective-Interest Rate]	−	[Face Amount of Bond × Contractual Interest Rate]	=	**Amortization Amount**

Both the straight-line and effective-interest methods of amortization result in the same total amount of interest expense over the term of the bonds. Furthermore, interest expense each interest period is generally comparable in amount. However, **when the amounts are materially different**, **generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) require use of the effective-interest method.**

Helpful Hint Note that the amount of periodic interest expense increases over the life of the bonds when the effective-interest method is used for bonds issued at a discount. The reason is that a constant percentage is applied to an increasing bond carrying value to compute interest expense. The carrying value is increasing because of the amortization of the discount.

AMORTIZING BOND DISCOUNT

In the Candlestick Inc. example (page 517), the company sold $100,000, five-year, 10% bonds on January 1, 2012, for $98,000. This resulted in a $2,000 bond discount ($100,000 – $98,000). This discount results in an effective-interest rate of approximately 10.53%. (The effective-interest rate can be computed using the techniques shown in Appendix D at the end of this book.)

Preparing a bond discount amortization schedule as shown in Illustration 10B-2 facilitates the recording of interest expense and the discount amortization. Note that interest expense as a percentage of carrying value remains constant at 10.53%.

CANDLESTICK INC.
Bond Discount Amortization Schedule
Effective-Interest Method–Annual Interest Payments
10% Bonds Issued at 10.53%

Interest Periods	(A) Interest to Be Paid (10% × $100,000)	(B) Interest Expense to Be Recorded (10.53% × Preceding Bond Carrying Value)		(C) Discount Amortization (B) − (A)	(D) Unamortized Discount (D) − (C)	(E) Bond Carrying Value ($100,000 − D)
Issue date					$2,000	$ 98,000
1	**$10,000**	**$10,319**	**(10.53% × $98,000)**	**$319**	**1,681**	**98,319**
2	10,000	10,353	(10.53% × $ 98,319)	353	1,328	98,672
3	10,000	10,390	(10.53% × $ 98,672)	390	938	99,062
4	10,000	10,431	(10.53% × $ 99,062)	431	507	99,493
5	10,000	10,507*	(10.53% × $ 99,493)	507*	–0–	100,000
	$ 50,000	$ 52,000		$ 2,000		

Column **(A)** remains constant because the face value of the bonds ($100,000) is multiplied by the annual contractual interest rate (10%) each period.
Column **(B)** is computed as the preceding bond carrying value times the annual effective-interest rate (10.53%).
Column **(C)** indicates the discount amortization each period.
Column **(D)** decreases each period until it reaches zero at maturity.
Column **(E)** increases each period until it equals face value at maturity.

*Rounded to eliminate remaining discount resulting from rounding the effective rate.

Illustration 10B-2 Bond discount amortization schedule

For the first interest period, the computations of bond interest expense and the bond discount amortization are as follows.

Bond interest expense ($98,000 × 10.53%)	$10,319
Bond interest paid ($100,000 × 10%)	10,000
Bond discount amortization	**$ 319**

Illustration 10B-3 Computation of bond discount amortization

As a result, Candlestick Inc. records the accrual of interest and amortization of bond discount on December 31, as follows.

				A = L + SE
Dec. 31	Interest Expense	10,319		−10,319 Exp
	Discount on Bonds Payable		319	+319
	Interest Payable		10,000	+10,000
	(To record accrued interest and amortization of bond discount)			**Cash Flows** no effect

For the second interest period, bond interest expense will be $10,353 ($98,319 × 10.53%), and the discount amortization will be $353. At December 31, Candlestick makes the following adjusting entry.

A	=	L	+	SE
				−10,353 Exp
				+353
				+10,000

Cash Flows
no effect

Dec. 31	Interest Expense	10,353	
	Discount on Bonds Payable		353
	Interest Payable		10,000
	(To record accrued interest and amortization of bond discount)		

AMORTIZING BOND PREMIUM

Continuing our example, assume Candlestick Inc. sells the bonds described above for $102,000 rather than $98,000. This would result in a bond premium of $2,000 ($102,000 − $100,000). This premium results in an effective-interest rate of approximately 9.48%. (The effective-interest rate can be solved for using the techniques shown in Appendix D at the end of this book.) Illustration 10B-4 shows the bond premium amortization schedule.

Illustration 10B-4 Bond premium amortization schedule

CANDLESTICK INC.
Bond Premium Amortization Schedule
Effective-Interest Method–Annual Interest Payments
10% Bonds Issued at 9.48%

Interest Periods	(A) Interest to Be Paid (10% × $100,000)	(B) Interest Expense to Be Recorded (9.48% × Preceding Bond Carrying Value)		(C) Premium Amortization (A) − (B)	(D) Unamortized Premium (D) − (C)	(E) Bond Carrying Value ($100,000 + D)
Issue date					$2,000	$102,000
1	**$10,000**	**$9,670**	**(9.48% × $102,000)**	**$330**	**1,670**	**101,670**
2	10,000	9,638	(9.48% × $ 101,670)	362	1,308	101,308
3	10,000	9,604	(9.48% × $ 101,308)	396	912	100,912
4	10,000	9,566	(9.48% × $ 100,912)	434	478	100,478
5	10,000	9,522*	(9.48% × $ 100,478)	478*	–0–	100,000
	$ 50,000	$ 48,000		$ 2,000		

Column **(A)** remains constant because the face value of the bonds ($100,000) is multiplied by the contractual interest rate (10%) each period.
Column **(B)** is computed as the carrying value of the bonds times the annual effective-interest rate (9.48%).
Column **(C)** indicates the premium amortization each period.
Column **(D)** decreases each period until it reaches zero at maturity.
Column **(E)** decreases each period until it equals face value at maturity.

*Rounded to eliminate remaining discount resulting from rounding the effective rate.

For the first interest period, the computations of bond interest expense and the bond premium amortization are:

Illustration 10B-5 Computation of bond premium amortization

Bond interest paid ($100,000 × 10%)	$10,000
Bond interest expense ($102,000 × 9.48%)	9,670
Bond premium amortization	**$ 330**

The entry Candlestick makes on December 31 is:

				A = L + SE
Dec. 31	Interest Expense	9,670		−9,670 Exp
	Premium on Bonds Payable	330		−330
	Interest Payable		10,000	+10,000
	(To record accrued interest and amortization of bond premium)			

Cash Flows
no effect

For the second interest period, interest expense will be $9,638, and the premium amortization will be $362. Note that the amount of periodic interest expense decreases over the life of the bond when companies apply the effective-interest method to bonds issued at a premium. The reason is that a constant percentage is applied to a decreasing bond carrying value to compute interest expense. The carrying value is decreasing because of the amortization of the premium.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 10B

9 Apply the effective-interest method of amortizing bond discount and bond premium. The effective-interest method results in varying amounts of amortization and interest expense per period but a constant percentage rate of interest. When the difference between the straight-line and effective-interest method is material, GAAP requires use of the effective-interest method.

appendix 10C

Accounting for Long-Term Notes Payable

study objective 10
Describe the accounting for long-term notes payable.

The use of notes payable in long-term debt financing is quite common. Long-term notes payable are similar to short-term interest-bearing notes payable except that the terms of the notes exceed one year. In periods of unstable interest rates, lenders may tie the interest rate on long-term notes to changes in the market rate for comparable loans. Examples are the 8.03% adjustable rate notes issued by General Motors and the floating-rate notes issued by American Express Company.

A long-term note may be secured by a document called a **mortgage** that pledges title to specific assets as security for a loan. Individuals widely use **mortgage notes payable** to purchase homes, as do many small and some large companies to acquire plant assets. For example, at one time approximately 18% of McDonald's long-term debt related to mortgage notes on land, buildings, and improvements.

Helpful Hint Electronic spreadsheet programs can create a schedule of installment loan payments. This allows you to put in the data for your own mortgage loan and get an illustration that really hits home.

Like other long-term notes payable, the mortgage loan terms may stipulate either a fixed or an adjustable interest rate. Typically, the terms require the borrower to make equal installment payments over the term of the loan. Each payment consists of (1) interest on the unpaid balance of the loan and (2) a reduction of loan principal. While the total amount paid remains constant, the interest decreases each period and the portion applied to the loan principal increases.

Companies initially record mortgage notes payable at face value, and subsequently make entries for each installment payment. To illustrate, assume that Porter Technology Inc. issues a $500,000, 12%, 20-year mortgage note on December 31, 2012, to obtain needed financing for the construction of a new research laboratory. The terms provide for semiannual installment payments of $33,231 (not including real estate taxes and insurance). The installment payment schedule for the first two years is as follows.

Illustration 10C-1
Mortgage installment payment schedule

Semiannual Interest Period	(A) Cash Payment	(B) Interest Expense (D) × 6%	(C) Reduction of Principal (A) − (B)	(D) Principal Balance (D) − (C)
Issue date				$500,000
1	$33,231	$30,000	$3,231	496,769
2	33,231	29,806	3,425	493,344
3	33,231	29,601	3,630	489,714
4	33,231	29,383	3,848	485,866

Porter Technology records the mortgage loan and first installment payment as follows.

A = L + SE
+500,000
+500,000
Cash Flows
+500,000

Dec. 31	Cash	500,000	
	Mortgage Payable		500,000
	(To record mortgage loan)		

A = L + SE
−30,000 Exp
−3,231
−33,231
Cash Flows
−33,231

June 30	Interest Expense	30,000	
	Mortgage Payable	3,231	
	Cash		33,231
	(To record semiannual payment on mortgage)		

In the balance sheet, the company reports the reduction in principal for the next year as a current liability, and classifies the remaining unpaid principal balance as a long-term liability. At December 31, 2013 (the end of semiannual period 2), the total liability is $493,344, of which $7,478 ($3,630 + $3,848) is current and $485,866 ($493,344 − $7,478) is long-term.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 10C

10 Describe the accounting for long-term notes payable. Each payment consists of (1) interest on the unpaid balance of the loan, and (2) a reduction of loan principal. The interest decreases each period, while the portion applied to the loan principal increases each period.

Glossary

Bond certificate *(p. 513)* A legal document that indicates the name of the issuer, the face value of the bonds, and such other data as the contractual interest rate and the maturity date of the bonds.

Bonds *(p. 512)* A form of interest-bearing notes payable issued by corporations, universities, and governmental entities.

Callable bonds *(p. 512)* Bonds that are the issuing company can retire at a stated dollar amount prior to maturity.

Capital lease *(p. 527)* A contractual agreement allowing one party (the lessee) to use the assets of another party (the lessor); accounted for like a debt-financed purchase by the lessee.

Contingencies *(p. 526)* Events with uncertain outcomes that may represent potential liabilities.

Contractual (stated) interest rate *(p. 513)* Rate used to determine the amount of interest the borrower pays and the investor receives.

Convertible bonds *(p. 512)* Bonds that can be converted into common stock at the bondholder's option.

Current liability *(p. 506)* A debt that a company reasonably expects to pay (1) from existing current assets or through the creation of other current liabilities, and (2) within one year or the operating cycle, whichever is longer.

Discount (on a bond) *(p. 517)* The difference between the face value of a bond and its selling price, when a bond is sold for less than its face value.

Effective-interest method of amortization *(p. 534)* A method of amortizing bond discount or bond premium that results in periodic interest expense equal to a constant percentage of the carrying value of the bonds.

Effective-interest rate *(p. 534)* Rate established when bonds are issued that remains constant in each interest period.

Face value *(p. 513)* Amount of principal due at the maturity date of the bond.

Long-term liabilities *(p. 512)* Obligations that a company expects to pay more than one year in the future.

Market interest rate *(p. 514)* The rate investors demand for loaning funds to the corporation.

Maturity date *(p. 513)* The date on which the final payment on a bond is due from the bond issuer to the investor.

Mortgage note payable *(p. 537)* A long-term note secured by a mortgage that pledges title to specific assets as security for the loan.

Notes payable *(p. 506)* An obligation in the form of a written note.

Off-balance-sheet financing *(p. 526)* The intentional effort by a company to structure its financing arrangements so as to avoid showing liabilities on its balance sheet.

Operating lease *(p. 527)* A contractual agreement allowing one party (the lessee) to use the asset of another party (the lessor); accounted for as a rental.

Premium (on a bond) *(p. 517)* The difference between the selling price and the face value of a bond when a bond is sold for more than its face value.

Present value *(p. 514)* The value today of an amount to be received at some date in the future after taking into account current interest rates.

Secured bonds *(p. 512)* Bonds that have specific assets of the issuer pledged as collateral.

Straight-line method of amortization *(p. 531)* A method of amortizing bond discount or bond premium that allocates the same amount to interest expense in each interest period.

Time value of money *(p. 513)* The relationship between time and money. A dollar received today is worth more than a dollar promised at some time in the future.

Times interest earned ratio *(p. 525)* A measure of a company's solvency, calculated by dividing income before interest expense and taxes by interest expense.

Unsecured bonds *(p. 512)* Bonds issued against the general credit of the borrower.

Comprehensive Do it!

Snyder Software Inc. successfully developed a new spreadsheet program. However, to produce and market the program, the company needed additional financing. On January 1, 2011, Snyder borrowed money as follows.

1. Snyder issued $500,000, 11%, 10-year bonds. The bonds sold at face value and pay interest on January 1.
2. Snyder issued $1.0 million, 10%, 10-year bonds for $886,996. Interest is payable on January 1. Snyder uses the straight-line method of amortization.

Instructions

(a) For the 11% bonds, prepare journal entries for the following items.
  (1) The issuance of the bonds on January 1, 2011.
  (2) Accrue interest expense on December 31, 2011.
  (3) The payment of interest on January 1, 2012.

(b) For the 10-year, 10% bonds:
(1) Journalize the issuance of the bonds on January 1, 2011.
(2) Prepare the entry for the redemption of the bonds at 101 on January 1, 2014, after paying the interest due on this date. The carrying value of the bonds at the redemption date was $920,897.

Action Plan

- Record the discount on bonds issued as a contra liability account.
- Compute the loss on bond redemption as the excess of the cash paid over the carrying value of the redeemed bonds.

Solution to Comprehensive ***Do it!***

(a) (1) 2011			
Jan. 1	Cash	500,000	
	Bonds Payable		500,000
	(To record issue of 11%, 10-year bonds at face value)		
(2) 2011			
Dec. 31	Interest Expense	55,000	
	Interest Payable		55,000
	(To record accrual of bond interest)		
(3) 2012			
Jan. 1	Interest Payable	55,000	
	Cash		55,000
	(To record payment of accrued interest)		
(b) (1) 2011			
Jan. 1	Cash	886,996	
	Discount on Bonds Payable	113,004	
	Bonds Payable		1,000,000
	(To record issuance of bonds at a discount)		
(2) 2014			
Jan. 1	Bonds Payable	1,000,000	
	Loss on Bond Redemption	89,103*	
	Discount on Bonds Payable		79,103
	Cash		1,010,000
	(To record redemption of bonds at 101)		
	*($1,010,000 − $920,897)		

the navigator

WILEY PLUS **Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS**

**Note:* All Questions, Exercises, and Problems marked with an asterisk relate to material in the appendices to the chapter.

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 564.

(SO 1) **1.** The time period for classifying a liability as current is one year or the operating cycle, whichever is:
(a) longer. (c) probable.
(b) shorter. (d) possible.

2. To be classified as a current liability, a debt must be expected to be paid: (SO 1)
(a) out of existing current assets.
(b) by creating other current liabilities.
(c) within 2 years.
(d) Either (a) or (b).

(SO 2) **3.** Ottman Company borrows $88,500 on September 1, 2012, from Farley State Bank by signing an $88,500, 12%, one-year note. What is the accrued interest at December 31, 2012?
(a) $2,655. (c) $4,425.
(b) $3,540. (d) $10,620.

(SO 2) **4.** JD Company borrowed $70,000 on December 1 on a 6-month, 12% note. At December 31:
(a) neither the note payable nor the interest payable is a current liability.
(b) the note payable is a current liability but the interest payable is not.
(c) the interest payable is a current liability but the note payable is not.
(d) both the note payable and the interest payable are current liabilities.

(SO 3) **5.** Alexis Company has total proceeds from sales of $4,515. If the proceeds include sales taxes of 5%, what is the amount to be credited to Sales Revenue?
(a) $4,000.
(b) $4,300.
(c) $4,289.25.
(d) The correct answer is not given.

(SO 3) **6.** When recording payroll:
(a) gross earnings are recorded as salaries and wages payable.
(b) net pay is recorded as salaries and wages expense.
(c) payroll deductions are recorded as liabilities.
(d) More than one of the above.

(SO 3) **7.** No Fault Insurance Company collected a premium of $18,000 for a 1-year insurance policy on April 1. What amount should No Fault report as a current liability for Unearned Insurance Premiums at December 31?
(a) $0. (c) $13,500.
(b) $4,500. (d) $18,000.

(SO 4) **8.** What term is used for bonds that have specific assets pledged as collateral?
(a) Callable bonds. (c) Secured bonds.
(b) Convertible bonds. (d) Discount bonds.

(SO 4) **9.** The market interest rate:
(a) is the contractual interest rate used to determine the amount of cash interest paid by the borrower.
(b) is listed in the bond indenture.
(c) is the rate investors demand for loaning funds.
(d) More than one of the above is true.

(SO 5) **10.** Laurel Inc. issues 10-year bonds with a maturity value of $200,000. If the bonds are issued at a premium, this indicates that:
(a) the contractual interest rate exceeds the market interest rate.
(b) the market interest rate exceeds the contractual interest rate.
(c) the contractual interest rate and the market interest rate are the same.
(d) no relationship exists between the two rates.

11. On January 1, 2012, Kelly Corp. issues $200,000, 5-year, 7% bonds at face value. The entry to record the issuance of the bonds would include a: (SO 5)
(a) debit to Cash for $14,000.
(b) debit to Bonds Payable for $200,000.
(c) credit to Bonds Payable for $200,000.
(d) credit to Interest Expense of $14,000.

12. Prescher Corporation issued bonds that pay interest every July 1 and January 1. The entry to accrue bond interest at December 31 includes a: (SO 5)
(a) debit to Interest Payable.
(b) credit to Cash.
(c) credit to Interest Expense.
(d) credit to Interest Payable.

13. Goethe Corporation retires its $100,000 face value bonds at 105 on January 1, following the payment of interest. The carrying value of the bonds at the redemption date is $103,745. The entry to record the redemption will include a: (SO 6)
(a) credit of $3,745 to Loss on Bond Redemption.
(b) debit of $3,745 to Premium on Bonds Payable.
(c) credit of $1,255 to Gain on Bond Redemption.
(d) debit of $5,000 to Premium on Bonds Payable.

14. In a recent year, Derek Corporation had net income of $150,000, interest expense of $30,000, and income tax expense of $20,000. What was Derek Corporation's times interest earned ratio for the year? (SO 7)
(a) 5.00. (c) 6.67.
(b) 4.00. (d) 7.50.

15. Which of the following is *not* a measure of liquidity? (SO 7)
(a) Debt to total assets ratio.
(b) Working capital.
(c) Current ratio.
(d) Current cash debt coverage.

***16.** On January 1, Xiang Corporation issues $500,000, 5-year, 12% bonds at 96 with interest payable on January 1. The entry on December 31 to record accrued bond interest and the amortization of bond discount using the straight-line method will include a: (SO 8)
(a) debit to Interest Expense, $57,600.
(b) debit to Interest Expense, $60,000.
(c) credit to Discount on Bonds Payable, $4,000.
(d) credit to Discount on Bonds Payable, $2,000.

***17.** For the bonds issued in question 16, what is the carrying value of the bonds at the end of the third interest period? (SO 8)
(a) $492,000. (c) $472,000.
(b) $488,000. (d) $464,000.

***18.** On January 1, Holly Ester Inc. issued $1,000,000, 10-year, 9% bonds for $938,554. The market rate of interest for these bonds is 10%. Interest is payable annually on December 31. Holly Ester uses the effective-interest method of amortizing bond discount. At the end of the first year, Holly Ester should report unamortized bond discount of: (SO 9)
(a) $54,900. (c) $51,610.
(b) $57,591. (d) $51,000.

(SO 9) *19. On January 1, Nicholas Corporation issued $1,000,000, 14%, 5-year bonds with interest payable on December 31. The bonds sold for $1,072,096. The market rate of interest for these bonds was 12%. On the first interest date, using the effective-interest method, the debit entry to Interest Expense is for:
(a) $120,000. (c) $128,652.
(b) $125,581. (d) $140,000.

(SO 10) *20. Sampson Corp. purchased a piece of equipment by issuing a $20,000, 6% installment note payable. Quarterly payments on the note are $1,165. What will be the reduction in the principal portion of the note payable that results from the first payment?
(a) $1,165. (c) $865.
(b) $300. (d) $1,200.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. Emily Frazier believes a current liability is a debt that can be expected to be paid in one year. Is Emily correct? Explain.
2. Verona Company obtains $20,000 in cash by signing a 9%, 6-month, $20,000 note payable to First Bank on July 1. Verona's fiscal year ends on September 30. What information should be reported for the note payable in the annual financial statements?
3. (a) Your roommate says, "Sales taxes are reported as an expense in the income statement." Do you agree? Explain.
   (b) Pearl's Cafe has cash proceeds from sales of $8,550. This amount includes $550 of sales taxes. Give the entry to record the proceeds.
4. Helena University sold 9,000 season football tickets at $100 each for its five-game home schedule. What entries should be made (a) when the tickets are sold and (b) after each game?
5. Identify three taxes commonly withheld by the employer from an employee's gross pay.
6. (a) Identify three taxes commonly paid by employers on employees' salaries and wages.
   (b) Where in the financial statements does the employer report taxes withheld from employees' pay?
7. Tootsie Roll Identify the liabilities classified by Tootsie Roll as current.
8. (a) What are long-term liabilities? Give two examples.
   (b) What is a bond?
9. Contrast these types of bonds:
   (a) Secured and unsecured.
   (b) Convertible and callable.
10. Explain each of these important terms in issuing bonds:
    (a) Face value.
    (b) Contractual interest rate.
    (c) Bond certificate.
11. (a) What is a convertible bond?
    (b) Discuss the advantages of a convertible bond from the standpoint of the bondholders and of the issuing corporation.
12. Describe the two major obligations incurred by a company when bonds are issued.
13. Assume that Visitin Inc. sold bonds with a face value of $100,000 for $104,000. Was the market interest rate equal to, less than, or greater than the bonds' contractual interest rate? Explain.
14. Phil and Mason are discussing how the market price of a bond is determined. Phil believes that the market price of a bond is solely a function of the amount of the principal payment at the end of the term of a bond. Is he right? Discuss.
15. If a 6%, 10-year, $800,000 bond is issued at face and interest is paid annually, what is the amount of the interest payment at the end of the first period?
16. If the Bonds Payable account has a balance of $700,000 and the Discount on Bonds Payable account has a balance of $36,000, what is the carrying value of the bonds?
17. Which accounts are debited and which are credited if a bond issue originally sold at a premium is redeemed before maturity at 97 immediately following the payment of interest?
18. Barbara Monroe, the chief financial officer of Helaine Inc., is considering the options available to her for financing the company's new plant. Short-term interest rates right now are 6%, and long-term rates are 8%. The company's current ratio is 2.2:1. If she finances the new plant with short-term debt, the current ratio will fall to 1.5:1. Briefly discuss the issues that Barbara should consider.
19. (a) In general, what are the requirements for the financial statement presentation of long-term liabilities?
    (b) What ratios may be computed to evaluate a company's liquidity and solvency?
20. Gerald Bachus says that liquidity and solvency are the same thing. Is he correct? If not, how do they differ?
21. The management of Lakeland Corporation is concerned because survey data suggest that many potential customers do not buy vehicles due to quality concerns. It is considering taking the bold step of increasing the length of its warranty from the industry standard of 3 years up to an unprecedented 10 years in an effort to increase confidence in its quality. Discuss the business as well as accounting implications of this move.

22. Rick Flowers needs a few new trucks for his business. He is considering buying the trucks but is concerned that the additional debt he will need to borrow will make his liquidity and solvency ratios look bad. What options does he have other than purchasing the trucks, and how will these options affect his financial statements?

23. Miller Corporation has a current ratio of 1.1. Ron has always been told that a corporation's current ratio should exceed 2.0. Miller argues that its ratio is low because it has a minimal amount of inventory on hand so as to reduce operating costs. Miller also points out that it has significant available lines of credit. Is Ron still correct? What do some companies do to compensate for having fewer liquid assets?

24. What are the implications for analysis if a company has significant operating leases?

25. What criteria must be met before a contingency must be recorded as a liability? How should the contingency be disclosed if the criteria are not met?

***26.** Explain the straight-line method of amortizing discount and premium on bonds payable.

***27.** Melanie Corporation issues $200,000 of 6%, 5-year bonds on January 1, 2012, at 103. Assuming that the straight-line method is used to amortize the premium, what is the total amount of interest expense for 2012?

***28.** Joslyn Topp is discussing the advantages of the effective-interest method of bond amortization with her accounting staff. What do you think Joslyn is saying?

***29.** Ziegler Corporation issues $400,000 of 9%, 5-year bonds on January 1, 2012, at 104. If Ziegler uses the effective-interest method in amortizing the premium, will the annual interest expense increase or decrease over the life of the bonds? Explain.

Brief Exercises

BE10-1 Jasper Company has these obligations at December 31: (a) a note payable for $100,000 due in 2 years, (b) a 10-year mortgage payable of $200,000 payable in ten $20,000 annual payments, (c) interest payable of $15,000 on the mortgage, and (d) accounts payable of $60,000. For each obligation, indicate whether it should be classified as a current liability.

Identify whether obligations are current liabilities. (SO 1), **C**

BE10-2 Canney Company borrows $90,000 on July 1 from the bank by signing a $90,000, 7%, 1-year note payable. Prepare the journal entries to record (a) the proceeds of the note and (b) accrued interest at December 31, assuming adjusting entries are made only at the end of the year.

Prepare entries for an interest-bearing note payable. (SO 2), **AP**

BE10-3 Home Town Supply does not segregate sales and sales taxes at the time of sale. The register total for March 16 is $10,388. All sales are subject to a 6% sales tax. Compute sales taxes payable and make the entry to record sales taxes payable and sales.

Compute and record sales taxes payable. (SO 3), **AP**

BE10-4 Franklin University sells 3,500 season basketball tickets at $80 each for its 10-game home schedule. Give the entry to record (a) the sale of the season tickets and (b) the revenue earned by playing the first home game.

Prepare entries for unearned revenues. (SO 3), **AP**

BE10-5 Cindy Neuer's regular hourly wage rate is $16, and she receives an hourly rate of $24 for work in excess of 40 hours. During a January pay period, Cindy works 47 hours. Cindy's federal income tax withholding is $95, and she has no voluntary deductions. Compute Cindy Neuer's gross earnings and net pay for the pay period. Assume that the FICA tax rate is 8%.

Compute gross earnings and net pay. (SO 3), **AP**

BE10-6 Data for Cindy Neuer are presented in BE10-5. Prepare the employer's journal entries to record (a) Cindy's pay for the period and (b) the payment of Cindy's wages. Use January 15 for the end of the pay period and the payment date.

Record a payroll and the payment of wages. (SO 3), **AP**

BE10-7 Palmer Corporation issued 3,000 7%, 5-year, $1,000 bonds dated January 1, 2012, at face value. Interest is paid each January 1.

(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the sale of these bonds on January 1, 2012.
(b) Prepare the adjusting journal entry on December 31, 2012, to record interest expense.
(c) Prepare the journal entry on January 1, 2013, to record interest paid.

Prepare journal entries for bonds issued at face value. (SO 5), **AP**

BE10-8 The balance sheet for Claremont Company reports the following information on July 1, 2012.

Prepare journal entry for redemption of bonds. (SO 6), **AP**

CLAREMONT COMPANY
Balance Sheet (partial)

Long-term liabilities		
Bonds payable	$2,000,000	
Less: Discount on bonds payable	45,000	$1,955,000

Claremont decides to redeem these bonds at 102 after paying annual interest. Prepare the journal entry to record the redemption on July 1, 2012.

Prepare statement presentation of long-term liabilities.
(SO 7), AP

BE10-9 Presented here are long-term liability items for Borders Inc. at December 31, 2012. Prepare the long-term liabilities section of the balance sheet for Borders Inc.

Bonds payable (due 2016)	$700,000
Notes payable (due 2014)	80,000
Discount on bonds payable	28,000

Prepare liabilities section of balance sheet.
(SO 7), AP

BE10-10 Presented here are liability items for Azarian Inc. at December 31, 2012. Prepare the liabilities section of Azarian's balance sheet.

Accounts payable	$157,000	FICA taxes payable	$ 7,800
Notes payable (due May 1, 2013)	20,000	Interest payable	40,000
Bonds payable (due 2016)	900,000	Notes payable (due 2014)	80,000
Unearned sales revenue	240,000	Income taxes payable	3,500
Discount on bonds payable	41,000	Sales taxes payable	1,700

Analyze solvency.
(SO 7), AP

BE10-11 The 2009 adidas financial statements contain the following selected data (in millions).

Current assets	$4,485	Interest expense	$169
Total assets	8,875	Income taxes	113
Current liabilities	2,836	Net income	245
Total liabilities	5,099		
Cash	775		

Compute the following values and provide a brief interpretation of each.
(a) Working capital.
(b) Current ratio.
(c) Debt to total assets ratio.
(d) Times interest earned ratio.

Analyze solvency.
(SO 7), AN

BE10-12 The Canadian National Railway Company's (CN) total assets in a recent year were $24,004 million and its total liabilities were $14,180 million. That year, CN reported operating lease commitments for its locomotives, freight cars, and equipment totalling $740 million. If these assets had been recorded as capital leases, assume that assets and liabilities would have risen by approximately $740 million.
(a) Calculate CN's debt to total assets ratio, first using the figures reported, and then after increasing assets and liabilities for the unrecorded operating leases.
(b) Discuss the potential effect of these operating leases on your assessment of CN's solvency.

Prepare journal entries for bonds issued at a discount.
(SO 8), AP

***BE10-13** Strite Company issues $2 million, 10-year, 7% bonds at 99, with interest payable on December 31. The straight-line method is used to amortize bond discount.
(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the sale of these bonds on January 1, 2012.
(b) Prepare the journal entry to record interest expense and bond discount amortization on December 31, 2012, assuming no previous accrual of interest.

Prepare journal entries for bonds issued at a premium.
(SO 8), AP

***BE10-14** Reiden Inc. issues $4 million, 5-year, 8% bonds at 102, with interest payable on January 1. The straight-line method is used to amortize bond premium.
(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the sale of these bonds on January 1, 2012.
(b) Prepare the journal entry to record interest expense and bond premium amortization on December 31, 2012, assuming no previous accrual of interest.

Use effective-interest method of bond amortization.
(SO 9), AP

***BE10-15** Presented below is the partial bond discount amortization schedule for Syam Corp., which uses the effective-interest method of amortization.

Interest Periods	Interest to Be Paid	Interest Expense to Be Recorded	Discount Amortization	Unamortized Discount	Bond Carrying Value
Issue date				$38,609	$961,391
1	$45,000	$48,070	$3,070	35,539	964,461
2	45,000	48,223	3,223	32,316	967,684

Instructions
(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the payment of interest and the discount amortization at the end of period 1.
(b) Explain why interest expense is greater than interest paid.
(c) Explain why interest expense will increase each period.

BE10-16 Pickeril Inc. issues a $600,000, 10%, 10-year mortgage note on December 31, 2011, to obtain financing for a new building. The terms provide for semiannual installment payments of $48,145. Prepare the entry to record the mortgage loan on December 31, 2011, and the first installment payment.

Prepare entries for long-term notes payable.
(SO 10), **AP**

Do it! Review

Do it! 10-1 You and several classmates are studying for the next accounting examination. They ask you to answer the following questions:

1. If cash is borrowed on a $60,000, 9-month, 10% note on August 1, how much interest expense would be incurred by December 31?
2. The cash register total including sales taxes is $42,000, and the sales tax rate is 5%. What is the sales taxes payable?
3. If $42,000 is collected in advance on November 1 for 6-month magazine subscriptions, what amount of subscription revenue is earned by December 31?

Answer questions about current liabilities.
(SO 2, 3), **C**

Do it! 10-2 During the month of February, TriState Corporation's employees earned wages of $74,000. Withholdings related to these wages were $4,200 for Social Security (FICA), $7,100 for federal income tax, and $1,900 for state income tax. Costs incurred for unemployment taxes were $110 for federal and $160 for state.

Prepare the February 28 journal entries for (a) wages expense and wages payable assuming that all February wages will be paid in March and (b) the company's payroll tax expense.

Prepare entries for payroll and payroll taxes.
(SO 3), **AP**

Do it! 10-3 State whether each of the following statements is true or false.

_____ 1. Convertible bonds are also known as callable bonds.

_____ 2. The market rate is the rate investors demand for loaning funds.

_____ 3. Semiannual interest on bonds is equal to the face value times the stated rate times 6/12.

_____ 4. The present value of a bond is the value at which it should sell in the market.

Evaluate statements about bonds.
(SO 4), **C**

Do it! 10-4 Grenke Corporation issues $300,000 of bonds for $315,000. (a) Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds, and (b) show how the bonds would be reported on the balance sheet at the date of issuance.

Prepare journal entry for bond issuance and show balance sheet presentation.
(SO 5), **AP**

Do it! 10-5 Hanrahan Corporation issued $400,000 of 10-year bonds at a discount. Prior to maturity, when the carrying value of the bonds was $388,000, the company retired the bonds at 99. Prepare the entry to record the redemption of the bonds.

Prepare entry for bond redemption.
(SO 6), **AP**

Exercises

E10-1 Megan Haak and Kathy Quandt borrowed $15,000 on a 7-month, 8% note from Golden State Bank to open their business, MK's Coffee House. The money was borrowed on June 1, 2012, and the note matures January 1, 2013.

Prepare entries for interest-bearing notes.
(SO 2), **AP**

Instructions

(a) Prepare the entry to record the receipt of the funds from the loan.
(b) Prepare the entry to accrue the interest on June 30.
(c) Assuming adjusting entries are made at the end of each month, determine the balance in the interest payable account at December 31, 2012.
(d) Prepare the entry required on January 1, 2013, when the loan is paid back.

E10-2 On May 15, Gruzik's Outback Clothiers borrowed some money on a 4-month note to provide cash during the slow season of the year. The interest rate on the note was 8%. At the time the note was due, the amount of interest owed was $480.

Prepare entries for interest-bearing notes.
(SO 2), **AP**

Instructions

(a) Determine the amount borrowed by Gruzik.
(b) Assume the amount borrowed was $18,500. What was the interest rate if the amount of interest owed was $555?
(c) Prepare the entry for the initial borrowing and the repayment for the facts in part (a).

Prepare entries for interest-bearing notes.
(SO 2), AP

E10-3 On June 1, Chetney Company Ltd. borrows $60,000 from First Bank on a 6-month, $60,000, 8% note. The note matures on December 1.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the entry on June 1.
(b) Prepare the adjusting entry on June 30.
(c) Prepare the entry at maturity (December 1), assuming monthly adjusting entries have been made through November 30.
(d) What was the total financing cost (interest expense)?

Journalize sales and related taxes.
(SO 3), AP

E10-4 In providing accounting services to small businesses, you encounter the following situations pertaining to cash sales.

1. Duvall Company rings up sales and sales taxes separately on its cash register. On April 10, the register totals are sales $22,000 and sales taxes $1,100.
2. Hubbard Company does not segregate sales and sales taxes. Its register total for April 15 is $13,780, which includes a 6% sales tax.

Instructions

Prepare the entries to record the sales transactions and related taxes for (a) Duvall Company and (b) Hubbard Company.

Journalize payroll entries.
(SO 3), AP

E10-5 During the month of March, Lavonis Company's employees earned wages of $64,000. Withholdings related to these wages were $4,896 for Social Security (FICA), $7,500 for federal income tax, $3,100 for state income tax, and $400 for union dues. The company incurred no cost related to these earnings for federal unemployment tax, but incurred $700 for state unemployment tax.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the necessary March 31 journal entry to record wages expense and wages payable. Assume that wages earned during March will be paid during April.
(b) Prepare the entry to record the company's payroll tax expense.

Journalize unearned revenue transactions.
(SO 3), AP

E10-6 Season tickets for the Panthers are priced at $320 and include 16 games. Revenue is recognized after each game is played. When the season began, the amount credited to Unearned Ticket Revenue was $1,728,000. By the end of October, $1,188,000 of the Unearned Ticket Revenue had been recorded as earned.

Instructions

(a) How many season tickets did the Panthers sell?
(b) How many home games had the Panthers played by the end of October?
(c) Prepare the entry for the initial recording of the Unearned Ticket Revenue.
(d) Prepare the entry to recognize the revenue after the first home game had been played.

Journalize unearned subscription revenue.
(SO 3), AP

E10-7 Sprague Company Ltd. publishes a monthly sports magazine, *Fishing Preview*. Subscriptions to the magazine cost $28 per year. During November 2012, Sprague sells 6,300 subscriptions for cash, beginning with the December issue. Sprague prepares financial statements quarterly and recognizes subscription revenue earned at the end of the quarter. The company uses the accounts Unearned Sales Revenue and Sales Revenue. The company has a December 31 year-end.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the entry in November for the receipt of the subscriptions.
(b) Prepare the adjusting entry at December 31, 2012, to record subscription revenue earned in December 2012.
(c) Prepare the adjusting entry at March 31, 2013, to record subscription revenue earned in the first quarter of 2013.

Prepare journal entries for issuance of bonds and payment and accrual of interest.
(SO 5), AP

E10-8 On August 1, 2012, Laduke Corporation issued $600,000, 7%, 10-year bonds at face value. Interest is payable annually on August 1. Laduke's year-end is December 31.

Instructions
Prepare journal entries to record the following events.
(a) The issuance of the bonds.
(b) The accrual of interest on December 31, 2012.
(c) The payment of interest on August 1, 2013.

E10-9 On January 1, Krivitz Company issued $300,000, 8%, 10-year bonds at face value. Interest is payable annually on January 1.

Prepare journal entries for issuance of bonds and payment and accrual of interest.
(SO 5), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare journal entries to record the following events.
(a) The issuance of the bonds.
(b) The accrual of interest on December 31.
(c) The payment of interest on January 1.

E10-10 Assume that the following are independent situations recently reported in the *Wall Street Journal*.
1. General Electric (GE) 7% bonds, maturing January 28, 2013, were issued at 111.12.
2. Boeing 7% bonds, maturing September 24, 2027, were issued at 99.08.

Prepare entries for issue of bonds.
(SO 5), **AN**

Instructions
(a) Were GE and Boeing bonds issued at a premium or a discount?
(b) Explain how bonds, both paying the same contractual interest rate, could be issued at different prices.
(c) Prepare the journal entry to record the issue of each of these two bonds, assuming each company issued $800,000 of bonds in total.

E10-11 Olstad Company issued $350,000 of 8%, 20-year bonds on January 1, 2012, at face value. Interest is payable annually on January 1.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, payment of interest, and redemption at maturity.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the journal entries to record the following events.
(a) The issuance of the bonds.
(b) The accrual of interest on December 31, 2012.
(c) The payment of interest on January 1, 2013.
(d) The redemption of the bonds at maturity, assuming interest for the last interest period has been paid and recorded.

E10-12 The situations presented here are independent of each other.

Prepare journal entries for redemption of bonds.
(SO 6), **AP**

Instructions
For each situation, prepare the appropriate journal entry for the redemption of the bonds.
(a) Martha Corporation retired $140,000 face value, 9% bonds on April 30, 2012, at 101. The carrying value of the bonds at the redemption date was $126,500. The bonds pay annual interest, and the interest payment due on April 30, 2012, has been made and recorded.
(b) Williams, Inc., retired $170,000 face value, 12.5% bonds on June 30, 2012, at 98. The carrying value of the bonds at the redemption date was $184,000. The bonds pay annual interest, and the interest payment due on June 30, 2012, has been made and recorded.

E10-13 Pedrick, Inc. reports the following liabilities (in thousands) on its January 31, 2012, balance sheet and notes to the financial statements.

Prepare liabilities section of balance sheet.
(SO 7), **AP**

Accounts payable	$4,263.9	Mortgage payable	$6,746.7
Accrued pension liability	1,115.2	Operating leases	1,641.7
Unearned sales revenue	1,058.1	Notes payable (due in 2015)	335.6
Bonds payable	1,961.2	Salaries and wages payable	858.1
Current portion of mortgage payable	1,992.2	Notes payable (due in 2013)	2,563.6
		Unused operating line of credit	3,337.6
Income taxes payable	265.2	Warranty liability—current	1,417.3

Instructions
(a) Identify which of the above liabilities are likely current and which are likely long-term. Say if an item fits in neither category. Explain the reasoning for your selection.
(b) Prepare the liabilities section of Pedrick's balance sheet as at January 31, 2012.

Calculate liquidity and solvency ratios; discuss impact of unrecorded obligations on liquidity and solvency.
(SO 7), AP

E10-14 McDonald's 2009 financial statements contain the following selected data (in millions).

Current assets	$ 3,416.3	Interest expense	$ 473.2
Total assets	30,224.9	Income taxes	1,936.0
Current liabilities	2,988.7	Net income	4,551.0
Total liabilities	16,191.0		

Instructions

(a) Compute the following values and provide a brief interpretation of each.
(1) Working capital.
(2) Current ratio.
(3) Debt to total assets ratio.
(4) Times interest earned ratio.

(b) The notes to McDonald's financial statements show that subsequent to 2009 the company will have future minimum lease payments under operating leases of $10,717.5 million. If these assets had been purchased with debt, assets and liabilities would rise by approximately $8,800 million. Recompute the debt to total assets ratio after adjusting for this. Discuss your result.

Calculate current ratio before and after paying accounts payable.
(SO 7), AN

E10-15 3M Company reported the following financial data for 2009 and 2008 (in millions).

3M COMPANY
Balance Sheet (partial)

	2009	2008
Current assets		
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 3,040	$1,849
Accounts receivable, net	3,250	3,195
Inventories	2,639	3,013
Other current assets	1,866	1,541
Total current assets	$10,795	$9,598
Current liabilities	$ 4,897	$5,839

Instructions

(a) Calculate the current ratio for 3M for 2009 and 2008.

(b) Suppose that at the end of 2009, 3M management used $300 million cash to pay off $300 million of accounts payable. How would its current ratio change?

Calculate current ratio before and after paying accounts payable.
(SO 7), AN

E10-16 Sportique Boutique reported the following financial data for 2012 and 2011.

SPORTIQUE BOUTIQUE
Balance Sheet (partial)
September 30 (in thousands)

	2012	2011
Current assets		
Cash and short-term deposits	$2,574	$1,021
Accounts receivable	2,147	1,575
Inventories	1,201	1,010
Other current assets	322	192
Total current assets	$6,244	$3,798
Current liabilities	$4,503	$2,619

Instructions

(a) Calculate the current ratio for Sportique Boutique for 2012 and 2011.

(b) Suppose that at the end of 2012, Sportique Boutique used $1.5 million cash to pay off $1.5 million of accounts payable. How would its current ratio change?

(c) At September 30, Sportique Boutique has an undrawn operating line of credit of $12.5 million. Would this affect any assessment that you might make of Sportique Boutique's short-term liquidity? Explain.

E10-17 A large retailer was sued nearly 5,000 times in a recent year—about once every two hours every day of the year. It has been sued for everything imaginable—ranging from falls on icy parking lots to injuries sustained in shoppers' stampedes to a murder with a rifle purchased at one of its stores. The company reported the following in the notes to its financial statements:

Discuss contingent liabilities.
(SO 7), **C**

> The Company and its subsidiaries are involved from time to time in claims, proceedings, and litigation arising from the operation of its business. The Company does not believe that any such claim, proceeding, or litigation, either alone or in the aggregate, will have a material adverse effect on the Company's financial position or results of its operations.

Instructions
(a) Explain why the company does not have to record these contingent liabilities.
(b) Comment on any implications for analysis of the financial statements.

***E10-18** Sanidas Company issued $500,000, 6%, 30-year bonds on January 1, 2012, at 103. Interest is payable annually on January 1. Sanidas uses straight-line amortization for bond premium or discount.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, payment of interest, amortization of premium using straight-line, and redemption at maturity.
(SO 5, 6, 8), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the journal entries to record the following events.
(a) The issuance of the bonds.
(b) The accrual of interest and the premium amortization on December 31, 2012.
(c) The payment of interest on January 1, 2013.
(d) The redemption of the bonds at maturity, assuming interest for the last interest period has been paid and recorded.

***E10-19** Gatlin Company issued $300,000, 8%, 15-year bonds on December 31, 2011, for $288,000. Interest is payable annually on December 31. Gatlin uses the straight-line method to amortize bond premium or discount.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, payment of interest, amortization of discount using straight-line, and redemption at maturity.
(SO 5, 6, 8), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the journal entries to record the following events.
(a) The issuance of the bonds.
(b) The payment of interest and the discount amortization on December 31, 2012.
(c) The redemption of the bonds at maturity, assuming interest for the last interest period has been paid and recorded.

***E10-20** Azen Corporation issued $400,000, 7%, 20-year bonds on January 1, 2012, for $360,727. This price resulted in an effective-interest rate of 8% on the bonds. Interest is payable annually on January 1. Azen uses the effective-interest method to amortize bond premium or discount.

Prepare journal entries for issuance of bonds, payment of interest, and amortization of discount using effective-interest method.
(SO 5, 9), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the journal entries to record (round to the nearest dollar):
(a) The issuance of the bonds.
(b) The accrual of interest and the discount amortization on December 31, 2012.
(c) The payment of interest on January 1, 2013.

***E10-21** Perez Company issued $380,000, 7%, 10-year bonds on January 1, 2012, for $407,968. This price resulted in an effective-interest rate of 6% on the bonds. Interest is payable annually on January 1. Perez uses the effective-interest method to amortize bond premium or discount.

Prepare journal entries for issuance of bonds, payment of interest, and amortization of premium using effective-interest method.
(SO 5, 9), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the journal entries (rounded to the nearest dollar) to record:
(a) The issuance of the bonds.
(b) The accrual of interest and the premium amortization on December 31, 2012.
(c) The payment of interest on January 1, 2013.

***E10-22** Kitov Co. receives $280,000 when it issues a $280,000, 6%, mortgage note payable to finance the construction of a building at December 31, 2012. The terms provide for semiannual installment payments of $14,285 on June 30 and December 31.

Prepare journal entries to record mortgage note and installment payments.
(SO 10), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the journal entries to record the mortgage loan and the first two installment payments.

Balance sheet presentation of installment note payable.
(SO 10), **AP**

***E10-23** Berry Corporation issued a $50,000, 10%, 10-year installment note payable on January 1, 2012. Payments of $8,137 are made each January 1, beginning January 1, 2013.

Instructions
(a) What amounts should be reported under current liabilities related to the note on December 31, 2012?
(b) What should be reported under long-term liabilities?

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Prepare current liability entries, adjusting entries, and current liabilities section.
(SO 1, 2, 3, 7), **AP**

P10-1A On January 1, 2012, the ledger of Kindt Company contained these liability accounts.

Accounts Payable	$42,500
Sales Taxes Payable	6,600
Unearned Service Revenue	19,000

During January, the following selected transactions occurred.

Jan.	1	Borrowed $18,000 in cash from Premier Bank on a 4-month, 5%, $18,000 note.
	5	Sold merchandise for cash totaling $6,254, which includes 6% sales taxes.
	12	Provided services for customers who had made advance payments of $10,000. (Credit Service Revenue.)
	14	Paid state treasurer's department for sales taxes collected in December 2011, $6,600.
	20	Sold 500 units of a new product on credit at $48 per unit, plus 6% sales tax.

During January, the company's employees earned wages of $70,000. Withholdings related to these wages were $5,355 for Social Security (FICA), $5,000 for federal income tax, and $1,500 for state income tax. The company owed no money related to these earnings for federal or state unemployment tax. Assume that wages earned during January will be paid during February. No entry had been recorded for wages or payroll tax expense as of January 31.

Instructions
(a) Journalize the January transactions.
(b) Journalize the adjusting entries at January 31 for the outstanding note payable and for wages expense and payroll tax expense.
(c) Prepare the current liabilities section of the balance sheet at January 31, 2012. Assume no change in Accounts Payable.

(c) Tot. current liabilities $146,724

Journalize and post note transactions; show balance sheet presentation.
(SO 2, 7), **AP**

P10-2A Connor Corporation sells rock-climbing products and also operates an indoor climbing facility for climbing enthusiasts. During the last part of 2012, Connor had the following transactions related to notes payable.

Sept.	1	Issued a $12,000 note to Patrick to purchase inventory. The 3-month note payable bears interest of 6% and is due December 1. (Connor uses a perpetual inventory system.)
Sept.	30	Recorded accrued interest for the Patrick note.
Oct.	1	Issued a $16,500, 8%, 4-month note to Canton Bank to finance the purchase of a new climbing wall for advanced climbers. The note is due February 1.
Oct.	31	Recorded accrued interest for the Patrick note and the Canton Bank note.

Nov.	1	Issued a $26,000 note and paid $8,000 cash to purchase a vehicle to transport clients to nearby climbing sites as part of a new series of climbing classes. This note bears interest of 6% and matures in 12 months.
Nov.	30	Recorded accrued interest for the Patrick note, the Canton Bank note, and the vehicle note.
Dec.	1	Paid principal and interest on the Patrick note.
Dec.	31	Recorded accrued interest for the Canton Bank note and the vehicle note.

Instructions

(a) Prepare journal entries for the transactions noted above.

(b) Post the above entries to the Notes Payable, Interest Payable, and Interest Expense accounts. (Use T accounts.)

(b) Interest Payable $590

(c) Show the balance sheet presentation of notes payable and interest payable at December 31.

(d) How much interest expense relating to notes payable did Connor incur during the year?

P10-3A The following section is taken from Paynter balance sheet at December 31, 2011.

Prepare journal entries to record interest payments and redemption of bonds.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

Current liabilities	
Interest payable	$ 40,000
Long-term liabilities	
Bonds payable (8%, due January 1, 2015)	500,000

Interest is payable annually on January 1. The bonds are callable on any annual interest date.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the payment of the bond interest on January 1, 2012.

(b) Assume that on January 1, 2012, after paying interest, Paynter calls bonds having a face value of $200,000. The call price is 103. Record the redemption of the bonds.

(b) Loss $6,000

(c) Prepare the adjusting entry on December 31, 2012, to accrue the interest on the remaining bonds.

P10-4A On October 1, 2011, Huber Corp. issued $700,000, 5%, 10-year bonds at face value. The bonds were dated October 1, 2011, and pay interest annually on October 1. Financial statements are prepared annually on December 31.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, interest, balance sheet presentation, and bond redemption.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

Instructions

(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds.

(b) Prepare the adjusting entry to record the accrual of interest on December 31, 2011.

(c) Show the balance sheet presentation of bonds payable and bond interest payable on December 31, 2011.

(d) Prepare the journal entry to record the payment of interest on October 1, 2012.

(e) Prepare the adjusting entry to record the accrual of interest on December 31, 2012.

(f) Assume that on January 1, 2013, Huber pays the accrued bond interest and calls the bonds. The call price is 104. Record the payment of interest and redemption of the bonds.

(f) Loss $28,000

P10-5A Paprocki Company sold $6,000,000, 7%, 15-year bonds on January 1, 2012. The bonds were dated January 1, 2012, and pay interest on December 31. The bonds were sold at 98.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, show balance sheet presentation, and record bond redemption.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

Instructions

(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds on January 1, 2012.

(b) At December 31, 2012, $8,000 of the bond discount had been amortized. Show the long-term liability balance sheet presentation of the bond liability at December 31, 2012.

(c) At January 1, 2014, when the carrying value of the bonds was $5,896,000, the company redeemed the bonds at 102. Record the redemption of the bonds assuming that interest for the year had already been paid.

(c) Loss $224,000

P10-6A You have been presented with selected information taken from the financial statements of Southwest Airlines Co., shown on the next page.

Calculate and comment on ratios.
(SO 7), **AN**

SOUTHWEST AIRLINES CO.
Balance Sheet (partial)
December 31
(in millions)

	2008	2007
Total current assets	$ 2,893	$ 4,443
Noncurrent assets	11,415	12,329
Total assets	$14,308	$16,772
Current liabilities	$ 2,806	$ 4,836
Long-term liabilities	6,549	4,995
Total liabilities	9,355	9,831
Shareholders' equity	4,953	6,941
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	$14,308	$16,772

Other information:

	2008	2007
Net income (loss)	$ 178	$ 645
Income tax expense	100	413
Interest expense	130	119
Cash provided by operations	(1,521)	2,845
Capital expenditures	923	1,331
Cash dividends	13	14

Note 8. Leases
The majority of the Company's terminal operations space, as well as 82 aircraft, were under operating leases at December 31, 2008. Future minimum lease payments under noncancelable operating leases are as follows: 2009, $376,000; 2010, $324,000; 2011, $249,000; 2012, $208,000; 2013, $152,000; after 2013, $728,000.

Instructions
(a) Calculate each of the following ratios for 2008 and 2007.
  (1) Current ratio.
  (2) Free cash flow.
  (3) Debt to total assets.
  (4) Times interest earned ratio.
(b) Comment on the trend in ratios.
(c) Read the company's note on leases. If the operating leases had instead been accounted for like a purchase, assets and liabilities would increase by approximately $1,600 million. Recalculate the debt to total assets ratio for 2008 in light of this information, and discuss the implictions for analysis.

Prepare journal entries to record interest payments, straight-line discount amortization, and redemption of bonds.
(SO 5, 6, 8), **AP**

***P10-7A** The following information is taken from Lima Corp.'s balance sheet at December 31, 2011.

Current liabilities		
Interest payable		$ 96,000
Long-term liabilities		
Bonds payable (4%, due January 1, 2022)	$2,400,000	
Less: Discount on bonds payable	24,000	2,376,000

Interest is payable annually on January 1. The bonds are callable on any annual interest date. Lima uses straight-line amortization for any bond premium or discount. From December 31, 2011, the bonds will be outstanding for an additional 10 years (120 months).

Instructions
(Round all computations to the nearest dollar.)
(a) Journalize the payment of bond interest on January 1, 2012.
(b) Prepare the entry to amortize bond discount and to accrue the interest on December 31, 2012.

(c) Assume on January 1, 2013, after paying interest, that Lima Corp. calls bonds having a face value of $400,000. The call price is 102. Record the redemption of the bonds.
(d) Prepare the adjusting entry at December 31, 2013, to amortize bond discount and to accrue interest on the remaining bonds.

(c) Loss $11,600

***P10-8A** Wong Corporation sold $2,000,000, 7%, 5-year bonds on January 1, 2012. The bonds were dated January 1, 2012, and pay interest on January 1. Wong Corporation uses the straight-line method to amortize bond premium or discount.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, interest, and straight-line amortization, and balance sheet presentation.
(SO 5, 7, 8), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Prepare all the necessary journal entries to record the issuance of the bonds and bond interest expense for 2012, assuming that the bonds sold at 102.
(b) Prepare journal entries as in part (a) assuming that the bonds sold at 97.
(c) Show the balance sheet presentation for the bond issue at December 31, 2012, using (1) the 102 selling price, and then (2) the 97 selling price.

***P10-9A** Trinh Co. sold $3,000,000, 8%, 10-year bonds on January 1, 2012. The bonds were dated January 1, 2012, and pay interest on January 1. The company uses straight-line amortization on bond premiums and discounts. Financial statements are prepared annually.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, interest, and straight-line amortization, and balance sheet presentation.
(SO 5, 7, 8), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Prepare the journal entries to record the issuance of the bonds assuming they sold at:
  (1) 103.
  (2) 98.
(b) Prepare amortization tables for both assumed sales for the first three interest payments.
(c) Prepare the journal entries to record interest expense for 2012 under both of the bond issuances assumed in part (a).
(d) Show the long-term liabilities balance sheet presentation for both of the bond issuances assumed in part (a) at December 31, 2012.

(c) (2) 12/31/12 Interest Expense $246,000

***P10-10A** On January 1, 2012, Ross Corporation issued $1,800,000 face value, 5%, 10-year bonds at $1,667,518. This price resulted in an effective-interest rate of 6% on the bonds. Ross uses the effective-interest method to amortize bond premium or discount. The bonds pay annual interest January 1.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, payment of interest, and amortization of bond discount using effective-interest method.
(SO 5, 9), **AP**

Instructions
(Round all computations to the nearest dollar.)
(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds on January 1, 2012.
(b) Prepare an amortization table through December 31, 2014 (three interest periods) for this bond issue.
(c) Prepare the journal entry to record the accrual of interest and the amortization of the discount on December 31, 2012.
(d) Prepare the journal entry to record the payment of interest on January 1, 2013.
(e) Prepare the journal entry to record the accrual of interest and the amortization of the discount on December 31, 2013.

(c) Interest Expense $100,051

***P10-11A** On January 1, 2012, Lehn Company issued $2,000,000 face value, 7%, 10-year bonds at $2,147,202. This price resulted in a 6% effective-interest rate on the bonds. Lehn uses the effective-interest method to amortize bond premium or discount. The bonds pay annual interest on each January 1.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, payment of interest, and effective-interest amortization, and balance sheet presentation.
(SO 5, 7, 9), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Prepare the journal entries to record the following transactions.
  (1) The issuance of the bonds on January 1, 2012.
  (2) Accrual of interest and amortization of the premium on December 31, 2012.
  (3) The payment of interest on January 1, 2013.
  (4) Accrual of interest and amortization of the premium on December 31, 2013.
(b) Show the proper long-term liabilities balance sheet presentation for the liability for bonds payable at December 31, 2013.
(c) Provide the answers to the following questions in narrative form.
  (1) What amount of interest expense is reported for 2013?
  (2) Would the bond interest expense reported in 2013 be the same as, greater than, or less than the amount that would be reported if the straight-line method of amortization were used?

(a) (4) Interest Expense $128,162

Prepare installment payments schedule, journal entries, and balance sheet presentation for a mortgage note payable.
(SO 7, 10), **AP**

***P10-12A** Durango purchased a new piece of equipment to be used in its new facility. The $370,000 piece of equipment was purchased with a $50,000 down payment and with cash received through the issuance of a $320,000, 8%, 3-year mortgage note payable issued on October 1, 2012. The terms provide for quarterly installment payments of $30,259 on December 31, March 31, June 30, and September 30.

Instructions
(Round all computations to the nearest dollar.)
(a) Prepare an installment payments schedule for the first five payments of the notes payable.
(b) Prepare the journal entry related to the notes payable for December 31, 2012.
(c) Show the balance sheet presentation for this obligation for December 31, 2012. (*Hint:* Be sure to distinguish between the current and long-term portions of the note.)

(c) Current portion $100,304

Prepare journal entries to record payments for long-term note payable, and balance sheet presentation.
(SO 7, 10), **AP**

***P10-13A** Beryl Forman has just approached a venture capitalist for financing for her new business venture, the development of a local ski hill. On July 1, 2011, Beryl was loaned $150,000 at an annual interest rate of 7%. The loan is repayable over 5 years in annual installments of $36,584, principal and interest, due each June 30. The first payment is due June 30, 2012. Beryl uses the effective-interest method for amortizing debt. Her ski hill company's year-end will be June 30.

Instructions
(a) Prepare an amortization schedule for the 5 years, 2011–2016. Round all calculations to the nearest dollar.
(b) Prepare all journal entries for Beryl Forman for the first 2 fiscal years ended June 30, 2012, and June 30, 2013. Round all calculations to the nearest dollar.
(c) Show the balance sheet presentation of the note payable as of June 30, 2013. (*Hint:* Be sure to distinguish between the current and long-term portions of the note.)

(b) 6/30/12 Interest Expense $10,500

Problems: Set B

Prepare current liability entries, adjusting entries, and current liabilities section.
(SO 1, 2, 3, 7), **AP**

GLS

P10-1B On January 1, 2012, the ledger of Fleming Company contained the following liability accounts.

Accounts Payable	$52,000
Sales Taxes Payable	8,200
Unearned Service Revenue	11,000

During January, the following selected transactions occurred.

Jan. 1 Borrowed $18,000 from TriCounty Bank on a 3-month, 7%, $18,000 note.
5 Sold merchandise for cash totaling $18,480, which includes 5% sales taxes.
12 Provided services for customers who had made advance payments of $8,000. (Credit Service Revenue.)
14 Paid state revenue department for sales taxes collected in December 2011 ($8,200).
20 Sold 500 units of a new product on credit at $50 per unit, plus 5% sales tax.

During January, the company's employees earned wages of $54,000. Withholdings related to these wages were $4,131 for Social Security (FICA), $3,900 for federal income tax, and $1,200 for state income tax. The company owed no money related to these earnings for federal or state unemployment tax. Assume that wages earned during January will be paid during February. No entry had been recorded for wages or payroll tax expense as of January 31.

Instructions
(a) Journalize the January transactions.
(b) Journalize the adjusting entries at January 31 for the outstanding notes payable and for wages expense and payroll tax expense.
(c) Prepare the current liabilities section of the balance sheet at January 31, 2012. Assume no change in accounts payable.

(c) Tot. current liabilities $133,366

P10-2B Majestic Mountain Bikes markets mountain-bike tours to clients vacationing in various locations in the mountains of Colorado. In preparation for the upcoming summer biking season, Majestic entered into the following transactions related to notes payable.

Journalize and post note transactions; show balance sheet presentation.
(SO 2, 7), **AP**

Mar. 1	Purchased Puma bikes for use as rentals by issuing a $9,000, 3-month, 6% note payable that is due June 1.
Mar. 31	Recorded accrued interest for the Puma note.
Apr. 1	Issued a $45,000 9-month note for the purchase of mountain property on which to build bike trails. The note bears 8% interest and is due January 1.
Apr. 30	Recorded accrued interest for the Puma note and the land note.
May 1	Issued a 4-month note to Jackson State Bank for $12,000 at 6%. The funds will be used for working capital for the beginning of the season; the note is due September 1.
May 31	Recorded accrued interest for all three notes.
June 1	Paid principal and interest on the Puma note.
June 30	Recorded accrued interest for the land note and the Jackson State Bank note.

Instructions

(a) Prepare journal entries for the transactions noted above.
(b) Post the above entries to the Notes Payable, Interest Payable, and Interest Expense accounts. (Use T accounts.)
(c) Assuming that Majestic's year-end is June 30, show the balance sheet presentation of notes payable and interest payable at that date.
(d) How much interest expense relating to notes payable did Majestic incur during the year?

(b) Interest Payable $1,020

P10-3B The following section is taken from Lois Corp.'s balance sheet at December 31, 2011.

Prepare journal entries to record interest payments and redemption of bonds.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

Current liabilities	
Interest payable	$ 84,000
Long-term liabilities	
Bonds payable (7%, due January 1, 2016)	1,200,000

Interest is payable annually on January 1. The bonds are callable on any annual interest date.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the payment of the bond interest on January 1, 2012.
(b) Assume that on January 1, 2012, after paying interest, Lois Corp. calls bonds having a face value of $300,000. The call price is 104. Record the redemption of the bonds.
(c) Prepare the adjusting entry on December 31, 2012, to accrue the interest on the remaining bonds.

(b) Loss $12,000

P10-4B On April 1, 2011, CMV Corp. issued $600,000, 8%, 5-year bonds at face value. The bonds were dated April 1, 2011, and pay interest annually on April 1. Financial statements are prepared annually on December 31.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, interest, balance sheet presentation, and bond redemption.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

Instructions

(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds.
(b) Prepare the adjusting entry to record the accrual of interest on December 31, 2011.
(c) Show the balance sheet presentation of bonds payable and bond interest payable on December 31, 2011.
(d) Prepare the journal entry to record the payment of interest on April 1, 2012.
(e) Prepare the adjusting entry to record the accrual of interest on December 31, 2012.
(f) Assume that on January 1, 2013, CMV pays the accrued bond interest and calls the bonds. The call price is 103. Record the payment of interest and redemption of the bonds.

(f) Loss 18,000

P10-5B Crescent Electric sold $5,000,000, 9%, 10-year bonds on January 1, 2012. The bonds were dated January 1 and pay interest on January 1. The bonds were sold at 103.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, show balance sheet presentation, and record bond redemption.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

Instructions

(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds on January 1, 2012.
(b) At December 31, 2012, $15,000 of the bond premium had been amortized. Show the long-term liability balance sheet presentation of the bond liability at December 31, 2012.

(c) Loss $80,000

(c) At January 1, 2014, when the carrying value of the bonds was $5,120,000, the company redeemed the bonds at 104. Record the redemption of the bonds assuming that interest for the year had already been paid.

Calculate and comment on ratios.
(SO 7), AN

P10-6B The following selected information was taken from the financial statements of Krispy Kreme Doughnuts, Inc.

KRISPY KREME DOUGHNUTS, INC.
Balance Sheet (partial)
(in thousands)

	Jan. 31, 2010	Feb. 1, 2009
Total current assets	$ 59,223	$ 75,806
Capital assets and other long-term assets	106,053	119,120
	$165,276	$194,926
Current liabilities	$ 37,673	$ 39,616
Long-term liabilities	64,836	97,555
Total liabilities	102,509	137,171
Shareholders' equity	62,767	57,755
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	$165,276	$194,926

Other information:

	2010	2009
Interest expense	$ 10,685	$ 10,679
Tax expense (benefit)	575	(503)
Net loss	(157)	(4,061)
Cash provided by operations	19,827	16,593
Capital expenditures	7,967	4,694
Cash dividends	-0-	-0-

Note 10. Leases
The Company leases equipment and facilities under both capital and operating leases. The approximate future minimum lease payments under non-cancelable (operating) leases as of January 31, 2010, are set forth in the following table:

Fiscal Year Ending in	Amount (in thousands)
2011	$ 8,866
2012	7,972
2013	6,769
2014	5,830
2015	5,420
Thereafter	56,667
	$91,524

Rent expense, net of rental income, totaled $9.6 million in fiscal 2010, $11.8 million in fiscal 2009 and $14.8 million in fiscal 2008.

Instructions
(a) Calculate each of the following ratios for 2010 and 2009.
  (1) Current ratio.
  (2) Free cash flow.
  (3) Debt to total assets ratio.
(b) Comment on Krispy Kreme's liquidity and solvency.

(c) Read the company's note on leases (Note 10). If the operating leases had instead been accounted for like a purchase, assets and liabilities would have increased by approximately $68,000,000. Recalculate the debt to total assets ratio for 2010 and discuss the implications for analysis.

***P10-7B** The following section is taken from Centralia Oil Company's balance sheet at December 31, 2011.

Prepare journal entries to record interest payments, straight-line premium amortization, and redemption of bonds
(SO 5, 6, 8), **AP**

Current liabilities		
Interest payable		$ 216,000
Long-term liabilities		
Bonds payable (6%, due January 1, 2022)	$3,600,000	
Add: Premium on bonds payable	280,000	3,880,000

Interest is payable annually on January 1. The bonds are callable on any annual interest date. Centralia uses straight-line amortization for any bond premium or discount. From December 31, 2011, the bonds will be outstanding for an additional 10 years (120 months).

Instructions
(Round all computations to the nearest dollar.)
(a) Journalize the payment of bond interest on January 1, 2012.
(b) Prepare the entry to amortize bond premium and to accrue interest due on December 31, 2012.
(c) Assume on January 1, 2013, after paying interest, that Centralia Company calls bonds having a face value of $1,800,000. The call price is 102. Record the redemption of the bonds.
(d) Prepare the adjusting entry at December 31, 2013, to amortize bond premium and to accrue interest on the remaining bonds.

(c) Gain $90,000

***P10-8B** Champeau Company sold $2,500,000, 8%, 25-year bonds on January 1, 2012. The bonds were dated January 1, 2012, and pay interest on January 1. Champeau Company uses the straight-line method to amortize bond premium or discount.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, interest, and straight-line amortization, and balance sheet presentation.
(SO 5, 7, 8), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Prepare all the necessary journal entries to record the issuance of the bonds and bond interest expense for 2012, assuming that the bonds sold at 102.
(b) Prepare journal entries as in part (a) assuming that the bonds sold at 96.
(c) Show the balance sheet presentation for the bond issue at December 31, 2012, using (1) the 102 selling price, and then (2) the 96 selling price.

***P10-9B** Marini Corporation sold $2,600,000, 9%, 20-year bonds on December 31, 2011. The bonds were dated December 31, 2011, and pay interest on December 31. The company uses straight-line amortization for premiums and discounts. Financial statements are prepared annually.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, interest, and straight-line amortization, and balance sheet presentation.
(SO 5, 7, 8), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds assuming they sold at:
(1) 98.
(2) 104.
(b) Prepare amortization tables for both of the assumed sales for the first three interest payments.
(c) Prepare the journal entries to record interest expense for the first two interest payments under both of the bond issuances assumed in part (a).
(d) Show the long-term liabilities balance sheet presentation for both of the bond issuances assumed in part (a) at December 31, 2012.

(c) (2) 12/31/12 Interest Expense $228,800

***P10-10B** On January 1, 2012, Pedraza Corporation issued $1,000,000 face value, 6%, 10-year bonds at $1,077,217. This price resulted in an effective-interest rate of 5% on the bonds. Pedraza uses the effective-interest method to amortize bond premium or discount. The bonds pay annual interest January 1.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, payment of interest, and amortization of bond premium using effective-interest method.
(SO 5, 9), **AP**

Instructions
(Round all computations to the nearest dollar.)
(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of the bonds on January 1, 2012.
(b) Prepare an amortization table through December 31, 2014 (three interest periods) for this bond issue.

(c) Interest Expense $53,861

(c) Prepare the journal entry to record the accrual of interest and the amortization of the premium on December 31, 2012.
(d) Prepare the journal entry to record the payment of interest on January 1, 2013.
(e) Prepare the journal entry to record the accrual of interest and the amortization of the premium on December 31, 2013.

Prepare journal entries to record issuance of bonds, payment of interest, and effective-interest amortization, and balance sheet presentation.
(SO 5, 7, 9), **AP**

***P10-11B** On January 1, 2012, Witzling Company issued $4,000,000 face value, 8%, 15-year bonds at $3,391,514. This price resulted in an effective-interest rate of 10% on the bonds. Witzling uses the effective-interest method to amortize bond premium or discount. The bonds pay annual interest January 1.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the journal entries to record the following transactions.
  (1) The issuance of the bonds on January 1, 2012.
  (2) The accrual of interest and the amortization of the discount on December 31, 2012.
  (3) The payment of interest on January 1, 2013.
  (4) The accrual of interest and the amortization of the discount on December 31, 2013.
(b) Show the proper long-term liabilities balance sheet presentation for the liability for bonds payable at December 31, 2013.

(c) (1) $341,067

(c) Provide the answers to the following questions in narrative form.
  (1) What amount of interest expense is reported for 2013?
  (2) Would the bond interest expense reported in 2013 be the same as, greater than, or less than the amount that would be reported if the straight-line method of amortization were used?
  (3) Determine the total cost of borrowing over the life of the bond.
  (4) Would the total bond interest expense be greater than, the same as, or less than the total interest expense that would be reported if the straight-line method of amortization were used?

Prepare installment payments schedule, journal entries, and balance sheet presentation for a mortgage note payable.
(SO 7, 10), **AP**

***P10-12B** Daisy Corporation purchased a new piece of equipment to be used in its new facility. The $450,000 piece of equipment was purchased with a $50,000 down payment and with cash received through the issuance of a $400,000, 6%, 5-year mortgage note payable issued on October 1, 2012. The terms provide for quarterly installment payments of $23,298 on December 31, March 31, June 30, and September 30.

Instructions

(Round all computations to the nearest dollar.)
(a) Prepare an installment payments schedule for the first five payments of the notes payable.

(b) Interest Expense $6,000

(b) Prepare the journal entry related to the notes payable for December 31, 2012.
(c) Show the balance sheet presentation for these obligations for December 31, 2012. (*Hint:* Be sure to distinguish between the current and long-term portions of the note.)

Prepare journal entries to record payments for long-term note payable.
(SO 10), **AP**

***P10-13B** Scott Robertson has just approached a venture capitalist for financing for his sailing school. The venture capitalist is willing to loan Scott $90,000 at a high-risk annual interest rate of 18%. The loan is payable over 2 years in monthly installments of $4,493. Each payment includes principal and interest, calculated using the effective-interest method for amortizing debt. Scott receives the loan on May 1, 2012, which is the first day of his fiscal year. Scott makes the first payment on May 31, 2012.

Instructions

(a) Prepare an amortization schedule for the period from May 1, 2012, to August 31, 2012. Round all calculations to the nearest dollar.

(b) 6/30 Interest Expense $1,303

(b) Prepare all journal entries for Scott Robertson for the period beginning May 1, 2012, and ending July 31, 2012. Round all calculations to the nearest dollar.

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Comprehensive Problem

CP10 Markel Corporation's balance sheet at December 31, 2011, is presented below.

MARKEL CORPORATION
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2011

Cash	$ 30,000	Accounts payable	$ 13,750
Inventory	30,750	Interest payable	2,500
Prepaid insurance	5,600	Bonds payable	50,000
Equipment	38,000	Common stock	25,000
	$104,350	Retained earnings	$ 13,100
			$104,350

During 2012, the following transactions occurred.

1. Markel paid $2,500 interest on the bonds on January 1, 2012.
2. Markel purchased $241,100 of inventory on account.
3. Markel sold for $480,000 cash inventory which cost $265,000. Markel also collected $28,800 sales taxes.
4. Markel paid $230,000 on accounts payable.
5. Markel paid $2,500 interest on the bonds on July 1, 2012.
6. The prepaid insurance ($5,600) expired on July 31.
7. On August 1, Markel paid $10,200 for insurance coverage from August 1, 2012, through July 31, 2013.
8. Markel paid $17,000 sales taxes to the state.
9. Paid other operating expenses, $91,000.
10. Retired the bonds on December 31, 2012, by paying $48,000 plus $2,500 interest.
11. Issued $90,000 of 8% bonds on December 31, 2012, at 103. The bonds pay interest every June 30 and December 31.

Adjustment data:

1. Recorded the insurance expired from item 7.
2. The equipment was acquired on December 31, 2011, and will be depreciated on a straight-line basis over 5 years with a $3,000 salvage value.
3. The income tax rate is 30%. (*Hint:* Prepare the income statement up to income before taxes and multiply by 30% to compute the amount.)

Instructions

(You may want to set up T accounts to determine ending balances.)

(a) Prepare journal entries for the transactions listed above and adjusting entries.

(b) Prepare an adjusted trial balance at December 31, 2012.

(c) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the year ending December 31, 2012, and a classified balance sheet as of December 31, 2012.

(b) Totals $687,695
(c) N.I. $72,905

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapters 1 through 9.)

CCC10 Recall that Cookie Creations borrowed $2,000 from Natalie's grandmother. Natalie now is thinking of repaying all amounts outstanding on that loan. She needs to know the amounts of interest payable and interest expense and needs to make the correct journal entries for repayment of the loan.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to see the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll Industries*

BYP10-1 Refer to the financial statements of Tootsie Roll Industries and the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Appendix A.

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) What were Tootsie Roll's total current liabilities at December 31, 2009? What was the increase/decrease in Tootsie Roll's total current liabilities from the prior year?

(b) How much were the accounts payable at December 31, 2009?

(c) What were the components of total current liabilities on December 31, 2009 (other than accounts payable already discussed above)?

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP10-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company are presented in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll Industries in Appendix A.

Instructions

(a) Based on the information contained in these financial statements, compute the current ratio for 2009 for each company.

What conclusions concerning the companies' liquidity can be drawn from these ratios?

(b) Based on the information contained in these financial statements, compute the following 2009 ratios for each company.

(1) Debt to total assets.

(2) Times interest earned. (Hershey's total interest expense for 2009 was $91,336,000. See Tootsie Roll's Note 10 for its interest expense.)

What conclusions about the companies' long-run solvency can be drawn from the ratios?

RESEARCH CASE

BYP10-3 The September 1, 2009, edition of *CFO.com* contains an article by Marie Leone and Tim Reason entitled "Dirty Secrets." You can access this article at *www.cfo.com/article.cfm/14292477?f=singlepage*.

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following questions.

(a) Summarize the accounting for contingent items that is provided in this textbook.

(b) The authors of the article suggest that many companies are basically accounting for contingencies on a cash basis. Is this consistent with the approach you described in part (a)?

(c) The article suggests that many companies report one set of liability estimates to insurers and a different (lower) set of numbers in their financial statements. How is this possible, and what are the implications for investors?

(d) How do international accounting standards differ in terms of the amounts reported in these types of situations?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP10-4 Hechinger Co. and Home Depot are two home improvement retailers. Compared to Hechinger, founded in the early 1900s, Home Depot is a relative newcomer. But, in recent years, while Home Depot was reporting large increases in net income, Hechinger was reporting increasingly large net losses. Finally, largely due to competition from Home Depot, Hechinger was forced to file for bankruptcy. Here are financial data for both companies (in millions).

	Hechinger	Home Depot
Cash	$ 21	$ 62
Receivables	0	469
Total current assets	1,153	4,933
Beginning total assets	1,668	11,229
Ending total assets	1,577	13,465
Beginning current liabilities	935	2,456
Ending current liabilities	938	2,857
Beginning total liabilities	1,392	4,015
Ending total liabilities	1,339	4,716
Interest expense	67	37
Income tax expense	3	1,040
Cash provided (used) by operations	(257)	1,917
Net income	(93)	1,614
Net sales	3,444	30,219

Instructions

Using the data provided, perform the following analysis.

(a) Calculate working capital and the current ratio for each company. Discuss their relative liquidity.

(b) Calculate the debt to total assets ratio and times interest earned for each company. Discuss their relative solvency.

(c) Calculate the return on assets ratio and profit margin ratio for each company. Comment on their relative profitability.

(d) The notes to Home Depot's financial statements indicate that it leases many of its facilities using operating leases. If these assets had instead been purchased with debt, assets and liabilities would have increased by approximately $2,347 million. Calculate the company's debt to total assets ratio employing this adjustment. Discuss the implications.

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP10-5 ***Purpose:*** Bond or debt securities pay a stated rate of interest. This rate of interest is dependent on the risk associated with the investment. Fitch Ratings provides ratings for companies that issue debt securities.

Address: **www.fitchratings.com**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) In what year did Fitch introduce its bond rating scale? (See **History** in **About Us**.)

(b) What letter values are assigned to debt investments that are considered "investment grade" and "speculative grade"? (See **Ratings Definitions**.)

(c) Search the web to identify two other major credit rating agencies.

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP10-6 On January 1, 2010, Gitzel Corporation issued $3,000,000 of 5-year, 8% bonds at 97. The bonds pay interest annually on January 1. By January 1, 2012, the market rate of interest for bonds of risk similar to those of Gitzel Corporation had risen. As a result, the market value of these bonds was $2,500,000 on January 1, 2012—below their carrying value of $2,946,000.

Jon Kanter, president of the company, suggests repurchasing all of these bonds in the open market at the $2,500,000 price. But to do so the company will have to issue $2,500,000 (face value) of new 10-year, 12% bonds at par. The president asks you, as controller, "What is the feasibility of my proposed repurchase plan?"

Instructions
With the class divided into groups, answer the following.
(a) Prepare the journal entry to retire the 5-year bonds on January 1, 2012. Prepare the journal entry to issue the new 10-year bonds.
(b) Prepare a short memo to the president in response to his request for advice. List the economic factors that you believe should be considered for his repurchase proposal.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP10-7 James Metallo, president of Zinda, Inc., is considering the issuance of bonds to finance an expansion of his business. He has asked you to do the following: (1) discuss the advantages of bonds over common stock financing, (2) indicate the types of bonds he might issue, and (3) explain the issuing procedures used in bond transactions.

Instructions
Write a memorandum to the president, answering his request.

ETHICS CASE

BYP10-8 The July 1998 issue of *Inc.* magazine includes an article by Jeffrey L. Seglin entitled "Would You Lie to Save Your Company?" It recounts the following true situation:

"A Chief Executive Officer (CEO) of a $20-million company that repairs aircraft engines received notice from a number of its customers that engines that it had recently repaired had failed, and that the company's parts were to blame. The CEO had not yet determined whether his company's parts were, in fact, the cause of the problem. The Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) had been notified and was investigating the matter.

What complicated the situation was that the company was in the midst of its year-end audit. As part of the audit, the CEO was required to sign a letter saying that he was not aware of any significant outstanding circumstances that could negatively impact the company—in accounting terms, of any contingent liabilities. The auditor was not aware of the customer complaints or the FAA investigation.

The company relied heavily on short-term loans from eight banks. The CEO feared that if these lenders learned of the situation, they would pull their loans. The loss of these loans would force the company into bankruptcy, leaving hundreds of people without jobs. Prior to this problem, the company had a stellar performance record."

Instructions
Answer the following questions.
(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?
(b) What are the CEO's possible courses of action? What are the potential results of each course of action? (Take into account the two alternative outcomes: the FAA determines the company (1) was not at fault, and (2) was at fault.)
(c) What would you do, and why?
(d) Suppose the CEO decides to conceal the situation, and that during the next year the company is found to be at fault and is forced into bankruptcy. What losses are incurred by the stakeholders in this situation? Do you think the CEO should suffer legal consequences if he decides to conceal the situation?

BYP10-9 During the summer of 2002, the financial press reported that Citigroup was being investigated for allegations that it had arranged transactions for Enron so as to intentionally misrepresent the nature of the transactions and consequently achieve favorable balance sheet treatment. Essentially, the deals were structured to make it appear that money was coming into Enron from trading activities, rather than from loans.

A July 23, 2002, the *New York Times* article by Richard Oppel and Kurt Eichenwald entitled "Citigroup Said to Mold Deal to Help Enron Skirt Rules" suggested that Citigroup intentionally kept certain parts of a secret oral agreement out of the written record for fear that it would change the accounting treatment. Critics contend that this had the effect of significantly understating Enron's liabilities, thus misleading investors and creditors. Citigroup maintains that, as a lender, it has no obligation to ensure that its clients account for transactions properly. The proper accounting, Citigroup insists, is the responsibility of the client and its auditor.

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?

(b) Do you think that a lender, in general, in arranging so called "structured financing" has a responsibility to ensure that its clients account for the financing in an appropriate fashion, or is this the responsibility of the client and its auditor?

(c) What effect did the fact that the written record did not disclose all characteristics of the transaction probably have on the auditor's ability to evaluate the accounting treatment of this transaction?

(d) The *New York Times* article noted that in one presentation made to sell this kind of deal to Enron and other energy companies, Citigroup stated that using such an arrangement "eliminates the need for capital markets disclosure, keeping structure mechanics private." Why might a company wish to conceal the terms of a financing arrangement from the capital markets (investors and creditors)? Is this appropriate? Do you think it is ethical for a lender to market deals in this way?

(e) Why was this deal more potentially harmful to shareholders than other off-balance-sheet transactions (for example, lease financing)?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP10-10 For most U.S. families, medical costs are substantial and rising. But will medical costs be your most substantial expense over your lifetime? Not likely. Will it be housing or food? Again, not likely. The answer: Taxes are likely to be your biggest expense. On average, Americans work 74 days to afford their federal taxes. Companies, too, have large tax burdens. They look very hard at tax issues in deciding where to build their plants and where to locate their administrative headquarters.

Instructions

(a) Determine what your state income taxes are if your taxable income is $60,000 and you file as a single taxpayer in the state in which you live.

(b) Assume that you own a home worth $200,000 in your community and the tax rate is 2.1%. Compute the property taxes you would pay.

(c) Assume that the total gasoline bill for your automobile is $1,200 a year (300 gallons at $4 per gallon). What are the amounts of state and federal taxes that you pay on the $1,200?

(d) Assume that your purchases for the year total $9,000. Of this amount, $5,000 was for food and prescription drugs. What is the amount of sales tax you would pay on these purchases? (Note that many states do not have a sales tax for food or prescription drug purchases. Does yours?).

(e) Determine what your Social Security taxes are if your income is $60,000.

(f) Determine what your federal income taxes are if your taxable income is $60,000 and you file as a single taxpayer.

(g) Determine your *total* taxes paid based on the above calculations, and determine the percentage of income that you would pay in taxes based on the following formula: Total taxes paid ÷ Total income.

FASB CODIFICATION ACTIVITY

BYP10-11 If your school has a subscription to the FASB Codification, go to **http://aaahq.org/asclogin.cfm** to log in and prepare responses to the following.

(a) What is the definition of current liabilities?

(b) What is the long-term obligation?

(c) What guidance does the Codification provide for the disclosure of long-term obligations?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 513 When Convertible Bonds Don't **Q:** The drop in stock prices did not change the debt to total assets ratios of these companies. Discuss how the perception of a high debt to total assets ratio changed before and after the fall in stock prices. **A:** When stock prices fell, the debt to total assets of these companies was unchanged: The debt was outstanding before the fall, and it was outstanding after the fall. However, before the fall, many investors did not worry if a company had a high debt to total assets ratio; they assumed that the debt would be converted to stock and so would never

have to be repaid with cash. After the fall, it became clear that the debt would not be converted to stock; suddenly, a high debt to total assets ratio was a real concern.

p. 526 Debt Masking **Q:** What implications does debt masking have for an investor that is using the debt to total assets ratio to evaluate a company's solvency? **A:** Since the debt to total assets ratio is calculated using financial statement numbers from the end of the accounting period, debt masking could result in investors making incorrect assumptions about a company's solvency. By engaging in debt masking, a company is misleading investors because what it is disclosing at the end of the period does not reflect what its normal financial position was during most of the accounting period.

p. 528 "Covenant-Lite" Debt **Q:** How can financial ratios such as those covered in this chapter provide protection for creditors? **A:** Financial ratios such as the current ratio, debt to total assets ratio, and the times interest earned ratio provide indications of a company's liquidity and solvency. By specifying minimum levels of liquidity and solvency, as measured by these ratios, a creditor creates triggers that enable it to step in before a company's financial situation becomes too dire.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. a **2.** d **3.** b ($88,500 × .12 × $\frac{4}{12}$) **4.** d **5.** b ($4,515 ÷ 1.05) **6.** c **7.** b ($18,000 × $\frac{3}{12}$) **8.** c **9.** c **10.** a **11.** c **12.** d **13.** b ($103,745 − $100,000) **14.** c ($150,000 + $30,000 + $20,000) ÷ $30,000 **15.** a ***16.** c (($500,000 × .04) ÷ 5) ***17.** a ($500,000 − ($20,000 − (3 × $4,000))) ***18.** b (($938,554 × .10) − ($1,000,000 × .09)) = $3,855; ($1,000,000 − $938,554) − $3,855 ***19.** c ($1,072,096 × .12) ***20.** c ($1,165 − ($20,000 ×.015))

IFRS A Look at IFRS

IFRS and GAAP have similar definitions of liabilities. IFRSs related to reporting and recognition of liabilities are found in *IAS 1 (revised)* ("Presentation of Financial Statements") and *IAS 37* ("Provisions, Contingent Liabilities, and Contingent Assets"). The general recording procedures for payroll are similar although differences occur depending on the types of benefits that are provided in different countries.

KEY POINTS

- The basic definition of a liability under GAAP and IFRS is very similar. In a more technical way, liabilities are defined by the IASB as a present obligation of the entity arising from past events, the settlement of which is expected to result in an outflow from the entity of resources embodying economic benefits. Liabilities may be legally enforceable via a contract or law but need not be; that is, they can arise due to normal business practices or customs.
- IFRS requires that companies classify liabilities as current or non-current on the face of the statement of financial position (balance sheet), except in industries where a *presentation* based on liquidity would be considered to provide more useful information (such as financial institutions).When current liabilities (also called short-term liabilities) are presented, they are generally presented in order of liquidity.
- Under IFRS, liabilities are classified as current if they are expected to be paid within 12 months.
- Similar to GAAP, items are normally reported in order of liquidity. Companies sometimes show liabilities before assets. Also, they will sometimes show non-current (long-term) liabilities before current liabilities.
- Under both GAAP and IFRS, preferred stock that is required to be redeemed at a specific point in time in the future must be reported as debt, rather than being presented as either equity or in a "mezzanine" area between debt and equity.
- Under IFRS, companies sometimes will net current liabilities against current assets to show working capital on the face of the statement of financial position. (This is evident in the Zetar financial statements in Appendix C.)
- IFRS requires use of the effective-interest method for amortization of bond discounts and premiums. GAAP allows use of the straight-line method where the difference is not material. Under

IFRS, companies do not use a premium or discount account but instead show the bond at its net amount. For example, if a $100,000 bond was issued at 97, under IFRS a company would record:

Cash	97,000	
Bonds Payable		97,000

- The accounting for convertible bonds differs across IFRS and GAAP. Unlike GAAP, IFRS splits the proceeds from the convertible bond between an equity component and a debt component. The equity conversion rights are reported in equity.

  To illustrate, assume that Harris Corp. issues convertible 7% bonds with a face value of $1,000,000 and receives $1,000,000. Comparable bonds without a conversion feature would have required a 9% rate of interest. To determine how much of the proceeds would be allocated to debt and how much to equity, the promised payments of the bond obligation would be discounted at the market rate of 9%. Suppose that this results in a present value of $850,000. The entry to record the issuance would be:

Cash	1,000,000	
Bonds Payable		850,000
Equity Conversion Rights (Equity)		150,000

- The IFRS leasing standard is *IAS 17*. Both Boards share the same objective of recording leases by lessees and lessors according to their economic substance—that is, according to the definitions of assets and liabilities. However, GAAP for leases is much more "rules-based," with specific bright-line criteria (such as the "90% of fair value" test) to determine if a lease arrangement transfers the risks and rewards of ownership; IFRS is more conceptual in its provisions. Rather than a 90% cut-off, it asks whether the agreement transfers substantially all of the risks and rewards associated with ownership.
- Under GAAP, some contingent liabilities are recorded in the financial statements, others are disclosed, and in some cases no disclosure is required. Unlike GAAP, IFRS reserves the use of the term *contingent liability* to refer only to possible obligations that are *not* recognized in the financial statements but may be disclosed if certain criteria are met. Contingent liabilities are defined in *IAS 37* as being:
  - A possible obligation that arises from past events and whose existence will be confirmed only by the occurrence or non-occurrence of one or more uncertain future events not wholly within the control of the entity; or
  - A present obligation that arises from past events but is not recognized because:
    - It is not probable that an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits will be required to settle the obligation; or
    - The amount of the obligation cannot be measured with sufficient reliability.
- For those items that GAAP would treat as recordable contingent liabilities, IFRS instead uses the term *provisions*. **Provisions** are defined as liabilities of uncertain timing or amount. Examples of provisions would be provisions for warranties, employee vacation pay, or anticipated losses. Under IFRS, the measurement of a provision related to an uncertain obligation is based on the best estimate of the expenditure required to settle the obligation.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

The FASB and IASB are currently involved in two projects, each of which has implications for the accounting for liabilities. One project is investigating approaches to differentiate between debt and equity instruments. The other project, the elements phase of the conceptual framework project, will evaluate the definitions of the fundamental building blocks of accounting. The results of these projects could change the classification of many debt and equity securities.

In addition to these projects, the FASB and IASB have also identified leasing as one of the most problematic areas of accounting. A joint project will initially focus primarily on lessee accounting. One of the first areas to be studied is, "What are the assets and liabilities to be recognized related to a lease contract?" Should the focus remain on the leased item or the right to use the leased item? This question is tied to the Boards' joint project on the conceptual framework—defining an "asset" and a "liability."

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. Which of the following is *false*?
   (a) Under IFRS, current liabilities must always be presented before non-current liabilities.
   (b) Under IFRS, an item is a current liability if it will be paid within the next 12 months.
   (c) Under IFRS, current liabilities are shown in order of liquidity.
   (d) Under IFRS, a liability is only recognized if it is a present obligation.
2. Under IFRS, a contingent liability is:
   (a) disclosed in the notes if certain criteria are met.
   (b) reported on the face of the financial statements if certain criteria are met.
   (c) the same as a provision.
   (d) not covered by IFRS.
3. Stevens Corporation issued 5% convertible bonds with a total face value of $3,000,000 for $3,000,000. If the bonds had not had a conversion feature, they would have sold for $2,600,000. Under IFRS, the entry to record the transaction would require a credit to:
   (a) Bonds Payable for $3,000,000.
   (b) Bonds Payable for $400,000.
   (c) Equity Conversion Rights for $400,000.
   (d) Discount on Bonds Payable for $400,000.
4. Under IFRS, if preference shares (preferred stock) have a requirement to be redeemed at a specific point in time in the future, they are treated:
   (a) as a type of asset account.
   (b) as ordinary shares (common stock).
   (c) in the same fashion as other types of preference shares.
   (d) as a liability.
5. The joint projects of the FASB and IASB could potentially:
   (a) change the definition of liabilities.
   (b) change the definition of equity.
   (c) change the definition of assets.
   (d) All of the above.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS10–1 Explain how IFRS defines a provision and give an example.

IFRS10–2 Explain how IFRS defines a contingent liability and give an example.

IFRS10–3 Briefly describe some of the similarities and differences between GAAP and IFRS with respect to the accounting for liabilities.

IFRS10–4 Ratzlaff Company issues €2 million, 10-year, 8% bonds at 97, with interest payable on July 1 and January 1.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the journal entry to record the sale of these bonds on January 1, 2012.
(b) Assuming instead that the above bonds sold for 104, prepare the journal entry to record the sale of these bonds on January 1, 2012.

IFRS10–5 Many multinational companies find it beneficial to have their shares listed on stock exchanges in foreign countries. In order to do this, they must comply with the securities laws of those countries. Some of these laws relate to the form of financial disclosure the company must provide, including disclosures related to contingent liabilities. This exercise investigates the Tokyo Stock Exchange, the largest stock exchange in Japan.

Address: **www.tse.or.jp/english/,** or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Choose **About TSE**.
2. Choose **History of TSE**. Answer questions (a) and (b).
3. Choose **Listed Company information**.
4. Choose **Disclosure**. Answer questions (c) and (d).
5. Answer the following questions.
   (a) When was the first stock exchange opened in Japan? How many exchanges does Japan have today?
   (b) What event caused trading to stop for a period of time in Japan?

(c) What are four examples of decisions by corporations that must be disclosed at the time of their occurrence?
(d) What are four examples of "occurrence of material fact" that must be disclosed at the time of their occurrence?

INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL STATEMENT ANALYSIS: *Zetar plc*

IFRS10–6 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C. The company's complete annual report, including the notes to its financial statements, is available at **www.zetarplc.com**.

Instructions
Use the company's annual report to answer the following questions.
(a) According to the notes to the financial statements, what types of transactions do trade payables relate to? What was the average amount of time it took the company to pay its payables?
(b) Note 2 (B) discusses provisions that the company records for certain types of activities. What do the provisions relate to, what are the estimates based on, and what could cause those estimates to change in subsequent periods?
(c) What was the average interest rate paid on bank loans and overdrafts?

Answers to IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. a **2.** a **3.** c **4.** d **5.** d

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 11

REPORTING AND ANALYZING STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY

the navigator

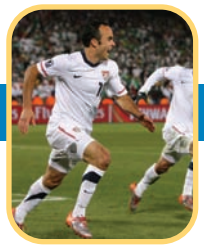
- Scan **Study Objectives**
- Read **Feature Story**
- Scan **Preview**
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!*
  p. 577 p. 579 p. 581 p. 583
  p. 589 p. 592
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit**
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives**
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 599
- Answer **Self-Test Questions**
- Complete **Assignments**
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 619

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Identify and discuss the major characteristics of a corporation.
2. Record the issuance of common stock.
3. Explain the accounting for the purchase of treasury stock.
4. Differentiate preferred stock from common stock.
5. Prepare the entries for cash dividends and understand the effect of stock dividends and stock splits.
6. Identify the items that affect retained earnings.
7. Prepare a comprehensive stockholders' equity section.
8. Evaluate a corporation's dividend and earnings performance from a stockholder's perspective.

the navigator



WHAT'S COOKING?

What major U.S. corporation got its start 38 years ago with a waffle iron? *Hint:* It doesn't sell food. *Another hint:* Swoosh. *Another hint:* "Just do it." That's right, Nike. In 1971 Nike co-founder Bill Bowerman put a piece of rubber into a kitchen waffle iron, and the trademark waffle sole was born. It seems fair to say that at Nike, "They don't make 'em like they used to."

Nike was co-founded by Bowerman and Phil Knight, a member of Bowerman's University of Oregon track team. Each began in the shoe business independently during the early 1960s. Bowerman got his start by making hand-crafted running shoes for his University of Oregon track team. Knight, after completing graduate school, started a small business importing low-cost, high-quality shoes from Japan. In 1964, the two joined forces, each contributing $500, and formed Blue Ribbon Sports, a partnership that marketed Japanese shoes.

It wasn't until 1971 that the company began manufacturing its own line of shoes. With the new shoes came a new corporate name—Nike—the Greek goddess of victory. It is hard to imagine that the company that now boasts a stable full of world-class athletes as promoters at one time had part-time employees selling shoes out of car trunks at track meets. Nike has achieved its success through relentless innovation combined with unbridled promotion.

By 1980, Nike was sufficiently established that it was able to issue its first stock to the public. In that same year, it also created a stock ownership program for its employees, allowing them to share in the company's success. Since then, Nike has enjoyed phenomenal growth, with 2009 sales reaching $19.2 billion and total dividends paid of $467 million.

Nike is not alone in its quest for the top of the sport shoe world. Reebok used to be Nike's arch rival (get it? "arch"), but then Reebok was acquired by the German company adidas. Now adidas pushes Nike every step of the way.

The shoe market is fickle, with new styles becoming popular almost daily and vast international markets still lying untapped. Whether one of these two giants does eventually take control of the pedi-planet remains to be seen. Meanwhile, the shareholders sit anxiously in the stands as this Olympic-size drama unfolds.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 11 . . .

- **Wall Street No Friend of Facebook** *(p. 573)*
- **How to Read Stock Quotes** *(p. 579)*
- **A No-Split Philosophy** *(p. 588)*

preview of chapter 11

Corporations like Nike and adidas have substantial resources at their disposal. In fact, the corporation is the dominant form of business organization in the United States in terms of sales, earnings, and number of employees. All of the 500 largest U.S. companies are corporations. In this chapter, we look at the essential features of a corporation and explain the accounting for a corporation's capital stock transactions.

The content and organization of the chapter are as follows.

Reporting and Analyzing Stockholders' Equity

The Corporate Form of Organization	Stock Issue Considerations	Accounting for Treasury Stock	Preferred Stock	Dividends and Retained Earnings	Financial Statement Presentation and Corporate Performance
• Characteristics • Formation • Stockholder rights	• Authorized stock • Issuance • Par and no-par value • Accounting for common stock issues	• Purchase of treasury stock	• Dividend preferences • Liquidation preference	• Cash dividends • Stock dividends • Stock splits • Retained earnings restrictions	• Balance sheet • Statement of cash flows • Dividend record • Earnings performance • Debt vs. equity decision

the navigator

The Corporate Form of Organization

A corporation is created by law. As a legal entity, a **corporation** has most of the rights and privileges of a person. The major exceptions relate to privileges that can be exercised only by a living person, such as the right to vote or to hold public office. Similarly, a corporation is subject to the same duties and responsibilities as a person. For example, it must abide by the law and it must pay taxes.

We can classify corporations in a variety of ways. Two common classifications are **by purpose** and **by ownership**. A corporation may be organized for the purpose of making a profit (such as Nike or General Motors), or it may be a nonprofit charitable, medical, or educational corporation (such as the Salvation Army or the American Cancer Society).

Classification by ownership differentiates publicly held and privately held corporations. A **publicly held corporation** may have thousands of stockholders, and its stock is traded on a national securities market such as the New York Stock Exchange. Examples are IBM, Caterpillar, and General Electric. In contrast, a **privately held corporation**, often referred to as a closely held corporation, usually has only a few stockholders and does not offer its stock for sale to the general public. Privately held companies are generally much smaller than publicly held companies, although some notable exceptions exist. Cargill Inc., a private corporation that trades in grain and other commodities, is one of the largest companies in the United States. This chapter deals primarily with issues related to publicly held companies.

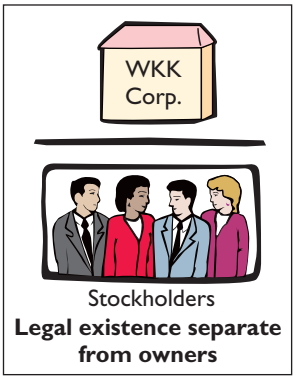
study objective 1

Identify and discuss the major characteristics of a corporation.

CHARACTERISTICS OF A CORPORATION

In 1964, when Nike's founders, Knight and Bowerman, were just getting started in the running shoe business, they formed their original organization as a partnership. In 1968, they reorganized the company as a corporation. A number of

characteristics distinguish a corporation from sole proprietorships and partnerships. The most important of these characteristics are explained below.

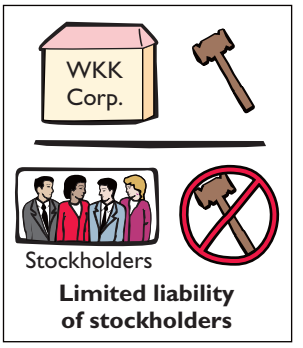


Legal existence separate from owners

Separate Legal Existence

As an entity separate and distinct from its owners, the corporation acts under its own name rather than in the name of its stockholders. Nike, for example, may buy, own, and sell property, borrow money, and enter into legally binding contracts in its own name. It may also sue or be sued. It pays taxes as a separate entity.

In contrast to a partnership, in which the acts of the owners (partners) bind the partnership, the acts of corporate owners (stockholders) do not bind the corporation unless such owners are agents of the corporation. For example, if you owned shares of Nike stock, you would not have the right to purchase inventory for the company unless you were designated as an agent of the corporation.



Limited liability of stockholders

Limited Liability of Stockholders

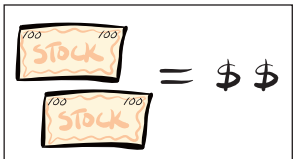
Since a corporation is a separate legal entity, creditors ordinarily have recourse only to corporate assets to satisfy their claims. The liability of stockholders is normally limited to their investment in the corporation. Creditors have no legal claim on the personal assets of the stockholders unless fraud has occurred. Thus, even in the event of bankruptcy of the corporation, stockholders' losses are generally limited to the amount of capital they have invested in the corporation.

Transferable ownership rights

Transferable Ownership Rights

Ownership of a corporation is held in shares of capital stock, which are transferable units. Stockholders may dispose of part or all of their interest in a corporation simply by selling their stock. The transfer of an ownership interest in a partnership requires the consent of each partner. In contrast, the transfer of stock is entirely at the discretion of the stockholder. It does not require the approval of either the corporation or other stockholders.

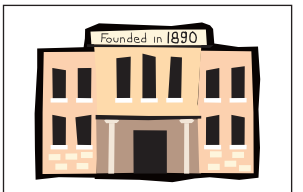
The transfer of ownership rights among stockholders normally has no effect on the operating activities of the corporation. Nor does it affect the corporation's assets, liabilities, and total stockholders' equity. The transfer of ownership rights is a transaction between individual owners. The company does not participate in the transfer of these ownership rights after the original sale of the capital stock.



Ability to acquire capital

Ability to Acquire Capital

It is relatively easy for a corporation to obtain capital through the issuance of stock. Buying stock in a corporation is often attractive to an investor because a stockholder has limited liability and shares of stock are readily transferable. Also, numerous individuals can become stockholders by investing small amounts of money.



Continuous life

Continuous Life

The life of a corporation is stated in its charter. The life may be perpetual or it may be limited to a specific number of years. If it is limited, the company can extend the period of existence through renewal of the charter. Since a corporation is a separate legal entity, its continuance as a going concern is not affected by the withdrawal, death, or incapacity of a stockholder, employee, or officer. As a result, a successful corporation can have a continuous and perpetual life.

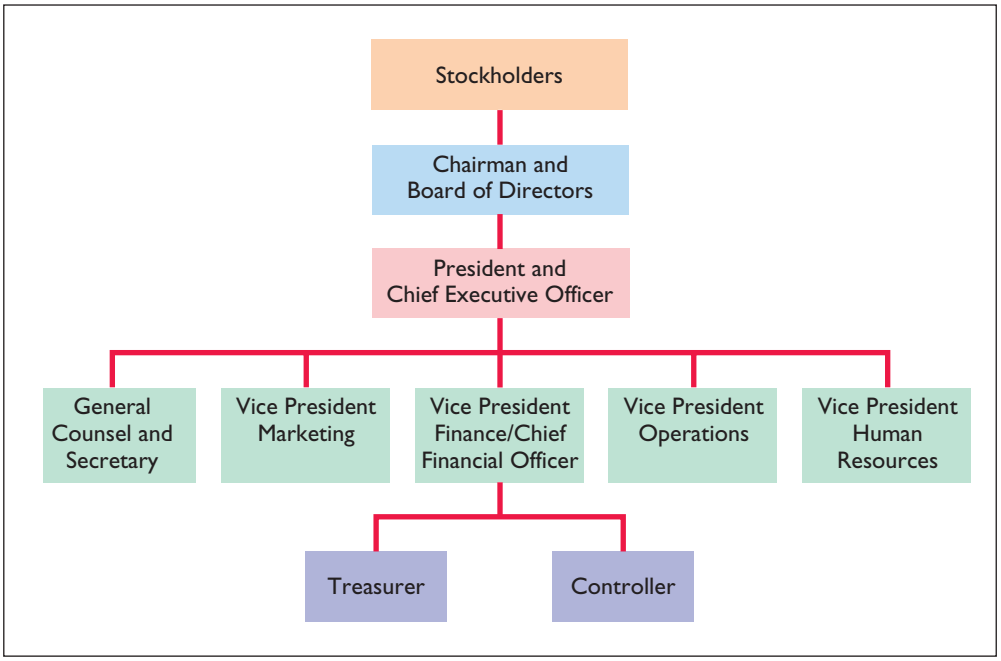
Corporation Management

Although stockholders legally own the corporation, they manage it indirectly through a board of directors they elect. Philip Knight is the chairman of Nike's

board of directors. The board, in turn, formulates the operating policies for the company. The board also selects officers, such as a president and one or more vice presidents, to execute policy and to perform daily management functions. As a result of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, the board is now required to monitor management's actions more closely. Many feel that the failures at Enron and WorldCom could have been avoided by more diligent boards.

Illustration 11-1 depicts a typical organization chart showing the delegation of responsibility.

Illustration 11-1
Corporation organization chart

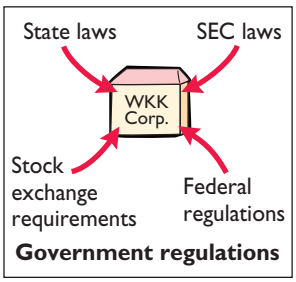


Ethics Note Managers who are not owners are often compensated based on the performance of the company. They thus may be tempted to exaggerate company performance by inflating income figures.

The chief executive officer (CEO) has overall responsibility for managing the business. As the organization chart shows, the CEO delegates responsibility to other officers. The chief accounting officer is the **controller**. The controller's responsibilities are to (1) maintain the accounting records, (2) maintain an adequate system of internal control, and (3) prepare financial statements, tax returns, and internal reports. The **treasurer** has custody of the corporation's funds and is responsible for maintaining the company's cash position.

The organizational structure of a corporation enables a company to hire professional managers to run the business. On the other hand, the separation of ownership and management often reduces an owner's ability to actively manage the company.

Government Regulations



A corporation is subject to numerous state and federal regulations. For example, state laws usually prescribe the requirements for issuing stock, the distributions of earnings permitted to stockholders, and acceptable methods for retiring stock. Federal securities laws govern the sale of capital stock to the general public. Also, most publicly held corporations are required to make extensive disclosure of their financial affairs to the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) through quarterly and annual reports. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act increased the company's responsibility for the accuracy of these reports. In addition, when a corporate stock is listed and traded on organized securities exchanges, the corporation must comply with the reporting requirements of these exchanges.

Accounting Across the Organization

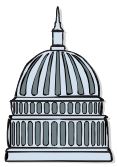
Wall Street No Friend of Facebook

In the 1990s, it was the dream of every young technology entrepreneur to start a company and do an initial public offering (IPO), that is, list company shares on a stock exchange. It seemed like there was a never-ending supply of 20-something year-old technology entrepreneurs that made millions doing IPOs of companies that never made a profit and eventually failed. In sharp contrast to this is Mark Zuckerberg, the 25-year-old founder and CEO of Facebook. If Facebook did an IPO, he would make billions of dollars. But, he is in no hurry to go public. Because his company doesn't need to invest in factories, distribution systems, or even marketing, it doesn't need to raise a lot of cash. Also, by not going public, Zuckerberg has more control over the direction of the company. Right now, he and the other founders don't have to answer to outside shareholders, who might be more concerned about short-term investment horizons rather than long-term goals. In addition, publicly traded companies face many more financial reporting disclosure requirements.

Source: Jessica E. Vascellaro, "Facebook CEO in No Rush to 'Friend' Wall Street," *Wall Street Journal Online* (March 4, 2010).

? Why has Mark Zuckerberg, the CEO and founder of Facebook, delayed taking his company's shares public through an initial public offering (IPO)? (See page 618.)

Additional Taxes



Additional taxes

Owners of proprietorships and partnerships report their share of earnings on their personal income tax returns. The individual owner then pays taxes on this amount. Corporations, on the other hand, must pay federal and state income taxes as a separate legal entity. These taxes can be substantial: They can amount to as much as 40% of taxable income.

In addition, stockholders are required to pay taxes on cash dividends. Thus, many argue that corporate income is **taxed twice (double taxation)**—once at the corporate level and again at the individual level.

Illustration 11-2 shows the advantages and disadvantages of a corporation compared to a sole proprietorship and partnership.

Advantages	Disadvantages
• Separate legal existence • Limited liability of stockholders • Transferable ownership rights • Ability to acquire capital • Continuous life • Corporation management—professional managers	• Corporation management—separation of ownership and management • Government regulations • Additional taxes

Illustration 11-2 Advantages and disadvantages of a corporation

Other Forms of Business Organization

A variety of "hybrid" organizational forms—forms that combine different attributes of partnerships and corporations—now exist. For example, one type of corporate form, called an **S corporation**, allows for legal treatment as a corporation but tax treatment as a partnership—that is, no double taxation. Because of changes to the S corporation's rules, more small- and medium-sized businesses

now may choose S corporation treatment. One of the primary criteria is that the company cannot have more than 75 shareholders. Other forms of organization include limited partnerships, limited liability partnerships (LLPs), and limited liability companies (LLCs).

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Should the company incorporate?	Capital needs, growth expectations, type of business, tax status	Corporations have limited liability, easier capital raising ability, and professional managers; but they suffer from additional taxes, government regulations, and separation of ownership from management.	Must carefully weigh the costs and benefits in light of the particular circumstances.

FORMING A CORPORATION

A corporation is formed by grant of a state **charter**. The charter is a document that describes the name and purpose of the corporation, the types and number of shares of stock that are authorized to be issued, the names of the individuals that formed the company, and the number of shares that these individuals agreed to purchase. Regardless of the number of states in which a corporation has operating divisions, it is incorporated in only one state. It is to the company's advantage to incorporate in a state whose laws are favorable to the corporate form of business organization. For example, although General Motors has its headquarters in Michigan, it is incorporated in New Jersey. In fact, more and more corporations have been incorporating in states with rules that favor existing management. For example, Gulf Oil changed its state of incorporation to Delaware to thwart possible unfriendly takeovers. There, certain defensive tactics against takeovers can be approved by the board of directors alone, without a vote by shareholders.

Upon receipt of its charter from the state of incorporation, the corporation establishes **by-laws**. The by-laws establish the internal rules and procedures for conducting the affairs of the corporation. Corporations engaged in interstate commerce must also obtain a **license** from each state in which they do business. The license subjects the corporation's operating activities to the general corporation laws of the state.

STOCKHOLDER RIGHTS

When chartered, the corporation may begin selling shares of stock. When a corporation has only one class of stock, it is identified as **common stock**. Each share of common stock gives the stockholder the ownership rights pictured in Illustration 11-3. The articles of incorporation or the by-laws state the ownership rights of a share of stock.

Proof of stock ownership is evidenced by a printed or engraved form known as a **stock certificate**. As shown in Illustration 11-4, the face of the certificate shows the name of the corporation, the stockholder's name, the class and special features of the stock, the number of shares owned, and the signatures of authorized corporate officials. Certificates are prenumbered to ensure proper control over their use; they may be issued for any quantity of shares.

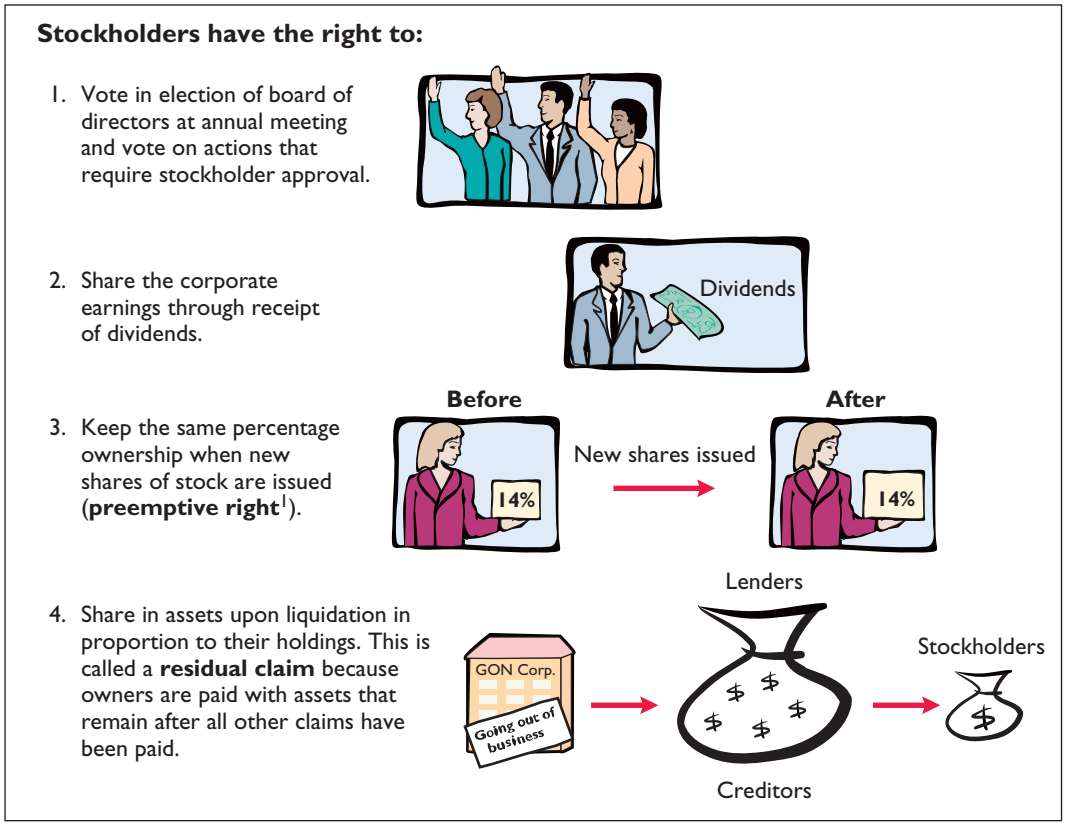


Illustration 11-3 Ownership rights of stockholders

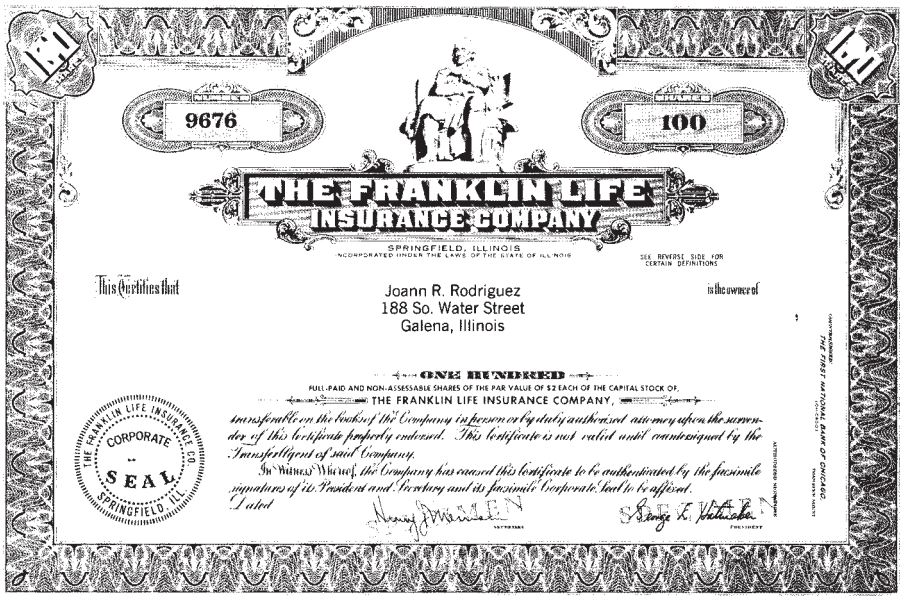


Illustration 11-4 A stock certificate

Stock Issue Considerations

Although Nike incorporated in 1968, it did not sell stock to the public until 1980. At that time, Nike evidently decided it would benefit from the infusion of cash that a public sale of its shares would bring. When a corporation decides to

[1]A number of companies have eliminated the preemptive right because they believe it places an unnecessary and cumbersome demand on management. For example, IBM, by stockholder approval, has dropped its preemptive right for stockholders.

issue stock, it must resolve a number of basic questions: How many shares should it authorize for sale? How should it issue the stock? What value should it assign to the stock? We address these questions in the following sections.

AUTHORIZED STOCK

Authorized stock is the amount of stock that a corporation is authorized to sell as indicated in its charter. If the corporation has sold all of its authorized stock, then it must obtain permission from the state to change its charter before it can issue additional shares.

The authorization of common stock does not result in a formal accounting entry. The reason is that the event has no immediate effect on either corporate assets or stockholders' equity. However, the corporation must disclose in the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet the number of shares authorized.

International Note U.S. and U.K. corporations raise most of their capital through millions of outside shareholders and bondholders. In contrast, companies in Germany, France, and Japan acquire financing mostly from large banks or other financial institutions. Consequently, in the latter environment, shareholders are somewhat less important.

ISSUANCE OF STOCK

A corporation can issue common stock **directly** to investors. Alternatively, it can issue common stock **indirectly** through an investment banking firm that specializes in bringing securities to the attention of prospective investors. Direct issue is typical in closely held companies. Indirect issue is customary for a publicly held corporation.

New issues of stock may be offered for sale to the public through various organized U.S. or foreign securities exchanges. Based on recent figures, the top five exchanges by value of shares traded are the New York Stock Exchange, Nasdaq stock market, London Stock Exchange, Tokyo Stock Exchange, and Euronext.

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

The president, chief operating officer, and chief financial officer of SafeNet, a software encryption company, were each awarded employee stock options by the company's board of directors as part of their compensation package. Stock options enable an employee to buy a company's stock sometime in the future at the price that existed when the stock option was awarded. For example, suppose that you received stock options today, when the stock price of your company was $30. Three years later, if the stock price rose to $100, you could "exercise" your options and buy the stock for $30 per share, thereby making $70 per share. After being awarded their stock options, the three employees changed the award dates in the company's records to dates in the past, when the company's stock was trading at historical lows. For example, using the previous example, they would choose a past date when the stock was selling for $10 per share, rather than the $30 price on the actual award date. In our example, this would increase the profit from exercising the options to $90 per share.

Total take: $1.7 million

THE MISSING CONTROL

Independent internal verification. The company's board of directors should have ensured that the awards were properly administered. For example, the date on the minutes from the board meeting should be compared to the dates that were recorded for the awards. In addition, the dates should again be confirmed upon exercise.

PAR AND NO-PAR VALUE STOCKS

Par value stock is capital stock that has been assigned a value per share in the corporate charter. Years ago, par value was used to determine the **legal capital** that must be retained in the business for the protection of corporate creditors. That amount is not available for withdrawal by stockholders. Thus, in the past, most states required the corporation to sell its shares at par or above.

However, the usefulness of par value as a device to protect creditors was limited because par value was often immaterial relative to the value of the company's stock in the securities markets—even at the time of issue. For example, Loews Corporation's par value is $0.01 per share, yet a new issue in 2010 would have sold at a **market value** in the $35 per share range. Thus, par has no relationship with market value and in the vast majority of cases is an immaterial amount. As a consequence, today many states do not require a par value. Instead, they use other means to protect creditors.

No-par value stock is capital stock that has not been assigned a value in the corporate charter. No-par value stock is fairly common today. For example, Nike and Procter & Gamble both have no-par stock. In many states, the board of directors assigns a **stated value** to the no-par shares.

before you go on...

Do it! Indicate whether each of the following statements is true or false.

CORPORATE ORGANIZATION

_____ 1. Similar to partners in a partnership, stockholders of a corporation have unlimited liability.

_____ 2. It is relatively easy for a corporation to obtain capital through the issuance of stock.

_____ 3. The separation of ownership and management is an advantage of the corporate form of business.

_____ 4. The journal entry to record the authorization of capital stock includes a credit to the appropriate capital stock account.

_____ 5. All states require a par value per share for capital stock.

Action Plan

- Review the characteristics of a corporation and understand which are advantages and which are disadvantages.
- Understand that corporations raise capital through the issuance of stock, which can be par or no-par.

Solution

1. False. The liability of stockholders is normally limited to their investment in the corporation.
2. True.
3. False. The separation of ownership and management is a disadvantage of the corporate form of business.
4. False. The authorization of capital stock does not result in a formal accounting entry.
5. False. Many states do not require a par value.

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE11-1** and **Do it! 11-1.**

ACCOUNTING FOR COMMON STOCK ISSUES

study objective 2
Record the issuance of common stock.

The stockholders' equity section of a corporation's balance sheet includes (1) **paid-in (contributed) capital** and (2) **retained earnings (earned capital)**. The distinction between paid-in capital and retained earnings is important from both a legal and an economic point of view. **Paid-in capital** is the amount stockholders paid to the corporation in exchange for shares of ownership. **Retained earnings** is earned capital held for future use in the business. In this section,

Helpful Hint Stock is sometimes issued in exchange for services (payment to attorneys or consultants, for example) or for noncash assets (land or buildings). The value recorded for the shares issued is determined by either the market value of the shares or the value of the good or service received, depending upon which value the company can more readily determine.

we discuss the accounting for paid-in capital. In a later section, we discuss retained earnings.

Let's now look at how to account for new issues of common stock. The primary objectives in accounting for the issuance of common stock are (1) to identify the specific sources of paid-in capital and (2) to maintain the distinction between paid-in capital and retained earnings. As shown below, **the issuance of common stock affects only paid-in capital accounts**.

As discussed earlier, par value does not indicate a stock's market value. The cash proceeds from issuing par value stock may be equal to, greater than, or less than par value. When a company records the issuance of common stock for cash, it credits the par value of the shares to Common Stock, and records in a separate paid-in capital account the portion of the proceeds that is above or below par value.

To illustrate, assume that Hydro-Slide, Inc. issues 1,000 shares of $1 par value common stock at par for cash. The entry to record this transaction is:

A	=	L	+	SE
+1,000				
				+1,000 CS

Cash Flows
+1,000

Cash	1,000	
Common Stock		1,000
(To record issuance of 1,000 shares of $1 par common stock at par)		

Now assume Hydro-Slide, Inc. issues an additional 1,000 shares of the $1 par value common stock for cash at $5 per share. The amount received above the par value, in this case $4 ($5 − $1), would be credited to Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value. The entry is:

A	=	L	+	SE
+5,000				
				+1,000 CS
				+4,000 CS

Cash Flows
+5,000

Cash	5,000	
Common Stock (1,000 × $1)		1,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value		4,000
(To record issuance of 1,000 shares of common stock in excess of par)		

The total paid-in capital from these two transactions is $6,000. If Hydro-Slide, Inc. has retained earnings of $27,000, the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet is as shown in Illustration 11-5.

Illustration 11-5
Stockholders' equity—paid-in capital in excess of par value

HYDRO-SLIDE, INC.
Balance Sheet (partial)

Stockholders' equity	
Paid-in capital	
Common stock	$ 2,000
Paid-in capital in excess of par value	**4,000**
Total paid-in capital	6,000
Retained earnings	27,000
Total stockholders' equity	$33,000

Some companies issue no-par stock with a stated value. For accounting purposes, companies treat the stated value in the same way as the par value. For example, if in our Hydro-Slide example the stock was no-par stock with a stated value of $1, the entries would be the same as those presented for the par stock except the term "Par Value" would be replaced with "Stated Value." If a company issues no-par stock that does not have a stated value, then it credits to the Common Stock account the full amount received. In such a case, there is no need for the Paid-in Capital in Excess of Stated Value account.

Investor Insight

How to Read Stock Quotes

Organized exchanges trade the stock of publicly held companies at dollar prices per share established by the interaction between buyers and sellers. For each listed security, the financial press reports the high and low prices of the stock during the year, the total volume of stock traded on a given day, the high and low prices for the day, and the closing market price, with the net change for the day. Nike is listed on the New York Stock Exchange. Here is a recent listing for Nike:

	52 Weeks						
Stock	High	Low	Volume	High	Low	Close	Net Change
Nike	78.55	48.76	5,375,651	72.44	69.78	70.61	−1.69

These numbers indicate the following: The high and low market prices for the last 52 weeks have been $78.55 and $48.76. The trading volume for the day was 5,375,651 shares. The high, low, and closing prices for that date were $72.44, $69.78, and $70.61, respectively. The net change for the day was a decrease of $1.69 per share.

? For stocks traded on organized exchanges, how are the dollar prices per share established? What factors might influence the price of shares in the marketplace? (See page 619.)

before you go on...

Do it! Cayman Corporation begins operations on March 1 by issuing 100,000 shares of $10 par value common stock for cash at $12 per share. Journalize the issuance of the shares.

ISSUANCE OF STOCK

Action Plan

- In issuing shares for cash, credit Common Stock for par value per share.
- Credit any additional proceeds in excess of par value to a separate paid-in capital account.

the navigator

Solution

Mar.	1	Cash	1,200,000	
		Common Stock		1,000,000
		Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value		200,000
		(To record issuance of 100,000 shares at $12 per share)		

Related exercise material: **BE11-2, BE11-3, Do it! 11-2,** and **E11-1.**

Accounting for Treasury Stock

study objective 3

Explain the accounting for the purchase of treasury stock.

Treasury stock is a corporation's own stock that has been reacquired by the corporation and is being held for future use. A corporation may acquire treasury stock for various reasons:

1. To reissue the shares to officers and employees under bonus and stock compensation plans.

2. To increase trading of the company's stock in the securities market. Companies expect that buying their own stock will signal that management believes the stock is underpriced, which they hope will enhance its market value.
3. To have additional shares available for use in acquiring other companies.
4. To reduce the number of shares outstanding and thereby increase earnings per share.

Another infrequent reason for purchasing treasury shares is that management may want to eliminate hostile shareholders by buying them out.

Many corporations have treasury stock. For example, in the United States approximately 70% of companies have treasury stock.[2] In the first quarter of 2007, companies in the Standard & Poor's 500-stock index spent a record of about $118 billion to buy treasury stock. In a recent year, Nike purchased more than 6 million treasury shares. At one point, stock repurchases were so substantial that a study by two Federal Reserve economists suggested that a sharp reduction in corporate purchases of treasury shares might result in a sharp drop in the value of the U.S. stock market.

PURCHASE OF TREASURY STOCK

The purchase of treasury stock is generally accounted for by the **cost method**. This method derives its name from the fact that the Treasury Stock account is maintained at the cost of shares purchased. Under the cost method, **companies increase (debit) Treasury Stock by the price paid to reacquire the shares. Treasury Stock decreases by the same amount when the company later sells the shares.**

To illustrate, assume that on January 1, 2012, the stockholders' equity section for Mead, Inc. has 100,000 shares of $5 par value common stock outstanding (all issued at par value) and Retained Earnings of $200,000. Illustration 11-6 shows the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet before purchase of treasury stock.

Illustration 11-6
Stockholders' equity with no treasury stock

MEAD, INC. Balance Sheet (partial)	
Stockholders' equity	
Paid-in capital	
Common stock, $5 par value, 400,000 shares authorized, 100,000 shares issued and outstanding	$500,000
Retained earnings	200,000
Total stockholders' equity	$700,000

On February 1, 2012, Mead acquires 4,000 shares of its stock at $8 per share. The entry is:

A = L + SE
−32,000 TS
−32,000
Cash Flows
−32,000

Feb.	1	Treasury Stock	32,000	
		Cash		32,000
		(To record purchase of 4,000 shares of treasury stock at $8 per share)		

[2] *Accounting Trends & Techniques—2009* (New York: American Institute of Certified Public Accountants).

The Treasury Stock account would increase by the cost of the shares purchased ($32,000). The original paid-in capital account, Common Stock, would not be affected because **the number of issued shares does not change**.

Companies show treasury stock as a deduction from total paid-in capital and retained earnings in the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet. Illustration 11-7 shows this presentation for Mead, Inc. Thus, the acquisition of treasury stock reduces stockholders' equity.

Ethics Note The purchase of treasury stock reduces the cushion for creditors. To protect creditors, many states require that a portion of retained earnings equal to the cost of the treasury stock purchased be restricted from being paid as dividends.

Illustration 11-7
Stockholders' equity with treasury stock

MEAD, INC. Balance Sheet (partial)	
Stockholders' equity	
Paid-in capital	
Common stock, $5 par value, 400,000 shares authorized, 100,000 shares issued and 96,000 shares outstanding	$500,000
Retained earnings	200,000
Total paid-in capital and retained earnings	700,000
Less: Treasury stock (4,000 shares)	**32,000**
Total stockholders' equity	$668,000

Helpful Hint Treasury Stock is a contra stockholders' equity account.

Companies disclose in the balance sheet both the number of shares issued (100,000) and the number in the treasury (4,000). The difference is the number of shares of stock outstanding (96,000). The term **outstanding stock** means the number of shares of issued stock that are being held by stockholders.

In a bold (and some would say risky) move, Reebok at one time bought back nearly a *third* of its shares. This repurchase of shares dramatically reduced Reebok's available cash. In fact, the company borrowed significant funds to accomplish the repurchase. In a press release, management stated that it was repurchasing the shares because it believed that the stock was severely underpriced. The repurchase of so many shares was meant to signal management's belief in good future earnings.

Skeptics, however, suggested that Reebok's management was repurchasing shares to make it less likely that the company would be acquired by another company (in which case Reebok's top managers would likely lose their jobs). Acquiring companies like to purchase companies with large cash reserves so they can pay off debt used in the acquisition. By depleting its cash, Reebok became a less likely acquisition target.

before you go on...

Do it! Santa Anita Inc. purchases 3,000 shares of its $50 par value common stock for $180,000 cash on July 1. It expects to hold the shares in the treasury until resold. Journalize the treasury stock transaction.

TREASURY STOCK

Action Plan

- Record the purchase of treasury stock at cost.
- Report treasury stock as a deduction from stockholders' equity (contra account) at the bottom of the stockholders' equity section.

Solution

July	1	Treasury Stock	180,000	
		Cash		180,000
		(To record the purchase of 3,000 shares at $60 per share)		

Related exercise material: **Do it!** **11-3, E11-2,** and **E11-5.**

the navigator

Preferred Stock

study objective 4

Differentiate preferred stock from common stock.

To appeal to a larger segment of potential investors, a corporation may issue an additional class of stock, called preferred stock. **Preferred stock** has contractual provisions that give it preference or priority over common stock in certain areas. Typically, preferred stockholders have a priority in relation to (1) dividends and (2) assets in the event of liquidation. However, they sometimes do not have voting rights. adidas has no outstanding preferred stock, whereas Nike has a very minor amount outstanding. Approximately 7% of U.S. companies have one or more classes of preferred stock.[3]

Like common stock, companies may issue preferred stock for cash or for noncash consideration. The entries for these transactions are similar to the entries for common stock. When a corporation has more than one class of stock, each paid-in capital account title should identify the stock to which it relates (e.g., Preferred Stock, Common Stock, Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value—Preferred Stock, and Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value—Common Stock).

Assume that Stine Corporation issues 10,000 shares of $10 par value preferred stock for $12 cash per share. The entry to record the issuance is:

A	=	L	+	SE
+120,000				
				+100,000 PS
				+20,000 PS

Cash Flows
+120,000

Cash	120,000	
Preferred Stock		100,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value—Preferred Stock		20,000
(To record the issuance of 10,000 shares of $10 par value preferred stock)		

Preferred stock may have either a par value or no-par value. In the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet, companies show preferred stock first because of its dividend and liquidation preferences over common stock.

DIVIDEND PREFERENCES

As indicated above, **preferred stockholders have the right to share in the distribution of corporate income before common stockholders**. For example, if the dividend rate on preferred stock is $5 per share, common shareholders will not receive any dividends in the current year until preferred stockholders have received $5 per share. The first claim to dividends does not, however, **guarantee** dividends. Dividends depend on many factors, such as adequate retained earnings and availability of cash.

For preferred stock, companies state the per share dividend amount as a percentage of the par value of the stock or as a specified amount. For example, EarthLink specifies a 3% dividend, whereas Nike pays 10 cents per share on its $1 par preferred stock.

Cumulative Dividend

Preferred stock contracts often contain a **cumulative dividend** feature. This right means that preferred stockholders must be paid both current-year dividends and any unpaid prior-year dividends before common stockholders receive dividends. When preferred stock is cumulative, preferred dividends not declared in a given period are called **dividends in arrears**.

To illustrate, assume that Scientific Leasing has 5,000 shares of 7%, $100 par value cumulative preferred stock outstanding. Each $100 share pays a $7 dividend (.07 × $100). The annual dividend is $35,000 (5,000 × $7 per share). If dividends are two years in arrears, preferred stockholders are entitled to receive in the current year the dividends as shown in Illustration 11-8.

[3] *Accounting Trends & Techniques—2009* (New York: American Institute of Certified Public Accountants).

Dividends in arrears ($35,000 × 2)	$ 70,000
Current-year dividends	35,000
Total preferred dividends	**$105,000**

Illustration 11-8
Computation of total dividends to preferred stock

No distribution can be made to common stockholders until Scientific Leasing pays this entire preferred dividend. In other words, companies cannot pay dividends to common stockholders while any preferred stock dividend is in arrears.

Dividends in arrears are not considered a liability. No obligation exists until the board of directors formally "declares" that the corporation will pay a dividend. However, companies should disclose in the notes to the financial statements the amount of dividends in arrears. Doing so enables investors to assess the potential impact of this commitment on the corporation's financial position.

The investment community does not look favorably upon companies that are unable to meet their dividend obligations. As a financial officer noted in discussing one company's failure to pay its cumulative preferred dividend for a period of time, "Not meeting your obligations on something like that is a major black mark on your record."

LIQUIDATION PREFERENCE

Most preferred stocks have a preference on corporate assets if the corporation fails. This feature provides security for the preferred stockholder. The preference to assets may be for the par value of the shares or for a specified liquidating value. For example, Commonwealth Edison issued preferred stock that entitled the holders to receive $31.80 per share, plus accrued and unpaid dividends, in the event of involuntary liquidation. The liquidation preference is used in litigation pertaining to bankruptcy lawsuits involving the respective claims of creditors and preferred stockholders.

before you go on...

Do it! MasterMind Corporation has 2,000 shares of 6%, $100 par value preferred stock outstanding at December 31, 2012. At December 31, 2012, the company declared a $60,000 cash dividend. Determine the dividend paid to preferred stockholders and common stockholders under each of the following scenarios.

PREFERRED STOCK DIVIDENDS

1. The preferred stock is noncumulative, and the company has not missed any dividends in previous years.
2. The preferred stock is noncumulative, and the company did not pay a dividend in each of the two previous years.
3. The preferred stock is cumulative, and the company did not pay a dividend in each of the two previous years.

Action Plan

- Determine dividends on preferred shares by multiplying the dividend rate times the par value of the stock times the number of preferred shares.
- Understand the cumulative feature: If preferred stock is cumulative, then any missed dividends (dividends in arrears) and the current year's dividend must be paid to preferred stockholders before dividends are paid to common stockholders.

Solution

1. The company has not missed past dividends and the preferred stock is noncumulative; thus, the preferred stockholders are paid only this year's dividends. The dividend paid to preferred stockholders would be $12,000 (2,000 ×.06 × $100). The dividend paid to common stockholders would be $48,000 ($60,000 − $12,000).
2. The preferred stock is noncumulative; thus, past unpaid dividends do not have to be paid. The dividend paid to preferred stockholders would be $12,000 (2,000 ×.06 × $100). The dividend paid to common stockholders would be $48,000 ($60,000 − $12,000).
3. The preferred stock is cumulative; thus, dividends that have been missed (dividends in arrears) must be paid. The dividend paid to preferred stockholders would be $36,000 (3 × 2,000 ×.06 × $100). The dividend paid to common stockholders would be $24,000 ($60,000 − $36,000).

Related exercise material: **Do it! 11-4.**

the navigator

Dividends

study objective 5

Prepare the entries for cash dividends and understand the effect of stock dividends and stock splits.

As noted earlier, a **dividend** **is a distribution by a corporation to its stockholders on a pro rata** (proportional to ownership) **basis**. *Pro rata* means that if you own, say, 10% of the common shares, you will receive 10% of the dividend. Dividends can take four forms: cash, property, scrip (promissory note to pay cash), or stock. Cash dividends, which predominate in practice, and stock dividends, which are declared with some frequency, are the focus of our discussion.

Investors are very interested in a company's dividend practices. In the financial press, **dividends are generally reported quarterly as a dollar amount per share**. (Sometimes they are reported on an annual basis.) For example, Nike's **quarterly** dividend rate in the fourth quarter of 2006 was 15.5 cents per share; the dividend rate for the fourth quarter of 2007 for GE was 31 cents, and for ConAgra Foods it was 18 cents.

CASH DIVIDENDS

A **cash dividend** is a pro rata (proportional to ownership) distribution of cash to stockholders. Cash dividends are not paid on treasury shares. For a corporation to pay a cash dividend, it must have the following.

1. **Retained earnings.** Payment of dividends from retained earnings is legal in all states. In addition, loan agreements frequently constrain companies to pay dividends only from retained earnings. Many states prohibit payment of dividends from legal capital. However, payment of dividends from paid-in capital in excess of par is legal in some states.
2. **Adequate cash.** Recently, Nike had a balance in retained earnings of $5,451 million but a cash balance of only $2,291 million. If it had wanted to pay a dividend equal to its retained earnings, Nike would have had to raise $3,160 million more in cash. It would have been unlikely to do this because it would not be able to pay this much in dividends in future years. In addition, such a dividend would completely deplete Nike's balance in retained earnings, so it would not be able to pay a dividend in the next year unless it had positive net income.
3. **Declared dividends.** The board of directors has full authority to determine the amount of income to distribute in the form of dividends. Dividends are not a liability until they are declared.

The amount and timing of a dividend are important issues for management to consider. The payment of a large cash dividend could lead to liquidity problems for the company. Conversely, a small dividend or a missed dividend may cause unhappiness among stockholders who expect to receive a reasonable cash payment from the company on a periodic basis. Many companies declare and pay cash dividends quarterly. On the other hand, a number of high-growth companies pay no dividends, preferring to conserve cash to finance future capital expenditures.

Investors must keep an eye on the company's dividend policy and understand what it may mean. For most companies, for example, regular dividend boosts in the face of irregular earnings can be a warning signal. Companies with high dividends and rising debt may be borrowing money to pay shareholders. On the other hand, low dividends may not be a negative sign because it may mean the company is reinvesting in itself, which may result in high returns through increases in the stock price. Presumably, investors seeking regular dividends buy stock in companies that pay periodic dividends, and those seeking growth in the stock price (capital gains) buy stock in companies that retain their earnings rather than pay dividends.

Entries for Cash Dividends

Three dates are important in connection with dividends: (1) the declaration date, (2) the record date, and (3) the payment date. Companies make accounting entries on the declaration date and the payment date.

On the **declaration date**, the board of directors formally authorizes the cash dividend and announces it to stockholders. The declaration of a cash dividend **commits the corporation to a binding legal obligation**. Thus, the company must make an entry to recognize the increase in Cash Dividends and the increase in the liability Dividends Payable.

To illustrate, assume that on December 1, 2012, the directors of Media General declare a $0.50 per share cash dividend on 100,000 shares of $10 par value common stock. The dividend is $50,000 (100,000 × $0.50). The entry to record the declaration is:

Declaration Date

Dec. 1	Cash Dividends	50,000	
	Dividends Payable		50,000
	(To record declaration of cash dividend)		

A	=	L	+	SE
				−50,000 Div
		+50,000		

Cash Flows
no effect

In Chapter 3, we used an account called Dividends to record a cash dividend. Here, we use the more specific title Cash Dividends to differentiate from other types of dividends, such as stock dividends. Dividends Payable is a current liability: It will normally be paid within the next several months.

At the **record date**, the company determines ownership of the outstanding shares for dividend purposes. The stockholders' records maintained by the corporation supply this information.

Helpful Hint The record date is important in determining the dividend to be paid to each stockholder.

For Media General, the record date is December 22. No entry is required on the record date.

Record Date

Dec. 22	No entry necessary		

On the **payment date**, the company makes cash dividend payments to the stockholders on record as of December 22, and it also records the payment of the dividend. If January 20 is the payment date for Media General, the entry on that date is:

Payment Date

Jan. 20	Dividends Payable	50,000	
	Cash		50,000
	(To record payment of cash dividend)		

A	=	L	+	SE
		−50,000		
−50,000				

Cash Flows
−50,000

Note that payment of the dividend on the payment date reduces both current assets and current liabilities, but it has no effect on stockholders' equity. The cumulative effect of the **declaration and payment** of a cash dividend on a company's financial statements is to **decrease both stockholders' equity and total assets**.

STOCK DIVIDENDS

A **stock dividend** is a pro rata (proportional to ownership) distribution of the corporation's own stock to stockholders. Whereas a cash dividend is paid in cash, a stock dividend is paid in stock. **A stock dividend results in a decrease in retained earnings and an increase in paid-in capital.** Unlike a cash dividend, a stock dividend does not decrease total stockholders' equity or total assets.

Because a stock dividend does not result in a distribution of assets, some view it as nothing more than a publicity gesture. Stock dividends are often issued by companies that do not have adequate cash to issue a cash dividend. These companies may not want to announce that they are not going to be issuing a cash dividend at their normal time to do so. By issuing a stock dividend, they "save face" by giving the appearance of distributing a dividend. Note that since a stock dividend neither increases nor decreases the assets in the company, investors are not receiving anything they didn't already own. In a sense, it is like asking for two pieces of pie and having your host take one piece of pie and cut it into two smaller pieces. You are not better off, but you got your two pieces of pie.

To illustrate a stock dividend, assume that you have a 2% ownership interest in Cetus Inc.; you own 20 of its 1,000 shares of common stock. If Cetus declares a 10% stock dividend, it would issue 100 shares (1,000 × 10%) of stock. You would receive two shares (2% × 100), but your ownership interest would remain at 2% (22 ÷ 1,100). **You now own more shares of stock, but your ownership interest has not changed.** Moreover, the company disburses no cash and assumes no liabilities.

What, then, are the purposes and benefits of a stock dividend? Corporations generally issue stock dividends for one of the following reasons.

1. To satisfy stockholders' dividend expectations without spending cash.
2. To increase the marketability of the stock by increasing the number of shares outstanding and thereby decreasing the market price per share. Decreasing the market price of the stock makes it easier for smaller investors to purchase the shares.
3. To emphasize that the company has permanently reinvested in the business a portion of stockholders' equity, which therefore is unavailable for cash dividends.

When the dividend is declared, the board of directors determines the size of the stock dividend and the value per share to use to record the transaction. In order to meet legal requirements, the per share amount must be at least equal to the par or stated value.

The accounting profession distinguishes between a **small stock dividend** (less than 20%–25% of the corporation's issued stock) and a **large stock dividend** (greater than 20%–25%). It recommends that the company use the **fair value per share** to record small stock dividends. The recommendation is based on the assumption that a small stock dividend will have little effect on the market price of the shares previously outstanding. Thus, many stockholders consider small stock dividends to be distributions of earnings equal to the fair value of the shares distributed. The accounting profession does not specify the value to use to record a large stock dividend. However, companies normally use **par or stated value per share**. Small stock dividends predominate in practice. In the appendix at the end of the chapter, we illustrate the journal entries for small stock dividends.

Effects of Stock Dividends

Helpful Hint Because of its effects, a stock dividend is also referred to as *capitalizing retained earnings*.

How do stock dividends affect stockholders' equity? They **change the composition of stockholders' equity** because they result in a transfer of a portion of retained earnings to paid-in capital. However, **total stockholders' equity remains the same**. Stock dividends also have no effect on the par or stated value per share, but the number of shares outstanding increases.

Illustration 11-9 shows the effects that result when Medland Corp. declares a 10% stock dividend on its $10 par common stock when 50,000 shares were outstanding. The market price was $15 per share.

	Before Dividend	Change	After Dividend
Stockholders' equity			
Paid-in capital			
Common stock, $10 par	$ 500,000		$ 550,000
Paid-in capital in excess of par value	—		25,000
Total paid-in capital	500,000	+$75,000	575,000
Retained earnings	300,000	− 75,000	225,000
Total stockholders' equity	$800,000	$ 0	$800,000
Outstanding shares	50,000	+ 5,000	55,000

Illustration 11-9 Stock dividend effects

In this example, total paid-in capital increased by $75,000 (50,000 shares × 10% × $15), and retained earnings decreased by the same amount. Note also that total stockholders' equity remains unchanged at $800,000. The number of shares increases by 5,000 (50,000 × 10%).

STOCK SPLITS

A **stock split**, like a stock dividend, involves the issuance of additional shares of stock to stockholders according to their percentage ownership. However, **a stock split results in a reduction in the par or stated value per share**. The purpose of a stock split is to increase the marketability of the stock by lowering its market value per share. This, in turn, makes it easier for the corporation to issue additional stock. After hitting a peak of 114 stock splits in 1986, the number of splits in the United States has fallen to about 30 per year. Nike was one of the few firms to split in 2007. It justified the action by noting that its stock price had increased by 70% during the previous five years.

Helpful Hint A stock split changes the par value per share but does not affect any balances in stockholders' equity.

Like a stock dividend, a stock split increases the number of shares owned by a shareholder, but it does not change the percentage of the total company that the shareholder owns. The effects of a 3-for-1 split are shown in Illustration 11-10.

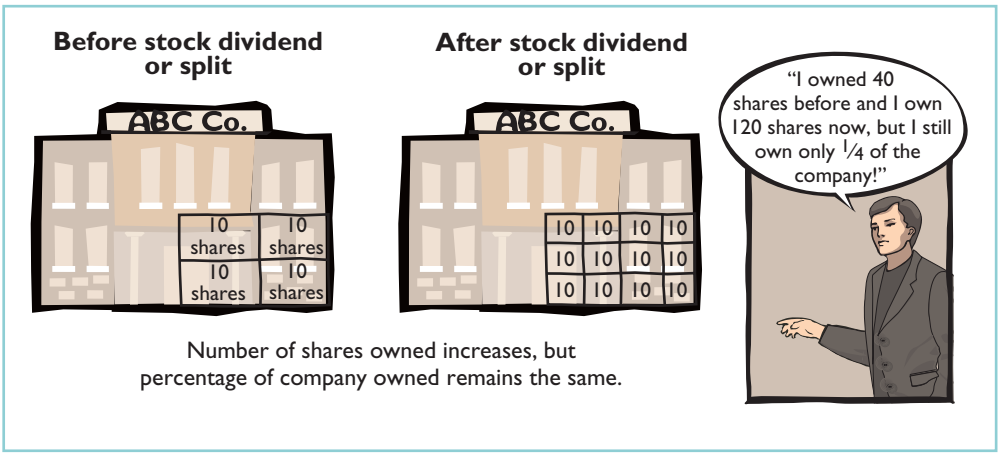


Illustration 11-10 Effect of stock dividend or stock split for stockholders

The effect of a split on market value is generally **inversely proportional** to the size of the split. For example, after a recent 2-for-1 stock split, the market value of Nike's stock fell from $111 to approximately $55.

Investor Insight

A No-Split Philosophy

Warren Buffett's company, Berkshire Hathaway, has two classes of shares. Until recently, the company had never split either class of stock. As a result, the class A stock had a market price of $97,000 and the class B sold for about $3,200 per share. Because the price per share is so high, the stock does not trade as frequently as the stock of other companies. Mr. Buffett has always opposed stock splits because he feels that a lower stock price attracts short-term investors. He appears to be correct. For example, while more than 6 million shares of IBM are exchanged on the average day, only about 1,000 class A shares of Berkshire are traded. Despite Mr. Buffett's aversion to splits, in order to accomplish a recent acquisition, Berkshire decided to split its class B shares 50 to 1.

Source: Scott Patterson, "Berkshire Nears Smaller Baby B's," *Wall Street Journal Online* (January 19, 2010).

? Why does Warren Buffett usually oppose stock splits? (See page 619.)

In a stock split, the company increases the number of shares in the same proportion that it decreases the par or stated value per share. For example, in a 2-for-1 split, the company exchanges one share of $10 par value stock for two shares of $5 par value stock. **A stock split does not have any effect on paid-in capital, retained earnings, and total stockholders' equity.** However, the number of shares outstanding increases. The effects of a 2-for-1 stock split of Medland Corporation's common stock are shown in Illustration 11-11.

Illustration 11-11 Stock split effects

	Before Stock Split	Change	After Stock Split
Stockholders' equity			
Paid-in capital			
Common stock (before: 50,000 $10 par shares; after: 100,000 $5 par shares)	$ 500,000		$ 500,000
Paid-in capital in excess of par value	0		0
Total paid-in capital	500,000	$ 0	500,000
Retained earnings	300,000	0	300,000
Total stockholders' equity	**$800,000**	$ 0	**$800,000**
Outstanding shares	**50,000**	+ 50,000	**100,000**

Because a stock split does not affect the balances in any stockholders' equity accounts, a company **does not need to journalize a stock split**. However, a memorandum entry explaining the effect of the split is typically made.

The differences between the effects of stock dividends and stock splits are shown in Illustration 11-12.

Illustration 11-12 Effects of stock splits and stock dividends differentiated

Item	Stock Dividend	Stock Split
Total paid-in capital	Increase	No change
Total retained earnings	Decrease	No change
Total par value (common stock)	Increase	No change
Par value per share	No change	Decrease

before you go on...

Do it! Due to five years of record earnings at Sing CD Corporation, the market price of its 500,000 shares of $2 par value common stock tripled from $15 per share to $45. During this period, paid-in capital remained the same at $2,000,000. Retained earnings increased from $1,500,000 to $10,000,000. President Joan Elbert is considering either a 10% stock dividend or a 2-for-1 stock split. She asks you to show the before and after effects of each option on retained earnings.

STOCK DIVIDENDS; STOCK SPLITS

Action Plan

- Calculate the stock dividend's effect on retained earnings by multiplying the number of new shares times the market price of the stock (or par value for a large stock dividend).
- Recall that a stock dividend increases the number of shares without affecting total equity.
- Recall that a stock split only increases the number of shares outstanding and decreases the par value per share without affecting total equity.

the navigator

Solution

The stock dividend amount is $2,250,000 [(500,000 × 10%) × $45]. The new balance in retained earnings is $7,750,000 ($10,000,000 − $2,250,000). The retained earnings balance after the stock split is the same as it was before the split: $10,000,000. The effects on the stockholders' equity accounts are as follows.

	Original Balances	After Dividend	After Split
Paid-in capital	$ 2,000,000	$ 4,250,000	$ 2,000,000
Retained earnings	10,000,000	7,750,000	10,000,000
Total stockholders' equity	$12,000,000	$12,000,000	$12,000,000
Shares outstanding	500,000	550,000	1,000,000

Related exercise material: **BE11-6, BE11-7, Do it! 11-5,** and **E11-7.**

Retained Earnings

study objective 6
Identify the items that affect retained earnings.

Retained earnings is net income that a company retains in the business. The balance in retained earnings is part of the stockholders' claim on the total assets of the corporation. It does not, however, represent a claim on any specific asset. Nor can the amount of retained earnings be associated with the balance of any asset account. For example, a $100,000 balance in retained earnings does not mean that there should be $100,000 in cash. The reason is that the company may have used the cash resulting from the excess of revenues over expenses to purchase buildings, equipment, and other assets. Illustration 11-13 shows recent amounts of retained earnings and cash in selected companies.

Illustration 11-13
Retained earnings and cash balances

	(in millions)	
Company	Retained Earnings	Cash
Google	$20,082	$10,198
Nike, Inc.	4,885	1,855
Starbucks Coffee Company	2,189	281
Amazon.com	(1,375)	2,539

When expenses exceed revenues, a **net loss** results. In contrast to net income, a net loss decreases retained earnings. In closing entries, a company debits a net loss to the Retained Earnings account. **It does not debit net losses to paid-in capital accounts.** To do so would destroy the distinction between paid-in and earned capital. If cumulative losses exceed cumulative income over a company's life, a debit balance in Retained Earnings results. A debit balance in Retained Earnings, such as that of Amazon.com in a recent year, is a **deficit**. A company reports a deficit as a deduction in the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet, as shown in Illustration 11-14 (page 590).

Illustration 11-14
Stockholders' equity with deficit

AMAZON.COM
Balance Sheet (partial)
(in millions)

Stockholders' equity	
Paid-in capital	
Common stock	$ 4
Paid-in capital in excess of par value	3,068
Total paid-in capital	3,072
Accumulated deficit	**(1,375)**
Total paid-in capital and retained earnings	1,697
Less: Treasury stock	500
Total stockholders' equity	$1,197

RETAINED EARNINGS RESTRICTIONS

The balance in retained earnings is generally available for dividend declarations. Some companies state this fact. In some circumstances, however, there may be **retained earnings restrictions**. These make a portion of the balance currently unavailable for dividends. Restrictions result from one or more of these causes: legal, contractual, or voluntary.

Companies generally disclose retained earnings restrictions in the notes to the financial statements. For example, Tektronix Inc., a manufacturer of electronic measurement devices, recently had total retained earnings of $774 million, but the unrestricted portion was only $223.8 million.

Illustration 11-15
Disclosure of unrestricted retained earnings

TEKTRONIX INC.
Notes to the Financial Statements

Certain of the Company's debt agreements require compliance with debt covenants. The Company had unrestricted retained earnings of $223.8 million after meeting those requirements.

Financial Statement Presentation of Stockholders' Equity

BALANCE SHEET PRESENTATION

study objective 7
Prepare a comprehensive stockholders' equity section.

In the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet, companies report paid-in capital and retained earnings and identify the specific sources of paid-in capital. Within paid-in capital, two classifications are recognized:

1. **Capital stock**, which consists of preferred and common stock. Companies show preferred stock before common stock because of its preferential rights. They report information about the par value, shares authorized, shares issued, and shares outstanding for each class of stock.
2. **Additional paid-in capital**, which includes the excess of amounts paid in over par or stated value.

Illustration 11-16 presents the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet of Graber Inc. The company discloses a retained earnings restriction in the notes. The stockholders' equity section for Graber Inc. includes most of the accounts discussed in this chapter. The disclosures pertaining to Graber's common stock indicate that 400,000 shares are issued; 100,000 shares are unissued

Illustration 11-16
Comprehensive stockholders' equity section

GRABER INC. Balance Sheet (partial)		
Stockholders' equity		
Paid-in capital		
Capital stock		
9% preferred stock, $100 par value, cumulative, 10,000 shares authorized, 6,000 shares issued and outstanding		$ 600,000
Common stock, no par, $5 stated value, 500,000 shares authorized, 400,000 shares issued, and 390,000 outstanding		2,000,000
Total capital stock		2,600,000
Additional paid-in capital		
In excess of par value—preferred stock	$ 30,000	
In excess of stated value—common stock	1,050,000	
Total additional paid-in capital		1,080,000
Total paid-in capital		3,680,000
Retained earnings **(see Note R)**		1,160,000
Total paid-in capital and retained earnings		4,840,000
Less: Treasury stock—common (10,000 shares)		(80,000)
Total stockholders' equity		$4,760,000

Note R: Retained earnings is restricted for the cost of treasury stock, $80,000.

International Note Like GAAP, under IFRS companies typically disclose separate categories of capital on the balance sheet. However, because of varying accounting treatments of certain transactions (such as treasury stock or asset revaluations), some categories used under IFRS vary from those under GAAP.

(500,000 authorized less 400,000 issued); and 390,000 shares are outstanding (400,000 issued less 10,000 shares in treasury).

In published annual reports, companies seldom present subclassifications within the stockholders' equity section. Moreover, they often combine and report as a single amount the individual sources of additional paid-in capital. Notes often provide additional detail. Illustration 11-17 is an excerpt from Procter & Gamble Company's balance sheet in a recent year.

Illustration 11-17
Stockholders' equity section

PROCTER & GAMBLE COMPANY Balance Sheet (partial) (in millions)	
Shareholders' equity	
Convertible Class A preferred stock, stated value $1 per share (600 shares authorized)	$ 1,406
Non-voting Class B preferred stock, stated value $1 per share (200 shares authorized)	—
Common stock, stated value $1 per share (10,000 shares authorized; issued: 3,989.7)	3,990
Additional paid-in capital	59,030
Total paid-in capital	64,426
Reserve for ESOP debt retirement	(1,308)
Retained earnings	41,797
Total paid-in capital and retained earnings	104,915
Accumulated other comprehensive income	617
Treasury stock, at cost (shares held: 857.8)	(38,772)
Total shareholders' equity	$ 66,760

KEEPING AN EYE ON CASH

The balance sheet presents the balances of a company's stockholders' equity accounts at a point in time. Companies report in the "Financing Activities" section of the statement of cash flows information regarding cash inflows and outflows during the year that resulted from equity transactions. The excerpt below presents the cash flows from financing activities from the statement of cash flows of Sara Lee Corporation in a recent year. From this information, we learn that the company's purchases of treasury stock during the period far exceeded its issuances of new common stock, and its financing activities resulted in a net reduction in its cash balance.

SARA LEE CORPORATION
Statement of Cash Flows (partial)
(in millions)

Cash flows from financing activities	
Issuances of common stock	**$ 38**
Purchases of common stock	**(686)**
Payments of dividends	**(374)**
Borrowings of long-term debt	2,895
Repayments of long-term debt	(416)
Short-term (repayments) borrowings, net	(1,720)
Net cash used in financing activities	$ (263)

before you go on...

STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY SECTION

Do it! Jennifer Corporation has issued 300,000 shares of $3 par value common stock. It is authorized to issue 600,000 shares. The paid-in capital in excess of par value on the common stock is $380,000. The corporation has reacquired 15,000 shares at a cost of $50,000 and is currently holding those shares.

The corporation also has 4,000 shares issued and outstanding of 8%, $100 par value preferred stock. It is authorized to issue 10,000 shares. The paid-in capital in excess of par value on the preferred stock is $97,000. Retained earnings is $610,000.

Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet.

Action Plan

- Present capital stock first; list preferred stock before common stock.
- Present additional paid-in capital after capital stock.
- Report retained earnings after capital stock and additional paid-in capital.
- Deduct treasury stock from total paid-in capital and retained earnings.

Solution

JENNIFER CORPORATION
Balance Sheet (partial)

Stockholders' equity		
Paid-in capital		
Capital stock		
8% preferred stock, $100 par value, 10,000 shares authorized, 4,000 shares issued and outstanding	$ 400,000	
Common stock, $3 par value, 600,000 shares authorized, 300,000 shares issued, and 285,000 shares outstanding	900,000	
Total capital stock	1,300,000	
Additional paid-in capital		
In excess of par value—preferred stock	97,000	
In excess of par value—common stock	380,000	
Total additional paid-in capital		$ 477,000
Total paid-in capital		1,777,000
Retained earnings		610,000
Total paid-in capital and retained earnings		2,387,000
Less: Treasury stock—common (15,000 shares) (at cost)		(50,000)
Total stockholders' equity		$2,337,000

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE11-8, Do it! 11-6, E11-8, E11-9,** and **E11-10.**

Measuring Corporate Performance

Investors are interested in both a company's dividend record and its earnings performance. Although those two measures are often parallel, that is not always the case. Thus, investors should investigate each one separately.

DIVIDEND RECORD

study objective 8

Evaluate a corporation's dividend and earnings performance from a stockholder's perspective.

One way that companies reward stock investors for their investment is to pay them dividends. The **payout ratio** measures the percentage of earnings a company distributes in the form of cash dividends to common stockholders. It is computed by **dividing total cash dividends declared to common shareholders by net income**. Using the information shown below, the payout ratio for Nike in 2009 and 2008 is calculated in Illustration 11-18.

	2009	2008
Dividends (in millions)	$ 475.2	$ 432.8
Net income (in millions)	1,486.7	1,883.4

$$\text{Payout Ratio} = \frac{\text{Cash Dividends Declared on Common Stock}}{\text{Net Income}}$$

($ in millions)	2009	2008
Payout Ratio	$\frac{\$475.2}{\$1,486.7} = 32.0\%$	$\frac{\$432.8}{\$1,883.4} = 23.0\%$

Illustration 11-18 Nike's payout ratio

The significant increase in Nike's payout ratio from 23% to 32% resulted from a combination of two factors. First, Nike increased its dividend per share from 87.5¢ to 98¢. Second, its net income declined significantly from 2008 to 2009. Nike would probably not have increased its dividend per share unless it believed it could sustain dividends at this level in future years.

Companies that have high growth rates are characterized by low payout ratios because they reinvest most of their net income in the business. Thus, a low payout ratio is not necessarily bad news. Companies that believe they have many good opportunities for growth, such as Google, will reinvest those funds in the company rather than pay high dividends. However, low dividend payments, or a cut in dividend payments, might signal that a company has liquidity or solvency problems and is trying to conserve cash by not paying dividends. Thus, investors and analysts should investigate the reason for low dividend payments.

Illustration 11-19 lists recent payout ratios of four well-known companies.

Company	Payout Ratio
Microsoft	24.5%
Kellogg	43.3%
Google	0%
Wal-Mart	49.0%

Illustration 11-19 Payout ratios of companies

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
What portion of its earnings does the company pay out in dividends?	Net income and total cash dividends on common stock	Payout ratio $= \frac{\text{Cash dividends declared on common stock}}{\text{Net income}}$	A low ratio may suggest that the company is retaining its earnings for investment in future growth.

EARNINGS PERFORMANCE

Another way to measure corporate performance is through profitability. A widely used ratio that measures profitability from the common stockholders' viewpoint is **return on common stockholders' equity**. This ratio shows how many dollars of net income a company earned for each dollar of common stockholders' equity. It is computed by dividing net income available to common stockholders (Net income − Preferred stock dividends) by average common stockholders' equity. Common stockholders' equity is equal to total stockholders' equity minus any equity from preferred stock.

Using the information on the previous page and the additional information presented below, Illustration 11-20 shows Nike's return on common stockholders' equity ratio.

(in millions)	2009	2008
Preferred stock dividends	$ .03	$ .03
Common stockholders' equity	8,693.1	7,825.3

$$\text{Return on Common Stockholders' Equity Ratio} = \frac{\text{Net Income} - \text{Preferred Stock Dividends}}{\text{Average Common Stockholders' Equity}}$$

($ in millions)	2009	2008
Return on Common Stockholders' Equity Ratio	$\frac{\$1{,}486.7 - \$.03}{(\$8{,}693.1 + \$7{,}825.3)/2} = 18.0\%$	25.4%

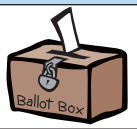
Illustration 11-20 Nike's return on common stockholders' equity

From 2008 to 2009, Nike's return on common shareholders' equity decreased. As a company grows larger, it becomes increasingly hard to sustain a high return. In Nike's case, since many believe the U.S. market for expensive sports shoes is saturated, it will need to grow either along new product lines, such as hiking shoes and golf equipment, or in new markets, such as Europe and Asia.

DEBT VERSUS EQUITY DECISION

When obtaining long-term capital, corporate managers must decide whether to issue bonds or to sell common stock. Bonds have three primary advantages relative to common stock, as shown in Illustration 11-21.

Illustration 11-21 Advantages of bond financing over common stock

Bond Financing	Advantages
	1. **Stockholder control is not affected.** Bondholders do not have voting rights, so current owners (stockholders) retain full control of the company.
	2. **Tax savings result.** Bond interest is deductible for tax purposes; dividends on stock are not.
	3. **Return on common stockholders' equity may be higher.** Although bond interest expense reduces net income, return on common stockholders' equity often is higher under bond financing because no additional shares of common stock are issued.

How does the debt versus equity decision affect the return on common stockholders' equity ratio? Illustration 11-22 shows that the return on common stockholders' equity is affected by the return on assets ratio and the amount of leverage a company uses—that is, by the company's reliance on debt (often measured by the debt to total assets ratio). **If a company wants to increase its return on common stockholders' equity, it can either increase its return on assets or increase its reliance on debt financing.**

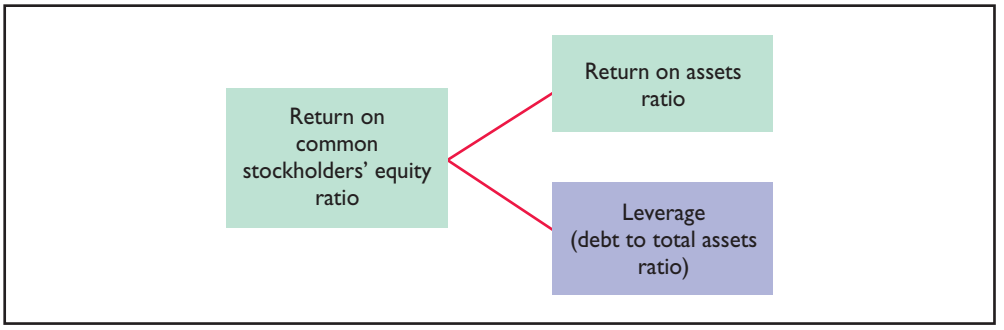


Illustration 11-22 Components of the return on common stockholders' equity

To illustrate the potential effect of debt financing on the return on common stockholders' equity, assume that Microsystems Inc. currently has 100,000 shares of common stock outstanding issued at $25 per share and no debt. It is considering two alternatives for raising an additional $5 million: Plan A involves issuing 200,000 shares of common stock at the current market price of $25 per share. Plan B involves issuing $5 million of 12% bonds at face value. Income before interest and taxes will be $1.5 million; income taxes are expected to be 30%. The alternative effects on the return on common stockholders' equity are shown in Illustration 11-23.

Illustration 11-23 Effects on return on common stockholders' equity of issuing debt

	Plan A: Issue stock	Plan B: Issue bonds
Income before interest and taxes	$1,500,000	$1,500,000
Interest (12% × $5,000,000)	—	600,000
Income before income taxes	1,500,000	900,000
Income tax expense (30%)	450,000	270,000
Net income	$1,050,000	$ 630,000
Common stockholders' equity	$7,500,000	$2,500,000
Return on common stockholders' equity	14%	25.2%

Note that with long-term debt financing (bonds), net income is $420,000 ($1,050,000 − $630,000) less. However, the return on common stockholders' equity increases from 14% to 25.2% with the use of debt financing because net income is spread over a smaller amount of common stockholders' equity. **In general, as long as the return on assets rate exceeds the rate paid on debt, a company will increase the return on common stockholders' equity by the use of debt.**

After seeing this illustration, one might ask, why don't companies rely almost exclusively on debt financing rather than equity? Debt has one major disadvantage: **Debt reduces solvency. The company locks in fixed payments that it must make in good times and bad. The company must pay interest on a periodic basis and must pay the principal (face value) of the bonds at maturity.** A company with fluctuating earnings and a relatively weak cash position may experience great difficulty in meeting interest requirements in periods of low earnings. In the extreme, this can result in bankruptcy. With common stock financing, on the other hand, the company can decide to pay low (or no) dividends if earnings are low.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
What is the company's return on common stockholders' investment?	Earnings available to common stockholders and average common stockholders' equity	Return on common stockholders' equity ratio $= \frac{\text{Net income} - \text{Preferred stock dividends}}{\text{Average common stockholders' equity}}$	A high measure suggests strong earnings performance from common stockholders' perspective.

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

adidas is one of Nike's fiercest competitors. In such a competitive and rapidly changing environment, one wrong step can spell financial disaster.

Instructions

The following facts are available from adidas's annual report. As a German company, adidas reports under International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS). Using this information, evaluate its (1) dividend record and (2) earnings performance, and contrast them with those for Nike for 2009 and 2008. Nike's earnings per share were $3.07 in 2009 and $3.80 in 2008.

(in millions)*	2008	2007	2006
Dividends declared	€99	€85	€66
Net income	€642	€551	€496
Preferred stock dividends	0	0	0
Shares outstanding at end of year	204	204	203
Common stockholders' equity	€3,400	€3,034	€2,836

*Nike has a year-end of May 31, 2009. For comparative purpose, we used adidas's December 31, 2008, data since that represents the closest year-end.

Solution

1. *Dividend record:* A measure to evaluate dividend record is the payout ratio. For adidas, this measure in 2008 and 2007 is calculated as shown below.

	2008	2007
Payout ratio	$\frac{€99}{€642} = 15.4\%$	$\frac{€85}{€551} = 15.4\%$

Nike's payout ratio was 32%. adidas's payout ratio remained constant from 2007 to 2008 and was significantly less than Nike's ratio.

2. *Earnings performance:* There are many measures of earnings performance. Some of those presented thus far in the book were earnings per share (page 55) and the return on common stockholders' equity ratio (this chapter). These measures for adidas in 2008 and 2007 are calculated as shown here.

	2008	2007
Earnings per share	$\frac{€642 - 0}{(204 + 204)/2} = €3.15$	$\frac{€551 - 0}{(204 + 203)/2} = €2.71$
Return on common stockholders' equity ratio	$\frac{€642 - 0}{(€3,400 + €3,034)/2} = 20.0\%$	$\frac{€551 - 0}{(€3,034 + €2,836)/2} = 18.8\%$

From 2007 to 2008, adidas's net income improved 17% and its earnings per share increased 16%. Earnings per share should not be compared across companies because the number of shares varies considerably. Thus, we should not compare adidas's earnings per share with Nike's. adidas's return on common stockholders' equity increased slightly from 18.8% to 20.0%. This represents a healthy return; it is similar to Nike's.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Identify and discuss the major characteristics of a corporation. The major characteristics of a corporation are separate legal existence, limited liability of stockholders, transferable ownership rights, ability to acquire capital, continuous life, corporation management, government regulations, and additional taxes.

2 Record the issuance of common stock. When a company records issuance of common stock for cash, it credits the par value of the shares to Common Stock; it records in a separate paid-in capital account the portion of the proceeds that is above par value. When no-par common stock has a stated value, the entries are similar to those for par value stock. When no-par common stock does not have a stated value, the entire proceeds from the issue are credited to Common Stock.

3 Explain the accounting for the purchase of treasury stock. Companies generally use the cost method in accounting for treasury stock. Under this approach, a company debits Treasury Stock at the price paid to reacquire the shares.

4 Differentiate preferred stock from common stock. Preferred stock has contractual provisions that give it priority over common stock in certain areas. Typically, preferred stockholders have a preference as to (1) dividends and (2) assets in the event of liquidation. However, they sometimes do not have voting rights.

5 Prepare the entries for cash dividends and understand the effect of stock dividends and stock splits. Companies make entries for dividends at the declaration date and the payment date. At the declaration date the entries for a cash dividend are: debit Cash Dividends and credit Dividends Payable. The effects of stock dividends and splits: Small *stock dividends* transfer an amount equal to the fair market value of the shares issued from retained earnings to the paid-in capital accounts. *Stock splits* reduce the par value per share of the common stock while increasing the number of shares so that the balance in the Common Stock account remains the same.

6 Identify the items that affect retained earnings. Additions to retained earnings consist of net income. Deductions consist of net loss and cash and stock dividends. In some instances, portions of retained earnings are restricted, making that portion unavailable for the payment of dividends.

7 Prepare a comprehensive stockholders' equity section. In the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet, companies report paid-in capital and retained earnings and identify specific sources of paid-in capital. Within paid-in capital, companies show two classifications: capital stock and additional paid-in capital. If a corporation has treasury stock, it deducts the cost of treasury stock from total paid-in capital and retained earnings to determine total stockholders' equity.

8 Evaluate a corporation's dividend and earnings performance from a stockholder's perspective. A company's dividend record can be evaluated by looking at what percentage of net income it chooses to pay out in dividends, as measured by the dividend payout ratio (dividends divided by net income). Earnings performance is measured with the return on common stockholders' equity ratio (income available to common stockholders divided by average common stockholders' equity).

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Should the company incorporate?	Capital needs, growth expectations, type of business, tax status	Corporations have limited liability, easier capital raising ability, and professional managers; but they suffer from additional taxes, government regulations, and separation of ownership from management.	Must carefully weigh the costs and benefits in light of the particular circumstances.
What portion of its earnings does the company pay out in dividends?	Net income and total cash dividends on common stock	Payout ratio $= \frac{\text{Cash dividends declared on common stock}}{\text{Net income}}$	A low ratio may suggest that the company is retaining its earnings for investment in future growth.
What is the company's return on common stockholders' investment?	Earnings available to common stockholders and average common stockholders' equity	Return on common stockholders' equity ratio $= \frac{\text{Net income} - \text{Preferred stock dividends}}{\text{Average common stockholders' equity}}$	A high measure suggests strong earnings performance from common stockholders' perspective.

appendix 11A

Entries for Stock Dividends

study objective 9

Prepare entries for stock dividends.

To illustrate the accounting for stock dividends, assume that Medland Corporation has a balance of $300,000 in retained earnings and declares a 10% stock dividend on its 50,000 shares of $10 par value common stock. The current fair value of its stock is $15 per share. The number of shares to be issued is 5,000 (10% × 50,000), and the total amount to be debited to Retained Earnings is $75,000 (5,000 × $15). The entry to record this transaction at the declaration date is:

A	=	L	+	SE
				−75,000 Div
				+50,000 CS
				+25,000 CS

Cash Flows
no effect

Stock Dividends	75,000	
Common Stock Dividends Distributable		50,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value		25,000
(To record declaration of 10% stock dividend)		

At the declaration date, Medland increases (debits) Stock Dividends for the fair value of the stock issued; increases (credits) Common Stock Dividends Distributable for the par value of the dividend shares (5,000 × $10); and increases (credits) the excess over par (5,000 × $5) to an additional paid-in capital account.

Common Stock Dividends Distributable is a stockholders' equity account; it is not a liability because assets will not be used to pay the dividend. If Medland prepares a balance sheet before it issues the dividend shares, it reports the distributable account in paid-in capital as an addition to common stock issued, as shown in Illustration 11A-1.

Illustration 11A-1
Statement presentation of common stock dividends distributable

MEDLAND CORPORATION Balance Sheet (partial)		
Paid-in capital		
Common stock	$500,000	
Common stock dividends distributable	**50,000**	**$550,000**

Helpful Hint Note that the dividend account title is *distributable*, not *payable*.

When Medland issues the dividend shares, it decreases Common Stock Dividends Distributable and increases Common Stock as follows.

A	=	L	+	SE
				−50,000 CS
				+50,000 CS

Cash Flows
no effect

Common Stock Dividends Distributable	50,000	
Common Stock		50,000
(To record issuance of 5,000 shares in a stock dividend)		

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 11A

9 Prepare entries for stock dividends. To record the declaration of a small stock dividend (less than 20%), debit Stock Dividends for an amount equal to the fair value of the shares issued. Record a credit to a temporary stockholders' equity account—Common Stock Dividends Distributable—for the par value of the shares, and credit the balance to Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value. When the shares are issued, debit Common Stock Dividends Distributable and credit Common Stock.

Glossary

Authorized stock *(p. 576)* The amount of stock that a corporation is authorized to sell as indicated in its charter.

Cash dividend *(p. 584)* A pro rata (proportional to ownership) distribution of cash to stockholders.

Charter *(p. 574)* A document that describes a corporation's name and purpose, types of stock and number of shares authorized, names of individuals involved in the formation, and number of shares each individual has agreed to purchase.

Corporation *(p. 570)* A company organized as a separate legal entity, with most of the rights and privileges of a person.

Cumulative dividend *(p. 582)* A feature of preferred stock entitling the stockholder to receive current and unpaid prior-year dividends before common stockholders receive any dividends.

Declaration date *(p. 585)* The date the board of directors formally authorizes the dividend and announces it to stockholders.

Deficit *(p. 589)* A debit balance in retained earnings.

Dividend *(p. 584)* A distribution by a corporation to its stockholders on a pro rata (proportional to ownership) basis.

Dividends in arrears *(p. 582)* Preferred dividends that were supposed to be declared but were not declared during a given period.

Legal capital *(p. 577)* The amount of capital that must be retained in the business for the protection of corporate creditors.

No-par value stock *(p. 577)* Capital stock that has not been assigned a value in the corporate charter.

Outstanding stock *(p. 581)* Capital stock that has been issued and is being held by stockholders.

Paid-in capital *(p. 577)* The amount stockholders paid in to the corporation in exchange for shares of ownership.

Par value stock *(p. 577)* Capital stock that has been assigned a value per share in the corporate charter.

Payment date *(p. 585)* The date cash dividend payments are made to stockholders.

Payout ratio *(p. 593)* A measure of the percentage of earnings a company distributes in the form of cash dividends to common stockholders.

Preferred stock *(p. 582)* Capital stock that has contractual preferences over common stock in certain areas.

Privately held corporation *(p. 570)* A corporation that has only a few stockholders and whose stock is not available for sale to the general public.

Publicly held corporation *(p. 570)* A corporation that may have thousands of stockholders and whose stock is traded on a national securities market.

Record date *(p. 585)* The date when the company determines ownership of outstanding shares for dividend purposes.

Retained earnings *(p. 589)* Net income that a company retains in the business.

Retained earnings restrictions *(p. 590)* Circumstances that make a portion of retained earnings currently unavailable for dividends.

Return on common stockholders' equity ratio *(p. 594)* A measure of profitability from the stockholders' point of view; computed by dividing net income minus preferred stock dividends by average common stockholders' equity.

Stated value *(p. 577)* The amount per share assigned by the board of directors to no-par stock.

Stock dividend *(p. 585)* A pro rata (proportional to ownership) distribution of the corporation's own stock to stockholders.

Stock split *(p. 587)* The issuance of additional shares of stock to stockholders accompanied by a reduction in the par or stated value per share.

Treasury stock *(p. 579)* A corporation's own stock that has been reacquired by the corporation and is being held for future use.

Comprehensive Do it!

Rolman Corporation is authorized to issue 1,000,000 shares of $5 par value common stock. In its first year, the company has the following stock transactions.

Jan.	10	Issued 400,000 shares of stock at $8 per share.
Sept.	1	Purchased 10,000 shares of common stock for the treasury at $9 per share.
Dec.	24	Declared a cash dividend of 10 cents per share on common stock outstanding.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions.

(b) Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet, assuming the company had retained earnings of $150,600 at December 31.

Action Plan

- When common stock has a par value, credit Common Stock for par value and Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value for the amount above par value.
- Debit the Treasury Stock account at cost.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

(a) Jan. 10	Cash	3,200,000	
	Common Stock		2,000,000
	Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value		1,200,000
	(To record issuance of 400,000 shares of $5 par value stock)		
Sept. 1	Treasury Stock	90,000	
	Cash		90,000
	(To record purchase of 10,000 shares of treasury stock at cost)		
Dec. 24	Cash Dividends	39,000	
	Dividends Payable		39,000
	(To record declaration of 10 cents per share cash dividend)		

(b)

ROLMAN CORPORATION
Balance Sheet (partial)

Stockholders' equity	
Paid-in capital	
Capital stock	
Common stock, $5 par value, 1,000,000 shares authorized, 400,000 shares issued, 390,000 outstanding	$2,000,000
Additional paid-in capital	
In excess of par value—common stock	1,200,000
Total paid-in capital	3,200,000
Retained earnings	150,600
Total paid-in capital and retained earnings	3,350,600
Less: Treasury stock (10,000 shares)	90,000
Total stockholders' equity	$3,260,600

the navigator

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

*Note: All Questions, Exercises, and Problems marked with an asterisk relate to material in the appendix to the chapter.

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 619.

(SO 1) **1.** Which of these is *not* a major advantage of a corporation?
(a) Separate legal existence.
(b) Continuous life.
(c) Government regulations.
(d) Transferable ownership rights.

(SO 1) **2.** A major *disadvantage* of a corporation is:
(a) limited liability of stockholders.
(b) additional taxes.
(c) transferable ownership rights.
(d) None of the above.

(SO 1) **3.** Which of these statements is *false?*
(a) Ownership of common stock gives the owner a voting right.
(b) The stockholders' equity section begins with paid-in capital.
(c) The authorization of capital stock does not result in a formal accounting entry.
(d) Legal capital is intended to protect stockholders.

4. ABC Corp. issues 1,000 shares of $10 par value common stock at $12 per share. When the transaction is recorded, credits are made to: (SO 2)
(a) Common Stock $10,000 and Paid-in Capital in Excess of Stated Value $2,000.
(b) Common Stock $12,000.
(c) Common Stock $10,000 and Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value $2,000.
(d) Common Stock $10,000 and Retained Earnings $2,000.

(SO 3) **5.** Treasury stock may be repurchased:
(a) to reissue the shares to officers and employees under bonus and stock compensation plans.
(b) to signal to the stock market that management believes the stock is underpriced.
(c) to have additional shares available for use in the acquisition of other companies.
(d) More than one of the above.

(SO 4) **6.** Preferred stock may have which of the following features?
(a) Dividend preference.
(b) Preference to assets in the event of liquidation.
(c) Cumulative dividends.
(d) All of the above.

(SO 4) **7.** U-Bet Corporation has 10,000 shares of 8%, $100 par value, cumulative preferred stock outstanding at December 31, 2012. No dividends were declared in 2010 or 2011. If U-Bet wants to pay $375,000 of dividends in 2012, common stockholders will receive:
(a) $0.
(b) $295,000.
(c) $215,000.
(d) $135,000.

(SO 5) **8.** Entries for cash dividends are required on the:
(a) declaration date and the record date.
(b) record date and the payment date.
(c) declaration date, record date, and payment date.
(d) declaration date and the payment date.

(SO 5) **9.** Which of these statements about stock dividends is *true?*
(a) Stock dividends reduce a company's cash balance.
(b) A stock dividend has no effect on total stockholders' equity.
(c) A stock dividend decreases total stockholders' equity.
(d) A stock dividend ordinarily will increase total stockholders' equity.

(SO 5) **10.** Zealot Inc. has retained earnings of $500,000 and total stockholders' equity of $2,000,000. It has 100,000 shares of $8 par value common stock outstanding, which is currently selling for $30 per share. If Zealot declares a 10% stock dividend on its common stock:
(a) net income will decrease by $80,000.
(b) retained earnings will decrease by $80,000 and total stockholders' equity will increase by $80,000.
(c) retained earnings will decrease by $300,000 and total stockholders' equity will increase by $300,000.
(d) retained earnings will decrease by $300,000 and total paid-in capital will increase by $300,000.

(SO 7) **11.** In the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet, common stock:
(a) is listed before preferred stock.
(b) is listed after retained earnings.
(c) is part of paid-in capital.
(d) is subtracted from treasury stock.

(SO 7) **12.** In the stockholders' equity section, the cost of treasury stock is deducted from:
(a) total paid-in capital and retained earnings.
(b) retained earnings.
(c) total stockholders' equity.
(d) common stock in paid-in capital.

(SO 8) **13.** The return on common stockholders' equity is usually increased by all of the following, *except*:
(a) an increase in the return on assets ratio.
(b) an increase in the use of debt financing.
(c) an increase in the company's stock price.
(d) an increase in the company's net income.

(SO 8) **14.** Thomas is nearing retirement and would like to invest in a stock that will provide a good steady income. Thomas should choose a stock with a:
(a) high current ratio.
(b) high dividend payout.
(c) high earnings per share.
(d) high price-earnings ratio.

(SO 8) **15.** Jackson Inc. reported net income of $186,000 during 2012 and paid dividends of $26,000 on common stock. It also paid dividends on its 10,000 shares of 6%, $100 par value, noncumulative preferred stock. Common stockholders' equity was $1,200,000 on January 1, 2012, and $1,600,000 on December 31, 2012. The company's return on common stockholders' equity for 2012 is:
(a) 10.0%.
(b) 9.0%.
(c) 7.1%.
(d) 13.3%.

(SO 8) **16.** If everything else is held constant, earnings per share is increased by:
(a) the payment of a cash dividend to common shareholders.
(b) the payment of a cash dividend to preferred shareholders.
(c) the issuance of new shares of common stock.
(d) the purchase of treasury stock.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. Max, a student, asks your help in understanding some characteristics of a corporation. Explain each of these to Max.
(a) Separate legal existence.
(b) Limited liability of stockholders.
(c) Transferable ownership rights.

2. (a) Your friend B. T. Barnum cannot understand how the characteristic of corporate management is both an advantage and a disadvantage. Clarify this problem for B. T.
(b) Identify and explain two other disadvantages of a corporation.

3. Cindy Krug believes a corporation must be incorporated in the state in which its headquarters office is located. Is Cindy correct? Explain.

4. What are the basic ownership rights of common stockholders in the absence of restrictive provisions?

5. A corporation has been defined as an entity separate and distinct from its owners. In what ways is a corporation a separate legal entity?

6. What are the two principal components of stockholders' equity?

7. The corporate charter of Elmer Corporation allows the issuance of a maximum of 100,000 shares of common stock. During its first 2 years of operation, Elmer sold 70,000 shares to shareholders and reacquired 4,000 of these shares. After these transactions, how many shares are authorized, issued, and outstanding?

8. Which is the better investment—common stock with a par value of $5 per share or common stock with a par value of $20 per share?

9. For what reasons might a company like **IBM** repurchase some of its stock (treasury stock)?

10. Rosa, Inc. purchases 1,000 shares of its own previously issued $5 par common stock for $11,000. Assuming the shares are held in the treasury, what effect does this transaction have on (a) net income, (b) total assets, (c) total paid-in capital, and (d) total stockholders' equity?

11. (a) What are the principal differences between common stock and preferred stock?
    (b) Preferred stock may be cumulative. Discuss this feature.
    (c) How are dividends in arrears presented in the financial statements?

12. Identify the events that result in credits and debits to retained earnings.

13. Indicate how each of these accounts should be classified in the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet.
    (a) Common Stock.
    (b) Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value.
    (c) Retained Earnings.
    (d) Treasury Stock.
    (e) Paid-in Capital in Excess of Stated Value.
    (f) Preferred Stock.

14. What three conditions must be met before a cash dividend is paid?

15. Three dates associated with Leon Company's cash dividend are May 1, May 15, and May 31. Discuss the significance of each date and give the entry at each date.

16. Contrast the effects of a cash dividend and a stock dividend on a corporation's balance sheet.

17. Celia Ahern asks, "Since stock dividends don't change anything, why declare them?" What is your answer to Celia?

18. Burke Corporation has 10,000 shares of $15 par value common stock outstanding when it announces a 3-for-1 split. Before the split, the stock had a market price of $120 per share. After the split, how many shares of stock will be outstanding, and what will be the approximate market price per share?

19. The board of directors is considering a stock split or a stock dividend. They understand that total stockholders' equity will remain the same under either action. However, they are not sure of the different effects of the two actions on other aspects of stockholders' equity. Explain the differences to the directors.

20. What was the total cost of Tootsie Roll's treasury stock at December 31, 2009? What was the amount of the 2009 cash dividend? What was the total charge to Retained Earnings for the 2009 stock dividend?

21. (a) What is the purpose of a retained earnings restriction?
    (b) Identify the possible causes of retained earnings restrictions.

22. Fredo Inc.'s common stock has a par value of $1 and a current market value of $15. Explain why these amounts are different.

23. What is the formula for the payout ratio? What does it indicate?

24. Explain the circumstances under which debt financing will increase the return on common stockholders' equity ratio.

25. Under what circumstances will the return on assets ratio and the return on common stockholders' equity ratio be equal?

26. Haidet Corp. has a return on assets ratio of 12%. It plans to issue bonds at 8% and use the cash to repurchase stock. What effect will this have on its debt to total assets ratio and on its return on common stockholders' equity?

Brief Exercises

Cite advantages and disadvantages of a corporation.
(SO 1), **K**

BE11-1 Bonnie Decker is planning to start a business. Identify for Bonnie the advantages and disadvantages of the corporate form of business organization.

Journalize issuance of par value common stock.
(SO 2), **AP**

BE11-2 On May 10, Tharp Corporation issues 2,500 shares of $5 par value common stock for cash at $13 per share. Journalize the issuance of the stock.

Journalize issuance of no-par common stock.
(SO 2), **AP**

BE11-3 On June 1, Rodero Inc. issues 3,000 shares of no-par common stock at a cash price of $7 per share. Journalize the issuance of the shares.

BE11-4 Merritt Inc. issues 8,000 shares of $100 par value preferred stock for cash at $106 per share. Journalize the issuance of the preferred stock.

Journalize issuance of preferred stock.
(SO 4), **AP**

BE11-5 Wildwood Corporation has 7,000 shares of common stock outstanding. It declares a $1 per share cash dividend on November 1 to stockholders of record on December 1. The dividend is paid on December 31. Prepare the entries on the appropriate dates to record the declaration and payment of the cash dividend.

Prepare entries for a cash dividend.
(SO 5), **AP**

BE11-6 The stockholders' equity section of Jumes Corporation's balance sheet consists of common stock ($8 par) $1,000,000 and retained earnings $300,000. A 10% stock dividend (12,500 shares) is declared when the market value per share is $19. Show the before and after effects of the dividend on (a) the components of stockholders' equity and (b) the shares outstanding.

Show before and after effects of a stock dividend.
(SO 5), **AP**

BE11-7 Indicate whether each of the following transactions would increase (+), decrease (−), or not affect (N/A) total assets, total liabilities, and total stockholders' equity.

Compare impact of cash dividend, stock dividend, and stock split.
(SO 5), **K**

Transaction	Assets	Liabilities	Stockholders' Equity
(a) Declared cash dividend.			
(b) Paid cash dividend declared in (a).			
(c) Declared stock dividend.			
(d) Distributed stock dividend declared in (c).			
(e) Split stock 3-for-1.			

BE11-8 Hewitt Corporation has these accounts at December 31: Common Stock, $10 par, 5,000 shares issued, $50,000; Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value $22,000; Retained Earnings $42,000; and Treasury Stock—Common, 500 shares, $11,000. Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet.

Prepare a stockholders' equity section.
(SO 7), **AP**

BE11-9 Adam Flint, president of Flint Corporation, believes that it is a good practice for a company to maintain a constant payout of dividends relative to its earnings. Last year, net income was $600,000, and the corporation paid $120,000 in dividends. This year, due to some unusual circumstances, the corporation had income of $1,600,000. Adam expects next year's net income to be about $700,000. What was Flint Corporation's payout ratio last year? If it is to maintain the same payout ratio, what amount of dividends would it pay this year? Is this necessarily a good idea—that is, what are the pros and cons of maintaining a constant payout ratio in this scenario?

Evaluate a company's dividend record.
(SO 8), **C**

BE11-10 SUPERVALU, one of the largest grocery retailers in the United States, is headquartered in Minneapolis. The following financial information (in millions) was taken from the company's 2010 annual report. Net sales $44,597; net income $393; beginning stockholders' equity $2,581; and ending stockholders' equity $2,887. There were no dividends paid on preferred stock. Compute the return on common stockholders' equity ratio. Provide a brief interpretation of your findings.

Calculate the return on stockholders' equity.
(SO 8), **AP**

BE11-11 Burden Inc. is considering these two alternatives to finance its construction of a new $2 million plant:
(a) Issuance of 200,000 shares of common stock at the market price of $10 per share.
(b) Issuance of $2 million, 6% bonds at face value.

Complete the table and indicate which alternative is preferable.

Compare bond financing to stock financing.
(SO 8), **AP**

	Issue Stock	**Issue Bond**
Income before interest and taxes	$1,500,000	$1,500,000
Interest expense from bonds		
Income before income taxes		
Income tax expense (30%)		
Net income	$	$
Outstanding shares		700,000
Earnings per share	$	$

***BE11-12** Daly Corporation has 200,000 shares of $10 par value common stock outstanding. It declares a 12% stock dividend on December 1 when the market value per share is $17. The dividend shares are issued on December 31. Prepare the entries for the declaration and distribution of the stock dividend.

Prepare entries for a stock dividend.
(SO 9), **AP**

Do it! Review

Analyze statements about corporate organization.
(SO 1), C

Do it! 11-1 Indicate whether each of the following statements is true or false.

_____ 1. The corporation is an entity separate and distinct from its owners.
_____ 2. The liability of stockholders is normally limited to their investment in the corporation.
_____ 3. The relative lack of government regulation is an advantage of the corporate form of business.
_____ 4. There is no journal entry to record the authorization of capital stock.
_____ 5. No-par value stock is quite rare today.

Journalize issuance of stock.
(SO 2), AP

Do it! 11-2 Baja Corporation began operations on April 1 by issuing 55,000 shares of $5 par value common stock for cash at $13 per share. Journalize the issuance.

Journalize treasury stock transaction.
(SO 3), AP

Do it! 11-3 Davies Corporation purchased 2,000 shares of its $10 par value common stock for $76,000 on August 1. It will hold these in the treasury until resold. Journalize the treasury stock transaction.

Determine dividends paid to preferred and common stockholders.
(SO 4), AP

Do it! 11-4 Aragon Corporation has 3,000 shares of 8%, $100 par value preferred stock outstanding at December 31, 2012. At December 31, 2012, the company declared a $105,000 cash dividend. Determine the dividend paid to preferred stockholders and common stockholders under each of the following scenarios.

1. The preferred stock is noncumulative, and the company has not missed any dividends in previous years.
2. The preferred stock is noncumulative, and the company did not pay a dividend in each of the two previous years.
3. The preferred stock is cumulative, and the company did not pay a dividend in each of the two previous years.

Determine effects of stock dividend and stock split.
(SO 5), AP

Do it! 11-5 Magna CD Company has had 4 years of record earnings. Due to this success, the market price of its 400,000 shares of $2 par value common stock has increased from $12 per share to $50. During this period, paid-in capital remained the same at $2,400,000. Retained earnings increased from $1,800,000 to $12,000,000. CEO Ed Bette is considering either (1) a 15% stock dividend or (2) a 2-for-1 stock split. He asks you to show the before and after effects of each option on (a) retained earnings and (b) total stockholders' equity.

Prepare stockholders' equity section.
(SO 7), AP

Do it! 11-6 Dwyer Corporation has issued 100,000 shares of $5 par value common stock. It was authorized 500,000 shares. The paid-in capital in excess of par value on the common stock is $263,000. The corporation has reacquired 7,000 shares at a cost of $46,000 and is currently holding those shares.

The corporation also has 2,000 shares issued and outstanding of 9%, $100 par value preferred stock. It authorized 10,000 shares. The paid-in capital in excess of par value on the preferred stock is $23,000. Retained earnings is $372,000. Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet.

Exercises

Journalize issuance of common stock.
(SO 2), AP

E11-1 During its first year of operations, Pele Corporation had these transactions pertaining to its common stock.

Jan.	10	Issued 30,000 shares for cash at $5 per share.
July	1	Issued 60,000 shares for cash at $7 per share.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions, assuming that the common stock has a par value of $5 per share.
(b) Journalize the transactions, assuming that the common stock is no-par with a stated value of $1 per share.

Journalize issuance of common stock and preferred stock and purchase of treasury stock.
(SO 2, 3, 4), AP

E11-2 Dukas Co. had these transactions during the current period.

June	12	Issued 80,000 shares of $1 par value common stock for cash of $300,000.
July	11	Issued 3,000 shares of $100 par value preferred stock for cash at $106 per share.
Nov.	28	Purchased 2,000 shares of treasury stock for $9,000.

Instructions
Prepare the journal entries for the Dukas Co. transactions shown on page 604.

E11-3 Vallejo Corporation is authorized to issue both preferred and common stock. The par value of the preferred is $50. During the first year of operations, the company had the following events and transactions pertaining to its preferred stock.

Journalize preferred stock transactions and indicate statement presentation.
(SO 4, 7), **AP**

Feb. 1 Issued 40,000 shares for cash at $51 per share.
July 1 Issued 60,000 shares for cash at $56 per share.

Instructions
(a) Journalize the transactions.
(b) Post to the stockholders' equity accounts. (Use T accounts.)
(c) Discuss the statement presentation of the accounts.

E11-4 The stockholders' equity section of Traylor Corporation's balance sheet at December 31 is presented here.

Answer questions about stockholders' equity section.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 7), **C**

TRAYLOR CORPORATION
Balance Sheet (partial)

Stockholders' equity	
Paid-in capital	
Preferred stock, cumulative, 10,000 shares authorized, 6,000 shares issued and outstanding	$ 600,000
Common stock, no par, 750,000 shares authorized, 580,000 shares issued	2,900,000
Total paid-in capital	3,500,000
Retained earnings	1,158,000
Total paid-in capital and retained earnings	4,658,000
Less: Treasury stock (6,000 common shares)	(32,000)
Total stockholders' equity	$4,626,000

Instructions
From a review of the stockholders' equity section, answer the following questions.
(a) How many shares of common stock are outstanding?
(b) Assuming there is a stated value, what is the stated value of the common stock?
(c) What is the par value of the preferred stock?
(d) If the annual dividend on preferred stock is $36,000, what is the dividend rate on preferred stock?
(e) If dividends of $72,000 were in arrears on preferred stock, what would be the balance reported for retained earnings?

E11-5 Tofias Corporation recently hired a new accountant with extensive experience in accounting for partnerships. Because of the pressure of the new job, the accountant was unable to review what he had learned earlier about corporation accounting. During the first month, he made the following entries for the corporation's capital stock.

Prepare correct entries for capital stock transactions.
(SO 2, 3, 4), **AN**

May	2	Cash	104,000	
		Capital Stock		104,000
		(Issued 8,000 shares of $10 par value common stock at $13 per share)		
	10	Cash	530,000	
		Capital Stock		530,000
		(Issued 10,000 shares of $20 par value preferred stock at $53 per share)		
	15	Capital Stock	7,200	
		Cash		7,200
		(Purchased 600 shares of common stock for the treasury at $12 per share)		

Instructions
On the basis of the explanation for each entry, prepare the entries that should have been made for the capital stock transactions.

Journalize cash dividends and indicate statement presentation.
(SO 5), AP

E11-6 On January 1, Tellier Corporation had 60,000 shares of no-par common stock issued and outstanding. The stock has a stated value of $4 per share. During the year, the following transactions occurred.

Apr.	1	Issued 9,000 additional shares of common stock for $11 per share.
June	15	Declared a cash dividend of $1.50 per share to stockholders of record on June 30.
July	10	Paid the $1.50 cash dividend.
Dec.	1	Issued 4,000 additional shares of common stock for $12 per share.
	15	Declared a cash dividend on outstanding shares of $1.60 per share to stockholders of record on December 31.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the entries, if any, on each of the three dates that involved dividends.
(b) How are dividends and dividends payable reported in the financial statements prepared at December 31?

Compare effects of a stock dividend and a stock split.
(SO 5), AP

E11-7 On October 31, the stockholders' equity section of Opio Company's balance sheet consists of common stock $648,000 and retained earnings $400,000. Opio is considering the following two courses of action: (1) declaring a 5% stock dividend on the 81,000 $8 par value shares outstanding or (2) effecting a 2-for-1 stock split that will reduce par value to $4 per share. The current market price is $17 per share.

Instructions

Prepare a tabular summary of the effects of the alternative actions on the company's stockholders' equity and outstanding shares. Use these column headings: **Before Action**, **After Stock Dividend**, and **After Stock Split**.

Prepare a stockholders' equity section.
(SO 7), AP

E11-8 Wells Fargo & Company, headquartered in San Francisco, is one of the nation's largest financial institutions. It reported the following selected accounts (in millions) as of December 31, 2009.

Retained earnings	$41,563
Preferred stock	8,485
Common stock—1\frac{2}{3}$ par value, authorized 6,000,000,000 shares; issued 5,245,971,422 shares	8,743
Treasury stock—67,346,829 shares	(2,450)
Additional paid-in capital—common stock	52,878

Instructions

Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet for Wells Fargo as of December 31, 2009.

Prepare a stockholders' equity section.
(SO 7), AP

E11-9 The following stockholders' equity accounts, arranged alphabetically, are in the ledger of Patel Corporation at December 31, 2012.

Common Stock ($2 stated value)	$1,600,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value—Preferred Stock	45,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Stated Value—Common Stock	1,050,000
Preferred Stock (8%, $100 par, noncumulative)	600,000
Retained Earnings	1,334,000
Treasury Stock—Common (12,000 shares)	72,000

Instructions

Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet at December 31, 2012.

Prepare a stockholders' equity section.
(SO 7), AP

E11-10 The following accounts appear in the ledger of Sather Inc. after the books are closed at December 31, 2012.

Common Stock (no-par, $1 stated value, 400,000 shares authorized, 250,000 shares issued)	$ 250,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Stated Value—Common Stock	1,200,000
Preferred Stock ($50 par value, 8%, 40,000 shares authorized, 14,000 shares issued)	700,000
Retained Earnings	920,000
Treasury Stock (9,000 common shares)	64,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value—Preferred Stock	24,000

Instructions
Prepare the stockholders' equity section at December 31, assuming $100,000 of retained earnings is restricted for plant expansion. (Use Note R.)

E11-11 The following financial information is available for Thompson Corporation.

Calculate ratios to evaluate dividend and earnings performance.
(SO 8), **AP**

(in millions)	2012	2011
Average common stockholders' equity	$2,532	$2,591
Dividends declared for common stockholders	298	611
Dividends declared for preferred stockholders	40	40
Net income	504	555

Instructions
Calculate the payout ratio and return on common stockholders' equity ratio for 2012 and 2011. Comment on your findings.

E11-12 The following financial information is available for Walgreen Company.

Calculate ratios to evaluate dividend and earnings performance.
(SO 8), **AP**

(in millions)	2009	2008
Average common stockholders' equity	$13,622.5	$11,986.5
Dividends declared for common stockholders	471	394
Dividends declared for preferred stockholders	0	0
Net income	2,006	2,157

Instructions
Calculate the payout ratio and return on common stockholders' equity ratio for 2009 and 2008. Comment on your findings.

E11-13 Morris Corporation decided to issue common stock and used the $300,000 proceeds to retire all of its outstanding bonds on January 1, 2012. The following information is available for the company for 2011 and 2012.

Calculate ratios to evaluate profitability and solvency.
(SO 8), **AN**

	2012	2011
Net income	$ 182,000	$ 150,000
Dividends declared for preferred stockholders	8,000	8,000
Average common stockholders' equity	1,000,000	700,000
Total assets	1,200,000	1,200,000
Current liabilities	100,000	100,000
Total liabilities	200,000	500,000

Instructions
(a) Compute the return on common stockholders' equity ratio for both years.
(b) Explain how it is possible that net income increased, but the return on common stockholders' equity decreased.
(c) Compute the debt to total assets ratio for both years, and comment on the implications of this change in the company's solvency.

E11-14 Songbird Airlines is considering these two alternatives for financing the purchase of a fleet of airplanes:

Compare issuance of stock financing to issuance of bond financing.
(SO 8), **AN**

1. Issue 50,000 shares of common stock at $40 per share. (Cash dividends have not been paid nor is the payment of any contemplated.)
2. Issue 12%, 10-year bonds at face value for $2,000,000.

It is estimated that the company will earn $800,000 before interest and taxes as a result of this purchase. The company has an estimated tax rate of 30% and has 90,000 shares of common stock outstanding prior to the new financing.

Instructions
Determine the effect on net income and earnings per share for (a) issuing stock and (b) issuing bonds. Assume the new shares or new bonds will be outstanding for the entire year.

E11-15 Randolph Company has $1,000,000 in assets and $1,000,000 in stockholders' equity, with 40,000 shares outstanding the entire year. It has a return on assets ratio of 10%. In the past year, it had net income of $100,000. On January 1, 2012, it issued $400,000 in debt at 4% and immediately repurchased 20,000 shares for $400,000. Management expected that, had it not issued the debt, it would have again had net income of $100,000.

Compute ratios and interpret.
(SO 8), **AN**

Instructions

(a) Determine the company's net income and earnings per share for 2011 and 2012. (Ignore taxes in your computations.)
(b) Compute the company's return on common stockholders' equity for 2011 and 2012.
(c) Compute the company's debt to total assets ratio for 2011 and 2012.
(d) Discuss the impact that the borrowing had on the company's profitability and solvency. Was it a good idea to borrow the money to buy the treasury stock?

Journalize stock dividends.
(SO 5, 9), **AP**

***E11-16** On January 1, 2012, Sheperd Corporation had $1,200,000 of common stock outstanding that was issued at par and retained earnings of $750,000. The company issued 30,000 shares of common stock at par on July 1 and earned net income of $400,000 for the year.

Instructions

Journalize the declaration of a 15% stock dividend on December 10, 2012, for the following two independent assumptions.
(a) Par value is $10 and market value is $15.
(b) Par value is $5 and market value is $8.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel,** and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Journalize stock transactions, post, and prepare paid-in capital section.
(SO 2, 4, 7), **AN**

P11-1A Whitten Corporation was organized on January 1, 2012. It is authorized to issue 20,000 shares of 6%, $50 par value preferred stock and 500,000 shares of no-par common stock with a stated value of $1 per share. The following stock transactions were completed during the first year.

Jan.	10	Issued 70,000 shares of common stock for cash at $4 per share.
Mar.	1	Issued 12,000 shares of preferred stock for cash at $53 per share.
May	1	Issued 120,000 shares of common stock for cash at $6 per share.
Sept.	1	Issued 5,000 shares of common stock for cash at $5 per share.
Nov.	1	Issued 3,000 shares of preferred stock for cash at $56 per share.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions.
(b) Post to the stockholders' equity accounts. (Use T accounts.)
(c) Prepare the paid-in capital portion of the stockholders' equity section at December 31, 2012.

(c) Tot. paid-in capital $1,829,000

Journalize transactions, post, and prepare a stockholders' equity section; calculate ratios.
(SO 2, 3, 5, 7, 8), **AP**

P11-2A The stockholders' equity accounts of Omega Corporation on January 1, 2012, were as follows.

Preferred Stock (7%, $100 par noncumulative, 5,000 shares authorized)	$ 300,000
Common Stock ($4 stated value, 300,000 shares authorized)	1,000,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value—Preferred Stock	15,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Stated Value—Common Stock	480,000
Retained Earnings	688,000
Treasury Stock—Common (5,000 shares)	40,000

During 2012, the corporation had the following transactions and events pertaining to its stockholders' equity.

Feb.	1	Issued 5,000 shares of common stock for $30,000.
Mar.	20	Purchased 1,000 additional shares of common treasury stock at $7 per share.
Oct.	1	Declared a 7% cash dividend on preferred stock, payable November 1.
Nov.	1	Paid the dividend declared on October 1.

Dec.	1	Declared a $0.50 per share cash dividend to common stockholders of record on December 15, payable December 31, 2012.
	31	Determined that net income for the year was $280,000. Paid the dividend declared on December 1.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions. (Include entries to close net income and dividends to Retained Earnings.)
(b) Enter the beginning balances in the accounts and post the journal entries to the stockholders' equity accounts. (Use T accounts.)
(c) Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet at December 31, 2012. (c) Tot. paid-in capital $1,825,000
(d) Calculate the payout ratio, earnings per share, and return on common stockholders' equity ratio. (*Note:* Use the common shares outstanding on January 1 and December 31 to determine the average shares outstanding.)

P11-3A On December 31, 2011, Stitch Company had 1,300,000 shares of $5 par common stock issued and outstanding. The stockholders' equity accounts at December 31, 2011, had the balances listed here.

Prepare a stockholders' equity section. (SO 7), **AP**

Common Stock	$6,500,000
Additional Paid-in Capital	1,800,000
Retained Earnings	1,200,000

Transactions during 2012 and other information related to stockholders' equity accounts were as follows.

1. On January 10, 2012, issued at $107 per share 120,000 shares of $100 par value, 9% cumulative preferred stock.
2. On February 8, 2012, reacquired 15,000 shares of its common stock for $11 per share.
3. On June 8, 2012, declared a cash dividend of $1.20 per share on the common stock outstanding, payable on July 10, 2012, to stockholders of record on July 1, 2012.
4. On December 9, 2012, declared the yearly cash dividend on preferred stock, payable January 10, 2013, to stockholders of record on December 31, 2012.
5. Net income for the year was $3,600,000.

Instructions

Prepare the stockholders' equity section of Stitch's balance sheet at December 31, 2012. Tot. stockholders' equity $23,153,000

P11-4A The ledger of Zeta Corporation at December 31, 2012, after the books have been closed, contains the following stockholders' equity accounts.

Reproduce retained earnings account, and prepare a stockholders' equity section. (SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

Preferred Stock (10,000 shares issued)	$1,000,000
Common Stock (300,000 shares issued)	1,500,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value—Preferred Stock	200,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Stated Value—Common Stock	1,600,000
Retained Earnings	2,860,000

A review of the accounting records reveals this information:

1. Preferred stock is 8%, $100 par value, noncumulative. Since January 1, 2011, 10,000 shares have been outstanding; 20,000 shares are authorized.
2. Common stock is no-par with a stated value of $5 per share; 600,000 shares are authorized.
3. The January 1, 2012, balance in Retained Earnings was $2,380,000.
4. On October 1, 60,000 shares of common stock were sold for cash at $9 per share.
5. A cash dividend of $400,000 was declared and properly allocated to preferred and common stock on November 1. No dividends were paid to preferred stockholders in 2011.
6. Net income for the year was $880,000.
7. On December 31, 2012, the directors authorized disclosure of a $160,000 restriction of retained earnings for plant expansion. (Use Note A.)

Instructions

(a) Reproduce the retained earnings account (T account) for the year.
(b) Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet at December 31. (b) Tot. paid-in capital $4,300,000

P11-5A Melvina Corporation has been authorized to issue 20,000 shares of $100 par value, 7%, noncumulative preferred stock and 1,000,000 shares of no-par common stock.

Prepare entries for stock transactions, and prepare a stockholders' equity section. (SO 2, 3, 4, 7), **AP**

The corporation assigned a $5 stated value to the common stock. At December 31, 2012, the ledger contained the following balances pertaining to stockholders' equity.

Preferred Stock	$ 150,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value—Preferred Stock	20,000
Common Stock	2,000,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Stated Value—Common Stock	1,520,000
Treasury Stock—Common (4,000 shares)	36,000
Retained Earnings	82,000

The preferred stock was issued for $170,000 cash. All common stock issued was for cash. In November 4,000 shares of common stock were purchased for the treasury at a per share cost of $9. No dividends were declared in 2012.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the journal entries for the following.
  (1) Issuance of preferred stock for cash.
  (2) Issuance of common stock for cash.
  (3) Purchase of common treasury stock for cash.

(b) Tot. stockholders' equity $3,736,000

(b) Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet at December 31, 2012.

Prepare a stockholders' equity section. (SO 7), **AP**

P11-6A On January 1, 2012, Neville Inc. had these stockholders' equity balances.

Common Stock, $1 par (2,000,000 shares authorized, 600,000 shares issued and outstanding)	$ 600,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value	1,500,000
Retained Earnings	700,000

During 2012, the following transactions and events occurred.

1. Issued 50,000 shares of $1 par value common stock for $3 per share.
2. Issued 60,000 shares of common stock for cash at $4 per share.
3. Purchased 20,000 shares of common stock for the treasury at $3.80 per share.
4. Declared and paid a cash dividend of $207,000.
5. Earned net income of $410,000.

Instructions

Tot. stockholders' equity $3,317,000

Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet at December 31, 2012.

Evaluate a company's profitability and solvency. (SO 8), **AP**

P11-7A Tejada Company manufactures backpacks. During 2012, Tejada issued bonds at 10% interest and used the cash proceeds to purchase treasury stock. The following financial information is available for Tejada Company for the years 2012 and 2011.

	2012	2011
Sales	$ 9,000,000	$ 9,000,000
Net income	2,240,000	2,500,000
Interest expense	500,000	140,000
Tax expense	670,000	750,000
Dividends paid on common stock	890,000	1,026,000
Dividends paid on preferred stock	300,000	300,000
Total assets (year-end)	14,500,000	16,875,000
Average total assets	15,687,500	17,763,000
Total liabilities (year-end)	6,000,000	3,000,000
Avg. total common stockholders' equity	9,400,000	14,100,000

Instructions

(a) Use the information above to calculate the following ratios for both years: (i) return on assets ratio, (ii) return on common stockholders' equity ratio, (iii) payout ratio, (iv) debt to total assets ratio, and (v) times interest earned ratio.

(b) Referring to your findings in part (a), discuss the changes in the company's profitability from 2011 to 2012.

(c) Referring to your findings in part (a), discuss the changes in the company's solvency from 2011 to 2012.

(d) Based on your findings in (b), was the decision to issue debt to purchase common stock a wise one?

***P11-8A** On January 1, 2012, Cornell Corporation had these stockholders' equity accounts.

Prepare dividend entries, prepare a stockholders' equity section, and calculate ratios.
(SO 5, 7, 8, 9), **AP**

Common Stock ($10 par value, 70,000 shares issued and outstanding)	$700,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value	500,000
Retained Earnings	620,000

During the year, the following transactions occurred.

Jan.	15	Declared a $0.50 cash dividend per share to stockholders of record on January 31, payable February 15.
Feb.	15	Paid the dividend declared in January.
Apr.	15	Declared a 10% stock dividend to stockholders of record on April 30, distributable May 15. On April 15, the market price of the stock was $14 per share.
May	15	Issued the shares for the stock dividend.
Dec.	1	Declared a $0.60 per share cash dividend to stockholders of record on December 15, payable January 10, 2013.
	31	Determined that net income for the year was $400,000.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions. (Include entries to close net income and dividends to Retained Earnings.)
(b) Enter the beginning balances and post the entries to the stockholders' equity T accounts. (*Note:* Open additional stockholders' equity accounts as needed.)
(c) Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet at December 31.
(d) Calculate the payout ratio and return on common stockholders' equity ratio.

(c) Tot. stockholders' equity $2,138,800

Problems: Set B

P11-1B Hennes Corporation was organized on January 1, 2012. It is authorized to issue 10,000 shares of 8%, $100 par value preferred stock and 500,000 shares of no-par common stock with a stated value of $2 per share. The following stock transactions were completed during the first year.

Journalize stock transactions, post, and prepare paid-in capital section.
(SO 2, 4, 7), **AN**

Jan.	10	Issued 40,000 shares of common stock for cash at $3.60 per share.
Mar.	1	Issued 5,000 shares of preferred stock for cash at $102 per share.
May	1	Issued 90,000 shares of common stock for cash at $4 per share.
Sept.	1	Issued 10,000 shares of common stock for cash at $4.40 per share.
Nov.	1	Issued 4,000 shares of preferred stock for cash at $103 per share.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions.
(b) Post to the stockholders' equity accounts. (Use T accounts.)
(c) Prepare the paid-in capital section of stockholders' equity at December 31, 2012.

(c) Tot. paid-in capital $1,470,000

P11-2B The stockholders' equity accounts of Nardin Corporation on January 1, 2012, were as follows.

Journalize transactions, post, and prepare a stockholders' equity section; calculate ratios.
(SO 2, 3, 5, 7, 8), **AP**

Preferred Stock (9%, $50 par cumulative, 10,000 shares authorized)	$ 200,000
Common Stock ($1 stated value, 2,000,000 shares authorized)	1,000,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value—Preferred Stock	16,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Stated Value—Common Stock	1,400,000
Retained Earnings	1,716,000
Treasury Stock—Common (8,000 shares)	20,000

During 2012 the corporation had these transactions and events pertaining to its stockholders' equity.

Feb.	1	Issued 20,000 shares of common stock for $60,000.
Nov.	10	Purchased 4,000 shares of common stock for the treasury at a cost of $16,000.
Nov.	15	Declared a 9% cash dividend on preferred stock, payable December 15.
Dec.	1	Declared a $0.30 per share cash dividend to stockholders of record on December 15, payable December 31, 2012.

Dec. 15 Paid the dividend declared on November 15.
31 Determined that net income for the year was $408,000. The market price of the common stock on this date was $5 per share. Paid the dividend declared on December 1.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions. (Include entries to close net income and dividends to Retained Earnings.)
(b) Enter the beginning balances in the accounts, and post the journal entries to the stockholders' equity accounts. (Use T accounts.)
(c) Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet at December 31, 2012. (c) Tot. paid-in capital $2,676,000
(d) Calculate the payout ratio, earnings per share, and return on common stockholders' equity ratio. (*Hint:* Use the common shares outstanding on January 1 and December 31 to determine average shares outstanding.)

Prepare a stockholders' equity section. (SO 7), **AP**

P11-3B On December 31, 2011, Bryant Company had 600,000 shares of $1 par common stock issued and outstanding. The stockholders' equity accounts at December 31, 2011, had the balances listed here.

Common Stock	$600,000
Additional Paid-in Capital	900,000
Retained Earnings	800,000

Transactions during 2012 and other information related to stockholders' equity accounts were as follows.

1. On January 9, 2012, issued at $52 per share 12,000 shares of $50 par value, 9% cumulative preferred stock.
2. On February 8, 2012, reacquired 15,000 shares of its common stock for $4 per share.
3. On June 10, 2012, declared a cash dividend of $1 per share on the common stock outstanding, payable on July 10, 2012, to stockholders of record on July 1, 2012.
4. On December 1, 2012, declared the yearly cash dividend on preferred stock, payable December 28, 2012, to stockholders of record on December 15, 2012.
5. Net income for the year is $2,400,000. At December 31, 2012, the market price of the common stock was $5 per share.

Instructions

Prepare the stockholders' equity section of Bryant Company's balance sheet at December 31, 2012. Tot. stockholders' equity $4,625,000

Reproduce retained earnings account, and prepare a stockholders' equity section. (SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

P11-4B The post-closing trial balance of Flicka Corporation at December 31, 2012, contains these stockholders' equity accounts.

Preferred Stock (6,000 shares issued)	$ 300,000
Common Stock (350,000 shares issued)	3,500,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value—Preferred Stock	250,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value—Common Stock	520,000
Retained Earnings	805,000

A review of the accounting records reveals this information:

1. Preferred stock is $50 par, 10%, and cumulative; 6,000 shares have been outstanding since January 1, 2011.
2. Authorized stock is 20,000 shares of preferred and 500,000 shares of common with a $10 par value.
3. The January 1, 2012, balance in Retained Earnings was $660,000.
4. On July 1, 20,000 shares of common stock were sold for cash at $16 per share.
5. A cash dividend of $380,000 was declared and properly allocated to preferred and common stock on October 1. No dividends were paid to preferred stockholders in 2011.
6. Net income for the year was $525,000.
7. On December 31, 2012, the directors authorized disclosure of a $150,000 restriction of retained earnings for plant expansion. (Use Note X.)

Instructions

(a) Reproduce the retained earnings account for the year.
(b) Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet at December 31. (b) Tot. paid-in capital $4,570,000

P11-5B The following stockholders' equity accounts, arranged alphabetically, are in the ledger of Charlotte Corporation at December 31, 2012.

Prepare a stockholders' equity section.
(SO 7), **AP**

Common Stock ($2 stated value, 1,800,000 shares authorized)	$2,600,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value—Preferred Stock	158,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Stated Value—Common Stock	1,950,000
Preferred Stock (8%, $50 par, noncumulative, 50,000 shares authorized)	900,000
Retained Earnings	1,958,000
Treasury Stock—Common (20,000 shares)	80,000

Instructions
Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet at December 31, 2012.

Tot. stockholders' equity $7,486,000

P11-6B On January 1, 2012, Gabriel Inc. had these stockholder equity balances.

Prepare a stockholders' equity section.
(SO 7), **AP**

Common Stock, $1 par (1,000,000 shares authorized; 500,000 shares issued and outstanding)	$ 500,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value	1,000,000
Retained Earnings	600,000

During 2012, the following transactions and events occurred.

1. Issued 70,000 shares of $1 par common stock for $245,000.
2. Issued 40,000 common shares for cash at $4 per share.
3. Purchased 18,000 shares of common stock for the treasury at $4 per share.
4. Declared and paid a cash dividend of $296,000.
5. Reported net income of $510,000.

Instructions
Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet at December 31, 2012.

Tot. stockholders' equity $2,647,000

P11-7B Daykin Company manufactures raingear. During 2012, Daykin Company decided to issue bonds at 8% interest and then used the cash to purchase a significant amount of treasury stock. The following information is available for Daykin Company.

Evaluate a company's profitability and solvency.
(SO 8), **AP**

	2012	2011
Sales	$3,000,000	$3,000,000
Net income	780,000	850,000
Interest expense	120,000	50,000
Tax expense	166,000	190,000
Total assets	5,000,000	5,610,000
Average total assets	5,312,500	6,230,000
Total liabilities	2,000,000	1,200,000
Average total stockholders' equity	3,322,500	5,250,000
Dividends paid on common stock	270,000	300,000
Dividends paid on preferred stock	40,000	40,000

Instructions
(a) Use the information above to calculate the following ratios for both years: (i) return on assets ratio, (ii) return on common stockholders' equity ratio, (iii) payout ratio, (iv) debt to total assets ratio, and (v) times interest earned ratio.
(b) Referring to your findings in part (a), discuss the changes in the company's profitability from 2011 to 2012.
(c) Referring to your findings in part (a), discuss the changes in the company's solvency from 2011 to 2012.
(d) Based on your findings in (b), was the decision to issue debt to purchase common stock a wise one?

***P11-8B** On January 1, 2012, Jason Corporation had these stockholders' equity accounts.

Prepare dividend entries, prepare a stockholders' equity section, and calculate ratios.
(SO 5, 7, 8, 9), **AP**

Common Stock ($20 par value, 80,000 shares issued and outstanding)	$1,600,000
Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value	240,000
Retained Earnings	750,000

During the year, the following transactions occurred.

Feb.	1	Declared a $0.50 cash dividend per share to stockholders of record on February 15, payable March 1.
Mar.	1	Paid the dividend declared in February.
July	1	Declared a 15% stock dividend to stockholders of record on July 15, distributable July 31. On July 1, the market price of the stock was $25 per share.
	31	Issued the shares for the stock dividend.
Dec.	1	Declared a $1 per share dividend to stockholders of record on December 15, payable January 5, 2013.
	31	Determined that net income for the year was $500,000. The market price of the common stock on this date was $32.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions. (Include entries to close net income and dividends to Retained Earnings.)

(b) Enter the beginning balances and post the entries to the stockholders' equity T accounts. (*Note:* Open additional stockholders' equity accounts as needed.)

(c) Tot. stockholders' equity $2,958,000

(c) Prepare the stockholders' equity section of the balance sheet at December 31.

(d) Calculate the payout ratio and return on common stockholders' equity ratio.

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Comprehensive Problem

CP11 Hampton Corporation's balance sheet at December 31, 2011, is presented below.

HAMPTON CORPORATION
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2011

Cash	$ 24,600	Accounts payable	$ 25,600
Accounts receivable	45,500	Common stock ($10 par)	80,000
Allowance for doubtful accounts	(1,500)	Retained earnings	127,400
Supplies	4,400		$233,000
Land	40,000		
Buildings	142,000		
Accumulated depreciation—buildings	(22,000)		
	$233,000		

During 2012, the following transactions occurred.

1. On January 1, 2012, Hampton issued 1,200 shares of $40 par, 7% preferred stock for $49,200.
2. On January 1, 2012, Hampton also issued 900 shares of the $10 par value common stock for $21,000.
3. Hampton performed services for $320,000 on account.
4. On April 1, 2012, Hampton collected fees of $36,000 in advance for services to be performed from April 1, 2012, to March 31, 2013.
5. Hampton collected $276,000 from customers on account.
6. Hampton bought $35,100 of supplies on account.
7. Hampton paid $32,200 on accounts payable.
8. Hampton reacquired 400 shares of its common stock on June 1, 2012, for $28 per share.
9. Paid other operating expenses of $188,200.
10. On December 31, 2012, Hampton declared the annual preferred stock dividend and a $1.20 per share dividend on the outstanding common stock, all payable on January 15, 2013.
11. An account receivable of $1,700 which originated in 2011 is written off as uncollectible.

Adjustment data:

1. A count of supplies indicates that $5,900 of supplies remain unused at year-end.
2. Recorded revenue earned from item 4 above.
3. The allowance for doubtful accounts should have a balance of $3,500 at year end.
4. Depreciation is recorded on the building on a straight-line basis based on a 30-year life and a salvage value of $10,000.
5. The income tax rate is 30%. (*Hint:* Prepare the income statement up to income before taxes and multiply by 30% to compute the amount.)

Instructions

(You may want to set up T accounts to determine ending balances.)

(a) Prepare journal entries for the transactions listed above and adjusting entries.

(b) Prepare an adjusted trial balance at December 31, 2012.

(c) Prepare an income statement and a retained earnings statement for the year ending December 31, 2012, and a classified balance sheet as of December 31, 2012.

(b) Totals $740,690
(c) Net income $81,970
Tot. assets $421,000

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapters 1 through 10.)

CCC11

Part 1 Because Natalie has been so successful with Cookie Creations and her friend Curtis Lesperance has been just as successful with his coffee shop, they conclude that they could benefit from each other's business expertise. Curtis and Natalie next evaluate the different types of business organization. Because of the advantage of limited personal liability, they decide to form a corporation.

Natalie and Curtis are very excited about this new business venture. They come to you with information they have gathered about their companies and with a number of questions.

Part 2 After establishing their company's fiscal year to be October 31, Natalie and Curtis began operating Cookie & Coffee Creations Inc. on November 1, 2012. On that date, they issued both preferred and common stock. Natalie and Curtis now want to prepare financial information for the first year of operations.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to find the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.*

BYP11-1 The stockholders' equity section of Tootsie Roll Industries' balance sheet is shown in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position in Appendix A. You will also find data relative to this problem on other pages of Appendix A. **(Note that Tootsie Roll has two classes of common stock. To answer the following questions, add the two classes of stock together.)**

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) What is the par or stated value per share of Tootsie Roll's common stock?

(b) What percentage of Tootsie Roll's authorized common stock was issued at December 31, 2009? (Round to the nearest full percent.)

(c) How many shares of common stock were outstanding at December 31, 2008, and at December 31, 2009?

(d) Calculate the payout ratio, earnings per share, and return on common stockholders' equity ratio for 2009.

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP11-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company are presented in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll in Appendix A.

Instructions

(a) Based on the information in these financial statements, compute the 2009 return on common stockholders' equity, debt to total assets ratio, and return on assets ratio for each company.
(b) What conclusions concerning the companies' profitability can be drawn from these ratios? Which company relies more on debt to boost its return to common shareholders?
(c) Compute the payout ratio for each company. Which pays out a higher percentage of its earnings?

RESEARCH CASE

BYP11-3 The March 15, 2010, edition of the *Wall Street Journal* includes an article by Martin Peers entitled "Media's Cash Focus is Paying Dividends."

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following questions.

(a) What action did Viacom take with its excess cash before it decided to consider paying dividends or stock buybacks?
(b) What percentage of free cash flow does Time Warner pay out in dividends?
(c) Why might Viacom choose to pay a lower dividend and instead use its excess cash for a stock buyback program?
(d) How might the payment of a steady, significant dividend change the nature of shareholders that invest in media companies?
(e) What message might an increased dividend or stock buybacks send to shareholders regarding what the company will do with excess cash now, as opposed to what it used to do with excess cash?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP11-4 Marriott Corporation split into two companies: Host Marriott Corporation and Marriott International. Host Marriott retained ownership of the corporation's vast hotel and other properties, while Marriott International, rather than owning hotels, managed them. The purpose of this split was to free Marriott International from the "baggage" associated with Host Marriott, thus allowing it to be more aggressive in its pursuit of growth. The following information (in millions) is provided for each corporation for their first full year operating as independent companies.

	Host Marriott	Marriott International
Sales	$1,501	$8,415
Net income	(25)	200
Total assets	3,822	3,207
Total liabilities	3,112	2,440
Common stockholders' equity	710	767

Instructions

(a) The two companies were split by the issuance of shares of Marriott International to all shareholders of the previous combined company. Discuss the nature of this transaction.
(b) Calculate the debt to total assets ratio for each company.
(c) Calculate the return on assets and return on common stockholders' equity ratios for each company.
(d) The company's debtholders were fiercely opposed to the original plan to split the two companies because the original plan had Host Marriott absorbing the majority of the company's debt. They relented only when Marriott International agreed to absorb a larger share of the debt. Discuss the possible reasons the debtholders were opposed to the plan to split the company.

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP11-5 ***Purpose:*** Use the stockholders' equity section of an annual report and identify the major components.

Address: **www.annualreports.com**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Select a particular company.
2. Search by company name.
3. Follow instructions below.

Instructions
Answer the following questions.
(a) What is the company's name?
(b) What classes of capital stock has the company issued?
(c) For each class of stock:
  (1) How many shares are authorized, issued, and/or outstanding?
  (2) What is the par value?
(d) What are the company's retained earnings?
(e) Has the company acquired treasury stock? How many shares?

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP11-6 During a recent period, the fast-food chain Wendy's International purchased many treasury shares. This caused the number of shares outstanding to fall from 124 million to 105 million. The following information was drawn from the company's financial statements (in millions).

	Information for the Year after Purchase of Treasury Stock	Information for the Year before Purchase of Treasury Stock
Net income	$ 193.6	$ 123.4
Total assets	2,076.0	1,837.9
Average total assets	2,016.9	1,889.8
Total common stockholders' equity	1,029.8	1,068.1
Average common stockholders' equity	1,078.0	1,126.2
Total liabilities	1,046.3	769.9
Average total liabilities	939.0	763.7
Interest expense	30.2	19.8
Income taxes	113.7	84.3
Cash provided by operations	305.2	233.8
Cash dividends paid on common stock	26.8	31.0
Preferred stock dividends	0	0
Average number of common shares outstanding	109.7	119.9

Instructions
Use the information provided to answer the following questions.
(a) Compute earnings per share, return on common stockholders' equity, and return on assets for both years. Discuss the change in the company's profitability over this period.
(b) Compute the dividend payout ratio. Also compute the average cash dividend paid per share of common stock (dividends paid divided by the average number of common shares outstanding). Discuss any change in these ratios during this period and the implications for the company's dividend policy.
(c) Compute the debt to total assets ratio and interest coverage ratio. Discuss the change in the company's solvency.
(d) Based on your findings in (a) and (c), discuss to what extent any change in the return on common stockholders' equity was the result of increased reliance on debt.
(e) Does it appear that the purchase of treasury stock and the shift toward more reliance on debt were wise strategic moves?

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP11-7 Jim Collins, your uncle, is an inventor who has decided to incorporate. Uncle Jim knows that you are an accounting major at U.N.O. In a recent letter to you, he ends with the question, "I'm filling out a state incorporation application. Can you tell me the difference among the following terms: (1) authorized stock, (2) issued stock, (3) outstanding stock, and (4) preferred stock?"

Instructions
In a brief note, differentiate for Uncle Jim the four different stock terms. Write the letter to be friendly, yet professional.

ETHICS CASES

BYP11-8 The R&D division of Mozy Corp. has just developed a chemical for sterilizing the vicious Brazilian "killer bees" which are invading Mexico and the southern United States. The president of Mozy is anxious to get the chemical on the market because Mozy profits need a boost—and his job is in jeopardy because of decreasing sales and profits. Mozy has an opportunity to sell this chemical in Central American countries, where the laws are much more relaxed than in the United States.

The director of Mozy's R&D division strongly recommends further research in the laboratory to test the side effects of this chemical on other insects, birds, animals, plants, and even humans. He cautions the president, "We could be sued from all sides if the chemical has tragic side effects that we didn't even test for in the lab." The president answers, "We can't wait an additional year for your lab tests. We can avoid losses from such lawsuits by establishing a separate wholly owned corporation to shield Mozy Corp. from such lawsuits. We can't lose any more than our investment in the new corporation, and we'll invest just the patent covering this chemical. We'll reap the benefits if the chemical works and is safe, and avoid the losses from lawsuits if it's a disaster." The following week, Mozy creates a new wholly owned corporation called Ziegler Inc., sells the chemical patent to it for $10, and watches the spraying begin.

Instructions

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?
(b) Are the president's motives and actions ethical?
(c) Can Mozy shield itself against losses of Ziegler Inc.?

BYP11-9 Lesley Corporation has paid 60 consecutive quarterly cash dividends (15 years). The last 6 months have been a real cash drain on the company, however, as profit margins have been greatly narrowed by increasing competition. With a cash balance sufficient to meet only day-to-day operating needs, the president, Clint Palen, has decided that a stock dividend instead of a cash dividend should be declared. He tells Lesley's financial vice president, Becca Anderson, to issue a press release stating that the company is extending its consecutive dividend record with the issuance of a 5% stock dividend. "Write the press release convincing the stockholders that the stock dividend is just as good as a cash dividend," he orders. "Just watch our stock rise when we announce the stock dividend; it must be a good thing if that happens."

Instructions

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?
(b) Is there anything unethical about president Palen's intentions or actions?
(c) What is the effect of a stock dividend on a corporation's stockholders' equity accounts? Which would you rather receive as a stockholder—a cash dividend or a stock dividend? Why?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP11-10 In response to the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, many companies have implemented formal ethics codes. Many other organizations also have ethics codes.

Instructions

Obtain the ethics code from an organization that you belong to (e.g., student organization, business school, employer, or a volunteer organization). Evaluate the ethics code based on how clearly it identifies proper and improper behaviour. Discuss its strengths, and how it might be improved.

FASB CODIFICATION ACTIVITY

BYP11-11 If your school has a subscription to the FASB Codification, go to **http://aaahq.org/ascLogin.cfm** to log in and prepare responses to the following.

(a) What is the stock dividend?
(b) What is a stock split?
(c) At what percentage point does the issuance of additional shares qualify as a stock dividend, as opposed to a stock split?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 573 Wall Street No Friend of Facebook **Q:** Why has Mark Zuckerberg, the CEO and founder of Facebook, delayed taking his company's shares public through an initial public offering (IPO)? **A:** Facebook doesn't need to invest in factories, distribution systems, or even marketing, so it doesn't need to raise a lot of cash. Also, by not going public, Zuckerberg has more control over the direction of the company. In addition, publicly traded companies face many more financial reporting disclosure requirements.

p. 579 How to Read Stock Quotes **Q:** For stocks traded on organized stock exchanges, how are the dollar prices per share established? What factors might influence the price of shares in the marketplace? **A:** The dollar prices per share are established by the interaction between buyers and sellers of the shares. The prices of shares are influenced by a company's earnings and dividends as well as by factors beyond a company's control, such as changes in interest rates, labor strikes, scarcity of supplies or resources, and politics. The number of willing buyers and sellers (demand and supply) also plays a part in the price of shares.

p. 588 A No-Split Philosophy **Q:** Why does Warren Buffett usually oppose stock splits? **A:** Mr. Buffett prefers to attract shareholders that make a long-term commitment to his company, as opposed to traders that only hold their investment for a short period of time. He believes that a high stock price discourages short-term investment.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. c **2.** b **3.** d **4.** c **5.** d **6.** d **7.** d $375,000 − ($100 × 10,000 × .08 × 3) **8.** d **9.** b **10.** d (100,000 × $30 × .10) **11.** c **12.** a **13.** c **14.** b **15.** b ($186,000 − $60,000) ÷ ((1,200,000 + $1,600,000) ÷ 2) **16.** d

IFRS A Look at IFRS

The accounting for transactions related to stockholders' equity, such as issuance of shares, purchase of treasury stock, and declaration and payment of dividends, are similar under both IFRS and GAAP. Major differences relate to terminology used, introduction of items such as revaluation surplus, and presentation of stockholders' equity information.

KEY POINTS

- Under IFRS, the term *reserves* is used to describe all equity accounts other than those arising from contributed capital. This would include, for example, reserves related to retained earnings, asset revaluations, and fair value differences.
- Many countries have a different mix of investor groups than in the United States. For example, in Germany, financial institutions like banks are not only major creditors of corporations but often are the largest corporate stockholders as well. In the United States, Asia, and the United Kingdom, many companies rely on substantial investment from private investors.
- There are often terminology differences for equity accounts. The following summarizes some of the common differences in terminology.

GAAP	IFRS
Common stock	Share capital—ordinary
Stockholders	Shareholders
Par value	Nominal or face value
Authorized stock	Authorized share capital
Preferred stock	Preference shares
Paid-in capital	Issued/allocated share capital
Paid-in capital in excess of par—common stock	Share premium—ordinary
Paid-in capital in excess of par—preferred stock	Share premium—preference
Retained earnings	Retained earnings or Retained profits
Retained earnings deficit	Accumulated losses
Accumulated other comprehensive income	General reserve and other reserve accounts

As an example of how similar transactions use different terminology under IFRS, consider the accounting for the issuance of 1,000 shares of $1 par value stock for $5 per share. Under IFRS, the entry is as follows.

Cash	5,000	
Share Capital—Ordinary		1,000
Share Premium—Ordinary		4,000

- The accounting for treasury stock differs somewhat between IFRS and GAAP. (However, many of the differences are beyond the scope of this course.) Like GAAP, IFRS does not allow a company to record gains or losses on purchases of its own shares. One difference worth noting is that, when a company purchases its own shares, IFRS treats it as a reduction of stockholders' equity, but it does not specify which particular stockholders' equity accounts are to be affected. Therefore, it could be shown as an increase to a contra equity account (Treasury Stock) or a decrease to retained earnings or share capital. IFRS requires that the number of treasury shares held be disclosed.
- A major difference between IFRS and GAAP relates to the account Revaluation Surplus. Revaluation surplus arises under IFRS because companies are permitted to revalue their property, plant, and equipment to fair value under certain circumstances. This account is part of general reserves under IFRS and is not considered contributed capital.
- As indicated earlier, the term *reserves* is used in IFRS to indicate all noncontributed (non–paid-in) capital. Reserves include retained earnings and other comprehensive income items, such as revaluation surplus and unrealized gains or losses on available-for-sale securities.
- IFRS often uses terms such as *retained profits* or *accumulated profit or loss* to describe retained earnings. The term *retained earnings* is also often used.
- The accounting related to prior period adjustments is essentially the same under IFRS and GAAP. IFRS addresses the accounting for errors in *IAS 8* ("Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates, and Errors"). One area where IFRS and GAAP differ in reporting relates to error corrections in previously issued financial statements. While IFRS requires restatement with some exceptions, GAAP does not permit any exceptions.
- Equity is given various descriptions under IFRS, such as shareholders' equity, owners' equity, capital and reserves, and shareholders' funds.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

As indicated in earlier discussions, the IASB and the FASB are currently working on a project related to financial statement presentation. An important part of this study is to determine whether certain line items, subtotals, and totals should be clearly defined and required to be displayed in the financial statements. For example, it is likely that the statement of stockholders' equity and its presentation will be examined closely. In addition, the options of how to present other comprehensive income under GAAP will change in any converged standard.

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. Under IFRS, a purchase by a company of its own shares is recorded by:
(a) an increase in Treasury Stock.
(b) a decrease in contributed capital.
(c) a decrease in share capital.
(d) All of these are acceptable treatments.

2. The term *reserves* is used under IFRS with reference to all of the following *except*:
(a) gains and losses on revaluation of property, plant, and equipment.
(b) capital received in excess of the par value of issued shares.
(c) retained earnings.
(d) fair value differences.

3. Under IFRS, the amount of capital received in excess of par value on ordinary shares would be credited to:
(a) Retained Earnings.
(b) Contributed Capital.
(c) Share Premium—Ordinary.
(d) Par value is not used under IFRS.

4. Which of the following is *false*?
(a) Under GAAP, companies cannot record gains on transactions involving their own shares.
(b) Under IFRS, companies cannot record gains on transactions involving their own shares.
(c) Under IFRS, the statement of stockholders' equity is a required statement.
(d) Under IFRS, a company records a revaluation surplus when it experiences an increase in the price of its common stock.

5. Which of the following does *not* represent a pair of GAAP/IFRS-comparable terms?
   (a) Additional paid-in capital/Share premium.
   (b) Treasury stock/Repurchase reserve.
   (c) Common stock/Share capital.
   (d) Preferred stock/Preference shares.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS11-1 On May 10, Romano Corporation issues 1,000 shares of $10 par value ordinary shares for cash at $18 per share. Journalize the issuance of the shares.

IFRS11-2 Ingram Corporation has the following accounts at December 31, 2012: Share Capital—Ordinary, €10 par, 5,000 shares issued, €50,000; Share Premium—Ordinary €10,000; Retained Earnings €45,000; and Treasury Shares—Ordinary, 500 shares, €11,000. Prepare the equity section of the statement of financial position.

IFRS11-3 Sorocaba Co. had the following transactions during the current period.

June 12	Issued 60,000 shares of $1 par value ordinary shares for cash of $375,000.
July 11	Issued 1,000 shares of $100 par value preference shares for cash at $110 per share.
Nov. 28	Purchased 2,000 treasury shares for $80,000.

Instructions
Journalize the above transactions.

IFRS11-4 The January 25, 2005, edition of the *Wall Street Journal* has an article by Mary Kissel (on p. C1) entitled "Known for Growth, Asian Firms Answer Call of the Dividend."

Instructions
Read the article and answer the following questions.
(a) What is the "dividend yield"? How does the dividend yield of Asian companies compare to that of companies in other regions?
(b) What has happened to Asian company debt levels in recent years? What implications has this had for return on equity? Explain why this would be the case.
(c) What measure is used to determine whether a company is paying out a high percentage of its earnings in the form of dividends? What percentage of their earnings are Asian firms paying out? According to the article, how have the stock prices of dividend-paying companies performed relative to non-dividend-paying companies? What explanations are given for this?

INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Zetar plc*

IFRS11-5 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C. The company's complete annual report, including the notes to its financial statements, is available at **www.zetarplc.com**.

Instructions
Use the company's annual report to answer the following questions.
(a) Using the information in the statement of changes in equity, prepare the journal entry to record the issuance of ordinary shares during the year ended April 30, 2009.
(b) Compute the company's return on ordinary shareholders' equity for the year ended April 30, 2009.
(c) Examine the equity section of the company's balance sheet. For each item in the equity section, provide the comparable label that would be used under GAAP.

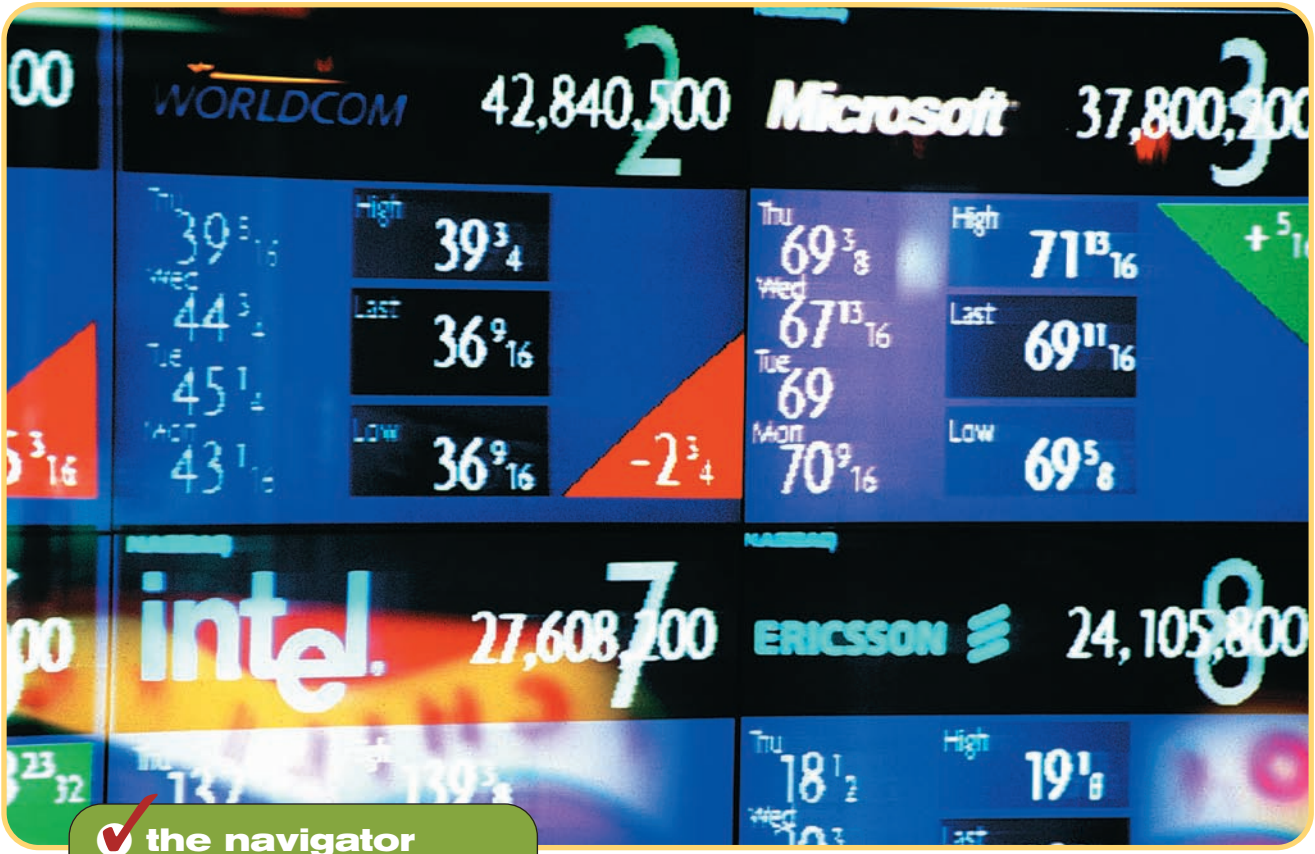
Answers to IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. d **2.** b **3.** c **4.** d **5.** b

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 12

STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS



the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** ***Do it!*** p. 627 ◯ p. 636 ◯ p. 640 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** ***Do it!*** p. 656 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 680 ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Indicate the usefulness of the statement of cash flows.
2. Distinguish among operating, investing, and financing activities.
3. Explain the impact of the product life cycle on a company's cash flows.
4. Prepare a statement of cash flows using the indirect method.
5. Use the statement of cash flows to evaluate a company.

the navigator

feature story

GOT CASH?

In today's environment, companies must be ready to respond to changes quickly in order to survive and thrive. This requires that they manage their cash very carefully. One company that managed cash successfully in its early years was Microsoft. During those years, the company paid much of its payroll with stock options (rights to purchase company stock in the future at a given price) instead of cash. This strategy conserved cash and turned more than a thousand of its employees into millionaires during the company's first 20 years of business.

In recent years, Microsoft has had a different kind of cash problem. Now that it has reached a more "mature" stage in life, it generates so much cash—roughly $1 billion per month—that it cannot always figure out what to do with it. At one time, Microsoft had accumulated $60 billion.

The company said it was accumulating cash to invest in new opportunities, buy other companies, and pay off pending lawsuits. But for many years, the federal government blocked attempts by Microsoft to buy anything other than small firms because it feared that purchase of a large firm would only increase Microsoft's monopolistic position.

Microsoft's stockholders have complained for years that holding all this cash was putting a drag on the company's profitability. Why? Because Microsoft had the cash invested in very low-yielding government securities. Stockholders felt that the company either should find new investment projects that would bring higher returns, or return some of the cash to stockholders.

Finally, Microsoft announced a plan to return cash to stockholders, by paying a special one-time $32 billion dividend. This special dividend was so large that, according to the U.S. Commerce Department, it caused total personal income in the United States to rise by 3.7% in one month—the largest increase ever recorded by the agency. (It also made the holiday season brighter, especially for retailers in the Seattle area.) Microsoft also doubled its regular annual dividend to $3.50 per share. Further, it announced that it would spend another $30 billion buying treasury stock. In addition, Microsoft more recently offered to buy Yahoo for $44.6 billion (Yahoo declined the offer). Dividends, stock buybacks, and acquisitions will help to deplete some of its massive cash horde, but as you will see in this chapter, for a cash-generating machine like Microsoft, the company will be anything but cash-starved.

Interestingly, in 2010 Google found itself in a position similar to Microsoft's. Its cash pile of $26.5 billion was nearly 20% of the company's value. That's enough to pay a dividend of $80 per share. Unless it can find large, worthwhile projects to invest in, Google will also need to return a big chunk of its cash to shareholders.

Source: "Business: An End to Growth? Microsoft's Cash Bonanza," *The Economist* (July 23, 2005), p. 61.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 12 . . .

- **Net *What*?** *(p. 626)*
- **Operating with Negative Cash** *(p. 629)*

preview of chapter 12

The balance sheet, income statement, and retained earnings statement do not always show the whole picture of the financial condition of a company or institution. In fact, looking at the financial statements of some well-known companies, a thoughtful investor might ask questions like these: How did Eastman Kodak finance cash dividends of $649 million in a year in which it earned only $17 million? How could United Airlines purchase new planes that cost $1.9 billion in a year in which it reported a net loss of over $2 billion? How did the companies that spent a combined fantastic $3.4 trillion on mergers and acquisitions in a recent year finance those deals? Answers to these and similar questions can be found in this chapter, which presents the statement of cash flows.

The content and organization of this chapter are as follows.

Statement of Cash Flows

The Statement of Cash Flows: Usefulness and Format	Preparation of the Statement of Cash Flows–Indirect Method	Using Cash Flows to Evaluate a Company
• Usefulness • Classifications • Significant noncash activities • Format • Corporate life cycle • Preparation • Indirect and direct methods	• Step 1: Operating activities • Step 2: Investing and financing activities • Step 3: Net change in cash	• Free cash flow • Assessing liquidity and solvency

the navigator

The Statement of Cash Flows: Usefulness and Format

The balance sheet, income statement, and retained earnings statement provide only limited information about a company's cash flows (cash receipts and cash payments). For example, comparative balance sheets show the increase in property, plant, and equipment during the year. But they do not show how the additions were financed or paid for. The income statement shows net income. But it does not indicate the amount of cash generated by operating activities. The retained earnings statement shows cash dividends declared but not the cash dividends paid during the year. None of these statements presents a detailed summary of where cash came from and how it was used.

USEFULNESS OF THE STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS

study objective 1

Indicate the usefulness of the statement of cash flows.

The **statement of cash flows** reports the cash receipts and cash payments from operating, investing, and financing activities during a period, in a format that reconciles the beginning and ending cash balances. The information in a statement of cash flows helps investors, creditors, and others assess:

1. **The entity's ability to generate future cash flows.** By examining relationships between items in the statement of cash flows, investors make predictions of the amounts, timing, and uncertainty of future cash flows better than they can from accrual-basis data.
2. **The entity's ability to pay dividends and meet obligations.** If a company does not have adequate cash, it cannot pay employees, settle debts, or pay dividends. Employees, creditors, and stockholders should be particularly interested in this statement because it alone shows the flows of cash in a business.

3. **The reasons for the difference between net income and net cash provided (used) by operating activities.** Net income provides information on the success or failure of a business enterprise. However, some financial statement users are critical of accrual-basis net income because it requires many estimates. As a result, users often challenge the reliability of the number. Such is not the case with cash. Many readers of the statement of cash flows want to know the reasons for the difference between net income and net cash provided by operating activities. Then they can assess for themselves the reliability of the income number.
4. **The cash investing and financing transactions during the period.** By examining a company's investing and financing transactions, a financial statement reader can better understand why assets and liabilities changed during the period.

Ethics Note Though we would discourage reliance on cash flows to the exclusion of accrual accounting, comparing cash from operations to net income can reveal important information about the "quality" of reported net income. Such a comparison can reveal the extent to which net income provides a good measure of actual performance.

CLASSIFICATION OF CASH FLOWS

study objective 2

Distinguish among operating, investing, and financing activities.

The statement of cash flows classifies cash receipts and cash payments as operating, investing, and financing activities. Transactions and other events characteristic of each kind of activity are as follows.

1. **Operating activities** include the cash effects of transactions that create revenues and expenses. They thus enter into the determination of net income.
2. **Investing activities** include (a) cash transactions that involve the purchase or disposal of investments and property, plant, and equipment, and (b) lending money and collecting the loans.
3. **Financing activities** include (a) obtaining cash from issuing debt and repaying the amounts borrowed, and (b) obtaining cash from stockholders, repurchasing shares, and paying dividends.

The operating activities category is the most important. It shows the cash provided by company operations. This source of cash is generally considered to be the best measure of a company's ability to generate sufficient cash to continue as a going concern.

Illustration 12-1 (page 626) lists typical cash receipts and cash payments within each of the three classifications. **Study the list carefully.** It will be very useful in solving homework exercises and problems.

Note the following general guidelines:

1. Operating activities involve income statement items.
2. Investing activities involve cash flows resulting from changes in investments and long-term asset items.
3. Financing activities involve cash flows resulting from changes in long-term liability and stockholders' equity items.

Companies classify as operating activities some cash flows related to investing or financing activities. For example, receipts of investment revenue (interest and dividends) are classified as operating activities. So are payments of interest to lenders. Why are these considered operating activities? **Because companies report these items in the income statement, where results of operations are shown.**

International Note The statement of cash flows is very similar under GAAP and IFRS. One difference is that, under IFRS, noncash investing and financing activities are not reported in the statement of cash flows but instead are reported in the notes to the financial statements.

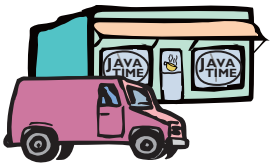
SIGNIFICANT NONCASH ACTIVITIES

Not all of a company's significant activities involve cash. Examples of significant noncash activities are:

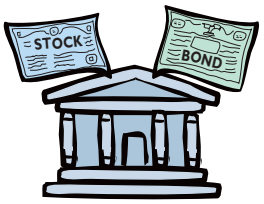
1. Direct issuance of common stock to purchase assets.
2. Conversion of bonds into common stock.
3. Direct issuance of debt to purchase assets.
4. Exchanges of plant assets.

Illustration 12-1 Typical receipt and payment classifications

Operating activities



Investing activities



Financing activities

Types of Cash Inflows and Outflows

Operating activities—Income statement items

Cash inflows:
- From sale of goods or services.
- From interest received and dividends received.

Cash outflows:
- To suppliers for inventory.
- To employees for services.
- To government for taxes.
- To lenders for interest.
- To others for expenses.

Investing activities—Changes in investments and long-term assets

Cash inflows:
- From sale of property, plant, and equipment.
- From sale of investments in debt or equity securities of other entities.
- From collection of principal on loans to other entities.

Cash outflows:
- To purchase property, plant, and equipment.
- To purchase investments in debt or equity securities of other entities.
- To make loans to other entities.

Financing activities—Changes in long-term liabilities and stockholders' equity

Cash inflows:
- From sale of common stock.
- From issuance of debt (bonds and notes).

Cash outflows:
- To stockholders as dividends.
- To redeem long-term debt or reacquire capital stock (treasury stock).

Helpful Hint Do not include **noncash** investing and financing activities in the body of the statement of cash flows. Report this information in a separate schedule below the statement of cash flows.

Companies do not report in the body of the statement of cash flows significant financing and investing activities that do not affect cash. Instead, they report these activities in either a **separate schedule** at the bottom of the statement of cash flows or in a **separate note or supplementary schedule** to the financial statements. The reporting of these noncash activities in a separate schedule satisfies the **full disclosure principle**.

In solving homework assignments, you should present significant noncash investing and financing activities in a separate schedule at the bottom of the statement of cash flows. (See the last entry in Illustration 12-2 for an example.)

Accounting Across the Organization

Net *What*?

Net income is not the same as net cash provided by operations. The differences are illustrated by the following results from recent annual reports ($ in millions). Note the wide disparity among these companies that all engaged in retail merchandising.

Company	Net Income	Net Cash Provided by Operations
Kohl's Corporation	$ 1,083	$ 1,234
Wal-Mart Stores, Inc.	11,284	20,169
JCPenney Company, Inc.	1,153	1,255
Costco Wholesale Corp.	1,082	2,076
Target Corporation	2,849	4,125

? In general, why do differences exist between net income and net cash provided by operating activities? (See page 680.)

FORMAT OF THE STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS

The general format of the statement of cash flows presents the results of the three activities discussed previously—operating, investing, and financing—plus the significant noncash investing and financing activities. Illustration 12–2 shows a widely used form of the statement of cash flows.

Illustration 12-2 Format of statement of cash flows

COMPANY NAME Statement of Cash Flows Period Covered		
Cash flows from operating activities		
(List of individual items)	XX	
Net cash provided (used) by operating activities		XXX
Cash flows from investing activities		
(List of individual inflows and outflows)	XX	
Net cash provided (used) by investing activities		XXX
Cash flows from financing activities		
(List of individual inflows and outflows)	XX	
Net cash provided (used) by financing activities		XXX
Net increase (decrease) in cash		XXX
Cash at beginning of period		XXX
Cash at end of period		XXX
Noncash investing and financing activities		
(List of individual noncash transactions)		XXX

The sum of the operating, investing, and financing sections equals the net increase or decrease in cash for the period. This amount is added to the beginning cash balance to arrive at the ending cash balance—the same amount reported on the balance sheet.

before you go on...

Do it! During its first week, Duffy & Stevenson Company had these transactions.

1. Issued 100,000 shares of $5 par value common stock for $800,000 cash.
2. Borrowed $200,000 from Castle Bank, signing a 5-year note bearing 8% interest.
3. Purchased two semi-trailer trucks for $170,000 cash.
4. Paid employees $12,000 for salaries and wages.
5. Collected $20,000 cash for services provided.

Classify each of these transactions by type of cash flow activity.

Solution

1. Financing activity
2. Financing activity
3. Investing activity
4. Operating activity
5. Operating activity

Related exercise material: **BE12-1, BE12-2, BE12-3, Do it! 12-1, E12-1,** and **E12-2.**

CASH FLOW ACTIVITIES

Action Plan

- Identify the three types of activities used to report all cash inflows and outflows.
- Report as operating activities the cash effects of transactions that create revenues and expenses and enter into the determination of net income.
- Report as investing activities transactions that (a) acquire and dispose of investments and productive long-lived assets and (b) lend money and collect loans.
- Report as financing activities transactions that (a) obtain cash from issuing debt and repay the amounts borrowed and (b) obtain cash from stockholders and pay them dividends.

the navigator

THE CORPORATE LIFE CYCLE

study objective 3

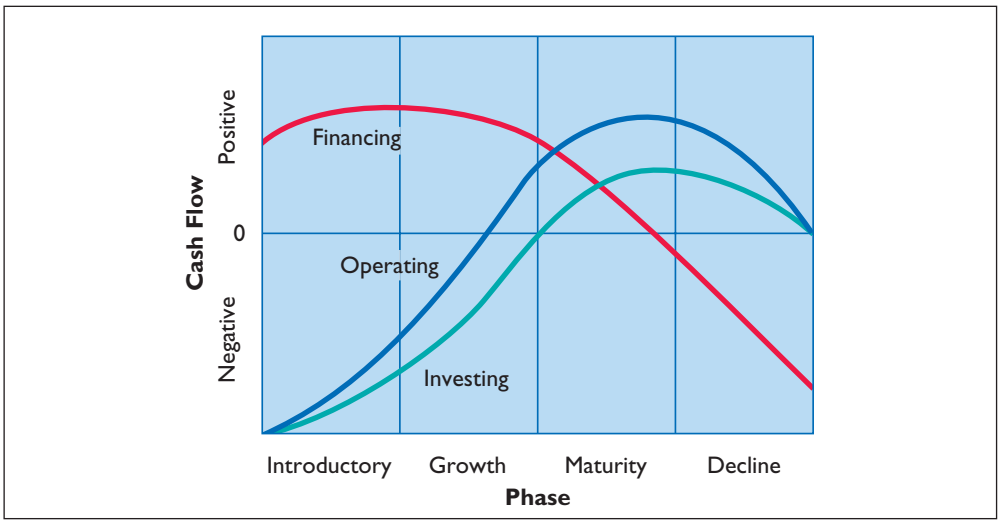
Explain the impact of the product life cycle on a company's cash flows.

All products go through a series of phases called the **product life cycle**. The phases (in order of their occurrence) are **introductory phase**, **growth phase**, **maturity phase**, and **decline phase**. The introductory phase occurs at the beginning of a company's life, when it is purchasing fixed assets and beginning to produce and sell products. During the growth phase, the company is striving to expand its production and sales. In the maturity phase, sales and production level off. During the decline phase, sales of the product fall due to a weakening in consumer demand.

In the same way that products have life cycles, companies have life cycles as well. Companies generally have more than one product, and not all of a company's products are in the same phase of the product life cycle at the same time. This sometimes makes it difficult to classify a company's phase. Still, we can characterize a company as being in one of the four phases because the majority of its products are in a particular phase.

Illustration 12-3 shows that the phase a company is in affects its cash flows. In the **introductory phase**, we expect that the company will not be generating positive cash from operations. That is, cash used in operations will exceed cash generated by operations in the introductory phase. Also, the company will be spending considerable amounts to purchase productive assets such as buildings and equipment. To support its asset purchases, the company will have to issue stock or debt. Thus, during the introductory phase, we expect cash from operations to be negative, cash from investing to be negative, and cash from financing to be positive.

Illustration 12-3 Impact of product life cycle on cash flows



During the **growth phase**, we expect to see the company start to generate small amounts of cash from operations. During this phase, cash from operations on the statement of cash flows will be less than net income on the income statement. One reason income will exceed cash flow from operations during this period is explained by the difference between the cash paid for inventory and the amount expensed as cost of goods sold. Since the company projects increasing sales, the size of inventory purchases must increase. Thus, in the growth phase, the company will expense less inventory on an accrual basis than it purchases on a cash basis. Also, collections on accounts receivable will lag behind sales, and accrual sales during a period will exceed cash collections during that period. Cash needed for asset acquisitions will continue to exceed cash provided by operations, requiring that the company make up the deficiency by issuing new stock or debt. Thus, in the growth phase, the company continues to show negative cash from investing and positive cash from financing.

During the **maturity phase**, cash from operations and net income are approximately the same. Cash generated from operations exceeds investing needs. Thus, in the maturity phase, the company can start to pay dividends, retire debt, or buy back stock.

Finally, during the **decline phase**, cash from operations decreases. Cash from investing might actually become positive as the company sells off excess assets. Cash from financing may be negative as the company buys back stock and retires debt.

Consider Microsoft: During its early years, it had significant product development costs and little revenue. Microsoft was lucky in that its agreement with IBM to provide the operating system for IBM PCs gave it an early steady source of cash to support growth. As noted in the Feature Story, one way Microsoft conserved cash was to pay employees with stock options rather than cash. Today, Microsoft could best be characterized as being in the maturity phase. It continues to spend considerable amounts on research and development and investment in new assets. For the last three years, though, its cash from operations has exceeded its net income. Also, cash from operations over this period exceeded cash used for investing, and common stock repurchased exceeded common stock issued. For Microsoft, as for any large company, the challenge is to maintain its growth. In the software industry, where products become obsolete very quickly, the challenge is particularly great.

Investor Insight

Operating with Negative Cash

Listed here are recent amounts of net income and cash provided (used) by operations, investing, and financing for a variety of companies. The final column suggests their likely phase in the life cycle based on these figures.

Company ($ in millions)	Net Income	Cash Provided (Used) by Operations	Cash Provided (Used) by Investing	Cash Provided (Used) by Financing	Likely Phase in Life Cycle
Amazon.com	$ 476	$1,405	$ (42)	$ (50)	Early maturity
LDK Solar	(144)	(81)	(329)	462	Introductory/ early growth
United States Steel	879	1,745	(4,675)	(1,891)	Maturity
Kellogg	1,103	1,503	(601)	(788)	Early decline
Southwest Airlines	645	2,845	(1,529)	493	Maturity
Starbucks	673	1,331	(1,202)	(172)	Maturity

? Why do companies have negative cash from operations during the introductory phase? (See page 680.)

PREPARING THE STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS

Companies prepare the statement of cash flows differently from the three other basic financial statements. First, it is not prepared from an adjusted trial balance. It requires detailed information concerning the changes in account balances that occurred between two points in time. An adjusted trial balance will not provide the necessary data. Second, the statement of cash flows deals with cash receipts and payments. As a result, the company **must adjust** the effects of the use of accrual accounting **to determine cash flows**.

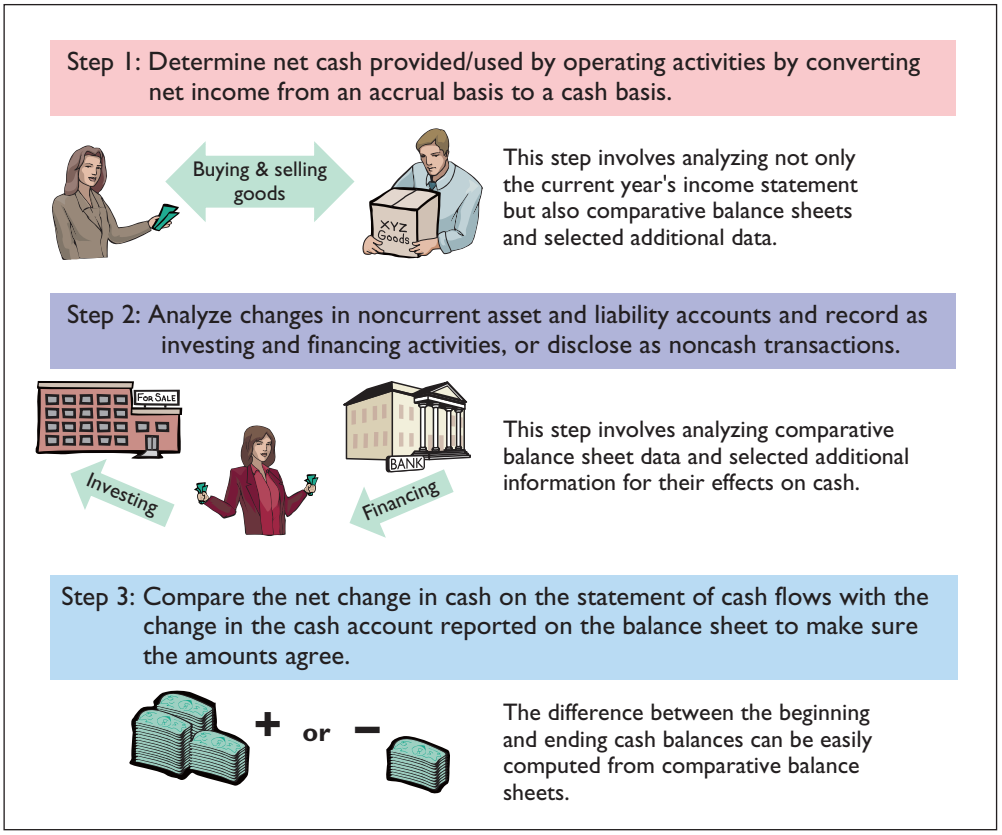
The information to prepare this statement usually comes from three sources:

- **Comparative balance sheets.** Information in the comparative balance sheets indicates the amount of the changes in assets, liabilities, and stockholders' equities from the beginning to the end of the period.

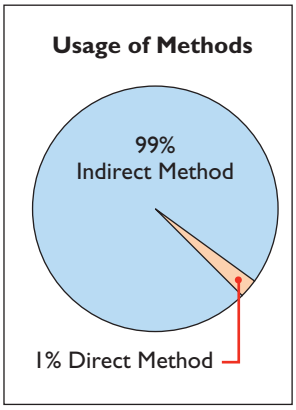
- **Current income statement.** Information in this statement helps determine the amount of cash provided or used by operations during the period.
- **Additional information.** Such information includes transaction data that are needed to determine how cash was provided or used during the period.

Preparing the statement of cash flows from these data sources involves three major steps, explained in Illustration 12-4 below.

Illustration 12-4 Three major steps in preparing the statement of cash flows



INDIRECT AND DIRECT METHODS



In order to perform step 1, a company **must convert net income from an accrual basis to a cash basis**. This conversion may be done by either of two methods: (1) the indirect method or (2) the direct method. **Both methods arrive at the same total amount** for "Net cash provided by operating activities." They differ in **how** they arrive at the amount.

The **indirect method** adjusts net income for items that do not affect cash to determine net cash provided by operating activities. A great majority of companies (99%) use this method, as shown in the nearby chart.[1] Companies favor the indirect method for two reasons: (1) It is easier and less costly to prepare, and (2) it focuses on the differences between net income and net cash flow from operating activities.

The **direct method** shows operating cash receipts and payments. It is prepared by adjusting each item in the income statement from the accrual basis to the cash basis. The FASB has expressed a preference for the direct method, but allows the use of either method.

The next section illustrates the more popular indirect method. Appendix 12A illustrates the direct method. Appendix 12B demonstrates an approach that employs T accounts to prepare the statement of cash flows. Many students find the

[1] *Accounting Trends and Techniques—2009* (New York: American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, 2009).

T-account approach provides a useful structure. We encourage you to give it a try as you walk through the Computer Services example.

Preparation of the Statement of Cash Flows—Indirect Method

study objective 4

Prepare a statement of cash flows using the indirect method.

To explain how to prepare a statement of cash flows using the indirect method, we use financial information from Computer Services Company. Illustration 12-5 presents Computer Services' current and previous-year balance sheets, its current-year income statement, and related financial information.

Illustration 12-5
Comparative balance sheets, income statement, and additional information for Computer Services Company

COMPUTER SERVICES COMPANY
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	**2012**	**2011**	**Change in Account Balance Increase/Decrease**
Current assets			
Cash	$ 55,000	$ 33,000	$ 22,000 Increase
Accounts receivable	20,000	30,000	10,000 Decrease
Inventory	15,000	10,000	5,000 Increase
Prepaid expenses	5,000	1,000	4,000 Increase
Property, plant, and equipment			
Land	130,000	20,000	110,000 Increase
Buildings	160,000	40,000	120,000 Increase
Accumulated depreciation—buildings	(11,000)	(5,000)	6,000 Increase
Equipment	27,000	10,000	17,000 Increase
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	(3,000)	(1,000)	2,000 Increase
Total assets	$398,000	$138,000	
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity			
Current liabilities			
Accounts payable	$ 28,000	$ 12,000	$ 16,000 Increase
Income taxes payable	6,000	8,000	2,000 Decrease
Long-term liabilities			
Bonds payable	130,000	20,000	110,000 Increase
Stockholders' equity			
Common stock	70,000	50,000	20,000 Increase
Retained earnings	164,000	48,000	116,000 Increase
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$398,000	$138,000	

COMPUTER SERVICES COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Revenues		$507,000
Cost of goods sold	$150,000	
Operating expenses (excluding depreciation)	111,000	
Depreciation expense	9,000	
Loss on sale of equipment	3,000	
Interest expense	42,000	315,000
Income before income tax		192,000
Income tax expense		47,000
Net income		$145,000

Illustration 12-5 (continued) Additional information for Computer Services Company

Additional information for 2012:

1. Depreciation expense was comprised of $6,000 for building and $3,000 for equipment.
2. The company sold equipment with a book value of $7,000 (cost $8,000, less accumulated depreciation $1,000) for $4,000 cash.
3. Issued $110,000 of long-term bonds in direct exchange for land.
4. A building costing $120,000 was purchased for cash. Equipment costing $25,000 was also purchased for cash.
5. Issued common stock for $20,000 cash.
6. The company declared and paid a $29,000 cash dividend.

We will now apply the three steps to the information provided for Computer Services Company.

STEP 1: OPERATING ACTIVITIES

DETERMINE NET CASH PROVIDED/USED BY OPERATING ACTIVITIES BY CONVERTING NET INCOME FROM AN ACCRUAL BASIS TO A CASH BASIS

To determine net cash provided by operating activities under the indirect method, companies **adjust net income in numerous ways**. A useful starting point is to understand **why** net income must be converted to net cash provided by operating activities.

Under generally accepted accounting principles, most companies use the accrual basis of accounting. As you have learned, this basis requires that companies record revenue when earned and record expenses when incurred. Earned revenues may include credit sales for which the company has not yet collected cash. Expenses incurred may include some items that it has not yet paid in cash. Thus, under the accrual basis of accounting, net income is not the same as net cash provided by operating activities.

Therefore, under the **indirect method**, companies must adjust net income to convert certain items to the cash basis. The indirect method (or reconciliation method) starts with net income and converts it to net cash provided by operating activities. Illustration 12-6 lists the three types of adjustments.

Illustration 12-6 Three types of adjustments to convert net income to net cash provided by operating activities

Net Income	+/−	Adjustments	=	Net Cash Provided/ Used by Operating Activities
		• **Add back noncash expenses**, such as depreciation expense, amortization, or depletion. • **Deduct gains and add losses** that resulted from investing and financing activities. • **Analyze changes** to noncash current asset and current liability accounts.		

Helpful Hint Depreciation is similar to any other expense in that it reduces net income. It differs in that it does not involve a current cash outflow; that is why it must be *added back* to net income to arrive at cash provided by operations.

We explain the three types of adjustments in the next three sections.

Depreciation Expense

Computer Services' income statement reports depreciation expense of $9,000. Although depreciation expense reduces net income, it does not reduce cash. In other words, depreciation expense is a noncash charge. The company must add it back to net income to arrive at net cash provided by operating activities.

Computer Services reports depreciation expense as follows in the statement of cash flows.

Illustration 12-7
Adjustment for depreciation

Cash flows from operating activities	
Net income	$145,000
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:	
Depreciation expense	**9,000**
Net cash provided by operating activities	$154,000

As the first adjustment to net income in the statement of cash flows, companies frequently list depreciation and similar noncash charges such as amortization of intangible assets, depletion expense, and bad debt expense.

Loss on Sale of Equipment

Illustration 12-1 states that the investing activities section should report cash received from the sale of plant assets. Because of this, **companies must eliminate from net income all gains and losses resulting from investing activities, to arrive at cash provided by operating activities**.

In our example, Computer Services' income statement reports a $3,000 loss on the sale of equipment (book value $7,000, less cash received from sale of equipment $4,000). The company's loss of $3,000 should be eliminated in the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows. Illustration 12-8 shows that the $3,000 loss is eliminated by adding $3,000 back to net income to arrive at net cash provided by operating activities.

Illustration 12-8
Adjustment for loss on sale of equipment

Cash flows from operating activities		
Net income		$145,000
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:		
Depreciation expense	$9,000	
Loss on sale of equipment	**3,000**	12,000
Net cash provided by operating activities		$157,000

If a gain on sale occurs, the company deducts the gain from its net income in order to determine net cash provided by operating activities. **In the case of either a gain or a loss, companies report the actual amount of cash received from the sale as a source of cash in the investing activities section of the statement of cash flows.**

Changes to Noncash Current Asset and Current Liability Accounts

A final adjustment in reconciling net income to net cash provided by operating activities involves examining all changes in current asset and current liability accounts. The accrual-accounting process records revenues in the period earned and expenses in the period incurred. For example, companies use Accounts Receivable to record amounts owed to the company for sales that have been made but for which cash collections have not yet been received. They use the Prepaid Insurance account to reflect insurance that has been paid for, but which has not yet expired, and therefore has not been expensed. Similarly, the Salaries and Wages Payable account reflects salaries expense that has been incurred by the company but has not been paid.

As a result, we need to adjust net income for these accruals and prepayments to determine net cash provided by operating activities. Thus, we must analyze the change in each current asset and current liability account to determine its impact on net income and cash.

CHANGES IN NONCASH CURRENT ASSETS. The adjustments required for changes in noncash current asset accounts are as follows: **Deduct from net income increases in current asset accounts, and add to net income decreases in current asset accounts, to arrive at net cash provided by operating activities.** We can observe these relationships by analyzing the accounts of Computer Services Company.

DECREASE IN ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE. Computer Services Company's accounts receivable decreased by $10,000 (from $30,000 to $20,000) during the period. For Computer Services, this means that cash receipts were $10,000 higher than revenues. The Accounts Receivable account in Illustration 12-9 shows that Computer Services Company had $507,000 in revenues (as reported on the income statement), but it collected $517,000 in cash.

Illustration 12-9 Analysis of accounts receivable

Accounts Receivable				
1/1/12	Balance	30,000	**Receipts from customers**	**517,000**
	Revenues	**507,000**		
12/31/12	Balance	20,000		

As shown in Illustration 12-10, to adjust net income to net cash provided by operating activities, the company adds to net income the decrease of $10,000 in accounts receivable.

Illustration 12-10 Adjustments for changes in current asset accounts

Cash flows from operating activities		
Net income		$145,000
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:		
Depreciation expense	$ 9,000	
Loss on sale of equipment	3,000	
Decrease in accounts receivable	**10,000**	
Increase in inventory	**(5,000)**	
Increase in prepaid expenses	**(4,000)**	13,000
Net cash provided by operating activities		$158,000

When the Accounts Receivable balance increases, cash receipts are lower than revenue earned under the accrual basis. Therefore, the company deducts from net income the amount of the increase in accounts receivable, to arrive at net cash provided by operating activities.

INCREASE IN INVENTORY. Computer Services Company's Inventory balance increased $5,000 (from $10,000 to $15,000) during the period. The change in the Inventory account reflects the difference between the amount of inventory purchased and the amount sold. For Computer Services, this means that the cost of merchandise purchased exceeded the cost of goods sold by $5,000. As a result, cost of goods sold does not reflect $5,000 of cash payments made for merchandise. The company deducts from net income this inventory increase of $5,000 during the period, to arrive at net cash provided by operating activities (see Illustration 12-10). If inventory decreases, the company adds to net income the amount of the change, to arrive at net cash provided by operating activities.

INCREASE IN PREPAID EXPENSES. Computer Services' prepaid expenses increased during the period by $4,000. This means that cash paid for expenses

is higher than expenses reported on an accrual basis. In other words, the company has made cash payments in the current period but will not charge expenses to income until future periods (as charges to the income statement). To adjust net income to net cash provided by operating activities, the company deducts from net income the $4,000 increase in prepaid expenses (see Illustration 12-10).

If prepaid expenses decrease, reported expenses are higher than the expenses paid. Therefore, the company adds to net income the decrease in prepaid expense, to arrive at net cash provided by operating activities.

CHANGES IN CURRENT LIABILITIES. The adjustments required for changes in current liability accounts are as follows: **Add to net income increases in current liability accounts, and deduct from net income decreases in current liability accounts, to arrive at net cash provided by operating activities.**

INCREASE IN ACCOUNTS PAYABLE. For Computer Services Company, Accounts Payable increased by $16,000 (from $12,000 to $28,000) during the period. That means the company received $16,000 more in goods than it actually paid for. As shown in Illustration 12-11 (below), to adjust net income to determine net cash provided by operating activities, the company adds to net income the $16,000 increase in Accounts Payable.

DECREASE IN INCOME TAXES PAYABLE. When a company incurs income tax expense but has not yet paid its taxes, it records income taxes payable. A change in the Income Taxes Payable account reflects the difference between income tax expense incurred and income tax actually paid. Computer Services' Income Taxes Payable account decreased by $2,000. That means the $47,000 of income tax expense reported on the income statement was $2,000 less than the amount of taxes paid during the period of $49,000. As shown in Illustration 12-11, to adjust net income to a cash basis, the company must reduce net income by $2,000.

Illustration 12-11
Adjustments for changes in current liability accounts

Cash flows from operating activities		
Net income		$145,000
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:		
Depreciation expense	$ 9,000	
Loss on sale of equipment	3,000	
Decrease in accounts receivable	10,000	
Increase in inventory	(5,000)	
Increase in prepaid expenses	(4,000)	
Increase in accounts payable	**16,000**	
Decrease in income taxes payable	**(2,000)**	27,000
Net cash provided by operating activities		$172,000

Illustration 12-11 shows that, after starting with net income of $145,000, the sum of all of the adjustments to net income was $27,000. This resulted in net cash provided by operating activities of $172,000.

SUMMARY OF CONVERSION TO NET CASH PROVIDED BY OPERATING ACTIVITIES–INDIRECT METHOD

As shown in the previous illustrations, the statement of cash flows prepared by the indirect method starts with net income. It then adds or deducts items

to arrive at net cash provided by operating activities. The required adjustments are of three types:

1. Noncash charges such as depreciation, amortization, and depletion.
2. Gains and losses from investing and financing transactions, such as the sale of plant assets.
3. Changes in noncash current asset and current liability accounts.

Illustration 12-12 provides a summary of these changes.

Illustration 12-12
Adjustments required to convert net income to net cash provided by operating activities

		Adjustment Required to Convert Net Income to Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities
Noncash charges	Depreciation expense	Add
	Patent amortization expense	Add
Gains and losses	Loss on sale of plant asset	Add
	Gain on sale of plant asset	Deduct
Changes in current assets and current liabilities	Increase in current asset account	Deduct
	Decrease in current asset account	Add
	Increase in current liability account	Add
	Decrease in current liability account	Deduct

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

For more than a decade, the top executives at the Italian dairy products company Parmalat engaged in multiple frauds which overstated cash and other assets by more than $1 billion while understating liabilities by between $8 and $12 billion. Much of the fraud involved creating fictitious sources and uses of cash. Some of these activities incorporated sophisticated financial transactions with subsidiaries created with the help of large international financial institutions. However, much of the fraud employed very basic, even sloppy, forgery of documents. For example, when outside auditors requested confirmation of bank accounts (such as a fake $4.8 billion account in the Cayman Islands), documents were created on scanners, with signatures that were cut and pasted from other documents. These were then passed through a fax machine numerous times to make them look real (if difficult to read). Similarly, fictitious bills were created in order to divert funds to other businesses owned by the Tanzi family (who controlled Parmalat).

Total take: Billions of dollars

THE MISSING CONTROL

Independent internal verification. Internal auditors at the company should have independently verified bank accounts and major transfers of cash to outside companies that were controlled by the Tanzi family.

before you go on...

NET CASH PROVIDED BY OPERATING ACTIVITIES

Do it! Josh's PhotoPlus reported net income of $73,000 for 2012. Included in the income statement were depreciation expense of $7,000 and a gain on sale of equipment of $2,500. Josh's comparative balance sheets show the following balances.

	12/31/12	12/31/11
Accounts Receivable	$21,000	$17,000
Accounts Payable	2,200	6,000

Calculate net cash provided by operating activities for Josh's PhotoPlus.

Solution

Cash flows from operating activities		
Net income		$73,000
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:		
Depreciation expense	$ 7,000	
Gain on sale of equipment	(2,500)	
Increase in accounts receivable	(4,000)	
Decrease in accounts payable	(3,800)	(3,300)
Net cash provided by operating activities		$69,700

Related exercise material: **BE12-5, BE12-6, BE12-7, Do it! 12-2, E12-4,** and **E12-5.**

Action Plan

- Add noncash charges such as depreciation back to net income to compute net cash provided by operating activities.
- Deduct gains and add back losses from the sale of plant assets to compute net cash provided by operating activities.
- Use changes in noncash current asset and current liability accounts to compute net cash provided by operating activities.

the navigator

STEP 2: INVESTING AND FINANCING ACTIVITIES

ANALYZE CHANGES IN NONCURRENT ASSET AND LIABILITY ACCOUNTS AND RECORD AS INVESTING AND FINANCING ACTIVITIES, OR DISCLOSE AS NONCASH TRANSACTIONS

INCREASE IN LAND. As indicated from the change in the Land account and the additional information, the company purchased land of $110,000 by directly exchanging bonds for land. The exchange of bonds payable for land has no effect on cash. But it is a significant noncash investing and financing activity that merits disclosure in a separate schedule. (See Illustration 12–14 on page 638.)

Helpful Hint The investing and financing activities are measured and reported the same under both the direct and indirect methods.

INCREASE IN BUILDINGS. As the additional data indicate, Computer Services Company acquired an office building for $120,000 cash. This is a cash outflow reported in the investing section. (See Illustration 12–14 on page 638.)

INCREASE IN EQUIPMENT. The Equipment account increased $17,000. The additional information explains that this was a net increase that resulted from two transactions: (1) a purchase of equipment of $25,000, and (2) the sale for $4,000 of equipment costing $8,000. These transactions are both investing activities. The company should report each transaction separately. Thus, it reports the purchase of equipment as an outflow of cash for $25,000. It reports the sale as an inflow of cash for $4,000. The T account below shows the reasons for the change in this account during the year.

Ethics Note Because investors and management bonus contracts often focus on cash flow from operations, some managers have taken unethical actions to artificially increase cash flow from operations. For example, Dynegy restated its statement of cash flows because it had improperly included in operating activities $300 million that should have been reported as financing activities. This increased cash from operating activities by 37%.

Illustration 12-13
Analysis of equipment

Equipment				
1/1/12	Balance	10,000	Cost of equipment sold	8,000
	Purchase of equipment	**25,000**		
12/31/12	Balance	27,000		

The following entry shows the details of the equipment sale transaction.

Cash	4,000	
Accumulated Depreciation	1,000	
Loss on Disposal of Plant Assets	3,000	
Equipment		8,000

A	=	L	+	SE
+4,000				
+1,000				
				−3,000 Exp
−8,000				

Cash Flows
+4,000

INCREASE IN BONDS PAYABLE. The Bonds Payable account increased $110,000. As indicated in the additional information, the company acquired land by directly exchanging bonds for land. It reports this noncash transaction in a separate schedule at the bottom of the statement.

Helpful Hint When companies issue stocks or bonds for cash, the actual proceeds will appear in the statement of cash flows as a financing inflow (rather than the par value of the stocks or face value of bonds).

INCREASE IN COMMON STOCK. The balance sheet reports an increase in Common Stock of $20,000. The additional information section notes that this increase resulted from the issuance of new shares of stock. This is a cash inflow reported in the financing section.

INCREASE IN RETAINED EARNINGS. Retained earnings increased $116,000 during the year. This increase can be explained by two factors: (1) Net income of $145,000 increased retained earnings and (2) dividends of $29,000 decreased retained earnings. The company adjusts net income to net cash provided by operating activities in the operating activities section. Payment of the dividends (not the declaration) is a **cash outflow that the company reports as a financing activity**.

Statement of Cash Flows–2012

Using the previous information, we can now prepare a statement of cash flows for 2012 for Computer Services Company, as shown in Illustration 12-14.

Illustration 12-14
Statement of cash flows, 2012–indirect method

COMPUTER SERVICES COMPANY
Statement of Cash Flows–Indirect Method
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Cash flows from operating activities		
Net income		$ 145,000
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:		
Depreciation expense	$ 9,000	
Loss on sale of equipment	3,000	
Decrease in accounts receivable	10,000	
Increase in inventory	(5,000)	
Increase in prepaid expenses	(4,000)	
Increase in accounts payable	16,000	
Decrease in income taxes payable	(2,000)	27,000
Net cash provided by operating activities		172,000
Cash flows from investing activities		
Sale of equipment	4,000	
Purchase of building	(120,000)	
Purchase of equipment	(25,000)	
Net cash used by investing activities		(141,000)
Cash flows from financing activities		
Issuance of common stock	20,000	
Payment of cash dividends	(29,000)	
Net cash used by financing activities		(9,000)
Net increase in cash		22,000
Cash at beginning of period		33,000
Cash at end of period		$ 55,000
Noncash investing and financing activities		
Issuance of bonds payable to purchase land		$ 110,000

Helpful Hint Note that in the investing and financing activities sections, positive numbers indicate cash inflows (receipts), and negative numbers indicate cash outflows (payments).

STEP 3: NET CHANGE IN CASH

COMPARE THE NET CHANGE IN CASH ON THE STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS WITH THE CHANGE IN THE CASH ACCOUNT REPORTED ON THE BALANCE SHEET TO MAKE SURE THE AMOUNTS AGREE

Illustration 12-14 indicates that the net change in cash during the period was an increase of $22,000. This agrees with the change in Cash account reported on the balance sheet in Illustration 12-5 (page 631).

Using Cash Flows to Evaluate a Company

study objective 5

Use the statement of cash flows to evaluate a company.

Traditionally, investors and creditors have most commonly used ratios based on accrual accounting. These days, cash-based ratios are gaining increased acceptance among analysts. In this section, we review free cash flow and introduce two new measures.

FREE CASH FLOW

In the statement of cash flows, cash provided by operating activities is intended to indicate the cash-generating capability of the company. Analysts have noted, however, that **cash provided by operating activities fails to take into account that a company must invest in new fixed assets** just to maintain its current level of operations. Companies also must at least **maintain dividends at current levels** to satisfy investors. As we discussed in Chapter 2, the measurement of free cash flow provides additional insight regarding a company's cash-generating ability. **Free cash flow** describes the cash remaining from operations after adjustment for capital expenditures and dividends.

Consider the following example: Suppose that MPC produced and sold 10,000 personal computers this year. It reported $100,000 cash provided by operating activities. In order to maintain production at 10,000 computers, MPC invested $15,000 in equipment. It chose to pay $5,000 in dividends. Its free cash flow was $80,000 ($100,000 − $15,000 − $5,000). The company could use this $80,000 either to purchase new assets, pay off debt, or pay an $80,000 dividend. In practice, free cash flow is often calculated with the formula in Illustration 12-15. Alternative definitions also exist.

Free Cash Flow	=	Cash Provided by Operations	−	Capital Expenditures	−	Cash Dividends

Illustration 12-15 Free cash flow

Illustration 12-16 provides basic information excerpted from the 2009 statement of cash flows of Microsoft Corporation.

MICROSOFT CORPORATION
Statement of Cash Flows Information (partial)
2009

Cash provided by operations		$19,037
Cash flows from investing activities		
Additions to property and equipment	$ (3,119)	
Purchases of investments	(36,850)	
Sales of investments	19,806	
Acquisitions of companies	(868)	
Maturities of investments	6,191	
Securities lending payable	(930)	
Cash used by investing activities		(15,770)
Cash paid for dividends		(4,468)

Illustration 12-16 Microsoft cash flow information ($ in millions)

Microsoft's free cash flow is calculated as shown in Illustration 12-17.

Illustration 12-17
Calculation of Microsoft's free cash flow ($ in millions)

Cash provided by operating activities	$19,037
Less: Expenditures on property, plant, and equipment	3,119
Dividends paid	4,468
Free cash flow	$11,450

Microsoft generated approximately $11.4 billion of free cash flow. This is a tremendous amount of cash generated in a single year. It is available for the acquisition of new assets, the retirement of stock or debt, or the payment of dividends.

Also note that Microsoft's cash from operations of $19 billion exceeds its 2009 net income of $14.6 billion. This lends additional credibility to Microsoft's income number as an indicator of potential future performance. If anything, Microsoft's net income might understate its actual performance.

Oracle Corporation is one of the world's largest sellers of database software and information management services. Like Microsoft, its success depends on continuing to improve its existing products while developing new products to keep pace with rapid changes in technology. Oracle's free cash flow for 2009 was $7.5 billion. This is impressive but significantly less than Microsoft's amazing ability to generate cash.

before you go on...

FREE CASH FLOW

Do it! Chicago Corporation issued the following statement of cash flows for 2012.

CHICAGO CORPORATION
Statement of Cash Flows–Indirect Method
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Cash flows from operating activities		
Net income		$19,000
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:		
Depreciation expense	$ 8,100	
Loss on sale of equipment	1,300	
Decrease in accounts receivable	6,900	
Increase in inventory	(4,000)	
Decrease in accounts payable	(2,000)	10,300
Net cash provided by operating activities		29,300
Cash flows from investing activities		
Sale of investments	1,100	
Purchase of equipment	(19,000)	
Net cash used by investing activities		(17,900)
Cash flows from financing activities		
Issuance of stock	10,000	
Payment on long-term note payable	(5,000)	
Payment for dividends	(9,000)	
Net cash used by financing activities		(4,000)
Net increase in cash		7,400
Cash at beginning of year		10,000
Cash at end of year		$17,400

(a) Compute free cash flow for Chicago Corporation. (b) Explain why free cash flow often provides better information than "Net cash provided by operating activities."

Solution

(a) Free cash flow = $29,300 − $19,000 − $9,000 = $1,300
(b) Cash provided by operating activities fails to take into account that a company must invest in new plant assets just to maintain the current level of operation. Companies must also maintain dividends at current levels to satisfy investors. The measurement of free cash flow provides additional insight regarding a company's cash-generating ability.

Related exercise material: **BE12-9, BE12-10, BE12-11, BE12-12, Do it! 12-3, E12-9,** and **E12-10.**

Action Plan

- Compute free cash flow as: Cash provided by operating activities − Capital expenditures − Cash dividends.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How much cash did the company generate to either expand operations or pay dividends?	Cash provided by operating activities, cash spent on fixed assets, and cash dividends	Free cash flow = Cash provided by operations − Capital expenditures − Cash dividends	Significant free cash flow indicates greater potential to finance new investment and pay additional dividends.

KEEPING AN EYE ON CASH

Cash flow is closely monitored by analysts and investors for many reasons and in a variety of ways. One measure that is gaining increased attention is "price to cash flow." This is a variant of the price to earnings (P-E) ratio, which has been a staple of analysts for a long time. The difference is that rather than divide the company's stock price by its earnings per share (an accrual-accounting–based number), the price to cash flow ratio divides the company's stock price by its cash flow per share. A high measure suggests that the stock price is high relative to the company's ability to generate cash. A low measure indicates that the company's stock might be a bargain.

The average price to cash flow ratio for companies in the Standard and Poor's 500-stock index was recently 13.6, when the average price-earnings ratio was 21.9. The following table provides values for some well-known companies. While you should not use this measure as the sole factor in choosing a stock, it can serve as a useful screen by which to identify companies that merit further investigation.

Company	Price/Cash Flow	Price/EPS
Microsoft	11.9	14.0
Kellogg	12.1	15.8
Nike	16.5	20.0
Wal-Mart	8.5	13.4
Ford	2.8	7.1
AirTran	4.4	7.7

ASSESSING LIQUIDITY AND SOLVENCY USING CASH FLOWS

Previous chapters have presented ratios used to analyze a company's liquidity and solvency. Many of those ratios used accrual-based numbers from the income statement and balance sheet. In this section, we focus on ratios that are

cash-based rather than accrual-based. That is, instead of using numbers from the income statement, these ratios use numbers from the statement of cash flows.

As discussed earlier, many analysts are critical of accrual-based numbers because they feel that the adjustment process allows too much management discretion. These analysts like to supplement accrual-based analysis with measures that use the cash flow statement. One disadvantage of these cash-based measures is that, unlike the more commonly employed accrual-based measures, there are no readily available industry averages for comparison. In the following discussion, we use cash flow-based ratios to analyze Microsoft. In addition to the cash flow information provided in Illustration 12-16 (page 639), we need the following information related to Microsoft.

($ in millions)	2009	2008
Current liabilities	$27,034	$29,886
Total liabilities	38,330	36,507

Liquidity

Liquidity is the ability to pay obligations expected to become due within the next year. In Chapter 2, you learned that one measure of liquidity is the *current ratio*: current assets divided by current liabilities. A disadvantage of the current ratio is that it uses year-end balances of current asset and current liability accounts. These year-end balances may not be representative of the company's position during most of the year.

A ratio that partially corrects this problem is the **current cash debt coverage ratio**. It is computed as cash provided by operating activities divided by average current liabilities. Because cash provided by operating activities involves the entire year rather than a balance at one point in time, this ratio is often considered a better representation of liquidity on the average day. In general, a value below .40 times is cause for additional investigation of a company's liquidity. Illustration 12-18 shows the current cash debt coverage ratio for Microsoft, with comparative numbers for Oracle. For comparative purposes, we have also provided each company's current ratio.

Illustration 12-18
Current cash debt coverage ratio

$$\text{Current Cash Debt Coverage Ratio} = \frac{\text{Cash Provided by Operations}}{\text{Average Current Liabilities}}$$

	Current cash debt coverage ratio	Current ratio
Microsoft ($ in millions)	$\frac{\$19{,}037}{(\$27{,}034 + \$29{,}886)/2}$ = .67 times	1.82:1
Oracle	.86 times	2.03:1

Microsoft's net cash provided by operating activities is .67 times its average current liabilities. Oracle's ratio of .86 times is even stronger than that of Microsoft. Both companies far exceed the threshold of .40 times. Keep in mind that Microsoft's cash position is extraordinary. For example, many large companies now have current ratios in the range of 1.0. By this standard, Oracle's current ratio of 2.03:1 and Microsoft's current ratio of 1.82:1 are both strong.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the company generating sufficient cash provided by operating activities to meet its current obligations?	Cash provided by operating activities and average current liabilities	Current cash debt coverage ratio $= \frac{\text{Cash provided by operations}}{\text{Average current liabilities}}$	A high value suggests good liquidity. Since the numerator contains a "flow" measure, it provides a good supplement to the current ratio.

Solvency

Solvency is the ability of a company to survive over the long term. A measure of solvency that uses cash figures is the **cash debt coverage ratio**. It is computed as the ratio of cash provided by operating activities to total debt as represented by average total liabilities. This ratio indicates a company's ability to repay its liabilities from cash generated from operations—that is, without having to liquidate productive assets such as property, plant, and equipment. A general rule of thumb is that a cash debt coverage ratio below .20 times is cause for additional investigation.

Illustration 12-19 shows the cash debt coverage ratios for Microsoft and Oracle for 2009. For comparative purposes, we have also provided the debt to total assets ratios for each company.

Illustration 12-19 Cash debt coverage ratio

$$\text{Cash Debt Coverage Ratio} = \frac{\text{Cash Provided by Operations}}{\text{Average Total Liabilities}}$$

	Cash debt coverage ratio	Debt to total assets ratio
Microsoft ($ in millions)	$\frac{\$19{,}037}{(\$38{,}330 + \$36{,}507)/2} = .51$ times	50%
Oracle	.30 times	47%

Because Microsoft has long-term obligations, its cash debt coverage ratio is lower than its current cash debt coverage ratio. Obviously, Microsoft is very solvent. Oracle's cash debt coverage ratio of .30 times is not as strong as Microsoft's but still exceeds the .20 threshold. Neither the cash nor accrual measures suggest any cause for concern regarding the solvency of either company.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the company generating sufficient cash provided by operating activities to meet its long-term obligations?	Cash provided by operating activities and average total liabilities	Cash debt coverage ratio $= \frac{\text{Cash provided by operations}}{\text{Average total liabilities}}$	A high value suggests the company is solvent; that is, it will meet its obligations in the long term.

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

Intel Corporation is the leading producer of computer chips for personal computers. Its primary competitor is AMD. The two are vicious competitors, with frequent lawsuits filed between them. Financial statement data for Intel are provided below.

Instructions

Calculate the following cash-based measures for Intel and compare them with the comparative data for AMD provided on page 645.

1. Free cash flow.
2. Current cash debt coverage ratio.
3. Cash debt coverage ratio.

INTEL CORPORATION
Balance Sheets
December 31, 2009 and 2008
(in millions)

Assets	**2009**	**2008**
Current assets	$21,157	$19,871
Noncurrent assets	31,938	30,601
Total assets	$53,095	$50,472
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Current liabilities	$ 7,591	$ 7,818
Long-term liabilities	3,800	3,108
Total liabilities	11,391	10,926
Stockholders' equity	41,704	39,546
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$53,095	$50,472

INTEL CORPORATION
Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31, 2009 and 2008
(in millions)

	2009	**2008**
Net revenues	$35,127	$37,586
Expenses	30,758	32,294
Net income	$ 4,369	$ 5,292

INTEL CORPORATION
Statements of Cash Flows
For the Years Ended December 31, 2009 and 2008
(in millions)

	2009	2008
Net cash provided by operating activities	$11,170	$10,926
Net cash used for investing activities	(7,965)	(5,865)
Net cash used for financing activities	(2,568)	(9,018)
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	$ 637	$ (3,957)

Note. Cash spent on property, plant, and equipment in 2009 was $4,515. Cash paid for dividends was $3,108.

Comparative data for AMD:

1. Free cash flow — $7 million
2. Current cash debt coverage ratio — .21 times
3. Cash debt coverage ratio — .06 times

Solution

1. Intel's free cash flow is $3,547 million ($11,170 − $4,515 − $3,108). AMD's is only $7 million. This gives Intel a huge advantage in the ability to move quickly to invest in new projects.
2. The current cash debt coverage ratio for Intel is calculated as follows.

$$\frac{\$11{,}170}{(\$7{,}591 + \$7{,}818)/2} = 1.45 \text{ times}$$

   Compared to AMD's value of .21 times, Intel is significantly more liquid.
3. The cash debt coverage ratio for Intel is calculated as follows.

$$\frac{\$11{,}170}{(\$11{,}391 + \$10{,}926)/2} = 1.00 \text{ times}$$

   Compared to AMD's value of .06 times, Intel appears to be significantly more solvent.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Indicate the usefulness of the statement of cash flows. The statement of cash flows provides information about the cash receipts, cash payments, and net change in cash resulting from the operating, investing, and financing activities of a company during the period.

2 Distinguish among operating, investing, and financing activities. Operating activities include the cash effects of transactions that enter into the determination of net income. Investing activities involve cash flows resulting from changes in investments and long-term asset items. Financing activities involve cash flows resulting from changes in long-term liability and stockholders' equity items.

3 Explain the impact of the product life cycle on a company's cash flows. During the introductory stage, cash provided by operating activities and cash from investing are negative, and cash from financing is positive.

During the growth stage, cash provided by operating activities becomes positive but is still not sufficient to meet investing needs. During the maturity stage, cash provided by operating activities exceeds investing needs, so the company begins to retire debt. During the decline stage, cash provided by operating activities is reduced, cash from investing becomes positive (from selling off assets), and cash from financing becomes more negative.

4 Prepare a statement of cash flows using the indirect method. The preparation of a statement of cash flows involves three major steps: (1) Determine net cash provided/used by operating activities by converting net income from an accrual basis to a cash basis. (2) Analyze changes in noncurrent asset and liability accounts and record as investing and financing activities, or disclose as noncash transactions. (3) Compare the net change in cash on the statement of cash flows with the change in the cash account reported on the balance sheet to make sure the amounts agree.

5 Use the statement of cash flows to evaluate a company. A number of measures can be derived by using information from the statement of cash flows as well as the other required financial statements. Free cash flow indicates the amount of cash a company generated during the current year that is available for the payment of dividends or for expansion. Liquidity can be measured with the current cash debt coverage-ratio (cash provided by operating activities divided by average current liabilities). Solvency can be measured by the cash debt coverage ratio (cash provided by operating activities divided by average total liabilities).

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How much cash did the company generate to either expand operations or pay dividends?	Cash provided by operating activities, cash spent on fixed assets, and cash dividends	Free cash flow = Cash provided by operations − Capital expenditures − Cash dividends	Significant free cash flow indicates greater potential to finance new investment and pay additional dividends.
Is the company generating sufficient cash provided by operating activities to meet its current obligations?	Cash provided by operating activities and average current liabilities	Current cash debt coverage ratio = Cash provided by operations / Average current liabilities	A high value suggests good liquidity. Since the numerator contains a "flow" measure, it provides a good supplement to the current ratio.
Is the company generating sufficient cash provided by operating activities to meet its long-term obligations?	Cash provided by operating activities and average total liabilities	Cash debt coverage ratio = Cash provided by operations / Average total liabilities	A high value suggests the company is solvent; that is, it will meet its obligations in the long term.

appendix 12A

Statement of Cash Flows—Direct Method

study objective 6

Prepare a statement of cash flows using the direct method.

To explain and illustrate the direct method, we will use the transactions of Computer Services Company for 2012, to prepare a statement of cash flows. Illustration 12A-1 presents information related to 2012 for Computer Services Company.

Illustration 12A-1
Comparative balance sheets, income statement, and additional information for Computer Services Company

COMPUTER SERVICES COMPANY
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	2012	2011	Change in Account Balance Increase/Decrease
Current assets			
Cash	$ 55,000	$ 33,000	$ 22,000 Increase
Accounts receivable	20,000	30,000	10,000 Decrease
Inventory	15,000	10,000	5,000 Increase
Prepaid expenses	5,000	1,000	4,000 Increase
Property, plant, and equipment			
Land	130,000	20,000	110,000 Increase
Buildings	160,000	40,000	120,000 Increase
Accumulated depreciation—buildings	(11,000)	(5,000)	6,000 Increase
Equipment	27,000	10,000	17,000 Increase
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	(3,000)	(1,000)	2,000 Increase
Total assets	$398,000	$138,000	
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity			
Current liabilities			
Accounts payable	$ 28,000	$ 12,000	$ 16,000 Increase
Income taxes payable	6,000	8,000	2,000 Decrease
Long-term liabilities			
Bonds payable	130,000	20,000	110,000 Increase
Stockholders' equity			
Common stock	70,000	50,000	20,000 Increase
Retained earnings	164,000	48,000	116,000 Increase
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$398,000	$138,000	

COMPUTER SERVICES COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Revenues		$507,000
Cost of goods sold	$150,000	
Operating expenses (excluding depreciation)	111,000	
Depreciation expense	9,000	
Loss on sale of equipment	3,000	
Interest expense	42,000	315,000
Income before income tax		192,000
Income tax expense		47,000
Net income		$145,000

Additional information for 2012:

1. Depreciation expense was comprised of $6,000 for building and $3,000 for equipment.
2. The company sold equipment with a book value of $7,000 (cost $8,000, less accumulated depreciation $1,000) for $4,000 cash.
3. Issued $110,000 of long-term bonds in direct exchange for land.
4. A building costing $120,000 was purchased for cash. Equipment costing $25,000 was also purchased for cash.
5. Issued common stock for $20,000 cash.
6. The company declared and paid a $29,000 cash dividend.

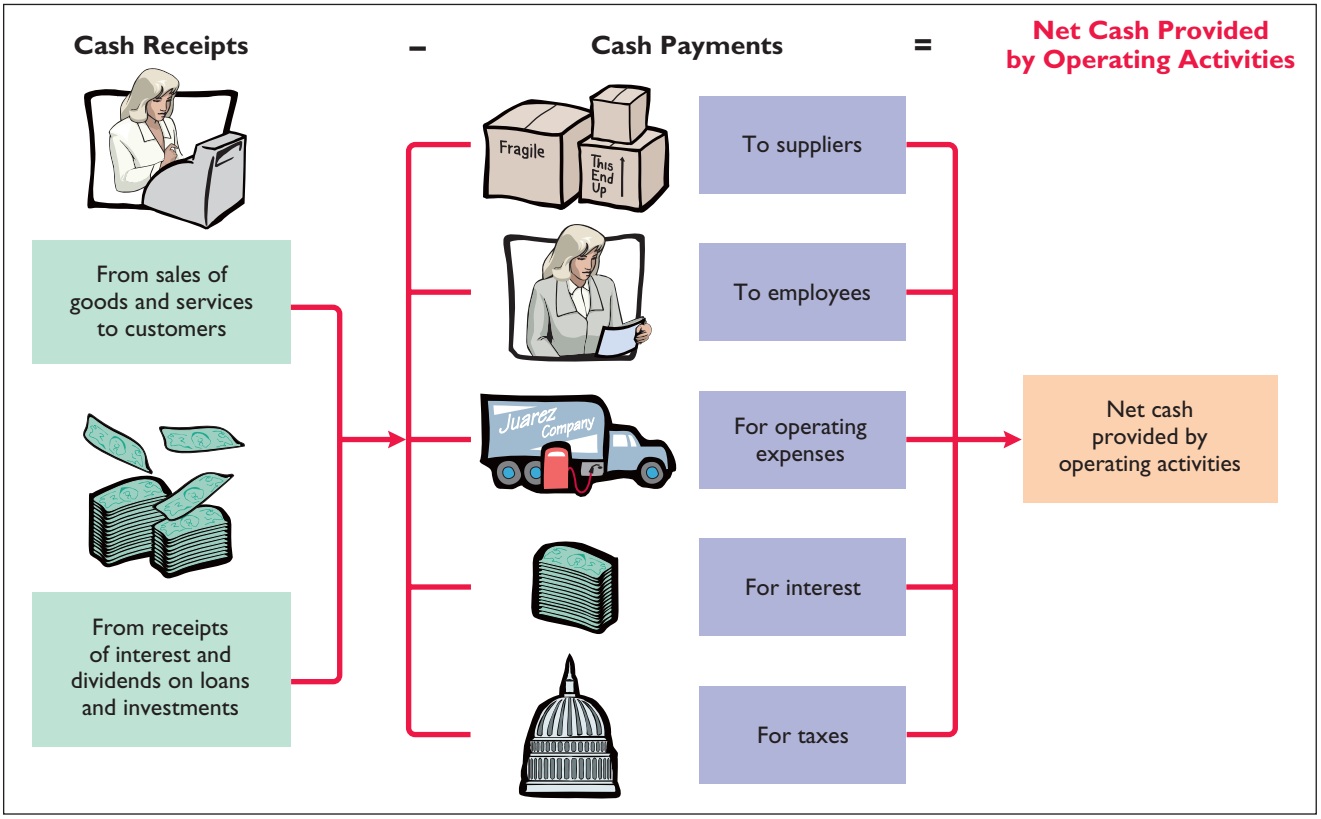
To prepare a statement of cash flows under the direct approach, we will apply the three steps outlined in Illustration 12-4 (page 630).

STEP 1: OPERATING ACTIVITIES

DETERMINE NET CASH PROVIDED/USED BY OPERATING ACTIVITIES BY CONVERTING NET INCOME FROM AN ACCRUAL BASIS TO A CASH BASIS

Under the **direct method**, companies compute net cash provided by operating activities by **adjusting each item in the income statement** from the accrual basis to the cash basis. To simplify and condense the operating activities section, companies **report only major classes of operating cash receipts and cash payments**. For these major classes, the difference between cash receipts and cash payments is the net cash provided by operating activities. These relationships are as shown in Illustration 12A-2.

Illustration 12A-2 Major classes of cash receipts and payments



An efficient way to apply the direct method is to analyze the items reported in the income statement in the order in which they are listed. We then determine cash receipts and cash payments related to these revenues and expenses. The following pages present the adjustments required to prepare a statement of cash flows for Computer Services Company using the direct approach.

CASH RECEIPTS FROM CUSTOMERS. The income statement for Computer Services Company reported revenues from customers of $507,000. How much of that was cash receipts? To answer that, companies need to consider the change in accounts receivable during the year. When accounts receivable increase during the year, revenues on an accrual basis are higher than cash receipts from customers. Operations led to revenues, but not all of these revenues resulted in cash receipts.

To determine the amount of cash receipts, the company deducts from sales revenues the increase in accounts receivable. On the other hand, there may be a decrease in accounts receivable. That would occur if cash receipts from customers exceeded sales revenues. In that case, the company adds to sales revenues the decrease in accounts receivable. For Computer Services Company, accounts receivable decreased $10,000. Thus, cash receipts from customers were $517,000, computed as shown in Illustration 12A-3.

Revenues from sales	$ 507,000
Add: Decrease in accounts receivable	10,000
Cash receipts from customers	**$517,000**

Illustration 12A-3 Computation of cash receipts from customers

Computer Services can also determine cash receipts from customers from an analysis of the Accounts Receivable account, as shown in Illustration 12A-4.

Accounts Receivable

1/1/12	Balance	30,000	**Receipts from customers**	**517,000**
	Revenues from sales	507,000		
12/31/12	Balance	20,000		

Illustration 12A-4 Analysis of accounts receivable

Helpful Hint The T account shows that revenue plus decrease in receivables equals cash receipts.

Illustration 12A-5 shows the relationships among cash receipts from customers, revenues from sales, and changes in accounts receivable.

Cash Receipts from Customers = Revenues from Sales { + Decrease in Accounts Receivable or − Increase in Accounts Receivable

Illustration 12A-5 Formula to compute cash receipts from customers—direct method

CASH PAYMENTS TO SUPPLIERS. Computer Services Company reported cost of goods sold of $150,000 on its income statement. How much of that was cash payments to suppliers? To answer that, it is first necessary to find purchases for the year. To find purchases, companies adjust cost of goods sold for the change in inventory. When inventory increases during the year, purchases for the year have exceeded cost of goods sold. As a result, to determine the amount of purchases, the company adds to cost of goods sold the increase in inventory.

In 2012, Computer Services Company's inventory increased $5,000. It computes purchases as follows.

Cost of goods sold	$ 150,000
Add: Increase in inventory	5,000
Purchases	**$155,000**

Illustration 12A-6 Computation of purchases

After computing purchases, a company can determine cash payments to suppliers. This is done by adjusting purchases for the change in accounts payable. When accounts payable increase during the year, purchases on an accrual basis are higher than they are on a cash basis. As a result, to determine cash payments to suppliers, a company deducts from purchases the increase in accounts payable. On the other hand, if cash payments to suppliers exceed purchases, there may be a decrease in accounts payable. In that case, a company adds to

purchases the decrease in accounts payable. For Computer Services Company, cash payments to suppliers were $139,000, computed as follows.

Illustration 12A-7
Computation of cash payments to suppliers

Purchases	$ 155,000
Deduct: Increase in accounts payable	16,000
Cash payments to suppliers	**$139,000**

Computer Services also can determine cash payments to suppliers from an analysis of the Accounts Payable account, as shown in Illustration 12A-8.

Illustration 12A-8
Analysis of accounts payable

Accounts Payable

Payments to suppliers	**139,000**	1/1/12	Balance	12,000
			Purchases	155,000
		12/31/12	Balance	28,000

Helpful Hint The T account shows that purchases less increase in accounts payable equals payments to suppliers.

Illustration 12A-9 shows the relationships among cash payments to suppliers, cost of goods sold, changes in inventory, and changes in accounts payable.

Illustration 12A-9
Formula to compute cash payments to suppliers—direct method

Cash Payments to Suppliers = Cost of Goods Sold { + Increase in Inventory or − Decrease in Inventory } { + Decrease in Accounts Payable or − Increase in Accounts Payable }

CASH PAYMENTS FOR OPERATING EXPENSES. Computer Services reported on its income statement operating expenses of $111,000. How much of that amount was cash paid for operating expenses? To answer that, we need to adjust this amount for any changes in prepaid expenses and accrued expenses payable. For example, if prepaid expenses increased during the year, cash paid for operating expenses is higher than operating expenses reported on the income statement. To convert operating expenses to cash payments for operating expenses, a company adds the increase in prepaid expenses to operating expenses. On the other hand, if prepaid expenses decrease during the year, it deducts the decrease from operating expenses.

Companies must also adjust operating expenses for changes in accrued expenses payable. When accrued expenses payable increase during the year, operating expenses on an accrual basis are higher than they are in a cash basis. As a result, to determine cash payments for operating expenses, a company deducts from operating expenses an increase in accrued expenses payable. On the other hand, a company adds to operating expenses a decrease in accrued expenses payable because cash payments exceed operating expenses.

Computer Services Company's cash payments for operating expenses were $115,000, computed as follows.

Illustration 12A-10
Computation of cash payments for operating expenses

Operating expenses	$ 111,000
Add: Increase in prepaid expenses	4,000
Cash payments for operating expenses	**$115,000**

Illustration 12A-11 shows the relationships among cash payments for operating expenses, changes in prepaid expenses, and changes in accrued expenses payable.

Illustration 12A-11
Formula to compute cash payments for operating expenses—direct method

Cash Payments for Operating Expenses	=	Operating Expenses	+ Increase in Prepaid Expense or − Decrease in Prepaid Expense	+ Decrease in Accrued Expenses Payable or − Increase in Accrued Expenses Payable

DEPRECIATION EXPENSE AND LOSS ON SALE OF EQUIPMENT. Computer Services' depreciation expense in 2012 was $9,000. Depreciation expense is not shown on a statement of cash flows under the direct method because it is a noncash charge. If the amount for operating expenses includes depreciation expense, operating expenses must be reduced by the amount of depreciation to determine cash payments for operating expenses.

The loss on sale of equipment of $3,000 is also a noncash charge. The loss on sale of equipment reduces net income, but it does not reduce cash. Thus, the loss on sale of equipment is not shown on the statement of cash flows under the direct method.

Other charges to expense that do not require the use of cash, such as the amortization of intangible assets, depletion expense, and bad debts expense, are treated in the same manner as depreciation.

CASH PAYMENTS FOR INTEREST. Computer Services reported on the income statement interest expense of $42,000. Since the balance sheet did not include an accrual for interest payable for 2011 or 2012, the amount reported as expense is the same as the amount of interest paid.

CASH PAYMENTS FOR INCOME TAXES. Computer Services reported income tax expense of $47,000 on the income statement. Income taxes payable, however, decreased $2,000. This decrease means that income taxes paid were more than income taxes reported in the income statement. Cash payments for income taxes were, therefore, $49,000 as shown below.

Illustration 12A-12
Computation of cash payments for income taxes

Income tax expense	$ 47,000
Add: Decrease in income taxes payable	2,000
Cash payments for income taxes	**$49,000**

Illustration 12A-13 shows the relationships among cash payments for income taxes, income tax expense, and changes in income taxes payable.

Illustration 12A-13
Formula to compute cash payments for income taxes—direct method

Cash Payments for Income Taxes	=	Income Tax Expense	+ Decrease in Income Taxes Payable or − Increase in Income Taxes Payable

The operating activities section of the statement of cash flows of Computer Services Company is shown in Illustration 12A-14.

Illustration 12A-14
Operating activities section of the statement of cash flows

Cash flows from operating activities		
Cash receipts from customers		$517,000
Less: Cash payments:		
To suppliers	$139,000	
For operating expenses	115,000	
For interest expense	42,000	
For income taxes	49,000	345,000
Net cash provided by operating activities		$172,000

When a company uses the direct method, it must also provide in a **separate schedule** (not shown here) the net cash flows from operating activities as computed under the indirect method.

STEP 2: INVESTING AND FINANCING ACTIVITIES

ANALYZE CHANGES IN NONCURRENT ASSET AND LIABILITY ACCOUNTS AND RECORD AS INVESTING AND FINANCING ACTIVITIES, OR DISCLOSE AS NONCASH TRANSACTIONS

Helpful Hint The investing and financing activities are measured and reported the same under both the direct and indirect methods.

INCREASE IN LAND. As indicated from the change in the Land account and the additional information, the company purchased land of $110,000 by directly exchanging bonds for land. The exchange of bonds payable for land has no effect on cash. But it is a significant noncash investing and financing activity that merits disclosure in a separate schedule. (See Illustration 12A-16.)

INCREASE IN BUILDINGS. As the additional data indicate, Computer Services Company acquired an office building for $120,000 cash. This is a cash outflow reported in the investing section. (See Illustration 12A-16.)

INCREASE IN EQUIPMENT. The Equipment account increased $17,000. The additional information explains that this was a net increase that resulted from two transactions: (1) a purchase of equipment of $25,000, and (2) the sale for $4,000 of equipment costing $8,000. These transactions are investing activities. The company should report each transaction separately. The statement in Illustration 12A-16 reports the purchase of equipment as an outflow of cash for $25,000. It reports the sale as an inflow of cash for $4,000. The T account below shows the reasons for the change in this account during the year.

Illustration 12A-15
Analysis of equipment

Equipment				
1/1/12	Balance	10,000	Cost of equipment sold	8,000
	Purchase of equipment	**25,000**		
12/31/12	Balance	27,000		

The following entry shows the details of the equipment sale transaction.

A	=	L	+	SE
+4,000				
+1,000				
				−3,000 Exp
−8,000				
Cash Flows +4,000				

Cash	4,000	
Accumulated Depreciation	1,000	
Loss on Disposal of Plant Assets	3,000	
Equipment		8,000

INCREASE IN BONDS PAYABLE. The Bonds Payable account increased $110,000. As indicated in the additional information, the company acquired land by directly exchanging bonds for land. Illustration 12A-16 reports this noncash transaction in a separate schedule at the bottom of the statement.

Helpful Hint When companies issue stocks or bonds for cash, the actual proceeds will appear in the statement of cash flows as a financing inflow (rather than the par value of the stocks or face value of bonds).

INCREASE IN COMMON STOCK. The balance sheet reports an increase in Common Stock of $20,000. The additional information section notes that this increase resulted from the issuance of new shares of stock. This is a cash inflow reported in the financing section in Illustration 12A-16.

INCREASE IN RETAINED EARNINGS. Retained earnings increased $116,000 during the year. This increase can be explained by two factors: (1) Net income of $145,000 increased retained earnings and (2) dividends of $29,000 decreased

retained earnings. The company adjusts net income to net cash provided by operating activities in the operating activities section. **Payment** of the dividends (not the declaration) is a **cash outflow that the company reports as a financing activity in Illustration 12A-16**.

Statement of Cash Flows–2012

Illustration 12A-16 shows the statement of cash flows for Computer Services Company.

Illustration 12A-16
Statement of cash flows, 2012–direct method

COMPUTER SERVICES COMPANY
Statement of Cash Flows–Direct Method
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Cash flows from operating activities		
Cash receipts from customers		$ 517,000
Less: Cash payments:		
To suppliers	$ 139,000	
For operating expenses	115,000	
For income taxes	49,000	
For interest expense	42,000	345,000
Net cash provided by operating activities		172,000
Cash flows from investing activities		
Sale of equipment	4,000	
Purchase of building	(120,000)	
Purchase of equipment	(25,000)	
Net cash used by investing activities		(141,000)
Cash flows from financing activities		
Issuance of common stock	20,000	
Payment of cash dividends	(29,000)	
Net cash used by financing activities		(9,000)
Net increase in cash		22,000
Cash at beginning of period		33,000
Cash at end of period		$ 55,000
Noncash investing and financing activities		
Issuance of bonds payable to purchase land		$ 110,000

STEP 3: NET CHANGE IN CASH

COMPARE THE NET CHANGE IN CASH ON THE STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS WITH THE CHANGE IN THE CASH ACCOUNT REPORTED ON THE BALANCE SHEET TO MAKE SURE THE AMOUNTS AGREE

Illustration 12A-16 indicates that the net change in cash during the period was an increase of $22,000. This agrees with the change in balances in the cash account reported on the balance sheets in Illustration 12A-1 (page 647).

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 12A

6 Prepare a statement of cash flows using the direct method. The preparation of the statement of cash flows involves three major steps: (1) Determine net cash provided/used by operating activities by converting net income from an accrual basis to a cash basis. (2) Analyze changes in noncurrent asset and liability accounts and record as investing and financing activities, or disclose as noncash transactions. (3) Compare the net change in cash on the statement of cash flows with the change in the cash account reported on the balance sheet to make sure the amounts agree. The direct method reports cash receipts less cash payments to arrive at net cash provided by operating activities.

appendix 12B

Statement of Cash Flows—T-Account Approach

Many people like to use T accounts to provide structure to the preparation of a statement of cash flows. The use of T accounts is based on the accounting equation that you learned in Chapter 1. The basic equation is:

Assets = Liabilities + Equity

Now, let's rewrite the left-hand side as:

Cash + Noncash Assets = Liabilities + Equity

Next, rewrite the equation by subtracting Noncash Assets from each side to isolate Cash on the left-hand side:

Cash = Liabilities + Equity − Noncash Assets

Finally, if we insert the Δ symbol (which means "change in"), we have:

Δ Cash = Δ Liabilities + Δ Equity − Δ Noncash Assets

What this means is that the change in cash is equal to the change in all of the other balance sheet accounts. Another way to think about this is that if we analyze the changes in all of the noncash balance sheet accounts, we will explain the change in the cash account. This, of course, is exactly what we are trying to do with the statement of cash flows.

To implement this approach, first prepare a large Cash T account, with sections for operating, investing, and financing activities. Then, prepare smaller T accounts for all of the other noncash balance sheet accounts. Insert the beginning and ending balances for each of these accounts. Once you have done this, then walk through the steps outlined on page 630. As you walk through the steps, enter debit and credit amounts into the affected accounts. When all of the changes in the T accounts have been explained, you are done. To demonstrate, we will apply this approach to the example of Computer Services Company that is presented in the chapter. Each of the adjustments in Illustration 12B-1 is numbered so you can follow them through the T accounts.

1. Post net income as a debit to the operating section of the Cash T account and a credit to Retained Earnings. Make sure to label all adjustments to the Cash T account. It also helps to number each adjustment so you can trace all of them if you make an error.
2. Post depreciation expense as a debit to the operating section of Cash and a credit to each of the appropriate accumulated depreciation accounts.
3. Post any gains or losses on the sale of property, plant, and equipment. To do this, it is best to first prepare the journal entry that was recorded at the time of the sale and then post each element of the journal entry. For example, for Computer Services the entry was:

Cash	4,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	1,000	
Loss on Disposal of Plant Assets	3,000	
Equipment		8,000

The $4,000 cash entry is a source of cash in the investing section of the Cash account. Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment is debited for $1,000. The Loss on Disposal of Plant Assets is a debit to the operating section of the Cash T account. Finally, Equipment is credited for $8,000.

4–8. Next, post each of the changes to the noncash current asset and current liability accounts. For example, to explain the $10,000 decline in Computer Services' Accounts Receivable, credit Accounts Receivable for $10,000 and debit the operating section of the Cash T account for $10,000.

9. Analyze the changes in the noncurrent accounts. Land was purchased by issuing Bonds Payable. This requires a debit to Land for $110,000 and a credit to Bonds Payable for $110,000. Note that this is a significant noncash event that requires disclosure at the bottom of the statement of cash flows.

10. Buildings is debited for $120,000, and the investing section of the Cash T account is credited for $120,000 as a use of cash from investing.

11. Equipment is debited for $25,000 and the investing section of the Cash T account is credited for $25,000 as a use of cash from investing.

12. Common Stock is credited for $20,000 for the issuance of shares of stock, and the financing section of the Cash T account is debited for $20,000.

13. Retained Earnings is debited to reflect the payment of the $29,000 dividend, and the financing section of the Cash T account is credited to reflect the use of Cash.

Illustration 12B-1
T-account approach

Cash

Operating			
(1) Net income	145,000	5,000	Inventory (5)
(2) Depreciation expense	9,000	4,000	Prepaid expenses (6)
(3) Loss on equipment	3,000	2,000	Income taxes payable (8)
(4) Accounts receivable	10,000		
(7) Accounts payable	16,000		
Net cash provided by operating activities	172,000		
Investing			
(3) Sold equipment	4,000	120,000	Purchased building (10)
		25,000	Purchased equipment (11)
		141,000	Net cash used by investing activities
Financing			
(12) Issued common stock	20,000	29,000	Dividend paid (13)
		9,000	Net cash used by financing activities
	22,000		

Accounts Receivable		Inventory		Prepaid Expenses		Land	
30,000		10,000		1,000		20,000	
	10,000 (4)	(5) 5,000		(6) 4,000		(9) 110,000	
20,000		15,000		5,000		130,000	

Buildings		Accumulated Depreciation—Buildings		Equipment		Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	
40,000			5,000	10,000			1,000
(10) 120,000			6,000 (2)	(11) 25,000	8,000 (3)	(3) 1,000	3,000 (2)
160,000			11,000	27,000			3,000

Accounts Payable		Income Taxes Payable		Bonds Payable		Common Stock		Retained Earnings	
	12,000		8,000		20,000		50,000		48,000
	16,000 (7)	(8) 2,000			110,000 (9)		20,000 (12)		145,000 (1)
	28,000		6,000		130,000		70,000	(13) 29,000	
									164,000

At this point, all of the changes in the noncash accounts have been explained. All that remains is to subtotal each section of the Cash T account and agree the total change in cash with the change shown on the balance sheet. Once this is done, the information in the Cash T account can be used to prepare a statement of cash flows.

Glossary

Cash debt coverage ratio *(p. 643)* A cash-based ratio used to evaluate solvency, calculated as cash provided by operating activities divided by average total liabilities.

Current cash debt coverage ratio *(p. 642)* A cash-based ratio used to evaluate liquidity, calculated as cash provided by operating activities divided by average current liabilities.

Direct method *(p. 630)* A method of determining net cash provided by operating activities by adjusting each item in the income statement from the accrual basis to the cash basis. The direct method shows operating cash receipts and payments.

Financing activities *(p. 625)* Cash flow activities that include (a) obtaining cash from issuing debt and repaying the amounts borrowed and (b) obtaining cash from stockholders, repurchasing shares, and paying dividends.

Free cash flow *(p. 639)* Cash remaining from operating activities after adjusting for capital expenditures and dividends paid.

Indirect method *(p. 630)* A method of preparing a statement of cash flows in which net income is adjusted for items that do not affect cash, to determine net cash provided by operating activities.

Investing activities *(p. 625)* Cash flow activities that include (a) cash transactions that involve the purchase or disposal of investments and property, plant, and equipment using cash and (b) lending money and collecting the loans.

Operating activities *(p. 625)* Cash flow activities that include the cash effects of transactions that create revenues and expenses and thus enter into the determination of net income.

Product life cycle *(p. 628)* A series of phases in a product's sales and cash flows over time; these phases, in order of occurrence, are introductory, growth, maturity, and decline.

Statement of cash flows *(p. 624)* A basic financial statement that provides information about the cash receipts and cash payments of an entity during a period, classified as operating, investing, and financing activities, in a format that reconciles the beginning and ending cash balances.

Comprehensive Do it!

The income statement for Kosinski Manufacturing Company contains the following condensed information.

KOSINSKI MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Revenues		$6,583,000
Operating expenses, excluding depreciation	$4,920,000	
Depreciation expense	880,000	5,800,000
Income before income taxes		783,000
Income tax expense		353,000
Net income		$ 430,000

Included in operating expenses is a $24,000 loss resulting from the sale of machinery for $270,000 cash. Machinery was purchased at a cost of $750,000. The following balances are reported on Kosinski's comparative balance sheet at December 31.

	2012	2011
Cash	$672,000	$130,000
Accounts receivable	775,000	610,000
Inventory	834,000	867,000
Accounts payable	521,000	501,000

Income tax expense of $353,000 represents the amount paid in 2012. Dividends declared and paid in 2012 totaled $200,000.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the statement of cash flows using the indirect method.
*(b) Prepare the statement of cash flows using the direct method.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

(a)

KOSINSKI MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Statement of Cash Flows—Indirect Method
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Cash flows from operating activities		
Net income		$ 430,000
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:		
Depreciation expense	$ 880,000	
Loss on sale of machinery	24,000	
Increase in accounts receivable	(165,000)	
Decrease in inventory	33,000	
Increase in accounts payable	20,000	792,000
Net cash provided by operating activities		1,222,000
Cash flows from investing activities		
Sale of machinery	270,000	
Purchase of machinery	(750,000)	
Net cash used by investing activities		(480,000)
Cash flows from financing activities		
Payment of cash dividends	(200,000)	
Net cash used by financing activities		(200,000)
Net increase in cash		542,000
Cash at beginning of period		130,000
Cash at end of period		$ 672,000

*(b)

KOSINSKI MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Statement of Cash Flows—Direct Method
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Cash flows from operating activities		
Cash collections from customers		$6,418,000*
Cash payments:		
For operating expenses	$(4,843,000)**	
For income taxes	(353,000)	(5,196,000)
Net cash provided by operating activities		1,222,000
Cash flows from investing activities		
Sale of machinery	270,000	
Purchase of machinery	(750,000)	
Net cash used by investing activities		(480,000)
Cash flows from financing activities		
Payment of cash dividends	(200,000)	
Net cash used by financing activities		(200,000)
Net increase in cash		542,000
Cash at beginning of period		130,000
Cash at end of period		$ 672,000

Direct-Method Computations:

*Computation of cash collections from customers:	
Revenues per the income statement	$6,583,000
Deduct: Increase in accounts receivable	(165,000)
Cash collections from customers	$6,418,000
**Computation of cash payments for operating expenses:	
Operating expenses per the income statement	$4,920,000
Deduct: Loss from sale of machinery	(24,000)
Deduct: Decrease in inventories	(33,000)
Deduct: Increase in accounts payable	(20,000)
Cash payments for operating expenses	$4,843,000

Action Plan

- Apply the same data to the preparation of a statement of cash flows under both the indirect and direct methods.
- Note the similarities of the two methods: Both methods report the same information in the investing and financing sections.
- Note the differences between the two methods: The cash flows from operating activities sections report different information, but the amount of net cash provided by operating activities is the same for both methods.

the navigator

Note: All Questions, Exercises, and Problems marked with an asterisk relate to material in the appendices to the chapter.

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 680.

(SO 1) **1.** Which of the following is *incorrect* about the statement of cash flows?
(a) It is a fourth basic financial statement.
(b) It provides information about cash receipts and cash payments of an entity during a period.
(c) It reconciles the ending cash account balance to the balance per the bank statement.
(d) It provides information about the operating, investing, and financing activities of the business.

(SO 1, 2) **2.** Which of the following will *not* be reported in the statement of cash flows?
(a) The net change in plant assets during the year.
(b) Cash payments for plant assets during the year.
(c) Cash receipts from sales of plant assets during the year.
(d) Sources of financing during the period.

(SO 2) **3.** The statement of cash flows classifies cash receipts and cash payments by these activities:
(a) operating and nonoperating.
(b) operating, investing, and financing.
(c) financing, operating, and nonoperating.
(d) investing, financing, and nonoperating.

(SO 2) **4.** Which is an example of a cash flow from an operating activity?
(a) Payment of cash to lenders for interest.
(b) Receipt of cash from the sale of capital stock.
(c) Payment of cash dividends to the company's stockholders.
(d) None of the above.

(SO 2) **5.** Which is an example of a cash flow from an investing activity?
(a) Receipt of cash from the issuance of bonds payable.
(b) Payment of cash to repurchase outstanding capital stock.
(c) Receipt of cash from the sale of equipment.
(d) Payment of cash to suppliers for inventory.

(SO 2) **6.** Cash dividends paid to stockholders are classified on the statement of cash flows as:
(a) operating activities.
(b) investing activities.
(c) a combination of (a) and (b).
(d) financing activities.

(SO 2) **7.** Which is an example of a cash flow from a financing activity?
(a) Receipt of cash from sale of land.
(b) Issuance of debt for cash.
(c) Purchase of equipment for cash.
(d) None of the above

(SO 2) **8.** Which of the following is *incorrect* about the statement of cash flows?
(a) The direct method may be used to report cash provided by operating activities.
(b) The statement shows the cash provided (used) for three categories of activity.
(c) The operating section is the last section of the statement.
(d) The indirect method may be used to report cash provided by operating activities.

(SO 3) **9.** During the introductory phase of a company's life cycle, one would normally expect to see:
(a) negative cash from operations, negative cash from investing, and positive cash from financing.
(b) negative cash from operations, positive cash from investing, and positive cash from financing.
(c) positive cash from operations, negative cash from investing, and negative cash from financing.
(d) positive cash from operations, negative cash from investing, and positive cash from financing.

Questions 10 through 12 apply only to the indirect method.

(SO 4) **10.** Net income is $132,000, accounts payable increased $10,000 during the year, inventory decreased $6,000 during the year, and accounts receivable increased $12,000 during the year. Under the indirect method, what is net cash provided by operations?
(a) $102,000. (c) $124,000.
(b) $112,000. (d) $136,000.

(SO 4) **11.** Items that are added back to net income in determining cash provided by operating activities under the indirect method do *not* include:
(a) depreciation expense.
(b) an increase in inventory.
(c) amortization expense.
(d) loss on sale of equipment.

(SO 4) **12.** The following data are available for Bill Mack Corporation.

Net income	$200,000
Depreciation expense	40,000
Dividends paid	60,000
Gain on sale of land	10,000
Decrease in accounts receivable	20,000
Decrease in accounts payable	30,000

Net cash provided by operating activities is:
(a) $160,000. (c) $240,000.
(b) $220,000. (d) $280,000.

(SO 4, 6) **13.** The following are data concerning cash received or paid from various transactions for Orange Peels Corporation.

Sale of land	$100,000
Sale of equipment	50,000
Issuance of common stock	70,000
Purchase of equipment	30,000
Payment of cash dividends	60,000

Net cash provided by investing activities is:
(a) $120,000. (c) $150,000.
(b) $130,000. (d) $190,000.

(SO 4, 6) **14.** The following data are available for Retique!

Increase in bonds payable	$100,000
Sale of investment	50,000
Issuance of common stock	60,000
Payment of cash dividends	30,000

Net cash provided by financing activities is:
(a) $90,000. (c) $160,000.
(b) $130,000. (d) $170,000.

(SO 5) **15.** The cash debt coverage ratio is:
(a) a measure of liquidity.
(b) a measure of profitability.
(c) net income divided by average total liabilities.
(d) a measure of solvency.

16. Free cash flow provides an indication of a company's ability to: (SO 5)
(a) generate net income.
(b) generate cash to pay dividends.
(c) generate cash to invest in new capital expenditures.
(d) Both (b) and (c).

Questions 17 and 18 apply only to the direct method.

***17.** The beginning balance in accounts receivable is $44,000, the ending balance is $42,000, and sales during the period are $129,000. What are cash receipts from customers? (SO 6)
(a) $127,000. (c) $131,000.
(b) $129,000. (d) $141,000.

***18.** Which of the following items is reported on a cash flow statement prepared by the direct method? (SO 6)
(a) Loss on sale of building.
(b) Increase in accounts receivable.
(c) Depreciation expense.
(d) Cash payments to suppliers.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. (a) What is a statement of cash flows?
(b) Brad Strath maintains that the statement of cash flows is an optional financial statement. Do you agree? Explain.

2. What questions about cash are answered by the statement of cash flows?

3. Distinguish among the three activities reported in the statement of cash flows.

4. (a) What are the sources (inflows) of cash in a statement of cash flows?
(b) What are the uses (outflows) of cash?

5. Why is it important to disclose certain noncash transactions? How should they be disclosed?

6. Wilma Flintstone and Barny Rubblestone were discussing the format of the statement of cash flows of Primo Pebble Co. At the bottom of Primo Pebble's statement of cash flows was a separate section entitled "Noncash investing and financing activities." Give three examples of significant noncash transactions that would be reported in this section.

7. Why is it necessary to use comparative balance sheets, a current income statement, and certain transaction data in preparing a statement of cash flows?

8.
(a) What are the phases of the corporate life cycle?
(b) What effect does each phase have on the numbers reported in a statement of cash flows?

9. Based on its statement of cash flows, in what stage of the product life cycle is Tootsie Roll Industries?

10. Contrast the advantages and disadvantages of the direct and indirect methods of preparing the statement of cash flows. Are both methods acceptable? Which method is preferred by the FASB? Which method is more popular?

11. When the total cash inflows exceed the total cash outflows in the statement of cash flows, how and where is this excess identified?

12. Describe the indirect method for determining net cash provided (used) by operating activities.

13. Why is it necessary to convert accrual basis net income to cash basis income when preparing a statement of cash flows?

14. The president of Pratt Company is puzzled. During the last year, the company experienced a net loss of $800,000, yet its cash increased $300,000 during the same period of time. Explain to the president how this could occur.

15. Identify five items that are adjustments to convert net income to net cash provided by operating activities under the indirect method.

16. Why and how is depreciation expense reported in a statement prepared using the indirect method?

17. Why is the statement of cash flows useful?

18. During 2012, Rusmussen Company exchanged $1,700,000 of its common stock for land. Indicate how the transaction would be reported on a statement of cash flows, if at all.

19. Give examples of accrual-based and cash-based ratios to measure each of these characteristics of a company:
(a) Liquidity. (b) Solvency.

***20.** Describe the direct method for determining net cash provided by operating activities.

***21.** Give the formulas under the direct method for computing (a) cash receipts from customers and (b) cash payments to suppliers.

***22.** Ambrosia Inc. reported sales of $2 million for 2012. Accounts receivable decreased $150,000 and accounts payable increased $300,000. Compute cash receipts from customers, assuming that the receivable and payable transactions are related to operations.

***23.** In the direct method, why is depreciation expense not reported in the cash flows from operating activities section?

Brief Exercises

Indicate statement presentation of selected transactions.
(SO 2), K

BE12-1 Each of these items must be considered in preparing a statement of cash flows for Nemke Co. for the year ended December 31, 2012. For each item, state how it should be shown in the statement of cash flows for 2012.
(a) Issued bonds for $200,000 cash.
(b) Purchased equipment for $180,000 cash.
(c) Sold land costing $20,000 for $20,000 cash.
(d) Declared and paid a $50,000 cash dividend.

Classify items by activities.
(SO 2), C

BE12-2 Classify each item as an operating, investing, or financing activity. Assume all items involve cash unless there is information to the contrary.
(a) Purchase of equipment.
(b) Sale of building.
(c) Redemption of bonds.
(d) Depreciation.
(e) Payment of dividends.
(f) Issuance of capital stock.

Identify financing activity transactions.
(SO 2), AP

BE12-3 The following T account is a summary of the cash account of Holmes Company.

Cash (Summary Form)

Balance, Jan. 1	8,000		
Receipts from customers	364,000	Payments for goods	200,000
Dividends on stock investments	6,000	Payments for operating expenses	140,000
Proceeds from sale of equipment	36,000	Interest paid	10,000
Proceeds from issuance of bonds payable	300,000	Taxes paid	8,000
		Dividends paid	40,000
Balance, Dec. 31	316,000		

What amount of net cash provided (used) by financing activities should be reported in the statement of cash flows?

Answer questions related to the phases of product life cycle.
(SO 3), C

BE12-4
(a) Why is cash from operations likely to be lower than reported net income during the growth phase?
(b) Why is cash from investing often positive during the late maturity phase and during the decline phase?

Compute cash provided by operating activities—indirect method.
(SO 4), AP

BE12-5 Jeremy, Inc. reported net income of $2.5 million in 2012. Depreciation for the year was $160,000, accounts receivable decreased $350,000, and accounts payable decreased $280,000. Compute net cash provided by operating activities using the indirect approach.

Compute cash provided by operating activities—indirect method.
(SO 4), AP

BE12-6 The net income for Bohnert Co. for 2012 was $280,000. For 2012, depreciation on plant assets was $70,000, and the company incurred a loss on sale of plant assets of $28,000. Compute net cash provided by operating activities under the indirect method.

Compute net cash provided by operating activities—indirect method.
(SO 4), AP

BE12-7 The comparative balance sheets for Howell Company show these changes in noncash current asset accounts: accounts receivable decrease $80,000, prepaid expenses increase $28,000, and inventories increase $40,000. Compute net cash provided by operating activities using the indirect method, assuming that net income is $186,000.

BE12-8 The T accounts for Equipment and the related Accumulated Depreciation for Anastacia Company at the end of 2012 are shown here.

Determine cash received from sale of equipment.
(SO 4), **AN**

Equipment				Accumulated Depreciation			
Beg. bal.	80,000	Disposals	22,000	Disposals	5,100	Beg. bal.	44,500
Acquisitions	41,600					Depr. exp.	12,000
End. bal.	99,600					End. bal.	51,400

In addition, Anastacia Company's income statement reported a loss on the sale of equipment of $3,500. What amount was reported on the statement of cash flows as "cash flow from sale of equipment"?

BE12-9 During 2009, Cypress Semiconductor Corporation reported cash provided by operations of $89,303,000, cash used in investing of $43,126,000, and cash used in financing of $7,368,000. In addition, cash spent for fixed assets during the period was $25,823,000. Average current liabilities were $251,522,000, and average total liabilities were $286,214,500. No dividends were paid. Calculate these values:

Calculate cash-based ratios.
(SO 5), **AP**

(a) Free cash flow.
(b) Current cash debt coverage ratio.
(c) Cash debt coverage ratio.

BE12-10 Colburn Corporation reported cash provided by operating activities of $412,000, cash used by investing activities of $250,000, and cash provided by financing activities of $70,000. In addition, cash spent for capital assets during the period was $200,000. Average current liabilities were $150,000, and average total liabilities were $225,000. No dividends were paid. Calculate these values:

Calculate cash-based ratios.
(SO 5), **AP**

(a) Free cash flow.
(b) Current cash debt coverage ratio.
(c) Cash debt coverage ratio.

BE12-11 Canwest Global Communications Corp. reported cash used by operating activities of $104,539,000 and revenues of $2,867,459,000 during 2009. Cash spent on plant asset additions during the year was $79,330,000. Calculate free cash flow.

Calculate cash-based ratios.
(SO 5), **AP**

BE12-12 The management of Riggs Inc. is trying to decide whether it can increase its dividend. During the current year, it reported net income of $875,000. It had cash provided by operating activities of $734,000, paid cash dividends of $92,000, and had capital expenditures of $310,000. Compute the company's free cash flow, and discuss whether an increase in the dividend appears warranted. What other factors should be considered?

Calculate and analyze free cash flow.
(SO 5), **AN**

***BE12-13** Columbia Sportswear Company had accounts receivable of $299,585,000 at January 1, 2009, and $226,548,000 at December 31, 2009. Sales revenues were $1,244,023,000 for the year 2009. What is the amount of cash receipts from customers in 2009?

Compute receipts from customers—direct method.
(SO 6), **AP**

***BE12-14** Garvey Corporation reported income taxes of $370,000,000 on its 2012 income statement and income taxes payable of $277,000,000 at December 31, 2011, and $528,000,000 at December 31, 2012. What amount of cash payments were made for income taxes during 2012?

Compute cash payments for income taxes—direct method.
(SO 6), **AP**

***BE12-15** Yandell Corporation reports operating expenses of $90,000, excluding depreciation expense of $15,000 for 2012. During the year, prepaid expenses decreased $7,200 and accrued expenses payable increased $4,400. Compute the cash payments for operating expenses in 2012.

Compute cash payments for operating expenses—direct method.
(SO 6), **AP**

Do it! Review

Do it! 12-1 Kirby Corporation had the following transactions.

Classify transactions by type of cash flow activity.
(SO 2), **C**

1. Issued $160,000 of bonds payable.
2. Paid utilities expense.
3. Issued 500 shares of preferred stock for $45,000.
4. Sold land and a building for $250,000.
5. Lent $30,000 to Dead End Corporation, receiving Dead End's 1-year, 12% note.

Classify each of these transactions by type of cash flow activity (operating, investing, or financing).

Calculate net cash from operating activities.
(SO 4), AP

Do it! 12-2 GW Photography reported net income of $100,000 for 2012. Included in the income statement were depreciation expense of $6,300, patent amortization expense of $4,000, and a gain on sale of equipment of $3,600. GW's comparative balance sheets show the following balances.

	12/31/12	12/31/11
Accounts receivable	$21,000	$27,000
Accounts payable	9,200	6,000

Calculate net cash provided by operating activities for GW Photography.

Compute and discuss free cash flow.
(SO 5), AP

Do it! 12-3 Barnish Corporation issued the following statement of cash flows for 2012.

BARNISH CORPORATION
Statement of Cash Flows—Indirect Method
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Cash flows from operating activities		
Net income		$59,000
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:		
Depreciation expense	$ 9,100	
Decrease in accounts receivable	9,500	
Increase in inventory	(5,000)	
Decrease in accounts payable	(2,200)	
Loss on sale of equipment	3,300	14,700
Net cash provided by operating activities		73,700
Cash flows from investing activities		
Sale of investments	3,100	
Purchase of equipment	(24,200)	
Net cash used by investing activities		(21,100)
Cash flows from financing activities		
Issuance of stock	20,000	
Payment on long-term note payable	(10,000)	
Payment for dividends	(13,000)	
Net cash used by financing activities		(3,000)
Net increase in cash		49,600
Cash at beginning of year		13,000
Cash at end of year		$62,600

(a) Compute free cash flow for Barnish Corporation.
(b) Explain why free cash flow often provides better information than "Net cash provided by operating activities."

Exercises

Classify transactions by type of activity.
(SO 2), C

E12-1 Strawn Corporation had these transactions during 2012.
(a) Purchased a machine for $30,000, giving a long-term note in exchange.
(b) Issued $50,000 par value common stock for cash.
(c) Issued $200,000 par value common stock upon conversion of bonds having a face value of $200,000.
(d) Declared and paid a cash dividend of $13,000.
(e) Sold a long-term investment with a cost of $15,000 for $15,000 cash.
(f) Collected $16,000 of accounts receivable.
(g) Paid $18,000 on accounts payable.

Instructions
Analyze the transactions and indicate whether each transaction resulted in a cash flow from operating activities, investing activities, financing activities, or noncash investing and financing activities.

E12-2 An analysis of comparative balance sheets, the current year's income statement, and the general ledger accounts of Gygi Corp. uncovered the following items. Assume all items involve cash unless there is information to the contrary.

Classify transactions by type of activity.
(SO 2), **C**

(a) Payment of interest on notes payable.
(b) Exchange of land for patent.
(c) Sale of building at book value.
(d) Payment of dividends.
(e) Depreciation.
(f) Conversion of bonds into common stock.
(g) Receipt of interest on notes receivable.
(h) Issuance of capital stock.
(i) Amortization of patent.
(j) Issuance of bonds for land.
(k) Purchase of land.
(l) Receipt of dividends on investment in stock.
(m) Loss on sale of land.
(n) Retirement of bonds.

Instructions
Indicate how each item should be classified in the statement of cash flows using these four major classifications: operating activity (indirect method), investing activity, financing activity, and significant noncash investing and financing activity.

E12-3 The information in the table is from the statement of cash flows for a company at four different points in time (A, B, C, and D). Negative values are presented in parentheses.

Identify phases of product life cycle.
(SO 3), **C**

	Point in Time			
	A	**B**	**C**	**D**
Cash provided by operations	$ (60,000)	$ 30,000	$120,000	$(10,000)
Cash provided by investing	(100,000)	25,000	30,000	(40,000)
Cash provided by financing	70,000	(90,000)	(50,000)	120,000
Net income	(38,000)	10,000	100,000	(5,000)

Instructions
For each point in time, state whether the company is most likely in the introductory phase, growth phase, maturity phase, or decline phase. In each case, explain your choice.

E12-4 Azen Company reported net income of $190,000 for 2012. Azen also reported depreciation expense of $35,000 and a loss of $5,000 on the sale of equipment. The comparative balance sheet shows an increase in accounts receivable of $15,000 for the year, a $17,000 increase in accounts payable, and a $4,000 increase in prepaid expenses.

Prepare the operating activities section—indirect method.
(SO 4), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows for 2012. Use the indirect method.

E12-5 The current sections of Putzier Inc.'s balance sheets at December 31, 2011 and 2012, are presented here. Putzier's net income for 2012 was $153,000. Depreciation expense was $27,000.

Prepare the operating activities section—indirect method.
(SO 4), **AP**

	2012	**2011**
Current assets		
Cash	$105,000	$ 99,000
Accounts receivable	80,000	89,000
Inventory	168,000	172,000
Prepaid expenses	27,000	22,000
Total current assets	$380,000	$382,000
Current liabilities		
Accrued expenses payable	$ 15,000	$ 5,000
Accounts payable	85,000	92,000
Total current liabilities	$100,000	$ 97,000

Instructions
Prepare the net cash provided by operating activities section of the company's statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2012, using the indirect method.

Prepare statement of cash flows—indirect method.
(SO 4), AP

E12-6 The following information is available for Oscar Corporation for the year ended December 31, 2012.

Beginning cash balance	$ 45,000
Accounts payable decrease	3,700
Depreciation expense	162,000
Accounts receivable increase	8,200
Inventory increase	11,000
Net income	284,100
Cash received for sale of land at book value	35,000
Cash dividends paid	12,000
Income taxes payable increase	4,700
Cash used to purchase building	289,000
Cash used to purchase treasury stock	26,000
Cash received from issuing bonds	200,000

Instructions
Prepare a statement of cash flows using the indirect method.

Prepare partial statement of cash flows—indirect method.
(SO 4), AN

E12-7 The three accounts shown below appear in the general ledger of Jurena Corp. during 2012.

Equipment

Date		Debit	Credit	Balance
Jan. 1	Balance			160,000
July 31	Purchase of equipment	70,000		230,000
Sept. 2	Cost of equipment constructed	53,000		283,000
Nov. 10	Cost of equipment sold		49,000	234,000

Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment

Date		Debit	Credit	Balance
Jan. 1	Balance			71,000
Nov. 10	Accumulated depreciation on equipment sold	16,000		55,000
Dec. 31	Depreciation for year		28,000	83,000

Retained Earnings

Date		Debit	Credit	Balance
Jan. 1	Balance			105,000
Aug. 23	Dividends (cash)	14,000		91,000
Dec. 31	Net income		72,000	163,000

Instructions
From the postings in the accounts, indicate how the information is reported on a statement of cash flows using the indirect method. The loss on sale of equipment was $8,000. (*Hint:* Cost of equipment constructed is reported in the investing activities section as a decrease in cash of $53,000.)

Prepare a statement of cash flows—indirect method, and compute cash-based ratios.
(SO 4, 5), AP

E12-8 Shown below and on the next page are comparative balance sheets for Padgett Company.

PADGETT COMPANY
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	2012	2011
Cash	$ 68,000	$ 22,000
Accounts receivable	88,000	76,000
Inventory	167,000	189,000
Land	80,000	100,000
Equipment	260,000	200,000
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	(66,000)	(32,000)
Total	$597,000	$555,000

Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity	2012	2011
Accounts payable	$ 39,000	$ 43,000
Bonds payable	150,000	200,000
Common stock ($1 par)	216,000	174,000
Retained earnings	192,000	138,000
Total	$597,000	$555,000

Additional information:

1. Net income for 2012 was $93,000.
2. Depreciation expense was $34,000.
3. Cash dividends of $39,000 were declared and paid.
4. Bonds payable amounting to $50,000 were redeemed for cash $50,000.
5. Common stock was issued for $42,000 cash.
6. No equipment was sold during 2012.
7. Land was sold for its book value.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a statement of cash flows for 2012 using the indirect method.
(b) Compute these cash-based ratios:
  (1) Current cash debt coverage.
  (2) Cash debt coverage.

E12-9 Presented below is 2009 information for PepsiCo, Inc. and The Coca-Cola Company.

Compare two companies by using cash-based ratios.
(SO 5), **AN**

($ in millions)	PepsiCo	Coca-Cola
Cash provided by operations	$ 6,796	$ 8,186
Average current liabilities	8,772	13,355
Average total liabilities	22,909	21,491
Net income	5,979	6,906
Sales	43,232	30,990
Capital expenditures	2,128	1,993
Dividends paid	2,732	3,800

Instructions

Using the cash-based measures presented in this chapter, compare the (a) liquidity and (b) solvency of the two companies.

E12-10 Information for two companies in the same industry, Meadow Corporation and Plain Corporation, is presented here.

Compare two companies by using cash-based ratios.
(SO 5), **AN**

	Meadow Corporation	Plain Corporation
Cash provided by operating activities	$ 80,000	$100,000
Average current liabilities	50,000	100,000
Average total liabilities	180,000	250,000
Net income	200,000	200,000
Capital expenditures	40,000	70,000
Dividends paid	5,000	10,000

Instructions

Using the cash-based measures presented in this chapter, compare the (a) liquidity and (b) solvency of the two companies.

***E12-11** Orchard Company completed its first year of operations on December 31, 2012. Its initial income statement showed that Orchard had revenues of $198,000 and operating expenses of $83,000. Accounts receivable and accounts payable at year-end were $60,000 and $23,000, respectively. Assume that accounts payable related to operating expenses. Ignore income taxes.

Compute cash provided by operating activities—direct method.
(SO 6), **AP**

Instructions
Compute net cash provided by operating activities using the direct method.

Compute cash payments—direct method.
(SO 6), AP

***E12-12** The 2009 income statement for McDonald's Corporation shows cost of goods sold $5,178.0 million and operating expenses (including depreciation expense of $1,216.2 million) $10,725.7 million. The comparative balance sheet for the year shows that inventory decreased $5.3 million, prepaid expenses increased $42.2 million, accounts payable (merchandise suppliers) increased $15.6 million, and accrued expenses payable increased $199.8 million.

Instructions
Using the direct method, compute (a) cash payments to suppliers and (b) cash payments for operating expenses.

Compute cash flow from operating activities—direct method.
(SO 6), AP

***E12-13** The 2012 accounting records of Pape Transport reveal these transactions and events.

Payment of interest	$ 10,000	Payment of salaries and wages	$ 53,000
Cash sales	48,000	Depreciation expense	16,000
Receipt of dividend revenue	18,000	Proceeds from sale of vehicles	812,000
Payment of income taxes	12,000	Purchase of equipment for cash	22,000
Net income	38,000	Loss on sale of vehicles	3,000
Payment for merchandise	97,000	Payment of dividends	14,000
Payment for land	74,000	Payment of operating expenses	28,000
Collection of accounts receivable	195,000		

Instructions
Prepare the cash flows from operating activities section using the direct method.

Prepare statement of cash flows—direct method.
(SO 6), AP

***E12-14** The following information is available for Washington Mills Corp. for 2012.

Cash used to purchase treasury stock	$ 48,100
Cash dividends paid	21,800
Cash paid for interest	22,400
Net income	464,300
Sales	802,000
Cash paid for taxes	99,000
Cash received from customers	566,100
Cash received from sale of building (at book value)	197,600
Cash paid for operating expenses	77,000
Beginning cash balance	11,000
Cash paid for goods and services	279,100
Cash received from issuing common stock	355,000
Cash paid to redeem bonds at maturity	200,000
Cash paid to purchase equipment	113,200

Instructions

Prepare a statement of cash flows using the direct method.

Calculate cash flows—direct method.
(SO 6), AN

***E12-15** The following information is taken from the 2012 general ledger of Mathias Company.

Rent	Rent expense	$ 30,000
	Prepaid rent, January 1	5,900
	Prepaid rent, December 31	7,400
Salaries	Salaries expense	$ 54,000
	Salaries payable, January 1	2,000
	Salaries payable, December 31	8,000
Sales	Revenue from sales	$160,000
	Accounts receivable, January 1	16,000
	Accounts receivable, December 31	7,000

Instructions
In each case, compute the amount that should be reported in the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows under the direct method.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel,** and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

P12-1A You are provided with the following transactions that took place during a recent fiscal year.

Distinguish among operating, investing, and financing activities.
(SO 2), **C**

Transaction	Where Reported on Statement	Cash Inflow, Outflow, or No Effect?
(a) Recorded depreciation expense on the plant assets.		
(b) Recorded and paid interest expense.		
(c) Recorded cash proceeds from a sale of plant assets.		
(d) Acquired land by issuing common stock.		
(e) Paid a cash dividend to preferred stockholders.		
(f) Distributed a stock dividend to common stockholders.		
(g) Recorded cash sales.		
(h) Recorded sales on account.		
(i) Purchased inventory for cash.		
(j) Purchased inventory on account.		

Instructions
Complete the table, indicating whether each item (1) should be reported as an operating (O) activity, investing (I) activity, financing (F) activity, or as a noncash (NC) transaction reported in a separate schedule, and (2) represents a cash inflow or cash outflow or has no cash flow effect. Assume use of the indirect approach.

P12-2A The following account balances relate to the stockholders' equity accounts of Patil Corp. at year-end.

Determine cash flow effects of changes in equity accounts.
(SO 4), **AN**

	2012	2011
Common stock, 10,500 and 10,000 shares, respectively, for 2012 and 2011	$160,800	$140,000
Preferred stock, 5,000 shares	125,000	125,000
Retained earnings	300,000	270,000

A small stock dividend was declared and issued in 2012. The market value of the shares was $8,800. Cash dividends were $20,000 in both 2012 and 2011. The common stock has no par or stated value.

Instructions
(a) What was the amount of net income reported by Patil Corp. in 2012? (a) Net income $58,800
(b) Determine the amounts of any cash inflows or outflows related to the common stock and dividend accounts in 2012.
(c) Indicate where each of the cash inflows or outflows identified in (b) would be classified on the statement of cash flows.

Prepare the operating activities section—indirect method.
(SO 4), **AP**

P12-3A The income statement of Mazor Company is presented here.

MAZOR COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended November 30, 2012

Sales		$7,600,000
Cost of goods sold		
Beginning inventory	$1,900,000	
Purchases	4,400,000	
Goods available for sale	6,300,000	
Ending inventory	1,600,000	
Total cost of goods sold		4,700,000
Gross profit		2,900,000
Operating expenses		
Selling expenses	450,000	
Administrative expenses	700,000	1,150,000
Net income		$1,750,000

Additional information:

1. Accounts receivable decreased $380,000 during the year, and inventory decreased $300,000.
2. Prepaid expenses increased $150,000 during the year.
3. Accounts payable to suppliers of merchandise decreased $350,000 during the year.
4. Accrued expenses payable decreased $100,000 during the year.
5. Administrative expenses include depreciation expense of $110,000.

Instructions

Cash from operations $1,940,000

Prepare the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows for the year ended November 30, 2012, for Mazor Company, using the indirect method.

Prepare the operating activities section—direct method.
(SO 6), **AP**

Cash from operations $1,940,000

***P12-4A** Data for Mazor Company are presented in P12-3A.

Instructions

Prepare the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows using the direct method.

Prepare the operating activities section—indirect method.
(SO 4), **AP**

P12-5A Retzlaff Company's income statement contained the condensed information below.

RETZLAFF COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Revenues		$970,000
Operating expenses, excluding depreciation	$614,000	
Depreciation expense	55,000	
Loss on sale of equipment	16,000	685,000
Income before income taxes		285,000
Income tax expense		56,000
Net income		$229,000

Retzlaff's balance sheet contained the comparative data at December 31.

	2012	2011
Accounts receivable	$70,000	$60,000
Accounts payable	41,000	32,000
Income taxes payable	13,000	7,000

Accounts payable pertain to operating expenses.

Instructions

Cash from operations $305,000

Prepare the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows using the indirect method.

***P12-6A** Data for Retzlaff Company are presented in P12-5A.

Prepare the operating activities section—direct method.
(SO 6), **AP**

Cash from operations $305,000

Instructions
Prepare the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows using the direct method.

P12-7A Presented below are the financial statements of Helwany Company.

Prepare a statement of cash flows—indirect method, and compute cash-based ratios.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

HELWANY COMPANY
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	**2012**	**2011**
Cash	$ 35,000	$ 20,000
Accounts receivable	20,000	14,000
Inventory	28,000	20,000
Property, plant, and equipment	60,000	78,000
Accumulated depreciation	(32,000)	(24,000)
Total	$111,000	$108,000
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Accounts payable	$ 19,000	$ 15,000
Income taxes payable	7,000	8,000
Bonds payable	17,000	33,000
Common stock	18,000	14,000
Retained earnings	50,000	38,000
Total	$111,000	$108,000

HELWANY COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales		$242,000
Cost of goods sold		175,000
Gross profit		67,000
Selling expenses	$18,000	
Administrative expenses	6,000	24,000
Income from operations		43,000
Interest expense		3,000
Income before income taxes		40,000
Income tax expense		8,000
Net income		$ 32,000

Additional data:

1. Depreciation expense was $17,500.
2. Dividends declared and paid were $20,000.
3. During the year equipment was sold for $8,500 cash. This equipment cost $18,000 originally and had accumulated depreciation of $9,500 at the time of sale.

Instructions
(a) Prepare a statement of cash flows using the indirect method.
(b) Compute these cash-based measures:
  (1) Current cash debt coverage ratio.
  (2) Cash debt coverage ratio.
  (3) Free cash flow.

(a) Cash from operations $38,500

***P12-8A** Data for Helwany Company are presented in P12-7A. Further analysis reveals the following.

Prepare a statement of cash flows—direct method, and compute cash-based ratios.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

1. Accounts payable pertain to merchandise suppliers.
2. All operating expenses except for depreciation were paid in cash.
3. All depreciation expense is in the selling expense category.
4. All sales and purchases are on account.

(a) Cash from operations $38,500

Instructions

(a) Prepare a statement of cash flows for Helwany Company using the direct method.
(b) Compute these cash-based measures:
  (1) Current cash debt coverage ratio.
  (2) Cash debt coverage ratio.
  (3) Free cash flow.

Prepare a statement of cash flows—indirect method. (SO 4), AP

P12-9A Condensed financial data of Lemere Inc. follow.

LEMERE INC.
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	**2012**	**2011**
Cash	$ 80,800	$ 48,400
Accounts receivable	87,800	38,000
Inventory	112,500	102,850
Prepaid expenses	28,400	26,000
Long-term investments	138,000	109,000
Plant assets	285,000	242,500
Accumulated depreciation	(50,000)	(52,000)
Total	$682,500	$514,750
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Accounts payable	$102,000	$ 67,300
Accrued expenses payable	16,500	21,000
Bonds payable	110,000	146,000
Common stock	220,000	175,000
Retained earnings	234,000	105,450
Total	$682,500	$514,750

LEMERE INC.
Income Statement Data
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales		$388,460
Less:		
Cost of goods sold	$135,460	
Operating expenses, excluding depreciation	12,410	
Depreciation expense	46,500	
Income taxes	27,280	
Interest expense	4,730	
Loss on sale of plant assets	7,500	233,880
Net income		$154,580

Additional information:

1. New plant assets costing $100,000 were purchased for cash during the year.
2. Old plant assets having an original cost of $57,500 and accumulated depreciation of $48,500 were sold for $1,500 cash.
3. Bonds payable matured and were paid off at face value for cash.
4. A cash dividend of $26,030 was declared and paid during the year.

Cash from operations $176,930

Instructions

Prepare a statement of cash flows using the indirect method.

Prepare a statement of cash flows—direct method. (SO 6), AP

Cash from operations $176,930

***P12-10A** Data for Lemere Inc. are presented in P12-9A. Further analysis reveals that accounts payable pertain to merchandise creditors.

Instructions

Prepare a statement of cash flows for Lemere Inc. using the direct method.

P12-11A The comparative balance sheets for Vanco Company as of December 31 are presented below.

Prepare a statement of cash flows—indirect method.
(SO 4), **AP**

VANCO COMPANY
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	**2012**	**2011**
Cash	$ 68,000	$ 45,000
Accounts receivable	50,000	58,000
Inventory	151,450	142,000
Prepaid expenses	15,280	21,000
Land	145,000	130,000
Equipment	225,000	155,000
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	(45,000)	(35,000)
Buildings	200,000	200,000
Accumulated depreciation—buildings	(60,000)	(40,000)
Total	$749,730	$676,000
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Accounts payable	$ 44,730	$ 36,000
Bonds payable	300,000	300,000
Common stock, $1 par	200,000	160,000
Retained earnings	205,000	180,000
Total	$749,730	$676,000

Additional information:

1. Operating expenses include depreciation expense of $42,000.
2. Land was sold for cash at book value.
3. Cash dividends of $12,000 were paid.
4. Net income for 2012 was $37,000.
5. Equipment was purchased for $92,000 cash. In addition, equipment costing $22,000 with a book value of $10,000 was sold for $8,000 cash.
6. 40,000 shares of $1 par value common stock were issued in exchange for land with a fair value of $40,000.

Instructions
Prepare a statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2012, using the indirect method.

Cash from operations $94,000

P12-12A You are provided with the following transactions that took place during the year.

Identify the impact of transactions on ratios.
(SO 5), **C**

Transactions	**Free Cash Flow ($125,000)**	**Current Cash Debt Coverage Ratio (0.5 times)**	**Cash Debt Coverage Ratio (0.3 times)**
(a) Recorded credit sales $2,500.			
(b) Collected $1,900 owed by customers.			
(c) Paid amount owed to suppliers $2,750.			
(d) Recorded sales returns of $500 and credited the customer's account.			
(e) Purchased new equipment $5,000; signed a long-term note payable for the cost of the equipment.			
(f) Purchased a patent and paid $65,000 cash for the asset.			

Instructions
For each transaction listed above, indicate whether it will increase (I), decrease (D), or have no effect (NE) on the ratios.

Problems: Set B

Distinguish among operating, investing, and financing activities.
(SO 2), C

P12-1B You are provided with the following transactions that took place during a recent fiscal year.

Transaction	Where Reported on Statement	Cash Inflow, Outflow, or No Effect?
(a) Recorded depreciation expense on the plant assets.		
(b) Incurred a loss on disposal of plant assets.		
(c) Acquired a building by paying cash.		
(d) Made principal repayments on a mortgage.		
(e) Issued common stock.		
(f) Purchased shares of another company to be held as a long-term equity investment.		
(g) Paid dividends to common stockholders.		
(h) Sold inventory on credit. The company uses a perpetual inventory system.		
(i) Purchased inventory on credit.		
(j) Paid wages to employees.		

Instructions
Complete the table indicating whether each item (1) should be reported as an operating (O) activity, investing (I) activity, financing (F) activity, or as a noncash (NC) transaction reported in a separate schedule, and (2) represents a cash inflow or cash outflow or has no cash flow effect. Assume use of the indirect approach.

Determine cash flow effects of changes in plant asset accounts.
(SO 4), AN

P12-2B The following selected account balances relate to the plant asset accounts of Karas Inc. at year-end.

	2012	2011
Accumulated depreciation—buildings	$337,500	$300,000
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	144,000	96,000
Buildings	750,000	750,000
Depreciation expense	99,500	85,500
Equipment	300,000	240,000
Land	100,000	70,000
Loss on sale of plant assets	6,000	0

Additional information:

1. Karas purchased $85,000 of equipment and $30,000 of land for cash in 2012.
2. Karas also sold equipment in 2012.
3. Depreciation expense in 2012 was $37,500 on building and $62,000 on equipment.

Instructions

(a) Cash proceeds $5,000

(a) Determine the amounts of any cash inflows or outflows related to the plant asset accounts in 2012.
(b) Indicate where each of the cash inflows or outflows identified in (a) would be classified on the statement of cash flows.

Prepare the operating activities section—indirect method.
(SO 4), AP

P12-3B The income statement of Hauser Company is presented on the next page.

Additional information:

1. Accounts receivable decreased $290,000 during the year, and inventory increased $140,000.
2. Prepaid expenses increased $175,000 during the year.
3. Accounts payable to merchandise suppliers increased $63,000 during the year.
4. Accrued expenses payable increased $145,000 during the year.

HAUSER COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales		$5,200,000
Cost of goods sold		
Beginning inventory	$1,780,000	
Purchases	3,430,000	
Goods available for sale	5,210,000	
Ending inventory	1,920,000	
Total cost of goods sold		3,290,000
Gross profit		1,910,000
Operating expenses		
Selling expenses	420,000	
Administrative expense	525,000	
Depreciation expense	105,000	
Amortization expense	15,000	1,065,000
Net income		$ 845,000

Instructions
Prepare the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2012, for Hauser Company, using the indirect method.

Cash from operations $1,148,000

***P12-4B** Data for Hauser Company are presented in P12-3B.

Prepare the operating activities section—direct method.
(SO 6), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows using the direct method.

Cash from operations $1,148,000

P12-5B The income statement of Zamora Inc. reported the following condensed information.

Prepare the operating activities section—indirect method.
(SO 4), **AP**

ZAMORA INC.
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Revenues	$560,000
Operating expenses	400,000
Income from operations	160,000
Income tax expense	47,000
Net income	$113,000

Zamora's balance sheet contained these comparative data at December 31.

	2012	2011
Accounts receivable	$60,000	$75,000
Accounts payable	35,000	48,000
Income taxes payable	14,000	6,000

Zamora has no depreciable assets. Accounts payable pertain to operating expenses.

Instructions
Prepare the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows using the indirect method.

Cash from operations $123,000

***P12-6B** Data for Zamora Inc. are presented in P12-5B.

Prepare the operating activities section—direct method.
(SO 6), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the operating activities section of the statement of cash flows using the direct method.

Cash from operations $123,000

P12-7B Shown on the next page are the financial statements of Klemmer Company.

Prepare a statement of cash flows—indirect method, and compute cash-based ratios.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

KLEMMER COMPANY
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets		**2012**		**2011**
Cash		$ 25,000		$ 33,000
Accounts receivable		23,000		14,000
Inventory		41,000		25,000
Property, plant, and equipment	$ 73,000		$ 78,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(27,000)	46,000	(24,000)	54,000
Total		$135,000		$126,000
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity				
Accounts payable		$ 23,000		$ 46,000
Income taxes payable		26,000		23,000
Bonds payable		20,000		10,000
Common stock		25,000		25,000
Retained earnings		41,000		22,000
Total		$135,000		$126,000

KLEMMER COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales		$295,000
Cost of goods sold		194,000
Gross profit		101,000
Selling expenses	$28,000	
Administrative expenses	9,000	37,000
Income from operations		64,000
Interest expense		7,000
Income before income taxes		57,000
Income tax expense		13,000
Net income		$ 44,000

Additional data:

1. Depreciation expense was $6,000.
2. Dividends of $25,000 were declared and paid.
3. During the year, equipment was sold for $10,000 cash. This equipment cost $13,000 originally and had accumulated depreciation of $3,000 at the time of sale.
4. Additional equipment was purchased for $8,000 cash.

Instructions

(a) Cash from operations $5,000

(a) Prepare a statement of cash flows using the indirect method.
(b) Compute these cash-based measures:
  (1) Current cash debt coverage ratio.
  (2) Cash debt coverage ratio.
  (3) Free cash flow.

Prepare a statement of cash flows—direct method, and compute cash-based ratios.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

(a) Cash from operations $5,000

***P12-8B** Data for Klemmer Company are presented in P12-7B. Further analysis reveals the following.

1. Accounts payable pertains to merchandise creditors.
2. All operating expenses except for depreciation are paid in cash.
3. All depreciation expense is in the selling expense category.
4. All sales and purchases are on account.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a statement of cash flows using the direct method.
(b) Compute these cash-based measures:
  (1) Current cash debt coverage ratio.
  (2) Cash debt coverage ratio.
  (3) Free cash flow.

P12-9B Condensed financial data of Cadet Company are shown below.

Prepare a statement of cash flows—indirect method.
(SO 4), **AP**

CADET COMPANY
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	**2012**	**2011**
Cash	$ 78,700	$ 33,400
Accounts receivable	72,970	37,000
Inventory	121,900	102,650
Long-term investments	89,500	107,000
Plant assets	320,000	205,000
Accumulated depreciation	(49,500)	(40,000)
Total	$633,570	$445,050
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Accounts payable	$ 57,700	$ 48,280
Accrued expenses payable	15,100	18,830
Bonds payable	140,000	70,000
Common stock	250,000	200,000
Retained earnings	170,770	107,940
Total	$633,570	$445,050

CADET COMPANY
Income Statement Data
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales		$294,500
Gain on sale of plant assets		3,000
		297,500
Less:		
Cost of goods sold	$104,460	
Operating expenses, excluding depreciation expense	14,670	
Depreciation expense	35,500	
Income taxes	32,100	
Interest expense	2,940	189,670
Net income		$107,830

Additional information:

1. New plant assets costing $151,000 were purchased for cash during the year.
2. Investments were sold at cost.
3. Plant assets costing $36,000 and accumulated depreciation of $26,000 were sold for $13,000.
4. A cash dividend of $45,000 was declared and paid during the year.

Instructions
Prepare a statement of cash flows using the indirect method.

Cash from operations
$90,800

***P12-10B** Data for Cadet Company are presented in P12-9B. Further analysis reveals that accounts payable pertain to merchandise creditors.

Prepare a statement of cash flows—direct method.
(SO 6), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare a statement of cash flows for Cadet Company using the direct method.

Cash from operations
$90,800

P12-11B Presented on the next page are the comparative balance sheets for Lybeck Company at December 31.

Prepare a statement of cash flows—indirect method.
(SO 4), **AP**

LYBECK COMPANY
Comparative Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	**2012**	**2011**
Cash	$ 41,000	$ 47,000
Accounts receivable	67,000	70,000
Inventory	182,000	124,000
Prepaid expenses	12,140	16,540
Land	130,000	150,000
Equipment	205,000	175,000
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	(70,000)	(42,000)
Buildings	270,000	270,000
Accumulated depreciation—buildings	(70,000)	(50,000)
Total	$767,140	$760,540
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Accounts payable	$ 48,000	$ 45,000
Bonds payable	265,000	265,000
Common stock, $1 par	280,000	250,000
Retained earnings	174,140	200,540
Total	$767,140	$760,540

Additional information:

1. Operating expenses include depreciation expense $65,000 and charges from prepaid expenses of $4,400.
2. Land was sold for cash at cost.
3. Cash dividends of $57,000 were paid.
4. Net income for 2012 was $30,600.
5. Equipment was purchased for $70,000 cash. In addition, equipment costing $40,000 with a book value of $23,000 was sold for $25,000 cash.
6. 30,000 shares of $1 par value common stock were issued in exchange for land with a fair value of $30,000.

Instructions

Cash from operations $46,000

Prepare a statement of cash flows for 2012 using the indirect method.

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapters 1 through 11.)

Natalie has prepared the balance sheet and income statement of Cookie & Coffee Creations Inc. and would like you to prepare the cash flow statement.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to find the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.*

BYP12-1 The financial statements of Tootsie Roll Industries are presented in Appendix A.

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) What was the amount of net cash provided by operating activities for 2009? For 2008?

(b) What was the amount of increase or decrease in cash and cash equivalents for the year ended December 31, 2009?

(c) Which method of computing net cash provided by operating activities does Tootsie Roll use?

(d) From your analysis of the 2009 statement of cash flows, was the change in accounts receivable a decrease or an increase? Was the change in inventories a decrease or an increase? Was the change in accounts payable a decrease or an increase?

(e) What was the net cash used by investing activities for 2009?

(f) What was the amount of interest paid in 2009? What was the amount of income taxes paid in 2009?

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP12-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company are presented in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll Industries in Appendix A.

Instructions

(a) Based on the information in these financial statements, compute these 2009 ratios for each company:

(1) Current cash debt coverage.

(2) Cash debt coverage.

(b) What conclusions about the management of cash can you draw from these data?

RESEARCH CASE

BYP12-3 The March 4, 2010, edition of the *Wall Street Journal Online* contains an article by Jeffrey McCracken and Tom McGinty entitled "With Fistfuls of Cash, Firms on Hunt."

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following questions.

(a) How much cash did the nonfinancial (that is, nonbank-like) firms in the Standard and Poor's 500 have at the end of 2009? How big an increase in cash did this represent over the prior year?

(b) What reasons are given in the article for why companies might not want to keep hoarding cash?

(c) What steps did Alcoa take to try to increase the company's cash? Were these efforts successful?

(d) Often, companies issue shares of stock to acquire other companies. This represents a significant noncash transaction. At the time the article was written, why were many companies using cash rather than stock to acquire other companies?

(e) In addition to acquisitions, what other steps can companies take to reduce their cash balances?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP12-4 The incredible growth of Amazon.com has put fear into the hearts of traditional retailers. Its stock price has soared to amazing levels. However, in 2001 many investors were very concerned about whether Amazon would survive since it had never earned a profit, and it was burning through cash. Some investors sold, but others decided to hold on to their investment in the company's stock. The following information is taken from the 2001 and 2004 financial statements of Amazon.com.

($ in millions)	2001	2004
Current assets	$1,207.9	$2,539.4
Total assets	1,637.5	3,248.5
Current liabilities	921.4	1,620.4
Total liabilities	3,077.5	5,096.1
Cash provided by operations	(119.8)	566.6
Capital expenditures	50.3	89.1
Dividends paid	0	0
Net income (loss)	(567.3)	588.5
Average current liabilities	948.2	1,436.6
Average total liabilities	3,090.0	4,773.4

Instructions

(a) Calculate the current ratio and current cash debt coverage ratio for Amazon.com for 2001 and 2004, and discuss its comparative liquidity.

(b) Calculate the cash debt coverage ratio and the debt to total assets ratio for Amazon.com for 2001 and 2004, and discuss its comparative solvency.

(c) Amazon.com has avoided purchasing large warehouses. Instead, it has used those of others. In order to increase customer satisfaction Amazon may have to build its own warehouses. Calculate free cash flow for Amazon.com for 2001 and 2004, and discuss its ability to purchase warehouses and to finance expansion from internally generated cash.

(d) Based on your findings in parts (a) through (c), can you conclude whether or not Amazon.com's amazing stock price is justified?

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP12-5 ***Purpose:*** Use the Internet to view SEC filings.

Address: **biz.yahoo.com/i**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Enter a company's name.
2. Choose **Quote**. Answer questions (a) and (b).
3. Choose **Profile**; then choose **SEC**. Answer questions (c) and (d).

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) What company did you select?

(b) What is its stock symbol? What is its selling price?

(c) What recent SEC filings are available for your viewing?

(d) Which filing is the most recent? What is the date?

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP12-6 Bob Soakup and Clare Karr are examining the following statement of cash flows for Baldwin Company for the year ended January 31, 2012.

BALDWIN COMPANY
Statement of Cash Flows
For the Year Ended January 31, 2012

Sources of cash	
From sales of merchandise	$385,000
From sale of capital stock	405,000
From sale of investment (purchased below)	80,000
From depreciation	55,000
From issuance of note for truck	20,000
From interest on investments	6,000
Total sources of cash	951,000

(continues on next page)

Uses of cash	
For purchase of fixtures and equipment	320,000
For merchandise purchased for resale	258,000
For operating expenses (including depreciation)	170,000
For purchase of investment	75,000
For purchase of truck by issuance of note	20,000
For purchase of treasury stock	10,000
For interest on note payable	3,000
Total uses of cash	856,000
Net increase in cash	$ 95,000

Bob claims that Baldwin's statement of cash flows is an excellent portrayal of a superb first year with cash increasing $95,000. Clare replies that it was not a superb first year. Rather, she says, the year was an operating failure, that the statement is presented incorrectly, and that $95,000 is not the actual increase in cash. The cash balance at the beginning of the year was $140,000.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following.

(a) Using the data provided, prepare a statement of cash flows in proper form using the indirect method. The only noncash items in the income statement are depreciation and the gain from the sale of the investment.

(b) With whom do you agree, Bob or Clare? Explain your position.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP12-7 Alex Mabry, the owner-president of Computer Services Company, is unfamiliar with the statement of cash flows that you, as his accountant, prepared. He asks for further explanation.

Instructions

Write him a brief memo explaining the form and content of the statement of cash flows as shown in Illustration 12-14 (page 638).

ETHICS CASE

BYP12-8 Riverside Automotive Corp. is a medium-sized wholesaler of automotive parts. It has 10 stockholders who have been paid a total of $1 million in cash dividends for 8 consecutive years. The board's policy requires that, for this dividend to be declared, net cash provided by operating activities as reported in Riverside Automotive's current year's statement of cash flows must exceed $1 million. President and CEO Carl Stewart's job is secure so long as he produces annual operating cash flows to support the usual dividend.

At the end of the current year, controller Mark Heger presents president Carl Stewart with some disappointing news: The net cash provided by operating activities is calculated by the indirect method to be only $970,000. The president says to Mark, "We must get that amount above $1 million. Isn't there some way to increase operating cash flow by another $30,000?" Mark answers, "These figures were prepared by my assistant. I'll go back to my office and see what I can do." The president replies, "I know you won't let me down, Mark."

Upon close scrutiny of the statement of cash flows, Mark concludes that he can get the operating cash flows above $1 million by reclassifying a $60,000, 2-year note payable listed in the financing activities section as "Proceeds from bank loan—$60,000." He will report the note instead as "Increase in payables—$60,000" and treat it as an adjustment of net income in the operating activities section. He returns to the president, saying, "You can tell the board to declare their usual dividend. Our net cash flow provided by operating activities is $1,030,000." "Good man, Mark! I knew I could count on you," exults the president.

Instructions

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?

(b) Was there anything unethical about the president's actions? Was there anything unethical about the controller's actions?

(c) Are the board members or anyone else likely to discover the misclassification?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP12-9 In this chapter, you learned that companies prepare a statement of cash flows in order to keep track of their sources and uses of cash and to help them plan for their future cash needs. Planning for your own short- and long-term cash needs is every bit as important as it is for a company.

Instructions

Read the article "Financial 'Uh-oh'? No Problem," at **www.fool.com/savings/shortterm/02.htm**, and answer the following questions.

(a) Describe the three factors that determine how much money you should set aside for short-term needs.
(b) How many months of living expenses does the article suggest to set aside?
(c) Estimate how much you should set aside based upon your current situation. Are you closer to Cliff's scenario or to Prudence's?

FASB CODIFICATION ACTIVITY

BYP12-10 If your school has a subscription to the FASB Codification, go to **http://aaahq.org/ascLogin.cfm** to log in and prepare responses to the following. Use the Master Glossary to determine the proper definitions.

(a) What are cash equivalents?
(b) What are financing activities?
(c) What are investing activities?
(d) What are operating activities?
(e) What is the primary objective for the statement of cash flow? Is working capital the basis for meeting this objective?
(f) Do companies need to disclose information about investing and financing activities that do not affect cash receipts or cash payments? If so, how should such information be disclosed?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 626 Net *What*? **Q:** In general, why do differences exist between net income and net cash provided by operating activities? **A:** The differences are explained by differences in the timing of the reporting of revenues and expenses under accrual accounting versus cash. Under accrual accounting, companies report revenues when earned, even if cash hasn't been received, and they report expenses when incurred, even if cash hasn't been paid.

p. 629 Operating with Negative Cash **Q:** Why do companies have negative cash from operations during the introductory phase? **A:** During the introductory phase, companies usually spend more on inventory than the amount expensed for cost of goods sold because they are building up inventory and their cash collections frequently lag the amount reported for sales. Therefore, even if companies are reporting positive net income, they frequently report negative cash from operations.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. c **2.** a **3.** b **4.** a **5.** c **6.** d **7.** b **8.** c **9.** a **10.** d ($132,000 + $10,000 + $6,000 − $12,000) **11.** b **12.** b ($200,000 + $40,000 − $10,000 + $20,000 − $30,000) **13.** a ($100,000 + $50,000 − $30,000) **14.** b ($100,000 + $60,000 − $30,000) **15.** d **16.** d ***17.** c ($129,000 + ($44,000 − $42,000)) ***18.** d

IFRS A Look at IFRS

As in GAAP, the statement of cash flows is a required statement for IFRS. In addition, the content and presentation of an IFRS statement of cash flows is similar to the one used for GAAP. However, the disclosure requirements related to the statement of cash flows are more extensive under GAAP. *IAS 7* ("Cash Flow Statements") provides the overall IFRS requirements for cash flow information.

KEY POINTS

- Companies preparing financial statements under IFRS must prepare a statement of cash flows as an integral part of the financial statements.
- Both IFRS and GAAP require that the statement of cash flows should have three major sections—operating, investing, and financing—along with changes in cash and cash equivalents.

- Similar to GAAP, the cash flow statement can be prepared using either the indirect or direct method under IFRS. In both U.S. and international settings, companies choose for the most part to use the indirect method for reporting net cash flows from operating activities.
- The definition of cash equivalents used in IFRS is similar to that used in GAAP. A major difference is that in certain situations, bank overdrafts are considered part of cash and cash equivalents under IFRS (which is not the case in GAAP). Under GAAP, bank overdrafts are classified as financing activities in the statement of cash flows and are reported as liabilities on the balance sheet.
- IFRS requires that noncash investing and financing activities be excluded from the statement of cash flows. Instead, these noncash activities should be reported elsewhere. This requirement is interpreted to mean that noncash investing and financing activities should be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements instead of in the financial statements. Under GAAP, companies may present this information on the face of the cash flow statement.
- One area where there can be substantial differences between IFRS and GAAP relates to the classification of interest, dividends, and taxes. The following table indicates the differences between the two approaches.

Item	IFRS	GAAP
Interest paid	Operating or financing	Operating
Interest received	Operating or investing	Operating
Dividends paid	Operating or financing	Financing
Dividends received	Operating or investing	Operating
Taxes paid	Operating—unless specific identification with financing or investing activity	Operating

- Under IFRS, some companies present the operating section in a single line item, with a full reconciliation provided in the notes to the financial statements. This presentation is not seen under GAAP.
- Similar to GAAP, under IFRS companies must disclose the amount of taxes and interest paid. Under GAAP, companies disclose this in the notes to the financial statements. Under IFRS, some companies disclose this information in the notes, but others provide individual line items on the face of the statement. In order to provide this information on the face of the statement, companies first add back the amount of interest expense and tax expense (similar to adding back depreciation expense) and then further down the statement they subtract the cash amount paid for interest and taxes. This treatment can be seen in the statement of cash flows provided for Zetar in Appendix C.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

Presently, the FASB and the IASB are involved in a joint project on the presentation and organization of information in the financial statements. One interesting approach, revealed in a published proposal from that project, is that in the future the income statement and balance sheet would adopt headings similar to those of the statement of cash flows. That is, the income statement and balance sheet would be broken into operating, investing, and financing sections.

With respect to the cash flow statement specifically, the notion of *cash equivalents* will probably not be retained. That is, cash equivalents will not be combined with cash but instead will be reported as a form of highly liquid, low-risk investment. The definition of cash in the existing literature would be retained, and the statement of cash flows would present information on changes in cash only. In addition, the FASB favors presentation of operating cash flows using the direct method only. However, the majority of IASB members express a preference for not requiring use of the direct method of reporting operating cash flows. The two Boards will have to resolve their differences in this area in order to issue a converged standard for the statement of cash flows.

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. Under IFRS, interest paid can be reported as:
(a) only a financing element.
(b) a financing element or an investing element.
(c) a financing element or an operating element.
(d) only an operating element.

2. IFRS requires that noncash items:
   (a) be reported in the section to which they relate, that is, a noncash investing activity would be reported in the investing section.
   (b) be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.
   (c) do not need to be reported.
   (d) be treated in a fashion similar to cash equivalents.
3. In the future, it appears likely that:
   (a) the income statement and balance sheet will have headings of operating, investing, and financing, much like the statement of cash flows.
   (b) cash and cash equivalents will be combined in a single line item.
   (c) the IASB will not allow companies to use the direct approach to the statement of cash flows.
   (d) None of the above.
4. Under IFRS:
   (a) taxes are always treated as an operating item.
   (b) the income statement uses the headings operating, investing, and financing.
   (c) dividends received can be either an operating or investing item.
   (d) dividends paid can be either an operating or investing item.
5. Which of the following is *correct*?
   (a) Under IFRS, the statement of cash flows is optional.
   (b) IFRS requires use of the direct approach in preparing the statement of cash flows.
   (c) The majority of companies following GAAP and the majority following IFRS employ the indirect approach to the statement of cash flows.
   (d) Cash and cash equivalents are reported as separate line items under IFRS.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS 12-1 Discuss the differences that exist in the treatment of bank overdrafts under GAAP and IFRS.

IFRS12-2 Describe the treatment of each of the following items under IFRS versus GAAP.
(a) Interest paid.
(b) Interest received.
(c) Dividends paid.
(d) Dividends received.

IFRS 12-3 Explain how the treatment of cash equivalents will probably change in the future.

INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Zetar plc*

IFRS12-4 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C. The company's complete annual report, including the notes to its financial statements, is available at **www.zetarplc.com**.

Instructions
Use the company's annual report to answer the following questions.
(a) In which section (operating, investing, or financing) does Zetar report interest paid?
(b) Explain why the amount that Zetar reports for cash and cash equivalents in its statement of cash flows is negative.
(c) If Zetar reported under GAAP rather than IFRS, how would its treatment of bank overdrafts differ?
(d) Zetar's statement of cash flows reports negative "net movement in working capital" in 2009 of £2,469 (in thousands). According to the statement of cash flows, what were the components of this "net movement"?

Answers to IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. c **2.** b **3.** a **4.** c **5.** c

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 13

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS: THE BIG PICTURE

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 692 ◯ p. 696 ◯ p. 704 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 721 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯
- Read **A Look at IFRS** p. 743 ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Understand the concept of sustainable income.
2. Indicate how irregular items are presented.
3. Explain the concept of comprehensive income.
4. Describe and apply horizontal analysis.
5. Describe and apply vertical analysis.
6. Identify and compute ratios used in analyzing a company's liquidity, solvency, and profitability.
7. Understand the concept of quality of earnings.

the navigator

feature story

IT PAYS TO BE PATIENT

A recent issue of *Forbes* magazine listed Warren Buffett as the richest person in the world. His estimated wealth was $62 billion, give or take a few million. How much is $62 billion? If you invested $62 billion in an investment earning just 4%, you could spend $6.8 million per day—every day—forever. How did Mr. Buffett amass this wealth? Through careful investing.

However, if you think you might want to follow Mr. Buffett's example and transform your humble nest egg into a mountain of cash, be warned: His techniques have been widely circulated and emulated, but never practiced with the same degree of success.

Mr. Buffett epitomizes a "value investor." To this day, he applies the same basic techniques he learned in the 1950s from the great value investor Benjamin Graham. That means he spends his time looking for companies that have good long-term potential but are currently underpriced. He invests in companies that have low exposure to debt and that reinvest their earnings for future growth. He does not get caught up in fads or the latest trends. Instead, he looks for companies in industries with sound economics and ones that have high returns on stockholders' equity. He looks for steady earnings trends and high margins.

Mr. Buffett sat out on the dot-com mania in the 1990s. When other investors put lots of money into fledgling high-tech firms, Mr. Buffett didn't bite because he did not find dot-com companies that met his criteria. He didn't get to enjoy the stock price boom on the way up, but on the other hand, he didn't have to ride the price back down to Earth. Instead, when the dot-com bubble burst and nearly everyone else was suffering from investment shock, Mr. Buffett swooped in and scooped up deals on companies that he had been following for years.

So, how does Mr. Buffett spend his money? Basically, he doesn't! He still lives in the same house that he purchased in Omaha, Nebraska, in 1958 for $31,500. He still drives his own car (a Cadillac DTS). And, in case you were thinking that his kids are riding the road to Easy Street, think again. Mr. Buffett has committed to giving virtually all of his money to charity before he dies.

Given that neither you nor anyone else will be inheriting Mr. Buffett's riches, you should probably start honing your financial analysis skills. A good way for you to begin your career as a successful investor is to master the fundamentals of financial analysis discussed in this chapter.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 13 . . .

- **What Does "Non-Recurring" Really Mean?** *(p. 689)*
- **How to Manage the Current Ratio** *(p. 700)*
- **High Ratings Can Bring Low Returns** *(p. 701)*
- **Are Annual Reports Worth Their Weight?** *(p. 704)*

preview of chapter 13

We can all learn an important lesson from Warren Buffett: Study companies carefully if you wish to invest. Do not get caught up in fads but instead find companies that are financially healthy. Using some of the basic decision tools presented in this book, you can perform a rudimentary analysis on any U.S. company and draw basic conclusions about its financial health. Although it would not be wise for you to bet your life savings on a company's stock, relying solely on your current level of knowledge, we strongly encourage you to practice your new skills wherever possible. Only with practice will you improve your ability to interpret financial numbers.

Before unleashing you on the world of high finance, we will present a few more important concepts and techniques, as well as provide you with one more comprehensive review of corporate financial statements. We use all of the decision tools presented in this textbook to analyze a single company, with comparisons to a competitor and industry averages.

The content and organization of Chapter 13 are as follows.

Financial Analysis: The Big Picture

Sustainable Income	Comparative Analysis	Ratio Analysis	Quality of Earnings
• Irregular items • Changes in accounting principle • Comprehensive income	• Horizontal analysis • Vertical analysis	• Liquidity ratios • Solvency ratios • Profitability ratios	• Alternative accounting methods • Pro forma income • Improper recognition • Price-earnings ratio

the navigator

Sustainable Income

study objective 1

Understand the concept of sustainable income.

Ultimately, the value of a company is a function of its future cash flows. When analysts use this year's net income to estimate future cash flows, they must make sure that this year's net income does not include irregular (i.e., out of the ordinary) revenues, expenses, gains, or losses. Net income adjusted for irregular items is referred to as **sustainable income**. **Sustainable income is the most likely level of income to be obtained in the future.** Sustainable income differs from actual net income by the amount of irregular revenues, expenses, gains, and losses included in this year's net income.

Users are interested in sustainable income because it helps them derive an estimate of future earnings without the "noise" of irregular items. For example, suppose Rye Corporation reports that this year's net income is $500,000 but included in that amount is a once-in-a-lifetime gain of $400,000. In estimating next year's net income for Rye Corporation, we would likely ignore this $400,000 gain and estimate that next year's net income will be in the neighborhood of $100,000. That is, based on this year's results, the company's sustainable income is roughly $100,000. Therefore, identifying irregular items is important if you are going to use reported earnings to estimate a company's value.

In earlier chapters, you learned how to prepare and use a basic multiple-step income statement. In this chapter, we will explain additional components of the income statement as well as a broader measure of performance called *comprehensive income*. Illustration 13-1 presents the components of the income statement and comprehensive income; new items are presented in red. When estimating future cash flows, analysts must consider the implications that each of these components has for future cash flows.

Illustration 13-1
Components of the income statement

Income Statement	
Sales	$XX
Cost of goods sold	XX
Gross profit	XX
Operating expenses	XX
Income from operations	XX
Other revenues (expenses) and gains (losses)	XX
Income before income taxes	XX
Income tax expense	XX
Income before irregular items	XX
Discontinued operations (net of tax)	XX
Extraordinary items (net of tax)	XX
Net income	XX
Other comprehensive income items (net of tax)	XX
Comprehensive income	$XX

IRREGULAR ITEMS

study objective 2
Indicate how irregular items are presented.

As an aid in determining sustainable income, we identify irregular items by type on the income statement. There, companies report two types of irregular items:

1. Discontinued operations
2. Extraordinary items

Irregular items are reported net of income taxes. That is, a company first calculates income tax expense for the income before irregular items. Then, it calculates income tax expense for each individual irregular item. The general concept is, "Let the tax follow the income or loss."

Discontinued Operations

To downsize its operations, General Dynamics Corp. sold its missile business to Hughes Aircraft Co. for $450 million. In its income statement, General Dynamics reported the sale in a separate section entitled "Discontinued operations." **Discontinued operations** refers to the disposal of a significant component of a business, such as the elimination of a major class of customers or an entire activity. When the disposal of a significant component occurs, the income statement should report the gain (or loss) from discontinued operations, net of tax.

To illustrate, assume that Rozek Inc. has revenues of $2.5 million and expenses of $1.7 million from continuing operations in 2012. The company therefore has income before income taxes of $800,000. During 2012, the company discontinued and sold its unprofitable chemical division. The loss on disposal of the chemical division (net of $90,000 tax savings) was $210,000. Illustration 13-2 shows the income statement presentation, assuming a 30% tax rate on income before income taxes.

Illustration 13-2
Statement presentation of discontinued operations

ROZEK INC. Income Statement (partial) For the Year Ended December 31, 2012	
Income before income taxes	$ 800,000
Income tax expense	240,000
Income before irregular items	560,000
Discontinued operations	
Loss from disposal of chemical division, net of $90,000 income tax savings	**(210,000)**
Net income	$ 350,000

This presentation clearly indicates the separate effects of continuing operations and discontinued operations on net income.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has the company sold any major components of its business?	Discontinued operations section of income statement	Anything reported in this section indicates that the company has discontinued a major component of its business.	If a major component has been discontinued, its results during the current period should not be included in estimates of future net income.

Extraordinary Items

Extraordinary items are events and transactions that meet two conditions: They are **unusual in nature** and **infrequent in occurrence**. To be considered *unusual*, the item should be abnormal and only incidentally related to the customary activities of the entity. To be regarded as *infrequent*, the event or transaction should not be reasonably expected to recur in the foreseeable future.

A company must evaluate both criteria in terms of the environment in which it operates. Thus, Weyerhaeuser Co. reported the $36 million in damages to its timberland caused by the eruption of Mount St. Helens as an extraordinary item because the event was both unusual and infrequent. In contrast, Florida Citrus Company does not report frost damage to its citrus crop as an extraordinary item because frost damage is not viewed as infrequent.

Helpful Hint Ordinary gains and losses are reported at pretax amounts in arriving at income before income taxes.

Companies report extraordinary items net of taxes in a separate section of the income statement, immediately below discontinued operations. To illustrate, assume that in 2012 a revolutionary foreign government expropriated property held as an investment by Rozek Inc. If the loss is $70,000 before applicable income tax savings of $21,000, the income statement presentation will show a deduction of $49,000, as in Illustration 13-3.

Illustration 13-3 Statement presentation of extraordinary items

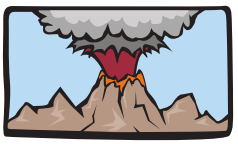
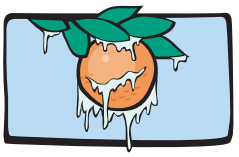
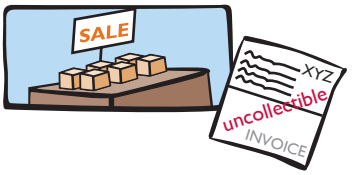
ROZEK INC.
Income Statement (partial)
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Income before income taxes	$ 800,000
Income tax expense	240,000
Income before irregular items	560,000
Discontinued operations: Loss from disposal of chemical division, net of $90,000 income tax savings	(210,000)
Extraordinary item: Expropriation of investment, net of $21,000 income tax savings	**(49,000)**
Net income	$ 301,000

If a transaction or event meets one but not both of the criteria for an extraordinary item, a company should report it as a separate line item in the upper portion of the income statement, rather than in the bottom portion as an extraordinary item. Usually, companies report these items under either "Other revenues and gains" or "Other expenses and losses" at their gross amount (not net of tax). This is true, for example, of gains (losses) resulting from the sale of property,

plant, and equipment, as explained in Chapter 9. Illustration 13-4 shows the appropriate classification of extraordinary and ordinary items.

Illustration 13-4
Classification of extraordinary and ordinary items

Extraordinary items	Ordinary items
1. Effects of major natural casualties, if rare in the area. 	1. Effects of major natural casualties, not uncommon in the area. 
2. Expropriation (takeover) of property by a foreign government.	2. Write-down of inventories or write-off of receivables. 
3. Effects of a newly enacted law or regulation, such as a condemnation action.	3. Losses attributable to labor strikes.
	4. Gains or losses from sales of property, plant, or equipment.

In summary, in evaluating a company, it generally makes sense to eliminate all irregular items in estimating future sustainable income.

Investor Insight

What Does "Non-Recurring" Really Mean?

Many companies incur restructuring charges as they attempt to reduce costs. They often label these items in the income statement as "non-recurring" charges, to suggest that they are isolated events, unlikely to occur in future periods. The question for analysts is, are these costs really one-time, "non-recurring events," or do they reflect problems that the company will be facing for many periods in the future? If they are one-time events, then they can be largely ignored when trying to predict future earnings.

But, some companies report "one-time" restructuring charges over and over again. For example, Procter and Gamble Co. reported a restructuring charge in 12 consecutive quarters, and Motorola had "special" charges in 14 consecutive quarters. On the other hand, other companies have a restructuring charge only once in a 5- or 10-year period. There appears to be no substitute for careful analysis of the numbers that comprise net income.

? If a company takes a large restructuring charge, what is the effect on the company's current income statement versus future ones? (See page 742.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has the company experienced any extraordinary events or transactions?	Extraordinary item section of income statement	Anything reported in this section indicates that the company experienced an event that was both unusual and infrequent.	These items should usually be ignored in estimating future net income.

Ethics Note Changes in accounting principle should result in financial statements that are more informative for statement users. They should not be used to artificially improve the reported performance or financial position of the corporation.

CHANGES IN ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLE

For ease of comparison, users of financial statements expect companies to prepare their statements on a basis **consistent** with the preceding period. A **change in accounting principle** occurs when the principle used in the current year is different from the one used in the preceding year. An example is a change in inventory costing methods (such as FIFO to average-cost). Accounting rules permit a change when management can show that the new principle is preferable to the old principle.

Companies report most changes in accounting principle retroactively.[1] That is, they report both the current period and previous periods using the new principle. As a result, the same principle applies in all periods. This treatment improves the ability to compare results across years.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has the company changed any of its accounting principles?	Effect of change in accounting principle on current and prior periods.	Management indicates that the new principle is preferable to the old principle.	Examine current and prior years' reported income, using new-principle basis to assess trends for estimating future income.

study objective 3

Explain the concept of comprehensive income.

COMPREHENSIVE INCOME

Most revenues, expenses, gains, and losses are included in net income. However, certain gains and losses bypass net income. Instead, companies record these items as direct adjustments to stockholders' equity. Many analysts have expressed concern about this practice because they believe it reduces the usefulness of the income statement. To address this concern, the FASB requires companies to report not only net income but also comprehensive income. **Comprehensive income** includes all changes in stockholders' equity during a period except those changes resulting from investments by stockholders and distributions to stockholders.

Illustration of Comprehensive Income

Accounting standards require that companies adjust most investments in stocks and bonds up or down to their market value at the end of each accounting period. For example, assume that during 2012 Stassi Company purchased IBM stock for $10,000 as an investment. At the end of 2012, Stassi was still holding the investment, but the stock's market value was now $8,000. In this case, Stassi is required to reduce the recorded value of its IBM investment by $2,000. The $2,000 difference is an unrealized loss.

[1]An exception to the general rule is a change in depreciation methods. The effects of this change are reported in current and future periods. Discussion of this approach is left for more advanced courses.

Should Stassi include this $2,000 unrealized loss in net income? It depends on whether Stassi classifies the IBM stock as a trading security or an available-for-sale security. A **trading security** is bought and held primarily for sale in the near term to generate income on short-term price differences. Companies report unrealized losses on trading securities in the "Other expenses and losses" section of the income statement. The rationale: It is likely that the company will realize the unrealized loss (or an unrealized gain), so the company should report the loss (gain) as part of net income.

If Stassi did not purchase the investment for trading purposes, it is classified as available-for-sale. **Available-for-sale securities** are held with the intent of selling them sometime in the future. Companies do not include unrealized gains or losses on available-for-sale securities in net income. Instead, they report them as part of "Other comprehensive income." Other comprehensive income is not included in net income. It bypasses net income and is recorded as a direct adjustment to stockholders' equity.

Format

One format for reporting comprehensive income is to report a combined statement of income and comprehensive income.[2] For example, assuming that Stassi Company has a net income of $300,000, the unrealized loss would be reported below net income as follows.

Illustration 13-5 Lower portion of combined statement of income and comprehensive income

STASSI CORPORATION Combined Statement of Income and Comprehensive Income (partial)	
Net income	$300,000
Unrealized loss on available-for-sale securities	2,000
Comprehensive income	$298,000

Companies also report the unrealized loss on available-for-sale securities as a separate component of stockholders' equity. To illustrate, assume Stassi Corporation has common stock of $3,000,000, retained earnings of $1,500,000, and an unrealized loss on available-for-sale securities of $2,000. Illustration 13-6 shows the balance sheet presentation of the unrealized loss.

Illustration 13-6 Unrealized loss in stockholders' equity section

STASSI CORPORATION Balance Sheet (partial)	
Stockholders' equity	
Common stock	$3,000,000
Retained earnings	1,500,000
Total paid-in capital and retained earnings	4,500,000
Less: Unrealized loss on available-for-sale securities	**(2,000)**
Total stockholders' equity	$4,498,000

[2]Computation of comprehensive income is sometimes shown in a separate statement of comprehensive income or as a section in the stockholders' equity statement.

Note that the presentation of the loss is similar to the presentation of the cost of treasury stock in the stockholders' equity section. (An unrealized gain would be added in this section of the balance sheet.) Reporting the unrealized gain or loss in the stockholders' equity section serves two important purposes: (1) It reduces the volatility of net income due to fluctuations in fair value, and (2) it informs the financial statement user of the gain or loss that would occur if the company sold the securities at fair value.

Complete Income Statement

The income statement for Pace Corporation in Illustration 13-7 presents the types of items found on this statement, such as net sales, cost of goods sold, operating expenses, and income taxes. In addition, it shows how companies report irregular items and comprehensive income (highlighted in red).

Illustration 13-7
Complete income statement

PACE CORPORATION
Income Statement and
Statement of Comprehensive Income
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Net sales		$440,000
Cost of goods sold		260,000
Gross profit		180,000
Operating expenses		110,000
Income from operations		70,000
Other revenues and gains	$ 5,600	
Other expenses and losses	(9,600)	(4,000)
Income before income taxes		66,000
Income tax expense ($66,000 × 30%)		19,800
Income before irregular items		46,200
Discontinued operations: Gain on disposal of Plastics Division, net of $15,000 income taxes ($50,000 × 30%)		**35,000**
Extraordinary item: Tornado loss, net of income tax savings $18,000 ($60,000 × 30%)		**(42,000)**
Net income		**39,200**
Add: Unrealized gain on available-for-sale securities		**10,000**
Comprehensive income		**$ 49,200**

CONCLUDING REMARKS

We have shown that the computation of the correct net income number can be elusive. In assessing the future prospects of a company, some investors focus on income from operations and therefore ignore all irregular and other items. Others use measures such as net income, comprehensive income, or some modified version of one of these amounts.

before you go on...

IRREGULAR ITEMS

Do it! In its draft 2012 income statement, AIR Corporation reports income before income taxes $400,000, extraordinary loss due to earthquake $100,000, income taxes $120,000 (not including irregular items), and loss on disposal of discontinued flower division $140,000. The income tax rate is 30%. Prepare a correct income statement, beginning with income before income taxes.

Solution

AIR CORPORATION Income Statement (partial)	
Income before income taxes	$400,000
Income tax expense	120,000
Income before irregular items	280,000
Discontinued operations	
Loss on disposal of discontinued flower division, net of $42,000 tax savings	(98,000)
Extraordinary earthquake loss net of $30,000 tax savings	(70,000)
Net income	$112,000

Related exercise material: **BE13-1, BE13-2, BE13-3, Do it! 13-1,** and **E13-1.**

Action Plan

- Recall that a loss is extraordinary if it is both unusual and infrequent.
- Disclose the income tax effect of each component of income, beginning with income before any irregular items.
- Show discontinued operations before extraordinary items.

the navigator

Comparative Analysis

As indicated, in assessing the financial performance of a company, investors are interested in the core or sustainable earnings of a company. In addition, investors are interested in making comparisons from period to period. Throughout this book, we have relied on three types of comparisons to improve the decision usefulness of financial information:

1. **Intracompany basis.** Comparisons within a company are often useful to detect changes in financial relationships and significant trends. For example, a comparison of Kellogg's current year's cash amount with the prior year's cash amount shows either an increase or a decrease. Likewise, a comparison of Kellogg's year-end cash amount with the amount of its total assets at year-end shows the proportion of total assets in the form of cash.
2. **Intercompany basis.** Comparisons with other companies provide insight into a company's competitive position. For example, investors can compare Kellogg's total sales for the year with the total sales of its competitors in the breakfast cereal area, such as General Mills.
3. **Industry averages.** Comparisons with industry averages provide information about a company's relative position within the industry. For example, financial statement readers can compare Kellogg's financial data with the averages for its industry compiled by financial rating organizations such as Dun & Bradstreet, Moody's, and Standard & Poor's, or with information provided on the Internet by organizations such as Yahoo! on its financial site.

International Note As more countries adopt international accounting standards, the ability of analysts to compare companies from different countries should improve. However, international standards are open to widely varying interpretations. In addition, some countries adopt international standards "with modifications." As a consequence, most cross-country comparisons are still not as transparent as within-country comparisons.

We use three basic tools in financial statement analysis to highlight the significance of financial statement data:

1. Horizontal analysis
2. Vertical analysis
3. Ratio analysis

In previous chapters, we relied primarily on ratio analysis, supplemented with some basic horizontal and vertical analysis. In the remainder of this section, we introduce more formal forms of horizontal and vertical analysis. In the next section, we review ratio analysis in some detail.

HORIZONTAL ANALYSIS

study objective 4
Describe and apply horizontal analysis.

Horizontal analysis, also known as trend analysis, is a technique for evaluating a series of financial statement data over a period of time. Its purpose is to determine the increase or decrease that has taken place, expressed as either an amount or a percentage. For example, here are recent net sales figures (in thousands) of Chicago Cereal Company:

2009	2008	2007	2006	2005
$11,776	$10,907	$10,177	$9,614	$8,812

If we assume that 2005 is the base year, we can measure all percentage increases or decreases relative to this base-period amount with the formula shown in Illustration 13-8.

Illustration 13-8
Horizontal analysis—computation of changes since base period

$$\text{Change Since Base Period} = \frac{\text{Current-Year Amount} - \text{Base-Year Amount}}{\text{Base-Year Amount}}$$

For example, we can determine that net sales for Chicago Cereal increased approximately 9.1% [($9,614 − $8,812) ÷ $8,812] from 2005 to 2006. Similarly, we can also determine that net sales increased by 33.6% [($11,776 − $8,812) ÷ $8,812] from 2005 to 2009.

Alternatively, we can express current-year sales as a percentage of the base period. To do so, we would divide the current-year amount by the base-year amount, as shown in Illustration 13-9.

Illustration 13-9
Horizontal analysis—computation of current year in relation to base year

$$\text{Current Results in Relation to Base Period} = \frac{\text{Current-Year Amount}}{\text{Base-Year Amount}}$$

Current-period sales expressed as a percentage of the base period for each of the five years, using 2005 as the base period, are shown in Illustration 13-10.

Illustration 13-10
Horizontal analysis of net sales

CHICAGO CEREAL COMPANY
Net Sales (in thousands)
Base Period 2005

2009	2008	2007	2006	2005
$11,776	$10,907	$10,177	$9,614	$8,812
133.6%	123.8%	115.5%	109.1%	100%

The large increase in net sales during 2006 would raise questions regarding possible reasons for such a significant change. Chicago Cereal's 2006 notes to the financial statements explain that the company completed an acquisition of Elf Foods Company during 2006. This major acquisition would help explain the increase in sales highlighted by horizontal analysis.

To further illustrate horizontal analysis, we use the financial statements of Chicago Cereal Company. Its two-year condensed balance sheets for 2009 and 2008, showing dollar and percentage changes, are presented in Illustration 13-11.

Illustration 13-11
Horizontal analysis of balance sheets

CHICAGO CEREAL COMPANY
Condensed Balance Sheets
December 31 (in thousands)

			Increase (Decrease) during 2009	
Assets	**2009**	**2008**	**Amount**	**Percent**
Current assets	$ 2,717	$ 2,427	$ 290	11.9
Property assets (net)	2,990	2,816	174	6.2
Other assets	5,690	5,471	219	4.0
Total assets	$11,397	$10,714	$ 683	6.4
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity				
Current liabilities	$ 4,044	$ 4,020	$ 24	.6
Long-term liabilities	4,827	4,625	202	4.4
Total liabilities	8,871	8,645	226	2.6
Stockholders' equity				
Common stock	493	397	96	24.2
Retained earnings	3,390	2,584	806	31.2
Treasury stock (cost)	(1,357)	(912)	(445)	48.8
Total stockholders' equity	2,526	2,069	457	22.1
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$11,397	$10,714	$ 683	6.4

Helpful Hint When using horizontal analysis, be sure to examine both dollar amount changes and percentage changes. It is not necessarily bad if a company's earnings are growing at a declining rate. The **amount** of increase may be the same as or more than the base year, but the **percentage** change may be less because the base is greater each year.

The comparative balance sheets show that a number of changes occurred in Chicago Cereal's financial position from 2008 to 2009. In the assets section, current assets increased $290,000, or 11.9% ($290 ÷ $2,427), and property assets (net) increased $174,000, or 6.2%. Other assets increased $219,000, or 4.0%. In the liabilities section, current liabilities increased $24,000, or 0.6%, while long-term liabilities increased $202,000, or 4.4%. In the stockholders' equity section, we find that retained earnings increased $806,000, or 31.2%.

Illustration 13-12 presents two-year comparative income statements of Chicago Cereal Company for 2009 and 2008, showing dollar and percentage changes.

Illustration 13-12
Horizontal analysis of income statements

CHICAGO CEREAL COMPANY
Condensed Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31 (in thousands)

			Increase (Decrease) during 2009	
	2009	**2008**	**Amount**	**Percent**
Net sales	$11,776	$10,907	$869	8.0
Cost of goods sold	6,597	6,082	515	8.5
Gross profit	5,179	4,825	354	7.3
Selling and administrative expenses	3,311	3,059	252	8.2
Income from operations	1,868	1,766	102	5.8
Interest expense	319	307	12	3.9
Other income (expense), net	(2)	13	(15)	(115.4)
Income before income taxes	1,547	1,472	75	5.1
Income tax expense	444	468	(24)	(5.1)
Net income	$ 1,103	$ 1,004	$ 99	9.9

Helpful Hint Note that, in a horizontal analysis, while the amount column is additive (the total is $99,000), the percentage column is not additive (9.9% is **not a total**).

Horizontal analysis of the income statements shows the following changes: Net sales increased $869,000, or 8.0% ($869 ÷ $10,907). Cost of goods sold increased $515,000, or 8.5% ($515 ÷ $6,082). Selling and administrative expenses increased $252,000, or 8.2% ($252 ÷ $3,059). Overall, gross profit increased 7.3% and net income increased 9.9%. The increase in net income can be attributed to the increase in net sales and a decrease in income tax expense.

The measurement of changes from period to period in percentages is relatively straightforward and quite useful. However, complications can result in making the computations. If an item has no value in a base year or preceding year and a value in the next year, no percentage change can be computed. Likewise, no percentage change can be computed if a negative amount appears in the base or preceding period and a positive amount exists the following year.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How do the company's financial position and operating results compare with those of the previous period?	Income statement and balance sheet	Comparative financial statements should be prepared over at least two years, with the first year reported being the base year. Changes in each line item relative to the base year should be presented both by amount and by percentage. This is called horizontal analysis.	Significant changes should be investigated to determine the reason for the change.

before you go on...

HORIZONTAL ANALYSIS

Do it! Summary financial information for Rosepatch Company is as follows.

	December 31, 2012	December 31, 2011
Current assets	$234,000	$180,000
Plant assets (net)	756,000	420,000
Total assets	$990,000	$600,000

Compute the amount and percentage changes in 2012 using horizontal analysis, assuming 2011 is the base year.

Action Plan

- Find the percentage change by dividing the amount of the increase by the 2011 amount (base year).

Solution

	Increase in 2012	
	Amount	Percent
Current assets	$ 54,000	30% [($234,000 − $180,000) ÷ $180,000]
Plant assets (net)	336,000	80% [($756,000 − $420,000) ÷ $420,000]
Total assets	$390,000	65% [($990,000 − $600,000) ÷ $600,000]

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE13-4, BE13-6, BE13-7, BE13-9, Do it! 13-2,** and **E13-3.**

VERTICAL ANALYSIS

study objective 5

Describe and apply vertical analysis.

Vertical analysis, also called common-size analysis, is a technique for evaluating financial statement data that expresses each item in a financial statement as a **percentage of a base amount**. For example, on a balance sheet we might say that current assets are 22% of total assets (total assets being the base amount). Or, on an income statement we might say that selling expenses are 16% of net sales (net sales being the base amount).

Presented in Illustration 13-13 are the comparative balance sheets of Chicago Cereal for 2009 and 2008, analyzed vertically. The base for the asset items is **total assets**, and the base for the liability and stockholders' equity items is **total liabilities and stockholders' equity**.

Illustration 13-13
Vertical analysis of balance sheets

CHICAGO CEREAL COMPANY
Condensed Balance Sheets
December 31 (in thousands)

	2009		2008	
Assets	**Amount**	**Percent***	**Amount**	**Percent***
Current assets	$ 2,717	23.8	$ 2,427	22.6
Property assets (net)	2,990	26.2	2,816	26.3
Other assets	5,690	50.0	5,471	51.1
Total assets	$11,397	100.0	$10,714	100.0
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity				
Current liabilities	$ 4,044	35.5	$ 4,020	37.5
Long-term liabilities	4,827	42.4	4,625	43.2
Total liabilities	8,871	77.9	8,645	80.7
Stockholders' equity				
Common stock	493	4.3	397	3.7
Retained earnings	3,390	29.7	2,584	24.1
Treasury stock (cost)	(1,357)	(11.9)	(912)	(8.5)
Total stockholders' equity	2,526	22.1	2,069	19.3
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$11,397	100.0	$10,714	100.0

*Numbers have been rounded to total 100%.

In addition to showing the relative size of each category on the balance sheets, vertical analysis can show the percentage change in the individual asset, liability, and stockholders' equity items. In this case, current assets increased $290,000 from 2008 to 2009, and they increased from 22.6% to 23.8% of total assets. Property assets (net) decreased from 26.3% to 26.2% of total assets. Other assets decreased from 51.1% to 50.0% of total assets. Also, retained earnings increased by $806,000 from 2008 to 2009, and total stockholders' equity increased from 19.3% to 22.1% of total liabilities and stockholders' equity. This switch to a higher percentage of equity financing has two causes: First, while total liabilities increased by $226,000, the percentage of liabilities declined from 80.7% to 77.9% of total liabilities and stockholders' equity. Second, retained earnings increased by $806,000, going from 24.1% to 29.7% of total liabilities and stockholders' equity. Thus, the company shifted toward equity financing by relying less on debt and by increasing the amount of retained earnings.

Vertical analysis of the comparative income statements of Chicago Cereal, shown in Illustration 13-14 (page 698), reveals that cost of goods sold **as a percentage of net sales** increased from 55.8% to 56.0%, and selling and administrative expenses increased from 28.0% to 28.1%. Net income as a percentage of net sales increased from 9.1% to 9.4%. Chicago Cereal's increase in net income as a percentage of sales is due primarily to the decrease in interest expense and income tax expense as a percentage of sales.

Illustration 13-14
Vertical analysis of income statements

CHICAGO CEREAL COMPANY
Condensed Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31 (in thousands)

	2009		2008	
	Amount	**Percent***	**Amount**	**Percent***
Net sales	$11,776	100.0	$10,907	100.0
Cost of goods sold	6,597	56.0	6,082	55.8
Gross profit	5,179	44.0	4,825	44.2
Selling and administrative expenses	3,311	28.1	3,059	28.0
Income from operations	1,868	15.9	1,766	16.2
Interest expense	319	2.7	307	2.8
Other income (expense), net	(2)	.0	13	.0
Income before income taxes	1,547	13.2	1,472	13.4
Income tax expense	444	3.8	468	4.3
Net income	$ 1,103	9.4	$ 1,004	9.1

*Numbers have been rounded to total 100%.

Vertical analysis also enables you to compare companies of different sizes. For example, one of Chicago Cereal's competitors is General Mills. General Mills has sales that are 1,000 times larger than those of Chicago Cereal. Using vertical analysis, we can more meaningfully compare the condensed income statements of Chicago Cereal and General Mills, as shown in Illustration 13-15.

Illustration 13-15
Intercompany comparison by vertical analysis

CONDENSED INCOME STATEMENTS
For the Year Ended December 31, 2009

	Chicago Cereal (in thousands)		General Mills, Inc. (in millions)	
	Amount	**Percent***	**Amount**	**Percent***
Net sales	$11,776	100.0	$14,691	100.0
Cost of goods sold	6,597	56.0	9,458	64.4
Gross profit	5,179	44.0	5,233	35.6
Selling and administrative expenses	3,311	28.1	2,954	20.1
Non-recurring charges and (gains)	0	—	(43)	0.3
Income from operations	1,868	15.9	2,322	15.8
Other expenses and revenues (including income taxes)	765	6.5	1,018	6.9
Net income	$ 1,103	9.4	$ 1,304	8.9

*Numbers have been rounded to total 100%.

Although Chicago Cereal's net sales are much less than those of General Mills, vertical analysis eliminates the impact of this size difference for our analysis. Chicago Cereal has a higher gross profit percentage 44.0%, compared to 35.6% for General Mills, but Chicago Cereal's selling and administrative expenses are 28.1% of net sales, while those of General Mills are 20.1% of net sales. Looking at net income, we see that the companies report similar percentages: Chicago Cereal's net income as a percentage of net sales is 9.4%, compared to 8.9% for General Mills.

ANATOMY OF A FRAUD

This final *Anatomy of a Fraud* box demonstrates that sometimes relationships between numbers can be used by companies to detect fraud. The numeric relationships that can reveal fraud can be such things as financial ratios that appear abnormal, or statistical abnormalities in the numbers themselves. For example, the fact that WorldCom's line costs, as a percentage of either total expenses or revenues, differed very significantly from its competitors should have alerted people to the possibility of fraud. Or, consider the case of a bank manager, who cooperated with a group of his friends to defraud the bank's credit card department. The manager's friends would apply for credit cards and then run up balances of slightly less than $5,000. The bank had a policy of allowing bank personnel to write-off balances of less than $5,000 without seeking supervisor approval. The fraud was detected by applying statistical analysis based on Benford's Law. Benford's Law states that in a random collection of numbers, the frequency of lower digits (e.g., 1, 2, or 3) should be much higher than higher digits (e.g., 7, 8, or 9). In this case, bank auditors analyzed the first two digits of amounts written off. There was a spike at 48 and 49, which was not consistent with what would be expected if the numbers were random.

Total take: Thousands of dollars

THE MISSING CONTROL

Independent internal verification. While it might be efficient to allow employees to write off accounts below a certain level, it is important that these write-offs be reviewed and verified periodically. Such a review would likely call attention to an employee with large amounts of write-offs, or in this case, write-offs that were frequently very close to the approval threshold.

Source: Mark J. Nigrini, "I've Got Your Number," *Journal of Accountancy Online* (May 1999).

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How do the relationships between items in this year's financial statements compare with those of last year or those of competitors?	Income statement and balance sheet	Each line item on the income statement should be presented as a percentage of net sales, and each line item on the balance sheet should be presented as a percentage of total assets or total liabilities and stockholders' equity. These percentages should be investigated for differences either across years in the same company or in the same year across different companies. This is called vertical analysis.	Any significant differences either across years or between companies should be investigated to determine the cause.

Ratio Analysis

study objective 6

Identify and compute ratios used in analyzing a company's liquidity, solvency, and profitability.

In previous chapters, we presented many ratios used for evaluating the financial health and performance of a company. Here, we provide a summary listing of those ratios. (Page references to prior discussions are provided if you feel you need to review any individual ratios.) Appendix 13A provides an example of a comprehensive financial analysis employing these ratios.

LIQUIDITY RATIOS

Liquidity ratios (Illustration 13-16) measure the short-term ability of the company to pay its maturing obligations and to meet unexpected needs for cash. Short-term creditors such as bankers and suppliers are particularly interested in assessing liquidity.

Illustration 13-16
Summary of liquidity ratios

Liquidity Ratios		
Working capital	Current assets − Current liabilities	p. 59
Current ratio	$\frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$	p. 59
Current cash debt coverage ratio	$\frac{\text{Cash provided by operations}}{\text{Average current liabilities}}$	p. 643
Inventory turnover ratio	$\frac{\text{Cost of goods sold}}{\text{Average inventory}}$	p. 297
Days in inventory	$\frac{\text{365 days}}{\text{Inventory turnover ratio}}$	p. 297
Receivables turnover ratio	$\frac{\text{Net credit sales}}{\text{Average net receivables}}$	p. 415
Average collection period	$\frac{\text{365 days}}{\text{Receivables turnover ratio}}$	p. 415

Investor Insight

How to Manage the Current Ratio

The apparent simplicity of the current ratio can have real-world limitations because adding equal amounts to both the numerator and the denominator causes the ratio to decrease.

Assume, for example, that a company has $2,000,000 of current assets and $1,000,000 of current liabilities; its current ratio is 2:1. If it purchases $1,000,000 of inventory on account, it will have $3,000,000 of current assets and $2,000,000 of current liabilities; its current ratio decreases to 1.5:1. If, instead, the company pays off $500,000 of its current liabilities, it will have $1,500,000 of current assets and $500,000 of current liabilities; its current ratio increases to 3:1. Thus, any trend analysis should be done with care because the ratio is susceptible to quick changes and is easily influenced by management.

? How might management influence a company's current ratio? (See page 743.)

SOLVENCY RATIOS

Solvency ratios (Illustration 13-17) measure the ability of the company to survive over a long period of time. Long-term creditors and stockholders are interested in a company's long-run solvency, particularly its ability to pay interest as it comes due and to repay the balance of debt at its maturity.

Illustration 13-17
Summary of solvency ratios

Solvency Ratios		
Debt to total assets ratio	$\frac{\text{Total liabilities}}{\text{Total assets}}$	p. 60
Cash debt coverage ratio	$\frac{\text{Cash provided by operations}}{\text{Average total liabilities}}$	p. 644
Times interest earned ratio	$\frac{\text{Net income + Interest expense + Tax expense}}{\text{Interest expense}}$	p. 529
Free cash flow	Cash provided by operations − Capital expenditures − Cash dividends	p. 62

PROFITABILITY RATIOS

Profitability ratios (Illustration 13-18) measure the income or operating success of a company for a given period of time. A company's income, or lack of it, affects its ability to obtain debt and equity financing, its liquidity position, and its ability to grow. As a consequence, creditors and investors alike are interested in evaluating profitability. Profitability is frequently used as the ultimate test of management's operating effectiveness.

Illustration 13-18
Summary of profitability ratios

Profitability Ratios		
Earnings per share	$\frac{\text{Net income} - \text{Preferred stock dividends}}{\text{Average common shares outstanding}}$	p. 56
Price-earnings ratio	$\frac{\text{Stock price per share}}{\text{Earnings per share}}$	p. 703
Gross profit rate	$\frac{\text{Gross profit}}{\text{Net sales}}$	p. 246
Profit margin ratio	$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Net sales}}$	p. 247
Return on assets ratio	$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average total assets}}$	p. 467
Asset turnover ratio	$\frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Average total assets}}$	p. 468
Payout ratio	$\frac{\text{Cash dividends declared on common stock}}{\text{Net income}}$	p. 593
Return on common stockholders' equity ratio	$\frac{\text{Net income} - \text{Preferred stock dividends}}{\text{Average common stockholders' equity}}$	p. 594

Investor Insight

High Ratings Can Bring Low Returns

Moody's, Standard and Poor's, and Fitch are three big firms that perform financial analysis on publicly traded companies and then publish ratings of the companies' creditworthiness. Investors and lenders rely heavily on these ratings in making investment and lending decisions. Some people feel that the collapse of the financial markets was worsened by inadequate research reports and ratings provided by the financial rating agencies. Critics contend that the rating agencies were reluctant to give large companies low ratings because they feared that by offending them they would lose out on business opportunities. For example, the rating agencies gave many so-called mortgage-backed securities ratings that suggested that they were low risk. Later, many of these very securities became completely worthless. Steps have been taken to reduce the conflicts of interest that lead to these faulty ratings.

Source: Aaron Lucchetti and Judith Burns, "Moody's CEO Warned Profit Push Posed a Risk to Quality of Ratings," *Wall Street Journal Online* (October 23, 2008).

? Why are credit rating agencies important to the financial markets? (See page 743.)

Quality of Earnings

study objective 7
Understand the concept of quality of earnings.

In evaluating the financial performance of a company, the quality of a company's earnings is of extreme importance to analysts. A company that has a high **quality of earnings** provides full and transparent information that will not confuse or mislead users of the financial statements.

The issue of quality of earnings has taken on increasing importance because recent accounting scandals suggest that some companies are spending too much time managing their income and not enough time managing their business. Here are some of the factors affecting quality of earnings.

ALTERNATIVE ACCOUNTING METHODS

Variations among companies in the application of generally accepted accounting principles may hamper comparability and reduce quality of earnings. For example, one company may use the FIFO method of inventory costing, while another company in the same industry may use LIFO. If inventory is a significant asset to both companies, it is unlikely that their current ratios are comparable. For example, if General Motors Corporation had used FIFO instead of LIFO for inventory valuation, its inventories in a recent year would have been 26% higher, which significantly affects the current ratio (and other ratios as well).

In addition to differences in inventory costing methods, differences also exist in reporting such items as depreciation and amortization. Although these differences in accounting methods might be detectable from reading the notes to the financial statements, adjusting the financial data to compensate for the different methods is often difficult, if not impossible.

PRO FORMA INCOME

Companies whose stock is publicly traded are required to present their income statement following generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). In recent years, many companies have been also reporting a second measure of income, called pro forma income. **Pro forma income** usually excludes items that the company thinks are unusual or non-recurring. For example, in a recent year, Cisco Systems (a high-tech company) reported a quarterly net loss under GAAP of $2.7 billion. Cisco reported pro forma income for the same quarter as a profit of $230 million. This large difference in profits between GAAP income numbers and pro forma income is not unusual. For example, during one 9-month period, the 100 largest companies on the Nasdaq stock exchange reported a total pro forma income of $19.1 billion but a total loss as measured by GAAP of $82.3 billion—a difference of about $100 billion!

To compute pro forma income, companies generally can exclude any items they deem inappropriate for measuring their performance. Many analysts and investors are critical of the practice of using pro forma income because these numbers often make companies look better than they really are. As the financial press noted, pro forma numbers might be called "earnings before bad stuff." Companies, on the other hand, argue that pro forma numbers more clearly indicate sustainable income because they exclude unusual and non-recurring expenses. "Cisco's technique gives readers of financial statements a clear picture of Cisco's normal business activities," the company said in a statement issued in response to questions about its pro forma income accounting.

Recently, the SEC provided some guidance on how companies should present pro forma information. Stay tuned: Everyone seems to agree that pro forma numbers can be useful if they provide insights into determining a company's sustainable income. However, many companies have abused the flexibility that pro forma numbers allow and have used the measure as a way to put their companies in a more favorable light.

IMPROPER RECOGNITION

Because some managers have felt pressure from Wall Street to continually increase earnings, they have manipulated the earnings numbers to meet these expectations. The most common abuse is the improper recognition of revenue. One

practice that some companies use is called *channel stuffing*: Offering deep discounts on their products to customers, companies encourage their customers to buy early (stuff the channel) rather than later. This lets the company report good earnings in the current period, but it often leads to a disaster in subsequent periods because customers have no need for additional goods. To illustrate, Bristol-Myers Squibb at one time indicated that it used sales incentives to encourage wholesalers to buy more drugs than needed to meet patients' demands. As a result, the company had to issue revised financial statements showing corrected revenues and income.

Another practice is the improper capitalization of operating expenses. The classic case is WorldCom. It capitalized over $7 billion of operating expenses so that it would report positive net income. In other situations, companies fail to report all their liabilities. Enron had promised to make payments on certain contracts if financial difficulty developed, but these guarantees were not reported as liabilities. In addition, disclosure was so lacking in transparency that it was impossible to understand what was happening at the company.

PRICE-EARNINGS RATIO

Earnings per share is net income available to common stockholders divided by the average number of common shares outstanding. The market value of a company's stock changes based on investors' expectations about a company's future earnings per share. In order to make a meaningful comparison of market values and earnings across firms, investors calculate the **price-earnings (P-E) ratio**. The P-E ratio divides the market price of a share of common stock by earnings per share.

$$\text{Price-Earnings (P-E) Ratio} = \frac{\text{Stock Price per Share}}{\text{Earnings per Share}}$$

Illustration 13-19
Formula for price-earnings (P-E) ratio

The P-E ratio reflects investors' assessment of a company's future earnings. The ratio of price to earnings will be higher if investors think that earnings will increase substantially in the future and therefore are willing to pay more per share of stock. A low price-earnings ratio often signifies that investors think the company's future earnings will not be strong. In addition, sometimes a low P-E ratio reflects the market's belief that a company has poor-quality earnings.

To illustrate, assume that two identical companies each have earnings per share of $5, but that one of the companies manipulated its accounting numbers to achieve the $5 figure. If investors perceive that one firm has lower-quality earnings, this perception will be reflected in a lower stock price and, consequently, a lower P-E.

Illustration 13-20 shows earnings per share and P-E ratios for five companies for a recent year. Note the difference in the P-E ratio of General Electric versus Google Inc.

Company	Earnings per Share	Price-Earnings Ratio
Southwest Airlines	$ 0.44	18.6
Google Inc.	13.30	30.8
General Electric	2.17	13.2
Merck	1.49	14.6
Nike	3.70	15.9

Illustration 13-20
Earnings per share and P-E ratios of various companies

Accounting Across the Organization

Are Annual Reports Worth Their Weight?

Many company managers preparing their annual reports are piling on the paper in order to ease Enron-type worries on the part of investors. Natural-gas producer Williams Companies, Inc. turned out an eye-glazing annual report 1,234 pages in length. Nortel Networks Corporation added an extra two dozen pages to its annual report. Other companies have followed suit.

The trend to fuller disclosure has been a long time coming, observers say. But, they caution that more paper does not necessarily mean more information that the average investor will understand. In addition, it is important to remember that annual reports are just one piece of the puzzle as to how companies present information to decision makers.

Source: Elizabeth Church, "No Item Too Small as Firms Cave to Enron Disclosure Craze," *The (Toronto) Globe and Mail* (April 1, 2002), p. B1.

? Why might adding extra pages to the annual report not be beneficial to investors and analysts? What should be management's overriding objective in financial reporting? (See page 743.)

before you go on...

QUALITY OF EARNINGS, FINANCIAL STATEMENT ANALYSIS

Do it!

Match each of the following terms with the phrase that it best matches.

Comprehensive income	Vertical analysis
Quality of earnings	Pro forma income
Solvency ratio	Extraordinary items

1. Measures the ability of the company to survive over a long period of time.
2. Usually excludes items that a company thinks are unusual or non-recurring.
3. Includes all changes in stockholders' equity during a period except those resulting from investments by stockholders and distributions to stockholders.
4. Indicates the level of full and transparent information provided to users of the financial statements.
5. Describes events and transactions that are unusual in nature and infrequent in occurrence.
6. Expresses each item within a financial statement as a percentage of a base amount.

Action Plan

- Develop a sound understanding of basic methods used for financial reporting.
- Understand the use of fundamental analysis techniques.

Solution

1. Solvency ratio: Measures the ability of the company to survive over a long period of time.
2. Pro forma income: Usually excludes items that a company thinks are unusual or non-recurring.
3. Comprehensive income: Includes all changes in stockholders' equity during a period except those resulting from investments by stockholders and distributions to stockholders.
4. Quality of earnings: Indicates the level of full and transparent information provided to users of the financial statements.
5. Extraordinary items: Describes events and transactions that are unusual in nature and infrequent in occurrence.
6. Vertical analysis: Expresses each item within a financial statement as a percentage of a base amount.

the navigator

Related exercise material: **Do it! 13-4.**

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

In analyzing a company, you should always investigate an extended period of time in order to determine whether the condition and performance of the company are changing. The condensed financial statements of Kellogg Company for 2009 and 2008 are presented here.

KELLOGG COMPANY, INC.
Balance Sheets
December 31 (in millions)

Assets	**2009**	**2008**
Current assets		
Cash	$ 334	$ 255
Accounts receivable (net)	1,093	1,100
Inventories	910	897
Other current assets	221	269
Total current assets	2,558	2,521
Property (net)	3,010	2,933
Other assets	5,632	5,492
Total assets	$11,200	$10,946
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Current liabilities	$ 2,288	$ 3,552
Long-term liabilities	6,637	5,939
Stockholders' equity—common	2,275	1,455
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$11,200	$10,946

KELLOGG COMPANY, INC.
Condensed Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31
(in millions)

	2009	**2008**
Net sales	$12,575	$12,822
Cost of goods sold	7,184	7,455
Gross profit	5,391	5,367
Selling and administrative expenses	3,390	3,414
Income from operations	2,001	1,953
Interest expense	295	308
Other (income) expense, net	18	12
Income before income taxes	1,688	1,633
Income tax expense	476	485
Net income	$ 1,212	$ 1,148

Instructions

Compute the following ratios for Kellogg for 2009 and discuss your findings (2008 values are provided for comparison).

1. Liquidity:
   (a) Current ratio (2008: .71:1).
   (b) Inventory turnover ratio (2008: 8.2 times).
2. Solvency:
   (a) Debt to total assets ratio (2008: 87%).
   (b) Times interest earned ratio (2008: 6.3 times).

3. Profitability:
   (a) Return on assets ratio (2008: 10.6%).
   (b) Profit margin ratio (2008: 9.0%).
   (c) Return on common stockholders' equity ratio (2008: 65%).

Solution

1. Liquidity
   (a) Current ratio:

$$2009: \frac{\$2{,}558}{\$2{,}288} = 1.12{:}1 \qquad 2008: \quad .71{:}1$$

   (b) Inventory turnover ratio:

$$2009: \frac{\$7{,}184}{(\$910 + \$897)/2} = 8.0 \text{ times} \qquad 2008: \quad 8.2 \text{ times}$$

We see that between 2008 and 2009, the current ratio increased substantially. The inventory turnover ratio decreased slightly. The current ratio indicates that the company was more liquid in 2009.

2. Solvency
   (a) Debt to total assets ratio:

$$2009: \frac{\$2{,}288 + \$6{,}637}{\$11{,}200} = 80\% \qquad 2008: \quad 87\%$$

   (b) Times interest earned ratio:

$$2009: \frac{\$1{,}212 + \$476 + \$295}{\$295} = 6.7 \text{ times} \qquad 2008: \quad 6.3 \text{ times}$$

Kellogg's solvency as measured by the debt to total assets ratio improved slightly in 2009. We also can see that the times interest earned ratio improved.

3. Profitability
   (a) Return on assets ratio:

$$2009: \frac{\$1{,}212}{(\$11{,}200 + \$10{,}946)/2} = 10.9\% \qquad 2008: \quad 10.6\%$$

   (b) Profit margin ratio:

$$2009: \frac{\$1{,}212}{\$12{,}575} = 9.6\% \qquad 2008: \quad 9.0\%$$

   (c) Return on common stockholders' equity ratio:

$$2009: \frac{\$1{,}212}{(\$2{,}275 + \$1{,}455)/2} = 65\% \qquad 2008: \quad 65\%$$

the navigator

Kellogg's return on assets ratio increased. Its profit margin ratio also increased, but its return on stockholders' equity held constant.

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Understand the concept of sustainable income. Sustainable income refers to a company's ability to sustain its profits from operations.

2 Indicate how irregular items are presented. Irregular items—discontinued operations and extraordinary items—are presented on the income statement net of tax below "Income before irregular items" to highlight their unusual nature. Changes in accounting principle are reported retroactively.

3 Explain the concept of comprehensive income. Comprehensive income includes all changes in stockholders' equity during a period except those resulting from investments by stockholders and distributions to stockholders. "Other comprehensive income" is added to or subtracted from net income to arrive at comprehensive income.

4 Describe and apply horizontal analysis. Horizontal analysis is a technique for evaluating a series of data

over a period of time to determine the increase or decrease that has taken place, expressed as either an amount or a percentage.

5 **Describe and apply vertical analysis.** Vertical analysis is a technique that expresses each item in a financial statement as a percentage of a relevant total or a base amount.

6 **Identify and compute ratios used in analyzing a company's liquidity, solvency, and profitability.** Financial ratios are provided in Illustration 13-16 (liquidity), Illustration 13-17 (solvency), and Illustration 13-18 (profitability).

7 **Understand the concept of quality of earnings.** A high quality of earnings provides full and transparent information that will not confuse or mislead users of the financial statements. Issues related to quality of earnings are (1) alternative accounting methods, (2) pro forma income, and (3) improper recognition. The price-earnings (P-E) ratio reflects investors' assessment of a company's future earnings potential.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has the company sold any major components of its business?	Discontinued operations section of income statement	Anything reported in this section indicates that the company has discontinued a major component of its business.	If a major component has been discontinued, its results during the current period should not be included in estimates of future net income.
Has the company experienced any extraordinary events or transactions?	Extraordinary item section of income statement	Anything reported in this section indicates that the company experienced an event that was both unusual and infrequent.	These items should usually be ignored in estimating future net income.
Has the company changed any of its accounting principles?	Effect of change in accounting principle on current and prior periods.	Management indicates that the new principle is preferable to the old principle.	Examine current and prior years' reported income, using new-principle basis to assess trends for estimating future income.
How do the company's financial position and operating results compare with those of the previous period?	Income statement and balance sheet	Comparative financial statements should be prepared over at least two years, with the first year reported being the base year. Changes in each line item relative to the base year should be presented both by amount and by percentage. This is called horizontal analysis.	Significant changes should be investigated to determine the reason for the change.
How do the relationships between items in this year's financial statements compare with those of last year or those of competitors?	Income statement and balance sheet	Each line item on the income statement should be presented as a percentage of net sales, and each line item on the balance sheet should be presented as a percentage of total assets or total liabilities and stockholders' equity. These percentages should be investigated for differences either across years in the same company or in the same year across different companies. This is called vertical analysis.	Any significant differences either across years or between companies should be investigated to determine the cause.

appendix 13A

Comprehensive Illustration of Ratio Analysis

In previous chapters, we presented many ratios used for evaluating the financial health and performance of a company. In this appendix, we provide a comprehensive review of those ratios and discuss some important relationships among them. Since earlier chapters demonstrated the calculation of each of these ratios, in this chapter we instead focus on their interpretation. Page references to prior discussions point you to any individual ratios you feel you need to review.

We used the financial information in Illustrations 13A-1 through 13A-4 to calculate Chicago Cereal Company's 2009 ratios. You can use these data to review the computations.

Illustration 13A-1
Chicago Cereal Company's balance sheets

CHICAGO CEREAL COMPANY
Balance Sheets
December 31 (in thousands)

Assets	**2009**	**2008**
Current assets		
Cash and short-term investments	$ 524	$ 411
Accounts receivable	1,026	945
Inventories	924	824
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	243	247
Total current assets	2,717	2,427
Property assets (net)	2,990	2,816
Intangibles and other assets	5,690	5,471
Total assets	$11,397	$10,714
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Current liabilities	$ 4,044	$ 4,020
Long-term liabilities	4,827	4,625
Stockholders' equity—common	2,526	2,069
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$11,397	$10,714

Illustration 13A-2
Chicago Cereal Company's income statements

CHICAGO CEREAL COMPANY
Condensed Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31 (in thousands)

	2009	**2008**
Net sales	$11,776	$10,907
Cost of goods sold	6,597	6,082
Gross profit	5,179	4,825
Selling and administrative expenses	3,311	3,059
Income from operations	1,868	1,766
Interest expense	319	307
Other income (expense), net	(2)	13
Income before income taxes	1,547	1,472
Income tax expense	444	468
Net income	$ 1,103	$ 1,004

Illustration 13A-3
Chicago Cereal Company's statements of cash flows

CHICAGO CEREAL COMPANY
Condensed Statements of Cash Flows
For the Years Ended December 31 (in thousands)

	2009	2008
Cash flows from operating activities		
Cash receipts from operating activities	$ 11,695	$10,841
Cash payments for operating activities	10,192	9,431
Net cash provided by operating activities	1,503	1,410
Cash flows from investing activities		
Purchases of property, plant, and equipment	(472)	(453)
Other investing activities	(129)	8
Net cash used in investing activities	(601)	(445)
Cash flows from financing activities		
Issuance of common stock	163	218
Issuance of debt	2,179	721
Reductions of debt	(2,011)	(650)
Payment of dividends	(475)	(450)
Repurchase of common stock and other items	(645)	(612)
Net cash provided (used) by financing activities	(789)	(773)
Increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	113	192
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of year	411	219
Cash and cash equivalents at end of year	$ 524	$ 411

Illustration 13A-4
Additional information for Chicago Cereal Company

Additional information

	2009	2008
Average number of shares (thousands)	418.7	418.5
Stock price at year-end	$52.92	$50.06

As indicated in the chapter, we can classify ratios into three types for analysis of the primary financial statements:

1. **Liquidity ratios.** Measures of the short-term ability of the company to pay its maturing obligations and to meet unexpected needs for cash.
2. **Solvency ratios.** Measures of the ability of the company to survive over a long period of time.
3. **Profitability ratios.** Measures of the income or operating success of a company for a given period of time.

As a tool of analysis, ratios can provide clues to underlying conditions that may not be apparent from an inspection of the individual components of a particular ratio. But, a single ratio by itself is not very meaningful. Accordingly, in this discussion we use the three comparisons listed below and on page 710.

1. **Intracompany comparisons** covering two years for Chicago Cereal Company (using comparative financial information from Illustrations 13A-1 through 13A-4).
2. **Intercompany comparisons** using General Mills as one of Chicago Cereal's competitors.

3. **Industry average comparisons** based on MSN.com median ratios for manufacturers of flour and other grain mill products and comparisons with other sources. For some of the ratios that we use, industry comparisons are not available. (These are denoted "na.")

LIQUIDITY RATIOS

Liquidity ratios measure the short-term ability of the company to pay its maturing obligations and to meet unexpected needs for cash. Short-term creditors such as bankers and suppliers are particularly interested in assessing liquidity. The measures used to determine the company's short-term debt-paying ability are the current ratio, the current cash debt coverage ratio, the receivables turnover ratio, the average collection period, the inventory turnover ratio, and average days in inventory.

1. **Current ratio.** The **current ratio** expresses the relationship of current assets to current liabilities, computed by dividing current assets by current liabilities. It is widely used for evaluating a company's liquidity and short-term debt-paying ability. The 2009 and 2008 current ratios for Chicago Cereal and comparative data are shown in Illustration 13A-5.

Illustration 13A-5
Current ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Current ratio	$\frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$	Short-term debt-paying ability	.67	.60	1.20	1.20	59

What do the measures tell us? Chicago Cereal's 2009 current ratio of .67 means that for every dollar of current liabilities, it has $0.67 of current assets. We sometimes state such ratios as .67:1 to reinforce this interpretation. Its current ratio—and therefore its liquidity—increased significantly in 2009. It is well below the industry average and that of General Mills.

2. **Current cash debt coverage ratio.** A disadvantage of the current ratio is that it uses year-end balances of current asset and current liability accounts. These year-end balances may not represent the company's current position during most of the year. The **current cash debt coverage ratio** partially corrects for this problem. It is the ratio of cash provided by operating activities to average current liabilities. Because it uses cash provided by operating activities rather than a balance at one point in time, it may provide a better representation of liquidity. Chicago Cereal's current cash debt coverage ratio is shown in Illustration 13A-6.

Illustration 13A-6
Current cash debt coverage ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Current cash debt coverage ratio	$\frac{\text{Cash provided by operations}}{\text{Average current liabilities}}$	Short-term debt-paying ability (cash basis)	.37	.39	.43	na	643

This ratio decreased slightly in 2009 for Chicago Cereal. Is the coverage adequate? Probably so. Its operating cash flow coverage of average current liabilities is similar to that of General Mills, and it approximates a commonly accepted threshold of .40. No industry comparison is available.

3. **Receivables turnover ratio.** Analysts can measure liquidity by how quickly a company converts certain assets to cash. Low values of the previous ratios can sometimes be compensated for if some of the company's current assets are highly liquid.

   How liquid, for example, are the receivables? The ratio used to assess the liquidity of the receivables is the **receivables turnover ratio**, which measures the number of times, on average, a company collects receivables during the period. The receivables turnover ratio is computed by dividing net credit sales (net sales less cash sales) by average net receivables during the year. The receivables turnover ratio for Chicago Cereal is shown in Illustration 13A-7.

Illustration 13A-7
Receivables turnover ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Receivables turnover ratio	$\frac{\text{Net credit sales}}{\text{Average net receivables}}$	Liquidity of receivables	11.9	12.0	12.8	14.0	415

We have assumed that all Chicago Cereal's sales are credit sales. Its receivables turnover ratio declined slightly in 2009. The turnover of 11.9 times is lower than the industry average of 14.0 times, and slightly lower than General Mills's turnover of 12.8 times.

4. **Average collection period.** A popular variant of the receivables turnover ratio converts it into an **average collection period** in days. This is done by dividing the receivables turnover ratio into 365 days. The average collection period for Chicago Cereal is shown in Illustration 13A-8.

Illustration 13A-8
Average collection period

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Average collection period	$\frac{\text{365 days}}{\text{Receivables turnover ratio}}$	Liquidity of receivables and collection success	30.7	30.4	28.5	26.1	415

Chicago Cereal's 2009 receivables turnover of 11.9 times is divided into 365 days to obtain approximately 31 days. This means that the average collection period for receivables is about 31 days. Its average collection period is slightly longer than those of General Mills and the industry.

Analysts frequently use the average collection period to assess the effectiveness of a company's credit and collection policies. The general rule is that the collection period should not greatly exceed the credit term period (i.e., the time allowed for payment).

5. **Inventory turnover ratio.** The **inventory turnover ratio** measures the number of times average inventory was sold during the period. Its purpose is to measure the liquidity of the inventory. A high measure indicates that inventory is being sold and replenished frequently. The inventory turnover ratio is computed by dividing the cost of goods sold by the average inventory during the period. Unless seasonal factors are significant, average inventory can

be computed from the beginning and ending inventory balances. Chicago Cereal's inventory turnover ratio is shown in Illustration 13A-9.

Illustration 13A-9
Inventory turnover ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Inventory turnover ratio	$\frac{\text{Cost of goods sold}}{\text{Average inventory}}$	Liquidity of inventory	7.5	7.9	6.2	6.9	297

Chicago Cereal's inventory turnover ratio decreased slightly in 2009. The turnover ratio of 7.5 times is higher than the industry average of 6.9 times and better than General Mills's 6.2 times. Generally, the faster the inventory turnover, the less cash is tied up in inventory and the less the chance of inventory becoming obsolete. Of course, a downside of high inventory turnover is that it sometimes results in lost sales because if a company keeps less inventory on hand, it is more likely to run out of inventory when it is needed.

6. **Days in inventory.** A variant of the inventory turnover ratio is the **days in inventory**, which measures the average number of days inventory is held. The days in inventory for Chicago Cereal is shown in Illustration 13A-10.

Illustration 13A-10
Days in inventory

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Days in inventory	$\frac{\text{365 days}}{\text{Inventory turnover ratio}}$	Liquidity of inventory and inventory management	48.7	46.2	58.9	52.9	297

Chicago Cereal's 2009 inventory turnover ratio of 7.5 divided into 365 is approximately 49 days. An average selling time of 49 days is faster than the industry average and faster than that of General Mills. Some of this difference might be explained by differences in product lines across the two companies, although in many ways the types of products of these two companies are quite similar.

Inventory turnover ratios vary considerably among industries. For example, grocery store chains have a turnover of 10 times and an average selling period of 37 days. In contrast, jewelry stores have an average turnover of 1.3 times and an average selling period of 281 days. Within a company, there may even be significant differences in inventory turnover among different types of products. Thus, in a grocery store the turnover of perishable items such as produce, meats, and dairy products is faster than the turnover of soaps and detergents.

To conclude, nearly all of these liquidity measures suggest that Chicago Cereal's liquidity changed little during 2009. Its liquidity appears acceptable when compared to the industry as a whole and when compared to General Mills.

SOLVENCY RATIOS

Solvency ratios measure the ability of the company to survive over a long period of time. Long-term creditors and stockholders are interested in a company's long-run solvency, particularly its ability to pay interest as it comes due and to repay the face value of debt at maturity. The debt to total assets ratio, the times interest earned ratio, and the cash debt coverage ratio provide information about debt-paying ability. In addition, free cash flow provides information about the company's solvency and its ability to pay additional dividends or invest in new projects.

7. **Debt to total assets ratio.** The **debt to total assets ratio** measures the percentage of total financing provided by creditors. It is computed by dividing total debt (both current and long-term) by total assets. This ratio indicates the degree of financial leveraging. It also provides some indication of the company's ability to withstand losses without impairing the interests of its creditors. The higher the percentage of debt to total assets, the greater the risk that the company may be unable to meet its maturing obligations. The lower the ratio, the more equity "buffer" is available to creditors if the company becomes insolvent. Thus, from the creditors' point of view, a low ratio of debt to total assets is desirable. Chicago Cereal's debt to total assets ratio is shown in Illustration 13A-11.

Illustration 13A-11
Debt to total assets ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Debt to total assets ratio	$\frac{\text{Total liabilities}}{\text{Total assets}}$	Percentage of total assets provided by creditors	78%	81%	71%	48%	60

Chicago Cereal's 2009 ratio of 78% means that creditors have provided financing sufficient to cover 78% of the company's total assets. Alternatively, it says that it would have to liquidate 78% of its assets at their book value in order to pay off all of its debts. Its ratio is above the industry average of 48%, as well as that of General Mills. This suggests that it is less solvent than the industry average and General Mills. Chicago Cereal's solvency improved slightly during the year.

The adequacy of this ratio is often judged in light of the company's earnings. Generally, companies with relatively stable earnings, such as public utilities, have higher debt to total assets ratios than cyclical companies with widely fluctuating earnings, such as many high-tech companies.

Another ratio with a similar meaning is the **debt to equity ratio**. It shows the relative use of borrowed funds (total liabilities) compared with resources invested by the owners. Because this ratio can be computed in several ways, be careful when making comparisons with it. Debt may be defined to include only the noncurrent portion of liabilities, and intangible assets may be excluded from stockholders' equity (which would equal tangible net worth). If debt and assets are defined as above (all liabilities and all assets), then when the debt to total assets ratio equals 50%, the debt to equity ratio is 1:1.

8. **Times interest earned ratio.** The **times interest earned ratio** (also called interest coverage) indicates the company's ability to meet interest payments as they come due. It is computed by dividing income before interest expense and income taxes by interest expense. Note that this ratio uses income before interest expense and income taxes because this amount represents what is available to cover interest. Chicago Cereal's times interest earned ratio is shown in Illustration 13A-12.

Illustration 13A-12
Times interest earned ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Times interest earned ratio	$\frac{\text{Net Income} + \text{Interest expense} + \text{Tax expense}}{\text{Interest expense}}$	Ability to meet interest payments as they come due	5.8	5.8	7.3	5.9	529

For Chicago Cereal, the 2009 interest coverage was 5.8, which indicates that income before interest and taxes was 5.8 times the amount needed for interest expense. This is less than the rate for General Mills, and it is slightly less than the average rate for the industry. The debt to total assets ratio decreased for Chicago Cereal during 2009, and its times interest earned ratio held constant.

9. **Cash debt coverage ratio.** The ratio of cash provided by operating activities to average total liabilities, called the **cash debt coverage ratio**, is a cash-basis measure of solvency. This ratio indicates a company's ability to repay its liabilities from cash generated from operating activities without having to liquidate the assets used in its operations. Illustration 13A-13 shows Chicago Cereal's cash debt coverage ratio.

Illustration 13A-13
Cash debt coverage ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Cash debt coverage ratio	$\frac{\text{Cash provided by operations}}{\text{Average total liabilities}}$	Long-term debt-paying ability (cash basis)	.17	.17	.14	na	644

An industry average for this measure is not available. Chicago Cereal's .17 is higher than General Mills's .14, and it remained unchanged from 2009. One way of interpreting this ratio is to say that net cash generated from one year of operations would be sufficient to pay off 17% of its total liabilities. If 17% of this year's liabilities were retired each year, it would take approximately 5.9 years to retire all of its debt. It would take General Mills approximately 7.1 years to do so. A general rule of thumb is that a cash debt coverage ratio above .20 is acceptable.

10. **Free cash flow.** One indication of a company's solvency, as well as of its ability to pay dividends or expand operations, is the amount of excess cash it generated after investing in capital expenditures and paying dividends. This amount is referred to as **free cash flow**. For example, if you generate $100,000 of cash from operations but you spend $30,000 on capital expenditures and pay $10,000 in dividends, you have $60,000 ($100,000 − $30,000 − $10,000) to use either to expand operations, pay additional dividends, or pay down debt. Chicago Cereal's free cash flow is shown in Illustration 13A-14.

Illustration 13A-14
Free cash flow

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Free cash flow	Cash provided by operations − Capital expenditures − Cash dividends	Cash available for paying dividends or expanding operations	$556 (in thousands)	$507	$686 (in millions)	na	62

Chicago Cereal's free cash flow increased slightly from 2008 to 2009. During both years, the cash provided by operations was more than enough to allow it to acquire additional productive assets and maintain dividend payments. It could have used the remaining cash to reduce debt if necessary. Given that Chicago Cereal is much smaller than General Mills, we would expect its free cash flow to be substantially smaller, which it is.

PROFITABILITY RATIOS

Profitability ratios measure the income or operating success of a company for a given period of time. A company's income, or the lack of it, affects its ability to obtain debt and equity financing, its liquidity position, and its ability to grow. As a consequence, creditors and investors alike are interested in evaluating profitability. Analysts frequently use profitability as the ultimate test of management's operating effectiveness.

Throughout this book, we have introduced numerous measures of profitability. The relationships among measures of profitability are very important. Understanding them can help management determine where to focus its efforts to improve profitability. Illustration 13A-15 diagrams these relationships. Our discussion of Chicago Cereal's profitability is structured around this diagram.

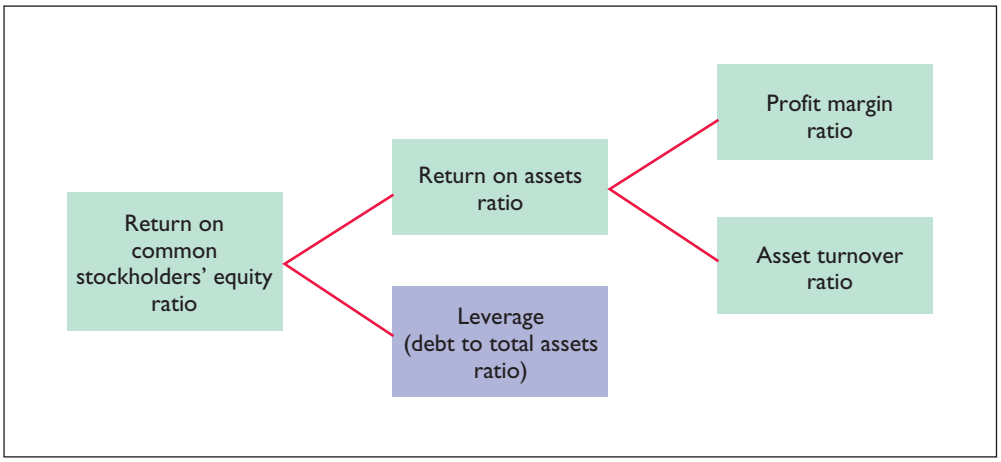


Illustration 13A-15 Relationships among profitability measures

11. **Return on common stockholders' equity ratio.** A widely used measure of profitability from the common stockholder's viewpoint is the **return on common stockholders' equity ratio**. This ratio shows how many dollars of net income the company earned for each dollar invested by the owners. It is computed by dividing net income minus any preferred stock dividends—that is, income available to common stockholders—by average common stockholders' equity. The return on common stockholders' equity for Chicago Cereal is shown in Illustration 13A-16.

Illustration 13A-16 Return on common stockholders' equity ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Return on common stockholders' equity ratio	$\frac{\text{Net income} - \text{Preferred stock dividends}}{\text{Average common stockholders' equity}}$	Profitability of common stockholders' investment	48%	46%	29%	30%	594

Chicago Cereal's 2009 rate of return on common stockholders' equity is unusually high at 48%, considering an industry average of 30% and General Mills's return of 29%. In the subsequent sections, we investigate the causes of this high return.

12. **Return on assets ratio.** The return on common stockholders' equity ratio is affected by two factors: the **return on assets ratio** and the degree of leverage. The return on assets ratio measures the overall profitability of assets in

terms of the income earned on each dollar invested in assets. It is computed by dividing net income by average total assets. Chicago Cereal's return on assets ratio is shown in Illustration 13A-17.

Illustration 13A-17
Return on assets ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Return on assets ratio	$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average total assets}}$	Overall profitability of assets	10.0%	9.4%	8.5%	6.7%	467

Chicago Cereal had a 10.0% return on assets in 2009. This rate is significantly higher than that of General Mills and the industry average.

Note that its rate of return on common stockholders' equity (48%) is substantially higher than its rate of return on assets (10%). The reason is that it has made effective use of **leverage**. **Leveraging** or **trading on the equity** at a gain means that the company has borrowed money at a lower rate of interest than the rate of return it earns on the assets it purchased with the borrowed funds. Leverage enables management to use money supplied by nonowners to increase the return to owners.

A comparison of the rate of return on assets with the rate of interest paid for borrowed money indicates the profitability of trading on the equity. If you borrow money at 8% and your rate of return on assets is 11%, you are trading on the equity at a gain. Note, however, that trading on the equity is a two-way street: For example, if you borrow money at 11% and earn only 8% on it, you are trading on the equity at a loss.

Chicago Cereal earns more on its borrowed funds than it has to pay in interest. Thus, the return to stockholders exceeds the return on the assets because of the positive benefit of leverage. Recall from our earlier discussion that Chicago Cereal's percentage of debt financing, as measured by the ratio of debt to total assets (or debt to equity), was higher than General Mills's and the industry average. It appears that Chicago Cereal's high return on common stockholders' equity is due in part to its use of leverage.

13. **Profit margin ratio.** The return on assets ratio is affected by two factors, the first of which is the profit margin ratio. The **profit margin ratio**, or rate of return on sales, is a measure of the percentage of each dollar of sales that results in net income. It is computed by dividing net income by net sales for the period. Chicago Cereal's profit margin ratio is shown in Illustration 13A-18.

Illustration 13A-18
Profit margin ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Profit margin ratio	$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Net sales}}$	Net income generated by each dollar of sales	9.4%	9.2%	10.6%	10.4%	247

Chicago Cereal experienced a slight increase in its profit margin ratio from 2008 to 2009 of 9.2% to 9.4%. Its profit margin ratio was lower than the industry average and that of General Mills.

High-volume (high inventory turnover) businesses such as grocery stores and pharmacy chains generally have low profit margins. Low-volume businesses such as jewelry stores and airplane manufacturers have high profit margins.

14. **Asset turnover ratio.** The other factor that affects the return on assets ratio is the asset turnover ratio. The **asset turnover ratio** measures how efficiently a company uses its assets to generate sales. It is determined by dividing net sales by average total assets for the period. The resulting number shows the dollars of sales produced by each dollar invested in assets. Illustration 13A-19 shows the asset turnover ratio for Chicago Cereal.

Illustration 13A-19
Asset turnover ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Asset turnover ratio	$\frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Average total assets}}$	How efficiently assets are used to generate sales	1.07	1.02	.80	1.00	468

The asset turnover ratio shows that in 2009, Chicago Cereal generated sales of $1.07 for each dollar it had invested in assets. The ratio rose from 2008 to 2009. Its asset turnover ratio is above the industry average and that of General Mills.

Asset turnover ratios vary considerably among industries. The average asset turnover for utility companies is .45, for example, while the grocery store industry has an average asset turnover of 3.49.

In summary, Chicago Cereal's return on assets ratio increased from 9.4% in 2008 to 10.0% in 2009. Underlying this increase was an increased profitability on each dollar of sales (as measured by the profit margin ratio) and a rise in the sales-generating efficiency of its assets (as measured by the asset turnover ratio). We can analyze the combined effects of profit margin and asset turnover on return on assets for Chicago Cereal as shown in Illustration 13A-20.

Illustration 13A-20
Composition of return on assets ratio

Ratios:	Profit Margin	×	Asset Turnover	=	Return on Assets
	$\frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{Net Sales}}$	×	$\frac{\text{Net Sales}}{\text{Average Total Assets}}$	=	$\frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{Average Total Assets}}$
Chicago Cereal					
2009	9.4%	×	1.07 times	=	10.1%*
2008	9.2%	×	1.02 times	=	9.4%

*Difference from value on page 716 due to rounding.

15. **Gross profit rate.** One factor that strongly influences the profit margin ratio is the gross profit rate. The **gross profit rate** is determined by dividing gross profit (net sales less cost of goods sold) by net sales. This rate indicates a company's ability to maintain an adequate selling price above its cost of goods sold.

As an industry becomes more competitive, this ratio declines. For example, in the early years of the personal computer industry, gross profit rates were quite high. Today, because of increased competition and a belief that most brands of personal computers are similar in quality, gross profit rates

have become thin. Analysts should closely monitor gross profit rates over time. Illustration 13A-21 shows Chicago Cereal's gross profit rate.

Illustration 13A-21
Gross profit rate

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Gross profit rate	Gross profit / Net sales	Margin between selling price and cost of goods sold	44%	44%	41%	32%	246

Chicago Cereal's gross profit rate remained constant from 2008 to 2009.

16. **Earnings per share (EPS).** Stockholders usually think in terms of the number of shares they own or plan to buy or sell. Expressing net income earned on a per share basis provides a useful perspective for determining profitability. **Earnings per share** is a measure of the net income earned on each share of common stock. It is computed by dividing net income by the average number of common shares outstanding during the year.

The terms "net income per share" or "earnings per share" refer to the amount of net income applicable to each share of *common stock*. Therefore, when we compute earnings per share, if there are preferred dividends declared for the period, we must deduct them from net income to arrive at income available to the common stockholders. Chicago Cereal's earnings per share is shown in Illustration 13A-22.

Illustration 13A-22
Earnings per share

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Earnings per share (EPS)	(Net income − Preferred stock dividends) / Average common shares outstanding	Net income earned on each share of common stock	$2.63	$2.40	$3.93	na	56

Note that no industry average is presented in Illustration 13A-22. Industry data for earnings per share are not reported, and in fact the Chicago Cereal and General Mills ratios should not be compared. Such comparisons are not meaningful because of the wide variations in the number of shares of outstanding stock among companies. Chicago Cereal's earnings per share increased 23 cents per share in 2009. This represents a 9.6% increase from the 2008 EPS of $2.40.

17. **Price-earnings ratio.** The **price-earnings ratio** is an oft-quoted statistic that measures the ratio of the market price of each share of common stock to the earnings per share. The price-earnings (P-E) ratio reflects investors' assessments of a company's future earnings. It is computed by dividing the market price per share of the stock by earnings per share. Chicago Cereal's price-earnings ratio is shown in Illustration 13A-23.

Illustration 13A-23
Price-earnings ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Price-earnings ratio	Stock price per share / Earnings per share	Relationship between market price per share and earnings per share	20.1	20.9	14.5	17.0	703

At the end of 2009 and 2008, the market price of Chicago Cereal's stock was $52.92 and $50.06, respectively.

In 2009, each share of Chicago Cereal's stock sold for 20.1 times the amount that was earned on each share. Chicago Cereal's price-earnings ratio is higher than General Mills's ratio of 14.5 and higher than the industry average of 17.0 times. Its higher P-E ratio suggests that the market is more optimistic about Chicago Cereal than about General Mills. However, it might also signal that Chicago Cereal's stock is overpriced. That is a matter for the analyst to determine.

18. **Payout ratio.** The **payout ratio** measures the percentage of earnings distributed in the form of cash dividends. It is computed by dividing cash dividends declared on common stock by net income. Companies that have high growth rates are characterized by low payout ratios because they reinvest most of their net income in the business. The payout ratio for Chicago Cereal is shown in Illustration 13A-24.

Illustration 13A-24
Payout ratio

Ratio	Formula	Indicates:	Chicago Cereal 2009	Chicago Cereal 2008	General Mills 2009	Industry 2009	Page in book
Payout ratio	$\frac{\text{Cash dividends declared on common stock}}{\text{Net income}}$	Percentage of earnings distributed in the form of cash dividends	43%	45%	44%	37%	593

The 2009 and 2008 payout ratios for Chicago Cereal are about the same as that of General Mills (44%) but higher than the industry average (37%).

Management has some control over the amount of dividends paid each year, and companies are generally reluctant to reduce a dividend below the amount paid in a previous year. Therefore, the payout ratio will actually increase if a company's net income declines but the company keeps its total dividend payment the same. Of course, unless the company returns to its previous level of profitability, maintaining this higher dividend payout ratio is probably not possible over the long run.

Before drawing any conclusions regarding Chicago Cereal's dividend payout ratio, we should calculate this ratio over a longer period of time to evaluate any trends and also try to find out whether management's philosophy regarding dividends has changed recently. The "Selected Financial Data" section of Chicago Cereal's Management Discussion and Analysis shows that over a 5-year period, earnings per share rose 45%, while dividends per share grew only 19%.

In terms of the types of financial information available and the ratios used by various industries, what can be practically covered in this textbook gives you only the "Titanic approach": That is, you are seeing only the tip of the iceberg compared to the vast databases and types of ratio analysis that are available on computers. The availability of information is not a problem. The real trick is to be discriminating enough to perform relevant analysis and select pertinent comparative data.

Glossary

Asset turnover ratio *(p. 717)* A measure of how efficiently a company uses its assets to generate sales; computed as net sales divided by average total assets.

Available-for-sale securities *(p. 691)* Securities that are held with the intent of selling them sometime in the future.

Average collection period *(p. 711)* The average number of days that receivables are outstanding; calculated as receivables turnover divided into 365 days.

Cash debt coverage ratio *(p. 714)* A cash-basis measure used to evaluate solvency, computed as cash from operations divided by average total liabilities.

Change in accounting principle *(p. 690)* Use of an accounting principle in the current year different from the one used in the preceding year.

Comprehensive income *(p. 690)* A measure of income that includes all changes in stockholders' equity during a period except those resulting from investments by stockholders and distributions to stockholders.

Current cash debt coverage ratio *(p. 710)* A cash-basis measure of liquidity; computed as cash provided by operations divided by average current liabilities.

Current ratio *(p. 710)* A measure used to evaluate a company's liquidity and short-term debt-paying ability; calculated as current assets divided by current liabilities.

Days in inventory *(p. 712)* A measure of the average number of days inventory is held; computed as inventory turnover divided into 365 days.

Debt to total assets ratio *(p. 713)* A measure of the percentage of total financing provided by creditors; computed as total debt divided by total assets.

Discontinued operations *(p. 687)* The disposal of a significant component of a business.

Earnings per share *(p. 718)* The net income earned by each share of common stock; computed as net income less dividends on preferred stock divided by the average common shares outstanding.

Extraordinary items *(p. 688)* Events and transactions that meet two conditions: (1) unusual in nature and (2) infrequent in occurrence.

Free cash flow *(p. 714)* A measure of solvency. Cash remaining from operating activities after adjusting for capital expenditures and dividends paid.

Gross profit rate *(p. 717)* Gross profit expressed as a percentage of sales; computed as gross profit divided by net sales.

Horizontal analysis *(p. 694)* A technique for evaluating a series of financial statement data over a period of time to determine the increase (decrease) that has taken place, expressed as either an amount or a percentage.

Inventory turnover ratio *(p. 711)* A measure of the liquidity of inventory. Measures the number of times average inventory was sold during the period; computed as cost of goods sold divided by average inventory.

Leveraging *(p. 716)* Borrowing money at a lower rate of interest than can be earned by using the borrowed money; also referred to as trading on the equity.

Liquidity ratios *(p. 700)* Measures of the short-term ability of the company to pay its maturing obligations and to meet unexpected needs for cash.

Payout ratio *(p. 719)* A measure of the percentage of earnings distributed in the form of cash dividends; calculated as cash dividends declared on common stock divided by net income.

Price-earnings (P-E) ratio *(pp. 703, 718)* A comparison of the market price of each share of common stock to the earnings per share; computed as the market price of the stock divided by earnings per share.

Pro forma income *(p. 702)* A measure of income that usually excludes items that a company thinks are unusual or non-recurring.

Profit margin ratio *(p. 716)* A measure of the net income generated by each dollar of sales; computed as net income divided by net sales.

Profitability ratios *(p. 701)* Measures of the income or operating success of a company for a given period of time.

Quality of earnings *(p. 701)* Indicates the level of full and transparent information that is provided to users of the financial statements.

Receivables turnover ratio *(p. 711)* A measure of the liquidity of receivables; computed as net credit sales divided by average net receivables.

Return on assets ratio *(p. 715)* A profitability measure that indicates the amount of net income generated by each dollar of assets; calculated as net income divided by average total assets.

Return on common stockholders' equity ratio *(p. 715)* A measure of the dollars of net income earned for each dollar invested by the owners; computed as income available to common stockholders divided by average common stockholders' equity.

Solvency ratios *(p. 700)* Measures of the ability of a company to survive over a long period of time, particularly to pay interest as it comes due and to repay the balance of debt at its maturity.

Sustainable income *(p. 686)* The most likely level of income to be obtained in the future; calculated as net income adjusted for irregular items.

Times interest earned ratio *(p. 713)* A measure of a company's solvency and ability to meet interest payments as they come due; calculated as income before interest expense and income taxes divided by interest expense.

Trading on the equity *(p. 716)* Same as leveraging.

Trading securities *(p. 691)* Securities bought and held primarily for sale in the near term to generate income on short-term price differences.

Vertical analysis *(p. 696)* A technique for evaluating financial statement data that expresses each item in a financial statement as a percentage of a base amount.

Comprehensive Do it!

The events and transactions of Dever Corporation for the year ending December 31, 2012, resulted in these data.

Cost of goods sold	$2,600,000
Net sales	4,400,000
Other expenses and losses	9,600
Other revenues and gains	5,600
Selling and administrative expenses	1,100,000
Gain from discontinued division	570,000
Loss from tornado disaster (extraordinary loss)	600,000

Analysis reveals the following.

1. All items are before the applicable income tax rate of 30%.
2. The plastics division was sold on July 1.

Instructions

Prepare an income statement for the year.

Action Plan

- Remember that material items not typical of operations are reported in separate sections net of taxes.
- Associate income taxes with the item that affects the taxes.
- On a corporation income statement, report income tax expense when there is income before income tax.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

DEVER CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Net sales		$ 4,400,000
Cost of goods sold		2,600,000
Gross profit		1,800,000
Selling and administrative expenses		1,100,000
Income from operations		700,000
Other revenues and gains	$ 5,600	
Other expenses and losses	(9,600)	(4,000)
Income before income taxes		696,000
Income tax expense ($696,000 × 30%)		208,800
Income before irregular items		487,200
Discontinued operations: Gain from discontinued division, net of taxes of $171,000 ($570,000 × 30%)		399,000
Extraordinary item: Tornado loss, net of income tax savings $180,000 ($600,000 × 30%)		(420,000)
Net income		$ 466,200

the navigator

WILEY PLUS **Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS**

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 743.

All of the Self-Test Questions in this chapter employ decision tools.

(SO 2) **1.** In reporting discontinued operations, the income statement should show in a special section:

(a) gains on the disposal of the discontinued component.
(b) losses on the disposal of the discontinued component.
(c) Neither (a) nor (b).
(d) Both (a) and (b).

(SO 2) **2.** Cool Stools Corporation has income before taxes of $400,000 and an extraordinary loss of $100,000. If the income tax rate is 25% on all items, the income statement should show income before irregular items and an extraordinary loss, respectively, of
(a) $325,000 and $100,000.
(b) $325,000 and $75,000.
(c) $300,000 and $100,000.
(d) $300,000 and $75,000.

(SO 3) **3.** Which of the following would be considered an "Other comprehensive income" item?
(a) Gain on disposal of discontinued operations.
(b) Unrealized loss on available-for-sale securities.
(c) Extraordinary loss related to flood.
(d) Net income.

(SO 4) **4.** In horizontal analysis, each item is expressed as a percentage of the:
(a) net income amount.
(b) stockholders' equity amount.
(c) total assets amount.
(d) base-year amount.

(SO 4) **5.** Adams Corporation reported net sales of $300,000, $330,000, and $360,000 in the years 2010, 2011, and 2012, respectively. If 2010 is the base year, what percentage do 2012 sales represent of the base?
(a) 77%. (c) 120%.
(b) 108%. (d) 130%.

(SO 5) **6.** The following schedule is a display of what type of analysis?

	Amount	Percent
Current assets	$200,000	25%
Property, plant, and equipment	600,000	75%
Total assets	$800,000	

(a) Horizontal analysis. (c) Vertical analysis.
(b) Differential analysis. (d) Ratio analysis.

(SO 5) **7.** In vertical analysis, the base amount for depreciation expense is generally:
(a) net sales.
(b) depreciation expense in a previous year.
(c) gross profit.
(d) fixed assets.

(SO 6) **8.** Which measure is an evaluation of a company's ability to pay current liabilities?
(a) Current cash debt coverage ratio.
(b) Current ratio.
(c) Both (a) and (b).
(d) None of the above.

(SO 6) **9.** Which measure is useful in evaluating the efficiency in managing inventories?
(a) Inventory turnover ratio.
(b) Days in inventory.
(c) Both (a) and (b).
(d) None of the above.

(SO 6) **10.** Which of these is *not* a liquidity ratio?
(a) Current ratio.
(b) Asset turnover ratio.
(c) Inventory turnover ratio.
(d) Receivables turnover ratio.

11. Plano Corporation reported net income $24,000; net sales $400,000; and average assets $600,000 for 2012. What is the 2012 profit margin ratio? (SO 6)
(a) 6%. (c) 40%.
(b) 12%. (d) 200%.

Use the following financial statement information as of the end of each year to answer Self-Test Questions 12–16.

	2012	2011
Inventory	$ 54,000	$ 48,000
Current assets	81,000	106,000
Total assets	382,000	326,000
Current liabilities	27,000	36,000
Total liabilities	102,000	88,000
Common stockholders' equity	240,000	198,000
Net sales	784,000	697,000
Cost of goods sold	306,000	277,000
Net income	134,000	90,000
Tax expense	22,000	18,000
Interest expense	12,000	12,000
Dividends paid to preferred stockholders	4,000	4,000
Dividends paid to common stockholders	15,000	10,000

12. Compute the days in inventory for 2012. (SO 6)
(a) 64.4 days. (c) 6 days.
(b) 60.8 days. (d) 24 days.

13. Compute the current ratio for 2012. (SO 6)
(a) 1.26:1. (c) 0.80:1.
(b) 3.0:1. (d) 3.75:1.

14. Compute the profit margin ratio for 2012. (SO 6)
(a) 17.1%. (c) 37.9%.
(b) 18.1%. (d) 5.9%.

15. Compute the return on common stockholders' equity for 2012. (SO 6)
(a) 54.2%. (c) 61.2%.
(b) 52.5%. (d) 59.4%.

16. Compute the times interest earned for 2012. (SO 6)
(a) 11.2 times. (c) 14.0 times.
(b) 65.3 times. (d) 13.0 times.

17. Which situation below might indicate a company has a low quality of earnings? (SO 7)
(a) The same accounting principles are used each year.
(b) Revenue is recognized when earned.
(c) Maintenance costs are capitalized and then depreciated.
(d) The company's P-E ratio is high relative to competitors.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to access additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

All of the Questions in this chapter employ decision tools.

1. Explain sustainable income. What relationship does this concept have to the treatment of irregular items on the income statement?

2. Indicate which of the following items would be reported as an extraordinary item on Stillwell Corporation's income statement.
   (a) Loss from damages caused by a volcano eruption in Iona.
   (b) Loss from the sale of short-term investments.
   (c) Loss attributable to a labor strike.
   (d) Loss of inventory from flood damage because a warehouse is located on a flood plain that floods every 5 to 10 years.
   (e) Loss on the write-down of outdated inventory.
   (f) Loss from a foreign government's expropriation of a production facility.
   (g) Loss from damage to a warehouse in southern California from a minor earthquake.

3. Duncan Inc. reported 2011 earnings per share of $3.26 and had no extraordinary items. In 2012, earnings per share on income before extraordinary items was $2.99, and earnings per share on net income was $3.49. Do you consider this trend to be favorable? Why or why not?

4. Sandran Inc. has been in operation for 3 years and uses the FIFO method of pricing inventory. During the fourth year, Sandran changes to the average-cost method for all its inventory. How will Sandran report this change?

5. What amount did Tootsie Roll Industries report as "Other comprehensive earnings" in 2009? By what percentage did Tootsie Roll's "Comprehensive earnings" differ from its "Net earnings"?

6. (a) Kristina Desmet believes that the analysis of financial statements is directed at two characteristics of a company: liquidity and profitability. Is Kristina correct? Explain.
   (b) Are short-term creditors, long-term creditors, and stockholders interested in primarily the same characteristics of a company? Explain.

7. (a) Distinguish among the following bases of comparison: intracompany, intercompany and industry averages.
   (b) Give the principal value of using each of the three bases of comparison.

8. Two popular methods of financial statement analysis are horizontal analysis and vertical analysis. Explain the difference between these two methods.

9. (a) If Lind Company had net income of $300,000 in 2011 and it experienced a 24.5% increase in net income for 2012, what is its net income for 2012?
   (b) If 6 cents of every dollar of Lind's revenue is net income in 2011, what is the dollar amount of 2011 revenue?

10. Name the major ratios useful in assessing (a) liquidity and (b) solvency.

11. Ron Singer is puzzled. His company had a profit margin of 10% in 2012. He feels that this is an indication that the company is doing well. Teresa Ridley, his accountant, says that more information is needed to determine the company's financial well-being. Who is correct? Why?

12. What does each type of ratio measure?
    (a) Liquidity ratios.
    (b) Solvency ratios.
    (c) Profitability ratios.

13. What is the difference between the current ratio and working capital?

14. Smart Mart, a retail store, has a receivables turnover ratio of 4.5 times. The industry average is 12.5 times. Does Smart Mart have a collection problem with its receivables?

15. Which ratios should be used to help answer each of these questions?
    (a) How efficient is a company in using its assets to produce sales?
    (b) How near to sale is the inventory on hand?
    (c) How many dollars of net income were earned for each dollar invested by the owners?
    (d) How able is a company to meet interest charges as they fall due?

16. At year-end, the price-earnings ratio of General Motors was 11.3, and the price-earnings ratio of Microsoft was 28.14. Which company did the stock market favor? Explain.

17. What is the formula for computing the payout ratio? Do you expect this ratio to be high or low for a growth company?

18. Holding all other factors constant, indicate whether each of the following changes generally signals good or bad news about a company.
    (a) Increase in profit margin ratio.
    (b) Decrease in inventory turnover ratio.
    (c) Increase in current ratio.
    (d) Decrease in earnings per share.
    (e) Increase in price-earnings ratio.
    (f) Increase in debt to total assets ratio.
    (g) Decrease in times interest earned ratio.

19. The return on assets for Corwin Corporation is 7.6%. During the same year, Corwin's return on common stockholders' equity is 12.8%. What is the explanation for the difference in the two rates?

20. Which two ratios do you think should be of greatest interest in each of the following cases?
    (a) A pension fund considering the purchase of 20-year bonds.
    (b) A bank contemplating a short-term loan.
    (c) A common stockholder.

21. Hawi Inc. has net income of $200,000, average shares of common stock outstanding of 40,000,

and preferred dividends for the period of $20,000. What is Hawi's earnings per share of common stock? Sid Brey, the president of Hawi, believes that the computed EPS of the company is high. Comment.

22. Identify and explain factors that affect quality of earnings.

23. Explain how the choice of one of the following accounting methods over the other raises or lowers a company's net income during a period of continuing inflation.
(a) Use of FIFO instead of LIFO for inventory costing.
(b) Use of a 6-year life for machinery instead of a 9-year life.
(c) Use of straight-line depreciation instead of declining-balance depreciation.

Brief Exercises

All of the Brief Exercises in this chapter employ decision tools.

Prepare a discontinued operations section of an income statement. (SO 2), AP

BE13-1 On June 30, Amano Corporation discontinued its operations in Mexico. On September 1, Amano disposed of the Mexico facility at a pretax loss of $640,000. The applicable tax rate is 25%. Show the discontinued operations section of Amano's income statement.

Prepare a corrected income statement with an extraordinary item. (SO 2), AP

BE13-2 An inexperienced accountant for Corfeld Corporation showed the following in Corfeld's 2012 income statement: Income before income taxes $300,000; Income tax expense $72,000; Extraordinary loss from flood (before taxes) $80,000; and Net income $168,000. The extraordinary loss and taxable income are both subject to a 30% tax rate. Prepare a corrected income statement beginning with "Income before income taxes."

Indicate how a change in accounting principle is reported. (SO 2), C

BE13-3 On January 1, 2012, Gustin Inc. changed from the LIFO method of inventory pricing to the FIFO method. Explain how this change in accounting principle should be treated in the company's financial statements.

Prepare horizontal analysis. (SO 4), AP

BE13-4 Using these data from the comparative balance sheet of Rosalez Company, perform horizontal analysis.

	December 31, 2012	December 31, 2011
Accounts receivable	$ 460,000	$ 400,000
Inventory	780,000	650,000
Total assets	3,164,000	2,800,000

Prepare vertical analysis. (SO 5), AP

BE13-5 Using the data presented in BE13-4 for Rosalez Company, perform vertical analysis.

Calculate percentage of change. (SO 4), AP

BE13-6 Net income was $500,000 in 2010, $485,000 in 2011, and $518,400 in 2012. What is the percentage of change from (a) 2010 to 2011, and (b) from 2011 to 2012? Is the change an increase or a decrease?

Calculate net income. (SO 4), AP

BE13-7 If Carolina Company had net income of $382,800 in 2012 and it experienced a 16% increase in net income over 2011, what was its 2011 net income?

Analyze change in net income. (SO 5), AP

BE13-8 Vertical analysis (common-size) percentages for Vallejo Company's sales, cost of goods sold, and expenses are listed here.

Vertical Analysis	2012	2011	2010
Sales	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%
Cost of goods sold	60.5	62.9	64.8
Expenses	26.0	26.6	27.5

Did Vallejo's net income as a percent of sales increase, decrease, or remain unchanged over the 3-year period? Provide numerical support for your answer.

Analyze change in net income. (SO 4), AP

BE13-9 Horizontal analysis (trend analysis) percentages for Spartan Company's sales, cost of goods sold, and expenses are listed here.

Horizontal Analysis	2012	2011	2010
Sales	96.2%	104.8%	100.0%
Cost of goods sold	101.0	98.0	100.0
Expenses	105.6	95.4	100.0

Explain whether Spartan's net income increased, decreased, or remained unchanged over the 3-year period.

BE13-10 These selected condensed data are taken from recent balance sheets of Bob Evans Farms (in thousands).

Calculate current ratio. (SO 6), AP

	2009	2008
Cash	$ 13,606	$ 7,669
Accounts receivable	23,045	19,951
Inventories	31,087	31,345
Other current assets	12,522	11,909
Total current assets	$ 80,260	$ 70,874
Total current liabilities	$245,805	$326,203

Compute the current ratio for each year and comment on your results.

BE13-11 The following data are taken from the financial statements of Caprice Company.

Evaluate collection of accounts receivable. (SO 6), AN

	2012	2011
Accounts receivable (net), end of year	$ 550,000	$ 540,000
Net sales on account	4,300,000	4,000,000

Terms for all sales are 1/10, n/45.

Compute for each year (a) the receivables turnover ratio and (b) the average collection period. What conclusions about the management of accounts receivable can be drawn from these data? At the end of 2010, accounts receivable was $520,000.

BE13-12 The following data were taken from the income statements of Merlot Company.

Evaluate management of inventory. (SO 6), AN

	2012	2011
Sales revenue	$6,420,000	$6,240,000
Beginning inventory	960,000	840,000
Purchases	4,840,000	4,661,000
Ending inventory	1,020,000	960,000

Compute for each year (a) the inventory turnover ratio and (b) days in inventory. What conclusions concerning the management of the inventory can be drawn from these data?

BE13-13 Staples, Inc. is one of the largest suppliers of office products in the United States. It had net income of $738.7 million and sales of $24,275.5 million in 2009. Its total assets were $13,073.1 million at the beginning of the year and $13,717.3 million at the end of the year. What is Staples, Inc.'s (a) asset turnover ratio and (b) profit margin ratio? (Round to two decimals.) Provide a brief interpretation of your results.

Calculate profitability ratios. (SO 6), AN

BE13-14 Schiller Company has stockholders' equity of $400,000 and net income of $72,000. It has a payout ratio of 18% and a return on assets ratio of 20%. How much did Schiller pay in cash dividends, and what were its average total assets?

Calculate profitability ratios. (SO 6), AN

BE13-15 Selected data taken from a recent year's financial statements of trading card company Topps Company, Inc. are as follows (in millions).

Calculate cash-basis liquidity and solvency ratios. (SO 6), AN

Net sales	$326.7
Current liabilities, beginning of year	41.1
Current liabilities, end of year	62.4
Net cash provided by operating activities	10.4
Total liabilities, beginning of year	65.2
Total liabilities, end of year	73.2
Capital expenditures	3.7
Cash dividends	6.2

Compute these ratios: (a) current cash debt coverage ratio, (b) cash debt coverage ratio, and (c) free cash flow. Provide a brief interpretation of your results.

Do it! Review

Prepare income statement, including irregular items. (SO 2), AP

Do it! 13-1 In its draft 2012 income statement, Provision Corporation reports income before income taxes $500,000, extraordinary loss due to earthquake $180,000, income taxes $200,000 (not including irregular items), and loss on disposal of discontinued music division $24,000. The income tax rate is 40%. Prepare a correct income statement, beginning with income before income taxes.

Prepare horizontal analysis. (SO 3), AP

Do it! 13-2 Summary financial information for Newburg Company is as follows.

	Dec. 31, 2013	Dec. 31, 2012
Current assets	$ 200,000	$ 220,000
Plant assets	1,040,000	780,000
Total assets	$1,240,000	$1,000,000

Compute the amount and percentage changes in 2013 using horizontal analysis, assuming 2012 is the base year.

Compute ratios. (SO 5), AP

Do it! 13-3 The condensed financial statements of Blondell Company for the years 2011 and 2012 are presented below.

BLONDELL COMPANY
Balance Sheets
December 31 (in thousands)

	2012	2011
Current assets		
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 330	$ 360
Accounts receivable (net)	470	400
Inventories	460	390
Prepaid expenses	130	160
Total current assets	1,390	1,310
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	410	380
Investments	10	10
Intangibles and other assets	530	510
Total assets	$2,340	$2,210
Current liabilities	$ 820	$ 790
Long-term liabilities	480	380
Stockholders' equity—common	1,040	1,040
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$2,340	$2,210

BLONDELL COMPANY
Income Statements
For the Year Ended December 31 (in thousands)

	2012	2011
Revenues	$3,800	$3,460
Costs and expenses		
Cost of goods sold	970	890
Selling & administrative expenses	2,400	2,330
Interest expense	10	20
Total costs and expenses	3,380	3,240
Income before income taxes	420	220
Income tax expense	168	88
Net income	$ 252	$ 132

Compute the following ratios for 2012 and 2011.
(a) Current ratio.
(b) Inventory turnover. (Inventory on December 31, 2010, was $340.)
(c) Profit margin ratio.
(d) Return on assets. (Assets on December 31, 2010, were $1,900.)
(e) Return on common stockholders' equity. (Equity on December 31, 2010, was $900.)

(f) Debt to total assets ratio.
(g) Times interest earned.

Do it! 13-4 Match each of the following terms with the phrase that best describes it.

Match terms relating to quality of earnings and financial statement analysis. (SO 3, 4, 5, 6, 7), **K**

Quality of earnings	Pro forma income
Current ratio	Discontinued operations
Horizontal analysis	Comprehensive income

1. A measure used to evaluate a company's liquidity.
2. Usually excludes items that a company thinks are unusual or non-recurring.
3. Indicates the level of full and transparent information provided to users of the financial statements.
4. The disposal of a significant segment of a business.
5. Determines increases or decreases in a series of financial statement data.
6. Includes all changes in stockholders' equity during a period except those resulting from investments by stockholders and distributions to stockholders.

Exercises

All of the Exercises in this chapter employ decision tools.

E13-1 Tulsa Company has income before irregular items of $310,000 for the year ended December 31, 2012. It also has the following items (before considering income taxes): (1) an extraordinary fire loss of $60,000 and (2) a gain of $30,000 from the disposal of a division. Assume all items are subject to income taxes at a 30% tax rate.

Prepare irregular items portion of an income statement. (SO 2), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare Tulsa Company's income statement for 2012, beginning with "Income before irregular items."

E13-2 The *Wall Street Journal* routinely publishes summaries of corporate quarterly and annual earnings reports in a feature called the "Earnings Digest." A typical "digest" report takes the following form.

Evaluate the effects of unusual or irregular items. (SO 1, 2, 6), **C**

ENERGY ENTERPRISES (A)

	Quarter ending July 31	
	2012	**2011**
Revenues	$2,049,000,000	$1,754,000,000
Net income	97,000,000	(a) 68,750,000
EPS: Net income	1.28	0.93

	12 months ending July 31	
	2012	**2011**
Revenues	$5,578,500,000	$5,065,300,000
Extraordinary item	(b) 1,900,000	
Net income	102,700,000	(a) 33,250,000
EPS: Net income	1.36	0.48

(a) Includes a net charge of $26,000,000 from loss on the sale of electrical equipment
(b) Extraordinary gain on Middle East property expropriation

The letter in parentheses following the company name indicates the exchange on which Energy Enterprises' stock is traded—in this case, the American Stock Exchange.

Instructions
Answer the following questions.
(a) How was the loss on the electrical equipment reported on the income statement? Was it reported in the fourth quarter of 2011? How can you tell?
(b) Why did the *Wall Street Journal* list the extraordinary item separately?
(c) What is the extraordinary item? Was it included in income for the fourth quarter? How can you tell?
(d) Did Energy Enterprises have an operating loss in any quarter of 2011? Of 2012? How do you know?
(e) Approximately how many shares of stock were outstanding in 2012? Did the number of outstanding shares change from July 31, 2011 to July 31, 2012?

(f) As an investor, what numbers should you use to determine Energy Enterprises' profit margin ratio? Calculate the profit margin ratio for 2011 and 2012 that you consider most useful. Explain your decision.

Prepare horizontal analysis.
(SO 4), AP

E13-3 Here is financial information for Pauletti Inc.

	December 31, 2012	December 31, 2011
Current assets	$106,000	$ 90,000
Plant assets (net)	400,000	350,000
Current liabilities	99,000	65,000
Long-term liabilities	122,000	90,000
Common stock, $1 par	130,000	115,000
Retained earnings	155,000	170,000

Instructions
Prepare a schedule showing a horizontal analysis for 2012, using 2011 as the base year.

Prepare vertical analysis.
(SO 5), AP

E13-4 Operating data for Gladow Corporation are presented below.

	2012	2011
Sales	$800,000	$600,000
Cost of goods sold	520,000	408,000
Selling expenses	120,000	72,000
Administrative expenses	60,000	48,000
Income tax expense	30,000	24,000
Net income	70,000	48,000

Instructions
Prepare a schedule showing a vertical analysis for 2012 and 2011.

Prepare horizontal and vertical analyses.
(SO 4, 5), AP

E13-5 The comparative balance sheets of Nike, Inc. are presented here.

NIKE, INC.
Comparative Balance Sheets
May 31
($ in millions)

Assets	2009	2008
Current assets	$ 9,734	$ 8,839
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	1,958	1,891
Other assets	1,558	1,713
Total assets	$13,250	$12,443
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Current liabilities	$ 3,277	$ 3,322
Long-term liabilities	1,280	1,296
Stockholders' equity	8,693	7,825
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$13,250	$12,443

Instructions
(a) Prepare a horizontal analysis of the balance sheet data for Nike, using 2008 as a base. (Show the amount of increase or decrease as well.)
(b) Prepare a vertical analysis of the balance sheet data for Nike for 2009.

Prepare horizontal and vertical analyses.
(SO 4, 5), AP

E13-6 Here are the comparative income statements of Blevins Corporation.

BLEVINS CORPORATION
Comparative Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31

	2012	2011
Net sales	$598,000	$500,000
Cost of goods sold	477,000	420,000
Gross profit	$121,000	$ 80,000
Operating expenses	80,000	44,000
Net income	$ 41,000	$ 36,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare a horizontal analysis of the income statement data for Blevins Corporation, using 2011 as a base. (Show the amounts of increase or decrease.)

(b) Prepare a vertical analysis of the income statement data for Blevins Corporation for both years.

E13-7 Nordstrom, Inc. operates department stores in numerous states. Selected financial statement data (in millions) for 2009 are presented below.

Compute liquidity ratios. (SO 6), **AP**

	End of Year	Beginning of Year
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 795	$ 72
Receivables (net)	2,035	1,942
Merchandise inventory	898	900
Other current assets	326	303
Total current assets	$4,054	$3,217
Total current liabilities	$2,014	$1,601

For the year, net credit sales were $8,258 million, cost of goods sold was $5,328 million, and cash from operations was $1,251 million.

Instructions

Compute the current ratio, current cash debt coverage ratio, receivables turnover ratio, average collection period, inventory turnover ratio, and days in inventory at the end of the current year.

E13-8 Skie Incorporated had the following transactions involving current assets and current liabilities during February 2012.

Perform current ratio analysis. (SO 6), **AP**

Feb.	3	Collected accounts receivable of $15,000.
	7	Purchased equipment for $23,000 cash.
	11	Paid $3,000 for a 3-year insurance policy.
	14	Paid accounts payable of $12,000.
	18	Declared cash dividends, $4,000.

Additional information:

As of February 1, 2012, current assets were $120,000 and current liabilities were $40,000.

Instructions

Compute the current ratio as of the beginning of the month and after each transaction.

E13-9 Hendi Company has these comparative balance sheet data:

Compute selected ratios. (SO 6), **AP**

HENDI COMPANY
Balance Sheets
December 31

	2012	2011
Cash	$ 15,000	$ 30,000
Receivables (net)	70,000	60,000
Inventories	60,000	50,000
Plant assets (net)	200,000	180,000
	$345,000	$320,000
Accounts payable	$ 50,000	$ 60,000
Mortgage payable (15%)	100,000	100,000
Common stock, $10 par	140,000	120,000
Retained earnings	55,000	40,000
	$345,000	$320,000

Additional information for 2012:

1. Net income was $25,000.
2. Sales on account were $375,000. Sales returns and allowances amounted to $25,000.
3. Cost of goods sold was $198,000.
4. Net cash provided by operating activities was $48,000.
5. Capital expenditures were $25,000, and cash dividends were $10,000.

Instructions

Compute the following ratios at December 31, 2012.

(a) Current.
(b) Receivables turnover.
(c) Average collection period.
(d) Inventory turnover.
(e) Days in inventory.
(f) Cash debt coverage.
(g) Current cash debt coverage.
(h) Free cash flow.

Compute selected ratios. (SO 6), AP

E13-10 Selected comparative statement data for the giant bookseller Barnes & Noble are presented here. All balance sheet data are as of the end of the fiscal year (in millions).

	2008	2007
Net sales	$5,121.8	$5,286.7
Cost of goods sold	3,540.6	3,679.8
Net income	75.9	135.8
Accounts receivable	81.0	107.1
Inventory	1,203.5	1,358.2
Total assets	2,993.9	3,249.8
Total common stockholders' equity	921.6	1,074.7

Instructions

Compute the following ratios for 2008.

(a) Profit margin.
(b) Asset turnover.
(c) Return on assets.
(d) Return on common stockholders' equity.
(e) Gross profit rate.

Compute selected ratios. (SO 6), AP

E13-11 Here is the income statement for Bachus, Inc.

BACHUS, INC.
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales	$400,000
Cost of goods sold	230,000
Gross profit	170,000
Expenses (including $16,000 interest and $24,000 income taxes)	98,000
Net income	$ 72,000

Additional information:

1. Common stock outstanding January 1, 2012, was 32,000 shares, and 40,000 shares were outstanding at December 31, 2012.
2. The market price of Bachus, Inc., stock was $14 in 2012.
3. Cash dividends of $21,000 were paid, $5,000 of which were to preferred stockholders.

Instructions

Compute the following measures for 2012.

(a) Earnings per share.
(b) Price-earnings ratio.
(c) Payout ratio.
(d) Times interest earned ratio.

Compute amounts from ratios. (SO 6), AP

E13-12 Lacey Corporation experienced a fire on December 31, 2012 in which its financial records were partially destroyed. It has been able to salvage some of the records and has ascertained the following balances.

	December 31, 2012	December 31, 2011
Cash	$ 30,000	$ 10,000
Receivables (net)	72,500	126,000
Inventory	200,000	180,000
Accounts payable	50,000	90,000
Notes payable	30,000	60,000
Common stock, $100 par	400,000	400,000
Retained earnings	113,500	101,000

Additional information:

1. The inventory turnover is 3.8 times.
2. The return on common stockholders' equity is 22%. The company had no additional paid-in capital.

3. The receivables turnover is 11.2 times.
4. The return on assets is 18%.
5. Total assets at December 31, 2011, were $605,000.

Instructions
Compute the following for Lacey Corporation.
(a) Cost of goods sold for 2012.
(b) Net credit sales for 2012.
(c) Net income for 2012.
(d) Total assets at December 31, 2012.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

All of the Problems in this chapter employ decision tools.

P13-1A Here are comparative statement data for Silver Company and Gold Company, two competitors. All balance sheet data are as of December 31, 2012, and December 31, 2011.

Prepare vertical analysis and comment on profitability.
(SO 5, 6), **AN**

	Silver Company		Gold Company	
	2012	**2011**	**2012**	**2011**
Net sales	$1,849,000		$546,000	
Cost of goods sold	1,063,200		289,000	
Operating expenses	240,000		82,000	
Interest expense	6,800		3,600	
Income tax expense	62,000		28,000	
Current assets	325,975	$312,410	83,336	$ 79,467
Plant assets (net)	526,800	500,000	139,728	125,812
Current liabilities	66,325	75,815	35,348	30,281
Long-term liabilities	113,990	90,000	29,620	25,000
Common stock, $10 par	500,000	500,000	120,000	120,000
Retained earnings	172,460	146,595	38,096	29,998

Instructions
(a) Prepare a vertical analysis of the 2012 income statement data for Silver Company and Gold Company.
(b) Comment on the relative profitability of the companies by computing the 2012 return on assets and the return on common stockholders' equity ratios for both companies.

P13-2A The comparative statements of Lucille Company are presented here.

Compute ratios from balance sheets and income statements.
(SO 6), **AP**

LUCILLE COMPANY
Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31

	2012	**2011**
Net sales	$1,890,540	$1,750,500
Cost of goods sold	1,058,540	1,006,000
Gross profit	832,000	744,500
Selling and administrative expenses	500,000	479,000
Income from operations	332,000	265,500
Other expenses and losses		
Interest expense	22,000	20,000
Income before income taxes	310,000	245,500
Income tax expense	92,000	73,000
Net income	$ 218,000	$ 172,500

LUCILLE COMPANY
Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	**2012**	**2011**
Current assets		
Cash	$ 60,100	$ 64,200
Short-term investments	74,000	50,000
Accounts receivable	117,800	102,800
Inventory	126,000	115,500
Total current assets	377,900	332,500
Plant assets (net)	649,000	520,300
Total assets	$1,026,900	$852,800
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Current liabilities		
Accounts payable	$ 160,000	$145,400
Income taxes payable	43,500	42,000
Total current liabilities	203,500	187,400
Bonds payable	220,000	200,000
Total liabilities	423,500	387,400
Stockholders' equity		
Common stock ($5 par)	290,000	300,000
Retained earnings	313,400	165,400
Total stockholders' equity	603,400	465,400
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$1,026,900	$852,800

All sales were on account. Net cash provided by operating activities for 2012 was $220,000. Capital expenditures were $136,000, and cash dividends were $70,000.

Instructions

Compute the following ratios for 2012.

(a) Earnings per share.
(b) Return on common stockholders' equity.
(c) Return on assets.
(d) Current ratio.
(e) Receivables turnover.
(f) Average collection period.
(g) Inventory turnover.
(h) Days in inventory.
(i) Times interest earned.
(j) Asset turnover.
(k) Debt to total assets.
(l) Current cash debt coverage.
(m) Cash debt coverage.
(n) Free cash flow.

Perform ratio analysis, and discuss change in financial position and operating results.
(SO 6), **AN**

P13-3A Condensed balance sheet and income statement data for Glassgow Corporation are presented here.

GLASSGOW CORPORATION
Balance Sheets
December 31

	2012	**2011**	**2010**
Cash	$ 30,000	$ 20,000	$ 18,000
Receivables (net)	50,000	45,000	48,000
Other current assets	90,000	95,000	64,000
Investments	55,000	70,000	45,000
Plant and equipment (net)	500,000	370,000	358,000
	$725,000	$600,000	$533,000
Current liabilities	$ 85,000	$ 80,000	$ 70,000
Long-term debt	145,000	85,000	50,000
Common stock, $10 par	320,000	310,000	300,000
Retained earnings	175,000	125,000	113,000
	$725,000	$600,000	$533,000

GLASSGOW CORPORATION
Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31

	2012	2011
Sales	$740,000	$600,000
Less: Sales returns and allowances	40,000	30,000
Net sales	700,000	570,000
Cost of goods sold	425,000	350,000
Gross profit	275,000	220,000
Operating expenses (including income taxes)	180,000	150,000
Net income	$ 95,000	$ 70,000

Additional information:

1. The market price of Glassgow's common stock was $7.00, $7.50, and $8.50 for 2010, 2011, and 2012, respectively.
2. You must compute dividends paid. All dividends were paid in cash.

Instructions

(a) Compute the following ratios for 2011 and 2012.
(1) Profit margin.
(2) Gross profit rate.
(3) Asset turnover.
(4) Earnings per share.
(5) Price-earnings.
(6) Payout.
(7) Debt to total assets.

(b) Based on the ratios calculated, discuss briefly the improvement or lack thereof in the financial position and operating results from 2011 to 2012 of Glassgow Corporation.

P13-4A The following financial information is for Cheaney Company.

Compute ratios; comment on overall liquidity and profitability.
(SO 6), **AN**

CHEANEY COMPANY
Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	2012	2011
Cash	$ 70,000	$ 65,000
Short-term investments	55,000	40,000
Receivables	104,000	90,000
Inventories	230,000	165,000
Prepaid expenses	25,000	23,000
Land	130,000	130,000
Building and equipment (net)	260,000	185,000
Total assets	$874,000	$698,000
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Notes payable	$170,000	$120,000
Accounts payable	65,000	52,000
Accrued liabilities	40,000	40,000
Bonds payable, due 2015	250,000	170,000
Common stock, $10 par	200,000	200,000
Retained earnings	149,000	116,000
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$874,000	$698,000

CHEANEY COMPANY
Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31

	2012	2011
Sales	$882,000	$790,000
Cost of goods sold	640,000	575,000
Gross profit	242,000	215,000
Operating expenses	190,000	167,000
Net income	$ 52,000	$ 48,000

Additional information:

1. Inventory at the beginning of 2011 was $115,000.
2. Receivables (net) at the beginning of 2011 were $86,000.
3. Total assets at the beginning of 2011 were $660,000.
4. No common stock transactions occurred during 2011 or 2012.
5. All sales were on account.

Instructions

(a) Indicate, by using ratios, the change in liquidity and profitability of Cheaney Company from 2011 to 2012. (*Note:* Not all profitability ratios can be computed nor can cash-basis ratios be computed.)

(b) Given below are three independent situations and a ratio that may be affected. For each situation, compute the affected ratio (1) as of December 31, 2012, and (2) as of December 31, 2013, after giving effect to the situation. Net income for 2013 was $54,000. Total assets on December 31, 2013, were $900,000.

Situation	Ratio
1. 18,000 shares of common stock were sold at par on July 1, 2013.	Return on common stockholders' equity
2. All of the notes payable were paid in 2013.	Debt to total assets
3. The market price of common stock was $9 and $12 on December 31, 2012 and 2013, respectively.	Price-earnings

Compute selected ratios, and compare liquidity, profitability, and solvency for two companies.
(SO 6), E

P13-5A Selected financial data of Target and Wal-Mart for 2009 are presented here (in millions).

	Target Corporation	Wal-Mart Stores, Inc.
	Income Statement Data for Year	
Net sales	$65,357	$408,214
Cost of goods sold	45,583	304,657
Selling and administrative expenses	15,101	79,607
Interest expense	707	2,065
Other income (expense)	(94)	(411)
Income tax expense	1,384	7,139
Net income	$ 2,488	$ 14,335
	Balance Sheet Data (End of Year)	
Current assets	$18,424	$ 48,331
Noncurrent assets	26,109	122,375
Total assets	$44,533	$170,706
Current liabilities	$11,327	$ 55,561
Long-term debt	17,859	44,089
Total stockholders' equity	15,347	71,056
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$44,533	$170,706
	Beginning-of-Year Balances	
Total assets	$44,106	$163,429
Total stockholders' equity	13,712	65,682
Current liabilities	10,512	55,390
Total liabilities	30,394	97,747
	Other Data	
Average net receivables	$7,525	$ 4,025
Average inventory	6,942	33,836
Net cash provided by operating activities	5,881	26,249
Capital expenditures	1,729	12,184
Dividends	496	4,217

Instructions

(a) For each company, compute the following ratios.

(1) Current.
(2) Receivables turnover.
(3) Average collection period.
(4) Inventory turnover.
(5) Days in inventory.
(6) Profit margin.
(7) Asset turnover.
(8) Return on assets.
(9) Return on common stockholders' equity.
(10) Debt to total assets.
(11) Times interest earned.
(12) Current cash debt coverage.
(13) Cash debt coverage.
(14) Free cash flow.

(b) Compare the liquidity, solvency, and profitability of the two companies.

Problems: Set B

All of the Problems in this chapter employ decision tools.

P13-1B Here are comparative statement data for Martin Company and Lewis Company, two competitors. All balance sheet data are as of December 31, 2012, and December 31, 2011.

Prepare vertical analysis and comment on profitability. (SO 5, 6), **AN**

	Martin Company		Lewis Company	
	2012	**2011**	**2012**	**2011**
Net sales	$350,000		$1,200,000	
Cost of goods sold	180,000		648,000	
Operating expenses	72,000		266,000	
Interest expense	5,000		10,000	
Income tax expense	17,000		54,000	
Current assets	130,000	$100,000	700,000	$650,000
Plant assets (net)	400,000	270,000	1,000,000	750,000
Current liabilities	60,000	58,000	250,000	275,000
Long-term liabilities	50,000	72,000	200,000	150,000
Common stock	340,000	200,000	950,000	700,000
Retained earnings	80,000	40,000	300,000	275,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare a vertical analysis of the 2012 income statement data for Martin Company and Lewis Company.

(b) Comment on the relative profitability of the companies by computing the return on assets and the return on common stockholders' equity ratios for both companies.

P13-2B The comparative statements of Jetson Company are shown below.

Compute ratios from balance sheets and income statements. (SO 6), **AP**

JETSON COMPANY
Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31

	2012	**2011**
Net sales	$780,000	$624,000
Cost of goods sold	440,000	405,600
Gross profit	340,000	218,400
Selling and administrative expense	176,880	149,760
Income from operations	163,120	68,640
Other expenses and losses		
Interest expense	9,920	7,200
Income before income taxes	153,200	61,440
Income tax expense	38,000	14,000
Net income	$115,200	$ 47,440

JETSON COMPANY
Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	**2012**	**2011**
Current assets		
Cash	$ 23,100	$ 21,600
Short-term investments	44,800	33,000
Accounts receivable	106,200	83,800
Inventory	116,400	74,000
Total current assets	290,500	212,400
Plant assets (net)	485,300	439,600
Total assets	$775,800	$652,000
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Current liabilities		
Accounts payable	$138,200	$132,000
Income taxes payable	25,300	24,000
Total current liabilities	163,500	156,000
Bonds payable	132,000	120,000
Total liabilities	295,500	276,000
Stockholders' equity		
Common stock ($10 par)	150,000	130,000
Retained earnings	330,300	246,000
Total stockholders' equity	480,300	376,000
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$775,800	$652,000

All sales were on account. Net cash provided by operating activities was $108,000. Capital expenditures were $47,000, and cash dividends were $30,900.

Instructions

Compute the following ratios for 2012.

(a) Earnings per share.
(b) Return on common stockholders' equity.
(c) Return on assets.
(d) Current.
(e) Receivables turnover.
(f) Average collection period.
(g) Inventory turnover.
(h) Days in inventory.
(i) Times interest earned.
(j) Asset turnover.
(k) Debt to total assets.
(l) Current cash debt coverage.
(m) Cash debt coverage.
(n) Free cash flow.

Perform ratio analysis, and discuss change in financial position and operating results.
(SO 6), AN

P13-3B The condensed balance sheet and income statement data for Finch Corporation are presented below.

FINCH CORPORATION
Balance Sheets
December 31

	2012	**2011**	**2010**
Cash	$ 30,000	$ 24,000	$ 20,000
Receivables (net)	110,000	48,000	48,000
Other current assets	80,000	78,000	62,000
Investments	90,000	70,000	50,000
Plant and equipment (net)	503,000	400,000	360,000
	$813,000	$620,000	$540,000
Current liabilities	$ 98,000	$ 75,000	$ 70,000
Long-term debt	130,000	75,000	65,000
Common stock, $10 par	400,000	340,000	300,000
Retained earnings	185,000	130,000	105,000
	$813,000	$620,000	$540,000

FINCH CORPORATION
Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31

	2012	2011
Sales	$800,000	$750,000
Less: Sales returns and allowances	40,000	50,000
Net sales	760,000	700,000
Cost of goods sold	420,000	406,000
Gross profit	340,000	294,000
Operating expenses (including income taxes)	220,000	204,000
Net income	$120,000	$ 90,000

Additional information:

1. The market price of Finch common stock was $5.00, $3.50, and $2.80 for 2010, 2011, and 2012, respectively.
2. You must compute dividends paid. All dividends were paid in cash.

Instructions

(a) Compute the following ratios for 2011 and 2012.
(1) Profit margin.
(2) Gross profit rate.
(3) Asset turnover.
(4) Earnings per share.
(5) Price-earnings.
(6) Payout.
(7) Debt to total assets.

(b) Based on the ratios calculated, discuss briefly the improvement or lack thereof in the financial position and operating results from 2011 to 2012 of Finch Corporation.

P13-4B Financial information for Chimera Company is presented here.

Compute ratios; comment on overall liquidity and profitability.
(SO 6), **AN**

CHIMERA COMPANY
Balance Sheets
December 31

Assets	2012	2011
Cash	$ 50,000	$ 42,000
Short-term investments	80,000	50,000
Receivables	100,000	77,000
Inventories	410,000	320,000
Prepaid expenses	30,000	31,000
Land	75,000	75,000
Building and equipment (net)	570,000	400,000
Total assets	$1,315,000	$995,000
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Notes payable	$ 120,000	$ 25,000
Accounts payable	160,000	90,000
Accrued liabilities	50,000	50,000
Bonds payable, due 2014	180,000	100,000
Common stock, $5 par	500,000	500,000
Retained earnings	305,000	230,000
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$1,315,000	$995,000

CHIMERA COMPANY
Income Statements
For the Years Ended December 31

	2012	2011
Sales	$1,050,000	$940,000
Cost of goods sold	680,000	635,000
Gross profit	370,000	305,000
Operating expenses	240,000	215,000
Net income	$ 130,000	$ 90,000

Additional information:

1. Inventory at the beginning of 2011 was $330,000.
2. Receivables at the beginning of 2011 were $80,000.
3. Total assets at the beginning of 2011 were $1,175,000.
4. No common stock transactions occurred during 2011 or 2012.
5. All sales were on account.

Instructions

(a) Indicate, by using ratios, the change in liquidity and profitability of the company from 2011 to 2012. (*Note:* Not all profitability ratios can be computed nor can cash-basis ratios be computed.)

(b) Given below are three independent situations and a ratio that may be affected. For each situation, compute the affected ratio (1) as of December 31, 2012, and (2) as of December 31, 2013, after giving effect to the situation. Net income for 2013 was $125,000. Total assets on December 31, 2013, were $1,450,000.

Situation	Ratio
1. 50,000 shares of common stock were sold at par on July 1, 2013.	Return on common stockholders' equity
2. All of the notes payable were paid in 2013.	Debt to total assets
3. The market price of common stock on December 31, 2013, was $6.25. The market price on December 31, 2012 was $5.	Price-earnings

Compute selected ratios, and compare liquidity, profitability, and solvency for two companies.
(SO 6), E

P13-5B Selected financial data for Stanley Black & Decker, Inc. and Snap-On Tools for 2009 are presented here (in millions).

	Stanley Black & Decker	Snap-On Tools
	Income Statement Data for Year	
Net sales	$3,737.1	$2,420.8
Cost of goods sold	2,228.8	1,345.7
Selling and administrative expenses	1,208.2	824.4
Interest expense	63.7	47.7
Other income (loss)	42.4	(6.1)
Income tax expense	54.5	62.7
Net income	$ 224.3	$ 134.2
	Balance Sheet Data (End of Year)	
Current assets	$1,411.9	$1,676.1
Property, plant, and equipment (net)	575.9	347.8
Other assets	2,781.3	1,423.5
Total assets	$4,769.1	$3,447.4
Current liabilities	$1,192.0	$ 739.9
Long-term debt	1,591.0	1,417.5
Total stockholders' equity	1,986.1	1,290.0
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$4,769.1	$3,447.4
	Beginning-of-Year Balances	
Total assets	$4,866.6	$2,710.3
Total stockholders' equity	1,706.3	1,186.5
Current liabilities	1,193.2	547.5
Total liabilities	3,160.3	1,523.8
	Other Data	
Average receivables (net)	$ 604.9	$ 612.7
Average inventory	440.5	316.9
Net cash provided by operating activities	539.4	347.1
Capital expenditures	72.9	64.4
Cash dividends	103.6	69.0

Instructions

(a) For each company, compute the following ratios.

(1) Current ratio.
(2) Receivables turnover.
(3) Average collection period.
(4) Inventory turnover.
(5) Days in inventory.
(6) Profit margin.
(7) Asset turnover.
(8) Return on assets.
(9) Return on common stockholders' equity.
(10) Debt to total assets.
(11) Times interest earned.
(12) Current cash debt coverage.
(13) Cash debt coverage.
(14) Free cash flow.

(b) Compare the liquidity, solvency, and profitability of the two companies.

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Continuing Cookie Chronicle

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Cookie Chronicle from Chapters 1 through 12.)

CCC13 Natalie and Curtis have comparative balance sheets and income statements for Cookie & Coffee Creations Inc. They have been told that they can use these financial statements to prepare horizontal and vertical analyses, and to calculate financial ratios, to analyze how their business is doing and to make some decisions they have been considering.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to find the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

Financial Reporting and Analysis

FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.*

BYP13-1 Your parents are considering investing in Tootsie Roll Industries common stock. They ask you, as an accounting expert, to make an analysis of the company for them. Fortunately, excerpts from a recent annual report of Tootsie Roll are presented in Appendix A of this textbook.

Instructions

(a) Make a 5-year trend analysis, using 2005 as the base year, of (1) net sales and (2) net earnings. Comment on the significance of the trend results.

(b) Compute for 2009 and 2008 the (1) debt to total assets ratio and (2) times interest earned ratio. (See Note 6 for interest expense.) How would you evaluate Tootsie Roll's long-term solvency?

(c) Compute for 2009 and 2008 the (1) profit margin ratio, (2) asset turnover ratio, (3) return on assets ratio, and (4) return on common stockholders' equity ratio. How would you evaluate Tootsie Roll's profitability? Total assets at December 31, 2007, were $812,725,000, and total stockholders' equity at December 31, 2007, was $638,230,000.

(d) What information outside the annual report may also be useful to your parents in making a decision about Tootsie Roll?

COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS PROBLEM: *Tootsie Roll vs. Hershey*

BYP13-2 The financial statements of The Hershey Company are presented in Appendix B, following the financial statements for Tootsie Roll Industries in Appendix A.

Instructions

(a) Based on the information in the financial statements, determine each of the following for each company:
  (1) The percentage increase (i) in net sales and (ii) in net income from 2008 to 2009.
  (2) The percentage increase (i) in total assets and (ii) in total stockholders' equity from 2008 to 2009.
  (3) The earnings per share for 2009.

(b) What conclusions concerning the two companies can be drawn from these data?

RESEARCH CASE

BYP13-3 The April 21, 2008, issue of the *Wall Street Journal Online* included an article by David Reilly entitled "A Way Charges Stay off Bottom Line."

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following questions.

(a) According to the article, how do companies avoid reporting losses on certain types of investment securities in net income?

(b) At what point would these losses be reported in net income?

(c) At the time of the article, what was the total estimated amount of unrealized losses that companies in the Standard and Poor's 500 Stock Index were reporting in equity?

(d) Does the article suggest that these companies are violating accounting standards?

(e) What are the implications of this accounting practice for investors?

INTERPRETING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BYP13-4 The Coca-Cola Company and PepsiCo, Inc. provide refreshments to every corner of the world. Selected data from the 2009 consolidated financial statements for The Coca-Cola Company and for PepsiCo, Inc. are presented here (in millions).

	Coca-Cola	PepsiCo
Total current assets	$17,551	$12,571
Total current liabilities	13,721	8,756
Net sales	30,990	43,232
Cost of goods sold	11,088	20,099
Net income	6,824	5,946
Average (net) receivables for the year	3,424	4,654
Average inventories for the year	2,271	2,570
Average total assets	44,595	37,921
Average common stockholders' equity	22,636	14,556
Average current liabilities	13,355	8,772
Average total liabilities	21,960	23,466
Total assets	48,671	39,848
Total liabilities	23,872	23,044
Income taxes	2,040	2,100
Interest expense	355	397
Cash provided by operating activities	8,186	6,796
Capital expenditures	1,993	2,128
Cash dividends	3,800	2,732

Instructions

(a) Compute the following liquidity ratios for 2009 for Coca-Cola and for PepsiCo and comment on the relative liquidity of the two competitors.
  (1) Current ratio.
  (2) Receivables turnover.
  (3) Average collection period.
  (4) Inventory turnover.
  (5) Days in inventory.
  (6) Current cash debt coverage.

(b) Compute the following solvency ratios for the two companies and comment on the relative solvency of the two competitors.
  (1) Debt to total assets ratio.
  (2) Times interest earned.
  (3) Cash debt coverage ratio.
  (4) Free cash flow.

(c) Compute the following profitability ratios for the two companies and comment on the relative profitability of the two competitors.
  (1) Profit margin.
  (2) Asset turnover.
  (3) Return on assets.
  (4) Return on common stockholders' equity.

FINANCIAL ANALYSIS ON THE WEB

BYP13-5 ***Purpose:*** To employ comparative data and industry data to evaluate a company's performance and financial position.

Address: **http://www.moneycentral.msn.com/investor/invsub/results/compare.asp**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps
(1) Identify two competing companies.
(2) Go to the above address.
(3) Type in the first company's stock symbol. (Use "symbol look-up.").
(4) Choose **Ratios**.
(5) Print out the results.
(6) Repeat steps 3–5 for the competitor.

Instructions
(a) Evaluate the company's liquidity relative to the industry averages and to the competitor that you chose.
(b) Evaluate the company's solvency relative to the industry averages and to the competitor that you chose.
(c) Evaluate the company's profitability relative to the industry averages and to the competitor that you chose.

Critical Thinking

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP13-6 You are a loan officer for Great Plains Bank of Davenport. David Miller, president of D. Miller Corporation, has just left your office. He is interested in an 8-year loan to expand the company's operations. The borrowed funds would be used to purchase new equipment. As evidence of the company's debt-worthiness, Miller provided you with the following facts.

	2012	2011
Current ratio	3.1	2.1
Asset turnover ratio	2.8	2.2
Cash debt coverage ratio	.1	.2
Net income	Up 32%	Down 8%
Earnings per share	$3.30	$2.50

Miller is a very insistent (some would say pushy) man. When you told him that you would need additional information before making your decision, he acted offended and said, "What more could you possibly want to know?" You responded that, at a minimum, you would need complete, audited financial statements.

Instructions
With the class divided into groups, answer the following.
(a) Explain why you would want the financial statements to be audited.
(b) Discuss the implications of the ratios provided for the lending decision you are to make. That is, does the information paint a favorable picture? Are these ratios relevant to the decision?
(c) List three other ratios that you would want to calculate for this company, and explain why you would use each.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP13-7 Kevin Halen is the chief executive officer of Brenna Electronics. Halen is an expert engineer but a novice in accounting. Halen asks you, as an accounting student, to explain (a) the bases for comparison in analyzing Brenna's financial statements and (b) the limitations, if any, in financial statement analysis.

Instructions
Write a memo to Kevin Halen that explains the basis for comparison and the factors affecting quality of earnings.

ETHICS CASE

BYP13-8 Ellen Toth, president of RF Industries, wishes to issue a press release to bolster her company's image and maybe even its stock price, which has been gradually falling. As controller, you have been asked to provide a list of 20 financial ratios and other operating statistics for RF Industries' first-quarter financials and operations.

Two days after you provide the data requested, Marian Lyons, the public relations director of RF, asks you to prove the accuracy of the financial and operating data contained in the press release written by the president and edited by Marian. In the news release, the president highlights the sales increase of 25% over last year's first quarter and the positive change in the current ratio from 1.5:1 last year to 3:1 this year. She also emphasizes that production was up 50% over the prior year's first quarter.

You note that the release contains only positive or improved ratios and none of the negative or deteriorated ratios. For instance, no mention is made that the debt to total assets ratio has increased from 35% to 55%, that inventories are up 89%, and that although the current ratio improved, the current cash debt coverage ratio fell from .15 to .05. Nor is there any mention that the reported profit for the quarter would have been a loss had not the estimated lives of RF plant and machinery been increased by 30%. Marian emphasized, "The Pres wants this release by early this afternoon."

Instructions
(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?
(b) Is there anything unethical in the president's actions?
(c) Should you as controller remain silent? Does Marian have any responsibility?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP13-9 In this chapter, you learned how to use many tools for performing a financial analysis of a company. When making personal investments, however, it is most likely that you won't be buying stocks and bonds in individual companies. Instead, when most people want to invest in stock, they buy mutual funds. By investing in a mutual fund, you reduce your risk because the fund diversifies by buying the stock of a variety of different companies, bonds, and other investments, depending on the stated goals of the fund.

Before you invest in a fund, you will need to decide what type of fund you want. For example, do you want a fund that has the potential of high growth (but also high risk), or are you looking for lower risk and a steady steam of income? Do you want a fund that invests only in U.S. companies, or do you want one that invests globally? Many resources are available to help you with these types of decisions.

Instructions
Go to **http://web.archive.org/web/20050210200843/http://www.cnb1.com/invallocmdl.htm** and complete the investment allocation questionnaire. Add up your total points to determine the type of investment fund that would be appropriate for you.

FASB CODIFICATION ACTIVITY

BYP13-10 If your school has a subscription to the FASB Codification, go to **http://aaahq.org/ascLogin.cfm** to log in and prepare responses to the following. Use the Master Glossary for determining the proper definitions.
(a) Discontinued operations.
(b) Extraordinary items.
(c) Comprehensive income.

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 689 What Does "Non-Recurring" Really Mean? **Q:** If a company takes a large restructuring charge, what is the effect on the company's current income statement versus future ones? **A:** The current period's net income can be greatly diminished by a large restructuring charge. The net incomes in future periods can be enhanced because they are relieved of costs (i.e., depreciation and labor expenses) that would have been charged to them.

p. 700 How to Manage the Current Ratio **Q:** How might management influence a company's current ratio? **A:** Management can affect the current ratio by speeding up or withholding payments on accounts payable just before the balance sheet date. Management can alter the cash balance by increasing or decreasing long-term assets or long-term debt, or by issuing or purchasing common stock.

p. 701 High Ratings Can Bring Low Returns **Q:** Why are credit rating agencies important to the financial markets? **A:** Credit rating agencies perform financial analysis on publicly traded companies and then publish research reports and credit ratings. Investors and creditors rely on the information provided by credit rating agencies in making investment and lending decisions.

p. 704 Are Annual Reports Worth Their Weight? **Q:** Why might adding extra pages to the annual report not be beneficial to investors and analysts? What should be management's overriding objective in financial reporting? **A:** When given too much information, investors may suffer from "information overload"—they may have a hard time sorting out what is important from what is not. Management's overriding financial reporting objective should be to provide an accurate depiction of the company's financial position and operating results in a clear and concise fashion. It should provide as much detail as is necessary to accomplish that.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. d **2.** d ($400,000 × .75); ($100,000 × .75) **3.** b **4.** d **5.** c ($360,000 ÷ $300,000) **6.** c **7.** a **8.** c **9.** c **10.** b **11.** a ($24,000 ÷ $400,000) **12.** b ($306,000 ÷ (($54,000 + $48,000)/2)) = 6; 365 ÷ 6 **13.** b ($81,000 ÷ $27,000) **14.** a ($134,000 ÷ $784,000) **15.** d ($134,000 − $4,000) ÷ (($240,000 + $198,000)/2)) **16.** c ($134,000 + $22,000 + $12,000) ÷ $12,000 **17.** c

IFRS A Look at IFRS

The first sections of this chapter, dealing with the tools of financial analysis, are the same throughout the world. Techniques such as vertical and horizontal analysis, for example, are tools used by analysts regardless of whether GAAP- or IFRS-related financial statements are being evaluated. In addition, the ratios provided in the textbook are the same ones that are used internationally.

The latter part of this chapter relates to the income statement and irregular items. As in GAAP, the income statement is a required statement under IFRS. In addition, the content and presentation of an IFRS income statement is similar to the one used for GAAP. *IAS 1* (revised), "Presentation of Financial Statements," provides general guidelines for the reporting of income statement information. In general, the differences in the presentation of financial statement information are relatively minor.

IFRS ADDITIONS TO THE TEXTBOOK

- The tools of financial statement analysis covered in this chapter are universal and therefore no significant differences exist in the analysis methods used.
- The basic objectives of the income statement are the same under both GAAP and IFRS. As indicated in the textbook, a very important objective is to ensure that users of the income statement can evaluate the earning power of the company. Earning power is the normal level of income to be obtained in the future. Thus, both the IASB and the FASB are interested in distinguishing normal levels of income from irregular items in order to better predict a company's future profitability.
- The basic accounting for discontinued operations is the same under IFRS and GAAP.
- Under IFRS, there is no classification for extraordinary items. In other words, extraordinary item treatment is prohibited under IFRS. All revenue and expense items are considered ordinary in nature. Disclosure, however, is extensive for items that are considered material to the financial results. Examples are write-downs of inventory or plant assets, or gains and losses on the sale of plant assets.
- The accounting for changes in accounting principles and changes in accounting estimates are the same for both GAAP and IFRS.
- The income statement under IFRS is referred to as a *statement of comprehensive income*. The statement of comprehensive income can be prepared under the one-statement approach or the two-statement approach.

Under the one-statement approach, all components of revenue and expense are reported in the income statement. This combined statement of comprehensive income first computes net income or loss, which is then followed by components of other comprehensive income or loss items to arrive at comprehensive income. An example appears below.

WALTER COMPANY
Statement of Comprehensive Income
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales revenue	$5,100,000
Cost of goods sold	3,800,000
Gross profit	1,300,000
Operating expenses	700,000
Net income	600,000
Other comprehensive income	
Unrealized gain on available-for-sale securities	75,000
Comprehensive income	$ 675,000

Under the two-statement approach, all the components of revenues and expenses are reported in a traditional income statement *except* for other comprehensive income or loss. In addition, a second statement (the statement of comprehensive income) is then prepared, starting with net income and followed by other comprehensive income or loss items to arrive at comprehensive income. An example of the two-statement approach, using the same data as that used above for Walter Company, appears below.

WALTER COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales revenue	$5,100,000
Cost of goods sold	3,800,000
Gross profit	1,300,000
Operating expenses	700,000
Net income	$ 600,000

WALTER COMPANY
Statement of Comprehensive Income
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Net income	$600,000
Other comprehensive income	
Unrealized gain on available-for-sale securities	75,000
Comprehensive income	$675,000

- GAAP also permits the one-statement or two-statement approach. In addition, GAAP permits a third alternative, which is to show the computation of comprehensive income in the statement of stockholders' equity.
- The issues related to quality of earnings are the same under both GAAP and IFRS. It is hoped that by adopting a more principles-based approach, as found in IFRS, many of the earnings' quality issues will disappear.

LOOKING TO THE FUTURE

The FASB and the IASB are working on a project that would rework the structure of financial statements. Recently, the IASB decided to require a statement of comprehensive income, similar to what was required under GAAP. In addition, another part of this project addresses the issue of how to classify various items in the income statement. A main goal of this new approach is to provide information that better represents how businesses are run. In addition, the approach draws attention away from one number—net income.

IFRS Self-Test Questions

1. The basic tools of financial analysis are the same under both GAAP and IFRS *except* that:
(a) horizontal analysis cannot be done because the format of the statements is sometimes different.
(b) analysis is different because vertical analysis cannot be done under IFRS.
(c) the current ratio cannot be computed because current liabilities are often reported before current assets in IFRS statements of position.
(d) None of the above.

2. Under IFRS:
(a) the reporting of discontinued items is different than GAAP.
(b) the reporting of extraordinary items is prohibited.
(c) the reporting of changes in accounting principles is different than under GAAP.
(d) None of the above.

3. Presentation of comprehensive income must be reported under IFRS in:
(a) the statement of stockholders' equity.
(b) the income statement ending with net income.
(c) the notes to the financial statements.
(d) a statement of comprehensive income.

4. Parmalane reports the following information:

Sales	$500,000
Cost of goods sold	200,000
Operating expense	40,000
Unrealized loss on available-for-sale securities	10,000

Parmalane should report the following under the two-statement approach using IFRS:
(a) net income of $260,000 and comprehensive income of $270,000.
(b) net income of $270,000 and comprehensive income of $260,000.
(c) other comprehensive income of $10,000 and comprehensive income of $270,000.
(d) other comprehensive loss of $10,000 and comprehensive income of 250,000.

5. Assuming the same information as in question 4, Parmalane should report the following using a one-statement approach under IFRS:
(a) net income of $260,000 and comprehensive income of $270,000.
(b) net income of $270,000 and comprehensive income of $260,000.
(c) other comprehensive income of $10,000 and comprehensive income of $270,000.
(d) other comprehensive loss of $10,000 and comprehensive income of $250,000.

IFRS Concepts and Application

IFRS13–1 Chen Company reports the following information for the year ended December 31, 2012: sales revenue $1,000,000, cost of goods sold $700,000, operating expenses $200,000, and an unrealized gain on available-for-sale securities of $75,000. Prepare a statement of comprehensive income using the one-statement approach.

IFRS13–2 Assume the same information for Chen Company as in IFRS13-1. Prepare the income statement using the two-statement approach.

INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL REPORTING PROBLEM: *Zetar plc*

IFRS13–3 The financial statements of Zetar plc are presented in Appendix C. The company's complete annual report, including the notes to its financial statements, is available at **www.zetarplc.com**.

Instructions

Use the company's annual report to answer the following questions.
(a) The company's income statement reports a loss on discontinued operations. What business did the company discontinue, and why did it choose to discontinue the business?
(b) For the year ended April 30, 2009, what amount did the company lose on the operation of the discontinued business, and what amount did it lose on disposal?
(c) What was the total recorded value of the net assets at the date of disposal, and what was the amount of costs incurred to dispose of the business?

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. d **2.** b **3.** d **4.** d **5.** d

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 14

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 753 ◯ p. 757 ◯ p. 759 ◯ p. 767 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 774 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Explain the distinguishing features of managerial accounting.
2. Identify the three broad functions of management.
3. Define the three classes of manufacturing costs.
4. Distinguish between product and period costs.
5. Explain the difference between a merchandising and a manufacturing income statement.
6. Indicate how cost of goods manufactured is determined.
7. Explain the difference between a merchandising and a manufacturing balance sheet.
8. Identify trends in managerial accounting.

the navigator

feature story

The business world changes rapidly. To survive, you must make well-informed, quick decisions. Consider this. In January of 1998, Compaq Computer was the largest seller of personal computers and *Forbes* magazine's "company of the year." During the next two years, it lost $2 billion and its CEO was out of a job.

Compaq fell victim to Dell Computer. Dell pioneered a new way of making and selling computers. It reengineered its supply chain so that it could produce computers with the exact features that customers ordered, ship them within 24 hours of taking the order, and invest almost no money in inventory. Compaq was not able to respond quickly enough. Ultimately, it merged with Hewlett-Packard (HP).

After the merger of HP and Compaq, HP lost significant market share in the PC market to Dell because its cost structure made it hard to compete with Dell on price. To make matters worse for HP, Dell then began selling computer printers, a business that HP had always dominated. Many people predicted that Dell would soon reign supreme over the printer business as well.

THINK FAST

Just when it appeared that Dell could not be beat, HP regained its footing and Dell stumbled. By June 2008, HP had accomplished a remarkable three-year turnaround. With more than $100 billion in sales, HP had become the biggest technology company in the world. How did it do it? HP adopted "lean" manufacturing practices so it could compete with Dell on price. In addition, it developed exciting design innovations that it marketed successfully in retail stores, as compared to Dell's online sales approach.

Perhaps most importantly, HP has expanded its consulting and data storage services. You can only sell a piece of equipment once. But, consulting services provide ongoing, high-margin revenue that frequently results in additional hardware sales. To further expand its service revenue opportunities, in 2008 HP acquired Electronic Data Services (EDS) for $13.9 billion. Although many industry analysts questioned the decision, HP says the move was based on a sound strategy. Now management must prove that it was the correct decision for the future.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 14 . . .

- **Even the Best Have to Get Better** *(p. 750)*
- **How Many Labor Hours to Build a Car?** *(p. 755)*
- **Low Fares but Decent Profits** *(p. 764)*

preview of chapter 14

This chapter focuses on issues illustrated in the Feature Story about Compaq Computer, Hewlett-Packard, and Dell. These include determining and controlling the costs of material, labor, and overhead and the relationship between costs and profits. In a financial accounting course, you learned about the form and content of **financial statements for external users** of financial information, such as stockholders and creditors. These financial statements represent the principal product of financial accounting. Managerial accounting focuses primarily on the preparation of **reports for internal users** of financial information, such as the managers and officers of a company. In today's rapidly changing global environment, managers often make decisions that determine their company's fate—and their own. Managers are evaluated on the results of their decisions. Managerial accounting provides tools for assisting management in making decisions and for evaluating the effectiveness of those decisions.

The content and organization of this chapter are as follows.

Managerial Accounting

Managerial Accounting Basics	Managerial Cost Concepts	Manufacturing Costs in Financial Statements	Managerial Accounting Today
• Comparing managerial and financial accounting • Management functions • Organizational structure • Business ethics	• Manufacturing costs • Product vs. period costs	• Income statement • Cost of goods manufactured • Balance sheet • Cost concepts review • Product costing for service industries	• Value chain • Technological change • JIT • Quality • Activity-based costing • Theory of constraints • Balanced scorecard

the navigator

Managerial Accounting Basics

study objective 1

Explain the distinguishing features of managerial accounting.

Managerial accounting, also called **management accounting**, is a field of accounting that provides economic and financial information for managers and other internal users. The activities that are part of managerial accounting (and the chapters in which they are discussed in this textbook) are as follows.

1. Explaining manufacturing and nonmanufacturing costs and how they are reported in the financial statements (Chapter 14).
2. Computing the cost of providing a service or manufacturing a product (Chapters 15, 16, and 17).
3. Determining the behavior of costs and expenses as activity levels change and analyzing cost–volume–profit relationships within a company (Chapters 18 and 19).
4. Assisting management in profit planning and formalizing these plans in the form of budgets (Chapter 20).
5. Providing a basis for controlling costs and expenses by comparing actual results with planned objectives and standard costs (Chapters 21 and 22).
6. Accumulating and presenting data for management decision making and capital expenditure decisions (Chapter 23).

Managerial accounting applies to all types of businesses—service, merchandising, and manufacturing. It also applies to all forms of business organizations—

proprietorships, partnerships, and corporations. Not-for-profit entities as well as profit-oriented enterprises need managerial accounting.

In the past, managerial accountants were primarily engaged in cost accounting—collecting and reporting costs to management. Recently that role has changed significantly. First, as the business environment has become more automated, methods to determine the amount and type of cost in a product have changed. Second, managerial accountants are now held responsible for strategic cost management; that is, they assist in evaluating how well the company is employing its resources. As a result, managerial accountants now serve as team members alongside personnel from production, marketing, and engineering when the company makes critical strategic decisions.

Opportunities for managerial accountants to advance within the company are considerable. Financial executives must have a background that includes an understanding of managerial accounting concepts. Whatever your position in the company—marketing, sales, or production, knowledge of managerial accounting greatly improves your opportunities for advancement. As the CEO of Microsoft noted: "If you're supposed to be making money in business and supposed to be satisfying customers and building market share, there are numbers that characterize those things. And if somebody can't sort of speak to me quantitatively about it, then I'm nervous."

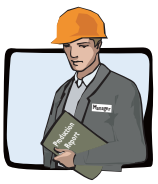
COMPARING MANAGERIAL AND FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING

There are both similarities and differences between managerial and financial accounting. First, each field of accounting deals with the economic events of a business. Thus, their interests overlap. For example, *determining* the unit cost of manufacturing a product is part of managerial accounting. *Reporting* the total cost of goods manufactured and sold is part of financial accounting. In addition, both managerial and financial accounting require that a company's economic events be quantified and communicated to interested parties.

Illustration 14-1 summarizes the principal differences between financial accounting and managerial accounting. The need for various types of economic data is responsible for many of the differences.

Illustration 14-1
Differences between financial and managerial accounting

Financial Accounting		Managerial Accounting
• External users: stockholders, creditors, and regulators.	**Primary Users of Reports**	• Internal users: officers and managers.
• Financial statements. • Quarterly and annually.	**Types and Frequency of Reports**	• Internal reports. • As frequently as needed.
• General-purpose.	**Purpose of Reports**	• Special-purpose for specific decisions.
• Pertains to business as a whole. • Highly aggregated (condensed). • Limited to double-entry accounting and cost data. • Generally accepted accounting principles.	**Content of Reports**	• Pertains to subunits of the business. • Very detailed. • Extends beyond double-entry accounting to any relevant data. • Standard is relevance to decisions.
• Audited by CPA.	**Verification Process**	• No independent audits.



MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

study objective 2

Identify the three broad functions of management.

Managers' activities and responsibilities can be classified into three broad functions:

1. Planning.
2. Directing.
3. Controlling.

In performing these functions, managers make decisions that have a significant impact on the organization.

Planning requires managers to look ahead and to establish objectives. These objectives are often diverse: maximizing short-term profits and market share, maintaining a commitment to environmental protection, and contributing to social programs. For example, Hewlett-Packard, in an attempt to gain a stronger foothold in the computer industry, has greatly reduced its prices to compete with Dell. A key objective of management is to **add value** to the business under its control. Value is usually measured by the trading price of the company's stock and by the potential selling price of the company.

Directing involves coordinating a company's diverse activities and human resources to produce a smooth-running operation. This function relates to implementing planned objectives and providing necessary incentives to motivate employees. For example, manufacturers such as Campbell Soup Company, General Motors, and Dell must coordinate purchasing, manufacturing, warehousing, and selling. Service corporations such as American Airlines, Federal Express, and AT&T must coordinate scheduling, sales, service, and acquisitions of equipment and supplies. Directing also involves selecting executives, appointing managers and supervisors, and hiring and training employees.

The third management function, **controlling**, is the process of keeping the company's activities on track. In controlling operations, managers determine

Management Insight

Even the Best Have to Get Better

Louis Vuitton is a French manufacturer of high-end handbags, wallets, and suitcases. Its reputation for quality and style allows it to charge extremely high prices—for example, $700 for a tote bag. But often in the past, when demand was hot, supply was nonexistent—shelves were empty, and would-be buyers left empty-handed.

Luxury-goods manufacturers used to consider stock-outs to be a good thing, but recently Louis Vuitton changed its attitude. The company adopted "lean" processes used by car manufacturers and electronics companies to speed up production of "hot" products. Work is done by flexible teams, with jobs organized based on how long a task takes. By reducing wasted time and eliminating bottlenecks, what used to take 20 to 30 workers eight days to do now takes 6 to 12 workers one day. Also, production employees who used to specialize on a single task on a single product are now multiskilled. This allows them to quickly switch products to meet demand.

To make sure that the factory is making the right products, within a week of a product launch, Louis Vuitton stores around the world feed sales information to the headquarters in France, and production is adjusted accordingly. Finally, the new production processes have also improved quality. Returns of some products are down by two-thirds, which makes quite a difference to the bottom line when the products are pricey.

Source: Christina Passariello, "Louis Vuitton Tries Modern Methods on Factory Lines," *Wall Street Journal* (October 9, 2006).

? What are some of the steps that this company has taken in order to ensure that production meets demand? (See page 795.)

whether planned goals are being met. When there are deviations from targeted objectives, managers must decide what changes are needed to get back on track. Recent scandals at companies like Enron, Lucent, and Xerox attest to the fact that companies must have adequate controls to ensure that the company develops and distributes accurate information.

How do managers achieve control? A smart manager in a small operation can make personal observations, ask good questions, and know how to evaluate the answers. But using this approach in a large organization would result in chaos. Imagine the president of Dell attempting to determine whether the company is meeting its planned objectives, without some record of what has happened and what is expected to occur. Thus, large businesses typically use a formal system of evaluation. These systems include such features as budgets, responsibility centers, and performance evaluation reports—all of which are features of managerial accounting.

Decision making is not a separate management function. Rather, it is the outcome of the exercise of good judgment in planning, directing, and controlling.

ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE

In order to assist in carrying out management functions, most companies prepare **organization charts** to show the interrelationships of activities and the delegation of authority and responsibility within the company. Illustration 14-2 shows a typical organization chart, which outlines the delegation of responsibility.

Stockholders own the corporation, but they manage it indirectly through a **board of directors** they elect. Even not-for-profit organizations have boards of directors. The board formulates the operating policies for the company or organization. The board also selects officers, such as a president and one or more vice presidents, to execute policy and to perform daily management functions.

The **chief executive officer (CEO)** has overall responsibility for managing the business. Obviously, even in a small business, in order to accomplish organizational

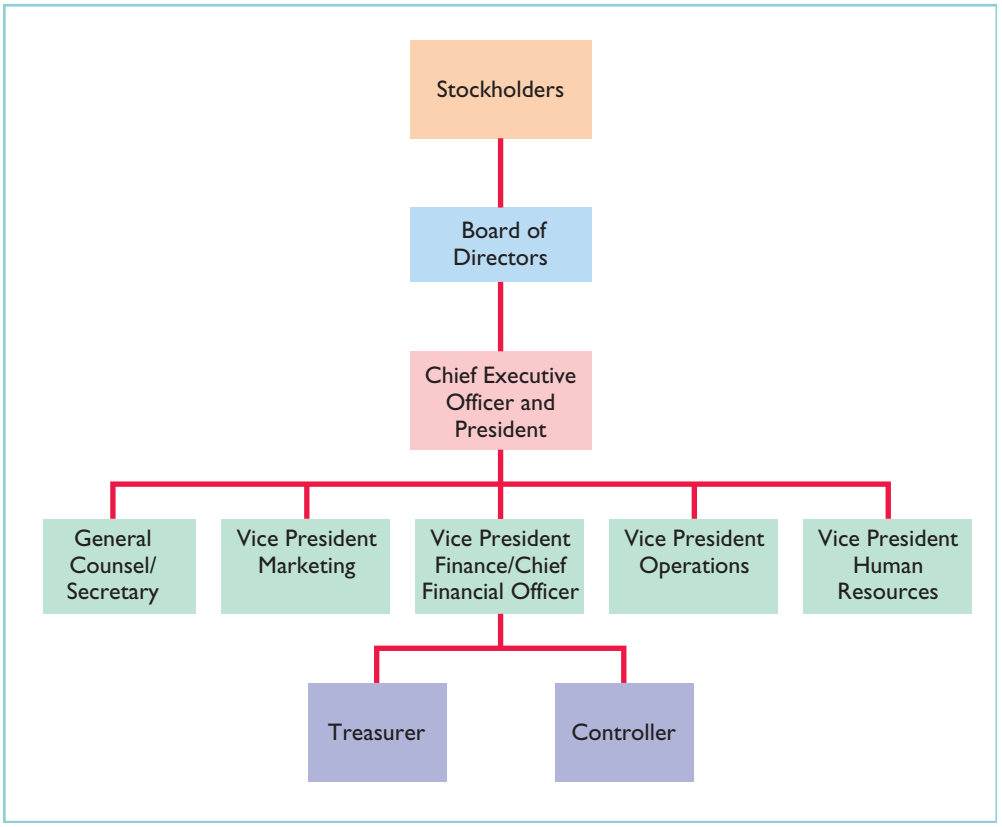


Illustration 14-2
Corporation's organization chart

objectives, the company relies on delegation of responsibilities. As the organization chart on page 751 shows, the CEO delegates responsibilities to other officers. Each member of the organization has a clearly defined role to play.

Responsibilities within the company are frequently classified as either line or staff positions. Employees with **line positions** are directly involved in the company's primary revenue-generating operating activities. Examples of line positions include the vice president of operations, vice president of marketing, plant managers, supervisors, and production personnel. Employees with **staff positions** are involved in activities that support the efforts of the line employees. In a firm like General Electric or ExxonMobil, employees in finance, legal, and human resources have staff positions. While activities of staff employees are vital to the company, these employees are nonetheless there to serve the line employees who engage in the company's primary operations.

The **chief financial officer (CFO)** is responsible for all of the accounting and finance issues the company faces. The CFO is supported by the **controller** and the **treasurer**. The controller's responsibilities include (1) maintaining the accounting records, (2) maintaining an adequate system of internal control, and (3) preparing financial statements, tax returns, and internal reports. The treasurer has custody of the corporation's funds and is responsible for maintaining the company's cash position.

Also serving the CFO is the internal audit staff. The staff's responsibilities include reviewing the reliability and integrity of financial information provided by the controller and treasurer. Staff members also ensure that internal control systems are functioning properly to safeguard corporate assets. In addition, they investigate compliance with policies and regulations, and in many companies they determine whether resources are being used in the most economical and efficient fashion.

The vice president of operations oversees employees with line positions. For example, the company might have multiple plant managers, each of whom would report to the vice president of operations. Each plant would also have department managers, such as fabricating, painting, and shipping, each of whom would report to the plant manager.

BUSINESS ETHICS

All employees within an organization are expected to act ethically in their business activities. Given the importance of ethical behavior to corporations and their owners (stockholders), an increasing number of organizations provide codes of business ethics for their employees.

Despite these efforts, recent business scandals resulted in massive investment losses and numerous employee layoffs. A recent survey of fraud by international accounting firm KPMG reported a 13% increase in instances of corporate fraud compared to five years earlier. It noted that while employee fraud (such things as expense-account abuse, payroll fraud, and theft of assets) represented 60% of all instances of fraud, financial reporting fraud (the intentional misstatement of financial reports) was the most costly to companies. That should not be surprising given the long list of companies, such as Enron, Global Crossing, WorldCom, and others, that engaged in massive financial frauds, which led to huge financial losses and thousands of lost jobs.

Creating Proper Incentives

Companies like Motorola, IBM, and Nike use complex systems to control and evaluate the actions of managers. They dedicate substantial resources to monitor and effectively evaluate the actions of employees. Unfortunately, these systems and controls sometimes unwittingly create incentives for managers to take unethical actions. For example, companies prepare budgets to provide direction. Because the budget is also used as an evaluation tool, some managers try to "game" the budgeting process

by underestimating their division's predicted performance so that it will be easier to meet their performance targets. On the other hand, if the budget is set at unattainable levels, managers sometimes take unethical actions to meet the targets in order to receive higher compensation or, in some cases, to keep their jobs.

For example, in recent years, airline manufacturer Boeing was plagued by a series of scandals including charges of over-billing, corporate espionage, and illegal conflicts of interest. Some long-time employees of Boeing blame the decline in ethics on a change in the corporate culture that took place after Boeing merged with McDonnell Douglas. They suggest that evaluation systems implemented after the merger to monitor results and evaluate employee performance made employees believe they needed to succeed no matter what actions were required to do so.

As another example, manufacturing companies need to establish production goals for their processes. Again, if controls are not effective and realistic, problems develop. To illustrate, Schering-Plough, a pharmaceutical manufacturer, found that employees were so concerned with meeting production standards that they failed to monitor the quality of the product, and as a result the dosages were often wrong.

Code of Ethical Standards

In response to corporate scandals in 2000 and 2001, the U.S. Congress enacted legislation to help prevent lapses in internal control. This legislation, referred to as the **Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (SOX)** has important implications for the financial community. One result of SOX was to clarify top management's responsibility for the company's financial statements. CEOs and CFOs must now certify that financial statements give a fair presentation of the company's operating results and its financial condition. In addition, top managers must certify that the company maintains an adequate system of internal controls to safeguard the company's assets and ensure accurate financial reports.

Another result of SOX is that companies now pay more attention to the composition of the board of directors. In particular, the audit committee of the board of directors must be comprised entirely of independent members (that is, nonemployees) and must contain at least one financial expert.

Finally, to increase the likelihood of compliance with the rules that are part of the new legislation, the law substantially increases the penalties for misconduct.

To provide guidance for managerial accountants, the Institute of Management Accountants (IMA) has developed a code of ethical standards, entitled *IMA Statement of Ethical Professional Practice*. Management accountants should not commit acts in violation of these standards. Nor should they condone such acts by others within their organizations. In the remaining chapters, we will address various ethical issues managers face.

before you go on...

Do it! Indicate whether the following statements are true or false.

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING CONCEPTS

1. Managerial accountants have a single role within an organization, collecting and reporting costs to management.
2. Financial accounting reports are general-purpose and intended for external users.
3. Managerial accounting reports are special-purpose and issued as frequently as needed.
4. Managers' activities and responsibilities can be classified into three broad functions: cost accounting, budgeting, and internal control.
5. As a result of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, managerial accounting reports must now comply with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).
6. Top managers must certify that a company maintains an adequate system of internal controls.

Action Plan

- Understand that managerial accounting is a field of accounting that provides economic and financial information for managers and other internal users.
- Understand that financial accounting provides information for external users.
- Analyze which users require which different types of information.

the navigator

Solution

1. False. Managerial accountants determine product costs. In addition, managerial accountants are now held responsible for evaluating how well the company is employing its resources. As a result, when the company makes critical strategic decisions, managerial accountants serve as team members alongside personnel from production, marketing, and engineering.
2. True.
3. True.
4. False. Managers' activities are classified into three broad functions: planning, directing, and controlling. Planning requires managers to look ahead to establish objectives. Directing involves coordinating a company's diverse activities and human resources to produce a smooth-running operation. Controlling is keeping the company's activities on track.
5. False. SOX clarifies top management's responsibility for the company's financial statements. In addition, top managers must certify that the company maintains an adequate system of internal control to safeguard the company's assets and ensure accurate financial reports.
6. True.

Related exercise material: **BE14-1, BE14-2, BE14-3, Do it! 14-1,** and **E14-1.**

Managerial Cost Concepts

In order for managers at companies like Dell or Hewlett-Packard to plan, direct, and control operations effectively, they need good information. One very important type of information is related to costs. Managers should ask questions such as the following.

1. What costs are involved in making a product or providing a service?
2. If we decrease production volume, will costs decrease?
3. What impact will automation have on total costs?
4. How can we best control costs?

To answer these questions, managers need reliable and relevant cost information. We now explain and illustrate the various cost categories that companies use.

study objective 3

Define the three classes of manufacturing costs.

MANUFACTURING COSTS

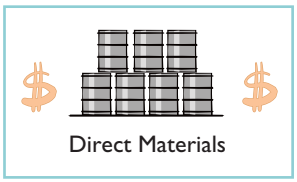
Manufacturing consists of activities and processes that convert raw materials into finished goods. Contrast this type of operation with merchandising, which sells merchandise in the form in which it is purchased. Manufacturing costs are typically classified as shown in Illustration 14-3.

Illustration 14-3
Classifications of manufacturing costs

Direct Materials

To obtain the materials that will be converted into the finished product, the manufacturer purchases raw materials. **Raw materials** are the basic materials and parts used in the manufacturing process. For example, auto manufacturers such as General Motors, Ford, and Toyota use steel, plastic, and tires as raw materials in making cars.

Raw materials that can be physically and directly associated with the finished product during the manufacturing process are **direct materials**. Examples include flour in the baking of bread, syrup in the bottling of soft drinks, and steel in the making of automobiles. Direct materials for Hewlett-Packard and Dell Computer (in the Feature Story) include plastic, glass, hard drives, and processing chips.



Some raw materials cannot be easily associated with the finished product. These are called indirect materials. **Indirect materials** have one of two characteristics: (1) They do not physically become part of the finished product (such as lubricants and polishing compounds). Or, (2) they cannot be traced because their physical association with the finished product is too small in terms of cost (such as cotter pins and lock washers). Companies account for indirect materials as part of **manufacturing overhead**.

Direct Labor

The work of factory employees that can be physically and directly associated with converting raw materials into finished goods is **direct labor**. Bottlers at Coca-Cola, bakers at Sara Lee, and typesetters at Aptara Corp. are employees whose activities are usually classified as direct labor. **Indirect labor** refers to the work of employees that has no physical association with the finished product, or for which it is impractical to trace costs to the goods produced. Examples include wages of maintenance people, time-keepers, and supervisors. Like indirect materials, companies classify indirect labor as **manufacturing overhead**.

Management Insight

How Many Labor Hours to Build a Car?

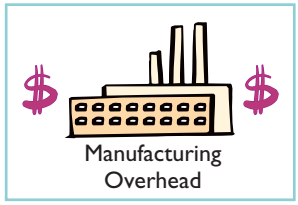
Nissan and Toyota were number 1 and 2 in a recent annual study of labor productivity in the auto industry. But U.S. auto manufacturers showed improvements. Labor represents about 15% of the total cost to make a vehicle. Since Nissan required only 28.46 labor hours per vehicle, it saves about $300 to $450 in labor costs to build a car relative to Ford, the least-efficient manufacturer. General Motors (GM) has shown steady improvement over the years. At one point, it needed almost 17 more hours of labor than Toyota to build a car; it now needs only 4 more hours than Toyota. Chrysler says that much of its improvement in labor productivity has come from designing cars that are easier to build.

Source: Rick Popely, "Japanese Automakers Lead Big Three in Productivity Review," *Knight Ridder Tribune News Service* (June 1, 2006), p. 1.

? Why might Nissan production require significantly fewer labor hours? (See page 795.)

Manufacturing Overhead

Manufacturing overhead consists of costs that are indirectly associated with the manufacture of the finished product. These costs may also be manufacturing costs that cannot be classified as direct materials or direct labor. Manufacturing overhead includes indirect materials, indirect labor, depreciation on factory buildings and machines, and insurance, taxes, and maintenance on factory facilities.



One study found the following magnitudes of the three different product costs as a percentage of the total product cost: direct materials 54%, direct labor

Alternative Terminology
Some companies use terms such as *factory overhead*, *indirect manufacturing costs*, and *burden* instead of manufacturing overhead.

13%, and manufacturing overhead 33%. Note that the direct labor component is the smallest. This component of product cost is dropping substantially because of automation. Companies are working hard to increase productivity by decreasing labor. A Nissan Motor plant in Tennessee produces Altima automobiles using only 15.74 labor hours per vehicle, compared to 26 to 28 hours per vehicle at Ford and Daimler plants, for example. In some companies, direct labor has become as little as 5% of the total cost.

Allocating materials and labor costs to specific products is fairly straightforward. Good record keeping can tell a company how much plastic it used in making each type of gear, or how many hours of factory labor it took to assemble a part. But allocating overhead costs to specific products presents problems. How much of the purchasing agent's salary is attributable to the hundreds of different products made in the same plant? What about the grease that keeps the machines humming, or the computers that make sure paychecks come out on time? Boiled down to its simplest form, the question becomes: Which products cause the incurrence of which costs? In subsequent chapters, we show various methods of allocating overhead to products.

PRODUCT VERSUS PERIOD COSTS

study objective 4
Distinguish between product and period costs.

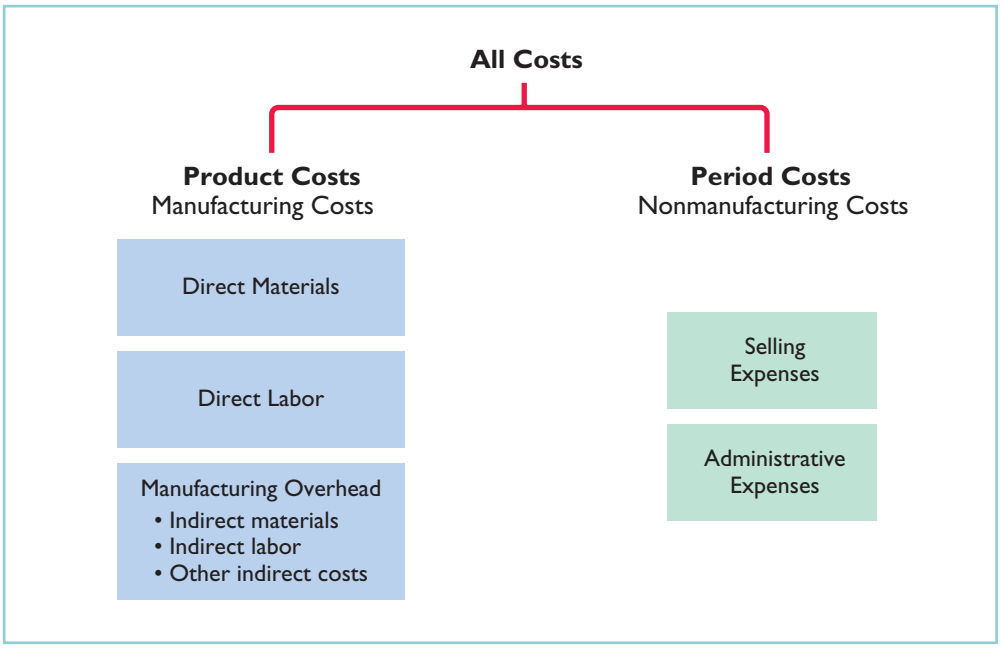
Alternative Terminology
Product costs are also called *inventoriable costs.*

Each of the manufacturing cost components—direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead—are product costs. As the term suggests, **product costs** are costs that are a necessary and integral part of producing the finished product. Companies record product costs, when incurred, as inventory. Under the matching principle, these costs do not become expenses until the company sells the finished goods inventory. At that point, the company records the expense as cost of goods sold.

Period costs are costs that are matched with the revenue of a specific time period rather than included as part of the cost of a salable product. These are nonmanufacturing costs. Period costs include selling and administrative expenses. In order to determine net income, companies deduct these costs from revenues in the period in which they are incurred.

Illustration 14-4 summarizes these relationships and cost terms. Our main concern in this chapter is with product costs.

Illustration 14-4 Product versus period costs



before you go on...

Do it! A bicycle company has these costs: tires, salaries of employees who put tires on the wheels, factory building depreciation, lubricants, spokes, salary of factory manager, handlebars, and salaries of factory maintenance employees. Classify each cost as direct materials, direct labor, or overhead.

MANAGERIAL COST CONCEPTS

Action Plan

- Classify as direct materials any raw materials that can be physically and directly associated with the finished product.
- Classify as direct labor the work of factory employees that can be physically and directly associated with the finished product.
- Classify as manufacturing overhead any costs that are indirectly associated with the finished product.

Solution

Tires, spokes, and handlebars are direct materials. Salaries of employees who put tires on the wheels are direct labor. All of the other costs are manufacturing overhead.

Related exercise material: **BE14-4, BE14-5, BE14-6, BE14-7, Do it! 14-2, E14-2, E14-3, E14-4, E14-5, E14-6,** and **E14-7.**

the navigator

Manufacturing Costs in Financial Statements

The financial statements of a manufacturer are very similar to those of a merchandiser. For example, you will find many of the same sections and same accounts in the financial statements of Procter & Gamble that you find in the financial statements of Dick's Sporting Goods. The principal differences between their financial statements occur in two places: the cost of goods sold section in the income statement and the current assets section in the balance sheet.

INCOME STATEMENT

study objective 5

Explain the difference between a merchandising and a manufacturing income statement.

Under a periodic inventory system, the income statements of a merchandiser and a manufacturer differ in the cost of goods sold section. Merchandisers compute cost of goods sold by adding the beginning merchandise inventory to the **cost of goods purchased** and subtracting the ending merchandise inventory. Manufacturers compute cost of goods sold by adding the beginning finished goods inventory to the **cost of goods manufactured** and subtracting the ending finished goods inventory. Illustration 14-5 shows these different methods.

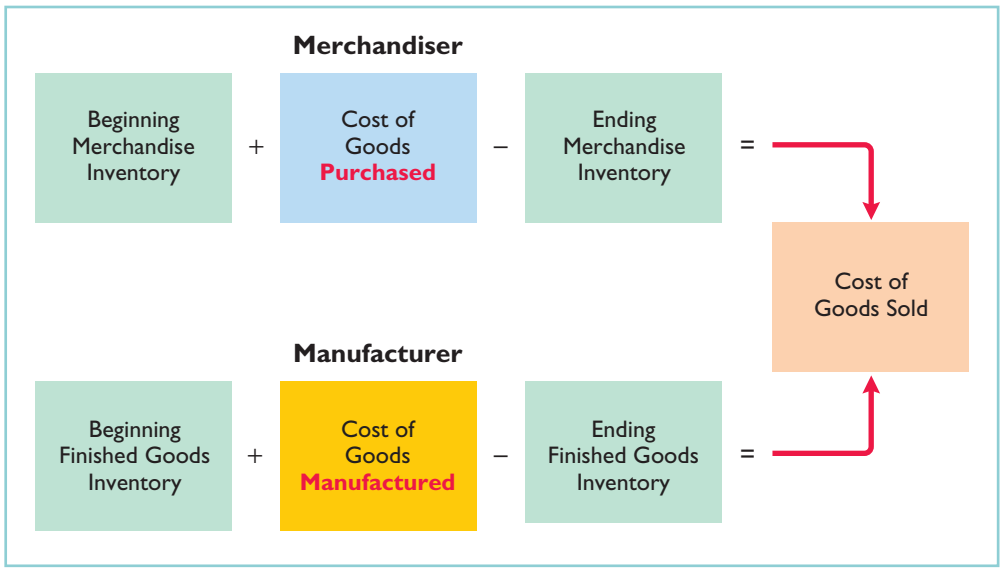


Illustration 14-5 Cost of goods sold components

Helpful Hint We assume a periodic inventory system in this illustration.

A number of accounts are involved in determining the cost of goods manufactured. To eliminate excessive detail, income statements typically show only the total cost of goods manufactured. A separate statement, called a Cost of Goods Manufactured Schedule, presents the details. (For more information, see the discussion on page 759 and Illustration 14-8.)

Illustration 14-6 shows the different presentations of the cost of goods sold sections for merchandising and manufacturing companies. The other sections of an income statement are similar for merchandisers and manufacturers.

Illustration 14-6 Cost of goods sold sections of merchandising and manufacturing income statements

MERCHANDISING COMPANY Income Statement (partial) For the Year Ended December 31, 2012		MANUFACTURING COMPANY Income Statement (partial) For the Year Ended December 31, 2012	
Cost of goods sold		Cost of goods sold	
Merchandise inventory, January 1	**$ 70,000**	**Finished goods inventory, January 1**	**$ 90,000**
Cost of goods purchased	**650,000**	**Cost of goods manufactured (see Illustration 14-8)**	**370,000**
Cost of goods available for sale	720,000	Cost of goods available for sale	460,000
Merchandise inventory, December 31	**400,000**	**Finished goods inventory, December 31**	**80,000**
Cost of goods sold	$ 320,000	Cost of goods sold	$380,000

Cost of Goods Manufactured

study objective 6

Indicate how cost of goods manufactured is determined.

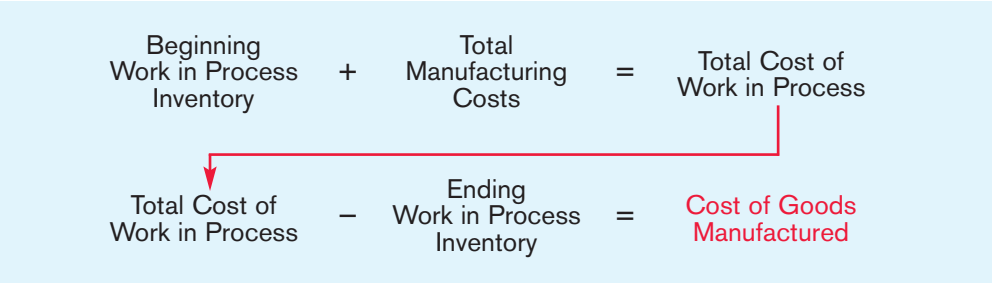
An example may help show how companies determine the cost of goods manufactured. Assume that on January 1, HP has a number of computers in various stages of production. In total, these partially completed units are called **beginning work in process inventory**. The costs the company assigns to beginning work in process inventory are based on the **manufacturing costs incurred in the prior period**.

HP first uses the manufacturing costs incurred in the current year to complete the work that was in process on January 1. It then incurs manufacturing costs for production of new orders. The sum of the direct materials costs, direct labor costs, and manufacturing overhead incurred in the current year is the **total manufacturing costs** for the current period.

We now have two cost amounts: (1) the cost of the beginning work in process and (2) the total manufacturing costs for the current period. The sum of these costs is the **total cost of work in process** for the year.

At the end of the year, HP may have some computers that are only partially completed. The costs of these units become the cost of the **ending work in process inventory**. To find the **cost of goods manufactured**, we subtract this cost from the total cost of work in process. Illustration 14-7 shows the formula for determining the cost of goods manufactured.

Illustration 14-7 Cost of goods manufactured formula



Cost of Goods Manufactured Schedule

The **cost of goods manufactured schedule** reports cost elements used in calculating cost of goods manufactured. Illustration 14-8 shows the schedule for Olsen Manufacturing Company (using assumed data). The schedule presents detailed data for direct materials and for manufacturing overhead.

Review Illustration 14-7 and then examine the cost of goods manufactured schedule in Illustration 14-8. You should be able to distinguish between "Total manufacturing costs" and "Cost of goods manufactured." The difference is the effect of the change in work in process during the period.

Illustration 14-8 Cost of goods manufactured schedule

OLSEN MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Cost of Goods Manufactured Schedule
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Work in process, January 1			**$ 18,400**
Direct materials			
Raw materials inventory, January 1	$ 16,700		
Raw materials purchases	152,500		
Total raw materials available for use	169,200		
Less: Raw materials inventory, December 31	22,800		
Direct materials used		$146,400	
Direct labor		175,600	
Manufacturing overhead			
Indirect labor	14,300		
Factory repairs	12,600		
Factory utilities	10,100		
Factory depreciation	9,440		
Factory insurance	8,360		
Total manufacturing overhead		54,800	
Total manufacturing costs			**376,800**
Total cost of work in process			395,200
Less: Work in process, December 31			**25,200**
Cost of goods manufactured			**$370,000**

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the company maintaining control over the costs of production?	Cost of material, labor, and overhead	Cost of goods manufactured schedule	Compare the cost of goods manufactured to revenue expected from product sales.

before you go on...

Do it! The following information is available for Keystone Manufacturing Company.

COST OF GOODS MANUFACTURED

		March 1	March 31
Raw material inventory		$12,000	$10,000
Work in process inventory		2,500	4,000
Materials purchased in March	$ 90,000		
Direct labor in March	75,000		
Manufacturing overhead in March	220,000		

Prepare the cost of goods manufactured schedule for the month of March.

Action Plan

- Start with beginning work in process as the first item in the cost of goods manufactured schedule.
- Sum direct materials used, direct labor, and total manufacturing overhead to determine total manufacturing costs.
- Sum beginning work in process and total manufacturing costs to determine total cost of work in process.
- Cost of goods manufactured is the total cost of work in process less ending work in process.

Solution

KEYSTONE MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Cost of Goods Manufactured Schedule
For the Month Ended March 31

Work in process, March 1			$ 2,500
Direct materials			
Raw materials, March 1	$ 12,000		
Raw material purchases	90,000		
Total raw materials available for use	102,000		
Less: Raw materials, March 31	10,000		
Direct materials used		$ 92,000	
Direct labor		75,000	
Manufacturing overhead		220,000	
Total manufacturing costs			387,000
Total cost of work in process			389,500
Less: Work in process, March 31			4,000
Cost of goods manufactured			$385,500

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE14-8, BE14-10, BE14-11, Do it! 14-3, E14-8, E14-9, E14-10, E14-11, E14-12, E14-13, E14-14, E14-15, E14-16,** and **E14-17.**

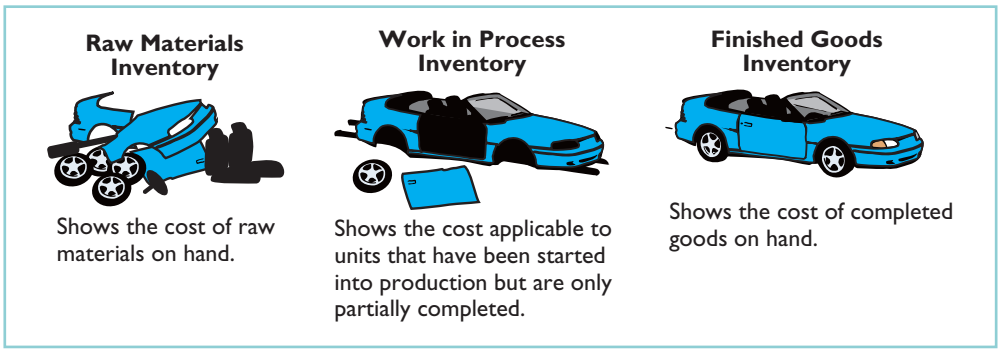
BALANCE SHEET

study objective 7

Explain the difference between a merchandising and a manufacturing balance sheet.

The balance sheet for a merchandising company shows just one category of inventory. In contrast, the balance sheet for a manufacturer may have three inventory accounts, as shown in Illustration 14-9.

Illustration 14-9
Inventory accounts for a manufacturer



Finished Goods Inventory is to a manufacturer what Merchandise Inventory is to a merchandiser. Each of these classifications represents the goods that the company has available for sale.

The current assets sections presented in Illustration 14-10 contrast the presentations of inventories for merchandising and manufacturing companies. Manufacturing companies generally list their inventories in the order of their liquidity—the order in which they are expected to be realized in cash. Thus, finished goods inventory comes first. The remainder of the balance sheet is similar for the two types of companies.

MERCHANDISING COMPANY Balance Sheet December 31, 2012		MANUFACTURING COMPANY Balance Sheet December 31, 2012		
Current assets		Current assets		
Cash	$100,000	Cash		$180,000
Receivables (net)	210,000	Receivables (net)		210,000
Merchandise inventory	**400,000**	**Inventories**		
Prepaid expenses	22,000	**Finished goods**	**$80,000**	
Total current assets	$732,000	**Work in process**	**25,200**	
		Raw materials	**22,800**	**128,000**
		Prepaid expenses		18,000
		Total current assets		$536,000

Illustration 14-10
Current assets sections of merchandising and manufacturing balance sheets

Each step in the accounting cycle for a merchandiser applies to a manufacturer. For example, prior to preparing financial statements, manufacturers make adjusting entries. The adjusting entries are essentially the same as those of a merchandiser. The closing entries are also similar for manufacturers and merchandisers. *For expanded coverage, see Appendix 14A.*

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
What is the composition of a manufacturing company's inventory?	Amount of raw materials, work in process, and finished goods inventories	Balance sheet	Determine whether there are sufficient finished goods, raw materials, and work in process inventories to meet forecasted demand.

COST CONCEPTS–A REVIEW

You have learned a number of cost concepts in this chapter. Because many of these concepts are new, we provide here an extended example for review. Suppose you started your own snowboard factory, Terrain Park Boards. Think that's impossible? Burton Snowboards was started by Jake Burton Carpenter, when he was only 23 years old. Jake initially experimented with 100 different prototype designs before settling on a final design. Then Jake, along with two relatives and a friend, started making 50 boards per day in Londonderry, Vermont. Unfortunately, while they made a lot of boards in their first year, they were only able to sell 300 of them. To get by during those early years, Jake taught tennis and tended bar to pay the bills.

Here are some of the costs that your snowboard factory would incur.

1. The materials cost of each snowboard (wood cores, fiberglass, resins, metal screw holes, metal edges, and ink) is $30.
2. The labor costs (for example, to trim and shape each board using jig saws and band saws) are $40.
3. Depreciation on the factory building and equipment (for example, presses, grinding machines, and lacquer machines) used to make the snowboards is $25,000 per year.

4. Property taxes on the factory building (where the snowboards are made) are $6,000 per year.
5. Advertising costs (mostly online and catalogue) are $60,000 per year.
6. Sales commissions related to snowboard sales are $20 per snowboard.
7. Salaries for maintenance employees are $45,000 per year.
8. The salary of the plant manager is $70,000.
9. The cost of shipping is $8 per snowboard.

Illustration 14-11 shows how Terrain Park Boards would assign these manufacturing and selling costs to the various categories.

Illustration 14-11
Assignment of costs to cost categories

	Product Costs			
Cost Item	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead	Period Costs
1. Material cost ($30) per board	X			
2. Labor costs ($40) per board		X		
3. Depreciation on factory equipment ($25,000 per year)			X	
4. Property taxes on factory building ($6,000 per year)			X	
5. Advertising costs ($60,000 per year)				X
6. Sales commissions ($20 per board)				X
7. Maintenance salaries (factory facilities) ($45,000 per year)			X	
8. Salary of plant manager ($70,000)			X	
9. Cost of shipping boards ($8 per board)				X

Remember that total manufacturing costs are the sum of the **product costs—** direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead. If Terrain Park Boards produces 10,000 snowboards the first year, the total manufacturing costs would be $846,000 as shown in Illustration 14-12.

Illustration 14-12
Computation of total manufacturing costs

Cost Number and Item	Manufacturing Cost
1. Material cost ($30 × 10,000)	$300,000
2. Labor cost ($40 × 10,000)	400,000
3. Depreciation on factory equipment	25,000
4. Property taxes on factory building	6,000
7. Maintenance salaries (factory facilities)	45,000
8. Salary of plant manager	70,000
Total manufacturing costs	**$846,000**

Knowing the total manufacturing costs, Terrain Park Boards can compute the manufacturing cost per unit. Assuming 10,000 units, the cost to produce one snowboard is $84.60 ($846,000 ÷ 10,000 units).

In subsequent chapters, we will use extensively the cost concepts discussed in this chapter. Study Illustration 14-11 carefully. If you do not understand any of these classifications, go back and reread the appropriate section in this chapter.

PRODUCT COSTING FOR SERVICE INDUSTRIES

The Feature Story notes HP's belief that its greatest opportunities for growth are in technology services, not hardware. In fact, much of the U.S. economy has shifted toward an emphasis on services. Today, more than 50% of U.S. workers are employed by service companies. Airlines, marketing agencies, cable companies, and governmental agencies are just a few examples of service companies. How do service companies differ from manufacturing companies? One good way to differentiate these two different types of companies is by how quickly the product is used or consumed by the customer—services are consumed immediately. For example, when a restaurant produces a meal, that meal is not put in inventory, but it is instead consumed immediately. An airline uses special equipment to provide its product, but again, the output of that equipment is consumed immediately by the customer in the form of a flight. And a marketing agency performs services for its clients that are immediately consumed by the customer in the form of a marketing plan. For a manufacturing company, like Boeing, it often has a long lead time before its airplane is used or consumed by the customer.

Ethics Note Do telecommunications companies have an obligation to provide service to remote or low-user areas for a fee that may be less than the cost of the service?

In presenting our initial examples, we used manufacturing companies because accounting for the manufacturing environment requires the use of the broadest range of accounts. That is, the accounts used by service companies represent a subset of those used by manufacturers because service companies are not producing inventory. Neither the restaurant, the airline, or the marketing agency discussed above produces an inventoriable product. However, just like a manufacturer, each needs to keep track of the costs of its services in order to know whether it is generating a profit. A successful restaurateur needs to know the cost of each offering on the menu, an airline needs to know the cost of flight service to each destination, and a marketing agency needs to know the cost to develop a marketing plan. Thus, the techniques shown in this chapter, to accumulate manufacturing costs to determine manufacturing inventory, are equally useful for determining the costs of providing services.

For example, let's consider the costs that HP might incur on a consulting engagement. A significant portion of its costs would be salaries of consulting personnel. It might also incur travel costs, materials, software costs, and depreciation charges on equipment used by the employees to provide the consulting service. In the same way that it needs to keep track of the cost of manufacturing its computers and printers, HP needs to know what its costs are on each consulting job. It could prepare a cost of services provided schedule similar to the cost of goods manufactured schedule in Illustration 14-8 (page 759). The structure would be essentially the same as the cost of goods manufactured schedule, but section headings would be reflective of the costs of the particular service organization.

Managers of service companies look to managerial accounting to answer many questions. In some instances, the managerial accountant may need to develop new systems for measuring the cost of serving individual customers. In others, companies may need new operating controls to improve the quality and efficiency of specific services. Many of the examples we present in subsequent chapters will be based on service companies. To highlight the relevance of the techniques used in this course for service companies, we have placed a service

company icon next to those items in the text and end-of-chapter materials that relate to nonmanufacturing companies.

Service Company Insight

Low Fares but Decent Profits

During 2008, when other airlines were cutting flight service due to the recession, Allegiant Airlines increased capacity by 21%. Sounds crazy, doesn't it? But it must know something, because while the other airlines were losing money, it was generating profits. Consider also that its average one-way fare is only $83. So how does it make money? As a low-budget airline, it focuses on controlling costs. It purchases used planes for $4 million each rather than new planes for $40 million. It flies out of small towns, so wages are low and competition is nonexistent. It only flies a route if its 150-passenger planes are nearly full (it averages about 90% of capacity). If a route isn't filling up, it quits flying it as often or cancels it altogether. It adjusts its prices weekly. The bottom line is that it knows its costs to the penny. Knowing what your costs are might not be glamorous, but it sure beats losing money.

Source: Susan Carey, "For Allegiant, Getaways Mean Profits," *Wall Street Journal Online* (February 18, 2009).

? What are some of the line items that would appear in the cost of services provided schedule of an airline? (See page 795.)

Managerial Accounting Today

study objective 8

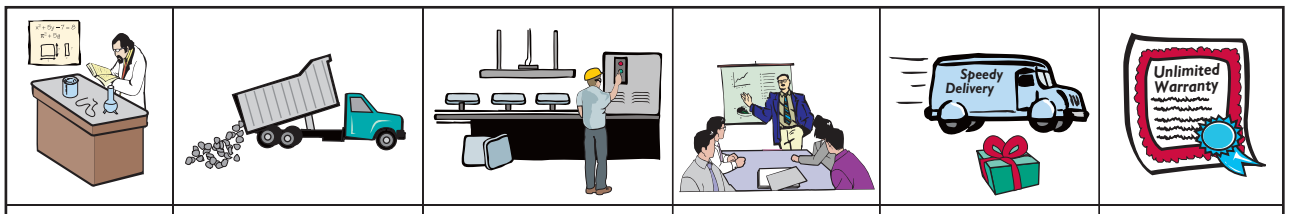
Identify trends in managerial accounting.

In recent years, the competitive environment for U.S. business has changed significantly. For example, the airline, financial services, and telecommunications industries have been deregulated. Global competition has intensified. The world economy now has the European Union, NAFTA, and ASEAN. Countries like China and India are becoming economic powerhouses. As indicated earlier, managerial accountants must be forward-looking, acting as advisors and information providers to different members of the organization. Some of the issues they face are discussed below.

THE VALUE CHAIN

The **value chain** refers to all activities associated with providing a product or service. For a manufacturer these include research and development, product design, acquisition of raw materials, production, sales and marketing, delivery, customer relations, and subsequent service. Illustration 14-13 depicts the value chain for a manufacturer. In recent years, companies have made huge strides in analyzing all stages of the value chain in an effort to improve productivity and eliminate waste. Japanese automobile manufacturer Toyota pioneered many of these innovations.

Illustration 14-13 A manufacturer's value chain



Research & development and product design	Acquisition of raw materials	Production	Sales & marketing	Delivery	Customer relations and subsequent services

In the 1980s, many companies purchased giant machines to replace humans in the manufacturing process. These machines were designed to produce large batches of products. In recent years these large-batch manufacturing processes have been recognized as very wasteful. They require vast amounts of inventory storage capacity and considerable movement of materials. Consequently, many companies have reengineered their manufacturing processes. As one example, the manufacturing company Pratt and Whitney replaced many large machines with smaller, more flexible ones and reorganized its plants for more efficient flow of goods. Pratt and Whitney reduced the time that its turbine engine blades spend in the grinding section of its factory from 10 days down to 2 hours. It cut the total amount of time spent making a blade from 22 days to 7 days. Analysis of the value chain has made companies far more responsive to customer needs and has improved profitability.

TECHNOLOGICAL CHANGE

Technology has played a large role in the value chain. Computerization and automation have permitted companies to be more effective in streamlining production and thus enhancing the value chain. For example, many companies now employ **enterprise resource planning (ERP)** software systems to manage their value chain. ERP systems provide a comprehensive, centralized, integrated source of information that companies can use to manage all major business processes, from purchasing to manufacturing to human resources.

In large companies, an ERP system might replace as many as 200 individual software packages. For example, an ERP system can eliminate the need for individual software packages for personnel, inventory management, receivables, and payroll. Because the value chain extends beyond the walls of the company, ERP systems enable a two-way flow of information between a company and its major suppliers, customers, and business partners. Such systems both collect and disperse information throughout the value chain. The largest ERP provider, German corporation SAP AG, has more than 36,000 customers worldwide.

Another example of technological change is **computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM)**. Using CIM, many companies can now manufacture products that are untouched by human hands. An example is the use of robotic equipment in the steel and automobile industries. Workers monitor the manufacturing process by watching instrument panels. Automation significantly reduces direct labor costs in many cases.

Also, the widespread use of computers has greatly reduced the cost of accumulating, storing, and reporting managerial accounting information. Computers now make it possible to do more detailed costing of products, processes, and services than was possible under manual processing.

Technology is also affecting the value chain through business-to-business (B2B) e-commerce on the Internet. The Internet has dramatically changed the way corporations do business with one another. Interorganizational information systems connected over the Internet enable suppliers to share information nearly instantaneously. The Internet has also changed the marketplace, often cutting out intermediaries. Industries such as the automobile, airline, hotel, and electronics industries have made commitments to purchase some or all of their supplies and raw materials in the huge B2B electronic marketplaces. For example, Hilton Hotels recently agreed to purchase as much as $1.5 billion of bed sheets, pest control services, and other items from an online supplier, PurchasePro.com.

JUST-IN-TIME INVENTORY METHODS

Many companies have significantly lowered inventory levels and costs using **just-in-time (JIT) inventory** methods. Under a just-in-time method, goods are manufactured or purchased just in time for sale. As noted in the Feature Story, Dell

Ethics Note Does just-in-time inventory justify "just-in-time" employees obtained through temporary employment services?

is famous for having developed a system for making computers in response to individual customer requests. Even though each computer is custom-made to meet each customer's particular specifications, it takes Dell less than 48 hours to assemble the computer and put it on a truck. By integrating its information systems with those of its suppliers, Dell reduced its inventories to nearly zero. This is a huge advantage in an industry where products become obsolete nearly overnight.

QUALITY

JIT inventory systems require an increased emphasis on product quality. If products are produced only as they are needed, it is very costly for the company to stop production because of defects or machine breakdowns. Many companies have installed **total quality management (TQM)** systems to reduce defects in finished products. The goal is to achieve zero defects. These systems require timely data on defective products, rework costs, and the cost of honoring warranty contracts. Often, companies use this information to help redesign the product in a way that makes it less prone to defects. Or they may use the information to reengineer the production process to reduce setup time and decrease the potential for error. TQM systems also provide information on nonfinancial measures such as customer satisfaction, number of service calls, and time to generate reports. Attention to these measures, which employees can control, leads to increased profitability.

ACTIVITY-BASED COSTING

As discussed earlier, overhead costs have become an increasingly large component of product and service costs. By definition, overhead costs cannot be directly traced to individual products. But to determine each product's cost, overhead must be **allocated** to the various products. In order to obtain more accurate product costs, many companies now allocate overhead using **activity-based costing (ABC)**. Under ABC, companies allocate overhead based on each product's use of activities in making the product. For example, companies can keep track of their cost of setting up machines for each batch of a production process. Then companies can allocate part of the total set-up cost to a particular product based on the number of set-ups that product required.

Activity-based costing is beneficial because it results in more accurate product costing and in more careful scrutiny of all activities in the value chain. For example, if a product's cost is high because it requires a high number of set-ups, management will be motivated to determine how to produce the product using the optimal number of machine set-ups. Both manufacturing and service companies now widely use ABC. Allied Signal and Coca-Cola have both enjoyed improved results from ABC. Fidelity Investments uses ABC to identify which customers cost the most to serve.

THEORY OF CONSTRAINTS

All companies have certain aspects of their business that create "bottlenecks"—constraints that limit the company's potential profitability. An important aspect of managing the value chain is identifying these constraints. The **theory of constraints** is a specific approach used to identify and manage constraints in order to achieve the company's goals. Automobile manufacturer General Motors has implemented the theory of constraints in all of its North American plants. GM has found that it is most profitable when it focuses on fixing bottlenecks, rather than worrying about whether all aspects of the company are functioning at full capacity. It has greatly improved the company's ability to effectively use overtime labor while meeting customer demand. Chapter 19 discusses an application of the theory of constraints.

BALANCED SCORECARD

As companies implement various business practice innovations, managers sometimes focus too enthusiastically on the latest innovation, to the detriment of other areas of the business. For example, in focusing on improving quality, companies sometimes have lost sight of cost/benefit considerations. Similarly, in focusing on reducing inventory levels through just-in-time, companies sometimes have lost sales due to inventory shortages. The **balanced scorecard** is a performance-measurement approach that uses both financial and nonfinancial measures to evaluate all aspects of a company's operations in an **integrated** fashion. The performance measures are linked in a cause-and-effect fashion to ensure that they all tie to the company's overall objectives.

For example, the company may desire to increase its return on assets, a common financial performance measure (calculated as net income divided by average total assets). It will then identify a series of linked goals. If the company accomplishes each goal, the ultimate result will be an increase in return on assets. For example, in order to increase return on assets, sales must increase. In order to increase sales, customer satisfaction must be increased. In order to increase customer satisfaction, product defects must be reduced. In order to reduce product defects, employee training must be increased. Note the linkage, which starts with employee training and ends with return on assets. Each objective will have associated performance measures.

The use of the balanced scorecard is widespread among well-known and respected companies. For example, Hilton Hotels Corporation uses the balanced scorecard to evaluate the performance of employees at all of its hotel chains. Wal-Mart employs the balanced scorecard, and actually extends its use to evaluation of its suppliers. For example, Wal-Mart recently awarded Welch Company the "Dry Grocery Division Supplier of the Year Award" for its balanced scorecard results. We discuss the balanced scorecard further in Chapter 22.

before you go on...

Do it! Match the descriptions that follow with the corresponding terms.

TRENDS IN MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING

Descriptions:

1. _____ All activities associated with providing a product or service.
2. _____ A method of allocating overhead based on each product's use of activities in making the product.
3. _____ Systems implemented to reduce defects in finished products with the goal of achieving zero defects.
4. _____ A performance-measurement approach that uses both financial and nonfinancial measures, tied to company objectives, to evaluate a company's operations in an integrated fashion.
5. _____ Inventory system in which goods are manufactured or purchased just as they are needed for use.

Terms:

a. Activity-based costing
b. Balanced scorecard
c. Just-in-time (JIT) inventory
d. Total quality management (TQM)
e. Value chain

Action Plan

- Develop a forward-looking view, in order to advise and provide information to various members of the organization.
- Understand current business trends and issues.

Solution

1. e 2. a 3. d 4. b 5. c

the navigator

Related exercise material: **Do it!** **14-4** and **E14-18.**

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

Giant Manufacturing Co. Ltd. specializes in manufacturing many different models of bicycles. Assume that the market has responded enthusiastically to a new model, the Jaguar. As a result, the company has established a separate manufacturing facility to produce these bicycles. The company produces 1,000 bicycles per month. Giant's monthly manufacturing cost and other expenses data related to these bicycles are as follows.

1. Rent on manufacturing equipment (lease cost) $2,000/month
2. Insurance on manufacturing building $750/month
3. Raw materials (frames, tires, etc.) $80/bicycle
4. Utility costs for manufacturing facility $1,000/month
5. Supplies for administrative office $800/month
6. Wages for assembly line workers in manufacturing facility $30/bicycle
7. Depreciation on office equipment $650/month
8. Miscellaneous manufacturing materials (lubricants, solders, etc.) $1.20/bicycle
9. Property taxes on manufacturing building $2,400/year
10. Manufacturing supervisor's salary $3,000/month
11. Advertising for bicycles $30,000/year
12. Sales commissions $10/bicycle
13. Depreciation on manufacturing building $1,500/month

Instructions

(a) Prepare an answer sheet with the following column headings.

	Product Costs			
Cost Item	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead	Period Costs

Enter each cost item on your answer sheet, placing an "X" mark under the appropriate headings.

(b) Compute total manufacturing costs for the month.

Solution

(a)

	Product Costs			
Cost Item	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead	Period Costs
1. Rent on manufacturing equipment ($2,000/month)			X	
2. Insurance on manufacturing building ($750/month)			X	
3. Raw materials ($80/bicycle)	X			
4. Manufacturing utilities ($1,000/month)			X	
5. Office supplies ($800/month)				X

Cost Item	Product Costs: Direct Materials	Product Costs: Direct Labor	Product Costs: Manufacturing Overhead	Period Costs
6. Wages for workers ($30/bicycle)		X		
7. Depreciation on office equipment ($650/month)				X
8. Miscellaneous manufacturing materials ($1.20/bicycle)			X	
9. Property taxes on manufacturing building ($2,400/year)			X	
10. Manufacturing supervisor's salary ($3,000/month)			X	
11. Advertising cost ($30,000/year)				X
12. Sales commissions ($10/bicycle)				X
13. Depreciation on manufacturing building ($1,500/month)			X	

(b)

Cost Item	Manufacturing Cost
Rent on manufacturing equipment	$ 2,000
Insurance on manufacturing building	750
Raw materials ($80 × 1,000)	80,000
Manufacturing utilities	1,000
Labor ($30 × 1,000)	30,000
Miscellaneous materials ($1.20 × 1,000)	1,200
Property taxes on manufacturing building ($2,400 ÷ 12)	200
Manufacturing supervisor's salary	3,000
Depreciation on manufacturing building	1,500
Total manufacturing costs	$119,650

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Explain the distinguishing features of managerial accounting. The *primary users* of managerial accounting reports are internal users, who are officers, department heads, managers, and supervisors in the company. Managerial accounting issues internal reports as frequently as the need arises. The purpose of these reports is to provide special-purpose information for a particular user for a specific decision. The content of managerial accounting reports pertains to subunits of the business, may be very detailed, and may extend beyond the double-entry accounting system. The reporting standard is relevance to the decision being made. No independent audits are required in managerial accounting.

2 Identify the three broad functions of management. The three functions are planning, directing, and controlling. Planning requires management to look ahead and to establish objectives. Directing involves coordinating the diverse activities and human resources of a company to produce a smooth-running operation. Controlling is the process of keeping the activities on track.

3 Define the three classes of manufacturing costs. Manufacturing costs are typically classified as either (1) direct materials, (2) direct labor, or (3) manufacturing overhead. Raw materials that can be physically and directly associated with the finished product during the manufacturing process are called direct materials. The

work of factory employees that can be physically and directly associated with converting raw materials into finished goods is considered direct labor. Manufacturing overhead consists of costs that are indirectly associated with the manufacture of the finished product.

4 Distinguish between product and period costs. Product costs are costs that are a necessary and integral part of producing the finished product. Product costs are also called inventoriable costs. Under the matching principle, these costs do not become expenses until the company sells the finished goods inventory. Period costs are costs that are identified with a specific time period rather than with a salable product. These costs relate to nonmanufacturing costs and therefore are not inventoriable costs.

5 Explain the difference between a merchandising and a manufacturing income statement. The difference between a merchandising and a manufacturing income statement is in the cost of goods sold section. A manufacturing cost of goods sold section shows beginning and ending finished goods inventories and the cost of goods manufactured.

6 Indicate how cost of goods manufactured is determined. Companies add the cost of the beginning work in process to the total manufacturing costs for the current year to arrive at the total cost of work in process for the year. They then subtract the ending work in process from the total cost of work in process to arrive at the cost of goods manufactured.

7 Explain the difference between a merchandising and a manufacturing balance sheet. The difference between a merchandising and a manufacturing balance sheet is in the current assets section. The current assets section of a manufacturing company's balance sheet presents three inventory accounts: finished goods inventory, work in process inventory, and raw materials inventory.

8 Identify trends in managerial accounting. Managerial accounting has experienced many changes in recent years. Among these are a shift toward addressing the needs of service companies and improving practices to better meet the needs of managers. Improved practices include a focus on managing the value chain through techniques such as just-in-time inventory and technological applications such as enterprise resource management, computer-integrated manufacturing, and B2B e-commerce. In addition, techniques such as just-in-time inventory, total quality management, activity-based costing, and theory of constraints are improving decision making. Finally, the balanced scorecard is now used by many companies in order to attain a more comprehensive view of the company's operations.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the company maintaining control over the costs of production?	Cost of material, labor, and overhead	Cost of goods manufactured schedule	Compare the cost of goods manufactured to revenue expected from product sales.
What is the composition of a manufacturing company's inventory?	Amount of raw materials, work in process, and finished goods inventories	Balance sheet	Determine whether there are sufficient finished goods, raw materials, and work in process inventories to meet forecasted demand.

appendix 14A

Accounting Cycle for a Manufacturing Company

study objective 9

Prepare a worksheet and closing entries for a manufacturing company.

The accounting cycle for a manufacturing company is the same as for a merchandising company when companies use a periodic inventory system. The journalizing and posting of transactions is the same, except for the additional manufacturing inventories and manufacturing cost accounts. Similarly, the preparation of a trial balance and the journalizing and posting of adjusting entries are the

same. Some changes, however, occur in using a worksheet and in preparing closing entries.

To illustrate the changes in the worksheet, we will use the cost of goods manufactured schedule for Olsen Manufacturing presented in Illustration 14-8 (page 759), along with other assumed data. For convenience, we reproduce the cost of goods manufactured schedule in Illustration 14A-1.

Illustration 14A-1 Cost of goods manufactured schedule

OLSEN MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Cost of Goods Manufactured Schedule
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Work in process, January 1			$ 18,400
Direct materials			
Raw materials inventory, January 1	$ 16,700		
Raw materials purchases	152,500		
Total raw materials available for use	169,200		
Less: Raw materials inventory, December 31	22,800		
Direct materials used		$146,400	
Direct labor		175,600	
Manufacturing overhead			
Indirect labor	14,300		
Factory repairs	12,600		
Factory utilities	10,100		
Factory depreciation	9,440		
Factory insurance	8,360		
Total manufacturing overhead		54,800	
Total manufacturing costs			376,800
Total cost of work in process			395,200
Less: Work in process, December 31			25,200
Cost of goods manufactured			$370,000

WORKSHEET

When a company uses a worksheet in preparing financial statements, it needs two additional columns for the cost of goods manufactured schedule. As illustrated in the worksheet in Illustration 14A-2 (page 772), we insert debit and credit columns for this schedule before the income statement columns.

In completing the cost of goods manufactured columns, you would enter the beginning inventories of raw materials and work in process as debits. In addition, you would enter all of the manufacturing costs as debits. The reason is that each of these amounts increases cost of goods manufactured. In contrast, you would enter ending inventories for raw materials and work in process as credits in the cost of goods manufactured columns because they have the opposite effect—they decrease cost of goods manufactured. The balancing amount for these columns is the cost of goods manufactured. Note that the amount ($370,000) agrees with the amount reported for cost of goods manufactured in Illustration 14A-1. This amount is also entered in the income statement debit column.

The income statement and balance sheet columns for a manufacturing company are basically the same as for a merchandising company. For example, the treatment of the finished goods inventories is identical with the treatment of merchandise inventory: The beginning inventory appears in the debit column of the income statement, and the ending finished goods inventory appears in the income statement credit column as well as in the balance sheet debit column.

Olsen Manufacturing Company.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

OLSEN MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Worksheet (Partial)
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

		Adjusted Trial Balance		Cost of Goods Manufactured		Income Statement		Balance Sheet	
		Dr.	Cr.	Dr.	Cr.	Dr.	Cr.	Dr.	Cr.
6	Cash	42,500						42,500	
7	Accounts Receivable (Net)	71,900						71,900	
8	Finished Goods Inventory	24,600				24,600	19,500	19,500	
9	Work in Process Inventory	18,400		18,400	25,200			25,200	
10	Raw Material Inventory	16,700		16,700	22,800			22,800	
11	Plant Assets	724,000						724,000	
12	Accumulated Depreciation		278,400						278,400
13	Notes Payable		100,000						100,000
14	Accounts Payable		40,000						40,000
15	Income Taxes Payable		5,000						5,000
16	Common Stock		200,000						200,000
17	Retained Earnings		205,100						205,100
18	Sales		680,000				680,000		
19	Raw Materials Purchases	152,500		152,500					
20	Direct Labor	175,600		175,600					
21	Indirect Labor	14,300		14,300					
22	Factory Repairs	12,600		12,600					
23	Factory Utilities	10,100		10,100					
24	Factory Depreciation	9,440		9,440					
25	Factory Insurance	8,360		8,360					
26	Selling Expenses	114,900				114,900			
27	Administrative Expenses	92,600				92,600			
28	Income Tax Expense	20,000				20,000			
29	Totals	1,508,500	1,508,500	418,000	48,000				
30	Cost of Goods Manufactured				370,000	370,000			
31	Totals			418,000	418,000	622,100	699,500	905,900	828,500
32	Net Income					77,400			77,400
33	Totals					699,500	699,500	905,900	905,900

Illustration 14A-2 Partial worksheet

As in the case of a merchandising company, manufacturing companies can prepare financial statements from the statement columns of the worksheet. They also can prepare the cost of goods manufactured schedule directly from the worksheet.

CLOSING ENTRIES

The closing entries are different for manufacturing and merchandising companies. Manufacturing companies use a Manufacturing Summary account to close all accounts that appear in the cost of goods manufactured schedule. The balance of the Manufacturing Summary account is the Cost of Goods Manufactured for the period. Manufacturing Summary is then closed to Income Summary.

Companies can prepare the closing entries from the worksheet. As illustrated below, they first prepare the closing entries for the manufacturing accounts. The closing entries for Olsen Manufacturing are as follows.

Dec. 31	Work in Process Inventory (Dec. 31)	25,200	
	Raw Materials Inventory (Dec. 31)	22,800	
	Manufacturing Summary		**48,000**
	(To record ending raw materials and work in process inventories)		

Dec. 31	**Manufacturing Summary**	**418,000**	
	Work in Process Inventory (Jan. 1)		18,400
	Raw Materials Inventory (Jan. 1)		16,700
	Raw Materials Purchases		152,500
	Direct Labor		175,600
	Indirect Labor		14,300
	Factory Repairs		12,600
	Factory Utilities		10,100
	Factory Depreciation		9,440
	Factory Insurance		8,360
	(To close beginning raw materials and work in process inventories and manufacturing cost accounts)		
31	Finished Goods Inventory (Dec. 31)	19,500	
	Sales	680,000	
	Income Summary		699,500
	(To record ending finished goods inventory and close sales account)		
31	Income Summary	622,100	
	Finished Goods Inventory (Jan. 1)		24,600
	Manufacturing Summary		**370,000**
	Selling Expenses		114,900
	Administrative Expenses		92,600
	Income Tax Expense		20,000
	(To close beginning finished goods inventory, manufacturing summary, and expense accounts)		
31	Income Summary	77,400	
	Retained Earnings		77,400
	(To close net income to retained earnings)		

After posting, the summary accounts will show the following.

Manufacturing Summary

Dec. 31	Close	418,000	Dec. 31	Close	48,000
			31	Close	370,000

Income Summary

Dec. 31	Close	622,100	Dec. 31	Close	699,500
31	Close	77,400			

Illustration 14A-3
Summary accounts for a manufacturing company, after posting

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 14A

9 Prepare a worksheet and closing entries for a manufacturing company. The worksheet for the cost of goods manufactured needs two additional columns. In these columns, manufacturing companies enter the beginning inventories of raw materials and work in process as debits, and the ending inventories as credits. All manufacturing costs are entered as debits. To close all of the accounts that appear in the cost of goods manufactured schedule, manufacturers use a Manufacturing Summary account.

Glossary

Activity-based costing (ABC) *(p. 766)* A method of allocating overhead based on each product's use of activities in making the product.

Balanced scorecard *(p. 767)* A performance-measurement approach that uses both financial and nonfinancial measures, tied to company objectives, to evaluate a company's operations in an integrated fashion.

Board of directors *(p. 751)* The group of officials elected by the stockholders of a corporation to formulate operating policies, select officers, and otherwise manage the company.

Chief executive officer (CEO) *(p. 751)* Corporate officer who has overall responsibility for managing the business and delegates responsibilities to other corporate officers.

Chief financial officer (CFO) *(p. 752)* Corporate officer who is responsible for all of the accounting and finance issues of the company.

Controller *(p. 752)* Financial officer responsible for a company's accounting records, system of internal control, and preparation of financial statements, tax returns, and internal reports.

Cost of goods manufactured *(p. 758)* Total cost of work in process less the cost of the ending work in process inventory.

Direct labor *(p. 755)* The work of factory employees that can be physically and directly associated with converting raw materials into finished goods.

Direct materials *(p. 755)* Raw materials that can be physically and directly associated with manufacturing the finished product.

Enterprise resource planning (ERP) system *(p. 765)* Software that provides a comprehensive, centralized, integrated source of information used to manage all major business processes.

Indirect labor *(p. 755)* Work of factory employees that has no physical association with the finished product, or for which it is impractical to trace the costs to the goods produced.

Indirect materials *(p. 755)* Raw materials that do not physically become part of the finished product or cannot be traced because their physical association with the finished product is too small.

Just-in-time (JIT) inventory *(p. 765)* Inventory system in which goods are manufactured or purchased just in time for sale.

Line positions *(p. 752)* Jobs that are directly involved in a company's primary revenue-generating operating activities.

Managerial accounting *(p. 748)* A field of accounting that provides economic and financial information for managers and other internal users.

Manufacturing overhead *(p. 755)* Manufacturing costs that are indirectly associated with the manufacture of the finished product.

Period costs *(p. 756)* Costs that are matched with the revenue of a specific time period and charged to expense as incurred.

Product costs *(p. 756)* Costs that are a necessary and integral part of producing the finished product.

Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (SOX) *(p. 753)* Law passed by Congress in 2002 intended to reduce unethical corporate behavior.

Staff positions *(p. 752)* Jobs that support the efforts of line employees.

Theory of constraints *(p. 766)* A specific approach used to identify and manage constraints in order to achieve the company's goals.

Total cost of work in process *(p. 758)* Cost of the beginning work in process plus total manufacturing costs for the current period.

Total manufacturing costs *(p. 758)* The sum of direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead incurred in the current period.

Total quality management (TQM) *(p. 766)* Systems implemented to reduce defects in finished products with the goal of achieving zero defects.

Treasurer *(p. 752)* Financial officer responsible for custody of a company's funds and for maintaining its cash position.

Value chain *(p. 764)* All activities associated with providing a product or service.

Comprehensive Do it!

Superior Manufacturing Company has the following cost and expense data for the year ending December 31, 2012.

Raw materials, 1/1/12	$ 30,000	Insurance, factory	$ 14,000
Raw materials, 12/31/12	20,000	Property taxes, factory building	6,000
Raw materials purchases	205,000	Sales (net)	1,500,000
Indirect materials	15,000	Delivery expenses	100,000
Work in process, 1/1/12	80,000	Sales commissions	150,000
Work in process, 12/31/12	50,000	Indirect labor	90,000
Finished goods, 1/1/12	110,000	Factory machinery rent	40,000
Finished goods, 12/31/12	120,000	Factory utilities	65,000
Direct labor	350,000	Depreciation, factory building	24,000
Factory manager's salary	35,000	Administrative expenses	300,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule for Superior Company for 2012.
(b) Prepare an income statement for Superior Company for 2012.
(c) Assume that Superior Company's accounting records show the balances of the following current asset accounts: Cash $17,000, Accounts Receivable (net) $120,000, Prepaid Expenses $13,000, and Short-term Investments $26,000. Prepare the current assets section of the balance sheet for Superior Company as of December 31, 2012.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

(a)

SUPERIOR MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Cost of Goods Manufactured Schedule
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Work in process, 1/1			$ 80,000
Direct materials			
Raw materials inventory, 1/1	$ 30,000		
Raw materials purchases	205,000		
Total raw materials available for use	235,000		
Less: Raw materials inventory, 12/31	20,000		
Direct materials used		$215,000	
Direct labor		350,000	
Manufacturing overhead			
Indirect labor	90,000		
Factory utilities	65,000		
Factory machinery rent	40,000		
Factory manager's salary	35,000		
Depreciation, factory building	24,000		
Indirect materials	15,000		
Insurance, factory	14,000		
Property taxes, factory building	6,000		
Total manufacturing overhead		289,000	
Total manufacturing costs			854,000
Total cost of work in process			934,000
Less: Work in process, 12/31			50,000
Cost of goods manufactured			$ 884,000

(b)

SUPERIOR MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales (net)		$1,500,000
Cost of goods sold		
Finished goods inventory, January 1	$110,000	
Cost of goods manufactured	884,000	
Cost of goods available for sale	994,000	
Less: Finished goods inventory, December 31	120,000	
Cost of goods sold		874,000
Gross profit		626,000
Operating expenses		
Administrative expenses	300,000	
Sales commissions	150,000	
Delivery expenses	100,000	
Total operating expenses		550,000
Net income		$ 76,000

Action Plan

- Start with beginning work in process as the first item in the cost of goods manufactured schedule.
- Sum direct materials used, direct labor, and total manufacturing overhead to determine total manufacturing costs.
- Sum beginning work in process and total manufacturing costs to determine total cost of work in process.
- Cost of goods manufactured is the total cost of work in process less ending work in process.
- In the cost of goods sold section of the income statement, show beginning and ending finished goods inventory and cost of goods manufactured.
- In the balance sheet, list manufacturing inventories in the order of their expected realization in cash, with finished goods first.

(c)

SUPERIOR MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Balance Sheet (partial)
December 31, 2012

Current assets		
Cash		$ 17,000
Short-term investments		26,000
Accounts receivable (net)		120,000
Inventories		
Finished goods	$120,000	
Work in process	50,000	
Raw materials	20,000	190,000
Prepaid expenses		13,000
Total current assets		$366,000

the navigator

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Note: All asterisked Questions, Exercises, and Problems relate to material in the appendix to the chapter.

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 795.

(SO 1) **1.** Managerial accounting:
(a) is governed by generally accepted accounting principles.
(b) places emphasis on special-purpose information.
(c) pertains to the entity as a whole and is highly aggregated.
(d) is limited to cost data.

(SO 2) **2.** The management of an organization performs several broad functions. They are:
(a) planning, directing, and selling.
(b) planning, directing, and controlling.
(c) planning, manufacturing, and controlling.
(d) directing, manufacturing, and controlling.

(SO 2) **3.** After passage of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002:
(a) reports prepared by managerial accountants must by audited by CPAs.
(b) CEOs and CFOs must certify that financial statements give a fair presentation of the company's operating results.
(c) the audit committee, rather than top management, is responsible for the company's financial statements.
(d) reports prepared by managerial accountants must comply with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).

(SO 3) **4.** Direct materials are a:

	Product Cost	Manufacturing Overhead	Period Cost
(a)	Yes	Yes	No
(b)	Yes	No	No
(c)	Yes	Yes	Yes
(d)	No	No	No

(SO 3) **5.** Which of the following costs would a computer manufacturer include in manufacturing overhead?
(a) The cost of the disk drives.
(b) The wages earned by computer assemblers.
(c) The cost of the memory chips.
(d) Depreciation on testing equipment.

(SO 3) **6.** Which of the following is *not* an element of manufacturing overhead?
(a) Sales manager's salary.
(b) Plant manager's salary.
(c) Factory repairman's wages.
(d) Product inspector's salary.

(SO 4) **7.** Indirect labor is a:
(a) nonmanufacturing cost.
(b) raw material cost.
(c) product cost.
(d) period cost.

(SO 4) **8.** Which of the following costs are classified as a period cost?
(a) Wages paid to a factory custodian.
(b) Wages paid to a production department supervisor.
(c) Wages paid to a cost accounting department supervisor.
(d) Wages paid to an assembly worker.

(SO 5) **9.** For the year, Redder Company has cost of goods manufactured of $600,000, beginning finished goods inventory of $200,000, and ending finished goods inventory of $250,000. The cost of goods sold is:
(a) $450,000.
(b) $500,000.
(c) $550,000.
(d) $600,000.

(SO 5) **10.** Cost of goods available for sale is a step in the calculation of cost of goods sold of:
(a) a merchandising company but not a manufacturing company.
(b) a manufacturing company but not a merchandising company.
(c) a merchandising company and a manufacturing company.
(d) neither a manufacturing company nor a merchandising company.

(SO 6) **11.** A cost of goods manufactured schedule shows beginning and ending inventories for:
(a) raw materials and work in process only.
(b) work in process only.
(c) raw materials only.
(d) raw materials, work in process, and finished goods.

(SO 6) **12.** The formula to determine the cost of goods manufactured is:
(a) Beginning raw materials inventory + Total manufacturing costs − Ending work in process inventory.
(b) Beginning work in process inventory + Total manufacturing costs − Ending finished goods inventory.
(c) Beginning finished good inventory + Total manufacturing costs − Ending finished goods inventory.
(d) Beginning work in process inventory + Total manufacturing costs − Ending work in process inventory.

(SO 7) **13.** A manufacturer may report three inventories on its balance sheet: (1) raw materials, (2) work in process, and (3) finished goods. Indicate in what sequence these inventories generally appear on a balance sheet.
(a) (1), (2), (3)
(b) (2), (3), (1)
(c) (3), (1), (2)
(d) (3), (2), (1)

(SO 8) **14.** Which of the following managerial accounting techniques attempts to allocate manufacturing overhead in a more meaningful fashion?
(a) Just-in-time inventory.
(b) Total-quality management.
(c) Balanced scorecard.
(d) Activity-based costing.

(SO 8) **15.** Examples of recent trends in the economic environment of U.S. businesses are:
(a) increasing deregulation, decreasing global competition, and a shift toward providing services rather than goods.
(b) increasing deregulation, increasing global competition, and a shift toward providing goods rather than services.
(c) decreasing deregulation, decreasing global competition, and a shift toward providing services rather than goods.
(d) increasing deregulation, increasing global competition, and a shift toward providing services rather than goods.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, for additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. (a) "Managerial accounting is a field of accounting that provides economic information for all interested parties." Do you agree? Explain.
(b) Joe Delong believes that managerial accounting serves only manufacturing firms. Is Joe correct? Explain.

2. Distinguish between managerial and financial accounting as to (a) primary users of reports, (b) types and frequency of reports, and (c) purpose of reports.

3. How does the content of reports and the verification of reports differ between managerial and financial accounting?

4. In what ways can the budgeting process create incentives for unethical behavior?

5. Linda Olsen is studying for the next accounting midterm examination. Summarize for Linda what she should know about management functions.

6. "Decision making is management's most important function." Do you agree? Why or why not?

7. Explain the primary difference between line positions and staff positions, and give examples of each.

8. What new rules were enacted under the Sarbanes-Oxley Act to address unethical accounting practices?

9. Tony Andres is studying for his next accounting examination. Explain to Tony what he should know about the differences between the income statements for a manufacturing and for a merchandising company.

10. Jerry Lang is unclear as to the difference between the balance sheets of a merchandising company and a manufacturing company. Explain the difference to Jerry.

11. How are manufacturing costs classified?

12. Mel Finney claims that the distinction between direct and indirect materials is based entirely on physical association with the product. Is Mel correct? Why?

13. Tina Burke is confused about the differences between a product cost and a period cost. Explain the differences to Tina.

14. Identify the differences in the cost of goods sold section of an income statement between a merchandising company and a manufacturing company.

15. The determination of the cost of goods manufactured involves the following factors: (A) beginning work in process inventory, (B) total manufacturing costs, and (C) ending work in process inventory. Identify the meaning of x in the following formulas:
(a) A + B = x
(b) A + B − C = x

16. Sealy Manufacturing has beginning raw materials inventory $12,000, ending raw materials inventory $15,000, and raw materials purchases $170,000. What is the cost of direct materials used?

17. Tate Manufacturing Inc. has beginning work in process $26,000, direct materials used $240,000, direct labor $220,000, total manufacturing overhead $180,000, and ending work in process $32,000. What are the total manufacturing costs?

18. Using the data in Question 17, what are (a) the total cost of work in process and (b) the cost of goods manufactured?

19. In what order should manufacturing inventories be listed in a balance sheet?

20. How does the output of manufacturing operations differ from that of service operations?

21. Discuss whether the product costing techniques discussed in this chapter apply equally well to manufacturers and service companies.

22. What is the value chain? Describe, in sequence, the main components of a manufacturer's value chain.

23. What is an enterprise resource planning (ERP) system? What are its primary benefits?

24. Why is product quality important for companies that implement a just-in-time inventory system?

25. Explain what is meant by "balanced" in the balanced scorecard approach.

26. What is activity-based costing, and what are its potential benefits?

***27.** How, if at all, does the accounting cycle differ between a manufacturing company and a merchandising company?

***28.** What typical account balances are carried into the cost of goods manufactured columns of the manufacturing worksheet?

***29.** Prepare the closing entries for (a) ending work in process and raw materials inventories and (b) manufacturing summary. Use XXXs for amounts.

Brief Exercises

Distinguish between managerial and financial accounting.
(SO 1), C

BE14-1 Complete the following comparison table between managerial and financial accounting.

	Financial Accounting	Managerial Accounting
Primary users of reports		
Types of reports		
Frequency of reports		
Purpose of reports		
Content of reports		
Verification process		

Identify important regulatory changes.
(SO 2), C

BE14-2 The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (SOX) has important implications for the financial community. Explain two implications of SOX.

Identify the three management functions.
(SO 2), C

BE14-3 Listed below are the three functions of the management of an organization.
1. Planning 2. Directing 3. Controlling

Identify which of the following statements best describes each of the above functions.
(a) ____ requires management to look ahead and to establish objectives. A key objective of management is to add value to the business.
(b) ____ involves coordinating the diverse activities and human resources of a company to produce a smooth-running operation. This function relates to the implementation of planned objectives.
(c) ____ is the process of keeping the activities on track. Management must determine whether goals are being met and what changes are necessary when there are deviations.

Classify manufacturing costs.
(SO 3), C

BE14-4 Determine whether each of the following costs should be classified as direct materials (DM), direct labor (DL), or manufacturing overhead (MO).
(a) ____Frames and tires used in manufacturing bicycles.
(b) ____Wages paid to production workers.
(c) ____Insurance on factory equipment and machinery.
(d) ____Depreciation on factory equipment.

Classify manufacturing costs.
(SO 3), C

BE14-5 Indicate whether each of the following costs of an automobile manufacturer would be classified as direct materials, direct labor, or manufacturing overhead.
(a) ____Windshield.
(b) ____Engine.
(c) ____Wages of assembly line worker.
(d) ____Depreciation of factory machinery.
(e) ____Factory machinery lubricants.
(f) ____Tires.
(g) ____Steering wheel.
(h) ____Salary of painting supervisor.

BE14-6 Identify whether each of the following costs should be classified as product costs or period costs.

Identify product and period costs.
(SO 4), **C**

(a) ____Manufacturing overhead.
(b) ____Selling expenses.
(c) ____Administrative expenses.
(d) ____Advertising expenses.
(e) ____Direct labor.
(f) ____Direct material.

BE14-7 Presented below are Dieker Company's monthly manufacturing cost data related to its personal computer products.

Classify manufacturing costs.
(SO 3), **C**

(a)	Utilities for manufacturing equipment	$116,000
(b)	Raw material (CPU, chips, etc.)	$ 85,000
(c)	Depreciation on manufacturing building	$880,000
(d)	Wages for production workers	$191,000

Enter each cost item in the following table, placing an "X" under the appropriate headings.

	Product Costs		
	Direct Materials	**Direct Labor**	**Factory Overhead**
(a)			
(b)			
(c)			
(d)			

BE14-8 Francum Manufacturing Company has the following data: direct labor $209,000, direct materials used $180,000, total manufacturing overhead $208,000, and beginning work in process $25,000. Compute (a) total manufacturing costs and (b) total cost of work in process.

Compute total manufacturing costs and total cost of work in process.
(SO 6), **AP**

BE14-9 In alphabetical order below are current asset items for Ruiz Company's balance sheet at December 31, 2012. Prepare the current assets section (including a complete heading).

Prepare current assets section.
(SO 7), **AP**

Accounts receivable	$200,000
Cash	62,000
Finished goods	91,000
Prepaid expenses	38,000
Raw materials	73,000
Work in process	87,000

BE14-10 Presented below are incomplete manufacturing cost data. Determine the missing amounts for three different situations.

Determine missing amounts in computing total manufacturing costs.
(SO 6), **AP**

	Direct Materials Used	Direct Labor Used	Factory Overhead	Total Manufacturing Costs
(1)	$40,000	$61,000	$ 50,000	?
(2)	?	$75,000	$140,000	$296,000
(3)	$55,000	?	$111,000	$310,000

BE14-11 Use the same data from BE14–10 above and the data below. Determine the missing amounts.

Determine missing amounts in computing cost of goods manufactured.
(SO 6), **AP**

	Total Manufacturing Costs	Work in Process (1/1)	Work in Process (12/31)	Cost of Goods Manufactured
(1)	?	$120,000	$82,000	?
(2)	$296,000	?	$98,000	$321,000
(3)	$410,000	$463,000	?	$715,000

***BE14-12** Kline Manufacturing Company uses a worksheet in preparing financial statements. The following accounts are included in the adjusted trial balance: Finished Goods Inventory $28,000, Work in Process Inventory $21,600, Raw Materials Purchases $175,000, and Direct Labor $140,000. Indicate the worksheet column(s) to which each account should be extended.

Identify worksheet columns for selected accounts.
(SO 9), **C**

Do it! Review

Identify managerial accounting concepts.
(SO 1, 2), C

Do it! 14-1 Indicate whether the following statements are true or false.

1. Managerial accountants explain and report manufacturing and nonmanufacturing costs, determine cost behaviors, and perform cost-volume-profit analysis, but are not involved in the budget process.
2. Financial accounting reports pertain to subunits of the business and are very detailed.
3. Managerial accounting reports must follow GAAP and are audited by CPAs.
4. Managers' activities and responsibilities can be classified into three broad functions: planning, directing, and controlling.
5. As a result of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (SOX), top managers must certify that the company maintains an adequate system of internal control.
6. Management accountants follow a code of ethics developed by the Institute of Management Accountants.

Identify managerial cost concepts.
(SO 3, 4), C

Do it! 14-2 A music company has these costs:

Advertising	Paper inserts for CD cases
Blank CDs	CD plastic cases
Depreciation of CD image burner	Salaries of sales representatives
Salary of factory manager	Salaries of factory maintenance employees
Factory supplies used	Salaries of employees who burn music onto CDs

Classify each cost as a period or a product cost. Within the product cost category, indicate if the cost is part of direct materials (DM), direct labor (DL), or manufacturing overhead (MO).

Prepare cost of goods manufactured schedule.
(SO 6), AP

Do it! 14-3 The following information is available for Fishel Manufacturing Company.

		April 1	April 30
Raw material inventory		$10,000	$14,000
Work in process inventory		5,000	3,500
Materials purchased in April	$98,000		
Direct labor in April	80,000		
Manufacturing overhead in April	180,000		

Prepare the cost of goods manufactured schedule for the month of April.

Identify trends in managerial accounting.
(SO 8), C

Do it! 14-4 Match the descriptions that follow with the corresponding terms.

Descriptions:

1. _____ Inventory system in which goods are manufactured or purchased just as they are needed for sale.
2. _____ A method of allocating overhead based on each product's use of activities in making the product.
3. _____ Systems that are especially important to firms adopting just-in-time inventory methods.
4. _____ One part of the value chain for a manufacturing company.
5. _____ The U.S. economy is trending toward this.
6. _____ A performance-measurement approach that uses both financial and nonfinancial measures, tied to company objectives, to evaluate a company's operations in an integrated fashion.

Terms:

(a) Activity-based costing
(b) Balanced scorecard
(c) Total quality management (TQM)
(d) Research and development, and product design
(e) Service industries
(f) Just-in-time (JIT) inventory

Exercises

E14-1 Richard Larkin has prepared the following list of statements about managerial accounting and financial accounting.

Identify distinguishing features of managerial accounting.
(SO 1), **C**

1. Financial accounting focuses on providing information to internal users.
2. Analyzing cost-volume-profit relationships is part of managerial accounting.
3. Preparation of budgets is part of financial accounting.
4. Managerial accounting applies only to merchandising and manufacturing companies.
5. Both managerial accounting and financial accounting deal with many of the same economic events.
6. Managerial accounting reports are prepared only quarterly and annually.
7. Financial accounting reports are general-purpose reports.
8. Managerial accounting reports pertain to subunits of the business.
9. Managerial accounting reports must comply with generally accepted accounting principles.
10. Although managerial accountants are expected to behave ethically, there is no code of ethical standards for managerial accountants.

Instructions
Identify each statement as true or false. If false, indicate how to correct the statement.

E14-2 Presented below is a list of costs and expenses usually incurred by Barnum Corporation, a manufacturer of furniture, in its factory.

Classify costs into three classes of manufacturing costs.
(SO 3), **C**

1. Salaries for assembly line inspectors.
2. Insurance on factory machines.
3. Property taxes on the factory building.
4. Factory repairs.
5. Upholstery used in manufacturing furniture.
6. Wages paid to assembly line workers.
7. Factory machinery depreciation.
8. Glue, nails, paint, and other small parts used in production.
9. Factory supervisors' salaries.
10. Wood used in manufacturing furniture.

Instructions
Classify the above items into the following categories: (a) direct materials, (b) direct labor, and (c) manufacturing overhead.

E14-3 Ryan Corporation incurred the following costs while manufacturing its product.

Identify types of cost and explain their accounting.
(SO 3, 4), **C**

Materials used in product	$100,000	Advertising expense	$45,000
Depreciation on plant	60,000	Property taxes on plant	14,000
Property taxes on store	7,500	Delivery expense	21,000
Labor costs of assembly-line workers	110,000	Sales commissions	35,000
Factory supplies used	13,000	Salaries paid to sales clerks	50,000

Instructions
(a) Identify each of the above costs as direct materials, direct labor, manufacturing overhead, or period costs.
(b) Explain the basic difference in accounting for product costs and period costs.

E14-4 Knight Company reports the following costs and expenses in May.

Determine the total amount of various types of costs.
(SO 3, 4), **AP**

Factory utilities	$ 15,500	Direct labor	$69,100
Depreciation on factory equipment	12,650	Sales salaries	46,400
Depreciation on delivery trucks	3,800	Property taxes on factory building	2,500
Indirect factory labor	48,900	Repairs to office equipment	1,300
Indirect materials	80,800	Factory repairs	2,000
Direct materials used	137,600	Advertising	15,000
Factory manager's salary	8,000	Office supplies used	2,640

Instructions
From the information, determine the total amount of:
(a) Manufacturing overhead.
(b) Product costs.
(c) Period costs.

Classify various costs into different cost categories.
(SO 3, 4), **C**

E14-5 Ikerd Company is a manufacturer of personal computers. Various costs and expenses associated with its operations are as follows.

1. Property taxes on the factory building.
2. Production superintendents' salaries.
3. Memory boards and chips used in assembling computers.
4. Depreciation on the factory equipment.
5. Salaries for assembly line quality control inspectors.
6. Sales commissions paid to sell personal computers.
7. Electrical components used in assembling computers.
8. Wages of workers assembling personal computers.
9. Soldering materials used on factory assembly lines.
10. Salaries for the night security guards for the factory building.

The company intends to classify these costs and expenses into the following categories: (a) direct materials, (b) direct labor, (c) manufacturing overhead, and (d) period costs.

Instructions
List the items (1) through (10). For each item, indicate the cost category to which it belongs.

Classify various costs into different cost categories.
(SO 3), **C**

E14-6 The administrators of Crawford County's Memorial Hospital are interested in identifying the various costs and expenses that are incurred in producing a patient's X-ray. A list of such costs and expenses is presented below.

1. Salaries for the X-ray machine technicians.
2. Wages for the hospital janitorial personnel.
3. Film costs for the X-ray machines.
4. Property taxes on the hospital building.
5. Salary of the X-ray technicians' supervisor.
6. Electricity costs for the X-ray department.
7. Maintenance and repairs on the X-ray machines.
8. X-ray department supplies.
9. Depreciation on the X-ray department equipment.
10. Depreciation on the hospital building.

Homework materials related to service companies are indicated by this icon.

The administrators want these costs and expenses classified as: (a) direct materials, (b) direct labor, or (c) service overhead.

Instructions
List the items (1) through (10). For each item, indicate the cost category to which the item belongs.

Classify various costs into different cost categories.
(SO 4), **AP**

E14-7 Kwik Delivery Service reports the following costs and expenses in June 2012.

Indirect materials	$ 5,400	Drivers' salaries	$16,000
Depreciation on delivery equipment	11,200	Advertising	3,600
Dispatcher's salary	5,000	Delivery equipment repairs	300
Property taxes on office building	870	Office supplies	650
CEO's salary	12,000	Office utilities	990
Gas and oil for delivery trucks	2,200	Repairs on office equipment	180

Instructions
Determine the total amount of (a) delivery service (product) costs and (b) period costs.

Compute cost of goods manufactured and sold.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

E14-8 Lopez Corporation incurred the following costs while manufacturing its product.

Materials used in product	$120,000	Advertising expense	$45,000
Depreciation on plant	60,000	Property taxes on plant	14,000
Property taxes on store	7,500	Delivery expense	21,000
Labor costs of assembly-line workers	110,000	Sales commissions	35,000
Factory supplies used	23,000	Salaries paid to sales clerks	50,000

Work in process inventory was $12,000 at January 1 and $15,500 at December 31. Finished goods inventory was $60,000 at January 1 and $45,600 at December 31.

Instructions
(a) Compute cost of goods manufactured.
(b) Compute cost of goods sold.

E14-9 An incomplete cost of goods manufactured schedule is presented below.

Determine missing amounts in cost of goods manufactured schedule.
(SO 6), **AP**

MOLINA MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Cost of Goods Manufactured Schedule
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Work in process (1/1)			$210,000
Direct materials			
Raw materials inventory (1/1)	$?		
Add: Raw materials purchases	158,000		
Total raw materials available for use	?		
Less: Raw materials inventory (12/31)	22,500		
Direct materials used		$190,000	
Direct labor		?	
Manufacturing overhead			
Indirect labor	18,000		
Factory depreciation	36,000		
Factory utilities	68,000		
Total overhead		122,000	
Total manufacturing costs			?
Total cost of work in process			?
Less: Work in process (12/31)			81,000
Cost of goods manufactured			$530,000

Instructions
Complete the cost of goods manufactured schedule for Molina Manufacturing Company.

E14-10 Manufacturing cost data for Copa Company are presented below.

Determine the missing amount of different cost items.
(SO 6), **AN**

	Case A	Case B	Case C
Direct materials used	(a)	$68,400	$130,000
Direct labor	$ 57,000	86,000	(g)
Manufacturing overhead	46,500	81,600	102,000
Total manufacturing costs	195,650	(d)	253,700
Work in process 1/1/12	(b)	16,500	(h)
Total cost of work in process	221,500	(e)	337,000
Work in process 12/31/12	(c)	11,000	70,000
Cost of goods manufactured	185,275	(f)	(i)

Instructions
Indicate the missing amount for each letter (a) through (i).

E14-11 Incomplete manufacturing cost data for Colaw Company for 2012 are presented as follows for four different situations.

Determine the missing amount of different cost items, and prepare a condensed cost of goods manufactured schedule.
(SO 6), **AN**

	Direct Materials Used	Direct Labor Used	Manufacturing Overhead	Total Manufacturing Costs	Work in Process 1/1	Work in Process 12/31	Cost of Goods Manufactured
(1)	$127,000	$140,000	$ 87,000	(a)	$33,000	(b)	$360,000
(2)	(c)	200,000	132,000	$450,000	(d)	$40,000	470,000
(3)	80,000	100,000	(e)	255,000	60,000	80,000	(f)
(4)	70,000	(g)	75,000	288,000	45,000	(h)	270,000

Instructions

(a) Indicate the missing amount for each letter.

(b) Prepare a condensed cost of goods manufactured schedule for situation (1) for the year ended December 31, 2012.

Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule and a partial income statement. (SO 5, 6), **AP**

E14-12 Cepeda Corporation has the following cost records for June 2012.

Indirect factory labor	$ 4,500	Factory utilities	$ 400
Direct materials used	20,000	Depreciation, factory equipment	1,400
Work in process, 6/1/12	3,000	Direct labor	40,000
Work in process, 6/30/12	3,800	Maintenance, factory equipment	1,800
Finished goods, 6/1/12	5,000	Indirect materials	2,200
Finished goods, 6/30/12	7,500	Factory manager's salary	3,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule for June 2012.

(b) Prepare an income statement through gross profit for June 2012 assuming net sales are $92,100.

Classify various costs into different categories and prepare cost of services provided schedule. (SO 4, 5, 6), **AN**

E14-13 Joyce Tombert, the bookkeeper for Marks Consulting, a political consulting firm, has recently completed a managerial accounting course at her local college. One of the topics covered in the course was the cost of goods manufactured schedule. Joyce wondered if such a schedule could be prepared for her firm. She realized that, as a service-oriented company, it would have no Work in Process inventory to consider.

Listed below are the costs her firm incurred for the month ended August 31, 2012.

Supplies used on consulting contracts	$ 1,200
Supplies used in the administrative offices	1,500
Depreciation on equipment used for contract work	900
Depreciation used on administrative office equipment	1,050
Salaries of professionals working on contracts	15,600
Salaries of administrative office personnel	7,700
Janitorial services for professional offices	400
Janitorial services for administrative offices	500
Insurance on contract operations	800
Insurance on administrative operations	900
Utilities for contract operations	1,400
Utilities for administrative offices	1,300

Instructions

(a) Prepare a schedule of cost of contract services provided (similar to a cost of goods manufactured schedule) for the month.

(b) For those costs not included in (a), explain how they would be classified and reported in the financial statements.

Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule and a partial income statement. (SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

E14-14 The following information is available for Aikman Company.

	January 1, 2012	2012	December 31, 2012
Raw materials inventory	$21,000		$30,000
Work in process inventory	13,500		17,200
Finished goods inventory	27,000		21,000
Materials purchased		$150,000	
Direct labor		220,000	
Manufacturing overhead		180,000	
Sales		910,000	

Instructions

(a) Compute cost of goods manufactured.

(b) Prepare an income statement through gross profit.

(c) Show the presentation of the ending inventories on the December 31, 2012, balance sheet.

(d) How would the income statement and balance sheet of a merchandising company be different from Aikman's financial statements?

Indicate in which schedule or financial statement(s) different cost items will appear. (SO 5, 6, 7), **C**

E14-15 Chambers Manufacturing Company produces blankets. From its accounting records, it prepares the following schedule and financial statements on a yearly basis.

(a) Cost of goods manufactured schedule.

(b) Income statement.
(c) Balance sheet.

The following items are found in its ledger and accompanying data.

1. Direct labor
2. Raw materials inventory, 1/1
3. Work in process inventory, 12/31
4. Finished goods inventory, 1/1
5. Indirect labor
6. Depreciation on factory machinery
7. Work in process, 1/1
8. Finished goods inventory, 12/31
9. Factory maintenance salaries
10. Cost of goods manufactured
11. Depreciation on delivery equipment
12. Cost of goods available for sale
13. Direct materials used
14. Heat and electricity for factory
15. Repairs to roof of factory building
16. Cost of raw materials purchases

Instructions

List the items (1)–(16). For each item, indicate by using the appropriate letter or letters, the schedule and/or financial statement(s) in which the item will appear.

E14-16 An analysis of the accounts of Roberts Manufacturing reveals the following manufacturing cost data for the month ended June 30, 2012.

Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule, and present the ending inventories on the balance sheet.
(SO 6, 7), **AP**

Inventories	Beginning	Ending
Raw materials	$9,000	$13,100
Work in process	5,000	7,000
Finished goods	9,000	8,000

Costs incurred: Raw materials purchases $54,000, direct labor $47,000, manufacturing overhead $19,900. The specific overhead costs were: indirect labor $5,500, factory insurance $4,000, machinery depreciation $4,000, machinery repairs $1,800, factory utilities $3,100, miscellaneous factory costs $1,500. Assume that all raw materials used were direct materials.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the cost of goods manufactured schedule for the month ended June 30, 2012.
(b) Show the presentation of the ending inventories on the June 30, 2012, balance sheet.

E14-17 Buhler Motor Company manufactures automobiles. During September 2012, the company purchased 5,000 head lamps at a cost of $10 per lamp. Buhler withdrew 4,650 lamps from the warehouse during the month. Fifty of these lamps were used to replace the head lamps in autos used by traveling sales staff. The remaining 4,600 lamps were put in autos manufactured during the month.

Determine the amount of cost to appear in various accounts, and indicate in which financial statements these accounts would appear.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

Of the autos put into production during September 2012, 90% were completed and transferred to the company's storage lot. Of the cars completed during the month, 70% were sold by September 30.

Instructions

(a) Determine the cost of head lamps that would appear in each of the following accounts at September 30, 2012: Raw Materials, Work in Process, Finished Goods, Cost of Goods Sold, and Selling Expenses.
(b) Write a short memo to the chief accountant, indicating whether and where each of the accounts in (a) would appear on the income statement or on the balance sheet at September 30, 2012.

E14-18 The following is a list of terms related to managerial accounting practices.

Identify various managerial accounting practices.
(SO 8), **C**

1. Activity-based costing.
2. Just-in-time inventory.
3. Balanced scorecard.
4. Value chain.

Instructions

Match each of the terms with the statement below that best describes the term.

(a) ____ A performance-measurement technique that attempts to consider and evaluate all aspects of performance using financial and nonfinancial measures in an integrated fashion.
(b) ____ The group of activities associated with providing a product or service.

(c) ____ An approach used to reduce the cost associated with handling and holding inventory by reducing the amount of inventory on hand.
(d) ____ A method used to allocate overhead to products based on each product's use of the activities that cause the incurrence of the overhead cost.

Prepare a partial worksheet for a manufacturing firm.
(SO 9), **AP**

***E14-19** Data for Roberts Manufacturing are presented in E14-16.

Instructions
Beginning with the adjusted trial balance, prepare a partial worksheet for Roberts Manufacturing using the format shown in Illustration 14A-2.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Classify manufacturing costs into different categories and compute the unit cost.
(SO 3, 4), **AP**

P14-1A Lott Company specializes in manufacturing a unique model of bicycle helmet. The model is well accepted by consumers, and the company has enough orders to keep the factory production at 10,000 helmets per month (80% of its full capacity). Lott's monthly manufacturing cost and other expense data are as follows.

Rent on factory equipment	$ 9,000
Insurance on factory building	1,500
Raw materials (plastics, polystyrene, etc.)	75,000
Utility costs for factory	900
Supplies for general office	300
Wages for assembly line workers	53,000
Depreciation on office equipment	800
Miscellaneous materials (glue, thread, etc.)	1,100
Factory manager's salary	5,700
Property taxes on factory building	400
Advertising for helmets	14,000
Sales commissions	10,000
Depreciation on factory building	1,500

Instructions

(a) DM $75,000
DL $53,000
MO $20,100
PC $25,100

(a) Prepare an answer sheet with the following column headings.

	Product Costs			
Cost Item	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead	Period Costs

Enter each cost item on your answer sheet, placing the dollar amount under the appropriate headings. Total the dollar amounts in each of the columns.
(b) Compute the cost to produce one helmet.

Classify manufacturing costs into different categories and compute the unit cost.
(SO 3, 4), **AP**

P14-2A Bell Company, a manufacturer of audio systems, started its production in October 2012. For the preceding 3 years, Bell had been a retailer of audio systems. After a thorough survey of audio system markets, Bell decided to turn its retail store into an audio equipment factory.

Raw materials cost for an audio system will total $74 per unit. Workers on the production lines are on average paid $12 per hour. An audio system usually takes 5 hours to complete. In addition, the rent on the equipment used to assemble audio systems amounts to $4,900 per month. Indirect materials cost $5 per system. A supervisor was hired to oversee production; her monthly salary is $3,000.

Factory janitorial costs are $1,300 monthly. Advertising costs for the audio system will be $9,500 per month. The factory building depreciation expense is $7,800 per year. Property taxes on the factory building will be $9,000 per year.

Instructions

(a) Prepare an answer sheet with the following column headings.

Cost Item	Product Costs: Direct Materials	Product Costs: Direct Labor	Product Costs: Manufacturing Overhead	Period Costs

Assuming that Bell manufactures, on average, 1,500 audio systems per month, enter each cost item on your answer sheet, placing the dollar amount per month under the appropriate headings. Total the dollar amounts in each of the columns.

(b) Compute the cost to produce one audio system.

(a) DM $111,000
DL $90,000
MO $ 18,100
PC $ 9,500

P14-3A Incomplete manufacturing costs, expenses, and selling data for two different cases are as follows.

Indicate the missing amount of different cost items, and prepare a condensed cost of goods manufactured schedule, an income statement, and a partial balance sheet.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AN**

	Case 1	Case 2
Direct materials used	$ 9,600	$ (g)
Direct labor	5,000	8,000
Manufacturing overhead	8,000	4,000
Total manufacturing costs	(a)	16,000
Beginning work in process inventory	1,000	(h)
Ending work in process inventory	(b)	3,000
Sales	24,500	(i)
Sales discounts	2,500	1,400
Cost of goods manufactured	17,000	22,000
Beginning finished goods inventory	(c)	3,300
Goods available for sale	20,000	(j)
Cost of goods sold	(d)	(k)
Ending finished goods inventory	3,400	2,500
Gross profit	(e)	7,000
Operating expenses	2,500	(l)
Net income	(f)	5,000

Instructions

(a) Indicate the missing amount for each letter.

(b) Prepare a condensed cost of goods manufactured schedule for Case 1.

(c) Prepare an income statement and the current assets section of the balance sheet for Case 1. Assume that in Case 1 the other items in the current assets section are as follows: Cash $4,000, Receivables (net) $15,000, Raw Materials $600, and Prepaid Expenses $400.

(b) Ending WIP $ 6,600
(c) Current assets $30,000

P14-4A The following data were taken from the records of Clarkson Manufacturing Company for the fiscal year ended June 30, 2012.

Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule, a partial income statement, and a partial balance sheet.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

Raw Materials Inventory 7/1/11	$ 48,000	Factory Insurance	$ 4,600
Raw Materials Inventory 6/30/12	39,600	Factory Machinery Depreciation	16,000
Finished Goods Inventory 7/1/11	96,000	Factory Utilities	27,600
Finished Goods Inventory 6/30/12	75,900	Office Utilities Expense	8,650
Work in Process Inventory 7/1/11	19,800	Sales	534,000
Work in Process Inventory 6/30/12	18,600	Sales Discounts	4,200
Direct Labor	139,250	Plant Manager's Salary	58,000
Indirect Labor	24,460	Factory Property Taxes	9,600
Accounts Receivable	27,000	Factory Repairs	1,400
		Raw Materials Purchases	96,400
		Cash	32,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule. (Assume all raw materials used were direct materials.)

(b) Prepare an income statement through gross profit.

(c) Prepare the current assets section of the balance sheet at June 30, 2012.

(a) CGM $386,910
(b) Gross profit $122,790
(c) Current assets $193,100

Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule and a correct income statement.
(SO 5, 6), **AN**

P14-5A Phillips Company is a manufacturer of computers. Its controller resigned in October 2012. An inexperienced assistant accountant has prepared the following income statement for the month of October 2012.

PHILLIPS COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Month Ended October 31, 2012

Sales (net)		$780,000
Less: Operating expenses		
Raw materials purchases	$264,000	
Direct labor cost	190,000	
Advertising expense	90,000	
Selling and administrative salaries	75,000	
Rent on factory facilities	60,000	
Depreciation on sales equipment	45,000	
Depreciation on factory equipment	31,000	
Indirect labor cost	28,000	
Utilities expense	12,000	
Insurance expense	8,000	803,000
Net loss		$(23,000)

Prior to October 2012, the company had been profitable every month. The company's president is concerned about the accuracy of the income statement. As her friend, you have been asked to review the income statement and make necessary corrections. After examining other manufacturing cost data, you have acquired additional information as follows.

1. Inventory balances at the beginning and end of October were:

	October 1	October 31
Raw materials	$18,000	$29,000
Work in process	16,000	14,000
Finished goods	30,000	45,000

2. Only 75% of the utilities expense and 60% of the insurance expense apply to factory operations. The remaining amounts should be charged to selling and administrative activities.

Instructions

(a) CGM $577,800
(b) NI $ 1,000

(a) Prepare a schedule of cost of goods manufactured for October 2012.
(b) Prepare a correct income statement for October 2012.

Complete a worksheet; prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule, an income statement, and a balance sheet; journalize and post the closing entries.
(SO 9), **AP**

***P14-6A** Garrett Manufacturing Company uses a simple manufacturing accounting system. At the end of its fiscal year on August 31, 2012, the adjusted trial balance contains the following accounts.

Debits		Credits	
Cash	$ 16,700	Accumulated Depreciation	$ 353,000
Accounts Receivable (net)	62,900	Notes Payable	45,000
Finished Goods Inventory	56,000	Accounts Payable	36,200
Work in Process Inventory	27,800	Income Taxes Payable	9,000
Raw Materials Inventory	37,200	Common Stock	352,000
Plant Assets	870,000	Retained Earnings	215,300
Raw Materials Purchases	236,500	Sales	988,000
Direct Labor	283,900		$1,998,500
Indirect Labor	27,400		
Factory Repairs	17,200		
Factory Depreciation	16,000		
Factory Manager's Salary	60,000		
Factory Insurance	11,000		
Factory Property Taxes	14,900		
Factory Utilities	13,300		
Selling Expenses	96,500		
Administrative Expenses	115,200		
Income Tax Expense	36,000		
	$1,998,500		

Physical inventory accounts on August 31, 2012, show the following inventory amounts: Finished Goods $50,600, Work in Process $23,400, and Raw Materials $44,500.

Instructions

(a) Enter the adjusted trial balance data on a worksheet in financial statement order and complete the worksheet.
(b) Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule for the year. (b) CGM $677,300
(c) Prepare an income statement for the year and a balance sheet at August 31, 2012. (c) NI $ 57,600
(d) Journalize the closing entries.
(e) Post the closing entries to Manufacturing Summary and to Income Summary.

Problems: Set B

P14-1B Agler Company specializes in manufacturing motorcycle helmets. The company has enough orders to keep the factory production at 1,000 motorcycle helmets per month. Agler's monthly manufacturing cost and other expense data are as follows.

Classify manufacturing costs into different categories and compute the unit cost. (SO 3, 4), **AP**

Maintenance costs on factory building	$ 1,500
Factory manager's salary	5,500
Advertising for helmets	8,000
Sales commissions	4,000
Depreciation on factory building	700
Rent on factory equipment	6,000
Insurance on factory building	3,000
Raw materials (plastic, polystyrene, etc.)	25,000
Utility costs for factory	800
Supplies for general office	200
Wages for assembly line workers	54,000
Depreciation on office equipment	500
Miscellaneous materials (glue, thread, etc.)	2,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare an answer sheet with the following column headings. (a) DM $25,000 DL $54,000 MO $19,500 PC $12,700

	Product Costs			
Cost Item	**Direct Materials**	**Direct Labor**	**Manufacturing Overhead**	**Period Costs**

Enter each cost item on your answer sheet, placing the dollar amount under the appropriate headings. Total the dollar amounts in each of the columns.

(b) Compute the cost to produce one motorcycle helmet.

P14-2B Elliott Company, a manufacturer of tennis rackets, started production in November 2011. For the preceding 5 years, Elliott had been a retailer of sports equipment. After a thorough survey of tennis racket markets, Elliott decided to turn its retail store into a tennis racket factory.

Classify manufacturing costs into different categories and compute the unit cost. (SO 3, 4), **AP**

Raw materials cost for a tennis racket will total $23 per racket. Workers on the production lines are paid on average $15 per hour. A racket usually takes 2 hours to complete. In addition, the rent on the equipment used to produce rackets amounts to $1,300 per month. Indirect materials cost $3 per racket. A supervisor was hired to oversee production; her monthly salary is $3,500.

Janitorial costs are $1,400 monthly. Advertising costs for the rackets will be $8,000 per month. The factory building depreciation expense is $8,400 per year. Property taxes on the factory building will be $9,600 per year.

Instructions

(a) Prepare an answer sheet with the following column headings. (a) DM $57,500 DL $75,000 MO $15,200 PC $ 8,000

	Product Costs			
Cost Item	**Direct Materials**	**Direct Labor**	**Manufacturing Overhead**	**Period Costs**

Assuming that Elliott manufactures, on average, 2,500 tennis rackets per month, enter each cost item on your answer sheet, placing the dollar amount per month under the appropriate headings. Total the dollar amounts in each of the columns.

(b) Compute the cost to produce one racket.

Indicate the missing amount of different cost items, and prepare a condensed cost of goods manufactured schedule, an income statement, and a partial balance sheet.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AN**

P14-3B Incomplete manufacturing costs, expenses, and selling data for two different cases are as follows.

	Case	
	A	**B**
Direct materials used	$ 6,300	$ (g)
Direct labor	3,000	4,000
Manufacturing overhead	6,000	5,000
Total manufacturing costs	(a)	16,000
Beginning work in process inventory	1,000	(h)
Ending work in process inventory	(b)	2,000
Sales	22,500	(i)
Sales discounts	1,500	1,200
Cost of goods manufactured	15,800	20,000
Beginning finished goods inventory	(c)	5,000
Goods available for sale	18,300	(j)
Cost of goods sold	(d)	(k)
Ending finished goods inventory	1,200	2,500
Gross profit	(e)	6,000
Operating expenses	2,700	(l)
Net income	(f)	2,200

Instructions

(a) Indicate the missing amount for each letter.

(b) Prepare a condensed cost of goods manufactured schedule for Case A.

(c) Current assets $15,600

(c) Prepare an income statement and the current assets section of the balance sheet for Case A. Assume that in Case A the other items in the current assets section are as follows: Cash $3,000, Receivables (net) $10,000, Raw Materials $700, and Prepaid Expenses $200.

Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule, a partial income statement, and a partial balance sheet.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

P14-4B The following data were taken from the records of Moxie Manufacturing Company for the year ended December 31, 2012.

Raw Materials Inventory 1/1/12	$ 47,000	Factory Insurance	$ 7,400
Raw Materials Inventory 12/31/12	44,200	Factory Machinery Depreciation	7,700
Finished Goods Inventory 1/1/12	85,000	Factory Utilities	12,900
Finished Goods Inventory 12/31/12	57,800	Office Utilities Expense	8,600
Work in Process Inventory 1/1/12	9,500	Sales	465,000
Work in Process Inventory 12/31/12	8,000	Sales Discounts	2,500
Direct Labor	145,100	Plant Manager's Salary	60,000
Indirect Labor	18,100	Factory Property Taxes	6,100
Accounts Receivable	27,000	Factory Repairs	800
		Raw Materials Purchases	62,500
		Cash	18,000

Instructions

(a) CGM $324,900

(a) Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule. (Assume all raw materials used were direct materials.)

(b) Gross profit $110,400

(b) Prepare an income statement through gross profit.

(c) Current assets $155,000

(c) Prepare the current assets section of the balance sheet at December 31.

P14-5B Ortiz Company is a manufacturer of toys. Its controller resigned in August 2012. An inexperienced assistant accountant has prepared the following income statement for the month of August 2012.

Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule and a correct income statement.
(SO 5, 6), **AN**

ORTIZ COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Month Ended August 31, 2012

Sales (net)		$675,000
Less: Operating expenses		
Raw materials purchases	$220,000	
Direct labor cost	160,000	
Advertising expense	75,000	
Selling and administrative salaries	70,000	
Rent on factory facilities	60,000	
Depreciation on sales equipment	50,000	
Depreciation on factory equipment	35,000	
Indirect labor cost	20,000	
Utilities expense	10,000	
Insurance expense	5,000	705,000
Net loss		$ (30,000)

Prior to August 2012, the company had been profitable every month. The company's president is concerned about the accuracy of the income statement. As her friend, you have been asked to review the income statement and make necessary corrections. After examining other manufacturing cost data, you have acquired additional information as follows.

1. Inventory balances at the beginning and end of August were:

	August 1	August 31
Raw materials	$19,500	$35,000
Work in process	25,000	21,000
Finished goods	40,000	52,000

2. Only 60% of the utilities expense and 70% of the insurance expense apply to factory operations; the remaining amounts should be charged to selling and administrative activities.

Instructions
(a) Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule for August 2012. (a) CGM $493,000
(b) Prepare a correct income statement for August 2012. (b) NL $ (6,500)

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Waterways Continuing Problem

(*Note:* The Waterways Problem begins in Chapter 14 and continues in the remaining chapters. You can also find this problem at the book's Student Companion site.)

WCP14 Waterways Corporation is a private corporation formed for the purpose of providing the products and the services needed to irrigate farms, parks, commercial projects, and private lawns. It has a centrally located factory in a U.S. city that manufactures the products it markets to retail outlets across the nation. It also maintains a division that provides installation and warranty servicing in six metropolitan areas.

The mission of Waterways is to manufacture quality parts that can be used for effective irrigation projects that also conserve water. By that effort, the company hopes to satisfy its customers, provide rapid and responsible service, and serve the community and the employees who represent them in each community.

The company has been growing rapidly, so management is considering new ideas to help the company continue its growth and maintain the high quality of its products.

Waterways was founded by Will Winkman, who is the company president and chief executive officer (CEO). Working with him from the company's inception was Will's brother, Ben, whose sprinkler designs and ideas about the installation of proper systems have been a major basis of the company's success. Ben is the vice president who oversees all aspects of design and production in the company.

The factory itself is managed by Todd Senter who hires his line managers to supervise the factory employees. The factory makes all of the parts for the irrigation systems. The purchasing department is managed by Hector Hines.

The installation and training division is overseen by vice president Henry Writer, who supervises the managers of the six local installation operations. Each of these local managers hires his or her own local service people. These service employees are trained by the home office under Henry Writer's direction because of the uniqueness of the company's products.

There is a small human resources department under the direction of Sally Fenton, a vice president who handles the employee paperwork, though hiring is actually performed by the separate departments. Sam Totter is the vice president who heads the sales and marketing area; he oversees 10 well-trained salespeople.

The accounting and finance division of the company is headed by Abe Headman, who is the chief financial officer (CFO) and a company vice president; he is a member of the Institute of Management Accountants and holds a certificate in management accounting. He has a small staff of Certified Public Accountants, including a controller and a treasurer, and a staff of accounting input operators who maintain the financial records.

A partial list of Waterway's accounts and their balances for the month of November follows.

Accounts Receivable	$275,000
Advertising Expenses	54,000
Cash	260,000
Depreciation—Factory Equipment	16,800
Depreciation—Office Equipment	2,400
Direct Labor	42,000
Factory Supplies Used	16,800
Factory Utilities	10,200
Finished Goods Inventory, November 30	68,800
Finished Goods Inventory, October 31	72,550
Indirect Labor	48,000
Office Supplies Expense	1,600
Other Administrative Expenses	72,000
Prepaid Expenses	41,250
Raw Materials Inventory, November 30	52,700
Raw Materials Inventory, October 31	38,000
Raw Materials Purchases	184,500
Rent—Factory Equipment	47,000
Repairs—Factory Equipment	4,500
Salaries	325,000
Sales	1,350,000
Sales Commissions	40,500
Work in Process Inventory, October 31	52,700
Work in Process Inventory, November 30	42,000

Instructions

(a) Based on the information given, construct an organizational chart of Waterways Corporation.

(b) A list of accounts and their values are given above. From this information, prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule, an income statement, and a partial balance sheet for Waterways Corporation for the month of November.

broadening your perspective

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP14-1 Wendall Manufacturing Company specializes in producing fashion outfits. On July 31, 2012, a tornado touched down at its factory and general office. The inventories in the warehouse and the factory were completely destroyed as was the general office nearby. Next morning, through a careful search of the disaster site, however, Bill Francis, the company's controller, and Elizabeth Walton, the cost accountant, were able to recover a small part of manufacturing cost data for the current month.

"What a horrible experience," sighed Bill "And the worst part is that we may not have enough records to use in filing an insurance claim."

"It was terrible," replied Elizabeth. "However, I managed to recover some of the manufacturing cost data that I was working on yesterday afternoon. The data indicate that our direct labor cost in July totaled $250,000 and that we had purchased $365,000 of raw materials. Also, I recall that the amount of raw materials used for July was $350,000. But I'm not sure this information will help. The rest of our records are blown away."

"Well, not exactly," said Bill. "I was working on the year-to-date income statement when the tornado warning was announced. My recollection is that our sales in July were $1,240,000 and our gross profit ratio has been 40% of sales. Also, I can remember that our cost of goods available for sale was $770,000 for July."

"Maybe we can work something out from this information!" exclaimed Elizabeth. "My experience tells me that our manufacturing overhead is usually 60% of direct labor."

"Hey, look what I just found," cried Elizabeth. "It's a copy of this June's balance sheet, and it shows that our inventories as of June 30 are Finished goods $38,000, Work in process $25,000, and Raw materials $19,000."

"Super," yelled Bill. "Let's go work something out."

In order to file an insurance claim, Wendall Company must determine the amount of its inventories as of July 31, 2012, the date of the tornado touchdown.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, determine the amount of cost in the Raw Materials, Work in Process, and Finished Goods inventory accounts as of the date of the tornado touchdown.

MANAGERIAL ANALYSIS

BYP14-2 Tenrack is a fairly large manufacturing company located in the southern United States. The company manufactures tennis rackets, tennis balls, tennis clothing, and tennis shoes, all bearing the company's distinctive logo, a large green question mark on a white flocked tennis ball. The company's sales have been increasing over the past 10 years.

The tennis racket division has recently implemented several advanced manufacturing techniques. Robot arms hold the tennis rackets in place while glue dries, and machine vision systems check for defects. The engineering and design team uses computerized drafting and testing of new products. The following managers work in the tennis racket division.

Jason Dennis, sales manager (supervises all sales representatives).
Peggy Groneman, technical specialist (supervises computer programmers).
Dave Marley, cost accounting manager (supervises cost accountants).
Kevin Carson, production supervisor (supervises all manufacturing employees).
Sally Renner, engineer (supervises all new-product design teams).

Instructions

(a) What are the primary information needs of each manager?
(b) Which, if any, financial accounting report(s) is each likely to use?
(c) Name one special-purpose management accounting report that could be designed for each manager. Include the name of the report, the information it would contain, and how frequently it should be issued.

REAL-WORLD FOCUS

BYP14-3 Anchor Glass Container Corporation, the third largest manufacturer of glass containers in the United States, supplies beverage and food producers and consumer products manufacturers nationwide. Parent company Consumers Packaging Inc. (*Toronto Stock Exchange:* CGC) is a leading international designer and manufacturer of glass containers.

The following management discussion appeared in a recent annual report of Anchor Glass.

ANCHOR GLASS CONTAINER CORPORATION
Management Discussion

Cost of Products Sold Cost of products sold as a percentage of net sales was 89.3% in the current year compared to 87.6% in the prior year. The increase in cost of products sold as a percentage of net sales principally reflected the impact of operational problems during the second quarter of the current year at a major furnace at one of the Company's plants, higher downtime, and costs and expenses associated with an increased number of scheduled capital improvement projects, increases in labor, and certain other manufacturing costs (with no corresponding selling price increases in the current year). Reduced fixed costs from the closing of the Streator, Illinois, plant in June of the current year and productivity and efficiency gains partially offset these cost increases.

Instructions
What factors affect the costs of products sold at Anchor Glass Container Corporation?

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING ON THE WEB

BYP14-4 The Institute of Management Accountants (IMA) is an organization dedicated to excellence in the practice of management accounting and financial management.

Address: **www.imanet.org,** or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Instructions
At the IMA's home page, locate the answers to the following questions.
(a) How many members does the IMA have, and what are their job titles?
(b) What are some of the benefits of joining the IMA as a student?
(c) Use the chapter locator function to locate the IMA chapter nearest you, and find the name of the chapter president.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP14-5 Refer to Problem 14–5A and add the following requirement.

Prepare a letter to the president of the company, Shelly Phillips, describing the changes you made. Explain clearly why net income is different after the changes. Keep the following points in mind as you compose your letter.

1. This is a letter to the president of a company, who is your friend. The style should be generally formal, but you may relax some requirements. For example, you may call the president by her first name.
2. Executives are very busy. Your letter should tell the president your main results first (for example, the amount of net income).
3. You should include brief explanations so that the president can understand the changes you made in the calculations.

ETHICS CASE

BYP14-6 Steve Morgan, controller for Newton Industries, was reviewing production cost reports for the year. One amount in these reports continued to bother him—advertising. During the year, the company had instituted an expensive advertising campaign to sell some of its slower-moving products. It was still too early to tell whether the advertising campaign was successful.

There had been much internal debate as how to report advertising cost. The vice president of finance argued that advertising costs should be reported as a cost of production, just like direct materials and direct labor. He therefore recommended that this cost be identified as manufacturing overhead and reported as part of inventory costs until sold. Others disagreed. Morgan believed

that this cost should be reported as an expense of the current period, based on the conservatism principle. Others argued that it should be reported as Prepaid Advertising and reported as a current asset.

The president finally had to decide the issue. He argued that these costs should be reported as inventory. His arguments were practical ones. He noted that the company was experiencing financial difficulty and expensing this amount in the current period might jeopardize a planned bond offering. Also, by reporting the advertising costs as inventory rather than as prepaid advertising, less attention would be directed to it by the financial community.

Instructions

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?
(b) What are the ethical issues involved in this situation?
(c) What would you do if you were Steve Morgan?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP14-7 The primary purpose of managerial accounting is to provide information useful for management decisions. Many of the managerial accounting techniques that you learn in this course will be useful for decisions you make in your everyday life.

Instructions

For each of the following managerial accounting techniques, read the definition provided and then provide an example of a personal situation that would benefit from use of this technique.

(a) Break-even point (page 951).
(b) Budget (page 1032).
(c) Balanced scorecard (page 1153).
(d) Capital budgeting (page 1198).

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 750 Even the Best Have to Get Better **Q:** What are some of the steps that this company has taken in order to ensure that production meets demand? **A:** The company has organized flexible teams, with jobs arranged by the amount of time a task takes. Employees now are multiskilled, so they can switch between tasks and products. Also, the stores now provide sales data more quickly to the manufacturing facility, so that production levels can be changed more quickly to respond to demand.

p. 755 How Many Labor Hours to Build a Car? **Q:** Why might Nissan production require significantly fewer labor hours? **A:** Nissan's U.S. factories are probably newer than those of DaimlerChrysler and Ford. Newer factories tend to be more highly automated, with less reliance on production-line employees.

p. 764 Low Fares but Decent Profits **Q:** What are some of the cost items that would appear in the cost of services provided schedule of an airline? **A:** Some of the cost items that would appear in the cost of services provided schedule of an airline would be fuel, flight crew salaries, maintenance wages, depreciation on equipment, airport gate fees, and food-service costs.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. b **2.** b **3.** b **4.** b **5.** d **6.** a **7.** c **8.** c **9.** c ($200,000 + $600,000 − $250,000) **10.** c **11.** a **12.** d **13.** d **14.** d **15.** d

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 15

JOB ORDER COSTING

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** **Do it!**
  p. 802 ◯ p. 809 ◯ p. 813 ◯ p. 816 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** **Do it!** p. 819 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Explain the characteristics and purposes of cost accounting.
2. Describe the flow of costs in a job order costing system.
3. Explain the nature and importance of a job cost sheet.
4. Indicate how the predetermined overhead rate is determined and used.
5. Prepare entries for jobs completed and sold.
6. Distinguish between under- and overapplied manufacturing overhead.

the navigator

feature story

"... AND WE'D LIKE IT IN RED"

Western States Fire Apparatus, Inc., of Cornelius, Oregon, is one of the few U.S. companies that makes fire trucks. The company builds about 25 trucks per year. Founded in 1941, the company is run by the children and grandchildren of the original founder.

"We buy the chassis, which is the cab and the frame," says Susan Scott, the company's bookkeeper. "In our computer, we set up an account into which all of the direct material that is purchased for that particular job is charged." Other direct materials include the water pump—which can cost $10,000—the lights, the siren, ladders, and hoses.

As for direct labor, the production workers fill out time tickets that tell what jobs they worked on. Usually, the company is building four trucks at any one time. On payday, the controller allocates the payroll to the appropriate job record. The company allocates indirect materials, such as nuts and bolts, wiring, lubricants, and abrasives, to each job in proportion to direct material dollars. It allocates other costs, such as insurance and supervisors' salaries, based on direct labor hours. "We need to allocate overhead in order to know what kind of price we have to charge when we submit our bids," she says.

Western gets orders through a "blind-bidding" process. That is, Western submits its bid without knowing the bid prices made by its competitors. "If we bid too low, we won't make a profit. If we bid too high, we don't get the job."

Regardless of the final price for the truck, the quality had better be first-rate. "The fire departments let you know if they don't like what you did, and you usually end up fixing it."

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 15 . . .

- **Jobs Won, Money Lost** *(p. 800)*
- **Sales Are Nice, but Service Revenue Pays the Bills** *(p. 811)*

preview of chapter 15

The Feature Story about Western States Fire Apparatus describes the manufacturing costs used in making a fire truck. It demonstrates that accurate costing is critical to the company's success. For example, in order to submit accurate bids on new jobs and to know whether it profited from past jobs, the company needs a good costing system. This chapter illustrates how these manufacturing costs are assigned to specific jobs, such as the manufacture of individual fire trucks. We begin the discussion in this chapter with an overview of the flow of costs in a job order cost accounting system. We then use a case study to explain and illustrate the documents, entries, and accounts in this type of cost accounting system.

The content and organization of Chapter 15 are as follows.

Job Order Costing

Cost Accounting Systems	Job Order Cost Flow	Reporting Job Cost Data
• Job order cost system • Process cost system	• Accumulating manufacturing costs • Assigning manufacturing costs to work in process • Assigning costs to finished goods • Assigning costs to cost of goods sold • Job order costing for service companies • Summary of job order cost flows • Advantages and disadvantages of job order costing	• Cost of goods manufactured schedule • Income statement presentation • Under- or overapplied manufacturing overhead

the navigator

Cost Accounting Systems

study objective 1

Explain the characteristics and purposes of cost accounting.

Cost accounting involves the measuring, recording, and reporting of product costs. From the data accumulated, companies determine both the total cost and the unit cost of each product. The accuracy of the product cost information produced by the cost accounting system is critical to the success of the company. Companies use this information to determine which products to produce, what price to charge, and the amounts to produce. Accurate product cost information is also vital for effective evaluation of employee performance.

A **cost accounting system** consists of accounts for the various manufacturing costs. These accounts are fully integrated into the general ledger of a company. An important feature of a cost accounting system is the use of **a perpetual inventory system**. Such a system **provides immediate, up-to-date information on the cost of a product**.

There are two basic types of cost accounting systems: (1) a job order cost system and (2) a process cost system. Although cost accounting systems differ widely from company to company, most involve one of these two traditional product costing systems.

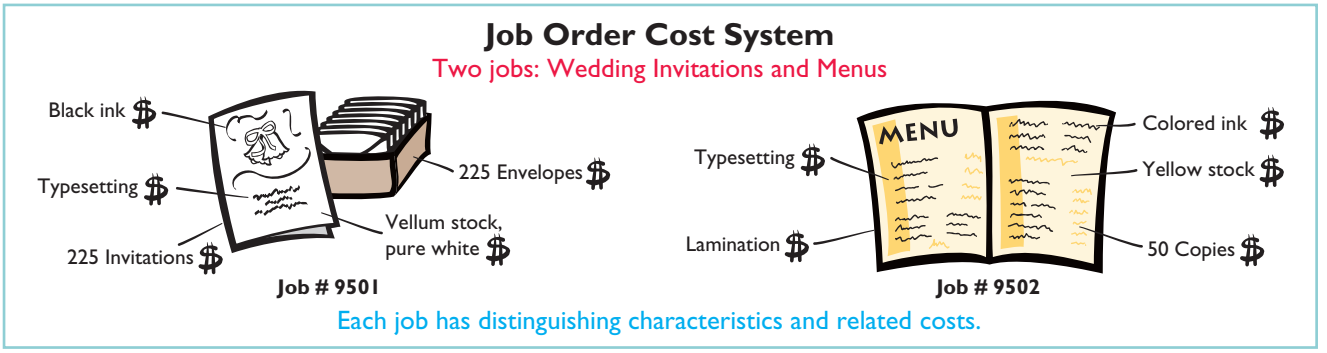
JOB ORDER COST SYSTEM

Under a **job order cost system**, the company assigns costs to each **job** or to each **batch** of goods. An example of a job is the manufacture of a mainframe computer by IBM, the production of a movie by Disney, or the making of a fire truck by Western States. An example of a batch is the printing of 225 wedding invitations by a local print shop, or the printing of a weekly issue of *Fortune*

magazine by a high-tech printer such as Quad Graphics. Companies may complete jobs or batches to fill a specific customer order or to replenish inventory.

An important feature of job order costing is that each job or batch has its own distinguishing characteristics. For example, each house is custom built, each consulting engagement by a CPA firm is unique, and each printing job is different. **The objective is to compute the cost per job.** At each point in manufacturing a product or providing a service, the company can identify the job and its associated costs. A job order cost system measures costs for each completed job, rather than for set time periods. Illustration 15-1 shows the recording of costs in a job order cost system.

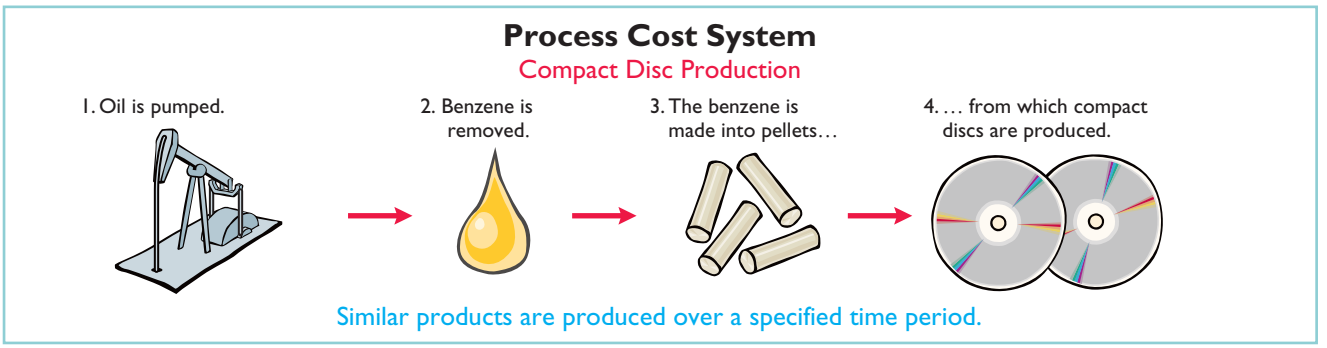
Illustration 15-1 Job order cost system



PROCESS COST SYSTEM

A company uses a **process cost system** when it manufactures a large volume of similar products. Production is continuous. Examples of a process cost system are the manufacture of cereal by Kellogg, the refining of petroleum by ExxonMobil, and the production of automobiles by General Motors. Process costing accumulates product-related costs **for a period of time** (such as a week or a month) instead of assigning costs to specific products or job orders. In process costing, companies assign the costs to departments or processes for the specified period of time. Illustration 15-2 shows examples of the use of a process cost system. We will discuss the process cost system further in Chapter 16.

Illustration 15-2 Process cost system



Can a company use both types of cost systems? Yes. For example, General Motors uses process cost accounting for its standard model cars, such as Saturns and Corvettes, and job order cost accounting for a custom-made limousine for the President of the United States.

The objective of both cost accounting systems is to provide unit cost information for product pricing, cost control, inventory valuation, and financial statement presentation.

Management Insight

Jobs Won, Money Lost

Many companies suffer from poor cost accounting. As a result, they sometimes make products they should not be selling at all, or they buy other products that they could more profitably make themselves. Also, inaccurate cost data leads companies to misallocate capital and frustrates efforts by plant managers to improve efficiency.

For example, consider the case of a diversified company in the business of rebuilding diesel locomotives. The managers thought they were making money, but a consulting firm found that the company had seriously underestimated costs. The company bailed out of the business, and not a moment too soon. Says the consultant who advised the company, "The more contracts it won, the more money it lost." Given that situation, a company cannot stay in business very long!

? What type of costs do you think the company had been underestimating? (See page 837.)

Job Order Cost Flow

study objective 2

Describe the flow of costs in a job order costing system.

The flow of costs (direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead) in job order cost accounting parallels the physical flow of the materials as they are converted into finished goods. As shown in Illustration 15-3, companies assign manufacturing costs to the Work in Process Inventory account. When a job is completed, the company transfers the cost of the job to Finished Goods Inventory. Later when the goods are sold, the company transfers their cost to Cost of Goods Sold.

Illustration 15-3 Flow of costs in job order costing

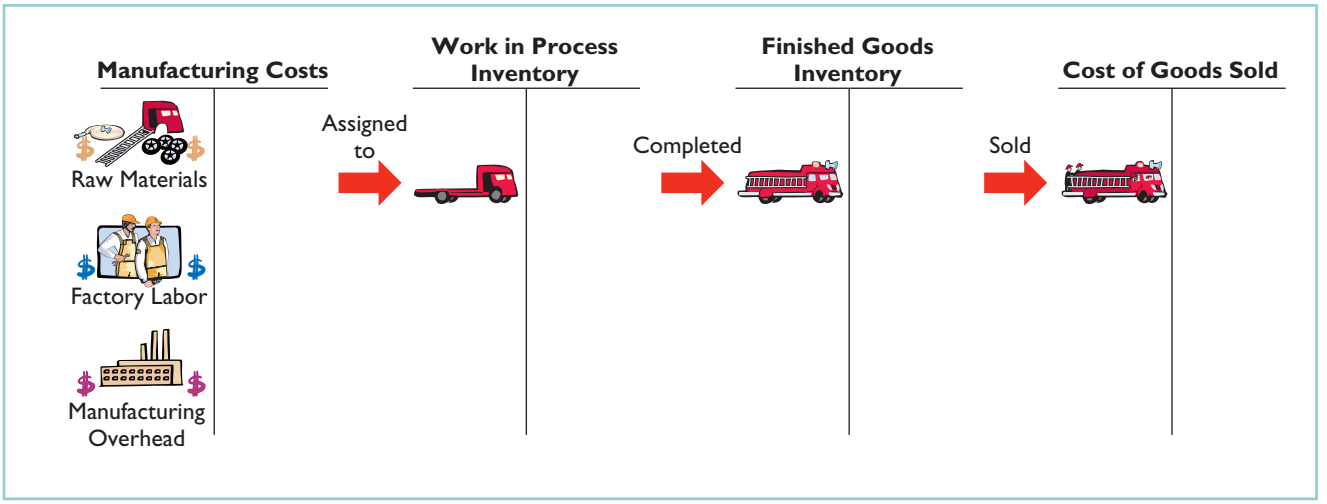


Illustration 15-3 provides a basic overview of the flow of costs in a manufacturing setting. A more detailed presentation of the flow of costs is shown in Illustration 15-4. The box in its lower-right corner indicates two major steps in the flow of costs: (1) *accumulating* the manufacturing costs incurred, and (2) *assigning* the accumulated costs to the work done. As shown, the company accumulates manufacturing costs incurred in entries 1–3 by debits to Raw Materials Inventory, Factory Labor, and Manufacturing Overhead. When the company incurs these costs, it does not attempt to associate the costs with specific jobs. The remaining entries (entries 4–8) assign manufacturing costs incurred. In the remainder of this chapter, we will use a case study to explain how a job order cost system operates.

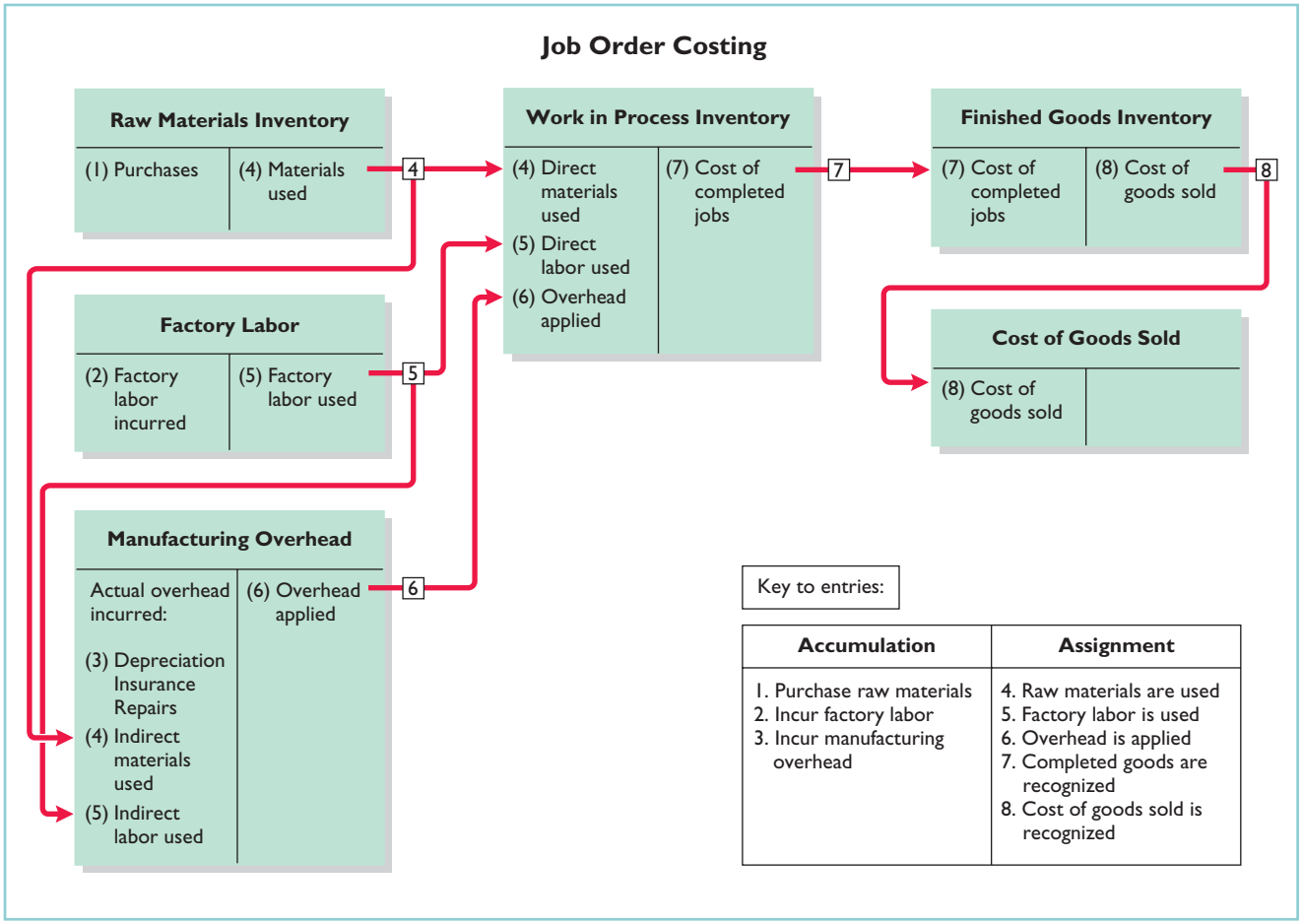


Illustration 15-4 Job order costing system

ACCUMULATING MANUFACTURING COSTS

To illustrate a job order cost system, we will use the January transactions of Wallace Manufacturing Company, which makes machine tools.

Raw Materials Costs

When Wallace receives the raw materials it has purchased, **it debits the cost of the materials to Raw Materials Inventory**. The company would debit this account for the invoice cost of the raw materials and freight costs chargeable to the purchaser. It would credit the account for purchase discounts taken and purchase returns and allowances. Wallace makes **no effort at this point to associate the cost of materials with specific jobs or orders**.

To illustrate, assume that Wallace Manufacturing purchases 2,000 handles (Stock No. AA2746) at $5 per unit ($10,000) and 800 modules (Stock No. AA2850) at $40 per unit ($32,000) for a total cost of $42,000 ($10,000 + $32,000). The entry to record this purchase on January 4 is:

	(1)		
Jan. 4	Raw Materials Inventory	42,000	
	Accounts Payable		42,000
	(Purchase of raw materials on account)		

As we will explain later in the chapter, the company subsequently assigns raw materials inventory to work in process and manufacturing overhead.

Factory Labor Costs

In a manufacturing company, the cost of factory labor consists of three costs: (1) gross earnings of factory workers, (2) employer payroll taxes on these earnings, and (3) fringe benefits (such as sick pay, pensions, and vacation pay) incurred by the employer. **Companies debit labor costs to Factory Labor as they incur those costs.**

To illustrate, assume that Wallace Manufacturing incurs $32,000 of factory labor costs. Of that amount, $27,000 relates to wages payable and $5,000 relates to payroll taxes payable in February. The entry to record factory labor for the month is:

	(2)		
Jan. 31	Factory Labor	32,000	
	Factory Wages Payable		27,000
	Employer Payroll Taxes Payable		5,000
	(To record factory labor costs)		

The company subsequently assigns factory labor to work in process and manufacturing overhead.

Manufacturing Overhead Costs

A company has many types of overhead costs. It may recognize these costs **daily**, as in the case of machinery repairs and the use of indirect materials and indirect labor. Or, it may record overhead costs **periodically** through adjusting entries. Companies record property taxes, depreciation, and insurance periodically, for example. This is done using a **summary entry**, which summarizes the totals from multiple transactions.

Using assumed data, the summary entry for manufacturing overhead in Wallace Manufacturing Company is:

	(3)		
Jan. 31	Manufacturing Overhead	13,800	
	Utilities Payable		4,800
	Prepaid Insurance		2,000
	Accounts Payable (for repairs)		2,600
	Accumulated Depreciation		3,000
	Property Taxes Payable		1,400
	(To record overhead costs)		

The company subsequently assigns manufacturing overhead to work in process.

before you go on...

MANUFACTURING COSTS

Do it! During the current month, Ringling Company incurs the following manufacturing costs:

(a) Raw material purchases of $4,200 on account.
(b) Incurs factory labor of $18,000. Of that amount, $15,000 relates to wages payable and $3,000 relates to payroll taxes payable.
(c) Factory utilities of $2,200 are payable, prepaid factory insurance of $1,800 has expired, and depreciation on the factory building is $3,500.

Prepare journal entries for each type of manufacturing cost.

Solution

(a) Raw Materials Inventory	4,200	
Accounts Payable		4,200
(Purchases of raw materials on account)		
(b) Factory Labor	18,000	
Factory Wages Payable		15,000
Employer Payroll Taxes Payable		3,000
(To record factory labor costs)		
(c) Manufacturing Overhead	7,500	
Utilities Payable		2,200
Prepaid Insurance		1,800
Accumulated Depreciation		3,500
(To record overhead costs)		

Related exercise material: **BE15-1, BE15-2, Do it! 15-1, E15-1, E15-7, E15-8,** and **E15-11.**

Action Plan

- In accumulating manufacturing costs, debit at least one of three accounts: Raw Materials Inventory, Factory Labor, and Manufacturing Overhead.
- Manufacturing overhead costs may be recognized daily. Or manufacturing overhead may be recorded periodically through a summary entry.

the navigator

ASSIGNING MANUFACTURING COSTS TO WORK IN PROCESS

study objective 3

Explain the nature and importance of a job cost sheet.

As Illustration 15-4 (page 801) shows, assigning manufacturing costs to work in process results in the following entries:

1. **Debits** made to Work in Process Inventory.
2. **Credits** made to Raw Materials Inventory, Factory Labor, and Manufacturing Overhead.

An essential accounting record in assigning costs to jobs is a **job cost sheet**, as shown in Illustration 15-5. A **job cost sheet** is a form used to record the costs chargeable to a specific job and to determine the total and unit costs of the completed job.

Illustration 15-5 Job cost sheet

Job Cost Sheet

Job No. _____ Quantity _____
Item _____ Date Requested _____
For _____ Date Completed _____

Date	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead

Cost of completed job
Direct materials $ _____
Direct labor _____
Manufacturing overhead _____
Total cost $ _____
Unit cost (total dollars ÷ quantity) $ _____

Helpful Hint In today's electronic environment, companies typically maintain job cost sheets as computer files.

Companies keep a separate job cost sheet for each job. The job cost sheets constitute the subsidiary ledger for the Work in Process Inventory account. A **subsidiary ledger** consists of individual records for each individual item—in this

case, each job. The Work in Process account is referred to as a **control account** because it summarizes the detailed data regarding specific jobs contained in the job cost sheets. **Each entry to Work in Process Inventory must be accompanied by a corresponding posting to one or more job cost sheets.**

Raw Materials Costs

Helpful Hint Approvals are an important part of a materials requisition slip because they help to establish individual accountability over inventory.

Companies assign raw materials costs when their materials storeroom issues the materials. Requests for issuing raw materials are made on a prenumbered **materials requisition slip**. The materials issued may be used directly on a job, or they may be considered indirect materials. As Illustration 15-6 shows, the requisition should indicate the quantity and type of materials withdrawn and the account to be charged. The company will charge direct materials to Work in Process Inventory, and indirect materials to Manufacturing Overhead.

Illustration 15-6
Materials requisition slip

Wallace Manufacturing Company
Materials Requisition Slip

Deliver to: Assembly Department Req. No. R247
Charge to: Work in Process–Job No. 101 Date: 1/6/12

Quantity	Description	Stock No.	Cost per Unit	Total
200	Handles	AA2746	$5.00	$1,000

Requested by Bruce Howard Received by Herb Crowley
Approved by Kap Shin Costed by Heather Remmers

Ethics Note The internal control principle of documentation includes prenumbering to enhance accountability.

The company may use any of the inventory costing methods (FIFO, LIFO, or average-cost) in costing the requisitions **to the individual job cost sheets**.

Periodically, the company journalizes the requisitions. For example, if Wallace Manufacturing uses $24,000 of direct materials and $6,000 of indirect materials in January, the entry is:

(4)

Jan. 31	Work in Process Inventory	24,000	
	Manufacturing Overhead	6,000	
	Raw Materials Inventory		30,000
	(To assign materials to jobs and overhead)		

Illustration 15-7 shows the posting of requisition slip R247 to Job No. 101 and other assumed postings to the job cost sheets for materials. The requisition slips provide the basis for total direct materials costs of $12,000 for Job No. 101, $7,000 for Job No. 102, and $5,000 for Job No. 103. After the company has completed all postings, the sum of the direct materials columns of the job cost sheets (the subsidiary accounts) should equal the direct materials debited to Work in Process Inventory (the control account).

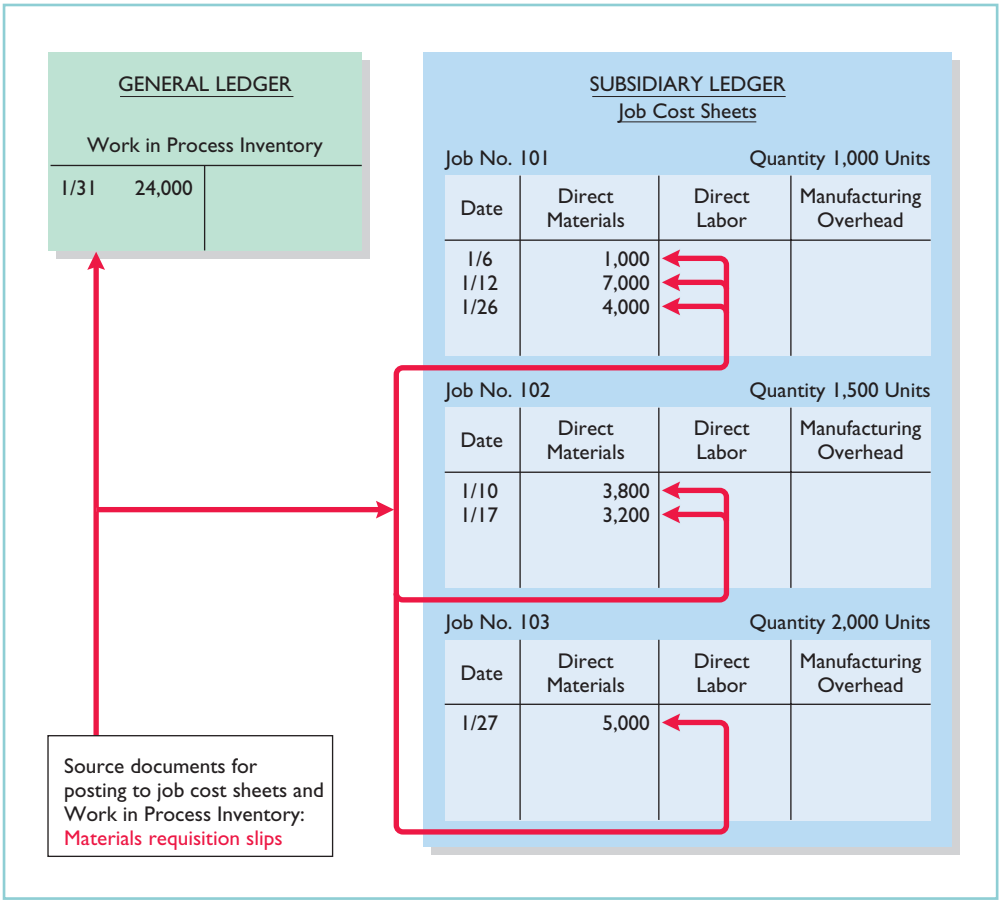


Illustration 15-7 Job cost sheets—direct materials

Helpful Hint Companies post to control accounts monthly, and post to job cost sheets daily.

Factory Labor Costs

Companies assign factory labor costs to jobs on the basis of time tickets prepared when the work is performed. The **time ticket** indicates the employee, the hours worked, the account and job to be charged, and the total labor cost. Many companies accumulate these data through the use of bar coding and scanning devices. When they start and end work, employees scan bar codes on their identification badges and bar codes associated with each job they work on. When direct labor is involved, the time ticket must indicate the job number, as shown in Illustration 15-8 (page 806). The employee's supervisor should approve all time tickets.

The time tickets are later sent to the payroll department, which applies the employee's hourly wage rate and computes the total labor cost. Finally, the company journalizes the time tickets. It debits the account Work in Process Inventory for direct labor and debits Manufacturing Overhead for indirect labor. For example, if the $32,000 total factory labor cost consists of $28,000 of direct labor and $4,000 of indirect labor, the entry is:

	(5)		
Jan. 31	Work in Process Inventory	28,000	
	Manufacturing Overhead	4,000	
	Factory Labor		32,000
	(To assign labor to jobs and overhead)		

As a result of this entry, Factory Labor has a zero balance, and gross earnings are assigned to the appropriate manufacturing accounts.

Illustration 15-8
Time ticket

Wallace Manufacturing Company
Time Ticket

Date: 1/6/12
Employee: John Nash — Employee No. 124
Charge to: Work in Process — Job No. 101

Time			Hourly Rate	Total Cost
Start	Stop	Total Hours		
0800	1200	4	10.00	40.00

Approved by Bob Kadler — Costed by M. Chen

Let's assume that the labor costs chargeable to Wallace's three jobs are $15,000, $9,000, and $4,000. Illustration 15-9 shows the Work in Process Inventory and job cost sheets after posting. As in the case of direct materials, the postings to the direct labor columns of the job cost sheets should equal the posting of direct labor to Work in Process Inventory.

Illustration 15-9 Job cost sheets–direct labor

GENERAL LEDGER

Work in Process Inventory

1/31	24,000	
1/31	28,000	

SUBSIDIARY LEDGER
Job Cost Sheets

Job No. 101 — Quantity 1,000 Units

Date	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead
1/6	1,000		
1/10		9,000	
1/12	7,000		
1/26	4,000		
1/31		6,000	

Job No. 102 — Quantity 1,500 Units

Date	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead
1/10	3,800		
1/15		4,000	
1/17	3,200		
1/22		5,000	

Job No. 103 — Quantity 2,000 Units

Date	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead
1/27	5,000		
1/29		4,000	

Source documents for posting to job cost sheets and Work in Process Inventory: Time tickets

Helpful Hint Prove the $28,000 direct labor charge to Work in Process Inventory by totaling the charges by jobs:

101	$15,000
102	9,000
103	4,000
	$28,000

Manufacturing Overhead Costs

study objective 4

Indicate how the predetermined overhead rate is determined and used.

Companies charge the actual costs of direct materials and direct labor to specific jobs. In contrast, manufacturing **overhead** relates to production operations **as a whole**. As a result, overhead costs cannot be assigned to specific jobs on the basis of actual costs incurred. Instead, companies assign manufacturing overhead to work in process and to specific jobs **on an estimated basis through the use of a predetermined overhead rate**.

The **predetermined overhead rate** is based on the relationship between estimated annual overhead costs and expected annual operating activity, expressed in terms of a common **activity base**. The company may state the activity in terms of direct labor costs, direct labor hours, machine hours, or any other measure that will provide an equitable basis for applying overhead costs to jobs. Companies establish the predetermined overhead rate at the beginning of the year. Small companies often use a single, company-wide predetermined overhead rate. Large companies often use rates that vary from department to department. The formula for a predetermined overhead rate is as follows.

Estimated Annual Overhead Costs ÷ **Expected Annual Operating Activity** = **Predetermined Overhead Rate**

Illustration 15-10 Formula for predetermined overhead rate

Overhead relates to production operations as a whole. To know what "the whole" is, the logical thing is to wait until the end of the year's operations. At that time the company knows all of its costs for the period. As a practical matter, though, managers cannot wait until the end of the year. To price products accurately, they need information about product costs of specific jobs completed during the year. Using a predetermined overhead rate enables a cost to be determined for the job immediately. Illustration 15-11 indicates how manufacturing overhead is assigned to work in process.

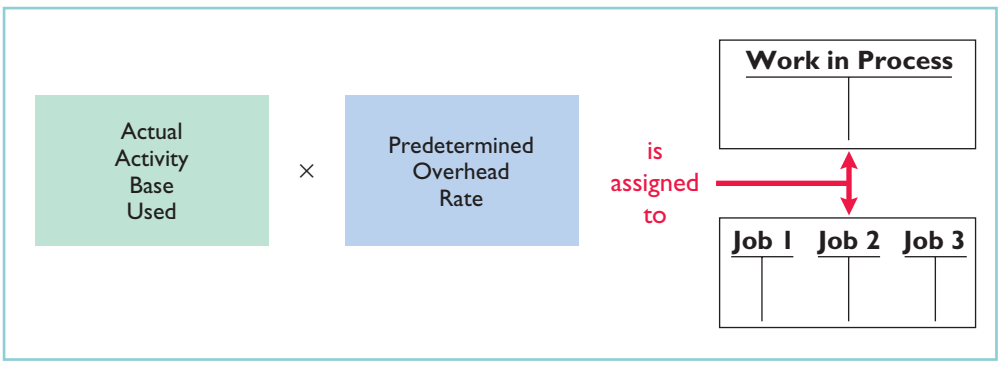


Illustration 15-11 Using predetermined overhead rates

Wallace Manufacturing uses direct labor cost as the activity base. Assuming that the company expects annual overhead costs to be $280,000 and direct labor costs for the year to be $350,000, the overhead rate is 80%, computed as follows.

$$\$280{,}000 \div \$350{,}000 = 80\%$$

This means that for every dollar of direct labor, Wallace will assign 80 cents of manufacturing overhead to a job. The use of a predetermined overhead rate enables the company to determine the approximate total cost of each job **when it completes the job**.

Historically, companies used direct labor costs or direct labor hours as the activity base. The reason was the relatively high correlation between direct labor

and manufacturing overhead. Today, more companies are using **machine hours as the activity base, due to increased reliance on automation in manufacturing operations**. Or, as mentioned in Chapter 14 (and discussed more fully in Chapter 17), many companies now use activity-based costing to more accurately allocate overhead costs based on the activities that give rise to the costs.

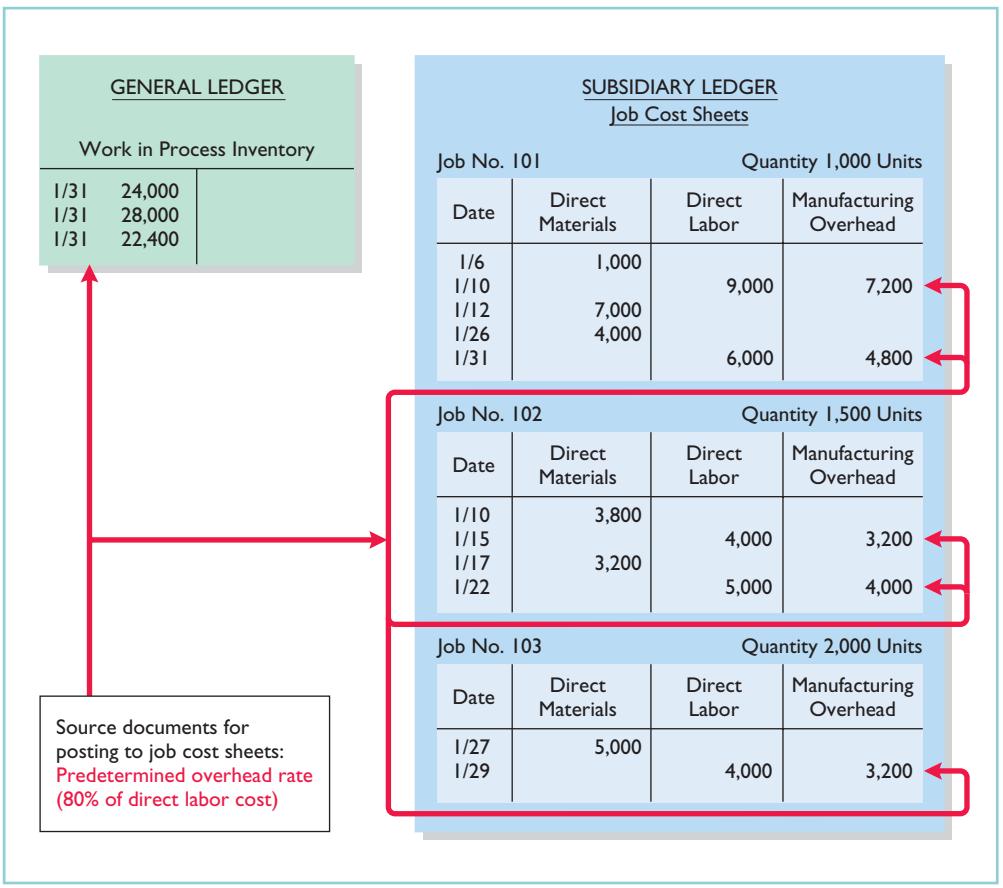
A company may use more than one activity base. For example, if a job is manufactured in more than one factory department, each department may have its own overhead rate. In the Feature Story about fire trucks, Western States Fire Apparatus uses two bases in assigning overhead to jobs: direct materials dollars for indirect materials, and direct labor hours for such costs as insurance and supervisors' salaries.

Wallace Manufacturing applies manufacturing overhead to work in process when it assigns direct labor costs. It also applies manufacturing overhead to specific jobs at the same time. For January, Wallace applied overhead of $22,400 (direct labor cost of $28,000 × 80%). The following entry records this application.

	(6)		
Jan. 31	Work in Process Inventory	22,400	
	Manufacturing Overhead		22,400
	(To assign overhead to jobs)		

The overhead that Wallace applies to each job will be 80% of the direct labor cost of the job for the month. Illustration 15-12 shows the Work in Process Inventory account and the job cost sheets after posting. Note that the debit of $22,400 to Work in Process Inventory equals the sum of the overhead applied to jobs: Job 101 $12,000 + Job 102 $7,200 + Job 103 $3,200.

Illustration 15-12
Job cost sheets—manufacturing overhead applied



At the end of each month, **the balance in Work in Process Inventory should equal the sum of the costs shown on the job cost sheets of unfinished jobs**. Illustration 15-13 presents proof of the agreement of the control and subsidiary accounts in Wallace Manufacturing. (It assumes that all jobs are still in process.)

Work in Process Inventory		Job Cost Sheets	
Jan. 31	24,000	No. 101	$ 39,000
31	28,000	102	23,200
31	22,400	103	12,200
	74,400		$74,400

Illustration 15-13 Proof of job cost sheets to work in process inventory

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
What is the cost of a job?	Cost of material, labor, and overhead assigned to a specific job	Job cost sheet	Compare costs to those of previous periods and to those of competitors to ensure that costs are in line. Compare costs to expected selling price or service fees charged to determine overall profitability.

before you go on...

Do it! Danielle Company is working on two job orders. The job cost sheets show the following:

Direct materials—Job 120 $6,000; Job 121 $3,600
Direct labor—Job 120 $4,000; Job 121 $2,000
Manufacturing overhead—Job 120 $5,000; Job 121 $2,500

Prepare the three summary entries to record the assignment of costs to Work in Process from the data on the job cost sheets.

Work in Process

Solution

The three summary entries are:

Work in Process Inventory ($6,000 + $3,600)	9,600	
Raw Materials Inventory		9,600
(To assign materials to jobs)		
Work in Process Inventory ($4,000 + $2,000)	6,000	
Factory Labor		6,000
(To assign labor to jobs)		
Work in Process Inventory ($5,000 + $2,500)	7,500	
Manufacturing Overhead		7,500
(To assign overhead to jobs)		

Action Plan

- Recognize that Work in Process Inventory is the control account for all unfinished job cost sheets.
- Debit Work in Process Inventory for the materials, labor, and overhead charged to the job cost sheets.
- Credit the accounts that were debited when the manufacturing costs were accumulated.

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE15-3, BE15-4, BE15-7, Do it! 15-2, E15-2, E15-7,** and **E15-8.**

ASSIGNING COSTS TO FINISHED GOODS

study objective 5
Prepare entries for jobs completed and sold.

When a job is completed, Wallace summarizes the costs and completes the lower portion of the applicable job cost sheet. For example, if we assume that Wallace completes Job No. 101 on January 31, the job cost sheet appears as shown in Illustration 15-14 (page 810).

Illustration 15-14
Completed job cost sheet

Job Cost Sheet

Job No.	101	Quantity	1,000
Item	Magnetic Sensors	Date Requested	February 5
For	Tanner Company	Date Completed	January 31

Date	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead
1/6	$ 1,000		
1/10		$ 9,000	$ 7,200
1/12	7,000		
1/26	4,000		
1/31		6,000	4,800
	$12,000	$15,000	$12,000

Cost of completed job	
Direct materials	$ 12,000
Direct labor	15,000
Manufacturing overhead	12,000
Total cost	$ 39,000
Unit cost ($39,000 ÷ 1,000)	$ 39.00

When a job is finished, Wallace makes an entry to transfer its total cost to finished goods inventory. The entry is as follows.

	(7)		
Jan. 31	Finished Goods Inventory	39,000	
	Work in Process Inventory		39,000
	(To record completion of Job No. 101)		

Finished Goods Inventory is a control account. It controls individual finished goods records in a finished goods subsidiary ledger. The company posts directly from completed job cost sheets to the receipts columns. Illustration 15-15 shows the finished goods inventory record for Job No. 101.

ASSIGNING COSTS TO COST OF GOODS SOLD

Companies recognize cost of goods sold when each sale occurs. To illustrate the entries a company makes when it sells a completed job, assume that on January 31 Wallace Manufacturing sells on account Job 101. The job cost $39,000, and it sold for $50,000. The entries to record the sale and recognize cost of goods sold are:

	(8)		
Jan. 31	Accounts Receivable	50,000	
	Sales		50,000
	(To record sale of Job No. 101)		
31	Cost of Goods Sold	39,000	
	Finished Goods Inventory		39,000
	(To record cost of Job No. 101)		

As Illustration 15-15 shows, Wallace records, in the issues section of the finished goods record, the units sold, the cost per unit, and the total cost of goods sold for each job sold.

JOB ORDER COSTING FOR SERVICE COMPANIES

Our extended job order costing example focuses on a manufacturer so that you see the flow of costs through the inventory accounts. It is important to understand,

Finished Goods.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	Item: Magnetic Sensors									Job No: 101
2										
3		Receipts			Issues			Balance		
4	Date	Units	Cost	Total	Units	Cost	Total	Units	Cost	Total
5	1/31	1,000	$39	$39,000				1,000	$39	$39,000
6	1/31				1,000	$39	$39,000			– 0 –
7										

Illustration 15-15
Finished goods record

however, that job order costing is also commonly used by service companies. While service companies do not have inventory, the techniques of job order costing are still quite useful in many service-industry environments. Consider, for example, the Mayo Clinic (health care), PriceWaterhouseCoopers (accounting firm), and Goldman Sachs (financial services firm). These companies need to keep track of the cost of jobs performed for specific customers to evaluate the profitability of medical treatments, audits, or consulting engagements.

Many service organizations bill their customers using cost-plus contracts. Cost-plus contracts mean that the customer's bill is the sum of the costs incurred on the job, plus a profit amount that is calculated as a percentage of the costs incurred. In order to minimize conflict with customers and reduce potential contract disputes, service companies that use cost-plus contracts must maintain accurate and up-to-date costing records. Up-to-date cost records enable a service company to immediately notify a customer of cost overruns due to customer requests for changes to the original plan or unexpected complications. Timely recordkeeping allows the contractor and customer to consider alternatives before it is too late.

A service company that uses a job order costing system does not have inventory accounts. It does, however, use an account (often called Service Contracts in Process) to record job costs prior to completion. Job cost sheets for a service company keep track of the materials, labor, and overhead used on a particular job similar to a manufacturer. A number of the exercises at the end of this chapter apply job order costing to service companies.

Service Company Insight

Sales Are Nice, but Service Revenue Pays the Bills

Jet engines are one of the many products made by the industrial operations division of General Electric (GE). At prices as high as $30 million per engine, you can bet that GE does its best to keep track of costs. It might surprise you that GE doesn't make much profit on the sale of each engine. So why does it bother making them? Service revenue—during one recent year, about 75% of the division's revenues came from servicing its own products. One estimate is that the $13 billion in aircraft engines sold during a recent three-year period will generate about $90 billion in service revenue over the 30-year life of the engines. Because of the high product costs, both the engines themselves and the subsequent service are most likely accounted for using job order costing. Accurate service cost records are important because GE needs to generate high profit margins on its service jobs to make up for the low margins on the original sale. It also needs good cost records for its service jobs in order to control its costs. Otherwise, a competitor, such as Pratt and Whitney, might submit lower bids for service contracts and take lucrative service jobs away from GE.

Source: Paul Glader, "GE's Focus on Services Faces Test," *Wall Street Journal Online* (March 3, 2009).

? Explain why GE would use job order costing to keep track of the cost of repairing a malfunctioning engine for a major airline. (See page 837.)

SUMMARY OF JOB ORDER COST FLOWS

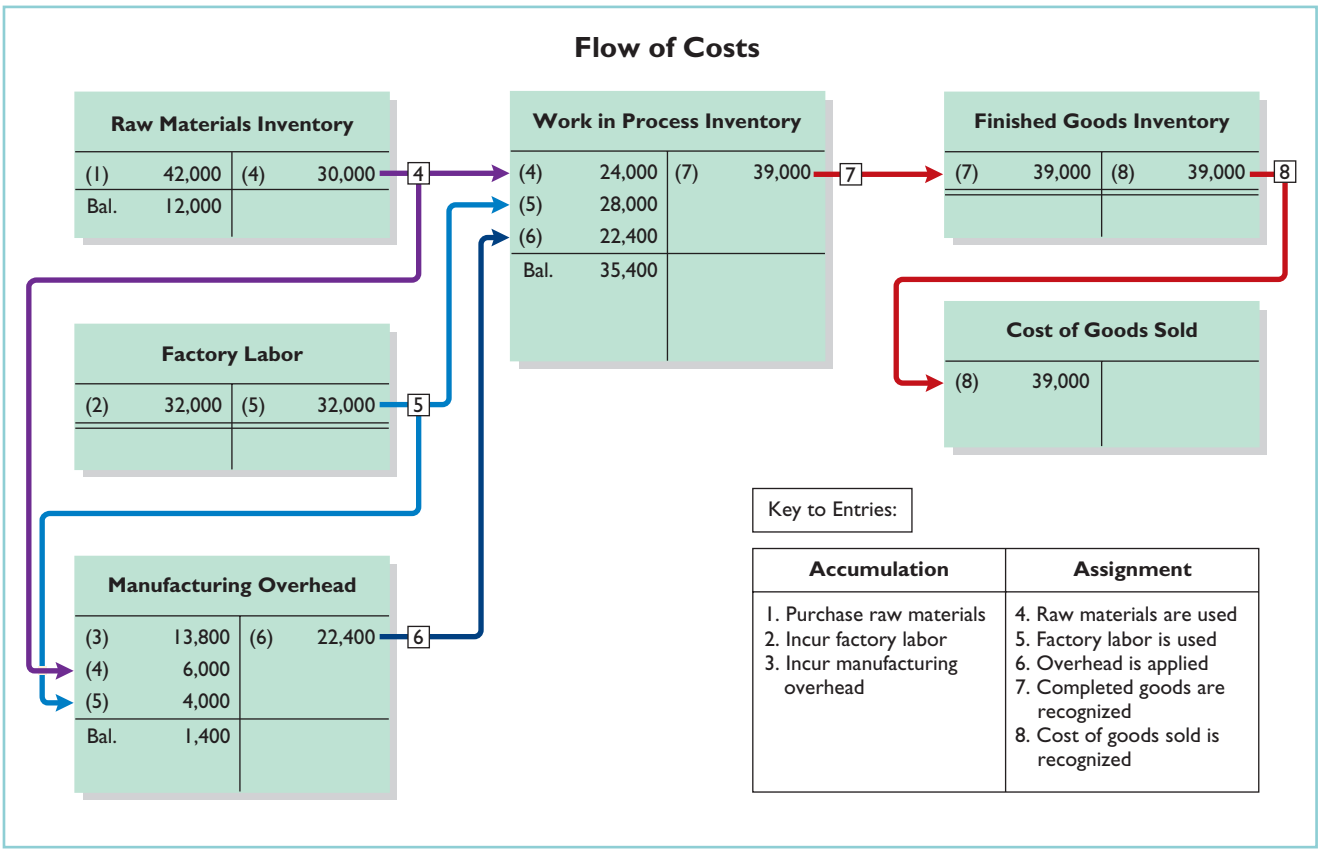
Illustration 15-16 (below) shows a completed flowchart for a job order cost accounting system. All postings are keyed to entries 1–8 in Wallace Manufacturing's accounts presented in the cost flow graphic in Illustration 15-4 (page 801).

The cost flows in the diagram can be categorized as one of four types:

- **Accumulation:** The company first accumulates costs by (1) purchasing raw materials, (2) incurring labor costs, and (3) incurring manufacturing overhead costs.
- **Assignment to Jobs:** Once the company has incurred manufacturing costs, it must assign them to specific jobs. For example, as it uses raw materials on specific jobs (4), it assigns them to work in process, or treats them as manufacturing overhead if the raw materials cannot be associated with a specific job. Similarly, it either assigns factory labor (5) to work in process, or treats it as manufacturing overhead if the factory labor cannot be associated with a specific job. Finally it assigns manufacturing overhead (6) to work in process using a *predetermined overhead rate*. This deserves emphasis: **Do not assign overhead using actual overhead costs, but instead use a predetermined rate**.
- **Completed Jobs:** As jobs are completed (7), the company transfers the cost of the completed job out of work in process inventory into finished goods inventory.
- **When Goods Are Sold:** As specific items are sold (8), the company transfers their cost out of finished goods inventory into cost of goods sold.

Illustration 15-17 (next page) summarizes the flow of documents in a job order cost system.

Illustration 15-16
Flow of costs in a job order cost system



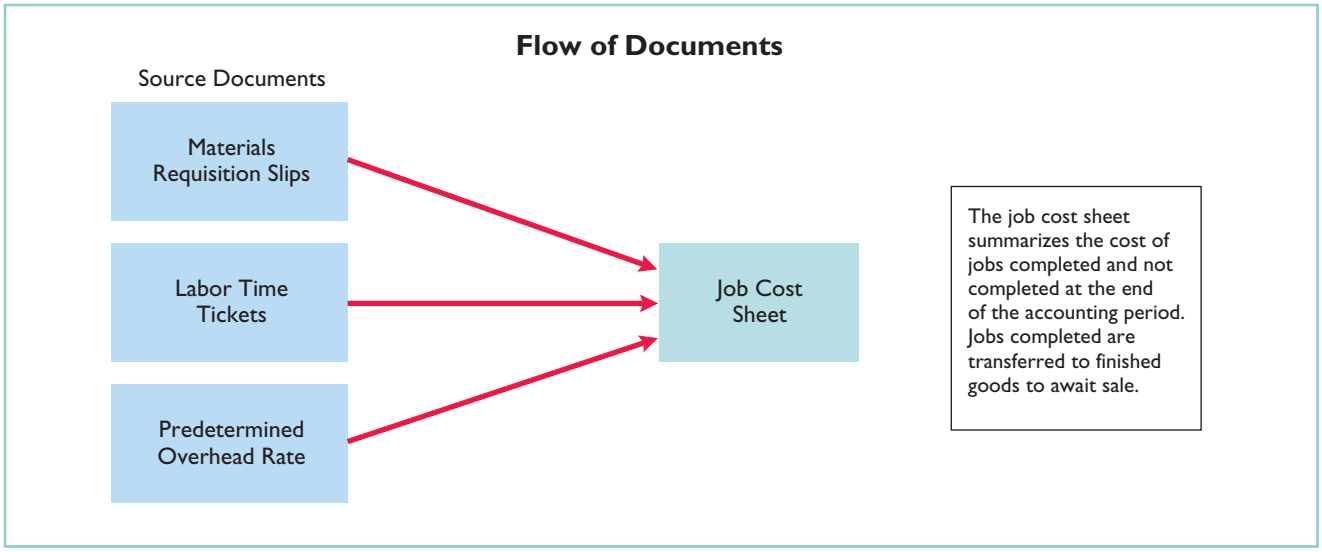


Illustration 15-17 Flow of documents in a job order cost system

before you go on...

Do it! During the current month, Onyx Corporation completed Job 109 and Job 112. Job 109 cost $19,000 and Job 112 cost $27,000. Job 112 was sold on account for $42,000. Journalize the entries for the completion of the two jobs and the sale of Job 112.

COMPLETION AND SALE OF JOBS

Action Plan

- Debit Finished Goods for the cost of completed jobs.
- Debit Cost of Goods Sold for the cost of jobs sold.

Solution

Finished Goods Inventory	46,000	
Work in Process Inventory		46,000
(To record completion of Job 109, costing $19,000 and Job 112, costing $27,000)		
Accounts Receivable	42,000	
Sales		42,000
(To record sale of Job 112)		
Cost of Goods Sold	27,000	
Finished Goods Inventory		27,000
(To record cost of goods sold for Job 112)		

Related exercise material: **BE15-8, Do it! 15-3, E15-2, E15-3, E15-4, E15-6, E15-7,** and **E15-10.**

the navigator

ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF JOB ORDER COSTING

An advantage of job order costing is it is more precise in assignment of costs to projects than process costing. For example, assume that Juan Company (home manufacturer) builds 10 custom homes a year at a total cost of $2,000,000. One way to determine the cost of the homes is to divide the total construction cost incurred during the year by the number of homes produced during the year. For Juan Company, an average cost of $200,000 ($2,000,000 ÷ 10) is computed. If the homes are identical, then this approach is adequate for purposes of determining profit per home. But if the homes vary in terms of size, style, and material types, using the average cost of $200,000 to determine profit per home is inappropriate. Instead, Juan Company should use a job order costing system to

determine the specific cost incurred to build each home and the amount of profit made on each. Thus, job order costing provides more useful information for determining the profitability of particular projects and for estimating costs when preparing bids on future jobs.

One disadvantage of job order costing is that it requires a significant amount of data entry. For Juan Company, it is much easier to simply keep track of total costs incurred during the year than it is to keep track of the costs incurred on each job (home built). Recording this information is time-consuming, and if the data is not entered accurately, then the product costs are not accurate. In recent years, technological advances, such as bar-coding devices for both labor costs and materials, have increased the accuracy and reduced the effort needed to record costs on specific jobs. These innovations expand the opportunities to apply job order costing in a wider variety of business settings, thus improving management's ability to control costs and make better informed decisions.

A common problem of all costing systems is how to allocate overhead to the finished product. Overhead often represents more than 50 percent of a product's cost, and this cost is often difficult to allocate meaningfully to the product. How, for example, is the salary of Juan Company's president allocated to the various homes that may differ in size, style, and materials used? The accuracy of the job order costing system is largely dependent on the accuracy of the overhead allocation process. Even if the company does a good job of keeping track of the specific amounts of materials and labor used on each job, if the overhead costs are not allocated to individual jobs in a meaningful way, the product costing information is not useful. This issue will be addressed in more detail in Chapter 17.

Reporting Job Cost Data

At the end of a period, companies prepare financial statements that present aggregate data on all jobs manufactured and sold. The cost of goods manufactured schedule in job order costing is the same as in Chapter 14 with one exception: **The schedule shows manufacturing overhead applied, rather than actual overhead costs. The company adds this amount to direct materials and direct labor to determine total manufacturing costs.**

Helpful Hint Companies usually prepare monthly financial statements for management use only.

Companies prepare the cost of goods manufactured schedule directly from the Work in Process Inventory account. Illustration 15-18 shows a condensed schedule for Wallace Manufacturing Company for January.

Illustration 15-18
Cost of goods manufactured schedule

WALLACE MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Cost of Goods Manufactured Schedule
For the Month Ending January 31, 2012

Work in process, January 1		$ –0–
Direct materials used	$24,000	
Direct labor	28,000	
Manufacturing overhead applied	**22,400**	
Total manufacturing costs		74,400
Total cost of work in process		74,400
Less: Work in process, January 31		35,400
Cost of goods manufactured		$39,000

Note that the cost of goods manufactured ($39,000) agrees with the amount transferred from Work in Process Inventory to Finished Goods Inventory in journal entry No. 7 in Illustration 15-16 (page 812).

The income statement and balance sheet are the same as those illustrated in Chapter 14. For example, Illustration 15-19 shows the partial income statement for Wallace Manufacturing for the month of January.

Illustration 15-19 Partial income statement

WALLACE MANUFACTURING COMPANY Income Statement (partial) For the Month Ending January 31, 2012		
Sales		$50,000
Cost of goods sold		
Finished goods inventory, January 1	$ –0–	
Cost of goods manufactured (see Illustration 15-18)	**39,000**	
Cost of goods available for sale	39,000	
Less: Finished goods inventory, January 31	–0–	
Cost of goods sold		39,000
Gross profit		$11,000

UNDER- OR OVERAPPLIED MANUFACTURING OVERHEAD

study objective 6

Distinguish between under- and overapplied manufacturing overhead.

When Manufacturing Overhead has a **debit balance**, overhead is said to be underapplied. **Underapplied overhead** means that the overhead assigned to work in process is less than the overhead incurred. Conversely, when manufacturing overhead has a **credit balance**, overhead is overapplied. **Overapplied overhead** means that the overhead assigned to work in process is greater than the overhead incurred. Illustration 15-20 shows these concepts.

Illustration 15-20 Under- and overapplied overhead

Manufacturing Overhead

Actual (Costs incurred)	Applied (Costs assigned)

If actual is ***greater*** than applied, manufacturing overhead is underapplied.

If actual is ***less*** than applied, manufacturing overhead is overapplied.

Year-End Balance

At the end of the year, all manufacturing overhead transactions are complete. There is no further opportunity for offsetting events to occur. At this point, Wallace eliminates any balance in Manufacturing Overhead by an adjusting entry. It considers under- or overapplied overhead to be an **adjustment to cost of goods sold**. Thus, Wallace **debits underapplied overhead to Cost of Goods Sold**. It **credits overapplied overhead to Cost of Goods Sold**.

To illustrate, assume that Wallace Manufacturing has a $2,500 credit balance in Manufacturing Overhead at December 31. The adjusting entry for the overapplied overhead is:

Dec. 31	Manufacturing Overhead	2,500	
	Cost of Goods Sold		2,500
	(To transfer overapplied overhead to cost of goods sold)		

After Wallace posts this entry, Manufacturing Overhead has a zero balance. In preparing an income statement for the year, Wallace reports cost of goods sold **after adjusting it** for either under- or overapplied overhead.

Conceptually, some argue, under- or overapplied overhead at the end of the year should be allocated among ending work in process, finished goods, and cost of goods sold. The discussion of this possible allocation approach is left to more advanced courses.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has the company over- or underapplied overhead for the period?	Actual overhead costs and overhead applied	Manufacturing overhead account	If the account balance is a credit, overhead applied exceeded actual overhead costs. If the account balance is a debit, overhead applied was less than actual overhead costs.

before you go on...

APPLIED MANUFACTURING OVERHEAD

Action Plan

- Calculate the amount of overhead applied by multiplying the predetermined overhead rate by actual activity.
- If actual manufacturing overhead is greater than applied, manufacturing overhead is underapplied.
- If actual manufacturing overhead is less than applied, manufacturing overhead is overapplied.

Do it! For Karr Company, the predetermined overhead rate is 140% of direct labor cost. During the month, Karr incurred $90,000 of factory labor costs, of which $80,000 is direct labor and $10,000 is indirect labor. Actual overhead incurred was $119,000.

Compute the amount of manufacturing overhead applied during the month. Determine the amount of under- or overapplied manufacturing overhead.

Solution

Manufacturing overhead applied = (140% × $80,000) = $112,000
Underapplied manufacturing overhead = ($119,000 − $112,000) = $7,000

Related exercise material: **BE15-9, Do it! 15-4, E15-5, E15-12,** and **E15-13.**

the navigator

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

Martinez Building Products Company is one of the largest manufacturers and marketers of unique, custom-made residential garage doors in the United States. It also is a major supplier of industrial and commercial doors, grills, and counter shutters for the new-construction, repair, and remodel markets. Martinez has developed plans for continued expansion of a network of service operations that sell, install, and service manufactured fireplaces, garage doors, and related products.

Martinez uses a job order cost system and applies overhead to production on the basis of direct labor cost. In computing a predetermined overhead rate for the year 2012, the company estimated manufacturing overhead to be $24 million and direct labor costs to be $20 million. In addition, it developed the following information.

Actual Costs Incurred During 2012	
Direct materials used	$30,000,000
Direct labor cost incurred	21,000,000
Insurance, factory	500,000
Indirect labor	7,500,000
Factory maintenance	1,000,000
Rent on factory building	11,000,000
Depreciation on factory equipment	2,000,000

Instructions

Answer each of the following.

(a) Why is Martinez Building Products Company using a job order costing system?

(b) On what basis does Martinez allocate its manufacturing overhead? Compute the predetermined overhead rate for 2012.

(c) Compute the amount of the under- or overapplied overhead for 2012.

(d) Martinez had balances in the beginning and ending work in process and finished goods accounts as follows.

	1/1/12	12/31/12
Work in process	$ 5,000,000	$ 4,000,000
Finished goods	13,000,000	11,000,000

Determine the (1) cost of goods manufactured and (2) cost of goods sold for Martinez during 2012. Assume that any under- or overapplied overhead should be included in the cost of goods sold.

(e) During 2012, Job G408 was started and completed. Its cost sheet showed a total cost of $100,000, and the company prices its product at 50% above its cost. What is the price to the customer if the company follows this pricing strategy?

Solution

(a) The company is using a job order cost system because it custom-makes garage doors. Each job has its own distinguishing characteristics. For example, each garage door would be different, and therefore a different cost per garage door can be assigned.

(b) The company allocates its overhead on the basis of direct labor cost. The predetermined overhead rate is 120%, computed as follows.

$$\$24,000,000 \div 20,000,000 = 120\%$$

(c)

Actual manufacturing overhead	$22,000,000
Applied overhead cost ($21,000,000 × 120%)	25,200,000
Overapplied overhead	$ 3,200,000

(d)	(1)	Work in process, 1/1/12		$ 5,000,000
		Direct materials used	$30,000,000	
		Direct labor	21,000,000	
		Manufacturing overhead applied	25,200,000	
		Total manufacturing costs		76,200,000
		Total cost of work in process		81,200,000
		Less: Work in process, 12/31/12		4,000,000
		Cost of goods manufactured		$77,200,000
	(2)	Finished goods inventory, 1/1/12	$13,000,000	
		Cost of goods manufactured (see above)	77,200,000	
		Cost of goods available for sale	90,200,000	
		Finished goods inventory, 12/31/12	11,000,000	
		Cost of goods sold (unadjusted)	79,200,000	
		Less: Overapplied overhead	3,200,000	
		Cost of goods sold	$76,000,000	
(e)		G408 cost	$ 100,000	
		Markup percentage	× 50%	
		Profit	$ 50,000	
		Price to customer: $150,000 ($100,000 + $50,000)		

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Explain the characteristics and purposes of cost accounting. Cost accounting involves the procedures for measuring, recording, and reporting product costs. From the data accumulated, companies determine the total cost and the unit cost of each product. The two basic types of cost accounting systems are job order cost and process cost.

2 Describe the flow of costs in a job order costing system. In job order costing, companies first accumulate manufacturing costs in three accounts: Raw Materials Inventory, Factory Labor, and Manufacturing Overhead. They then assign the accumulated costs to Work in Process Inventory and eventually to Finished Goods Inventory and Cost of Goods Sold.

3 Explain the nature and importance of a job cost sheet. A job cost sheet is a form used to record the costs chargeable to a specific job and to determine the total and unit costs of the completed job. Job cost sheets constitute the subsidiary ledger for the Work in Process Inventory control account.

4 Indicate how the predetermined overhead rate is determined and used. The predetermined overhead rate is based on the relationship between estimated annual overhead costs and expected annual operating activity. This is expressed in terms of a common activity base, such as direct labor cost. Companies use this rate to assign overhead costs to work in process and to specific jobs.

5 Prepare entries for jobs completed and sold. When jobs are completed, companies debit the cost to Finished Goods Inventory and credit it to Work in Process Inventory. When a job is sold, the entries are: (a) Debit Cash or Accounts Receivable and credit Sales for the selling price; and (b) debit Cost of Goods Sold and credit Finished Goods Inventory for the cost of the goods.

6 Distinguish between under- and overapplied manufacturing overhead. Underapplied manufacturing overhead indicates that the overhead assigned to work in process is less than the overhead incurred. Overapplied overhead indicates that the overhead assigned to work in process is greater than the overhead incurred.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
What is the cost of a job?	Cost of material, labor, and overhead assigned to a specific job	Job cost sheet	Compare costs to those of previous periods and to those of competitors to ensure that costs are in line. Compare costs to expected selling price or service fees charged to determine overall profitability.
Has the company over- or underapplied overhead for the period?	Actual overhead costs and overhead applied	Manufacturing overhead account	If the account balance is a credit, overhead applied exceeded actual overhead costs. If the account balance is a debit, overhead applied was less than actual overhead costs.

Glossary

Cost accounting *(p. 798)* An area of accounting that involves measuring, recording, and reporting product costs.

Cost accounting system *(p. 798)* Manufacturing-cost accounts that are fully integrated into the general ledger of a company.

Job cost sheet *(p. 803)* A form used to record the costs chargeable to a specific job and to determine the total and unit costs of the completed job.

Job order cost system *(p. 798)* A cost accounting system in which costs are assigned to each job or batch.

Materials requisition slip *(p. 804)* A document authorizing the issuance of raw materials from the storeroom to production.

Overapplied overhead *(p. 815)* A situation in which overhead assigned to work in process is greater than the overhead incurred.

Predetermined overhead rate *(p. 807)* A rate based on the relationship between estimated annual overhead costs and expected annual operating activity, expressed in terms of a common activity base.

Process cost system *(p. 799)* A cost accounting system used when a company manufactures a large volume of similar products.

Summary entry *(p. 802)* A journal entry that summarizes the totals from multiple transactions.

Time ticket *(p. 805)* A document that indicates the employee, the hours worked, the account and job to be charged, and the total labor cost.

Underapplied overhead *(p. 815)* A situation in which overhead assigned to work in process is less than the overhead incurred.

Comprehensive Do it!

Cardella Manufacturing applies overhead on the basis of direct labor costs. The company estimates annual overhead costs will be $760,000 and annual direct labor costs will be $950,000. During February, Cardella Manufacturing works on two jobs: A16 and B17. Summary data concerning these jobs are as follows.

Manufacturing Costs Incurred

Purchased $54,000 of raw materials on account.
Factory labor $76,000, plus $4,000 employer payroll taxes.
Manufacturing overhead exclusive of indirect materials and indirect labor $59,800.

Assignment of Costs

Direct materials:	Job A16 $27,000, Job B17 $21,000
Indirect materials:	$3,000
Direct labor:	Job A16 $52,000, Job B17 $26,000
Indirect labor:	$2,000

The company completed Job A16 and sold it on account for $150,000. Job B17 was only partially completed.

Action Plan

- Predetermined overhead rate = Estimated annual overhead cost ÷ Expected annual operating activity.
- In accumulating costs, debit three accounts: Raw Materials Inventory, Factory Labor, and Manufacturing Overhead.
- When Work in Process Inventory is debited, credit one of the three accounts listed above.
- Debit Finished Goods Inventory for the cost of completed jobs. Debit Cost of Goods Sold for the cost of jobs sold.
- Overhead is underapplied when Manufacturing Overhead has a debit balance.

Instructions

(a) Compute the predetermined overhead rate.
(b) Journalize the February transactions in the sequence followed in the chapter.
(c) What was the amount of under- or overapplied manufacturing overhead?

Solution to Comprehensive *Do it!*

(a) Estimated annual overhead costs	÷	Expected annual operating activity	=	Predetermined overhead rate
$760,000	÷	$950,000	=	80%

(b)

	1.		
Feb. 28	Raw Materials Inventory	54,000	
	Accounts Payable		54,000
	(Purchase of raw materials on account)		
	2.		
28	Factory Labor	80,000	
	Factory Wages Payable		76,000
	Employer Payroll Taxes Payable		4,000
	(To record factory labor costs)		
	3.		
28	Manufacturing Overhead	59,800	
	Accounts Payable, Accumulated Depreciation, and Prepaid Insurance		59,800
	(To record overhead costs)		
	4.		
28	Work in Process Inventory	48,000	
	Manufacturing Overhead	3,000	
	Raw Materials Inventory		51,000
	(To assign raw materials to production)		
	5.		
28	Work in Process Inventory	78,000	
	Manufacturing Overhead	2,000	
	Factory Labor		80,000
	(To assign factory labor to production)		
	6.		
28	Work in Process Inventory	62,400	
	Manufacturing Overhead		62,400
	(To assign overhead to jobs—80% × $78,000)		
	7.		
28	Finished Goods Inventory	120,600	
	Work in Process Inventory		120,600
	(To record completion of Job A16: direct materials $27,000, direct labor $52,000, and manufacturing overhead $41,600)		
	8.		
28	Accounts Receivable	150,000	
	Sales		150,000
	(To record sale of Job A16)		
28	Cost of Goods Sold	120,600	
	Finished Goods Inventory		120,600
	(To record cost of sale for Job A16)		

(c) Manufacturing Overhead has a debit balance of $2,400 as shown below.

Manufacturing Overhead

(3)	59,800	(6)	62,400
(4)	3,000		
(5)	2,000		
Bal.	2,400		

Thus, manufacturing overhead is underapplied for the month.

the navigator

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 837.

(SO 1) **1.** Cost accounting involves the measuring, recording, and reporting of:
(a) product costs.
(b) future costs.
(c) manufacturing processes.
(d) managerial accounting decisions.

(SO 1) **2.** A company is more likely to use a job order costing system if:
(a) it manufactures a large volume of similar products.
(b) its production is continuous.
(c) it manufactures products with unique characteristics.
(d) it uses a periodic inventory system.

(SO 2) **3.** In accumulating raw materials costs, companies debit the cost of raw materials purchased in a perpetual system to:
(a) Raw Materials Purchases.
(b) Raw Materials Inventory.
(c) Purchases.
(d) Work in Process.

(SO 2) **4.** When incurred, factory labor costs are debited to:
(a) Work in Process.
(b) Factory Wages Expense.
(c) Factory Labor.
(d) Factory Wages Payable.

(SO 2) **5.** The flow of costs in job order costing:
(a) begins with work in process inventory and ends with finished goods inventory.
(b) begins as soon as a sale occurs.
(c) parallels the physical flow of materials as they are converted into finished goods.
(d) is necessary to prepare the cost of goods manufactured schedule.

(SO 3) **6.** Raw materials are assigned to a job when:
(a) the job is sold.
(b) the materials are purchased.
(c) the materials are received from the vendor.
(d) the materials are issued by the materials storeroom.

(SO 3) **7.** The source documents for assigning costs to job cost sheets are:
(a) invoices, time tickets, and the predetermined overhead rate.
(b) materials requisition slips, time tickets, and the actual overhead costs.
(c) materials requisition slips, payroll register, and the predetermined overhead rate.
(d) materials requisition slips, time tickets, and the predetermined overhead rate.

8. In recording the issuance of raw materials in a job order cost system, it would be *incorrect* to: (SO 3)
(a) debit Work in Process Inventory.
(b) debit Finished Goods Inventory.
(c) debit Manufacturing Overhead.
(d) credit Raw Materials Inventory.

9. The entry when direct factory labor is assigned to jobs is a debit to: (SO 3)
(a) Work in Process Inventory and a credit to Factory Labor.
(b) Manufacturing Overhead and a credit to Factory Labor.
(c) Factory Labor and a credit to Manufacturing Overhead.
(d) Factory Labor and a credit to Work in Process Inventory.

10. The formula for computing the predetermined manufacturing overhead rate is estimated annual overhead costs divided by an expected annual operating activity, expressed as: (SO 4)
(a) direct labor cost.
(b) direct labor hours.
(c) machine hours.
(d) Any of the above.

11. In Crawford Company, the predetermined overhead rate is 80% of direct labor cost. During the month, Crawford incurs $210,000 of factory labor costs, of which $180,000 is direct labor and $30,000 is indirect labor. Actual overhead incurred was $200,000. The amount of overhead debited to Work in Process Inventory should be: (SO 4)
(a) $200,000.
(b) $144,000.
(c) $168,000.
(d) $160,000.

(SO 5) **12.** Mynex Company completes Job No. 26 at a cost of $4,500 and later sells it for $7,000 cash. A correct entry is:
(a) Debit Finished Goods Inventory $7,000 and credit Work in Process Inventory $7,000.
(b) Debit Cost of Goods Sold $7,000 and credit Finished Goods Inventory $7,000.
(c) Debit Finished Goods Inventory $4,500 and credit Work in Process Inventory $4,500.
(d) Debit Accounts Receivable $7,000 and credit Sales $7,000.

(SO 5) **13.** At the end of an accounting period, a company using a job order costing system prepares the cost of goods manufactured:
(a) from the job cost sheet.
(b) from the Work in Process Inventory account.
(c) by adding direct materials used, direct labor incurred, and manufacturing overhead incurred.
(d) from the Cost of Goods Sold account.

(SO 6) **14.** At end of the year, a company has a $1,200 debit balance in Manufacturing Overhead. The company:
(a) makes an adjusting entry by debiting Manufacturing Overhead Applied for $1,200 and crediting Manufacturing Overhead for $1,200.
(b) makes an adjusting entry by debiting Manufacturing Overhead Expense for $1,200 and crediting Manufacturing Overhead for $1,200.
(c) makes an adjusting entry by debiting Cost of Goods Sold for $1,200 and crediting Manufacturing Overhead for $1,200.
(d) makes no adjusting entry because differences between actual overhead and the amount applied are a normal part of job order costing and will average out over the next year.

15. Manufacturing overhead is underapplied if: (SO 6)
(a) actual overhead is less than applied.
(b) actual overhead is greater than applied.
(c) the predetermined rate equals the actual rate.
(d) actual overhead equals applied overhead.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, for additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. (a) Mary Barett is not sure about the difference between cost accounting and a cost accounting system. Explain the difference to Mary. (b) What is an important feature of a cost accounting system?

2. (a) Distinguish between the two types of cost accounting systems. (b) May a company use both types of cost accounting systems?

3. What type of industry is likely to use a job order cost system? Give some examples.

4. What type of industry is likely to use a process cost system? Give some examples.

5. Your roommate asks your help in understanding the major steps in the flow of costs in a job order cost system. Identify the steps for your roommate.

6. There are three inventory control accounts in a job order system. Identify the control accounts and their subsidiary ledgers.

7. What source documents are used in accumulating direct labor costs?

8. "Entries to Manufacturing Overhead normally are only made daily." Do you agree? Explain.

9. Stan Kaiser is confused about the source documents used in assigning materials and labor costs. Identify the documents and give the entry for each document.

10. What is the purpose of a job cost sheet?

11. Indicate the source documents that are used in charging costs to specific jobs.

12. Explain the purpose and use of a "materials requisition slip" as used in a job order cost system.

13. Sam Bowden believes actual manufacturing overhead should be charged to jobs. Do you agree? Why or why not?

14. What elements are involved in computing a predetermined overhead rate?

15. How can the agreement of Work in Process Inventory and job cost sheets be verified?

16. Jane Neff believes that the cost of goods manufactured schedule in job order cost accounting is the same as shown in Chapter 14. Is Jane correct? Explain.

17. Matt Litkee is confused about under- and overapplied manufacturing overhead. Define the terms for Matt, and indicate the balance in the manufacturing overhead account applicable to each term.

18. "At the end of the year, under- or overapplied overhead is closed to Income Summary." Is this correct? If not, indicate the customary treatment of this amount.

Brief Exercises

BE15-1 Knox Tool & Die begins operations on January 1. Because all work is done to customer specifications, the company decides to use a job order costing system. Prepare a flowchart of a typical job order system with arrows showing the flow of costs. Identify the eight transactions.

Prepare a flowchart of a job order cost accounting system, and identify transactions. (SO 2), C

BE15-2 During January, its first month of operations, Knox Tool & Die accumulated the following manufacturing costs: raw materials $4,000 on account, factory labor $6,000 of which $5,200 relates to factory wages payable and $800 relates to payroll taxes payable, and utilities payable $2,000. Prepare separate journal entries for each type of manufacturing cost.

Prepare entries in accumulating manufacturing costs. (SO 2), **AP**

BE15-3 In January, Knox Tool & Die requisitions raw materials for production as follows: Job 1 $900, Job 2 $1,400, Job 3 $700, and general factory use $600. Prepare a summary journal entry to record raw materials used.

Prepare entry for the assignment of raw materials costs. (SO 3), **AP**

BE15-4 Factory labor data for Knox Tool & Die is given in BE15-2. During January, time tickets show that the factory labor of $6,000 was used as follows: Job 1 $2,200, Job 2 $1,600, Job 3 $1,400, and general factory use $800. Prepare a summary journal entry to record factory labor used.

Prepare entry for the assignment of factory labor costs. (SO 3), **AP**

BE15-5 Data pertaining to job cost sheets for Knox Tool & Die are given in BE15-3 and BE15-4. Prepare the job cost sheets for each of the three jobs. (*Note*: You may omit the column for Manufacturing Overhead.)

Prepare job cost sheets. (SO 3), **AP**

BE15-6 Marquis Company estimates that annual manufacturing overhead costs will be $900,000. Estimated annual operating activity bases are: direct labor cost $500,000, direct labor hours 50,000, and machine hours 100,000. Compute the predetermined overhead rate for each activity base.

Compute predetermined overhead rates. (SO 4), **AP**

BE15-7 During the first quarter, Roland Company incurs the following direct labor costs: January $40,000, February $30,000, and March $50,000. For each month, prepare the entry to assign overhead to production using a predetermined rate of 80% of direct labor cost.

Assign manufacturing overhead to production. (SO 4), **AP**

BE15-8 In March, Stinson Company completes Jobs 10 and 11. Job 10 cost $20,000 and Job 11 $30,000. On March 31, Job 10 is sold to the customer for $35,000 in cash. Journalize the entries for the completion of the two jobs and the sale of Job 10.

Prepare entries for completion and sale of completed jobs. (SO 5), **AP**

BE15-9 At December 31, balances in Manufacturing Overhead are: Shimeca Company—debit $1,200, Garcia Company—credit $900. Prepare the adjusting entry for each company at December 31, assuming the adjustment is made to cost of goods sold.

Prepare adjusting entries for under- and overapplied overhead. (SO 6), **C**

Do it! Review

Do it! 15-1 During the current month, Tomlin Company incurs the following manufacturing costs:

Prepare journal entries for manufacturing costs. (SO 2), **AP**

(a) Purchased raw materials of $16,000 on account.
(b) Incurred factory labor of $40,000. Of that amount, $31,000 relates to wages payable and $9,000 relates to payroll taxes payable.
(c) Factory utilities of $3,100 are payable, prepaid factory property taxes of $2,400 have expired, and depreciation on the factory building is $9,500.

Prepare journal entries for each type of manufacturing cost. (Use a summary entry to record manufacturing overhead.)

Do it! 15-2 Milner Company is working on two job orders. The job cost sheets show the following.

Assign costs to work in process. (SO 3, 4), **AP**

	Job 201	Job 202
Direct materials	$7,200	$9,000
Direct labor	4,000	8,000
Manufacturing overhead	5,200	9,800

Prepare the three summary entries to record the assignment of costs to Work in Process from the data on the job cost sheets.

Do it! 15-3 During the current month, Reyes Corporation completed Job 310 and Job 312. Job 310 cost $60,000 and Job 312 cost $50,000. Job 312 was sold on account for $90,000. Journalize the entries for the completion of the two jobs and the sale of Job 312.

Prepare entries for completion and sale of jobs. (SO 5), **AP**

Do it! 15-4 For Eckstein Company, the predetermined overhead rate is 130% of direct labor cost. During the month, Eckstein incurred $100,000 of factory labor costs, of which $85,000 is direct labor and $15,000 is indirect labor. Actual overhead incurred was $115,000. Compute the amount of manufacturing overhead applied during the month. Determine the amount of under- or overapplied manufacturing overhead.

Apply manufacturing overhead and determine under- or overapplication. (SO 6), **AN**

Exercises

Prepare entries for factory labor.
(SO 2, 3), AP

E15-1 The gross earnings of the factory workers for Vargas Company during the month of January are $66,000. The employer's payroll taxes for the factory payroll are $8,000. The fringe benefits to be paid by the employer on this payroll are $6,000. Of the total accumulated cost of factory labor, 85% is related to direct labor and 15% is attributable to indirect labor.

Instructions
(a) Prepare the entry to record the factory labor costs for the month of January.
(b) Prepare the entry to assign factory labor to production.

Prepare journal entries for manufacturing costs.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5), AP

E15-2 Stine Manufacturing uses a job order costing system. On May 1, the company has a balance in Work in Process Inventory of $3,500 and two jobs in process: Job No. 429 $2,000, and Job No. 430 $1,500. During May, a summary of source documents reveals the following.

Job Number	Materials Requisition Slips		Labor Time Tickets	
429	$2,500		$1,900	
430	3,500		3,000	
431	4,400	$10,400	7,600	$12,500
General use		800		1,200
		$11,200		$13,700

Stine Manufacturing applies manufacturing overhead to jobs at an overhead rate of 60% of direct labor cost. Job No. 429 is completed during the month.

Instructions
(a) Prepare summary journal entries to record: (i) the requisition slips, (ii) the time tickets, (iii) the assignment of manufacturing overhead to jobs, and (iv) the completion of Job No. 429.
(b) Post the entries to Work in Process Inventory, and prove the agreement of the control account with the job cost sheets. (Use a T account.)

Analyze a job cost sheet and prepare entries for manufacturing costs.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5), AP

E15-3 A job order cost sheet for Lowry Company is shown below.

Job No. 92			For 2,000 Units
Date	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead
Beg. bal. Jan. 1	5,000	6,000	5,100
8	6,000		
12		8,000	6,400
25	2,000		
27		4,000	3,200
	13,000	18,000	14,700

Cost of completed job:	
Direct materials	$13,000
Direct labor	18,000
Manufacturing overhead	14,700
Total cost	$45,700
Unit cost ($45,700 ÷ 2,000)	$22.85

Instructions
(a) On the basis of the foregoing data, answer the following questions.
(1) What was the balance in Work in Process Inventory on January 1 if this was the only unfinished job?
(2) If manufacturing overhead is applied on the basis of direct labor cost, what overhead rate was used in each year?
(b) Prepare summary entries at January 31 to record the current year's transactions pertaining to Job No. 92.

E15-4 Manufacturing cost data for Orlando Company, which uses a job order cost system, are presented below.

Analyze costs of manufacturing and determine missing amounts.
(SO 2, 5), **AN**

	Case A	Case B	Case C
Direct materials used	$ (a)	$ 83,000	$ 63,150
Direct labor	50,000	140,000	(h)
Manufacturing overhead applied	42,500	(d)	(i)
Total manufacturing costs	145,650	(e)	213,000
Work in process 1/1/12	(b)	15,500	18,000
Total cost of work in process	201,500	(f)	(j)
Work in process 12/31/12	(c)	11,800	(k)
Cost of goods manufactured	192,300	(g)	222,000

Instructions
Indicate the missing amount for each letter. Assume that in all cases manufacturing overhead is applied on the basis of direct labor cost and the rate is the same.

E15-5 Duggan Company applies manufacturing overhead to jobs on the basis of machine hours used. Overhead costs are expected to total $325,000 for the year, and machine usage is estimated at 125,000 hours.

For the year, $342,000 of overhead costs are incurred and 130,000 hours are used.

Compute the manufacturing overhead rate and under- or overapplied overhead.
(SO 4, 6), **AN**

Instructions
(a) Compute the manufacturing overhead rate for the year.
(b) What is the amount of under- or overapplied overhead at December 31?
(c) Prepare the adjusting entry to assign the under- or overapplied overhead for the year to cost of goods sold.

E15-6 A job cost sheet of Sandoval Company is given below.

Analyze job cost sheet and prepare entry for completed job.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5), **AP**

Job Cost Sheet

JOB NO. 469 Quantity 2,500
ITEM White Lion Cages Date Requested 7/2
FOR Todd Company Date Completed 7/31

Date	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead
7/10	700		
12	900		
15		440	550
22		380	475
24	1,600		
27	1,500		
31		540	675

Cost of completed job:	____
Direct materials	____
Direct labor	____
Manufacturing overhead	____
Total cost	____
Unit cost	____

Instructions
(a) Answer the following questions.
(1) What are the source documents for direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead costs assigned to this job?
(2) What is the predetermined manufacturing overhead rate?
(3) What are the total cost and the unit cost of the completed job? (Round unit cost to nearest cent.)
(b) Prepare the entry to record the completion of the job.

Prepare entries for manufacturing costs.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5), **AP**

E15-7 Torre Corporation incurred the following transactions.

1. Purchased raw materials on account $46,300.
2. Raw Materials of $36,000 were requisitioned to the factory. An analysis of the materials requisition slips indicated that $6,800 was classified as indirect materials.
3. Factory labor costs incurred were $55,900, of which $51,000 pertained to factory wages payable and $4,900 pertained to employer payroll taxes payable.
4. Time tickets indicated that $50,000 was direct labor and $5,900 was indirect labor.
5. Overhead costs incurred on account were $80,500.
6. Manufacturing overhead was applied at the rate of 150% of direct labor cost.
7. Goods costing $88,000 were completed and transferred to finished goods.
8. Finished goods costing $75,000 to manufacture were sold on account for $103,000.

Instructions
Journalize the transactions. (Omit explanations.)

Prepare entries for manufacturing costs.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5), **AP**

E15-8 Enos Printing Corp. uses a job order cost system. The following data summarize the operations related to the first quarter's production.

1. Materials purchased on account $192,000, and factory wages incurred $87,300.
2. Materials requisitioned and factory labor used by job:

Job Number	Materials	Factory Labor
A20	$ 35,240	$18,000
A21	42,920	22,000
A22	36,100	15,000
A23	39,270	25,000
General factory use	4,470	7,300
	$158,000	$87,300

3. Manufacturing overhead costs incurred on account $49,500.
4. Depreciation on equipment $14,550.
5. Manufacturing overhead rate is 90% of direct labor cost.
6. Jobs completed during the quarter: A20, A21, and A23.

Instructions
Prepare entries to record the operations summarized above. (Prepare a schedule showing the individual cost elements and total cost for each job in item 6.)

Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule and partial financial statements.
(SO 2, 5), **AP**

E15-9 At May 31, 2012, the accounts of Mantle Manufacturing Company show the following.

1. May 1 inventories—finished goods $12,600, work in process $14,700, and raw materials $8,200.
2. May 31 inventories—finished goods $9,500, work in process $17,900, and raw materials $7,100.
3. Debit postings to work in process were: direct materials $62,400, direct labor $50,000, and manufacturing overhead applied $40,000.
4. Sales totaled $210,000.

Instructions
(a) Prepare a condensed cost of goods manufactured schedule.
(b) Prepare an income statement for May through gross profit.
(c) Indicate the balance sheet presentation of the manufacturing inventories at May 31, 2012.

Compute work in process and finished goods from job cost sheets.
(SO 3, 5), **AP**

E15-10 Tierney Company begins operations on April 1. Information from job cost sheets shows the following.

	Manufacturing Costs Assigned			
Job Number	April	May	June	Month Completed
10	$5,200	$4,400		May
11	4,100	3,900	$2,000	June
12	1,200			April
13		4,700	4,500	June
14		5,900	3,600	Not complete

Job 12 was completed in April. Job 10 was completed in May. Jobs 11 and 13 were completed in June. Each job was sold for 25% above its cost in the month following completion.

Instructions
(a) What is the balance in Work in Process Inventory at the end of each month?
(b) What is the balance in Finished Goods Inventory at the end of each month?
(c) What is the gross profit for May, June, and July?

E15-11 Shown below are the job cost related accounts for the law firm of Jack, Bob, and Will and their manufacturing equivalents:

Prepare entries for costs of services provided.
(SO 2, 4, 5), **AP**

Law Firm Accounts	Manufacturing Firm Accounts
Supplies	Raw Materials
Salaries and Wages Payable	Factory Wages Payable
Operating Overhead	Manufacturing Overhead
Service Contracts in Process	Work in Process
Cost of Completed Service Contracts	Cost of Goods Sold

Cost data for the month of March follow.

1. Purchased supplies on account $1,500.
2. Issued supplies $1,200 (60% direct and 40% indirect).
3. Time cards for the month indicated labor costs of $60,000 (80% direct and 20% indirect).
4. Operating overhead costs incurred for cash totaled $40,000.
5. Operating overhead is applied at a rate of 90% of direct attorney cost.
6. Work completed totaled $75,000.

Instructions
(a) Journalize the transactions for March. Omit explanations.
(b) Determine the balance of the Work in Process account. Use a T account.

E15-12 Don Lieberman and Associates, a CPA firm, uses job order costing to capture the costs of its audit jobs. There were no audit jobs in process at the beginning of November. Listed below are data concerning the three audit jobs conducted during November.

Determine cost of jobs and ending balance in work in process and overhead accounts.
(SO 3, 4, 6), **AP**

	Lynn	Brian	Mike
Direct materials	$600	$400	$200
Auditor labor costs	$5,400	$6,600	$3,375
Auditor hours	72	88	45

Overhead costs are applied to jobs on the basis of auditor hours, and the predetermined overhead rate is $50 per auditor hour. The Lynn job is the only incomplete job at the end of November. Actual overhead for the month was $11,000.

Instructions
(a) Determine the cost of each job.
(b) Indicate the balance of the Work in Process account at the end of November.
(c) Calculate the ending balance of the Manufacturing Overhead account for November.

E15-13 Pure Decorating uses a job order costing system to collect the costs of its interior decorating business. Each client's consultation is treated as a separate job. Overhead is applied to each job based on the number of decorator hours incurred. Listed below are data for the current year.

Determine predetermined overhead rate, apply overhead and determine whether balance under- or overapplied.
(SO 4, 6), **AP**

Estimated overhead	$920,000
Actual overhead	$942,800
Estimated decorator hours	40,000
Actual decorator hours	40,500

The company uses Operating Overhead in place of Manufacturing Overhead.

Instructions
(a) Compute the predetermined overhead rate.
(b) Prepare the entry to apply the overhead for the year.
(c) Determine whether the overhead was under- or overapplied and by how much.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Prepare entries in a job order cost system and job cost sheets.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5, 6), **AP**

P15-1A Deglman Manufacturing uses a job order cost system and applies overhead to production on the basis of direct labor costs. On January 1, 2012, Job No. 50 was the only job in process. The costs incurred prior to January 1 on this job were as follows: direct materials $20,000, direct labor $12,000, and manufacturing overhead $16,000. As of January 1, Job No. 49 had been completed at a cost of $90,000 and was part of finished goods inventory. There was a $15,000 balance in the Raw Materials Inventory account.

During the month of January, Deglman Manufacturing began production on Jobs 51 and 52, and completed Jobs 50 and 51. Jobs 49 and 50 were also sold on account during the month for $122,000 and $158,000, respectively. The following additional events occurred during the month.

1. Purchased additional raw materials of $90,000 on account.
2. Incurred factory labor costs of $70,000. Of this amount $16,000 related to employer payroll taxes.
3. Incurred manufacturing overhead costs as follows: indirect materials $17,000; indirect labor $20,000; depreciation expense on equipment $19,000; and various other manufacturing overhead costs on account $16,000.
4. Assigned direct materials and direct labor to jobs as follows.

Job No.	Direct Materials	Direct Labor
50	$10,000	$ 5,000
51	39,000	25,000
52	30,000	20,000

Instructions

(a) Calculate the predetermined overhead rate for 2012, assuming Deglman Manufacturing estimates total manufacturing overhead costs of $980,000, direct labor costs of $700,000, and direct labor hours of 20,000 for the year.

(b) Open job cost sheets for Jobs 50, 51, and 52. Enter the January 1 balances on the job cost sheet for Job No. 50.

(c) Prepare the journal entries to record the purchase of raw materials, the factory labor costs incurred, and the manufacturing overhead costs incurred during the month of January.

(d) Prepare the journal entries to record the assignment of direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead costs to production. In assigning manufacturing overhead costs, use the overhead rate calculated in (a). Post all costs to the job cost sheets as necessary.

(e) Job 50, $70,000
Job 51, $99,000

(e) Total the job cost sheets for any job(s) completed during the month. Prepare the journal entry (or entries) to record the completion of any job(s) during the month.

(f) Prepare the journal entry (or entries) to record the sale of any job(s) during the month.

(g) What is the balance in the Finished Goods Inventory account at the end of the month? What does this balance consist of?

(h) What is the amount of over- or underapplied overhead?

Prepare entries in a job order cost system and partial income statement.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5, 6), **AN**

P15-2A For the year ended December 31, 2012, the job cost sheets of Cinta Company contained the following data.

Job Number	Explanation	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead	Total Costs
7640	Balance 1/1	$25,000	$24,000	$28,800	$ 77,800
	Current year's costs	30,000	36,000	43,200	109,200
7641	Balance 1/1	11,000	18,000	21,600	50,600
	Current year's costs	43,000	48,000	57,600	148,600
7642	Current year's costs	58,000	55,000	66,000	179,000

Other data:

1. Raw materials inventory totaled $15,000 on January 1. During the year, $140,000 of raw materials were purchased on account.
2. Finished goods on January 1 consisted of Job No. 7638 for $87,000 and Job No. 7639 for $92,000.
3. Job No. 7640 and Job No. 7641 were completed during the year.
4. Job Nos. 7638, 7639, and 7641 were sold on account for $530,000.
5. Manufacturing overhead incurred on account totaled $120,000.
6. Other manufacturing overhead consisted of indirect materials $14,000, indirect labor $18,000, and depreciation on factory machinery $8,000.

Instructions

(a) Prove the agreement of Work in Process Inventory with job cost sheets pertaining to unfinished work. (*Hint:* Use a single T account for Work in Process Inventory.) Calculate each of the following, then post each to the T account: (1) beginning balance, (2) direct materials, (3) direct labor, (4) manufacturing overhead, and (5) completed jobs.

(a) $179,000; Job 7642: $179,000

(b) Prepare the adjusting entry for manufacturing overhead, assuming the balance is allocated entirely to Cost of Goods Sold.

(b) Amount = $6,800

(c) Determine the gross profit to be reported for 2012.

(c) $158,600

P15-3A Stellar Inc. is a construction company specializing in custom patios. The patios are constructed of concrete, brick, fiberglass, and lumber, depending upon customer preference. On June 1, 2012, the general ledger for Stellar Inc. contains the following data.

Prepare entries in a job order cost system and cost of goods manufactured schedule.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5), **AP**

Raw Materials Inventory	$4,200	Manufacturing Overhead Applied	$32,640
Work in Process Inventory	$5,540	Manufacturing Overhead Incurred	$31,650

Subsidiary data for Work in Process Inventory on June 1 are as follows.

Job Cost Sheets

	Customer Job		
Cost Element	**Gannon**	**Rosenthal**	**Linton**
Direct materials	$ 600	$ 800	$ 900
Direct labor	320	540	580
Manufacturing overhead	400	675	725
	$1,320	$2,015	$2,205

During June, raw materials purchased on account were $4,900, and all wages were paid. Additional overhead costs consisted of depreciation on equipment $700 and miscellaneous costs of $400 incurred on account.

A summary of materials requisition slips and time tickets for June shows the following.

Customer Job	Materials Requisition Slips	Time Tickets
Gannon	$ 800	$ 450
Koss	2,000	800
Rosenthal	500	360
Linton	1,300	1,200
Gannon	300	390
	4,900	3,200
General use	1,500	1,200
	$6,400	$4,400

Overhead was charged to jobs at the same rate of $1.25 per dollar of direct labor cost. The patios for customers Gannon, Rosenthal, and Linton were completed during June and sold for a total of $18,900. Each customer paid in full.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the June transactions: (i) for purchase of raw materials, factory labor costs incurred, and manufacturing overhead costs incurred; (ii) assignment of direct materials, labor, and overhead to production; and (iii) completion of jobs and sale of goods.

(b) Post the entries to Work in Process Inventory.

(c) Reconcile the balance in Work in Process Inventory with the costs of unfinished jobs.

(d) Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule for June.

(d) Cost of goods manufactured $13,840

Compute predetermined overhead rates, apply overhead, and calculate under- or overapplied overhead.
(SO 4, 6), **AP**

P15-4A Agassi Manufacturing Company uses a job order cost system in each of its three manufacturing departments. Manufacturing overhead is applied to jobs on the basis of direct labor cost in Department D, direct labor hours in Department E, and machine hours in Department K.

In establishing the predetermined overhead rates for 2012, the following estimates were made for the year.

	Department		
	D	E	K
Manufacturing overhead	$1,200,000	$1,500,000	$900,000
Direct labor costs	$1,500,000	$1,250,000	$450,000
Direct labor hours	100,000	125,000	40,000
Machine hours	400,000	500,000	120,000

During January, the job cost sheets showed the following costs and production data.

	Department		
	D	E	K
Direct materials used	$140,000	$126,000	$78,000
Direct labor costs	$120,000	$110,000	$37,500
Manufacturing overhead incurred	$ 99,000	$124,000	$79,000
Direct labor hours	8,000	11,000	3,500
Machine hours	34,000	45,000	10,400

Instructions

(a) 80%, $12, $7.50
(b) $356,000, $368,000, $193,500
(c) $3,000, $(8,000), $1,000

(a) Compute the predetermined overhead rate for each department.
(b) Compute the total manufacturing costs assigned to jobs in January in each department.
(c) Compute the under- or overapplied overhead for each department at January 31.

Analyze manufacturing accounts and determine missing amounts.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5, 6), **AN**

P15-5A Rodman Corporation's fiscal year ends on November 30. The following accounts are found in its job order cost accounting system for the first month of the new fiscal year.

Raw Materials Inventory

Dec. 1	Beginning balance	(a)	Dec. 31	Requisitions	16,850
31	Purchases	19,225			
Dec. 31	Ending balance	7,975			

Work in Process Inventory

Dec. 1	Beginning balance	(b)	Dec. 31	Jobs completed	(f)
31	Direct materials	(c)			
31	Direct labor	8,800			
31	Overhead	(d)			
Dec. 31	Ending balance	(e)			

Finished Goods Inventory

Dec. 1	Beginning balance	(g)	Dec. 31	Cost of goods sold	(i)
31	Completed jobs	(h)			
Dec. 31	Ending balance	(j)			

Factory Labor

Dec. 31	Factory wages	12,025	Dec. 31	Wages assigned	(k)

Manufacturing Overhead

Dec. 31	Indirect materials	1,900	Dec. 31	Overhead applied	(m)
31	Indirect labor	(l)			
31	Other overhead	1,245			

Other data:

1. On December 1, two jobs were in process: Job No. 154 and Job No. 155. These jobs had combined direct materials costs of $9,750 and direct labor costs of $15,000. Overhead was applied at a rate that was 75% of direct labor cost.

2. During December, Job Nos. 156, 157, and 158 were started. On December 31, Job No. 158 was unfinished. This job had charges for direct materials $3,800 and direct labor $4,800, plus manufacturing overhead. All jobs, except for Job No. 158, were completed in December.
3. On December 1, Job No. 153 was in the finished goods warehouse. It had a total cost of $5,000. On December 31, Job No. 157 was the only job finished that was not sold. It had a cost of $4,000.
4. Manufacturing overhead was $230 overapplied in December.

Instructions

List the letters (a) through (m) and indicate the amount pertaining to each letter.

(c) $14,950
(f) $54,150
(i) $55,150

Problems: Set B

P15-1B Pedriani Manufacturing uses a job order cost system and applies overhead to production on the basis of direct labor hours. On January 1, 2012, Job No. 25 was the only job in process. The costs incurred prior to January 1 on this job were as follows: direct materials $10,000; direct labor $6,000; and manufacturing overhead $9,000. Job No. 23 had been completed at a cost of $42,000 and was part of finished goods inventory. There was a $5,000 balance in the Raw Materials Inventory account.

Prepare entries in a job order cost system and job cost sheets.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5, 6), **AP**

During the month of January, the company began production on Jobs 26 and 27, and completed Jobs 25 and 26. Jobs 23 and 25 were sold on account during the month for $63,000 and $74,000, respectively. The following additional events occurred during the month.

1. Purchased additional raw materials of $45,000 on account.
2. Incurred factory labor costs of $33,500. Of this amount, $7,500 related to employer payroll taxes.
3. Incurred manufacturing overhead costs as follows: indirect materials $10,000; indirect labor $9,500; depreciation expense on equipment $12,000; and various other manufacturing overhead costs on account $11,000.
4. Assigned direct materials and direct labor to jobs as follows.

Job No.	Direct Materials	Direct Labor
25	$ 5,000	$ 3,000
26	17,000	12,000
27	13,000	9,000

5. The company uses direct labor hours as the activity base to assign overhead. Direct labor hours incurred on each job were as follows: Job No. 25, 200; Job No. 26, 800; and Job No. 27, 600.

Instructions

(a) Calculate the predetermined overhead rate for the year 2012, assuming Pedriani Manufacturing estimates total manufacturing overhead costs of $440,000, direct labor costs of $300,000, and direct labor hours of 20,000 for the year.
(b) Open job cost sheets for Jobs 25, 26, and 27. Enter the January 1 balances on the job cost sheet for Job No. 25.
(c) Prepare the journal entries to record the purchase of raw materials, the factory labor costs incurred, and the manufacturing overhead costs incurred during the month of January.
(d) Prepare the journal entries to record the assignment of direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead costs to production. In assigning manufacturing overhead costs, use the overhead rate calculated in (a). Post all costs to the job cost sheets as necessary.
(e) Total the job cost sheets for any job(s) completed during the month. Prepare the journal entry (or entries) to record the completion of any job(s) during the month.
(f) Prepare the journal entry (or entries) to record the sale of any job(s) during the month.
(g) What is the balance in the Work in Process Inventory account at the end of the month? What does this balance consist of?
(h) What is the amount of over- or underapplied overhead?

(e) Job 25, $37,400
Job 26, $46,600

Prepare entries in a job order cost system and partial income statement.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5, 6), **AN**

P15-2B For the year ended December 31, 2012, the job cost sheets of Dosey Company contained the following data.

Job Number	Explanation	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead	Total Costs
7650	Balance 1/1	$18,000	$20,000	$25,000	$ 63,000
	Current year's costs	32,000	36,000	45,000	113,000
7651	Balance 1/1	12,000	16,000	20,000	48,000
	Current year's costs	30,000	40,000	50,000	120,000
7652	Current year's costs	35,000	68,000	85,000	188,000

Other data:

1. Raw materials inventory totaled $20,000 on January 1. During the year, $100,000 of raw materials were purchased on account.
2. Finished goods on January 1 consisted of Job No. 7648 for $93,000 and Job No. 7649 for $62,000.
3. Job No. 7650 and Job No. 7651 were completed during the year.
4. Job Nos. 7648, 7649, and 7650 were sold on account for $490,000.
5. Manufacturing overhead incurred on account totaled $135,000.
6. Other manufacturing overhead consisted of indirect materials $12,000, indirect labor $16,000 and depreciation on factory machinery $19,500.

Instructions

(a) (1) $111,000
(4) $180,000
Unfinished job 7652, $188,000

(a) Prove the agreement of Work in Process Inventory with job cost sheets pertaining to unfinished work. (*Hint:* Use a single T account for Work in Process Inventory.) Calculate each of the following, then post each to the T account: (1) beginning balance, (2) direct materials, (3) direct labor, (4) manufacturing overhead, and (5) completed jobs.

(b) Amount = $2,500

(b) Prepare the adjusting entry for manufacturing overhead, assuming the balance is allocated entirely to cost of goods sold.

(c) $156,500

(c) Determine the gross profit to be reported for 2012.

Prepare entries in a job order cost system and cost of goods manufactured schedule.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5), **AP**

P15-3B Robert Perez is a contractor specializing in custom-built jacuzzis. On May 1, 2012, his ledger contains the following data.

Raw Materials Inventory	$30,000
Work in Process Inventory	12,200
Manufacturing Overhead	2,500 (dr.)

The Manufacturing Overhead account has debit totals of $12,500 and credit totals of $10,000. Subsidiary data for Work in Process Inventory on May 1 include:

Job Cost Sheets

Job by Customer	Direct Materials	Direct Labor	Manufacturing Overhead
Stiner	$2,500	$2,000	$1,400
Alton	2,000	1,200	840
Herman	900	800	560
	$5,400	$4,000	$2,800

During May, the following costs were incurred: raw materials purchased on account $4,000, labor paid $7,000, and manufacturing overhead paid $1,400.

A summary of materials requisition slips and time tickets for the month of May reveals the following.

Job by Customer	Materials Requisition Slips	Time Tickets
Stiner	$ 500	$ 400
Alton	600	1,000
Herman	2,300	1,300
Smith	1,900	2,300
	5,300	5,000
General use	1,500	2,000
	$6,800	$7,000

Overhead was charged to jobs on the basis of $0.70 per dollar of direct labor cost. The jacuzzis for customers Stiner, Alton, and Herman were completed during May. The three jacuzzis were sold for a total of $36,000.

Instructions

(a) Prepare journal entries for the May transactions: (i) for purchase of raw materials, factory labor costs incurred, and manufacturing overhead costs incurred; (ii) assignment of raw materials, labor, and overhead to production; and (iii) completion of jobs and sale of goods.
(b) Post the entries to Work in Process Inventory.
(c) Reconcile the balance in Work in Process Inventory with the costs of unfinished jobs.
(d) Prepare a cost of goods manufactured schedule for May.

(d) Cost of goods manufactured $20,190

P15-4B Net Play Manufacturing uses a job order cost system in each of its three manufacturing departments. Manufacturing overhead is applied to jobs on the basis of direct labor cost in Department A, direct labor hours in Department B, and machine hours in Department C.

Compute predetermined overhead rates, apply overhead, and calculate under- or overapplied overhead.
(SO 4, 6), **AP**

In establishing the predetermined overhead rates for 2012, the following estimates were made for the year.

	Department		
	A	**B**	**C**
Manufacturing overhead	$720,000	$640,000	$900,000
Direct labor cost	$600,000	$100,000	$600,000
Direct labor hours	50,000	40,000	40,000
Machine hours	100,000	120,000	150,000

During January, the job cost sheets showed the following costs and production data.

	Department		
	A	**B**	**C**
Direct materials used	$92,000	$86,000	$64,000
Direct labor cost	$48,000	$35,000	$50,400
Manufacturing overhead incurred	$60,000	$60,000	$72,100
Direct labor hours	4,000	3,500	4,200
Machine hours	8,000	10,500	12,600

Instructions

(a) Compute the predetermined overhead rate for each department.
(b) Compute the total manufacturing costs assigned to jobs in January in each department.
(c) Compute the under- or overapplied overhead for each department at January 31.

(a) 120%, $16, $6
(b) $197,600, $177,000, $190,000
(c) $2,400 $4,000, $(3,500)

P15-5B Bell Company's fiscal year ends on June 30. The following accounts are found in its job order cost accounting system for the first month of the new fiscal year.

Analyze manufacturing accounts and determine missing amounts.
(SO 2, 3, 4, 5, 6), **AN**

Raw Materials Inventory

July 1	Beginning balance	19,000	July 31	Requisitions	(a)
31	Purchases	90,400			
July 31	Ending balance	(b)			

Work in Process Inventory

July 1	Beginning balance	(c)	July 31	Jobs completed	(f)
31	Direct materials	80,000			
31	Direct labor	(d)			
31	Overhead	(e)			
July 31	Ending balance	(g)			

Finished Goods Inventory

July 1	Beginning balance	(h)	July 31	Cost of goods sold	(j)
31	Completed jobs	(i)			
July 31	Ending balance	(k)			

Factory Labor

July 31	Factory wages	(l)	July 31	Wages assigned	(m)

Manufacturing Overhead

July 31	Indirect materials	8,900	July 31	Overhead applied	117,000
31	Indirect labor	16,000			
31	Other overhead	(n)			

Other data:

1. On July 1, two jobs were in process: Job No. 4085 and Job No. 4086, with costs of $19,000 and $8,200, respectively.
2. During July, Job Nos. 4087, 4088, and 4089 were started. On July 31, only Job No. 4089 was unfinished. This job had charges for direct materials $2,000 and direct labor $1,500, plus manufacturing overhead. Manufacturing overhead was applied at the rate of 130% of direct labor cost.
3. On July 1, Job No. 4084, costing $145,000, was in the finished goods warehouse. On July 31, Job No. 4088, costing $138,000, was in finished goods.
4. Overhead was $3,000 underapplied in July.

(d) $ 90,000
(f) $308,750
(l) $106,000

Instructions

List the letters (a) through (n) and indicate the amount pertaining to each letter. Show computations.

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Waterways Continuing Problem

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Waterways Problem from Chapter 14.)

WCP15 Waterways has two major public-park projects to provide with comprehensive irrigation in one of its service locations this month. Job J57 and Job K52 involve 15 acres of landscaped terrain which will require special-order sprinkler heads to meet the specifications of the project. This problem asks you to help Waterways use a job order cost system to account for production of these parts.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to find the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP15-1 Khan Products Company uses a job order cost system. For a number of months, there has been an ongoing rift between the sales department and the production department concerning a special-order product, TC-1. TC-1 is a seasonal product that is manufactured in batches of 1,000 units. TC-1 is sold at cost plus a markup of 40% of cost.

The sales department is unhappy because fluctuating unit production costs significantly affect selling prices. Sales personnel complain that this has caused excessive customer complaints and the loss of considerable orders for TC-1.

The production department maintains that each job order must be fully costed on the basis of the costs incurred during the period in which the goods are produced. Production personnel maintain that the only real solution to the problem is for the sales department to increase sales in the slack periods.

Andrea Parley, president of the company, asks you as the company accountant to collect quarterly data for the past year on TC-1. From the cost accounting system, you accumulate the following production quantity and cost data.

Costs	Quarter 1	2	3	4
Direct materials	$100,000	$220,000	$ 80,000	$200,000
Direct labor	60,000	132,000	48,000	120,000
Manufacturing overhead	105,000	153,000	97,000	125,000
Total	$265,000	$505,000	$225,000	$445,000
Production in batches	5	11	4	10
Unit cost (per batch)	$ 53,000	$ 45,909	$ 56,250	$ 44,500

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following questions.

(a) What manufacturing cost element is responsible for the fluctuating unit costs? Why?
(b) What is your recommended solution to the problem of fluctuating unit cost?
(c) Restate the quarterly data on the basis of your recommended solution.

MANAGERIAL ANALYSIS

BYP15-2 In the course of routine checking of all journal entries prior to preparing year-end reports, Betty Eller discovered several strange entries. She recalled that the president's son Joe had come in to help out during an especially busy time and that he had recorded some journal entries. She was relieved that there were only a few of his entries, and even more relieved that he had included rather lengthy explanations. The entries Joe made were:

1.

Work in Process Inventory	25,000	
Cash		25,000

(This is for materials put into process. I don't find the record that we paid for these, so I'm crediting Cash, because I know we'll have to pay for them sooner or later.)

2.

Manufacturing Overhead	12,000	
Cash		12,000

(This is for bonuses paid to salespeople. I know they're part of overhead, and I can't find an account called "Non-factory Overhead" or "Other Overhead" so I'm putting it in Manufacturing Overhead. I have the check stubs, so I know we paid these.)

3.

Wages Expense	120,000	
Cash		120,000

(This is for the factory workers' wages. I have a note that payroll taxes are $18,000. I still think that's part of wages expense, and that we'll have to pay it all in cash sooner or later, so I credited Cash for the wages and the taxes.)

4.

Work in Process Inventory	3,000	
Raw Materials Inventory		3,000

(This is for the glue used in the factory. I know we used this to make the products, even though we didn't use very much on any one of the products. I got it out of inventory, so I credited an inventory account.)

Instructions

(a) How should Joe have recorded each of the four events?
(b) If the entry was not corrected, which financial statements (income statement or balance sheet) would be affected? What balances would be overstated or understated?

REAL-WORLD FOCUS

BYP15-3 Founded in 1970, Parlex Corporation is a world leader in the design and manufacture of flexible interconnect products. Utilizing proprietary and patented technologies, Parlex produces custom flexible interconnects including flexible circuits, polymer thick film, laminated cables, and value-added assemblies for sophisticated electronics used in automotive, telecommunications, computer, diversified electronics, and aerospace applications. In addition to manufacturing sites in Methuen, Massachusetts; Salem, New Hampshire; Cranston, Rhode Island; San Jose, California; Shanghai, China; Isle of Wight, UK; and Empalme, Mexico, Parlex has logistic support centers and strategic alliances throughout North America, Asia, and Europe.

The following information was provided in the company's annual report.

PARLEX COMPANY
Notes to the Financial Statements

The Company's products are manufactured on a job order basis to customers' specifications. Customers submit requests for quotations on each job, and the Company prepares bids based on its own cost estimates. The Company attempts to reflect the impact of changing costs when establishing prices. However, during the past several years, the market conditions for flexible circuits and the resulting price sensitivity haven't always allowed this to transpire. Although still not satisfactory, the Company was able to reduce the cost of products sold as a percentage of sales to 85% this year versus 87% that was experienced in the two immediately preceding years. Management continues to focus on improving operational efficiency and further reducing costs.

Instructions

(a) Parlex management discusses the job order cost system employed by their company. What are several advantages of using the job order approach to costing?

(b) Contrast the products produced in a job order environment, like Parlex, to those produced when process cost systems are used.

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING ON THE WEB

BYP15-4 The Institute of Management Accountants sponsors a certification for management accountants, allowing them to obtain the title of Certified Management Accountant.

Address: **www.imanet.org**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Go to the site shown above.
2. Choose **CMA Certification**, and then, **Earning & Maintaining Your Credential**.

Instructions

(a) What is the experience qualification requirement?

(b) How many hours of continuing education are required, and what types of courses qualify?

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP15-5 You are the management accountant for Williams Manufacturing. Your company does custom carpentry work and uses a job order costing system. Williams sends detailed job cost sheets to its customers, along with an invoice. The job cost sheets show the date materials were used, the dollar cost of materials, and the hours and cost of labor. A predetermined overhead application rate is used, and the total overhead applied is also listed.

Nancy Kopay is a customer who recently had custom cabinets installed. Along with her check in payment for the work done, she included a letter. She thanked the company for including the detailed cost information but questioned why overhead was estimated. She stated that she would be interested in knowing exactly what costs were included in overhead, and she thought that other customers would, too.

Instructions

Prepare a letter to Ms. Kopay (address: 123 Cedar Lane, Altoona, KS 66651) and tell her why you did not send her information on exact costs of overhead included in her job. Respond to her suggestion that you provide this information.

ETHICS CASE

BYP15-6 LRF Printing provides printing services to many different corporate clients. Although LRF bids most jobs, some jobs, particularly new ones, are negotiated on a "cost-plus" basis. Cost-plus means that the buyer is willing to pay the actual cost plus a return (profit) on these costs to LRF.

Alice Reiley, controller for LRF, has recently returned from a meeting where LRF's president stated that he wanted her to find a way to charge more costs to any project that was on a cost-plus basis. The president noted that the company needed more profits to meet its stated goals this period. By charging more costs to the cost-plus projects and therefore fewer costs to the jobs that were bid, the company should be able to increase its profit for the current year.

Alice knew why the president wanted to take this action. Rumors were that he was looking for a new position and if the company reported strong profits, the president's opportunities would be enhanced. Alice also recognized that she could probably increase the cost of certain jobs by changing the basis used to allocate manufacturing overhead.

Instructions

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?
(b) What are the ethical issues in this situation?
(c) What would you do if you were Alice Reiley?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP15-7 Many of you will work for a small business. Some of you will even own your own business. In order to operate a small business, you will need a good understanding of managerial accounting, as well as many other skills. Much information is available to assist people who are interested in starting a new business. A great place to start is the website provided by the Small Business Administration, which is an agency of the federal government whose purpose is to support small business.

Instructions

Go to **www.sba.gov** and in the Small Business Planner, Plan Your Business link, review the material under "Get Ready." Answer the following questions.
(a) What are some of the characteristics required of a small business owner?
(b) What are the top 10 reasons given for business failure?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 800 Jobs Won, Money Lost **Q:** What type of costs do you think the company had been underestimating? **A:** It is most likely that the company failed to estimate and track overhead. In a highly diversified company, overhead associated with the diesel locomotive jobs may have been "lost" in the total overhead pool for the entire company.

p. 811 Sales Are Nice, but Service Revenue Pays the Bills **Q:** Explain why GE would use job order costing to keep track of the cost of repairing a malfunctioning engine for a major airline. **A:** GE operates in a competitive environment. Other companies offer competing bids to win service contracts on GE's airplane engines. GE needs to know what it costs to repair engines, so that it can present competitive bids while still generating a reasonable profit.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. a **2.** c **3.** b **4.** c **5.** c **6.** d **7.** d **8.** b **9.** a **10.** d **11.** b ($180,000 × 80%) **12.** c **13.** b **14.** c **15.** b

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 16

PROCESS COSTING

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 843 ◯ p. 846 ◯ p. 849 ◯ p. 854 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 866 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Understand who uses process cost systems.
2. Explain the similarities and differences between job order cost and process cost systems.
3. Explain the flow of costs in a process cost system.
4. Make the journal entries to assign manufacturing costs in a process cost system.
5. Compute equivalent units.
6. Explain the four steps necessary to prepare a production cost report.
7. Prepare a production cost report.

the navigator

feature story

BEN & JERRY'S TRACKS ITS MIX-UPS

Ben & Jerry's Homemade, Inc. (*www.benjerry.com*) is one of the "hottest" and "coolest" U.S. companies. Based in Waterbury, Vermont, the ice cream company that started out of a garage in 1978 is now a public company.

Making ice cream is a process—a movement of product from a mixing department to a prepping department to a pint department. The mixing department is where the ice cream is created. In the prep area, the production process adds extras such as cherries and walnuts to make plain ice cream into "Cherry Garcia," Ben & Jerry's most popular flavor, or fudge-covered waffle cone pieces and a swirl of caramel for "Stephen Colbert's Americone Dream." The pint department is where the ice cream is actually put into containers. As the product is processed from one department to the next, the appropriate materials, labor, and overhead are added to it.

"The incoming ingredients from the shipping and receiving departments are stored in certain locations, either in a freezer or dry warehouse," says Beecher Eurich, staff accountant. "As ingredients get added, so do the costs associated with them." How much ice cream is produced? Running plants around the clock, the company produces 18 million gallons a year.

With the company's process costing system, Eurich can tell you how much a certain batch of ice cream costs to make—its materials, labor, and overhead in each of the production departments. She generates reports for the production department heads, but makes sure not to overdo it. "You can get bogged down in numbers," says Eurich. "If you're generating a report that no one can use, then that's a waste of time."

It's more likely, though, that Ben & Jerry's production people want to know how efficient they are. Why? Many own stock in the company.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 16 . . .

- **Choosing a Cost Driver** *(p. 845)*
- **Keeping Score for the Xbox** *(p. 849)*

preview of chapter 16

The cost accounting system used by companies such as *Ben & Jerry's* is **process cost accounting**. In contrast to job order cost accounting, which focuses on the individual job, process cost accounting focuses on the *processes* involved in mass-producing products that are identical or very similar in nature. The primary objective of the chapter is to explain and illustrate process costing.

The content and organization of this chapter are as follows.

Process Costing

Nature of Process Cost Systems	Equivalent Units	Comprehensive Example of Process Costing
• Uses • Service companies • Similarities and differences • Process cost flow • Assigning manufacturing costs	• Weighted-average method • Refinements • Production cost report	• Physical units • Equivalent units of production • Unit production costs • Cost reconciliation schedule • Production cost report • Costing systems—Final comments

the navigator

The Nature of Process Cost Systems

USES OF PROCESS COST SYSTEMS

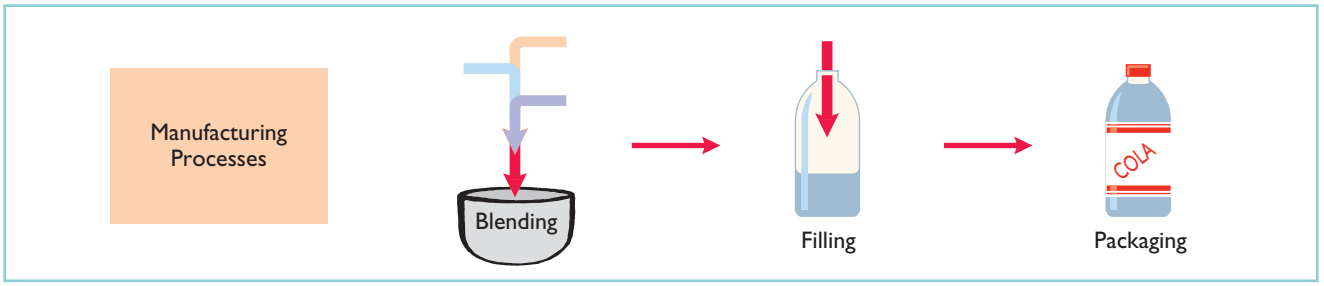
study objective 1

Understand who uses process cost systems.

Companies use **process cost systems** to apply costs to similar products that are mass-produced in a continuous fashion. Ben & Jerry's uses a process cost system: Production of the ice cream, once it begins, continues until the ice cream emerges, and the processing is the same for the entire run—with precisely the same amount of materials, labor, and overhead. Each finished pint of ice cream is indistinguishable from another.

A company such as USX uses process costing in the manufacturing of steel. Kellogg and General Mills use process costing for cereal production; ExxonMobil uses process costing for its oil refining. Sherwin Williams uses process costing for its paint products. At a bottling company like Coca-Cola, the manufacturing process begins with the blending of ingredients. Next, automated machinery moves the bottles into position and fills them. The production process then caps, packages, and forwards the bottles to the finished goods warehouse. Illustration 16-1 shows this process.

Illustration 16-1
Manufacturing processes



For Coca-Cola, as well as the other companies just mentioned, once production begins, it continues until the finished product emerges, and each unit of finished product is like every other unit.

In comparison, a job order cost system assigns costs to a *specific job*. Examples are the construction of a customized home, the making of a motion picture, or the manufacturing of a specialized machine. Illustration 16-2 provides examples of companies that primarily use either a process cost system or a job order cost system.

Illustration 16-2 Process cost and job order cost companies and products

Process Cost System Company	Product	Job Order Cost System Company	Product
Coca-Cola, PepsiCo	Soft drinks	Young & Rubicam, J. Walter Thompson	Advertising
ExxonMobil, Royal Dutch Shell	Oil	Walt Disney, Warner Brothers	Motion pictures
Intel, Advanced Micro Devices	Computer chips	Center Ice Consultants, Ice Pro	Ice rinks
Dow Chemical, DuPont	Chemicals	Kaiser, Mayo Clinic	Patient health care

PROCESS COSTING FOR SERVICE COMPANIES

Frequently, when we think of service companies, we think of specific, nonroutine tasks, such as rebuilding an automobile engine, providing consulting services on a business acquisition, or working on a major lawsuit. However, many service companies specialize in performing repetitive, routine aspects of a particular business. For example, auto-care vendors such as Jiffy Lube focus on the routine aspects of car care. H&R Block focuses on the routine aspects of basic tax practice, and many large law firms focus on routine legal services, such as uncomplicated divorces. Service companies that provide specific, nonroutine services will probably benefit from using a job order cost system. Those that perform routine, repetitive services will probably be better off with a process cost system.

SIMILARITIES AND DIFFERENCES BETWEEN JOB ORDER COST AND PROCESS COST SYSTEMS

study objective 2

Explain the similarities and differences between job order cost and process cost systems.

In a job order cost system, companies assign costs to each job. In a process cost system, companies track costs through a series of connected manufacturing processes or departments, rather than by individual jobs. Thus, companies use process cost systems when they produce a large volume of uniform or relatively homogeneous products. Illustration 16-3 (page 842) shows the basic flow of costs in these two systems.

The following analysis highlights the basic similarities and differences between these two systems.

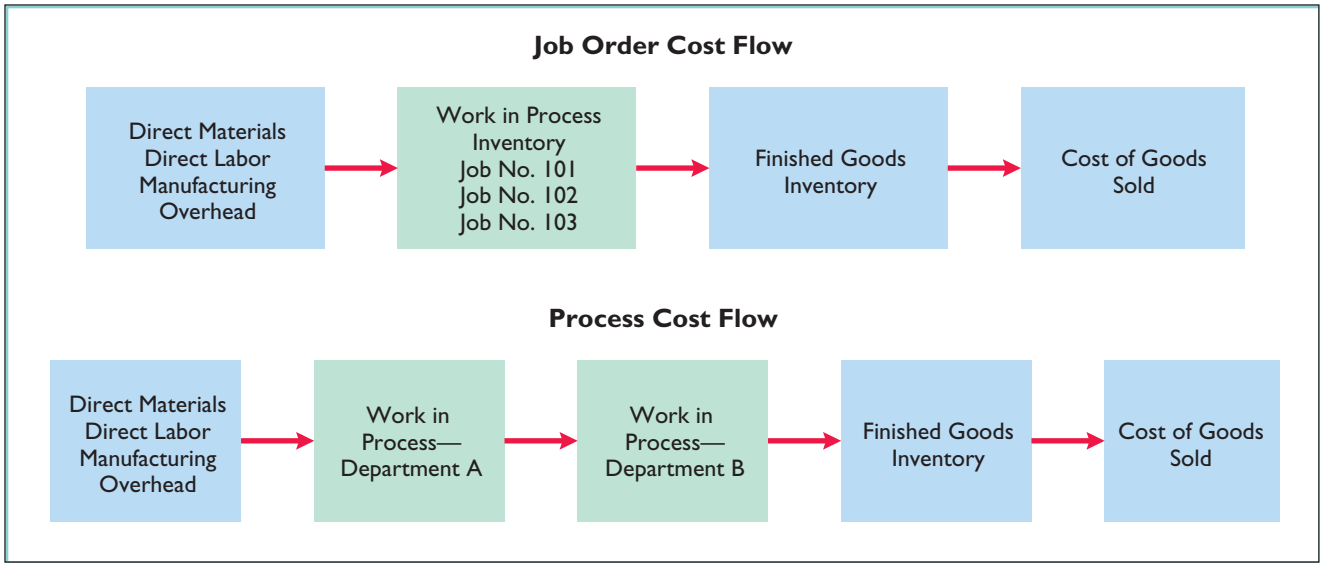


Illustration 16-3 Job order cost and process cost flow

Similarities

Job order cost and process cost systems are similar in three ways:

1. **The manufacturing cost elements.** Both costing systems track three manufacturing cost elements—direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead.
2. **The accumulation of the costs of materials, labor, and overhead.** Both costing systems debit raw materials to Raw Materials Inventory; factory labor to Factory Labor; and manufacturing overhead costs to Manufacturing Overhead.
3. **The flow of costs.** As noted above, both systems accumulate all manufacturing costs by debits to Raw Materials Inventory, Factory Labor, and Manufacturing Overhead. Both systems then assign these costs to the same accounts—Work in Process, Finished Goods Inventory, and Cost of Goods Sold. **The methods of assigning costs, however, differ significantly.** These differences are explained and illustrated later in the chapter.

Differences

The differences between a job order cost and a process cost system are as follows.

1. **The number of work in process accounts used.** A job order cost system uses only one work in process account. A process cost system uses multiple work in process accounts.
2. **Documents used to track costs.** A job order cost system charges costs to individual jobs and summarizes them in a job cost sheet. A process cost system summarizes costs in a production cost report for each department.
3. **The point at which costs are totaled.** A job order cost system totals costs when the job is completed. A process cost system totals costs at the end of a period of time.
4. **Unit cost computations.** In a job order cost system, the unit cost is the total cost per job divided by the units produced. In a process cost system, the unit cost is total manufacturing costs for the period divided by the units produced during the period.

Illustration 16-4 summarizes the major differences between a job order cost and a process cost system.

Features	Job Order Cost System	Process Cost System
Work in process accounts	• One work in process account	• Multiple work in process accounts
Documents used	• Job cost sheets	• Production cost reports
Determination of total manufacturing costs	• Each job	• Each period
Unit-cost computations	• Cost of each job ÷ Units produced for the job	• Total manufacturing costs ÷ Units produced during the period

Illustration 16-4 Job order versus process cost systems

before you go on...

Do it! Indicate whether each of the following statements is true or false.

1. A law firm is likely to use process costing for major lawsuits.
2. A manufacturer of paintballs is likely to use process costing.
3. Both job order and process costing determine total costs at the end of a period of time.
4. Process costing does not keep track of manufacturing overhead.

Solution

1. false. 2. true. 3. false. 4. false.

Related exercise material: **Do it!** **16-1** and **E16-1.**

COMPARE JOB ORDER AND PROCESS COST SYSTEMS

Action Plan

- Use job order costing in situations where unit costs are high, unit volume is low, and products are unique.
- Use process costing when there is a large volume of relatively homogeneous products.

the navigator

PROCESS COST FLOW

study objective 3
Explain the flow of costs in a process cost system.

Illustration 16-5 shows the flow of costs in the process cost system for Tyler Company. Tyler Company manufactures automatic can openers that it sells to retail outlets. Manufacturing consists of two processes: machining and assembly. The Machining Department shapes, hones, and drills the raw materials. The Assembly Department assembles and packages the parts.

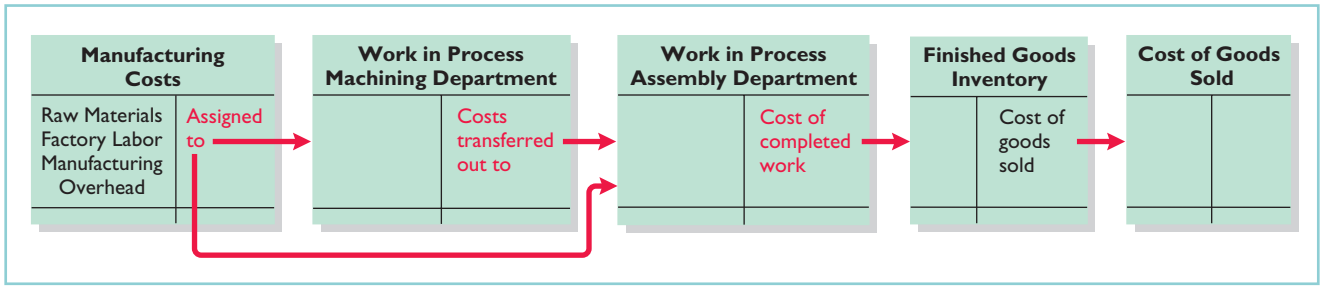


Illustration 16-5 Flow of costs in process cost system

As the flow of costs indicates, the company can add materials, labor, and manufacturing overhead in both the Machining and Assembly departments. When it finishes its work, the Machining Department transfers the partially

completed units to the Assembly Department. The Assembly Department finishes the goods and then transfers them to the finished goods inventory. Upon sale, Tyler removes the goods from the finished goods inventory. Within each department, a similar set of activities is performed on each unit processed.

ASSIGNING MANUFACTURING COSTS–JOURNAL ENTRIES

study objective 4

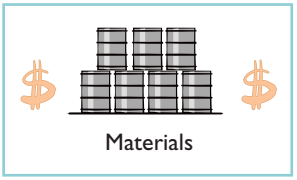
Make the journal entries to assign manufacturing costs in a process cost system.

As indicated, the accumulation of the costs of materials, labor, and manufacturing overhead is the same in a process cost system as in a job order cost system. That is, both systems follow these procedures:

- Companies debit all raw materials to Raw Materials Inventory at the time of purchase.
- They debit all factory labor to Factory Labor as the labor costs are incurred.
- They debit overhead costs to Manufacturing Overhead as these costs are incurred.

However, the assignment of the three manufacturing cost elements to Work in Process in a process cost system is different from a job order cost system. Here we'll look at how companies assign these manufacturing cost elements in a process cost system.

Materials Costs



All raw materials issued for production are a materials cost to the producing department. A process cost system may use materials requisition slips, but **it generally requires fewer requisitions than in a job order cost system, because the materials are used for processes rather than for specific jobs** and therefore typically are for larger quantities.

At the beginning of the first process, a company usually adds most of the materials needed for production. However, other materials may be added at various points. For example, in the manufacture of Hershey candy bars, the chocolate and other ingredients are added at the beginning of the first process, and the wrappers and cartons are added at the end of the packaging process. Tyler Company adds materials at the beginning of each process. Tyler makes the following entry to record the materials used:

Work in Process—Machining	XXXX	
Work in Process—Assembly	XXXX	
Raw Materials Inventory		XXXX
(To record materials used)		

Ice cream maker Ben & Jerry's adds materials in three departments: milk and flavoring in the mixing department, extras such as cherries and walnuts in the prepping department, and cardboard containers in the pinting (packaging) department.

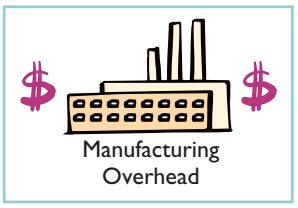
Factory Labor Costs

In a process cost system, as in a job order cost system, companies may use time tickets to determine the cost of labor assignable to production departments. Since they assign labor costs to a process rather than a job, they can obtain, from the payroll register or departmental payroll summaries, the labor cost chargeable to a process.

Labor costs for the Machining Department will include the wages of employees who shape, hone, and drill the raw materials. The entry to assign these costs for Tyler Company is:

Work in Process—Machining	XXXX	
Work in Process—Assembly	XXXX	
Factory Labor		XXXX
(To assign factory labor to production)		

Manufacturing Overhead Costs



The objective in assigning overhead in a process cost system is to allocate the overhead costs to the production departments on an objective and equitable basis. That basis is the activity that "drives" or causes the costs. A primary driver of overhead costs in continuous manufacturing operations is **machine time used**, not direct labor. Thus, companies **widely use machine hours** in allocating manufacturing overhead costs using predetermined overhead rates. Tyler's entry to allocate overhead to the two processes is:

Work in Process—Machining	XXXX	
Work in Process—Assembly	XXXX	
Manufacturing Overhead		XXXX
(To assign overhead to production)		

Management Insight

Choosing a Cost Driver

In one of its automated cost centers, Caterpillar feeds work into the cost center, where robotic machines process it and transfer the finished job to the next cost center without human intervention. One person tends all of the machines and spends more time maintaining machines than operating them. In such cases, overhead rates based on direct labor hours may be misleading. Surprisingly, some companies continue to assign manufacturing overhead on the basis of direct labor despite the fact that there is no cause-and-effect relationship between labor and overhead.

? What is the result if a company uses the wrong "cost driver" to assign manufacturing overhead? (See page 887.)

Transfer to Next Department

At the end of the month, Tyler needs an entry to record the cost of the goods transferred out of the Machining Department. In this case, the transfer is to the Assembly Department, and Tyler makes the following entry.

Work in Process—Assembly	XXXXX	
Work in Process—Machining		XXXXX
(To record transfer of units to the Assembly Department)		

Transfer to Finished Goods

When the Assembly Department completes the units, it transfers them to the finished goods warehouse. The entry for this transfer is as follows.

Finished Goods Inventory	XXXXX	
Work in Process—Assembly		XXXXX
(To record transfer of units to finished goods)		

Transfer to Cost of Goods Sold

When Tyler sells the finished goods, it records the cost of goods sold as follows.

Cost of Goods Sold	XXXXX	
Finished Goods Inventory		XXXXX
(To record cost of units sold)		

before you go on...

MANUFACTURING COSTS IN PROCESS COSTING

Do it! Ruth Company manufactures ZEBO through two processes: blending and bottling. In June, raw materials used were Blending $18,000 and Bottling $4,000. Factory labor costs were Blending $12,000 and Bottling $5,000. Manufacturing overhead costs were Blending $6,000 and Bottling $2,500. The company transfers units completed at a cost of $19,000 in the Blending Department to the Bottling Department. The Bottling Department transfers units completed at a cost of $11,000 to Finished Goods. Journalize the assignment of these costs to the two processes and the transfer of units as appropriate.

Action Plan

- In process cost accounting, keep separate work in process accounts for each process.
- When the costs are assigned to production, debit the separate work in process accounts.
- Transfer cost of completed units to the next process or to Finished Goods.

Solution

The entries are:

Work in Process—Blending	18,000	
Work in Process—Bottling	4,000	
Raw Materials Inventory		22,000
(To record materials used)		
Work in Process—Blending	12,000	
Work in Process—Bottling	5,000	
Factory Labor		17,000
(To assign factory labor to production)		
Work in Process—Blending	6,000	
Work in Process—Bottling	2,500	
Manufacturing Overhead		8,500
(To assign overhead to production)		
Work in Process—Bottling	19,000	
Work in Process—Blending		19,000
(To record transfer of units to the Bottling Department)		
Finished Goods Inventory	11,000	
Work in Process—Bottling		11,000
(To record transfer of units to finished goods)		

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE16-1, BE16-2, BE16-3, Do it! 16-2, E16-2,** and **E16-4.**

Equivalent Units

study objective 5
Compute equivalent units.

Suppose you have a work-study job in the office of your college's president, and she asks you to compute the cost of instruction per full-time equivalent student at your college. The college's vice president for finance provides the following information.

Illustration 16-6
Information for full-time student example

Costs:	
Total cost of instruction	$9,000,000
Student population:	
Full-time students	900
Part-time students	1,000

Part-time students take 60% of the classes of a full-time student during the year. To compute the number of full-time equivalent students per year, you would make the following computation.

Illustration 16-7
Full-time equivalent unit computation

Full-time Students	+	Equivalent Units of Part-time Students	=	Full-time Equivalent Students
900	+	(60% × 1,000)	=	1,500

The cost of instruction per full-time equivalent student is therefore the total cost of instruction ($9,000,000) divided by the number of full-time equivalent students (1,500), which is $6,000 ($9,000,000 ÷ 1,500).

A process cost system uses the same idea, called equivalent units of production. **Equivalent units of production** measure the work done during the period, expressed in fully completed units. Companies use this measure to determine the cost per unit of completed product.

WEIGHTED-AVERAGE METHOD

The formula to compute equivalent units of production is as follows.

Illustration 16-8
Equivalent units of production formula

Units Completed and Transferred Out	+	Equivalent Units of Ending Work in Process	=	Equivalent Units of Production

To better understand this concept of equivalent units, consider the following two separate examples.

Example 1: In a specific period the entire output of Sullivan Company's Blending Department consists of ending work in process of 4,000 units which are 60% complete as to materials, labor, and overhead. The equivalent units of production for the Blending Department are therefore 2,400 units (4,000 × 60%).

Example 2: The output of Kori Company's Packaging Department during the period consists of 10,000 units completed and transferred out, and 5,000 units in ending work in process which are 70% completed. The equivalent units of production are therefore 13,500 [10,000 + (5,000 × 70%)].

This method of computing equivalent units is referred to as the **weighted-average method**. It considers the degree of completion (weighting) of the units completed and transferred out and the ending work in process.

REFINEMENTS ON THE WEIGHTED-AVERAGE METHOD

Kellogg Company has produced Eggo® Waffles since 1970. Three departments produce these waffles: Mixing, Baking, and Freezing/Packaging. The Mixing Department combines dry ingredients, including flour, salt, and baking powder, with liquid ingredients, including eggs and vegetable oil, to make waffle batter. Illustration 16-9 provides information related to the Mixing Department at the end of June.

Illustration 16-9
Information for Mixing Department

MIXING DEPARTMENT			
		Percentage Complete	
	Physical Units	Materials	Conversion Costs
Work in process, June 1	100,000	100%	70%
Started into production	800,000		
Total units	900,000		
Units transferred out	700,000		
Work in process, June 30	200,000	100%	60%
Total units	900,000		

Helpful Hint When are separate unit cost computations needed for materials and conversion costs? Answer: Whenever the two types of costs do not occur in the process at the same time.

Illustration 16-9 indicates that the beginning work in process is 100% complete as to materials cost and 70% complete as to conversion costs. **Conversion costs are the sum of labor costs and overhead costs.** In other words, Kellogg adds both the dry and liquid ingredients (materials) at the beginning of the waffle-making process, and the conversion costs (labor and overhead) related to the mixing of these ingredients are incurred uniformly and are 70% complete. The ending work in process is 100% complete as to materials cost and 60% complete as to conversion costs.

We then use the Mixing Department information to determine equivalent units. **In computing equivalent units, the beginning work in process is not part of the equivalent-units-of-production formula.** The units transferred out to the Baking Department are fully complete as to both materials and conversion costs. The ending work in process is fully complete as to materials, but only 60% complete as to conversion costs. We therefore need to make **two equivalent unit computations**: one for materials, and the other for conversion costs. Illustration 16-10 shows these computations.

Illustration 16-10
Computation of equivalent units–Mixing Department

Ethics Note An unethical manager might use incorrect completion percentages when determining equivalent units. This results in either raising or lowering costs. Since completion percentages are somewhat subjective, this form of income manipulation can be difficult to detect.

MIXING DEPARTMENT		
	Equivalent Units	
	Materials	Conversion Costs
Units transferred out	700,000	700,000
Work in process, June 30		
200,000 × 100%	200,000	
200,000 × 60%		120,000
Total equivalent units	900,000	820,000

We can refine the earlier formula used to compute equivalent units of production (Illustration 16-8, page 847) to show the computations for materials and for conversion costs, as follows.

Units Completed and Transferred Out–Materials	+	**Equivalent Units of Ending Work in Process–Materials**	=	**Equivalent Units of Production–Materials**
Units Completed and Transferred Out–Conversion Costs	+	**Equivalent Units of Ending Work in Process–Conversion Costs**	=	**Equivalent Units of Production–Conversion Costs**

Illustration 16-11
Refined equivalent units of production formula

Management Insight

Keeping Score for the Xbox

When you are as big and as profitable as Microsoft, you get to a point where continued rapid growth is very difficult. For example, many believe it is unlikely that Microsoft will see much growth in software sales. As a result, the company is looking for new markets, such as the video game market with its Xbox player.

Profitability in the video-game hardware market has been elusive. Microsoft has struggled to control the costs of both manufacturing and distribution. One analyst predicted that Microsoft's "snowballing" costs in the next period could exceed budget by $2.4 billion. Microsoft's Chief Financial Officer blamed the high costs on unexpectedly high volumes, saying, "We pushed market volumes very high in the Xbox business. As a result of that we incurred some costs in the supply chain." Given these issues, and despite its incredible success as a software company, some observers question whether Microsoft will be able to make the changes that are required to become a successful hardware manufacturer.

Source: Rober A. Guth, "Microsoft Net Rises 16%, but Costs Damp Results," *Wall Street Journal* (April 28, 2006).

? In what ways has cost accounting probably become more critical for Microsoft in recent years? (See page 887.)

before you go on...

EQUIVALENT UNITS

Do it! The fabricating department has the following production and cost data for the current month.

Beginning Work in Process	Units Transferred Out	Ending Work in Process
–0–	15,000	10,000

Materials are entered at the beginning of the process. The ending work in process units are 30% complete as to conversion costs. Compute the equivalent units of production for (a) materials and (b) conversion costs.

Action Plan

- To measure the work done during the period, expressed in fully completed units, compute equivalent units of production.
- Use the appropriate formula: Units completed and transferred out + Equivalent units of ending work in process = Equivalent units of production.

Solution

(a) Since materials are entered at the beginning of the process, the equivalent units of ending work in process are 10,000. Thus, 15,000 units + 10,000 units = 25,000 equivalent units of production for materials.

(b) Since ending work in process is only 30% complete as to conversion costs, the equivalent units of ending work in process are 3,000 (30% × 10,000 units). Thus, 15,000 units + 3,000 units = 18,000 equivalent units of production for conversion costs.

Related exercise material: **BE16-5, BE16-10, Do it! 16-3, E16-5, E16-6, E16-8, E16-9, E16-10, E16-11, E16-13, E16-14,** and **E16-15.**

the navigator

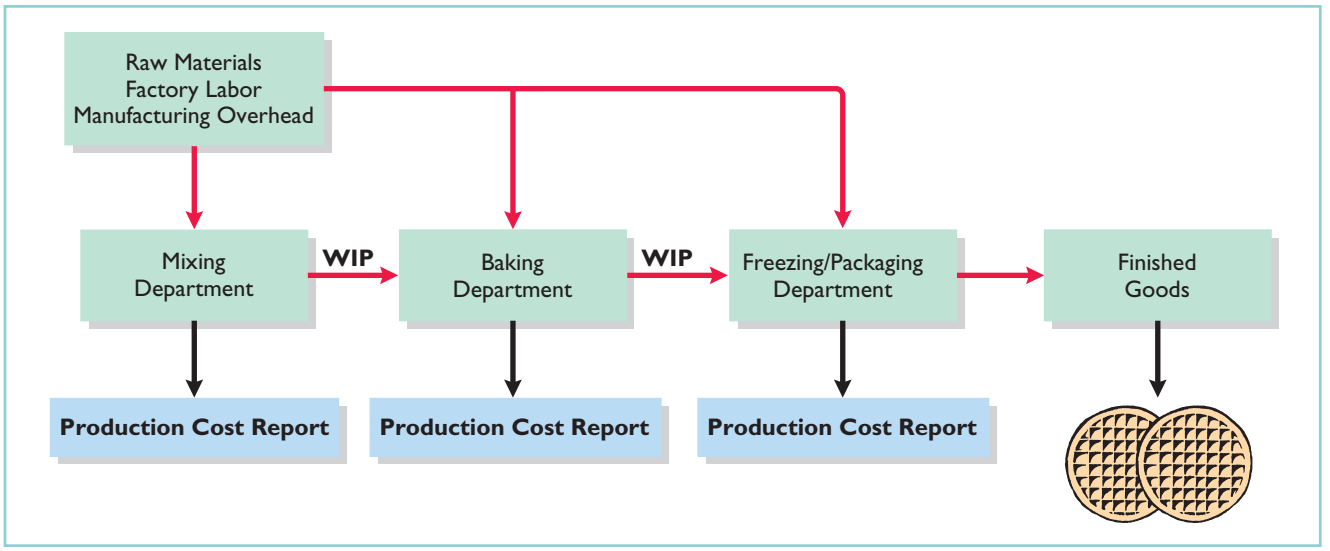
PRODUCTION COST REPORT

study objective 6

Explain the four steps necessary to prepare a production cost report.

As mentioned earlier, companies prepare a production cost report for each department. A **production cost report** is the key document that management uses to understand the activities in a department; it shows the production quantity and cost data related to that department. For example, in producing Eggo® Waffles, Kellogg Company uses three production cost reports: Mixing, Baking, and Freezing/Packaging. Illustration 16-12 shows the flow of costs to make an Eggo® Waffle and the related production cost reports for each department.

Illustration 16-12
Flow of costs in making Eggo® Waffles



In order to complete a production cost report, the company must perform four steps, which, as a whole, make up the process costing system.

1. Compute the physical unit flow.
2. Compute the equivalent units of production.
3. Compute unit production costs.
4. Prepare a cost reconciliation schedule.

The next section explores these steps in an extended example.

Comprehensive Example of Process Costing

Illustration 16-13 shows assumed data for the Mixing Department at Kellogg Company for the month of June. We will use this information to complete a production cost report for the Mixing Department.

COMPUTE THE PHYSICAL UNIT FLOW (STEP 1)

Physical units are the actual units to be accounted for during a period, irrespective of any work performed. To keep track of these units, add the units started (or transferred) into production during the period to the units in process at the beginning of the period. This amount is referred to as the **total units to be accounted for**.

Illustration 16-13
Unit and cost data–Mixing Department

MIXING DEPARTMENT	
Units	
Work in process, June 1	100,000
Direct materials: 100% complete	
Conversion costs: 70% complete	
Units started into production during June	800,000
Units completed and transferred out to Baking Department	700,000
Work in process, June 30	200,000
Direct materials: 100% complete	
Conversion costs: 60% complete	
Costs	
Work in process, June 1	
Direct materials: 100% complete	$ 50,000
Conversion costs: 70% complete	35,000
Cost of work in process, June 1	$ 85,000
Costs incurred during production in June	
Direct materials	$400,000
Conversion costs	170,000
Costs incurred in June	$570,000

The total units then are accounted for by the output of the period. The output consists of units transferred out during the period and any units in process at the end of the period. This amount is referred to as the **total units accounted for**. Illustration 16-14 shows the flow of physical units for Kellogg's Mixing Department for the month of June.

Illustration 16-14
Physical unit flow–Mixing Department

MIXING DEPARTMENT	Physical Units
Units to be accounted for	
Work in process, June 1	100,000
Started (transferred) into production	800,000
Total units	900,000
Units accounted for	
Completed and transferred out	700,000
Work in process, June 30	200,000
Total units	900,000

The records indicate that the Mixing Department must account for 900,000 units. Of this sum, 700,000 units were transferred to the Baking Department and 200,000 units were still in process.

COMPUTE EQUIVALENT UNITS OF PRODUCTION (STEP 2)

Once the physical flow of the units is established, Kellogg must measure the Mixing Department's productivity in terms of equivalent units of production. The Mixing Department adds materials at the beginning of the process, and it incurs conversion costs uniformly during the process. Thus, we need two computations of equivalent units: one for materials and one for conversion costs. The equivalent unit computation is as follows.

Helpful Hint Materials are not always added at the beginning of the process. For example, materials are sometimes added uniformly during the process.

Illustration 16-15
Computation of equivalent units–Mixing Department

Helpful Hint Remember that we ignore the beginning work in process in this computation.

	Equivalent Units	
	Materials	**Conversion Costs**
Units transferred out	700,000	700,000
Work in process, June 30		
200,000 × 100%	200,000	
200,000 × 60%		120,000
Total equivalent units	900,000	820,000

COMPUTE UNIT PRODUCTION COSTS (STEP 3)

Armed with the knowledge of the equivalent units of production, we can now compute the unit production costs. **Unit production costs** are costs expressed in terms of equivalent units of production. When equivalent units of production are different for materials and conversion costs, we compute three unit costs: (1) materials, (2) conversion, and (3) total manufacturing.

The computation of total materials cost related to Eggo® Waffles is as follows.

Illustration 16-16
Total materials cost computation

Work in process, June 1	
Direct materials cost	$ 50,000
Costs added to production during June	
Direct materials cost	400,000
Total materials cost	$450,000

The computation of unit materials cost is as follows.

Illustration 16-17
Unit materials cost computation

Total Materials Cost	÷	Equivalent Units of Materials	=	Unit Materials Cost
$450,000	÷	900,000	=	$0.50

Illustration 16-18 shows the computation of total conversion costs.

Illustration 16-18
Total conversion costs computation

Work in process, June 1	
Conversion costs	$ 35,000
Costs added to production during June	
Conversion costs	170,000
Total conversion costs	$205,000

The computation of unit conversion cost is as follows.

Illustration 16-19
Unit conversion cost computation

Total Conversion Costs	÷	Equivalent Units of Conversion Costs	=	Unit Conversion Cost
$205,000	÷	820,000	=	$0.25

Total manufacturing cost per unit is therefore computed as shown in Illustration 16-20.

Unit Materials Cost	+	Unit Conversion Cost	=	Total Manufacturing Cost per Unit
$0.50	+	$0.25	=	$0.75

Illustration 16-20 Total manufacturing cost per unit

PREPARE A COST RECONCILIATION SCHEDULE (STEP 4)

We are now ready to determine the cost of goods transferred out of the Mixing Department to the Baking Department and the costs in ending work in process. Kellogg charged total costs of $655,000 to the Mixing Department in June, calculated as follows.

Costs to be accounted for	
Work in process, June 1	$ 85,000
Started into production	570,000
Total costs	$655,000

Illustration 16-21 Costs charged to Mixing Department

The company then prepares a cost reconciliation schedule to assign these costs to (a) units transferred out to the Baking Department and (b) ending work in process.

MIXING DEPARTMENT
Cost Reconciliation Schedule

Costs accounted for		
Transferred out (700,000 × $0.75)		$ 525,000
Work in process, June 30		
Materials (200,000 × $0.50)	$100,000	
Conversion costs (120,000 × $0.25)	30,000	130,000
Total costs		$655,000

Illustration 16-22 Cost reconciliation schedule–Mixing Department

Kellogg uses the total manufacturing cost per unit, $0.75, in costing the **units completed** and transferred to the Baking Department. In contrast, the unit cost of materials and the unit cost of conversion are needed in costing **units in process**. The **cost reconciliation schedule** shows that the **total costs accounted for** (Illustration 16-22) equal the **total costs to be accounted for** (Illustration 16-21).

PREPARING THE PRODUCTION COST REPORT

study objective 7
Prepare a production cost report.

At this point, Kellogg is ready to prepare the production cost report for the Mixing Department. As indicated earlier, this report is an internal document for management that shows production quantity and cost data for a production department.

There are four steps in preparing a production cost report. They are:

1. Compute the physical unit flow.
2. Compute the equivalent units of production.
3. Compute unit production costs.
4. Prepare a cost reconciliation schedule.

Illustration 16-23 (page 854) shows the production cost report for the Mixing Department. The report identifies the four steps.

Illustration 16-23
Production cost report

Mixing Department.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	**Mixing Department**					
2	**Production Cost Report**					
3	**For the Month Ended June 30, 2012**					
4				Equivalent Units		
5			Physical Units	Materials	Conversion Costs	
6	**QUANTITIES**		Step 1	Step 2		
7	Units to be accounted for					
8	Work in process, June 1		100,000			
9	Started into production		800,000			
10	Total units		900,000			
11	Units accounted for					
12	Transferred out		700,000	700,000	700,000	
13	Work in process, June 30		200,000	200,000	120,000	(200,000 × 60%)
14	Total units		900,000	900,000	820,000	
15	**COSTS** Unit costs Step 3			Materials	Conversion Costs	Total
16	Costs in June		(a)	$450,000	$205,000	$655,000
17	Equivalent units		(b)	900,000	820,000	
18	Unit costs [(a) ÷ (b)]			$0.50	$0.25	$0.75
19	Costs to be accounted for					
20	Work in process, June 1					$85,000
21	Started into production					570,000
22	Total costs					$655,000
23	**Cost Reconciliation Schedule** Step 4					
24	Costs accounted for					
25	Transferred out (700,000 × $0.75)					$525,000
26	Work in process, June 30					
27	Materials (200,000 × $0.50)				$100,000	
28	Conversion costs (120,000 × $0.25)				30,000	130,000
29	Total costs					$655,000

Production cost reports provide a basis for evaluating the productivity of a department. In addition, managers can use the cost data to assess whether unit costs and total costs are reasonable. By comparing the quantity and cost data with predetermined goals, top management can also judge whether current performance is meeting planned objectives.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
What is the cost of a product?	Cost of materials, labor, and overhead assigned to processes used to make the product	Production cost report	Compare costs to previous periods, to competitors, and to expected selling price to evaluate overall profitability.

before you go on...

COST RECONCILIATION SCHEDULE

Do it! In March, Rodayo Manufacturing had the following unit production costs: materials $6 and conversion costs $9. On March 1, it had zero work in process. During March, Rodayo transferred out 12,000 units. As of March 31, 800 units that were 25 percent complete as to conversion costs and 100 percent complete as to materials were in ending work in process. Assign the costs to the units transferred out and in process.

Solution

The assignment of costs is as follows.

Costs accounted for		
Transferred out (12,000 × $15)		$180,000
Work in process, March 31		
Materials (800 × $6)	$4,800	
Conversion costs (200[a] × $9)	1,800	6,600
Total costs		$186,600

[a]800 × 25%

Action Plan

- Assign the total manufacturing cost of $15 per unit to the 12,000 units transferred out.
- Assign the materials cost and conversion costs based on equivalent units of production to units in ending work in process.

Related exercise material: **BE16-4, BE16-6, BE16-7, BE16-8, BE16-9, BE16-10, Do it! 16-4, E16-5, E16-6, E16-8, E16-9, E16-10, E16-11, E16-14,** and **E16-15.**

the navigator

COSTING SYSTEMS–FINAL COMMENTS

Companies often use a combination of a process cost and a job order cost system. Called **operations costing**, this hybrid system is similar to process costing in its assumption that standardized methods are used to manufacture the product. At the same time, the product may have some customized, individual features that require the use of a job order cost system.

Consider, for example, the automobile manufacturer Ford Motor Company. Each vehicle at a given plant goes through the same assembly line, but Ford uses different materials (such as seat coverings, paint, and tinted glass) for different vehicles. Similarly, Kellogg's Pop-Tarts® toaster pastries go through numerous standardized processes—mixing, filling, baking, frosting, and packaging. The pastry dough, though, comes in different flavors—plain, chocolate, and graham—and fillings include Smucker's® real fruit, chocolate fudge, vanilla creme, brown sugar cinnamon, and s'mores.

A cost-benefit tradeoff occurs as a company decides which costing system to use. A job order cost system, for example, provides detailed information related to the cost of the product. Because each job has its own distinguishing characteristics, the system can provide an accurate cost per job. This information is useful in controlling costs and pricing products. However, the cost of implementing a job order cost system is often expensive because of the accounting costs involved.

On the other hand, for a company like Intel, which makes computer chips, is there a benefit in knowing whether the cost of the one hundredth chip produced is different from the one thousandth chip produced? Probably not. An average cost of the product will suffice for control and pricing purposes.

In summary, when deciding to use one of these systems, or a combination system, a company must weigh the costs of implementing the system against the benefits from the additional information provided.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
What costing method should be used?	Type of product or service produced	Cost of accounting system; benefits of additional information	The benefits of providing the additional information should exceed the costs of the accounting system needed to develop the information.

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

Essence Company manufactures a high-end after-shave lotion, called Eternity, in 10-ounce plastic bottles. Because the market for after-shave lotion is highly competitive, the company is very concerned about keeping its costs under control. Eternity is manufactured through three processes: mixing, filling, and corking. Materials are added at the beginning of the process, and labor and overhead are incurred uniformly throughout each process. The company uses a weighted-average method to cost its product. A partially completed production cost report for the month of May for the Mixing Department is shown below.

ESSENCE COMPANY
Mixing Department
Production Cost Report
For the Month Ended May 31, 2012

		Equivalent Units	
Quantities	**Physical Units**	**Materials**	**Conversion Costs**
Units to be accounted for	Step 1	Step 2	
Work in process, May 1	1,000		
Started into production	2,000		
Total units	3,000		
Units accounted for			
Transferred out	2,200	?	?
Work in process, May 31	800	?	?
Total units	3,000	?	?

Costs		**Materials**	**Conversion Costs**	**Total**
Unit costs Step 3				
Costs in May	(a)	?	?	?
Equivalent units	(b)	?	?	
Unit costs [(a) ÷ (b)]		?	?	?
Costs to be accounted for				
Work in process, May 1				$ 56,300
Started into production				119,320
Total costs				$175,620

Cost Reconciliation Schedule Step 4

Costs accounted for		
Transferred out		?
Work in process, May 31		
Materials	?	
Conversion costs	?	?
Total costs		?
Additional information:		
Work in process, May 1, 1000 units		
Materials cost, 1,000 units (100% complete)	$49,100	
Conversion costs, 1,000 units (70% complete)	7,200	$ 56,300
Materials cost for May, 2,000 units		$100,000
Work in process, May 31, 800 units, 100% complete as to materials and 50% complete as to conversion costs.		

Instructions

(a) Prepare a production cost report for the Mixing Department for the month of May.
(b) Prepare the journal entry to record the transfer of goods from the Mixing Department to the Filling Department.
(c) Explain why Essence Company is using a process cost system to account for its costs.

Action Plan

- Compute the physical unit flow–that is, the total units to be accounted for.
- Compute the equivalent units of production.
- Compute the unit production costs, expressed in terms of equivalent units of production.
- Prepare a cost reconciliation schedule, which shows that the total costs accounted for equal the total costs to be accounted for.

Solution

(a) A completed production cost report for the Mixing Department is shown below. Computations to support the amounts reported follow the report.

ESSENCE COMPANY
Mixing Department
Production Cost Report
For the Month Ended May 31, 2012

		Equivalent Units		
Quantities	**Physical Units**	**Materials**	**Conversion Costs**	
Units to be accounted for	Step 1	Step 2		
Work in process, May 1	1,000			
Started into production	2,000			
Total units	3,000			
Units accounted for				
Transferred out	2,200	2,200	2,200	
Work in process, May 31	800	800	400	(800 × 50%)
Total units	3,000	3,000	2,600	

Costs				
Unit costs Step 3		**Materials**	**Conversion Costs**	**Total**
Costs in May*	(a)	$149,100	$26,520	$175,620
Equivalent units	(b)	3,000	2,600	
Unit costs [(a) ÷ (b)]		$49.70	$10.20	$59.90
Costs to be accounted for				
Work in process, May 1				$ 56,300
Started into production				119,320
Total costs				$175,620

*Additional computations to support production cost report data:
Materials cost—$49,100 + $100,000
Conversion costs—$7,200 + $19,320 ($119,320 − $100,000)

Cost Reconciliation Schedule Step 4

Costs accounted for		
Transferred out (2,200 × $59.90)		$131,780
Work in process, May 31		
Materials (800 × $49.70)	$39,760	
Conversion costs (400 × $10.20)	4,080	43,840
Total costs		$175,620

(b) Work in Process—Filling	131,780	
Work in Process—Mixing		131,780

(c) Companies use process cost systems to apply costs to similar products that are mass-produced in a continuous fashion. Essence Company uses a process cost system because production of the after-shave lotion, once it begins, continues until the after-shave lotion emerges. The processing is the same for the entire run—with precisely the same amount of materials, labor, and overhead. Each bottle of Eternity after-shave lotion is indistinguishable from another.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Understand who uses process cost systems. Companies that mass-produce similar products in a continuous fashion use process cost systems. Once production begins, it continues until the finished product emerges. Each unit of finished product is indistinguishable from every other unit.

2 Explain the similarities and differences between job order cost and process cost systems. Job order cost systems are similar to process cost systems in three ways: (1) Both systems track the same cost elements—direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead. (2) Both accumulate costs in the same accounts—Raw Materials Inventory, Factory Labor, and Manufacturing Overhead. (3) Both assign accumulated costs to the same accounts—Work in Process, Finished Goods Inventory, and Cost of Goods Sold. However, the method of assigning costs differs significantly.

There are four main differences between the two cost systems: (1) A process cost system uses separate accounts for each department or manufacturing process, rather than only one work in process account used in a job order cost system. (2) A process cost system summarizes costs in a production cost report for each department. A job order cost system charges costs to individual jobs and summarizes them in a job cost sheet. (3) Costs are totaled at the end of a time period in a process cost system, but at the completion of a job in a job order cost system. (4) A process cost system calculates unit cost as: Total manufacturing costs for the period ÷ Units produced during the period. A job order cost system calculates unit cost as: Total cost per job ÷ Units produced.

3 Explain the flow of costs in a process cost system. A process cost system assigns manufacturing costs for raw materials, labor, and overhead to work in process accounts for various departments or manufacturing processes. It transfers the costs of partially completed units from one department to another as those units move through the manufacturing process. The system transfers the costs of completed work to Finished Goods Inventory. Finally, when inventory is sold, the system transfers the costs to Cost of Goods Sold.

4 Make the journal entries to assign manufacturing costs in a process cost system. Entries to assign the costs of raw materials, labor, and overhead consist of a credit to Raw Materials Inventory, Factory Labor, and Manufacturing Overhead, and a debit to Work in Process for each department. Entries to record the cost of goods transferred to another department are a credit to Work in Process for the department whose work is finished and a debit to the department to which the goods are transferred. The entry to record units completed and transferred to the warehouse is a credit to Work in Process for the department whose work is finished and a debit to Finished Goods Inventory. The entry to record the sale of goods is a credit to Finished Goods Inventory and a debit to Cost of Goods Sold.

5 Compute equivalent units. Equivalent units of production measure work done during a period, expressed in fully completed units. Companies use this measure to determine the cost per unit of completed product. Equivalent units are the sum of units completed and transferred out plus equivalent units of ending work in process.

6 Explain the four steps necessary to prepare a production cost report. The four steps to complete a production cost report are: (1) Compute the physical unit flow—that is, the total units to be accounted for. (2) Compute the equivalent units of production. (3) Compute the unit production costs, expressed in terms of equivalent units of production. (4) Prepare a cost reconciliation schedule, which shows that the total costs accounted for equal the total costs to be accounted for.

7 Prepare a production cost report. The production cost report contains both quantity and cost data for a production department. There are four sections in the report: (1) number of physical units, (2) equivalent units determination, (3) unit costs, and (4) cost reconciliation schedule.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
What is the cost of a product?	Costs of materials, labor, and overhead assigned to processes used to make the product	Production cost report	Compare costs to previous periods, to competitors, and to expected selling price to evaluate overall profitability.
Which costing method should be used?	Type of product or service produced	Cost of accounting system; benefits of additional information	The benefits of providing the additional information should exceed the costs of the accounting system needed to develop the information.

appendix 16A

FIFO Method

In this chapter, we demonstrated the weighted-average method of computing equivalent units. Some companies use a different method, referred to as the **first-in, first-out (FIFO) method**, to compute equivalent units. The purpose of this appendix is to illustrate how companies use the FIFO method to prepare a production cost report.

EQUIVALENT UNITS UNDER FIFO

study objective 8
Compute equivalent units using the FIFO method.

Under the FIFO method, companies compute equivalent units on a first-in, first-out basis. Some companies favor the FIFO method because the FIFO cost assumption usually corresponds to the actual physical flow of the goods. Under the FIFO method, companies therefore assume that the beginning work in process is completed before new work is started.

Using the FIFO method, equivalent units are the sum of the work performed to:

1. Finish the units of beginning work in process inventory.
2. Complete the units started into production during the period (referred to as the **units started and completed**).
3. Start, but only partially complete, the units in ending work in process inventory.

Normally, in a process costing system, some units will always be in process at both the beginning and end of the period.

Illustration

Illustration 16A-1 (page 860) shows the physical flow of units for the Assembly Department of Shutters Inc. In addition, it indicates the degree of completion of the work in process accounts in regard to conversion costs.

Illustration 16A-1
Physical unit flow—Assembly Department

ASSEMBLY DEPARTMENT	
	Physical Units
Units to be accounted for	
Work in process, June 1 (40% complete)	500
Started (transferred) into production	8,000
Total units	8,500
Units accounted for	
Completed and transferred out	8,100
Work in process, June 30 (75% complete)	400
Total units	8,500

In Illustration 16A-1, the units completed and transferred out (8,100) plus the units in ending work in process (400) equal the total units to be accounted for (8,500). Using FIFO, we then compute equivalent units as follows.

1. The 500 units of beginning work in process were 40 percent complete. Thus, 300 equivalent units (60% × 500 units) were required to complete the beginning inventory.
2. The units started and completed during the current month are the units transferred out minus the units in beginning work in process. For the Assembly Department, units started and completed are 7,600 (8,100 − 500).
3. The 400 units of ending work in process were 75 percent complete. Thus, equivalent units were 300 (400 × 75%).

Equivalent units for the Assembly Department are 8,200, computed as follows.

Illustration 16A-2
Computation of equivalent units—FIFO method

ASSEMBLY DEPARTMENT			
Production Data	**Physical Units**	**Work Added This Period**	**Equivalent Units**
Work in process, June 1	500	60%	300
Started and completed	7,600	100%	7,600
Work in process, June 30	400	75%	300
Total	8,500		8,200

COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE

To provide a complete illustration of the FIFO method, we will use the data for the Mixing Department at Kellogg Company for the month of June, as shown in Illustration 16A-3 (page 861).

Compute the Physical Unit Flow (Step 1)

Illustration 16A-4 (page 861) shows the physical flow of units for Kellogg for the month of June for the Mixing Department.

Under the FIFO method, companies often expand the physical units schedule, as shown in Illustration 16A-5 (page 861) to explain the transferred-out section. As a result, this section reports the beginning work in process and the units started and completed. These two items further explain the completed and transferred-out section.

Illustration 16A-3
Unit and cost data–Mixing Department

MIXING DEPARTMENT	
Units	
Work in process, June 1	100,000
Direct materials: 100% complete	
Conversion costs: 70% complete	
Units started into production during June	800,000
Units completed and transferred out to Baking Department	700,000
Work in process, June 30	200,000
Direct materials: 100% complete	
Conversion costs: 60% complete	
Costs	
Work in process, June 1	
Direct materials: 100% complete	$ 50,000
Conversion costs: 70% complete	35,000
Cost of work in process, June 1	$ 85,000
Costs incurred during production in June	
Direct materials	$400,000
Conversion costs	170,000
Costs incurred in June	$570,000

Illustration 16A-4
Physical unit flow–Mixing Department

MIXING DEPARTMENT	Physical Units
Units to be accounted for	
Work in process, June 1	100,000
Started (transferred) into production	800,000
Total units	900,000
Units accounted for	
Completed and transferred out	700,000
Work in process, June 30	200,000
Total units	900,000

Illustration 16A-5
Physical unit flow (FIFO)–Mixing Department

MIXING DEPARTMENT	Physical Units
Units to be accounted for	
Work in process, June 1	100,000
Started (transferred) into production	800,000
Total units	900,000
Units accounted for	
Completed and transferred out	
Work in process, June 1	100,000
Started and completed	600,000
	700,000
Work in process, June 30	200,000
Total units	900,000

The records indicate that the Mixing Department must account for 900,000 units. Of this sum, 700,000 units were transferred to the Baking Department and 200,000 units were still in process.

Compute Equivalent Units of Production (Step 2)

Helpful Hint Materials are not always added at the beginning of the process. For example, companies sometimes add materials uniformly during the process.

As with the method presented in the chapter, once they determine the physical flow of the units, companies need to determine equivalent units of production. The Mixing Department adds materials at the beginning of the process, and it incurs conversion costs uniformly during the process. Thus, Kellogg must make two computations of equivalent units: one for materials and one for conversion costs.

EQUIVALENT UNITS FOR MATERIALS Since Kellogg adds materials at the beginning of the process, no additional materials costs are required to complete the beginning work in process. In addition, 100 percent of the materials costs has been incurred on the ending work in process. Thus, the computation of equivalent units for materials is as follows.

Illustration 16A-6
Computation of equivalent units–materials

MIXING DEPARTMENT—MATERIALS

Production Data	Physical Units	Materials Added This Period	Equivalent Units
Work in process, June 1	100,000	–0–	–0–
Started and finished	600,000	100%	600,000
Work in process, June 30	200,000	100%	200,000
Total	900,000		800,000

EQUIVALENT UNITS FOR CONVERSION COSTS The 100,000 units of beginning work in process were 70 percent complete in terms of conversion costs. Thus, the Mixing Department required 30,000 equivalent units (30% × 100,000 units) of conversion costs to complete the beginning inventory. In addition, the 200,000 units of ending work in process were 60 percent complete in terms of conversion costs. Thus, the equivalent units for conversion costs is 750,000, computed as follows.

Illustration 16A-7
Computation of equivalent units–conversion costs

MIXING DEPARTMENT—CONVERSION COSTS

Production Data	Physical Units	Work Added This Period	Equivalent Units
Work in process, June 1	100,000	30%	30,000
Started and finished	600,000	100%	600,000
Work in process, June 30	200,000	60%	120,000
Total	900,000		750,000

Compute Unit Production Costs (Step 3)

Armed with the knowledge of the equivalent units of production, Kellogg can now compute the unit production costs. Unit production costs are costs expressed in terms of equivalent units of production. When equivalent units of production are different for materials and conversion costs, companies compute three unit costs: (1) materials, (2) conversion, and (3) total manufacturing.

Under the FIFO method, the unit costs of production are based entirely on the production costs incurred during the month. Thus, the costs in the beginning work in process are not relevant, because they were incurred on work done in the preceding month. As Illustration 16A-3 (page 861) indicated, the costs incurred during production in June were:

Illustration 16A-8
Costs incurred during production in June

Direct materials	$400,000
Conversion costs	170,000
Total costs	$570,000

Illustration 16A-9 shows the computation of unit materials cost, unit conversion costs, and total unit cost related to Eggo® Waffles.

Illustration 16A-9
Unit cost formulas and computations–Mixing Department

(1)	**Total Materials Cost**	**÷**	**Equivalent Units of Materials**	**=**	**Unit Materials Cost**
	$400,000	÷	800,000	=	$0.50
(2)	**Total Conversion Costs**	**÷**	**Equivalent Units of Conversion Costs**	**=**	**Unit Conversion Cost**
	$170,000	÷	750,000	=	$0.227 (rounded)*
(3)	**Unit Materials Cost**	**+**	**Unit Conversion Cost**	**=**	**Total Manufacturing Cost per Unit**
	$0.50	+	$0.227	=	$0.727

**For homework problems, round unit costs to three decimal places.*

As shown, the unit costs are $0.50 for materials, $0.227 for conversion costs, and $0.727 for total manufacturing costs.

Prepare a Cost Reconciliation Schedule (Step 4)

Kellogg is now ready to determine the cost of goods transferred out of the Mixing Department to the Baking Department and the costs in ending work in process. The total costs charged to the Mixing Department in June are $655,000, calculated as follows.

Illustration 16A-10
Costs charged to Mixing Department

Costs to be accounted for	
Work in process, June 1	$ 85,000
Started into production	570,000
Total costs	$655,000

Kellogg next prepares a cost reconciliation to assign these costs to (1) units transferred out to the Baking Department and (2) ending work in process. Under the FIFO method, the first goods to be completed during the period are the units in beginning work in process. Thus, the cost of the beginning work in process is always assigned to the goods transferred to the next department (or finished goods, if processing is complete). Under the FIFO method, ending work in process also

will be assigned only the production costs incurred in the current period. Illustration 16A-11 shows a cost reconciliation schedule for the Mixing Department.

Illustration 16A-11
Cost reconciliation report

MIXING DEPARTMENT
Cost Reconciliation Schedule

Costs accounted for		
Transferred out		
Work in process, June 1		$ 85,000
Costs to complete beginning work in process		
Conversion costs (30,000 × $0.227)		6,810
Total costs		91,810
Units started and completed (600,000 × $0.727)		435,950*
Total costs transferred out		527,760
Work in process, June 30		
Materials (200,000 × $0.50)	$100,000	
Conversion costs (120,000 × $0.227)	27,240	127,240
Total costs		$655,000

*Any rounding errors should be adjusted in the "Units started and completed" calculation.

As you can see, the total costs accounted for ($655,000 from Illustration 16A-11) equal the total costs to be accounted for ($655,000 from Illustration 16A-10).

Preparing the Production Cost Report

At this point, Kellogg is ready to prepare the production cost report for the Mixing Department. This report is an internal document for management that shows production quantity and cost data for a production department.

As discussed on page 850, there are four steps in preparing a production cost report:

1. Compute the physical unit flow.
2. Compute the equivalent units of production.
3. Compute unit production costs.
4. Prepare a cost reconciliation schedule.

Illustration 16A-12 (page 865) shows the production cost report for the Mixing Department, with the four steps identified in the report.

As indicated in the chapter, production cost reports provide a basis for evaluating the productivity of a department. In addition, managers can use the cost data to assess whether unit costs and total costs are reasonable. By comparing the quantity and cost data with predetermined goals, top management can also judge whether current performance is meeting planned objectives.

FIFO AND WEIGHTED-AVERAGE

The weighted-average method of computing equivalent units has **one major advantage**: It is simple to understand and apply. In cases where prices do not fluctuate significantly from period to period, the weighted-average method will be very similar to the FIFO method. In addition, companies that have been using just-in-time procedures effectively for inventory control purposes will have minimal inventory balances, and therefore differences between the weighted-average and the FIFO methods will not be material.

Conceptually, the FIFO method is superior to the weighted-average method because it measures **current performance** using only costs incurred in the current

Mixing Department.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Mixing Department**						
2	**Production Cost Report**						
3	**For the Month Ended June 30, 2012**						
4				Equivalent Units			
5			Physical Units	Materials	Conversion Costs		
6	**QUANTITIES**		Step 1	Step 2			
7	Units to be accounted for						
8	Work in process (WIP), June 1		100,000				
9	Started into production		800,000				
10	Total units		900,000				
11							
12	Units accounted for						
13	Completed and transferred out						
14	Work in process, June 1		100,000	0	30,000		
15	Started and completed		600,000	600,000	600,000		
16	Work in process, June 30		200,000	200,000	120,000		
17	Total units		900,000	800,000	750,000		
18							
19	**COSTS**						
20	Unit costs Step 3			Materials	Conversion Costs	Total	
21	Costs in June (excluding beginning WIP)		(a)	$400,000	$170,000	$570,000	
22	Equivalent units		(b)	800,000	750,000		
23	Unit costs [(a) ÷ (b)]			$0.50	$0.227	$0.727	
24							
25	Costs to be accounted for						
26	Work in process, June 1					$85,000	
27	Started into production					570,000	
28	Total costs					$655,000	
29							
30	**Cost Reconciliation Schedule** Step 4						
31	Costs accounted for						
32	Transferred out						
33	Work in process, June 1					$85,000	
34	Costs to complete beginning work in process						
35	Conversion costs (30,000 × $0.227)					6,810	
36	Total costs					91,810	
37	Units started and completed (600,000 × $0.727)**					435,950	**Any rounding errors
38	Total costs transferred out					527,760	should be adjusted in
39	Work in process, June 30						the "Units started and
40	Materials (200,000 × $0.50)				$100,000		completed"
41	Conversions costs (120,000 × $0.227)				27,240	127,240	
42	Total costs					$655,000	
43							

Illustration 16A-12
Production cost report—FIFO method

period. Managers are, therefore, not held responsible for costs from prior periods over which they may not have had control. In addition, the FIFO method **provides current cost information**, which the company can use to establish **more accurate pricing strategies** for goods manufactured and sold in the current period.

Helpful Hint What are the two self-checks in the report? Answer: (1) Total physical units accounted for must equal the total units to be accounted for. (2) Total costs accounted for must equal the total costs to be accounted for.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 16A

8 Compute equivalent units using the FIFO method. Equivalent units under the FIFO method are the sum of the work performed to: (1) Finish the units of beginning work in process inventory, if any; (2) complete the units started into production during the period; and (3) start, but only partially complete, the units in ending work in process inventory.

the navigator

Glossary

Conversion costs *(p. 848)* The sum of labor costs and overhead costs.

Cost reconciliation schedule *(p. 853)* A schedule that shows that the total costs accounted for equal the total costs to be accounted for.

Equivalent units of production *(p. 847)* A measure of the work done during the period, expressed in fully completed units.

Operations costing *(p. 855)* A combination of a process cost and a job order cost system, in which products are manufactured primarily by standardized methods, with some customization.

Physical units *(p. 850)* Actual units to be accounted for during a period, irrespective of any work performed.

Process cost system *(p. 840)* An accounting system used to apply costs to similar products that are mass-produced in a continuous fashion.

Production cost report *(p. 850)* An internal report for management that shows both production quantity and cost data for a production department.

Total units (costs) accounted for *(pp. 851, 853)* The sum of the units (costs) transferred out during the period plus the units (costs) in process at the end of the period.

Total units (costs) to be accounted for *(pp. 850, 853)* The sum of the units (costs) started (or transferred) into production during the period plus the units (costs) in process at the beginning of the period.

Unit production costs *(p. 852)* Costs expressed in terms of equivalent units of production.

Weighted-average method *(p. 847)* Method of computing equivalent units of production which considers the degree of completion (weighting) of the units completed and transferred out and the ending work in process.

Comprehensive Do it!

Karlene Industries produces plastic ice cube trays in two processes: heating and stamping. All materials are added at the beginning of the Heating Department process. Karlene uses the weighted-average method to compute equivalent units.

On November 1, the Heating Department had in process 1,000 trays that were 70% complete. During November, it started into production 12,000 trays. On November 30, 2012, 2,000 trays that were 60% complete were in process.

The following cost information for the Heating Department was also available.

Work in process, November 1:		Costs incurred in November:	
Materials	$ 640	Material	$3,000
Conversion costs	360	Labor	2,300
Cost of work in process, Nov. 1	$1,000	Overhead	4,050

Instructions

(a) Prepare a production cost report for the Heating Department for the month of November 2012, using the weighted-average method.

(b) Journalize the transfer of costs to the Stamping Department.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

(a)

KARLENE INDUSTRIES
Heating Department
Production Cost Report
For the Month Ended November 30, 2012

		Equivalent Units	
	Physical Units	Materials	Conversion Costs
Quantities	Step 1	Step 2	
Units to be accounted for			
Work in process, November 1	1,000		
Started into production	12,000		
Total units	13,000		
Units accounted for			
Transferred out	11,000	11,000	11,000
Work in process, November 30	2,000	2,000	1,200
Total units	13,000	13,000	12,200

Costs				
Unit costs Step 3		Materials	Conversion Costs	Total
Costs in November	(a)	$ 3,640*	$ 6,710**	$10,350
Equivalent units	(b)	13,000	12,200	
Unit costs [(a) ÷ (b)]		$0.28	$0.55	$0.83
Costs to be accounted for				
Work in process, November 1				$ 1,000
Started into production				9,350
Total costs				$10,350

*$640 + $3,000
**$360 + $2,300 + $4,050

Cost Reconciliation Schedule Step 4		
Costs accounted for		
Transferred out (11,000 × $0.83)		$ 9,130
Work in process, November 30		
Materials (2,000 × $0.28)	$560	
Conversion costs (1,200 × $0.55)	660	1,220
Total costs		$10,350

(b) Work in Process—Stamping	9,130	
Work in Process—Heating		9,130
(To record transfer of units to the Stamping Department)		

Action Plan

- Compute the physical unit flow–that is, the total units to be accounted for.
- Compute the equivalent units of production.
- Compute the unit production costs, expressed in terms of equivalent units of production.
- Prepare a cost reconciliation schedule, which shows that the total costs accounted for equal the total costs to be accounted for.

the navigator

WILEY PLUS
Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Note: All asterisked Questions, Exercises, and Problems relate to material in the appendix to the chapter.

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 887.

(SO 1) **1.** Which of the following items is *not* characteristic of a process cost system?
(a) Once production begins, it continues until the finished product emerges.
(b) The products produced are heterogeneous in nature.
(c) The focus is on continually producing homogeneous products.

(d) When the finished product emerges, all units have precisely the same amount of materials, labor, and overhead.

(SO 2) **2.** Indicate which of the following statements is *not* correct.
(a) Both a job order and a process cost system track the same three manufacturing cost elements—direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead.
(b) A job order cost system uses only one work in process account, whereas a process cost system uses multiple work in process accounts.
(c) Manufacturing costs are accumulated the same way in a job order and in a process cost system.
(d) Manufacturing costs are assigned the same way in a job order and in a process cost system.

(SO 3) **3.** In a process cost system, the flow of costs is:
(a) work in process, cost of goods sold, finished goods.
(b) finished goods, work in process, cost of goods sold.
(c) finished goods, cost of goods sold, work in process.
(d) work in process, finished goods, cost of goods sold.

(SO 4) **4.** In making journal entries to assign raw materials costs, a company using process costing:
(a) debits Finished Goods Inventory.
(b) often debits two or more work in process accounts.
(c) generally credits two or more work in process accounts.
(d) credits Finished Goods Inventory.

(SO 4) **5.** In a process cost system, manufacturing overhead:
(a) is assigned to finished goods at the end of each accounting period.
(b) is assigned to a work in process account for each job as the job is completed.
(c) is assigned to a work in process account for each production department on the basis of a predetermined overhead rate.
(d) is assigned to a work in process account for each production department as overhead costs are incurred.

(SO 5) **6.** Conversion costs are the sum of:
(a) fixed and variable overhead costs.
(b) labor costs and overhead costs.
(c) direct material costs and overhead costs.
(d) direct labor and indirect labor costs.

(SO 5) **7.** The Mixing Department's output during the period consists of 20,000 units completed and transferred out, and 5,000 units in ending work in process 60% complete as to materials and conversion costs. Beginning inventory is 1,000 units, 40% complete as to materials and conversion costs. The equivalent units of production are:
(a) 22,600. (c) 24,000.
(b) 23,000. (d) 25,000.

(SO 6) **8.** In RYZ Company, there are zero units in beginning work in process, 7,000 units started into production, and 500 units in ending work in process 20% completed. The physical units to be accounted for are:
(a) 7,000. (c) 7,500.
(b) 7,360. (d) 7,340.

(SO 6) **9.** Mora Company has 2,000 units in beginning work in process, 20% complete as to conversion costs, 23,000 units transferred out to finished goods, and 3,000 units in ending work in process $33\frac{1}{3}$% complete as to conversion costs.

The beginning and ending inventory is fully complete as to materials costs. Equivalent units for materials and conversion costs are, respectively:
(a) 22,000, 24,000.
(b) 24,000, 26,000.
(c) 26,000, 24,000.
(d) 26,000, 26,000.

(SO 6) **10.** Fortner Company has no beginning work in process; 9,000 units are transferred out and 3,000 units in ending work in process are one-third finished as to conversion costs and fully complete as to materials cost. If total materials cost is $60,000, the unit materials cost is:
(a) $5.00.
(b) $5.45 rounded.
(c) $6.00.
(d) No correct answer is given.

(SO 6) **11.** Largo Company has unit costs of $10 for materials and $30 for conversion costs. If there are 2,500 units in ending work in process, 40% complete as to conversion costs, and fully complete as to materials cost, the total cost assignable to the ending work in process inventory is:
(a) $45,000.
(b) $55,000.
(c) $75,000.
(d) $100,000.

(SO 7) **12.** A production cost report:
(a) is an external report.
(b) shows both the production quantity and cost data related to a department.
(c) shows equivalent units of production but not physical units.
(d) contains six sections.

(SO 7) **13.** In a production cost report, units to be accounted for are calculated as:
(a) Units started into production + Units in ending work in process.
(b) Units started into production − Units in beginning work in process.
(c) Units transferred out + Units in beginning work in process.
(d) Units started into production + Units in beginning work in process.

(SO 8) *14. Hollins Company uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units. It has 2,000 units in beginning work in process, 20% complete as to conversion costs, 25,000 units started and completed, and 3,000 units in ending work in process, 30% complete as to conversion costs. All units are 100% complete as to materials. Equivalent units for materials and conversion costs are, respectively:
(a) 28,000 and 26,600.
(b) 28,000 and 27,500.
(c) 27,000 and 26,200.
(d) 27,000 and 29,600.

(SO 8) *15. KLM Company uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units. It has no beginning work in process; 9,000 units are started and completed and 3,000 units in ending work in process are one-third completed. All material is added at the beginning of the process. If total materials cost is $60,000, the unit materials cost is:
(a) $5.00.
(b) $6.00.
(c) $6.67 (rounded).
(d) No correct answer given.

*16. Toney Company uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units. It has unit costs of $10 for materials and $30 for conversion costs. If there are 2,500 units in ending work in process, 100% complete as to materials and 40% complete as to conversion costs, the total cost assignable to the ending work in process inventory is: (SO 3)
(a) $45,000.
(b) $55,000.
(c) $75,000.
(d) $100,000.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, for additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. Identify which costing system—job order or process cost—the following companies would primarily use: (a) Quaker Oats, (b) Ford Motor Company, (c) Kinko's Print Shop, and (d) Warner Bros. Motion Pictures.

2. Contrast the primary focus of job order cost accounting and of process cost accounting.

3. What are the similarities between a job order and a process cost system?

4. Your roommate is confused about the features of process cost accounting. Identify and explain the distinctive features for your roommate.

5. Sam Bowyer believes there are no significant differences in the flow of costs between job order cost accounting and process cost accounting. Is Bowyer correct? Explain.

6. (a) What source documents are used in assigning (1) materials and (2) labor to production in a process cost system?
(b) What criterion and basis are commonly used in allocating overhead to processes?

7. At Ely Company, overhead is assigned to production departments at the rate of $5 per machine hour. In July, machine hours were 3,000 in the Machining Department and 2,400 in the Assembly Department. Prepare the entry to assign overhead to production.

8. Mark Haley is uncertain about the steps used to prepare a production cost report. State the procedures that are required in the sequence in which they are performed.

9. John Harbeck is confused about computing physical units. Explain to John how physical units to be accounted for and physical units accounted for are determined.

10. What is meant by the term "equivalent units of production"?

11. How are equivalent units of production computed?

12. Coats Company had zero units of beginning work in process. During the period, 9,000 units were completed, and there were 600 units of ending work in process. What were the units started into production?

13. Sanchez Co. has zero units of beginning work in process. During the period, 12,000 units were completed, and there were 500 units of ending work in process one-fifth complete as to conversion cost and 100% complete as to materials cost. What were the equivalent units of production for (a) materials and (b) conversion costs?

14. Hindi Co. started 3,000 units for the period. Its beginning inventory is 500 units one-fourth complete as to conversion costs and 100% complete as to materials costs. Its ending inventory is 300 units one-fifth complete as to conversion costs and 100% complete as to materials costs. How many units were transferred out this period?

15. Clauss Company transfers out 14,000 units and has 2,000 units of ending work in process that are 25% complete. Materials are entered at the beginning of the process and there is no beginning work in process.

Assuming unit materials costs of $3 and unit conversion costs of $5, what are the costs to be assigned to units (a) transferred out and (b) in ending work in process?

16. (a) Ann Quinn believes the production cost report is an external report for stockholders. Is Ann correct? Explain.
(b) Identify the sections in a production cost report.

17. What purposes are served by a production cost report?

18. At Trent Company, there are 800 units of ending work in process that are 100% complete as to materials and 40% complete as to conversion costs. If the unit cost of materials is $3 and the costs assigned to the 800 units is $6,000, what is the per unit conversion cost?

19. What is the difference between operations costing and a process costing system?

20. How does a company decide whether to use a job order or a process cost system?

***21.** Soria Co. started and completed 2,000 units for the period. Its beginning inventory is 800 units 25% complete and its ending inventory is 400 units 20% complete. Soria uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units. How many units were transferred out this period?

***22.** Reyes Company transfers out 12,000 units and has 2,000 units of ending work in process that are 25% complete. Materials are entered at the beginning of the process and there is no beginning work in process. Reyes uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units. Assuming unit materials costs of $3 and unit conversion costs of $7, what are the costs to be assigned to units (a) transferred out and (b) in ending work in process?

Brief Exercises

Journalize entries for accumulating costs.
(SO 4), AP

BE16-1 Weber Manufacturing purchases $45,000 of raw materials on account, and it incurs $60,000 of factory labor costs. Journalize the two transactions on March 31 assuming the labor costs are not paid until April.

Journalize the assignment of materials and labor costs.
(SO 4), AP

BE16-2 Data for Weber Manufacturing are given in BE16-1. Supporting records show that (a) the Assembly Department used $24,000 of raw materials and $35,000 of the factory labor, and (b) the Finishing Department used the remainder. Journalize the assignment of the costs to the processing departments on March 31.

Journalize the assignment of overhead costs.
(SO 4), AP

BE16-3 Factory labor data for Weber Manufacturing are given in BE16-2. Manufacturing overhead is assigned to departments on the basis of 200% of labor costs. Journalize the assignment of overhead to the Assembly and Finishing Departments.

Compute physical units of production.
(SO 6), AP

BE16-4 Goode Manufacturing Company has the following production data for selected months.

			Ending Work in Process	
Month	**Beginning Work in Process**	**Units Transferred Out**	**Units**	**% Complete as to Conversion Cost**
January	–0–	35,000	10,000	40%
March	–0–	40,000	8,000	75
July	–0–	45,000	16,000	25

Compute the physical units for each month.

Compute equivalent units of production.
(SO 5), AP

BE16-5 Using the data in BE16-4, compute equivalent units of production for materials and conversion costs, assuming materials are entered at the beginning of the process.

Compute unit costs of production.
(SO 6), AP

BE16-6 In Lopez Company, total material costs are $36,000, and total conversion costs are $54,000. Equivalent units of production are materials 10,000 and conversion costs 12,000. Compute the unit costs for materials, conversion costs, and total manufacturing costs.

Assign costs to units transferred out and in process.
(SO 6), AP

BE16-7 Trek Company has the following production data for April: units transferred out 40,000, and ending work in process 5,000 units that are 100% complete for materials and 40% complete for conversion costs. If unit materials cost is $4 and unit conversion cost is $7, determine the costs to be assigned to the units transferred out and the units in ending work in process.

BE16-8 Production costs chargeable to the Finishing Department in June in Cascio Company are materials $16,000, labor $29,500, overhead $18,000. Equivalent units of production are materials 20,000 and conversion costs 19,000. Compute the unit costs for materials and conversion costs.

Compute unit costs.
(SO 6), **AP**

BE16-9 Data for Cascio Company are given in BE16-8. Production records indicate that 18,000 units were transferred out, and 2,000 units in ending work in process were 50% complete as to conversion cost and 100% complete as to materials. Prepare a cost reconciliation schedule.

Prepare cost reconciliation schedule.
(SO 6), **AP**

BE16-10 The Smelting Department of Mathews Manufacturing Company has the following production and cost data for November.

> Production: Beginning work in process 2,000 units that are 100% complete as to materials and 20% complete as to conversion costs; units transferred out 8,000 units; and ending work in process 7,000 units that are 100% complete as to materials and 40% complete as to conversion costs.

Compute the equivalent units of production for (a) materials and (b) conversion costs for the month of November.

Compute equivalent units of production.
(SO 5), **AP**

***BE16-11** Sanderson Company has the following production data for March: no beginning work in process, units started and completed 30,000, and ending work in process 5,000 units that are 100% complete for materials and 40% complete for conversion costs. Sanderson uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units. If unit materials cost is $6 and unit conversion cost is $12, determine the costs to be assigned to the units transferred out and the units in ending work in process. The total costs to be assigned are $594,000.

Assign costs to units transferred out and in process.
(SO 8), **AP**

***BE16-12** Using the data in BE16-11, prepare the cost section of the production cost report for Sanderson Company.

Prepare a partial production cost report.
(SO 7, 8), **AP**

***BE16-13** Production costs chargeable to the Finishing Department in May at Kim Company are materials $8,000, labor $20,000, overhead $18,000, and transferred-in costs $67,000. Equivalent units of production are materials 20,000 and conversion costs 19,000. Kim uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units. Compute the unit costs for materials and conversion costs. Transferred-in costs are considered materials costs.

Compute unit costs.
(SO 8), **AP**

Do it! Review

Do it! 16-1 Indicate whether each of the following statements is true or false.

1. Many hospitals use job order costing for small, routine medical procedures.
2. A manufacturer of computer flash drives would use a job order cost system.
3. A process cost system uses multiple work in process accounts.
4. A process cost system keeps track of costs on job cost sheets.

Compare job order and process cost systems.
(SO 1, 2), **C**

Do it! 16-2 Kopa Company manufactures CH-21 through two processes: Mixing and Packaging. In July, the following costs were incurred.

Assign and journalize manufacturing costs.
(SO 4), **AP**

	Mixing	Packaging
Raw materials used	$10,000	$28,000
Factory labor costs	8,000	36,000
Manufacturing overhead costs	12,000	54,000

Units completed at a cost of $21,000 in the Mixing Department are transferred to the Packaging Department. Units completed at a cost of $106,000 in the Packaging Department are transferred to Finished Goods. Journalize the assignment of these costs to the two processes and the transfer of units as appropriate.

Do it! 16-3 The assembly department has the following production and cost data for the current month.

Compute equivalent units.
(SO 5), **AP**

Beginning Work in Process	Units Transferred Out	Ending Work in Process
–0–	20,000	12,000

Materials are entered at the beginning of the process. The ending work in process units are 70% complete as to conversion costs. Compute the equivalent units of production for (a) materials and (b) conversion costs.

Prepare cost reconciliation schedule.
(SO 6, 7), **AP**

Do it! 16-4 In March, Kelly Manufacturing had the following unit production costs: materials $10 and conversion costs $8. On March 1, it had zero work in process. During March, Kelly transferred out 22,000 units. As of March 31, 4,000 units that were 40% complete as to conversion costs and 100% complete as to materials were in ending work in process.

(a) Compute the total units to be accounted for.
(b) Compute the equivalent units of production.
(c) Prepare a cost reconciliation schedule, including the costs of materials transferred out and the costs of materials in process.

Exercises

Understand process cost accounting.
(SO 1, 2), **C**

E16-1 Robert Mallory has prepared the following list of statements about process cost accounting.

1. Process cost systems are used to apply costs to similar products that are mass-produced in a continuous fashion.
2. A process cost system is used when each finished unit is indistinguishable from another.
3. Companies that produce soft drinks, motion pictures, and computer chips would all use process cost accounting.
4. In a process cost system, costs are tracked by individual jobs.
5. Job order costing and process costing track different manufacturing cost elements.
6. Both job order costing and process costing account for direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead.
7. Costs flow through the accounts in the same basic way for both job order costing and process costing.
8. In a process cost system, only one work in process account is used.
9. In a process cost system, costs are summarized in a job cost sheet.
10. In a process cost system, the unit cost is total manufacturing costs for the period divided by the units produced during the period.

Instructions
Identify each statement as true or false. If false, indicate how to correct the statement.

Journalize transactions.
(SO 4), **AP**

E16-2 Harrelson Company manufactures pizza sauce through two production departments: Cooking and Canning. In each process, materials and conversion costs are incurred evenly throughout the process. For the month of April, the work in process accounts show the following debits.

	Cooking	Canning
Beginning work in process	$ –0–	$ 4,000
Materials	21,000	9,000
Labor	8,500	7,000
Overhead	31,500	25,800
Costs transferred in		53,000

Instructions
Journalize the April transactions.

Answer questions on costs and production.
(SO 3, 5, 6), **AP**

E16-3 The ledger of Custer Company has the following work in process account.

Work in Process—Painting

5/1	Balance	3,590	5/31	Transferred out	?
5/31	Materials	5,160			
5/31	Labor	2,740			
5/31	Overhead	1,380			
5/31	Balance	?			

Production records show that there were 400 units in the beginning inventory, 30% complete, 1,400 units started, and 1,500 units transferred out. The beginning work in process had materials cost of $2,040 and conversion costs of $1,550. The units in ending inventory were 40% complete. Materials are entered at the beginning of the painting process.

Instructions

(a) How many units are in process at May 31?
(b) What is the unit materials cost for May?
(c) What is the unit conversion cost for May?
(d) What is the total cost of units transferred out in May?
(e) What is the cost of the May 31 inventory?

E16-4 Schrager Manufacturing Company has two production departments: Cutting and Assembly. July 1 inventories are Raw Materials $4,200, Work in Process—Cutting $2,900, Work in Process—Assembly $10,600, and Finished Goods $31,000. During July, the following transactions occurred.

Journalize transactions for two processes.
(SO 4), **AP**

1. Purchased $62,500 of raw materials on account.
2. Incurred $60,000 of factory labor. (Credit Wages Payable.)
3. Incurred $70,000 of manufacturing overhead; $40,000 was paid and the remainder is unpaid.
4. Requisitioned materials for Cutting $15,700 and Assembly $8,900.
5. Used factory labor for Cutting $33,000 and Assembly $27,000.
6. Applied overhead at the rate of $18 per machine hour. Machine hours were Cutting 1,680 and Assembly 1,720.
7. Transferred goods costing $67,600 from the Cutting Department to the Assembly Department.
8. Transferred goods costing $134,900 from Assembly to Finished Goods.
9. Sold goods costing $150,000 for $200,000 on account.

Instructions

Journalize the transactions. (Omit explanations.)

E16-5 In Wayne Company, materials are entered at the beginning of each process. Work in process inventories, with the percentage of work done on conversion costs, and production data for its Sterilizing Department in selected months during 2012 are as follows.

Compute physical units and equivalent units of production.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

	Beginning Work in Process			Ending Work in Process	
Month	**Units**	**Conversion Cost%**	**Units Transferred Out**	**Units**	**Conversion Cost%**
January	–0–	—	9,000	2,000	60
March	–0–	—	12,000	3,000	30
May	–0–	—	16,000	7,000	80
July	–0–	—	10,000	1,500	40

Instructions

(a) Compute the physical units for January and May.
(b) Compute the equivalent units of production for (1) materials and (2) conversion costs for each month.

E16-6 The Cutting Department of Cassel Manufacturing has the following production and cost data for July.

Determine equivalent units, unit costs, and assignment of costs.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

Production	Costs	
1. Transferred out 12,000 units.	Beginning work in process	$ –0–
2. Started 3,000 units that are 60% complete as to conversion costs and 100% complete as to materials at July 31.	Materials	45,000
	Labor	16,200
	Manufacturing overhead	18,300

Materials are entered at the beginning of the process. Conversion costs are incurred uniformly during the process.

Instructions

(a) Determine the equivalent units of production for (1) materials and (2) conversion costs.

(b) Compute unit costs and prepare a cost reconciliation schedule.

Prepare a production cost report.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

E16-7 The Sanding Department of Richards Furniture Company has the following production and manufacturing cost data for March 2012, the first month of operation.

Production: 9,000 units finished and transferred out; 3,000 units started that are 100% complete as to materials and 20% complete as to conversion costs.

Manufacturing costs: Materials $33,000; labor $24,000; overhead $36,000.

Instructions

Prepare a production cost report.

Determine equivalent units, unit costs, and assignment of costs.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

E16-8 The Blending Department of Luongo Company has the following cost and production data for the month of April.

Costs:	
Work in process, April 1	
Direct materials: 100% complete	$100,000
Conversion costs: 20% complete	70,000
Cost of work in process, April 1	$170,000
Costs incurred during production in April	
Direct materials	$ 800,000
Conversion costs	365,000
Costs incurred in April	$1,165,000

Units transferred out totaled 17,000. Ending work in process was 1,000 units that are 100% complete as to materials and 40% complete as to conversion costs.

Instructions

(a) Compute the equivalent units of production for (1) materials and (2) conversion costs for the month of April.

(b) Compute the unit costs for the month.

(c) Determine the costs to be assigned to the units transferred out and in ending work in process.

Determine equivalent units, unit costs, and assignment of costs.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

E16-9 Kostrivas Company has gathered the following information.

Units in beginning work in process	–0–
Units started into production	40,000
Units in ending work in process	6,000
Percent complete in ending work in process:	
Conversion costs	40%
Materials	100%
Costs incurred:	
Direct materials	$72,000
Direct labor	$81,000
Overhead	$101,000

Instructions

(a) Compute equivalent units of production for materials and for conversion costs.

(b) Determine the unit costs of production.

(c) Show the assignment of costs to units transferred out and in process.

E16-10 Overton Company has gathered the following information.

Determine equivalent units, unit costs, and assignment of costs.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

Units in beginning work in process	20,000
Units started into production	164,000
Units in ending work in process	24,000
Percent complete in ending work in process:	
Conversion costs	60%
Materials	100%
Costs incurred:	
Direct materials	$101,200
Direct labor	$164,800
Overhead	$184,000

Instructions
(a) Compute equivalent units of production for materials and for conversion costs.
(b) Determine the unit costs of production.
(c) Show the assignment of costs to units transferred out and in process.

E16-11 The Polishing Department of Harbin Manufacturing Company has the following production and manufacturing cost data for September. Materials are entered at the beginning of the process.

Compute equivalent units, unit costs, and costs assigned.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

Production: Beginning inventory 1,600 units that are 100% complete as to materials and 30% complete as to conversion costs; units started during the period are 38,400; ending inventory of 5,000 units 10% complete as to conversion costs.

Manufacturing costs: Beginning inventory costs, comprised of $20,000 of materials and $43,180 of conversion costs; materials costs added in Polishing during the month, $177,200; labor and overhead applied in Polishing during the month, $125,680 and $257,140, respectively.

Instructions
(a) Compute the equivalent units of production for materials and conversion costs for the month of September.
(b) Compute the unit costs for materials and conversion costs for the month.
(c) Determine the costs to be assigned to the units transferred out and in process.

E16-12 David Skaros has recently been promoted to production manager, and so he has just started to receive various managerial reports. One of the reports he has received is the production cost report that you prepared. It showed that his department had 2,000 equivalent units in ending inventory. His department has had a history of not keeping enough inventory on hand to meet demand. He has come to you, very angry, and wants to know why you credited him with only 2,000 units when he knows he had at least twice that many on hand.

Explain the production cost report.
(SO 7), **S**

Instructions
Explain to him why his production cost report showed only 2,000 equivalent units in ending inventory. Write an informal memo. Be kind and explain very clearly why he is mistaken.

E16-13 The Welding Department of Thorpe Manufacturing Company has the following production and manufacturing cost data for February 2012. All materials are added at the beginning of the process.

Prepare a production cost report.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

Manufacturing Costs

Beginning work in process		
Materials	$18,000	
Conversion costs	14,175	$ 32,175
Materials		180,000
Labor		52,380
Overhead		61,445

Production Data

Beginning work in process	15,000 units
	1/10 complete
Units transferred out	49,000
Units started	45,000
Ending work in process	11,000 units
	1/5 complete

Instructions
Prepare a production cost report for the Welding Department for the month of February.

Compute physical units and equivalent units of production.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

E16-14 Remington Shipping, Inc. is contemplating the use of process costing to track the costs of its operations. The operation consists of three segments (departments): receiving, shipping, and delivery. Containers are received at Remington's docks and sorted according to the ship they will be carried on. The containers are loaded onto a ship, which carries them to the appropriate port of destination. The containers are then off-loaded and delivered to the receiving company.

Remington Shipping wants to begin using process costing in the shipping department. Direct materials represent the fuel costs to run the ship, and "Containers in transit" represents work in process. Listed below is information about the shipping department's first month's activity.

Containers in transit, April 1	0
Containers loaded	1,200
Containers in transit, April 30	350, 40% of direct materials and 20% of conversion costs

Instructions
(a) Determine the physical flow of containers for the month.
(b) Calculate the equivalent units for direct materials and conversion costs.

Determine equivalent units, unit costs, and assignment of costs.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

E16-15 Royale Mortgage Company uses a process costing system to accumulate costs in its loan application department. When an application is completed, it is forwarded to the loan department for final processing. The following processing and cost data pertain to September.

1. Applications in process on September 1, 100
2. Applications started in September, 900
3. Completed applications during September, 800
4. Applications still in process at September 30 were 100% complete as to materials (forms) and 60% complete as to conversion costs.

Beginning WIP:	
Direct materials	$ 1,000
Conversion costs	3,960
September costs:	
Direct materials	$ 4,500
Direct labor	12,000
Overhead	9,340

Materials are the forms used in the application process, and these costs are incurred at the beginning of the process. Conversion costs are incurred uniformly during the process.

Instructions
(a) Determine the equivalent units of service (production) for materials and conversion costs.
(b) Compute the unit costs and prepare a cost reconciliation schedule.

Compute equivalent units, unit costs, and costs assigned.
(SO 6, 8), **AP**

***E16-16** Using the data in E16-15, assume Royale Mortgage Company uses the FIFO method. Also assume that the applications in process on September 1 were 100% complete as to materials (forms) and 40% complete as to conversion costs.

Instructions
(a) Determine the equivalent units of service (production) for materials and conversion costs.
(b) Compute the unit costs and prepare a cost reconciliation schedule.

Determine equivalent units, unit costs, and assignment of costs.
(SO 6, 8), **AP**

***E16-17** The Cutting Department of Keigi Manufacturing has the following production and cost data for August.

Production	Costs	
1. Started and completed 8,000 units.	Beginning work in process	$ –0–
2. Started 2,000 units that are 40% completed at August 31.	Materials	45,000
	Labor	14,700
	Manufacturing overhead	16,100

Materials are entered at the beginning of the process. Conversion costs are incurred uniformly during the process. Keigi Manufacturing uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units.

Instructions

(a) Determine the equivalent units of production for (1) materials and (2) conversion costs.
(b) Compute unit costs and show the assignment of manufacturing costs to units transferred out and in work in process.

***E16-18** The Smelting Department of Polzin Manufacturing Company has the following production and cost data for September.

Compute equivalent units, unit costs, and costs assigned. (SO 6, 8), **AP**

Production: Beginning work in process 2,000 units that are 100% complete as to materials and 20% complete as to conversion costs; units started and finished 9,000 units; and ending work in process 1,000 units that are 100% complete as to materials and 40% complete as to conversion costs.

Manufacturing costs: Work in process, September 1, $15,200; materials added $60,000; labor and overhead $132,000.

Polzin uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units.

Instructions

(a) Compute the equivalent units of production for (1) materials and (2) conversion costs for the month of September.
(b) Compute the unit costs for the month.
(c) Determine the costs to be assigned to the units transferred out and in process.

***E16-19** The ledger of Hannon Company has the following work in process account.

Answer questions on costs and production. (SO 6, 8), **AP**

Work in Process—Painting

3/1	Balance	3,680	3/31	Transferred out	?
3/31	Materials	6,600			
3/31	Labor	2,500			
3/31	Overhead	1,150			
3/31	Balance	?			

Production records show that there were 800 units in the beginning inventory, 30% complete, 1,200 units started, and 1,500 units transferred out. The units in ending inventory were 40% complete. Materials are entered at the beginning of the painting process. Hannon uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units.

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) How many units are in process at March 31?
(b) What is the unit materials cost for March?
(c) What is the unit conversion cost for March?
(d) What is the total cost of units started in February and completed in March?
(e) What is the total cost of units started and finished in March?
(f) What is the cost of the March 31 inventory?

***E16-20** The Welding Department of Majestic Manufacturing Company has the following production and manufacturing cost data for February 2012. All materials are added at the beginning of the process. Majestic uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units.

Prepare a production cost report for a second process. (SO 8), **AP**

Manufacturing Costs

Beginning work in process	$ 32,175
Costs transferred in	135,000
Materials	57,000
Labor	35,100
Overhead	68,400

Production Data

Beginning work in process	15,000 units, 10% complete
Units transferred out	50,000
Units transferred in	64,000
Ending work in process	25,000, 20% complete

Instructions

Prepare a production cost report for the Welding Department for the month of February. Transferred-in costs are considered materials costs.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Journalize transactions.
(SO 3, 4), **AP**

P16-1A Conwell Company manufactures its product, Vitadrink, through two manufacturing processes: Mixing and Packaging. All materials are entered at the beginning of each process. On October 1, 2012, inventories consisted of Raw Materials $26,000, Work in Process—Mixing $0, Work in Process—Packaging $250,000, and Finished Goods $289,000. The beginning inventory for Packaging consisted of 10,000 units that were 50% complete as to conversion costs and fully complete as to materials. During October, 50,000 units were started into production in the Mixing Department and the following transactions were completed.

1. Purchased $300,000 of raw materials on account.
2. Issued raw materials for production: Mixing $210,000 and Packaging $45,000.
3. Incurred labor costs of $258,900.
4. Used factory labor: Mixing $182,500 and Packaging $76,400.
5. Incurred $810,000 of manufacturing overhead on account.
6. Applied manufacturing overhead on the basis of $24 per machine hour. Machine hours were 28,000 in Mixing and 6,000 in Packaging.
7. Transferred 45,000 units from Mixing to Packaging at a cost of $979,000.
8. Transferred 53,000 units from Packaging to Finished Goods at a cost of $1,315,000.
9. Sold goods costing $1,604,000 for $2,500,000 on account.

Instructions

Journalize the October transactions.

Complete four steps necessary to prepare a production cost report.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

P16-2A Rosenthal Company manufactures bowling balls through two processes: Molding and Packaging. In the Molding Department, the urethane, rubber, plastics, and other materials are molded into bowling balls. In the Packaging Department, the balls are placed in cartons and sent to the finished goods warehouse. All materials are entered at the beginning of each process. Labor and manufacturing overhead are incurred uniformly throughout each process. Production and cost data for the Molding Department during June 2012 are presented below.

Production Data	June
Beginning work in process units	–0–
Units started into production	22,000
Ending work in process units	2,000
Percent complete—ending inventory	40%
Cost Data	
Materials	$198,000
Labor	53,600
Overhead	112,800
Total	$364,400

Instructions

(c) Materials $9.00
CC $8.00
(d) Transferred out $340,000
WIP $ 24,400

(a) Prepare a schedule showing physical units of production.
(b) Determine the equivalent units of production for materials and conversion costs.
(c) Compute the unit costs of production.
(d) Determine the costs to be assigned to the units transferred and in process for June.
(e) Prepare a production cost report for the Molding Department for the month of June.

Complete four steps necessary to prepare a production cost report.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

P16-3A Seagren Industries Inc. manufactures in separate processes furniture for homes. In each process, materials are entered at the beginning, and conversion costs are incurred uniformly. Production and cost data for the first process in making two products in two different manufacturing plants are as follows.

	Cutting Department	
Production Data—July	**Plant 1 T12-Tables**	**Plant 2 C10-Chairs**
Work in process units, July 1	–0–	–0–
Units started into production	19,000	16,000
Work in process units, July 31	3,000	500
Work in process percent complete	60	80
Cost Data—July		
Work in process, July 1	$ –0–	$ –0–
Materials	380,000	288,000
Labor	234,200	110,000
Overhead	104,000	96,700
Total	$718,200	$494,700

Instructions

(a) For each plant:
  (1) Compute the physical units of production.
  (2) Compute equivalent units of production for materials and for conversion costs.
  (3) Determine the unit costs of production.
  (4) Show the assignment of costs to units transferred out and in process.

(b) Prepare the production cost report for Plant 1 for July 2012.

(a) (3) T12:
Materials $20
CC $19
(4) T12:
Transferred out $624,000
WIP $ 94,200

P16-4A Rivera Company has several processing departments. Costs charged to the Assembly Department for November 2012 totaled $2,280,000 as follows.

Assign costs and prepare production cost report.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

Work in process, November 1		
Materials	$79,000	
Conversion costs	48,150	$ 127,150
Materials added		1,589,000
Labor		225,920
Overhead		337,930

Production records show that 35,000 units were in beginning work in process 30% complete as to conversion costs, 660,000 units were started into production, and 25,000 units were in ending work in process 40% complete as to conversion costs. Materials are entered at the beginning of each process.

Instructions

(a) Determine the equivalent units of production and the unit production costs for the Assembly Department.
(b) Determine the assignment of costs to goods transferred out and in process.
(c) Prepare a production cost report for the Assembly Department.

(b) Transferred out $2,211,000
WIP $ 69,000

P16-5A Morse Company manufactures basketballs. Materials are added at the beginning of the production process and conversion costs are incurred uniformly. Production and cost data for the month of July 2012 are as follows.

Determine equivalent units and unit costs and assign costs.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

Production Data—Basketballs	**Units**	**Percent Complete**
Work in process units, July 1	500	60%
Units started into production	1,250	
Work in process units, July 31	600	40%

Cost Data—Basketballs		
Work in process, July 1		
Materials	$750	
Conversion costs	600	$1,350
Direct materials		2,400
Direct labor		1,580
Manufacturing overhead		1,295

(a) (2) Materials $1.80
(3) Transferred out $4,945
WIP $1,680

Instructions

(a) Calculate the following.
  (1) The equivalent units of production for materials and conversion costs.
  (2) The unit costs of production for materials and conversion costs.
  (3) The assignment of costs to units transferred out and in process at the end of the accounting period.

(b) Prepare a production cost report for the month of July for the basketballs.

Compute equivalent units and complete production cost report.
(SO 5, 7), **AP**

P16-6A Hamilton Processing Company uses a weighted-average process costing system and manufactures a single product—a premium rug shampoo and cleaner. The manufacturing activity for the month of October has just been completed. A partially completed production cost report for the month of October for the mixing and cooking department is shown below.

(a) Materials $1.60
(b) Transferred out $282,000
WIP $ 63,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare a schedule that shows how the equivalent units were computed so that you can complete the "Quantities: Units accounted for" equivalent units section shown in the production cost report, and compute October unit costs.

(b) Complete the "Cost Reconciliation Schedule" part of the production cost report below.

HAMILTON PROCESSING COMPANY
Mixing and Cooking Department
Production Cost Report
For the Month Ended October 31

		Equivalent Units	
Quantities	**Physical Units**	**Materials**	**Conversion Costs**
Units to be accounted for			
Work in process, October 1 (all materials, 70% conversion costs)	20,000		
Started into production	150,000		
Total units	170,000		
Units accounted for			
Transferred out	120,000	?	?
Work in process, October 31 (60% materials, 40% conversion costs)	50,000	?	?
Total units accounted for	170,000	?	?

Costs

Unit costs	**Materials**		**Conversion Costs**		**Total**
Costs in October	$240,000		$105,000		$345,000
Equivalent units	?		?		
Unit costs	$?	+	$?	=	$?
Costs to be accounted for					
Work in process, October 1					$ 30,000
Started into production					315,000
Total costs					$345,000

Cost Reconciliation Schedule

Costs accounted for		
Transferred out		$?
Work in process, October 31		
Materials	?	
Conversion costs	?	?
Total costs		?

***P16-7A** Rondeli Company manufactures bicycles and tricycles. For both products, materials are added at the beginning of the production process, and conversion costs are incurred uniformly. Rondeli Company uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units. Production and cost data for the month of March are as follows.

Determine equivalent units and unit costs and assign costs for processes; prepare production cost report.
(SO 8), **AP**

Production Data—Bicycles	Units	Percent Complete
Work in process units, March 1	200	80%
Units started into production	1,250	
Work in process units, March 31	300	40%

Cost Data—Bicycles	Units	Percent Complete
Work in process, March 1	$19,280	
Direct materials	50,000	
Direct labor	25,500	
Manufacturing overhead	30,000	

Production Data—Tricycles	Units	Percent Complete
Work in process units, March 1	100	75%
Units started into production	800	
Work in process units, March 31	60	25%

Cost Data—Tricycles	
Work in process, March 1	$ 6,125
Direct materials	30,400
Direct labor	15,100
Manufacturing overhead	20,000

Instructions

(a) Calculate the following for both the bicycles and the tricycles.
  (1) The equivalent units of production for materials and conversion costs.
  (2) The unit costs of production for materials and conversion costs.
  (3) The assignment of costs to units transferred out and in process at the end of the accounting period.

(b) Prepare a production cost report for the month of March for the bicycles only.

(a) Bicycles:
(1) Materials 1,250
(2) Materials $40
(3) Transferred out $106,780
WIP $ 18,000

Problems: Set B

P16-1B Wilbury Company manufactures a nutrient, Everlife, through two manufacturing processes: Blending and Packaging. All materials are entered at the beginning of each process. On August 1, 2012, inventories consisted of Raw Materials $5,000, Work in Process—Blending $0, Work in Process—Packaging $3,945, and Finished Goods $7,500. The beginning inventory for Packaging consisted of 500 units, two-fifths complete as to conversion costs and fully complete as to materials. During August, 9,000 units were started into production in Blending, and the following transactions were completed.

Journalize transactions.
(SO 3, 4), **AP**

1. Purchased $25,000 of raw materials on account.
2. Issued raw materials for production: Blending $18,930 and Packaging $9,140.
3. Incurred labor costs of $25,770.
4. Used factory labor: Blending $15,320 and Packaging $10,450.
5. Incurred $36,500 of manufacturing overhead on account.

6. Applied manufacturing overhead at the rate of $28 per machine hour. Machine hours were Blending 900 and Packaging 300.
7. Transferred 8,200 units from Blending to Packaging at a cost of $44,940.
8. Transferred 8,600 units from Packaging to Finished Goods at a cost of $67,490.
9. Sold goods costing $62,000 for $90,000 on account.

Instructions
Journalize the August transactions.

Complete four steps necessary to prepare a production cost report.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

P16-2B Steiner Corporation manufactures water skis through two processes: Molding and Packaging. In the Molding Department, fiberglass is heated and shaped into the form of a ski. In the Packaging Department, the skis are placed in cartons and sent to the finished goods warehouse. Materials are entered at the beginning of both processes. Labor and manufacturing overhead are incurred uniformly throughout each process. Production and cost data for the Molding Department for January 2012 are presented below.

Production Data	January
Beginning work in process units	–0–
Units started into production	50,000
Ending work in process units	2,500
Percent complete—ending inventory	40%
Cost Data	
Materials	$510,000
Labor	92,500
Overhead	150,000
Total	$752,500

Instructions
(a) Compute the physical units of production.
(b) Determine the equivalent units of production for materials and conversion costs.
(c) Compute the unit costs of production.
(d) Determine the costs to be assigned to the units transferred out and in process.
(e) Prepare a production cost report for the Molding Department for the month of January.

(c) Materials $10.20
CC $5
(d) Transferred out $722,000
WIP $ 30,500

Complete four steps necessary to prepare a production cost report.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

P16-3B Borman Corporation manufactures in separate processes refrigerators and freezers for homes. In each process, materials are entered at the beginning and conversion costs are incurred uniformly. Production and cost data for the first process in making two products in two different manufacturing plants are as follows.

	Stamping Department	
Production Data—June	**Plant A R12 Refrigerators**	**Plant B F24 Freezers**
Work in process units, June 1	–0–	–0–
Units started into production	20,000	20,000
Work in process units, June 30	4,000	2,500
Work in process percent complete	75	60
Cost Data—June		
Work in process, June 1	$ –0–	$ –0–
Materials	840,000	720,000
Labor	245,000	259,000
Overhead	420,000	292,000
Total	$1,505,000	$1,271,000

Instructions

(a) For each plant:
  (1) Compute the physical units of production.
  (2) Compute equivalent units of production for materials and for conversion costs.
  (3) Determine the unit costs of production.
  (4) Show the assignment of costs to units transferred out and in process.

(b) Prepare the production cost report for Plant A for June 2012.

(a) (3) R12:
Materials $42
CC $35
(4) R12:
Transferred out $1,232,000
WIP $ 273,000

P16-4B Luxman Company has several processing departments. Costs charged to the Assembly Department for October 2012 totaled $1,298,400 as follows.

Assign costs and prepare production cost report.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

Work in process, October 1		
Materials	$29,000	
Conversion costs	16,500	$ 45,500
Materials added		1,006,000
Labor		138,900
Overhead		108,000

Production records show that 25,000 units were in beginning work in process 40% complete as to conversion cost, 435,000 units were started into production, and 35,000 units were in ending work in process 40% complete as to conversion costs. Materials are entered at the beginning of each process.

Instructions

(a) Determine the equivalent units of production and the unit production costs for the Assembly Department.
(b) Determine the assignment of costs to goods transferred out and in process.
(c) Prepare a production cost report for the Assembly Department.

(b) Transferred out $1,211,250
WIP $ 87,150

P16-5B Swinn Company manufactures bicycles. Materials are added at the beginning of the production process, and conversion costs are incurred uniformly. Production and cost data for the month of May are as follows.

Determine equivalent units and unit costs and assign costs.
(SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

Production Data—Bicycles	**Units**	**Percent Complete**
Work in process units, May 1	500	80%
Units started in production	2,000	
Work in process units, May 31	800	40%

Cost Data—Bicycles		
Work in process, May 1		
Materials	$15,000	
Conversion costs	18,000	$33,000
Direct materials		50,000
Direct labor		19,020
Manufacturing overhead		33,680

Instructions

(a) Calculate the following.
  (1) The equivalent units of production for materials and conversion.
  (2) The unit costs of production for materials and conversion costs.
  (3) The assignment of costs to units transferred out and in process at the end of the accounting period.

(b) Prepare a production cost report for the month of May for the bicycles.

(2) Materials $26
CC $35
(3) Transferred out $103,700
WIP $ 32,000

Compute equivalent units and complete production cost report.
(SO 5, 7), **AP**

P16-6B Venuchi Cleaner Company uses a weighted-average process costing system and manufactures a single product—an all-purpose liquid cleaner. The manufacturing activity for the month of March has just been completed. A partially completed production cost report for the month of March for the mixing and blending department is shown below.

VENUCHI CLEANER COMPANY
Mixing and Blending Department
Production Cost Report
For the Month Ended March 31

		Equivalent Units	
QUANTITIES	**Physical Units**	**Materials**	**Conversion Costs**
Units to be accounted for			
Work in process, March 1	10,000		
Started into production	76,000		
Total units	86,000		
Units accounted for			
Transferred out	66,000	?	?
Work in process, March 31 (60% materials, 20% conversion costs)	20,000	?	?
Total units	86,000	?	?

COSTS					
Unit costs	**Materials**		**Conversion Costs**		**Total**
Costs in March	$156,000		$98,000		$254,000
Equivalent units	?		?		
Unit costs	$?	+	$?	=	$?
Costs to be accounted for					
Work in process, March 1					$ 8,700
Started into production					245,300
Total costs					$254,000

COST RECONCILIATION SCHEDULE		
Costs accounted for		
Transferred out		$?
Work in process, March 31		
Materials	?	
Conversion costs	?	?
Total costs		?

Instructions

(a) Prepare a schedule that shows how the equivalent units were computed so that you can complete the "Quantities: Units accounted for" equivalent units section shown in the production cost report above, and compute March unit costs.
(b) Complete the "Cost Reconciliation Schedule" part of the production cost report above.

(a) Materials $2.00

(b) Transferred out $224,400
WIP $ 29,600

Determine equivalent units and unit costs and assign costs for processes; prepare production cost report.
(SO 8), **AP**

***P16-7B** Holiday Company manufactures basketballs and soccer balls. For both products, materials are added at the beginning of the production process and conversion costs are incurred uniformly. Holiday uses the FIFO method to compute equivalent units. Production and cost data for the month of August are shown on the next page.

Production Data—Basketballs	Units	Percent Complete
Work in process units, August 1	500	60%
Units started into production	2,000	
Work in process units, August 31	600	50%

Cost Data—Basketballs	
Work in process, August 1	$1,125
Direct materials	1,600
Direct labor	1,280
Manufacturing overhead	1,000

Production Data—Soccer Balls	Units	Percent Complete
Work in process units, August 1	200	80%
Units started into production	2,000	
Work in process units, August 31	150	70%

Cost Data—Soccer Balls	
Work in process, August 1	$ 450
Direct materials	2,800
Direct labor	1,000
Manufacturing overhead	1,394

Instructions

(a) Calculate the following for both the basketballs and the soccer balls.
  (1) The equivalent units of production for materials and conversion costs.
  (2) The unit costs of production for materials and conversion costs.
  (3) The assignment of costs to units transferred out and in process at the end of the accounting period.

(b) Prepare a production cost report for the month of August for the basketballs only.

(a) Basketballs:
(1) Materials 2,000
(2) Materials $.80
(3) Transferred out $4,165
WIP $840

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Waterways Continuing Problem

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Waterways Problem from Chapters 14 and 15.)

WCP16 Because most of the parts for its irrigation systems are standard, Waterways handles the majority of its manufacturing as a process cost system. There are multiple process departments. Three of these departments are the Molding, Cutting, and Welding departments. All items eventually end up in the Packaging department which prepares items for sale in kits or individually. This problem asks you to help Waterways calculate equivalent units and prepare a production cost report.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to see the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP16-1 Florida Beach Company manufactures suntan lotion, called Surtan, in 11-ounce plastic bottles. Surtan is sold in a competitive market. As a result, management is very cost-conscious. Surtan is manufactured through two processes: mixing and filling. Materials are entered at the beginning of each process, and labor and manufacturing overhead occur uniformly throughout each process. Unit costs are based on the cost per gallon of Surtan using the weighted-average costing approach.

On June 30, 2012, Mary Ritzman, the chief accountant for the past 20 years, opted to take early retirement. Her replacement, Joe Benili, had extensive accounting experience with motels in the area but only limited contact with manufacturing accounting. During July, Joe correctly accumulated the following production quantity and cost data for the Mixing Department.

Production quantities: Work in process, July 1, 8,000 gallons 75% complete; started into production 100,000 gallons; work in process, July 31, 5,000 gallons 20% complete. Materials are added at the beginning of the process.

Production costs: Beginning work in process $88,000, comprised of $21,000 of materials costs and $67,000 of conversion costs; incurred in July: materials $573,000, conversion costs $765,000.

Joe then prepared a production cost report on the basis of physical units started into production. His report showed a production cost of $14.26 per gallon of Surtan. The management of Florida Beach was surprised at the high unit cost. The president comes to you, as Mary's top assistant, to review Joe's report and prepare a correct report if necessary.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following questions.
(a) Show how Joe arrived at the unit cost of $14.26 per gallon of Surtan.
(b) What error(s) did Joe make in preparing his production cost report?
(c) Prepare a correct production cost report for July.

MANAGERIAL ANALYSIS

BYP16-2 Harris Furniture Company manufactures living room furniture through two departments: Framing and Upholstering. Materials are entered at the beginning of each process. For May, the following cost data are obtained from the two work in process accounts.

	Framing	Upholstering
Work in process, May 1	$ –0–	$?
Materials	450,000	?
Conversion costs	261,000	330,000
Costs transferred in	–0–	600,000
Costs transferred out	600,000	?
Work in process, May 31	100,000	?

Instructions

Answer the following questions.
(a) If 3,000 sofas were started into production on May 1 and 2,500 sofas were transferred to Upholstering, what was the unit cost of materials for May in the Framing Department?
(b) Using the data in (a) above, what was the per unit conversion cost of the sofas transferred to Upholstering?
(c) Continuing the assumptions in (a) above, what is the percentage of completion of the units in process at May 31 in the Framing Department?

REAL-WORLD FOCUS

BYP16-3 The May 10, 2004, edition of the *Wall Street Journal* includes an article by Evan Ramstad entitled "A Tight Squeeze" (page R9).

Instructions

Read the article and answer the following questions.
(a) What is **Proview**'s profit margin on computer monitors? Why is the profit margin so thin on computer monitors?
(b) What are some of the steps that Proview International has taken to control costs?
(c) Why does the company continue to build tube-based monitors even as many consumers are moving away from them?
(d) Mr. Wang's final comment is, "Every aspect of the business is important, but the most important is cost." Why does he feel this way?

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING ON THE WEB

BYP16-4 Paintball is now played around the world. The process of making paintballs is actually quite similar to the process used to make certain medical pills. In fact, paintballs were previously often made at the same factories that made pharmaceuticals.

Address: **http://video.google.com/videoplay?docid=6864066340713942400**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Instructions

View that video at the site listed above and then answer the following questions.
(a) Describe in sequence the primary steps used to manufacture paintballs.
(b) Explain the costs incurred by the company that would fall into each of the following categories: materials, labor, and overhead. Of these categories, which do you think would be the greatest cost in making paintballs?
(c) Discuss whether a paintball manufacturer would use job order costing or process costing.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP16-5 Diane Barone was a good friend of yours in high school and is from your home town. While you chose to major in accounting when you both went away to college, she majored in marketing and management. You have recently been promoted to accounting manager for the Snack Foods Division of Melton Enterprises, and your friend was promoted to regional sales manager for the same division of Melton. Diane recently telephoned you. She explained that she was familiar with job cost sheets, which had been used by the Special Projects division where she had formerly worked. She was, however, very uncomfortable with the production cost reports prepared by your division. She emailed you a list of her particular questions:

1. Since Melton occasionally prepares snack foods for special orders in the Snack Foods Division, why don't we track costs of the orders separately?
2. What is an equivalent unit?
3. Why am I getting four production cost reports? Isn't there one Work in Process account?

Instructions

Prepare a memo to Diane. Answer her questions, and include any additional information you think would be helpful. You may write informally, but do use proper grammar and punctuation.

ETHICS CASE

BYP16-6 R. B. Dillman Company manufactures a high-tech component that passes through two production processing departments, Molding and Assembly. Department managers are partially compensated on the basis of units of products completed and transferred out relative to units of product put into production. This was intended as encouragement to be efficient and to minimize waste.

Jan Wooten is the department head in the Molding Department, and Tony Ferneti is her quality control inspector. During the month of June, Jan had three new employees who were not yet technically skilled. As a result, many of the units produced in June had minor molding defects. In order to maintain the department's normal high rate of completion, Jan told Tony to pass through inspection and on to the Assembly Department all units that had defects nondetectable to the human eye. "Company and industry tolerances on this product are too high anyway," says Jan. "Less than 2% of the units we produce are subjected in the market to the stress tolerance we've designed into them. The odds of those 2% being any of this month's units are even less. Anyway, we're saving the company money."

Instructions

(a) Who are the potential stakeholders involved in this situation?
(b) What alternatives does Tony have in this situation? What might the company do to prevent this situation from occurring?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 845 Choosing a Cost Driver **Q:** What is the result if a company uses the wrong "cost driver" to assign manufacturing overhead? **A:** Incorrect assignment of manufacturing overhead will result in some products receiving too much overhead and others receiving too little.

p. 849 Keeping Score for the Xbox **Q:** In what ways has cost accounting probably become more critical for Microsoft in recent years? **A:** In the past, Microsoft enjoyed very high profit margins on its software sales. As a consequence, it could afford to be less cost-conscious than most companies. In addition, in producing software, manufacturing costs represented a very small part of its total product cost. But the video-game hardware market is very competitive. As a result, to achieve its profitability goals, Microsoft will have to manufacture its product efficiently in order to meet its cost targets to ensure adequate margins. The information provided by process cost accounting will be critical to its efforts.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. b **2.** d **3.** d **4.** b **5.** c **6.** b **7.** b [20,000 + (5,000 × 60%)] **8.** a (7,000 + 0) **9.** c (23,000 + 3,000), [23,000 + (3,000 × 33⅓%)] **10.** a [$60,000 ÷ (9,000 + 3,000)] **11.** b [($10 × 2,500) + ($30 × 2,500 × 40%)] **12.** b **13.** d ***14.** b [25,000 + (3,000 × 100%)]; [(2,000 × 80%) + 25,000 + (3,000 × 30%)] ***15.** a [$60,000 ÷ (9,000 + 3,000)] ***16.** b [($10 × 2,500) + ($30 × 2,500 × 40%)]

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 17

ACTIVITY-BASED COSTING

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives**
- Read **Feature Story**
- Scan **Preview**
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 893 p. 898 p. 902 p. 904
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit**
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives**
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 913
- Answer **Self-Test Questions**
- Complete **Assignments**
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Recognize the difference between traditional costing and activity-based costing.
2. Identify the steps in the development of an activity-based costing system.
3. Know how companies identify the activity cost pools used in activity-based costing.
4. Know how companies identify and use cost drivers in activity-based costing.
5. Understand the benefits and limitations of activity-based costing.
6. Differentiate between value-added and non–value-added activities.
7. Understand the value of using activity levels in activity-based costing.
8. Apply activity-based costing to service industries.

the navigator

feature story

THE ABCs OF DOUGHNUT MAKING—VIRTUAL-REALITY STYLE

Super Bakery, Inc., created in 1990 by former Pittsburgh Steelers' running back Franco Harris, is a nationwide supplier of mineral-, vitamin-, and protein-enriched doughnuts and other baked goods to the institutional food market, primarily school systems. Super Bakery is a *virtual corporation,* in which only the core, strategic functions of the business are performed inside the company. The remaining activities—selling, manufacturing, warehousing, and shipping—are outsourced to a network of external companies.

Super Bakery draws these cooperating companies together and organizes the work flow. The goal is to add maximum value to the company while making the minimum investment in permanent staff, fixed assets, and working capital. The results are notable: Super Bakery's sales have grown at an average annual rate of approximately 20% during much of its existence.

One of Super Bakery's challenges has been to control the cost of the outsourced activities. Management suspected a wide variation in the cost of serving customers in different parts of the country. Yet its traditional costing methods were spreading costs over the entire customer base. Each customer's order *appeared* to cost the same amount to complete. In actuality, orders with high profit margins were subsidizing orders with low profit margins. Super Bakery desired a system that would more accurately assign the costs of each order. With such a system, pricing could be improved.

The company looked at and eventually changed to a system that could identify the costs associated with the *activities* performed in the business—manufacturing, sales, warehousing, and shipping. The new activity-based costing system showed that the costs and profit margins on each sale vary significantly. Super Bakery is now able to track the profitability of each customer's account and the performance of outsourced activities. This doughnut maker, as a result, even knows the cost of the doughnut holes!

Source: Based on Tom R. V. Davis and Bruce L. Darling, "ABC in a Virtual Corporation," *Management Accounting* (October 1996), pp. 18–26.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 17 . . .

- **Traveling Light** *(p. 897)*
- **Using ABC to Aid in Employee Evaluation** *(p. 900)*
- **What Does NASCAR Have to Do with Breakfast Cereal?** *(p. 903)*
- **Wasted Effort** *(p. 908)*

preview of chapter 17

As indicated in the Feature Story about Super Bakery, Inc., the traditional costing systems described in earlier chapters are not the best answer for every company. Because Super Bakery suspected that the traditional system was masking significant differences in its real cost structure, it sought a new method of assigning costs. Similar searches by other companies for ways to improve operations and gather more accurate data for decision making have resulted in the development of powerful new management tools, including **activity-based costing (ABC)**. The primary objective of this chapter is to explain and illustrate this concept.

The content and organization of this chapter are as follows.

Activity-Based Costing

Traditional Costing and ABC	Example of ABC versus Traditional Costing	ABC: A Closer Look	ABC in Service Industries
• Traditional costing systems • Need for a new approach • Activity-based costing	• Identify and classify activities and allocate overhead to cost pools • Identify cost drivers • Compute overhead rates • Assign overhead costs to products • Comparing unit costs	• Benefits • Limitations • When to use ABC • Value-added versus non–value-added activities • Classification of activity levels	• Traditional costing example • ABC example

the navigator

Traditional Costing and Activity-Based Costing

study objective 1

Recognize the difference between traditional costing and activity-based costing.

TRADITIONAL COSTING SYSTEMS

It is probably impossible to determine the *exact* cost of a product or service. However, in order to achieve improved management decisions, companies strive to provide decision makers with the most accurate cost estimates they can. The most accurate estimate of product cost occurs when the costs are traceable directly to the product produced or the service provided. Direct material and direct labor costs are the easiest to trace directly to the product through the use of material requisition forms and payroll time sheets. Overhead costs, on the other hand, are an indirect or common cost that generally cannot be easily or directly traced to individual products or services. Instead, companies use estimates to assign overhead costs to products and services.

Often, the most difficult part of computing accurate unit costs is determining the proper amount of **overhead cost** to assign to each product, service, or job. In our coverage of job order costing in Chapter 15 and of process costing in Chapter 16, we used a single or plantwide overhead rate throughout the year for the entire factory operation. That rate was called the **predetermined overhead rate**. For job order costing, we assumed that **direct labor cost** was the relevant activity base for assigning all overhead costs to jobs. For process costing, we assumed that **machine hours** was the relevant activity base for assigning all overhead to the process or department.

The use of direct labor as the activity base made sense when overhead cost allocation systems were first developed. At that time, direct labor made up a large portion of total manufacturing cost. Therefore, it was widely accepted that

there was a high correlation between direct labor and the incurrence of overhead cost. As a result, direct labor became the most popular basis for allocating overhead.

Even in today's increasingly automated environment, direct labor is sometimes the appropriate basis for assigning overhead cost to products. It is appropriate to use direct labor when (a) direct labor constitutes a significant part of total product cost, and (b) a high correlation exists between direct labor and changes in the amount of overhead costs. Illustration 17-1 displays a simplified (one-stage) traditional costing system relying on direct labor to assign overhead.

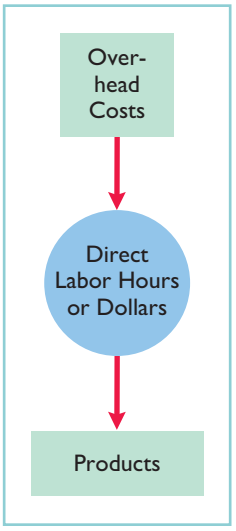


Illustration 17-1
Traditional one-stage costing system

THE NEED FOR A NEW APPROACH

In recent years, manufacturers and service providers have experienced tremendous change. Advances in computerized systems, technological innovation, global competition, and automation have changed the manufacturing environment drastically. As a result, the amount of direct labor used in many industries has greatly decreased, and total overhead costs resulting from depreciation on expensive equipment and machinery, utilities, repairs, and maintenance have significantly increased. When there is not a correlation between direct labor and overhead, it is inappropriate to use plantwide predetermined overhead rates based on direct labor. Companies that use overhead rates based on direct labor, even though this correlation does not exist, experience significant product-cost distortions.

To avoid such distortions, many companies now use machine hours as the basis on which to allocate overhead in an automated manufacturing environment. But even machine hours may not suffice as the only plantwide basis for allocating all overhead. If the manufacturing process is complex, then only multiple allocation bases can result in more accurate product-cost computations. In such situations, managers need to consider an overhead cost allocation method that uses *multiple* bases. That method is **activity-based costing**.

ACTIVITY-BASED COSTING

Broadly, **activity-based costing (ABC)** is an approach for allocating overhead costs. More specifically, ABC allocates overhead to multiple activity cost pools, and it then assigns the activity cost pools to products and services by means of cost drivers. To understand this more clearly, you need to apply some new meanings to the rather common-sounding words that make up the definition: In activity-based costing, an **activity** is any event, action, transaction, or work sequence that incurs cost when producing a product or providing a service. An **activity cost pool** is the overhead cost attributed to a distinct type of activity (e.g., ordering materials or setting up machines). A **cost driver** is any factor or activity that has a direct cause-effect relationship with the resources consumed. The reasoning behind ABC cost allocation is simple: **Products consume activities, and activities consume resources**.

These definitions of terms will become clearer as we look more closely at how ABC works. ABC allocates overhead in a two-stage process. The first stage allocates overhead costs to activity cost pools. (Traditional costing systems, in contrast, allocate these costs to departments or to jobs.) Examples of overhead cost pools are ordering materials, setting up machines, assembling products, and inspecting products.

The second stage assigns the overhead allocated to the activity cost pools to products, using cost drivers. The cost drivers measure the number of individual activities undertaken or performed to produce products or provide services.

Examples are number of purchase orders, number of setups, labor hours, and number of inspections. Illustration 17-2 shows examples of activities, and possible cost drivers to measure them, for a company that manufactures two products—axles and steering wheels.

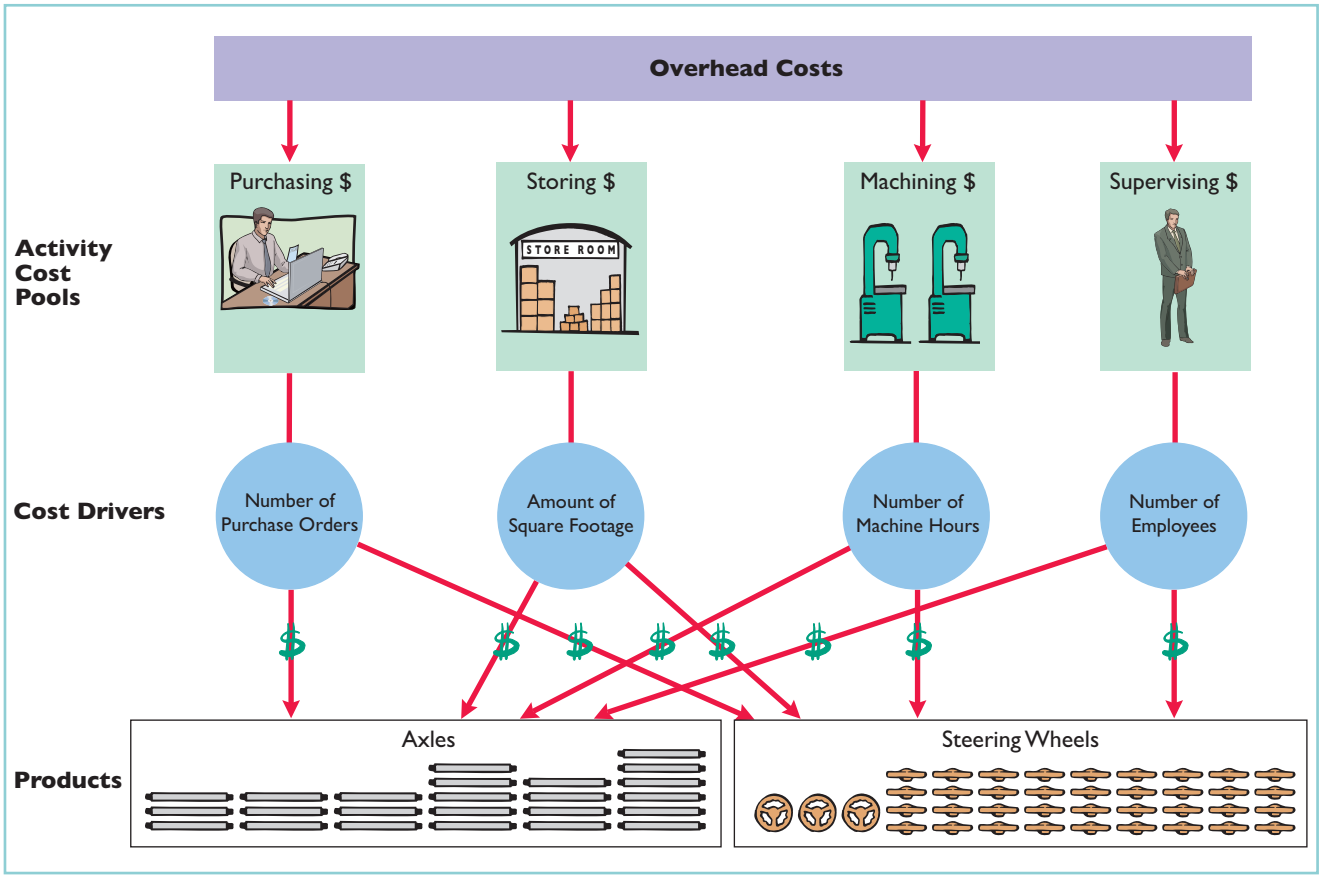


Illustration 17-2
Activities and related cost drivers

In the first step (as shown at the top of Illustration 17-2), the company allocates overhead costs to activity cost pools. In this simplified example, the company has identified four activity cost pools: purchasing, storing, machining, and supervising. After the costs are allocated to the activity cost pools, the company uses cost drivers to determine the costs to assign to the individual products (either axles or steering wheels) based on each product's use of each activity. For example, if axles require more activity by the purchasing department, as measured by the number of required purchase orders, then more of the overhead cost from the purchasing pool will be allocated to the axles.

The more complex a product's manufacturing operation, the more activities and cost drivers it is likely to have. If there is little or no correlation between changes in the cost driver and consumption of the overhead cost, inaccurate product costs are inevitable.

Illustration 17-3 shows the design of a more complex activity-based costing system with seven activity cost pools for Lift Jack Company. Lift Jack Company manufactures two automotive jacks—an automobile scissors jack and a truck hydraulic jack.

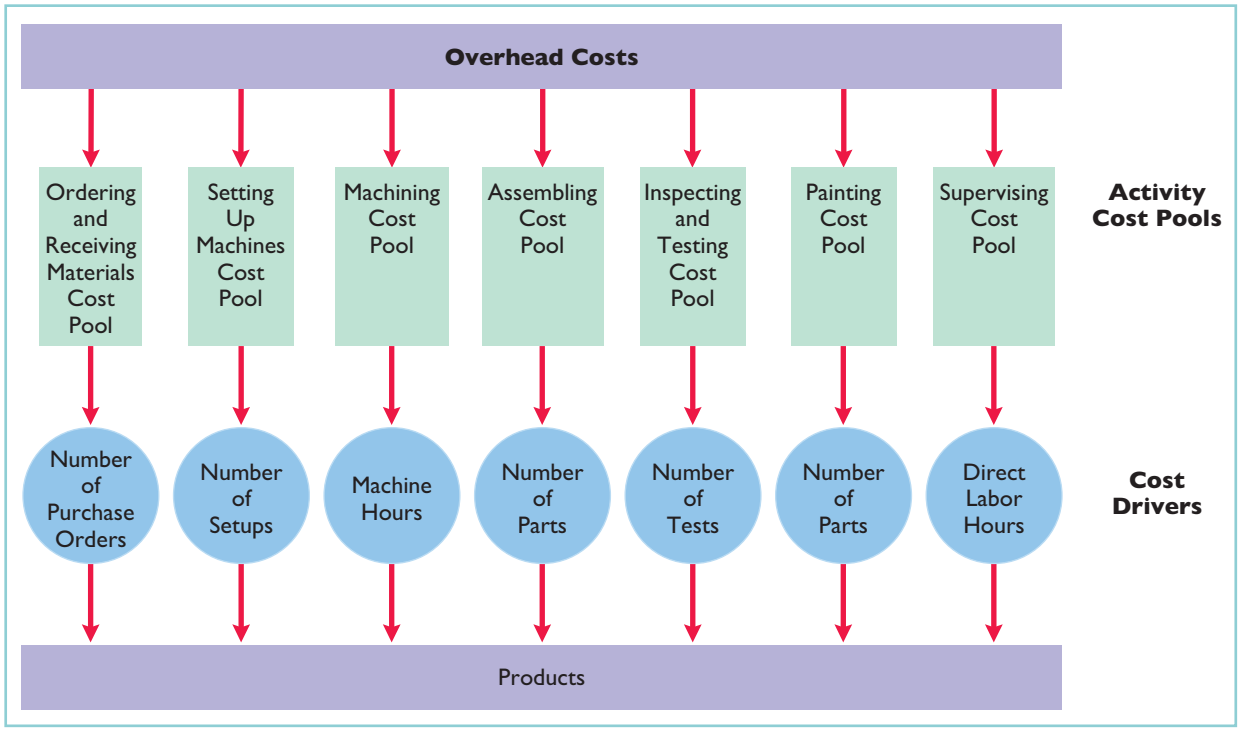


Illustration 17-3
ABC system design—Lift Jack Company

The Lift Jack Company illustration contains seven activity cost pools. In some companies the number of activities can be substantial. For example, Clark-Hurth (a division of Clark Equipment Company), a manufacturer of axles and transmissions, identified over 170 activities. Compumotor (a division of Parker Hannifin) identified over 80 activities in just the procurement function of its Material Control Department.

before you go on...

Do it! Indicate whether the following statements are true or false.

1. A traditional costing system allocates overhead by means of multiple overhead rates.
2. Activity-based costing allocates overhead costs in a two-stage process.
3. Direct material and direct labor costs are easier to trace to products than overhead.
4. As manufacturing processes have become more automated, more companies have chosen to allocate overhead on the basis of direct labor costs.
5. In activity-based costing, an activity is any event, action, transaction, or work sequence that incurs cost when producing a product.

COSTING SYSTEMS

Action Plan

- Understand that a traditional costing system allocates overhead on the basis of a single predetermined overhead rate.
- Understand that an ABC system allocates overhead to identified activity cost pools, and then assigns costs to products using related cost drivers that measure the resources consumed.

Solution

1. false. 2. true. 3. true. 4. false. 5. true.

Related exercise material: **BE17-1, BE17-2, Do it! 17-1,** and **E17-1.**

the navigator

Example of ABC versus Traditional Costing

study objective 2
Identify the steps in the development of an activity-based costing system.

In this section, we present a simple case example that compares activity-based costing with traditional costing. It illustrates how ABC eliminates the distortion that can occur in traditional overhead cost allocation. As you study this example,

you should understand that ABC does not *replace* an existing job order or process costing system. What ABC does is to segregate overhead into various cost pools in an effort to provide more accurate cost information. As a result, ABC supplements—rather than replaces—these cost systems.

Assume that Atlas Company produces two automobile antitheft devices, The Boot and The Club. The Boot is a high-volume item totaling 25,000 units annually. The Club is a low-volume item totaling only 5,000 units per year. The direct materials cost per unit is $40 for The Boot and $30 for The Club. The direct labor cost is $12 per unit for each product. Each product requires one hour of direct labor for completion. Therefore, total annual direct labor hours are 30,000 (25,000 + 5,000). Expected annual manufacturing overhead costs are $900,000. Thus, the predetermined overhead rate under traditional costing, using direct labor hours, is $30 ($900,000 ÷ 30,000) per direct labor hour. Since both products require one direct labor hour per unit, both products are allocated overhead costs of **$30 per unit under traditional costing**.

Let's now calculate unit costs under ABC. Activity-based costing involves the following four steps.

1. Identify and classify the major activities involved in the manufacture of specific products, and allocate manufacturing overhead costs to cost pools.
2. Identify the cost driver that has a strong correlation to the costs accumulated in the cost pool.
3. Compute the overhead rate for each cost driver.
4. Assign manufacturing overhead costs for each cost pool to products, using the overhead rates (cost per driver).

IDENTIFY AND CLASSIFY ACTIVITIES AND ALLOCATE OVERHEAD TO COST POOLS (STEP 1)

study objective 3

Know how companies identify the activity cost pools used in activity-based costing.

A well-designed activity-based costing system starts with an analysis of the activities performed to manufacture a product or provide a service. This analysis should identify all resource-consuming activities. It requires documenting every activity undertaken to accomplish a task. Atlas Company identified three activity-cost pools: setting up machines, machining, and inspecting.

Next, the system assigns overhead costs directly to the appropriate activity cost pool. For example, all overhead costs directly associated with Atlas Company's machine setups (such as salaries, supplies, and depreciation) would be assigned to the machine setup cost pool. Illustration 17-4 shows the three cost pools, along with the estimated overhead allocated to each cost pool.

Illustration 17-4 Activity cost pools and estimated overhead

Activity Cost Pools	Estimated Overhead
Setting up machines	$300,000
Machining	500,000
Inspecting	100,000
Total	$ 900,000

IDENTIFY COST DRIVERS (STEP 2)

study objective 4

Know how companies identify and use cost drivers in activity-based costing.

After costs are allocated to the activity cost pools, the company must identify the cost drivers for each cost pool. The cost driver must accurately measure the actual consumption of the activity by the various products. To achieve accurate costing, a **high degree of correlation** must exist between the cost driver and the actual consumption of the overhead costs in the cost pool.

Illustration 17-5 shows the cost drivers identified by Atlas and their total expected use per activity cost pool.

Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Activity
Setting up machines	Number of setups	1,500 setups
Machining	Machine hours	50,000 machine hours
Inspecting	Number of inspections	2,000 inspections

Illustration 17-5 Cost drivers and their expected use

Availability and ease of obtaining data relating to the cost driver is an important factor that must be considered in its selection.

COMPUTE OVERHEAD RATES (STEP 3)

Next, the company computes an **activity-based overhead rate** per cost driver by dividing the estimated overhead per activity by the number of cost drivers expected to be used per activity. Illustration 17-6 shows the formula for this computation.

$$\frac{\text{Estimated Overhead per Activity}}{\text{Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Activity}} = \text{Activity-Based Overhead Rate}$$

Illustration 17-6 Formula for computing activity-based overhead rate

Atlas Company computes its activity-based overhead rates by using estimated overhead per activity cost pool, shown in Illustration 17-4, and the expected use of cost drivers per activity, shown in Illustration 17-5. These computations are presented in Illustration 17-7.

Activity Cost Pools	Estimated Overhead	÷	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Activity	=	Activity-Based Overhead Rates
Setting up machines	$300,000		1,500 setups		$200 per setup
Machining	500,000		50,000 machine hours		$10 per machine hour
Inspecting	100,000		2,000 inspections		$50 per inspection
Total	$900,000				

Illustration 17-7 Computation of activity-based overhead rates

ASSIGN OVERHEAD COSTS TO PRODUCTS (STEP 4)

In assigning overhead costs, it is necessary to know the expected use of cost drivers **for each product**. Because of its low volume, The Club requires more setups and inspections than The Boot. Illustration 17-8 shows the expected use of cost drivers per product for each of Atlas's products.

Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Activity	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Product	
			The Boot	The Club
Setting up machines	Number of setups	1,500 setups	500	1,000
Machining	Machine hours	50,000 machine hours	30,000	20,000
Inspecting	Number of inspections	2,000 inspections	500	1,500

Illustration 17-8 Expected use of cost drivers per product

To assign overhead costs to each product, Atlas multiplies the activity-based overhead rates per cost driver (Illustration 17-7, page 895) by the number of cost drivers expected to be used per product (Illustration 17-8, page 895). Illustration 17-9 shows the overhead cost assigned to each product.

Illustration 17-9
Assignment of activity cost pools to products

Atlas Company.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1				ATLAS COMPANY								
2		The Boot						The Club				
3	Activity Cost Pools	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Product	×	Activity-Based Overhead Rates	=	Cost Assigned		Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Product	×	Activity-Based Overhead Rates	=	Cost Assigned
4	Setting up machines	500		$200		$100,000		1,000		$200		$200,000
5	Machining	30,000		$10		300,000		20,000		$10		200,000
6	Inspecting	500		$50		25,000		1,500		$50		75,000
7	Total costs assigned [(a)]					$425,000						$475,000
8	Units produced [(b)]					25,000						5,000
9	Overhead cost per unit [(a) ÷ (b)]					$17						$95
10												

Under ABC, the overhead cost per unit is $17 for The Boot and $95 for The Club. When compared to the $30 per unit overhead charge under traditional costing, ABC shifts costs from the high-volume product (The Boot) to the low-volume product (The Club). This shift occurs because low-volume products often require more special handling, such as machine setups and inspections. This is true for Atlas Company. Thus, the low-volume product frequently is responsible for more overhead costs per unit than is a high-volume product.[1] Assigning overhead using ABC will usually increase the cost per unit for low-volume products as compared to a traditional overhead allocation. Therefore, traditional cost drivers such as direct labor hours are usually not appropriate for assigning overhead costs to low-volume products.

COMPARING UNIT COSTS

Illustration 17-10 shows the unit cost for each product under traditional costing.

Illustration 17-10
Computation of unit costs—traditional costing

	Products	
Manufacturing Costs	**The Boot**	**The Club**
Direct materials	$40	$30
Direct labor	12	12
Overhead	30*	30*
Total unit cost	$82	$72

*Predetermined overhead rate × Direct labor hours = $30 × 1 hr. = $30

A comparison of unit manufacturing costs under traditional costing and ABC shows the following significant differences.

[1]Robin Cooper and Robert S. Kaplan, "How Cost Accounting Distorts Product Costs," *Management Accounting* 69, No. 10 (April 1988), pp. 20–27.

Illustration 17-11
Comparison of unit product costs

	The Boot		The Club	
Manufacturing Costs	**Traditional Costing**	**ABC**	**Traditional Costing**	**ABC**
Direct materials	$40	$40	$30	$ 30
Direct labor	12	12	12	12
Overhead	30	17	30	95
Total cost per unit	**$82**	**$69**	**$72**	**$137**
	Overstated $13		**Understated $65**	

The comparison shows that unit costs under traditional costing are significantly distorted. The cost of producing The Boot is overstated by $13 per unit ($82 − $69), and the cost of producing The Club is understated by $65 per unit ($137 − $72). These differences are attributable entirely to how Atlas Company assigns manufacturing overhead. A likely consequence of the differences in assigning overhead is that Atlas has been overpricing The Boot and possibly losing market share to competitors. It also has been sacrificing profitability by underpricing The Club.

Activity-based costing was pioneered in the United States: John Deere Company coined the term about 25 years ago. Numerous well-known U.S. companies, including IBM, AT&T, Hewlett-Packard, Procter & Gamble, Tektronix, Hughes Aircraft, Caterpillar, and American Express, have adopted ABC. Its use outside the United States, however, is limited. The cost of implementation may discourage some foreign companies.

In Japan, where activity-based costing is less widely used, companies prefer volume measures such as direct labor hours to assign overhead cost to products. Japanese managers are convinced that reducing direct labor is essential to continuous cost reduction. Using direct labor as the basis for overhead allocation forces Japanese companies to watch direct labor more closely. Possibly, Japanese management believes that labor cost reduction is more of a priority than developing more accurate product costs.

Service Company Insight

Traveling Light

Have you flown on an airplane since baggage fees have been implemented? Did the fee make you so mad that you swore that the next time you flew, you would pack fewer clothes so you could use a carry-on bag instead? That is exactly how the airlines hoped that you would react. Baggage handling is extremely labor-intensive. All that tagging, sorting, loading on carts, loading in planes, unloading, and sorting again add up to about $9 per bag. They also have equipment costs: sorters, carts, conveyors, tractors, and storage facilities. That's about another $4 per bag. Finally, there is additional fuel cost of a 40 pound item—about $2 in fuel for a 3-hour flight. These costs add up to $15 ($9 + $4 + $2). Since airlines have implemented their baggage fees, fewer customers are checking bags. Not only does this save the airlines money, it also increases the amount of space available for hauling cargo. An airline can charge at least $80 for hauling a small parcel for same-day delivery service.

Source: Scott McCartney, "What It Costs an Airline to Fly Your Luggage," *Wall Street Journal Online* (November 25, 2008).

? Why do airlines charge even higher rates for heavier bags, bags that are odd shapes (e.g., ski bags), and bags with hazardous materials in them? (See page 937.)

before you go on...

APPLY ABC

Do it! Lift Jack Company, as shown in Illustration 17-3 (page 893) has seven activity cost pools and two products. It expects to produce 200,000 units of its automobile scissors jack and 80,000 units of its truck hydraulic jack. Having identified its activity cost pools and the cost drivers for each cost pool, Lift Jack Company accumulated the following data relative to those activity cost pools and cost drivers.

Annual Overhead Data				Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Product	
Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Estimated Overhead	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Activity	Scissors Jacks	Hydraulic Jacks
Ordering and receiving	Purchase orders	$ 200,000	2,500 orders	1,000	1,500
Machine setup	Setups	600,000	1,200 setups	500	700
Machining	Machine hours	2,000,000	800,000 hours	300,000	500,000
Assembling	Parts	1,800,000	3,000,000 parts	1,800,000	1,200,000
Inspecting and testing	Tests	700,000	35,000 tests	20,000	15,000
Painting	Parts	300,000	3,000,000 parts	1,800,000	1,200,000
Supervising	Direct labor hours	1,200,000	200,000 hours	130,000	70,000
		$6,800,000			

Using the above data, do the following:

(a) Prepare a schedule showing the computations of the activity-based overhead rates per cost driver.

(b) Prepare a schedule assigning each activity's overhead cost to the two products.

(c) Compute the overhead cost per unit for each product.

(d) Comment on the comparative overhead cost per unit.

Solution

(a) Computations of activity-based overhead rates per cost driver:

Activity Cost Pools	Estimated Overhead	÷	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Activity	=	Activity-Based Overhead Rates
Ordering and receiving	$ 200,000		2,500 purchase orders		$80 per order
Machine setup	600,000		1,200 setups		$500 per setup
Machining	2,000,000		800,000 machine hours		$2.50 per machine hour
Assembling	1,800,000		3,000,000 parts		$0.60 per part
Inspecting and testing	700,000		35,000 tests		$20 per test
Painting	300,000		3,000,000 parts		$0.10 per part
Supervising	1,200,000		200,000 direct labor hours		$6 per direct labor hour
	$6,800,000				

(b) Assignment of each activity's overhead cost to products using ABC:

	Scissors Jacks				Hydraulic Jacks			
Activity Cost Pools	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Product	×	Activity-Based Overhead Rates	= Cost Assigned	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Product	×	Activity-Based Overhead Rates	= Cost Assigned
Ordering and receiving	1,000		$80	$ 80,000	1,500		$80	$ 120,000
Machine setup	500		$500	250,000	700		$500	350,000
Machining	300,000		$2.50	750,000	500,000		$2.50	1,250,000
Assembling	1,800,000		$0.60	1,080,000	1,200,000		$0.60	720,000
Inspecting and testing	20,000		$20	400,000	15,000		$20	300,000
Painting	1,800,000		$0.10	180,000	1,200,000		$0.10	120,000
Supervising	130,000		$6	780,000	70,000		$6	420,000
Total assigned costs				$3,520,000				$3,280,000

(c) Computation of overhead cost per unit:

	Scissors Jack	Hydraulic Jack
Total costs assigned	$3,520,000	$3,280,000
Total units produced	200,000	80,000
Overhead cost per unit	$17.60	$41.00

(d) These data show that the total overhead assigned to 80,000 hydraulic jacks is nearly as great as the overhead assigned to 200,000 scissors jacks. The overhead cost per hydraulic jack is $41, but it is only $17.60 per scissors jack.

Related exercise material: **BE17-5, BE17-6, BE17-7, Do it! 17-2, E17-1, E17-2, E17-3, E17-4, E17-5, E17-6,** and **E17-11.**

Action Plan

- Determine the activity-based overhead rate by dividing the estimated overhead per activity by the expected use of cost drivers per activity.
- Assign the overhead of each activity cost pool to the individual products by multiplying the expected use of cost driver per product times the activity-based overhead rate.
- Determine overhead cost per unit by dividing the overhead assigned to each product by the number of units of that product.

the navigator

Activity-Based Costing: A Closer Look

study objective 5

Understand the benefits and limitations of activity-based costing.

As the use of activity-based costing has grown, both its practical benefits and its limitations have become apparent.

BENEFITS OF ABC

The primary benefit of ABC is **more accurate product costing**. Here's why:

1. **ABC leads to more cost pools** being used to assign overhead costs to products. Instead of one plantwide pool (or even departmental pools) and a single cost driver, companies use numerous activity cost pools with more relevant cost drivers. Costs are assigned more directly on the basis of the cost drivers used to produce each product.
2. **ABC leads to enhanced control over overhead costs.** Under ABC, companies can trace many overhead costs directly to activities—allowing some indirect costs to be identified as direct costs. Thus, managers have become more aware of their responsibility to control the activities that generate those costs.
3. **ABC leads to better management decisions.** More accurate product costing should contribute to setting selling prices that can help achieve desired product profitability levels. In addition, more accurate cost data could be helpful in deciding whether to make or buy a product part or component, and sometimes even whether to eliminate a product.

Activity-based costing does not change the amount of overhead costs. What it does do is allocate those overhead costs in a more accurate manner. Furthermore, if the scorekeeping is more realistic and more accurate, managers should be able to better understand cost behavior and overall profitability.

LIMITATIONS OF ABC

Although ABC systems often provide better product cost data than traditional volume-based systems, there are limitations:

1. **ABC can be expensive to use.** The increased cost of identifying multiple activities and applying numerous cost drivers discourages many companies

from using ABC. Activity-based costing systems are more complex than traditional costing systems—sometimes significantly more complex. So companies must ask, is the cost of implementation greater than the benefits of greater accuracy? Sometimes it may be. For some companies there may be no need to consider ABC at all because their existing system is sufficient. If the costs of ABC outweigh the benefits, then the company should not implement ABC.

2. **Some arbitrary allocations continue.** Even though more overhead costs can be assigned directly to products through ABC's multiple activity cost pools, certain overhead costs remain to be allocated by means of some arbitrary volume-based cost driver such as labor or machine hours.

Service Company Insight

Using ABC to Aid in Employee Evaluation

Although most publicized ABC applications are in manufacturing companies or large service firms, very small service businesses can apply it also. Mahany Welding Supply, a small family-run welding service business in Rochester, New York, used ABC to determine the cost of servicing customers and to identify feasible cost-reduction opportunities.

Application of ABC at Mahany Welding's operations provided information about the five employees who were involved in different activities of revenue generation–i.e., delivery of supplies (rural versus city), welding services, repairs, telephone sales, field or door-to-door sales, repeat business sales, and cold-call sales. Managers applied activity cost pools to the five revenue-producing employees using relevant cost drivers. ABC revealed annual net income (loss) by employee as follows:

Employee #1	$65,431	Employee #4	$(10,957)
Employee #2	$35,154	Employee #5	$(46,180)
Employee #3	$13,731		

This comparative information was an eye-opener to the owner of Mahany Welding–who was Employee #5!

Source: Michael Krupnicki and Thomas Tyson, "Using ABC to Determine the Cost of Servicing Customers," *Management Accounting* (December 31, 1997), pp. 40–46.

? What positive implications does application of ABC have for the employees of this company? (See page 937.)

WHEN TO USE ABC

How does a company know when to use ABC? The presence of one or more of the following factors would point to its possible use:

1. Product lines differ greatly in volume and manufacturing complexity.
2. Product lines are numerous and diverse, and they require differing degrees of support services.
3. Overhead costs constitute a significant portion of total costs.
4. The manufacturing process or the number of products has changed significantly—for example, from labor-intensive to capital-intensive due to automation.
5. Production or marketing managers are ignoring data provided by the existing system and are instead using "bootleg" costing data or other alternative data when pricing or making other product decisions.

The redesign and installation of a product costing system is a significant decision that requires considerable cost and a major effort to accomplish. Therefore, financial managers need to be very cautious and deliberate when initiating changes in costing systems. A key factor in implementing a successful ABC system is the support of top management.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
When should we use ABC?	Knowledge of the products or product lines, the manufacturing process, and overhead costs	A detailed and accurate cost accounting system; cooperation between accountants and operating managers	Compare the results under both costing systems. If managers are better able to understand and control their operations using ABC, and the costs are not prohibitive, use of ABC would be beneficial.

VALUE-ADDED VERSUS NON–VALUE-ADDED ACTIVITIES

study objective 6

Differentiate between value-added and non–value-added activities.

Some companies that have experienced the benefits of activity-based costing have applied it to a broader range of management activities. **Activity-based management (ABM)** extends the use of ABC from product costing to a comprehensive management tool that focuses on reducing costs and improving processes and decision making. A refinement of activity-based costing used in ABM is the classification of activities as either value-added or non–value-added.

Value-added activities **increase the worth of a product or service** to customers. Such activities involve resource usage and related costs that customers are willing to pay for. Value-added activities are the activities of actually manufacturing a product or performing a service. Examples of value-added activities in a manufacturing operation are engineering design, machining, assembly, painting, and packaging. Examples of value-added activities in a service company would be performing surgery, providing legal research for legal services, or delivering packages by a delivery service.

Non–value-added activities are production- or service-related activities that simply **add cost to or increase the time spent on a product or service without increasing its market value**. Examples of non–value-added activities in a manufacturing operation include the repair of machines; the storage of inventory; the moving of raw materials, assemblies, and finished product within the factory; building maintenance; inspections; and inventory control. Examples of non–value-added activities in service enterprises might include taking appointments, reception, bookkeeping, billing, traveling, ordering supplies, advertising, cleaning, and computer repair.

Companies often use **activity flowcharts** to help identify the ABC activities. Illustration 17-12 (page 902) shows an activity flowchart. The top part of this flowchart identifies activities as value-added or non–value-added. The value-added activities are highlighted in red. Two rows in the lower part of the flowchart show the number of days spent on each activity. The first row shows the number of days spent on each activity under the current manufacturing process. The second row shows the number of days expected to be spent on each activity under management's proposed reengineered manufacturing process.

The proposed changes would reduce time spent on non–value-added activities by 17 days. This 17-day improvement would be due entirely to moving

HEARTLAND MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Activity Flowchart

	Activities											
	NVA	NVA	NVA	NVA	VA	NVA	NVA	VA	NVA	NVA	NVA	VA
	Receive and Inspect Materials	Move and Store Materials	Move Materials to Production and Wait	Set up Machines	Machining: Drill	Machining: Lathe	Inspect	Move and Wait	Assembly	Inspect and Test	Move to Storage	Store Finished Goods	Package and Ship
Current Days	1	12	2.5	1.5	2	1	0.2	6	2	0.3	0.5	14	1
	Total Current Average Time = 44 days												
Proposed Days	1	4	1.5	1.5	2	1	0.2	2	2	0.3	0.5	10	1
	Total Proposed Average Time = 27 days												

Proposed reduction in non–value-added time = 17 days

VA = Value-added NVA = Non–value-added

Illustration 17-12
Flowchart showing value-added and non–value-added activities

inventory more quickly through the non–value-added processes—that is, by reducing inventory time in moving, storage, and waiting. The appendix at the end of this chapter discusses a just-in-time inventory system, which some companies use to eliminate non–value-added activities related to inventory.

Not all activities labeled non–value-added are totally wasteful, nor can they be totally eliminated. For example, although inspection time is a non–value-added activity from a customer's perspective, few companies would eliminate their quality control functions. Similarly, moving and waiting time is non–value-added, but it would be impossible to completely eliminate. Nevertheless, when managers recognize the non–value-added characteristic of these activities, they are motivated to minimize them as much as possible. Attention to such matters is part of the growing practice of activity-based management, which helps managers concentrate on **continuous improvement** of operations and activities.

before you go on...

VALUE-ADDED ACTIVITIES

Action Plan

- Recognize that value-added activities increase the worth of a product or service to customers.
- Understand that non–value-added activities simply add cost to or increase the time spent on a product or service without increasing its market value.

Do it! Classify each of the following activities within a dental practice as value-added (VA) or non–value-added (NVA).

1. Ordering supplies.
2. Taking appointments.
3. Completing continuing education requirements.
4. Explaining dental-hygiene techniques to patients.
5. Completing insurance documents.
6. Examining patients.

Solution

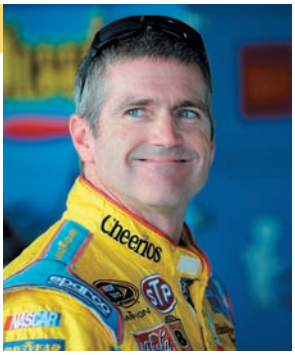
1. NVA. 2. NVA. 3. VA. 4. VA. 5. NVA. 6. VA.

Related exercise material: **BE17-8, BE17-9, Do it! 17-3, E17-13, E17-14, E17-15,** and **E17-16.**

the navigator

Management Insight

What Does NASCAR Have to Do with Breakfast Cereal?



Often the best way to improve a process is to learn from observing a different process. Production-line technicians from giant food producer General Mills were flown to North Carolina to observe first-hand how race-car pit crews operate. In a NASCAR race, the value-added activity is driving toward the finish line; any time spent in the pit is non–value-added. Every split second saved in the pit increases the chances of winning. From what the General Mills technicians learned at the car race, as well as other efforts, they were able to reduce setup time from 5 hours to just 20 minutes.

? What are the benefits of reducing setup time? (See page 937.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How can activity-based management help managers manage the business?	Activities classified as value-added and non–value-added	Activity flowchart	The flowchart should motivate managers to minimize non–value-added activities. Managers should better understand the relationship between activities and the resources they consume.

CLASSIFICATION OF ACTIVITY LEVELS

study objective 7

Understand the value of using activity levels in activity-based costing.

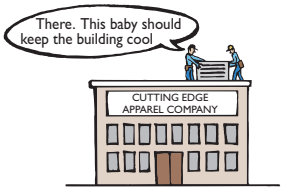
As mentioned earlier, traditional costing systems are volume-driven—driven by unit-based cost drivers such as direct labor or machine hours. Some activity costs are strictly variable and are caused by the production or acquisition of a single unit of product or the performance of a single unit of service. However, the recognition that other activity costs are not driven by unit-based cost drivers has led to the development of a classification of ABC activities consisting of four levels, as follows:

1. **Unit-level activities**. Activities performed for each unit of production.
2. **Batch-level activities**. Activities performed for each batch of products rather than each unit.
3. **Product-level activities**. Activities performed in support of an entire product line, but not always performed every time a new unit or batch of products is produced.
4. **Facility-level activities**. Activities required to support or sustain an entire production process.

Companies may achieve greater accuracy in overhead cost allocation by recognizing these four different levels of activities and, from them, developing specific activity cost pools and their related cost drivers. Illustration 17-13 (page 904) graphically displays this four-level activity hierarchy, along with the types of activities and examples of cost drivers for those activities at each level.

This classification provides managers a structured way of thinking about the relationships between activities and the resources they consume. In contrast, traditional volume-based costing recognizes only unit-level costs. **Failure to recognize this classification of activities is one of the reasons that volume-based cost allocation causes distortions in product costing.**

Illustration 17-13
Hierarchy of activity levels

Four Levels	Types of Activities	Examples of Cost Drivers
Unit-Level Activities	Machine-related Drilling, cutting, milling, trimming, pressing	Machine hours
	Labor-related Assembling, painting, sanding, sewing	Direct labor hours or cost
Batch-Level Activities	Equipment setups	Number of setups or setup time
	Purchase ordering	Number of purchase orders
	Inspection	Number of inspections or inspection time
	Material handling	Number of material moves
Product-Level Activities	Product design	Number of product designs
	Engineering changes	Number of changes
Facility-Level Activities 	Plant management salaries	Number of employees managed
	Plant depreciation	Square footage
	Property taxes	Square footage
	Utilities	Square footage

As indicated earlier, allocating all overhead costs by unit-based cost drivers can send false signals to managers: Dividing batch-, product-, or facility-level costs by the number of units produced gives the mistaken impression that these costs vary with the number of units. **The resources consumed by batch-, product-, and facility-level supporting activities do not vary at the unit level**, nor can managers control them at the unit level. The number of activities performed at the batch level goes up as the *number of batches* rises—not as the number of units within the batches changes. Similarly, the number of product-level activities performed depends on the *number of different products*—not on how many units or batches are produced. Furthermore facility-sustaining activity costs are not dependent upon the number of products, batches, or units produced. Companies can control batch-, product-, and facility-level costs only by modifying batch-, product-, and facility-level activities.

before you go on...

CLASSIFY ACTIVITY LEVELS

Do it! Morgan Toy Company manufactures six primary product lines in its Morganville plant. As a result of an activity analysis, the accounting department has identified eight activity cost pools. Each of the toy products is produced in large batches, with the whole plant devoted to one product at a time. Classify each of the following activities as either unit-level, batch-level, product-level, or facility-level: (a) engineering design,

(b) machine setup, (c) toy design, (d) plant cafeteria, (e) inspections after each setup, (f) polishing parts, (g) assembling parts, (h) health and safety.

Solution

(a) product-level. (b) batch-level. (c) product-level. (d) facility-level. (e) batch-level. (f) unit-level. (g) unit-level. (h) facility-level.

Related exercise material: **BE17-10, BE17-11, BE17-12, Do it! 17-4, E17-17,** and **E17-18.**

Action Plan

- You should use: **unit-level** activities for each unit of product; **batch-level** activities for each batch of product; **product-level** activities for an entire product line; and **facility-level** activities for across the entire range of products.

the navigator

Activity-Based Costing in Service Industries

study objective 8

Apply activity-based costing to service industries.

Although initially developed and implemented by manufacturers, activity-based costing has been widely adopted in service industries as well. ABC has been a useful tool in such diverse industries as airlines, railroads, hotels, hospitals, banks, insurance companies, telephone companies, and financial services firms. The overall objective of ABC in service firms is no different than it is in a manufacturing company. That objective is to identify the key activities that generate costs and to keep track of how many of those activities are performed for each service provided (by job, service, contract, or customer).

The general approach to identifying activities, activity cost pools, and cost drivers is the same for service companies and for manufacturers. Also, the labeling of activities as value-added and non–value-added, and the attempt to reduce or eliminate non–value-added activities as much as possible, is just as valid in service industries as in manufacturing operations. What sometimes makes implementation of activity-based costing difficult in service industries is that **a larger proportion of overhead costs are company-wide costs** that cannot be directly traced to specific services provided by the company.

To illustrate the application of activity-based costing to a service enterprise, contrasted to traditional costing, we use a public accounting firm. This illustration is equally applicable to a law firm, consulting firm, architect, or any service firm that performs numerous services for a client as part of a job.

TRADITIONAL COSTING EXAMPLE

Assume that the public accounting firm of Check and Doublecheck prepares the condensed annual budget shown in Illustration 17-14.

CHECK AND DOUBLECHECK, CPAs
Annual Budget

Revenue		$2,000,000
Direct labor	$ 600,000	
Overhead (expected)	1,200,000	
Total costs		1,800,000
Operating income		$ 200,000

$$\frac{\text{Estimated overhead}}{\text{Direct labor cost}} = \text{Predetermined overhead rate}$$

$$\frac{\$1{,}200{,}000}{\$600{,}000} = 200\%$$

Illustration 17-14
Condensed annual budget of a service firm under traditional costing

Under *traditional costing,* direct labor is the professional service performed, and it is the basis for overhead application to each audit job. To determine the operating income earned on any job, Check and Doublecheck applies overhead at the rate of 200% of actual direct professional labor costs incurred. For example, assume that Check and Doublecheck records $70,000 of actual direct professional labor cost during its audit of Plano Molding Company, which was billed an audit fee of $260,000. Under traditional costing, using 200% as the rate for applying overhead to the job, Check and Doublecheck would compute applied overhead and operating income related to the Plano Molding Company audit, as shown in Illustration 17-15.

Illustration 17-15
Overhead applied under traditional costing system

CHECK AND DOUBLECHECK, CPAs
Plano Molding Company Audit

Revenue		$260,000
Less: Direct professional labor	$ 70,000	
Applied overhead (200% × $70,000)	140,000	210,000
Operating income		$ 50,000

This example, under traditional costing, uses only one direct cost item and one overhead application rate.

ACTIVITY-BASED COSTING EXAMPLE

Under *activity-based costing,* Check and Doublecheck distributes its estimated annual overhead costs of $1,200,000 to several activity cost pools. The firm computes activity-based overhead rates per cost driver by dividing each activity overhead cost pool by the expected number of cost drivers used per activity. Illustration 17-16 shows an annual overhead budget using an ABC system.

Illustration 17-16
Condensed annual budget of a service firm under activity-based costing

CHECK AND DOUBLECHECK, CPAs
Annual Overhead Budget

Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Estimated Overhead	÷	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Activity	=	Activity-Based Overhead Rates
Secretarial support	Direct professional hours	$210,000		30,000		$7 per hour
Direct labor fringe benefits	Direct labor cost	240,000		$600,000		$0.40 per $1 of labor cost
Printing and photocopying	Working paper pages	20,000		20,000		$1 per page
Computer support	CPU minutes	200,000		50,000		$4 per minute
Telephone and postage	None (traced directly)	71,000		N/A		Based on usage
Legal support	Hours used	129,000		860		$150 per hour
Insurance (professional liability, etc.)	Revenue billed	120,000		$2,000,000		$0.06 per $1 of revenue
Recruiting and training	Direct professional hours	210,000		30,000		$7 per hour
		$1,200,000				

Note that some of the overhead costs can be directly assigned (see telephone and postage).

The assignment of the individual overhead activity rates to the actual number of activities used in the performance of the Plano Molding Company audit results in total overhead assigned of $165,100, as shown in Illustration 17-17.

Illustration 17-17
Assigning overhead in a service company

Check and Doublecheck CPA.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

Check and Doublecheck, CPAs
Plano Molding Company Audit

Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Actual Use of Drivers	Activity-Based Overhead Rates	Cost Assigned
Secretarial support	Direct professional hours	3,800	$7.00	$ 26,600
Direct labor fringe benefits	Direct labor cost	$70,000	$0.40	28,000
Printing and photocopying	Working paper pages	1,800	$1.00	1,800
Computer support	CPU minutes	8,600	$4.00	34,400
Telephone and postage	None (traced directly)			8,700
Legal support	Hours used	156	$150.00	23,400
Insurance (professional liability, etc)	Revenue billed	$260,000	$0.06	15,600
Recruiting and training	Direct professional hours	3,800	$7.00	26,600
				$165,100

Under activity-based costing, Check and Doublecheck assigns overhead costs of $165,100 to the Plano Molding Company audit, as compared to $140,000 under traditional costing. Illustration 17-18 compares total costs and operating margins under the two costing systems.

Illustration 17-18
Comparison of traditional costing with ABC in a service company

CHECK AND DOUBLECHECK, CPAs
Plano Molding Company Audit

	Traditional Costing		ABC	
Revenue		$260,000		$260,000
Expenses				
Direct professional labor	$ 70,000		$ 70,000	
Applied overhead	140,000		165,100	
Total expenses		210,000		235,100
Operating income		$ 50,000		$ 24,900
Profit margin		19.2%		9.6%

The comparison shows that the assignment of overhead costs under traditional costing is distorted. The total cost assigned to performing the audit of Plano Molding Company is greater under activity-based costing by $25,100, and the profit margin is only half as great. Traditional costing gives the false impression of an operating profit of $50,000. This is more than double the operating income of $24,900 using ABC.

Service Company Insight

Wasted Effort

Many times, good ideas for new businesses result from identifying non–value-added activities in everyday processes. Said differently, figure out how to make somebody else's life easier, and they will be happy to pay you for your trouble. Think about the last time you moved your belongings. The primary essential activity is getting your stuff from point A to point B. What is one non–value-added activity that you probably engaged in? Did you buy boxes and (expensive) packaging tape, assemble and tape boxes, cut open boxes, and then crush and dispose of boxes? Because all of that effort contributed very little toward getting your stuff moved, some creative entrepreneurs have recently started renting reusable plastic bins. They deliver the bins, customers pack them and move them, and then the company comes and picks them up—all for about the same cost as buying a bunch of cardboard boxes, without all the hassle.

Source: Emily B. Hager, "Moving Day Without All the Waste," *The New York Times Online* (January 22, 2009).

? Suppose a moving company has historically sold cardboard boxes and tape to its customers. What relevant costs would it consider in deciding whether to provide plastic bins rather than boxes and tape? (See page 937.)

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

Precor Company manufactures a line of high-end exercise equipment of commercial quality. Assume that the chief accountant has proposed changing from a traditional costing system to an activity-based costing system. The financial vice president is not convinced, so she requests that the next large order for equipment be costed under both systems for purposes of comparison and analysis. An order from Slim-Way Salons, Inc., for 150 low-impact treadmills is received and is identified as the order to be subjected to dual costing. The following cost data relate to the Slim-Way order.

Data relevant to both costing systems

Direct materials	$55,500
Direct labor hours	820
Direct labor rate per hour	$ 18.00

Data relevant to the traditional costing system

Predetermined overhead rate is 300% of direct labor cost.

Data relevant to the activity-based costing system

Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Activity-Based Overhead Rate	Expected Use of Cost Drivers for Treadmill Order
Engineering design	Engineering hours	$30 per hour	330
Machine setup	Setups	$200 per setup	22
Machining	Machine hours	$25 per hour	732
Assembly	Number of subassemblies	$8 per subassembly	1,500
Packaging and shipping	Packaging/shipping hours	$15 per hour	152
Building occupancy	Machine hours	$6 per hour	732

Instructions

Compute the total cost of the Slim-Way Salons, Inc. order under (a) the traditional costing system and (b) the activity-based costing system. (c) As a result of this comparison, which costing system is Precor likely to adopt? Why?

Solution

(a) Traditional costing system:

Direct materials	$ 55,500
Direct labor (820 × $18)	14,760
Overhead assigned ($14,760 × 300%)	44,280
Total costs assigned to Slim-Way order	$114,540
Number of low-impact treadmills	150
Cost per unit	$763.60

(b) Activity-based costing system:

Direct materials		$ 55,500
Direct labor (820 × $18)		14,760
Overhead activities costs:		
Engineering design (330 hours @ $30)	$ 9,900	
Machine setup (22 setups @ $200)	4,400	
Machining (732 machine hours @ $25)	18,300	
Assembly (1,500 subassemblies @ $8)	12,000	
Packaging and shipping (152 hours @ $15)	2,280	
Building occupancy (732 hours @ $6)	4,392	51,272
Total costs assigned to Slim-Way order		$121,532
Number of low-impact treadmills		150
Cost per unit		$810.21

(c) Precor Company will likely adopt ABC because of the difference in the cost per unit (which ABC found to be higher). More importantly, ABC provides greater insight into the sources and causes of the cost per unit. Managers are given greater insight into which activities to control in order to reduce costs. ABC will provide better product costing and greater profitability for the company.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Recognize the difference between traditional costing and activity-based costing. A traditional costing system allocates overhead to products on the basis of predetermined plantwide or departmentwide rates such as direct labor or machine hours. An ABC system allocates overhead to identified activity cost pools, and then assigns costs to products using related cost drivers that measure the activities (resources) consumed.

2 Identify the steps in the development of an activity-based costing system. The development of an activity-based costing system involves four steps: (1) Identify and classify the major activities involved in the manufacture of specific products, and allocate manufacturing overhead costs to the appropriate cost pools. (2) Identify the cost driver that has a strong correlation to the costs accumulated in the cost pool. (3) Compute the overhead rate per cost driver. (4) Assign manufacturing overhead costs for each cost pool to products or services using the overhead rates.

3 Know how companies identify the activity cost pools used in activity-based costing. To identify activity cost pools, a company must perform an analysis of each operation or process, documenting and timing every task, action, or transaction.

4 Know how companies identify and use cost drivers in activity-based costing. Cost drivers identified for assigning activity cost pools must (a) accurately measure the actual consumption of the activity by the various products and (b) have related data easily available.

5 Understand the benefits and limitations of activity-based costing. Features of ABC that make it a more accurate product costing system include: (1) the increased number of cost pools used to assign overhead, (2) the enhanced control over overhead costs, and (3) the better management decisions it makes possible. The limitations of ABC are: (1) the higher analysis and measurement costs that accompany multiple activity centers and cost drivers, and (2) the necessity still to allocate some costs arbitrarily.

6 Differentiate between value-added and non–value-added activities. Value-added activities increase the worth of a product or service. Non–value-added activities simply add cost to or increase the time spent on a product or service without increasing its market value. Awareness of these classifications encourages managers to reduce or eliminate the time spent on non–value-added activities.

7 Understand the value of using activity levels in activity-based costing. Activities may be classified as unit-level, batch-level, product-level, and facility-level. Companies control overhead costs at unit-, batch-, product-, and facility-levels by modifying unit-, batch-, product-, and facility-level activities, respectively. Failure to recognize this classification of levels can result in distorted product costing.

8 Apply activity-based costing to service industries. The overall objective of using ABC in service industries is no different than for manufacturing industries—that is, improved costing of services provided (by job, service, contract, or customer). The general approach to costing is the same: analyze operations, identify activities, accumulate overhead costs by activity cost pools, and identify and use cost drivers to assign the cost pools to the services.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
When should we use ABC?	Knowledge of the products or product lines, the manufacturing process, and overhead costs	A detailed and accurate cost accounting system; cooperation between accountants and operating managers	Compare the results under both costing systems. If managers are better able to understand and control their operations using ABC, and the costs are not prohibitive, the use of ABC would be beneficial.
How can activity-based management help managers manage the business?	Activities classified as value-added and non–value-added	Activity flowchart	The flowchart should motivate managers to minimize non–value-added activities. Managers should better understand the relationship between activities and the resources they consume.

appendix 17A

Just-in-Time Processing

study objective 9

Explain just-in-time (JIT) processing.

Traditionally, continuous process manufacturing has been based on a **just-in-case** philosophy: Inventories of raw materials are maintained *just in case* some items are of poor quality or a key supplier is shut down by a strike. Similarly, subassembly parts are manufactured and stored *just in case* they are needed later in the manufacturing process. Finished goods are completed and stored *just in case* unexpected and rush customer orders are received. This philosophy often results in a "**push approach**," in which raw materials and subassembly parts are pushed through each process. Traditional processing often results in the buildup of extensive manufacturing inventories.

Primarily in response to foreign competition, many U.S. firms have switched to **just-in-time (JIT) processing**. JIT manufacturing is dedicated to having the right amount of materials, parts, or products just as they are needed. JIT first hit the United States in the early 1980s when automobile companies adopted it to compete with foreign automakers. Many companies, including Dell, Caterpillar, and Harley-Davidson, now successfully use JIT. Under JIT processing, companies receive raw materials **just in time** for use in production, they complete subassembly parts **just in time** for use in finished goods, and they complete finished goods **just in time** to be sold. Illustration 17A-1 shows the sequence of activities in just-in-time processing.

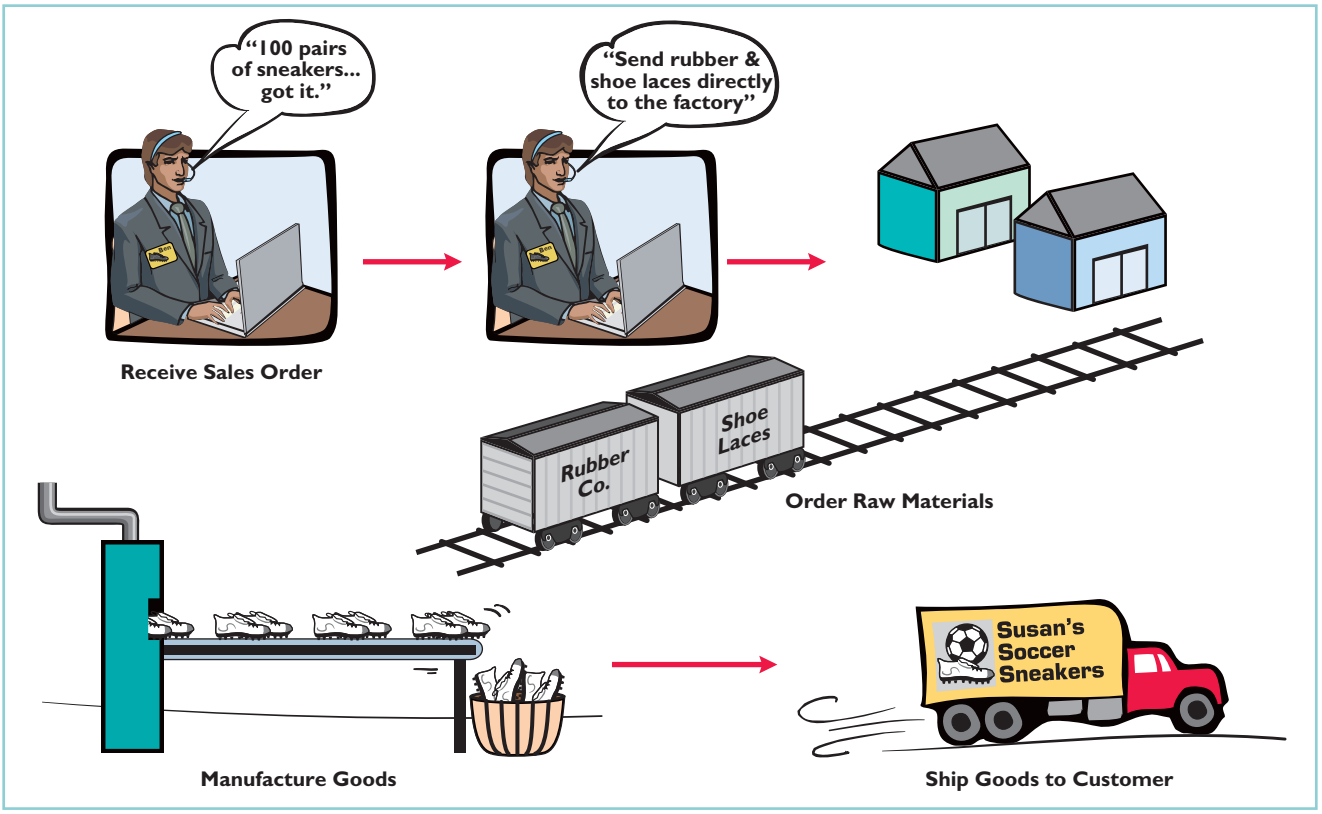


Illustration 17A-1
Just-in-time processing

OBJECTIVE OF JIT PROCESSING

A primary objective of JIT is to eliminate all manufacturing inventories. Inventories have an adverse effect on net income because they tie up funds and storage space that could be put to more productive uses. JIT strives to eliminate inventories by using a "**pull approach**" in manufacturing. This approach begins with the customer placing an order with the company, which starts the process of pulling the product through the manufacturing process. A computer at the final work station sends a signal to the preceding work station. This signal indicates the exact materials (parts and subassemblies) needed to complete the production of a specified product for a specified time period, such as an eight-hour shift. The next-preceding process, in turn, sends its signal to other processes back up the line. The goal is a smooth continuous flow in the manufacturing process, with no buildup of inventories at any point.

ELEMENTS OF JIT PROCESSING

There are three important elements in JIT processing:

1. **Dependable suppliers.** Suppliers must be willing to deliver on short notice exact quantities of raw materials according to precise quality specifications (even including multiple deliveries within the same day). Suppliers must also be willing to deliver the raw materials at specified work stations rather than at a central receiving department. This type of purchasing requires constant and direct communication. Such communication is facilitated by an online computer linkage between the company and its suppliers.
2. A **multiskilled work force**. Under JIT, machines are often strategically grouped into work cells or work stations. Much of the work is automated. As a result, one worker may operate and maintain several different types of machines.

Helpful Hint Buyer leverage is important in finding dependable suppliers. Companies like **GM** and **GE** have more success than smaller companies.

Helpful Hint Without its emphasis on quality control, JIT would be impractical or even impossible. In JIT, quality is engineered into the production process.

3. A **total quality control system**. The company must establish total quality control throughout the manufacturing operations. Total quality control means **no defects**. Since the pull approach signals only required quantities, any defects at any work station will shut down operations at subsequent work stations. Total quality control requires continuous monitoring by both line employees and supervisors at each work station.

BENEFITS OF JIT PROCESSING

The major benefits of implementing JIT processing are:

1. Significant reduction or elimination of manufacturing inventories.
2. Enhanced product quality.
3. Reduction or elimination of rework costs and inventory storage costs.
4. Production cost savings from the improved flow of goods through the processes.

The effects in many cases have been dramatic. For example, after using JIT for two years, a major division of Hewlett-Packard found that work in process inventories (in dollars) were down 82%, scrap/rework costs were down 30%, space utilization improved by 40%, and labor efficiency improved 50%. As indicated, JIT not only reduces inventory but also enables a manufacturer to produce a better product faster and with less waste.

One of the major accounting benefits of JIT is the elimination of separate raw materials and work in process inventory accounts. These accounts are replaced by **one account**, Raw and In-Process Inventory. All materials and conversion costs are charged to this account. The reduction (or elimination) of in-process inventories results in a simpler computation of equivalent units of production.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 17A

9 Explain just-in-time (JIT) processing. JIT is a processing system dedicated to having on hand the right materials and products just at the time they are needed, thereby reducing the amount of inventory and the time inventory is held. One of the principal accounting effects is that one account, Raw and In-Process Inventory, replaces both the raw materials and work-in-process inventory accounts.

the navigator

Glossary

Activity *(p. 891)* Any event, action, transaction, or work sequence that incurs cost when producing a product or providing a service.

Activity-based costing (ABC) *(p. 891)* An overhead cost-allocation system that allocates overhead to multiple activity cost pools and assigns the activity cost pools to products or services by means of cost drivers that represent the activities used.

Activity-based management (ABM) *(p. 901)* Extends ABC from product costing to a comprehensive management tool that focuses on reducing costs and improving processes and decision making.

Activity cost pool *(p. 891)* The overhead cost attributed to a distinct type of activity or related activities.

Batch-level activities *(p. 903)* Activities performed for each batch of products rather than for each unit.

Cost driver *(p. 891)* Any factor or activity that has a direct cause–effect relationship with the resources consumed. In ABC, cost drivers are used to assign activity cost pools to products or services.

Facility-level activities *(p. 903)* Activities required to support or sustain an entire production process.

Just-in-time (JIT) processing *(p. 910)* A processing system dedicated to having the right amount of materials, parts, or products arrive as they are needed, thereby reducing the amount of inventory.

Non–value-added activity *(p. 901)* An activity that adds cost to or increases the time spent on a product or service without increasing its market value.

Product-level activities *(p. 903)* Activities performed in support of an entire product line, but not always performed every time a new unit or batch of products is produced.

Unit-level activities *(p. 903)* Activities performed for each unit of production.

Value-added activity *(p. 901)* An activity that increases the worth of a product or service.

Comprehensive Do it!

Spreadwell Paint Company manufactures two high-quality base paints: an *oil-based* paint and a *latex* paint. Both are housepaints and are manufactured in neutral white color only. Spreadwell sells the white base paints to franchised retail paint and decorating stores where pigments are added to tint (color) the paint as the customer desires. The oil-based paint is made from, thinned, and cleaned with organic solvents (petroleum products) such as mineral spirits or turpentine. The latex paint is made from, thinned, and cleaned with water; synthetic resin particles are suspended in the water and dry and harden when exposed to the air.

Spreadwell uses the same processing equipment to produce both paints in different production runs. Between batches, the vats and other processing equipment must be washed and cleaned.

After analyzing the company's entire operations, Spreadwell's accountants and production managers have identified activity cost pools and accumulated annual budgeted overhead costs by pool as follows.

Activity Cost Pools	Estimated Overhead
Purchasing	$ 240,000
Processing (weighing and mixing, grinding, thinning and drying, straining)	1,400,000
Packaging (quarts, gallons, and 5-gallons)	580,000
Testing	240,000
Storage and inventory control	180,000
Washing and cleaning equipment	560,000
Total annual budgeted overhead	$3,200,000

Following further analysis, activity cost drivers were identified and their expected use by product and activity were scheduled as follows.

Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Expected Cost Drivers per Activity	Expected Use of Drivers per Product	
			Oil-Based	Latex
Purchasing	Purchase orders	1,500 orders	800	700
Processing	Gallons processed	1,000,000 gals.	400,000	600,000
Packaging	Containers filled	400,000 containers	180,000	220,000
Testing	Number of tests	4,000 tests	2,100	1,900
Storing	Avg. gals. on hand	18,000 gals.	10,400	7,600
Washing	Number of batches	800 batches	350	450

Spreadwell has budgeted 400,000 gallons of oil-based paint and 600,000 gallons of latex paint for processing during the year.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a schedule showing the computations of the activity-based overhead rates.
(b) Prepare a schedule assigning each activity's overhead cost pool to each product.
(c) Compute the overhead cost per unit for each product.
(d) Classify each activity cost pool as value-added or non–value-added.

Action Plan

- Identify the major activities that pertain to the manufacture of specific products and allocate manufacturing overhead costs to activity cost pools.
- Identify the cost drivers that accurately measure each activity's contribution to the finished product.
- Compute the activity-based overhead rates.
- Assign manufacturing overhead costs for each activity cost pool to products, using the activity-based overhead rates.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

(a) Computations of activity-based overhead rates:

Activity Cost Pools	Estimated Overhead	÷	Expected Use of Cost Drivers	=	Activity-Based Overhead Rates
Purchasing	$ 240,000		1,500 orders		$160 per order
Processing	1,400,000		1,000,000 gallons		$1.40 per gallon
Packaging	580,000		400,000 containers		$1.45 per container
Testing	240,000		4,000 tests		$60 per test
Storing	180,000		18,000 gallons		$10 per gallon
Washing	560,000		800 batches		$700 per batch
	$3,200,000				

(b) Assignment of activity cost pools to products:

	Oil-Based Paint			Latex Paint		
Activity Cost Pools	Expected Use of Drivers	Overhead Rates	Cost Assigned	Expected Use of Drivers	Overhead Rates	Cost Assigned
Purchasing	800	$160	$ 128,000	700	$160	$ 112,000
Processing	400,000	$1.40	560,000	600,000	$1.40	840,000
Packaging	180,000	$1.45	261,000	220,000	$1.45	319,000
Testing	2,100	$60	126,000	1,900	$60	114,000
Storing	10,400	$10	104,000	7,600	$10	76,000
Washing	350	$700	245,000	450	$700	315,000
Total overhead assigned			$1,424,000			$1,776,000

(c) Computation of overhead cost assigned per unit:

	Oil-Based Paint	Latex Paint
Total overhead cost assigned	$1,424,000	$1,776,000
Total gallons produced	400,000	600,000
Overhead cost per gallon	$3.56	$2.96

(d) Value-added activities: processing and packaging.
Non–value-added activities: purchasing, testing, storing, and washing.

the navigator

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Note: All asterisked Questions, Exercises, and Problems relate to material in the appendix to the chapter.

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 937.

(SO 1) **1.** Activity-based costing (ABC):
(a) can be used only in a process cost system.
(b) focuses on units of production.
(c) focuses on activities performed to produce a product.
(d) uses only a single basis of allocation.

2. Activity-based costing: (SO 1)
(a) is the initial phase of converting to a just-in-time operating environment.
(b) can be used only in a job order costing system.
(c) is a two-stage overhead cost allocation system that identifies activity cost pools and cost drivers.
(d) uses direct labor as its primary cost driver.

(SO 1, 4) **3.** Any activity that causes resources to be consumed is called a:
(a) just-in-time activity.
(b) facility-level activity.
(c) cost driver.
(d) non–value-added activity.

(SO 2) **4.** The first step in the development of an activity-based costing system is:
(a) identify and classify activities and allocate overhead to cost pools.
(b) assign overhead costs to products.
(c) identify cost drivers.
(d) compute overhead rates.

(SO 4) **5.** Which of the following would be the best cost driver for the assembling cost pool?
(a) Number of product lines.
(b) Number of parts.
(c) Number of orders.
(d) Amount of square footage.

(SO 4) **6.** The overhead rate for Machine Setups is $100 per setup. Products A and B have 80 and 60 setups, respectively. The overhead assigned to each product is:
(a) Product A $8,000, Product B $8,000.
(b) Product A $8,000, Product B $6,000.
(c) Product A $6,000, Product B $6,000.
(d) Product A $6,000, Product B $8,000.

(SO 4) **7.** Donna Crawford Co. has identified an activity cost pool to which it has allocated estimated overhead of $1,920,000. It has determined the expected use of cost drivers for that activity to be 160,000 inspections. Widgets require 40,000 inspections, Gadgets 30,000 inspections, and Targets 90,000 inspections. The overhead assigned to each product is:
(a) Widgets $40,000, Gadgets $30,000, Targets $90,000.
(b) Widgets $640,000, Gadgets $640,000, Targets $640,000.
(c) Widgets $360,000, Gadgets $480,000, Targets $1,080,000.
(d) Widgets $480,000, Gadgets $360,000, Targets $1,080,000.

(SO 5) **8.** A frequently cited limitation of activity-based costing is:
(a) ABC results in more cost pools being used to assign overhead costs to products.
(b) Certain overhead costs remain to be allocated by means of some arbitrary volume-based cost driver such as labor or machine hours.
(c) ABC leads to poorer management decisions.
(d) ABC results in less control over overhead costs.

9. A company should consider using ABC if: (SO 5)
(a) overhead costs constitute a small portion of total product costs.
(b) it has only a few product lines that require similar degrees of support services.
(c) direct labor constitutes a significant part of the total product cost and a high correlation exists between direct labor and changes in overhead costs.
(d) its product lines differ greatly in volume and manufacturing complexity.

10. An activity that adds costs to the product but does not increase its market value is a: (SO 6)
(a) value-added activity.
(b) cost driver.
(c) cost–benefit activity.
(d) non–value-added activity.

11. The following activity is value-added: (SO 6)
(a) Storage of raw materials.
(b) Moving parts from machine to machine.
(c) Shaping a piece of metal on a lathe.
(d) All of the above.

12. A relevant facility-level cost driver for heating costs is: (SO 7)
(a) machine hours.
(b) direct material.
(c) floor space.
(d) direct labor cost.

***13.** Under just-in-time processing: (SO 9)
(a) raw materials are received just in time for use in production.
(b) subassembly parts are completed just in time for use in assembling finished goods.
(c) finished goods are completed just in time to be sold.
(d) All of the above.

***14.** The primary objective of just-in-time processing is to: (SO 9)
(a) accumulate overhead in activity cost pools.
(b) eliminate or reduce all manufacturing inventories.
(c) identify relevant activity cost drivers.
(d) identify value-added activities.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, for additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. Under what conditions is direct labor a valid basis for allocating overhead?

2. What has happened in recent industrial history to reduce the usefulness of direct labor as the primary basis for allocating overhead to products?

3. In an automated manufacturing environment, what basis of overhead allocation is frequently more relevant than direct labor hours?

4. What is generally true about overhead allocation to high-volume products versus low-volume products under a traditional costing system?

5. (a) What are the principal differences between activity-based costing (ABC) and traditional product costing?
(b) What assumptions must be met for ABC costing to be useful?

6. What is the formula for computing activity-based overhead rates?
7. What steps are involved in developing an activity-based costing system?
8. Explain the preparation and use of a value-added/non–value-added activity flowchart in an ABC system.
9. What is an activity cost pool?
10. What is a cost driver?
11. What makes a cost driver accurate and appropriate?
12. What is the formula for assigning activity cost pools to products?
13. What are the benefits of activity-based costing?
14. What are the limitations of activity-based costing?
15. Under what conditions is ABC generally the superior overhead costing system?
16. What refinement has been made to enhance the efficiency and effectiveness of ABC for use in managing costs?
17. Of what benefit is classifying activities as value-added and non–value-added?
18. In what ways is the application of ABC to service industries the same as its application to manufacturing companies?
19. What is the relevance of the classification of levels of activity to ABC?

*20. (a) Describe the philosophy and approach of just-in-time processing.
(b) Identify the major elements of JIT processing.

Brief Exercises

Identify differences between costing systems.
(SO 1), AP

BE17-1 Warner Inc. sells a high-speed retrieval system for mining information. It provides the following information for the year.

	Budgeted	Actual
Overhead cost	$1,000,000	$950,000
Machine hours	50,000	45,000
Direct labor hours	100,000	92,000

Overhead is applied on the basis of direct labor hours. (a) Compute the predetermined overhead rate. (b) Determine the amount of overhead applied for the year. (c) Explain how an activity-based costing system might differ in terms of computing a predetermined overhead rate.

Identify differences between costing systems.
(SO 1), AP

BE17-2 Finney Inc. has conducted an analysis of overhead costs related to one of its product lines using a traditional costing system (volume-based) and an activity-based costing system. Here are its results.

	Traditional Costing	ABC
Sales revenues	$600,000	$600,000
Overhead costs:		
Product RX3	$ 34,000	$ 50,000
Product Y12	36,000	20,000
	$ 70,000	$ 70,000

Explain how a difference in the overhead costs between the two systems may have occurred.

Identify cost drivers.
(SO 4), AP

BE17-3 Storrer Co. identifies the following activities that pertain to manufacturing overhead: materials handling, machine setups, factory machine maintenance, factory supervision, and quality control. For each activity, identify an appropriate cost driver.

Identify cost drivers.
(SO 4), AP

BE17-4 Mason Company manufactures four products in a single production facility. The company uses activity-based costing. The following activities have been identified through the company's activity analysis: (a) inventory control, (b) machine setups, (c) employee training, (d) quality inspections, (e) material ordering, (f) drilling operations, and (g) building maintenance.

For each activity, name a cost driver that might be used to assign overhead costs to products.

BE17-5 Mordica Company identifies three activities in its manufacturing process: machine setups, machining, and inspections. Estimated annual overhead cost for each activity is $150,000, $325,000, and $87,500, respectively. The cost driver for each activity and the expected annual usage are: number of setups 2,500, machine hours 25,000, and number of inspections 1,750. Compute the overhead rate for each activity.

Compute activity-based overhead rates. (SO 4), **AP**

BE17-6 Weisman, Inc. uses activity-based costing as the basis for information to set prices for its six lines of seasonal coats. Compute the activity-based overhead rates using the following budgeted data for each of the activity cost pools.

Compute activity-based overhead rates. (SO 4), **AP**

Activity Cost Pools	Estimated Overhead	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Activity
Designing	$ 450,000	10,000 designer hours
Sizing and cutting	4,000,000	160,000 machine hours
Stitching and trimming	1,440,000	80,000 labor hours
Wrapping and packing	336,000	32,000 finished units

BE17-7 Hollins, Inc., a manufacturer of computer chips, employs activity-based costing. The budgeted data for each of the activity cost pools is provided below for the year 2012.

Compute activity-based overhead rates. (SO 4), **AP**

Activity Cost Pools	Estimated Overhead	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Activity
Ordering and receiving	$ 90,000	12,000 orders
Etching	480,000	60,000 machine hours
Soldering	1,760,000	440,000 labor hours

For 2012, the company had 11,000 orders and used 50,000 machine hours, and labor hours totaled 500,000. What is the total overhead applied?

BE17-8 Rich Novelty Company identified the following activities in its production and support operations. Classify each of these activities as either value-added or non–value-added.

Classify activities as value- or non–value-added. (SO 6), **AN**

(a) Purchasing.
(b) Receiving.
(c) Design engineering.
(d) Storing inventory.
(e) Cost accounting.
(f) Moving work in process.
(g) Inspecting and testing.
(h) Painting and packing.

BE17-9 Mendle and Kiner is an architectural firm that is contemplating the installation of activity-based costing. The following activities are performed daily by staff architects. Classify these activities as value-added or non–value-added: (1) designing and drafting, 2.5 hours; (2) staff meetings, 1 hour; (3) on-site supervision, 2 hours; (4) lunch, 1 hour; (5) consultation with client on specifications, 1.5 hours; (6) entertaining a prospective client for dinner, 2 hours.

Classify service company activities as value- or non–value-added. (SO 6, 8), **AN**

BE17-10 Kwik Pix is a large digital processing center that serves 130 outlets in grocery stores, service stations, camera and photo shops, and drug stores in 16 nearby towns. Kwik Pix operates 24 hours a day, 6 days a week. Classify each of the following activity costs of Kwik Pix as either unit-level, batch-level, product-level, or facility-level.

Classify activities according to level. (SO 7, 8), **AN**

(a) Color printing materials.
(b) Photocopy paper.
(c) Depreciation of machinery.
(d) Setups for enlargements.
(e) Supervisor's salary.
(f) Ordering materials.
(g) Pickup and delivery.
(h) Commission to dealers.
(i) Insurance on building.
(j) Loading developing machines.

Classify activities according to level.
(SO 7), AP

BE17-11 Trammell, Inc. operates 20 injection molding machines in the production of tool boxes of four different sizes, named the Apprentice, the Handyman, the Journeyman, and the Professional. Classify each of the following costs as unit-level, batch-level, product-level, or facility-level.

(a) First-shift supervisor's salary.
(b) Powdered raw plastic.
(c) Dies for casting plastic components.
(d) Depreciation on injection molding machines.
(e) Changing dies on machines.
(f) Moving components to assembly department.
(g) Engineering design.
(h) Employee health and medical insurance coverage.

Compute rates and activity levels.
(SO 4, 7), AP

BE17-12 Spin Cycle Company uses three activity pools to apply overhead to its products. Each activity has a cost driver used to allocate the overhead costs to the product. The activities and related overhead costs are as follows: Product design $40,000; Machining $300,000; and Material handling $100,000. The cost drivers and expected use are as follows.

Activities	Cost Drivers	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Activity
Product design	Number of product changes	10
Machining	Machine hours	150,000
Material handling	Number of set ups	100

(a) Compute the predetermined overhead rate for each activity. (b) Classify each of these activities as unit-level, batch-level, product-level, or facility-level.

Do it! Review

Identify characteristics of traditional and ABC costing systems.
(SO 1, 2), K

Do it! 17-1 Indicate whether the following statements are true or false.

1. The reasoning behind ABC cost allocation is that products consume activities and activities consume resources.
2. Activity-based costing is an approach for allocating direct labor to products.
3. In today's increasingly automated environment, direct labor is never an appropriate basis for allocating costs to products.
4. A cost driver is any factor or activity that has a direct cause-effect relationship with resources consumed.
5. Activity-based costing segregates overhead into various cost pools in an effort to provide more accurate cost information.

Compute activity-based overhead rates and assign overhead using ABC.
(SO 4), AP

Do it! 17-2 Flynn Industries has three activity cost pools and two products. It expects to produce 3,000 units of Product BC113 and 1,500 of Product AD908. Having identified its activity cost pools and the cost drivers for each pool, Flynn accumulated the following data relative to those activity cost pools and cost drivers.

Annual Overhead Data			Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Product		
Activity Cost Pool	Cost Drivers	Estimated Overhead	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Activity	Product BC113	Product AD908
Machine setup	Setups	$ 16,000	40	25	15
Machining	Machine hours	110,000	5,000	1,000	4,000
Packing	Orders	30,000	500	150	350

Using the above data, do the following:

(a) Prepare a schedule showing the computations of the activity-based overhead rates per cost driver.
(b) Prepare a schedule assigning each activity's overhead cost to the two products.
(c) Compute the overhead cost per unit for each product. (Round to nearest cent.)
(d) Comment on the comparative overhead cost per product.

Do it! 17-3 Classify each of the following activities within a tax-preparation business as value-added (VA) or non–value-added (NVA).

Classify activities as value- or non–value-added.
(SO 6, 8), **AP**

1. Advertising.
2. Completing tax returns.
3. Cleaning the office.
4. Billing clients.
5. Answering client questions.
6. Accompanying clients to audit proceedings.

Do it! 17-4 Adamson Company manufactures four lines of garden tools. As a result of an activity analysis, the accounting department has identified eight activity cost pools. Each of the product lines is produced in large batches, with the whole plant devoted to one product at a time. Classify each of the following activities or costs as either unit-level, batch level, product-level, or facility-level.

Classify activities according to level.
(SO 7), **C**

(a) Machining parts.
(b) Product design.
(c) Plant maintenance.
(d) Machine setup.
(e) Assembling parts.
(f) Purchasing raw materials.
(g) Property taxes.
(h) Painting.

Exercises

E17-1 Wilkins Inc. has two types of handbags: standard and custom. The controller has decided to use a plantwide overhead rate based on direct labor costs. The president has heard of activity-based costing and wants to see how the results would differ if this system were used. Two activity cost pools were developed: machining and machine setup. Presented below is information related to the company's operations.

Assign overhead using traditional costing and ABC.
(SO 1, 4), **AP**

	Standard	Custom
Direct labor costs	$50,000	$100,000
Machine hours	1,000	1,000
Setup hours	100	400

Total estimated overhead costs are $270,000. Overhead cost allocated to the machining activity cost pool is $170,000, and $100,000 is allocated to the machine setup activity cost pool.

Instructions
(a) Compute the overhead rate using the traditional (plantwide) approach.
(b) Compute the overhead rates using the activity-based costing approach.
(c) Determine the difference in allocation between the two approaches.

E17-2 Ayala Inc. has conducted the following analysis related to its product lines, using a traditional costing system (volume-based) and an activity-based costing system. Both the traditional and the activity-based costing systems include direct materials and direct labor costs.

Explain difference between traditional and activity-based costing.
(SO 1), **AP**

		Total Costs	
Products	Sales Revenue	Traditional	ABC
Product 540X	$180,000	$55,000	$50,000
Product 137Y	160,000	50,000	35,000
Product 249S	70,000	15,000	35,000

Instructions
(a) For each product line, compute operating income using the traditional costing system.
(b) For each product line, compute operating income using the activity-based costing system.

(c) Using the following formula, compute the percentage difference in operating income for each of the product lines of Ayala: [Operating Income (ABC) − Operating Income (traditional cost)] ÷ Operating Income (traditional cost). (Round the percentage to two decimals.)
(d) Provide a rationale as to why the costs for Product 540X are approximately the same using either the traditional or activity-based costing system.

Assign overhead using traditional costing and ABC.
(SO 1, 4), **AN**

E17-3 American Fabrics has budgeted overhead costs of $990,000. It has allocated overhead on a plantwide basis to its two products (wool and cotton) using direct labor hours which are estimated to be 450,000 for the current year. The company has decided to experiment with activity-based costing and has created two activity cost pools and related activity cost drivers. These two cost pools are: Cutting (cost driver is machine hours) and Design (cost driver is number of setups). Overhead allocated to the Cutting cost pool is $360,000 and $630,000 is allocated to the Design cost pool. Additional information related to these pools is as follows.

	Wool	Cotton	Total
Machine hours	100,000	100,000	200,000
Number of setups	1,000	500	1,500

Instructions
(a) Determine the amount of overhead allocated to the wool product line and the cotton product line using activity-based costing.
(b) What amount of overhead would be allocated to the wool and cotton product lines using the traditional approach, assuming direct labor hours were incurred evenly between the wool and cotton? How does this compare with the amount allocated using ABC in part (a)?

Assign overhead using traditional costing and ABC.
(SO 1, 4), **AN**

E17-4 Altex Inc. manufactures two products: car wheels and truck wheels. To determine the amount of overhead to assign to each product line, the controller, Robert Hermann, has developed the following information.

	Car	Truck
Estimated wheels produced	40,000	10,000
Direct labor hours per wheel	1	3

Total estimated overhead costs for the two product lines are $770,000.

Instructions
(a) Compute the overhead cost assigned to the car wheels and truck wheels, assuming that direct labor hours is used to allocate overhead costs.
(b) Hermann is not satisfied with the traditional method of allocating overhead because he believes that most of the overhead costs relate to the truck wheel product line because of its complexity. He therefore develops the following three activity cost pools and related cost drivers to better understand these costs.

Activity Cost Pools	Expected Use of Cost Drivers	Estimated Overhead Costs
Setting up machines	1,000 setups	$220,000
Assembling	70,000 labor hours	280,000
Inspection	1,200 inspections	270,000

Compute the activity-based overhead rates for these three cost pools.

(c) Compute the cost that is assigned to the car wheels and truck wheels product lines using an activity-based costing system, given the following information.

Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Product		
	Car	**Truck**
Number of setups	200	800
Direct labor hours	40,000	30,000
Number of inspections	100	1,100

(d) What do you believe Hermann should do?

E17-5 Shady Lady sells window coverings to both commercial and residential customers. The following information relates to its budgeted operations for the current year.

Assign overhead using traditional costing and ABC.
(SO 1, 4), **AP**

		Commercial		**Residential**
Revenues		$300,000		$480,000
Direct material costs	$ 30,000		$ 50,000	
Direct labor costs	100,000		300,000	
Overhead costs	85,000	215,000	150,000	500,000
Operating income (loss)		$ 85,000		($ 20,000)

The controller, Peggy Kingman, is concerned about the residential product line. She cannot understand why this line is not more profitable given that the installations of window coverings are less complex for residential customers. In addition, the residential client base resides in close proximity to the company office, so travel costs are not as expensive on a per client visit for residential customers. As a result, she has decided to take a closer look at the overhead costs assigned to the two product lines to determine whether a more accurate product costing model can be developed. Here are the three activity cost pools and related information she developed:

Activity Cost Pools	Estimated Overhead	Cost Drivers
Scheduling and travel	$105,000	Hours of travel
Setup time	70,000	Number of setups
Supervision	60,000	Direct labor cost

Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Product		
	Commercial	**Residential**
Scheduling and travel	1,000	500
Setup time	450	250

Instructions

(a) Compute the activity-based overhead rates for each of the three cost pools, and determine the overhead cost assigned to each product line.
(b) Compute the operating income for each product line, using the activity-based overhead rates.
(c) What do you believe Peggy Kingman should do?

E17-6 Perdon Corporation manufactures safes—large mobile safes, and large walk-in stationary bank safes. As part of its annual budgeting process, Perdon is analyzing the profitability of its two products. Part of this analysis involves estimating the amount of overhead to be allocated to each product line. The information shown on page 922 relates to overhead.

Assign overhead using traditional costing and ABC.
(SO 1, 4), **AN**

	Mobile Safes	Walk-in Safes
Units planned for production	200	50
Material moves per product line	300	200
Purchase orders per product line	450	350
Direct labor hours per product line	800	1,700

Instructions

(a) The total estimated manufacturing overhead was $260,000. Under traditional costing (which assigns overhead on the basis of direct-labor hours), what amount of manufacturing overhead costs are assigned to:
  (1) One mobile safe?
  (2) One walk-in safe?

(b) The total estimated manufacturing overhead of $260,000 was comprised of $160,000 for material-handling costs and $100,000 for purchasing activity costs. Under activity-based costing (ABC):
  (1) What amount of material handling costs are assigned to:
    (a) One mobile safe?
    (b) One walk-in safe?
  (2) What amount of purchasing activity costs are assigned to:
    (a) One mobile safe?
    (b) One walk-in safe?

(c) Compare the amount of overhead allocated to one mobile safe and to one walk-in safe under the traditional costing approach versus under ABC.

Identify activity cost pools.
(SO 3), **AP**

E17-7 Quik Prints Company is a small printing and copying firm with three high-speed offset printing presses, five copiers (two color and three black and white), one collator, one cutting and folding machine, and one fax machine. To improve its pricing practices, owner-manager Terry Morton is installing activity-based accounting. Additionally, Terry employs five employees: two printers/designers, one receptionist/bookkeeper, one sales person/copy-machine operator, and one janitor/delivery clerk. Terry can operate any of the machines and, in addition to managing the entire operation, he performs the training, designing, selling, and marketing functions.

Instructions

As Quik Prints' independent accountant who prepares tax forms and quarterly financial statements, you have been asked to identify the activities that would be used to accumulate overhead costs for assignment to jobs and customers. Using your knowledge of a small printing and copying firm (and some imagination), identify at least twelve activity cost pools as the start of an activity-based costing system for Quik Prints Company.

Identify activity cost pools and cost drivers.
(SO 3, 4), **AN**

E17-8 Santana Corporation manufactures snowmobiles in its Blue Mountain, Wisconsin, plant. The following costs are budgeted for the first quarter's operations.

Machine setup, indirect materials	$ 4,000
Inspections	16,000
Tests	4,000
Insurance, plant	110,000
Engineering design	140,000
Depreciation, machinery	520,000
Machine setup, indirect labor	20,000
Property taxes	29,000
Oil, heating	19,000
Electricity, plant lighting	21,000
Engineering prototypes	60,000
Depreciation, plant	210,000
Electricity, machinery	36,000
Machine maintenance wages	19,000

Instructions
Classify the above costs of Santana Corporation into activity cost pools using the following: engineering, machinery, machine setup, quality control, factory utilities, maintenance. Next, identify a cost driver that may be used to assign each cost pool to each line of snowmobiles.

E17-9 Danny Baden's Verde Vineyards in Oakville, California, produces three varieties of wine: Merlot, Viognier, and Pinot Noir. His winemaster, Russel Hansen, has identified the following activities as cost pools for accumulating overhead and assigning it to products.

Identify activity cost drivers. (SO 4), **AN**

1. Culling and replanting. Dead or overcrowded vines are culled, and new vines are planted or relocated. (Separate vineyards by variety.)
2. Tying. The posts and wires are reset, and vines are tied to the wires for the dormant season.
3. Trimming. At the end of the harvest the vines are cut and trimmed back in preparation for the next season.
4. Spraying. The vines are sprayed with chemicals for protection against insects and fungi.
5. Harvesting. The grapes are hand-picked, placed in carts, and transported to the crushers.
6. Stemming and crushing. Cartfuls of bunches of grapes of each variety are separately loaded into machines which remove stems and gently crush the grapes.
7. Pressing and filtering. The crushed grapes are transferred to presses which mechanically remove the juices and filter out bulk and impurities.
8. Fermentation. The grape juice, by variety, is fermented in either stainless-steel tanks or oak barrels.
9. Aging. The wines are aged in either stainless-steel tanks or oak barrels for one to three years depending on variety.
10. Bottling and corking. Bottles are machine-filled and corked.
11. Labeling and boxing. Each bottle is labeled, as is each nine-bottle case, with the name of the vintner, vintage, and variety.
12. Storing. Packaged and boxed bottles are stored awaiting shipment.
13. Shipping. The wine is shipped to distributors and private retailers.
14. Heating and air-conditioning of plant and offices.
15. Maintenance of buildings and equipment. Printing, repairs, replacements, and general maintenance are performed in the off-season.

Instructions
For each of Verde's fifteen activity cost pools, identify a probable cost driver that might be used to assign overhead costs to its three wine varieties.

E17-10 Wilmington, Inc. manufactures five models of kitchen appliances at its Mesa plant. The company is installing activity-based costing and has identified the following activities performed at its Mesa plant.

Identify activity cost drivers. (SO 4), **AN**

1. Designing new models.
2. Purchasing raw materials and parts.
3. Storing and managing inventory.
4. Receiving and inspecting raw materials and parts.
5. Interviewing and hiring new personnel.
6. Machine forming sheet steel into appliance parts.
7. Manually assembling parts into appliances.
8. Training all employees of the company.
9. Insuring all tangible fixed assets.
10. Supervising production.
11. Maintaining and repairing machinery and equipment.
12. Painting and packaging finished appliances.

Having analyzed its Mesa plant operations for purposes of installing activity-based costing, Wilmington, Inc. identified its activity cost centers. It now needs to identify relevant activity cost drivers in order to assign overhead costs to its products.

Instructions
Using the activities listed above, identify for each activity one or more cost drivers that might be used to assign overhead to Wilmington's five products.

Compute overhead rates and assign overhead using ABC.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

E17-11 Major Instrument, Inc. manufactures two products: missile range instruments and space pressure gauges. During April, 50 range instruments and 300 pressure gauges were produced, and overhead costs of $94,500 were estimated. An analysis of estimated overhead costs reveals the following activities.

Activities	Cost Drivers	Total Cost
1. Materials handling	Number of requisitions	$40,000
2. Machine setups	Number of setups	27,500
3. Quality inspections	Number of inspections	27,000
		$94,500

The cost driver volume for each product was as follows.

Cost Drivers	Instruments	Gauges	Total
Number of requisitions	400	600	1,000
Number of setups	200	300	500
Number of inspections	200	400	600

Instructions
(a) Determine the overhead rate for each activity.
(b) Assign the manufacturing overhead costs for April to the two products using activity-based costing.
(c) Write a memorandum to the president of Major Instrument explaining the benefits of activity-based costing.

Assign overhead using traditional costing and ABC; classify activities as value- or non–value-added.
(SO 1, 4, 6), **AP**

E17-12 Kragan Clothing Company manufactures its own designed and labeled sports attire and sells its products through catalog sales and retail outlets. While Kragan has for years used activity-based costing in its manufacturing activities, it has always used traditional costing in assigning its selling costs to its product lines. Selling costs have traditionally been assigned to Kragan's product lines at a rate of 70% of direct material costs. Its direct material costs for the month of March for Kragan's "high intensity" line of attire are $400,000. The company has decided to extend activity-based costing to its selling costs. Data relating to the "high intensity" line of products for the month of March are as follows.

Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Overhead Rate	Number of Cost Drivers Used per Activity
Sales commissions	Dollar sales	$0.05 per dollar sales	$900,000
Advertising—TV/Radio	Minutes	$300 per minute	250
Advertising—Newspaper	Column inches	$10 per column inch	2,000
Catalogs	Catalogs mailed	$2.50 per catalog	60,000
Cost of catalog sales	Catalog orders	$1 per catalog order	9,000
Credit and collection	Dollar sales	$0.03 per dollar sales	$900,000

Instructions
(a) Compute the selling costs to be assigned to the "high-intensity" line of attire for the month of March: (1) using the traditional product costing system (direct material cost is the cost driver), and (2) using activity-based costing.
(b) By what amount does the traditional product costing system undercost or overcost the "high-intensity" product line?
(c) Classify each of the activities as value-added or non–value-added.

Assign overhead using traditional costing and ABC; classify activities as value- or non–value-added.
(SO 1, 4, 6), **AP**

E17-13 Healthy Products, Inc., uses a traditional product costing system to assign overhead costs uniformly to all products. To meet Food and Drug Administration requirements and to assure its customers of safe, sanitary, and nutritious food, Healthy engages in a high level of quality control. Healthy assigns its quality-control overhead costs to all products at a rate of 17% of direct labor costs. Its direct labor cost for the month of June

for its low-calorie dessert line is $65,000. In response to repeated requests from its financial vice president, Healthy's management agrees to adopt activity-based costing. Data relating to the low-calorie dessert line for the month of June are as follows.

Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Overhead Rate	Number of Cost Drivers Used per Activity
Inspections of material received	Number of pounds	$0.80 per pound	6,000 pounds
In-process inspections	Number of servings	$0.33 per serving	10,000 servings
FDA certification	Customer orders	$12.00 per order	420 orders

Instructions

(a) Compute the quality-control overhead cost to be assigned to the low-calorie dessert product line for the month of June: (1) using the traditional product costing system (direct labor cost is the cost driver), and (2) using activity-based costing.

(b) By what amount does the traditional product costing system undercost or overcost the low-calorie dessert line?

(c) Classify each of the activities as value-added or non–value-added.

E17-14 In an effort to expand the usefulness of its activity-based costing system, Danny Baden's Verde Vineyards decides to adopt activity-based management techniques. One of these ABM techniques is classifying its activities as either value-added or non–value-added.

Classify activities as value-added or non–value-added. (SO 6), **AN**

Instructions

Using Verde's list of fifteen activity cost pools in E17-9, classify each of the activities as either value-added or non–value-added.

E17-15 Wilmington, Inc. is interested in using its activity-based costing system to improve its operating efficiency and its profit margins by applying activity-based management techniques. As part of this undertaking, you have been asked to classify its Mesa plant activities as value-added or non–value-added.

Classify activities as value-added or non–value-added. (SO 6), **AN**

Instructions

Using the list of activities identified in E17-10, classify each activity as either value-added or non–value-added.

E17-16 Lasso and Markowitz is a law firm that is initiating an activity-based costing system. Sam Lasso, the senior partner and strong supporter of ABC, has prepared the following list of activities performed by a typical attorney in a day at the firm.

Classify service company activities as value-added or non–value-added. (SO 6), **AN**

Activities	Hours
Writing contracts and letters	1.5
Attending staff meetings	0.5
Taking depositions	1.0
Doing research	1.0
Traveling to/from court	1.0
Contemplating legal strategy	1.0
Eating lunch	1.0
Litigating a case in court	2.5
Entertaining a prospective client	1.5

Instructions

Classify each of the activities listed by Sam Lasso as value-added or non–value-added and defend your classification. How much was value-added time and how much was non–value-added?

E17-17 Having itemized its costs for the first quarter of next year's budget, Santana Corporation desires to install an activity-based costing system. First, it identified the activity cost pools in which to accumulate factory overhead; second, it identified the relevant cost drivers. (This was done in E17-8.)

Classify activities by level. (SO 7), **AN**

Instructions
Using the activity cost pools identified in E17-8, classify each of those cost pools as either unit-level, batch-level, product-level, or facility-level.

Classify activities by level.
(SO 7), **AN**

E17-18 William Mendel & Sons, Inc. is a small manufacturing company in La Jolla that uses activity-based costing. Mendel & Sons accumulates overhead in the following activity cost pools.

1. Hiring personnel.
2. Managing parts inventory.
3. Purchasing.
4. Testing prototypes.
5. Designing products.
6. Setting up equipment.
7. Training employees.
8. Inspecting machined parts.
9. Machining.
10. Assembling.

Instructions
For each activity cost pool, indicate whether the activity cost pool would be unit-level, batch-level, product-level, or facility-level.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Assign overhead using traditional costing and ABC; compute unit costs; classify activities as value- or non–value-added.
(SO 1, 4, 6), **AP**

P17-1A FireOut, Inc. manufactures steel cylinders and nozzles for two models of fire extinguishers: (1) a home fire extinguisher and (2) a commercial fire extinguisher. The *home model* is a high-volume (54,000 units), half-gallon cylinder that holds 2 1/2 pounds of multipurpose dry chemical at 480 PSI. The *commercial model* is a low-volume (10,200 units), two-gallon cylinder that holds 10 pounds of multi-purpose dry chemical at 390 PSI. Both products require 1.5 hours of direct labor for completion. Therefore, total annual direct labor hours are 96,300 or [1.5 hrs. × (54,000 + 10,200)]. Expected annual manufacturing overhead is $1,557,480. Thus, the predetermined overhead rate is $16.17 or ($1,557,480 ÷ 96,300) per direct labor hour. The direct materials cost per unit is $18.50 for the home model and $26.50 for the commercial model. The direct labor cost is $19 per unit for both the home and the commercial models.

The company's managers identified six activity cost pools and related cost drivers and accumulated overhead by cost pool as follows.

Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Estimated Overhead	Expected Use of Cost Drivers	Expected Use of Drivers by Product	
				Home	Commercial
Receiving	Pounds	$ 70,350	335,000	215,000	120,000
Forming	Machine hours	150,500	35,000	27,000	8,000
Assembling	Number of parts	412,300	217,000	165,000	52,000
Testing	Number of tests	51,000	25,500	15,500	10,000
Painting	Gallons	52,580	5,258	3,680	1,578
Packing and shipping	Pounds	820,750	335,000	215,000	120,000
		$1,557,480			

Instructions

(a) Under traditional product costing, compute the total unit cost of each product. Prepare a simple comparative schedule of the individual costs by product (similar to Illustration 17-10 on page 896). (a) Unit cost–H.M. $61.76

(b) Under ABC, prepare a schedule showing the computations of the activity-based overhead rates (per cost driver).

(c) Prepare a schedule assigning each activity's overhead cost pool to each product based on the use of cost drivers. (Include a computation of overhead cost per unit, rounding to the nearest cent.) (c) Cost assigned–H.M. $1,069,300

(d) Compute the total cost per unit for each product under ABC. (d) Cost/unit–H.M. $57.30

(e) Classify each of the activities as a value-added activity or a non–value-added activity.

(f) Comment on (1) the comparative overhead cost per unit for the two products under ABC, and (2) the comparative total costs per unit under traditional costing and ABC.

P17-2A Schultz Electronics manufactures two large-screen television models: the Royale which sells for $1,600, and a new model, the Majestic, which sells for $1,300. The production cost computed per unit under traditional costing for each model in 2012 was as follows.

Assign overhead to products using ABC and evaluate decision.
(SO 4), **AP**

Traditional Costing	Royale	Majestic
Direct materials	$ 700	$420
Direct labor ($20 per hour)	120	100
Manufacturing overhead ($38 per DLH)	228	190
Total per unit cost	$1,048	$710

In 2012, Schultz manufactured 25,000 units of the Royale and 10,000 units of the Majestic. The overhead rate of $38 per direct labor hour was determined by dividing total expected manufacturing overhead of $7,600,000 by the total direct labor hours (200,000) for the two models.

Under traditional costing, the gross profit on the models was: Royale $552 or ($1,600 − $1,048), and Majestic $590 or ($1,300 − $710). Because of this difference, management is considering phasing out the Royale model and increasing the production of the Majestic model.

Before finalizing its decision, management asks Schultz's controller to prepare an analysis using activity-based costing (ABC). The controller accumulates the following information about overhead for the year ended December 31, 2012.

Activities	Cost Drivers	Estimated Overhead	Expected Use of Cost Drivers	Activity-Based Overhead Rate
Purchasing	Number of orders	$1,200,000	40,000	$30/order
Machine setups	Number of setups	900,000	18,000	50/setup
Machining	Machine hours	4,800,000	120,000	40/hour
Quality control	Number of inspections	700,000	28,000	25/inspection

The cost drivers used for each product were:

Cost Drivers	Royale	Majestic	Total
Purchase orders	17,000	23,000	40,000
Machine setups	5,000	13,000	18,000
Machine hours	75,000	45,000	120,000
Inspections	11,000	17,000	28,000

Instructions

(a) Assign the total 2012 manufacturing overhead costs to the two products using activity-based costing (ABC). (a) Royale $4,035,000

(b) What was the cost per unit and gross profit of each model using ABC costing? (b) Cost/unit–Royale $981.40

(c) Are management's future plans for the two models sound? Explain.

Assign overhead costs using traditional costing and ABC; compare results.
(SO 1, 4), AN

P17-3A Thakin Stairs Co. of Moore designs and builds factory-made premium wooden stairways for homes. The manufactured stairway components (spindles, risers, hangers, hand rails) permit installation of stairways of varying lengths and widths. All are of white oak wood. Budgeted manufacturing overhead costs for the year 2012 are as follows.

Overhead Cost Pools	Amount
Purchasing	$ 69,000
Handling materials	82,000
Production (cutting, milling, finishing)	210,000
Setting up machines	95,000
Inspecting	90,000
Inventory control (raw materials and finished goods)	126,000
Utilities	180,000
Total budget overhead costs	$852,000

For the last 4 years, Thakin Stairs Co. has been charging overhead to products on the basis of machine hours. For the year 2012, 100,000 machine hours are budgeted.

Jeremy Nolan, owner-manager of Thakin Stairs Co., recently directed his accountant, Bill Seagren, to implement the activity-based costing system that he has repeatedly proposed. At Jeremy Nolan's request, Bill and the production foreman identify the following cost drivers and their usage for the previously budgeted overhead cost pools.

Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Expected Use of Cost Drivers
Purchasing	Number of orders	600
Handling materials	Number of moves	8,000
Production (cutting, milling, finishing)	Direct labor hours	100,000
Setting up machines	Number of setups	1,250
Inspecting	Number of inspections	6,000
Inventory control (raw materials and finished goods)	Number of components	168,000
Utilities	Square feet occupied	90,000

Steve Hannon, sales manager, has received an order for 250 stairways from Community Builders, Inc., a large housing development contractor. At Steve's request, Bill prepares cost estimates for producing components for 250 stairways so Steve can submit a contract price per stairway to Community Builders. He accumulates the following data for the production of 250 stairways.

Direct materials	$103,600
Direct labor	$112,000
Machine hours	14,500
Direct labor hours	5,000
Number of purchase orders	60
Number of material moves	800
Number of machine setups	100
Number of inspections	450
Number of components	16,000
Number of square feet occupied	8,000

Instructions

(a) Compute the predetermined overhead rate using traditional costing with machine hours as the basis.

(b) Cost/stairway $1,356.56

(b) What is the manufacturing cost per stairway under traditional costing? (Round to the nearest cent.)

(c) What is the manufacturing cost per stairway under the proposed activity-based costing? (Round to the nearest cent. Prepare all of the necessary schedules.) (c) Cost/stairway $1,134.20

(d) Which of the two costing systems is preferable in pricing decisions and why?

P17-4A Benton Corporation produces two grades of wine from grapes that it buys from California growers. It produces and sells roughly 3,000,000 liters per year of a low-cost, high-volume product called CoolDay. It sells this in 600,000 5-liter jugs. Benton also produces and sells roughly 300,000 liters per year of a low-volume, high-cost product called LiteMist. LiteMist is sold in 1-liter bottles. Based on recent data, the CoolDay product has not been as profitable as LiteMist. Management is considering dropping the inexpensive CoolDay line so it can focus more attention on the LiteMist product. The LiteMist product already demands considerably more attention than the CoolDay line.

Assign overhead costs using traditional costing and ABC; compare results. (SO 1, 4), **AN**

Jack Eller, president and founder of Benton, is skeptical about this idea. He points out that for many decades the company produced only the CoolDay line, and that it was always quite profitable. It wasn't until the company started producing the more complicated LiteMist wine that the profitability of CoolDay declined. Prior to the introduction of LiteMist, the company had simple equipment, simple growing and production procedures, and virtually no need for quality control. Because LiteMist is bottled in 1-liter bottles, it requires considerably more time and effort, both to bottle and to label and box than does CoolDay. The company must bottle and handle 5 times as many bottles of LiteMist to sell the same quantity as CoolDay. CoolDay requires 1 month of aging; LiteMist requires 1 year. CoolDay requires cleaning and inspection of equipment every 10,000 liters; LiteMist requires such maintenance every 600 liters.

Jack has asked the accounting department to prepare an analysis of the cost per liter using the traditional costing approach and using activity-based costing. The following information was collected.

	CoolDay	LiteMist
Direct materials per liter	$0.40	$1.20
Direct labor cost per liter	$0.25	$0.50
Direct labor hours per liter	0.05	0.09
Total direct labor hours	150,000	27,000

Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Estimated Overhead	Expected Use of Cost Drivers	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Product	
				CoolDay	LiteMist
Grape processing	Cart of grapes	$ 145,860	6,600	6,000	600
Aging	Total months	396,000	6,600,000	3,000,000	3,600,000
Bottling and corking	Number of bottles	270,000	900,000	600,000	300,000
Labeling and boxing	Number of bottles	189,000	900,000	600,000	300,000
Maintain and inspect equipment	Number of inspections	240,800	800	350	450
		$1,241,660			

Instructions

Answer each of the following questions. (Round all calculations to three decimal places.)

(a) Under traditional product costing using direct labor hours, compute the total manufacturing cost per **liter** of both products. (a) Cost/liter–C.D. $1.001

(b) Under ABC, prepare a schedule showing the computation of the activity-based overhead rates (per cost driver).

(c) Prepare a schedule assigning each activity's overhead cost pool to each product, based on the use of cost drivers. Include a computation of overhead cost per liter. (c) Cost/liter–C.D. $.241

(d) Compute the total manufacturing cost per liter for both products under ABC.

(e) Write a memo to Jack Eller discussing the implications of your analysis for the company's plans. In this memo, provide a brief description of ABC as well as an explanation of how the traditional approach can result in distortions.

Assign overhead costs to services using traditional costing and ABC; compute overhead rates and unit costs; compare results.
(SO 1, 4, 6, 8), **AN**

P17-5A Polk and Stoneman is a public accounting firm that offers two primary services, auditing and tax return preparation. A controversy has developed between the partners of the two service lines as to who is contributing the greater amount to the bottom line. The area of contention is the assignment of overhead. The tax partners argue for assigning overhead on the basis of 40% of direct labor dollars, while the audit partners argue for implementing activity-based costing. The partners agree to use next year's budgeted data for purposes of analysis and comparison. The following overhead data are collected to develop the comparison.

Activity Cost Pools	Cost Drivers	Estimated Overhead	Expected Use of Cost Drivers	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Service	
				Audit	Tax
Employee training	Direct labor dollars	$216,000	$1,800,000	$1,050,000	$750,000
Typing and secretarial	Number of reports/forms	76,200	2,500	800	1,700
Computing	Number of minutes	204,000	60,000	25,000	35,000
Facility rental	Number of employees	142,500	40	22	18
Travel	Per expense reports	81,300	Direct	56,000	25,300
		$720,000			

Instructions

(a) Using traditional product costing as proposed by the tax partners, compute the total overhead cost assigned to both services (audit and tax) of Polk and Stoneman.

(b) (2) Cost assigned–Tax $350,241

(b) (1) Using activity-based costing, prepare a schedule showing the computations of the activity-based overhead rates (per cost driver).

(2) Prepare a schedule assigning each activity's overhead cost pool to each service based on the use of the cost drivers.

(c) Classify each of the activities as a value-added activity or a non–value-added activity.

(d) Difference–Audit $50,241

(d) Comment on the comparative overhead cost for the two services under both traditional costing and ABC.

Problems: Set B

Assign overhead using traditional costing and ABC; compute unit costs; classify activities as value- or non–value-added.
(SO 1, 4, 6), **AP**

P17-1B VideoPlus, Inc. manufactures two types of DVD players, a deluxe model and a standard model. The deluxe model is a multi-format progressive-scan DVD player with networking capability, Dolby digital, and DTS decoder. The standard model's primary feature is progressive-scan. Annual production is 50,000 units for the deluxe and 20,000 units for the standard.

Both products require 2 hours of direct labor for completion. Therefore, total annual direct labor hours are 140,000 [2 hrs. × (20,000 + 50,000)]. Expected annual manufacturing overhead is $1,050,000. Thus, the predetermined overhead rate is $7.50 ($1,050,000 ÷ 140,000) per direct labor hour. The direct materials cost per unit is $42 for the deluxe model and $11 for the standard model. The direct labor cost is $18 per unit for both the deluxe and the standard models.

The company's managers identified six activity cost pools and related cost drivers and accumulated overhead by cost pool as follows.

Activity Cost Pool	Cost Driver	Estimated Overhead	Expected Use of Cost Drivers	Expected Use of Drivers by Product	
				Standard	Deluxe
Purchasing	Orders	$ 126,000	400	100	300
Receiving	Pounds	30,000	20,000	4,000	16,000
Assembling	Number of parts	444,000	74,000	20,000	54,000
Testing	Number of tests	115,000	23,000	10,000	13,000
Finishing	Units	140,000	70,000	20,000	50,000
Packing and shipping	Pounds	195,000	80,000	18,000	62,000
		$1,050,000			

Instructions

(a) Under traditional product costing, compute the total unit cost of both products. Prepare a simple comparative schedule of the individual costs by product (similar to Illustration 17-10 on page 896). (a) Unit cost–Standard $44

(b) Under ABC, prepare a schedule showing the computations of the activity-based overhead rates (per cost driver).

(c) Prepare a schedule assigning each activity's overhead cost pool to each product based on the use of cost drivers. (Include a computation of overhead cost per unit, rounding to the nearest cent.) (c) Cost assigned–Standard $291,375

(d) Compute the total cost per unit for each product under ABC. (d) Cost/unit–Standard $43.57

(e) Classify each of the activities as a value-added activity or a non–value-added activity.

(f) Comment on (1) the comparative overhead cost per unit for the two products under ABC, and (2) the comparative total costs per unit under traditional costing and ABC.

P17-2B Kinnard Electronics manufactures two home theater systems: the Elite which sells for $1,400, and a new model, the Preferred, which sells for $1,100. The production cost computed per unit under traditional costing for each model in 2012 was as follows.

Assign overhead to products using ABC and evaluate decision.
(SO 4), **AP**

Traditional Costing	Elite	Preferred
Direct materials	$600	$320
Direct labor ($20 per hour)	100	80
Manufacturing overhead ($35 per DLH)	175	140
Total per unit cost	$875	$540

In 2012, Kinnard manufactured 20,000 units of the Elite and 10,000 units of the Preferred. The overhead rate of $35 per direct labor hour was determined by dividing total expected manufacturing overhead of $4,900,000 by the total direct labor hours (140,000) for the two models.

Under traditional costing, the gross profit on the models was: Elite $525 ($1,400 − $875), and Preferred $560 ($1,100 − $540). Because of this difference, management is considering phasing out the Elite model and increasing the production of the Preferred model.

Before finalizing its decision, management asks Kinnard's controller to prepare an analysis using activity-based costing (ABC). The controller accumulates the following information about overhead for the year ended December 31, 2012.

Activity	Cost Driver	Estimated Overhead	Expected Use of Cost Drivers	Activity-Based Overhead Rate
Purchasing	Number of orders	$ 775,000	25,000	$31
Machine setups	Number of setups	580,000	20,000	29
Machining	Machine hours	3,100,000	100,000	31
Quality control	Number of inspections	445,000	5,000	89

The cost drivers used for each product were:

Cost Driver	Elite	Preferred	Total
Purchase orders	11,250	13,750	25,000
Machine setups	11,000	9,000	20,000
Machine hours	40,000	60,000	100,000
Inspections	2,750	2,250	5,000

Instructions

(a) Assign the total 2012 manufacturing overhead costs to the two products using activity-based costing (ABC). (a) Elite $2,152,500

(b) What was the cost per unit and gross profit of each model using ABC costing? (b) Cost/unit–Elite $807.63

(c) Are management's future plans for the two models sound? Explain.

Assign overhead costs using traditional costing and ABC; compare results.
(SO 1, 4), **AN**

P17-3B Luxury Furniture designs and builds factory-made, premium, wood armoires for homes. All are of white oak. Its budgeted manufacturing overhead costs for the year 2012 are as follows.

Overhead Cost Pools	Amount
Purchasing	$ 45,000
Handling materials	50,000
Production (cutting, milling, finishing)	130,000
Setting up machines	85,000
Inspecting	60,000
Inventory control (raw materials and finished goods)	80,000
Utilities	100,000
Total budget overhead costs	$550,000

For the last 4 years, Luxury Furniture has been charging overhead to products on the basis of materials cost. For the year 2012, materials cost of $500,000 were budgeted.

Jim Brigham, owner-manager of Luxury Furniture, recently directed his accountant, Bob Borke, to implement the activity-based costing system that he has repeatedly proposed. At Jim Brigham's request, Bob and the production foreman identify the following cost drivers and their usage for the previously budgeted overhead cost pools.

Overhead Cost Pools	Activity Cost Drivers	Expected Use of Cost Drivers
Purchasing	Number of orders	500
Handling materials	Number of moves	5,000
Production (cutting, milling, finishing)	Direct labor hours	65,000
Setting up machines	Number of setups	1,000
Inspecting	Number of inspections	4,000
Inventory control (raw materials and finished goods)	Number of components	40,000
Utilities	Square feet occupied	50,000

Debbie Steiner, sales manager, has received an order for 12 luxury armoires from Thom's Interior Design. At Debbie's request, Bob prepares cost estimates for producing 12 armoires so Debbie can submit a contract price per armoire to Thom's. He accumulates the following data for the production of 12 armoires.

Direct materials	$5,200
Direct labor	$3,500
Direct labor hours	200
Number of purchase orders	3
Number of material moves	32
Number of machine setups	4
Number of inspections	20
Number of components	640
Number of square feet occupied	320

Instructions

(a) Compute the predetermined overhead rate using traditional costing with materials cost as the basis.

(b) What is the manufacturing cost per armoire under traditional costing?

(c) What is the manufacturing cost per armoire under the proposed activity-based costing? (Prepare all of the necessary schedules.)

(d) Which of the two costing systems is preferable in pricing decisions and why?

(b) Cost/armoire $1,201.67
(c) Cost/armoire $1,020.83

P17-4B Merando Corporation produces two grades of wine from grapes that it buys from California growers. It produces and sells roughly 600,000 gallon jugs per year of a low-cost, high-volume product called Valley Fresh. Merando also produces and sells roughly 200,000 gallons per year of a low-volume, high-cost product called Merando Valley. Merando Valley is sold in 1-liter bottles. Based on recent data, the Valley Fresh product has not been as profitable as Merando Valley. Management is considering dropping the inexpensive Valley Fresh line so it can focus more attention on the Merando Valley product. The Merando Valley product already demands considerably more attention than the Valley Fresh line.

Assign overhead costs using traditional costing and ABC; compare results. (SO 1, 4), **AN**

Frankie Merando, president and founder of Merando, is skeptical about this idea. He points out that for many decades the company produced only the Valley Fresh line, and that it was always quite profitable. It wasn't until the company started producing the more complicated Merando Valley wine that the profitability of Valley Fresh declined. Prior to the introduction of Merando Valley, the company had simple equipment, simple growing and production procedures, and virtually no need for quality control. Because Merando Valley is bottled in 1-liter bottles, it requires considerably more time and effort, both to bottle and to label and box, than does Valley Fresh. The company must bottle and handle 4 times as many bottles of Merando Valley to sell the same quantity as Valley Fresh, since there are approximately 4 liters in a gallon. Valley Fresh requires 1 month of aging; Merando Valley requires 1 year. Valley Fresh requires cleaning and inspection of equipment every 2,500 gallons; Merando Valley requires such maintenance every 250 gallons.

Frankie has asked the accounting department to prepare an analysis of the cost per gallon using the traditional costing approach and using activity-based costing. The following information was collected.

	Valley Fresh	Merando Valley
Direct materials per gallon	$1.35	$3.60
Direct labor cost per gallon	$0.75	$1.50
Direct labor hours per gallon	0.05	0.10
Total direct labor hours	30,000	20,000

Activity Cost Pool	Cost Driver	Estimated Overhead	Expected Use of Cost Drivers	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Product: Valley Fresh	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Product: Merando Valley
Grape processing	Cart of grapes	$ 146,000	8,000	6,000	2,000
Aging	Total months	420,000	3,000,000	600,000	2,400,000
Bottling and corking	Number of bottles	210,000	1,400,000	600,000	800,000
Labeling and boxing	Number of bottles	140,000	1,400,000	600,000	800,000
Maintain and inspect equipment	Number of inspections	234,000	1,040	240	800
		$1,150,000			

Instructions

Answer each of the following questions. (Round all calculations to three decimal places.)

(a) Under traditional product costing using direct labor hours, compute the total manufacturing cost per **gallon** of both products. (a) Cost/gallon–V.F. $3.25

(b) Under ABC, prepare a schedule showing the computation of the activity-based overhead rates (per cost driver).

(c) Prepare a schedule assigning each activity's overhead cost pool to each product, based on the use of cost drivers. Include a computation of overhead cost per gallon. (c) Cost/gallon–V.F. $0.663

(d) Compute the total manufacturing cost per gallon for both products under ABC.

(e) Write a memo to Frankie Merando discussing the implications of your analysis for the company's plans. In this memo, provide a brief description of ABC as well as an explanation of how the traditional approach can result in distortions.

Assign overhead costs to services using traditional costing and ABC; compute overhead rates and unit costs; compare results.
(SO 1, 4, 6, 8), **AN**

P17-5B Smith and Jones is a law firm that serves both individuals and corporations. A controversy has developed between the partners of the two service lines as to who is contributing the greater amount to the bottom line. The area of contention is the assignment of overhead. The individual partners argue for assigning overhead on the basis of 30% of direct labor dollars, while the corporate partners argue for implementing activity-based costing. The partners agree to use next year's budgeted data for purposes of analysis and comparison. The following overhead data are collected to develop the comparison.

Activity Cost Pool	Cost Driver	Estimated Overhead	Expected Use of Cost Drivers	Expected Use of Cost Drivers per Service	
				Corporate	Individual
Employee training	Direct labor dollars	$120,000	$1,600,000	$900,000	$700,000
Typing and secretarial	Number of reports/forms	60,000	2,000	500	1,500
Computing	Number of minutes	130,000	40,000	17,000	23,000
Facility rental	Number of employees	100,000	25	14	11
Travel	Per expense reports	70,000	Direct	48,000	22,000
		$480,000			

Instructions

(a) Using traditional product costing, compute the total overhead cost assigned to both services (individual and corporate) of Smith and Jones.

(b) (2) Cost assigned–Individual $238,250

(b) (1) Using activity-based costing, prepare a schedule showing the computations of the activity-based overhead rates (per cost driver).

(2) Prepare a schedule assigning each activity's overhead cost pool to each service based on the use of the cost drivers.

(c) Classify each of the activities as a value-added activity or a non–value-added activity.

(d) Difference–Corporate $28,250

(d) Comment on the comparative overhead for the two service lines under both traditional costing and ABC.

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Waterways Continuing Problem

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Waterways Problem from Chapters 14 through 16.)

WCP17 Waterways looked into ABC as a method of costing because of the variety of items it produces and the many different activities in which it is involved. This problem asks you to help Waterways use an activity-based costing system to account for its production activities.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to find the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP17-1 East Valley Hospital is a primary medical care facility and trauma center that serves 11 small, rural midwestern communities within a 40-mile radius. The hospital offers all the medical/surgical services of a typical small hospital. It has a staff of 18 full-time doctors and 20 part-time visiting specialists. East Valley has a payroll of 150 employees consisting of technicians, nurses, therapists, managers, directors, administrators, dieticians, secretaries, data processors, and janitors.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, discuss and answer the following.

(a) Using your (limited, moderate, or in-depth) knowledge of a hospital's operations, identify as many **activities** as you can that would serve as the basis for implementing an activity-based costing system.

(b) For each of the activities listed in (a), identify a **cost driver** that would serve as a valid measure of the resources consumed by the activity.

MANAGERIAL ANALYSIS

BYP17-2 Ideal Manufacturing Company of Sycamore, Illinois, has supported a research and development (R&D) department that has for many years been the sole contributor to the company's new farm machinery products. The R&D activity is an overhead cost center that provides services only to in-house manufacturing departments (four different product lines), all of which produce agricultural/farm/ranch related machinery products.

The department has never sold its services outside, but because of its long history of success, larger manufacturers of agricultural products have approached Ideal to hire its R&D department for special projects. Because the costs of operating the R&D department have been spiraling uncontrollably, Ideal's management is considering entertaining these outside approaches to absorb the increasing costs. But, (1) management doesn't have any cost basis for charging R&D services to outsiders, and (2) it needs to gain control of its R&D costs. Management decides to implement an activity-based costing system in order to determine the charges for both outsiders and the in-house users of the department's services.

R&D activities fall into four pools with the following annual costs.

Market analysis	$1,050,000
Product design	2,350,000
Product development	3,600,000
Prototype testing	1,400,000

Activity analysis determines that the appropriate cost drivers and their usage for the four activities are:

Activities	Cost Drivers	Total Estimated Drivers
Market analysis	Hours of analysis	15,000 hours
Product design	Number of designs	2,500 designs
Product development	Number of products	90 products
Prototype testing	Number of tests	500 tests

Instructions

(a) Compute the activity-based overhead rate for each activity cost pool.

(b) How much cost would be charged to an in-house manufacturing department that consumed 1,800 hours of market analysis time, was provided 280 designs relating to 10 products, and requested 92 engineering tests?

(c) How much cost would serve as the basis for pricing an R&D bid with an outside company on a contract that would consume 800 hours of analysis time, require 178 designs relating to 3 products, and result in 70 engineering tests?

(d) What is the benefit to Ideal Manufacturing of applying activity-based costing to its R&D activity for both in-house and outside charging purposes?

REAL-WORLD FOCUS

BYP17-3 Hewlett-Packard (HP) is considered one of the best-managed and most innovative companies in the world. It continually has shown an ability to adapt to global competitive challenges through technical innovation and continual reassessment of its management and control mechanisms. Most applications of activity-based costing by Hewlett-Packard have been successful.

But, over the period August 1988 to August 1989, the Colorado Springs Division of Hewlett-Packard designed an activity-based costing system with the goal of providing for better product costing and inventory valuation. It began implementation in November 1989 but halted the process in the summer of 1992. Since then, the Colorado Springs Division has made no further attempts to re-implement a more expansive ABC approach.

Instructions

The March 1997 issue of *Management Accounting* contains an article by Steven P. Landry, Larry M. Wood, and Tim M. Lindquist about the Colorado Springs Division entitled "Can ABC Bring Mixed Results?" Read the article and answer the following questions.

(a) What went wrong at HP's Colorado Springs Division in the design, development, and implementation of its activity-based costing system?
(b) What conclusions were drawn from HP's Colorado Springs Division experience? What does successful ABC implementation require?

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING ON THE WEB

BYP17-4 Activity-based costing methods are constantly being improved upon, and many websites discuss suggestions for improvement. The article in this activity outlines an alternative perspective on activity-based costing.

Address: **http://hbswk.hbs.edu/item/4587.html**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Instructions

Read the article provided at the site and answer the following questions.

(a) What concerns do the authors say are raised by "real-world use" of ABC? According to the authors, what benefits have companies enjoyed from the use of ABC?
(b) What method do the authors suggest for estimating practical capacity? How important is it to be precise in this estimate?
(c) Describe the steps that are taken after practical capacity has been estimated.
(d) What is one of the primary benefits obtained by management in the report entitled "ABC, the Time-Driven Way"? What is an example of how this worked for a real company?

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP17-5 In our Feature Story about Super Bakery, Inc., we described a virtual corporation as one that consists of a core unit that is supported by a network of outsourced activities. A virtual corporation minimizes investment in human resources, fixed assets, and working capital. The application of ABC to Super Bakery, Inc. is described in an article entitled "ABC in a Virtual Corporation" by Tim Davis and Bruce Darling, in the October 1996 issue of *Management Accounting*.

Instructions

Assume you are the controller of a virtual corporation. Using the article as a basis for your communication, write a summary that answers the following questions.

(a) What unique strategies and tactics did Super Bakery's management implement that caused sales to take off and continue to grow at an average rate of 20%?
(b) Why did Super Bakery's management feel that it was necessary to install an ABC system?
(c) What is the main difference between Super Bakery's ABC system and other manufacturers' ABC systems?

ETHICS CASE

BYP17-6 Curtis Rich, the cost accountant for Hi-Power Mower Company, recently installed activity-based costing at Hi-Power's St. Louis lawn tractor (riding mower) plant where three models—the 8-horsepower Bladerunner, the 12-horsepower Quickcut, and the 18-horsepower Supercut—are manufactured. Curtis's new product costs for these three models show that the company's traditional costing system had been significantly undercosting the 18-horsepower Supercut. This was due primarily to the lower sales volume of the Supercut compared to the Bladerunner and the Quickcut.

Before completing his analysis and reporting these results to management, Curtis is approached by his friend Ed Gray, who is the production manager for the 18-horsepower Supercut model. Ed has heard from one of Curtis's staff about the new product costs and is upset and worried for his job because the new costs show the Supercut to be losing, rather than making, money.

At first, Ed condemns the new cost system, whereupon Curtis explains the practice of activity-based costing and why it is more accurate than the company's present system. Even more worried now, Ed begs Curtis, "Massage the figures just enough to save the line from being discontinued. You don't want me to lose my job, do you? Anyway, nobody will know."

Curtis holds firm but agrees to recompute all his calculations for accuracy before submitting his costs to management.

Instructions

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?
(b) What, if any, are the ethical considerations in this situation?
(c) What are Curtis's ethical obligations to the company? To his friend?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP17-7 There are many resources available on the Web to assist people in time management. Some of these resources are designed specifically for college students.

Instructions

Go to **http://www.dartmouth.edu/~acskills/videos/video_tm.html** (or do an Internet search of Dartmouth's time-management video). Watch the video and then answer the following questions.

(a) What are the main tools of time management for students, and what is each used for?
(b) At what time of day are students most inclined to waste time? What time of day is the best for studying complex topics?
(c) How can employing time-management practices be a "liberating" experience?
(d) Why is goal-setting important? What are the characteristics of good goals, and what steps should you take to help you develop your goals?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 897 Traveling Light **Q:** Why do airlines charge even higher rates for heavier bags, bags that are odd shapes (e.g., ski bags), and bags with hazardous materials in them? **A:** Each of these factors increases the costs to the airlines. Heavier baggage is more difficult to handle, thus increasing labor costs. It also uses up more fuel. Bags that are odd shapes complicate handling both for humans and machines. In addition, odd shapes take up more space in the cargo area. Finally, hazardous materials require special handling and storage procedures. All of these factors should be considered by an airline when it decides how much to charge for special baggage.

p. 900 Using ABC to Aid in Employee Evaluation **Q:** What positive implications does application of ABC have for the employees of this company? **A:** ABC will make these employees more aware of which activities cost the company more money. They will be motivated to reduce their use of these activities in order to improve their individual performance.

p. 903 What Does NASCAR Have to Do with Breakfast Cereal? **Q:** What are the benefits of reducing setup time? **A:** Setup time is a non–value-added activity. Customers are not willing to pay extra for more setup time. By reducing the time spent on setups, the company can reduce non–value-added costs. Also, by reducing setup time the company can switch from producing one product to producing a different product more quickly. This enables it to respond to customers' demands more quickly, thus avoiding stock-outs.

p. 908 Wasted Effort **Q:** Suppose a moving company has historically sold cardboard boxes and tape to its customers. What relevant costs would it consider in deciding whether to provide plastic bins rather than boxes and tape? **A:** In deciding whether to provide reusable plastic bins, the moving company would consider the following relevant costs: the cost of the bins (and the number of expected uses), the incremental revenue from boxes versus plastic bins, the lost tape revenue, and the cost of driving out to pick up the bins (they don't have to drive out and pick up the boxes). A potential intangible benefit would be the positive public relations benefit of saying that the company was switching to a more environmentally friendly packaging option.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. c **2.** c **3.** c **4.** a **5.** b **6.** b ($100 × 80), ($100 × 60) **7.** d [($1,920,000/160,000) × 40,000], [($1,920,000/160,000) × 30,000)], [($1,920,000/160,000) × 90,000)] **8.** b **9.** d **10.** d **11.** c **12.** c ***13.** d ***14.** b

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 18

COST-VOLUME-PROFIT

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** **Do it!**
  p. 945 ◯ p. 947 ◯ p. 954 ◯ p. 957 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** **Do it!** p. 959 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Distinguish between variable and fixed costs.
2. Explain the significance of the relevant range.
3. Explain the concept of mixed costs.
4. List the five components of cost-volume-profit analysis.
5. Indicate what contribution margin is and how it can be expressed.
6. Identify the three ways to determine the break-even point.
7. Give the formulas for determining sales required to earn target net income.
8. Define margin of safety, and give the formulas for computing it.

the navigator

UNDERSTANDING MEDICAL COSTS MIGHT LEAD TO BETTER HEALTH CARE

Dr. Brian Forrest was frustrated with the standard approach to the practice of medicine. He was forced to see too many patients for too few minutes per patient—so he did something about it. He started a small medical practice that flew directly in the face of virtually every accepted assumption of modern medicine. Today, his practice can break even on 4 patients per day.

How did he do it? First, he identified all non–value-adding expenditures. A normal medical practice needs lots of employees to collect money from insurance companies or from past-due accounts. Dr. Forrest completely eliminated the need for these employees (and thus eliminated these costs) by requiring patients to pay cash at the time of service.

Dr. Forrest's fees are significantly lower than a standard clinic. He charges a flat $45 office visit fee (no matter how long he is with a patient), plus patients pay for lab and supply costs, which average $37 per visit. To keep his rate so low and still spend a lot of time with patients, he has to keep tight control of his costs. That is, to lower his break-even point, he needs to keep his fixed costs down. His overhead costs average just 25 percent of revenue, compared to 40 to 60 percent of revenue for a standard practice. He buys his equipment from a hospital surplus store (e.g., $100 for an exam table versus $1,500 new) and tries to keep his office space to a minimum. Dr. Forrest saves about $10,000 per year by not hiring a janitorial service. Instead, he and the other two employees share the cleaning tasks, and he takes out his own trash.

To increase his ability to service more patients, Dr. Forrest hired a nurse-practitioner. To keep his fixed costs down, she was hired on a "productivity basis," that is, she is paid per patient. Thus, her cost to the practice represents a variable cost, as her wages are paid out of the incremental revenue that she produces. Interestingly, the nurse-practitioner has found that under this approach, she is able to spend more time with her patients than she did in other practices. Yet, she actually makes more money. This is an unusual approach because in most medical practices, nearly all of the labor costs are fixed.

Dr. Forrest originally anticipated that most of his patients would be people without insurance, since he is unwilling to accept payments from insurance companies. He expected that people with insurance would not be willing to incur out-of-pocket expenses for health care. However, because his patients appreciate that he spends much more time with them than a traditional doctor, more than 50% of his patients have insurance. He is happy, and so are his patients.

Source: Brian R. Forrest, M.D., "Breaking Even on 4 Visits Per Day," Family Practice Management website, *www.aafp.org/fpm,* 2007. (Note: Copyrights are available at copyrights@aafp.org.)

INSIDE CHAPTER 18 . . .

- **Woodworker Runs an Efficient Operation for Producing Furniture** *(p. 942)*
- **Skilled Labor Is Truly Essential** *(p. 946)*
- **Charter Flights Offer a Good Deal** *(p. 952)*
- **How a Rolling Stones' Tour Makes Money** *(p. 956)*

preview of chapter 18

As the Feature Story indicates, to manage any size business you must understand how costs respond to changes in sales volume and the effect of costs and revenues on profits. A prerequisite to understanding cost-volume-profit (CVP) relationships is knowledge of how costs behave. In this chapter, we first explain the considerations involved in cost behavior analysis. Then, we discuss and illustrate CVP analysis.

The content and organization of Chapter 18 are as follows.

Cost-Volume-Profit

Cost Behavior Analysis	Cost-Volume-Profit Analysis
• Variable costs • Fixed costs • Relevant range • Mixed costs • Identifying variable and fixed costs	• Basic components • CVP income statement • Break-even analysis • Target net income • Margin of safety

the navigator

Cost Behavior Analysis

Cost behavior analysis is the study of how specific costs respond to changes in the level of business activity. As you might expect, some costs change, and others remain the same. For example, for an airline company such as Southwest or United, the longer the flight the higher the fuel costs. On the other hand, Massachusetts General Hospital's costs to staff the emergency room on any given night are relatively constant regardless of the number of patients treated. A knowledge of cost behavior helps management plan operations and decide between alternative courses of action. Cost behavior analysis applies to all types of entities, as the Feature Story about Dr. Forrest's clinic indicates.

The starting point in cost behavior analysis is measuring the key business activities. Activity levels may be expressed in terms of sales dollars (in a retail company), miles driven (in a trucking company), room occupancy (in a hotel), or dance classes taught (by a dance studio). Many companies use more than one measurement base. A manufacturer, for example, may use direct labor hours or units of output for manufacturing costs and sales revenue or units sold for selling expenses.

For an activity level to be useful in cost behavior analysis, changes in the level or volume of activity should be correlated with changes in costs. The activity level selected is referred to as the activity (or volume) index. The **activity index** identifies the activity that causes changes in the behavior of costs. With an appropriate activity index, companies can classify the behavior of costs in response to changes in activity levels into three categories: variable, fixed, or mixed.

study objective 1

Distinguish between variable and fixed costs.

VARIABLE COSTS

Variable costs are costs that vary **in total** directly and proportionately with changes in the activity level. If the level increases 10%, total variable costs will

increase 10%. If the level of activity decreases by 25%, variable costs will decrease 25%. Examples of variable costs include direct materials and direct labor for a manufacturer; cost of goods sold, sales commissions, and freight-out for a merchandiser; and gasoline in airline and trucking companies. A variable cost may also be defined as a cost that **remains the same *per unit* at every level of activity**.

To illustrate the behavior of a variable cost, assume that Damon Company manufactures radios that contain a $10 digital clock. The activity index is the number of radios produced. As Damon manufactures each radio, the total cost of the clocks increases by $10. As part (a) of Illustration 18-1 shows, total cost of the clocks will be $20,000 if Damon produces 2,000 radios, and $100,000 when it produces 10,000 radios. We also can see that a variable cost remains the same per unit as the level of activity changes. As part (b) of Illustration 18-1 shows, the unit cost of $10 for the clocks is the same whether Damon produces 2,000 or 10,000 radios.

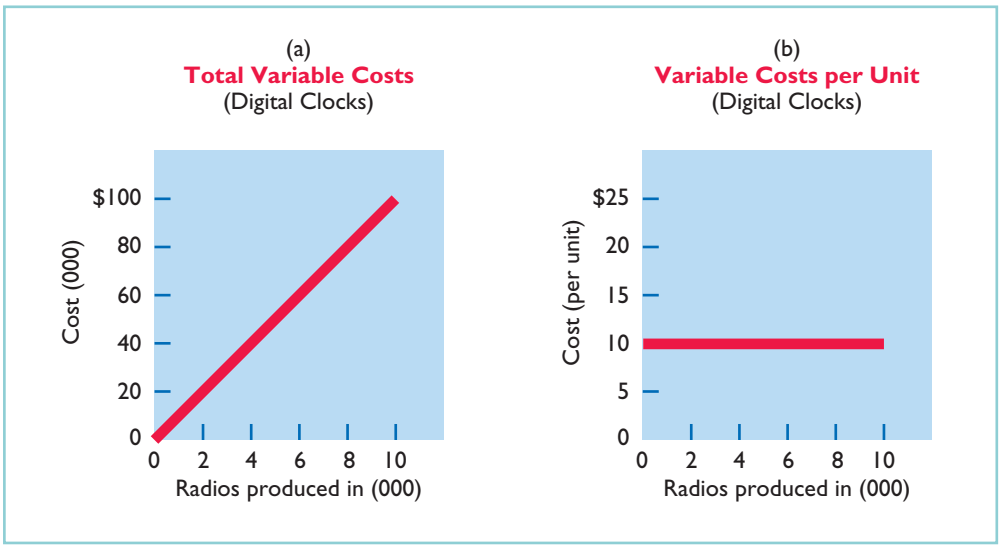


Illustration 18-1
Behavior of total and unit variable costs

Helpful Hint *True or false:* Variable cost per unit changes directly and proportionately with changes in activity.
Answer: False. Per unit cost remains constant at all levels of activity.

Companies that rely heavily on labor to manufacture a product, such as Nike or Reebok, or to provide a service, such as Hilton or Marriott, are likely to have many variable costs. In contrast, companies that use a high proportion of machinery and equipment in producing revenue, such as AT&T or Duke Energy Co., may have few variable costs.

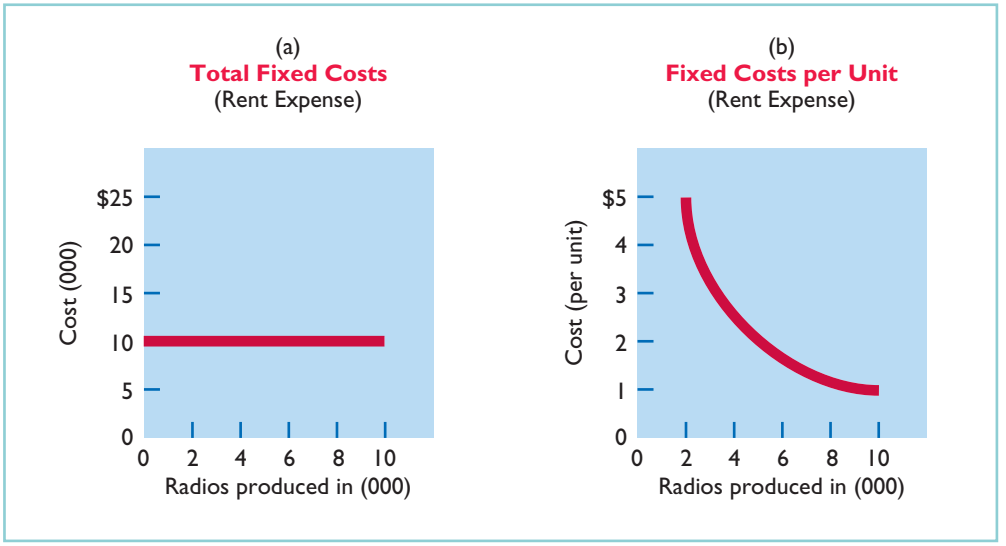
FIXED COSTS

Fixed costs are costs that **remain the same in total** regardless of changes in the activity level. Examples include property taxes, insurance, rent, supervisory salaries, and depreciation on buildings and equipment. Because total fixed costs remain constant as activity changes, it follows that **fixed costs *per unit* vary inversely with activity: As volume increases, unit cost declines, and vice versa**.

To illustrate the behavior of fixed costs, assume that Damon Company leases its productive facilities at a cost of $10,000 per month. Total fixed costs of the facilities will remain constant at every level of activity, as part (a) of Illustration 18-2 (page 942) shows. But, on a per unit basis, the cost of rent will decline as

activity increases, as part (b) of Illustration 18-2 shows. At 2,000 units, the unit cost is $5 ($10,000 ÷ 2,000). When Damon produces 10,000 radios, the unit cost is only $1 ($10,000 ÷ 10,000).

Illustration 18-2
Behavior of total and unit fixed costs



The trend for many manufacturers is to have more fixed costs and fewer variable costs. This trend is the result of increased use of automation and less use of employee labor. As a result, depreciation and lease charges (fixed costs) increase, whereas direct labor costs (variable costs) decrease.

Management Insight

Woodworker Runs an Efficient Operation for Producing Furniture

When Thomas Moser quit teaching communications at Bates College 25 years ago, he turned to what he loved doing–furniture woodworking. Today he has over 120 employees. In a business where profit margins are seldom thicker than wood shavings, cost control is everything. Moser keeps no inventory; he uses customers' 50% deposits on orders to buy the wood. Because computer-driven machines cut most of the standardized parts and joints, "we're free to be inefficient in assembly and finishing work, where the craft is most obviously expressed," says Moser. Direct labor costs are a manageable 30% of revenues. By keeping a tight lid on costs and running an efficient operation, Moser is free to spend most of his time doing what he enjoys most–designing furniture.

Source: Excerpts from "Out of the Woods" *Forbes* (April 5, 1999), p. 74.

? Are the costs associated with use of the computer-driven cutting machines fixed or variable? (See page 974.)

study objective 2
Explain the significance of the relevant range.

RELEVANT RANGE

In Illustration 18-1, part (a) (page 941), a straight line is drawn throughout the entire range of the activity index for total variable costs. In essence, the assumption is that the costs are **linear**. If a relationship is linear (that is,

straight-line), then changes in the activity index will result in a direct, proportional change in the variable cost. For example, if the activity level doubles, the cost doubles.

It is now necessary to ask: Is the straight-line relationship realistic? Does the linear assumption produce useful data for CVP analysis?

In most business situations, a straight-line relationship **does not exist** for variable costs throughout the entire range of possible activity. At abnormally low levels of activity, it may be impossible to be cost-efficient. Small-scale operations may not allow the company to obtain quantity discounts for raw materials or to use specialized labor. In contrast, at abnormally high levels of activity, labor costs may increase sharply because of overtime pay. Also at high activity levels, materials costs may jump significantly because of excess spoilage caused by worker fatigue.

As a result, in the real world, the relationship between the behavior of a variable cost and changes in the activity level is often **curvilinear**, as shown in part (a) of Illustration 18-3. In the curved sections of the line, a change in the activity index will not result in a direct, proportional change in the variable cost. That is, a doubling of the activity index will not result in an exact doubling of the variable cost. The variable cost may more than double, or it may be less than double.

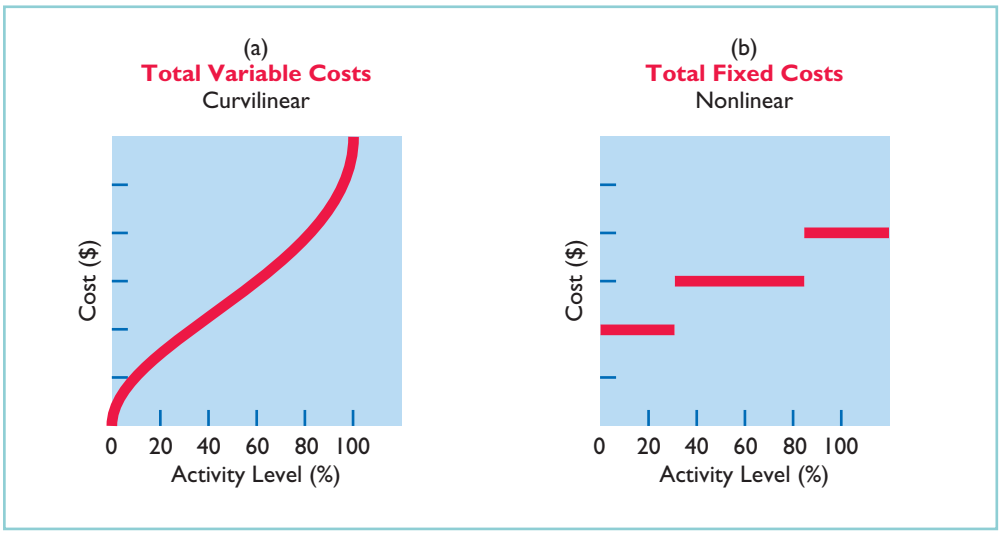


Illustration 18-3 Nonlinear behavior of variable and fixed costs

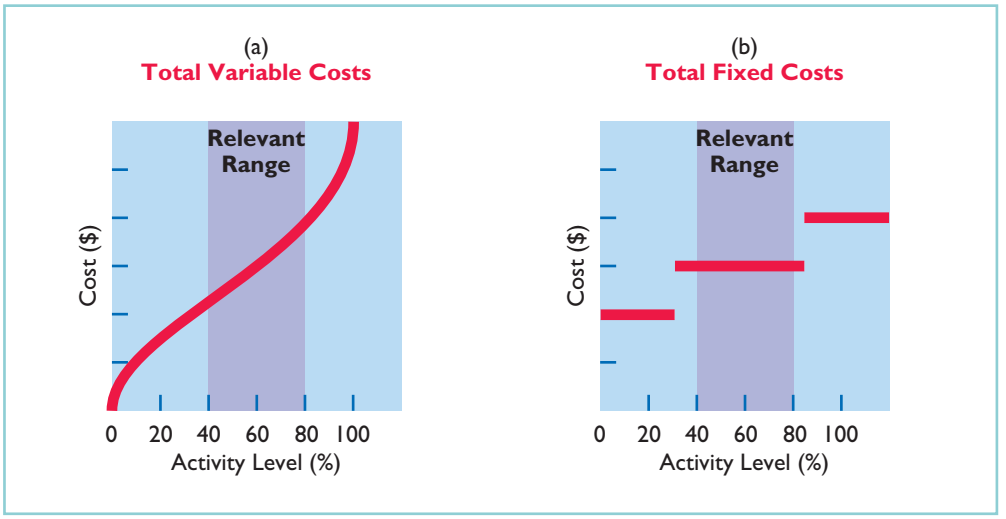
Total fixed costs also do not have a straight-line relationship over the entire range of activity. Some fixed costs will not change. But it is possible for management to change other fixed costs. For example, in the Feature Story Dr. Forrest changed the nurse-practitioner's pay from a fixed cost to a variable cost. Illustration 18-3, part (b), shows an example of the behavior of total fixed costs through all potential levels of activity.

Helpful Hint Fixed costs that may be changeable include research, such as new product development, and management training programs.

For most companies, operating at almost zero or at 100% capacity is the exception rather than the rule. Instead, companies often operate over a somewhat narrower range, such as 40–80% of capacity. The range over which a company expects to operate during a year is called the **relevant range** of the activity index. Within the relevant range, as both diagrams in Illustration 18-4 (page 944) show, a straight-line relationship generally exists for both variable and fixed costs.

Alternative Terminology The relevant range is also called the *normal* or *practical range*.

Illustration 18-4
Linear behavior within relevant range



As you can see, although the linear (straight-line) relationship may not be completely realistic, **the linear assumption produces useful data for CVP analysis as long as the level of activity remains within the relevant range**.

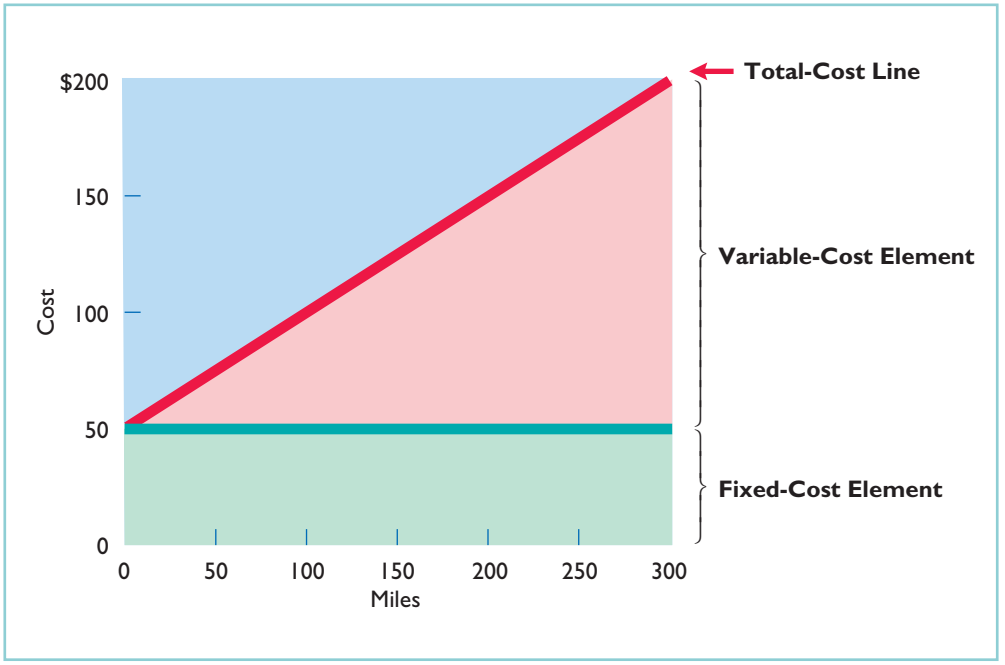
MIXED COSTS

study objective 3
Explain the concept of mixed costs.

Mixed costs are costs that contain both a variable element and a fixed element. **Mixed costs, therefore, change in total but not proportionately with changes in the activity level.**

The rental of a U-Haul truck is a good example of a mixed cost. Assume that local rental terms for a 17-foot truck, including insurance, are $50 per day plus 50 cents per mile. When determining the cost of a one-day rental, the per day charge is a fixed cost (with respect to miles driven), whereas the mileage charge is a variable cost. The graphic presentation of the rental cost for a one-day rental is as follows.

Illustration 18-5
Behavior of a mixed cost



In this case, the fixed-cost element is the cost of having the service available. The variable-cost element is the cost of actually using the service. Another

example of a mixed cost is utility costs (electric, telephone, and so on), where there is a flat service fee plus a usage charge.

For purposes of CVP analysis, **mixed costs must be classified into their fixed and variable elements**. How does management make the classification? One possibility is to determine the variable and fixed components each time a mixed cost is incurred. But because of time and cost constraints, this approach is rarely followed. Instead, the usual approach is to collect data on the behavior of the mixed costs at various levels of activity. Analysts then identify the fixed and variable cost components. Companies use various types of analysis. One type of analysis, called the **high-low method**, is discussed below. Other methods, such as the scatter diagram method and least squares regression analysis, are more appropriately explained in cost accounting courses.

before you go on...

Do it! Helena Company reports the following total costs at two levels of production.

TYPES OF COSTS

	10,000 Units	20,000 Units
Direct materials	$20,000	$40,000
Maintenance	8,000	10,000
Direct labor	17,000	34,000
Indirect materials	1,000	2,000
Depreciation	4,000	4,000
Utilities	3,000	5,000
Rent	6,000	6,000

Classify each cost as variable, fixed, or mixed.

Action Plan

- Recall that a variable cost varies in total directly and proportionately with each change in activity level.
- Recall that a fixed cost remains the same in total with each change in activity level.
- Recall that a mixed cost changes in total but not proportionately with each change in activity level.

the navigator

Solution

Direct materials, direct labor, and indirect materials are variable costs.
Depreciation and rent are fixed costs.
Maintenance and utilities are mixed costs.

Related exercise material: **BE18-1, BE18-2, Do it! 18-1, E18-1, E18-2,** and **E18-4**

High-Low Method

The **high-low method** uses the total costs incurred at the high and low levels of activity to classify mixed costs into fixed and variable components. The difference in costs between the high and low levels represents variable costs, since only the variable cost element can change as activity levels change.

The steps in computing fixed and variable costs under this method are as follows.

1. **Determine variable cost per unit from the following formula.**

Change in Total Costs	÷	High minus Low Activity Level	=	Variable Cost per Unit

Illustration 18-6 Formula for variable cost per unit using high-low method

To illustrate, assume that Metro Transit Company has the following maintenance costs and mileage data for its fleet of buses over a 4-month period.

Month	Miles Driven	Total Cost	Month	Miles Driven	Total Cost
January	20,000	$30,000	March	35,000	$49,000
February	40,000	48,000	April	50,000	63,000

Illustration 18-7 Assumed maintenance costs and mileage data

The high and low levels of activity are 50,000 miles in April and 20,000 miles in January. The maintenance costs at these two levels are $63,000 and $30,000, respectively. The difference in maintenance costs is $33,000 ($63,000 − $30,000), and the difference in miles is 30,000 (50,000 − 20,000). Therefore, for Metro Transit, variable cost per unit is $1.10, computed as follows.

$$\$33{,}000 \div 30{,}000 = \$1.10$$

2. **Determine the fixed cost by subtracting the total variable cost at either the high or the low activity level from the total cost at that activity level.**

   For Metro Transit, the computations are shown in Illustration 18-8.

Illustration 18-8
High-low method computation of fixed costs

	A	B	C	D
1				
2		METRO TRANSIT		
3			Activity Level	
4			High	Low
5	Total cost		$63,000	$30,000
6	Less:	Variable costs		
7		50,000 × $1.10	55,000	
8		20,000 × $1.10		22,000
9	Total fixed costs		$ 8,000	$ 8,000
10				

Maintenance costs are therefore $8,000 per month plus $1.10 per mile. This is represented by the following formula:

$$\text{Maintenance costs} = \text{Fixed costs} + (\$1.10 \times \text{Miles driven})$$

For example, at 45,000 miles, estimated maintenance costs would be $8,000 fixed and $49,500 variable ($1.10 × 45,000) for a total of $57,500.

The high-low method generally produces a reasonable estimate for analysis. However, it does not produce a precise measurement of the fixed and variable elements in a mixed cost because it ignores other activity levels in the computation.

Management Insight

Skilled Labor Is Truly Essential

The recession that started in 2008 had devastating implications for employment. But one surprise was that for some manufacturers, the number of jobs lost was actually lower than in previous recessions. One of the main explanations for this was that between 2000 and 2008, many factories adopted lean manufacturing practices. This meant that production relied less on large numbers of low-skilled workers, and more on machines and a few highly skilled workers. As a result of this approach, a single employee was supporting far more dollars in sales. Thus, it would require a larger decline in sales before an employee would need to be laid-off in order to continue to break even. Also, because the employees are highly skilled, employers are reluctant to lose them. Instead of lay-offs, many manufacturers have resorted to cutting employees hours.

Source: Timothy Aeppel and Justin Lahart, "Lean Factories Find It Hard to Cut Jobs Even in a Slump," *Wall Street Journal Online* (March 9, 2009).

? Would you characterize labor costs as being a fixed cost, a variable cost, or something else in this situation? (See page 974.)

IMPORTANCE OF IDENTIFYING VARIABLE AND FIXED COSTS

Why is it important to segregate costs into variable and fixed elements? The answer may become apparent if we look at the following four business decisions.

1. If American Airlines is to make a profit when it reduces all domestic fares by 30%, what reduction in costs or increase in passengers will be required?
   Answer: To make a profit when it cuts domestic fares by 30%, American Airlines will have to increase the number of passengers or cut its variable costs for those flights. Its fixed costs will not change.
2. If Ford Motor Company meets workers' demands for higher wages, what increase in sales revenue will be needed to maintain current profit levels?
   Answer: Higher wages at Ford Motor Company will increase the variable costs of manufacturing automobiles. To maintain present profit levels, Ford will have to cut other variable costs or increase the price of its automobiles.
3. If United States Steel Corp.'s program to modernize plant facilities through significant equipment purchases reduces the work force by 50%, what will be the effect on the cost of producing one ton of steel?
   Answer: The modernizing of plant facilities at United States Steel Corp. changes the proportion of fixed and variable costs of producing one ton of steel. Fixed costs increase because of higher depreciation charges, whereas variable costs decrease due to the reduction in the number of steelworkers.
4. What happens if Kellogg Company increases its advertising expenses but cannot increase prices because of competitive pressure?
   Answer: Sales volume must be increased to cover the increase in fixed advertising costs.

before you go on...

Do it! Byrnes Company accumulates the following data concerning a mixed cost, using units produced as the activity level.

HIGH-LOW METHOD

	Units Produced	Total Cost
March	9,800	$14,740
April	8,500	13,250
May	7,000	11,100
June	7,600	12,000
July	8,100	12,460

(a) Compute the variable and fixed cost elements using the high-low method.
(b) Estimate the total cost if the company produces 6,000 units.

Action Plan

- Determine the highest and lowest levels of activity.
- Compute variable cost per unit as: Change in total costs ÷ (High − low activity level) = Variable cost per unit.
- Compute fixed cost as: Total cost − (Variable cost per unit × Units produced) = Fixed cost.

Solution

(a) Variable cost: ($14,740 − $11,100) ÷ (9,800 − 7,000) = $1.30 per unit
Fixed cost: $14,740 − $12,740 ($1.30 × 9,800 units) = $2,000
or $11,100 − $9,100 ($1.30 × 7,000) = $2,000
(b) Total cost to produce 6,000 units: $2,000 + $7,800 ($1.30 × 6,000) = $9,800

Related exercise material: **BE18-3, BE18-4, BE18-5, Do it! 18-2, E18-3, E18-5,** and **E18-6.**

the navigator

Cost-Volume-Profit Analysis

study objective 4
List the five components of cost-volume-profit analysis.

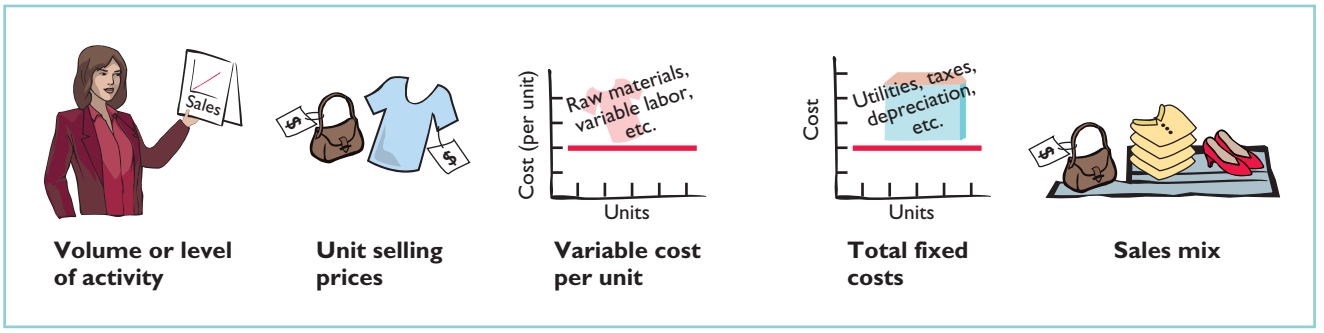
Cost-volume-profit (CVP) analysis is the study of the effects of changes in costs and volume on a company's profits. CVP analysis is important in profit planning. It also is a critical factor in such management decisions as setting

selling prices, determining product mix, and maximizing use of production facilities.

BASIC COMPONENTS

CVP analysis considers the interrelationships among the components shown in Illustration 18-9.

Illustration 18-9
Components of CVP analysis



The following assumptions underlie each CVP analysis.

1. The behavior of both costs and revenues is linear throughout the relevant range of the activity index.
2. Costs can be classified accurately as either variable or fixed.
3. Changes in activity are the only factors that affect costs.
4. All units produced are sold.
5. When more than one type of product is sold, the sales mix will remain constant. That is, the percentage that each product represents of total sales will stay the same. Sales mix complicates CVP analysis because different products will have different cost relationships. In this chapter we assume a single product.

When these assumptions are not valid, the CVP analysis may be inaccurate.

CVP INCOME STATEMENT

study objective 5
Indicate what contribution margin is and how it can be expressed.

Because CVP is so important for decision making, management often wants this information reported in a **CVP income statement** format for internal use. The CVP income statement classifies costs as variable or fixed and computes a contribution margin. **Contribution margin (CM)** is the amount of revenue remaining after deducting variable costs. It is often stated both as a total amount and on a per unit basis.

We will use Vargo Video Company to illustrate a CVP income statement. Vargo Video produces a high-definition digital camcorder with 15× optical zoom and a wide-screen, high-resolution LCD monitor. Relevant data for the camcorders sold by this company in June 2012 are as follows.

Illustration 18-10
Assumed selling and cost data for Vargo Video

Unit selling price of camcorder	$500
Unit variable costs	$300
Total monthly fixed costs	$200,000
Units sold	1,600

The CVP income statement for Vargo Video therefore would be reported as follows.

Illustration 18-11
CVP income statement, with net income

VARGO VIDEO COMPANY CVP Income Statement For the Month Ended June 30, 2012		
	Total	**Per Unit**
Sales (1,600 camcorders)	$ 800,000	$ 500
Variable costs	480,000	300
Contribution margin	**320,000**	**$200**
Fixed costs	200,000	
Net income	**$120,000**	

A traditional income statement and a CVP income statement both report the same net income of $120,000. However a traditional income statement does not classify costs as variable or fixed, and therefore it does not report a contribution margin. In addition, both a total and a per unit amount are often shown on a CVP income statement to facilitate CVP analysis.

In the applications of CVP analysis that follow, we assume that the term "cost" includes all costs and expenses related to production and sale of the product. That is, cost includes manufacturing costs plus selling and administrative expenses.

Contribution Margin per Unit

Vargo Video's CVP income statement shows a contribution margin of $320,000, and a contribution margin per unit of $200 ($500 − $300). The formula for **contribution margin per unit** and the computation for Vargo Video are:

Illustration 18-12
Formula for contribution margin per unit

Unit Selling Price	–	Unit Variable Costs	=	Contribution Margin per Unit
$500	–	$300	=	**$200**

Contribution margin per unit indicates that for every camcorder sold, Vargo has $200 to cover fixed costs and contribute to net income. Because Vargo Video has fixed costs of $200,000, it must sell 1,000 camcorders ($200,000 ÷ $200) before it earns any net income. Vargo's CVP income statement, assuming a zero net income, is as follows.

Illustration 18-13
CVP income statement, with zero net income

VARGO VIDEO COMPANY CVP Income Statement For the Month Ended June 30, 2012		
	Total	**Per Unit**
Sales (1,000 camcorders)	$500,000	$ 500
Variable costs	300,000	300
Contribution margin	**200,000**	**$200**
Fixed costs	200,000	
Net income	**$ –0–**	

It follows that for every camcorder sold above 1,000 units, net income increases by the amount of the contribution margin per unit, $200. For example, assume that Vargo sold one more camcorder, for a total of 1,001 camcorders sold. In this case, Vargo reports net income of $200 as shown in Illustration 18-14.

Illustration 18-14
CVP income statement, with net income

VARGO VIDEO COMPANY
CVP Income Statement
For the Month Ended June 30, 2012

	Total	Per Unit
Sales (1,001 camcorders)	$500,500	$ 500
Variable costs	300,300	300
Contribution margin	**200,200**	**$200**
Fixed costs	200,000	
Net income	**$ 200**	

Contribution Margin Ratio

Some managers prefer to use a contribution margin ratio in CVP analysis. The **contribution margin ratio** is the contribution margin per unit divided by the unit selling price. For Vargo Video, the ratio is as follows.

Illustration 18-15
Formula for contribution margin ratio

Contribution Margin per Unit	÷	Unit Selling Price	=	Contribution Margin Ratio
$200	÷	$500	=	40%

The contribution margin ratio of 40% means that $0.40 of each sales dollar ($1 × 40%) is available to apply to fixed costs and to contribute to net income.

This expression of contribution margin is very helpful in determining the effect of changes in sales on net income. For example, if sales increase $100,000, net income will increase $40,000 (40% × $100,000). Thus, by using the contribution margin ratio, managers can quickly determine increases in net income from any change in sales.

We can also see this effect through a CVP income statement. Assume that Vargo Video's current sales are $500,000 and it wants to know the effect of a $100,000 (200-unit) increase in sales. Vargo prepares a comparative CVP income statement analysis as follows.

Illustration 18-16
Comparative CVP income statements

VARGO VIDEO COMPANY
CVP Income Statements
For the Month Ended June 30, 2012

	No Change		With Change	
	Total	Per Unit	Total	Per Unit
Sales	$500,000	$ 500	$600,000	$ 500
Variable costs	300,000	300	360,000	300
Contribution margin	**200,000**	**$200**	**240,000**	**$200**
Fixed costs	200,000		200,000	
Net income	**$ –0–**		**$ 40,000**	

Study these CVP income statements carefully. The concepts presented in these statements are used extensively in this and later chapters.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
What was the contribution toward fixed costs and income from each unit sold?	Selling price per unit and variable cost per unit	Contribution margin per unit = Unit selling price − Unit variable cost	Every unit sold will increase income by the contribution margin.
What was the increase in income as a result of an increase in sales?	Contribution margin per unit and unit selling price	Contribution margin ratio = Contribution margin per unit ÷ Unit selling price	Every dollar of sales will increase income by the contribution margin ratio.

BREAK-EVEN ANALYSIS

study objective 6

Identify the three ways to determine the break-even point.

A key relationship in CVP analysis is the level of activity at which total revenues equal total costs (both fixed and variable). This level of activity is called the **break-even point**. At this volume of sales, the company will realize no income but will suffer no loss. The process of finding the break-even point is called **break-even analysis**. Knowledge of the break-even point is useful to management when it decides whether to introduce new product lines, change sales prices on established products, or enter new market areas.

The break-even point can be:

1. Computed from a mathematical equation.
2. Computed by using contribution margin.
3. Derived from a cost-volume-profit (CVP) graph.

The break-even point can be expressed either in **sales units** or **sales dollars**.

Mathematical Equation

Illustration 18-17 shows a common equation used for CVP analysis.

Sales = Variable Costs + Fixed Costs + Net Income

Illustration 18-17 Basic CVP equation

Identifying the break-even point is a special case of CVP analysis. Because at the break-even point net income is zero, **break-even occurs where total sales equal variable costs plus fixed costs**.

We can compute the break-even point **in units** directly from the equation by **using unit selling prices** and **unit variable costs**. The computation for Vargo Video is:

Sales	=	Variable Costs	+	Fixed Costs	+	Net Income
$500Q	=	$300Q	+	$200,000	+	$0

$$\$200Q = \$200{,}000$$
$$Q = 1{,}000 \text{ units}$$

where

Q = sales volume in units
$\$500$ = selling price
$\$300$ = variable cost per unit
$\$200{,}000$ = total fixed costs

Illustration 18-18 Computation of break-even point in units

Thus, Vargo Video must sell 1,000 units to break even.

To find **sales dollars** required to break even, we multiply the units sold at the break-even point times the selling price per unit, as shown below.

$$1{,}000 \times \$500 = \$500{,}000 \text{ (break-even sales dollars)}$$

Contribution Margin Technique

We know that contribution margin equals total revenues less variable costs. It follows that at the break-even point, **contribution margin must equal total fixed costs**. On the basis of this relationship, we can compute the break-even point using either the contribution margin per unit or the contribution margin ratio.

When a company uses the contribution margin per unit, the formula to compute break-even point in units is fixed costs divided by contribution margin per unit. For Vargo Video, the computation is as follows.

Illustration 18-19
Formula for break-even point in units using contribution margin

Fixed Costs	÷	Contribution Margin per Unit	=	Break-even Point in Units
$200,000	÷	$200	=	1,000 units

One way to interpret this formula is that Vargo Video generates $200 of contribution margin with each unit that it sells. This $200 goes to pay off fixed costs. Therefore, the company must sell 1,000 units to pay off $200,000 in fixed costs.

When a company uses the contribution margin ratio, the formula to compute break-even point in dollars is fixed costs divided by the contribution margin ratio. We know that the contribution margin ratio for Vargo Video is 40% ($200 ÷ $500), which means that every dollar of sales generates 40 cents to pay off fixed costs. Thus, the break-even point in dollars is:

Illustration 18-20
Formula for break-even point in dollars using contribution margin ratio

Fixed Costs	÷	Contribution Margin Ratio	=	Break-even Point in Dollars
$200,000	÷	40%	=	$500,000

Service Company Insight

Charter Flights Offer a Good Deal

The Internet is wringing inefficiencies out of nearly every industry. While commercial aircraft spend roughly 4,000 hours a year in the air, chartered aircraft spend only 500 hours flying. That means that they are sitting on the ground—not making any money—about 90% of the time. One company, FlightServe, saw a business opportunity in that fact. For about the same cost as a first-class ticket, FlightServe decided to match up executives with charter flights in small "private jets." The executive would get a more comfortable ride and could avoid the hassle of big airports. FlightServe noted that the average charter jet has eight seats. When all eight seats were full, the company would have an 80% profit margin. It would break even at an average of 3.3 full seats per flight.

Source: "Jet Set Go," *The Economist* (March 18, 2000), p. 68.

? How did FlightServe determine that it would break even with 3.3 seats full per flight? (See page 975.)

Graphic Presentation

An effective way to find the break-even point is to prepare a break-even graph. Because this graph also shows costs, volume, and profits, it is referred to as a **cost-volume-profit (CVP) graph**.

As the CVP graph in Illustration 18-21 shows, sales volume is recorded along the horizontal axis. This axis should extend to the maximum level of expected sales. Both total revenues (sales) and total costs (fixed plus variable) are recorded on the vertical axis.

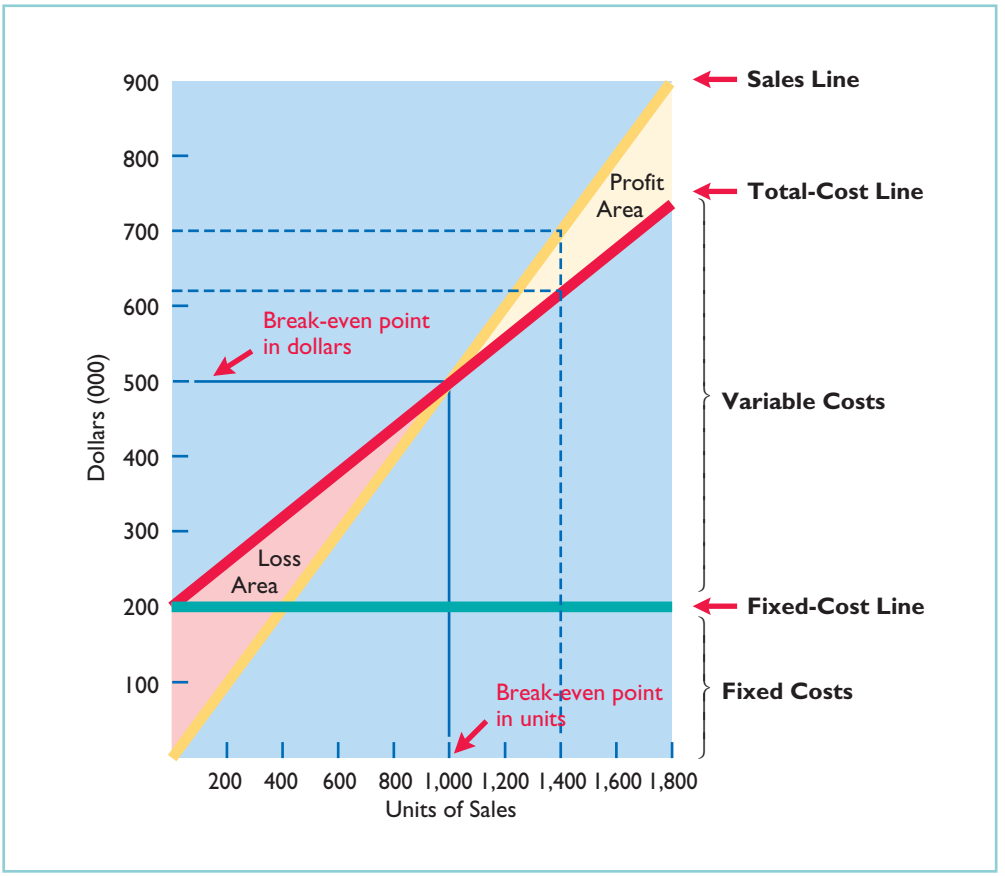


Illustration 18-21
CVP graph

The construction of the graph, using the data for Vargo Video, is as follows.

1. Plot the total-sales line, starting at the zero activity level. For every camcorder sold, total revenue increases by $500. For example, at 200 units, sales are $100,000. At the upper level of activity (1,800 units), sales are $900,000. The revenue line is assumed to be linear through the full range of activity.
2. Plot the total fixed cost using a horizontal line. For the camcorders, this line is plotted at $200,000. The fixed cost is the same at every level of activity.
3. Plot the total-cost line. This starts at the fixed-cost line at zero activity. It increases by the variable cost at each level of activity. For each camcorder, variable costs are $300. Thus, at 200 units, total variable cost is $60,000, and the total cost is $260,000. At 1,800 units total variable cost is $540,000, and total cost is $740,000. On the graph, the amount of the variable cost can be derived from the difference between the total cost and fixed cost lines at each level of activity.
4. Determine the break-even point from the intersection of the total-cost line and the total-revenue line. The break-even point in dollars is found by drawing a horizontal line from the break-even point to the vertical axis. The

break-even point in units is found by drawing a vertical line from the break-even point to the horizontal axis. For the camcorders, the break-even point is $500,000 of sales, or 1,000 units. At this sales level, Vargo Video will cover costs but make no profit.

The CVP graph also shows both the net income and net loss areas. Thus, the amount of income or loss at each level of sales can be derived from the total sales and total cost lines.

A CVP graph is useful because the effects of a change in any element in the CVP analysis can be quickly seen. For example, a 10% increase in selling price will change the location of the total revenue line. Likewise, the effects on total costs of wage increases can be quickly observed.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
At what amount of sales does a company cover its costs?	Unit selling price, unit variable cost, and total fixed costs	Break-even point analysis *In units:* $\text{Break-even point} = \frac{\text{Fixed costs}}{\text{Unit contribution margin}}$ *In dollars:* $\text{Break-even point} = \frac{\text{Fixed costs}}{\text{Contribution margin ratio}}$	Below the break-even point, the company is unprofitable.

before you go on...

BREAK-EVEN ANALYSIS

Action Plan

- Apply the formula: Sales = Variable costs + Fixed costs + Net income.
- Apply the formula: Fixed costs ÷ Contribution margin per unit = Break-even point in units.

Do it! Lombardi Company has a unit selling price of $400, variable costs per unit of $240, and fixed costs of $180,000. Compute the break-even point in units using (a) a mathematical equation and (b) contribution margin per unit.

Solution

(a) The equation is $400Q = $240Q + $180,000. The break-even point in units is 1,125 ($180,000 ÷ $160). (b) The contribution margin per unit is $160 ($400 − $240). The formula therefore is $180,000 ÷ $160, and the break-even point in units is 1,125.

Related exercise material: **BE18-6, BE18-7, BE18-8, BE18-9, Do it! 18-3, E18-8, E18-9, E18-10, E18-11, E18-12,** and **E18-13.**

the navigator

study objective 7

Give the formulas for determining sales required to earn target net income.

TARGET NET INCOME

Rather than simply "breaking even," management usually sets an income objective often called **target net income**. It indicates the sales necessary to achieve a specified level of income. Companies determine the sales necessary to achieve target net income by using one of the three approaches discussed earlier.

Mathematical Equation

We know that at the break-even point no profit or loss results for the company. By adding an amount for target net income to the same basic equation, we obtain the following formula for determining required sales.

Illustration 18-22
Formula for required sales to meet target net income

$$\text{Required Sales} = \text{Variable Costs} + \text{Fixed Costs} + \text{Target Net Income}$$

Required sales may be expressed in either **sales units** or **sales dollars**. Assuming that target net income is $120,000 for Vargo Video, the computation of required sales in units is as follows.

Required Sales	=	Variable Costs	+	Fixed Costs	+	Target Net Income
$500Q	=	$300Q	+	$200,000	+	$120,000

$$\$200Q = \$320{,}000$$
$$Q = 1{,}600$$

where

Q = sales volume
$500 = selling price
$300 = variable costs per unit
$200,000 = total fixed costs
$120,000 = target net income

Illustration 18-23 Computation of required sales

The sales dollars required to achieve the target net income is found by multiplying the units sold by the unit selling price [(1,600 × $500) = $800,000].

Contribution Margin Technique

As in the case of break-even sales, we can compute in either units or dollars the sales required to meet a target net income. The formula to compute required sales in units for Vargo Video using the contribution margin per unit of $200 ($500 − $300) is as follows.

Fixed Costs + Target Net Income	÷	Contribution Margin per Unit	=	Required Sales in Units
($200,000 + $120,000)	÷	$200	=	1,600 units

Illustration 18-24 Formula for required sales in units using contribution margin per unit

This computation tells Vargo that to achieve its desired target net income of $120,000, it must sell 1,600 camcorders.

The formula to compute the required sales in dollars for Vargo Video using the contribution margin ratio of 40% ($200 ÷ $500) is shown below.

Fixed Costs + Target Net Income	÷	Contribution Margin Ratio	=	Required Sales in Dollars
($200,000 + $120,000)	÷	40%	=	$800,000

Illustration 18-25 Formula for required sales in dollars using contribution margin ratio

This computation tells Vargo that to achieve its desired target net income of $120,000, it must generate sales of $800,000.

Graphic Presentation

We also can use the CVP graph in Illustration 18-21 (on page 953) to find the sales required to meet target net income. In the profit area of the graph, the distance between the sales line and the total cost line at any point equals net income. We can find required sales by analyzing the differences between the two lines until the desired net income is found.

For example, suppose Vargo Video sells 1,400 camcorders. Illustration 18-21 shows that a vertical line drawn at 1,400 units intersects the sales line at $700,000 and the total cost line at $620,000. The difference between the two amounts represents the net income (profit) of $80,000.

MARGIN OF SAFETY

study objective 8

Define margin of safety, and give the formulas for computing it.

The margin of safety is another relationship used in CVP analysis. **Margin of safety** is the difference between actual or expected sales and sales at the break-even point. This relationship measures the "cushion" that management has, allowing it to break even if expected sales fail to materialize. The margin of safety is expressed in dollars or as a ratio.

The formula for stating the **margin of safety in dollars** is actual (or expected) sales minus break-even sales. Assuming that actual (expected) sales for Vargo Video are $750,000, the computation is:

Illustration 18-26
Formula for margin of safety in dollars

Actual (Expected) Sales	–	Break-even Sales	=	Margin of Safety in Dollars
$750,000	–	$500,000	=	$250,000

Vargo's margin of safety is $250,000. Its sales must fall $250,000 before it operates at a loss.

The **margin of safety ratio** is the margin of safety in dollars divided by actual (or expected) sales. The formula and computation for determining the margin of safety ratio are:

Illustration 18-27
Formula for margin of safety ratio

Margin of Safety in Dollars	÷	Actual (Expected) Sales	=	Margin of Safety Ratio
$250,000	÷	$750,000	=	33%

This means that the company's sales could fall by 33% before it would be operating at a loss.

The higher the dollars or the percentage, the greater the margin of safety. Management continuously evaluates the adequacy of the margin of safety in terms of such factors as the vulnerability of the product to competitive pressures and to downturns in the economy.

Service Company Insight

How a Rolling Stones' Tour Makes Money

Computation of break-even and margin of safety is important for service companies. Consider how the promoter for the Rolling Stones' tour used the break-even point and margin of safety. For example, one outdoor show should bring 70,000 individuals for a gross of $2.45 million. The promoter guarantees $1.2 million to the Rolling Stones. In addition, 20% of gross goes to the stadium in which the performance is staged. Add another $400,000 for other expenses such as ticket takers, parking attendants, advertising, and so on. The promoter also shares in sales of T-shirts and memorabilia for which the promoter will net over $7 million during the tour. From a successful Rolling Stones' tour, the promoter could make $35 million!

? What amount of sales dollars are required for the promoter to break even? (See page 975.)

before you go on...

Do it! Zootsuit Inc. makes travel bags that sell for $56 each. For the coming year, management expects fixed costs to total $320,000 and variable costs to be $42 per unit. Compute the following: (a) break-even point in dollars using the contribution margin (CM) ratio; (b) the margin of safety assuming actual sales are $1,382,400; and (c) the sales dollars required to earn net income of $410,000.

BREAK-EVEN, MARGIN OF SAFETY, TARGET NET INCOME

Action Plan

- Apply the formula for the break-even point in dollars.
- Apply the formulas for the margin of safety in dollars and the margin of safety ratio.
- Apply the formula for the required sales in dollars.

Solution

Contribution margin ratio = [($56 − $42) ÷ $56] = 25%
Break-even sales in dollars = $320,000 ÷ 25% = $1,280,000
Margin of safety = $1,382,400 − $1,280,000 = $102,400
Margin of safety ratio = $102,400 ÷ $1,382,400 = 7.4%
Required sales in dollars = ($320,000 + $410,000) ÷ 25% = $2,920,000

Related exercise material: **BE18-10, BE18-11, BE18-12, Do it! 18-4, E18-14, E18-15,** and **E18-16**.

the navigator

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

B.T. Hernandez Company, maker of high-quality flashlights, has experienced steady growth over the last 6 years. However, increased competition has led Mr. Hernandez, the president, to believe that an aggressive campaign is needed next year to maintain the company's present growth. The company's accountant has presented Mr. Hernandez with the following data for the current year, 2011, for use in preparing next year's advertising campaign.

COST SCHEDULES

Variable costs	
Direct labor per flashlight	$ 8.00
Direct materials	4.00
Variable overhead	3.00
Variable cost per flashlight	$15.00
Fixed costs	
Manufacturing	$ 25,000
Selling	40,000
Administrative	70,000
Total fixed costs	$135,000
Selling price per flashlight	$25.00
Expected sales, 2011 (20,000 flashlights)	$500,000

Mr. Hernandez has set the sales target for the year 2012 at a level of $550,000 (22,000 flashlights).

Instructions

(Ignore any income tax considerations.)

(a) What is the projected operating income for 2011?
(b) What is the contribution margin per unit for 2011?
(c) What is the break-even point in units for 2012?
(d) Mr. Hernandez believes that to attain the sales target in the year 2012, the company must incur an additional selling expense of $10,000 for advertising in 2012, with all other costs remaining constant. What will be the break-even point in sales dollars for 2012 if the company spends the additional $10,000?
(e) If the company spends the additional $10,000 for advertising in 2012, what is the sales level in dollars required to equal 2011 operating income?

Solution

(a) Expected sales $500,000
Less:
Variable cost (20,000 flashlights × $15) 300,000
Fixed costs 135,000
Projected operating income $ 65,000

(b) Selling price per flashlight $25
Variable cost per flashlight 15
Contribution margin per unit $10

(c) Fixed costs ÷ Contribution margin per unit = Break-even point in units
$135,000 ÷ $10 = 13,500 units

(d) Fixed costs ÷ Contribution margin ratio = Break-even point in dollars
$145,000* ÷ 40%** = $362,500

*Fixed costs (from 2011) $135,000
Additional advertising expense 10,000
Fixed costs (2012) $145,000

**Contribution margin ratio = Contribution margin per unit ÷ Unit selling price
40% = $10 ÷ $25

(e) Required sales = (Fixed costs + Target net income) ÷ Contribution margin ratio

$525,000 = ($145,000 + $65,000) ÷ 40%

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Distinguish between variable and fixed costs. Variable costs are costs that vary in total directly and proportionately with changes in the activity index. Fixed costs are costs that remain the same in total regardless of changes in the activity index.

2 Explain the significance of the relevant range. The relevant range is the range of activity in which a company expects to operate during a year. It is important in CVP analysis because the behavior of costs is assumed to be linear throughout the relevant range.

3 Explain the concept of mixed costs. Mixed costs increase in total but not proportionately with changes in the activity level. For purposes of CVP analysis, mixed costs must be classified into their fixed and variable elements. One method that management may use to classify these costs is the high-low method.

4 List the five components of cost-volume-profit analysis. The five components of CVP analysis are (a) volume or level of activity, (b) unit selling prices, (c) variable cost per unit, (d) total fixed costs, and (e) sales mix.

5 Indicate what contribution margin is and how it can be expressed. Contribution margin is the amount of revenue remaining after deducting variable costs. It is identified in a CVP income statement, which classifies costs as variable or fixed. It can be expressed as a total amount, as a per unit amount, or as a ratio.

6 Identify the three ways to determine the break-even point. The break-even point can be (a) computed from a mathematical equation, (b) computed by using a contribution margin technique, and (c) derived from a CVP graph.

7 Give the formulas for determining sales required to earn target net income. The general formula for required sales is: Required sales = Variable costs + Fixed costs + Target net income. Two other formulas are: Required sales in units = (Fixed costs + Target net income) ÷ Contribution margin per unit, and Required sales in dollars = (Fixed costs + Target net income) ÷ Contribution margin ratio.

8 Define margin of safety, and give the formulas for computing it. Margin of safety is the difference between actual or expected sales and sales at the break-even point. The formulas for margin of safety are: Actual (expected) sales − Break-even sales = Margin of safety in dollars; Margin of safety in dollars ÷ Actual (expected) sales = Margin of safety ratio.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
What was the contribution toward fixed costs and income from each unit sold?	Selling price per unit and variable cost per unit	Contribution margin per unit = Unit selling price − Unit variable cost	Every unit sold will increase income by the contribution margin.
What was the increase in income as a result of an increase in sales?	Contribution margin per unit and unit selling price	Contribution margin ratio = Contribution margin per unit ÷ Unit selling price	Every dollar of sales will increase income by the contribution margin ratio.
At what amount of sales does a company cover its costs?	Unit selling price, unit variable cost, and total fixed costs	Break-even point analysis *In units:* Break-even point = Fixed costs / Unit contribution margin *In dollars:* Break-even point = Fixed costs / Contribution margin ratio	Below the break-even point, the company is unprofitable.

Glossary

Activity index *(p. 940)* The activity that causes changes in the behavior of costs.

Break-even point *(p. 951)* The level of activity at which total revenues equal total costs.

Contribution margin (CM) *(p. 948)* The amount of revenue remaining after deducting variable costs.

Contribution margin per unit *(p. 949)* The amount of revenue remaining per unit after deducting variable costs; calculated as unit selling price minus unit variable cost.

Contribution margin ratio *(p. 950)* The percentage of each dollar of sales that is available to apply to fixed costs and contribute to net income; calculated as contribution margin per unit divided by unit selling price.

Cost behavior analysis *(p. 940)* The study of how specific costs respond to changes in the level of business activity.

Cost-volume-profit (CVP) analysis *(p. 947)* The study of the effects of changes in costs and volume on a company's profits.

Cost-volume-profit (CVP) graph *(p. 953)* A graph showing the relationship between costs, volume, and profits.

Cost-volume-profit (CVP) income statement *(p. 948)* A statement for internal use that classifies costs as fixed or variable and reports contribution margin in the body of the statement.

Fixed costs *(p. 941)* Costs that remain the same in total regardless of changes in the activity level.

High-low method *(p. 945)* A mathematical method that uses the total costs incurred at the high and low levels of activity to classify mixed costs into fixed and variable components.

Margin of safety *(p. 956)* The difference between actual or expected sales and sales at the break-even point.

Mixed costs *(p. 944)* Costs that contain both a variable and a fixed cost element and change in total but not proportionately with changes in the activity level.

Relevant range *(p. 943)* The range of the activity index over which the company expects to operate during the year.

Target net income *(p. 954)* The income objective set by management.

Variable costs *(p. 940)* Costs that vary in total directly and proportionately with changes in the activity level.

Comprehensive Do it!

Mabo Company makes calculators that sell for $20 each. For the coming year, management expects fixed costs to total $220,000 and variable costs to be $9 per unit.

Instructions

(a) Compute break-even point in units using the mathematical equation.
(b) Compute break-even point in dollars using the contribution margin (CM) ratio.
(c) Compute the margin of safety percentage assuming actual sales are $500,000.
(d) Compute the sales required in dollars to earn net income of $165,000.

Action Plan

- Know the formulas.
- Recognize that variable costs change with sales volume; fixed costs do not.
- Avoid computational errors.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

(a) Sales = Variable costs + Fixed costs + Net income
$20Q = $9Q + $220,000 + $0
$11Q = $220,000
Q = 20,000 units

(b) Contribution margin per unit = Unit selling price − Unit variable costs
$11 = $20 − $9
Contribution margin ratio = Contribution margin per unit ÷ Unit selling price
55% = $11 ÷ $20
Break-even point in dollars = Fixed cost ÷ Contribution margin ratio
= $220,000 ÷ 55%
= $400,000

(c) $$\text{Margin of safety} = \frac{\text{Actual sales} - \text{Break-even sales}}{\text{Actual sales}} = \frac{\$500{,}000 - \$400{,}000}{\$500{,}000} = 20\%$$

(d) Required sales = Variable costs + Fixed costs + Net income
$20Q = $9Q + $220,000 + $165,000
$11Q = $385,000
Q = 35,000 units
35,000 units × $20 = $700,000 required sales

the navigator

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 975.

(SO 1) **1.** Variable costs are costs that:
(a) vary in total directly and proportionately with changes in the activity level.
(b) remain the same per unit at every activity level.
(c) Neither of the above.
(d) Both (a) and (b) above.

(SO 2) **2.** The relevant range is:
(a) the range of activity in which variable costs will be curvilinear.
(b) the range of activity in which fixed costs will be curvilinear.
(c) the range over which the company expects to operate during a year.
(d) usually from zero to 100% of operating capacity.

(SO 3) **3.** Mixed costs consist of a:
(a) variable cost element and a fixed cost element.
(b) fixed cost element and a controllable cost element.
(c) relevant cost element and a controllable cost element.
(d) variable cost element and a relevant cost element.

(SO 3) **4.** Your phone service provider offers a plan that is classified as a mixed cost. The cost per month for 1,000 minutes is $50. If you use 2,000 minutes this month, your cost will be:
(a) $50.
(b) $100.
(c) more than $100.
(d) between $50 and $100.

(SO 3) **5.** Kendra Corporation's total utility costs during the past year were $1,200 during its highest month and $600 during its lowest month. These costs corresponded with 10,000 units of production during the high month and 2,000 units during the low month. What are the fixed and variable components of its utility costs using the high-low method?
(a) $0.075 variable and $450 fixed.
(b) $0.120 variable and $0 fixed.
(c) $0.300 variable and $0 fixed.
(d) $0.060 variable and $600 fixed.

(SO 4) **6.** Which of the following is *not* involved in CVP analysis?
(a) Sales mix.
(b) Unit selling prices.
(c) Fixed costs per unit.
(d) Volume or level of activity.

(SO 5) **7.** When comparing a traditional income statement to a CVP income statement:
(a) net income will always be greater on the traditional statement.
(b) net income will always be less on the traditional statement.
(c) net income will always be identical on both.
(d) net income will be greater or less depending on the sales volume.

(SO 5) **8.** Contribution margin:
(a) is revenue remaining after deducting variable costs.
(b) may be expressed as contribution margin per unit.
(c) is selling price less cost of goods sold.
(d) Both (a) and (b) above.

(SO 5) **9.** Cournot Company sells 100,000 wrenches for $12 a unit. Fixed costs are $300,000, and net income is $200,000. What should be reported as variable expenses in the CVP income statement?
(a) $700,000. (c) $500,000.
(b) $900,000. (d) $1,000,000.

(SO 6) **10.** Gossen Company is planning to sell 200,000 pliers for $4 per unit. The contribution margin ratio is 25%. If Gossen will break even at this level of sales, what are the fixed costs?
(a) $100,000. (c) $200,000.
(b) $160,000. (d) $300,000.

(SO 6) **11.** Brownstone Company's contribution margin ratio is 30%. If Brownstone's sales revenue is $100 greater than its break-even sales in dollars, its net income:
(a) will be $100.
(b) will be $70.
(c) will be $30.
(d) cannot be determined without knowing fixed costs.

(SO 7) **12.** The mathematical equation for computing required sales to obtain target net income is: Required sales =
(a) Variable costs + Target net income.
(b) Variable costs + Fixed costs + Target net income.
(c) Fixed costs + Target net income.
(d) No correct answer is given.

(SO 8) **13.** Margin of safety is computed as:
(a) Actual sales − Break-even sales.
(b) Contribution margin − Fixed costs.
(c) Break-even sales − Variable costs.
(d) Actual sales − Contribution margin.

(SO 8) **14.** Marshall Company had actual sales of $600,000 when break-even sales were $420,000. What is the margin of safety ratio?
(a) 25%. (c) 33⅓%.
(b) 30%. (d) 45%.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, for additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. (a) What is cost behavior analysis?
(b) Why is cost behavior analysis important to management?

2. (a) Alice Kent asks your help in understanding the term "activity index." Explain the meaning and importance of this term for Alice.
(b) State the two ways that variable costs may be defined.

3. Contrast the effects of changes in the activity level on total fixed costs and on unit fixed costs.

4. B. K. Fernandez claims that the relevant range concept is important only for variable costs.
(a) Explain the relevant range concept.
(b) Do you agree with B. K.'s claim? Explain.

5. "The relevant range is indispensable in cost behavior analysis." Is this true? Why or why not?

6. Todd Ricketts is confused. He does not understand why rent on his apartment is a fixed cost and rent on a Hertz rental truck is a mixed cost. Explain the difference to Todd.

7. How should mixed costs be classified in CVP analysis? What approach is used to effect the appropriate classification?

8. At the high and low levels of activity during the month, direct labor hours are 90,000 and 40,000, respectively. The related costs are $160,000 and $100,000. What are the fixed and variable costs at any level of activity?

9. "Cost-volume-profit (CVP) analysis is based entirely on unit costs." Do you agree? Explain.

10. Sara Lang defines contribution margin as the amount of profit available to cover operating expenses. Is there any truth in this definition? Discuss.

11. Agler Company's Speedo calculator sells for $40. Variable costs per unit are estimated to be $28. What are the contribution margin per unit and the contribution margin ratio?

12. "Break-even analysis is of limited use to management because a company cannot survive by just breaking even." Do you agree? Explain.

13. Total fixed costs are $25,000 for Oaks Inc. It has a contribution margin per unit of $15, and a contribution margin ratio of 25%. Compute the break-even sales in dollars.

14. Susie Tobias asks your help in constructing a CVP graph. Explain to Susie (a) how the break-even point is plotted, and (b) how the level of activity and dollar sales at the break-even point are determined.

15. Define the term "margin of safety." If Stine Company expects to sell 1,250 units of its product at $12 per unit,

and break-even sales for the product are $12,000, what is the margin of safety ratio?

16. Molena Company's break-even sales are $600,000. Assuming fixed costs are $180,000, what sales volume is needed to achieve a target net income of $60,000?

17. The traditional income statement for Renfro Company shows sales $900,000, cost of goods sold $500,000, and operating expenses $200,000. Assuming all costs and expenses are 70% variable and 30% fixed, prepare a CVP income statement through contribution margin.

Brief Exercises

Classify costs as variable, fixed, or mixed.
(SO 1, 3), C

BE18-1 Monthly production costs in Loder Company for two levels of production are as follows.

Cost	3,000 units	6,000 units
Indirect labor	$10,000	$20,000
Supervisory salaries	5,000	5,000
Maintenance	4,000	7,000

Indicate which costs are variable, fixed, and mixed, and give the reason for each answer.

Diagram the behavior of costs within the relevant range.
(SO 2), AN

BE18-2 For Bruno Company, the relevant range of production is 40–80% of capacity. At 40% of capacity, a variable cost is $4,000 and a fixed cost is $6,000. Diagram the behavior of each cost within the relevant range assuming the behavior is linear.

Diagram the behavior of a mixed cost.
(SO 3), AN

BE18-3 For Larissa Company, a mixed cost is $20,000 plus $16 per direct labor hour. Diagram the behavior of the cost using increments of 500 hours up to 2,500 hours on the horizontal axis and increments of $20,000 up to $80,000 on the vertical axis.

Determine variable and fixed cost elements using the high-low method.
(SO 3), AP

BE18-4 Pesaveno Company accumulates the following data concerning a mixed cost, using miles as the activity level.

	Miles Driven	Total Cost		Miles Driven	Total Cost
January	8,000	$14,150	March	8,500	$15,000
February	7,500	13,600	April	8,200	14,490

Compute the variable and fixed cost elements using the high-low method.

Determine variable and fixed cost elements using the high-low method.
(SO 3), AP

BE18-5 Presto Corp. has collected the following data concerning its maintenance costs for the past 6 months.

	Units Produced	Total Cost
July	18,000	$32,000
August	32,000	48,000
September	36,000	55,000
October	22,000	38,000
November	40,000	65,000
December	38,000	62,000

Compute the variable and fixed cost elements using the high-low method.

Determine missing amounts for contribution margin.
(SO 5), AN

BE18-6 Determine the missing amounts.

	Unit Selling Price	Unit Variable Costs	Contribution Margin per Unit	Contribution Margin Ratio
1.	$640	$384	(a)	(b)
2.	$300	(c)	$90	(d)
3.	(e)	(f)	$320	25%

Prepare CVP income statement.
(SO 5), AP

BE18-7 Radial Manufacturing Inc. had sales of $2,200,000 for the first quarter of 2012. In making the sales, the company incurred the following costs and expenses.

	Variable	Fixed
Cost of goods sold	$920,000	$440,000
Selling expenses	70,000	45,000
Administrative expenses	86,000	98,000

Prepare a CVP income statement for the quarter ended March 31, 2012.

BE18-8 Meriden Company has a unit selling price of $520, variable costs per unit of $286, and fixed costs of $187,200. Compute the break-even point in units using (a) the mathematical equation and (b) contribution margin per unit.

Compute the break-even point. (SO 6), **AP**

BE18-9 Dugan Corp. had total variable costs of $180,000, total fixed costs of $160,000, and total revenues of $300,000. Compute the required sales in dollars to break even.

Compute the break-even point. (SO 6), **AP**

BE18-10 For Turgo Company, variable costs are 60% of sales, and fixed costs are $195,000. Management's net income goal is $75,000. Compute the required sales in dollars needed to achieve management's target net income of $75,000. (Use the contribution margin approach.)

Compute sales for target net income. (SO 7), **AP**

BE18-11 For Kozy Company, actual sales are $1,200,000 and break-even sales are $840,000. Compute (a) the margin of safety in dollars and (b) the margin of safety ratio.

Compute the margin of safety and the margin of safety ratio. (SO 8), **AP**

BE18-12 Dye Corporation has fixed costs of $480,000. It has a unit selling price of $6, unit variable cost of $4.50, and a target net income of $1,500,000. Compute the required sales in units to achieve its target net income.

Compute the required sales in units for target net income. (SO 7), **AP**

Do it! Review

Do it! 18-1 Dousman Company reports the following total costs at two levels of production.

Classify types of costs. (SO 1, 3), **C**

	5,000 Units	10,000 Units
Indirect labor	$ 3,000	$ 6,000
Property taxes	7,000	7,000
Direct labor	27,000	54,000
Direct materials	22,000	44,000
Depreciation	4,000	4,000
Utilities	3,000	5,000
Maintenance	9,000	11,000

Classify each cost as variable, fixed, or mixed.

Do it! 18-2 Colter Company accumulates the following data concerning a mixed cost, using units produced as the activity level.

Compute costs using high-low method and estimate total cost. (SO 3), **AP**

	Units Produced	Total Cost
March	10,000	$18,000
April	9,000	16,650
May	10,500	18,750
June	8,800	16,200
July	9,500	17,100

(a) Compute the variable and fixed cost elements using the high-low method.
(b) Estimate the total cost if the company produces 8,500 units.

Do it! 18-3 Lance Company has a unit selling price of $250, variable cost per unit of $160, and fixed costs of $135,000. Compute the break-even point in units using (a) the mathematical equation and (b) contribution margin per unit.

Compute break-even point in units. (SO 6), **AP**

Do it! 18-4 Sandoval Company makes radios that sell for $30 each. For the coming year, management expects fixed costs to total $200,000 and variable costs to be $20 per unit.
(a) Compute the break-even point in dollars using the contribution margin (CM) ratio.
(b) Compute the margin of safety ratio assuming actual sales are $750,000.
(c) Compute the sales dollars required to earn net income of $120,000.

Compute break-even point, margin of safety ratio, and sales for target net income. (SO 6, 7, 8), **AP**

Exercises

Define and classify variable, fixed, and mixed costs.
(SO 1, 3), **C**

E18-1 King Company manufactures a single product. Annual production costs incurred in the manufacturing process are shown below for two levels of production.

	Costs Incurred			
Production in Units	**5,000**		**10,000**	
Production Costs	**Total Cost**	**Cost/ Unit**	**Total Cost**	**Cost/ Unit**
Direct materials	$8,250	$1.65	$16,500	$1.65
Direct labor	9,500	1.90	19,000	1.90
Utilities	1,500	0.30	2,500	0.25
Rent	4,000	0.80	4,000	0.40
Maintenance	800	0.16	1,100	0.11
Supervisory salaries	1,000	0.20	1,000	0.10

Instructions
(a) Define the terms variable costs, fixed costs, and mixed costs.
(b) Classify each cost above as either variable, fixed, or mixed.

Diagram cost behavior, determine relevant range, and classify costs.
(SO 1, 2), **C**

E18-2 Glacial Enterprises is considering manufacturing a new product. It projects the cost of direct materials and rent for a range of output as shown below.

Output in Units	Rent Expense	Direct Materials
1,000	$ 5,000	$ 4,000
2,000	5,000	6,000
3,000	5,000	7,800
4,000	7,000	8,000
5,000	7,000	10,000
6,000	7,000	12,000
7,000	7,000	14,000
8,000	7,000	16,000
9,000	7,000	18,000
10,000	10,000	23,000
11,000	10,000	28,000
12,000	10,000	36,000

Instructions
(a) Diagram the behavior of each cost for output ranging from 1,000 to 12,000 units.
(b) Determine the relevant range of activity for this product.
(c) Calculate the variable cost per unit within the relevant range.
(d) Indicate the fixed cost within the relevant range.

Determine fixed and variable costs using the high-low method and prepare graph.
(SO 1, 3), **AN**

E18-3 The controller of Capital Industries has collected the following monthly expense data for use in analyzing the cost behavior of maintenance costs.

Month	Total Maintenance Costs	Total Machine Hours
January	$2,400	300
February	3,000	400
March	3,600	600
April	4,500	790
May	3,200	500
June	4,900	800

Instructions
(a) Determine the fixed and variable cost components using the high-low method.
(b) Prepare a graph showing the behavior of maintenance costs, and identify the fixed and variable cost elements. Use 200-hour increments and $1,000 cost increments.

E18-4 Cottonwood Furniture Corporation incurred the following costs.

Classify variable, fixed, and mixed costs.
(SO 1, 3), **C**

1. Wood used in the production of furniture.
2. Fuel used in delivery trucks.
3. Straight-line depreciation on factory building.
4. Screws used in the production of furniture.
5. Sales staff salaries.
6. Sales commissions.
7. Property taxes.
8. Insurance on buildings.
9. Hourly wages of furniture craftsmen.
10. Salaries of factory supervisors.
11. Utilities expense.
12. Telephone bill.

Instructions
Identify the costs above as variable, fixed, or mixed.

E18-5 The controller of Sedgwick Industries has collected the following monthly expense data for use in analyzing the cost behavior of maintenance costs.

Determine fixed and variable costs using the high-low method and prepare graph.
(SO 1, 3), **AP**

Month	Total Maintenance Costs	Total Machine Hours
January	$2,800	3,000
February	3,000	4,000
March	3,600	6,000
April	4,500	7,900
May	3,200	5,000
June	5,000	8,000

Instructions
(a) Determine the fixed and variable cost components using the high-low method.
(b) Prepare a graph showing the behavior of maintenance costs, and identify the fixed and variable cost elements. Use 2,000-hour increments and $1,000 cost increments.

E18-6 Hadicke Corporation manufactures a single product. Monthly production costs incurred in the manufacturing process are shown below for the production of 3,000 units. The utilities and maintenance costs are mixed costs. The fixed portions of these costs are $300 and $200, respectively.

Determine fixed, variable, and mixed costs.
(SO 1, 3), **AP**

Production in Units	**3,000**
Production Costs	
Direct materials	$ 7,500
Direct labor	15,000
Utilities	1,800
Property taxes	1,000
Indirect labor	4,500
Supervisory salaries	1,800
Maintenance	1,100
Depreciation	2,400

Instructions
(a) Identify the above costs as variable, fixed, or mixed.
(b) Calculate the expected costs when production is 5,000 units.

E18-7 Kenny Deines wants Deines Company to use CVP analysis to study the effects of changes in costs and volume on the company. Deines has heard that certain assumptions must be valid in order for CVP analysis to be useful.

Explain assumptions underlying CVP analysis.
(SO 4), **K**

Instructions
Prepare a memo to Kenny Deines concerning the assumptions that underlie CVP analysis.

Compute break-even point in units and dollars.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

E18-8 Green Forever provides environmentally friendly lawn services for homeowners. Its operating costs are as follows.

Depreciation	$1,500 per month
Advertising	$200 per month
Insurance	$2,000 per month
Weed and feed materials	$13 per lawn
Direct labor	$12 per lawn
Fuel	$2 per lawn

Green Forever charges $60 per treatment for the average single-family lawn.

Instructions
Determine the company's break-even point in (a) number of lawns serviced per month and (b) dollars.

Compute break-even point.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

E18-9 The San Marcos Inn is trying to determine its break-even point. The inn has 50 rooms that it rents at $60 a night. Operating costs are as follows.

Salaries	$7,200 per month
Utilities	$1,500 per month
Depreciation	$1,200 per month
Maintenance	$300 per month
Maid service	$8 per room
Other costs	$28 per room

Instructions
Determine the inn's break-even point in (1) number of rented rooms per month and (2) dollars.

Compute contribution margin and break-even point.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

E18-10 In the month of March, Trendy Spa services 570 clients at an average price of $120. During the month, fixed costs were $21,000 and variable costs were 65% of sales.

Instructions
(a) Determine the contribution margin in dollars, per unit, and as a ratio.
(b) Using the contribution margin technique, compute the break-even point in dollars and in units.

Compute break-even point.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

E18-11 Airport Connection provides shuttle service between four hotels near a medical center and an international airport. Airport Connection uses two 10-passenger vans to offer 12 round trips per day. A recent month's activity in the form of a cost-volume-profit income statement is shown below.

Fare revenues (1,440 fares)		$36,000
Variable costs		
Fuel	$ 5,040	
Tolls and parking	3,100	
Maintenance	500	8,640
Contribution margin		27,360
Fixed costs		
Salaries	13,000	
Depreciation	1,300	
Insurance	1,128	15,428
Net income		$11,932

Instructions
(a) Calculate the break-even point in (1) dollars and (2) number of fares.
(b) Without calculations, determine the contribution margin at the break-even point.

Compute variable cost per unit, contribution margin ratio, and increase in fixed costs.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

E18-12 In 2012, Grissom Company had a break-even point of $350,000 based on a selling price of $7 per unit and fixed costs of $105,000. In 2013, the selling price and the variable cost per unit did not change, but the break-even point increased to $420,000.

Instructions
(a) Compute the variable cost per unit and the contribution margin ratio for 2012.
(b) Compute the increase in fixed costs for 2013.

E18-13 Naylor Company has the following information available for September 2012.

Prepare CVP income statements.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

Unit selling price of video game consoles	$ 400
Unit variable costs	$ 270
Total fixed costs	$52,000
Units sold	620

Instructions
(a) Prepare a CVP income statement that shows both total and per unit amounts.
(b) Compute Naylor's break-even point in units.
(c) Prepare a CVP income statement for the break-even point that shows both total and per unit amounts.

E18-14 Moran Company had $150,000 of net income in 2012 when the selling price per unit was $150, the variable costs per unit were $90, and the fixed costs were $570,000. Management expects per unit data and total fixed costs to remain the same in 2013. The president of Moran Company is under pressure from stockholders to increase net income by $60,000 in 2013.

Compute various components to derive target net income under different assumptions.
(SO 6, 7), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Compute the number of units sold in 2012.
(b) Compute the number of units that would have to be sold in 2013 to reach the stockholders' desired profit level.
(c) Assume that Moran Company sells the same number of units in 2013 as it did in 2012. What would the selling price have to be in order to reach the stockholders' desired profit level?

E18-15 Ogilvie Company reports the following operating results for the month of August: Sales $350,000 (units 5,000); variable costs $210,000; and fixed costs $90,000. Management is considering the following independent courses of action to increase net income.

Compute net income under different alternatives.
(SO 7), **AP**

1. Increase selling price by 10% with no change in total variable costs or units sold.
2. Reduce variable costs to 55% of sales.

Instructions
Compute the net income to be earned under each alternative. Which course of action will produce the highest net income?

E18-16 Stiever Company estimates that variable costs will be 60% of sales, and fixed costs will total $800,000. The selling price of the product is $4.

Prepare a CVP graph and compute break-even point and margin of safety.
(SO 6, 8), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Prepare a CVP graph, assuming maximum sales of $3,200,000. (*Note:* Use $400,000 increments for sales and costs and 100,000 increments for units.)
(b) Compute the break-even point in (1) units and (2) dollars.
(c) Compute the margin of safety in (1) dollars and (2) as a ratio, assuming actual sales are $2.5 million.

E18-17 Hardwood Seating Co., a manufacturer of chairs, had the following data for 2012.

Determine contribution margin ratio, break-even point in dollars, and margin of safety.
(SO 5, 6, 7, 8), **AP**

Sales	2,400 units
Sales price	$40 per unit
Variable costs	$14 per unit
Fixed costs	$19,500

Instructions
(a) What is the contribution margin ratio?
(b) What is the break-even point in dollars?
(c) What is the margin of safety in dollars and as a ratio?
(d) If the company wishes to increase its total dollar contribution margin by 40% in 2013, by how much will it need to increase its sales if all other factors remain constant?

(CGA adapted)

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Determine variable and fixed costs, compute break-even point, prepare a CVP graph, and determine net income.
(SO 1, 3, 5, 6), **AN**

P18-1A Stephen Thorne owns the Fredonia Barber Shop. He employs five barbers and pays each a base rate of $1,000 per month. One of the barbers serves as the manager and receives an extra $500 per month. In addition to the base rate, each barber also receives a commission of $5.50 per haircut.

Other costs are as follows.

Advertising	$200 per month
Rent	$900 per month
Barber supplies	$0.30 per haircut
Utilities	$175 per month plus $0.20 per haircut
Magazines	$25 per month

Stephen currently charges $10 per haircut.

Instructions

(a) VC $6

(a) Determine the variable cost per haircut and the total monthly fixed costs.
(b) Compute the break-even point in units and dollars.
(c) Prepare a CVP graph, assuming a maximum of 1,800 haircuts in a month. Use increments of 300 haircuts on the horizontal axis and $3,000 on the vertical axis.
(d) Determine net income, assuming 1,900 haircuts are given in a month.

Prepare a CVP income statement, compute break-even point, contribution margin ratio, margin of safety ratio, and sales for target net income.
(SO 5, 6, 7, 8), **AN**

P18-2A Lyman Company bottles and distributes Livit, a diet soft drink. The beverage is sold for 50 cents per 16-ounce bottle to retailers, who charge customers 75 cents per bottle. For the year 2012, management estimates the following revenues and costs.

Net sales	$1,800,000	Selling expenses—variable	$70,000
Direct materials	430,000	Selling expenses—fixed	65,000
Direct labor	352,000	Administrative expenses—variable	20,000
Manufacturing overhead—variable	316,000	Administrative expenses—fixed	60,000
Manufacturing overhead—fixed	283,000		

Instructions

(b) (1) 2,400,000 units
(c) CM ratio 34%

(a) Prepare a CVP income statement for 2012 based on management's estimates.
(b) Compute the break-even point in (1) units and (2) dollars.
(c) Compute the contribution margin ratio and the margin of safety ratio. (Round to nearest full percent.)
(d) Determine the sales dollars required to earn net income of $238,000.

Compute break-even point under alternative courses of action.
(SO 5, 6), **E**

P18-3A Giere Manufacturing's sales slumped badly in 2012. For the first time in its history, it operated at a loss. The company's income statement showed the following results from selling 600,000 units of product: Net sales $2,400,000; total costs and expenses $2,540,000; and net loss $140,000. Costs and expenses consisted of the amounts shown below.

	Total	Variable	Fixed
Cost of goods sold	$2,100,000	$1,440,000	$660,000
Selling expenses	240,000	72,000	168,000
Administrative expenses	200,000	48,000	152,000
	$2,540,000	$1,560,000	$980,000

Management is considering the following independent alternatives for 2013.

1. Increase unit selling price 20% with no change in costs, expenses, and sales volume.
2. Change the compensation of salespersons from fixed annual salaries totaling $150,000 to total salaries of $60,000 plus a 5% commission on net sales.

Instructions

(a) Compute the break-even point in dollars for 2012.

(b) Compute the break-even point in dollars under each of the alternative courses of action. (Round all ratios to nearest full percent.) Which course of action do you recommend?

(b) Alternative 1 $2,130,435

P18-4A Julie Milroy is the advertising manager for Value Shoe Store. She is currently working on a major promotional campaign. Her ideas include the installation of a new lighting system and increased display space that will add $34,000 in fixed costs to the $270,000 currently spent. In addition, Julie is proposing that a 5% price decrease ($40 to $38) will produce a 20% increase in sales volume (20,000 to 24,000). Variable costs will remain at $22 per pair of shoes. Management is impressed with Julie's ideas but concerned about the effects that these changes will have on the break-even point and the margin of safety.

Compute break-even point and margin of safety ratio, and prepare a CVP income statement before and after changes in business environment.
(SO 5, 6, 8), **E**

Instructions

(a) Compute the current break-even point in units, and compare it to the break-even point in units if Julie's ideas are used.

(b) Compute the margin of safety ratio for current operations and after Julie's changes are introduced. (Round to nearest full percent.)

(b) Current margin of safety ratio 25%

(c) Prepare a CVP income statement for current operations and after Julie's changes are introduced. Would you make the changes suggested?

P18-5A Marotta Corporation has collected the following information after its first year of sales. Net sales were $1,600,000 on 100,000 units; selling expenses $240,000 (40% variable and 60% fixed); direct materials $511,000; direct labor $285,000; administrative expenses $280,000 (20% variable and 80% fixed); manufacturing overhead $360,000 (70% variable and 30% fixed). Top management has asked you to do a CVP analysis so that it can make plans for the coming year. It has projected that unit sales will increase by 10% next year.

Compute contribution margin, fixed costs, break-even point, sales for target net income, and margin of safety ratio.
(SO 5, 6, 7, 8), **AN**

Instructions

(a) Compute (1) the contribution margin for the current year and the projected year, and (2) the fixed costs for the current year. (Assume that fixed costs will remain the same in the projected year.)

(b) Compute the break-even point in units and sales dollars for the current year.

(b) 119,000 units

(c) The company has a target net income of $310,000. What is the required sales in dollars for the company to meet its target?

(d) If the company meets its target net income number, by what percentage could its sales fall before it is operating at a loss? That is, what is its margin of safety ratio?

P18-6A Lankford Manufacturing carries no inventories. Its product is manufactured only when a customer's order is received. It is then shipped immediately after it is made. For its fiscal year ended October 31, 2012, Lankford's break-even point was $1.35 million. On sales of $1.2 million, its income statement showed a gross profit of $100,000, direct materials cost of $400,000, and direct labor costs of $500,000. The contribution margin was $100,000, and variable manufacturing overhead was $100,000.

Determine contribution margin ratio, break-even point, and margin of safety.
(SO 1, 5, 7, 8), **E**

Instructions

(a) Calculate the following:
   1. Variable selling and administrative expenses.
   2. Fixed manufacturing overhead.
   3. Fixed selling and administrative expenses.

(a) 2. $100,000

(b) Ignoring your answer to part (a), assume that fixed manufacturing overhead was $100,000 and the fixed selling and administrative expenses were $80,000. The marketing vice president feels that if the company increased its advertising, sales could be increased by 20%. What is the maximum increased advertising cost the company can incur and still report the same income as before the advertising expenditure? (CGA adapted)

Problems: Set B

P18-1B The Ottawa Barber Shop employs four barbers. One barber, who also serves as the manager, is paid a salary of $3,900 per month. The other barbers are paid $1,900 per month. In addition, each barber is paid a commission of $2 per haircut. Other monthly costs are: store rent $700 plus 60 cents per haircut, depreciation on equipment $500,

Determine variable and fixed costs, compute break-even point, prepare a CVP graph, and determine net income.
(SO 1, 3, 5, 6), **AN**

barber supplies 40 cents per haircut, utilities $300, and advertising $100. The price of a haircut is $10.

Instructions

(a) VC $3

(a) Determine the variable cost per haircut and the total monthly fixed costs.
(b) Compute the break-even point in units and dollars.
(c) Prepare a CVP graph, assuming a maximum of 1,800 haircuts in a month. Use increments of 300 haircuts on the horizontal axis and $3,000 increments on the vertical axis.
(d) Determine the net income, assuming 1,700 haircuts are given in a month.

Prepare a CVP income statement, compute break-even point, contribution margin ratio, margin of safety ratio, and sales for target net income.
(SO 5, 6, 7, 8), **AN**

P18-2B Colaw Company bottles and distributes No-FIZZ, a fruit drink. The beverage is sold for 50 cents per 16-ounce bottle to retailers, who charge customers 70 cents per bottle. For the year 2012, management estimates the following revenues and costs.

Net sales	$2,000,000	Selling expenses—variable	$ 80,000
Direct materials	360,000	Selling expenses—fixed	150,000
Direct labor	450,000	Administrative expenses—variable	40,000
Manufacturing overhead—variable	270,000	Administrative expenses—fixed	70,000
Manufacturing overhead—fixed	280,000		

Instructions

(b) (1) 2,500,000 units
(c) CM ratio 40%

(a) Prepare a CVP income statement for 2012 based on management's estimates.
(b) Compute the break-even point in (1) units and (2) dollars.
(c) Compute the contribution margin ratio and the margin of safety ratio.
(d) Determine the sales dollars required to earn net income of $390,000.

Compute break-even point under alternative courses of action.
(SO 5, 6), **E**

P18-3B Denton Manufacturing had a bad year in 2011. For the first time in its history, it operated at a loss. The company's income statement showed the following results from selling 60,000 units of product: Net sales $1,500,000; total costs and expenses $1,890,000; and net loss $390,000. Costs and expenses consisted of the amounts shown below.

	Total	Variable	Fixed
Cost of goods sold	$1,350,000	$930,000	$420,000
Selling expenses	420,000	65,000	355,000
Administrative expenses	120,000	55,000	65,000
	$1,890,000	$1,050,000	$840,000

Management is considering the following independent alternatives for 2012.

1. Increase unit selling price 40% with no change in costs, expenses, and sales volume.
2. Change the compensation of salespersons from fixed annual salaries totaling $200,000 to total salaries of $30,000 plus a 4% commission on net sales.
3. Purchase new high-tech factory machinery that will change the proportion between variable and fixed cost of goods sold to 50:50.

Instructions

(b) Alternative 1, $1,680,000

(a) Compute the break-even point in dollars for 2012.
(b) Compute the break-even point in dollars under each of the alternative courses of action. Which course of action do you recommend?

Compute break-even point and margin of safety ratio, and prepare a CVP income statement before and after changes in business environment.
(SO 5, 6, 8), **E**

P18-4B Beth Howard is the advertising manager for Payless Shoe Store. She is currently working on a major promotional campaign. Her ideas include the installation of a new lighting system and increased display space that will add $24,000 in fixed costs to the $210,000 currently spent. In addition, Beth is proposing that a 6⅔% price decrease (from $30 to $28) will produce an increase in sales volume from 16,000 to 20,000 units. Variable costs will remain at $15 per pair of shoes. Management is impressed with Beth's ideas but concerned about the effects that these changes will have on the break-even point and the margin of safety.

Instructions

(b) Current margin of safety ratio 12.5%

(a) Compute the current break-even point in units, and compare it to the break-even point in units if Beth's ideas are used.
(b) Compute the margin of safety ratio for current operations and after Beth's changes are introduced. (Round to nearest full percent.)
(c) Prepare a CVP income statement for current operations and after Beth's changes are introduced. Would you make the changes suggested?

P18-5B Tomorrow Corporation has collected the following information after its first year of sales. Net sales were $2,000,000 on 100,000 units; selling expenses $400,000 (30% variable and 70% fixed); direct materials $600,000; direct labor $340,000; administrative expenses $500,000 (30% variable and 70% fixed); manufacturing overhead $480,000 (20% variable and 80% fixed). Top management has asked you to do a CVP analysis so that it can make plans for the coming year. It has projected that unit sales will increase by 20% next year.

Compute break-even point and margin of safety ratio, and prepare a CVP income statement before and after changes in business environment.
(SO 5, 6, 7, 8), **AN**

Instructions

(a) Compute (1) the contribution margin for the current year and the projected year, and (2) the fixed costs for the current year. (Assume that fixed costs will remain the same in the projected year.)

(b) Compute the break-even point in units and sales dollars.

(b) 146,110 units

(c) The company has a target net income of $374,000. What is the required sales in dollars for the company to meet its target?

(d) If the company meets its target net income number, by what percentage could its sales fall before it is operating at a loss? That is, what is its margin of safety ratio?

(e) The company is considering a purchase of equipment that would reduce its direct labor costs by $140,000 and would change its manufacturing overhead costs to 10% variable and 90% fixed (assume total manufacturing overhead cost is $480,000, as above). It is also considering switching to a pure commission basis for its sales staff. This would change selling expenses to 80% variable and 20% fixed (assume total selling expense is $400,000, as above). Compute (1) the contribution margin and (2) the contribution margin ratio, and recompute (3) the break-even point in sales dollars. Comment on the effect each of management's proposed changes has on the break-even point.

P18-6B Apple Manufacturing carries no inventories. Its product is manufactured only when a customer's order is received. It is then shipped immediately after it is made. For its fiscal year ended October 31, 2012, Apple's break-even point was $2.2 million. On sales of $1.9 million, its income statement showed a gross profit of $300,000, direct materials cost of $600,000, and direct labor costs of $700,000. The contribution margin was $150,000, and variable manufacturing overhead was $200,000.

Determine contribution margin ratio, break-even point, and margin of safety.
(SO 1, 5, 7, 8), **E**

Instructions

(a) Calculate the following:
1. Variable selling and administrative expenses.
2. Fixed manufacturing overhead.
3. Fixed selling and administrative expenses.

(a) 2. $100,000

(b) Ignoring your answer to part (a), assume that fixed manufacturing overhead was $100,000 and the fixed selling and administrative expenses were $80,000. The marketing vice president feels that if the company increased its advertising, sales could be increased by 20%. What is the maximum increased advertising cost the company can incur and still report the same income as before the advertising expenditure? (CGA adapted)

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Waterways Continuing Problem

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Waterways Problem from Chapters 14 through 17.)

WCP18 The Vice President for Sales and Marketing at Waterways Corporation is planning for production needs to meet sales demand in the coming year. He is also trying to determine how the company's profits might be increased in the coming year. This problem asks you to use cost-volume-profit concepts to help Waterways understand contribution margins of some of its products and to decide whether to mass-produce certain products.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to find the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP18-1 Martinez Company has decided to introduce a new product. The new product can be manufactured by either a capital-intensive method or a labor-intensive method. The manufacturing method will not affect the quality of the product. The estimated manufacturing costs by the two methods are as follows.

	Capital-Intensive	Labor-Intensive
Direct materials	$5 per unit	$5.50 per unit
Direct labor	$6 per unit	$8.00 per unit
Variable overhead	$3 per unit	$4.50 per unit
Fixed manufacturing costs	$2,508,000	$1,538,000

Martinez's market research department has recommended an introductory unit sales price of $30. The incremental selling expenses are estimated to be $502,000 annually plus $2 for each unit sold, regardless of manufacturing method.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following.

(a) Calculate the estimated break-even point in annual unit sales of the new product if Martinez Company uses the:
  (1) Capital-intensive manufacturing method.
  (2) Labor-intensive manufacturing method.

(b) Determine the annual unit sales volume at which Martinez Company would be indifferent between the two manufacturing methods.

(c) Explain the circumstance under which Martinez should employ each of the two manufacturing methods.

(CMA adapted)

MANAGERIAL ANALYSIS

BYP18-2 The condensed income statement for the Sally and Terry partnership for 2012 is as follows.

SALLY AND TERRY COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales (200,000 units)		$1,200,000
Cost of goods sold		800,000
Gross profit		400,000
Operating expenses		
Selling	$280,000	
Administrative	160,000	440,000
Net loss		($40,000)

A cost behavior analysis indicates that 75% of the cost of goods sold are variable, 50% of the selling expenses are variable, and 25% of the administrative expenses are variable.

Instructions

(Round to nearest unit, dollar, and percentage, where necessary. Use the CVP income statement format in computing profits.)

(a) Compute the break-even point in total sales dollars and in units for 2012.

(b) Sally has proposed a plan to get the partnership "out of the red" and improve its profitability. She feels that the quality of the product could be substantially improved by spending $0.25 more per unit on better raw materials. The selling price per unit could be increased to only $6.25 because of competitive pressures. Sally estimates that sales volume will increase by

30%. What effect would Sally's plan have on the profits and the break-even point in dollars of the partnership? (Round the contribution margin ratio to two decimal places.)

(c) Terry was a marketing major in college. He believes that sales volume can be increased only by intensive advertising and promotional campaigns. He therefore proposed the following plan as an alternative to Sally's: (1) Increase variable selling expenses to $0.79 per unit, (2) lower the selling price per unit by $0.30, and (3) increase fixed selling expenses by $35,000. Terry quoted an old marketing research report that said that sales volume would increase by 60% if these changes were made. What effect would Terry's plan have on the profits and the break-even point in dollars of the partnership?

(d) Which plan should be accepted? Explain your answer.

REAL-WORLD FOCUS

BYP18-3 The Coca-Cola Company hardly needs an introduction. A line taken from the cover of a recent annual report says it all: If you measured time in servings of Coca-Cola, "a billion Coca-Cola's ago was yesterday morning." On average, every U.S. citizen drinks 363 8-ounce servings of Coca-Cola products each year. Coca-Cola's primary line of business is the making and selling of syrup to bottlers. These bottlers then sell the finished bottles and cans of Coca-Cola to the consumer.

In the annual report of Coca-Cola, the information shown below was provided.

THE COCA-COLA COMPANY
Management Discussion

Our gross margin declined to 61 percent this year from 62 percent in the prior year, primarily due to costs for materials such as sweeteners and packaging.

The increases [in selling expenses] in the last two years were primarily due to higher marketing expenditures in support of our Company's volume growth.

We measure our sales volume in two ways: (1) gallon shipments of concentrates and syrups and (2) unit cases of finished product (bottles and cans of Coke sold by bottlers).

Instructions

Answer the following questions.

(a) Are sweeteners and packaging a variable cost or a fixed cost? What is the impact on the contribution margin of an increase in the per unit cost of sweeteners or packaging? What are the implications for profitability?

(b) In your opinion, are marketing expenditures a fixed cost, variable cost, or mixed cost to The Coca-Cola Company? Give justification for your answer.

(c) Which of the two measures cited for measuring volume represents the activity index as defined in this chapter? Why might Coca-Cola use two different measures?

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING ON THE WEB

BYP18-4 Ganong Bros. Ltd., located in St. Stephen, New Brunswick, is Canada's oldest independent candy company. Its products are distributed worldwide. In 1885, Ganong invented the popular "chicken bone," a cinnamon flavored, pink, hard candy jacket over a chocolate center. The home page of Ganong, listed below, includes information about the company and its products.

Address: **www.ganong.com/retail/chicken_bones.html**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Instructions

Read the description of "chicken bones" and answer the following.

(a) Describe the steps in making "chicken bones."

(b) Identify at least two variable and two fixed costs that are likely to affect the production of "chicken bones."

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP18-5 Your roommate asks your help on the following questions about CVP analysis formulas.
(a) How can the mathematical equation for break-even sales show both sales units and sales dollars?
(b) How do the formulas differ for contribution margin per unit and contribution margin ratio?
(c) How can contribution margin be used to determine break-even sales in units and in dollars?

Instructions

Write a memo to your roommate stating the relevant formulas and answering each question.

ETHICS CASE

BYP18-6 Jimmy Hester is an accountant for Advanced Company. Early this year, Jimmy made a highly favorable projection of sales and profits over the next 3 years for Advanced Company's hot-selling computer PLEX. As a result of the projections Jimmy presented to senior management, the company decided to expand production in this area. This decision led to dislocations of some plant personnel who were reassigned to one of the company's newer plants in another state. However, no one was fired, and in fact the company expanded its work force slightly.

Unfortunately, Jimmy rechecked his computations on the projections a few months later and found that he had made an error that would have reduced his projections substantially. Luckily, sales of PLEX have exceeded projections so far, and management is satisfied with its decision. Jimmy, however, is not sure what to do. Should he confess his honest mistake and jeopardize his possible promotion? He suspects that no one will catch the error because sales of PLEX have exceeded his projections, and it appears that profits will materialize close to his projections.

Instructions
(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?
(b) Identify the ethical issues involved in this situation.
(c) What are the possible alternative actions for Jimmy? What would you do in Jimmy's position?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP18-7 The purchase of a new car is one of your biggest personal expenditures. It is important that you carefully analyze your options.

Suppose that you are considering the purchase of a hybrid vehicle. Let's assume the following facts: The hybrid will initially cost an additional $3,000 above the cost of a traditional vehicle. The hybrid will get 40 miles per gallon of gas, and the traditional car will get 30 miles per gallon. Also, assume that the cost of gas is $3 per gallon.

Instructions
Using the facts above, answer the following questions.
(a) What is the variable gasoline cost of going one mile in the hybrid car? What is the variable cost of going one mile in the traditional car?
(b) Using the information in part (a), if "miles" is your unit of measure, what is the "contribution margin" of the hybrid vehicle relative to the traditional vehicle? That is, express the variable cost savings on a per-mile basis.
(c) How many miles would you have to drive in order to break even on your investment in the hybrid car?
(d) What other factors might you want to consider?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 942 Woodworker Runs an Efficient Operation for Producing Furniture **Q:** Are the costs associated with use of the computer-driven cutting machines fixed or variable? **A:** The cost of the cutting machine that is recognized through depreciation expense is a fixed cost. The costs of operating (electricity) and maintaining the machine are variable.

p. 946 Skilled Labor Is Truly Essential **Q:** Would you characterize labor costs as being a fixed cost, a variable cost, or something else in this situation? **A:** Because these labor costs are essentially unchanged for most levels of production, they are primarily fixed. However, it could be described as being a "step function." If production gets too far outside the normal range, workers' hours will change. If production goes too low, hours are cut, and if it goes too high, overtime hours are needed.

p. 952 Charter Flights Offer a Good Deal **Q:** How did FlightServe determine that it would break even with 3.3 seats full per flight? **A:** FlightServe determined its break-even point with the following formula: Fixed costs ÷ Contribution margin per seat occupied = Break-even point in seats.

p. 956 How a Rolling Stones' Tour Makes Money **Q:** What amount of sales dollars are required for the promoter to break even? **A:** Fixed costs = $1,200,000 + $400,000 = $1,600,000; contribution margin ratio = 80%; and break-even sales = $1,600,000 ÷ .80 = $2,000,000.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. d **2.** c **3.** a **4.** d **5.** a [($1,200 − $600) ÷ (10,000 − 2,000)] **6.** c **7.** c **8.** d **9.** a [(100,000 × $12) − $300,000 − $200,000] **10.** c (200,000 × $4 × 25%) **11.** c ($100 × 30%) **12.** b **13.** a **14.** b [($600,000 − $420,000) ÷ $600,000]

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 19

COST-VOLUME-PROFIT ANALYSIS: ADDITIONAL ISSUES

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives**
- Read **Feature Story**
- Scan **Preview**
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 979 p. 983 p. 987 p. 990
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit**
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives**
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 1006
- Answer **Self-Test Questions**
- Complete **Assignments**
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Describe the essential features of a cost-volume-profit income statement.
2. Apply basic CVP concepts.
3. Explain the term sales mix and its effects on break-even sales.
4. Determine sales mix when a company has limited resources.
5. Understand how operating leverage affects profitability.

the navigator

feature story

WHAT GOES UP (FAST), MUST COME DOWN (FAST)

During the late 1990s, many people marveled at the efficiency of the so-called "New Economy," which uses digital technologies to improve business processes. Some managers were actually startled by their own success. The New Economy had created a new formula for profit. For example, David Peterschmidt, chief executive at software developer Inktomi, noted that the company had incurred considerable fixed costs in developing new software, but its variable costs were minor. As a consequence, once sales had covered the fixed costs, every additional sale was basically pure profit. When sales were booming, he happily stated, "Next to the federal government, this is the only business that's allowed to print money." But that was then. When the economy lagged, the new profit formula went sour. The company's sales disappeared, but its fixed costs did not. In no time, Inktomi went from record profits to staggering losses.

Many other companies have had similar experiences. As their manufacturing plants have become more automated, their fixed costs have become increasingly high. For example, during a five-year period, the average cost of a typical Intel semiconductor plant rose from $500 million to $2 billion as its manufacturing processes became increasingly sophisticated. These high fixed costs have made Intel very dependent on producing a high volume of computer chips. It needs high volume so that it can spread its fixed costs across a lot of units, thereby reducing the fixed cost per unit. As one Intel employee put it, "You have high fixed costs, so you want to minimize those fixed costs and keep factories running 24 hours a day."

However, when management focuses too heavily on keeping volume high to reduce fixed costs per unit, it sometimes produces more inventory than the market wants. When this happens, companies have to cut prices sharply. High-tech firms, like Intel, whose products rapidly become obsolete, have occasionally been stuck with inventory that nobody wanted. Thus, while the huge outlays for new equipment have made these companies exceptionally efficient, such outlays have also increased their exposure to economic swings. In fact, because so many companies now have cost structures that rely heavily on fixed costs, many economists worry that swings in the entire economy will be more volatile than in the past.

Source: Greg Ip, "As Profits Swoon, Companies Blame a Marked Change in Cost Structure," *Wall Street Journal,* (May 16, 2001).

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 19 . . .

- **Don't Just Look—Buy Something** *(p. 982)*
- **Healthy for You, and Great for the Bottom Line** *(p. 987)*
- **Something Smells** *(p. 989)*
- **The Cost of Experience** *(p. 993)*

preview of chapter 19

As the Feature Story about Inktomi and Intel suggests, the relationship between a company's fixed and variable costs can have a huge impact on its profitability. In particular, the trend toward cost structures dominated by fixed costs has significantly increased the volatility of many companies' net income. The purpose of this chapter is to demonstrate additional uses of cost-volume-profit analysis in making sound business decisions. The content and organization of this chapter are as follows.

Cost-Volume-Profit Analysis: Additional Issues

Cost-Volume-Profit (CVP) Review	Sales Mix	Cost Structure and Operating Leverage
• Basic concepts • Basic computations • CVP and changes in the business environment	• Break-even sales in units • Break-even sales in dollars • Sales mix with limited resources	• Effect on contribution margin ratio • Effect on break-even point • Effect on margin of safety ratio • Operating leverage

the navigator

Cost-Volume-Profit (CVP) Review

As indicated in Chapter 18, cost-volume-profit (CVP) analysis is the study of the effects of changes in costs and volume on a company's profit. CVP analysis is important to profit planning. It is also a critical factor in such management decisions as determining product mix, maximizing use of production facilities, and setting selling prices.

BASIC CONCEPTS

study objective 1

Describe the essential features of a cost-volume-profit income statement.

Because CVP is so important for decision making, management often wants this information reported in a CVP income statement format for internal use. The CVP income statement classifies costs as *variable* or *fixed* and computes a contribution margin. **Contribution margin** is the amount of revenue remaining after deducting variable costs. It is often stated both as a total amount and on a per unit basis.

Illustration 19-1 presents the CVP income statement for Vargo Video (which was shown in Illustration 18-11, on page 949). Note that Vargo's sales included 1,600 camcorders at $500 per unit.

Illustration 19-1 Basic CVP income statement

VARGO VIDEO COMPANY
CVP Income Statement
For the Month Ended June 30, 2012

	Total	Per Unit
Sales (1,600 camcorders)	$ 800,000	$ 500
Variable costs	480,000	300
Contribution margin	**320,000**	**$200**
Fixed costs	200,000	
Net income	**$120,000**	

Companies often prepare detailed CVP income statements. To illustrate, we use the same base information in Illustration 19-2 as that presented in Illustration 19-1.

Illustration 19-2
Detailed CVP income statement

VARGO VIDEO COMPANY
CVP Income Statement
For the Month Ended June 30, 2012

	Total		Per Unit
Sales		$ 800,000	$500
Variable expenses			
Cost of goods sold	$400,000		
Selling expenses	60,000		
Administrative expenses	20,000		
Total variable expenses		480,000	300
Contribution margin		**320,000**	**$200**
Fixed expenses			
Cost of goods sold	120,000		
Selling expenses	40,000		
Administrative expenses	40,000		
Total fixed expenses		200,000	
Net income		**$120,000**	

Helpful Hint The appendix to this chapter provides additional discussion of income statements used for decision making.

In the applications of CVP analysis that follow, we assume that the term "cost" includes all costs and expenses related to production and sale of the product. That is, cost includes manufacturing costs plus selling and administrative expenses.

before you go on...

Do it! **CVP INCOME STATEMENT**

Garner Manufacturing Inc. sold 20,000 units and recorded sales of $800,000 for the first quarter of 2012. In making the sales, the company incurred the following costs and expenses.

	Variable	Fixed
Cost of goods sold	$250,000	$110,000
Selling expenses	100,000	25,000
Administrative expenses	82,000	73,000

(a) Prepare a CVP income statement for the quarter ended March 31, 2012.
(b) Compute the contribution margin per unit.
(c) Compute the contribution margin ratio.

Action Plan

- Use the CVP income statement format.
- Use the formula for contribution margin per unit.
- Use the formula for the contribution margin ratio.

Solution

(a)

GARNER MANUFACTURING INC.
Income Statement
For the Quarter Ended March 31, 2012

Sales (20,000 units)		$800,000
Variable expenses		
Cost of goods sold	$250,000	
Selling expenses	100,000	
Administrative expenses	82,000	
Total variable expenses		432,000
Contribution margin		368,000
Fixed expenses		
Cost of goods sold	110,000	
Selling expenses	25,000	
Administrative expenses	73,000	
Total fixed expenses		208,000
Net income		$160,000

(b) Contribution margin per unit:
$40 ($800,000 ÷ 20,000 units) − $21.60 ($432,000 ÷ 20,000 units) = $18.40 per unit.
(c) Contribution margin ratio:
$368,000 ÷ $800,000 = 46% (or $18.40 ÷ $40 = 46%).

Related exercise material: **BE19-1, BE19-2,** and **Do it! 19-1**.

the navigator

BASIC COMPUTATIONS

study objective 2
Apply basic CVP concepts.

Before we introduce additional issues of CVP analysis, let's review some of the basic concepts that you learned in Chapter 18, specifically break-even analysis, target net income, and margin of safety.

Break-even Analysis

Vargo Video's CVP income statement (Illustration 19-2) shows that total contribution margin (sales minus variable expenses) is $320,000, and the company's contribution margin per unit is $200. Recall that contribution margin can also be expressed in the form of the **contribution margin ratio** (contribution margin divided by sales), which in the case of Vargo is 40% ($200 ÷ $500).

Illustration 19-3 demonstrates how to compute Vargo's break-even point in units (using contribution margin per unit) or in dollars (using contribution margin ratio).

Illustration 19-3
Break-even point

Fixed Costs	÷	Contribution Margin per Unit	=	Break-even Point in Units
$200,000	÷	$200	=	1,000 units
Fixed Costs	**÷**	**Contribution Margin Ratio**	**=**	**Break-even Point in Dollars**
$200,000	÷	.40	=	$500,000

When a company is in its early stages of operation, its primary goal is to break even. Failure to break even will lead eventually to financial failure.

Target Net Income

Once a company achieves break-even, it then sets a sales goal that will generate a target net income. For example, assume that Vargo's management has a target net income of $250,000. Illustration 19-4 shows the required sales in units and dollars to achieve its target net income.

Illustration 19-4
Target net income

(Fixed Costs + Target Net Income)	÷	Contribution Margin per Unit	=	Required Sales in Units
($200,000 + $250,000)	÷	$200	=	2,250 units
(Fixed Costs + Target Net Income)	**÷**	**Contribution Margin Ratio**	**=**	**Required Sales in Dollars**
($200,000 + $250,000)	÷	.40	=	$1,125,000

In order to achieve net income of $250,000, Vargo has to sell 2,250 camcorders, for a total price of $1,125,000.

Margin of Safety

Another measure managers use to assess profitability is the margin of safety. The **margin of safety** tells us **how far sales can drop** before the company will be operating at a loss. Managers like to have a sense of how much cushion they have between their current situation and operating at a loss. This can be expressed in

dollars or as a ratio. In Illustration 19-2, for example, Vargo reported sales of $800,000. At that sales level, its margin of safety in dollars and as a ratio are as follows.

Illustration 19-5
Margin of safety

Actual (Expected) Sales	–	Break-even Sales	=	Margin of Safety in Dollars
$800,000	–	$500,000	=	$300,000
Margin of Safety in Dollars	**÷**	**Actual (Expected) Sales**	**=**	**Margin of Safety Ratio**
$300,000	÷	$800,000	=	37.5%

Thus, Vargo's sales could drop by $300,000, or 37.5%, before the company would operate at a loss.

CVP AND CHANGES IN THE BUSINESS ENVIRONMENT

To better understand how CVP analysis works, let's look at three independent situations that might occur at Vargo Video. Each case uses the original camcorder sales and cost data, which were:

Illustration 19-6
Original camcorder sales and cost data

Unit selling price	$500
Unit variable cost	$300
Total fixed costs	$200,000
Break-even sales	$500,000 or 1,000 units

Case I. A competitor is offering a 10% discount on the selling price of its camcorders. Management must decide whether to offer a similar discount.

Question: What effect will a 10% discount on selling price have on the break-even point for camcorders?

Answer: A 10% discount on selling price reduces the selling price per unit to $450 [$500 − ($500 × 10%)]. Variable costs per unit remain unchanged at $300. Thus, the contribution margin per unit is $150. Assuming no change in fixed costs, break-even sales are 1,333 units, computed as follows.

Illustration 19-7
Computation of break-even sales in units

Fixed Costs	÷	Contribution Margin per Unit	=	Break-even Sales
$200,000	÷	$150	=	1,333 units (rounded)

For Vargo Video, this change requires monthly sales to increase by 333 units, or 33⅓%, in order to break even. In reaching a conclusion about offering a 10% discount to customers, management must determine how likely it is to achieve the increased sales. Also, management should estimate the possible loss of sales if the competitor's discount price is not matched.

Case II. To meet the threat of foreign competition, management invests in new robotic equipment that will lower the amount of direct labor required to make camcorders. The company estimates that total fixed costs will increase 30% and that variable cost per unit will decrease 30%.

Question: What effect will the new equipment have on the sales volume required to break even?

Answer: Total fixed costs become $260,000 [$200,000 + (30% × $200,000)]. The variable cost per unit becomes $210 [$300 − (30% × $300)]. The new break-even point is approximately 897 units, computed as shown on the next page.

Illustration 19-8
Computation of break-even sales in units

Fixed Costs ÷	Contribution Margin per Unit	=	Break-even Sales
$260,000 ÷	($500 − $210)	=	897 units (rounded)

These changes appear to be advantageous for Vargo Video. The break-even point is reduced by 10%, or 100 units.

Case III. Vargo's principal supplier of raw materials has just announced a price increase. The higher cost is expected to increase the variable cost of camcorders by $25 per unit. Management decides to hold the line on the selling price of the camcorders. It plans a cost-cutting program that will save $17,500 in fixed costs per month. Vargo is currently realizing monthly net income of $80,000 on sales of 1,400 camcorders.

Question: What increase in units sold will be needed to maintain the same level of net income?

Answer: The variable cost per unit increases to $325 ($300 + $25). Fixed costs are reduced to $182,500 ($200,000 − $17,500). Because of the change in variable cost, the contribution margin per unit becomes $175 ($500 − $325). The required number of units sold to achieve the target net income is computed as follows.

Illustration 19-9
Computation of required sales

Fixed Costs + Target Net Income ÷	Contribution Margin per Unit	=	Required Sales in Units
($182,500 + $80,000) ÷	$175	=	1,500

To achieve the required sales, Vargo Video will have to sell 1,500 camcorders, an increase of 100 units. If this does not seem to be a reasonable expectation, management will either have to make further cost reductions or accept less net income if the selling price remains unchanged.

We hope that the concepts reviewed in this section are now familiar to you. We are now ready to examine additional ways that companies use CVP analysis to assess profitability and to help in making effective business decisions.

Management Insight

Don't Just Look–Buy Something

When analyzing an Internet business, analysts closely watch the so-called "conversion rate." This rate is calculated by dividing the number of people who actually take action at an Internet site (buy something) by the total number of people who visit the site. Average conversion rates are from 3% to 5%. A rate below 2% is poor, while a rate above 10% is great.

Conversion rates have an obvious effect on the break-even point. Suppose you spend $10,000 on your site, and you attract 5,000 visitors. If you get a 2% conversion rate (100 purchases), your site costs $100 per purchase ($10,000 ÷ 100). A 4% conversion rate gets you down to a cost of $50 per transaction, and an 8% conversion rate gets you down to $25. Studies show that conversion rates increase if the site has an easy-to-use interface, fast-performing screens, a convenient ordering process, and advertising that is both clever and clear.

Source: J. William Gurley, "The One Internet Metric That Really Counts" *Fortune* (March 6, 2000), p. 392.

? Besides increasing their conversion rates, what steps can online merchants use to lower their break-even points? (See page 1027.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How can a company use CVP analysis to improve profitability?	Data on what effect a price change, a fixed-cost change, or a trade-off between fixed and variable costs would have on volume and costs	Measurement of income at new volume levels	If profitability increases under proposed change, adopt change.

before you go on...

Do it! Krisanne Company reports the following operating results for the month of June.

CVP ANALYSIS

KRISANNE COMPANY
CVP Income Statement
For the Month Ended June 30, 2012

	Total	Per Unit
Sales (5,000 units)	$300,000	$60
Variable costs	180,000	36
Contribution margin	120,000	$24
Fixed expenses	100,000	
Net income	$ 20,000	

To increase net income, management is considering reducing the selling price by 10%, with no changes to unit variable costs or fixed costs. Management is confident that this change will increase unit sales by 25%.

Using the contribution margin technique, compute the break-even point in units and dollars and margin of safety in dollars, (a) assuming no changes to sales price or costs, and (b) assuming changes to sales price and volume as described above. (c) Comment on your findings.

Action Plan

- Apply the formula for the break-even point in units.
- Apply the formula for the break-even point in dollars.
- Apply the formula for the margin of safety in dollars.

Solution

(a) Assuming no changes to sales price or costs:
Break-even point in units = 4,167 units (rounded) ($100,000 ÷ $24).
Break-even point in sales dollars = $250,000 ($100,000 ÷ .40[a]).
Margin of safety in dollars = $50,000 ($300,000 − $250,000).
[a]$24 ÷ $60.

(b) Assuming changes to sales price and volume:
Break-even point in units = 5,556 units (rounded) ($100,000 ÷ $18[b]).
Break-even point in sales dollars = $300,000 ($100,000 ÷ ($18 ÷ $54)).
Margin of safety in dollars = $37,500 ($337,500[c] − $300,000).
[b]$60 − (.10 × $60) − 36 = $18.
[c]5,000 + (.25 × 5,000) = 6,250 units, 6,250 units × $54 = $337,500.

(c) The increase in the break-even point and the decrease in the margin of safety indicate that management should not implement the proposed change. The increase in sales volume will result in contribution margin of $112,500 (6,250 × $18), which is $7,500 less than the current amount.

Related exercise material: **BE19-3, BE19-4, BE19-5, BE19-6, Do it! 19-2, E19-1, E19-2, E19-3, E19-4**, and **E19-5.**

the navigator

Sales Mix

study objective 3

Explain the term sales mix and its effects on break-even sales.

To this point, our discussion of CVP analysis has assumed that a company sells only one product. However, most companies sell multiple products. When a company sells many products, it is important that management understand its sales mix.

Sales mix is the relative percentage in which a company sells its multiple products. For example, if 80% of Hewlett Packard's unit sales are printers and the other 20% are PCs, its sales mix is 80% to 20%.

Sales mix is important to managers because different products often have substantially different contribution margins. For example, Ford's SUVs and F150 pickup trucks have higher contribution margins compared to its economy cars. Similarly, first-class tickets sold by United Airlines provide substantially higher contribution margins than coach-class tickets.

BREAK-EVEN SALES IN UNITS

Companies can compute break-even sales for a mix of two or more products by determining the **weighted-average unit contribution margin of all the products**. To illustrate, assume that Vargo Video sells not only camcorders but high-definition TV sets as well. Vargo sells its two products in the following amounts: 1,500 camcorders and 500 TVs. The sales mix, expressed as a function of total units sold, is as follows.

Illustration 19-10
Sales mix as a function of units sold

Camcorders	TVs
1,500 units ÷ 2,000 units = 75%	500 units ÷ 2,000 units = 25%

That is, 75% of the units sold are camcorders, and 25% of the units sold are TVs.

Illustration 19-11 shows additional information related to Vargo Video. The unit contribution margin for camcorders is $200, and for TVs it is $500. Vargo's fixed costs total $275,000.

Illustration 19-11
Per unit data–sales mix

Unit Data	Camcorders	TVs
Selling price	$500	$1,000
Variable costs	300	500
Contribution margin	$200	$500
Sales mix—units	75%	25%
Fixed costs = $275,000		

To compute break-even for Vargo, we then determine the weighted-average unit contribution margin for the two products. We use the weighted-average contribution margin because Vargo sells three times as many camcorders as TV sets, and therefore the camcorders must be counted three times for every TV set sold. The weighted-average contribution margin for a sales mix of 75% camcorders and 25% TVs is $275, which is computed as follows.

Illustration 19-12
Weighted-average unit contribution margin

Camcorders				TVs				
(Unit Contribution Margin	×	Sales Mix Percentage)	+	(Unit Contribution Margin	×	Sales Mix Percentage)	=	Weighted-Average Unit Contribution Margin
($200	×	.75)	+	($500	×	.25)	=	$275

We then use the weighted-average unit contribution margin of $275 to compute the break-even point in unit sales. The computation of break-even sales in units for Vargo Video, assuming $275,000 of fixed costs, is as follows.

Fixed Costs	÷	Weighted-Average Unit Contribution Margin	=	Break-even Point in Units
$275,000	÷	$275	=	1,000 units

Illustration 19-13
Break-even point in units

Illustration 19-13 shows the break-even point for Vargo Video is 1,000 units (camcorders and TVs combined). These 1,000 units would be comprised of 750 camcorders (.75 × 1,000 units) and 250 TVs (.25 × 1,000). This can be verified by the computations in Illustration 19-14, which shows that the total contribution margin is $275,000 when 1,000 units are sold, which equals the fixed costs of $275,000.

Product	Unit Sales	×	Unit Contribution Margin	=	Total Contribution Margin
Camcorders	750	×	$200	=	$ 150,000
TVs	250	×	500	=	125,000
	1,000				$275,000

Illustration 19-14
Break-even proof—sales units

Management should continually review the company's sales mix. At any level of units sold, **net income will be greater if higher contribution margin units are sold, rather than lower contribution margin units**. For Vargo Video, the television sets produce the higher contribution margin. Consequently, if Vargo sells 300 TVs and 700 camcorders, net income would be higher than in the current sales mix, even though total units sold are the same.

An analysis of these relationships shows that a shift from low-margin sales to high-margin sales may increase net income, even though there is a decline in total units sold. Likewise, a shift from high- to low-margin sales may result in a decrease in net income, even though there is an increase in total units sold.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How many units of product A and product B do we need to sell to break even?	Fixed costs, weighted-average unit contribution margin, sales mix	Break-even point in units = Fixed costs / Weighted-average unit contribution margin	To determine number of units of product A and B, allocate total units based on sales mix.

BREAK-EVEN SALES IN DOLLARS

The calculation of the break-even point presented for Vargo Video in the previous section works well if a company has only a *small number* of products. In contrast, consider 3M, the maker of Post-it Notes, which has more than 30,000 products. In order to calculate the break-even point for 3M using a weighted-average unit contribution margin, we would need to calculate 30,000 different unit contribution margins. That is not realistic.

Therefore, for a company like 3M, we calculate the break-even point in terms of sales dollars (rather than units sold), using sales information for divisions or product lines (rather than individual products). This approach requires that we compute sales mix as a percentage of total dollars sales (rather than units sold) and that we compute the contribution margin ratio (rather than contribution margin per unit).

To illustrate, suppose that Kale Garden Supply Company has two divisions—Indoor Plants and Outdoor Plants. Each division has hundreds of different types of plants and plant-care products. Illustration 19-15 provides information necessary for performing cost-volume-profit analysis for the two divisions of Kale Garden Supply.

Illustration 19-15
Cost-volume-profit data for Kale Garden Supply

	Indoor Plant Division		Outdoor Plant Division		Total	
Sales	$ 200,000		$ 800,000		$1,000,000	
Variable costs	120,000		560,000		680,000	
Contribution margin	$ 80,000		$ 240,000		$ 320,000	
Sales-mix percentage (Division sales ÷ Total sales)	$ 200,000 / $1,000,000	= .20	$ 800,000 / $1,000,000	= .80		
Contribution margin ratio (Contribution margin ÷ Sales)	$ 80,000 / $ 200,000	= .40	$ 240,000 / $ 800,000	= .30	$ 320,000 / $1,000,000	= .32
Total fixed costs = $300,000						

As shown in Illustration 19-15, the contribution margin ratio for the combined company is 32%, which is computed by dividing the total contribution margin by total sales. It is useful to note that the contribution margin ratio of 32% is a weighted average of the individual contribution margin ratios of the two divisions (40% and 30%). To illustrate, in Illustration 19-16 we multiply each division's contribution margin ratio by its sale-mix percentage, based on dollar sales, and then sum these amounts. As shown later, the calculation in Illustration 19-16 is useful because it enables us to determine how the break-even point changes when the sales mix changes.

Illustration 19-16
Calculation of weighted-average contribution margin

Indoor Plant Division			Outdoor Plant Division				
(Contribution Margin Ratio	×	Sales Mix Percentage)	+	(Contribution Margin Ratio	×	Sales Mix Percentage)	= Weighted-Average Contribution Margin Ratio
(.40	×	.20)	+	(.30	×	.80)	= .32

Kale Garden Supply's break-even point in dollars is then computed by dividing fixed costs by the weighted-average contribution margin ratio of 32%, as shown in Illustration 19-17.

Illustration 19-17
Calculation of break-even point in dollars

Fixed Costs	÷	Weighted-Average Contribution Margin Ratio	=	Break-even Point in Dollars
$300,000	÷	.32	=	$937,500

The break-even point is based on the sales mix of 20% to 80%. Of the company's total break-even sales of $937,500, a total of $187,500 (.20 × $937,500) will come from the Indoor Plant Division, and $750,000 (.80 × $937,500) will come from the Outdoor Plant Division.

What would be the impact on the break-even point if a higher percentage of Kale Garden Supply's sales were to come from the Indoor Plant Division? Because the Indoor Plant Division enjoys a higher contribution margin ratio, this change in the sales mix would result in a higher weighted-average contribution margin ratio, and consequently a lower break-even point in dollars. For example, if the sales mix changes to 50% for the Indoor Plant Division and 50% for the Outdoor Plant Division, the weighted-average contribution margin ratio would be 35% [(.40 × .50) + (.30 × .50)]. The new, lower, break-even point is $857,143 ($300,000 ÷ .35). The opposite would occur if a higher percentage of sales were expected from the Outdoor Plant Division. As you can see, the information provided using CVP analysis can help managers better understand the impact of sales mix on profitability.

Service Company Insight

Healthy for You, and Great for the Bottom Line

Zoom Kitchen, a chain of four restaurants in the Chicago area, is known for serving sizable portions of meat and potatoes. But the company's management is quite pleased with the fact that during the past four years salad sales have increased from 18% of its sales mix to 40%. Why are they pleased? Because the contribution margin on salads is much higher than on meat. The restaurant made a conscious effort to encourage people to buy more salads by offering an interesting assortment of salad ingredients including jicama, beets, marinated mushrooms, grilled tuna, and carved turkey. Management has to be very sensitive to contribution margin—it costs about $600,000 to open up a new Zoom Kitchen restaurant.

Source: Amy Zuber, "Salad Sales 'Zoom' at Meat-and-Potatoes Specialist," *Nation's Restaurant News* (November 12, 2001), p. 26.

? Why do you suppose restaurants are so eager to sell beverages and desserts? (See page 1028.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How many dollars of sales are required from each division in order to break even?	Fixed costs, weighted-average contribution margin ratio, sales mix	Break-even point in dollars = Fixed costs / Weighted-average contribution margin ratio	To determine the sales dollars required from each division, allocate the total break-even sales using the sales mix.

before you go on...

SALES MIX BREAK-EVEN

Do it! Manzeck Bicycles International produces and sells three different types of mountain bikes. Information regarding the three models is shown below.

	Pro	Intermediate	Standard	Total
Units sold	5,000	10,000	25,000	40,000
Selling price	$800	$500	$350	
Variable cost	$500	$300	$250	

The company's total fixed costs to produce the bicycles are $7,500,000.

(a) Determine the sales mix as a function of units sold for the three products.
(b) Determine the weighted-average unit contribution margin.
(c) Determine the total number of units that the company must produce to break even.
(d) Determine the number of units of each model that the company must produce to break even.

Action Plan

- The sales mix is the relative percentage of each product sold in units.
- The weighted-average unit contribution margin is the sum of the per unit contribution margins multiplied by the respective sales mix percentage.
- Determine the break-even point in units by dividing the fixed costs by the weighted-average unit contribution margin.
- Determine the number of units of each model to produce by multiplying the total break-even units by the respective sales mix percentage for each product.

Solution

(a) The sales mix percentages as a function of units sold is:

Pro	Intermediate	Standard
5,000/40,000 = 12.5%	10,000/40,000 = 25%	25,000/40,000 = 62.5%

(b) The weighted-average unit contribution margin is:

$$[.125 \times (\$800 - \$500)] + [.25 \times (\$500 - \$300)] + [.625 \times (\$350 - \$250)] = \$150$$

(c) The break-even point in units is:

$$\$7{,}500{,}000 \div \$150 = 50{,}000 \text{ units}$$

(d) The break-even units to produce for each product are:

Pro:	50,000 units × 12.5% =	6,250 units
Intermediate:	50,000 units × 25% =	12,500 units
Standard:	50,000 units × 62.5% =	31,250 units
		50,000 units

Related exercise material: **BE19-7, BE19-8, BE19-9, BE19-10, Do it! 19-3, E19-6, E19-7, E19-8, E19-9,** and **E19-10**.

the navigator

DETERMINING SALES MIX WITH LIMITED RESOURCES

study objective 4

Determine sales mix when a company has limited resources.

In the previous discussion, we assumed a certain sales mix and then determined the break-even point given that sales mix. We now discuss how limited resources influence the sales-mix decision.

Everyone's resources are limited. For a company, the limited resource may be floor space in a retail department store, or raw materials, direct labor hours, or machine capacity in a manufacturing company. When a company has limited resources, management must decide which products to make and sell in order to maximize net income.

To illustrate, recall that Vargo manufactures camcorders and TVs. The limiting resource is machine capacity, which is 3,600 hours per month. Relevant data consist of the following.

Illustration 19-18
Contribution margin and machine hours

	Camcorders	TVs
Contribution margin per unit	$200	$500
Machine hours required per unit	.2	.625

Helpful Hint CM alone is not enough to make this decision. The key factor is CM per unit of limited resource.

The TV sets may appear to be more profitable since they have a higher contribution margin per unit ($500) than the camcorders ($200). However, the camcorders take fewer machine hours to produce than the TV sets. Therefore, it is necessary to find the **contribution margin per unit of limited resource**—in this case, contribution margin per machine hour. This is obtained by dividing the contribution margin per unit of each product by the number of units of the limited resource required for each product, as shown in Illustration 19-19.

	Camcorders	TVs
Contribution margin per unit (a)	$200	$500
Machine hours required (b)	0.2	0.625
Contribution margin per unit of limited resource [(a) ÷ (b)]	**$1,000**	**$800**

Illustration 19-19
Contribution margin per unit of limited resource

The computation shows that the camcorders have a higher contribution margin per unit of limited resource. This would suggest that, given sufficient demand for camcorders, Vargo should shift the sales mix to produce more camcorders or increase machine capacity.

As indicated in Illustration 19-19, the constraint for the production of the TVs is the larger number of machine hours needed to produce them. In addressing this problem, we have taken the limited number of machine hours as a given, and have attempted to maximize the contribution margin given the constraint. One question that Vargo should ask, however, is whether this constraint can be reduced or eliminated. If Vargo is able to increase machine capacity from 3,600 hours to 4,200 hours, the additional 600 hours could be used to produce either the camcorders or TVs. The total contribution margin under each alternative is found by multiplying the machine hours by the contribution margin per unit of limited resource, as shown below.

	Camcorders	TVs
Machine hours (a)	600	600
Contribution margin per unit of limited resource (b)	$ 1,000	$ 800
Contribution margin [(a) × (b)]	**$600,000**	**$480,000**

Illustration 19-20
Incremental analysis—computation of total contribution margin

From this analysis, we can see that to maximize net income, all of the increased capacity should be used to make and sell the camcorders.

Vargo's manufacturing constraint might be due to a bottleneck in production or to poorly trained machine operators. In addition to finding ways to solve those problems, the company should consider other possible solutions, such as outsourcing part of the production, acquiring additional new equipment (discussed in Chapter 23), or striving to eliminate any non–value-added activities (see Chapter 17). As discussed in Chapter 14, this approach to evaluating constraints is referred to as the theory of constraints. The **theory of constraints** is a specific approach used to identify and manage constraints in order to achieve the company's goals. According to this theory, a company must continually identify its constraints and find ways to reduce or eliminate them, where appropriate.

Management Insight

Something Smells

When fragrance sales went flat, retailers turned up the heat on fragrance manufacturers. They reduced the amount of floor space devoted to fragrances, leaving fragrance manufacturers fighting each other for the smaller space. The retailer doesn't just choose the fragrance with the highest contribution margin. Instead, it chooses the fragrance with the highest contribution margin per square foot for a given period of time. In this game, a product with a lower contribution margin, but a higher turnover, could well be the winner.

? What is the limited resource for a retailer, and what implications does this have for sales mix? (See page 1028.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How many units of product A and B should we produce in light of a limited resource?	Contribution margin per unit, limited resource required per unit	Contribution margin per unit of limited resource $= \frac{\text{Contribution margin per unit}}{\text{Limited resource per unit}}$	Any additional capacity of limited resource should be applied toward the product with higher contribution margin per unit of limited resource.

before you go on...

SALES MIX WITH LIMITED RESOURCES

Do it! Carolina Corporation manufactures and sells three different types of high-quality sealed ball bearings. The bearings vary in terms of their quality specifications—primarily with respect to their smoothness and roundness. They are referred to as Fine, Extra-Fine, and Super-Fine bearings. Machine time is limited. More machine time is required to manufacture the Extra-Fine and Super-Fine bearings. Additional information is provided below.

	Product		
	Fine	**Extra-Fine**	**Super-Fine**
Selling price	$6.00	$10.00	$16.00
Variable costs and expenses	4.00	6.50	11.00
Contribution margin	$2.00	$ 3.50	$ 5.00
Machine hours required	0.02	0.04	0.08

(a) Ignoring the machine time constraint, what strategy would appear optimal?
(b) What is the contribution margin per unit of limited resource for each type of bearing?
(c) If additional machine time could be obtained, how should the additional capacity be used?

Action Plan

- Calculate the contribution margin per unit of limited resource for each product.
- Apply the formula for the contribution margin per unit of limited resource.
- To maximize net income, shift sales mix to the product with the highest contribution margin per unit of limited resource.

Solution

(a) The Super-Fine bearings have the highest contribution margin per unit. Thus, ignoring any manufacturing constraints, it would appear that the company should shift toward production of more Super-Fine units.
(b) The contribution margin per unit of limited resource (machine hours) is calculated as:

	Fine	Extra-Fine	Super-Fine
$\frac{\text{Contribution margin per unit}}{\text{Limited resource consumed per unit}}$	$\frac{\$2}{.02} = \$100$	$\frac{\$3.5}{.04} = \$87.50$	$\frac{\$5}{.08} = \$62.50$

(c) The Fine bearings have the highest contribution margin per unit of limited resource, even though they have the lowest contribution margin per unit. Given the resource constraint, any additional capacity should be used to make Fine bearings.

Related exercise material: **BE19-11, Do it! 19-4, E19-11, E19-12,** and **E19-13**.

the navigator

Cost Structure and Operating Leverage

study objective 5
Understand how operating leverage affects profitability.

Cost structure refers to the relative proportion of fixed versus variable costs that a company incurs. Cost structure can have a significant effect on profitability. For example, computer equipment manufacturer Cisco Systems has substantially reduced its fixed costs by choosing to outsource much of its production. While this makes Cisco less susceptible to economic swings, it has also reduced its ability to experience the incredible profitability that it used to have during economic booms.

The choice of cost structure must be carefully considered. There are many ways that companies can influence their cost structure. For example, by acquiring sophisticated robotic equipment, many companies have reduced their use of manual labor. Similarly, some brokerage firms, such as E*Trade, have reduced their reliance on human brokers and have instead invested heavily in computers and online technology. In so doing, they have increased their reliance on fixed costs (through depreciation on the robotic equipment or computer equipment) and reduced their reliance on variable costs (the variable employee labor cost). Alternatively, some companies have reduced their fixed costs and increased their variable costs by outsourcing their production. Nike, for example, does very little manufacturing, but instead outsources the manufacture of nearly all of its shoes. It has consequently converted many of its fixed costs into variable costs and therefore changed its cost structure.

Consider the following example of Vargo Video and one of its competitors, New Wave Company. Both make camcorders. Vargo Video uses a traditional, labor-intensive manufacturing process. New Wave Company has invested in a completely automated system. The factory employees are involved only in setting up, adjusting, and maintaining the machinery. Illustration 19-21 shows CVP income statements for each company.

Illustration 19-21
CVP income statements for two companies

	Vargo Video	New Wave Company
Sales	$800,000	$800,000
Variable costs	480,000	160,000
Contribution margin	320,000	640,000
Fixed costs	200,000	520,000
Net income	$120,000	$120,000

Both companies have the same sales and the same net income. However, because of the differences in their cost structures, they differ greatly in the risks and rewards related to increasing or decreasing sales. Let's evaluate the impact of cost structure on the profitability of the two companies.

EFFECT ON CONTRIBUTION MARGIN RATIO

First let's look at the contribution margin ratio. Illustration 19-22 shows the computation of the contribution margin ratio for each company.

Illustration 19-22
Contribution margin ratio for two companies

	Contribution Margin	÷	Sales	=	Contribution Margin Ratio
Vargo Video	$320,000	÷	$800,000	=	.40
New Wave	$640,000	÷	$800,000	=	.80

New Wave has a contribution margin ratio of 80% versus only 40% for Vargo. That means that with every dollar of sales, New Wave generates 80 cents of contribution margin (and thus an 80 cent increase in net income), versus only 40 cents for Vargo. However, it also means that for every dollar that sales decline, New Wave loses 80 cents in net income, whereas Vargo will lose only 40 cents. New Wave's cost structure, which relies more heavily on fixed costs, makes it more sensitive to changes in sales revenue.

EFFECT ON BREAK-EVEN POINT

The difference in cost structure also affects the break-even point. The break-even point for each company is calculated in Illustration 19-23.

Illustration 19-23
Computation of break-even point for two companies

	Fixed Costs	÷	Contribution Margin Ratio	=	Break-even Point in Dollars
Vargo Video	$200,000	÷	.40	=	$500,000
New Wave	$520,000	÷	.80	=	$650,000

New Wave needs to generate $150,000 ($650,000 − $500,000) more in sales than Vargo before it breaks even. This makes New Wave riskier than Vargo because a company cannot survive for very long unless it at least breaks even.

EFFECT ON MARGIN OF SAFETY RATIO

We can also evaluate the relative impact that changes in sales would have on the two companies by computing the margin of safety ratio. Illustration 19-24 shows the computation of the **margin of safety ratio** for the two companies.

Illustration 19-24
Computation of margin of safety ratio for two companies

	(Actual Sales	−	Break-even Sales)	÷	Actual Sales	=	Margin of Safety Ratio
Vargo Video	($800,000	−	$500,000)	÷	$800,000	=	.38
New Wave	($800,000	−	$650,000)	÷	$800,000	=	.19

The difference in the margin of safety ratio also reflects the difference in risk between the two companies. Vargo could sustain a 38% decline in sales before it would be operating at a loss. New Wave could sustain only a 19% decline in sales before it would be "in the red."

OPERATING LEVERAGE

Operating leverage refers to the extent to which a company's net income reacts to a given change in sales. Companies that have higher fixed costs relative to variable costs have higher operating leverage. When a company's sales revenue is increasing, high operating leverage is a good thing because it means that profits will increase rapidly. But when sales are declining, too much operating leverage can have devastating consequences.

Degree of Operating Leverage

How can we compare operating leverage between two companies? The **degree of operating leverage** provides a measure of a company's earnings volatility and can be used to compare companies. Degree of operating leverage is computed by dividing contribution margin by net income. This formula is presented in Illustration 19-25 and applied to our two manufacturers of camcorders.

Illustration 19-25
Computation of degree of operating leverage

	Contribution Margin	÷	Net Income	=	Degree of Operating Leverage
Vargo Video	$320,000	÷	$120,000	=	2.67
New Wave	$640,000	÷	$120,000	=	5.33

New Wave's earnings would go up (or down) by about two times (5.33 ÷ 2.67 = 1.99) as much as Vargo's with an equal increase (or decrease) in sales. For example, suppose both companies experience a 10% decrease in sales. Vargo's net income will decrease by 26.7% (2.67 × 10%), while New Wave's will decrease by 53.3% (5.33 × 10%). Thus, New Wave's higher operating leverage exposes it to greater earnings volatility risk.

You should be careful not to conclude from this analysis that a cost structure that relies on higher fixed costs, and consequently has higher operating leverage, is necessarily bad. When used carefully, operating leverage can add considerably to a company's profitability. For example, computer equipment manufacturer Komag enjoyed a 66% increase in net income when its sales increased by only 8%. As one commentator noted, "Komag's fourth quarter illustrates the company's significant operating leverage; a small increase in sales leads to a big profit rise." However, as our illustration demonstrates, increased reliance on fixed costs increases a company's risk.

Service Company Insight

The Cost of Experience

Cost structures vary considerably across industries, but they also vary considerably across companies within industries. For example, the airline industry is characterized by two types of companies—low-cost, low-fare airlines such as Southwest Airlines and JetBlue Airways, and the high-cost, high-fare airline giants such as United Airlines and American Airlines. One reason that airline giants have higher costs is that they are somewhat trapped in a flight system that they invented—the hub-and-spoke approach. Under this approach, passengers are flown from their city of origination to centralized hub cities and then flown to their ultimate destination. This results in high fixed costs and high operating leverage. When air traffic was at peak volumes during the late 1990s, the large carriers enjoyed record profits. But when travel volume declined, this same cost structure resulted in massive losses and a series of bankruptcy declarations.

? As a result of being in business for a long time, the established airline giants also must pay very large retirement payments, a cost the newer airlines do not face. What impact do these payments have on the break-even equation? (See page 1028.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How sensitive is the company's net income to changes in sales?	Contribution margin and net income	Degree of operating leverage $= \frac{\text{Contribution margin}}{\text{Net income}}$	Reports the change in net income that will occur with a given change in sales. A high degree of operating leverage means that the company's net income is very sensitive to changes in sales.

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

Rexfield Corp. is contemplating a huge investment in automated mass-spectrometers for its medical laboratory testing services. Its current process relies heavily on the expertise of a high number of lab technicians. The new equipment would employ a computer expert system that integrates much of the decision process and knowledge base that is used by a skilled lab technician.

Rex Field, the company's CEO, has requested that an analysis of projected results using the old technology versus the new technology be done for the coming year. The accounting department has prepared the following CVP income statements for use in your analysis.

	Old	New
Sales revenue	$2,000,000	$2,000,000
Variable costs	1,400,000	600,000
Contribution margin	600,000	1,400,000
Fixed costs	400,000	1,200,000
Net income	$ 200,000	$ 200,000

Instructions

Use the information provided above to do the following.

(a) Compute the degree of operating leverage for the company under each scenario, and discuss your results.

(b) Compute the break-even point in dollars and margin of safety ratio for the company under each scenario, and discuss your results.

Solution

(a)

	Contribution Margin	÷	Net Income	=	Degree of Operating Leverage
Old	$600,000	÷	$200,000	=	3
New	$1,400,000	÷	$200,000	=	7

The degree of operating leverage measures the company's sensitivity to changes in sales. By switching to a cost structure dominated by fixed costs, the company would significantly increase its operating leverage. As a result, with a percentage change in sales, its percentage change in net income would be 2.33 times as much (7 ÷ 3) under the new structure as it would under the old.

(b) To compute the break-even point in sales dollars, we need first to compute the contribution margin ratio under each scenario. Under the old structure, the contribution margin ratio would be .30 ($600,000 ÷ $2,000,000), and under the new it would be .70 ($1,400,000 ÷ $2,000,000).

	Fixed Costs	÷	Contribution Margin Ratio	=	Break-even Point in Dollars
Old	$400,000	÷	.30	=	$1,333,333
New	$1,200,000	÷	.70	=	$1,714,286

Because the company's fixed costs would be substantially higher under the new cost structure, its break-even point would increase significantly, from $1,333,333 to $1,714,286. A higher break-even point is riskier because it means that the company must generate higher sales to be profitable.

The margin of safety ratio tells how far sales can fall before the company is operating at a loss.

	(Actual Sales	−	Break-even Sales)	÷	Actual Sales	=	Margin of Safety Ratio
Old	($2,000,000	−	$1,333,333)	÷	$2,000,000	=	.33
New	($2,000,000	−	$1,714,286)	÷	$2,000,000	=	.14

Under the old structure, sales could fall by 33% before the company would be operating at a loss. Under the new structure, sales could fall by only 14%.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Describe the essential features of a cost-volume-profit income statement. The CVP income statement classifies costs and expenses as variable or fixed and reports contribution margin in the body of the statement.

2 Apply basic CVP concepts. Contribution margin is the amount of revenue remaining after deducting variable costs. It can be expressed as a per unit amount or as a ratio. The break-even point in units is fixed costs divided by contribution margin per unit. The break-even point in dollars is fixed costs divided by the contribution margin ratio. These formulas can also be used to determine units or sales dollars needed to achieve target net income, simply by adding target net income to fixed costs before dividing by the contribution margin. Margin of safety indicates how much sales can decline before the company is operating at a loss. It can be expressed in dollar terms or as a percentage.

3 Explain the term sales mix and its effects on break-even sales. Sales mix is the relative proportion in which each product is sold when a company sells more than one product. For a company with a small number of products, break-even sales in units is determined by using the weighted-average unit contribution margin of all the products. If the company sells many different products, then calculating the break-even point using unit information is not practical. Instead, in a company with many products, break-even sales in dollars is calculated using the weighted-average contribution margin ratio.

4 Determine sales mix when a company has limited resources. When a company has limited resources, it is necessary to find the contribution margin per unit of limited resource. This amount is then multiplied by the units of limited resource to determine which product maximizes net income.

5 Understand how operating leverage affects profitability. Operating leverage refers to the degree to which a company's net income reacts to a change in sales. Operating leverage is determined by a company's relative use of fixed versus variable costs. Companies with high fixed costs relative to variable costs have high operating leverage. A company with high operating leverage will experience a sharp increase (decrease) in net income with a given increase (decrease) in sales. The degree of operating leverage can be measured by dividing contribution margin by net income.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How can a company use CVP analysis to improve profitability?	Data on what effect a price change, a fixed-cost change, or a trade-off between fixed and variable costs would have on volume and costs	Measurement of income at new volume levels	If profitability increases under proposed change, adopt change.
How many units of product A and product B do we need to sell to break even?	Fixed costs, weighted-average unit contribution margin, sales mix	Break-even point in units $= \frac{\text{Fixed costs}}{\text{Weighted-average unit contribution margin}}$	To determine number of units of product A and B, allocate total units based on sales mix.
How many dollars of sales are required from each division in order to break even?	Fixed costs, weighted-average contribution margin ratio, sales mix	Break-even point in dollars $= \frac{\text{Fixed costs}}{\text{Weighted-average contribution margin ratio}}$	To determine the sales dollars required from each division, allocate the total break-even sales using the sales mix.

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How many units of product A and B should we produce in light of a limited resource?	Contribution margin per unit, limited resource required per unit	Contribution margin per unit of limited resource $= \frac{\text{Contribution margin per unit}}{\text{Limited resource per unit}}$	Any additional capacity of limited resource should be applied toward the product with higher contribution margin per unit of limited resource.
How sensitive is the company's net income to changes in sales?	Contribution margin and net income	Degree of operating leverage $= \frac{\text{Contribution margin}}{\text{Net income}}$	Reports the change in net income that will occur with a given change in sales. A high degree of operating leverage means that the company's net income is very sensitive to changes in sales.

appendix 19A

Absorption Costing versus Variable Costing

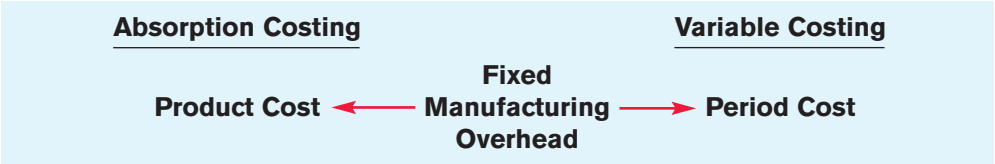
study objective 6

Explain the difference between absorption costing and variable costing.

In the earlier chapters, we classified both variable and fixed manufacturing costs as product costs. In job order costing, for example, a job is assigned the costs of direct materials, direct labor, and **both** variable and fixed manufacturing overhead. This costing approach is referred to as **full** or **absorption costing**. It is so named because all manufacturing costs are charged to, or absorbed by, the product. Absorption costing is the approach used for external reporting under generally accepted accounting principles.

An alternative approach is to use **variable costing**. Under variable costing, only direct materials, direct labor, and variable manufacturing overhead costs are considered product costs. Companies recognize fixed manufacturing overhead costs as period costs (expenses) when incurred. The difference between absorption costing and variable costing is shown graphically as follows.

Illustration 19A-1
Difference between absorption costing and variable costing



Under both absorption and variable costing, selling and administrative expenses are period costs.

Companies may not use variable costing for external financial reports because generally accepted accounting principles require that fixed manufacturing overhead be accounted for as a product cost.

EXAMPLE COMPARING ABSORPTION COSTING WITH VARIABLE COSTING

To illustrate absorption and variable costing, assume that Premium Products Corporation manufactures a polyurethane sealant, called Fix-It, for car windshields. Relevant data for Fix-It in January 2012, the first month of production, are as shown on the next page.

Selling price	$20 per unit.
Units	Produced 30,000; sold 20,000; beginning inventory zero.
Variable unit costs	Manufacturing $9 (direct materials $5, direct labor $3, and variable overhead $1).
	Selling and administrative expenses $2.
Fixed costs	Manufacturing overhead $120,000.
	Selling and administrative expenses $15,000.

Illustration 19A-2
Sealant sales and cost data for Premium Products Corporation

The per unit manufacturing cost under each costing approach is computed in Illustration 19A-3.

Type of Cost	Absorption Costing	Variable Costing
Direct materials	$ 5	$5
Direct labor	3	3
Variable manufacturing overhead	1	1
Fixed manufacturing overhead ($120,000 ÷ 30,000 units produced)	**4**	**0**
Manufacturing cost per unit	**$13**	**$9**

Illustration 19A-3
Computation of per unit manufacturing cost

The manufacturing cost per unit is $4 higher ($13 − $9) for absorption costing. This occurs because fixed manufacturing overhead costs are a product cost under absorption costing. Under variable costing, they are, instead, a period cost, and so they are expensed. Based on these data, each unit sold and each unit remaining in inventory is costed under absorption costing at $13 and under variable costing at $9.

Absorption Costing Example

Illustration 19A-4 shows the income statement for Premium Products using absorption costing. It shows that cost of goods manufactured is $390,000, computed by multiplying the 30,000 units produced times the manufacturing cost per unit of $13 (see Illustration 19A-3). Cost of goods sold is $260,000, after

PREMIUM PRODUCTS CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Month Ended January 31, 2012
Absorption Costing

Sales (20,000 units × $20)		$400,000
Cost of goods sold		
Inventory, January 1	$ –0–	
Cost of goods manufactured (30,000 units × $13)	390,000	
Cost of goods available for sale	390,000	
Inventory, January 31 (10,000 units × $13)	**130,000**	
Cost of goods sold (20,000 units × $13)		260,000
Gross profit		140,000
Variable selling and administrative expenses (20,000 × $2)	40,000	
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	15,000	55,000
Net income		**$ 85,000**

Illustration 19A-4
Absorption costing income statement

Helpful Hint The income statement format in Illustration 19A-4 is the same as that used under generally accepted accounting principles.

subtracting ending inventory of $130,000. Under absorption costing, $40,000 of the fixed overhead (10,000 units × $4) is deferred to a future period as part of the cost of ending inventory.

Variable Costing Example

As Illustration 19A-5 shows, companies use the cost-volume-profit format in preparing a variable costing income statement. The variable manufacturing cost of $270,000 is computed by multiplying the 30,000 units produced times variable manufacturing cost of $9 per unit (see Illustration 19A-3). As in absorption costing, both variable and fixed selling and administrative expenses are treated as period costs.

Illustration 19A-5
Variable costing income statement

Helpful Hint Note the difference in the computation of the ending inventory: $9 per unit here, $13 per unit in Illustration 19A-4.

PREMIUM PRODUCTS CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Month Ended January 31, 2012
Variable Costing

Sales (20,000 units × $20)		$400,000
Variable cost of goods sold		
Inventory, January 1	$ –0–	
Variable cost of goods manufactured (30,000 units × $9)	270,000	
Variable cost of goods available for sale	270,000	
Inventory, January 31 (10,000 units × $9)	**90,000**	
Variable cost of goods sold	180,000	
Variable selling and administrative expenses (20,000 units × $2)	40,000	220,000
Contribution margin		180,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead	120,000	
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	15,000	135,000
Net income		**$ 45,000**

There is one primary difference between variable and absorption costing: Under variable costing, companies charge the fixed manufacturing overhead as an expense in the current period. Fixed manufacturing overhead costs of the current period, therefore, are not deferred to future periods through the ending inventory. As a result, absorption costing will show a **higher net income number** than variable costing **whenever units produced exceed units sold**. This difference can be seen in the income statements in Illustrations 19A-4 and 19A-5. There is a $40,000 difference in the ending inventories ($130,000 under absorption costing versus $90,000 under variable costing). Under absorption costing, $40,000 of the fixed overhead costs (10,000 units × $4) has been deferred to a future period as part of inventory. In contrast, under variable costing, all fixed manufacturing costs are expensed in the current period.

As shown, when units produced exceed units sold, income under absorption costing is *higher*. When units produced are less than units sold, income under absorption costing is *lower*. When units produced and sold are the same, net income will be *equal* under the two costing approaches. In this case, there is no increase in ending inventory. So fixed overhead costs of the current period are not deferred to future periods through the ending inventory.

AN EXTENDED EXAMPLE

study objective 7

Discuss net income effects under absorption costing versus variable costing.

To further illustrate the concepts underlying absorption and variable costing, we will look at an extended example using Overbay Inc., a manufacturer of small airplane drones. We assume that production volume stays the same each year over the three-year period, but the number of units sold varies each year.

2012 Results

As indicated in Illustration 19A-6 below, the variable manufacturing cost per drone is $240,000, and the fixed manufacturing overhead cost per drone is $60,000 (assuming 10 drones). Total manufacturing cost per drone under absorption costing is therefore $300,000 ($240,000 + $60,000). Overbay also has variable selling and administrative expenses of $5,000 per drone. The fixed selling and administrative expenses are $80,000.

Illustration 19A-6
Information for Overbay Inc.

	2012	2013	2014
Volume information			
Drones in beginning inventory	0	0	2
Drones produced	10	10	10
Drones sold	10	8	12
Drones in ending inventory	0	2	0
Financial information			
Selling price per drone	$400,000		
Variable manufacturing cost per drone	$240,000		
Fixed manufacturing overhead for the year	$600,000		
Fixed manufacturing overhead per drone	$ 60,000 ($600,000 ÷ 10)		
Variable selling and administrative expenses per drone	$ 5,000		
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	$ 80,000		

An absorption costing income statement for 2012 for Overbay Inc. is shown in Illustration 19A-7.

Illustration 19A-7
Absorption costing income statement—2012

OVERBAY INC.
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012
Absorption Costing

Sales (10 drones × $400,000)		$4,000,000
Cost of goods sold (10 drones × $300,000)		3,000,000
Gross profit		1,000,000
Variable selling and administrative expenses (10 drones × $5,000)	$50,000	
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	80,000	130,000
Net income		$ 870,000

Overbay reports net income of $870,000 under absorption costing.

Under a variable costing system the income statement follows a cost-volume-profit (CVP) format. In this case, the manufacturing cost is comprised solely of

the variable manufacturing costs of $240,000 per drone. The fixed manufacturing overhead costs of $600,000 for the year are expensed in 2012. As in absorption costing, the fixed and variable selling and administrative expenses are period costs expensed in 2012. A variable costing income statement for Overbay Inc. for 2012 is shown in Illustration 19A-8.

Illustration 19A-8
Variable costing income statement–2012

OVERBAY INC. Income Statement For the Year Ended December 31, 2012 Variable Costing		
Sales (10 drones × $400,000)		$4,000,000
Variable cost of goods sold (10 drones × $240,000)	$2,400,000	
Variable selling and administrative expenses (10 drones × $5,000)	50,000	2,450,000
Contribution margin		1,550,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead	600,000	
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	80,000	680,000
Net income		$ 870,000

As shown in Illustration 19A-8, the variable costing net income of $870,000 is the same as the absorption costing net income computed in Illustration 19A-7. **When the numbers of units produced and sold are the same, net income is equal under the two costing approaches.** Because no increase in ending inventory occurs, no fixed manufacturing overhead costs incurred in 2012 are deferred to future periods using absorption costing.

2013 Results

In 2013, Overbay produced ten drones but sold only eight drones. As a result, there are two drones in ending inventory. The absorption costing income statement for 2013 is shown in Illustration 19A-9.

Illustration 19A-9
Absorption costing income statement–2013

OVERBAY INC. Income Statement For the Year Ended December 31, 2013 Absorption Costing		
Sales (8 drones × $400,000)		$3,200,000
Cost of goods sold (8 drones × $300,000)		2,400,000
Gross profit		800,000
Variable selling and administrative expenses (8 drones × $5,000)	$40,000	
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	80,000	120,000
Net income		$ 680,000

Under absorption costing, the ending inventory of two drones is $600,000 ($300,000 × 2). Each unit of ending inventory includes $60,000 of fixed manufacturing overhead. Therefore, fixed manufacturing overhead costs of $120,000 ($60,000 × 2 drones) are deferred until a future period.

The variable costing income statement for 2013 is shown in Illustration 19A-10.

Illustration 19A-10
Variable costing income statement–2013

OVERBAY INC. Income Statement For the Year Ended December 31, 2013 Variable Costing		
Sales (8 drones × $400,000)		$3,200,000
Variable cost of goods sold (8 drones × $240,000)	$1,920,000	
Variable selling and administrative expenses (8 drones × $5,000)	40,000	1,960,000
Contribution margin		1,240,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead	600,000	
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	80,000	680,000
Net income		$ 560,000

As shown, when units produced (10) exceeds units sold (8), net income under absorption costing ($680,000) is higher than net income under variable costing ($560,000). The reason: The cost of the ending inventory is higher under absorption costing than under variable costing. In 2013, under absorption costing, fixed manufacturing overhead of $120,000 is deferred and carried to future periods as part of inventory. Under variable costing, the $120,000 is expensed in the current period and, therefore the difference in the two net income numbers is $120,000 ($680,000 − $560,000).

2014 Results

In 2014, Overbay produced 10 drones and sold 12 (10 drones from the current year's production and 2 drones from the beginning inventory). As a result, there are no drones in ending inventory. The absorption costing income statement for 2014 is shown in Illustration 19A-11.

Illustration 19A-11
Absorption costing income statement–2014

OVERBAY INC. Income Statement For the Year Ended December 31, 2014 Absorption Costing		
Sales (12 drones × $400,000)		$4,800,000
Cost of goods sold (12 drones × $300,000)		3,600,000
Gross profit		1,200,000
Variable selling and administrative expenses (12 drones × $5,000)	$60,000	
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	80,000	140,000
Net income		$1,060,000

Fixed manufacturing costs of $720,000 are expensed as part of cost of goods sold in 2014. This $720,000 includes $120,000 of fixed manufacturing costs incurred during 2013 and included in beginning inventory, plus $600,000 of fixed manufacturing costs incurred during 2014. Given this result for the absorption costing statement, what would you now expect the result to be under variable costing? Let's take a look.

The variable costing income statement for 2014 is shown in Illustration 19A-12

Illustration 19A-12
Variable costing income statement—2014

OVERBAY INC. Income Statement For the Year Ended December 31, 2014 Variable Costing		
Sales (12 drones × $400,000)		$4,800,000
Variable cost of goods sold (12 drones × $240,000)	$2,880,000	
Variable selling and administrative expenses (12 drones × $5,000)	60,000	2,940,000
Contribution margin		1,860,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead	600,000	
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	80,000	680,000
Net income		$1,180,000

When Drones produced (10) are less than Drones sold (12), net income under absorption costing ($1,060,000) is less than net income under variable costing ($1,180,000). This difference of $120,000 ($1,180,000 − $1,060,000) results because $120,000 of fixed manufacturing overhead costs in beginning inventory are charged to 2014 under absorption costing. Under variable costing, there is no fixed manufacturing overhead cost in beginning inventory.

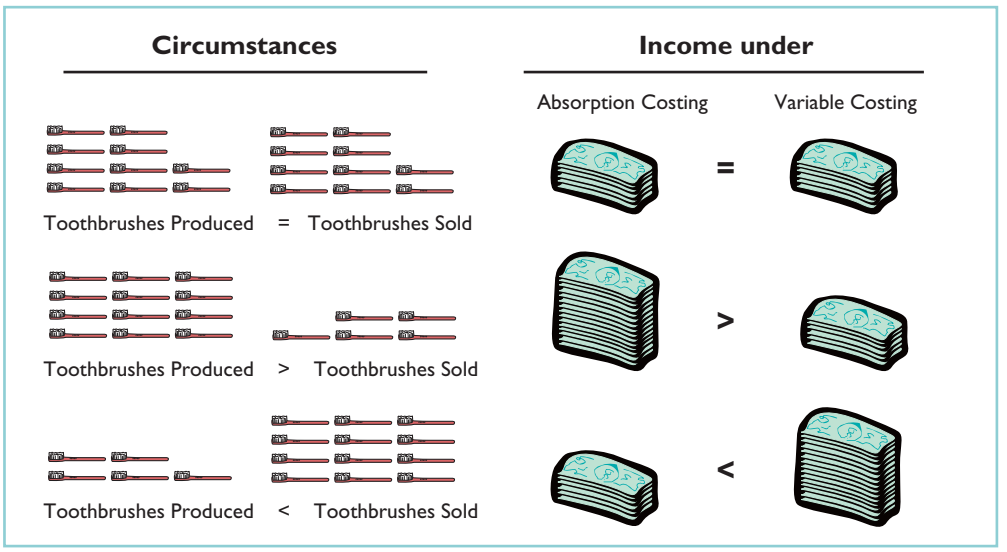
Illustration 19A-13 summarizes the results of the three years.

Illustration 19A-13
Comparison of net income under two costing approaches

	Net Income under Two Costing Approaches		
	2012 **Production = Sales**	**2013** **Production > Sales**	**2014** **Production < Sales**
Absorption costing	$870,000	$ 680,000	$1,060,000
Variable costing	870,000	560,000	1,180,000
Difference	**$ –0–**	**$120,000**	**$ (120,000)**

This relationship between production and sales and its effect on net income under the two costing approaches is shown graphically in Illustration 19A-14.

Illustration 19A-14
Summary of income effects under absorption costing and variable costing



DECISION-MAKING CONCERNS

study objective 8

Discuss the merits of absorption versus variable costing for management decision making.

Generally accepted accounting principles require that absorption costing be used for the costing of inventory for external reporting purposes. Net income measured under GAAP (absorption costing) is often used internally to evaluate performance, justify cost reductions, or evaluate new projects. Some companies, however, have recognized that net income calculated using GAAP does not highlight differences between variable and fixed costs and may lead to poor business decisions. Consequently, these companies use variable costing for internal reporting purposes. The following discussion and example highlight a significant problem related to the use of absorption costing for decision-making purposes.

When production exceeds sales, absorption costing reports a higher net income than variable costing. The reason is that some fixed manufacturing costs are not expensed in the current period, but are deferred to future periods as part of inventory. As a result, management may be tempted to overproduce in a given period in order to increase net income. Although net income will increase, this decision to overproduce may not be in the company's best interest.

Suppose, for example, a division manager's compensation is based upon the division's net income. In such a case the manager may decide to meet the net income targets by increasing production. While this overproduction may increase the manager's compensation, the buildup of inventories in the long run will lead to additional costs to the company. Variable costing avoids this situation, because net income under variable costing is unaffected by changes in production levels, as the following illustration shows.

Warren Lund, a division manager of Walker Enterprises, is under pressure to boost the performance of the Lighting Division in 2012. Unfortunately, recent profits have not met expectations. The expected sales for this year are 20,000 units. As he plans for the year, Warren has to decide whether to produce 20,000 or 30,000 units. The following facts are available for the division.

Illustration 19A-15
Facts for Lighting Division–2012

Beginning inventory	0
Expected sales in units	20,000
Selling price per unit	$15
Variable manufacturing cost per unit	$6
Fixed manufacturing overhead cost (total)	$60,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead costs per unit	
Based on 20,000 units	$3 per unit ($60,000 ÷ 20,000 units)
Based on 30,000 units	$2 per unit ($60,000 ÷ 30,000 units)
Total manufacturing cost per unit	
Based on 20,000 units	$9 per unit ($6 variable + $3 fixed)
Based on 30,000 units	$8 per unit ($6 variable + $2 fixed)
Variable selling and administrative expenses per unit	$1
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	$15,000

Illustration 19A-16 presents the division's results based upon the two possible levels of output under absorption costing.

If the Lighting Division produces 20,000 units, its net income under absorption costing is $85,000. If it produces 30,000 units, its net income is $105,000. By producing 30,000 units, the division has inventory of 10,000 units. This excess inventory causes net income to increase $20,000 because $20,000 of fixed costs (10,000 units × $2) are not charged to the current year, but are deferred to future periods.

What do you think Warren Lund might do in this situation? Given his concern about the profit numbers of the Lighting Division, he may be tempted to increase production. Although this increased production will increase 2012 net income, it may be costly to the company in the long run.

Illustration 19A-16
Absorption costing income statement–2012

LIGHTING DIVISION
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012
Absorption Costing

	20,000 Produced	30,000 Produced
Sales (20,000 units × $15)	$300,000	$ 300,000
Cost of goods sold	180,000*	160,000**
Gross profit	120,000	140,000
Variable selling and administrative expenses (20,000 units × $1)	20,000	20,000
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	15,000	15,000
Net income	$ 85,000	$105,000

*20,000 units × $9
**20,000 units × $8

Now let's evaluate the same situation under variable costing. A variable costing income statement is shown for production at both 20,000 and 30,000 units, using the information from Illustration 19A-15.

Illustration 19A-17
Variable costing income statement–2012

LIGHTING DIVISION
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012
Variable Costing

	20,000 Produced	30,000 Produced
Sales (20,000 units × $15)	$300,000	$300,000
Variable cost of goods sold (20,000 units × $6)	120,000	120,000
Variable selling and administrative expenses (20,000 units × $1)	20,000	20,000
Contribution margin	160,000	160,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead	60,000	60,000
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	15,000	15,000
Net income	$ 85,000	$ 85,000

From this example, we see that under variable costing, net income is not affected by the number of units produced. Net income is $85,000 whether the division produces 20,000 or 30,000 units. Why? Because fixed manufacturing overhead is treated as a period expense. Unlike absorption costing, no fixed manufacturing overhead is deferred through inventory buildup. Therefore, under variable costing, production does not increase income; sales do. As a result, if the company uses variable costing, managers like Warren Lund cannot affect profitability by increasing production.

POTENTIAL ADVANTAGES OF VARIABLE COSTING

Variable costing has a number of potential advantages relative to absorption costing:

1. Net income computed under variable costing is unaffected by changes in production levels. As a result, it is much easier to understand the impact of fixed and variable costs on the computation of net income when variable costing is used.
2. The use of variable costing is consistent with the cost-volume-profit material presented in Chapters 18 and 19.

3. Net income computed under variable costing is closely tied to changes in sales levels (not production levels), and therefore provides a more realistic assessment of the company's success or failure during a period.
4. The presentation of fixed and variable cost components on the face of the variable costing income statement makes it easier to identify these costs and understand their effect on the business. Under absorption costing, the allocation of fixed costs to inventory makes it difficult to evaluate the impact of fixed costs on the company's results.

Companies that use just-in-time processing techniques to minimize their inventories will not have significant differences between absorption and variable costing net income.

before you go on...

VARIABLE COSTING

Do it! Justin and Andrea Doll Company produces and sells tennis balls. The following costs are available for the year ended December 31, 2012. The company has no beginning inventory. In 2012, 8,000,000 units were produced, but only 7,500,000 units were sold. The unit selling price was $0.50 per ball. Costs and expenses were:

Variable costs per unit	
Direct materials	$0.10
Direct labor	0.05
Variable manufacturing overhead	0.08
Variable selling and administrative expenses	0.02
Annual fixed costs and expenses	
Manufacturing overhead	$500,000
Selling and administrative expenses	100,000

(a) Compute the manufacturing cost of one unit of product using variable costing.
(b) Prepare a 2012 income statement for Justin and Andrea Doll Company using variable costing.

Action Plan

- Recall that under variable costing, only variable manufacturing costs are treated as manufacturing (product) costs.
- Subtract all fixed costs, both manufacturing overhead and selling and administrative expenses, as period costs.

Solution

(a) The cost of one unit of product under variable costing would be:

Direct materials	$0.10
Direct labor	0.05
Variable manufacturing overhead	0.08
	$0.23

(b) The variable costing income statement would be as follows.

JUSTIN AND ANDREA DOLL COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012
Variable Costing

Sales (7,500,000 × $0.50)		$3,750,000
Variable cost of goods sold (7,500,000 × $0.23)	$1,725,000	
Variable selling and administrative expenses (7,500,000 × .02)	150,000	1,875,000
Contribution margin		1,875,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead	500,000	
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	100,000	600,000
Net income		$1,275,000

Related exercise material: **BE19-16, BE19-17, BE19-18, BE19-19, E19-17, E19-18,** and **E19-19.**

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives for Appendix 19A

6 Explain the difference between absorption costing and variable costing. Under absorption costing, fixed manufacturing costs are product costs. Under variable costing, fixed manufacturing costs are period costs.

7 Discuss net income effects under absorption costing versus variable costing. If production volume exceeds sales volume, net income under absorption costing will exceed net income under variable costing by the amount of fixed manufacturing costs included in ending inventory that results from units produced but not sold during the period. If production volume is less than sales volume, net income under absorption costing will be less than under variable costing by the amount of fixed manufacturing costs included in the units sold during the period that were not produced during the period.

8 Discuss the merits of absorption versus variable costing for management decision making. The use of variable costing is consistent with cost–volume–profit analysis. Net income under variable costing is unaffected by changes in production levels. Instead, it is closely tied to changes in sales. The presentation of fixed costs in the variable costing approach makes it easier to identify fixed costs and to evaluate their impact on the company's profitability.

the navigator

Glossary

Absorption costing *(p. 996)* A costing approach in which all manufacturing costs are charged to the product.

Cost structure *(p. 990)* The relative proportion of fixed versus variable costs that a company incurs.

Degree of operating leverage *(p. 992)* A measure of the extent to which a company's net income reacts to a change in sales. It is calculated by dividing contribution margin by net income.

Operating leverage *(p. 992)* The extent to which a company's net income reacts to a change in sales. Operating leverage is determined by a company's relative use of fixed versus variable costs.

Sales mix *(p. 984)* The relative percentage in which a company sells its multiple products.

Theory of constraints *(p. 989)* A specific approach used to identify and manage constraints in order to achieve the company's goals.

Variable costing *(p. 996)* A costing approach in which only variable manufacturing costs are product costs, and fixed manufacturing costs are period costs (expenses).

Comprehensive Do it!

Francis Corporation manufactures and sells three different types of water-sport wakeboards. The boards vary in terms of their quality specifications—primarily with respect to their smoothness and finish. They are referred to as Smooth, Extra-Smooth, and Super-Smooth boards. Machine time is limited. More machine time is required to manufacture the Extra-Smooth and Super-Smooth boards. Additional information is provided below.

	Product		
	Smooth	**Extra-Smooth**	**Super-Smooth**
Selling price	$60	$100	$160
Variable costs and expenses	50	75	130
Contribution margin	$10	$ 25	$ 30
Machine hours required	0.25	0.40	0.60

Total fixed costs: $234,000

Instructions

Answer each of the following questions.

(a) Ignoring the machine time constraint, what strategy would appear optimal?
(b) What is the contribution margin per unit of limited resource for each type of board?
(c) If additional machine time could be obtained, how should the additional capacity be used?

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

(a) The Super-Smooth boards have the highest contribution margin per unit. Thus, ignoring any manufacturing constraints, it would appear that the company should shift toward production of more Super-Smooth units.

(b) The contribution margin per unit of limited resource is calculated as:

	Smooth	Extra-Smooth	Super-Smooth
$\frac{\text{Contribution margin per unit}}{\text{Limited resource consumed per unit}}$	$\frac{\$10}{.25} = \$40$	$\frac{\$25}{.40} = \$62.50$	$\frac{\$30}{.60} = \$50$

(c) The Extra-Smooth boards have the highest contribution margin per unit of limited resource. Given the resource constraint, any additional capacity should be used to make Extra-Smooth boards.

Action Plan

- To determine how best to use a limited resource, calculate the contribution margin per unit of limited resource for each product type.

the navigator

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Note: All asterisked Questions, Exercises, and Problems relate to material contained in the appendix to the chapter.

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 1028.

(SO 1) **1.** Which one of the following is the format of a CVP income statement?
(a) Sales − Variable costs = Fixed costs + Net income.
(b) Sales − Fixed costs − Variable costs − Operating expenses = Net income.
(c) Sales − Cost of goods sold − Operating expenses = Net income.
(d) Sales − Variable costs − Fixed costs = Net income.

(SO 1, 2) **2.** Croc Catchers calculates its contribution margin to be less than zero. Which statement is true?
(a) Its fixed costs are less than the variable cost per unit.
(b) Its profits are greater than its total costs.
(c) The company should sell more units.
(d) Its selling price is less than its variable costs.

(SO 2) **3.** Which one of the following describes the break-even point?
(a) It is the point where total sales equals total variable plus total fixed costs.
(b) It is the point where the contribution margin equals zero.
(c) It is the point where total variable costs equal total fixed costs.
(d) It is the point where total sales equals total fixed costs.

(SO 1) **4.** The following information is available for Chap Company.

Sales	$350,000
Cost of goods sold	$120,000
Total fixed expenses	$60,000
Total variable expenses	$100,000

Which amount would you find on Chap's CVP income statement?
(a) Contribution margin of $250,000.
(b) Contribution margin of $190,000.
(c) Gross profit of $230,000.
(d) Gross profit of $190,000.

5. Gabriel Corporation has fixed costs of $180,000 and variable costs of $8.50 per unit. It has a target income of $268,000. How many units must it sell at $12 per unit to achieve its target net income? (SO 2)
(a) 51,429 units.
(b) 128,000 units.
(c) 76,571 units.
(d) 21,176 units.

6. Mackey Corporation has fixed costs of $150,000 and variable costs of $9 per unit. If sales price per unit is $12, what is break-even sales in dollars? (SO 2)
(a) $200,000.
(b) $450,000.
(c) $480,000.
(d) $600,000.

7. Sales mix is: (SO 3)
(a) important to sales managers but not to accountants.
(b) easier to analyze on absorption costing income statements.
(c) a measure of the relative percentage of a company's variable costs to its fixed costs.
(d) a measure of the relative percentage in which a company's products are sold.

8. Net income will be: (SO 3)
(a) greater if more higher-contribution margin units are sold than lower-contribution margin units.

(b) greater if more lower-contribution margin units are sold than higher-contribution margin units.
(c) equal as long as total sales remain equal, regardless of which products are sold.
(d) unaffected by changes in the mix of products sold.

(SO 4) **9.** If the contribution margin per unit is $15 and it takes 3.0 machine hours to produce the unit, the contribution margin per unit of limited resource is:
(a) $25.
(b) $5.
(c) $4.
(d) No correct answer is given.

(SO 4) **10.** MEM manufactures two products. Product X has a contribution margin of $26 and requires 4 hours of machine time. Product Y has a contribution margin of $14 and requires 2 hours of machine time. Assuming that machine time is limited to 3,000 hours, how should it allocate the machine time to maximize its income?
(a) Use 1,500 hours to produce X and 1,500 hours to produce Y.
(b) Use 2,250 hours to produce X and 750 hours to produce Y.
(c) Use 3,000 hours to produce only X.
(d) Use 3,000 hours to produce only Y.

(SO 4) **11.** When a company has a limited resource, it should apply additional capacity of that resource to providing more units of the product or service:
(a) that has the highest contribution margin.
(b) that has the highest selling price.
(c) that has the highest gross profit.
(d) that has the highest contribution margin per unit of that limited resource.

(SO 5) **12.** The degree of operating leverage:
(a) can be computed by dividing total contribution margin by net income.
(b) provides a measure of the company's earnings volatility.
(c) affects a company's break-even point.
(d) All of the above.

13. A high degree of operating leverage: (SO 5)
(a) indicates that a company has a larger percentage of variable costs relative to its fixed costs.
(b) is computed by dividing fixed costs by contribution margin.
(c) exposes a company to greater earnings volatility risk.
(d) exposes a company to less earnings volatility risk.

14. Stevens Company has a degree of operating leverage of 3.5 at a sales level of $1,200,000 and net income of $200,000. If Stevens' sales fall by 10%, Stevens can be expected to experience a: (SO 5)
(a) decrease in net income of $70,000.
(b) decrease in contribution margin of $7,000.
(c) decrease in operating leverage of 35%.
(d) decrease in net income of $175,000.

***15.** Fixed manufacturing overhead costs are recognized as: (SO 6)
(a) period costs under absorption costing.
(b) product costs under absorption costs.
(c) product costs under variable costing.
(d) part of ending inventory costs under both absorption and variable costing.

***16.** Net income computed under absorption costing will be: (SO 6)
(a) higher than net income under variable costing in all cases.
(b) equal to net income under variable costing in all cases.
(c) higher than net income under variable costing when units produced are greater than units sold.
(d) higher than net income under variable costing when units produced are less than units sold.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, for additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. What is meant by CVP analysis?

2. Provide three examples of management decisions that benefit from CVP analysis.

3. Distinguish between a traditional income statement and a CVP income statement.

4. Describe the features of a CVP income statement that make it more useful for management decision making than the traditional income statement that is prepared for external users.

5. The traditional income statement for Kent Company shows sales $900,000, cost of goods sold $500,000, and operating expenses $200,000. Assuming all costs and expenses are 70% variable and 30% fixed, prepare a CVP income statement through contribution margin.

6. If management chooses to reduce its selling price to match that of a competitor, how will the break-even point be affected?

7. What is meant by the term sales mix? How does sales mix affect the calculation of the break-even point?

8. Tobias Company sells two types of radial tires. The lower-priced model is guaranteed for only 40,000 miles; the higher-priced model is guaranteed for 100,000 miles. The unit contribution margin on the higher-priced tire is twice as high as that of the lower-priced tire. If the sales mix shifts so that the company begins to sell more units of the lower-priced tire, explain how the company's break-even point in units will change.

9. What approach should be used to calculate the break-even point of a company that has many products?
10. How is the contribution margin per unit of limited resource computed?
11. What is the theory of constraints? Provide some examples of possible constraints for a manufacturer.
12. What is meant by "cost structure?" Explain how a company's cost structure affects its break-even point.
13. What is operating leverage? How does a company increase its operating leverage?
14. How does the replacement of manual labor with automated equipment affect a company's cost structure? What implications does this have for its operating leverage and break-even point?
15. What is a measure of operating leverage, and how is it calculated?
16. Kosko Company has a degree of operating leverage of 8. Ace Company has a degree of operating leverage of 4. Interpret these measures.
*17. Distinguish between absorption costing and variable costing.
*18. (a) What is the major rationale for the use of variable costing?
(b) Discuss why variable costing may not be used for financial reporting purposes.
*19. Knott Corporation sells one product, its waterproof hiking boot. It began operations in the current year and had an ending inventory of 10,500 units. The company sold 20,000 units throughout the year. Fixed manufacturing overhead is $5 per unit, and total manufacturing cost per unit is $20 (including fixed manufacturing overhead costs). What is the difference in net income between absorption and variable costing?
*20. If production equals sales, what, if any, is the difference between net income under absorption costing versus under variable costing?
*21. If production is greater than sales, how does absorption costing net income differ from variable costing net income?
*22. In the long run, will net income be higher or lower under variable costing compared to absorption costing?

the navigator

Brief Exercises

BE19-1 Determine the missing amounts.

Determine missing amounts for contribution margin. (SO 1, 2), AN

	Unit Selling Price	Unit Variable Costs	Contribution Margin per Unit	Contribution Margin Ratio
1.	$250	$170	(a)	(b)
2.	$500	(c)	$200	(d)
3.	(e)	(f)	$300	30%

BE19-2 Hernandez Manufacturing Inc. has sales of $1,800,000 for the first quarter of 2012. In making the sales, the company incurred the following costs and expenses.

Prepare CVP income statement. (SO 1, 2), AP

	Variable	Fixed
Cost of goods sold	$760,000	$540,000
Selling expenses	95,000	60,000
Administrative expenses	79,000	66,000

Prepare a CVP income statement for the quarter ended March 31, 2012.

BE19-3 Molle Corp. had total variable costs of $170,000, total fixed costs of $120,000, and total revenues of $250,000. Compute the required sales in dollars to break even.

Compute the break-even point. (SO 1, 2), AP

BE19-4 Haag Company has a unit selling price of $400, variable costs per unit of $260, and fixed costs of $210,000. Compute the break-even point in units using (a) the mathematical equation and (b) contribution margin per unit.

Compute the break-even point. (SO 1, 2), AP

BE19-5 For Ortega Company, variable costs are 70% of sales, and fixed costs are $210,000. Management's net income goal is $60,000. Compute the required sales needed to achieve management's target net income of $60,000. (Use the mathematical equation approach.)

Compute sales for target net income. (SO 1, 2), AP

BE19-6 For Markowitz Company, actual sales are $1,200,000 and break-even sales are $900,000. Compute (a) the margin of safety in dollars and (b) the margin of safety ratio.

Compute the margin of safety and the margin of safety ratio. (SO 1, 2), AP

BE19-7 Dilts Corporation sells three different models of mosquito "zapper." Model A12 sells for $50 and has variable costs of $40. Model B22 sells for $100 and has variable costs of $70. Model C124 sells for $400 and has variable costs of $300. The sales mix of the three models is: A12, 60%; B22, 25%; and C124, 15%. What is the weighted-average unit contribution margin?

Compute weighted-average unit contribution margin based on sales mix. (SO 3), AP

Compute break-even point in units for company with multiple products.
(SO 3), AP

BE19-8 Information for Dilts Corporation is given in BE19-7. If the company has fixed costs of $199,500, how many units of each model must the company sell in order to break even?

Compute break-even point in dollars for company with multiple product lines.
(SO 3), AP

BE19-9 Briggs Candle Supply makes candles. The sales mix (as a percent of total dollar sales) of its three product lines is: birthday candles 30%, standard tapered candles 50%, and large scented candles 20%. The contribution margin ratio of each candle type is shown below.

Candle Type	Contribution Margin Ratio
Birthday	10%
Standard tapered	20%
Large scented	45%

(a) What is the weighted-average contribution margin ratio?
(b) If the company's fixed costs are $440,000 per year, what is the dollar amount of each type of candle that must be sold to break even?

Determine weighted-average contribution margin.
(SO 3), AP

BE19-10 Quality Furniture Co. consists of two divisions, Bedroom Division and Dining Room Division. The results of operations for the most recent quarter are:

	Bedroom Division	Dining Room Division	Total
Sales	$500,000	$750,000	$1,250,000
Variable costs	250,000	450,000	700,000
Contribution margin	$250,000	$300,000	$ 550,000

(a) Determine the company's sales mix.
(b) Determine the company's weighted-average contribution margin ratio.

Show allocation of limited resources.
(SO 4), AP

BE19-11 In Wesland Company, data concerning two products are: Contribution margin per unit—Product A $10, Product B $12; machine hours required for one unit—Product A requires 2 hours, Product B requires 3 hours. Compute the contribution margin per unit of limited resource for each product.

Compute degree of operating leverage.
(SO 5), AP

BE19-12 Mark's Shingle Corporation is considering the purchase of a new automated shingle-cutting machine. The new machine will reduce variable labor costs but will increase depreciation expense. Contribution margin is expected to increase from $160,000 to $240,000. Net income is expected to be the same at $40,000. Compute the degree of operating leverage before and after the purchase of the new equipment. Interpret your results.

Compute break-even point with change in operating leverage.
(SO 5), AP

BE19-13 Presented below are variable costing income statements for Mallon Company and Russell Company. They are in the same industry, with the same net incomes, but different cost structures.

	Mallon Co.	Russell Co.
Sales	$150,000	$150,000
Variable costs	60,000	15,000
Contribution margin	90,000	135,000
Fixed costs	50,000	95,000
Net income	$ 40,000	$ 40,000

Compute the break-even point in dollars for each company and comment on your findings.

Determine contribution margin from degree of operating leverage.
(SO 5), AP

BE19-14 The degree of operating leverage for Astoria Corp. and STL Co. are 1.4 and 5.6, respectively. Both have net incomes of $50,000. Determine their respective contribution margins.

Show allocation of limited resources.
(SO 4), AP

BE19-15 Fry Corporation manufactures two products with the following characteristics.

	Contribution Margin per Unit	Machine Hours Required for Production
Product 1	$42	.14 hours
Product 2	$36	.10 hours

If Fry's machine hours are limited to 2,000 per month, determine which product it should produce.

***BE19-16** Montana Company produces basketballs. It incurred the following costs during the year.

Compute product costs under variable costing.
(SO 6), **AP**

Direct materials	$14,490
Direct labor	$25,530
Fixed manufacturing overhead	$10,000
Variable manufacturing overhead	$32,420
Selling costs	$21,000

What are the total product costs for the company under variable costing?

***BE19-17** Information concerning Montana Company is provided in BE19-16. What are the total product costs for the company under absorption costing?

Compute product costs under absorption costing.
(SO 6), **AP**

***BE19-18** Gore Manufacturing incurred the following costs during the year: direct materials $20 per unit; direct labor $12 per unit; variable manufacturing overhead $15 per unit; variable selling and administrative costs $8 per unit; fixed manufacturing overhead $120,000; and fixed selling and administrative costs $10,000. Gore produced 12,000 units and sold 10,000 units. Determine the manufacturing cost per unit under (a) absorption costing and (b) variable costing.

Determine manufacturing cost per unit under absorption and variable costing.
(SO 6), **AP**

***BE19-19** Logan Company's fixed overhead costs are $3 per unit, and its variable overhead costs are $8 per unit. In the first month of operations, 50,000 units are produced, and 47,000 units are sold. Write a short memo to the chief financial officer explaining which costing approach will produce the higher income and what the difference will be.

Compute net income under absorption and variable costing.
(SO 7), **AP**

Do it! Review

Do it! 19-1 Burham Manufacturing Inc. sold 8,000 units and recorded sales of $400,000 for the first month of 2012. In making the sales, the company incurred the following costs and expenses.

Prepare CVP income statement and compute contribution margin.
(SO 1), **AP**

	Variable	Fixed
Cost of goods sold	$184,000	$70,000
Selling expenses	40,000	30,000
Administrative expenses	16,000	40,000

(a) Prepare a CVP income statement for the month ended January 31, 2012.
(b) Compute the contribution margin per unit.
(c) Compute the contribution margin ratio.

Do it! 19-2 Queensland Company reports the following operating results for the month of April.

Compute the break-even point and margin of safety under different alternatives.
(SO 2), **AP**

QUEENSLAND COMPANY
CVP Income Statement
For the Month Ended April 30, 2012

	Total	Per Unit
Sales (9,000 units)	$450,000	$50.00
Variable costs	247,500	27.50
Contribution margin	202,500	$22.50
Fixed expenses	150,000	
Net income	$ 52,500	

Management is considering the following course of action to increase net income: Reduce the selling price by 10%, with no changes to unit variable costs or fixed costs. Management is confident that this change will increase unit sales by 30%.

Using the contribution margin technique, compute the break-even point in units and dollars and margin of safety in dollars:
(a) Assuming no changes to selling price or costs.
(b) Assuming changes to sales price and volume as described above.

Comment on your findings.

Compute sales mix, weighted-average contribution margin, and break-even point.
(SO 3), AP

Do it! 19-3 Mountain Springs produces and sells water filtration systems for homeowners. Information regarding its three models is shown below.

	Basic	Basic Plus	Premium	Total
Units sold	840	350	210	1,400
Selling price	$250	$400	$800	
Variable cost	$195	$288	$416	

The company's total fixed costs to produce the filtration systems are $140,000.

(a) Determine the sales mix as a function of units sold for the three products.
(b) Determine the weighted-average unit contribution margin.
(c) Determine the total number of units that the company must produce to break even.
(d) Determine the number of units of each model that the company must produce to break even.

Determine sales mix with limited resources.
(SO 4), AP

Do it! 19-4 Spencer Corporation manufactures and sells three different types of binoculars. They are referred to as Good, Better, and Best binoculars. Grinding and polishing time is limited. More time is required to grind and polish the lenses used in the Better and Best binoculars. Additional information is provided below.

	Product		
	Good	Better	Best
Selling price	$80.00	$300.00	$900.00
Variable costs and expenses	50.00	180.00	450.00
Contribution margin	$30.00	$120.00	$450.00
Grinding and polishing time required	0.5 hrs	1.5 hrs	6 hrs

(a) Ignoring the time constraint, what strategy would appear to be optimal?
(b) What is the contribution margin per unit of limited resource for each type of binocular?
(c) If additional grinding and polishing time could be obtained, how should the additional capacity be used?

Exercises

Compute break-even point and margin of safety.
(SO 2), AP

E19-1 The Bozeman Inn is trying to determine its break-even point. The inn has 75 rooms that are rented at $50 a night. Operating costs are as follows.

Salaries	$8,500 per month
Utilities	2,000 per month
Depreciation	1,000 per month
Maintenance	500 per month
Maid service	5 per room
Other costs	33 per room

Instructions
(a) Determine the inn's break-even point in (1) number of rented rooms per month and (2) dollars.
(b) If the inn plans on renting an average of 50 rooms per day (assuming a 30-day month), what is (1) the monthly margin of safety in dollars and (2) the margin of safety ratio?

Compute contribution margin, break-even point, and margin of safety.
(SO 2), AP

E19-2 In the month of June, Kathy's Beauty Salon gave 3,500 haircuts, shampoos, and permanents at an average price of $30. During the month, fixed costs were $16,800 and variable costs were 80% of sales.

Instructions
(a) Determine the contribution margin in dollars, per unit and as a ratio.
(b) Using the contribution margin technique, compute the break-even point in dollars and in units.
(c) Compute the margin of safety in dollars and as a ratio.

Compute net income under different alternatives.
(SO 2), AP

E19-3 Dalton Company reports the following operating results for the month of August: Sales $300,000 (units 5,000); variable costs $210,000; and fixed costs $70,000.

Management is considering the following independent courses of action to increase net income.

1. Increase selling price by 10% with no change in total variable costs or sales volume.
2. Reduce variable costs to 58% of sales.
3. Reduce fixed costs by $20,000.

Instructions
Compute the net income to be earned under each alternative. Which course of action will produce the highest net income?

E19-4 Mideast Airways, Inc., a small two-plane passenger airline, has asked for your assistance in some basic analysis of its operations. Both planes seat 10 passengers each, and they fly commuters from Mideast's base airport to the major city in the state, Metropolis. Each month 40 round-trip flights are made. Shown below is a recent month's activity in the form of a cost-volume-profit income statement.

Compute break-even point and prepare CVP income statement.
(SO 2), **AP**

Fare revenues (300 fares)		$45,000
Variable costs		
Fuel	$14,000	
Snacks and drinks	800	
Landing fees	2,000	
Supplies and forms	1,200	18,000
Contribution margin		27,000
Fixed costs		
Depreciation	3,000	
Salaries	15,000	
Advertising	500	
Airport hanger fees	1,750	20,250
Net income		$ 6,750

Instructions
(a) Calculate the break-even point in (1) dollars and (2) number of fares.
(b) Without calculations, determine the contribution margin at the break-even point.
(c) If fares were decreased by 10%, an additional 100 fares could be generated. However, total variable costs would increase by 35%. Should the fare decrease be adopted?

E19-5 Vancey Company had sales in 2012 of $1,500,000 on 60,000 units. Variable costs totaled $720,000, and fixed costs totaled $400,000.

A new raw material is available that will decrease the variable costs per unit by 25% (or $3.00). However, to process the new raw material, fixed operating costs will increase by $150,000. Management feels that one-half of the decline in the variable costs per unit should be passed on to customers in the form of a sales price reduction. The marketing department expects that this sales price reduction will result in a 5% increase in the number of units sold.

Prepare a CVP income statement before and after changes in business environment.
(SO 2), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare a CVP income statement for 2012, (a) assuming the changes have not been made, and (b) assuming that changes are made as described.

E19-6 Crown Turf manufactures lawnmowers, weed-trimmers, and chainsaws. Its sales mix and contribution margin per unit are as follows.

Compute break-even point in units for a company with more than one product.
(SO 3), **AP**

	Sales Mix	Contribution Margin per Unit
Lawnmowers	30%	$30
Weed-trimmers	50%	$20
Chainsaws	20%	$40

Crown Turf has fixed costs of $4,600,000.

Instructions
Compute the number of units of each product that Crown Turf must sell in order to break even under this product mix.

Compute service line break-even point and target net income in dollars for a company with more than one service.
(SO 3), AN

E19-7 Quick Auto has over 200 auto-maintenance service outlets nationwide. It provides primarily two lines of service: oil changes and brake repair. Oil change–related services represent 65% of its sales and provide a contribution margin ratio of 20%. Brake repair represents 35% of its sales and provides a 60% contribution margin ratio. The company's fixed costs are $16,000,000 (that is, $80,000 per service outlet).

Instructions
(a) Calculate the dollar amount of each type of service that the company must provide in order to break even.
(b) The company has a desired net income of $60,000 per service outlet. What is the dollar amount of each type of service that must be provided by each service outlet to meet its target net income per outlet?

Compute break-even point in dollars for a company with more than one service.
(SO 3), AN

E19-8 Rathke Delivery is a rapidly growing delivery service. Last year, 80% of its revenue came from the delivery of mailing "pouches" and small, standardized delivery boxes (which provides a 10% contribution margin). The other 20% of its revenue came from delivering non-standardized boxes (which provides a 60% contribution margin). With the rapid growth of Internet retail sales, Rathke believes that there are great opportunities for growth in the delivery of non-standardized boxes. The company has fixed costs of $12,000,000.

Instructions
(a) What is the company's break-even point in total sales dollars? At the break-even point, how much of the company's sales are provided by each type of service?
(b) The company's management would like to hold its fixed costs constant, but shift its sales mix so that 60% of its revenue comes from the delivery of non-standardized boxes and the remainder from pouches and small boxes. If this were to occur, what would be the company's break-even sales, and what amount of sales would be provided by each service type?

Compute break-even point in units for a company with multiple products.
(SO 3), AP

E19-9 Green Golf Accessories sells golf shoes, gloves, and a laser-guided range-finder that measures distance. Shown below are unit cost and sales data.

	Pairs of Shoes	Pairs of Gloves	Range-Finder
Unit sales price	$100	$30	$250
Unit variable costs	60	10	200
Unit contribution margin	$ 40	$20	$ 50
Sales mix	40%	50%	10%

Fixed costs are $620,000.

Instructions
(a) Compute the break-even point in units for the company.
(b) Determine the number of units to be sold at the break-even point for each product line.
(c) Verify that the mix of sales units determined in (b) will generate a zero net income.

Determine break-even point in dollars for two divisions.
(SO 3), AP

E19-10 Lake Electronix sells television sets and DVD players. The business is divided into two divisions along product lines. CVP income statements for a recent quarter's activity are presented below.

	TV Division	DVD Division	Total
Sales	$600,000	$400,000	$1,000,000
Variable costs	450,000	240,000	690,000
Contribution margin	$150,000	$160,000	310,000
Fixed costs			124,000
Net income			$ 186,000

Instructions
(a) Determine sales mix percentage and contribution margin ratio for each division.
(b) Calculate the company's weighted-average contribution margin ratio.
(c) Calculate the company's break-even point in dollars.
(d) Determine the sales level in dollars for each division at the break-even point.

E19-11 Shore Company manufactures and sells three products. Relevant per unit data concerning each product are given below.

Compute contribution margin and determine the product to be manufactured.
(SO 4), AN

	Product		
	A	B	C
Selling price	$9	$ 12	$14
Variable costs and expenses	$3	$9.50	$12
Machine hours to produce	2	1	2

Instructions
(a) Compute the contribution margin per unit of the limited resource (machine hours) for each product.
(b) Assuming 1,500 additional machine hours are available, which product should be manufactured?
(c) Prepare an analysis showing the total contribution margin if the additional hours are (1) divided equally among the products, and (2) allocated entirely to the product identified in (b) above.

E19-12 Billings Inc. produces and sells three products. Unit data concerning each product is shown below.

Compute contribution margin and determine the products to be manufactured.
(SO 4), AN

	Product		
	D	E	F
Selling price	$200	$300	$250
Direct labor costs	25	75	30
Other variable costs	105	90	148

The company has 2,000 hours of labor available to build inventory in anticipation of the company's peak season. Management is trying to decide which product should be produced. The direct labor hourly rate is $10.

Instructions
(a) Determine the number of direct labor hours per unit.
(b) Determine the contribution margin per direct labor hour.
(c) Determine which product should be produced and the total contribution margin for that product.

E19-13 Feld Company manufactures and sells two products. Relevant per unit data concerning each product follow.

Compute contribution margin and determine the products to be manufactured.
(SO 4), AN

	Product	
	Basic	Deluxe
Selling price	$40	$52
Variable costs	$18	$24
Machine hours	.5	.7

Instructions
(a) Compute the contribution margin per machine hour for each product.
(b) If 1,000 additional machine hours are available, which product should Feld manufacture?
(c) Prepare an analysis showing the total contribution margin if the additional hours are:
  (1) Divided equally between the products.
  (2) Allocated entirely to the product identified in part (b).

E19-14 The CVP income statements shown below are available for Hoffman Company and Tolan Company.

Compute degree of operating leverage and evaluate impact of alternative cost structures on net income.
(SO 5), AN

	Hoffman Co.	Tolan Co.
Sales revenue	$600,000	$600,000
Variable costs	280,000	80,000
Contribution margin	320,000	520,000
Fixed costs	170,000	370,000
Net income	$150,000	$150,000

Instructions

(a) Compute the degree of operating leverage for each company and interpret your results.
(b) Assuming that sales revenue increases by 10%, prepare a variable costing income statement for each company.
(c) Discuss how the cost structure of these two companies affects their operating leverage and profitability.

Compute degree of operating leverage and evaluate impact of alternative cost structures on net income and margin of safety.
(SO 5), AN

E19-15 Imagen Arquitectonica of Tijuana, Mexico, is contemplating a major change in its cost structure. Currently, all of its drafting work is performed by skilled draftsmen. Alfredo Ayala, Imagen's owner, is considering replacing the draftsmen with a computerized drafting system. However, before making the change Alfredo would like to know the consequences of the change, since the volume of business varies significantly from year to year. Shown below are CVP income statements for each alternative.

	Manual System	Computerized System
Sales	$1,500,000	$1,500,000
Variable costs	1,200,000	600,000
Contribution margin	300,000	900,000
Fixed costs	60,000	660,000
Net income	$ 240,000	$ 240,000

Instructions

(a) Determine the degree of operating leverage for each alternative.
(b) Which alternative would produce the higher net income if sales increased by $100,000?
(c) Using the margin of safety ratio, determine which alternative could sustain the greater decline in sales before operating at a loss.

Compute degree of operating leverage and impact on net income of alternative cost structures.
(SO 5), AN

E19-16 An investment banker is analyzing two companies that specialize in the production and sale of candied apples. Old-Fashion Apples uses a labor-intensive approach, and Mech-Apple uses a mechanized system. CVP income statements for the two companies are shown below.

	Old-Fashion Apples	Mech-Apple
Sales	$400,000	$400,000
Variable costs	320,000	160,000
Contribution margin	80,000	240,000
Fixed costs	20,000	180,000
Net income	$ 60,000	$ 60,000

The investment banker is interested in acquiring one of these companies. However, she is concerned about the impact that each company's cost structure might have on its profitability.

Instructions

(a) Calculate each company's degree of operating leverage. Determine which company's cost structure makes it more sensitive to changes in sales volume.
(b) Determine the effect on each company's net income if sales decrease by 10% and if sales increase by 5%. Do not prepare income statements.
(c) Which company should the investment banker acquire? Discuss.

Compute product cost and prepare an income statement under variable and absorption costing.
(SO 6), AP

***E19-17** Polk Company builds custom fishing lures for sporting goods stores. In its first year of operations, 2012, the company incurred the following costs.

Variable Cost per Unit	
Direct materials	$7.50
Direct labor	$2.45
Variable manufacturing overhead	$5.75
Variable selling and administrative expenses	$3.90

Fixed Costs per Year	
Fixed manufacturing overhead	$234,650
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	$240,100

Polk Company sells the fishing lures for $25. During 2012, the company sold 80,000 lures and produced 95,000 lures.

Instructions

(a) Assuming the company uses variable costing, calculate Polk's manufacturing cost per unit for 2012.
(b) Prepare a variable costing income statement for 2012.
(c) Assuming the company uses absorption costing, calculate Polk's manufacturing cost per unit for 2012.
(d) Prepare an absorption costing income statement for 2012.

***E19-18** Langdon Company produced 10,000 units during the past year, but only 9,000 of the units were sold. The following additional information is also available.

Determine ending inventory under variable costing and determine whether absorption or variable costing would result in higher net income. (SO 6, 7), **AN**

Direct materials used	$90,000
Direct labor incurred	$30,000
Variable manufacturing overhead	$24,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead	$50,000
Fixed selling and administrative expenses	$70,000
Variable selling and administrative expenses	$10,000

There was no work in process inventory at the beginning of the year, nor did Langdon have any beginning finished goods inventory.

Instructions

(a) What would be Langdon Company's finished goods inventory cost on December 31 under variable costing?
(b) Which costing method, absorption or variable costing, would show a higher net income for the year? By what amount?

***E19-19** Pearson Inc. produces wooden crates used for shipping products by ocean liner. In 2012, Pearson incurred the following costs.

Compute manufacturing cost under absorption and variable costing and explain difference. (SO 6), **AN**

Wood used in crate production	$54,000
Nails (considered insignificant and a variable expense)	$ 340
Direct labor	$37,000
Utilities for the plant:	
$2,000 each month,	
plus $0.45 for each kilowatt-hour used each month	
Rent expense for the plant for the year	$21,400

Assume Pearson used an average 500 kilowatt-hours each month over the past year.

Instructions

(a) What is Pearson's total manufacturing cost if it uses a variable costing approach?
(b) What is Pearson's total manufacturing cost if it uses an absorption costing approach?
(c) What accounts for the difference in manufacturing costs between these two costing approaches?

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

P19-1A Denny Manufacturing had a bad year in 2012. For the first time in its history, it operated at a loss. The company's income statement showed the following results from selling 80,000 units of product: Net sales $1,600,000; total costs and expenses $1,740,000; and net loss $140,000. Costs and expenses consisted of the following.

Compute break-even point under alternative courses of action. (SO 1, 2), **AN**

	Total	Variable	Fixed
Cost of goods sold	$1,200,000	$780,000	$420,000
Selling expenses	420,000	75,000	345,000
Administrative expenses	120,000	45,000	75,000
	$1,740,000	$900,000	$840,000

Management is considering the following independent alternatives for 2013.

1. Increase unit selling price 25% with no change in costs and expenses.
2. Change the compensation of salespersons from fixed annual salaries totaling $200,000 to total salaries of $40,000 plus a 5% commission on net sales.
3. Purchase new high-tech factory machinery that will change the proportion between variable and fixed cost of goods sold to 50:50.

Instructions

(a) Compute the break-even point in dollars for 2012.

(b) (2) $1,754,839

(b) Compute the break-even point in dollars under each of the alternative courses of action. (Round to the nearest dollar.) Which course of action do you recommend?

Compute break-even point and margin of safety ratio, and prepare a CVP income statement before and after changes in business environment.
(SO 1, 2), **AN**

P19-2A Casper Corporation has collected the following information after its first year of sales. Net sales were $1,600,000 on 100,000 units; selling expenses $240,000 (40% variable and 60% fixed); direct materials $511,000; direct labor $285,000; administrative expenses $280,000 (20% variable and 80% fixed); manufacturing overhead $360,000 (70% variable and 30% fixed). Top management has asked you to do a CVP analysis so that it can make plans for the coming year. It has projected that unit sales will increase by 10% next year.

Instructions

(a) Compute (1) the contribution margin for the current year and the projected year, and (2) the fixed costs for the current year. (Assume that fixed costs will remain the same in the projected year.)

(b) 119,000 units

(b) Compute the break-even point in units and sales dollars for the first year.

(c) The company has a target net income of $310,000. What is the required sales in dollars for the company to meet its target?

(d) If the company meets its target net income number, by what percentage could its sales fall before it is operating at a loss? That is, what is its margin of safety ratio?

(e) (3) $1,515,152

(e) The company is considering a purchase of equipment that would reduce its direct labor costs by $104,000 and would change its manufacturing overhead costs to 30% variable and 70% fixed (assume total manufacturing overhead cost is $360,000, as above). It is also considering switching to a pure commission basis for its sales staff. This would change selling expenses to 90% variable and 10% fixed (assume total selling expense is $240,000, as above). Compute (1) the contribution margin and (2) the contribution margin ratio, and recompute (3) the break-even point in sales dollars. Comment on the effect each of management's proposed changes has on the break-even point.

Determine sales mix with limited resources.
(SO 4), **AN**

P19-3A Gardner Industries manufactures and sells three different models of wet-dry shop vacuum cleaners. Although the shop vacs vary in terms of quality and features, all are good sellers. Gardner is currently operating at full capacity with limited machine time.

Sales and production information relevant to each model follows.

	Product		
	Economy	**Standard**	**Deluxe**
Selling price	$30	$50	$100
Variable costs and expenses	$12	$18	$42
Machine hours required	.5	.8	1.6

Instructions

(a) Ignoring the machine time constraint, which single product should Gardner Industries produce?

(b) Economy $36

(b) What is the contribution margin per unit of limited resource for each product?

(c) If additional machine time could be obtained, how should the additional time be used?

Determine break-even sales under alternative sales strategies and evaluate results.
(SO 2, 3), **AN**

P19-4A The Desert Inn is a restaurant in Tucson, Arizona. It specializes in southwestern-style meals in a moderate price range. Jack Feld, the manager of Desert Inn, has determined that during the last 2 years the sales mix and contribution margin ratio of its offerings are as follows.

	Percent of Total Sales	Contribution Margin Ratio
Appetizers	10%	60%
Main entrees	60%	30%
Desserts	10%	50%
Beverages	20%	80%

Jack is considering a variety of options to try to improve the profitability of the restaurant. His goal is to generate a target net income of $150,000. The company has fixed costs of $1,200,000 per year.

Instructions

(a) Calculate the total restaurant sales and the sales of each product line that would be necessary to achieve the desired target net income. (a) Total sales $3,000,000

(b) Jack believes the restaurant could greatly improve its profitability by reducing the complexity and selling price of its entrees to increase the number of clients that it serves. It would then more heavily market its appetizers and beverages. He is proposing to reduce the contribution margin ratio on the main entrees to 10% by dropping the average selling price. He envisions an expansion of the restaurant that would increase fixed costs by 50%. At the same time, he is proposing to change the sales mix to the following. (b) Total sales $3,750,000

	Percent of Total Sales	Contribution Margin Ratio
Appetizers	20%	60%
Main entrees	30%	10%
Desserts	10%	50%
Beverages	40%	80%

Compute the total restaurant sales, and the sales of each product line that would be necessary to achieve the desired target net income.

(c) Suppose that Jack reduces the selling price on entrees and increases fixed costs as proposed in part (b), but customers are not swayed by the marketing efforts and the sales mix remains what it was in part (a). Compute the total restaurant sales and the sales of each product line that would be necessary to achieve the desired target net income. Comment on the potential risks and benefits of this strategy.

P19-5A The following CVP income statements are available for Red Company and Blue Company. *Compute degree of operating leverage and evaluate impact of operating leverage on financial results.* (SO 5), **AN**

	Red Company	Blue Company
Sales	$400,000	$400,000
Variable costs	180,000	80,000
Contribution margin	220,000	320,000
Fixed costs	170,000	270,000
Net income	$ 50,000	$ 50,000

Instructions

(a) Compute the break-even point in dollars and the margin of safety ratio for each company. (a) BE, Red $309,091 BE, Blue $337,500

(b) Compute the degree of operating leverage for each company and interpret your results. (b) DOL, Red 4.4 DOL, Blue 6.4

(c) Assuming that sales revenue increases by 20%, prepare a CVP income statement for each company.

(d) Assuming that sales revenue decreases by 20%, prepare a CVP income statement for each company.

(e) Discuss how the cost structure of these two companies affects their operating leverage and profitability.

P19-6A Long Beauty Corporation manufactures cosmetic products that are sold through a network of sales agents. The agents are paid a commission of 18% of sales. The income statement for the year ending December 31, 2012, is as follows. *Determine contribution margin, break-even point, target sales, and degree of operating leverage.* (SO 2, 5), **AN**

LONG BEAUTY CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales		$78,000,000
Cost of goods sold		
Variable	$35,100,000	
Fixed	8,610,000	43,710,000
Gross margin		$34,290,000
Selling and marketing expenses		
Commissions	$14,040,000	
Fixed costs	10,260,000	24,300,000
Operating income		$ 9,990,000

The company is considering hiring its own sales staff to replace the network of agents. It will pay its salespeople a commission of 8% and incur additional fixed costs of $7.8 million.

Instructions

(a) $51,000

(a) Under the current policy of using a network of sales agents, calculate the Long Beauty Corporation's break-even point in sales dollars for the year 2012.

(b) Calculate the company's break-even point in sales dollars for the year 2012 if it hires its own sales force to replace the network of agents.

(c) (2) 3.67

(c) Calculate the degree of operating leverage at sales of $78 million if (1) Long Beauty uses sales agents, and (2) Long Beauty employs its own sales staff. Describe the advantages and disadvantages of each alternative.

(d) Calculate the estimated sales volume in sales dollars that would generate an identical net income for the year ending December 31, 2012, regardless of whether Long Beauty Corporation employs its own sales staff and pays them an 8% commission or continues to use the independent network of agents.

(CMA-Canada adapted)

Prepare income statements under absorption costing and variable costing for a company with beginning inventory, and reconcile differences.
(SO 6, 7), **AN**

***P19-7A** Coswell Company produces plastic that is used for injection-molding applications such as gears for small motors. In 2011, the first year of operations, Coswell produced 4,000 tons of plastic and sold 3,000 tons. In 2012, the production and sales results were exactly reversed. In each year, the selling price per ton was $2,000, variable manufacturing costs were 15% of the sales price of units produced, variable selling expenses were 10% of the selling price of units sold, fixed manufacturing costs were $2,400,000, and fixed administrative expenses were $600,000.

Instructions

(a) 2012 $3,000,000

(a) Prepare income statements for each year using variable costing. (Use the format from Illustration 19A-5.)

(b) 2012 $2,400,000

(b) Prepare income statements for each year using absorption costing. (Use the format from Illustration 19A-4.)

(c) Reconcile the differences each year in net income under the two costing approaches.

(d) Comment on the effects of production and sales on net income under the two costing approaches.

Prepare absorption and variable costing income statements and reconcile differences between absorption and variable costing income statements when sales level and production level change. Discuss relative usefulness of absorption costing versus variable costing.
(SO 6, 7, 8), **AN**

***P19-8A** Tanck Electric Motors is a division of Tanck Electric Products Corporation. The division manufactures and sells an electric motor used in a wide variety of applications. During the coming year it expects to sell 50,000 units for $30 per unit. Kerry Starr is the division manager. She is considering producing either 50,000 or 80,000 units during the period. Other information is presented in the schedule.

Division Information for 2012

Beginning inventory	0
Expected sales in units	50,000
Selling price per unit	$30
Variable manufacturing costs per unit	$12
Fixed manufacturing overhead costs (total)	$400,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead costs per unit:	
Based on 50,000 units	$8 per unit ($400,000 ÷ 50,000)
Based on 80,000 units	$5 per unit ($400,000 ÷ 80,000)
Manufacturing cost per unit:	
Based on 50,000 units	$20 per unit ($12 variable + $8 fixed)
Based on 80,000 units	$17 per unit ($12 variable + $5 fixed)
Variable selling and administrative expenses	$2
Fixed selling and administrative expenses (total)	$40,000

Instructions

(a) 80,000 units: NI $510,000

(a) Prepare an absorption costing income statement, with one column showing the results if 50,000 units are produced and one column showing the results if 80,000 units are produced.

(b) 80,000 units: NI $360,000

(b) Prepare a variable costing income statement, with one column showing the results if 50,000 units are produced and one column showing the results if 80,000 units are produced.

(c) Reconcile the difference in net incomes under the two approaches and explain what accounts for this difference.

(d) Discuss the relative usefulness of the variable costing income statements versus the absorption costing income statements for decision making and for evaluating the manager's performance.

Problems: Set B

P19-1B Keppel Manufacturing had a bad year in 2012, operating at a loss for the first time in its history. The company's income statement showed the following results from selling 200,000 units of product: net sales $2,000,000; total costs and expenses $2,120,000; and net loss $120,000. Costs and expenses consisted of the following.

Compute break-even point under alternative courses of action.
(SO 1, 2), **AN**

	Total	Variable	Fixed
Cost of goods sold	$1,295,000	$ 975,000	$320,000
Selling expenses	575,000	325,000	250,000
Administrative expenses	250,000	100,000	150,000
	$2,120,000	$1,400,000	$720,000

Management is considering the following independent alternatives for 2013.

1. Increase unit selling price 30% with no change in costs and expenses.
2. Change the compensation of salespersons from fixed annual salaries totaling $170,000 to total salaries of $50,000 plus a 6% commission on net sales.
3. Purchase new high-tech factory machinery that will change the proportion between variable and fixed cost of goods sold to 40:60.

Instructions

(a) Compute the break-even point in dollars for 2012.

(b) Compute the break-even point in dollars under each of the alternative courses of action. Which course of action do you recommend? (Round to the nearest dollar.)

(b) (2) $2,500,000

P19-2B McCune Corporation has collected the following information after its first year of sales. Net sales were $1,000,000 on 50,000 units; selling expenses $200,000 (30% variable and 70% fixed); direct materials $300,000; direct labor $170,000; administrative expenses $250,000 (30% variable and 70% fixed); manufacturing overhead $240,000 (20% variable and 80% fixed). Top management has asked you to do a CVP analysis so that it can make plans for the coming year. It has projected that unit sales will increase by 20% next year.

Compute break-even point and margin of safety ratio, and prepare a CVP income statement before and after changes in business environment.
(SO 1, 2), **AN**

Instructions

(a) Compute (1) the contribution margin for the current year and the projected year, and (2) the fixed costs for the current year. (Assume that fixed costs will remain the same in the projected year.)

(b) Compute the break-even point in units and sales dollars for the current year.

(b) 73,055 units

(c) The company has a target net income of $187,000. What is the required sales in dollars for the company to meet its target?

(d) If the company meets its target net income number, by what percentage could its sales fall before it is operating at a loss? That is, what is its margin of safety ratio?

(e) The company is considering a purchase of equipment that would reduce its direct labor costs by $70,000 and would change its manufacturing overhead costs to 10% variable and 90% fixed (assume total manufacturing overhead cost is $240,000, as above). It is also considering switching to a pure commission basis for its sales staff. This would change selling expenses to 80% variable and 20% fixed (assume total selling expense is $200,000, as above). Compute (1) the contribution margin and (2) the contribution margin ratio, and (3) recompute the break-even point in sales dollars. Comment on the effect each of management's proposed changes has on the break-even point.

(e) (3) $1,263,930

P19-3B Lorge Corporation manufactures and sells three different models of exterior doors. Although the doors vary in terms of quality and features, all are good sellers. Lorge is currently operating at full capacity with limited machine time.

Determine sales mix with limited resources.
(SO 4), **AN**

Sales and production information relevant to each model is shown on the next page.

	Product		
	Economy	**Standard**	**Deluxe**
Selling price	$270	$450	$650
Variable costs and expenses	$150	$261	$425
Machine hours required	.6	.9	1.2

Instructions

(a) Ignoring the machine time constraint, which single product should Lorge produce?

(b) Economy $200

(b) What is the contribution margin per unit of limited resource for each product?

(c) If additional machine time could be obtained, how should the additional time be used?

Determine break-even sales under alternative sales strategies and evaluate results.

(SO 4), **AN**

P19-4B The Cubbie Inn is a restaurant in DeKalb, Illinois. It specializes in deluxe sandwiches in a moderate price range. Bill Michael, the manager of Cubbie Inn, has determined that during the last 2 years the sales mix and contribution margin ratio of its offerings are as follows.

	Percent of Total Sales	Contribution Margin Ratio
Appetizers	15%	60%
Main entrees	60%	25%
Desserts	10%	60%
Beverages	15%	80%

Bill is considering a variety of options to try to improve the profitability of the restaurant. His goal is to generate a target net income of $120,000. The company has fixed costs of $300,000 per year.

Instructions

(a) Total sales, $1,000,000

(a) Calculate the total restaurant sales and the sales of each product line that would be necessary to achieve the desired target net income.

(b) Total sales, $1,200,000

(b) Bill believes the restaurant could greatly improve its profitability by reducing the complexity and selling price of its entrees to increase the number of clients that it serves. It would then more heavily market its appetizers and beverages. He is proposing to reduce the contribution margin ratio on the main entrees to 10% by dropping the average selling price. He envisions an expansion of the restaurant that would increase fixed costs by 40%. At the same time, he is proposing to change the sales mix to the following.

	Percent of Total Sales	Contribution Margin Ratio
Appetizers	25%	60%
Main entrees	40%	10%
Desserts	10%	60%
Beverages	25%	80%

Compute the total restaurant sales, and the sales of each product line that would be necessary to achieve the desired target net income.

(c) Total sales, $1,636,364

(c) Suppose that Bill reduces the selling price on entrees and increases fixed costs as proposed in part (b), but customers are not swayed by the marketing efforts and the sales mix remains what it was in part (a). Compute the total restaurant sales and the sales of each product line that would be necessary to achieve the desired target net income. Comment on the potential risks and benefits of this strategy.

Compute degree of operating leverage and evaluate impact of operating leverage on financial results.

(SO 4, 5), **AN**

P19-5B The following variable costing income statements are available for American Company and National Company.

	American Company	National Company
Sales	$1,000,000	$1,000,000
Variable costs	500,000	150,000
Contribution margin	500,000	850,000
Fixed costs	300,000	650,000
Net income	$ 200,000	$ 200,000

Instructions

(a) BE American $600,000
BE National $764,706

(a) Compute the break-even point in dollars and the margin of safety ratio for each company.

(b) Compute the degree of operating leverage for each company and interpret your results.
(c) Assuming that sales revenue increases by 30%, prepare a variable costing income statement for each company.
(d) Assuming that sales revenue decreases by 30%, prepare a variable costing income statement for each company.
(e) Discuss how the cost structure of these two companies affects their operating leverage and profitability.

(b) DOL, American 2.50
DOL, National 4.25

P19-6B Huber Beauty Corporation manufactures cosmetic products that are sold through a network of sales agents. The agents are paid a commission of 15% of sales. The income statement for the year ending December 31, 2012, is as follows.

Determine contribution margin, break-even point, target sales, and degree of operating leverage.
(SO 2, 5), **AN**

HUBER BEAUTY CORPORATION
Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales		$117,000,000
Cost of goods sold		
Variable	$52,650,000	
Fixed	12,915,000	65,565,000
Gross margin		51,435,000
Selling and marketing expenses		
Commissions	$17,550,000	
Fixed costs	12,825,000	30,375,000
Operating income		$ 21,060,000

The company is considering hiring its own sales staff to replace the network of agents. It will pay its salespeople a commission of 10% and incur additional fixed costs of $11.7 million.

Instructions
(a) Under the current policy of using a network of sales agents, calculate the Huber Beauty Corporation's break-even point in sales dollars for the year 2012.
(b) Calculate the company's break-even point in sales dollars for the year 2012 if it hires its own sales force to replace the network of agents.
(c) Calculate the degree of operating leverage at sales of $78 million if (1) Huber Beauty uses sales agents, and (2) Huber Beauty employs its own sales staff. Describe the advantages and disadvantages of each alternative.
(d) Calculate the estimated sales volume in sales dollars that would generate an identical net income for the year ending December 31, 2012, regardless of whether Huber Beauty Corporation employs its own sales staff and pays them a 10% commission as well as incurring additional fixed costs of $11.7 million, or continues to use the independent network of agents.

(a) $64,350
(c) (2) 3.46

(CMA Canada-adapted)

***P19-7B** WKU produces fabrics that are used for clothing and other applications. In 2012, the first year of operations, WKU produced 500,000 yards of fabric and sold 400,000 yards. In 2013, the production and sales results were exactly reversed. In each year, selling price per yard was $2, variable manufacturing costs were 25% of the sales price of units produced, variable selling expenses were 10% of the selling price of units sold, fixed manufacturing costs were $300,000, and fixed administrative expenses were $100,000.

Prepare income statements under absorption costing and variable costing for a company with beginning inventory, and reconcile differences.
(SO 6, 7, 8), **AN**

Instructions
(a) Prepare income statements for each year using variable costing. (Use the format from Illustration 19A-10.)
(b) Prepare income statements for each year using absorption costing. (Use the format from Illustration 19A-11.)
(c) Reconcile the differences each year in income from operations under the two costing approaches.
(d) Comment on the effects of production and sales on net income under the two costing approaches.

(a) 2012 Net income $120,000
(b) 2012 Net income $180,000

P19-8B Electricswitch is a division of Harclerode Products Corporation. The division manufactures and sells an electric switch used in a wide variety of applications. During the coming year it expects to sell 200,000 units for $8 per unit. Mike Short is the division

Prepare absorption and variable costing income statements and reconcile differences between absorption and variable costing income statements when sales level and production level change. Discuss relative usefulness of absorption costing versus variable costing.
(SO 6, 7, 8), **AN**

manager. He is considering producing either 200,000 or 250,000 units during the period. Other information is presented in the schedule.

Division Information for 2012

Beginning inventory	0
Expected sales in units	200,000
Selling price per unit	$8
Variable manufacturing cost per unit	$3
Fixed manufacturing overhead cost (total)	$480,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead costs per unit:	
Based on 200,000 units	$2.40 per unit ($480,000 ÷ 200,000)
Based on 250,000 units	$1.92 per unit ($480,000 ÷ 250,000)
Manufacturing cost per unit:	
Based on 200,000 units	$5.40 per unit ($3 variable + $2.40 fixed)
Based on 250,000 units	$4.92 per unit ($3 variable + $1.92 fixed)
Variable selling and administrative expense	$0.50
Fixed selling and administrative expense (total)	$12,000

Instructions

(a) 250,000 produced NI, $504,000

(b) 250,000 produced NI, $408,000

(a) Prepare an absorption costing income statement, with one column showing the results if 200,000 units are produced and one column showing the results if 250,000 units are produced.

(b) Prepare a variable costing income statement, with one column showing the results if 200,000 units are produced and one column showing the results if 250,000 units are produced.

(c) Reconcile the difference in net incomes under the two approaches and explain what accounts for this difference.

(d) Discuss the relative usefulness of the variable costing income statements versus the absorption costing income statements for decision making and for evaluating the manager's performance.

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Waterways Continuing Problem

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Waterways Problem from Chapters 14 through 18.)

WCP19 This problem asks you to perform break-even analysis based on Waterways' sales mix and to make sales mix decisions related to Waterways' use of its productive facilities. An optional extension of the problem (related to the chapter appendix) also asks you to prepare a variable costing income statement and an absorption costing income statement.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to find the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP19-1 ComfortCraft manufactures swivel seats for customized vans. It currently manufactures 10,000 seats per year, which it sells for $480 per seat. It incurs variable costs of $180 per seat and fixed costs of $2,200,000. It is considering automating the upholstery process, which is now largely manual. It estimates that if it does so, its fixed costs will be $3,200,000, and its variable costs will decline to $80 per seat.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following questions.

(a) Prepare a CVP income statement based on current activity.
(b) Compute contribution margin ratio, break-even point in dollars, margin of safety ratio, and degree of operating leverage based on current activity.
(c) Prepare a CVP income statement assuming that the company invests in the automated upholstery system.
(d) Compute contribution margin ratio, break-even point in dollars, margin of safety ratio, and degree of operating leverage assuming the new upholstery system is implemented.
(e) Discuss the implications of adopting the new system.

MANAGERIAL ANALYSIS

BYP19-2 For nearly 20 years, Grenke Coatings has provided painting and galvanizing services for manufacturers in its region. Manufacturers of various metal products have relied on the quality and quick turnaround time provided by Grenke Coatings and its 20 skilled employees. During the last year, as a result of a sharp upturn in the economy, the company's sales have increased by 30% relative to the previous year. The company has not been able to increase its capacity fast enough, so Grenke Coatings has had to turn work away because it cannot keep up with customer requests.

Top management is considering the purchase of a sophisticated robotic painting booth. The booth would represent a considerable move in the direction of automation versus manual labor. If Grenke Coatings purchases the booth, it would most likely lay off 15 of its skilled painters. To analyze the decision, the company compiled production information from the most recent year and then prepared a parallel compilation assuming that the company would purchase the new equipment and lay off the workers. Those data are shown below. As you can see, the company projects that during the last year it would have been far more profitable if it had used the automated approach.

	Current Approach	Automated Approach
Sales	$2,000,000	$2,000,000
Variable costs	1,200,000	400,000
Contribution margin	800,000	1,600,000
Fixed costs	200,000	600,000
Net income	$ 600,000	$1,000,000

Instructions

(a) Compute and interpret the contribution margin ratio under each approach.
(b) Compute the break-even point in sales dollars under each approach. Discuss the implications of your findings.
(c) Using the current level of sales, compute the margin of safety ratio under each approach and interpret your findings.
(d) Determine the degree of operating leverage for each approach at current sales levels. How much would the company's net income decline under each approach with a 10% decline in sales?
(e) At what level of sales would the company's net income be the same under either approach?
(f) Discuss the issues that the company must consider in making this decision.

REAL-WORLD FOCUS

BYP19-3 In a recent report, the Del Monte Foods Company reported three separate operating segments: consumer products (which includes a variety of canned foods including tuna, fruit, and vegetables); pet products (which includes pet food and snacks and veterinary products); and soup and infant-feeding products (which includes soup, broth, and infant feeding and pureed products).

In its annual report, Del Monte uses absorption costing. As a result, information regarding the relative composition of its fixed and variable costs is not available. We have assumed that $860.3 million of its total operating expenses of $1,920.3 million are fixed and have allocated the remaining variable costs across the three divisions. Sales data, along with assumed expense data, are provided on the next page.

	(in millions)	
	Sales	**Variable Costs**
Consumer products	$1,031.8	$ 610
Pet products	837.3	350
Soup and infant-feeding products	302.0	100
	$2,171.1	$1,060

Instructions

(a) Compute each segment's contribution margin ratio and the sales mix.
(b) Using the information computed in part (a), compute the company's break-even point in dollars, and then determine the amount of sales that would be generated by each division at the break-even point.

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING ON THE WEB

BYP19-4 The external financial statements published by publicly traded companies are based on absorption cost accounting. As a consequence, it is very difficult to gain an understanding of the relative composition of the companies' fixed and variable costs. It is possible, however, to learn about a company's sales mix and the relative profitability of its various divisions. This exercise looks at the financial statements of FedEx Corporation.

Address: **www.fedex.com/us/investorrelations,** or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Go to the site above.
2. Under "Financial Documents," choose "Annual Reports."
3. Choose "2008 Annual Report."

Instructions

(a) Read page 25 of the report under the heading "Description of Business." What are the three primary product lines of the company? What does the company identify as the key factors affecting operating results?
(b) Page 36 of the report lists the operating expenses of FedEx Ground. Assuming that rentals, depreciation, and "other" are all fixed costs, prepare a variable costing income statement for 2008, and compute the division's contribution margin ratio and the break-even point in dollars.
(c) Page 73, Note 13 ("Business segment information") provides additional information regarding the relative profitability of the three business segments.
  (i) Calculate the sales mix for 2006 and 2008. (*Note:* Exclude "other" when you calculate total revenue.)
  (ii) The company does not provide the contribution margin for each division, but it does provide "operating margin" (operating income divided by revenues) on pages 34, 36, and 37. List these for each division for 2006 and 2008.
  (iii) Assuming that the "operating margin" (operating income divided by revenues) moves in parallel with each division's contribution margin, how has the shift in sales mix affected the company's profitability from 2006 to 2008?

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP19-5 Mortonson Corporation makes two different boat anchors—a traditional fishing anchor and a high-end yacht anchor—using the same production machinery. The contribution margin of the yacht anchor is three times as high as that of the other product. The company is currently operating at full capacity and has been doing so for nearly two years. Steve Gantner, the company's CEO, wants to cut back on production of the fishing anchor so that the company can make more yacht anchors. He says that this is a "no-brainer" because the contribution margin of the yacht anchor is so much higher.

Instructions

Write a short memo to Steve Gantner describing the analysis that the company should do before it makes this decision and any other considerations that would affect the decision.

ETHICS CASE

***BYP19-6** Jerry Cooper was hired during January 2012 to manage the home products division of Advanced Techno. As part of his employment contract, he was told that he would get $5,000

of additional bonus for every 1% increase that the division's profits exceeded those of the previous year.

Soon after coming on board, Jerry met with his plant managers and explained that he wanted the plants to be run at full capacity. Previously, the plant had employed just-in-time inventory practices and had consequently produced units only as they were needed. Jerry stated that under previous management the company had missed out on too many sales opportunities because it didn't have enough inventory on hand. Because previous management had employed just-in-time inventory practices, when Jerry came on board there was virtually no beginning inventory. The selling price and variable cost per unit remained the same from 2011 to 2012. Additional information is provided below.

	2011	2012
Net income	$ 400,000	$ 600,000
Units produced	20,000	25,000
Units sold	20,000	20,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead costs	$1,000,000	$1,000,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead costs per unit	$ 50	$ 40

Instructions

(a) Calculate Jerry's bonus based upon the net income shown above.
(b) Recompute the 2011 and 2012 results using variable costing.
(c) Recompute Jerry's 2012 bonus under variable costing.
(d) Were Jerry's actions unethical? Do you think any actions need to be taken by the company?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP19-7 Many of you will some day own your own business. One rapidly growing opportunity is no-frills workout centers. Such centers attract customers who want to take advantage of state-of-the-art fitness equipment but do not need the other amenities of full-service health clubs. One way to own your own fitness business is to buy a franchise. Snap Fitness is a Minnesota-based business that offers franchise opportunities. For a very low monthly fee ($26, without an annual contract) customers can access a Snap Fitness center 24 hours a day.

The Snap Fitness website (*www.snapfitness.com*) indicates that start-up costs range from $60,000 to $184,000. This initial investment covers the following pre-opening costs: franchise fee, grand opening marketing, leasehold improvements, utility/rent deposits, and training.

Instructions

(a) Suppose that Snap Fitness estimates that each location incurs $4,000 per month in fixed operating expenses plus $2,000 to lease equipment. A recent newspaper article describing no-frills fitness centers indicated that a Snap Fitness site might require only 300 members to break even. Using the information provided above, and your knowledge of CVP analysis, estimate the amount of variable costs. (When performing your analysis, assume that the only fixed costs are the estimated monthly operating expenses and the equipment lease.)
(b) Using the information from part (a), what would monthly sales in members and dollars have to be to achieve a target net income of $10,000 for the month?
(c) Provide five examples of variable costs for a fitness center.
(d) Go to a fitness-business website such as Curves, Snap Fitness, or Anytime Fitness and find information about purchasing a franchise. Summarize the franchise information needed to decide whether entering into a franchise agreement would be a good idea.

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 982 Don't Just Look–Buy Something **Q:** Besides increasing their conversion rates, what steps can online merchants use to lower their break-even points? **A:** In theory, one of the principal advantages of online retailers is that they can minimize their investment in "bricks and mortar" and thus minimize their fixed costs. Some online merchants never even handle the merchandise they sell. Instead, they simply provide a centralized location for customers to view merchandise and to place orders. The online retailer then forwards the order to the supplier, and the supplier ships it directly to the customer.

However, some online merchants who originally planned on employing this model have since found it necessary to build their own warehouses and distribution centers to ensure timely and

dependable product delivery. This increases their fixed costs, and consequently increases their break-even point.

p. 987 Healthy for You, and Great for the Bottom Line **Q:** Why do you suppose restaurants are so eager to sell beverages and desserts? **A:** There is a reason why servers at restaurants keep your beverage glass full, and why they wave the dessert tray in your face at the end of the meal. Both of these items traditionally have very high contribution margins and require very minimal investments in fixed costs. As a consequence they are a great mechanism by which a company can hit its break-even point.

p. 989 Something Smells **Q:** What is the limited resource for a retailer, and what implications does this have for sales mix? **A:** For retailers, the limited resource is not just shelf space, but shelf space per day. At first you might think that a product that is small and has a high contribution margin would be the product of choice. But you also have to factor in the amount of time that a product sits on the shelf.

For example, suppose the following: Product A and B are the same size; product A has twice the contribution margin as product B, but product A sits on the shelf five times as long as product B. In this case, once time spent on the shelf is taken into account, product B's superior turnover more than makes up for its lower contribution margin.

p. 993 The Cost of Experience **Q:** As a result of being in business for a long time, the established airline giants also must pay very large retirement payments, a cost the newer airlines do not face. What impact do these payments have on the break-even equation? **A:** The ongoing costs of retirement and health-care packages for retired employees represent a type of fixed cost. These so-called "legacy" costs can dramatically change the break-even equation. To cover these costs, an old-line airline must fly many more passengers than a newer airline.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. d **2.** d **3.** a **4.** a ($350,000 − $100,000) **5.** b [($180,000 + $268,000) ÷ ($12 − $8.50)] **6.** d [$150,000 ÷ ($3 ÷ $12)] **7.** d **8.** a **9.** b ($15 ÷ 3.0) **10.** d [($26 ÷ 4) < ($14 ÷ 2)] **11.** d **12.** d **13.** c **14.** a ($200,000 × 3.5 × 10%) ***15.** b ***16.** c

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 20

BUDGETARY PLANNING

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!*
  p. 1037 ◯ p. 1040 ◯ p. 1041 ◯
  p. 1045 ◯ p. 1051 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 1056 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Indicate the benefits of budgeting.
2. State the essentials of effective budgeting.
3. Identify the budgets that comprise the master budget.
4. Describe the sources for preparing the budgeted income statement.
5. Explain the principal sections of a cash budget.
6. Indicate the applicability of budgeting in non-manufacturing companies.

the navigator

feature story

THE NEXT AMAZON.COM? NOT QUITE

The bursting of the dot-com bubble resulted in countless stories of dot-com failures. Many of these ventures were half-baked, get-rich-quick schemes, rarely based on sound business practices. Initially, they saw money flowing in faster than they knew what to do with—which was precisely the problem. Without proper planning and budgeting, much of the money went to waste. In some cases, failure was actually brought on by rapid, uncontrolled growth.

One such example was online discount bookseller, www.Positively-You.com. One of the website's co-founders, Lyle Bowline, had never run a business. However, his experience as an assistant director of an entrepreneurial center had provided him with knowledge about the do's and don'ts of small business. To minimize costs, he started the company small and simple. He invested $5,000 in computer equipment and ran the business out of his basement. In the early months, even though sales were only about $2,000 a month, the company actually made a profit because it kept its costs low (a feat few other dot-coms could boast of).

Things changed dramatically when the company received national publicity in the financial press. Suddenly the company's sales increased to $50,000 a month—fully 25 times the previous level. The "simple" little business suddenly needed a business plan, a strategic plan, and a budget. It needed to rent office space and to hire employees.

Initially, members of a local book club donated time to help meet the sudden demand. Some put in so much time that eventually the company hired them. Quickly, the number of paid employees ballooned. The sudden growth necessitated detailed planning and budgeting. The need for a proper budget was accentuated by the fact that the company's gross profit was only 16 cents on each dollar of goods sold. This meant that after paying for its inventory, the company had only 16 cents of every dollar to cover its remaining operating costs.

Unfortunately, the company never got things under control. Within a few months, sales had plummeted to $12,000 per month. At this level of sales the company could not meet the mountain of monthly expenses that it had accumulated in trying to grow. Ironically, the company's sudden success, and the turmoil it created, appears to have been what eventually caused the company to fail.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 20 . . .

- **Businesses Often Feel Too Busy to Plan for the Future** *(p. 1034)*
- **Which Budget Approach Do You Prefer?** *(p. 1036)*
- **Without a Budget, Can the Games Begin?** *(p. 1049)*
- **Budget Shortfalls as Far as the Eye Can See** *(p. 1053)*

preview of chapter 20

As the Feature Story about Positively-You.com indicates, budgeting is critical to financial well-being. As a student, you budget your study time and your money. Families budget income and expenses. Governmental agencies budget revenues and expenditures. Businesses use budgets in planning and controlling their operations.

Our primary focus in this chapter is budgeting—specifically, how budgeting is used as a *planning tool* by management. Through budgeting, it should be possible for management to maintain enough cash to pay creditors, to have sufficient raw materials to meet production requirements, and to have adequate finished goods to meet expected sales.

The content and organization of Chapter 20 are as follows.

Budgetary Planning

Budgeting Basics	Preparing the Operating Budgets	Preparing the Financial Budgets	Budgeting in Non-manufacturing Companies
• Budgeting and accounting • Benefits • Essentials of effective budgeting • Length of budget period • Budgeting process • Budgeting and human behavior • Budgeting and long-range planning • The master budget	• Sales • Production • Direct materials • Direct labor • Manufacturing overhead • Selling and administrative expense • Budgeted income statement	• Cash • Budgeted balance sheet	• Merchandisers • Service • Not-for-profit

the navigator

Budgeting Basics

One of management's major responsibilities is planning. As explained in Chapter 14, **planning** is the process of establishing company-wide objectives. A successful organization makes both long-term and short-term plans. These plans set forth the objectives of the company and the proposed way of accomplishing them.

A **budget** is a formal written statement of management's plans for a specified future time period, expressed in financial terms. It normally represents the primary method of communicating agreed-upon objectives throughout the organization. Once adopted, a budget becomes an important basis for evaluating performance. It promotes efficiency and serves as a deterrent to waste and inefficiency. We consider the role of budgeting as a **control device** in Chapter 21.

BUDGETING AND ACCOUNTING

Accounting information makes major contributions to the budgeting process. From the accounting records, companies can obtain historical data on revenues, costs, and expenses. These data are helpful in formulating future budget goals.

Normally, accountants have the responsibility for presenting management's budgeting goals in financial terms. In this role, they translate management's plans and communicate the budget to employees throughout the company. They

prepare periodic budget reports that provide the basis for measuring performance and comparing actual results with planned objectives. The budget itself, and the administration of the budget, however, are entirely management responsibilities.

THE BENEFITS OF BUDGETING

study objective 1
Indicate the benefits of budgeting.

The primary benefits of budgeting are:

1. It requires all levels of management to **plan ahead** and to formalize goals on a recurring basis.
2. It provides **definite objectives** for evaluating performance at each level of responsibility.
3. It creates an **early warning system** for potential problems so that management can make changes before things get out of hand.
4. It facilitates the **coordination of activities** within the business. It does this by correlating the goals of each segment with overall company objectives. Thus, the company can integrate production and sales promotion with expected sales.
5. It results in greater **management awareness** of the entity's overall operations and the impact on operations of external factors, such as economic trends.
6. It **motivates personnel** throughout the organization to meet planned objectives.

A budget is an aid to management; it is not a *substitute* for management. A budget cannot operate or enforce itself. Companies can realize the benefits of budgeting only when managers carefully administer budgets.

ESSENTIALS OF EFFECTIVE BUDGETING

study objective 2
State the essentials of effective budgeting.

Effective budgeting depends on a **sound organizational structure**. In such a structure, authority and responsibility for all phases of operations are clearly defined. Budgets based on **research and analysis** should result in realistic goals that will contribute to the growth and profitability of a company. And, the effectiveness of a budget program is directly related to its **acceptance by all levels of management**.

Once adopted, the budget is an important tool for evaluating performance. Managers should systematically and periodically review variations between actual and expected results to determine their cause(s). However, individuals should not be held responsible for variations that are beyond their control.

LENGTH OF THE BUDGET PERIOD

The budget period is not necessarily one year in length. **A budget may be prepared for any period of time.** Various factors influence the length of the budget period. These factors include the type of budget, the nature of the organization, the need for periodic appraisal, and prevailing business conditions. For example, cash may be budgeted monthly, whereas a plant expansion budget may cover a 10-year period.

The budget period should be long enough to provide an attainable goal under normal business conditions. Ideally, the time period should minimize the impact of seasonal or cyclical fluctuations. On the other hand, the budget period should not be so long that reliable estimates are impossible.

The **most common budget period is one year**. The annual budget, in turn, is often supplemented by monthly and quarterly budgets. Many companies use **continuous 12-month budgets**. These budgets drop the month just ended and

add a future month. One advantage of continuous budgeting is that it keeps management planning a full year ahead.

THE BUDGETING PROCESS

The development of the budget for the coming year generally starts several months before the end of the current year. The budgeting process usually begins with the collection of data from each organizational unit of the company. Past performance is often the starting point from which future budget goals are formulated.

The budget is developed within the framework of a **sales forecast**. This forecast shows potential sales for the industry and the company's expected share of such sales. Sales forecasting involves a consideration of various factors: (1) general economic conditions, (2) industry trends, (3) market research studies, (4) anticipated advertising and promotion, (5) previous market share, (6) changes in prices, and (7) technological developments. The input of sales personnel and top management is essential to the sales forecast.

In small companies like Positively-You.com, the budgeting process is often informal. In larger companies, a **budget committee** has responsibility for coordinating the preparation of the budget. The committee ordinarily includes the president, treasurer, chief accountant (controller), and management personnel from each of the major areas of the company, such as sales, production, and research. The budget committee serves as a review board where managers can defend their budget goals and requests. Differences are reviewed, modified if necessary, and reconciled. The budget is then put in its final form by the budget committee, approved, and distributed.

Accounting Across the Organization

Businesses Often Feel Too Busy to Plan for the Future

A study by Willard & Shullman Group Ltd. found that fewer than 14% of businesses with less than 500 employees do an annual budget or have a written business plan. For many small businesses the basic assumption is that, "As long as I sell as much as I can, and keep my employees paid, I'm doing OK." A few small business owners even say that they see no need for budgeting and planning. Most small business owners, though, say that they understand that budgeting and planning are critical for survival and growth. But given the long hours that they already work addressing day-to-day challenges, they also say that they are "just too busy to plan for the future."

? Describe a situation in which a business "sells as much as it can" but cannot "keep its employees paid." (See page 1076.)

BUDGETING AND HUMAN BEHAVIOR

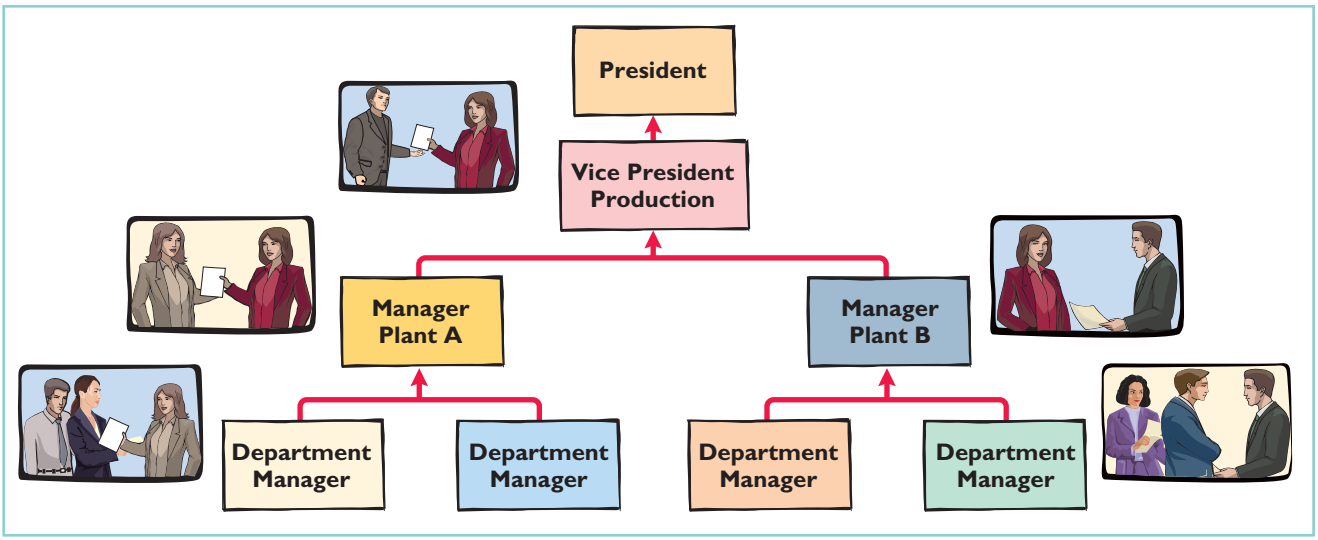
A budget can have a significant impact on human behavior. It may inspire a manager to higher levels of performance. Or, it may discourage additional effort and pull down the morale of a manager. Why do these diverse effects occur? The answer is found in how the budget is developed and administered.

In developing the budget, each level of management should be invited to participate. This "bottom-to-top" approach is referred to as **participative budgeting**.

The advantages of participative budgeting are, first, that lower-level managers have more detailed knowledge of their specific area and thus are able to provide more accurate budgetary estimates. Second, when lower-level managers participate in the budgeting process, they are more likely to perceive the resulting budget as fair. The overall goal is to reach agreement on a budget that the managers consider fair and achievable, but which also meets the corporate goals set by top management. When this goal is met, the budget will provide positive motivation for the managers. In contrast, if the managers view the budget as being unfair and unrealistic, they may feel discouraged and uncommitted to budget goals. The risk of having unrealistic budgets is generally greater when the budget is developed from top management down to lower management than vice versa.

Participative budgeting does, however, have potential disadvantages. First, it is more time-consuming (and thus more costly) than a "top-down" approach, in which the budget is simply dictated to lower-level managers. A second disadvantage is that participative budgeting can foster budgetary "gaming" through budgetary slack. **Budgetary slack** occurs when managers intentionally underestimate budgeted revenues or overestimate budgeted expenses in order to make it easier to achieve budgetary goals. To minimize budgetary slack, higher-level managers must carefully review and thoroughly question the budget projections provided to them by employees whom they supervise. Illustration 20-1 graphically displays the appropriate flow of budget data from bottom to top in an organization.

Illustration 20-1
Flow of budget data from lower levels of management to top levels



For the budget to be effective, top management must completely support the budget. The budget is an important basis for evaluating performance. It also can be used as a positive aid in achieving projected goals. The effect of an evaluation is positive when top management tempers criticism with advice and assistance. In contrast, a manager is likely to respond negatively if top management uses the budget exclusively to assess blame. A budget should not be used as a pressure device to force improved performance. In sum, a budget can be a manager's friend or a foe.

Ethics Note Unrealistic budgets can lead to unethical employee behavior such as cutting corners on the job or distorting internal financial reports.

Accounting Across the Organization

Which Budget Approach Do You Prefer?

At one time, in an effort to revive its plummeting stock, Time Warner's top management determined and publicly announced bold new financial goals for the coming year. Unfortunately, these goals were not reached.

The next year, the company got a new CEO who promised, "We will not over promise, and we will deliver." The new budgets were developed with each operating unit setting what it felt were optimistic but attainable goals. In the words of one manager, using this approach created a sense of teamwork: "We're all going forward with our arms locked together."

Source: Carol J. Loomis, "AOL Time Warner's New Math," *Fortune* (February 4, 2002), pp. 98–102.

? What approach did Time Warner use to prepare the old budget? What approach did it use to prepare the new budget? (See page 1076.)

BUDGETING AND LONG-RANGE PLANNING

Budgeting and long-range planning are not the same. One important difference is the **time period involved**. The maximum length of a budget is usually one year, and budgets are often prepared for shorter periods of time, such as a month or a quarter. In contrast, long-range planning usually encompasses a period of at least five years.

Helpful Hint In comparing a budget with a long-range plan: (1) Which has more detail? (2) Which is done for a longer period of time? (3) Which is more concerned with short-term goals? Answers: (1) Budget. (2) Long-range plan. (3) Budget.

A second significant difference is in **emphasis**. Budgeting focuses on achieving specific short-term goals, such as meeting annual profit objectives. **Long-range planning**, on the other hand, identifies long-term goals, selects strategies to achieve those goals, and develops policies and plans to implement the strategies. In long-range planning, management also considers anticipated trends in the economic and political environment and how the company should cope with them.

The final difference between budgeting and long-range planning relates to the **amount of detail presented**. Budgets, as you will see in this chapter, can be very detailed. Long-range plans contain considerably less detail. The data in long-range plans are intended more for a review of progress toward long-term goals than as a basis of control for achieving specific results. The primary objective of long-range planning is to develop the best strategy to maximize the company's performance over an extended future period.

THE MASTER BUDGET

study objective 3

Identify the budgets that comprise the master budget.

The term "budget" is actually a shorthand term to describe a variety of budget documents. All of these documents are combined into a master budget. The **master budget** is a set of interrelated budgets that constitutes a plan of action for a specified time period.

The master budget contains two classes of budgets. **Operating budgets** are the individual budgets that result in the preparation of the budgeted income statement. These budgets establish goals for the company's sales and production personnel. In contrast, **financial budgets** are the capital expenditure budget, the cash budget, and the budgeted balance sheet. These budgets focus primarily on the cash resources needed to fund expected operations and planned capital expenditures.

Illustration 20-2 pictures the individual budgets included in a master budget, and the sequence in which they are prepared. The company first develops the operating budgets, beginning with the sales budget. Then it prepares the financial budgets. We will explain and illustrate each budget shown in Illustration 20-2 except the capital expenditure budget. That budget is discussed under the topic of capital budgeting in Chapter 23.

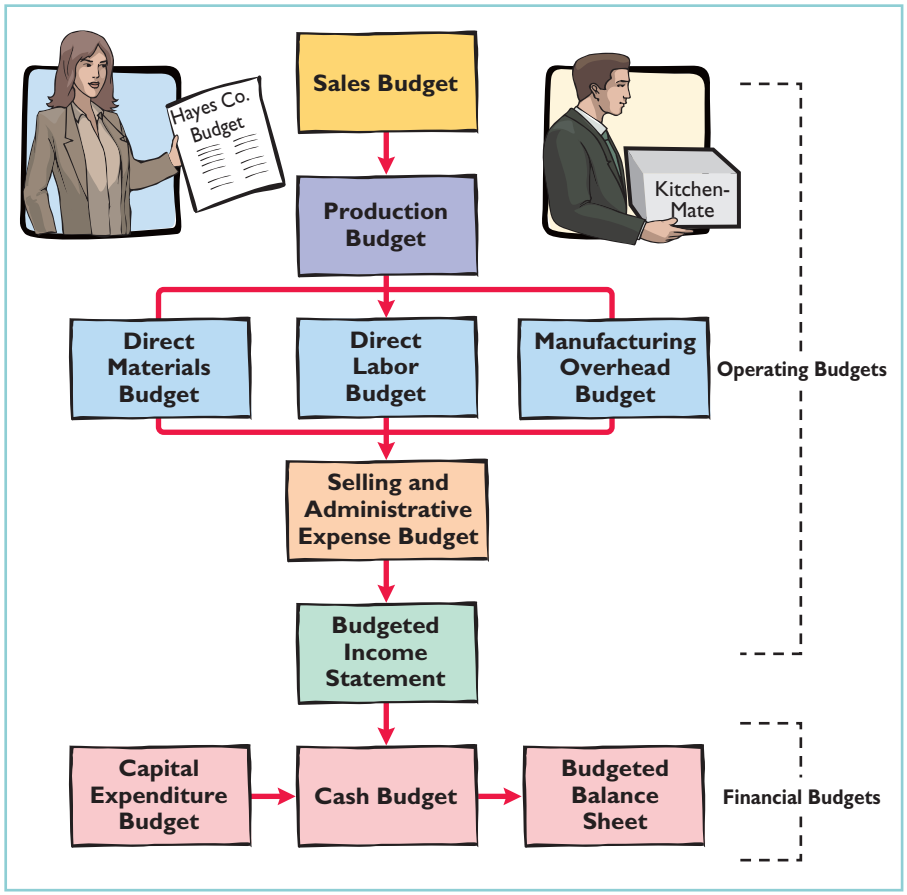


Illustration 20-2
Components of the master budget

before you go on...

Do it!

BUDGET TERMINOLOGY

Use this list of terms to complete the sentences that follow.

Long-range planning	Participative budgeting
Sales forecast	Operating budgets
Master budget	Financial budgets

1. A _____ shows potential sales for the industry and a company's expected share of such sales.
2. _____ are used as the basis for the preparation of the budgeted income statement.
3. The _____ is a set of interrelated budgets that constitutes a plan of action for a specified time period.
4. _____ identifies long-term goals, selects strategies to achieve these goals, and develops policies and plans to implement the strategies.
5. Lower-level managers are more likely to perceive results as fair and achievable under a _____ approach.
6. _____ focus primarily on the cash resources needed to fund expected operations and planned capital expenditures.

Action Plan

- Understand the budgeting process, including the importance of the sales forecast.
- Understand the difference between an operating budget and a financial budget.
- Differentiate budgeting from long-range planning.
- Realize that the master budget is a set of interrelated budgets.

Solution

1. Sales forecast.	4. Long-range planning.
2. Operating budgets.	5. Participative budgeting.
3. Master budget.	6. Financial budgets.

Related exercise material: **BE20-1,** **Do it!** **20-1,** and **E20-1.**

the navigator

Preparing the Operating Budgets

We use a case study of Hayes Company in preparing the operating budgets. Hayes manufactures and sells a single product, Kitchen-Mate. The budgets are prepared by quarters for the year ending December 31, 2012. Hayes Company begins its annual budgeting process on September 1, 2011, and it completes the budget for 2012 by December 1, 2011.

SALES BUDGET

Helpful Hint For a retail or manufacturing company, what is the starting point in preparing the master budget, and why? Answer: The sales budget is the starting point for the master budget. It sets the level of activity for other functions such as production and purchasing.

As shown in the master budget in Illustration 20-2, **the sales budget is the first budget prepared**. Each of the other budgets depends on the sales budget. The **sales budget** is derived from the sales forecast. It represents management's best estimate of sales revenue for the budget period. An inaccurate sales budget may adversely affect net income. For example, an overly optimistic sales budget may result in excessive inventories that may have to be sold at reduced prices. In contrast, an unduly conservative budget may result in loss of sales revenue due to inventory shortages.

For example, at one time Amazon significantly underestimated demand for its e-book reader, the Kindle. As a consequence, it did not produce enough units and was completely sold out well before the holiday shopping season. Not only did this represent a huge lost opportunity for Amazon, but it exposed it to potential competitors, who were eager to provide customers with alternatives to the Kindle.

Forecasting sales is challenging. For example, consider the forecasting challenges faced by major sports arenas, whose revenues depend on the success of the home team. Madison Square Garden's revenues from April to June were $193 million when the Knicks made the NBA playoffs. But revenues were only $133.2 million a couple of years later when the team did not make the playoffs. Or consider the challenges faced by Hollywood movie producers in predicting the complicated revenue stream produced by a new movie. Movie theater ticket sales represent only 20% of total revenue. The bulk of revenue comes from global sales, DVDs, video-on-demand, merchandising products, and videogames, all of which are difficult to forecast.

The sales budget is prepared by multiplying the expected unit sales volume for each product by its anticipated unit selling price. Hayes Company expects sales volume to be 3,000 units in the first quarter, with 500-unit increases in each succeeding quarter. Illustration 20-3 shows the sales budget for the year, by quarters, based on a sales price of $60 per unit.

Illustration 20-3
Sales budget

Hayes Company Sales Budget.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	HAYES COMPANY					
2	Sales Budget					
3	For the Year Ending December 31, 2012					
4		Quarter				
5		1	2	3	4	Year
6	Expected unit sales	3,000	3,500	4,000	4,500	15,000
7	Unit selling price	× $60	× $60	× $60	× $60	× $60
8	Total sales	$180,000	$210,000	$240,000	$270,000	$900,000

Some companies classify the anticipated sales revenue as cash or credit sales and by geographical regions, territories, or salespersons.

PRODUCTION BUDGET

The **production budget** shows the units to produce to meet anticipated sales. Production requirements are determined from the following formula.[1]

Budgeted Sales Units	+	Desired Ending Finished Goods Units	−	Beginning Finished Goods Units	=	Required Production Units

Illustration 20-4 Production requirements formula

A realistic estimate of ending inventory is essential in scheduling production requirements. Excessive inventories in one quarter may lead to cutbacks in production and employee layoffs in a subsequent quarter. On the other hand, inadequate inventories may result either in added costs for overtime work or in lost sales. Hayes Company believes it can meet future sales requirements by maintaining an ending inventory equal to 20% of the next quarter's budgeted sales volume. For example, the ending finished goods inventory for the first quarter is 700 units (20% × anticipated second-quarter sales of 3,500 units). Illustration 20-5 shows the production budget.

Hayes Company Production Budget.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

HAYES COMPANY
Production Budget
For the Year Ending December 31, 2012

	Quarter				
	1	2	3	4	Year
Expected unit sales (Illustration 20-3)	3,000	3,500	4,000	4,500	
Add: Desired ending finished goods units[a]	700	800	900	1,000	[b]
Total required units	3,700	4,300	4,900	5,500	
Less: Beginning finished goods units	600	[c] 700	800	900	
Required production units	**3,100**	**3,600**	**4,100**	**4,600**	**15,400**

[a]20% of next quarter's sales
[b]Expected 2013 first-quarter sales, 5,000 units × 20%
[c]20% of estimated first-quarter 2012 sales units

Illustration 20-5 Production budget

The production budget, in turn, provides the basis for the budgeted costs for each manufacturing cost element, as explained in the following pages.

[1]This formula ignores any work in process inventories, which are assumed to be nonexistent in Hayes Company.

before you go on...

PRODUCTION BUDGET

Do it! Becker Company estimates that 2012 unit sales will be 12,000 in quarter 1, 16,000 in quarter 2, and 20,000 in quarter 3, at a unit selling price of $30. Management desires to have ending finished goods inventory equal to 15% of the next quarter's expected unit sales. Prepare a production budget by quarter for the first 6 months of 2012.

Action Plan

- Begin with budgeted sales in units.
- Add desired ending finished goods inventory.
- Subtract beginning finished goods inventory.

Solution

BECKER COMPANY
Production Budget
For the Six Months Ending June 30, 2012

	Quarter 1	Quarter 2	Six Months
Expected unit sales	12,000	16,000	
Add: Desired ending finished goods	2,400	3,000	
Total required units	14,400	19,000	
Less: Beginning finished goods inventory	1,800*	2,400**	
Required production units	12,600	16,600	29,200

*12,000 × .15
**16,000 × .15

Related exercise material: **BE20-3, Do it! 20-2, E20-4,** and **E20-6.**

the navigator

DIRECT MATERIALS BUDGET

The **direct materials budget** shows both the quantity and cost of direct materials to be purchased. The quantities of direct materials are derived from the following formula.

Illustration 20-6
Formula for direct materials quantities

Direct Materials Units Required for Production	+	Desired Ending Direct Materials Units	−	Beginning Direct Materials Units	=	Required Direct Materials Units to Be Purchased

The company then computes the budgeted cost of direct materials to be purchased by multiplying the required units of direct materials by the anticipated cost per unit.

The desired ending inventory is again a key component in the budgeting process. For example, inadequate inventories could result in temporary shutdowns of production. Because of its close proximity to suppliers, Hayes Company maintains an ending inventory of raw materials equal to 10% of the next quarter's production requirements. The manufacture of each Kitchen-Mate requires 2 pounds of raw materials, and the expected cost per pound is $4. Illustration 20-7 shows the direct materials budget. Assume that the desired ending direct materials amount is 1,020 pounds for the fourth quarter of 2012.

Illustration 20-7
Direct materials budget

Hayes Company Direct Materials Budget.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	**HAYES COMPANY**										
2	**Direct Materials Budget**										
3	**For the Year Ending December 31, 2012**										
4			Quarter								
5			1		2		3		4		Year
6	Units to be produced (Illustration 20-5)		3,100		3,600		4,100		4,600		
7	Direct materials per unit		× 2		× 2		× 2		× 2		
8	Total pounds needed for production		6,200		7,200		8,200		9,200		
9	Add: Desired ending direct materials (pounds)[a]		720		820		920		1,020	[c]	
10	Total materials required		6,920		8,020		9,120		10,220		
11	Less: Beginning direct materials (pounds)		620	[b]	720		820		920		
12	Direct materials purchases		6,300		7,300		8,300		9,300		
13	Cost per pound		× $4		× $4		× $4		× $4		
14	**Total cost of direct materials purchases**		**$25,200**		**$29,200**		**$33,200**		**$37,200**		**$124,800**
15											
16	[a]10% of next quarter's production requirements										
17	[b]10% of estimated first-quarter pounds needed for production										
18	[c]((4,600 + 500) × 2) × .10										

before you go on...

Do it!

MASTER BUDGET

Soriano Company is preparing its master budget for 2012. Relevant data pertaining to its sales, production, and direct materials budgets are as follows:

Sales: Sales for the year are expected to total 1,200,000 units. Quarterly sales, as a percent of total sales, are 20%, 25%, 30%, and 25%, respectively. The sales price is expected to be $50 per unit for the first three quarters and $55 per unit beginning in the fourth quarter. Sales in the first quarter of 2013 are expected to be 10% higher than the budgeted sales for the first quarter of 2012.

Production: Management desires to maintain the ending finished goods inventories at 25% of the next quarter's budgeted sales volume.

Direct materials: Each unit requires 3 pounds of raw materials at a cost of $5 per pound. Management desires to maintain raw materials inventories at 5% of the next quarter's production requirements. Assume the production requirements for the first quarter of 2013 are 810,000 pounds.

Prepare the sales, production, and direct materials budgets by quarters for 2012.

Action Plan

- Know the form and content of the sales budget.
- Prepare the sales budget first, as the basis for the other budgets.
- Determine the units that must be produced to meet anticipated sales.
- Know how to compute the beginning and ending finished goods units.
- Determine the materials required to meet production needs.
- Know how to compute the beginning and ending direct materials units.

Solution

Soriano Company Sales Budget.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	**SORIANO COMPANY**					
2	**Sales Budget**					
3	**For the Year Ending December 31, 2012**					
4			Quarter			
5		1	2	3	4	Year
6	Expected unit sales	240,000	300,000	360,000	300,000	1,200,000
7	Unit selling price	× $50	× $50	× $50	× $55	—
8	**Total sales**	**$12,000,000**	**$15,000,000**	**$18,000,000**	**$16,500,000**	**$61,500,000**

Soriano Company Production Budget.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

SORIANO COMPANY
Production Budget
For the Year Ending December 31, 2012

	Quarter 1	Quarter 2	Quarter 3	Quarter 4	Year
Expected unit sales	240,000	300,000	360,000	300,000	
Add: Desired ending finished goods units[a]	75,000	90,000	75,000	66,000	[b]
Total required units	315,000	390,000	435,000	366,000	
Less: Beginning finished goods units	60,000	[c] 75,000	90,000	75,000	
Required production units	**255,000**	**315,000**	**345,000**	**291,000**	**1,206,000**

[a]25% of next quarter's unit sales

[b]Estimated first-quarter 2013 sales units 240,000 + (240,000 × 10%) = 264,000: 264,000 × 25%

[c]25% of estimated first-quarter 2012 sales units (240,000 × 25%)

Soriano Company Direct Materials Budget.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

SORIANO COMPANY
Direct Materials Budget
For the Year Ending December 31, 2012

	Quarter 1	Quarter 2	Quarter 3	Quarter 4	Year
Units to be produced	255,000	315,000	345,000	291,000	
Direct materials per unit	× 3	× 3	× 3	× 3	
Total pounds needed for production	765,000	945,000	1,035,000	873,000	
Add: Desired ending direct materials (pounds)	47,250	51,750	43,650	40,500	[a]
Total materials required	812,250	996,750	1,078,650	913,500	
Less: Beginning direct materials (pounds)	38,250	[b] 47,250	51,750	43,650	
Direct materials purchases	774,000	949,500	1,026,900	869,850	
Cost per pound	× $5	× $5	× $5	× $5	
Total cost of direct materials purchases	**$3,870,000**	**$4,747,500**	**$5,134,500**	**$4,349,250**	**$18,101,250**

[a]Estimated first-quarter 2013 production requirements 810,000 × 5% = 40,500

[b]5% of estimated first-quarter pounds needed for production

Related exercise material: **BE20-2, BE20-3, BE20-4, Do it! 20-3, E20-2, E20-3, E20-4, E20-5,** and **E20-6.**

the navigator

DIRECT LABOR BUDGET

Like the direct materials budget, the **direct labor budget** contains the quantity (hours) and cost of direct labor necessary to meet production requirements. The total direct labor cost is derived from the following formula.

Illustration 20-8
Formula for direct labor cost

Units to Be Produced × Direct Labor Time per Unit × Direct Labor Cost per Hour = Total Direct Labor Cost

Direct labor hours are determined from the production budget. At Hayes Company, two hours of direct labor are required to produce each unit of finished goods. The anticipated hourly wage rate is $10. Illustration 20-9 shows these data.

Hayes Company Direct Labor Budget.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	**HAYES COMPANY**									
2	**Direct Labor Budget**									
3	**For the Year Ending December 31, 2012**									
4			Quarter							
5			1		2		3		4	Year
6	Units to be produced (Illustration 20-5)		3,100		3,600		4,100		4,600	
7	Direct labor time (hours) per unit		× 2		× 2		× 2		× 2	
8	Total required direct labor hours		6,200		7,200		8,200		9,200	
9	Direct labor cost per hour		× $10		× $10		× $10		× $10	
10	**Total direct labor cost**		**$62,000**		**$72,000**		**$82,000**		**$92,000**	**$308,000**
11										

Illustration 20-9
Direct labor budget

Helpful Hint An important assumption in Illustration 20-9 is that the company can add to and subtract from its work force as needed so that the $10 per hour labor cost applies to a wide range of possible production activity.

The direct labor budget is critical in maintaining a labor force that can meet the expected levels of production.

MANUFACTURING OVERHEAD BUDGET

The **manufacturing overhead budget** shows the expected manufacturing overhead costs for the budget period. As Illustration 20-10 shows, **this budget distinguishes between variable and fixed overhead costs**. Hayes Company expects variable costs to fluctuate with production volume on the basis of the following rates per direct labor hour: indirect materials $1.00, indirect labor $1.40, utilities $0.40, and maintenance $0.20. Thus, for the 6,200 direct labor

Hayes Company Manufacturing Overhead Budget.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	**HAYES COMPANY**					
2	**Manufacturing Overhead Budget**					
3	**For the Year Ending December 31, 2012**					
4		Quarter				
5		1	2	3	4	Year
6	Variable costs					
7	Indirect materials ($1.00/hour)	$ 6,200	$ 7,200	$ 8,200	$ 9,200	$ 30,800
8	Indirect labor ($1.40/hour)	8,680	10,080	11,480	12,880	43,120
9	Utilities ($0.40/hour)	2,480	2,880	3,280	3,680	12,320
10	Maintenance ($0.20/hour)	1,240	1,440	1,640	1,840	6,160
11	Total variable costs	18,600	21,600	24,600	27,600	92,400
12	Fixed costs					
13	Supervisory salaries	20,000	20,000	20,000	20,000	80,000
14	Depreciation	3,800	3,800	3,800	3,800	15,200
15	Property taxes and insurance	9,000	9,000	9,000	9,000	36,000
16	Maintenance	5,700	5,700	5,700	5,700	22,800
17	Total fixed costs	38,500	38,500	38,500	38,500	154,000
18	**Total manufacturing overhead**	**$57,100**	**$60,100**	**$63,100**	**$66,100**	**$246,400**
19	**Direct labor hours (Illustration 20-9)**	**6,200**	**7,200**	**8,200**	**9,200**	**30,800**
20	**Manufacturing overhead rate per direct labor hour ($246,400 ÷ 30,800)**					**$8**
21						

Illustration 20-10
Manufacturing overhead budget

hours to produce 3,100 units, budgeted indirect materials are $6,200 (6,200 × $1), and budgeted indirect labor is $8,680 (6,200 × $1.40). Hayes also recognizes that some maintenance is fixed. The amounts reported for fixed costs are assumed for our example. The accuracy of budgeted overhead cost estimates can be greatly improved by employing activity-based costing.

At Hayes Company, overhead is applied to production on the basis of direct labor hours. Thus, as Illustration 20-10 shows, the budgeted annual rate is $8 per hour ($246,400 ÷ 30,800).

SELLING AND ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSE BUDGET

Hayes Company combines its operating expenses into one budget, the **selling and administrative expense budget**. This budget projects anticipated selling and administrative expenses for the budget period. This budget (Illustration 20-11) also classifies expenses as either variable or fixed. In this case, the variable expense rates per unit of sales are sales commissions $3 and freight-out $1. Variable expenses per quarter are based on the unit sales from the sales budget (Illustration 20-3, page 1038). For example, Hayes expects sales in the first quarter to be 3,000 units. Thus, Sales Commissions Expense is $9,000 (3,000 × $3), and Freight-out is $3,000 (3,000 × $1). Fixed expenses are based on assumed data. Illustration 20-11 shows the selling and administrative expense budget.

Illustration 20-11
Selling and administrative expense budget

Hayes Company Manufacturing Selling and Administrative Expense Budget.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

HAYES COMPANY
Selling and Administrative Expense Budget
For the Year Ending December 31, 2012

	Quarter				
	1	2	3	4	Year
Budgeted sales in units (Illustration 20-3)	3,000	3,500	4,000	4,500	15,000
Variable expenses					
Sales commissions ($3 per unit)	$ 9,000	$10,500	$12,000	$ 13,500	$ 45,000
Freight-out ($1 per unit)	3,000	3,500	4,000	4,500	15,000
Total variable expenses	12,000	14,000	16,000	18,000	60,000
Fixed expenses					
Advertising	5,000	5,000	5,000	5,000	20,000
Sales salaries	15,000	15,000	15,000	15,000	60,000
Office salaries	7,500	7,500	7,500	7,500	30,000
Depreciation	1,000	1,000	1,000	1,000	4,000
Property taxes and insurance	1,500	1,500	1,500	1,500	6,000
Total fixed expenses	30,000	30,000	30,000	30,000	120,000
Total selling and administrative expenses	**$42,000**	**$44,000**	**$46,000**	**$48,000**	**$180,000**

BUDGETED INCOME STATEMENT

study objective 4
Describe the sources for preparing the budgeted income statement.

The **budgeted income statement** is the important end-product of the operating budgets. This budget indicates the expected profitability of operations for the budget period. The budgeted income statement provides the basis for evaluating company performance. Budgeted income statements often act as a call to action. For example, a board member at XM Satellite Radio Holdings felt that budgeted costs were too high relative to budgeted revenues. When management refused to cut its marketing and programming costs, the board member resigned; he felt that without the cuts, the company risked financial crisis.

As you would expect, the budgeted income statement is prepared from the various operating budgets. For example, to find the cost of goods sold, it is first necessary to determine the total unit cost of producing one Kitchen-Mate, as follows.

Illustration 20-12 Computation of total unit cost

	Cost of One Kitchen-Mate			
Cost Element	**Illustration**	**Quantity**	**Unit Cost**	**Total**
Direct materials	20-7	2 pounds	$ 4.00	$ 8.00
Direct labor	20-9	2 hours	$10.00	20.00
Manufacturing overhead	20-10	2 hours	$ 8.00	16.00
Total unit cost				**$44.00**

Hayes Company then determines cost of goods sold by multiplying the units sold by the unit cost. Its budgeted cost of goods sold is $660,000 (15,000 × $44). All data for the income statement come from the individual operating budgets except the following: (1) interest expense is expected to be $100, and (2) income taxes are estimated to be $12,000. Illustration 20-13 shows the budgeted income statement.

Illustration 20-13 Budgeted income statement

HAYES COMPANY
Budgeted Income Statement
For the Year Ending December 31, 2012

Sales (Illustration 20-3)	$900,000
Cost of goods sold (15,000 × $44)	660,000
Gross profit	240,000
Selling and administrative expenses (Illustration 20-11)	180,000
Income from operations	60,000
Interest expense	100
Income before income taxes	59,900
Income tax expense	12,000
Net income	$ 47,900

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has the company met its targets for sales, production expenses, selling and administrative expenses, and net income?	Sales forecasts, inventory levels, projected materials, labor, overhead, and selling and administrative requirements	Master budget–a set of interrelated budgets including sales, production, materials, labor, overhead, and selling and administrative budgets	Results are favorable if revenues exceed budgeted amounts, or if expenses are less than budgeted amounts.

before you go on...

Do it! **BUDGETED INCOME STATEMENT**

Soriano Company is preparing its budgeted income statement for 2012. Relevant data pertaining to its sales, production, and direct materials budgets can be found in the **Do it!** exercise on page 1041.

In addition, Soriano budgets 0.5 hours of direct labor per unit, labor costs at $15 per hour, and manufacturing overhead at $25 per direct labor hour. Its budgeted selling and administrative expenses for 2012 are $12,000,000.

(a) Calculate the budgeted total unit cost. (b) Prepare the budgeted income statement for 2012.

Action Plan

- Recall that total unit cost consists of direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead.
- Recall that direct materials costs are included in the direct materials budget.
- Know the form and content of the income statement.
- Use the total unit sales information from the sales budget to compute annual sales and cost of goods sold.

Solution

(a)

Cost Element	Quantity	Unit Cost	Total
Direct materials	3.0 pounds	$ 5	$ 15.00
Direct labor	0.5 hours	$15	7.50
Manufacturing overhead	0.5 hours	$25	12.50
Total unit cost			**$35.00**

(b)

SORIANO COMPANY
Budgeted Income Statement
For the Year Ending December 31, 2012

Sales (1,200,000 units from sales budget, page 1041)	$61,500,000
Cost of goods sold (1,200,000 × $35.00/unit)	42,000,000
Gross profit	19,500,000
Selling and administrative expenses	12,000,000
Net income	$ 7,500,000

Related exercise material: **BE20-8, Do it! 20-4, E20-11,** and **E20-13.**

the navigator

Preparing the Financial Budgets

As shown in Illustration 20-2 (page 1037), the financial budgets consist of the capital expenditure budget, the cash budget, and the budgeted balance sheet. We will discuss the capital expenditure budget in Chapter 23; the other budgets are explained in the following sections.

CASH BUDGET

study objective 5
Explain the principal sections of a cash budget.

The **cash budget** shows anticipated cash flows. Because cash is so vital, this budget is often considered to be the most important financial budget.

The cash budget contains three sections (cash receipts, cash disbursements, and financing) and the beginning and ending cash balances, as shown in Illustration 20-14.

Illustration 20-14
Basic form of a cash budget

ANY COMPANY
Cash Budget

Beginning cash balance	$X,XXX
Add: Cash receipts (Itemized)	X,XXX
Total available cash	X,XXX
Less: Cash disbursements (Itemized)	X,XXX
Excess (deficiency) of available cash over cash disbursements	X,XXX
Financing	X,XXX
Ending cash balance	$X,XXX

Helpful Hint Why is the cash budget prepared after the other budgets are prepared? Answer: Because the information generated by the other budgets dictates the expected inflows and outflows of cash.

The **cash receipts section** includes expected receipts from the company's principal source(s) of revenue. These are usually cash sales and collections from customers on credit sales. This section also shows anticipated receipts of interest and

dividends, and proceeds from planned sales of investments, plant assets, and the company's capital stock.

The **cash disbursements section** shows expected cash payments. Such payments include direct materials, direct labor, manufacturing overhead, and selling and administrative expenses. This section also includes projected payments for income taxes, dividends, investments, and plant assets.

The **financing section** shows expected borrowings and the repayment of the borrowed funds plus interest. Companies need this section when there is a cash deficiency or when the cash balance is below management's minimum required balance.

Data in the cash budget are prepared in sequence. The ending cash balance of one period becomes the beginning cash balance for the next period. Companies obtain data for preparing the cash budget from other budgets and from information provided by management. In practice, cash budgets are often prepared for the year on a monthly basis.

To minimize detail, we will assume that Hayes Company prepares an annual cash budget by quarters. Its cash budget is based on the following assumptions.

1. The January 1, 2012, cash balance is expected to be $38,000. Hayes wishes to maintain a balance of at least $15,000.
2. Sales (Illustration 20-3, page 1038): 60% are collected in the quarter sold and 40% are collected in the following quarter. Accounts receivable of $60,000 at December 31, 2011, are expected to be collected in full in the first quarter of 2012.
3. Short-term investments are expected to be sold for $2,000 cash in the first quarter.
4. Direct materials (Illustration 20-7, page 1041): 50% are paid in the quarter purchased and 50% are paid in the following quarter. Accounts payable of $10,600 at December 31, 2011, are expected to be paid in full in the first quarter of 2012.
5. Direct labor (Illustration 20-9, page 1043): 100% is paid in the quarter incurred.
6. Manufacturing overhead (Illustration 20-10, page 1043) and selling and administrative expenses (Illustration 20-11, page 1044): All items except depreciation are paid in the quarter incurred.
7. Management plans to purchase a truck in the second quarter for $10,000 cash.
8. Hayes makes equal quarterly payments of its estimated annual income taxes.
9. Loans are repaid in the earliest quarter in which there is sufficient cash (that is, when the cash on hand exceeds the $15,000 minimum required balance).

In preparing the cash budget, it is useful to prepare schedules for collections from customers (assumption No. 2) and cash payments for direct materials (assumption No. 4). These schedules are shown in Illustrations 20-15 and 20-16 (below and on the next page).

Illustration 20-15
Collections from customers

HAYES COMPANY
Schedule of Expected Collections from Customers

	Quarter			
	1	2	3	4
Accounts receivable, 12/31/11	$ 60,000			
First quarter ($180,000)	108,000	$ 72,000		
Second quarter ($210,000)		126,000	$ 84,000	
Third quarter ($240,000)			144,000	$ 96,000
Fourth quarter ($270,000)				162,000
Total collections	$168,000	$198,000	$228,000	$258,000

Illustration 20-16
Payments for direct materials

HAYES COMPANY
Schedule of Expected Payments for Direct Materials

	Quarter			
	1	2	3	4
Accounts payable, 12/31/11	$10,600			
First quarter ($25,200)	12,600	$12,600		
Second quarter ($29,200)		14,600	$14,600	
Third quarter ($33,200)			16,600	$16,600
Fourth quarter ($37,200)				18,600
Total payments	$23,200	$27,200	$31,200	$35,200

Illustration 20-17 shows the cash budget for Hayes Company. The budget indicates that Hayes will need $3,000 of financing in the second quarter to maintain a minimum cash balance of $15,000. Since there is an excess of available cash over disbursements of $22,500 at the end of the third quarter, the borrowing, plus $100 interest, is repaid in this quarter.

Illustration 20-17
Cash budget

Hayes Company Cash Budget.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

HAYES COMPANY
Cash Budget
For the Year Ending December 31, 2012

		Quarter			
	Assumption	1	2	3	4
Beginning cash balance	1	$ 38,000	$ 25,500	$ 15,000	$ 19,400
Add: Receipts					
Collections from customers	2	168,000	198,000	228,000	258,000
Sale of securities	3	2,000	0	0	0
Total receipts		170,000	198,000	228,000	258,000
Total available cash		208,000	223,500	243,000	277,400
Less: Disbursements					
Direct materials	4	23,200	27,200	31,200	35,200
Direct labor	5	62,000	72,000	82,000	92,000
Manufacturing overhead	6	53,300	[a] 56,300	59,300	62,300
Selling and administrative expenses	6	41,000	[b] 43,000	45,000	47,000
Purchase of truck	7	0	10,000	0	0
Income tax expense	8	3,000	3,000	3,000	3,000
Total disbursements		182,500	211,500	220,500	239,500
Excess (deficiency) of available cash over cash disbursements		25,500	12,000	22,500	37,900
Financing					
Borrowings		0	**3,000**	0	0
Repayments-plus $100 interest	9	0	0	**3,100**	0
Ending cash balance		$ 25,500	$ 15,000	$ 19,400	$ 37,900

[a]$57,100-$3,800 depreciation
[b]$42,000-$1,000 depreciation

Service Company Insight

Without a Budget, Can the Games Begin?

Behind the grandeur of the Olympic Games lies a huge financial challenge—how to keep budgeted costs in line with revenues. For example, the 2006 Winter Olympics in Turin, Italy, narrowly avoided going into bankruptcy before the Games even started. In order for the event to remain solvent, organizers cancelled glitzy celebrations and shifted promotional responsibilities to an Italian state-run agency. Despite these efforts, after the Games were over, the Italian government created a lottery game to cover its financial losses.

As another example, organizers of the 2002 Winter Olympics in Salt Lake City cut budgeted costs by $200 million shortly before the events began. According to the chief operating and financial officer, the organizers went through every line item in the budget, sorting each one into "must have" versus "nice to have." As a result, the Salt Lake City Games produced a surplus of $100 million.

Source: Gabriel Kahn and Roger Thurow, "In Turin, Paying for Games Went Down to the Wire," *Wall Street Journal* (February 10, 2006).

? Why does it matter whether the Olympic Games exceed their budget? (See page 1076.)

A cash budget contributes to more effective cash management. It shows managers when additional financing is necessary well before the actual need arises. And, it indicates when excess cash is available for investments or other purposes.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Is the company going to need to borrow funds in the coming quarter?	Beginning cash balance, cash receipts, cash disbursements, and desired cash balance	Cash budget	The company will need to borrow money if the cash budget indicates a projected cash deficiency of available cash over cash disbursements for the quarter.

BUDGETED BALANCE SHEET

The **budgeted balance sheet** is a projection of financial position at the end of the budget period. This budget is developed from the budgeted balance sheet for the preceding year and the budgets for the current year. Pertinent data from the budgeted balance sheet at December 31, 2011, are as follows.

Buildings and equipment	$182,000	Common stock	$225,000
Accumulated depreciation	$ 28,800	Retained earnings	$ 46,480

Illustration 20-18 shows Hayes Company's budgeted balance sheet at December 31, 2012.

Illustration 20-18
Budgeted balance sheet

HAYES COMPANY
Budgeted Balance Sheet
December 31, 2012

Assets		
Cash		$ 37,900
Accounts receivable		108,000
Finished goods inventory		44,000
Raw materials inventory		4,080
Buildings and equipment	$192,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation	48,000	144,000
Total assets		$337,980
Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity		
Accounts payable		$ 18,600
Common stock		225,000
Retained earnings		94,380
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity		$337,980

The computations and sources of the amounts are explained below.

Cash: Ending cash balance $37,900, shown in the cash budget (Illustration 20-17, page 1048).

Accounts receivable: 40% of fourth-quarter sales $270,000, shown in the schedule of expected collections from customers (Illustration 20-15, page 1047).

Finished goods inventory: Desired ending inventory 1,000 units, shown in the production budget (Illustration 20-5, page 1039) times the total unit cost $44 (shown in Illustration 20-12, page 1045).

Raw materials inventory: Desired ending inventory 1,020 pounds, times the cost per pound $4, shown in the direct materials budget (Illustration 20-7, page 1041).

Buildings and equipment: December 31, 2011, balance $182,000, plus purchase of truck for $10,000 (Illustration 20-17, page 1048).

Accumulated depreciation: December 31, 2011, balance $28,800, plus $15,200 depreciation shown in manufacturing overhead budget (Illustration 20-10, page 1043) and $4,000 depreciation shown in selling and administrative expense budget (Illustration 20-11, page 1044).

Accounts payable: 50% of fourth-quarter purchases $37,200, shown in schedule of expected payments for direct materials (Illustration 20-16, page 1048).

Common stock: Unchanged from the beginning of the year.

Retained earnings: December 31, 2011, balance $46,480, plus net income $47,900, shown in budgeted income statement (Illustration 20-13, page 1045).

After budget data are entered into the computer, Hayes prepares the various budgets (sales, cash, etc.), as well as the budgeted financial statements. Using spreadsheets, management can also perform "what if" (sensitivity) analyses based on different hypothetical assumptions. For example, suppose that sales managers project that sales will be 10% higher in the coming quarter. What impact

does this change have on the rest of the budgeting process and the financing needs of the business? The impact of the various assumptions on the budget is quickly determined by the spreadsheet. Armed with these analyses, managers make more informed decisions about the impact of various projects. They also anticipate future problems and business opportunities. As seen in this chapter, budgeting is an excellent use of electronic spreadsheets.

before you go on...

Do it! Martian Company management wants to maintain a minimum monthly cash balance of $15,000. At the beginning of March, the cash balance is $16,500, expected cash receipts for March are $210,000, and cash disbursements are expected to be $220,000. How much cash, if any, must be borrowed to maintain the desired minimum monthly balance?

CASH BUDGET

Action Plan

- Write down the basic form of the cash budget, starting with the beginning cash balance, adding cash receipts for the period, deducting cash disbursements, and identifying the needed financing to achieve the desired minimum ending cash balance.
- Insert the data given into the outlined form of the cash budget.

Solution

MARTIAN COMPANY
Cash Budget
For the Month Ending March 31, 2012

Beginning cash balance	$ 16,500
Add: Cash receipts for March	210,000
Total available cash	226,500
Less: Cash disbursements for March	220,000
Excess of available cash over cash disbursements	6,500
Financing	8,500
Ending cash balance	$ 15,000

To maintain the desired minimum cash balance of $15,000, Martian Company must borrow $8,500 of cash.

Related exercise material: **BE20-9, Do it! 20-5, E20-13, E20-14, E20-15,** and **E20-16.**

the navigator

Budgeting in Nonmanufacturing Companies

Budgeting is not limited to manufacturers. Budgets are also used by merchandisers, service companies, and not-for-profit organizations.

study objective 6

Indicate the applicability of budgeting in nonmanufacturing companies.

MERCHANDISERS

As in manufacturing operations, the sales budget for a merchandiser is both the starting point and the key factor in the development of the master budget. The major differences between the master budgets of a merchandiser and a manufacturer are these:

1. A merchandiser **uses a merchandise purchases budget instead of a production budget**.
2. A merchandiser **does not use the manufacturing budgets (direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead)**.

The **merchandise purchases budget** shows the estimated cost of goods to be purchased to meet expected sales. The formula for determining budgeted merchandise purchases is:

Illustration 20-19
Merchandise purchases formula

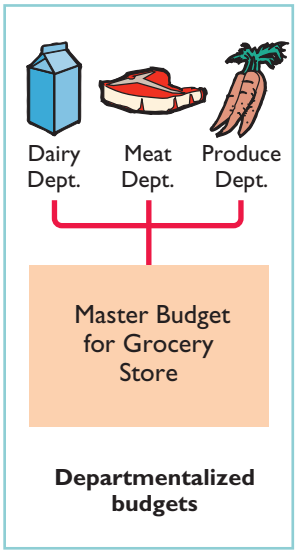
Budgeted Cost of Goods Sold	+	Desired Ending Merchandise Inventory	−	Beginning Merchandise Inventory	=	Required Merchandise Purchases

To illustrate, assume that the budget committee of Lima Company is preparing the merchandise purchases budget for July 2012. It estimates that budgeted sales will be $300,000 in July and $320,000 in August. Cost of goods sold is expected to be 70% of sales—that is, $210,000 in July (.70 × $300,000) and $224,000 in August (.70 × $320,000). The company's desired ending inventory is 30% of the following month's cost of goods sold. Required merchandise purchases for July are $214,200, computed as follows.

Illustration 20-20
Merchandise purchases budget

LIMA COMPANY
Merchandise Purchases Budget
For the Month Ending July 31, 2012

Budgeted cost of goods sold ($300,000 × 70%)	$ 210,000
Add: Desired ending merchandise inventory ($224,000 × 30%)	67,200
Total	277,200
Less: Beginning merchandise inventory ($210,000 × 30%)	63,000
Required merchandise purchases for July	**$214,200**



Departmentalized budgets

When a merchandiser is departmentalized, it prepares separate budgets for each department. For example, a grocery store prepares sales budgets and purchases budgets for each of its major departments, such as meats, dairy, and produce. The store then combines these budgets into a master budget for the store. When a retailer has branch stores, it prepares separate master budgets for each store. Then it incorporates these budgets into master budgets for the company as a whole.

SERVICE COMPANIES

In a service company, such as a public accounting firm, a law office, or a medical practice, the critical factor in budgeting is **coordinating professional staff needs with anticipated services**. If a firm is overstaffed, several problems may result: Labor costs are disproportionately high. Profits are lower because of the additional salaries. Staff turnover sometimes increases because of lack of challenging work. In contrast, if a service company is understaffed, it may lose revenue because existing and prospective client needs for service cannot be met. Also, professional staff may seek other jobs because of excessive work loads.

Service companies can obtain budget data for service revenue from **expected output** or **expected input**. When output is used, it is necessary to determine the expected billings of clients for services provided. In a public accounting firm, for example, output is the sum of its billings in auditing, tax, and consulting services. When input data are used, each professional staff member projects his

or her billable time. The firm then applies billing rates to billable time to produce expected service revenue.

NOT-FOR-PROFIT ORGANIZATIONS

Budgeting is just as important for not-for-profit organizations as for profit-oriented businesses. The budget process, however, is different. In most cases, not-for-profit entities budget **on the basis of cash flows (expenditures and receipts), rather than on a revenue and expense basis**. Further, the starting point in the process is usually expenditures, not receipts. For the not-for-profit entity, management's task generally is to find the receipts needed to support the planned expenditures. The activity index is also likely to be significantly different. For example, in a not-for-profit entity, such as a university, budgeted faculty positions may be based on full-time equivalent students or credit hours expected to be taught in a department.

For some governmental units, voters approve the budget. In other cases, such as state governments and the federal government, legislative approval is required. After the budget is adopted, it must be followed. Overspending is often illegal. In governmental budgets, authorizations tend to be on a line-by-line basis. That is, the budget for a municipality may have a specified authorization for police and fire protection, garbage collection, street paving, and so on. The line-item authorization of governmental budgets significantly limits the amount of discretion management can exercise. The city manager often cannot use savings from one line item, such as street paving, to cover increased spending in another line item, such as snow removal.

Service Company Insight

Budget Shortfalls as Far as the Eye Can See

All organizations need to stick to budgets. The Museum of Contemporary Art in Los Angeles learned this the hard way. Over a 10-year period, its endowment shrunk from $50 million to $6 million as its newly hired director strove to build the museum's reputation through spending. The director consistently ran budget deficits, which eventually threatened the museum's survival.

The most recent recession has created budgeting challenges for nearly all governmental agencies. Tax revenues dropped rapidly as earnings declined and unemployment skyrocketed. At the same time, sources of debt financing dried up. To meet a projected shortfall of nearly $50 billion, California proposed to cut the school year by five days, give state workers two unpaid days off per month, and raise the state's sales tax percentage. Even Princeton University, with the largest endowment per student of any U.S. university ($2 million per student), experienced a 25% drop in the value of its endowment when the financial markets plunged. Because the endowment supports 45% of the university's $1.25 billion budget, when the endowment fell the university had to make cuts. Many raises were capped at $2,000, administrative budgets were cut by 5%, and major construction projects were put on hold.

Sources: Edward Wyatt and Jori Finkel, "Soaring in Art, Museum Trips Over Finances," *Wall Street Journal Online* (December 4, 2008); Stu Woo, "California's Plans to Close Gap Become More Drastic," *Wall Street Journal Online* (January 8, 2009); John Hechinger, "Princeton Cuts Budget as Endowment Slides," *Wall Street Journal Online* (January 9, 2009).

? Why would a university's budgeted scholarships probably fall when the stock market suffers a serious drop? (See page 1076.)

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

The University of Wisconsin and its subunits must prepare budgets. One unique subunit of the University of Wisconsin is Babcock Ice Cream, a functioning producer of dairy products (and famous, at least on campus, for its delicious ice cream).

Assume that Babcock Ice Cream prepares monthly cash budgets. Relevant data from assumed operating budgets for 2012 are:

	January	February
Sales	$460,000	$412,000
Direct materials purchases	185,000	210,000
Direct labor	70,000	85,000
Manufacturing overhead	50,000	65,000
Selling and administrative expenses	85,000	95,000

Babcock sells its ice cream in shops on campus, as well as to local stores. Collections are expected to be 75% in the month of sale, and 25% in the month following sale. Babcock pays 60% of direct materials purchases in cash in the month of purchase, and the balance due in the month following the purchase. All other items above are paid in the month incurred. (Depreciation has been excluded from manufacturing overhead and selling and administrative expenses.)

Other data:

(1) Sales: December 2011, $320,000
(2) Purchases of direct materials: December 2011, $175,000
(3) Other receipts: January—Donation received, $2,000
February—Sale of used equipment, $4,000
(4) Other disbursements: February—Purchased equipment, $10,000
(5) Repaid debt: January, $30,000

The company's cash balance on January 1, 2012, is expected to be $50,000. The company wants to maintain a minimum cash balance of $45,000.

Instructions

(a) Prepare schedules for (1) expected collections from customers and (2) expected payments for direct materials purchases.
(b) Prepare a cash budget for January and February in columnar form.

Solution

(a) (1) **Expected Collections from Customers**

	January	February
December ($320,000)	$ 80,000	$ 0
January ($460,000)	345,000	115,000
February ($412,000)	0	309,000
Totals	$425,000	$424,000

(2) **Expected Payments for Direct Materials**

	January	February
December ($175,000)	$ 70,000	$ 0
January ($185,000)	111,000	74,000
February ($210,000)	0	126,000
Totals	$181,000	$200,000

(b)

BABCOCK ICE CREAM
Cash Budget
For the Two Months Ending February 28, 2012

	January	February
Beginning cash balance	$ 50,000	$ 61,000
Add: Receipts		
Collections from customers	425,000	424,000
Donations received	2,000	0
Sale of used equipment	0	4,000
Total receipts	427,000	428,000
Total available cash	477,000	489,000
Less: Disbursements		
Direct materials	181,000	200,000
Direct labor	70,000	85,000
Manufacturing overhead	50,000	65,000
Selling and administrative expenses	85,000	95,000
Purchase of equipment	0	10,000
Total disbursements	386,000	455,000
Excess (deficiency) of available cash over cash disbursements	91,000	34,000
Financing		
Borrowings	0	11,000
Repayments	30,000	0
Ending cash balance	$ 61,000	$ 45,000

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Indicate the benefits of budgeting. The primary advantages of budgeting are that it (a) requires management to plan ahead, (b) provides definite objectives for evaluating performance, (c) creates an early warning system for potential problems, (d) facilitates coordination of activities, (e) results in greater management awareness, and (f) motivates personnel to meet planned objectives.

2 State the essentials of effective budgeting. The essentials of effective budgeting are (a) sound organizational structure, (b) research and analysis, and (c) acceptance by all levels of management.

3 Identify the budgets that comprise the master budget. The master budget consists of the following budgets: (a) sales, (b) production, (c) direct materials, (d) direct labor, (e) manufacturing overhead, (f) selling and administrative expense, (g) budgeted income statement, (h) capital expenditure budget, (i) cash budget, and (j) budgeted balance sheet.

4 Describe the sources for preparing the budgeted income statement. The budgeted income statement is prepared from (a) the sales budget; (b) the budgets for direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead; and (c) the selling and administrative expense budget.

5 Explain the principal sections of a cash budget. The cash budget has three sections (receipts, disbursements, and financing) and the beginning and ending cash balances.

6 Indicate the applicability of budgeting in nonmanufacturing companies. Budgeting may be used by merchandisers for development of a merchandise purchases budget. In service companies, budgeting is a critical factor in coordinating staff needs with anticipated services. In not-for-profit organizations, the starting point in budgeting is usually expenditures, not receipts.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has the company met its targets for sales, production expenses, selling and administrative expenses, and net income?	Sales forecasts, inventory levels, projected materials, labor, overhead, and selling and administrative requirements	Master budget–a set of interrelated budgets including sales, production, materials, labor, overhead, and selling and administrative budgets	Results are favorable if revenues exceed budgeted amounts, or if expenses are less than budgeted amounts.
Is the company going to need to borrow funds in the coming quarter?	Beginning cash balance, cash receipts, cash disbursements, and desired cash balance	Cash budget	The company will need to borrow money if the cash budget indicates a projected cash deficiency of available cash over cash disbursements for the quarter.

Glossary

Budget *(p. 1032)* A formal written statement of management's plans for a specified future time period, expressed in financial terms.

Budget committee *(p. 1034)* A group responsible for coordinating the preparation of the budget.

Budgetary slack *(p. 1035)* The amount by which a manager intentionally underestimates budgeted revenues or overestimates budgeted expenses in order to make it easier to achieve budgetary goals.

Budgeted balance sheet *(p. 1049)* A projection of financial position at the end of the budget period.

Budgeted income statement *(p. 1044)* An estimate of the expected profitability of operations for the budget period.

Cash budget *(p. 1046)* A projection of anticipated cash flows.

Direct labor budget *(p. 1042)* A projection of the quantity and cost of direct labor necessary to meet production requirements.

Direct materials budget *(p. 1040)* An estimate of the quantity and cost of direct materials to be purchased.

Financial budgets *(p. 1036)* Individual budgets that focus primarily on the cash resources needed to fund expected operations and planned capital expenditures.

Long-range planning *(p. 1036)* A formalized process of selecting strategies to achieve long-term goals and developing policies and plans to implement the strategies.

Manufacturing overhead budget *(p. 1043)* An estimate of expected manufacturing overhead costs for the budget period.

Master budget *(p. 1036)* A set of interrelated budgets that constitutes a plan of action for a specific time period.

Merchandise purchases budget *(p. 1052)* The estimated cost of goods to be purchased by a merchandiser to meet expected sales.

Operating budgets *(p. 1036)* Individual budgets that result in a budgeted income statement.

Participative budgeting *(p. 1034)* A budgetary approach that starts with input from lower-level managers and works upward so that managers at all levels participate.

Production budget *(p. 1039)* A projection of the units that must be produced to meet anticipated sales.

Sales budget *(p. 1038)* An estimate of expected sales revenue for the budget period.

Sales forecast *(p. 1034)* The projection of potential sales for the industry and the company's expected share of such sales.

Selling and administrative expense budget *(p. 1044)* A projection of anticipated selling and administrative expenses for the budget period.

Comprehensive Do it!

Asheville Company is preparing its master budget for 2012. Relevant data pertaining to its sales and production budgets are as follows.

Sales: Sales for the year are expected to total 2,100,000 units. Quarterly sales, as a percentage of total sales, are 15%, 25%, 35%, and 25%, respectively. The sales price is expected to be $70 per unit for the first three quarters and $75 per unit beginning in

the fourth quarter. Sales in the first quarter of 2013 are expected to be 10% higher than the budgeted sales volume for the first quarter of 2012.

Production: Management desires to maintain ending finished goods inventories at 20% of the next quarter's budgeted sales volume.

Instructions

Prepare the sales budget and production budget by quarters for 2012.

Action Plan

- Know the form and content of the sales budget.
- Prepare the sales budget first as the basis for the other budgets.
- Determine the units that must be produced to meet anticipated sales.
- Know how to compute the beginning and ending finished goods units.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

ASHEVILLE COMPANY
Sales Budget
For the Year Ending December 31, 2012

	Quarter 1	Quarter 2	Quarter 3	Quarter 4	Year
Expected unit sales	315,000	525,000	735,000	525,000	2,100,000
Unit selling price	× $70	× $70	× $70	× $75	—
Total sales	$22,050,000	$36,750,000	$51,450,000	$39,375,000	$149,625,000

ASHEVILLE COMPANY
Production Budget
For the Year Ending December 31, 2012

	Quarter 1	Quarter 2	Quarter 3	Quarter 4	Year
Expected unit sales	315,000	525,000	735,000	525,000	
Add: Desired ending finished goods units	105,000	147,000	105,000	69,300[1]	
Total required units	420,000	672,000	840,000	594,300	
Less: Beginning finished goods units	63,000[2]	105,000	147,000	105,000	
Required production units	357,000	567,000	693,000	489,300	2,106,300

[1]Estimated first-quarter 2013 sales volume 315,000 + (315,000 × 10%) = 346,500; 346,500 × 20%.
[2]20% of estimated first-quarter 2012 sales units (315,000 × 20%).

the navigator

WILEY PLUS **Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS**

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 1076.

(SO 1) **1.** Which of the following is *not* a benefit of budgeting?
(a) Management can plan ahead.
(b) An early warning system is provided for potential problems.
(c) It enables disciplinary action to be taken at every level of responsibility.
(d) The coordination of activities is facilitated.

(SO 1) **2.** A budget:
(a) is the responsibility of management accountants.
(b) is the primary method of communicating agreed-upon objectives throughout an organization.
(c) ignores past performance because it represents management's plans for a future time period.
(d) may promote efficiency but has no role in evaluating performance.

3. The essentials of effective budgeting do *not* include: (SO 2)
(a) top-down budgeting.
(b) management acceptance.
(c) research and analysis.
(d) sound organizational structure.

4. Compared to budgeting, long-range planning generally has the: (SO 2)
(a) same amount of detail.
(b) longer time period.
(c) same emphasis.
(d) same time period.

(SO 3) **5.** A sales budget is:
(a) derived from the production budget.
(b) management's best estimate of sales revenue for the year.
(c) not the starting point for the master budget.
(d) prepared only for credit sales.

(SO 3) **6.** The formula for the production budget is budgeted sales in units plus:
(a) desired ending merchandise inventory less beginning merchandise inventory.
(b) beginning finished goods units less desired ending finished goods units.
(c) desired ending direct materials units less beginning direct materials units.
(d) desired ending finished goods units less beginning finished goods units.

(SO 3) **7.** Direct materials inventories are kept in pounds in Byrd Company, and the total pounds of direct materials needed for production is 9,500. If the beginning inventory is 1,000 pounds and the desired ending inventory is 2,200 pounds, the total pounds to be purchased is:
(a) 9,400.
(b) 9,500.
(c) 9,700.
(d) 10,700.

(SO 3) **8.** The formula for computing the direct labor budget is to multiply the direct labor cost per hour by the:
(a) total required direct labor hours.
(b) physical units to be produced.
(c) equivalent units to be produced.
(d) No correct answer is given.

(SO 4) **9.** Each of the following budgets is used in preparing the budgeted income statement *except* the:
(a) sales budget.
(b) selling and administrative budget.
(c) capital expenditure budget.
(d) direct labor budget.

(SO 4) **10.** The budgeted income statement is:
(a) the end-product of the operating budgets.
(b) the end-product of the financial budgets.
(c) the starting point of the master budget.
(d) dependent on cash receipts and cash disbursements.

11. The budgeted balance sheet is: (SO 5)
(a) developed from the budgeted balance sheet for the preceding year and the budgets for the current year.
(b) the last operating budget prepared.
(c) used to prepare the cash budget.
(d) All of the above.

12. The format of a cash budget is: (SO 5)
(a) Beginning cash balance + Cash receipts + Cash from financing − Cash disbursements = Ending cash balance.
(b) Beginning cash balance + Cash receipts − Cash disbursements +/− Financing = Ending cash balance.
(c) Beginning cash balance + Net income − Cash dividends = Ending cash balance.
(d) Beginning cash balance + Cash revenues − Cash expenses = Ending cash balance.

13. Expected direct materials purchases in Read Company are $70,000 in the first quarter and $90,000 in the second quarter. Forty percent of the purchases are paid in cash as incurred, and the balance is paid in the following quarter. The budgeted cash payments for purchases in the second quarter are: (SO 5)
(a) $96,000.
(b) $90,000.
(c) $78,000.
(d) $72,000.

14. The budget for a merchandiser differs from a budget for a manufacturer because: (SO 6)
(a) a merchandise purchases budget replaces the production budget.
(b) the manufacturing budgets are not applicable.
(c) None of the above.
(d) Both (a) and (b) above.

15. In most cases, not-for-profit entities: (SO 6)
(a) prepare budgets using the same steps as those used by profit-oriented businesses.
(b) know budgeted cash receipts at the beginning of a time period, so they budget only for expenditures.
(c) begin the budgeting process by budgeting expenditures rather than receipts.
(d) can ignore budgets because they are not expected to generate net income.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, for additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. (a) What is a budget?
(b) How does a budget contribute to good management?

2. Kate Cey and Joe Coulter are discussing the benefits of budgeting. They ask you to identify the primary advantages of budgeting. Comply with their request.

3. Jane Gilligan asks your help in understanding the essentials of effective budgeting. Identify the essentials for Jane.

4. (a) "Accounting plays a relatively unimportant role in budgeting." Do you agree? Explain.
(b) What responsibilities does management have in budgeting?

5. What criteria are helpful in determining the length of the budget period? What is the most common budget period?

6. Lori Wilkins maintains that the only difference between budgeting and long-range planning is time. Do you agree? Why or why not?

7. What is participative budgeting? What are its potential benefits? What are its potential disadvantages?

8. What is budgetary slack? What incentive do managers have to create budgetary slack?
9. Distinguish between a master budget and a sales forecast.
10. What budget is the starting point in preparing the master budget? What may result if this budget is inaccurate?
11. "The production budget shows both unit production data and unit cost data." Is this true? Explain.
12. Alou Company has 15,000 beginning finished goods units. Budgeted sales units are 160,000. If management desires 20,000 ending finished goods units, what are the required units of production?
13. In preparing the direct materials budget for Quan Company, management concludes that required purchases are 64,000 units. If 52,000 direct materials units are required in production and there are 7,000 units of beginning direct materials, what is the desired units of ending direct materials?
14. The production budget of Justus Company calls for 80,000 units to be produced. If it takes 30 minutes to make one unit and the direct labor rate is $16 per hour, what is the total budgeted direct labor cost?
15. Ortiz Company's manufacturing overhead budget shows total variable costs of $198,000 and total fixed costs of $162,000. Total production in units is expected to be 160,000. It takes 15 minutes to make one unit, and the direct labor rate is $15 per hour. Express the manufacturing overhead rate as (a) a percentage of direct labor cost, and (b) an amount per direct labor hour.
16. Everly Company's variable selling and administrative expenses are 10% of net sales. Fixed expenses are $50,000 per quarter. The sales budget shows expected sales of $200,000 and $250,000 in the first and second quarters, respectively. What are the total budgeted selling and administrative expenses for each quarter?
17. For Goody Company, the budgeted cost for one unit of product is direct materials $10, direct labor $20, and manufacturing overhead 90% of direct labor cost. If 25,000 units are expected to be sold at $69 each, what is the budgeted gross profit?
18. Indicate the supporting schedules used in preparing a budgeted income statement through gross profit for a manufacturer.
19. Identify the three sections of a cash budget. What balances are also shown in this budget?
20. Noterman Company has credit sales of $500,000 in January. Past experience suggests that 45% is collected in the month of sale, 50% in the month following the sale, and 5% in the second month following the sale. Compute the cash collections from January sales in January, February, and March.
21. What is the formula for determining required merchandise purchases for a merchandiser?
22. How may expected revenues in a service company be computed?

Brief Exercises

BE20-1 Chicksaw Manufacturing Company uses the following budgets: Balance Sheet, Capital Expenditure, Cash, Direct Labor, Direct Materials, Income Statement, Manufacturing Overhead, Production, Sales, and Selling and Administrative. Prepare a diagram of the interrelationships of the budgets in the master budget. Indicate whether each budget is an operating or a financial budget.

Prepare a diagram of a master budget. (SO 3), **AN**

BE20-2 Palermo Company estimates that unit sales will be 10,000 in quarter 1; 12,000 in quarter 2; 14,000 in quarter 3; and 18,000 in quarter 4. Using a sales price of $80 per unit, prepare the sales budget by quarters for the year ending December 31, 2012.

Prepare a sales budget. (SO 3), **AP**

BE20-3 Sales budget data for Palermo Company are given in BE20-2. Management desires to have an ending finished goods inventory equal to 20% of the next quarter's expected unit sales. Prepare a production budget by quarters for the first 6 months of 2012.

Prepare a production budget for 2 quarters. (SO 3), **AP**

BE20-4 Perine Company has 1,600 pounds of raw materials in its December 31, 2012, ending inventory. Required production for January and February of 2013 are 4,000 and 5,500 units, respectively. Two pounds of raw materials are needed for each unit, and the estimated cost per pound is $6. Management desires an ending inventory equal to 20% of next month's materials requirements. Prepare the direct materials budget for January.

Prepare a direct materials budget for 1 month. (SO 3), **AP**

BE20-5 For Mize Company, units to be produced are 5,000 in quarter 1 and 6,000 in quarter 2. It takes 1.5 hours to make a finished unit, and the expected hourly wage rate is $14 per hour. Prepare a direct labor budget by quarters for the 6 months ending June 30, 2012.

Prepare a direct labor budget for 2 quarters. (SO 3), **AP**

BE20-6 For Roche Inc., variable manufacturing overhead costs are expected to be $20,000 in the first quarter of 2012, with $4,000 increments in each of the remaining three quarters. Fixed overhead costs are estimated to be $35,000 in each quarter. Prepare the manufacturing overhead budget by quarters and in total for the year.

Prepare a manufacturing overhead budget. (SO 3), **AP**

Prepare a selling and administrative expense budget.
(SO 3), AP

BE20-7 Noble Company classifies its selling and administrative expense budget into variable and fixed components. Variable expenses are expected to be $25,000 in the first quarter, and $5,000 increments are expected in the remaining quarters of 2012. Fixed expenses are expected to be $40,000 in each quarter. Prepare the selling and administrative expense budget by quarters and in total for 2012.

Prepare a budgeted income statement for the year.
(SO 4), AP

BE20-8 North Company has completed all of its operating budgets. The sales budget for the year shows 50,000 units and total sales of $2,000,000. The total unit cost of making one unit of sales is $22. Selling and administrative expenses are expected to be $300,000. Income taxes are estimated to be $150,000. Prepare a budgeted income statement for the year ending December 31, 2012.

Prepare data for a cash budget.
(SO 5), AP

BE20-9 Bruno Industries expects credit sales for January, February, and March to be $200,000, $260,000, and $310,000, respectively. It is expected that 70% of the sales will be collected in the month of sale, and 30% will be collected in the following month. Compute cash collections from customers for each month.

Determine required merchandise purchases for 1 month.
(SO 6), AP

BE20-10 Moore Wholesalers is preparing its merchandise purchases budget. Budgeted sales are $400,000 for April and $475,000 for May. Cost of goods sold is expected to be 60% of sales. The company's desired ending inventory is 20% of the following month's cost of goods sold. Compute the required purchases for April.

Do it! Review

Identify budget terminology.
(SO 2, 3), K

Do it! 20-1 Use this list of terms to complete the sentences that follow.

Long-range plans	Participative budgeting
Sales forecast	Operating budgets
Master budget	Financial budgets

1. _____ establish goals for the company's sales and production personnel.
2. The _____ is a set of interrelated budgets that constitutes a plan of action for a specified time period.
3. _____ reduces the risk of having unrealistic budgets.
4. _____ include the cash budget and the budgeted balance sheet.
5. The budget is formed within the framework of a _____.
6. _____ contain considerably less detail than budgets.

Production budget.
(SO 3), AP

Do it! 20-2 Zeller Company estimates that 2012 unit sales will be 18,000 in quarter 1, 24,000 in quarter 2, and 30,000 in quarter 3, at a unit selling price of $20. Management desires to have ending finished goods inventory equal to 10% of the next quarter's expected unit sales. Prepare a production budget by quarter for the first 6 months of 2012.

Prepare sales, production, and direct materials budgets.
(SO 3), AP

Do it! 20-3 Ash Creek Company is preparing its master budget for 2012. Relevant data pertaining to its sales, production, and direct materials budgets are as follows.

Sales: Sales for the year are expected to total 1,000,000 units. Quarterly sales are 20%, 25%, 25%, and 30%, respectively. The sales price is expected to be $40 per unit for the first three quarters and $45 per unit beginning in the fourth quarter. Sales in the first quarter of 2013 are expected to be 10% higher than the budgeted sales for the first quarter of 2012.

Production: Management desires to maintain the ending finished goods inventories at 20% of the next quarter's budgeted sales volume.

Direct materials: Each unit requires 2 pounds of raw materials at a cost of $10 per pound. Management desires to maintain raw materials inventories at 10% of the next quarter's production requirements. Assume the production requirements for first quarter of 2013 are 500,000 pounds.

Prepare the sales, production, and direct materials budgets by quarters for 2012.

Calculate budgeted total unit cost and prepare budgeted income statement.
(SO 4), AP

Do it! 20-4 Ash Creek Company is preparing its budgeted income statement for 2012. Relevant data pertaining to its sales, production, and direct materials budgets can be found in Do it! 20-3.

In addition, Ash Creek budgets 0.3 hours of direct labor per unit, labor costs at $14 per hour, and manufacturing overhead at $20 per direct labor hour. Its budgeted selling and administrative expenses for 2012 are $7,000,000.

(a) Calculate the budgeted total unit cost.
(b) Prepare the budgeted income statement for 2012.

Do it! 20-5 Batista Company management wants to maintain a minimum monthly cash balance of $20,000. At the beginning of April, the cash balance is $22,000, expected cash receipts for April are $245,000, and cash disbursements are expected to be $256,000. How much cash, if any, must be borrowed to maintain the desired minimum monthly balance?

Determine amount of financing needed.
(SO 5), **AP**

Exercises

E20-1 Adler Company has always done some planning for the future, but the company has never prepared a formal budget. Now that the company is growing larger, it is considering preparing a budget.

Explain the concept of budgeting.
(SO 1, 2, 3), **C**

Instructions
Write a memo to Jim Dixon, the president of Adler Company, in which you define budgeting, identify the budgets that comprise the master budget, identify the primary benefits of budgeting, and discuss the essentials of effective budgeting.

E20-2 Edington Electronics Inc. produces and sells two models of pocket calculators, XQ-103 and XQ-104. The calculators sell for $12 and $25, respectively. Because of the intense competition Edington faces, management budgets sales semiannually. Its projections for the first 2 quarters of 2012 are as follows.

Prepare a sales budget for 2 quarters.
(SO 3), **AP**

	Unit Sales	
Product	**Quarter 1**	**Quarter 2**
XQ-103	20,000	25,000
XQ-104	12,000	15,000

No changes in selling prices are anticipated.

Instructions
Prepare a sales budget for the 2 quarters ending June 30, 2012. List the products and show for each quarter and for the 6 months, units, selling price, and total sales by product and in total.

E20-3 Garza and Neely, CPAs, are preparing their service revenue (sales) budget for the coming year (2012). The practice is divided into three departments: auditing, tax, and consulting. Billable hours for each department, by quarter, are provided below.

Prepare a sales budget for four quarters.
(SO 3, 6), **AP**

Department	Quarter 1	Quarter 2	Quarter 3	Quarter 4
Auditing	2,200	1,600	2,000	2,400
Tax	3,000	2,400	2,000	2,500
Consulting	1,500	1,500	1,500	1,500

Average hourly billing rates are: auditing $80, tax $90, and consulting $100.

Instructions
Prepare the service revenue (sales) budget for 2012 by listing the departments and showing for each quarter and the year in total, billable hours, billable rate, and total revenue.

E20-4 Turney Company produces and sells automobile batteries, the heavy-duty HD-240. The 2012 sales forecast is as follows.

Prepare quarterly production budgets.
(SO 3), **AP**

Quarter	HD-240
1	5,000
2	7,000
3	8,000
4	10,000

The January 1, 2012, inventory of HD-240 is 2,500 units. Management desires an ending inventory each quarter equal to 50% of the next quarter's sales. Sales in the first quarter of 2013 are expected to be 30% higher than sales in the same quarter in 2012.

Instructions
Prepare quarterly production budgets for each quarter and in total for 2012.

Prepare a direct materials purchases budget.
(SO 3), AP

E20-5 Dallas Industries has adopted the following production budget for the first 4 months of 2013.

Month	Units	Month	Units
January	10,000	March	5,000
February	8,000	April	4,000

Each unit requires 3 pounds of raw materials costing $2 per pound. On December 31, 2012, the ending raw materials inventory was 9,000 pounds. Management wants to have a raw materials inventory at the end of the month equal to 30% of next month's production requirements.

Instructions
Prepare a direct materials purchases budget by month for the first quarter.

Prepare production and direct materials budgets by quarters for 6 months.
(SO 3), AP

E20-6 On January 1, 2013, the Hardin Company budget committee has reached agreement on the following data for the 6 months ending June 30, 2013.

Sales units:	First quarter 5,000; second quarter 6,000; third quarter 7,000
Ending raw materials inventory:	50% of the next quarter's production requirements
Ending finished goods inventory:	30% of the next quarter's expected sales units
Third-quarter production:	7,250 units

The ending raw materials and finished goods inventories at December 31, 2012, follow the same percentage relationships to production and sales that occur in 2013. Three pounds of raw materials are required to make each unit of finished goods. Raw materials purchased are expected to cost $4 per pound.

Instructions
(a) Prepare a production budget by quarters for the 6-month period ended June 30, 2013.
(b) Prepare a direct materials budget by quarters for the 6-month period ended June 30, 2013.

Prepare raw materials purchase budget in dollars.
(SO 3), AP

E20-7 Chandler Ltd. estimates sales for the second quarter of 2012 will be as follows.

Month	Units
April	2,550
May	2,475
June	2,390

The target ending inventory of finished products is as follows.

March 31	2,000
April 30	2,230
May 31	2,190
June 30	2,310

Two units of material are required for each unit of finished product. Production for July is estimated at 2,700 units to start building inventory for the fall sales period. Chandler's policy is to have an inventory of raw materials at the end of each month equal to 60% of the following month's production requirements.

Raw materials are expected to cost $4 per unit throughout the period.

Instructions
Calculate the May raw materials purchases in dollars.

(CGA adapted)

Prepare a direct labor budget.
(SO 3), AP

E20-8 Rodriguez, Inc., is preparing its direct labor budget for 2012 from the following production budget based on a calendar year.

Quarter	Units	Quarter	Units
1	20,000	3	35,000
2	25,000	4	30,000

Each unit requires 1.6 hours of direct labor.

Instructions
Prepare a direct labor budget for 2012. Wage rates are expected to be $15 for the first 2 quarters and $16 for quarters 3 and 4.

E20-9 Donnegal Company makes and sells artistic frames for pictures. The controller is responsible for preparing the master budget and has accumulated the following information for 2012.

Prepare production and direct labor budgets.
(SO 3), **AP**

	January	February	March	April	May
Estimated unit sales	10,000	12,000	8,000	9,000	9,000
Sales price per unit	$50.00	$47.50	$47.50	$47.50	$47.50
Direct labor hours per unit	2.0	2.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
Wage per direct labor hour	$8.00	$8.00	$8.00	$9.00	$9.00

Donnegal has a labor contract that calls for a wage increase to $9.00 per hour on April 1. New labor-saving machinery has been installed and will be fully operational by March 1.

Donnegal expects to begin the year with 16,000 frames on hand and has a policy of carrying an end-of-month inventory of 100% of the following month's sales, plus 50% of the second following month's sales.

Instructions
Prepare a production budget and a direct labor budget for Donnegal Company by month and for the first quarter of the year. The direct labor budget should include direct labor hours.

(CMA-Canada adapted)

E20-10 Atlanta Company is preparing its manufacturing overhead budget for 2012. Relevant data consist of the following.

Prepare a manufacturing overhead budget for the year.
(SO 3), **AP**

Units to be produced (by quarters): 10,000, 12,000, 14,000, 16,000.
Direct labor: Time is 1.5 hours per unit.
Variable overhead costs per direct labor hour: Indirect materials $0.70; indirect labor $1.20; and maintenance $0.50.
Fixed overhead costs per quarter: Supervisory salaries $35,000; depreciation $16,000; and maintenance $12,000.

Instructions
Prepare the manufacturing overhead budget for the year, showing quarterly data.

E20-11 Duncan Company combines its operating expenses for budget purposes in a selling and administrative expense budget. For the first 6 months of 2012, the following data are available.

Prepare a selling and administrative expense budget for 2 quarters.
(SO 3), **AP**

1. Sales: 20,000 units quarter 1; 22,000 units quarter 2.
2. Variable costs per dollar of sales: Sales commissions 5%, delivery expense 2%, and advertising 3%.
3. Fixed costs per quarter: Sales salaries $10,000, office salaries $6,000, depreciation $4,200, insurance $1,500, utilities $800, and repairs expense $600.
4. Unit selling price: $20.

Instructions
Prepare a selling and administrative expense budget by quarters for the first 6 months of 2012.

E20-12 Fuqua Company's sales budget projects unit sales of part 198Z of 10,000 units in January, 12,000 units in February, and 13,000 units in March. Each unit of part 198Z requires 2 pounds of materials, which cost $3 per pound. Fuqua Company desires its ending raw materials inventory to equal 40% of the next month's production requirements, and its ending finished goods inventory to equal 25% of the next month's expected unit sales. These goals were met at December 31, 2011.

Prepare a production and a direct materials budget.
(SO 3), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Prepare a production budget for January and February 2012.
(b) Prepare a direct materials budget for January 2012.

E20-13 Dalby Company has accumulated the following budget data for the year 2012.

Prepare a budgeted income statement for the year.
(SO 3, 4), **AP**

1. Sales: 30,000 units, unit selling price $80.
2. Cost of one unit of finished goods: Direct materials 2 pounds at $5 per pound, direct labor 3 hours at $12 per hour, and manufacturing overhead $6 per direct labor hour.

3. Inventories (raw materials only): Beginning, 10,000 pounds; ending, 15,000 pounds.
4. Raw materials cost: $5 per pound.
5. Selling and administrative expenses: $200,000.
6. Income taxes: 30% of income before income taxes.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a schedule showing the computation of cost of goods sold for 2012.
(b) Prepare a budgeted income statement for 2012.

Prepare a cash budget for 2 months.
(SO 5), AP

E20-14 Danner Company expects to have a cash balance of $46,000 on January 1, 2012. Relevant monthly budget data for the first 2 months of 2012 are as follows.

Collections from customers: January $85,000, February $150,000.

Payments for direct materials: January $50,000, February $70,000.

Direct labor: January $30,000, February $45,000. Wages are paid in the month they are incurred.

Manufacturing overhead: January $21,000, February $25,000. These costs include depreciation of $1,000 per month. All other overhead costs are paid as incurred.

Selling and administrative expenses: January $15,000, February $20,000. These costs are exclusive of depreciation. They are paid as incurred.

Sales of marketable securities in January are expected to realize $10,000 in cash. Danner Company has a line of credit at a local bank that enables it to borrow up to $25,000. The company wants to maintain a minimum monthly cash balance of $20,000.

Instructions

Prepare a cash budget for January and February.

Prepare a cash budget.
(SO 5), AP

E20-15 Aaron Corporation is projecting a cash balance of $31,000 in its December 31, 2011, balance sheet. Aaron's schedule of expected collections from customers for the first quarter of 2012 shows total collections of $180,000. The schedule of expected payments for direct materials for the first quarter of 2012 shows total payments of $41,000. Other information gathered for the first quarter of 2012 is: sale of equipment $3,500; direct labor $70,000, manufacturing overhead $35,000, selling and administrative expenses $45,000; and purchase of securities $12,000. Aaron wants to maintain a balance of at least $25,000 cash at the end of each quarter.

Instructions

Prepare a cash budget for the first quarter.

Prepare cash budget for a month.
(SO 5), AN

E20-16 The controller of Trenshaw Company wants to improve the company's control system by preparing a month-by-month cash budget. The following information is for the month ending July 31, 2012.

June 30, 2012, cash balance	$45,000
Dividends to be declared on July 15*	12,000
Cash expenditures to be paid in July for operating expenses	36,800
Amortization expense in July	4,500
Cash collections to be received in July	89,000
Merchandise purchases to be paid in cash in July	56,200
Equipment to be purchased for cash in July	20,500

*Dividends are payable 30 days after declaration to shareholders of record on the declaration date.

Trenshaw Company wants to keep a minimum cash balance of $25,000.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a cash budget for the month ended July 31, 2012, and indicate how much money, if any, Trenshaw Company will need to borrow to meet its minimum cash requirement.
(b) Explain how cash budgeting can reduce the cost of short-term borrowing.

(CGA adapted)

Prepare schedules of expected collections and payments.
(SO 5), AP

E20-17 LRF Company's budgeted sales and direct materials purchases are as follows.

	Budgeted Sales	Budgeted D.M. Purchases
January	$200,000	$30,000
February	220,000	35,000
March	270,000	41,000

LRF's sales are 40% cash and 60% credit. Credit sales are collected 10% in the month of sale, 50% in the month following sale, and 36% in the second month following sale; 4% are uncollectible. LRF's purchases are 50% cash and 50% on account. Purchases on account are paid 40% in the month of purchase, and 60% in the month following purchase.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a schedule of expected collections from customers for March.
(b) Prepare a schedule of expected payments for direct materials for March.

E20-18 Green Landscaping Inc. is preparing its budget for the first quarter of 2012. The next step in the budgeting process is to prepare a cash receipts schedule and a cash payments schedule. To that end the following information has been collected.

Prepare schedules for cash receipts and cash payments, and determine ending balances for balance sheet.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

Clients usually pay 60% of their fee in the month that service is provided, 30% the month after, and 10% the second month after receiving service.

Actual service revenue for 2011 and expected service revenues for 2012 are: November 2011, $90,000; December 2011, $80,000; January 2012, $100,000; February 2012, $120,000; March 2012, $130,000.

Purchases of landscaping supplies (direct materials) are paid 40% in the month of purchase and 60% the following month. Actual purchases for 2011 and expected purchases for 2012 are: December 2011, $14,000; January 2012, $12,000; February 2012, $15,000; March 2012, $18,000.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the following schedules for each month in the first quarter of 2012 and for the quarter in total:
  (1) Expected collections from clients.
  (2) Expected payments for landscaping supplies.
(b) Determine the following balances at March 31, 2012:
  (1) Accounts receivable.
  (2) Accounts payable.

E20-19 Lager Dental Clinic is a medium-sized dental service specializing in family dental care. The clinic is currently preparing the master budget for the first 2 quarters of 2012. All that remains in this process is the cash budget. The following information has been collected from other portions of the master budget and elsewhere.

Prepare a cash budget for two quarters.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

Beginning cash balance	$ 30,000
Required minimum cash balance	25,000
Payment of income taxes (2nd quarter)	4,000
Professional salaries:	
1st quarter	140,000
2nd quarter	140,000
Interest from investments (2nd quarter)	5,000
Overhead costs:	
1st quarter	75,000
2nd quarter	100,000
Selling and administrative costs, including $3,000 depreciation:	
1st quarter	50,000
2nd quarter	70,000
Purchase of equipment (2nd quarter)	50,000
Sale of equipment (1st quarter)	15,000
Collections from clients:	
1st quarter	230,000
2nd quarter	380,000
Interest payments (2nd quarter)	300

Instructions

Prepare a cash budget for each of the first two quarters of 2012.

E20-20 In May 2012, the budget committee of Grand Stores assembles the following data in preparation of budgeted merchandise purchases for the month of June.

Prepare a purchases budget and budgeted income statement for a merchandiser.
(SO 6), **AP**

1. Expected sales: June $500,000, July $600,000.
2. Cost of goods sold is expected to be 70% of sales.

3. Desired ending merchandise inventory is 40% of the following (next) month's cost of goods sold.
4. The beginning inventory at June 1 will be the desired amount.

Instructions

(a) Compute the budgeted merchandise purchases for June.
(b) Prepare the budgeted income statement for June through gross profit.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Prepare budgeted income statement and supporting budgets.
(SO 3, 4), **AP**

P20-1A Glendo Farm Supply Company manufactures and sells a pesticide called Snare. The following data are available for preparing budgets for Snare for the first 2 quarters of 2013.

1. Sales: Quarter 1, 28,000 bags; quarter 2, 42,000 bags. Selling price is $60 per bag.
2. Direct materials: Each bag of Snare requires 4 pounds of Gumm at a cost of $4 per pound and 6 pounds of Tarr at $1.50 per pound.
3. Desired inventory levels:

Type of Inventory	January 1	April 1	July 1
Snare (bags)	8,000	12,000	18,000
Gumm (pounds)	9,000	10,000	13,000
Tarr (pounds)	14,000	20,000	25,000

4. Direct labor: Direct labor time is 15 minutes per bag at an hourly rate of $14 per hour.
5. Selling and administrative expenses are expected to be 15% of sales plus $175,000 per quarter.
6. Income taxes are expected to be 30% of income from operations.

Your assistant has prepared two budgets: (1) The manufacturing overhead budget shows expected costs to be 150% of direct labor cost. (2) The direct materials budget for Tarr shows the cost of Tarr purchases to be $297,000 in quarter 1 and $439,500 in quarter 2.

Instructions

Net income $600,250
Cost per bag $33.75

Prepare the budgeted income statement for the first 6 months and all required operating budgets by quarters. (*Note:* Use variable and fixed in the selling and administrative expense budget.) Do not prepare the manufacturing overhead budget or the direct materials budget for Tarr.

Prepare sales, production, direct materials, direct labor, and income statement budgets.
(SO 3, 4), **AP**

P20-2A Deleon Inc. is preparing its annual budgets for the year ending December 31, 2013. Accounting assistants furnish the data shown below.

	Product JB 50	Product JB 60
Sales budget:		
Anticipated volume in units	400,000	200,000
Unit selling price	$20	$25
Production budget:		
Desired ending finished goods units	25,000	15,000
Beginning finished goods units	30,000	10,000
Direct materials budget:		
Direct materials per unit (pounds)	2	3
Desired ending direct materials pounds	30,000	15,000
Beginning direct materials pounds	40,000	10,000
Cost per pound	$3	$4
Direct labor budget:		
Direct labor time per unit	0.4	0.6
Direct labor rate per hour	$12	$12
Budgeted income statement:		
Total unit cost	$12	$21

An accounting assistant has prepared the detailed manufacturing overhead budget and the selling and administrative expense budget. The latter shows selling expenses of $660,000 for product JB 50 and $360,000 for product JB 60, and administrative expenses of $540,000 for product JB 50 and $340,000 for product JB 60. Income taxes are expected to be 30%.

(a) Total sales $13,000,000
(b) Required production units: JB 50, 395,000 JB 60, 205,000
(c) Total cost of direct materials purchases $4,820,000
(d) Total direct labor cost $3,372,000
(e) Net income $1,470,000

Instructions

Prepare the following budgets for the year. Show data for each product. Quarterly budgets should not be prepared.

(a) Sales
(b) Production
(c) Direct materials
(d) Direct labor
(e) Income statement (*Note:* Income taxes are not allocated to the products.)

P20-3A Marsh Industries had sales in 2012 of $6,400,000 and gross profit of $1,100,000. Management is considering two alternative budget plans to increase its gross profit in 2013.

Prepare sales and production budgets and compute cost per unit under two plans. (SO 3, 4), **E**

Plan A would increase the selling price per unit from $8.00 to $8.40. Sales volume would decrease by 5% from its 2012 level. Plan B would decrease the selling price per unit by $0.50. The marketing department expects that the sales volume would increase by 150,000 units.

At the end of 2012, Marsh has 40,000 units of inventory on hand. If Plan A is accepted, the 2013 ending inventory should be equal to 5% of the 2013 sales. If Plan B is accepted, the ending inventory should be equal to 50,000 units. Each unit produced will cost $1.80 in direct labor, $1.25 in direct materials, and $1.20 in variable overhead. The fixed overhead for 2013 should be $1,895,000.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a sales budget for 2013 under each plan.
(b) Prepare a production budget for 2013 under each plan.
(c) Compute the production cost per unit under each plan. Why is the cost per unit different for each of the two plans? (Round to two decimals.)
(d) Which plan should be accepted? (*Hint:* Compute the gross profit under each plan.)

(c) Unit cost: Plan A $6.75
Plan B $6.22
(d) Gross profit:
Plan A $1,254,000
Plan B $1,216,000

P20-4A Colter Company prepares monthly cash budgets. Relevant data from operating budgets for 2013 are:

Prepare cash budget for 2 months. (SO 5), **AP**

	January	February
Sales	$350,000	$400,000
Direct materials purchases	110,000	130,000
Direct labor	90,000	100,000
Manufacturing overhead	70,000	75,000
Selling and administrative expenses	79,000	86,000

All sales are on account. Collections are expected to be 50% in the month of sale, 30% in the first month following the sale, and 20% in the second month following the sale. Sixty percent (60%) of direct materials purchases are paid in cash in the month of purchase, and the balance due is paid in the month following the purchase. All other items above are paid in the month incurred except for selling and administrative expenses that include $1,000 of depreciation per month.

Other data:

1. Credit sales: November 2012, $260,000; December 2012, $320,000.
2. Purchases of direct materials: December 2012, $100,000.
3. Other receipts: January—Collection of December 31, 2012, notes receivable $15,000;
   February—Proceeds from sale of securities $6,000.
4. Other disbursements: February—Withdrawal of $5,000 cash for personal use of owner, Nick Haniwall.

The company's cash balance on January 1, 2013, is expected to be $60,000. The company wants to maintain a minimum cash balance of $50,000.

(a) January: collections $323,000
payments $106,000
(b) Ending cash balance:
January $54,000
February $50,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare schedules for (1) expected collections from customers and (2) expected payments for direct materials purchases.
(b) Prepare a cash budget for January and February in columnar form.

P20-5A The budget committee of Litwin Company collects the following data for its San Miguel Store in preparing budgeted income statements for May and June 2013.

Prepare purchases and income statement budgets for a merchandiser. (SO 6), **AP**

1. Sales for May are expected to be $800,000. Sales in June and July are expected to be 10% higher than the preceding month.

2. Cost of goods sold is expected to be 75% of sales.
3. Company policy is to maintain ending merchandise inventory at 20% of the following month's cost of goods sold.
4. Operating expenses are estimated to be:

Sales salaries	$30,000 per month
Advertising	5% of monthly sales
Delivery expense	3% of monthly sales
Sales commissions	4% of monthly sales
Rent expense	$5,000 per month
Depreciation	$800 per month
Utilities	$600 per month
Insurance	$500 per month

5. Income taxes are estimated to be 30% of income from operations.

(a) Purchases:
May $612,000
June $673,200
(b) Net income:
May $46,970
June $54,250

Instructions

(a) Prepare the merchandise purchases budget for each month in columnar form.
(b) Prepare budgeted income statements for each month in columnar form. Show in the statements the details of cost of goods sold.

Prepare budgeted income statement and balance sheet.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

P20-6A Krause Industries' balance sheet at December 31, 2012, is presented below.

KRAUSE INDUSTRIES
Balance Sheet
December 31, 2012

Assets

Current assets		
Cash		$ 7,500
Accounts receivable		82,500
Finished goods inventory (2,000 units)		30,000
Total current assets		120,000
Property, plant, and equipment		
Equipment	$40,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation	10,000	30,000
Total assets		$150,000

Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity

Liabilities		
Notes payable		$ 25,000
Accounts payable		45,000
Total liabilities		70,000
Stockholders' equity		
Common stock	$50,000	
Retained earnings	30,000	
Total stockholders' equity		80,000
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity		$150,000

Additional information accumulated for the budgeting process is as follows.

Budgeted data for the year 2013 include the following.

	4th Qtr. of 2013	Year 2013 Total
Sales budget (8,000 units at $35)	$84,000	$280,000
Direct materials used	17,000	69,400
Direct labor	12,500	56,600
Manufacturing overhead applied	10,000	54,000
Selling and administrative expenses	18,000	76,000

To meet sales requirements and to have 3,000 units of finished goods on hand at December 31, 2013, the production budget shows 9,000 required units of output. The total unit cost of production is expected to be $20. Krause Industries uses the first-in, first-out (FIFO) inventory costing method. Selling and administrative expenses include $4,000 for depreciation on equipment. Interest expense is expected to be $3,500 for the year. Income taxes are expected to be 30% of income before income taxes.

All sales and purchases are on account. It is expected that 60% of quarterly sales are collected in cash within the quarter and the remainder is collected in the following quarter. Direct materials purchased from suppliers are paid 50% in the quarter incurred and the remainder in the following quarter. Purchases in the fourth quarter were the same as the materials used. In 2013, the company expects to purchase additional equipment costing $19,000. It expects to pay $8,000 on notes payable plus all interest due and payable to December 31 (included in interest expense $3,500, above). Accounts payable at December 31, 2013, includes amounts due suppliers (see above) plus other accounts payable of $5,700. In 2013, the company expects to declare and pay a $5,000 cash dividend. Unpaid income taxes at December 31 will be $5,000. The company's cash budget shows an expected cash balance of $7,950 at December 31, 2013.

Instructions

Prepare a budgeted income statement for 2013 and a budgeted balance sheet at December 31, 2013. In preparing the income statement, you will need to compute cost of goods manufactured (direct materials + direct labor + manufacturing overhead) and finished goods inventory (December 31, 2013).

Net income $35,350
Total assets $146,550

Problems: Set B

P20-1B Mercer Farm Supply Company manufactures and sells a fertilizer called Basic II. The following data are available for preparing budgets for Basic II for the first 2 quarters of 2012.

Prepare budgeted income statement and supporting budgets.
(SO 3, 4), **AP**

1. Sales: Quarter 1, 40,000 bags; quarter 2, 50,000 bags. Selling price is $65 per bag.
2. Direct materials: Each bag of Basic II requires 6 pounds of Crup at a cost of $4 per pound and 10 pounds of Dert at $1.50 per pound.
3. Desired inventory levels:

Type of Inventory	January 1	April 1	July 1
Basic II (bags)	10,000	15,000	20,000
Crup (pounds)	9,000	12,000	15,000
Dert (pounds)	15,000	20,000	25,000

4. Direct labor: Direct labor time is 15 minutes per bag at an hourly rate of $10 per hour.
5. Selling and administrative expenses are expected to be 10% of sales plus $160,000 per quarter.
6. Income taxes are expected to be 30% of income from operations.

Your assistant has prepared two budgets: (1) The manufacturing overhead budget shows expected costs to be 100% of direct labor cost. (2) The direct materials budget for Dert which shows the cost of Dert to be $682,500 in quarter 1 and $832,500 in quarter 2.

Instructions

Prepare the budgeted income statement for the first 6 months of 2012 and all required supporting budgets by quarters. (*Note:* Use variable and fixed in the selling and administrative expense budget.) Do not prepare the manufacturing overhead budget or the direct materials budget for Dert.

Net income $689,500
Cost per bag $44.00

P20-2B Urbina Inc. is preparing its annual budgets for the year ending December 31, 2012. Accounting assistants furnish the following data.

Prepare sales, production, direct materials, direct labor, and income statement budgets.
(SO 3, 4), **AP**

	Product LN 35	Product LN 40
Sales budget:		
Anticipated volume in units	400,000	240,000
Unit selling price	$25	$35
Production budget:		
Desired ending finished goods units	30,000	25,000
Beginning finished goods units	20,000	15,000
Direct materials budget:		
Direct materials per unit (pounds)	2	3
Desired ending direct materials pounds	50,000	20,000
Beginning direct materials pounds	40,000	10,000
Cost per pound	$2	$3
Direct labor budget:		
Direct labor time per unit	0.5	0.75
Direct labor rate per hour	$12	$12
Budgeted income statement:		
Total unit cost	$11	$20

An accounting assistant has prepared the detailed manufacturing overhead budget and the selling and administrative expense budget. The latter shows selling expenses of $750,000 for product LN 35 and $590,000 for product LN 40, and administrative expenses of $420,000 for product LN 35 and $380,000 for product LN 40. Income taxes are expected to be 30%.

(a) Total sales $18,400,000
(b) Required production units: LN 35, 410,000
(c) Total cost of direct materials purchases $3,940,000
(d) Total direct labor cost $4,710,000
(e) Net income $4,942,000

Instructions

Prepare the following budgets for the year. Show data for each product. You do not need to prepare quarterly budgets.

(a) Sales
(b) Production
(c) Direct materials
(d) Direct labor
(e) Income statement (*Note:* Income taxes are not allocated to the products.)

Prepare sales and production budgets and compute cost per unit under two plans.
(SO 3, 4), **E**

P20-3B Ogleby Industries has sales in 2012 of $5,600,000 (800,000 units) and gross profit of $1,344,000. Management is considering two alternative budget plans to increase its gross profit in 2013.

Plan A would increase the selling price per unit from $7.00 to $7.60. Sales volume would decrease by 10% from its 2012 level. Plan B would decrease the selling price per unit by 5%. The marketing department expects that the sales volume would increase by 100,000 units.

At the end of 2012, Ogleby has 70,000 units on hand. If Plan A is accepted, the 2013 ending inventory should be equal to 90,000 units. If Plan B is accepted, the ending inventory should be equal to 100,000 units. Each unit produced will cost $2.00 in direct materials, $1.50 in direct labor, and $0.50 in variable overhead. The fixed overhead for 2013 should be $925,000.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a sales budget for 2013 under (1) Plan A and (2) Plan B.
(b) Prepare a production budget for 2013 under (1) Plan A and (2) Plan B.
(c) Compute the cost per unit under (1) Plan A and (2) Plan B. Explain why the cost per unit is different for each of the two plans. (Round to two decimals.)
(d) Which plan should be accepted? (*Hint:* Compute the gross profit under each plan.)

(c) Unit cost: Plan A $5.25
Plan B $4.99
(d) Gross profit: Plan A $1,692,000
Plan B $1,494,000

Prepare cash budget for 2 months.
(SO 5), **AP**

P20-4B Derby Company prepares monthly cash budgets. Relevant data from operating budgets for 2013 are:

	January	February
Sales	$350,000	$400,000
Direct materials purchases	120,000	110,000
Direct labor	85,000	115,000
Manufacturing overhead	60,000	75,000
Selling and administrative expenses	75,000	80,000

All sales are on account. Collections are expected to be 60% in the month of sale, 30% in the first month following the sale, and 10% in the second month following the sale.

Thirty percent (30%) of direct materials purchases are paid in cash in the month of purchase, and the balance due is paid in the month following the purchase. All other items above are paid in the month incurred. Depreciation has been excluded from manufacturing overhead and selling and administrative expenses.

Other data:

1. Credit sales: November 2012, $200,000; December 2012, $280,000.
2. Purchases of direct materials: December 2012, $90,000.
3. Other receipts: January—Collection of December 31, 2012, interest receivable $3,000;
   February—Proceeds from sale of securities $5,000.
4. Other disbursements: February—payment of $20,000 for land.

The company's cash balance on January 1, 2013, is expected to be $50,000. The company wants to maintain a minimum cash balance of $40,000.

Instructions

(a) Prepare schedules for (1) expected collections from customers and (2) expected payments for direct materials purchases.
(b) Prepare a cash budget for January and February in columnar form.

(a) January: collections $314,000
payments $99,000
(b) Ending cash balance:
January $48,000
February $40,000

P20-5B The budget committee of Widner Company collects the following data for its Westwood Store in preparing budgeted income statements for July and August 2012.

Prepare purchases and income statement budgets for a merchandiser.
(SO 6), **AP**

1. Expected sales: July $400,000, August $450,000, September $500,000.
2. Cost of goods sold is expected to be 60% of sales.
3. Company policy is to maintain ending merchandise inventory at 20% of the following month's cost of goods sold.
4. Operating expenses are estimated to be:

Sales salaries	$50,000 per month
Advertising	4% of monthly sales
Delivery expense	2% of monthly sales
Sales commissions	3% of monthly sales
Rent expense	$3,000 per month
Depreciation	$700 per month
Utilities	$500 per month
Insurance	$300 per month

5. Income taxes are estimated to be 30% of income from operations.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the merchandise purchases budget for each month in columnar form.
(b) Prepare budgeted income statements for each month in columnar form. Show the details of cost of goods sold in the statements.

(a) Purchases: July $246,000
August $276,000
(b) Net income: July $48,650
August $59,500

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Waterways Continuing Problem

(This is a continuation of the Waterways Problem from Chapters 14 through 19.)

WCP20 Waterways Corporation is preparing its budget for the coming year, 2013. The first step is to plan for the first quarter of that coming year. The company has gathered information from its managers in preparation of the budgeting process. This problem asks you to prepare the various budgets that comprise the master budget for 2013.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to see the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP20-1 Palmer Corporation operates on a calendar-year basis. It begins the annual budgeting process in late August when the president establishes targets for the total dollar sales and net income before taxes for the next year.

The sales target is given first to the marketing department. The marketing manager formulates a sales budget by product line in both units and dollars. From this budget, sales quotas by product line in units and dollars are established for each of the corporation's sales districts. The marketing manager also estimates the cost of the marketing activities required to support the target sales volume and prepares a tentative marketing expense budget.

The executive vice president uses the sales and profit targets, the sales budget by product line, and the tentative marketing expense budget to determine the dollar amounts that can be devoted to manufacturing and corporate office expense. The executive vice president prepares the budget for corporate expenses. She then forwards to the production department the product-line sales budget in units and the total dollar amount that can be devoted to manufacturing.

The production manager meets with the factory managers to develop a manufacturing plan that will produce the required units when needed within the cost constraints set by the executive vice president. The budgeting process usually comes to a halt at this point because the production department does not consider the financial resources allocated to be adequate.

When this standstill occurs, the vice president of finance, the executive vice president, the marketing manager, and the production manager meet together to determine the final budgets for each of the areas. This normally results in a modest increase in the total amount available for manufacturing costs and cuts in the marketing expense and corporate office expense budgets. The total sales and net income figures proposed by the president are seldom changed. Although the participants are seldom pleased with the compromise, these budgets are final. Each executive then develops a new detailed budget for the operations in his or her area.

None of the areas has achieved its budget in recent years. Sales often run below the target. When budgeted sales are not achieved, each area is expected to cut costs so that the president's profit target can be met. However, the profit target is seldom met because costs are not cut enough. In fact, costs often run above the original budget in all functional areas (marketing, production, and corporate office).

The president is disturbed that Palmer has not been able to meet the sales and profit targets. He hired a consultant with considerable experience with companies in Palmer's industry. The consultant reviewed the budgets for the past 4 years. He concluded that the product line sales budgets were reasonable and that the cost and expense budgets were adequate for the budgeted sales and production levels.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following.

(a) Discuss how the budgeting process employed by Palmer Corporation contributes to the failure to achieve the president's sales and profit targets.

(b) Suggest how Palmer Corporation's budgeting process could be revised to correct the problems.

(c) Should the functional areas be expected to cut their costs when sales volume falls below budget? Explain your answer. (CMA adapted)

MANAGERIAL ANALYSIS

BYP20-2 Elliot & Hesse Inc. manufactures ergonomic devices for computer users. Some of its more popular products include glare screens (for computer monitors), keyboard stands with wrist rests, and carousels that allow easy access to discs. Over the past 5 years, it experienced rapid growth, with sales of all products increasing 20% to 50% each year.

Last year, some of the primary manufacturers of computers began introducing new products with some of the ergonomic designs, such as glare screens and wrist rests, already built in. As a result, sales of Elliot & Hesse's accessory devices have declined somewhat. The company believes that the disc carousels will probably continue to show growth, but that the other products will probably continue to decline. When the next year's budget was prepared, increases were built into research and development so that replacement products could be developed or the company could

expand into some other product line. Some product lines being considered are general-purpose ergonomic devices including back supports, foot rests, and sloped writing pads.

The most recent results have shown that sales decreased more than was expected for the glare screens. As a result, the company may have a shortage of funds. Top management has therefore asked that all expenses be reduced 10% to compensate for these reduced sales. Summary budget information is as follows.

Direct materials	$240,000
Direct labor	110,000
Insurance	50,000
Depreciation	90,000
Machine repairs	30,000
Sales salaries	50,000
Office salaries	80,000
Factory salaries (indirect labor)	50,000
Total	$700,000

Instructions

Using the information above, answer the following questions.

(a) What are the implications of reducing each of the costs? For example, if the company reduces direct materials costs, it may have to do so by purchasing lower-quality materials. This may affect sales in the long run.

(b) Based on your analysis in (a), what do you think is the best way to obtain the $70,000 in cost savings requested? Be specific. Are there any costs that cannot or should not be reduced? Why?

REAL-WORLD FOCUS

BYP20-3 Network Computing Devices, Inc. was founded in 1988 in Mountain View, California. The company develops software products such as X-terminals, Z-mail, PC X-ware, and related hardware products. Presented below is a discussion by management in its annual report.

NETWORK COMPUTING DEVICES, INC.
Management Discussion

The Company's operating results have varied significantly, particularly on a quarterly basis, as a result of a number of factors, including general economic conditions affecting industry demand for computer products, the timing and market acceptance of new product introductions by the Company and its competitors, the timing of significant orders from large customers, periodic changes in product pricing and discounting due to competitive factors, and the availability of key components, such as video monitors and electronic subassemblies, some of which require substantial order lead times. The Company's operating results may fluctuate in the future as a result of these and other factors, including the Company's success in developing and introducing new products, its product and customer mix, and the level of competition which it experiences. The Company operates with a small backlog. Sales and operating results, therefore, generally depend on the volume and timing of orders received, which are difficult to forecast. The Company has experienced slowness in orders from some customers during the first quarter of each calendar year due to budgeting cycles common in the computer industry. In addition, sales in Europe typically are adversely affected in the third calendar quarter as many European customers reduce their business activities during the month of August.

Due to the Company's rapid growth rate and the effect of new product introductions on quarterly revenues, these seasonal trends have not materially impacted the Company's results of operations to date. However, as the Company's product lines mature and its rate of revenue growth declines, these seasonal factors may become more evident. Additionally, the Company's international sales are denominated in U.S. dollars, and an increase or decrease in the value of the U.S. dollar relative to foreign currencies could make the Company's products less or more competitive in those markets.

Instructions

(a) Identify the factors that affect the budgeting process at Network Computing Devices, Inc.
(b) Explain the additional budgeting concerns created by the international operations of the company.

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING ON THE WEB

BYP20-4 Information regarding many approaches to budgeting can be found on the Web. The following activity investigates the merits of "zero-based" budgeting, as discussed by Michael LaFaive, Director of Financial Policy of the Mackinac Center for Public Policy.

Address: **www.mackinac.org/article.aspx?ID=5928,** or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Instructions

Read the article at the website and answer the following questions.
(a) How does zero-based budgeting differ from standard budgeting procedures?
(b) What are some potential advantages of zero-based budgeting?
(c) What are some potential disadvantages of zero-based budgeting?
(d) How often do departments in Oklahoma undergo zero-based budgeting?

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP20-5 In order to better serve their rural patients, Drs. Joe and Rick Parcells (brothers) began giving safety seminars. Especially popular were their "emergency-preparedness" talks given to farmers. Many people asked whether the "kit" of materials the doctors recommended for common farm emergencies was commercially available.

After checking with several suppliers, the doctors realized that no other company offered the supplies they recommended in their seminars, packaged in the way they described. Their wives, Megan and Sue, agreed to make a test package by ordering supplies from various medical supply companies and assembling them into a "kit" that could be sold at the seminars. When these kits proved a runaway success, the sisters-in-law decided to market them. At the advice of their accountant, they organized this venture as a separate company, called Life Protection Products (LPP), with Megan Parcells as CEO and Sue Parcells as Secretary-Treasurer.

LPP soon started receiving requests for the kits from all over the country, as word spread about their availability. Even without advertising, LPP was able to sell its full inventory every month. However, the company was becoming financially strained. Megan and Sue had about $100,000 in savings, and they invested about half that amount initially. They believed that this venture would allow them to make money. However, at the present time, only about $30,000 of the cash remains, and the company is constantly short of cash.

Megan has come to you for advice. She does not understand why the company is having cash flow problems. She and Sue have not even been withdrawing salaries. However, they have rented a local building and have hired two more full-time workers to help them cope with the increasing demand. They do not think they could handle the demand without this additional help.

Megan is also worried that the cash problems mean that the company may not be able to support itself. She has prepared the cash budget shown on page 1075. All seminar customers pay for their products in full at the time of purchase. In addition, several large companies have ordered the kits for use by employees who work in remote sites. They have requested credit terms and have been allowed to pay in the month following the sale. These large purchasers amount to about 25% of the sales at the present time. LPP purchases the materials for the kits about 2 months ahead of time. Megan and Sue are considering slowing the growth of the company by simply purchasing less materials, which will mean selling fewer kits.

The workers are paid weekly. Megan and Sue need about $15,000 cash on hand at the beginning of the month to pay for purchases of raw materials. Right now they have been using cash from their savings, but as noted, only $30,000 is left.

Instructions

Write a response to Megan Parcells. Explain why LPP is short of cash. Will this company be able to support itself? Explain your answer. Make any recommendations you deem appropriate.

LIFE PROTECTION PRODUCTS
Cash Budget
For the Quarter Ending June 30, 2013

	April	May	June
Cash balance, beginning	$15,000	$15,000	$15,000
Cash received			
From prior month sales	5,000	7,500	12,500
From current sales	15,000	22,500	37,500
Total cash on hand	35,000	45,000	65,000
Cash payments			
To employees	3,000	3,000	3,000
For products	25,000	35,000	45,000
Miscellaneous expenses	5,000	6,000	7,000
Postage	1,000	1,000	1,000
Total cash payments	34,000	45,000	56,000
Cash balance	$ 1,000	$ 0	$ 9,000
Borrow from savings	$14,000	$15,000	$ 1,000
Borrow from bank?	$ 0	$ 0	$ 5,000

ETHICS CASE

BYP20-6 You are an accountant in the budgetary, projections, and special projects department of Fernetti Conductor, Inc., a large manufacturing company. The president, Richard Brown, asks you on very short notice to prepare some sales and income projections covering the next 2 years of the company's much heralded new product lines. He wants these projections for a series of speeches he is making while on a 2-week trip to eight East Coast brokerage firms. The president hopes to bolster Fernetti's stock sales and price.

You work 23 hours in 2 days to compile the projections, hand deliver them to the president, and are swiftly but graciously thanked as he departs. A week later, you find time to go over some of your computations and discover a miscalculation that makes the projections grossly overstated. You quickly inquire about the president's itinerary and learn that he has made half of his speeches and has half yet to make. You are in a quandary as to what to do.

Instructions

(a) What are the consequences of telling the president of your gross miscalculations?
(b) What are the consequences of *not* telling the president of your gross miscalculations?
(c) What are the ethical considerations to you and the president in this situation?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP20-7 In order to get your personal finances under control, you need to prepare a personal budget. Assume that you have compiled the following information regarding your expected cash flows for a typical month.

Rent payment	$ 400	Miscellaneous costs	$110
Interest income	50	Savings	50
Income tax withheld	300	Eating out	150
Electricity bill	22	Telephone and Internet costs	90
Groceries	80	Student loan payments	275
Wages earned	2,000	Entertainment costs	250
Insurance	100	Transportation costs	150

Instructions

Using the information above, prepare a personal budget. In preparing this budget, use the format found at *http://financialplan.about.com/cs/budgeting/l/blbudget.htm*. Just skip any unused line items.

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 1034 Businesses Often Feel Too Busy to Plan for the Future **Q:** Describe a situation in which a business "sells as much as it can" but cannot "keep its employees paid." **A:** If sales are made to customers on credit and collection is slow, the company may find that it does not have enough cash to pay employees or suppliers. Without these resources, the company will fail to survive.

p. 1036 Which Budget Approach Do You Prefer? **Q:** What approach did Time Warner use to prepare the old budget? What approach did it use to prepare the new budget? **A:** Time Warner used a "top-down" approach to prepare the old budget since its goals were determined by top management. It used a participative approach to prepare the new budget since each operating unit set goals.

p. 1049 Without a Budget, Can the Games Begin? **Q:** Why does it matter whether the Olympic Games exceed their budget? **A:** If the Olympic Games exceed their budget, taxpayers of the sponsoring community and country will end up footing the bill. Depending on the size of the losses, and the resources of the community, this could produce a substantial burden. As a result, other communities might be reluctant to host the Olympics in the future.

p. 1053 Budget Shortfalls as Far as the Eye Can See **Q:** Why would a university's budgeted scholarships probably fall when the stock market suffers a serious drop? **A:** Scholarships typically cannot be paid out of the "principal" portion of donations made to scholarship endowment funds. Instead, scholarships are usually funded through earnings generated by endowment investments. Any excess earnings above current-year scholarship needs can be used for scholarships in subsequent years. But a serious drop in the value of endowment investments can wipe out previous earnings, in some cases completely eliminating funds available for scholarships.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. c **2.** b **3.** a **4.** b **5.** b **6.** d **7.** d (9,500 + 2,200 − 1,000) **8.** a **9.** c **10.** a **11.** a **12.** b **13.** c [($70,000 × 60%) +($90,000 × 40%)] **14.** d **15.** c

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 21

BUDGETARY CONTROL AND RESPONSIBILITY ACCOUNTING

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 1088 ◯ p. 1090 ◯ p. 1099 ◯ p. 1104 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 1110 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Describe the concept of budgetary control.
2. Evaluate the usefulness of static budget reports.
3. Explain the development of flexible budgets and the usefulness of flexible budget reports.
4. Describe the concept of responsibility accounting.
5. Indicate the features of responsibility reports for cost centers.
6. Identify the content of responsibility reports for profit centers.
7. Explain the basis and formula used in evaluating performance in investment centers.

the navigator

feature story

TURNING TRASH INTO TREASURE

Vancouver teenager Brian Scudamore needed to raise money to pay his way through college. With $700 and a strong desire to do it on his own, he established his own junk-removal company. Fifteen years later, 1-800-GOT-JUNK? had 113 franchise partners across Canada and the United States, and projected revenues of more than $60 million.

"It was a high-school business project that was out of control," says Cameron Herold, vice president of operations.

While the exponential growth of 1-800-GOT-JUNK? may seem unwieldy (at one point it had five consecutive years of 100-percent compounded growth), it has in fact involved sound financial planning, budgeting, and cash management. The company follows a "zero-based budget," says Mr. Herold. That is, it only spends money it has; it has no outside investors or debt.

Managing this growth involves forecasting everything by creating a "painted picture" of what the company will look like in three years. The company knows its staffing plans, training requirements, and overhead and office-space needs well in advance. "That filters back to our budgeting process," Mr. Herold says. "We'll sit down and say, 'If this is where we're going, what are all the components of that?' . . . Then we bring it back to zero and say, 'What's it going to cost us? Where does it fit into the budget?'"

Key to the company's growth management was the introduction of franchising. "We chose franchising because our franchise partners would actually finance our growth," Mr. Herold says. In addition to the initial franchise fee, franchisees pay the head office 8 percent of their sales, plus another 7 percent to run the centralized call center.

While the company has used franchising to manage growth, a frugal approach to day-to-day costs has also been integral to its budgeting success. "We're always looking for ways to cut costs," Mr. Herold says. This includes establishing strategic relationships with the local coffee shop, doing regular cost analyses of office equipment and changing suppliers when needed, and buying office furniture in bulk from liquidators at 10 cents on the dollar. "All those little things start to really add up," he says.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 21 . . .

- **Budgets and the Exotic Newcastle Disease** *(p. 1089)*
- **Competition versus Collaboration** *(p. 1093)*
- **Does Hollywood Look at ROI?** *(p. 1102)*
- **Flexible Manufacturing Requires Flexible Accounting** *(p. 1103)*

preview of chapter 21

In contrast to Chapter 20, we now consider how budgets are used by management to control operations. In the Feature Story on 1-800-GOT-JUNK?, we saw that management tries to use the budget to adapt to the business environment. This chapter focuses on two aspects of management control: (1) budgetary control and (2) responsibility accounting.

The content and organization of Chapter 21 are as follows.

Budgetary Control and Responsibility Accounting

The Concept of Budgetary Control	Static Budget Reports	Flexible Budgets	The Concept of Responsibility Accounting	Types of Responsibility Centers
• Budget reports • Control activities • Reporting systems	• Examples • Uses and limitations	• Why flexible budgets? • Development • Case study • Reports • Management by exception	• Controllable vs. noncontrollable • Reporting system	• Cost centers • Profit centers • Investment centers • Performance evaluation

the navigator

The Concept of Budgetary Control

study objective 1

Describe the concept of budgetary control.

One of management's major functions is to control company operations. Control consists of the steps taken by management to see that planned objectives are met. We now ask: How do budgets contribute to control of operations?

The use of budgets in controlling operations is known as **budgetary control**. Such control takes place by means of **budget reports** that compare actual results with planned objectives. The use of budget reports is based on the belief that planned objectives lose much of their potential value without some monitoring of progress along the way. Just as your professors give midterm exams to evaluate your progress, top management requires periodic reports on the progress of department managers toward their planned objectives.

Budget reports provide management with feedback on operations. The feedback for a crucial objective, such as having enough cash on hand to pay bills, may be made daily. For other objectives, such as meeting budgeted annual sales and operating expenses, monthly budget reports may suffice. Budget reports are prepared as frequently as needed. From these reports, management analyzes any differences between actual and planned results and determines their causes. Management then takes corrective action, or it decides to modify future plans.

Budgetary control involves the activities shown in Illustration 21-1.

Budgetary control works best when a company has a formalized reporting system. The system does the following:

1. Identifies the name of the budget report, such as the sales budget or the manufacturing overhead budget.
2. States the frequency of the report, such as weekly or monthly.
3. Specifies the purpose of the report.
4. Indicates the primary recipient(s) of the report.

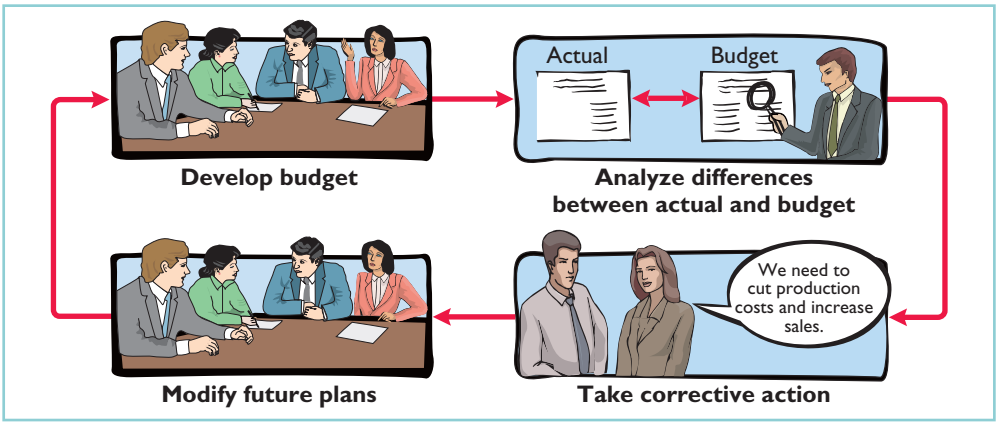


Illustration 21-1 Budgetary control activities

Illustration 21-2 provides a partial budgetary control system for a manufacturing company. Note the frequency of the reports and their emphasis on control. For example, there is a daily report on scrap and a weekly report on labor.

Illustration 21-2 Budgetary control reporting system

Name of Report	Frequency	Purpose	Primary Recipient(s)
Sales	Weekly	Determine whether sales goals are being met	Top management and sales manager
Labor	Weekly	Control direct and indirect labor costs	Vice president of production and production department managers
Scrap	Daily	Determine efficient use of materials	Production manager
Departmental overhead costs	Monthly	Control overhead costs	Department manager
Selling expenses	Monthly	Control selling expenses	Sales manager
Income statement	Monthly and quarterly	Determine whether income objectives are being met	Top management

Static Budget Reports

study objective 2

Evaluate the usefulness of static budget reports.

You learned in Chapter 20 that the master budget formalizes management's planned objectives for the coming year. When used in budgetary control, each budget included in the master budget is considered to be static. A **static budget** is a projection of budget data **at one level of activity**. These budgets do not consider data for different levels of activity. As a result, companies always compare actual results with budget data at the activity level that was used in developing the master budget.

EXAMPLES

To illustrate the role of a static budget in budgetary control, we will use selected data prepared for Hayes Company in Chapter 20. Budget and actual sales data for the Kitchen-Mate product in the first and second quarters of 2012 are as follows.

Illustration 21-3 Budget and actual sales data

Sales	First Quarter	Second Quarter	Total
Budgeted	$180,000	$210,000	$390,000
Actual	179,000	199,500	378,500
Difference	$ 1,000	$ 10,500	$ 11,500

The sales budget report for Hayes Company's first quarter is shown below. The right-most column reports the difference between the budgeted and actual amounts.

Illustration 21-4 Sales budget report—first quarter

HAYES COMPANY
Sales Budget Report
For the Quarter Ended March 31, 2012

Product Line	Budget	Actual	Difference Favorable F Unfavorable U
Kitchen-Mate[a]	$180,000	$179,000	**$1,000 U**

[a]In practice, each product line would be included in the report.

Alternative Terminology The difference between budget and actual is sometimes called a *budget variance*.

The report shows that sales are $1,000 under budget—an unfavorable result. This difference is less than 1% of budgeted sales ($1,000 ÷ $180,000 =.0056). Top management's reaction to unfavorable differences is often influenced by the materiality (significance) of the difference. Since the difference of $1,000 is immaterial in this case, we assume that Hayes Company management takes no specific corrective action.

Illustration 21-5 shows the budget report for the second quarter. It contains one new feature: cumulative year-to-date information. This report indicates that sales for the second quarter are $10,500 below budget. This is 5% of budgeted sales ($10,500 ÷ $210,000). Top management may now conclude that the difference between budgeted and actual sales requires investigation.

Illustration 21-5 Sales budget report—second quarter

HAYES COMPANY
Sales Budget Report
For the Quarter Ended June 30, 2012

	Second Quarter			Year-to-Date		
Product Line	Budget	Actual	Difference Favorable F Unfavorable U	Budget	Actual	Difference Favorable F Unfavorable U
Kitchen-Mate	$210,000	$199,500	**$10,500 U**	$390,000	$378,500	**$11,500 U**

Management's analysis should start by asking the sales manager the cause(s) of the shortfall. Managers should consider the need for corrective action. For example, management may decide to spur sales by offering sales incentives to customers or by increasing the advertising of Kitchen-Mates. Or, if management concludes that a downturn in the economy is responsible for the lower sales, it may modify planned sales and profit goals for the remainder of the year.

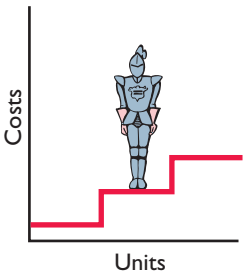
USES AND LIMITATIONS

From these examples, you can see that a master sales budget is useful in evaluating the performance of a sales manager. It is now necessary to ask: Is the master budget appropriate for evaluating a manager's performance in controlling costs? Recall that in a static budget, data are not modified or adjusted, regardless of

changes in activity. It follows, then, that a static budget is appropriate in evaluating a manager's effectiveness in controlling costs when:

1. The actual level of activity closely approximates the master budget activity level, and/or
2. The behavior of the costs in response to changes in activity is fixed.

A static budget report is, therefore, appropriate for **fixed manufacturing costs** and for **fixed selling and administrative expenses**. But, as you will see shortly, static budget reports may not be a proper basis for evaluating a manager's performance in controlling variable costs.



Static budgets report a single level of activity

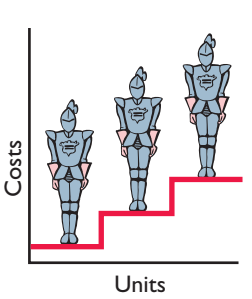
Flexible Budgets

study objective 3

Explain the development of flexible budgets and the usefulness of flexible budget reports.

In contrast to a static budget, which is based on one level of activity, a **flexible budget** projects budget data for various levels of activity. In essence, **the flexible budget is a series of static budgets at different levels of activity**. The flexible budget recognizes that the budgetary process is more useful if it is adaptable to changed operating conditions.

Flexible budgets can be prepared for each of the types of budgets included in the master budget. For example, Marriott Hotels can budget revenues and net income on the basis of 60%, 80%, and 100% of room occupancy. Similarly, American Van Lines can budget its operating expenses on the basis of various levels of truck miles driven. Duke Energy can budget revenue and net income on the basis of estimated billions of kwh (kilowatt hours) of residential, commercial, and industrial electricity generated. In the following pages, we will illustrate a flexible budget for manufacturing overhead.



Flexible budgets are static budgets at different activity levels

WHY FLEXIBLE BUDGETS?

Assume that you are the manager in charge of manufacturing overhead in the Forging Department of Barton Steel. In preparing the manufacturing overhead budget for 2012, you prepare the following static budget based on a production volume of 10,000 units of steel ingots.

Illustration 21-6
Static overhead budget

BARTON STEEL
Manufacturing Overhead Budget (Static)
Forging Department
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Budgeted production in units (steel ingots)	10,000
Budgeted costs	
Indirect materials	$ 250,000
Indirect labor	260,000
Utilities	190,000
Depreciation	280,000
Property taxes	70,000
Supervision	50,000
	$1,100,000

Helpful Hint The master budget described in Chapter 20 is based on a static budget.

Fortunately for the company, the demand for steel ingots has increased, and Barton produces and sells 12,000 units during the year, rather than 10,000. You are elated: Increased sales means increased profitability, which should mean a bonus or a raise for you and the employees in your department. Unfortunately,

a comparison of Forging Department actual and budgeted costs has put you on the spot. The budget report is shown below.

Illustration 21-7
Overhead static budget report

Barton Steel.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E
1	**BARTON STEEL**				
2	**Manufacturing Overhead Static Budget Report**				
3	**For the Year Ended December 31, 2012**				
4				Difference	
5		Budget	Actual	Favorable - F Unfavorable - U	
6	Production in units	10,000	12,000		
7					
8	Costs				
9	Indirect materials	$ 250,000	$ 295,000	$ 45,000	U
10	Indirect labor	260,000	312,000	52,000	U
11	Utilities	190,000	225,000	35,000	U
12	Depreciation	280,000	280,000	0	
13	Property taxes	70,000	70,000	0	
14	Supervision	50,000	50,000	0	
15		$1,100,000	$1,232,000	$132,000	U
16					

Helpful Hint A static budget is not useful for performance evaluation if a company has substantial variable costs.

This comparison uses budget data based on the original activity level (10,000 steel ingots). It indicates that the Forging Department is significantly **over budget** for three of the six overhead costs. And, there is a total unfavorable difference of $132,000, which is 12% over budget ($132,000 ÷ $1,100,000). Your supervisor is very unhappy! Instead of sharing in the company's success, you may find yourself looking for another job. What went wrong?

When you calm down and carefully examine the manufacturing overhead budget, you identify the problem: The budget data are not relevant! At the time the budget was developed, the company anticipated that only 10,000 units of steel ingots would be produced, **not** 12,000. Comparing actual with budgeted variable costs is meaningless. As production increases, the budget allowances for variable costs should increase proportionately. The variable costs in this example are indirect materials, indirect labor, and utilities.

Analyzing the budget data for these costs at 10,000 units, you arrive at the following per unit results.

Illustration 21-8
Variable costs per unit

Item	Total Cost	Per Unit
Indirect materials	$250,000	$25
Indirect labor	260,000	26
Utilities	190,000	19
	$700,000	$70

Illustration 21-9 calculates the budgeted variable costs at 12,000 units.

Illustration 21-9
Budgeted variable costs, 12,000 units

Item	Computation	Total
Indirect materials	$25 × 12,000	$300,000
Indirect labor	26 × 12,000	312,000
Utilities	19 × 12,000	228,000
		$840,000

Because fixed costs do not change in total as activity changes, the budgeted amounts for these costs remain the same. Illustration 21-10 shows the budget report based on the flexible budget for **12,000 units** of production. (Compare this with Illustration 21-7.)

Barton Steel.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

BARTON STEEL
Manufacturing Overhead Flexible Budget Report
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

	A	B	C	D	E
4				Difference	
5		Budget	Actual	Favorable - F Unfavorable - U	
6	Production in units	12,000	12,000		
7					
8	Variable costs				
9	Indirect materials ($25)	$ 300,000	$ 295,000	$5,000	F
10	Indirect labor ($26)	312,000	312,000	0	
11	Utilities ($19)	228,000	225,000	3,000	F
12	Total variable costs	840,000	832,000	8,000	F
13					
14	Fixed costs				
15	Depreciation	280,000	280,000	0	
16	Property taxes	70,000	70,000	0	
17	Supervision	50,000	50,000	0	
18	Total fixed costs	400,000	400,000	0	
19	Total costs	$1,240,000	$1,232,000	$8,000	F
20					

Illustration 21-10
Overhead flexible budget report

This report indicates that the Forging Department's costs are *under budget*—a favorable difference. Instead of worrying about being fired, you may be in line for a bonus or a raise after all! As this analysis shows, the only appropriate comparison is between actual costs at 12,000 units of production and budgeted costs at 12,000 units. Flexible budget reports provide this comparison.

DEVELOPING THE FLEXIBLE BUDGET

The flexible budget uses the master budget as its basis. To develop the flexible budget, management uses the following steps.

1. Identify the activity index and the relevant range of activity.
2. Identify the variable costs, and determine the budgeted variable cost per unit of activity for each cost.
3. Identify the fixed costs, and determine the budgeted amount for each cost.
4. Prepare the budget for selected increments of activity within the relevant range.

The activity index chosen should significantly influence the costs being budgeted. For manufacturing overhead costs, for example, the activity index is usually the same as the index used in developing the predetermined overhead rate—that is, direct labor hours or machine hours. For selling and administrative expenses, the activity index usually is sales or net sales.

The choice of the increment of activity is largely a matter of judgment. For example, if the relevant range is 8,000 to 12,000 direct labor hours, increments of 1,000 hours may be selected. The flexible budget is then prepared for each increment within the relevant range.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Are the increased costs resulting from increased production reasonable?	Variable costs projected at different levels of production	Flexible budget	After taking into account different production levels, results are favorable if expenses are less than budgeted amounts.

FLEXIBLE BUDGET–A CASE STUDY

To illustrate the flexible budget, we use Fox Manufacturing Company. Fox's management uses a **flexible budget for monthly comparisons** of actual and budgeted manufacturing overhead costs of the Finishing Department. The master budget for the year ending December 31, 2012, shows expected annual operating capacity of 120,000 direct labor hours and the following overhead costs.

Illustration 21-11
Master budget data

Variable Costs		Fixed Costs	
Indirect materials	$180,000	Depreciation	$180,000
Indirect labor	240,000	Supervision	120,000
Utilities	60,000	Property taxes	60,000
Total	$480,000	Total	$360,000

The four steps for developing the flexible budget are applied as follows.

STEP 1. **Identify the activity index and the relevant range of activity.** The activity index is direct labor hours. The relevant range is 8,000–12,000 direct labor hours per month.

STEP 2. **Identify the variable costs, and determine the budgeted variable cost per unit of activity for each cost.** There are three variable costs. The variable cost per unit is found by dividing each total budgeted cost by the direct labor hours used in preparing the master budget (120,000 hours). For Fox Manufacturing, the computations are:

Illustration 21-12
Computation of variable cost per direct labor hour

Variable Cost	Computation	Variable Cost per Direct Labor Hour
Indirect materials	$180,000 ÷ 120,000	$1.50
Indirect labor	$240,000 ÷ 120,000	2.00
Utilities	$ 60,000 ÷ 120,000	0.50
Total		$4.00

STEP 3. **Identify the fixed costs, and determine the budgeted amount for each cost.** There are three fixed costs. Since Fox desires **monthly budget data**, it divides each annual budgeted cost by 12 to find the monthly amounts. For Fox Manufacturing, the monthly budgeted fixed costs are: depreciation $15,000, supervision $10,000, and property taxes $5,000.

STEP 4. **Prepare the budget for selected increments of activity within the relevant range.** Management prepares the budget in increments of 1,000 direct labor hours.

Illustration 21-13 shows Fox's flexible budget.

Fox Manufacturing Company.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	**FOX MANUFACTURING COMPANY**					
2	**Monthly Manufacturing Overhead Flexible Budget**					
3	**Finishing Department**					
4	**For Months During the Year 2012**					
5	Activity level					
6	Direct labor hours	8,000	9,000	10,000	11,000	12,000
7	Variable costs					
8	Indirect materials ($1.50)	$12,000	$13,500	$15,000	$16,500	$18,000
9	Indirect labor ($2.00)	16,000	18,000	20,000	22,000	24,000
10	Utilities ($0.50)	4,000	4,500	5,000	5,500	6,000
11	Total variable costs	32,000	36,000	40,000	44,000	48,000
12	Fixed costs					
13	Depreciation	15,000	15,000	15,000	15,000	15,000
14	Supervision	10,000	10,000	10,000	10,000	10,000
15	Property taxes	5,000	5,000	5,000	5,000	5,000
16	Total fixed costs	30,000	30,000	30,000	30,000	30,000
17	Total costs	$62,000	$66,000	$70,000	$74,000	$78,000
18						

Illustration 21-13
Monthly overhead flexible budget

Fox uses the formula below to determine total budgeted costs at any level of activity.

Fixed Costs + **Variable Costs*** = **Total Budgeted Costs**

***Total variable cost per unit of activity × Activity level.**

Illustration 21-14
Formula for total budgeted costs

Helpful Hint Using the data given for Fox, what amount of total costs would be budgeted for 10,600 direct labor hours? Answer: $30,000 fixed + $42,400 variable (i.e, 10,600 × $4) = $72,400 total.

For Fox, fixed costs are $30,000, and total variable cost per direct labor hour is $4. At 9,000 direct labor hours, total budgeted costs are $66,000 [$30,000 + ($4 × 9,000)]. At 8,622 direct labor hours, total budgeted costs are $64,488 [$30,000 + ($4 × 8,622)].

Total budgeted costs can also be shown graphically, as in Illustration 21-15. In the graph, the horizontal axis represents the activity index, and costs are

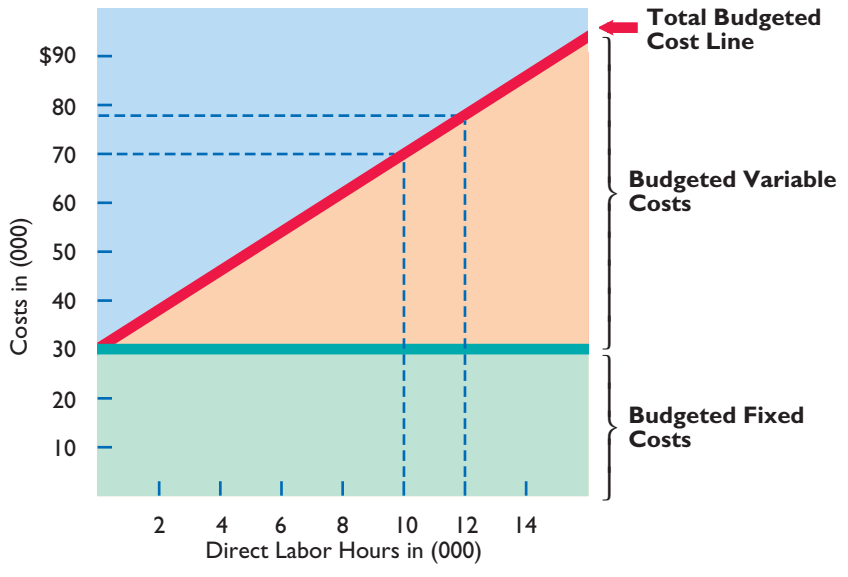


Illustration 21-15
Graphic flexible budget data highlighting 10,000 and 12,000 activity levels

indicated on the vertical axis. The graph highlights two activity levels (10,000 and 12,000). As shown, total budgeted costs at these activity levels are $70,000 [$30,000 + ($4 × 10,000)] and $78,000 [$30,000 + ($4 × 12,000)], respectively.

before you go on...

FLEXIBLE BUDGETS

Do it! In Strassel Company's flexible budget graph, the fixed cost line and the total budgeted cost line intersect the vertical axis at $36,000. The total budgeted cost line is $186,000 at an activity level of 50,000 direct labor hours. Compute total budgeted costs at 30,000 direct labor hours.

Action Plan

- Apply the formula: Fixed costs + Variable costs (Total variable cost per unit × Activity level) = Total budgeted costs.

Solution

Using the graph, fixed costs are $36,000, and variable costs are $3 per direct labor hour [($186,000 − $36,000) ÷ 50,000]. Thus, at 30,000 direct labor hours, total budgeted costs are $126,000 [$36,000 + ($3 × 30,000)].

Related exercise material: **BE21-4,** **Do it!** **21-1, E21-3,** and **E21-5.**

the navigator

FLEXIBLE BUDGET REPORTS

Flexible budget reports are another type of internal report. The flexible budget report consists of two sections: (1) production data for a selected activity index, such as direct labor hours, and (2) cost data for variable and fixed costs. The report provides a basis for evaluating a manager's performance in two areas: production control and cost control. Flexible budget reports are widely used in production and service departments.

Illustration 21-16 shows a budget report for the Finishing Department of Fox Company for the month of January. In this month, 9,000 hours are worked. The

Illustration 21-16
Overhead flexible budget report

Fox Manufacturing Company.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E
1	**FOX MANUFACTURING COMPANY**				
2	**Manufacturing Overhead Flexible Budget Report**				
3	**Finishing Department**				
4	**For the Month Ended January 31, 2012**				
5				Difference	
6		Budget at	Actual costs at	Favorable - F Unfavorable - U	
7	Direct labor hours (DLH)	9,000 DLH	9,000 DLH		
8					
9	Variable costs				
10	Indirect materials ($1.50)	$13,500	$14,000	$ 500	U
11	Indirect labor ($2.00)	18,000	17,000	1,000	F
12	Utilities ($0.50)	4,500	4,600	100	U
13	Total variable costs	36,000	35,600	400	F
14					
15	Fixed costs				
16	Depreciation	15,000	15,000	0	
17	Supervision	10,000	10,000	0	
18	Property taxes	5,000	5,000	0	
19	Total fixed costs	30,000	30,000	0	
20	Total costs	$66,000	$65,600	$ 400	F
21					

budget data are therefore based on the flexible budget for 9,000 hours in Illustration 21-13 (page 1087). The actual cost data are assumed.

How appropriate is this report in evaluating the Finishing Department manager's performance in controlling overhead costs? The report clearly provides a reliable basis. Both actual and budget costs are based on the activity level worked during January. Since variable costs generally are incurred directly by the department, the difference between the budget allowance for those hours and the actual costs is the responsibility of the department manager.

In subsequent months, Fox Manufacturing will prepare other flexible budget reports. For each month, the budget data are based on the actual activity level attained. In February that level may be 11,000 direct labor hours, in July 10,000, and so on.

Note that this flexible budget is based on a single cost driver. A more accurate budget often can be developed using the activity-based costing concepts explained in Chapter 17.

Service Company Insight

Budgets and the Exotic Newcastle Disease

Exotic Newcastle Disease, one of the most infectious bird diseases in the world, kills so swiftly that many victims die before any symptoms appear. When it broke out in Southern California in 2003, it could have spelled disaster for the San Diego Zoo. "We have one of the most valuable collections of birds in the world, if not *the* most valuable," says Paula Brock, CFO of the Zoological Society of San Diego, which operates the zoo.

Bird exhibits were closed to the public for several months (the disease, which is harmless to humans, can be carried on clothes and shoes). The tires of arriving delivery trucks were sanitized, as were the shoes of anyone visiting the zoo's nonpublic areas. Zookeeper uniforms had to be changed and cleaned daily. And ultimately, the zoo, with $150 million in revenues, spent almost half a million dollars on quarantine measures in 2003.

It worked: No birds got sick. Better yet, the damage to the rest of the zoo's budget was minimized by another protective measure: the monthly budget reforecast. "When we get a hit like this, we still have to find a way to make our bottom line," says Brock. Thanks to a new planning process Brock had introduced a year earlier, the zoo's scientists were able to raise the financial alarm as they redirected resources to ward off the disease. "Because we had timely awareness," she says, "we were able to make adjustments to weather the storm."

Budget reforecasting is nothing new. (The San Diego Zoo's annual static budget was behind the times before Brock took over as CFO in 2001.) But the reaction of the zoo's staff shows the benefits of Brock's immediate efforts to link strategy to the process. It's a move long touted by consultants as a key way to improve people's involvement in budgeting.

"To keep your company on a path, it has to have some kind of map," says Brock. "The budgeting-and-planning process is that map. I cannot imagine an organization feeling in control if it didn't have that sort of discipline."

Source: Tim Reason, "Budgeting in the Real World," *CFO Magazine* (July 12, 2005), *www.cfodirect.com/cfopublic.nsf/vContentPrint/649A82C8FF8AB06B85257037004* (accessed July 2005).

? What is the major benefit of tying a budget to the overall goals of the company? (See page 1134.)

MANAGEMENT BY EXCEPTION

Management by exception means that top management's review of a budget report is focused either entirely or primarily on differences between actual results and planned objectives. This approach enables top management to focus on problem areas. For example, many companies now use online reporting systems for employees to file their travel and entertainment expense reports. In addition to cutting reporting time in half, the online system enables managers to quickly analyze variances from travel budgets. This enables companies to cut down on expense account "padding" such as spending too much on meals or falsifying documents for costs that were never actually incurred.

Management by exception does not mean that top management will investigate every difference. For this approach to be effective, there must be guidelines for identifying an exception. The usual criteria are materiality and controllability.

Materiality

Without quantitative guidelines, management would have to investigate every budget difference regardless of the amount. Materiality is usually expressed as a percentage difference from budget. For example, management may set the percentage difference at 5% for important items and 10% for other items. Managers will investigate all differences either over or under budget by the specified percentage. Costs over budget warrant investigation to determine why they were not controlled. Likewise, costs under budget merit investigation to determine whether costs critical to profitability are being curtailed. For example, if maintenance costs are budgeted at $80,000 but only $40,000 is spent, major unexpected breakdowns in productive facilities may occur in the future.

Alternatively, a company may specify a single percentage difference from budget for all items and supplement this guideline with a minimum dollar limit. For example, the exception criteria may be stated at 5% of budget or more than $10,000.

Controllability of the Item

Exception guidelines are more restrictive for controllable items than for items the manager cannot control. In fact, there may be no guidelines for noncontrollable items. For example, a large unfavorable difference between actual and budgeted property tax expense may not be flagged for investigation because the only possible causes are an unexpected increase in the tax rate or in the assessed value of the property. An investigation into the difference would be useless: The manager cannot control either cause.

before you go on...

FLEXIBLE BUDGET REPORTS

Do it! Lawler Company expects to produce 40,000 units of product CV93 during the current year. Budgeted variable manufacturing costs per unit are direct materials $6, direct labor $15, and overhead $24. Annual budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead costs are $120,000 for depreciation and $60,000 for supervision.

In the current month, Lawler produced 5,000 units and incurred the following costs: direct materials $33,900, direct labor $74,200, variable overhead $120,500, depreciation $10,000, and supervision $5,000.

Prepare a flexible budget report. (*Note:* You do not have to prepare the heading.) Were costs controlled?

Action Plan

- Use budget for actual units produced.
- Classify each cost as variable or fixed.
- Determine monthly fixed costs by dividing annual amounts by 12.
- Determine the difference as favorable or unfavorable.
- Determine the difference in total variable costs, total fixed costs, and total costs.

Solution

Lawler Company.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E
1				Difference	
2		Budget at	Actual costs at	Favorable - F Unfavorable - U	
3	Units produced	5,000 units	5,000 units		
4					
5	Variable costs				
6	Direct materials ($6)	$ 30,000	$ 33,900	$3,900	U
7	Direct labor ($15)	75,000	74,200	800	F
8	Overhead ($24)	120,000	120,500	500	U
9	Total variable costs	225,000	228,600	3,600	U
10					
11	Fixed costs				
12	Depreciation	10,000	10,000	0	
13	Supervision	5,000	5,000	0	
14	Total fixed costs	15,000	15,000	0	
15	Total costs	$240,000	$243,600	$3,600	U
16					
17					

The responsibility report indicates that actual direct labor was only about 1% different from the budget, and overhead was less than half a percent different. Both appear to have been well-controlled.

This was not the case for direct materials. Its 13% unfavorable difference should probably be investigated.

Actual fixed costs had no difference from budget and were well-controlled.

Related exercise material: **BE21-5, Do it! 21-2, E21-4, E21-6, E21-7, E21-8,** and **E21-10.**

the navigator

The Concept of Responsibility Accounting

study objective 4

Describe the concept of responsibility accounting.

Like budgeting, responsibility accounting is an important part of management accounting. **Responsibility accounting** involves accumulating and reporting costs (and revenues, where relevant) on the basis of the manager who has the authority to make the day-to-day decisions about the items. Under responsibility accounting, a manager's performance is evaluated on matters directly under that manager's control. Responsibility accounting can be used at every level of management in which the following conditions exist.

1. Costs and revenues can be directly associated with the specific level of management responsibility.
2. The costs and revenues can be controlled by employees at the level of responsibility with which they are associated.

3. Budget data can be developed for evaluating the manager's effectiveness in controlling the costs and revenues.

Illustration 21-17 depicts levels of responsibility for controlling costs.

Illustration 21-17
Responsibility for controllable costs at varying levels of management

Responsibility accounting gives managers responsibility for *controllable costs* at each level of authority

Helpful Hint All companies use responsibility accounting. Without some form of responsibility accounting, there would be chaos in discharging management's control function.

Under responsibility accounting, any individual who controls a specified set of activities can be a responsibility center. Thus, responsibility accounting may extend from the lowest level of control to the top strata of management. Once responsibility is established, the company first measures and reports the effectiveness of the individual's performance for the specified activity. It then reports that measure upward throughout the organization.

Responsibility accounting is especially valuable in a decentralized company. **Decentralization** means that the control of operations is delegated to many managers throughout the organization. The term **segment** is sometimes used to identify an area of responsibility in decentralized operations. Under responsibility accounting, companies prepare segment reports periodically, such as monthly, quarterly, and annually, to evaluate managers' performance.

Responsibility accounting is an essential part of any effective system of budgetary control. The reporting of costs and revenues under responsibility accounting differs from budgeting in two respects:

1. A distinction is made between controllable and noncontrollable items.
2. Performance reports either emphasize or include only items controllable by the individual manager.

Responsibility accounting applies to both profit and not-for-profit entities. For-profit entities seek to maximize net income. Not-for-profit entities wish to provide services as efficiently as possible.

Management Insight

Competition versus Collaboration

Many compensation and promotion programs encourage competition among employees for pay raises. To get ahead you have to perform better than your fellow employees. While this may encourage hard work, it does not foster collaboration, and it can lead to distrust and disloyalty. Such results have led some companies to believe that cooperation and collaboration are essential in order to succeed in today's environment. For example, division managers might increase collaboration (and reduce costs) by sharing design and marketing resources or by jointly negotiating with suppliers. In addition, companies can reduce the need to hire and lay off employees by sharing employees across divisions as human resource needs increase and decrease.

As a consequence, many companies now explicitly include measures of collaboration in their performance measures. For example, Procter & Gamble measures collaboration in employees' annual performance reviews. At Cisco Systems the assessment of an employee's teamwork can affect the annual bonus by as much as 20%.

Source: Carol Hymowitz, "Rewarding Competitors Over Collaboration No Longer Makes Sense," *Wall Street Journal* (February 13, 2006).

? How might managers of separate divisions be able to reduce division costs through collaboration? (See page 1134.)

CONTROLLABLE VERSUS NONCONTROLLABLE REVENUES AND COSTS

All costs and revenues are controllable at some level of responsibility within a company. This truth underscores the adage by the CEO of any organization that "the buck stops here." Under responsibility accounting, the critical issue is **whether the cost or revenue is controllable at the level of responsibility with which it is associated**. A cost over which a manager has control is called a **controllable cost**. From this definition, it follows that:

Helpful Hint Are there more or fewer controllable costs as you move to higher levels of management?
Answer: More.

1. All costs are controllable by top management because of the broad range of its authority.
2. Fewer costs are controllable as one moves down to each lower level of managerial responsibility because of the manager's decreasing authority.

In general, **costs incurred directly by a level of responsibility are controllable at that level**. In contrast, costs incurred indirectly and allocated to a responsibility level are **noncontrollable costs** at that level.

Helpful Hint The longer the time span, the more likely that the cost becomes controllable.

RESPONSIBILITY REPORTING SYSTEM

A **responsibility reporting system** involves the preparation of a report for each level of responsibility in the company's organization chart. To illustrate such a system, we use the partial organization chart and production departments of Francis Chair Company in Illustration 21-18 (page 1094).

The responsibility reporting system begins with the lowest level of responsibility for controlling costs and moves upward to each higher level. Illustration 21-19 (page 1095) details the connections between levels.

A brief description of the four reports for Francis Chair Company is as follows.

1. **Report D** is typical of reports that go to department managers. Similar reports are prepared for the managers of the Fabricating, Assembly, and Enameling Departments.

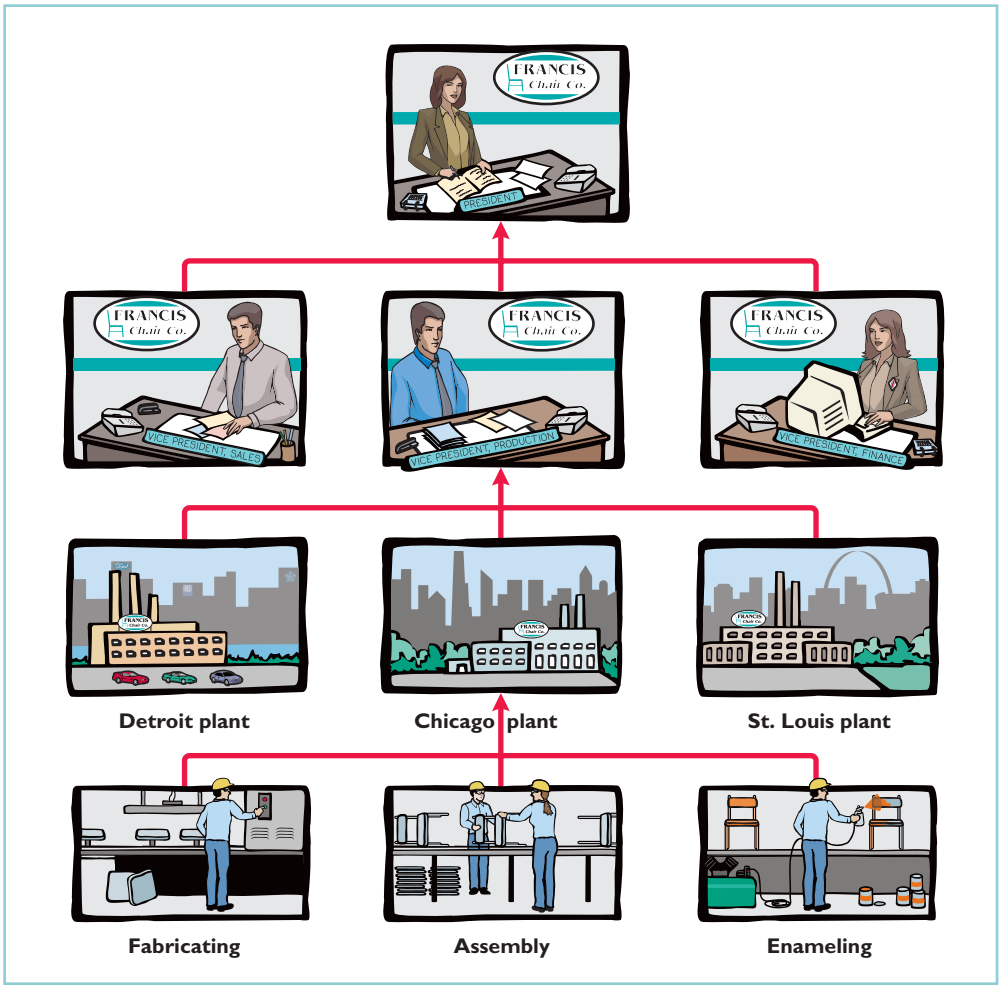


Illustration 21-18
Partial organization chart

Report A
President sees summary data of vice presidents.

Report B
Vice president sees summary of controllable costs in his/her functional area.

Report C
Plant manager sees summary of controllable costs for each department in the plant.

Report D
Department manager sees controllable costs of his/her department.

2. **Report C** is an example of reports that are sent to plant managers. It shows the costs of the Chicago plant that are controllable at the second level of responsibility. In addition, Report C shows summary data for each department that is controlled by the plant manager. Similar reports are prepared for the Detroit and St. Louis plant managers.
3. **Report B** illustrates the reports at the third level of responsibility. It shows the controllable costs of the vice president of production and summary data on the three assembly plants for which this officer is responsible. Similar reports are prepared for the vice presidents of sales and finance.
4. **Report A** is typical of reports that go to the top level of responsibility—the president. It shows the controllable costs and expenses of this office and summary data on the vice presidents that are accountable to the president.

A responsibility reporting system permits management by exception at each level of responsibility. And, each higher level of responsibility can obtain the detailed report for each lower level of responsibility. For example, the vice president of production in the Francis Chair Company may request the Chicago plant manager's report because this plant is $5,300 over budget.

This type of reporting system also permits comparative evaluations. In Illustration 21-19, the Chicago plant manager can easily rank the department managers' effectiveness in controlling manufacturing costs. Comparative rankings provide further incentive for a manager to control costs.

Illustration 21-19
Responsibility reporting system

Report A
President sees summary data of vice presidents.

Report B
Vice president sees summary of controllable costs in his/her functional area.

Report C
Plant manager sees summary of controllable costs for each department in the plant.

Report D
Department manager sees controllable costs of his/her department.

Report A.xls

	A	B	C	D	E
1			REPORT A		
2					
3	To President			Month: January	
4	Controllable Costs:	Budget	Actual	Fav/Unfav	
5	President	$ 150,000	$ 151,500	$ 1,500	U
6	Vice Presidents:				
7	Sales	185,000	187,000	2,000	U
8	Production	1,179,000	1,186,300	7,300	U
9	Finance	100,000	101,000	1,000	U
10	Total	$1,614,000	$1,625,800	$11,800	U

Report B.xls

	A	B	C	D	E
1			REPORT B		
2					
3	To Vice President Production			Month: January	
4	Controllable Costs:	Budget	Actual	Fav/Unfav	
5	V P Production	$ 125,000	$ 126,000	$1,000	U
6	Assembly Plants:				
7	Detroit	420,000	418,000	2,000	F
8	Chicago	304,000	309,300	5,300	U
9	St. Louis	330,000	333,000	3,000	U
10	Total	$1,179,000	$1,186,300	$7,300	U

Report C.xls

	A	B	C	D	E
1			REPORT C		
2					
3	To Plant Manager-Chicago			Month: January	
4	Controllable Costs:	Budget	Actual	Fav/Unfav	
5	Chicago Plant	$110,000	$113,000	$3,000	U
6	Departments:				
7	Fabricating	84,000	85,300	1,300	U
8	Enameling	62,000	64,000	2,000	U
9	Assembly	48,000	47,000	1,000	F
10	Total	$304,000	$309,300	$5,300	U

Report D.xls

	A	B	C	D	E
1			REPORT D		
2					
3	To Fabricating Department Manager			Month: January	
4	Controllable Costs:	Budget	Actual	Fav/Unfav	
5	Direct Materials	$20,000	$20,500	$ 500	U
6	Direct Labor	40,000	41,000	1,000	U
7	Overhead	24,000	23,800	200	F
8	Total	$84,000	$85,300	$1,300	U

Types of Responsibility Centers

There are three basic types of responsibility centers: cost centers, profit centers, and investment centers. These classifications indicate the degree of responsibility the manager has for the performance of the center.

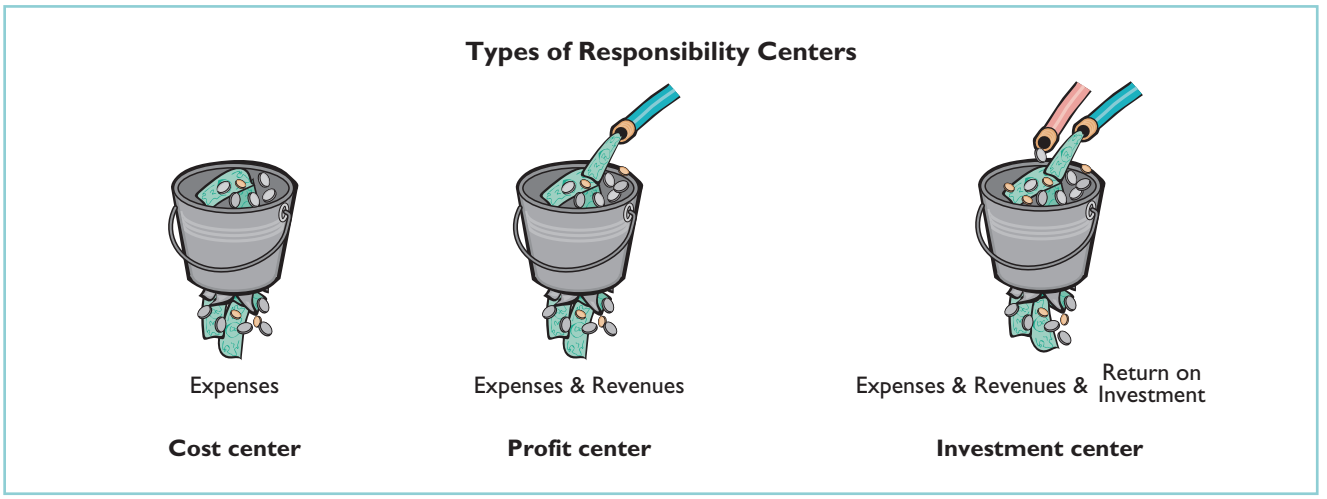
A **cost center** incurs costs (and expenses) but does not directly generate revenues. Managers of cost centers have the authority to incur costs. They are evaluated on their ability to control costs. **Cost centers are usually either production departments or service departments.** Production departments participate directly in making the product. Service departments provide only support services. In a Ford Motor Company automobile plant, the welding, painting, and assembling departments are production departments. Ford's maintenance, cafeteria, and human resources departments are service departments. All of them are cost centers.

Helpful Hint (1) Is the jewelry department of Macy's department store a profit center or a cost center? (2) Is the props department of a movie studio a profit center or a cost center? Answers: (1) Profit center. (2) Cost center.

A **profit center** incurs costs (and expenses) and also generates revenues. Managers of profit centers are judged on the profitability of their centers. Examples of profit centers include the individual departments of a retail store, such as clothing, furniture, and automotive products, and branch offices of banks.

Like a profit center, an **investment center** incurs costs (and expenses) and generates revenues. In addition, an investment center has control over decisions regarding the assets available for use. Investment center managers are evaluated on both the profitability of the center and the rate of return earned on the funds invested. Investment centers are often associated with subsidiary companies. Utility Duke Energy has operating divisions such as electric utility, energy trading, and natural gas. Investment center managers control or significantly influence investment decisions related to such matters as plant expansion and entry into new market areas. Illustration 21-20 depicts the three types of responsibility centers.

Illustration 21-20
Types of responsibility centers



RESPONSIBILITY ACCOUNTING FOR COST CENTERS

study objective 5
Indicate the features of responsibility reports for cost centers.

The evaluation of a manager's performance for cost centers is based on his or her ability to meet budgeted goals for controllable costs. **Responsibility reports for cost centers compare actual controllable costs with flexible budget data.**

Illustration 21-21 shows a responsibility report. The report is adapted from the flexible budget report for Fox Manufacturing Company in Illustration 21-16 (page 1088). It assumes that the Finishing Department manager is able to con-

Fox Manufacturing Company.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E
1	FOX MANUFACTURING COMPANY				
2	Finishing Department				
3	Responsibility Report				
4	For the Month Ended January 31, 2012				
5				Difference	
6	Controllable Cost	Budget	Actual	Favorable - F Unfavorable - U	
7	Indirect materials	$13,500	$14,000	$ 500	U
8	Indirect labor	18,000	17,000	$1,000	F
9	Utilities	4,500	4,600	100	U
10	Supervision	4,000	4,000	0	
11		$40,000	$39,600	$ 400	F
12					

Illustration 21-21
Responsibility report for a cost center

trol all manufacturing overhead costs except depreciation, property taxes, and his own monthly salary of $6,000. The remaining $4,000 ($10,000 − $6,000) of supervision costs are assumed to apply to other supervisory personnel within the Finishing Department, whose salaries are controllable by the manager.

The report in Illustration 21-21 includes **only controllable costs**, and no distinction is made between variable and fixed costs. The responsibility report continues the concept of management by exception. In this case, top management may request an explanation of the $1,000 favorable difference in indirect labor and/or the $500 unfavorable difference in indirect materials.

RESPONSIBILITY ACCOUNTING FOR PROFIT CENTERS

study objective 6
Identify the content of responsibility reports for profit centers.

To evaluate the performance of a profit center manager, upper management needs detailed information about both controllable revenues and controllable costs. The operating revenues earned by a profit center, such as sales, are controllable by the manager. All variable costs (and expenses) incurred by the center are also controllable by the manager because they vary with sales. However, to determine the controllability of fixed costs, it is necessary to distinguish between direct and indirect fixed costs.

Direct and Indirect Fixed Costs

A profit center may have both direct and indirect fixed costs. **Direct fixed costs** relate specifically to one center and are incurred for the sole benefit of that center. Examples of such costs include the salaries established by the profit center manager for supervisory personnel and the cost of a timekeeping department for the center's employees. Since these fixed costs can be traced directly to a center, they are also called **traceable costs**. **Most direct fixed costs are controllable by the profit center manager.**

In contrast, **indirect fixed costs** pertain to a company's overall operating activities and are incurred for the benefit of more than one profit center. Management allocates indirect fixed costs to profit centers on some type of equitable basis. For example, property taxes on a building occupied by more than one center may be allocated on the basis of square feet of floor space used by each center. Or, the costs of a company's human resources department may be allocated to profit centers on the basis of the number of employees in each center. Because these fixed costs apply to more than one center, they are also called **common costs**. **Most indirect fixed costs are not controllable by the profit center manager.**

Responsibility Report

The responsibility report for a profit center shows budgeted and actual **controllable revenues and costs**. The report is prepared using the cost-volume-profit income statement explained in Chapter 18. In the report:

1. Controllable fixed costs are deducted from contribution margin.
2. The excess of contribution margin over controllable fixed costs is identified as **controllable margin**.
3. Noncontrollable fixed costs are not reported.

Helpful Hint Recognize that we are emphasizing *financial* measures of performance. These days companies are also making an effort to stress *nonfinancial* performance measures such as product quality, labor productivity, market growth, materials' yield, manufacturing flexibility, and technological capability.

Illustration 21-22 shows the responsibility report for the manager of the Marine Division, a profit center of Mantle Manufacturing Company. For the year, the Marine Division also had $60,000 of indirect fixed costs that were not controllable by the profit center manager.

Illustration 21-22
Responsibility report for profit center

Mantle Manufacturing Company.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E
1	**MANTLE MANUFACTURING COMPANY**				
2	**Marine Division**				
3	**Responsibility Report**				
4	**For the Year Ended December 31, 2012**				
5				Difference	
6		Budget	Actual	Favorable - F Unfavorable - U	
7	Sales	$1,200,000	$1,150,000	$50,000	U
8	Variable costs				
9	Cost of goods sold	500,000	490,000	10,000	F
10	Selling and administrative	160,000	156,000	4,000	F
11	Total	660,000	646,000	14,000	F
12	Contribution margin	540,000	504,000	36,000	U
13	**Controllable fixed costs**				
14	Cost of goods sold	100,000	100,000	0	
15	Selling and administrative	80,000	80,000	0	
16	Total	180,000	180,000	0	
17	**Controllable margin**	**$ 360,000**	**$ 324,000**	**$36,000**	**U**
18					

Controllable margin is considered to be the best measure of the manager's performance **in controlling revenues and costs**. The report in Illustration 21-22 shows that the manager's performance was below budgeted expectations by 10% ($36,000 ÷ $360,000). Top management would likely investigate the causes of this unfavorable result. Note that the report does not show the Marine Division's noncontrollable fixed costs of $60,000. These costs would be included in a report on the profitability of the profit center.

Management also may choose to see **monthly** responsibility reports for profit centers. In addition, responsibility reports may include cumulative year-to-date results.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Have the individual managers been held accountable for the costs and revenues under their control?	Relevant costs and revenues, where the individual manager has authority to make day-to-day decisions about the items	Responsibility reports focused on cost centers, profit centers, and investment centers as appropriate	Compare budget to actual costs and revenues for controllable items.

before you go on...

Do it! Midwest Division operates as a profit center. It reports the following for the year:

PROFIT CENTER RESPONSIBILITY REPORT

	Budgeted	Actual
Sales	$1,500,000	$1,700,000
Variable costs	700,000	800,000
Controllable fixed costs	400,000	400,000
Noncontrollable fixed costs	200,000	200,000

Prepare a responsibility report for the Midwest Division for December 31, 2012.

Action Plan

- Deduct variable costs from sales to show contribution margin.
- Deduct controllable fixed costs from the contribution margin to show controllable margin.
- Do not report noncontrollable fixed costs.

Solution

MIDWEST DIVISION
Responsibility Report
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

	Budget	Actual	Difference Favorable F Unfavorable U
Sales	$1,500,000	$1,700,000	$200,000 F
Variable costs	700,000	800,000	100,000 U
Contribution margin	800,000	900,000	100,000 F
Controllable fixed costs	400,000	400,000	–0–
Controllable margin	$ 400,000	$ 500,000	$100,000 F

Related exercise material: **BE21-7,** **Do it!** **21-3,** and **E21-15.**

the navigator

RESPONSIBILITY ACCOUNTING FOR INVESTMENT CENTERS

study objective 7
Explain the basis and formula used in evaluating performance in investment centers.

As explained earlier, an investment center manager can control or significantly influence the investment funds available for use. Thus, the primary basis for evaluating the performance of a manager of an investment center is **return on investment (ROI)**. The return on investment is considered to be a useful performance measurement because it shows the **effectiveness of the manager in utilizing the assets at his or her disposal**.

Return on Investment (ROI)

The formula for computing ROI for an investment center, together with assumed illustrative data, is shown in Illustration 21-23.

Controllable Margin	÷	Average Operating Assets	=	Return on Investment (ROI)
$1,000,000	÷	$5,000,000	=	20%

Illustration 21-23 ROI formula

Both factors in the formula are controllable by the investment center manager. Operating assets consist of current assets and plant assets used in operations by the center and controlled by the manager. Nonoperating assets such as idle plant assets and land held for future use are excluded. Average operating assets are usually based on the cost or book value of the assets at the beginning and end of the year.

Responsibility Report

The scope of the investment center manager's responsibility significantly affects the content of the performance report. Since an investment center is an independent entity for operating purposes, **all fixed costs are controllable by its manager**. For example, the manager is responsible for depreciation on investment center assets. Therefore, more fixed costs are identified as controllable in the performance report for an investment center manager than in a performance report for a profit center manager. The report also shows budgeted and actual ROI below controllable margin.

To illustrate this responsibility report, we will now assume that the Marine Division of Mantle Manufacturing Company is an investment center. It has budgeted and actual average operating assets of $2,000,000. The manager can control $60,000 of fixed costs that were not controllable when the division was a profit center. Illustration 21-24 shows the division's responsibility report.

Illustration 21-24
Responsibility report for investment center

Mantle Manufacturing Company.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E
1	**MANTLE MANUFACTURING COMPANY**				
2	**Marine Division**				
3	**Responsibility Report**				
4	**For the Year Ended December 31, 2012**				
5				Difference	
6		Budget	Actual	Favorable - F Unfavorable - U	
7	Sales	$1,200,000	$1,150,000	$ 50,000	U
8	Variable costs				
9	Cost of goods sold	500,000	490,000	10,000	F
10	Selling and administrative	160,000	156,000	4,000	F
11	Total	660,000	646,000	14,000	F
12	Contribution margin	540,000	504,000	36,000	U
13	**Controllable fixed costs**				
14	Cost of goods sold	100,000	100,000	0	
15	Selling and administrative	80,000	80,000	0	
16	**Other fixed costs**	**60,000**	**60,000**	**0**	
17	Total	240,000	240,000	0	
18	**Controllable margin**	**$ 300,000**	**$ 264,000**	**$ 36,000**	**U**
19	**Return on investment**	**15.0%**	**13.2%**	**1.8%**	**U**
20		(a)	(b)	(c)	
21					
22		(a) $ 300,000 $2,000,000	(b) $ 264,000 $2,000,000	(c) $ 36,000 $2,000,000	
23					

The report shows that the manager's performance based on ROI was below budget expectations by 1.8% (15.0% versus 13.2%). Top management would likely want an explanation of the reasons for this unfavorable result.

Judgmental Factors in ROI

The return on investment approach includes two judgmental factors:

1. **Valuation of operating assets.** Operating assets may be valued at acquisition cost, book value, appraised value, or fair value. The first two bases are readily available from the accounting records.
2. **Margin (income) measure.** This measure may be controllable margin, income from operations, or net income.

Each of the alternative values for operating assets can provide a reliable basis for evaluating a manager's performance as long as it is consistently applied between reporting periods. However, the use of income measures other than

controllable margin will not result in a valid basis for evaluating the performance of an investment center manager.

Improving ROI

The manager of an investment center can improve ROI by increasing controllable margin, and/or reducing average operating assets. To illustrate, we will use the following assumed data for the Laser Division of Berra Manufacturing.

Sales	$2,000,000
Variable cost	1,100,000
Contribution margin (45%)	900,000
Controllable fixed costs	300,000
Controllable margin (a)	$ 600,000
Average operating assets (b)	$5,000,000
Return on investment (a) ÷ (b)	**12%**

Illustration 21-25
Assumed data for Laser Division

INCREASING CONTROLLABLE MARGIN Controllable margin can be increased by increasing sales or by reducing variable and controllable fixed costs as follows.

1. **Increase sales 10%.** Sales will increase $200,000 ($2,000,000 × .10). Assuming no change in the contribution margin percentage of 45%, contribution margin will increase $90,000 ($200,000 × .45). Controllable margin will increase by the same amount because controllable fixed costs will not change. Thus, controllable margin becomes $690,000 ($600,000 + $90,000). The new ROI is 13.8%, computed as follows.

$$\text{ROI} = \frac{\text{Controllable margin}}{\text{Average operating assets}} = \frac{\$690{,}000}{\$5{,}000{,}000} = \mathbf{13.8\%}$$

Illustration 21-26
ROI computation—increase in sales

An increase in sales benefits both the investment center and the company if it results in new business. It would not benefit the company if the increase was achieved at the expense of other investment centers.

2. **Decrease variable and fixed costs 10%.** Total costs decrease $140,000 [($1,100,000 + $300,000) × .10]. This reduction results in a corresponding increase in controllable margin. Thus, controllable margin becomes $740,000 ($600,000 + $140,000). The new ROI is 14.8%, computed as follows.

$$\text{ROI} = \frac{\text{Controllable margin}}{\text{Average operating assets}} = \frac{\$740{,}000}{\$5{,}000{,}000} = \mathbf{14.8\%}$$

Illustration 21-27
ROI computation—decrease in costs

This course of action is clearly beneficial when waste and inefficiencies are eliminated. But, a reduction in vital costs such as required maintenance and inspections is not likely to be acceptable to top management.

REDUCING AVERAGE OPERATING ASSETS Assume that average operating assets are reduced 10% or $500,000 ($5,000,000 × .10). Average operating assets become $4,500,000 ($5,000,000 − $500,000). Since controllable margin remains unchanged at $600,000, the new ROI is 13.3%, computed as follows.

$$\text{ROI} = \frac{\text{Controllable margin}}{\text{Average operating assets}} = \frac{\$600{,}000}{\$4{,}500{,}000} = \mathbf{13.3\%}$$

Illustration 21-28
ROI computation—decrease in operating assets

Reductions in operating assets may or may not be prudent. It is beneficial to eliminate overinvestment in inventories and to dispose of excessive plant assets.

However, it is unwise to reduce inventories below expected needs or to dispose of essential plant assets.

Accounting Across the Organization

Does Hollywood Look at ROI?

If Hollywood were run like a real business, where things like return on investment mattered, there would be one unchallenged, sacred principle that studio chieftains would never violate: Make lots of G-rated movies.

No matter how you slice the movie business–by star vehicles, by budget levels, or by sequels or franchises–by far the best return on investment comes from the not-so-glamorous world of G-rated films. The problem is, these movies represent only 3% of the total films made in a typical year.

Take 2003: According to Motion Picture Association of America statistics, of the 940 movies released that year, only 29 were G-rated. Yet the highest-grossing movie of the year, *Finding Nemo*, was G-rated. . . . On the flip side are the R-rated films, which dominate the total releases and yet yield the worst return on investment. A whopping 646 R-rated films were released in 2003–69% of the total output–but only four of the top-20 grossing movies of the year were R-rated films.

This trend–G-rated movies are good for business but underproduced; R-rated movies are bad for business, and yet overdone–is something that has been driving economists batty for the past several years.

Source: David Grainger, "The Dysfunctional Family-Film Business," *Fortune* (January 10, 2005), pp. 20–21.

? What might be the reason that movie studios do not produce G-rated movies as much as R-rated ones? (See page 1134.)

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has the investment center performed up to expectations?	Controllable margin (contribution margin minus controllable fixed costs), and average investment center operating assets	Return on investment	Compare actual ROI to expected ROI.

PRINCIPLES OF PERFORMANCE EVALUATION

Performance evaluation is at the center of responsibility accounting. **Performance evaluation** is a management function that compares actual results with budget goals. It involves both behavioral and reporting principles.

Behavioral Principles

The human factor is critical in evaluating performance. Behavioral principles include the following.

1. **Managers of responsibility centers should have direct input into the process of establishing budget goals of their area of responsibility.** Without such input, managers may view the goals as unrealistic or arbitrarily set by top management. Such views adversely affect the managers' motivation to meet the targeted objectives.
2. **The evaluation of performance should be based entirely on matters that are controllable by the manager being evaluated.** Criticism of a manager on matters outside his or her control reduces the effectiveness of the evaluation process. It leads to negative reactions by a manager and to doubts about the fairness of the company's evaluation policies.

3. **Top management should support the evaluation process.** As explained earlier, the evaluation process begins at the lowest level of responsibility and extends upward to the highest level of management. Managers quickly lose faith in the process when top management ignores, overrules, or bypasses established procedures for evaluating a manager's performance.
4. **The evaluation process must allow managers to respond to their evaluations.** Evaluation is not a one-way street. Managers should have the opportunity to defend their performance. Evaluation without feedback is both impersonal and ineffective.
5. **The evaluation should identify both good and poor performance.** Praise for good performance is a powerful motivating factor for a manager. This is especially true when a manager's compensation includes rewards for meeting budget goals.

Reporting Principles

Performance evaluation under responsibility accounting should be based on certain reporting principles. These principles pertain primarily to the internal reports that provide the basis for evaluating performance. Performance reports should:

1. Contain only data that are controllable by the manager of the responsibility center.
2. Provide accurate and reliable budget data to measure performance.
3. Highlight significant differences between actual results and budget goals.
4. Be tailor-made for the intended evaluation.
5. Be prepared at reasonable intervals.

In recent years, companies have come under increasing pressure from influential shareholder groups to do a better job of linking executive pay to corporate performance. For example, software maker Siebel Systems unveiled a new incentive plan after lengthy discussions with the California Public Employees' Retirement System. One unique feature of the plan is that managers' targets will be publicly disclosed at the beginning of each year for investors to evaluate.

Management Insight

Flexible Manufacturing Requires Flexible Accounting

Flexible budgeting is useful because it enables managers to evaluate performance in light of changing conditions. But the ability to react quickly to changing conditions is even more important. Among automobile manufacturing facilities in the U.S., nobody has more flexible plants than Honda. The manufacturing facilities of some auto companies can make slight alterations to the features of a vehicle in response to changes in demand for particular features. But for most plants, to switch from production of one type of vehicle to a completely different type of vehicle, when demand for types of vehicles shifts, typically takes months and costs hundreds of millions of dollars. But at the Honda plant, the switch takes minutes. For example, it takes about five minutes to install different hand-like parts on the robots so they can switch from making Civic compacts to the longer, taller CR-V crossover. This ability to adjust quickly to changing demand gave Honda a huge advantage when gas prices surged and demand for more fuel-efficient cars increased quickly.

Source: Kate Linebaugh, "Honda's Flexible Plants Provide Edge," *Wall Street Journal Online* (September 23, 2008).

? What implications do these improvements in production capabilities have for management accounting information and performance evaluation within the organization? (See page 1134.)

before you go on...

PERFORMANCE EVALUATION

Do it! The service division of Metro Industries reported the following results for 2012.

Sales	$400,000
Variable costs	320,000
Controllable fixed costs	40,800
Average operating assets	280,000

Management is considering the following independent courses of action in 2013 in order to maximize the return on investment for this division.

1. Reduce average operating assets by $80,000, with no change in controllable margin.
2. Increase sales $80,000, with no change in the contribution margin percentage.

(a) Compute the controllable margin and the return on investment for 2012.
(b) Compute the controllable margin and the expected return on investment for each proposed alternative.

Action Plan

- Recall key formulas: Sales − Variable costs = Contribution margin.
- Contribution margin ÷ Sales = Contribution margin percentage.
- Contribution margin − Controllable fixed costs = Controllable margin.
- Return on investment = Controllable margin ÷ Average operating assets.

Solution

(a) Return on investment for 2012

Sales	$400,000
Variable costs	320,000
Contribution margin	80,000
Controllable fixed costs	40,800
Controllable margin	$ 39,200

$$\text{Return on investment} \quad \frac{\$39{,}200}{\$280{,}000} = 14\%$$

(b) Expected return on investment for alternative 1:

$$\frac{\$39{,}200}{\$280{,}000 - \$80{,}000} = 19.6\%$$

Expected return on investment for alternative 2:

Sales ($400,000 + $80,000)	$480,000
Variable costs ($320,000/$400,000 × $480,000)	384,000
Contribution margin	96,000
Controllable fixed costs	40,800
Controllable margin	$ 55,200

$$\text{Return on investment} \quad \frac{\$55{,}200}{\$280{,}000} = 19.7\%$$

Related exercise material: **BE21-8, BE21-9, BE21-10, Do it! 21-4, E21-16,** and **E21-17.**

the navigator

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

The manufacturing overhead budget for Reebles Company contains the following items.

Variable costs	
Indirect materials	$25,000
Indirect labor	12,000
Maintenance expenses	10,000
Manufacturing supplies	6,000
Total variable	$53,000
Fixed costs	
Supervision	$17,000
Inspection costs	1,000
Insurance expenses	2,000
Depreciation	15,000
Total fixed	$35,000

The budget was based on an estimated 2,000 units being produced. During November, 1,500 units were produced, and the following costs incurred.

Variable costs	
Indirect materials	$25,200
Indirect labor	13,500
Maintenance expenses	8,200
Manufacturing supplies	5,100
Total variable	$52,000
Fixed costs	
Supervision	$19,300
Inspection costs	1,200
Insurance expenses	2,200
Depreciation	14,700
Total fixed	$37,400

Instructions

(a) Determine which items would be controllable by Ed Lopat, the production manager. (Assume "supervision" excludes Lopat's own salary.)
(b) How much should have been spent during the month for the manufacture of the 1,500 units?
(c) Prepare a flexible manufacturing overhead budget report for Mr. Lopat.
(d) Prepare a responsibility report. Include only the costs that would have been controllable by Mr. Lopat. In an attached memo, describe clearly for Mr. Lopat the areas in which his performance needs to be improved.

Solution

(a) Ed Lopat should be able to control all the variable costs and the fixed costs of supervision and inspection. Insurance and depreciation ordinarily are not the responsibility of the department manager.
(b) The total variable cost per unit is $26.50 ($53,000 ÷ 2,000). The total budgeted cost during the month to manufacture 1,500 units is variable costs $39,750 (1,500 × $26.50) plus fixed costs ($35,000), for a total of $74,750 ($39,750 + $35,000).

(c)

REEBLES COMPANY
Production Department
Manufacturing Overhead Budget Report (Flexible)
For the Month Ended November 30, 2012

	Budget at 1,500 Units	Actual at 1,500 Units	Difference Favorable F Unfavorable U
Variable costs			
Indirect materials ($12.50)	$18,750	$25,200	$ 6,450 U
Indirect labor ($6)	9,000	13,500	4,500 U
Maintenance ($5)	7,500	8,200	700 U
Manufacturing supplies ($3)	4,500	5,100	600 U
Total variable	39,750	52,000	12,250 U
Fixed costs			
Supervision	17,000	19,300	2,300 U
Inspection	1,000	1,200	200 U
Insurance	2,000	2,200	200 U
Depreciation	15,000	14,700	300 F
Total fixed	35,000	37,400	2,400 U
Total costs	$74,750	$89,400	$14,650 U

(d) Because a production department is a cost center, the responsibility report should include only the costs that are controllable by the production manager. In this type of report, no distinction is made between variable and fixed costs. Budget data in the report should be based on the units actually produced.

REEBLES COMPANY
Production Department
Manufacturing Overhead Responsibility Report
For the Month Ended November 30, 2012

Controllable Cost	Budget	Actual	Difference Favorable F Unfavorable U
Indirect materials	$18,750	$25,200	$ 6,450 U
Indirect labor	9,000	13,500	4,500 U
Maintenance	7,500	8,200	700 U
Manufacturing supplies	4,500	5,100	600 U
Supervision	17,000	19,300	2,300 U
Inspection	1,000	1,200	200 U
Total	$57,750	$72,500	$14,750 U

To: Mr. Ed Lopat, Production Manager

From: _____, Vice President of Production

Subject: Performance Evaluation for the Month of November

Your performance in controlling costs that are your responsibility was very disappointing in the month of November. As indicated in the accompanying responsibility report, total costs were $14,750 over budget. On a percentage basis, costs were 26% over budget. As you can see, actual costs were over budget for every cost item. In three instances, costs were significantly over budget (indirect materials 34%, indirect labor 50%, and supervision 14%).

Ed, it is imperative that you get costs under control in your department as soon as possible.

I think we need to talk about ways to implement more effective cost control measures. I would like to meet with you in my office at 9 a.m. on Wednesday to discuss possible alternatives.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 **Describe the concept of budgetary control.** Budgetary control consists of (a) preparing periodic budget reports that compare actual results with planned objectives, (b) analyzing the differences to determine their causes, (c) taking appropriate corrective action, and (d) modifying future plans, if necessary.

2 **Evaluate the usefulness of static budget reports.** Static budget reports are useful in evaluating the progress toward planned sales and profit goals. They are also appropriate in assessing a manager's effectiveness in controlling costs when (a) actual activity closely approximates the master budget activity level, and/or (b) the behavior of the costs in response to changes in activity is fixed.

3 **Explain the development of flexible budgets and the usefulness of flexible budget reports.** To develop the flexible budget it is necessary to: (a) Identify the activity index and the relevant range of activity. (b) Identify the variable costs, and determine the budgeted variable cost per unit of activity for each cost. (c) Identify the fixed costs, and determine the budgeted amount for each cost. (d) Prepare the budget for selected increments of activity within the relevant range. Flexible budget reports permit an evaluation of a manager's performance in controlling production and costs.

4 **Describe the concept of responsibility accounting.** Responsibility accounting involves accumulating and reporting revenues and costs on the basis of the individual manager who has the authority to make the day-to-day decisions about the items. The evaluation of a manager's performance is based on the matters directly under the manager's control. In responsibility accounting, it is necessary to distinguish between controllable and noncontrollable fixed costs and to identify three types of responsibility centers: cost, profit, and investment.

5 **Indicate the features of responsibility reports for cost centers.** Responsibility reports for cost centers compare actual costs with flexible budget data. The reports show only controllable costs, and no distinction is made between variable and fixed costs.

6 **Identify the content of responsibility reports for profit centers.** Responsibility reports show contribution margin, controllable fixed costs, and controllable margin for each profit center.

7 **Explain the basis and formula used in evaluating performance in investment centers.** The primary basis for evaluating performance in investment centers is return on investment (ROI). The formula for computing ROI for investment centers is: Controllable margin ÷ Average operating assets.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Are the increased costs resulting from increased production reasonable?	Variable costs projected at different levels of production	Flexible budget	After taking into account different production levels, results are favorable if expenses are less than budgeted amounts.
Have the individual managers been held accountable for the costs and revenues under their control?	Relevant costs and revenues, where the individual manager has authority to make day-to-day decisions about the items	Responsibility reports focused on cost centers, profit centers, and investment centers as appropriate	Compare budget to actual costs and revenues for controllable items.
Has the investment center performed up to expectations?	Controllable margin (contribution margin minus controllable fixed costs), and average investment center operating assets	Return on investment	Compare actual ROI to expected ROI.

appendix 21A

Residual Income—Another Performance Measurement

study objective 8

Explain the difference between ROI and residual income.

Although most companies use ROI in evaluating their investment performance, ROI has a significant disadvantage. To illustrate, let's look at the Electronics Division of Pujols Manufacturing Company. It has an ROI of 20% computed as follows.

Illustration 21A-1
ROI formula

Controllable Margin	÷	Average Operating Assets	=	Return on Investment (ROI)
$1,000,000	÷	$5,000,000	=	20%

The Electronics Division is considering producing a new product, a GPS satellite tracker (hereafter referred to as Tracker), for its boats. To produce Tracker, operating assets will have to increase $2,000,000. Tracker is expected to generate an additional $260,000 of controllable margin. Illustration 21A-2 shows how Tracker will effect ROI.

Illustration 21A-2
ROI comparison

	Without Tracker	Tracker	With Tracker
Controllable margin (a)	$1,000,000	$ 260,000	$1,260,000
Average operating assets (b)	$5,000,000	$2,000,000	$7,000,000
Return on investment [(a) ÷ (b)]	20%	13%	18%

The investment in Tracker reduces ROI from 20% to 18%.

Let's suppose that you are the manager of the Electronics Division and must make the decision to produce or not produce Tracker. If you were evaluated using ROI, you probably would not produce Tracker because your ROI would drop from 20% to 18%. The problem with this ROI analysis is that it ignores an important variable, the minimum rate of return on a company's operating assets. The **minimum rate of return** is the rate at which the Electronics Division can cover its costs and earn a profit. Assuming that the Electronics Division has a minimum rate of return of 10%, it should invest in Tracker because its ROI of 13% is greater than 10%.

RESIDUAL INCOME COMPARED TO ROI

To evaluate performance using the minimum rate of return, companies use the residual income approach. **Residual income** is the income that remains after subtracting from the controllable margin the minimum rate of return on a company's average operating assets. The residual income for Tracker would be computed as follows.

Illustration 21A-3
Residual income formula

Controllable Margin	–	Minimum Rate of Return × Average Operating Assets	=	Residual Income
$260,000	–	10% × $2,000,000	=	$60,000

As shown, the residual income related to the Tracker investment is $60,000. Illustration 21A-4 indicates how residual income changes as the additional investment is made.

Illustration 21A-4 Residual income comparison

	Without Tracker	Tracker	With Tracker
Controllable margin (a)	$1,000,000	$260,000	$1,260,000
Average operating assets × 10% (b)	500,000	200,000	700,000
Residual income [(a) − (b)]	$ 500,000	$ 60,000	**$ 560,000**

This example illustrates how performance evaluation based on ROI can be misleading and can even cause managers to reject projects that would actually increase income for the company. As a result, many companies such as Coca-Cola, Briggs and Stratton, Eli Lilly, and Siemens AG use residual income (or a variant often referred to as economic value added) to evaluate investment alternatives and measure company performance.

RESIDUAL INCOME WEAKNESS

It might appear from the above discussion that the goal of any company should be to maximize the total amount of residual income in each division. This goal, however, ignores the fact that one division might use substantially fewer assets to attain the same level of residual income as another division. For example, we know that to produce Tracker, the Electronics Division of Pujols Manufacturing used $2,000,000 of average operating assets to generate $260,000 of controllable margin. Now let's say a different division produced a product called SeaDog, which used $4,000,000 to generate $460,000 of controllable margin, as shown in Illustration 21A-5.

Illustration 21A-5 Comparison of two products

	Tracker	SeaDog
Controllable margin (a)	$260,000	$460,000
Average operating assets × 10% (b)	200,000	400,000
Residual income [(a) − (b)]	**$ 60,000**	**$ 60,000**

If the performance of these two investments were evaluated using residual income, they would be considered equal: Both products have the same total residual income. This ignores, however, the fact that SeaDog required **twice** as many operating assets to achieve the same level of residual income.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 21A

8 Explain the difference between ROI and residual income. ROI is controllable margin divided by average operating assets. Residual income is the income that remains after subtracting the minimum rate of return on a company's average operating assets. ROI sometimes provides misleading results because profitable investments are often rejected when the investment reduces ROI but increases overall profitability.

Glossary

Budgetary control *(p. 1080)* The use of budgets to control operations.

Controllable cost *(p. 1093)* A cost over which a manager has control.

Controllable margin *(p. 1098)* Contribution margin less controllable fixed costs.

Cost center *(p. 1096)* A responsibility center that incurs costs but does not directly generate revenues.

Decentralization *(p. 1093)* Control of operations is delegated to many managers throughout the organization.

Direct fixed costs *(p. 1097)* Costs that relate specifically to a responsibility center and are incurred for the sole benefit of the center.

Flexible budget *(p. 1083)* A projection of budget data for various levels of activity.

Indirect fixed costs *(p. 1097)* Costs that are incurred for the benefit of more than one profit center.

Investment center *(p. 1096)* A responsibility center that incurs costs, generates revenues, and has control over decisions regarding the assets available for use.

Management by exception *(p. 1090)* The review of budget reports by top management focused entirely or primarily on differences between actual results and planned objectives.

Noncontrollable costs *(p. 1093)* Costs incurred indirectly and allocated to a responsibility center that are not controllable at that level.

Profit center *(p. 1096)* A responsibility center that incurs costs and also generates revenues.

Residual income *(p. 1108)* The income that remains after subtracting from the controllable margin the minimum rate of return on a company's average operating assets.

Responsibility accounting *(p. 1091)* A part of management accounting that involves accumulating and reporting revenues and costs on the basis of the manager who has the authority to make the day-to-day decisions about the items.

Responsibility reporting system *(p. 1093)* The preparation of reports for each level of responsibility in the company's organization chart.

Return on investment (ROI) *(p. 1099)* A measure of management's effectiveness in utilizing assets at its disposal in an investment center.

Segment *(p. 1092)* An area of responsibility in decentralized operations.

Static budget *(p. 1081)* A projection of budget data at one level of activity.

Comprehensive Do it!

Glenda Company uses a flexible budget for manufacturing overhead based on direct labor hours. For 2012, the master overhead budget for the Packaging Department based on 300,000 direct labor hours was as follows.

Variable Costs		Fixed Costs	
Indirect labor	$360,000	Supervision	$ 60,000
Supplies and lubricants	150,000	Depreciation	24,000
Maintenance	210,000	Property taxes	18,000
Utilities	120,000	Insurance	12,000
	$840,000		$114,000

During July, 24,000 direct labor hours were worked. The company incurred the following variable costs in July: indirect labor $30,200, supplies and lubricants $11,600, maintenance $17,500, and utilities $9,200. Actual fixed overhead costs were the same as monthly budgeted fixed costs.

Instructions

Prepare a flexible budget report for the Packaging Department for July.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

GLENDA COMPANY
Manufacturing Overhead Budget Report (Flexible)
Packaging Department
For the Month Ended July 31, 2012

Direct labor hours (DLH)	Budget 24,000 DLH	Actual Costs 24,000 DLH	Difference Favorable F Unfavorable U
Variable costs			
Indirect labor ($1.20[a])	$28,800	$30,200	$1,400 U
Supplies and lubricants ($0.50[a])	12,000	11,600	400 F
Maintenance ($0.70[a])	16,800	17,500	700 U
Utilities ($0.40[a])	9,600	9,200	400 F
Total variable	67,200	68,500	1,300 U
Fixed costs			
Supervision	$ 5,000[b]	$ 5,000	–0–
Depreciation	2,000[b]	2,000	–0–
Property taxes	1,500[b]	1,500	–0–
Insurance	1,000[b]	1,000	–0–
Total fixed	9,500	9,500	–0–
Total costs	$76,700	$78,000	$1,300 U

[a]($360,000 ÷ 300,000; $150,000 ÷ 300,000; $210,000 ÷ 300,000; $120,000 ÷ 300,000).
[b]Annual cost divided by 12.

Action Plan

- Classify each cost as variable or fixed.
- Compute the budgeted cost per direct labor hour for all variable costs.
- Use budget data for actual direct labor hours worked.
- Determine the difference between budgeted and actual costs.
- Identify the difference as favorable or unfavorable.
- Determine the difference in total variable costs, total fixed costs, and total costs.

the navigator

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Note: All asterisked Questions, Exercises, and Problems relate to material in the appendix to the chapter.

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 1134.

(SO 1) **1.** Budgetary control involves all **but one** of the following:
(a) modifying future plans.
(b) analyzing differences.
(c) using static budgets.
(d) determining differences between actual and planned results.

(SO 1) **2.** Budget reports are prepared:
(a) daily.
(b) weekly.
(c) monthly.
(d) All of the above.

(SO 1) **3.** A production manager in a manufacturing company would most likely receive a:
(a) sales report.
(b) income statement.
(c) scrap report.
(d) shipping department overhead report.

(SO 2) **4.** A static budget is:
(a) a projection of budget data at several levels of activity within the relevant range of activity.
(b) a projection of budget data at a single level of activity.
(c) compared to a flexible budget in a budget report.
(d) never appropriate in evaluating a manager's effectiveness in controlling costs.

(SO 2) **5.** A static budget is useful in controlling costs when cost behavior is:
(a) mixed.
(b) fixed.
(c) variable.
(d) linear.

(SO 3) **6.** At zero direct labor hours in a flexible budget graph, the total budgeted cost line intersects the vertical axis at $30,000. At 10,000 direct labor hours, a horizontal line drawn from the total budgeted cost line intersects the vertical axis at $90,000. Fixed and variable costs may be expressed as:
(a) $30,000 fixed plus $6 per direct labor hour variable.
(b) $30,000 fixed plus $9 per direct labor hour variable.
(c) $60,000 fixed plus $3 per direct labor hour variable.
(d) $60,000 fixed plus $6 per direct labor hour variable.

(SO 3) **7.** At 9,000 direct labor hours, the flexible budget for indirect materials is $27,000. If $28,000 of indirect materials costs are incurred at 9,200 direct labor hours, the flexible budget report should show the following difference for indirect materials:
(a) $1,000 unfavorable. (c) $400 favorable.
(b) $1,000 favorable. (d) $400 unfavorable.

(SO 4) **8.** Under responsibility accounting, the evaluation of a manager's performance is based on matters that the manager:
(a) directly controls.
(b) directly and indirectly controls.
(c) indirectly controls.
(d) has shared responsibility for with another manager.

(SO 4) **9.** Responsibility centers include:
(a) cost centers. (c) investment centers.
(b) profit centers. (d) All of the above.

(SO 5) **10.** Responsibility reports for cost centers:
(a) distinguish between fixed and variable costs.
(b) use static budget data.
(c) include both controllable and noncontrollable costs.
(d) include only controllable costs.

(SO 5) **11.** The accounting department of a manufacturing company is an example of:
(a) a cost center. (c) an investment center.
(b) a profit center. (d) a contribution center.

(SO 6) **12.** To evaluate the performance of a profit center manager, upper management needs detailed information about:
(a) controllable costs.
(b) controllable revenues.
(c) controllable costs and revenues.
(d) controllable costs and revenues and average operating assets.

(SO 6) **13.** In a responsibility report for a profit center, controllable fixed costs are deducted from contribution margin to show:
(a) profit center margin.
(b) controllable margin.
(c) net income.
(d) income from operations.

(SO 7) **14.** In the formula for return on investment (ROI), the factors for controllable margin and operating assets are, respectively:
(a) controllable margin percentage and total operating assets.
(b) controllable margin dollars and average operating assets.
(c) controllable margin dollars and total assets.
(d) controllable margin percentage and average operating assets.

(SO 7) **15.** A manager of an investment center can improve ROI by:
(a) increasing average operating assets.
(b) reducing sales.
(c) increasing variable costs.
(d) reducing variable and/or controllable fixed costs.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, for additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. (a) What is budgetary control?
(b) Fred Barone is describing budgetary control. What steps should be included in Fred's description?

2. The following purposes are part of a budgetary reporting system: (a) Determine efficient use of materials. (b) Control overhead costs. (c) Determine whether income objectives are being met. For each purpose, indicate the name of the report, the frequency of the report, and the primary recipient(s) of the report.

3. How may a budget report for the second quarter differ from a budget report for the first quarter?

4. Ken Bay questions the usefulness of a master sales budget in evaluating sales performance. Is there justification for Ken's concern? Explain.

5. Under what circumstances may a static budget be an appropriate basis for evaluating a manager's effectiveness in controlling costs?

6. "A flexible budget is really a series of static budgets." Is this true? Why?

7. The static manufacturing overhead budget based on 40,000 direct labor hours shows budgeted indirect labor costs of $54,000. During March, the department incurs $65,000 of indirect labor while working 45,000 direct labor hours. Is this a favorable or unfavorable performance? Why?

8. A static overhead budget based on 40,000 direct labor hours shows Factory Insurance $6,500 as a fixed cost. At the 50,000 direct labor hours worked in March, factory insurance costs were $6,200. Is this a favorable or unfavorable performance? Why?

9. Megan Pedigo is confused about how a flexible budget is prepared. Identify the steps for Megan.

10. Cali Company has prepared a graph of flexible budget data. At zero direct labor hours, the total budgeted cost line intersects the vertical axis at $25,000. At 10,000 direct labor hours, the line drawn from the total budgeted cost line intersects the vertical axis at $85,000. How may the fixed and variable costs be expressed?

11. The flexible budget formula is fixed costs $40,000 plus variable costs of $4 per direct labor hour. What

is the total budgeted cost at (a) 9,000 hours and (b) 12,345 hours?

12. What is management by exception? What criteria may be used in identifying exceptions?

13. What is responsibility accounting? Explain the purpose of responsibility accounting.

14. Eve Rooney is studying for an accounting examination. Describe for Eve what conditions are necessary for responsibility accounting to be used effectively.

15. Distinguish between controllable and noncontrollable costs.

16. How do responsibility reports differ from budget reports?

17. What is the relationship, if any, between a responsibility reporting system and a company's organization chart?

18. Distinguish among the three types of responsibility centers.

19. (a) What costs are included in a performance report for a cost center? (b) In the report, are variable and fixed costs identified?

20. How do direct fixed costs differ from indirect fixed costs? Are both types of fixed costs controllable?

21. Jane Nott is confused about controllable margin reported in an income statement for a profit center. How is this margin computed, and what is its primary purpose?

22. What is the primary basis for evaluating the performance of the manager of an investment center? Indicate the formula for this basis.

23. Explain the ways that ROI can be improved.

24. Indicate two behavioral principles that pertain to (a) the manager being evaluated and (b) top management.

***25.** What is a major disadvantage of using ROI to evaluate investment and company performance?

***26.** What is residual income, and what is one of its major weaknesses?

Brief Exercises

BE21-1 For the quarter ended March 31, 2012, Maris Company accumulates the following sales data for its product, Garden-Tools: $310,000 budget; $304,000 actual. Prepare a static budget report for the quarter.

Prepare static budget report. (SO 2), **AP**

BE21-2 Data for Maris Company are given in BE21-1. In the second quarter, budgeted sales were $380,000, and actual sales were $383,000. Prepare a static budget report for the second quarter and for the year to date.

Prepare static budget report for 2 quarters. (SO 2), **AP**

BE21-3 In Paige Company, direct labor is $20 per hour. The company expects to operate at 10,000 direct labor hours each month. In January 2012, direct labor totaling $203,000 is incurred in working 10,400 hours. Prepare (a) a static budget report and (b) a flexible budget report. Evaluate the usefulness of each report.

Show usefulness of flexible budgets in evaluating performance. (SO 3), **E**

BE21-4 Gundy Company expects to produce 1,200,000 units of Product XX in 2012. Monthly production is expected to range from 80,000 to 120,000 units. Budgeted variable manufacturing costs per unit are: direct materials $4, direct labor $6, and overhead $8. Budgeted fixed manufacturing costs per unit for depreciation are $2 and for supervision are $1. Prepare a flexible manufacturing budget for the relevant range value using 20,000 unit increments.

Prepare a flexible budget for variable costs. (SO 3), **AP**

BE21-5 Data for Gundy Company are given in BE21-4. In March 2012, the company incurs the following costs in producing 100,000 units: direct materials $425,000, direct labor $590,000, and variable overhead $805,000. Actual fixed costs were equal to budgeted fixed costs. Prepare a flexible budget report for March. Were costs controlled?

Prepare flexible budget report. (SO 3), **AN**

BE21-6 In the Assembly Department of Hannon Company, budgeted and actual manufacturing overhead costs for the month of April 2012 were as follows.

Prepare a responsibility report for a cost center. (SO 5), **AP**

	Budget	Actual
Indirect materials	$15,000	$14,300
Indirect labor	20,000	20,600
Utilities	10,000	10,750
Supervision	5,000	5,000

All costs are controllable by the department manager. Prepare a responsibility report for April for the cost center.

BE21-7 Elbert Manufacturing Company accumulates the following summary data for the year ending December 31, 2012, for its Water Division which it operates as a profit center: sales—$2,000,000 budget, $2,080,000 actual; variable costs—$1,000,000 budget,

Prepare a responsibility report for a profit center. (SO 6), **AP**

$1,050,000 actual; and controllable fixed costs—$300,000 budget, $310,000 actual. Prepare a responsibility report for the Water Division.

Prepare a responsibility report for an investment center.
(SO 7), AP

BE21-8 For the year ending December 31, 2012, Cobb Company accumulates the following data for the Plastics Division which it operates as an investment center: contribution margin—$700,000 budget, $715,000 actual; controllable fixed costs—$300,000 budget, $309,000 actual. Average operating assets for the year were $2,000,000. Prepare a responsibility report for the Plastics Division beginning with contribution margin.

Compute return on investment using the ROI formula.
(SO 7), AP

BE21-9 For its three investment centers, Kaspar Company accumulates the following data:

	I	II	III
Sales	$2,000,000	$3,000,000	$ 4,000,000
Controllable margin	1,200,000	2,000,000	3,200,000
Average operating assets	5,000,000	8,000,000	10,000,000

Compute the return on investment (ROI) for each center.

Compute return on investment under changed conditions.
(SO 7), AP

BE21-10 Data for the investment centers for Kaspar Company are given in BE21-9. The centers expect the following changes in the next year: (I) increase sales 15%; (II) decrease costs $200,000; (III) decrease average operating assets $400,000. Compute the expected return on investment (ROI) for each center. Assume center I has a contribution margin percentage of 75%.

Compute ROI and residual income.
(SO 8), AP

***BE21-11** Voorhees, Inc. reports the following financial information.

Average operating assets	$3,000,000
Controllable margin	$ 600,000
Minimum rate of return	9%

Compute the return on investment and the residual income.

Compute ROI and residual income.
(SO 8), AP

***BE21-12** Presented below is information related to the Southern Division of Lumber, Inc.

Contribution margin	$1,200,000
Controllable margin	$ 800,000
Average operating assets	$3,200,000
Minimum rate of return	16%

Compute the Southern Division's return on investment and residual income.

Do it! Review

Compute total budgeted costs in flexible budget.
(SO 3), AP

Do it! 21-1 In Pargo Company's flexible budget graph, the fixed cost line and the total budgeted cost line intersect the vertical axis at $90,000. The total budgeted cost line is $330,000 at an activity level of 60,000 direct labor hours. Compute total budgeted costs at 70,000 direct labor hours.

Prepare and evaluate a flexible budget report.
(SO 3), AP

Do it! 21-2 Mussatto Company expects to produce 50,000 units of product IOA during the current year. Budgeted variable manufacturing costs per unit are direct materials $7, direct labor $12, and overhead $18. Annual budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead costs are $96,000 for depreciation and $45,000 for supervision.

In the current month, Mussatto produced 6,000 units and incurred the following costs: direct materials $38,900, direct labor $70,200, variable overhead $116,500, depreciation $8,000, and supervision $4,000.

Prepare a flexible budget report. (*Note:* You do not need to prepare the heading.) Were costs controlled?

Prepare a responsibility report.
(SO 6), AP

Do it! 21-3 The Wellstone Division operates as a profit center. It reports the following for the year.

	Budgeted	Actual
Sales	$2,000,000	$1,800,000
Variable costs	800,000	750,000
Controllable fixed costs	550,000	550,000
Noncontrollable fixed costs	250,000	250,000

Prepare a responsibility report for the Wellstone Division at December 31, 2012.

Do it! 21-4 The service division of Raney Industries reported the following results for 2012.

Compute ROI and expected return on investments.
(SO 7), **AP**

Sales	$500,000
Variable costs	300,000
Controllable fixed costs	75,000
Average operating assets	450,000

Management is considering the following independent courses of action in 2013 in order to maximize the return on investment for this division.

1. Reduce average operating assets by $50,000, with no change in controllable margin.
2. Increase sales $100,000, with no change in the contribution margin percentage.

(a) Compute the controllable margin and the return on investment for 2012. (b) Compute the controllable margin and the expected return on investment for each proposed alternative.

Exercises

E21-1 Mike Trusler has prepared the following list of statements about budgetary control.

Understand the concept of budgetary control.
(SO 1, 2, 3), **K**

1. Budget reports compare actual results with planned objectives.
2. All budget reports are prepared on a weekly basis.
3. Management uses budget reports to analyze differences between actual and planned results and determine their causes.
4. As a result of analyzing budget reports, management may either take corrective action or modify future plans.
5. Budgetary control works best when a company has an informal reporting system.
6. The primary recipients of the sales report are the sales manager and the vice president of production.
7. The primary recipient of the scrap report is the production manager.
8. A static budget is a projection of budget data at one level of activity.
9. Top management's reaction to unfavorable differences is not influenced by the materiality of the difference.
10. A static budget is not appropriate in evaluating a manager's effectiveness in controlling costs unless the actual activity level approximates the static budget activity level or the behavior of the costs is fixed.

Instructions
Identify each statement as true or false. If false, indicate how to correct the statement.

E21-2 Crede Company budgeted selling expenses of $30,000 in January, $35,000 in February, and $40,000 in March. Actual selling expenses were $31,000 in January, $34,500 in February, and $47,000 in March.

Prepare and evaluate static budget report.
(SO 2), **AN**

Instructions
(a) Prepare a selling expense report that compares budgeted and actual amounts by month and for the year to date.
(b) What is the purpose of the report prepared in (a), and who would be the primary recipient?
(c) What would be the likely result of management's analysis of the report?

E21-3 Thome Company uses a flexible budget for manufacturing overhead based on direct labor hours. Variable manufacturing overhead costs per direct labor hour are as follows.

Prepare flexible manufacturing overhead budget.
(SO 3), **AP**

Indirect labor	$1.00
Indirect materials	0.50
Utilities	0.40

Fixed overhead costs per month are: Supervision $4,000, Depreciation $1,500, and Property Taxes $800. The company believes it will normally operate in a range of 7,000–10,000 direct labor hours per month.

Instructions

Prepare a monthly manufacturing overhead flexible budget for 2012 for the expected range of activity, using increments of 1,000 direct labor hours.

Prepare flexible budget reports for manufacturing overhead costs, and comment on findings.
(SO 3), AN

E21-4 Using the information in E21-3, assume that in July 2012, Thome Company incurs the following manufacturing overhead costs.

Variable Costs		Fixed Costs	
Indirect labor	$8,700	Supervision	$4,000
Indirect materials	4,300	Depreciation	1,500
Utilities	3,200	Property taxes	800

Instructions

(a) Prepare a flexible budget performance report, assuming that the company worked 9,000 direct labor hours during the month.
(b) Prepare a flexible budget performance report, assuming that the company worked 8,500 direct labor hours during the month.
(c) Comment on your findings.

Prepare flexible selling expense budget.
(SO 3), AP

E21-5 DeWitt Company uses flexible budgets to control its selling expenses. Monthly sales are expected to range from $170,000 to $200,000. Variable costs and their percentage relationship to sales are: Sales Commissions 5%, Advertising 4%, Traveling 3%, and Delivery 2%. Fixed selling expenses will consist of Sales Salaries $34,000, Depreciation on Delivery Equipment $7,000, and Insurance on Delivery Equipment $1,000.

Instructions

Prepare a monthly flexible budget for each $10,000 increment of sales within the relevant range for the year ending December 31, 2012.

Prepare flexible budget reports for selling expenses.
(SO 3), AN

E21-6 The actual selling expenses incurred in March 2012 by DeWitt Company are as follows.

Variable Expenses		Fixed Expenses	
Sales commissions	$9,200	Sales salaries	$34,000
Advertising	7,000	Depreciation	7,000
Travel	5,100	Insurance	1,000
Delivery	3,500		

Instructions

(a) Prepare a flexible budget performance report for March using the budget data in E21-5, assuming that March sales were $170,000. Expected and actual sales are the same.
(b) Prepare a flexible budget performance report, assuming that March sales were $180,000. Expected sales and actual sales are the same.
(c) Comment on the importance of using flexible budgets in evaluating the performance of the sales manager.

Prepare flexible budget report for cost center.
(SO 3), AP

E21-7 Kitchen Help Inc. (KHI) is a manufacturer of toaster ovens. To improve control over operations, the president of KHI wants to begin using a flexible budgeting system, rather than use only the current master budget. The following data are available for KHI's expected costs at production levels of 90,000, 100,000, and 110,000 units.

Variable costs	
Manufacturing	$6 per unit
Administrative	$3 per unit
Selling	$1 per unit
Fixed costs	
Manufacturing	$150,000
Administrative	$ 80,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare a flexible budget for each of the possible production levels: 90,000, 100,000, and 110,000 units.
(b) If KHI sells the toaster ovens for $15 each, how many units will it have to sell to make a profit of $250,000 before taxes?

(CGA adapted)

E21-8 Rensing Groomers is in the dog-grooming business. Its operating costs are described by the following formulas:

Prepare flexible budget report; compare flexible and static budgets.
(SO 2, 3), **E**

Grooming supplies (variable)	y = \$0 + \$4x
Direct labor (variable)	y = \$0 + \$12x
Overhead (mixed)	y = \$8,000 + \$1x

Milo, the owner, has determined that direct labor is the cost driver for all three categories of costs.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a flexible budget for activity levels of 550, 600, and 700 direct labor hours.
(b) Explain why the flexible budget is more informative than the static budget.
(c) Calculate the total cost per direct labor hour at each of the activity levels specified in part (a).
(d) The groomers at Rensing normally work a total of 650 direct labor hours during each month. Each grooming job normally takes a groomer 1¼ hours. Milo wants to earn a profit equal to 40% of the costs incurred. Determine what he should charge each pet owner for grooming.

(CGA adapted)

E21-9 Lowell Company's manufacturing overhead budget for the first quarter of 2012 contained the following data.

Prepare flexible budget and responsibility report for manufacturing overhead.
(SO 3, 5), **AP**

Variable Costs		Fixed Costs	
Indirect materials	\$12,000	Supervisory salaries	\$36,000
Indirect labor	10,000	Depreciation	7,000
Utilities	8,000	Property taxes and insurance	8,000
Maintenance	6,000	Maintenance	5,000

Actual variable costs were: indirect materials \$13,800, indirect labor \$9,600, utilities \$8,700, and maintenance \$4,900. Actual fixed costs equaled budgeted costs except for property taxes and insurance, which were \$8,200. The actual activity level equaled the budgeted level.

All costs are considered controllable by the production department manager except for depreciation, and property taxes and insurance.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a manufacturing overhead flexible budget report for the first quarter.
(b) Prepare a responsibility report for the first quarter.

E21-10 As sales manager, Joe Batista was given the following static budget report for selling expenses in the Clothing Department of Soria Company for the month of October.

Prepare flexible budget report, and answer question.
(SO 2, 3), **E**

SORIA COMPANY
Clothing Department
Budget Report
For the Month Ended October 31, 2012

	Budget	Actual	Difference Favorable F Unfavorable U
Sales in units	8,000	10,000	2,000 F
Variable expenses			
Sales commissions	\$ 2,000	\$ 2,600	\$ 600 U
Advertising expense	800	850	50 U
Travel expense	3,600	4,000	400 U
Free samples given out	1,600	1,300	300 F
Total variable	8,000	8,750	750 U
Fixed expenses			
Rent	1,500	1,500	–0–
Sales salaries	1,200	1,200	–0–
Office salaries	800	800	–0–
Depreciation—autos (sales staff)	500	500	–0–
Total fixed	4,000	4,000	–0–
Total expenses	\$12,000	\$12,750	\$ 750 U

As a result of this budget report, Joe was called into the president's office and congratulated on his fine sales performance. He was reprimanded, however, for allowing his costs to get out of control. Joe knew something was wrong with the performance report that he had been given. However, he was not sure what to do, and comes to you for advice.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a budget report based on flexible budget data to help Joe.
(b) Should Joe have been reprimanded? Explain.

Prepare and discuss a responsibility report.
(SO 3, 5), **AP**

E21-11 Kirkland Plumbing Company is a newly formed company specializing in plumbing services for home and business. The owner, Lenny Kirkland, had divided the company into two segments: Home Plumbing Services and Business Plumbing Services. Each segment is run by its own supervisor, while basic selling and administrative services are shared by both segments.

Lenny has asked you to help him create a performance reporting system that will allow him to measure each segment's performance in terms of its profitability. To that end, the following information has been collected on the Home Plumbing Services segment for the first quarter of 2012.

	Budgeted	Actual
Service revenue	$25,000	$26,000
Allocated portion of:		
Building depreciation	11,000	11,000
Advertising	5,000	4,200
Billing	3,500	3,000
Property taxes	1,200	1,000
Material and supplies	1,500	1,200
Supervisory salaries	9,000	9,400
Insurance	4,000	3,500
Wages	3,000	3,300
Gas and oil	2,700	3,400
Equipment depreciation	1,600	1,300

Instructions

(a) Prepare a responsibility report for the first quarter of 2012 for the Home Plumbing Services segment.
(b) Write a memo to Lenny Kirkland discussing the principles that should be used when preparing performance reports.

State total budgeted cost formulas, and prepare flexible budget graph.
(SO 3), **AP**

E21-12 Venetian Company has two production departments, Fabricating and Assembling. At a department managers' meeting, the controller uses flexible budget graphs to explain total budgeted costs. Separate graphs based on direct labor hours are used for each department. The graphs show the following.

1. At zero direct labor hours, the total budgeted cost line and the fixed cost line intersect the vertical axis at $40,000 in the Fabricating Department and $30,000 in the Assembling Department.
2. At normal capacity of 50,000 direct labor hours, the line drawn from the total budgeted cost line intersects the vertical axis at $150,000 in the Fabricating Department, and $110,000 in the Assembling Department.

Instructions

(a) State the total budgeted cost formula for each department.
(b) Compute the total budgeted cost for each department, assuming actual direct labor hours worked were 53,000 and 47,000, in the Fabricating and Assembling Departments, respectively.
(c) Prepare the flexible budget graph for the Fabricating Department, assuming the maximum direct labor hours in the relevant range is 100,000. Use increments of 10,000 direct labor hours on the horizontal axis and increments of $50,000 on the vertical axis.

Prepare reports in a responsibility reporting system.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

E21-13 Fultz Company's organization chart includes the president; the vice president of production; three assembly plants—Dallas, Atlanta, and Tucson; and two departments within each plant—Machining and Finishing. Budget and actual manufacturing cost data for July 2012 are as follows.

Finishing Department—Dallas: Direct materials $41,500 actual, $45,000 budget; direct labor $83,000 actual, $82,000 budget; manufacturing overhead $51,000 actual, $49,200 budget.

Machining Department—Dallas: Total manufacturing costs $220,000 actual, $216,000 budget.

Atlanta Plant: Total manufacturing costs $424,000 actual, $421,000 budget.

Tucson Plant: Total manufacturing costs $494,000 actual, $496,500 budget.

The Dallas plant manager's office costs were $95,000 actual and $92,000 budget. The vice president of production's office costs were $132,000 actual and $130,000 budget. Office costs are not allocated to departments and plants.

Instructions

Using the format on page 1095, prepare the reports in a responsibility system for:

(a) The Finishing Department—Dallas.
(b) The plant manager—Dallas.
(c) The vice president of production.

E21-14 The Mixing Department manager of Malone Company is able to control all overhead costs except rent, property taxes, and salaries. Budgeted monthly overhead costs for the Mixing Department, in alphabetical order, are:

Prepare a responsibility report for a cost center.
(SO 5), **AN**

Indirect labor	$12,000	Property taxes	$ 1,000
Indirect materials	7,500	Rent	1,800
Lubricants	1,700	Salaries	10,000
Maintenance	3,500	Utilities	5,000

Actual costs incurred for January 2012 are indirect labor $12,200; indirect materials $10,200; lubricants $1,650; maintenance $3,500; property taxes $1,100; rent $1,800; salaries $10,000; and utilities $6,500.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a responsibility report for January 2012.
(b) What would be the likely result of management's analysis of the report?

E21-15 Deitz Manufacturing Inc. has three divisions which are operated as profit centers. Actual operating data for the divisions listed alphabetically are as follows.

Compute missing amounts in responsibility reports for three profit centers, and prepare a report.
(SO 6), **AN**

Operating Data	Women's Shoes	Men's Shoes	Children's Shoes
Contribution margin	$240,000	(3)	$180,000
Controllable fixed costs	100,000	(4)	(5)
Controllable margin	(1)	$ 90,000	96,000
Sales	600,000	450,000	(6)
Variable costs	(2)	330,000	250,000

Instructions

(a) Compute the missing amounts. Show computations.
(b) Prepare a responsibility report for the Women's Shoes Division assuming (1) the data are for the month ended June 30, 2012, and (2) all data equal budget except variable costs which are $10,000 over budget.

E21-16 The Sports Equipment Division of Harrington Company is operated as a profit center. Sales for the division were budgeted for 2012 at $900,000. The only variable costs budgeted for the division were cost of goods sold ($440,000) and selling and administrative ($60,000). Fixed costs were budgeted at $100,000 for cost of goods sold, $90,000 for selling and administrative and $70,000 for noncontrollable fixed costs. Actual results for these items were:

Prepare a responsibility report for a profit center, and compute ROI.
(SO 6, 7), **AP**

Sales	$880,000
Cost of goods sold	
Variable	409,000
Fixed	105,000
Selling and administrative	
Variable	61,000
Fixed	67,000
Noncontrollable fixed	80,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare a responsibility report for the Sports Equipment Division for 2012.
(b) Assume the division is an investment center, and average operating assets were $1,000,000. The noncontrollable fixed costs are controllable at the investment center level. Compute ROI.

Compute ROI for current year and for possible future changes.
(SO 7), AP

E21-17 The West Division of Nieto Company reported the following data for the current year.

Sales	$3,000,000
Variable costs	1,950,000
Controllable fixed costs	600,000
Average operating assets	5,000,000

Top management is unhappy with the investment center's return on investment (ROI). It asks the manager of the West Division to submit plans to improve ROI in the next year. The manager believes it is feasible to consider the following independent courses of action.

1. Increase sales by $320,000 with no change in the contribution margin percentage.
2. Reduce variable costs by $100,000.
3. Reduce average operating assets by 4%.

Instructions

(a) Compute the return on investment (ROI) for the current year.
(b) Using the ROI formula, compute the ROI under each of the proposed courses of action. (Round to one decimal.)

Prepare a responsibility report for an investment center.
(SO 7), AP

E21-18 The Dinkle and Frizell Dental Clinic provides both preventive and orthodontic dental services. The two owners, Reese Dinkle and Anita Frizell, operate the clinic as two separate investment centers: Preventive Services and Orthodontic Services. Each of them is in charge of one of the centers: Reese for Preventive Services and Anita for Orthodontic Services. Each month they prepare an income statement for the two centers to evaluate performance and make decisions about how to improve the operational efficiency and profitability of the clinic.

Recently, they have been concerned about the profitability of the Preventive Services operations. For several months, it has been reporting a loss. Shown below is the responsibility report for the month of May 2012.

	Actual	Difference from Budget
Service revenue	$ 40,000	$1,000 F
Variable costs:		
Filling materials	5,000	100 U
Novocain	4,000	200 U
Supplies	2,000	250 F
Dental assistant wages	2,500	–0–
Utilities	500	50 U
Total variable costs	14,000	100 U
Fixed costs:		
Allocated portion of receptionist's salary	3,000	200 U
Dentist salary	10,000	500 U
Equipment depreciation	6,000	–0–
Allocated portion of building depreciation	15,000	1,000 U
Total fixed costs	34,000	1,700 U
Operating income (loss)	$ (8,000)	$ 800 U

In addition, the owners know that the investment in operating assets at the beginning of the month was $82,400, and it was $77,600 at the end of the month. They have asked for your assistance in evaluating their current performance reporting system.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a responsibility report for an investment center as illustrated in the chapter.
(b) Write a memo to the owners discussing the deficiencies of their current reporting system.

Prepare missing amounts in responsibility reports for three investment centers.
(SO 7), AN

E21-19 The Pletcher Transportation Company uses a responsibility reporting system to measure the performance of its three investment centers: Planes, Taxis, and Limos.

Segment performance is measured using a system of responsibility reports and return on investment calculations. The allocation of resources within the company and the segment managers' bonuses are based in part on the results shown in these reports.

Recently, the company was the victim of a computer virus that deleted portions of the company's accounting records. This was discovered when the current period's responsibility reports were being prepared. The printout of the actual operating results appeared as follows.

	Planes	Taxis	Limos
Service revenue	$?	$500,000	$?
Variable costs	5,500,000	?	320,000
Contribution margin	?	200,000	480,000
Controllable fixed costs	1,500,000	?	?
Controllable margin	?	80,000	240,000
Average operating assets	25,000,000	?	1,600,000
Return on investment	12%	10%	?

Instructions

Determine the missing pieces of information above.

***E21-20** Presented below is selected information for three regional divisions of Medina Company.

Compare ROI and residual income.
(SO 8), **AN**

	Divisions		
	North	West	South
Contribution margin	$ 300,000	$ 500,000	$ 400,000
Controllable margin	$ 150,000	$ 400,000	$ 225,000
Average operating assets	$1,000,000	$2,000,000	$1,500,000
Minimum rate of return	13%	16%	10%

Instructions

(a) Compute the return on investment for each division.
(b) Compute the residual income for each division.
(c) Assume that each division has an investment opportunity that would provide a rate of return of 19%.
  (1) If ROI is used to measure performance, which division or divisions will probably make the additional investment?
  (2) If residual income is used to measure performance, which division or divisions will probably make the additional investment?

***E21-21** Presented below is selected financial information for two divisions of Yono Brewing.

Fill in information related to ROI and residual income.
(SO 8), **AN**

	Lager	Lite Lager
Contribution margin	$500,000	$ 300,000
Controllable margin	200,000	(c)
Average operating assets	(a)	$1,000,000
Minimum rate of return	(b)	13%
Return on investment	25%	(d)
Residual income	$ 90,000	$ 200,000

Instructions

Supply the missing information for the lettered items.

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Prepare flexible budget and budget report for manufacturing overhead.
(SO 3), **AN**

P21-1A Cook Company estimates that 360,000 direct labor hours will be worked during the coming year, 2012, in the Packaging Department. On this basis, the budgeted manufacturing overhead cost data, shown on the next page, are computed for the year.

Fixed Overhead Costs	
Supervision	$ 90,000
Depreciation	60,000
Insurance	30,000
Rent	24,000
Property taxes	18,000
	$222,000

Variable Overhead Costs	
Indirect labor	$126,000
Indirect materials	90,000
Repairs	54,000
Utilities	72,000
Lubricants	18,000
	$360,000

It is estimated that direct labor hours worked each month will range from 27,000 to 36,000 hours.

During October, 27,000 direct labor hours were worked and the following overhead costs were incurred.

Fixed overhead costs: Supervision $7,500, Depreciation $5,000, Insurance $2,470, Rent $2,000, and Property taxes $1,500.

Variable overhead costs: Indirect labor $10,360, Indirect materials, $6,400, Repairs $4,000, Utilities $5,700, and Lubricants $1,640.

Instructions

(a) Total costs: DLH 27,000, $45,500; DLH 36,000, $54,500

(b) Total $1,070 U

(a) Prepare a monthly manufacturing overhead flexible budget for each increment of 3,000 direct labor hours over the relevant range for the year ending December 31, 2012.

(b) Prepare a flexible budget report for October.

(c) Comment on management's efficiency in controlling manufacturing overhead costs in October.

Prepare flexible budget, budget report, and graph for manufacturing overhead.

(SO 3), **E**

P21-2A Zelmer Company manufactures tablecloths. Sales have grown rapidly over the past 2 years. As a result, the president has installed a budgetary control system for 2012. The following data were used in developing the master manufacturing overhead budget for the Ironing Department, which is based on an activity index of direct labor hours.

Variable Costs	Rate per Direct Labor Hour
Indirect labor	$0.40
Indirect materials	0.50
Factory utilities	0.30
Factory repairs	0.20

Annual Fixed Costs	
Supervision	$42,000
Depreciation	18,000
Insurance	12,000
Rent	24,000

The master overhead budget was prepared on the expectation that 480,000 direct labor hours will be worked during the year. In June, 42,000 direct labor hours were worked. At that level of activity, actual costs were as shown below.

Variable—per direct labor hour: Indirect labor $0.43, Indirect materials $0.49, Factory utilities $0.32, and Factory repairs $0.24.

Fixed: same as budgeted.

Instructions

(a) Total costs: 35,000 DLH, $57,000; 50,000 DLH, $78,000

(b) Budget $66,800 Actual $70,160

(a) Prepare a monthly manufacturing overhead flexible budget for the year ending December 31, 2012, assuming production levels range from 35,000 to 50,000 direct labor hours. Use increments of 5,000 direct labor hours.

(b) Prepare a budget report for June comparing actual results with budget data based on the flexible budget.

(c) Were costs effectively controlled? Explain.

(d) State the formula for computing the total budgeted costs for the Ironing Department.

(e) Prepare the flexible budget graph, showing total budgeted costs at 35,000 and 45,000 direct labor hours. Use increments of 5,000 direct labor hours on the horizontal axis and increments of $10,000 on the vertical axis.

State total budgeted cost formula, and prepare flexible budget reports for 2 time periods.

(SO 2, 3), **AN**

P21-3A Hill Company uses budgets in controlling costs. The August 2012 budget report for the company's Assembling Department is as follows.

HILL COMPANY
Budget Report
Assembling Department
For the Month Ended August 31, 2012

Manufacturing Costs	Budget	Actual	Difference Favorable F Unfavorable U
Variable costs			
Direct materials	$ 48,000	$ 47,000	$1,000 F
Direct labor	54,000	51,300	2,700 F
Indirect materials	24,000	24,200	200 U
Indirect labor	18,000	17,500	500 F
Utilities	15,000	14,900	100 F
Maintenance	9,000	9,200	200 U
Total variable	168,000	164,100	3,900 F
Fixed costs			
Rent	12,000	12,000	–0–
Supervision	17,000	17,000	–0–
Depreciation	7,000	7,000	–0–
Total fixed	36,000	36,000	–0–
Total costs	$204,000	$200,100	$3,900 F

The monthly budget amounts in the report were based on an expected production of 60,000 units per month or 720,000 units per year. The Assembling Department manager is pleased with the report and expects a raise, or at least praise for a job well done. The company president, however, is unhappy with the results for August because only 58,000 units were produced.

Instructions

(a) State the total monthly budgeted cost formula.

(b) Prepare a budget report for August using flexible budget data. Why does this report provide a better basis for evaluating performance than the report based on static budget data? (b) Budget $198,400

(c) In September, 64,000 units were produced. Prepare the budget report using flexible budget data, assuming (1) each variable cost was 10% higher than its actual cost in August, and (2) fixed costs were the same in September as in August. (c) Budget $215,200 Actual $216,510

P21-4A Clarke Manufacturing Inc. operates the Patio Furniture Division as a profit center. Operating data for this division for the year ended December 31, 2012, are as shown below. *Prepare responsibility report for a profit center.* (SO 6), **AN**

	Budget	Difference from Budget
Sales	$2,500,000	$60,000 F
Cost of goods sold		
Variable	1,300,000	41,000 F
Controllable fixed	200,000	6,000 U
Selling and administrative		
Variable	220,000	7,000 U
Controllable fixed	50,000	2,000 U
Noncontrollable fixed costs	70,000	4,000 U

In addition, Clarke Manufacturing incurs $180,000 of indirect fixed costs that were budgeted at $175,000. Twenty percent (20%) of these costs are allocated to the Patio Furniture Division.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a responsibility report for the Patio Furniture Division for the year. (a) Contribution margin $94,000 F Controllable margin $86,000 F

(b) Comment on the manager's performance in controlling revenues and costs.

(c) Identify any costs excluded from the responsibility report and explain why they were excluded.

Prepare responsibility report for an investment center, and compute ROI.
(SO 7), E

P21-5A Suppan Manufacturing Company manufactures a variety of tools and industrial equipment. The company operates through three divisions. Each division is an investment center. Operating data for the Home Division for the year ended December 31, 2012, and relevant budget data are as follows.

	Actual	Comparison with Budget
Sales	$1,500,000	$100,000 favorable
Variable cost of goods sold	700,000	60,000 unfavorable
Variable selling and administrative expenses	125,000	25,000 unfavorable
Controllable fixed cost of goods sold	170,000	On target
Controllable fixed selling and administrative expenses	80,000	On target

Average operating assets for the year for the Home Division were $2,500,000 which was also the budgeted amount.

Instructions

(a) Controllable margin: Budget $410; Actual $425

(a) Prepare a responsibility report (in thousands of dollars) for the Home Division.
(b) Evaluate the manager's performance. Which items will likely be investigated by top management?
(c) Compute the expected ROI in 2013 for the Home Division, assuming the following independent changes to actual data.
  (1) Variable cost of goods sold is decreased by 6%.
  (2) Average operating assets are decreased by 10%.
  (3) Sales are increased by $200,000, and this increase is expected to increase contribution margin by $90,000.

Prepare reports for cost centers under responsibility accounting, and comment on performance of managers.
(SO 4), AN

P21-6A Durham Company uses a responsibility reporting system. It has divisions in Denver, Seattle, and San Diego. Each division has three production departments: Cutting, Shaping, and Finishing. The responsibility for each department rests with a manager who reports to the division production manager. Each division manager reports to the vice president of production. There are also vice presidents for marketing and finance. All vice presidents report to the president.

In January 2012, controllable actual and budget manufacturing overhead cost data for the departments and divisions were as shown below.

Manufacturing Overhead	Actual	Budget
Individual costs—Cutting Department—Seattle		
Indirect labor	$ 73,000	$ 70,000
Indirect materials	47,700	46,000
Maintenance	20,500	18,000
Utilities	20,100	17,000
Supervision	22,000	20,000
	$183,300	$171,000
Total costs		
Shaping Department—Seattle	$158,000	$148,000
Finishing Department—Seattle	210,000	206,000
Denver division	676,000	673,000
San Diego division	722,000	715,000

Additional overhead costs were incurred as follows: Seattle division production manager—actual costs $52,500, budget $51,000; vice president of production—actual costs $65,000, budget $64,000; president—actual costs $76,400, budget $74,200. These expenses are not allocated.

The vice presidents who report to the president, other than the vice president of production, had the following expenses.

Vice President	Actual	Budget
Marketing	$133,600	$130,000
Finance	109,000	105,000

Instructions

(a) Using the format on page 1095, prepare the following responsibility reports.
  (1) Manufacturing overhead—Cutting Department manager—Seattle division.
  (2) Manufacturing overhead—Seattle division manager.
  (3) Manufacturing overhead—vice president of production.
  (4) Manufacturing overhead and expenses—president.

(a) (1) $12,300 U
(2) $27,800 U
(3) $38,800 U
(4) $48,600 U

(b) Comment on the comparative performances of:
  (1) Department managers in the Seattle division.
  (2) Division managers.
  (3) Vice presidents.

***P21-7A** Delby Industries has manufactured prefabricated houses for over 20 years. The houses are constructed in sections to be assembled on customers' lots. Delby expanded into the precut housing market when it acquired Jensen Company, one of its suppliers. In this market, various types of lumber are precut into the appropriate lengths, banded into packages, and shipped to customers' lots for assembly. Delby designated the Jensen Division as an investment center.

Compare ROI and residual income.
(SO 8), **AN**

Delby uses return on investment (ROI) as a performance measure with investment defined as average operating assets. Management bonuses are based in part on ROI. All investments are expected to earn a minimum rate of return of 16%. Jensen's ROI has ranged from 20.1% to 23.5% since it was acquired. Jensen had an investment opportunity in 2012 that had an estimated ROI of 19%. Jensen management decided against the investment because it believed the investment would decrease the division's overall ROI.

Selected financial information for Jensen are presented below. The division's average operating assets were $12,300,000 for the year 2012.

JENSEN DIVISION
Selected Financial Information
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales	$26,000,000
Contribution margin	9,100,000
Controllable margin	2,460,000

Instructions

(a) Calculate the following performance measures for 2012 for the Jensen Division.
  (1) Return on investment (ROI).
  (2) Residual income.

(b) Would the management of Jensen Division have been more likely to accept the investment opportunity it had in 2012 if residual income were used as a performance measure instead of ROI? Explain your answer.

(CMA adapted)

Problems: Set B

P21-1B Speier Company estimates that 240,000 direct labor hours will be worked during 2012 in the Assembly Department. On this basis, the following budgeted manufacturing overhead data are computed.

Prepare flexible budget and budget report for manufacturing overhead.
(SO 3), **AN**

Variable Overhead Costs	
Indirect labor	$ 72,000
Indirect materials	48,000
Repairs	36,000
Utilities	26,400
Lubricants	9,600
	$192,000

Fixed Overhead Costs	
Supervision	$ 75,000
Depreciation	30,000
Insurance	12,000
Rent	9,000
Property taxes	6,000
	$132,000

It is estimated that direct labor hours worked each month will range from 18,000 to 24,000 hours.

During January, 20,000 direct labor hours were worked and the following overhead costs were incurred.

Variable Overhead Costs		Fixed Overhead Costs	
Indirect labor	$ 6,200	Supervision	$ 6,250
Indirect materials	3,600	Depreciation	2,500
Repairs	2,400	Insurance	1,000
Utilities	1,700	Rent	850
Lubricants	830	Property taxes	500
	$14,730		$11,100

Instructions

(a) Total costs: 18,000 DLH, $25,400; 24,000 DLH, $30,200
(b) Budget $27,000 Actual $25,830

(a) Prepare a monthly flexible manufacturing overhead budget for each increment of 2,000 direct labor hours over the relevant range for the year ending December 31, 2012.
(b) Prepare a manufacturing overhead budget report for January.
(c) Comment on management's efficiency in controlling manufacturing overhead costs in January.

Prepare flexible budget, budget report, and graph for manufacturing overhead.
(SO 3), **E**

P21-2B Gonzalez Manufacturing Company produces one product, Olpe. Because of wide fluctuations in demand for Olpe, the Assembly Department experiences significant variations in monthly production levels.

The annual master manufacturing overhead budget is based on 300,000 direct labor hours. In July, 27,500 labor hours were worked. The master manufacturing overhead budget for the year and the actual overhead costs incurred in July are as follows.

Overhead Costs	Master Budget (annual)	Actual in July
Variable		
Indirect labor	$330,000	$29,000
Indirect materials	180,000	14,000
Utilities	90,000	8,100
Maintenance	60,000	5,400
Fixed		
Supervision	150,000	12,500
Depreciation	96,000	8,000
Insurance and taxes	60,000	5,000
Total	$966,000	$82,000

Instructions

(a) Total costs: 22,500 DLH, $75,000; 30,000 DLH, $91,500
(b) Budget $86,000 Actual $82,000

(a) Prepare a monthly flexible overhead budget for the year ending December 31, 2012, assuming monthly production levels range from 22,500 to 30,000 direct labor hours. Use increments of 2,500 direct labor hours.
(b) Prepare a budget report for the month of July 2012, comparing actual results with budget data based on the flexible budget.
(c) Were costs effectively controlled? Explain.
(d) State the formula for computing the total monthly budgeted costs in the Gonzalez Manufacturing Company.
(e) Prepare the flexible budget graph showing total budgeted costs at 25,000 and 27,500 direct labor hours. Use increments of 5,000 on the horizontal axis and increments of $10,000 on the vertical axis.

State total budgeted cost formula, and prepare flexible budget reports for 2 time periods.
(SO 2, 3), **AN**

P21-3B Hardesty Company uses budgets in controlling costs. The May 2012 budget report for the company's Packaging Department is as follows.

HARDESTY COMPANY
Budget Report
Packaging Department
For the Month Ended May 31, 2012

Manufacturing Costs	Budget	Actual	Difference Favorable F Unfavorable U
Variable costs			
Direct materials	$ 40,000	$ 41,000	$1,000 U
Direct labor	45,000	47,000	2,000 U
Indirect materials	15,000	15,200	200 U
Indirect labor	12,500	13,000	500 U
Utilities	10,000	9,600	400 F
Maintenance	5,000	5,200	200 U
Total variable	127,500	131,000	3,500 U
Fixed costs			
Rent	10,000	10,000	–0–
Supervision	7,000	7,000	–0–
Depreciation	5,000	5,000	–0–
Total fixed	22,000	22,000	–0–
Total costs	$149,500	$153,000	$3,500 U

The monthly budget amounts in the report were based on an expected production of 50,000 units per month or 600,000 units per year.

The company president was displeased with the department manager's performance. The department manager, who thought he had done a good job, could not understand the unfavorable results. In May, 55,000 units were produced.

Instructions

(a) State the total budgeted cost formula.

(b) Prepare a budget report for May using flexible budget data. Why does this report provide a better basis for evaluating performance than the report based on static budget data? (b) Budget $162,250

(c) In June, 40,000 units were produced. Prepare the budget report using flexible budget data, assuming (1) each variable cost was 20% less in June than its actual cost in May, and (2) fixed costs were the same in the month of June as in May. (c) Budget $124,000 Actual $126,800

P21-4B Guzman Manufacturing Inc. operates the Home Appliance Division as a profit center. Operating data for this division for the year ended December 31, 2012, are shown below. *Prepare responsibility report for a profit center.* (SO 6), **AN**

	Budget	Difference from Budget
Sales	$2,400,000	$100,000 U
Cost of goods sold		
Variable	1,200,000	60,000 U
Controllable fixed	200,000	8,000 F
Selling and administrative		
Variable	240,000	8,000 F
Controllable fixed	60,000	4,000 U
Noncontrollable fixed costs	50,000	2,000 U

In addition, Guzman Manufacturing incurs $150,000 of indirect fixed costs that were budgeted at $155,000. Twenty percent (20%) of these costs are allocated to the Home Appliance Division. None of these costs are controllable by the division manager.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a responsibility report for the Home Appliance Division (a profit center) for the year. (a) Contribution margin $152,000 U Controllable margin $148,000 U

(b) Comment on the manager's performance in controlling revenues and costs.

(c) Identify any costs excluded from the responsibility report and explain why they were excluded.

Prepare responsibility report for an investment center, and compute ROI.
(SO 7), E

P21-5B Strauss Manufacturing Company manufactures a variety of garden and lawn equipment. The company operates through three divisions. Each division is an investment center. Operating data for the Lawnmower Division for the year ended December 31, 2012, and relevant budget data are as follows.

	Actual	Comparison with Budget
Sales	$2,900,000	$120,000 unfavorable
Variable cost of goods sold	1,400,000	90,000 unfavorable
Variable selling and administrative expenses	300,000	50,000 favorable
Controllable fixed cost of goods sold	270,000	On target
Controllable fixed selling and administrative expenses	140,000	On target

Average operating assets for the year for the Lawnmower Division were $5,000,000, which was also the budgeted amount.

Instructions

(a) Controllable margin:
Budget $950
Actual $790

(a) Prepare a responsibility report (in thousands of dollars) for the Lawnmower Division.
(b) Evaluate the manager's performance. Which items will likely be investigated by top management?
(c) Compute the expected ROI in 2013 for the Lawnmower Division, assuming the following independent changes.
  (1) Variable cost of goods sold is decreased by 15%.
  (2) Average operating assets are decreased by 20%.
  (3) Sales are increased by $500,000, and this increase is expected to increase contribution margin by $210,000.

Prepare reports for cost centers under responsibility accounting, and comment on performance of managers.
(SO 4), AN

P21-6B Gore Company uses a responsibility reporting system. It has divisions in San Francisco, Phoenix, and Tulsa. Each division has three production departments: Cutting, Shaping, and Finishing. The responsibility for each department rests with a manager who reports to the division production manager. Each division manager reports to the vice president of production. There are also vice presidents for marketing and finance. All vice presidents report to the president.

In January 2012, controllable actual and budget manufacturing overhead cost data for the departments and divisions were as shown below.

Manufacturing Overhead	Actual	Budget
Individual costs—Cutting Department—Phoenix		
Indirect labor	$ 95,000	$ 90,000
Indirect materials	62,500	61,000
Maintenance	27,400	25,000
Utilities	25,200	20,000
Supervision	31,000	28,000
	$241,100	$224,000
Total costs		
Shaping Department—Phoenix	$190,000	$177,000
Finishing Department—Phoenix	250,000	246,000
San Francisco division	722,000	715,000
Tulsa division	760,000	750,000

Additional overhead costs were incurred as follows: Phoenix division production manager—actual costs $73,100, budget $70,000; vice president of production—actual costs $72,000, budget $70,000; president—actual costs $94,200, budget $91,300. These expenses are not allocated.

The vice presidents, who report to the president (other than the vice president of production), had the following expenses.

Vice President	Actual	Budget
Marketing	$167,200	$160,000
Finance	124,000	120,000

Instructions

(a) Using the format on page 1095, prepare the following responsibility reports.
  (1) Manufacturing overhead—Cutting Department manager—Phoenix division.
  (2) Manufacturing overhead—Phoenix division manager.
  (3) Manufacturing overhead—vice president of production.
  (4) Manufacturing overhead and expenses—president.

(a) (1) $17,100 U
(2) $37,200 U
(3) $56,200 U
(4) $70,300 U

(b) Comment on the comparative performances of:
  (1) Department managers in the Phoenix division.
  (2) Division managers.
  (3) Vice presidents.

***P21-7B** Walton Industries has manufactured prefabricated garages for over 20 years. The garages are constructed in sections to be assembled on customers' lots. Walton expanded into the precut housing market when it acquired Washington Enterprises, one of its suppliers. In this market, various types of lumber are precut into the appropriate lengths, banded into packages, and shipped to customers' lots for assembly. Walton designated the Washington Division as an investment center.

Compare ROI and residual income.
(SO 8), **AN**

Walton uses return on investment (ROI) as a performance measure, with investment defined as average operating assets. Management bonuses are based in part on ROI. All investments are expected to earn a minimum rate of return of 16%. Washington Enterprises's ROI has ranged from 19.9% to 23.3% since it was acquired. Washington had an investment opportunity in 2012 that had an estimated ROI of 19%. Washington's management decided against the investment because it believed the investment would decrease the division's overall ROI.

Selected financial information for Washington Enterprises is presented below. The division's average operating assets were $7,600,000 for the year 2012.

WASHINGTON ENTERPRISES DIVISION
Selected Financial Information
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales	$16,000,000
Contribution margin	5,600,000
Controllable margin	1,500,000

Instructions

(a) Calculate the following performance measures for 2012 for the Washington Enterprises Division.
  (1) Return on investment (ROI).
  (2) Residual income.

(b) Would the management of Washington Enterprises have been more likely to accept the investment opportunity it had in 2012 if residual income were used as a performance measure instead of ROI? Explain your answer.

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Waterways Continuing Problem

(*Note:* This is a continuation of the Waterways Problem from Chapters 13 through 20.)

WCP21 Waterways Corporation is continuing its budget preparations. This problem gives you static budget information as well as actual overhead costs, and asks you to calculate amounts related to budgetary control and responsibility accounting.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to find the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP21-1 Green Pastures is a 400-acre farm on the outskirts of the Kentucky Bluegrass, specializing in the boarding of broodmares and their foals. A recent economic downturn in the thoroughbred industry has led to a decline in breeding activities, and it has made the boarding business extremely competitive. To meet the competition, Green Pastures planned in 2012 to entertain clients, advertise more extensively, and absorb expenses formerly paid by clients such as veterinary and blacksmith fees.

The budget report for 2012 is presented below. As shown, the static income statement budget for the year is based on an expected 21,900 boarding days at $25 per mare. The variable expenses per mare per day were budgeted: Feed $5, Veterinary fees $3, Blacksmith fees $0.30, and Supplies $0.55. All other budgeted expenses were either semifixed or fixed.

During the year, management decided not to replace a worker who quit in March, but it did issue a new advertising brochure and did more entertaining of clients.[1]

GREEN PASTURES
Static Budget Income Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

	Actual	Master Budget	Difference
Number of mares	52	60	8 U
Number of boarding days	18,980	21,900	2,920 U
Sales	$379,600	$547,500	$167,900 U
Less: Variable expenses			
Feed	104,390	109,500	5,110 F
Veterinary fees	58,838	65,700	6,862 F
Blacksmith fees	6,074	6,570	496 F
Supplies	10,178	12,045	1,867 F
Total variable expenses	179,480	193,815	14,335 F
Contribution margin	200,120	353,685	153,565 U
Less: Fixed expenses			
Depreciation	40,000	40,000	–0–
Insurance	11,000	11,000	–0–
Utilities	12,000	14,000	2,000 F
Repairs and maintenance	10,000	11,000	1,000 F
Labor	88,000	96,000	8,000 F
Advertisement	12,000	8,000	4,000 U
Entertainment	7,000	5,000	2,000 U
Total fixed expenses	180,000	185,000	5,000 F
Net income	$ 20,120	$168,685	$148,565 U

[1]Data for this case are based on Hans Sprohge and John Talbott, "New Applications for Variance Analysis," *Journal of Accountancy* (AICPA, New York), April 1989, pp. 137–141.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following.

(a) Based on the static budget report:
  (1) What was the primary cause(s) of the loss in net income?
  (2) Did management do a good, average, or poor job of controlling expenses?
  (3) Were management's decisions to stay competitive sound?

(b) Prepare a flexible budget report for the year.

(c) Based on the flexible budget report, answer the three questions in part (a) above.

(d) What course of action do you recommend for the management of Green Pastures?

MANAGERIAL ANALYSIS

BYP21-2 Lanier Company manufactures expensive watch cases sold as souvenirs. Three of its sales departments are: Retail Sales, Wholesale Sales, and Outlet Sales. The Retail Sales Department is a profit center. The Wholesale Sales Department is a cost center. Its managers merely take orders from customers who purchase through the company's wholesale catalog. The Outlet Sales Department is an investment center because each manager is given full responsibility for an outlet store location. The manager can hire and discharge employees, purchase, maintain, and sell equipment, and in general is fairly independent of company control.

Mary Gammel is a manager in the Retail Sales Department. Stephen Flott manages the Wholesale Sales Department. Jose Gomez manages the Golden Gate Club outlet store in San Francisco. The following are the budget responsibility reports for each of the three departments.

Budget

	Retail Sales	Wholesale Sales	Outlet Sales
Sales	$ 750,000	$ 400,000	$200,000
Variable costs			
Cost of goods sold	150,000	100,000	25,000
Advertising	100,000	30,000	5,000
Sales salaries	75,000	15,000	3,000
Printing	10,000	20,000	5,000
Travel	20,000	30,000	2,000
Fixed costs			
Rent	50,000	30,000	10,000
Insurance	5,000	2,000	1,000
Depreciation	75,000	100,000	40,000
Investment in assets	1,000,000	1,200,000	800,000

Actual Results

	Retail Sales	Wholesale Sales	Outlet Sales
Sales	$ 750,000	$ 400,000	$200,000
Variable costs			
Cost of goods sold	195,000	120,000	26,250
Advertising	100,000	30,000	5,000
Sales salaries	75,000	15,000	3,000
Printing	10,000	20,000	5,000
Travel	15,000	20,000	1,500
Fixed costs			
Rent	40,000	50,000	12,000
Insurance	5,000	2,000	1,000
Depreciation	80,000	90,000	60,000
Investment in assets	1,000,000	1,200,000	800,000

Instructions

(a) Determine which of the items should be included in the responsibility report for each of the three managers.

(b) Compare the budgeted measures with the actual results. Decide which results should be called to the attention of each manager.

REAL-WORLD FOCUS

BYP21-3 Computer Associates International, Inc., the world's leading business software company, delivers the end-to-end infrastructure to enable e-business through innovative technology, services, and education. Computer Associates has 19,000 employees worldwide and recently had revenue of over $6 billion.

Presented below is information from the company's annual report.

COMPUTER ASSOCIATES INTERNATIONAL
Management Discussion

The Company has experienced a pattern of business whereby revenue for its third and fourth fiscal quarters reflects an increase over first- and second-quarter revenue. The Company attributes this increase to clients' increased spending at the end of their calendar year budgetary periods and the culmination of its annual sales plan. Since the Company's costs do not increase proportionately with the third- and fourth-quarters' increase in revenue, the higher revenue in these quarters results in greater profit margins and income. Fourth-quarter profitability is traditionally affected by significant new hirings, training, and education expenditures for the succeeding year.

Instructions

(a) Why don't the company's costs increase proportionately as the revenues increase in the third and fourth quarters?

(b) What type of budgeting seems appropriate for the Computer Associates situation?

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING ON THE WEB

BYP21-4 There are many useful resources regarding budgeting available on websites. The following activity investigates the results of a comprehensive budgeting study.

Address: **http://www.accountingweb.com/whitepapers/centage_ioma.pdf**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Instructions

Go to the address above and then answer the following questions.

(a) What are cited as the two most common "pain points" of budgeting?

(b) What percentage of companies that participated in the survey said that they prepare annual budgets? Of those that prepare budgets, what percentage say that they start the budgeting process by first generating sales projections?

(c) What is the most common amount of time for the annual budgeting process?

(d) When evaluating variances from budgeted amounts, what was the most commonly defined range of acceptable tolerance levels?

(e) The study defines three types of consequences for varying from budgeted amounts. How does it describe "severe" consequences?

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP21-5 The manufacturing overhead budget for Fleming Company contains the following items.

Variable costs		Fixed costs	
Indirect materials	$24,000	Supervision	$18,000
Indirect labor	12,000	Inspection costs	1,000
Maintenance expense	10,000	Insurance expense	2,000
Manufacturing supplies	6,000	Depreciation	15,000
Total variable	$52,000	Total fixed	$36,000

The budget was based on an estimated 2,000 units being produced. During the past month, 1,500 units were produced, and the following costs incurred.

Variable costs		Fixed costs	
Indirect materials	$24,200	Supervision	$19,300
Indirect labor	13,500	Inspection costs	1,200
Maintenance expense	8,200	Insurance expense	2,200
Manufacturing supplies	5,100	Depreciation	14,700
Total variable	$51,000	Total fixed	$37,400

Instructions

(a) Determine which items would be controllable by Fred Bedner, the production manager.
(b) How much should have been spent during the month for the manufacture of the 1,500 units?
(c) Prepare a flexible manufacturing overhead budget report for Mr. Bedner.
(d) Prepare a responsibility report. Include only the costs that would have been controllable by Mr. Bedner. Assume that the supervision cost above includes Mr. Bedner's salary of $10,000, both at budget and actual. In an attached memo, describe clearly for Mr. Bedner the areas in which his performance needs to be improved.

ETHICS CASE

BYP21-6 American Products Corporation participates in a highly competitive industry. In order to meet this competition and achieve profit goals, the company has chosen the decentralized form of organization. Each manager of a decentralized investment center is measured on the basis of profit contribution, market penetration, and return on investment. Failure to meet the objectives established by corporate management for these measures has not been acceptable and usually has resulted in demotion or dismissal of an investment center manager.

An anonymous survey of managers in the company revealed that the managers feel the pressure to compromise their personal ethical standards to achieve the corporate objectives. For example, at certain plant locations there was pressure to reduce quality control to a level which could not assure that all unsafe products would be rejected. Also, sales personnel were encouraged to use questionable sales tactics to obtain orders, including gifts and other incentives to purchasing agents.

The chief executive officer is disturbed by the survey findings. In his opinion, such behavior cannot be condoned by the company. He concludes that the company should do something about this problem.

Instructions

(a) Who are the stakeholders (the affected parties) in this situation?
(b) Identify the ethical implications, conflicts, or dilemmas in the above described situation.
(c) What might the company do to reduce the pressures on managers and decrease the ethical conflicts?

(CMA adapted)

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP21-7 It is one thing to prepare a personal budget; it is another thing to stick to it. Financial planners have suggested various mechanisms to provide support for enforcing personal budgets. One approach is called "envelope budgeting."

Instructions

Read the article provided at **http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Envelope_budgeting**, and answer the following questions.

(a) Summarize the process of envelope budgeting.

(b) Evaluate whether you think you would benefit from envelope budgeting. What do you think are its strengths and weaknesses relative to your situation?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 1089 Budgets and the Exotic Newcastle Disease **Q:** What is the major benefit of tying a budget to the overall goals of the company? **A:** People working on a budgeting process that is clearly guided and focused by strategic goals spend less time arguing about irrelevant details and more time focusing on the items that matter.

p. 1093 Competition versus Collaboration **Q:** How might managers of separate divisions be able to reduce division costs through collaboration? **A:** Division managers might reduce costs by sharing design and marketing resources or by jointly negotiating with suppliers. In addition, they can reduce the need to hire and lay off employees by sharing staff across divisions as human resource needs change.

p. 1102 Does Hollywood Look at ROI? **Q:** What might be the reason that movie studios do not produce G-rated movies as much as R-rated ones? **A:** Perhaps Hollywood believes that big-name stars or large budgets, both of which are typical of R-rated movies, sell movies. However, one study recently concluded, "We can't find evidence that stars help movies, and we can't find evidence that bigger budgets increase return on investment." Some film companies are going out of their way to achieve at least a PG rating.

p. 1103 Flexible Manufacturing Requires Flexible Accounting **Q:** What implications do these improvements in production capabilities have for management accounting information and performance evaluation within the organization? **A:** In order to maximize the potential of flexible manufacturing facilities, managers need to be supplied with information on a more frequent basis. In turn, the tools used to evaluate performance need to take into account what information management had at its disposal, and what decisions were made in response to this information.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. c **2.** d **3.** c **4.** b **5.** b **6.** a **7.** d **8.** a **9.** d **10.** d **11.** a **12.** c **13.** b **14.** b **15.** d

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 22

STANDARD COSTS AND BALANCED SCORECARD

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives** ◯
- Read **Feature Story** ◯
- Scan **Preview** ◯
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 1144 ◯ p. 1147 ◯ p. 1151 ◯ p. 1156 ◯
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit** ◯
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives** ◯
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 1165 ◯
- Answer **Self-Test Questions** ◯
- Complete **Assignments** ◯
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials ◯

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Distinguish between a standard and a budget.
2. Identify the advantages of standard costs.
3. Describe how companies set standards.
4. State the formulas for determining direct materials and direct labor variances.
5. State the formula for determining the total manufacturing overhead variance.
6. Discuss the reporting of variances.
7. Prepare an income statement for management under a standard costing system.
8. Describe the balanced scorecard approach to performance evaluation.

the navigator

feature story

HIGHLIGHTING PERFORMANCE EFFICIENCY

There's a very good chance that the highlighter you're holding in your hand was made by Sanford (*www.sanfordcorp.com*), a maker of permanent markers and other writing instruments. Sanford, headquartered in Illinois, annually sells hundreds of millions of dollars' worth of Accent® highlighters, fine-point pens, Sharpie permanent markers, Expo dry-erase markers for whiteboards, and other writing instruments.

Since Sanford makes literally billions of writing utensils per year, the company must keep tight control over manufacturing costs. A very important part of Sanford's manufacturing process is determining how much direct materials, labor, and overhead should cost. The company then compares these costs to actual costs to assess performance efficiency. Raw materials for Sanford's markers include a barrel, plug, cap, ink reservoir, and a nib (tip). Machines assemble these parts to produce thousands of units per hour. A major component of manufacturing overhead is machine maintenance—some fixed, some variable.

"Labor costs are associated with material handling and equipment maintenance functions. Although the assembly process is highly automated, labor is still required to move raw materials to the machine and to package the finished product. In addition, highly skilled technicians are required to service and maintain each piece of equipment," says Mike Orr, vice president, operations.

Labor rates are predictable because the hourly workers are covered by a union contract. The story is the same with the fringe benefits and some supervisory salaries. Even volume levels are fairly predictable—demand for the product is high—so fixed overhead is efficiently absorbed. Raw material standard costs are based on the previous year's actual prices plus any anticipated inflation. For several years, though, inflation was so low that the company considered any price increase in raw material to be unfavorable because its standards remained unchanged.

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 22 . . .

- **How Do Standards Help a Business?** *(p. 1140)*
- **How Can We Make Susan's Chili Profitable?** *(p. 1143)*
- **It May Be Time to Fly United Again** *(p. 1156)*

preview of chapter 22

Standards are a fact of life. You met the admission standards for the school you are attending. The vehicle that you drive had to meet certain governmental emissions standards. The hamburgers and salads you eat in a restaurant have to meet certain health and nutritional standards before they can be sold. As described in our Feature Story, Sanford Corp. has standards for the costs of its materials, labor, and overhead. The reason for standards in these cases is very simple: They help to ensure that overall product quality is high while keeping costs under control.

In this chapter, we continue the study of controlling costs. You will learn how to evaluate performance using standard costs and a balanced scorecard.

The content and organization of Chapter 22 are as follows.

Standard Costs and Balanced Scorecard

The Need for Standards	Setting Standard Costs	Analyzing and Reporting Variances from Standards	Balanced Scorecard
• Standards vs. budgets • Why standard costs?	• Ideal vs. normal • Case study	• Direct materials variances • Direct labor variances • Manufacturing overhead variances • Reporting variances • Statement presentation	• Financial perspective • Customer perspective • Internal process perspective • Learning and growth perspective

the navigator

The Need for Standards

Standards are common in business. Those imposed by government agencies are often called **regulations**. They include the Fair Labor Standards Act, the Equal Employment Opportunity Act, and a multitude of environmental standards. Standards established internally by a company may extend to personnel matters, such as employee absenteeism and ethical codes of conduct, quality control standards for products, and standard costs for goods and services. In managerial accounting, **standard costs** are predetermined unit costs, which companies use as measures of performance.

We will focus on manufacturing operations in this chapter. But you should also recognize that standard costs also apply to many types of service businesses as well. For example, a fast-food restaurant such as McDonald's knows the price it should pay for pickles, beef, buns, and other ingredients. It also knows how much time it should take an employee to flip hamburgers. If the company pays too much for pickles or if employees take too much time to prepare Big Macs, McDonald's notices the deviations and takes corrective action. Not-for-profit entities, such as universities, charitable organizations, and governmental agencies, also may use standard costs.

DISTINGUISHING BETWEEN STANDARDS AND BUDGETS

study objective 1

Distinguish between a standard and a budget.

Both **standards** and **budgets** are predetermined costs, and both contribute to management planning and control. There is a difference, however, in the way the terms are expressed. A standard is a **unit** amount. A budget is a **total** amount. Thus, it is customary to state that the **standard cost** of direct labor for a unit of product is, say, $10. If the company produces 5,000 units of the product, the $50,000 of direct labor is the **budgeted** labor cost. A standard is the budgeted

cost per unit of product. A standard is therefore concerned with each individual cost component that makes up the entire budget.

There are important accounting differences between budgets and standards. Except in the application of manufacturing overhead to jobs and processes, budget data are not journalized in cost accounting systems. In contrast, as we illustrate in the appendix to this chapter, standard costs may be incorporated into cost accounting systems. Also, a company may report its inventories at standard cost in its financial statements, but it would not report inventories at budgeted costs.

WHY STANDARD COSTS?

study objective 2

Identify the advantages of standard costs.

Standard costs offer a number of advantages to an organization, as shown in Illustration 22-1.

The organization will realize these advantages only when standard costs are carefully established and prudently used. Using standards solely as a way to place blame can have a negative effect on managers and employees. To minimize this effect, many companies offer wage incentives to those who meet the standards.

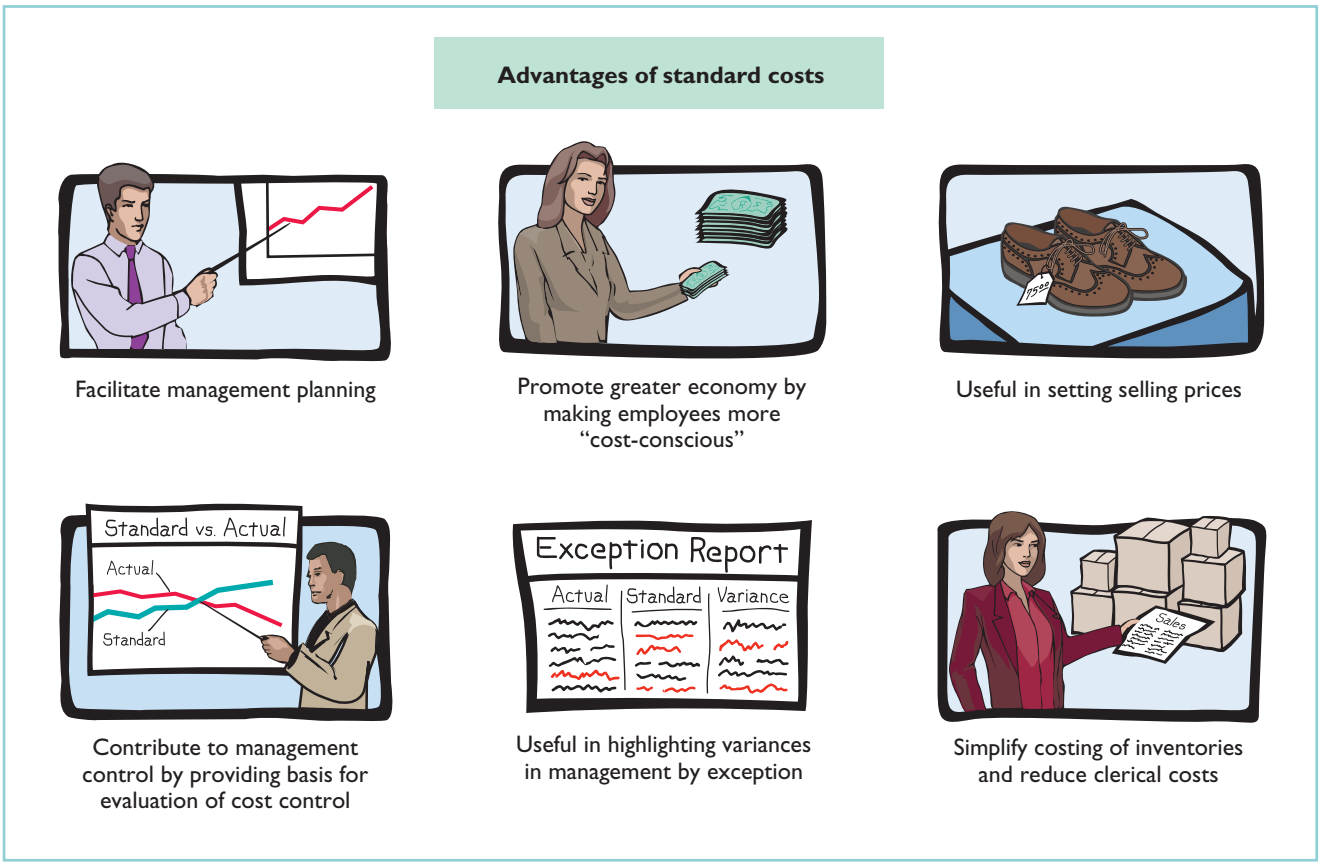


Illustration 22-1
Advantages of standard costs

Setting Standard Costs—A Difficult Task

study objective 3

Describe how companies set standards.

The setting of standard costs to produce a unit of product is a difficult task. It requires input from all persons who have responsibility for costs and quantities. To determine the standard cost of direct materials, management consults purchasing agents, product managers, quality control engineers, and production supervisors. In setting the cost standard for direct labor, managers obtain pay rate

data from the payroll department. Industrial engineers generally determine the labor time requirements. The managerial accountant provides important input for the standard-setting process by accumulating historical cost data and by knowing how costs respond to changes in activity levels.

To be effective in controlling costs, standard costs need to be current at all times. Thus, standards are under continuous review. They should change whenever managers determine that the existing standard is not a good measure of performance. Circumstances that warrant revision of a standard include changed wage rates resulting from a new union contract, a change in product specifications, or the implementation of a new manufacturing method.

IDEAL VERSUS NORMAL STANDARDS

Companies set standards at one of two levels: ideal or normal. **Ideal standards** represent optimum levels of performance under perfect operating conditions. **Normal standards** represent efficient levels of performance that are attainable under expected operating conditions.

Some managers believe ideal standards will stimulate workers to ever-increasing improvement. However, most managers believe that ideal standards lower the morale of the entire workforce because they are difficult, if not impossible, to meet. Very few companies use ideal standards.

Ethics Note When standards are set too high, employees sometimes feel pressure to consider unethical practices to meet these standards.

Most companies that use standards set them at a normal level. Properly set, normal standards should be **rigorous but attainable**. Normal standards allow for rest periods, machine breakdowns, and other "normal" contingencies in the production process. In the remainder of this chapter we will assume that standard costs are set at a normal level.

Accounting Across the Organization

How Do Standards Help a Business?

Recently a number of organizations, including corporations, consultants, and governmental agencies, agreed to share information regarding performance standards in an effort to create a standard set of measures for thousands of business processes. The group, referred to as the Open Standards Benchmarking Collaborative, includes IBM, Procter and Gamble, the U.S. Navy, and the World Bank. Companies that are interested in participating can go to the group's website and enter their information.

Source: William M. Bulkeley, "Business, Agencies to Standardize Their Benchmarks," *Wall Street Journal* (May 19, 2004).

? How will the creation of such standards help a business or organization? (See page 1184.)

A CASE STUDY

To establish the standard cost of producing a product, it is necessary to establish standards for each manufacturing cost element—direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead. The standard for each element is derived from the standard price to be paid and the standard quantity to be used.

To illustrate, we look at a case study of how standard costs are set. In this extended example, we assume that Xonic, Inc. wishes to use standard costs to measure performance in filling an order for 1,000 gallons of Weed-O, a liquid weed killer.

Direct Materials

The **direct materials price standard** is the cost per unit of direct materials that should be incurred. This standard should be based on the purchasing department's best estimate of the **cost of raw materials**. This cost is frequently based on current purchase prices. The price standard also includes an amount for related costs such as receiving, storing, and handling. The materials price standard per pound of material for Xonic's weed killer is:

Item	Price
Purchase price, net of discounts	$ 2.70
Freight	0.20
Receiving and handling	0.10
Standard direct materials price per pound	**$3.00**

Illustration 22-2 Setting direct materials price standard

The **direct materials quantity standard** is the quantity of direct materials that should be used per unit of finished goods. This standard is expressed as a physical measure, such as pounds, barrels, or board feet. In setting the standard, management considers both the quality and quantity of materials required to manufacture the product. The standard includes allowances for unavoidable waste and normal spoilage. The standard quantity per unit for Xonic, Inc. is as follows.

Item	Quantity (Pounds)
Required materials	3.5
Allowance for waste	0.4
Allowance for spoilage	0.1
Standard direct materials quantity per unit	**4.0**

Illustration 22-3 Setting direct materials quantity standard

The standard direct materials cost per unit is the standard direct materials price times the standard direct materials quantity. For Xonic, Inc., the standard direct materials cost per gallon of Weed-O is $12.00 ($3.00 × 4.0 pounds).

Direct Labor

The **direct labor price standard** is the rate per hour that should be incurred for direct labor. This standard is based on current wage rates, adjusted for anticipated changes such as cost of living adjustments (COLAs). The price standard also generally includes employer payroll taxes and fringe benefits, such as paid holidays and vacations. For Xonic, Inc., the direct labor price standard is as follows.

Alternative Terminology
The direct labor price standard is also called the *direct labor rate standard*.

Item	Price
Hourly wage rate	$ 7.50
COLA	0.25
Payroll taxes	0.75
Fringe benefits	1.50
Standard direct labor rate per hour	**$10.00**

Illustration 22-4 Setting direct labor price standard

Alternative Terminology
The direct labor quantity standard is also called the *direct labor efficiency standard.*

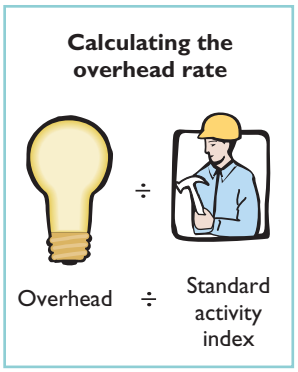
The **direct labor quantity standard** is the time that should be required to make one unit of the product. This standard is especially critical in labor-intensive companies. Allowances should be made in this standard for rest periods, cleanup, machine setup, and machine downtime. For Xonic, Inc., the direct labor quantity standard is as follows.

Illustration 22-5
Setting direct labor quantity standard

Item	Quantity (Hours)
Actual production time	1.5
Rest periods and cleanup	0.2
Setup and downtime	0.3
Standard direct labor hours per unit	**2.0**

The standard direct labor cost per unit is the standard direct labor rate times the standard direct labor hours. For Xonic, Inc., the standard direct labor cost per gallon of Weed-O is $20 ($10.00 × 2.0 hours).

Manufacturing Overhead



For manufacturing overhead, companies use a **standard predetermined overhead rate** in setting the standard. This overhead rate is determined by dividing budgeted overhead costs by an expected standard activity index. For example, the index may be standard direct labor hours or standard machine hours.

As discussed in Chapter 17, many companies employ activity-based costing (ABC) to allocate overhead costs. Because ABC uses multiple activity indices to allocate overhead costs, it results in a better correlation between activities and costs incurred than do other methods. As a result, the use of ABC can significantly improve the usefulness of standard costing for management decision making.

Xonic, Inc. uses standard direct labor hours as the activity index. The company expects to produce 13,200 gallons of Weed-O during the year at normal capacity. **Normal capacity** is the average activity output that a company should experience over the long run. Since it takes two direct labor hours for each gallon, total standard direct labor hours are 26,400 (13,200 gallons × 2 hours).

At normal capacity of 26,400 direct labor hours, overhead costs are expected to be $132,000. Of that amount, $79,200 are variable and $52,800 are fixed. Illustration 22-6 shows computation of the standard predetermined overhead rates for Xonic, Inc.

Illustration 22-6
Computing predetermined overhead rates

Budgeted Overhead Costs	Amount	÷	Standard Direct Labor Hours	=	Overhead Rate per Direct Labor Hour
Variable	$ 79,200		26,400		$ 3.00
Fixed	52,800		26,400		2.00
Total	$132,000		26,400		**$5.00**

The standard manufacturing overhead rate per unit is the predetermined overhead rate times the activity index quantity standard. For Xonic, Inc.,

which uses direct labor hours as its activity index, the standard manufacturing overhead rate per gallon of Weed-O is $10 ($5 × 2 hours).

Total Standard Cost per Unit

After a company has established the standard quantity and price per unit of product, it can determine the total standard cost. The total standard cost per unit is the sum of the standard costs of direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead. For Xonic, Inc., the total standard cost per gallon of Weed-O is $42, as shown on the following standard cost card.

Product: Weed-O **Unit Measure: Gallon**

Manufacturing Cost Elements	Standard Quantity	×	Standard Price	=	Standard Cost
Direct materials	4 pounds		$ 3.00		$12.00
Direct labor	2 hours		$10.00		20.00
Manufacturing overhead	2 hours		$ 5.00		10.00
					$42.00

Illustration 22-7
Standard cost per gallon of Weed-O

The company prepares a standard cost card for each product. This card provides the basis for determining variances from standards.

Management Insight

How Can We Make Susan's Chili Profitable?

Setting standards can be difficult. Consider Susan's Chili Factory, which manufactures and sells chili. The cost of manufacturing Susan's chili consists of the costs of raw materials, labor to convert the basic ingredients to chili, and overhead. We will use materials cost as an example. Managers need to develop three standards: (1) What should be the formula (mix) of ingredients for one gallon of chili? (2) What should be the normal wastage (or shrinkage) for the individual ingredients? (3) What should be the standard cost for the individual ingredients that go into the chili?

Susan's Chili Factory also illustrates how managers can use standard costs in controlling costs. Suppose that summer droughts have reduced crop yields. As a result, prices have doubled for beans, onions, and peppers. In this case, actual costs will be significantly higher than standard costs, which will cause management to evaluate the situation. Similarly, assume that poor maintenance caused the onion-dicing blades to become dull. As a result, usage of onions to make a gallon of chili tripled. Because this deviation is quickly highlighted through standard costs, managers can take corrective action promptly.

Source: Adapted from David R. Beran, "Cost Reduction Through Control Reporting," *Management Accounting* (April 1982), pp. 29–33.

? How might management use this raw material cost information? (See page 1184.)

before you go on...

STANDARD COSTS

Do it! Ridette Inc. accumulated the following standard cost data concerning product Cty31.

Materials per unit: 1.5 pounds at $4 per pound
Labor per unit: 0.25 hours at $13 per hour.
Manufacturing overhead: Predetermined rate is 120% of direct labor cost.

Compute the standard cost of one unit of product Cty31.

Action Plan

- Know that standard costs are predetermined unit costs.
- To establish the standard cost of producing a product, establish the standard for each manufacturing cost element–direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead.
- Compute the standard cost for each element from the standard price to be paid and the standard quantity to be used.

Solution

Manufacturing Cost Element	Standard Quantity	×	Standard Price	=	Standard Cost
Direct materials	1.5 pounds		$4.00		$6.00
Direct labor	0.25 hours		$13.00		3.25
Manufacturing overhead	120% of direct labor cost		$3.25		3.90
Total					$13.15

Related exercise material: **BE22-2, BE22-3, Do it! 22-1, E22-1, E22-2,** and **E22-3.**

the navigator

Analyzing and Reporting Variances from Standards

One of the major management uses of standard costs is to identify variances from standards. **Variances** are the differences between total actual costs and total standard costs.

To illustrate, we will assume that in producing 1,000 gallons of Weed-O in the month of June, Xonic, Inc. incurred the following costs.

Alternative Terminology
In business, the term *variance* is also used to indicate differences between total budgeted and total actual costs.

Illustration 22-8
Actual production costs

Direct materials	$13,020
Direct labor	20,580
Variable overhead	6,500
Fixed overhead	4,400
Total actual costs	$44,500

Companies determine total standard costs by multiplying the units produced by the standard cost per unit. The total standard cost of Weed-O is $42,000 (1,000 gallons × $42). Thus, the total variance is $2,500, as shown below.

Illustration 22-9
Computation of total variance

Actual costs	$44,500
Less: Standard costs	42,000
Total variance	**$ 2,500**

Note that the variance is expressed in total dollars, and not on a per unit basis.

When actual costs exceed standard costs, the variance is **unfavorable**. The $2,500 variance in June for Weed-O is unfavorable. An unfavorable variance has a negative connotation. It suggests that the company paid too much for one or more of the manufacturing cost elements or that it used the elements inefficiently.

If actual costs are less than standard costs, the variance is **favorable**. A favorable variance has a positive connotation. It suggests efficiencies in incurring manufacturing costs and in using direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead.

However, be careful: A favorable variance could be obtained by using inferior materials. In printing wedding invitations, for example, a favorable variance could result from using an inferior grade of paper. Or, a favorable variance might be achieved in installing tires on an automobile assembly line by tightening only half of the lug bolts. A variance is not favorable if the company has sacrificed quality control standards.

DIRECT MATERIALS VARIANCES

study objective 4

State the formulas for determining direct materials and direct labor variances.

In completing the order for 1,000 gallons of Weed-O, Xonic used 4,200 pounds of direct materials. These were purchased at a cost of $3.10 per unit. Illustration 22-10 shows the formula for the **total materials variance** and the calculation for Xonic, Inc.

Actual Quantity × Actual Price (AQ) × (AP)	–	Standard Quantity × Standard Price (SQ) × (SP)	=	Total Materials Variance (TMV)
(4,200 × $3.10)	–	(4,000 × $3.00)	=	$1,020 U

Illustration 22-10 Formula for total materials variance

Thus, for Xonic, the total materials variance is $1,020 ($13,020 − $12,000) unfavorable.

Next, the company analyzes the total variance to determine the amount attributable to price (costs) and to quantity (use). The **materials price variance** for Xonic, Inc. is computed from the following formula.[1]

Actual Quantity × Actual Price (AQ) × (AP)	–	Actual Quantity × Standard Price (AQ) × (SP)	=	Materials Price Variance (MPV)
(4,200 × $3.10)	–	(4,200 × $3.00)	=	$420 U

Illustration 22-11 Formula for materials price variance

For Xonic, the materials price variance is $420 ($13,020 − $12,600) unfavorable.

The price variance can also be computed by multiplying the actual quantity purchased by the difference between the actual and standard price per unit. The computation in this case is 4,200 × ($3.10 − $3.00) = $420 U.

Helpful Hint The alternative formula is: AQ × AP − SP = MPV

Illustration 22-12 shows the formula for the **materials quantity variance** and the calculation for Xonic, Inc.

Actual Quantity × Standard Price (AQ) × (SP)	–	Standard Quantity × Standard Price (SQ) × (SP)	=	Materials Quantity Variance (MQV)
(4,200 × $3.00)	–	(4,000 × $3.00)	=	$600 U

Illustration 22-12 Formula for materials quantity variance

[1]We will assume that all materials purchased during the period are used in production and that no units remain in inventory at the end of the period.

Thus, for Xonic, Inc., the materials quantity variance is $600 ($12,600 − $12,000) unfavorable.

Helpful Hint The alternative formula is:
SP × AQ − SQ = MQV

The materials quantity variance can also be computed by applying the standard price to the difference between actual and standard quantities used. The computation in this example is $3.00 × (4,200 − 4,000) = $600 U.

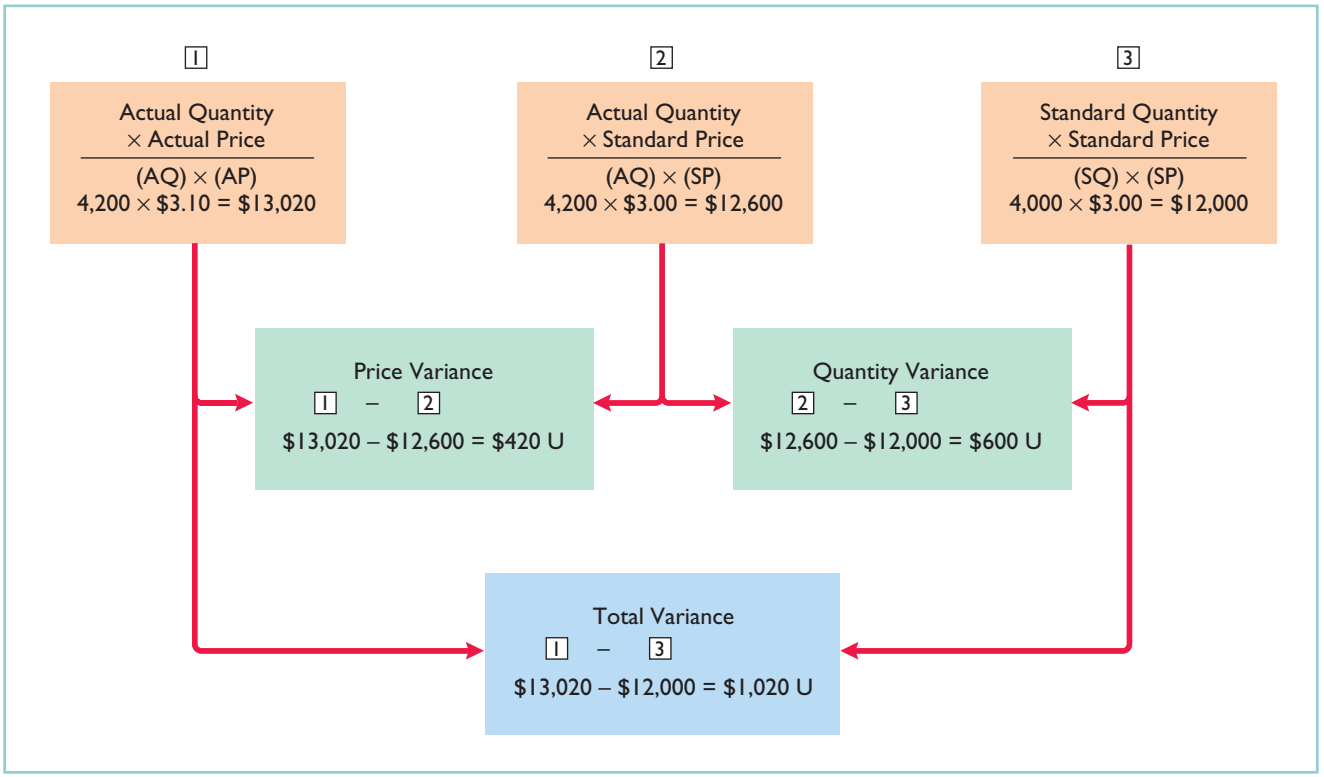
The total materials variance of $1,020 U, therefore, consists of the following.

Illustration 22-13
Summary of materials variances

Materials price variance	$ 420 U
Materials quantity variance	600 U
Total materials variance	**$1,020 U**

Companies sometimes use a matrix to analyze a variance. **When the matrix is used, a company computes the amounts using the formulas for each cost element first and then computes the variances.** Illustration 22-14 shows the completed matrix for the direct materials variance for Xonic, Inc. The matrix provides a convenient structure for determining each variance.

Illustration 22-14
Matrix for direct materials variances



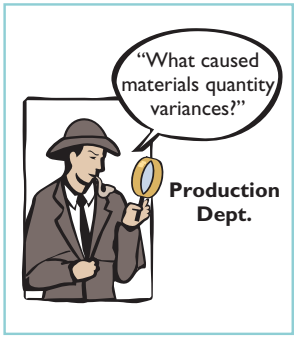
Causes of Materials Variances

What are the causes of a variance? The causes may relate to both internal and external factors. The investigation of a **materials price variance usually begins in the purchasing department**. Many factors affect the price paid for raw materials. These include availability of quantity and cash discounts, the quality

of the materials requested, and the delivery method used. To the extent that these factors are considered in setting the price standard, the purchasing department is responsible for any variances.

However, a variance may be beyond the control of the purchasing department. Sometimes, for example, prices may rise faster than expected. Moreover, actions by groups over which the company has no control, such as the OPEC nations' oil price increases, may cause an unfavorable variance. For example, during a recent year Kraft Foods and Kellogg Company both experienced unfavorable material price variances when the cost of dairy and wheat products jumped unexpectedly. There are also times when a production department may be responsible for the price variance. This may occur when a rush order forces the company to pay a higher price for the materials.

The starting point for determining the cause(s) of a significant **materials quantity variance is in the production department**. If the variances are due to inexperienced workers, faulty machinery, or carelessness, the production department is responsible. However, if the materials obtained by the purchasing department were of inferior quality, then the purchasing department is responsible.



DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has management accomplished its price and quantity objectives regarding materials?	Actual cost and standard cost of materials	Materials price and materials quantity variances	Positive (favorable) variances suggest that price and quantity objectives have been met.

before you go on...

Do it! The standard cost of Product XX includes two units of direct materials at $8.00 per unit. During July, the company buys 22,000 units of direct materials at $7.50 and uses those materials to produce 10,000 units. Compute the total, price, and quantity variances for materials.

Solution

Standard quantity = 10,000 × 2.
Substituting amounts into the formulas, the variances are:

Total materials variance = (22,000 × $7.50) − (20,000 × $8.00) = $5,000 unfavorable
Materials price variance = (22,000 × $7.50) − (22,000 × $8.00) = $11,000 favorable
Materials quantity variance = (22,000 × $8.00) − (20,000 × $8.00) = $16,000 unfavorable

Related exercise material: **BE22-4, Do it! 22-2,** and **E22-5.**

DIRECT MATERIALS VARIANCES

Action Plan

Use the formulas for computing each of the materials variances:

- Total materials variance = (AQ × AP) − (SQ × SP)
- Materials price variance = (AQ × AP) − (AQ × SP)
- Materials quantity variance = (AQ × SP) − (SQ × SP)

the navigator

DIRECT LABOR VARIANCES

The process of determining direct labor variances is the same as for determining the direct materials variances. In completing the Weed-O order, Xonic, Inc. incurred 2,100 direct labor hours at an average hourly rate of $9.80. The standard hours allowed for the units produced were 2,000 hours (1,000 gallons × 2 hours).

The standard labor rate was $10 per hour. Illustration 22-15 shows the formula for the **total labor variance** and its calculation for Xonic, Inc.

Illustration 22-15
Formula for total labor variance

Actual Hours × Actual Rate (AH) × (AR)	–	Standard Hours × Standard Rate (SH) × (SR)	=	Total Labor Variance (TLV)
(2,100 × $9.80)	–	(2,000 × $10.00)	=	$580 U

The total labor variance is $580 ($20,580 − $20,000) unfavorable.

The formula for the **labor price variance** and the calculation for Xonic, Inc. are as follows.

Illustration 22-16
Formula for labor price variance

Actual Hours × Actual Rate (AH) × (AR)	–	Actual Hours × Standard Rate (AH) × (SR)	=	Labor Price Variance (LPV)
(2,100 × $9.80)	–	(2,100 × $10.00)	=	$420 F

For Xonic, Inc., the labor price variance is $420 ($20,580 − $21,000) favorable.

Helpful Hint The alternative formula is:
AH × AR − SR = LPV

The labor price variance can also be computed by multiplying actual hours worked by the difference between the actual pay rate and the standard pay rate. The computation in this example is 2,100 × ($10.00 − $9.80) = $420 F.

Illustration 22-17 shows the formula for the **labor quantity variance** and its calculation for Xonic, Inc.

Illustration 22-17
Formula for labor quantity variance

Actual Hours × Standard Rate (AH) × (SR)	–	Standard Hours × Standard Rate (SH) × (SR)	=	Labor Quantity Variance (LQV)
(2,100 × $10.00)	–	(2,000 × $10.00)	=	$1,000 U

Thus, for Xonic, the labor quantity variance is $1,000 ($21,000 − $20,000) unfavorable.

Helpful Hint The alternative formula is:
SR × AH − SH = LQV

The same result can be obtained by multiplying the standard rate by the difference between actual hours worked and standard hours allowed. In this case the computation is $10.00 × (2,100 − 2,000) = $1,000 U.

The total direct labor variance of $580 U, therefore, consists of:

Illustration 22-18
Summary of labor variances

Labor price variance	$ 420 F
Labor quantity variance	1,000 U
Total direct labor variance	**$ 580 U**

These results can also be obtained from the matrix in Illustration 22-19.

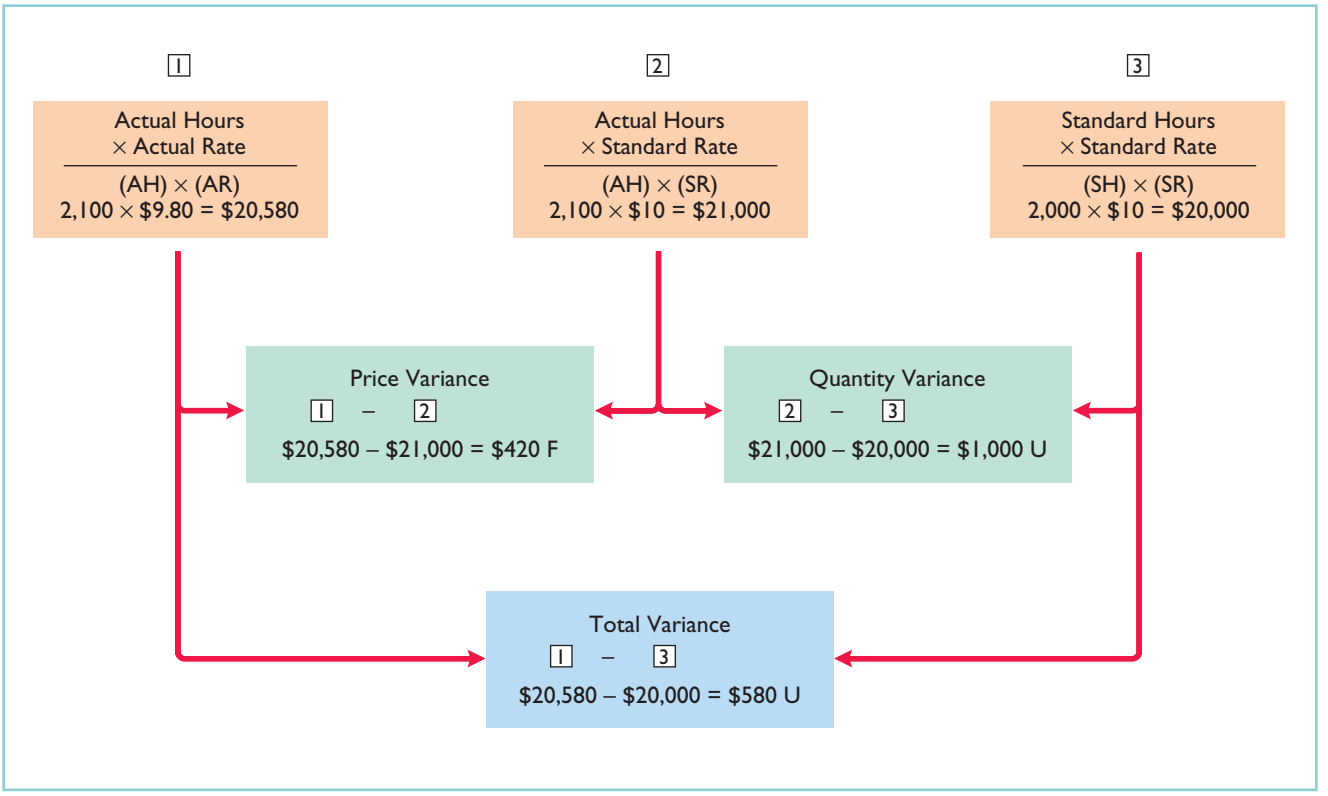


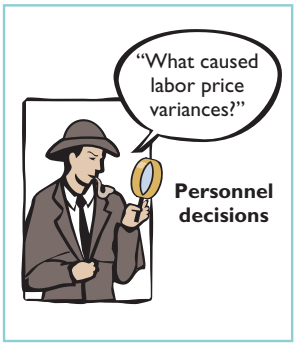
Illustration 22-19 Matrix for direct labor variances

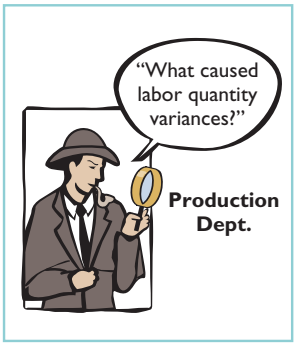
Causes of Labor Variances

Labor price variances usually result from two factors: (1) paying workers **different wages than expected**, and (2) **misallocation of workers**. In companies where pay rates are determined by union contracts, labor price variances should be infrequent. When workers are not unionized, there is a much higher likelihood of such variances. The responsibility for these variances rests with the manager who authorized the wage change.

Misallocation of the workforce refers to using skilled workers in place of unskilled workers and vice versa. The use of an inexperienced worker instead of an experienced one will result in a favorable price variance because of the lower pay rate of the unskilled worker. An unfavorable price variance would result if a skilled worker were substituted for an inexperienced one. The production department generally is responsible for labor price variances resulting from misallocation of the workforce.

Labor quantity variances relate to the **efficiency of workers**. The cause of a quantity variance generally can be traced to the production department. The causes of an unfavorable variance may be poor training, worker fatigue, faulty machinery, or carelessness. These causes are the responsibility of the **production department**. However, if the excess time is due to inferior materials, the responsibility falls outside the production department.





DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has management accomplished its price and quantity objectives regarding labor?	Actual cost and standard cost of labor	Labor price and labor quantity variances	Positive (favorable) variances suggest that price and quantity objectives have been met.

MANUFACTURING OVERHEAD VARIANCES

study objective 5

State the formula for determining the total manufacturing overhead variance.

The **total overhead variance** is the difference between the actual overhead costs and overhead costs applied based on standard hours allowed for the amount of goods produced. As indicated in Illustration 22-8, Xonic incurred overhead costs of $10,900 to produce 1,000 gallons of Weed-O in June. The computation of the actual overhead is comprised of a variable and a fixed component. Illustration 22-20 shows this computation.

Illustration 22-20
Actual overhead costs

Variable overhead	$ 6,500
Fixed overhead	4,400
Total actual overhead	**$10,900**

To find the total overhead variance in a standard costing system, we determine the overhead costs applied based on standard hours allowed. **Standard hours allowed** are the hours that *should* have been worked for the units produced. Overhead costs for Weed-O are applied based on direct labor hours. Because it takes two hours of direct labor to produce one gallon of Weed-O, for the 1,000-gallon Weed-O order, the standard hours allowed are 2,000 hours (1,000 gallons × 2 hours). We then apply the predetermined overhead rate to the 2,000 standard hours allowed.

The predetermined rate for Weed-O is $5, comprised of a variable overhead rate of $3 and a fixed rate of $2. Recall from Illustration 22-6 that the amount of budgeted overhead costs at normal capacity of $132,000 was divided by normal capacity of 26,400 direct labor hours, to arrive at a predetermined overhead rate of $5 ($132,000 ÷ 26,400). The predetermined rate of $5 is then multiplied by the 2,000 standard hours allowed, to determine the overhead costs applied.

Illustration 22-21 shows the formula for the total overhead variance and the calculation for Xonic, Inc. for the month of June.

Illustration 22-21
Formula for total overhead variance

Actual Overhead	–	Overhead Applied*	=	Total Overhead Variance
$10,900 ($6,500 + $4,400)	–	$10,000 ($5 × 2,000 hours)	=	$900 U

*Based on standard hours allowed.

Thus, for Xonic, Inc. the total overhead variance is $900 unfavorable.

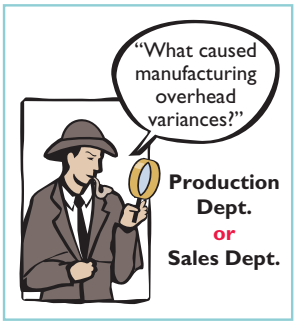
The overhead variance is generally analyzed through a price and a quantity variance. These computations are discussed in more detail in advanced courses. The name usually given to the price variance is the **overhead controllable variance**; the quantity variance is referred to as the **overhead volume variance**. Appendix 22B discusses how the total overhead variance can be broken down into these two variances.

Causes of Manufacturing Overhead Variances

One reason for an overhead variance relates to over- or underspending on overhead items. For example, overhead may include indirect labor for which a company paid wages higher than the standard labor price allowed. Or the price of

electricity to run the company's machines increased, and the company did not anticipate this additional cost. Companies should investigate any spending variances, to determine whether they will continue in the future. Generally, the responsibility for these variances rests with the production department.

The overhead variance can also result from the inefficient use of overhead. For example, because of poor maintenance, a number of the manufacturing machines are experiencing breakdowns on a consistent basis, leading to reduced production. Or the flow of materials through the production process is impeded because of a lack of skilled labor to perform the necessary production tasks, due to a lack of planning. In both of these cases, the production department is responsible for the cause of these variances. On the other hand, overhead can also be underutilized because of a lack of sales orders. When the cause is a lack of sales orders, the responsibility rests outside the production department. For example, at one point Chrysler experienced a very significant unfavorable overhead variance because plant capacity was maintained at excessively high levels, due to overly optimistic sales forecasts.



DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has management accomplished its objectives regarding manufacturing overhead?	Actual cost and standard cost of manufacturing overhead	Total manufacturing overhead variance	Positive (favorable) variances suggest that manufacturing overhead objectives have been met.

before you go on...

Do it! The standard cost of Product YY includes 3 hours of direct labor at $12.00 per hour. The predetermined overhead rate is $20.00 per direct labor hour. During July, the company incurred 3,500 hours of direct labor at an average rate of $12.40 per hour and $71,300 of manufacturing overhead costs. It produced 1,200 units.

(a) Compute the total, price, and quantity variances for labor. (b) Compute the total overhead variance.

Solution

Substituting amounts into the formulas, the variances are:

Total labor variance = (3,500 × $12.40) − (3,600 × $12.00) = $200 unfavorable

Labor price variance = (3,500 × $12.40) − (3,500 × $12.00) = $1,400 unfavorable

Labor quantity variance = (3,500 × $12.00) − (3,600 × $12.00) = $1,200 favorable

Total overhead variance = $71,300 − $72,000* = $700 favorable

*3,600 hours × $20.00

Related exercise material: **BE22-5, BE22-6, Do it! 22-3, E22-4, E22-6, E22-7, E22-8,** and **E22-11.**

LABOR AND MANUFACTURING OVERHEAD VARIANCES

Action Plan

- Use the formulas for computing each of the variances:
  Total labor variance = (AH × AR) − (SH × SR)
  Labor price variance = (AH × AR) − (AH × SR)
  Labor quantity variance = (AH × SR) − (SH × SR)
  Total overhead variance = Actual overhead − Overhead applied*

*Based on standard hours allowed.

the navigator

REPORTING VARIANCES

study objective 6

Discuss the reporting of variances.

All variances should be reported to appropriate levels of management as soon as possible. The sooner managers are informed, the sooner they can evaluate problems and take corrective action.

The form, content, and frequency of variance reports vary considerably among companies. One approach is to prepare a weekly report for each department that has primary responsibility for cost control. Under this approach, materials price variances are reported to the purchasing department, and all other variances are reported to the production department that did the work. The following report for Xonic, Inc., with the materials for the Weed-O order listed first, illustrates this approach.

Illustration 22-22
Materials price variance report

XONIC, INC.
Variance Report–Purchasing Department
For Week Ended June 8, 2012

Type of Materials	Quantity Purchased	Actual Price	Standard Price	Price Variance	Explanation
X100	4,200 lbs.	$3.10	$3.00	$420 U	Rush order
X142	1,200 units	2.75	2.80	60 F	Quantity discount
A85	600 doz.	5.20	5.10	60 U	Regular supplier on strike
Total price variance				**$420 U**	

The explanation column is completed after consultation with the purchasing department manager.

Variance reports facilitate the principle of "management by exception" explained in Chapter 21. For example, the vice president of purchasing can use the report shown above to evaluate the effectiveness of the purchasing department manager. Or, the vice president of production can use production department variance reports to determine how well each production manager is controlling costs. In using variance reports, top management normally looks for **significant variances**. These may be judged on the basis of some quantitative measure, such as more than 10% of the standard or more than $1,000.

STATEMENT PRESENTATION OF VARIANCES

study objective 7
Prepare an income statement for management under a standard costing system.

In income statements **prepared for management** under a standard cost accounting system, **cost of goods sold is stated at standard cost and the variances are disclosed separately**. Unfavorable variances increase cost of goods sold, while favorable variances decrease cost of goods sold (and are thus shown in parentheses). Illustration 22-23 shows this format. Based entirely on the production and sale of Weed-O, it assumes selling and administrative costs of $3,000. Observe that each variance is shown, as well as the total net variance. In this example, variations from standard costs reduced net income by $2,500.

Standard costs may be used in financial statements prepared for stockholders and other external users. The costing of inventories at standard costs is in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles when there are no significant differences between actual costs and standard costs. Hewlett-Packard and Jostens, Inc., for example, report their inventories at standard costs. However, if there are significant differences between actual and standard costs, the financial statements must report inventories and cost of goods sold at actual costs.

It is also possible to show the variances in an income statement prepared in the variable costing (CVP) format. To do so, it is necessary to analyze the overhead

Illustration 22-23
Variances in income statement for management

XONIC, INC. Income Statement For the Month Ended June 30, 2012		
Sales revenue		$60,000
Cost of goods sold (at standard)		42,000
Gross profit (at standard)		18,000
Variances		
Materials price	**$ 420 U**	
Materials quantity	**600 U**	
Labor price	**420 F**	
Labor quantity	**1,000 U**	
Overhead	**900 U**	
Total variance unfavorable		**2,500**
Gross profit (actual)		15,500
Selling and administrative expenses		3,000
Net income		$12,500

variances into variable and fixed components. This type of analysis is explained in cost accounting textbooks.

Balanced Scorecard

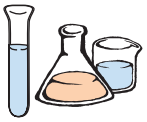
study objective 8
Describe the balanced scorecard approach to performance evaluation.

Financial measures (measurement of dollars), such as variance analysis and return on investment (ROI), are useful tools for evaluating performance. However, many companies now supplement these financial measures with nonfinancial measures to better assess performance and anticipate future results. For example, airlines, like Delta, American, and United, use capacity utilization as an important measure to understand and predict future performance. Newspaper publishers, such as the *New York Times* and the *Chicago Tribune*, use circulation figures as another measure by which to assess performance. Penske Automotive Group, the owner of 300 dealerships, rewards executives for meeting employee retention targets. Illustration 22-24 (page 1154) lists some key nonfinancial measures used in various industries.

Most companies recognize that both financial and nonfinancial measures can provide useful insights into what is happening in the company. As a result, many companies now use a broad-based measurement approach, called the **balanced scorecard**, to evaluate performance. The **balanced scorecard** incorporates financial and nonfinancial measures in an integrated system that links performance measurement and a company's strategic goals. Nearly 50% of the largest companies in the United States, including Unilever, Chase, and Wal-Mart, are using the balanced scorecard approach.

The balanced scorecard evaluates company performance from a series of "perspectives." The four most commonly employed perspectives are as follows.

1. The **financial perspective** is the most traditional view of the company. It employs financial measures of performance used by most firms.
2. The **customer perspective** evaluates how well the company is performing from the viewpoint of those people who buy and use its products or services. This view measures how well the company compares to competitors in terms of price, quality, product innovation, customer service, and other dimensions.

Industry		Measure
Automobiles		Capacity utilization of plants. Average age of key assets. Impact of strikes. Brand-loyalty statistics.
Computer Systems		Market profile of customer end-products. Number of new products. Employee stock ownership percentages. Number of scientists and technicians used in R&D.
Chemicals		Customer satisfaction data. Factors affecting customer product selection. Number of patents and trademarks held. Customer brand awareness.
Regional Banks		Number of ATMs by state. Number of products used by average customer. Percentage of customer service calls handled by interactive voice response units. Personnel cost per employee. Credit card retention rates.

Source: Financial Accounting Standards Board, *Business Reporting: Insights into Enhancing Voluntary Disclosures* (Norwalk, Conn.: FASB, 2001).

Illustration 22-24
Nonfinancial measures used in various industries

3. The **internal process perspective** evaluates the internal operating processes critical to success. All critical aspects of the value chain—including product development, production, delivery, and after-sale service—are evaluated to ensure that the company is operating effectively and efficiently.
4. The **learning and growth perspective** evaluates how well the company develops and retains its employees. This would include evaluation of such things as employee skills, employee satisfaction, training programs, and information dissemination.

Within each perspective, the balanced scorecard identifies objectives that will contribute to attainment of strategic goals. Illustration 22-25 shows examples of objectives within each perspective.

The objectives are linked across perspectives in order to tie performance measurement to company goals. The financial objectives are normally set first, and then objectives are set in the other perspectives in order to accomplish the financial objectives.

For example, within the financial perspective, a common goal is to increase profit per dollars invested as measured by ROI. In order to increase ROI, a customer perspective objective might be to increase customer satisfaction as measured by the percentage of customers who would recommend the product to a friend. In order to increase customer satisfaction, an internal business process perspective objective might be to increase product quality as measured by the percentage of defect-free units. Finally, in order to increase the percentage of defect-free units, the learning and growth perspective objective might be to reduce factory employee turnover as measured by the percentage of employees leaving in under one year.

Financial perspective
- Return on assets
- Net income
- Credit rating
- Share price
- Profit per employee

Customer perspective
- Percentage of customers who would recommend product
- Customer retention
- Response time per customer request
- Brand recognition
- Customer service expense per customer

Internal process perspective
- Percentage of defect-free products
- Stockouts
- Labor utilization rates
- Waste reduction
- Planning accuracy

Learning and growth perspective
- Percentage of employees leaving in less than one year
- Number of cross-trained employees
- Ethics violations
- Training hours
- Reportable accidents

Illustration 22-25
Examples of objectives within the four perspectives of balanced scorecard

Illustration 22-26 illustrates this linkage across perspectives.

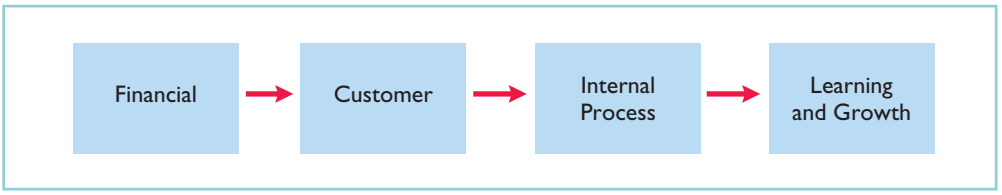


Illustration 22-26
Linked process across balanced scorecard perspectives

Through this linked process, the company can better understand how to achieve its goals and what measures to use to evaluate performance.

In summary, the balanced scorecard does the following:

1. Employs both financial and nonfinancial measures. (For example, ROI is a financial measure; employee turnover is a nonfinancial measure.)
2. Creates linkages so that high-level corporate goals can be communicated all the way down to the shop floor.
3. Provides measurable objectives for such nonfinancial measures as product quality, rather than vague statements such as "We would like to improve quality."
4. Integrates all of the company's goals into a single performance measurement system, so that an inappropriate amount of weight will not be placed on any single goal.

Service Company Insight

It May Be Time to Fly United Again

Many of the benefits of a balanced scorecard approach are evident in the improved operations at United Airlines. At the time it filed for bankruptcy in 2002, United had a reputation for some of the worst service in the airline business. But when Glenn Tilton took over as United's Chief Executive Officer in September 2002, he recognized that things had to change.

One thing he did was to implement an incentive program that allows all of United's 63,000 employees to earn a bonus of 2.5% or more of their wages if the company "exceeds its goals for on-time flight departures and for customer intent to fly United again." Since instituting this program the company's on-time departures are among the best, its customer complaints have been reduced considerably, and its number of customers who say that they would fly United again is at its highest level ever. While none of these things guarantees that United will survive, these improvements certainly increase its chances.

Source: Susan Carey, "Friendlier Skies: In Bankruptcy, United Airlines Forges a Path to Better Service," *Wall Street Journal* (June 15, 2004).

? Which of the perspectives of a balanced scorecard were the focus of United's CEO? (See page 1184.)

before you go on...

BALANCED SCORECARD

Action Plan

- The financial perspective employs traditional financial measures of performance.
- The customer perspective evaluates company performance as seen by the people who buy its products or services.
- The internal process perspective evaluates the internal operating processes critical to success.
- The learning and growth perspective evaluates how well the company develops and retains its employees.

the navigator

Do it!

Indicate which of the four perspectives in the balanced scorecard is most likely associated with the objectives that follow.

1. Percentage of repeat customers.
2. Number of suggestions for improvement from employees.
3. Contribution margin.
4. Market share.
5. Number of cross-trained employees.
6. Amount of setup time.

Solution

1. Customer perspective.
2. Learning and growth perspective.
3. Financial perspective.
4. Customer perspective.
5. Learning and growth perspective.
6. Internal process perspective.

Related exercise material: **BE22-7,** **Do it! 22-4,** and **E22-17.**

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

Assume that during the past month, Sanford produced 10,000 cartons of Liquid ACCENT® highlighters. Liquid ACCENT® offers a translucent barrel and cap with a visible ink supply for see-through color. The special fluorescent ink is fade- and water-resistant. Each carton contains 100 boxes of markers, and each box contains five markers. The markers come in boxes of one of five fluorescent colors—orange, blue, yellow, green, and pink—and in a five-color set.

Assume the following additional facts: The standard cost for one carton of 500 markers is as follows.

	Standard				
Manufacturing Cost Elements	**Quantity**	×	**Price**	=	**Cost**
Direct materials					
Tips (boxes of 500)	500	×	$ 0.03	=	$ 15.00
Translucent barrels and caps (boxes of 500)	500	×	$ 0.09	=	45.00
Fluorescent ink (100 oz. containers)	100 oz.	×	$ 0.32	=	32.00
Total direct materials					92.00
Direct labor	0.25 hours	×	$ 9.00	=	2.25
Overhead	0.25 hours	×	$48.00	=	12.00
					$106.25

During the month, the following transactions occurred in manufacturing the 10,000 cartons of highlighters.

1. Purchased 10,000 boxes of tips for $148,000 ($14.80 per 500 tips); purchased 10,200 boxes of translucent barrels and caps for $453,900 ($44.50 per 500 barrels and caps); and purchased 9,900 containers of fluorescent ink for $328,185 ($33.15 per 100 ounces).
2. All materials purchased during the period were used to make markers during the period.
3. 2,300 direct labor hours were worked at a total labor cost of $20,240 (an average hourly rate of $8.80).
4. Variable manufacturing overhead incurred was $34,600, and fixed overhead incurred was $84,000.

The manufacturing overhead rate of $48.00 is based on a normal capacity of 2,600 direct labor hours. The total budget at this capacity is $83,980 fixed and $40,820 variable.

Instructions

Determine whether Sanford met its price and quantity objectives relative to materials, labor, and overhead.

Solution

To determine whether Sanford met its price and quantity objectives, compute the total variance and the variances for direct material and direct labor, and calculate the total variance for manufacturing overhead.

Total Variance		
Actual cost incurred:		
Direct materials		
Tips	$148,000	
Translucent barrels and caps	453,900	
Fluorescent ink	328,185	
Total direct materials		$ 930,085
Direct labor		20,240
Overhead ($34,600 + $84,000)		118,600
Total actual costs		1,068,925
Less: Standard cost (10,000 × $106.25)		1,062,500
Total variance		$ 6,425 U

Direct Materials Variances

Total	=	$930,085	−	$920,000 (10,000 × $92)	=	$10,085 U
Price (Tips)	=	$148,000 (10,000 × $14.80)	−	$150,000 (10,000 × $15.00)	=	$ 2,000 F
Price (Barrels and caps)	=	$453,900 (10,200 × $44.50)	−	$459,000 (10,200 × $45.00)	=	$ 5,100 F
Price (Ink)	=	$328,185 (9,900 × $33.15)	−	$316,800 (9,900 × $32.00)	=	$11,385 U
Quantity (Tips)	=	$150,000 (10,000 × $15.00)	−	$150,000 (10,000 × $15.00)	=	$ 0
Quantity (Barrels and caps)	=	$459,000 (10,200 × $45.00)	−	$450,000 (10,000 × $45.00)	=	$ 9,000 U
Quantity (Ink)	=	$316,800 (9,900 × $32.00)	−	$320,000 (10,000 × $32.00)	=	$ 3,200 F

Direct Labor Variances

Total	=	$20,240 (2,300 × $8.80)	−	$22,500 (2,500 × $9.00)	=	$ 2,260 F
Price	=	$20,240 (2,300 × $8.80)	−	$20,700 (2,300 × $9.00)	=	$ 460 F
Quantity	=	$20,700 (2,300 × $9.00)	−	$22,500 (2,500 × $9.00)	=	$ 1,800 F

Overhead Variance

Total	=	$118,600 ($84,000 + $34,600)	−	$120,000 (2,500 × $48)	=	$ 1,400 F

Sanford's total variance was an unfavorable $6,425. The unfavorable materials variance outweighed the favorable labor and overhead variances. The primary determinants were an unfavorable price variance for ink and an unfavorable quantity variance for barrels and caps.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Distinguish between a standard and a budget. Both standards and budgets are predetermined costs. The primary difference is that a standard is a unit amount, whereas a budget is a total amount. A standard may be regarded as the budgeted cost per unit of product.

2 Identify the advantages of standard costs. Standard costs offer a number of advantages. They (a) facilitate management planning, (b) promote greater economy, (c) are useful in setting selling prices, (d) contribute to management control, (e) permit "management by exception," and (f) simplify the costing of inventories and reduce clerical costs.

3 Describe how companies set standards. The direct materials price standard should be based on the delivered cost of raw materials plus an allowance for receiving and handling. The direct materials quantity standard should establish the required quantity plus an allowance for waste and spoilage.

The direct labor price standard should be based on current wage rates and anticipated adjustments such as COLAs. It also generally includes payroll taxes and fringe benefits. Direct labor quantity standards should be based on required production time plus an allowance for rest periods, cleanup, machine setup, and machine downtime.

For manufacturing overhead, a standard predetermined overhead rate is used. It is based on an expected standard activity index such as standard direct labor hours or standard machine hours.

4 State the formulas for determining direct materials and direct labor variances. The formulas for the direct materials variances are:

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Actual quantity}\\ \times\ \text{Actual price}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Standard quantity}\\ \times\ \text{Standard price}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{matrix}\text{Total}\\ \text{materials}\\ \text{variance}\end{matrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Actual quantity}\\ \times\ \text{Actual price}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Actual quantity}\\ \times\ \text{Standard price}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{matrix}\text{Materials}\\ \text{price}\\ \text{variance}\end{matrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Actual quantity}\\ \times\ \text{Standard price}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Standard quantity}\\ \times\ \text{Standard price}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{matrix}\text{Materials}\\ \text{quantity}\\ \text{variance}\end{matrix}$$

The formulas for the direct labor variances are:

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Actual hours}\\ \times\ \text{Actual rate}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Standard hours}\\ \times\ \text{Standard rate}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{matrix}\text{Total}\\ \text{labor}\\ \text{variance}\end{matrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Actual hours}\\ \times\ \text{Actual rate}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Actual hours}\\ \times\ \text{Standard rate}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{matrix}\text{Labor}\\ \text{price}\\ \text{variance}\end{matrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Actual hours}\\ \times\ \text{Standard rate}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Standard hours}\\ \times\ \text{Standard rate}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{matrix}\text{Labor}\\ \text{quantity}\\ \text{variance}\end{matrix}$$

5 State the formula for determining the total manufacturing overhead variance. The formula for the total manufacturing overhead variance is:

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Actual}\\ \text{overhead}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Overhead}\\ \text{applied at}\\ \text{standard hours}\\ \text{allowed}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{matrix}\text{Total overhead}\\ \text{variance}\end{matrix}$$

6 Discuss the reporting of variances. Variances are reported to management in variance reports. The reports facilitate management by exception by highlighting significant differences.

7 Prepare an income statement for management under a standard costing system. Under a standard costing system, an income statement prepared for management will report cost of goods sold at standard cost and then disclose each variance separately.

8 Describe the balanced scorecard approach to performance evaluation. The balanced scorecard incorporates financial and nonfinancial measures in an integrated system that links performance measurement and a company's strategic goals. It employs four perspectives: financial, customer, internal processes, and learning and growth. Objectives are set within each of these perspectives that link to objectives within the other perspectives.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Has management accomplished its price and quantity objectives regarding materials?	Actual cost and standard cost of materials	Materials price and materials quantity variances	Positive (favorable) variances suggest that price and quantity objectives have been met.
Has management accomplished its price and quantity objectives regarding labor?	Actual cost and standard cost of labor	Labor price and labor quantity variances	Positive (favorable) variances suggest that price and quantity objectives have been met.
Has management accomplished its objectives regarding manufacturing overhead?	Actual cost and standard cost of manufacturing overhead	Total manufacturing overhead variance	Positive (favorable) variances suggest that manufacturing overhead objectives have been met.

appendix 22A

Standard Cost Accounting System

study objective 9

Identify the features of a standard cost accounting system.

A **standard cost accounting system** is a double-entry system of accounting. In this system, companies use standard costs in making entries, and they formally recognize variances in the accounts. Companies may use a standard cost system with either job order or process costing.

In this appendix, we will explain and illustrate a **standard cost, job order cost accounting system**. The system is based on two important assumptions:

1. Variances from standards are recognized at the earliest opportunity.
2. The Work in Process account is maintained exclusively on the basis of standard costs.

In practice, there are many variations among standard cost systems. The system described here should prepare you for systems you see in the "real world."

JOURNAL ENTRIES

We will use the transactions of Xonic, Inc. to illustrate the journal entries. Note as you study the entries that the major difference between the entries here and those for the job order cost accounting system in Chapter 15 is the **variance accounts**.

1. Purchase raw materials on account for $13,020 when the standard cost is $12,600.

Raw Materials Inventory	12,600	
Materials Price Variance	420	
Accounts Payable		13,020
(To record purchase of materials)		

Xonic debits the inventory account for actual quantities at standard cost. This enables the perpetual materials records to show actual quantities. Xonic debits the price variance, which is unfavorable, to Materials Price Variance.

2. Incur direct labor costs of $20,580 when the standard labor cost is $21,000.

Factory Labor	21,000	
Labor Price Variance		420
Wages Payable		20,580
(To record direct labor costs)		

Like the raw materials inventory account, Xonic debits Factory Labor for actual hours worked at the standard hourly rate of pay. In this case, the labor variance is favorable. Thus, Xonic credits Labor Price Variance.

3. Incur actual manufacturing overhead costs of $10,900.

Manufacturing Overhead	10,900	
Accounts Payable/Cash/Acc. Depreciation		10,900
(To record overhead incurred)		

The controllable overhead variance (see Appendix 22B) is not recorded at this time. It depends on standard hours applied to work in process. This amount is not known at the time overhead is incurred.

4. Issue raw materials for production at a cost of $12,600 when the standard cost is $12,000.

Work in Process Inventory	12,000	
Materials Quantity Variance	600	
Raw Materials Inventory		12,600
(To record issuance of raw materials)		

Xonic debits Work in Process Inventory for standard materials quantities used at standard prices. It debits the variance account because the variance is unfavorable. The company credits Raw Materials Inventory for actual quantities at standard prices.

5. Assign factory labor to production at a cost of $21,000 when standard cost is $20,000.

Work in Process Inventory	20,000	
Labor Quantity Variance	1,000	
Factory Labor		21,000
(To assign factory labor to jobs)		

Xonic debits Work in Process Inventory for standard labor hours at standard rates. It debits the unfavorable variance to Labor Quantity Variance. The credit to Factory Labor produces a zero balance in this account.

6. Apply manufacturing overhead to production $10,000.

Work in Process Inventory	10,000	
Manufacturing Overhead		10,000
(To assign overhead to jobs)		

Xonic debits Work in Process Inventory for standard hours allowed multiplied by the standard overhead rate.

7. Transfer completed work to finished goods $42,000.

Finished Goods Inventory	42,000	
Work in Process Inventory		42,000
(To record transfer of completed work to finished goods)		

In this example, both inventory accounts are at standard cost.

8. Sell the 1,000 gallons of Weed-O for $60,000.

Accounts Receivable	60,000	
Cost of Goods Sold	42,000	
Sales		60,000
Finished Goods Inventory		42,000
(To record sale of finished goods and the cost of goods sold)		

The company debits Cost of Goods Sold at standard cost. Gross profit, in turn, is the difference between sales and the standard cost of goods sold.

9. Recognize unfavorable total overhead variance:

Overhead Variance	900	
Manufacturing Overhead		900
(To recognize overhead variances)		

Prior to this entry, a debit balance of $900 existed in Manufacturing Overhead. This entry therefore produces a zero balance in the Manufacturing Overhead account. The information needed for this entry is often not available until the end of the accounting period.

LEDGER ACCOUNTS

Illustration 22A-1 (page 1162) shows the cost accounts for Xonic, Inc., after posting the entries. Note that five variance accounts are included in the ledger. The remaining accounts are the same as those illustrated for a job order cost system in Chapter 15, in which only actual costs were used.

Illustration 22A-1 Cost accounts with variances

Raw Materials Inventory	
(1) 12,600	(4) 12,600

Materials Price Variance	
(1) 420	

Work in Process Inventory	
(4) 12,000 (5) 20,000 (6) 10,000	(7) 42,000

Factory Labor	
(2) 21,000	(5) 21,000

Materials Quantity Variance	
(4) 600	

Finished Goods Inventory	
(7) 42,000	(8) 42,000

Manufacturing Overhead	
(3) 10,900	(6) 10,000 (9) 900

Labor Price Variance	
	(2) 420

Cost of Goods Sold	
(8) 42,000	

Labor Quantity Variance	
(5) 1,000	

Overhead Variance	
(9) 900	

Helpful Hint All debit balances in variance accounts indicate unfavorable variances; all credit balances indicate favorable variances.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 22A

9 Identify the features of a standard cost accounting system. In a standard cost accounting system, companies journalize and post standard costs, and they maintain separate variance accounts in the ledger.

appendix 22B

A Closer Look at Overhead Variances

study objective 10

Compute overhead controllable and volume variance.

As indicated in the chapter, the total overhead variance is generally analyzed through a price variance and a quantity variance. The name usually given to the price variance is the **overhead controllable variance**; the quantity variance is referred to as the **overhead volume variance**.

OVERHEAD CONTROLLABLE VARIANCE

The **overhead controllable variance** shows whether overhead costs are effectively controlled. To compute this variance, the company compares actual overhead costs incurred with budgeted costs for the **standard hours allowed**. The budgeted costs are determined from a flexible manufacturing overhead budget. The concepts related to a flexible budget were discussed in Chapter 21.

For Xonic the budget formula for manufacturing overhead is variable manufacturing overhead cost of $3 per hour of labor plus fixed manufacturing overhead costs of $4,400. Illustration 22B-1 shows the monthly flexible budget for Xonic, Inc.

Illustration 22B-1
Flexible budget using standard direct labor hours

Xonic, Inc.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E
1	**XONIC, INC**				
2	**Flexible Manufacturing Overhead Monthly Budget**				
3	Activity Index				
4	Standard direct labor hours	1,800	**2,000**	2,200	2,400
5	Costs				
6	Variable costs				
7	Indirect materials	$1,800	**$ 2,000**	$ 2,200	$ 2,400
8	Indirect labor	2,700	**3,000**	3,300	3,600
9	Utilities	900	**1,000**	1,100	1,200
10	Total variable costs	5,400	**6,000**	6,600	7,200
11					
12	Fixed costs				
13	Supervision	3,000	**3,000**	3,000	3,000
14	Depreciation	1,400	**1,400**	1,400	1,400
15	Total fixed costs	4,400	**4,400**	4,400	4,400
16	Total costs	$9,800	**$10,400**	$11,000	$11,600
17					

As shown, the budgeted costs for 2,000 standard hours are $10,400 ($6,000 variable and $4,400 fixed).

Illustration 22B-2 shows the formula for the overhead controllable variance and the calculation for Xonic, Inc. at 1,000 units of output (2,000 standard labor hours).

Illustration 22B-2
Formula for overhead controllable variance

Actual Overhead	–	Overhead Budgeted*	=	Overhead Controllable Variance
$10,900 ($6,500 + $4,400)	–	$10,400 ($6,000 + $4,400)	=	$500 U

***Based on standard hours allowed.**

The overhead controllable variance for Xonic, Inc. is $500 unfavorable.

Most controllable variances are associated with variable costs, which are controllable costs. Fixed costs are often known at the time the budget is prepared and are therefore not as likely to deviate from the budgeted amount. In Xonic's case, all of the overhead controllable variance is due to the difference between the actual variable overhead costs ($6,500) and the budgeted variable costs ($6,000).

Management can compare actual and budgeted overhead for each manufacturing overhead cost that contributes to the controllable variance. In addition, management can develop cost and quantity variances for each overhead cost, such as indirect materials and indirect labor.

OVERHEAD VOLUME VARIANCE

The **overhead volume variance** is the difference between normal capacity hours and standard hours allowed times the fixed overhead rate. The overhead volume variance relates to whether fixed costs were under- or overapplied during the year.

For example, the overhead volume variance answers the question of whether Xonic effectively used its fixed costs. If Xonic produces less Weed-O than normal capacity would allow, an unfavorable variance results. Conversely, if Xonic produces more Weed-O than what is considered normal capacity, a favorable variance results.

The formula for computing the overhead volume variance is as follows.

Illustration 22B-3
Formula for overhead volume variance

Fixed Overhead Rate	×	(Normal Capacity Hours	−	Standard Hours Allowed)	=	Overhead Volume Variance

To illustrate the fixed overhead rate computation, recall that Xonic, Inc. budgeted fixed overhead cost for the year of $52,800 (Illustration 22-6 on page 1142). At normal capacity, 26,400 standard direct labor hours are required. The fixed overhead rate is therefore $2 per hour ($52,800 ÷ 26,400 hours).

Xonic produced 1,000 units of Weed-O in June. The standard hours allowed for the 1,000 gallons produced in June is 2,000 (1,000 gallons × 2 hours). For Xonic, normal capacity for June is 1,100, so standard direct labor hours for June at normal capacity is 2,200 (26,400 annual hours ÷ 12 months). The computation of the overhead volume variance in this case is as follows.

Illustration 22B-4
Computation of overhead volume variance for Xonic, Inc.

Fixed Overhead Rate	×	(Normal Capacity Hours	−	Standard Hours Allowed)	=	Overhead Volume Variance
$2	×	(2,200	−	2,000)	=	$400 U

In Xonic's case, a $400 unfavorable volume variance results. The volume variance is unfavorable because Xonic produced only 1,000 gallons rather than the normal capacity of 1,100 gallons in the month of June. As a result, it underapplied fixed overhead for that period.

In computing the overhead variances, it is important to remember the following.

1. Standard hours allowed are used in each of the variances.
2. Budgeted costs for the controllable variance are derived from the flexible budget.
3. The controllable variance generally pertains to variable costs.
4. The volume variance pertains solely to fixed costs.

Summary of Study Objective for Appendix 22B

10 Compute overhead controllable and volume variance. The total overhead variance is generally analyzed through a price variance and a quantity variance. The name usually given to the price variance is the overhead controllable variance. The quantity variance is referred to as the overhead volume variance.

Glossary

Balanced scorecard *(p. 1153)* An approach that incorporates financial and nonfinancial measures in an integrated system that links performance measurement and a company's strategic goals.

Customer perspective *(p. 1153)* A viewpoint employed in the balanced scorecard to evaluate the company from the perspective of those people who buy and use its products or services.

Direct labor price standard *(p. 1141)* The rate per hour that should be incurred for direct labor.

Direct labor quantity standard *(p. 1142)* The time that should be required to make one unit of product.

Direct materials price standard *(p. 1141)* The cost per unit of direct materials that should be incurred.

Direct materials quantity standard *(p. 1141)* The quantity of direct materials that should be used per unit of finished goods.

Financial perspective *(p. 1153)* A viewpoint employed in the balanced scorecard to evaluate a company's performance using financial measures.

Ideal standards *(p. 1140)* Standards based on the optimum level of performance under perfect operating conditions.

Internal process perspective *(p. 1154)* A viewpoint employed in the balanced scorecard to evaluate the effectiveness and efficiency of a company's value chain, including product development, production, delivery, and after-sale service.

Labor price variance *(p. 1148)* The difference between the actual hours times the actual rate and the actual hours times the standard rate for labor.

Labor quantity variance *(p. 1148)* The difference between actual hours times the standard rate and standard hours times the standard rate for labor.

Learning and growth perspective *(p. 1154)* A viewpoint employed in the balanced scorecard to evaluate how well a company develops and retains its employees.

Materials price variance *(p. 1145)* The difference between the actual quantity times the actual price and the actual quantity times the standard price for materials.

Materials quantity variance *(p. 1145)* The difference between the actual quantity times the standard price and the standard quantity times the standard price for materials.

Normal capacity *(p. 1142)* The average activity output that a company should experience over the long run.

Normal standards *(p. 1140)* Standards based on an efficient level of performance that are attainable under expected operating conditions.

Overhead controllable variance *(p. 1162)* The difference between actual overhead incurred and overhead budgeted for the standard hours allowed.

Overhead volume variance *(p. 1163)* The difference between normal capacity hours and standard hours allowed times the fixed overhead rate.

Standard cost accounting system *(p. 1159)* A double-entry system of accounting in which standard costs are used in making entries and variances are recognized in the accounts.

Standard costs *(p. 1138)* Predetermined unit costs which companies use as measures of performance.

Standard hours allowed *(p. 1150)* The hours that should have been worked for the units produced.

Standard predetermined overhead rate *(p. 1142)* An overhead rate determined by dividing budgeted overhead costs by an expected standard activity index.

Total labor variance *(p. 1148)* The difference between actual hours times the actual rate and standard hours times the standard rate for labor.

Total materials variance *(p. 1145)* The difference between the actual quantity times the actual price and the standard quantity times the standard price of materials.

Total overhead variance *(p. 1150)* The difference between actual overhead costs and overhead costs applied to work done, based on standard hours allowed.

Variance *(p. 1144)* The difference between total actual costs and total standard costs.

Comprehensive Do it!

Manlow Company makes a cologne called Allure. The standard cost for one bottle of Allure is as follows.

	Standard				
Manufacturing Cost Elements	**Quantity**	×	**Price**	=	**Cost**
Direct materials	6 oz.	×	$ 0.90	=	$ 5.40
Direct labor	0.5 hrs.	×	$12.00	=	6.00
Manufacturing overhead	0.5 hrs.	×	$ 4.80	=	2.40
					$13.80

During the month, the following transactions occurred in manufacturing 10,000 bottles of Allure.

1. 58,000 ounces of materials were purchased at $1.00 per ounce.
2. All the materials purchased were used to produce the 10,000 bottles of Allure.
3. 4,900 direct labor hours were worked at a total labor cost of $56,350.
4. Variable manufacturing overhead incurred was $15,000 and fixed overhead incurred was $10,400.

The manufacturing overhead rate of $4.80 is based on a normal capacity of 5,200 direct labor hours. The total budget at this capacity is $10,400 fixed and $14,560 variable.

Instructions

(a) Compute the total variance and the variances for direct material and direct labor elements.
(b) Compute the total variance for manufacturing overhead.

Action Plan

- Check to make sure the total variance and the sum of the individual variances are equal.
- Find the price variance first, then the quantity variance.
- Base budgeted overhead costs on flexible budget data.
- Base overhead applied on standard hours allowed.
- Ignore actual hours worked in computing overhead variances.

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

(a) **Total Variance**

Actual costs incurred	
Direct materials	$ 58,000
Direct labor	56,350
Manufacturing overhead ($15,000 + $10,400)	25,400
	139,750
Standard cost (10,000 × $13.80)	138,000
Total variance	$ 1,750 U

Direct Materials Variances

Total	=	$58,000 (58,000 × $1.00)	−	$54,000 (60,000 × $0.90)	=	$4,000 U
Price	=	$58,000 (58,000 × $1.00)	−	$52,200 (58,000 × $0.90)	=	$5,800 U
Quantity	=	$52,200 (58,000 × $0.90)	−	$54,000 (60,000 × $0.90)	=	$1,800 F

Direct Labor Variances

Total	=	$56,350 (4,900 × $11.50)	−	$60,000 (5,000 × $12.00)	=	$3,650 F
Price	=	$56,350 (4,900 × $11.50)	−	$58,800 (4,900 × $12.00)	=	$2,450 F
Quantity	=	$58,800 (4,900 × $12.00)	−	$60,000 (5,000 × $12.00)	=	$1,200 F

(b) **Overhead Variance**

Total	=	$25,400 ($15,000 + $10,400)	−	$24,000 (5,000 × $4.80)	=	$1,400 U

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Note: All asterisked Questions, Exercises, and Problems relate to material in the appendices to the chapter.

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 1184.

(SO 1) **1.** Standards differ from budgets in that:
(a) budgets but not standards may be used in valuing inventories.
(b) budgets but not standards may be journalized and posted.
(c) budgets are a total amount and standards are a unit amount.
(d) only budgets contribute to management planning and control.

2. Standards costs: (SO 1)
(a) are imposed by governmental agencies.
(b) are predetermined unit costs which companies use as measures of performance.
(c) can be used by manufacturing companies but not by service or not-for-profit companies.
(d) All of the above.

(SO 2) **3.** The advantages of standard costs include all of the following *except:*
(a) management by exception may be used.
(b) management planning is facilitated.
(c) they may simplify the costing of inventories.
(d) management must use a static budget.

(SO 3) **4.** Normal standards:
(a) allow for rest periods, machine breakdowns, and setup time.
(b) represent levels of performance under perfect operating conditions.
(c) are rarely used because managers believe they lower workforce morale.
(d) are more likely than ideal standards to result in unethical practices.

(SO 3) **5.** The setting of standards is:
(a) a managerial accounting decision.
(b) a management decision.
(c) a worker decision.
(d) preferably set at the ideal level of performance.

(SO 4) **6.** Each of the following formulas is correct except:
(a) Labor price variance = (Actual hours × Actual rate) − (Actual hours × Standard rate).
(b) Total overhead variance = Actual overhead − Overhead applied.
(c) Materials price variance = (Actual quantity × Actual price) − (Standard quantity × Standard price).
(d) Labor quantity variance = (Actual hours × Standard rate) − (Standard hours × Standard rate).

(SO 4) **7.** In producing product AA, 6,300 pounds of direct materials were used at a cost of $1.10 per pound. The standard was 6,000 pounds at $1.00 per pound. The direct materials quantity variance is:
(a) $330 unfavorable.
(b) $300 unfavorable.
(c) $600 unfavorable.
(d) $630 unfavorable.

(SO 4) **8.** In producing product ZZ, 14,800 direct labor hours were used at a rate of $8.20 per hour. The standard was 15,000 hours at $8.00 per hour. Based on these data, the direct labor:
(a) quantity variance is $1,600 favorable.
(b) quantity variance is $1,600 unfavorable.
(c) price variance is $2,960 favorable.
(d) price variance is $3,000 unfavorable.

(SO 5) **9.** Which of the following is *correct* about the total overhead variance?
(a) Budgeted overhead and budgeted overhead applied are the same.
(b) Total actual overhead is composed of variable overhead, fixed overhead, and period costs.
(c) Standard hours actually worked are used in computing the variance.
(d) Standard hours allowed for the work done is the measure used in computing the variance.

(SO 5) **10.** The formula for computing the total overhead variance is:
(a) actual overhead less overhead applied.
(b) overhead budgeted less overhead applied.
(c) actual overhead less overhead budgeted.
(d) No correct answer is given.

(SO 6) **11.** Which of the following is *incorrect* about variance reports?
(a) They facilitate "management by exception."
(b) They should only be sent to the top level of management.
(c) They should be prepared as soon as possible.
(d) They may vary in form, content, and frequency among companies.

(SO 6) **12.** In using variance reports to evaluate cost control, management normally looks into:
(a) all variances.
(b) favorable variances only.
(c) unfavorable variances only.
(d) both favorable and unfavorable variances that exceed a predetermined quantitative measure such as a percentage or dollar amount.

(SO 7) **13.** Generally accepted accounting principles allow a company to:
(a) report inventory at standard cost but cost of goods sold must be reported at actual cost.
(b) report cost of goods sold at standard cost but inventory must be reported at actual cost.
(c) report inventory and cost of goods sold at standard cost as long as there are no significant differences between actual and standard cost.
(d) report inventory and cost of goods sold only at actual costs; standard costing is never permitted.

(SO 8) **14.** Which of the following would *not* be an objective used in the customer perspective of the balanced scorecard approach?
(a) Percentage of customers who would recommend product to a friend.
(b) Customer retention.
(c) Brand recognition.
(d) Earnings per share.

(SO 9) ***15.** Which of the following is *incorrect* about a standard cost accounting system?
(a) It is applicable to job order costing.
(b) It is applicable to process costing.
(c) It reports only favorable variances.
(d) It keeps separate accounts for each variance.

(SO 10) ***16.** The formula to compute the overhead volume variance is:
(a) Fixed overhead rate × (Standard hours − Actual hours).
(b) Fixed overhead rate × (Normal capacity hours − Actual hours).
(c) Fixed overhead rate × (Normal capacity hours − Standard hours allowed).
(d) (Variable overhead rate + Fixed overhead rate) × (Normal capacity hours − Standard hours allowed).

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, for additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. (a) "Standard costs are the expected total cost of completing a job." Is this correct? Explain.
   (b) "A standard imposed by a governmental agency is known as a regulation." Do you agree? Explain.
2. (a) Explain the similarities and differences between standards and budgets.
   (b) Contrast the accounting for standards and budgets.
3. Standard costs facilitate management planning. What are the other advantages of standard costs?
4. Contrast the roles of the management accountant and management in setting standard costs.
5. Distinguish between an ideal standard and a normal standard.
6. What factors should be considered in setting (a) the direct materials price standard and (b) the direct materials quantity standard?
7. "The objective in setting the direct labor quantity standard is to determine the aggregate time required to make one unit of product." Do you agree? What allowances should be made in setting this standard?
8. How is the predetermined overhead rate determined when standard costs are used?
9. What is the difference between a favorable cost variance and an unfavorable cost variance?
10. In each of the following formulas, supply the words that should be inserted for each number in parentheses.
    (a) (Actual quantity × (1)) − (Standard quantity × (2)) = Total materials variance
    (b) ((3) × Actual price) − (Actual quantity × (4)) = Materials price variance
    (c) (Actual quantity × (5)) − ((6) × Standard price) = Materials quantity variance
11. In the direct labor variance matrix, there are three factors: (1) Actual hours × Actual rate, (2) Actual hours × Standard rate, and (3) Standard hours × Standard rate. Using the numbers, indicate the formulas for each of the direct labor variances.
12. Mikan Company's standard predetermined overhead rate is $8 per direct labor hour. For the month of June, 26,000 actual hours were worked, and 27,000 standard hours were allowed. How much overhead was applied?
13. How often should variances be reported to management? What principle may be used with variance reports?
14. What circumstances may cause the purchasing department to be responsible for both an unfavorable materials price variance and an unfavorable materials quantity variance?
15. What are the four perspectives used in the balanced scorecard? Discuss the nature of each, and how the perspectives are linked.
16. Jerry Karr says that the balanced scorecard was created to replace financial measures as the primary mechanism for performance evaluation. He says that it uses only nonfinancial measures. Is this true?
17. What are some examples of nonfinancial measures used by companies to evaluate performance?
18. (a) How are variances reported in income statements prepared for management? (b) May standard costs be used in preparing financial statements for stockholders? Explain.

*19. (a) Explain the basic features of a standard cost accounting system. (b) What type of balance will exist in the variance account when (1) the materials price variance is unfavorable and (2) the labor quantity variance is favorable?

*20. If the $8 per hour overhead rate in question 12 includes $5 variable, and actual overhead costs were $218,000, what is the overhead controllable variance for June? The normal capacity hours were 28,000. Is the variance favorable or unfavorable?

*21. What is the purpose of computing the overhead volume variance? What is the basic formula for this variance?

*22. Betty Melton does not understand why the overhead volume variance indicates that fixed overhead costs are under- or overapplied. Clarify this matter for Betty.

*23. Pete Elder is attempting to outline the important points about overhead variances on a class examination. List four points that Pete should include in his outline.

Brief Exercises

Distinguish between a standard and a budget.
(SO 1), AP

BE22-1 Perney Company uses both standards and budgets. For the year, estimated production of Product X is 500,000 units. Total estimated cost for materials and labor are $1,200,000 and $1,600,000. Compute the estimates for (a) a standard cost and (b) a budgeted cost.

Set direct materials standard.
(SO 3), AP

BE22-2 Ming Company accumulates the following data concerning raw materials in making one gallon of finished product: (1) Price—net purchase price $2.20, freight-in $0.20, and receiving and handling $0.10. (2) Quantity—required materials 2.6 pounds, allowance for waste and spoilage 0.4 pounds. Compute the following.
(a) Standard direct materials price per gallon.
(b) Standard direct materials quantity per gallon.
(c) Total standard materials cost per gallon.

BE22-3 Labor data for making one gallon of finished product in Ming Company are as follows: (1) Price—hourly wage rate $12.00, payroll taxes $0.80, and fringe benefits $1.20. (2) Quantity—actual production time 1.2 hours, rest periods and clean up 0.25 hours, and setup and downtime 0.15 hours. Compute the following.
(a) Standard direct labor rate per hour.
(b) Standard direct labor hours per gallon.
(c) Standard labor cost per gallon.

Set direct labor standard. (SO 3), AP

BE22-4 Lion Company's standard materials cost per unit of output is $10 (2 pounds × $5). During July, the company purchases and uses 3,200 pounds of materials costing $16,160 in making 1,500 units of finished product. Compute the total, price, and quantity materials variances.

Compute direct materials variances. (SO 4), AP

BE22-5 Bartley Company's standard labor cost per unit of output is $20 (2 hours × $10 per hour). During August, the company incurs 2,100 hours of direct labor at an hourly cost of $10.50 per hour in making 1,000 units of finished product. Compute the total, price, and quantity labor variances.

Compute direct labor variances. (SO 4), AP

BE22-6 In October, Derby Company reports 21,000 actual direct labor hours, and it incurs $115,000 of manufacturing overhead costs. Standard hours allowed for the work done is 20,000 hours. The predetermined overhead rate is $6 per direct labor hour. Compute the total overhead variance.

Compute total overhead variance. (SO 5), AP

BE22-7 The four perspectives in the balanced scorecard are (1) financial, (2) customer, (3) internal process, and (4) learning and growth. Match each of the following objectives with the perspective it is most likely associated with: (a) Plant capacity utilization. (b) Employee work days missed due to injury. (c) Return on assets. (d) Brand recognition.

Match balanced scorecard perspectives. (SO 8), AP

***BE22-8** Journalize the following transactions for Slocombe Manufacturing.
(a) Purchased 6,000 units of raw materials on account for $11,100. The standard cost was $12,000.
(b) Issued 5,500 units of raw materials for production. The standard units were 5,800.

Journalize materials variances. (SO 9), AP

***BE22-9** Journalize the following transactions for Gillaspie Manufacturing.
(a) Incurred direct labor costs of $24,000 for 3,000 hours. The standard labor cost was $25,200.
(b) Assigned 3,000 direct labor hours costing $24,000 to production. Standard hours were 3,100.

Journalize labor variances. (SO 9), AP

***BE22-10** Some overhead data for Derby Company are given in BE22-6. In addition, the flexible manufacturing overhead budget shows that budgeted costs are $4 variable per direct labor hour and $50,000 fixed. Compute the overhead controllable variance.

Compute the overhead controllable variance. (SO 10), AP

***BE22-11** Using the data in BE22-6 and BE22-10, compute the overhead volume variance. Normal capacity was 25,000 direct labor hours.

Compute overhead volume variance. (SO 10), AP

Do it! Review

Do it! 22-1 Frost Company accumulated the following standard cost data concerning product I-Tal.

Compute standard cost. (SO 3), AP

Materials per unit: 2 pounds at $5 per pound
Labor per unit: 0.2 hours at $14 per hour
Manufacturing overhead: Predetermined rate is 125% of direct labor cost

Compute the standard cost of one unit of product I-Tal.

Do it! 22-2 The standard cost of product 999 includes 2 units of direct materials at $6.00 per unit. During August, the company bought 29,000 units of materials at $6.20 and used those materials to produce 15,000 units. Compute the total, price, and quantity variances for materials.

Compute materials variance. (SO 4), AP

Do it! 22-3 The standard cost of product 2525 includes 2 hours of direct labor at $14.00 per hour. The predetermined overhead rate is $21.00 per direct labor hour. During July, the company incurred 4,100 hours of direct labor at an average rate of $14.40 per hour and $81,300 of manufacturing overhead costs. It produced 2,000 units.

Compute labor and manufacturing overhead variances. (SO 4, 5), AP

(a) Compute the total, price, and quantity variances for labor. (b) Compute the total overhead variance.

Match balance scorecard perspectives and their objectives.
(SO 8), C

Do it! 22-4 Indicate which of the four perspectives in the balanced scorecard is most likely associated with the objectives that follow.

1. Ethics violations.
2. Credit rating.
3. Customer retention.
4. Stockouts.
5. Reportable accidents.
6. Brand recognition.

Exercises

Compute budget and standard.
(SO 1, 2, 3), AP

E22-1 Stanton Company is planning to produce 2,000 units of product in 2012. Each unit requires 3 pounds of materials at $6 per pound and a half-hour of labor at $14 per hour. The overhead rate is 70% of direct labor.

Instructions

(a) Compute the budgeted amounts for 2012 for direct materials to be used, direct labor, and applied overhead.
(b) Compute the standard cost of one unit of product.
(c) What are the potential advantages to a corporation of using standard costs?

Compute standard materials costs.
(SO 3), AP

E22-2 Jim Hetzel manufactures and sells homemade wine, and he wants to develop a standard cost per gallon. The following are required for production of a 50-gallon batch.

3,000 ounces of grape concentrate at $0.04 per ounce
54 pounds of granulated sugar at $0.35 per pound
60 lemons at $0.60 each
50 yeast tablets at $0.25 each
50 nutrient tablets at $0.20 each
2,500 ounces of water at $0.004 per ounce

Jim estimates that 4% of the grape concentrate is wasted, 10% of the sugar is lost, and 20% of the lemons cannot be used.

Instructions

Compute the standard cost of the ingredients for one gallon of wine. (Carry computations to two decimal places.)

Compute standard cost per unit.
(SO 3), AP

E22-3 Karnes Company has gathered the following information about its product.

Direct materials: Each unit of product contains 4.5 pounds of materials. The average waste and spoilage per unit produced under normal conditions is 0.5 pounds. Materials cost $4 per pound, but Karnes always takes the 2% cash discount all of its suppliers offer. Freight costs average $0.25 per pound.
Direct labor: Each unit requires 2 hours of labor. Setup, cleanup, and downtime average 0.2 hours per unit. The average hourly pay rate of Karnes' employees is $12. Payroll taxes and fringe benefits are an additional $3 per hour.
Manufacturing overhead: Overhead is applied at a rate of $6 per direct labor hour.

Instructions

Compute Karnes' total standard cost per unit.

Compute labor cost and labor quantity variance.
(SO 3, 4), AP

E22-4 Feldkamp Services, Inc. is trying to establish the standard labor cost of a typical oil change. The following data have been collected from time and motion studies conducted over the past month.

Actual time spent on the oil change	1.0 hour
Hourly wage rate	$10
Payroll taxes	10% of wage rate
Setup and downtime	10% of actual labor time
Cleanup and rest periods	30% of actual labor time
Fringe benefits	25% of wage rate

Instructions

(a) Determine the standard direct labor hours per oil change.
(b) Determine the standard direct labor hourly rate.
(c) Determine the standard direct labor cost per oil change.
(d) If an oil change took 1.5 hours at the standard hourly rate, what was the direct labor quantity variance?

E22-5 The standard cost of Product B manufactured by NJF Company includes three units of direct materials at $5.00 per unit. During June, 28,000 units of direct materials are purchased at a cost of $4.70 per unit, and 28,000 units of direct materials are used to produce 9,000 units of Product B.

Compute materials price and quantity variances.
(SO 4), **AP**

Instructions

(a) Compute the total materials variance and the price and quantity variances.
(b) Repeat (a), assuming the purchase price is $5.20 and the quantity purchased and used is 26,200 units.

E22-6 Nevitt Company's standard labor cost of producing one unit of Product DD is 4 hours at the rate of $12.00 per hour. During August, 40,800 hours of labor are incurred at a cost of $12.10 per hour to produce 10,000 units of Product DD.

Compute labor price and quantity variances.
(SO 4), **AP**

Instructions

(a) Compute the total labor variance.
(b) Compute the labor price and quantity variances.
(c) Repeat (b), assuming the standard is 4.2 hours of direct labor at $12.25 per hour.

E22-7 Shannon Inc., which produces a single product, has prepared the following standard cost sheet for one unit of the product.

Compute materials and labor variances.
(SO 4), **AP**

Direct materials (8 pounds at $2.50 per pound)	$20
Direct labor (3 hours at $12.00 per hour)	$36

During the month of April, the company manufactures 230 units and incurs the following actual costs.

Direct materials purchased and used (1,900 pounds)	$4,940
Direct labor (700 hours)	$8,120

Instructions

Compute the total, price, and quantity variances for materials and labor.

E22-8 The following direct materials and direct labor data pertain to the operations of Engles Manufacturing Company for the month of August.

Compute the materials and labor variances and list reasons for unfavorable variances.
(SO 4), **AN**

Costs		Quantities	
Actual labor rate	$13 per hour	Actual hours incurred and used	4,200 hours
Actual materials price	$128 per ton	Actual quantity of materials purchased and used	1,225 tons
Standard labor rate	$12 per hour	Standard hours used	4,300 hours
Standard materials price	$130 per ton	Standard quantity of materials used	1,200 tons

Instructions

(a) Compute the total, price, and quantity variances for materials and labor.
(b) Provide two possible explanations for each of the unfavorable variances calculated above, and suggest where responsibility for the unfavorable result might be placed.

E22-9 You have been given the following information about the production of Adler Co., and are asked to provide the plant manager with information for a meeting with the vice president of operations.

Determine amounts from variance report.
(SO 4), **AN**

	Standard Cost Card
Direct materials (6 pounds at $3 per pound)	$18.00
Direct labor (0.8 hours at $5)	4.00
Variable overhead (0.8 hours at $3 per hour)	2.40
Fixed overhead (0.8 hours at $7 per hour)	5.60
	$30.00

The following is a variance report for the most recent period of operations.

Costs	Total Standard Cost	Variances	
		Price	Quantity
Direct materials	$405,000	$6,900 F	$9,000 U
Direct labor	90,000	4,850 U	7,000 U

Instructions

(a) How many units were produced during the period?
(b) How many pounds of raw material were purchased and used during the period?
(c) What was the actual cost per pound of raw materials?
(d) How many actual direct labor hours were worked during the period?
(e) What was the actual rate paid per direct labor hour?

(CGA adapted)

Prepare a variance report for direct labor.
(SO 4, 6), **AP**

E22-10 During March 2012, McGuire Tool & Die Company worked on four jobs. A review of direct labor costs reveals the following summary data.

Job Number	Actual		Standard		Total Variance
	Hours	Costs	Hours	Costs	
A257	220	$4,400	225	$4,500	$ 100 F
A258	450	9,900	430	8,600	1,300 U
A259	300	6,150	300	6,000	150 U
A260	115	2,070	110	2,200	130 F
Total variance					$1,220 U

Analysis reveals that Job A257 was a repeat job. Job A258 was a rush order that required overtime work at premium rates of pay. Job A259 required a more experienced replacement worker on one shift. Work on Job A260 was done for one day by a new trainee when a regular worker was absent.

Instructions

Prepare a report for the plant supervisor on direct labor cost variances for March. The report should have columns for (1) Job No., (2) Actual Hours, (3) Standard Hours, (4) Quantity Variance, (5) Actual Rate, (6) Standard Rate, (7) Price Variance, and (8) Explanation.

Compute overhead variance.
(SO 5), **AN**

E22-11 Manufacturing overhead data for the production of Product H by Felton Company are as follows.

Overhead incurred for 52,000 actual direct labor hours worked	$213,000
Overhead rate (variable $3; fixed $1) at normal capacity of 54,000 direct labor hours	$4
Standard hours allowed for work done	51,000

Instructions

Compute the total overhead variance.

Compute overhead variances.
(SO 5), **AP**

E22-12 Horak Company produces one product, a putter called GO-Putter. Horak uses a standard cost system and determines that it should take one hour of direct labor to produce one GO-Putter. The normal production capacity for this putter is 100,000 units per year. The total budgeted overhead at normal capacity is $800,000 comprised of $200,000 of variable costs and $600,000 of fixed costs. Horak applies overhead on the basis of direct labor hours.

During the current year, Horak produced 90,000 putters, worked 94,000 direct labor hours, and incurred variable overhead costs of $186,000 and fixed overhead costs of $600,000.

Instructions

(a) Compute the predetermined variable overhead rate and the predetermined fixed overhead rate.
(b) Compute the applied overhead for Horak for the year.
(c) Compute the total overhead variance.

Compute variances for materials.
(SO 4), **AP**

E22-13 Cornwell Company purchased (at a cost of $10,900) and used 2,300 pounds of materials during May. Cornwell's standard cost of materials per unit produced is based on 2 pounds per unit at a cost $5 per pound. Production in May was 1,070 units.

Instructions

(a) Compute the total, price, and quantity variances for materials.

(b) Assume Cornwell also had an unfavorable labor quantity variance. What is a possible scenario that would provide one cause for the variances computed in (a) and the unfavorable labor quantity variance?

E22-14 Shatner Landscaping plants grass seed as the basic landscaping for business campuses. During a recent month the company worked on three projects (Remington, Chang, and Wyco). The company is interested in controlling the material costs, namely the grass seed, for these plantings projects.

Prepare a variance report. (SO 4, 6), **AP**

In order to provide management with useful cost control information, the company uses standard costs and prepares monthly variance reports. Analysis reveals that the purchasing agent mistakenly purchased poor-quality seed for the Remington project. The Chang project, however, received higher-than-standard-quality seed that was on sale. The Wyco project received standard-quality seed; however, the price had increased and a new employee was used to spread the seed.

Shown below are quantity and cost data for each project.

	Actual		Standard		Total
Project	**Quantity**	**Costs**	**Quantity**	**Costs**	**Variance**
Remington	500 lbs.	$1,175	460 lbs.	$1,150	$ 25 U
Chang	400	960	410	1,025	65 F
Wyco	500	1,300	480	1,200	100 U
Total variance					$ 60 U

Instructions

(a) Prepare a variance report for the purchasing department with the following columns: (1) Project, (2) Actual pounds purchased, (3) Actual price, (4) Standard price, (5) Price variance, and (6) Explanation.

(b) Prepare a variance report for the production department with the following columns: (1) Project, (2) Actual pounds, (3) Standard pounds, (4) Standard price, (5) Quantity variance, and (6) Explanation.

E22-15 Barney Corporation prepared the following variance report.

Complete variance report. (SO 6), **AP**

BARNEY CORPORATION
Variance Report—Purchasing Department
For the Week Ended January 9, 2013

Type of Materials	Quantity Purchased	Actual Price	Standard Price	Price Variance	Explanation
Rogue11	? lbs.	$5.20	$5.00	$5,200 ?	Price increase
Storm17	7,000 oz.	?	3.25	1,050 U	Rush order
Beast29	22,000 units	0.45	?	440 F	Bought larger quantity

Instructions

Fill in the appropriate amounts or letters for the question marks in the report.

E22-16 Carlton Company uses a standard cost accounting system. During January, the company reported the following manufacturing variances.

Prepare income statement for management. (SO 7), **AP**

Materials price variance	$1,250 U	Labor quantity variance	$725 U
Materials quantity variance	700 F	Overhead variance	800 U
Labor price variance	525 U		

In addition, 8,000 units of product were sold at $8.00 per unit. Each unit sold had a standard cost of $6.00. Selling and administrative expenses were $6,000 for the month.

Instructions

Prepare an income statement for management for the month ended January 31, 2012.

E22-17 The following is a list of terms related to performance evaluation.

Identify performance evaluation terminology. (SO 3, 8), **C**

(1) Balanced scorecard
(2) Variance
(3) Learning and growth perspective
(4) Nonfinancial measures

(5) Customer perspective
(6) Internal process perspective
(7) Ideal standards
(8) Normal standards

Instructions
Match each of the following descriptions with one of the terms above.

(a) The difference between total actual costs and total standard costs.
(b) An efficient level of performance that is attainable under expected operating conditions.
(c) An approach that incorporates financial and nonfinancial measures in an integrated system that links performance measurement and a company's strategic goals.
(d) A viewpoint employed in the balanced scorecard to evaluate how well a company develops and retains its employees.
(e) An evaluation tool that is not based on dollars.
(f) A viewpoint employed in the balanced scorecard to evaluate the company from the perspective of those people who buy and use its products or services.
(g) An optimum level of performance under perfect operating conditions.
(h) A viewpoint employed in the balanced scorecard to evaluate the efficiency and effectiveness of the company's value chain.

Journalize entries in a standard cost accounting system.
(SO 9), **AP**

***E22-18** Beacon Company installed a standard cost system on January 1. Selected transactions for the month of January are as follows.

1. Purchased 18,000 units of raw materials on account at a cost of $4.50 per unit. Standard cost was $4.30 per unit.
2. Issued 18,000 units of raw materials for jobs that required 17,600 standard units of raw materials.
3. Incurred 15,200 actual hours of direct labor at an actual rate of $4.80 per hour. The standard rate is $5.50 per hour. (Credit Wages Payable.)
4. Performed 15,200 hours of direct labor on jobs when standard hours were 15,400.
5. Applied overhead to jobs at the rate of 100% of direct labor cost for standard hours allowed.

Instructions
Journalize the January transactions.

Answer questions concerning missing entries and balances.
(SO 4, 5, 9), **AN**

***E22-19** Pender Company uses a standard cost accounting system. Some of the ledger accounts have been destroyed in a fire. The controller asks your help in reconstructing some missing entries and balances.

Instructions
Answer the following questions.

(a) Materials Price Variance shows a $2,000 favorable balance. Accounts Payable shows $128,000 of raw materials purchases. What was the amount debited to Raw Materials Inventory for raw materials purchased?
(b) Materials Quantity Variance shows a $3,000 unfavorable balance. Raw Materials Inventory shows a zero balance. What was the amount debited to Work in Process Inventory for direct materials used?
(c) Labor Price Variance shows a $1,500 unfavorable balance. Factory Labor shows a debit of $140,000 for wages incurred. What was the amount credited to Wages Payable?
(d) Factory Labor shows a credit of $140,000 for direct labor used. Labor Quantity Variance shows a $900 unfavorable balance. What was the amount debited to Work in Process for direct labor used?
(e) Overhead applied to Work in Process totaled $165,000. If the total overhead variance was $1,200 unfavorable, what was the amount of overhead costs debited to Manufacturing Overhead?

Journalize entries for materials and labor variances.
(SO 9), **AP**

***E22-20** Data for Shannon Inc. are given in E22-7.

Instructions
Journalize the entries to record the materials and labor variances.

Compute manufacturing overhead variances and interpret findings.
(SO 10), **AN**

***E22-21** The information shown on the next page was taken from the annual manufacturing overhead cost budget of Marantha Company.

Variable manufacturing overhead costs	$33,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead costs	$19,800
Normal production level in labor hours	16,500
Normal production level in units	4,125
Standard labor hours per unit	4

During the year, 4,000 units were produced, 16,100 hours were worked, and the actual manufacturing overhead was $54,000. Actual fixed manufacturing overhead costs equaled budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead costs. Overhead is applied on the basis of direct labor hours.

Instructions

(a) Compute the total, fixed, and variable predetermined manufacturing overhead rates.
(b) Compute the total, controllable, and volume overhead variances.
(c) Briefly interpret the overhead controllable and volume variances computed in (b).

***E22-22** The loan department of Ottawa Bank uses standard costs to determine the overhead cost of processing loan applications. During the current month a fire occurred, and the accounting records for the department were mostly destroyed. The following data were salvaged from the ashes.

Compute overhead variances.
(SO 10), **AN**

Standard variable overhead rate per hour	$9
Standard hours per application	2
Standard hours allowed	2,000
Standard fixed overhead rate per hour	$6
Actual fixed overhead cost	$13,200
Variable overhead budget based on standard hours allowed	$18,000
Fixed overhead budget	$13,200
Overhead controllable variance	$ 1,500 U

Instructions

(a) Determine the following.
  (1) Total actual overhead cost.
  (2) Actual variable overhead cost.
  (3) Variable overhead cost applied.
  (4) Fixed overhead cost applied.
  (5) Overhead volume variance.
(b) Determine how many loans were processed.

***E22-23** Innova Company's overhead rate was based on estimates of $200,000 for overhead costs and 20,000 direct labor hours. Innova's standards allow 2 hours of direct labor per unit produced. Production in May was 900 units, and actual overhead incurred in May was $18,800. The overhead budgeted for 1,800 standard direct labor hours is $17,600 ($5,000 fixed and $12,600 variable).

Compute variances.
(SO 10), **AP**

Instructions

(a) Compute the total, controllable, and volume variances for overhead.
(b) What are possible causes of the variances computed in part (a)?

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B.

Problems: Set A

P22-1A Rondello Corporation manufactures a single product. The standard cost per unit of product is shown below.

Compute variances.
(SO 4, 5), **AP**

Direct materials—1 pound plastic at $7.00 per pound	$ 7.00
Direct labor—1.5 hours at $12.00 per hour	18.00
Variable manufacturing overhead	11.25
Fixed manufacturing overhead	3.75
Total standard cost per unit	$40.00

The predetermined manufacturing overhead rate is $10 per direct labor hour ($15.00 ÷ 1.5). It was computed from a master manufacturing overhead budget based on normal production of 7,500 direct labor hours (5,000 units) for the month. The master budget showed total variable costs of $56,250 ($7.50 per hour) and total fixed overhead costs of $18,750 ($2.50 per hour). Actual costs for October in producing 4,900 units were as follows.

Direct materials (5,100 pounds)	$ 37,230
Direct labor (7,000 hours)	87,500
Variable overhead	56,170
Fixed overhead	19,680
Total manufacturing costs	$200,580

The purchasing department buys the quantities of raw materials that are expected to be used in production each month. Raw materials inventories, therefore, can be ignored.

Instructions

(a) MPV $1,530 U

(a) Compute all of the materials and labor variances.
(b) Compute the total overhead variance.

Compute variances, and prepare income statement.
(SO 4, 5, 7), **AP**

P22-2A Martinez Manufacturing Corporation accumulates the following data relative to jobs started and finished during the month of June 2012.

Costs and Production Data	Actual	Standard
Raw materials unit cost	$2.25	$2.00
Raw materials units used	10,600	10,000
Direct labor payroll	$122,400	$120,000
Direct labor hours worked	14,400	15,000
Manufacturing overhead incurred	$184,500	
Manufacturing overhead applied		$189,000
Machine hours expected to be used at normal capacity		42,500
Budgeted fixed overhead for June		$51,000
Variable overhead rate per machine hour		$3.00
Fixed overhead rate per machine hour		$1.20

Overhead is applied on the basis of standard machine hours. Three hours of machine time are required for each direct labor hour. The jobs were sold for $400,000. Selling and administrative expenses were $40,000. Assume that the amount of raw materials purchased equaled the amount used.

Instructions

(a) LQV $4,800 F

(a) Compute all of the variances for (1) direct materials and (2) direct labor.
(b) Compute the total overhead variance.
(c) Prepare an income statement for management. Ignore income taxes.

Compute and identify significant variances.
(SO 4, 5, 6), **AN**

P22-3A Deskins Clothiers is a small company that manufactures tall-men's suits. The company has used a standard cost accounting system. In May 2012, 11,200 suits were produced. The following standard and actual cost data applied to the month of May when normal capacity was 14,000 direct labor hours. All materials purchased were used.

Cost Element	Standard (per unit)	Actual
Direct materials	8 yards at $4.30 per yard	$371,050 for 90,500 yards ($4.10 per yard)
Direct labor	1.2 hours at $13.50 per hour	$201,630 for 14,300 hours ($14.10 per hour)
Overhead	1.2 hours at $6.00 per hour (fixed $3.50; variable $2.50)	$49,000 fixed overhead $37,000 variable overhead

Overhead is applied on the basis of direct labor hours. At normal capacity, budgeted fixed overhead costs were $49,000, and budgeted variable overhead was $35,000.

Instructions

(a) MPV $18,100 F

(a) Compute the total, price, and quantity variances for (1) materials and (2) labor.
(b) Compute the total overhead variance.
(c) Which of the materials and labor variances should be investigated if management considers a variance of more than 4% from standard to be significant?

Answer questions about variances.
(SO 4, 5), **AN**

P22-4A Oklahoma Manufacturing Company uses a standard cost accounting system. In 2012, the company produced 28,000 units. Each unit took several pounds of direct

materials and 1½ standard hours of direct labor at a standard hourly rate of $12.00. Normal capacity was 50,000 direct labor hours. During the year, 131,000 pounds of raw materials were purchased at $0.92 per pound. All materials purchased were used during the year.

Instructions

(a) If the materials price variance was $2,620 favorable, what was the standard materials price per pound?

(b) If the materials quantity variance was $4,700 unfavorable, what was the standard materials quantity per unit? (b) 4.5 pounds

(c) What were the standard hours allowed for the units produced?

(d) If the labor quantity variance was $7,200 unfavorable, what were the actual direct labor hours worked?

(e) If the labor price variance was $10,650 favorable, what was the actual rate per hour?

(f) If total budgeted manufacturing overhead was $350,000 at normal capacity, what was the predetermined overhead rate? (f) $7 per DLH

(g) What was the standard cost per unit of product?

(h) How much overhead was applied to production during the year?

(i) Using one or more answers above, what were the total costs assigned to work in process?

P22-5A Dillman Labs, Inc. provides mad cow disease testing for both state and federal governmental agricultural agencies. Because the company's customers are governmental agencies, prices are strictly regulated. Therefore, Dillman Labs must constantly monitor and control its testing costs. Shown below are the standard costs for a typical test.

Compute variances, prepare an income statement, and explain unfavorable variances. (SO 4, 5, 7), **AP**

Direct materials (2 test tubes @ $1.50 per tube)	$ 3
Direct labor (1 hour @ $25 per hour)	25
Variable overhead (1 hour @ $5 per hour)	5
Fixed overhead (1 hour @ $10 per hour)	10
Total standard cost per test	$43

The lab does not maintain an inventory of test tubes. Therefore, the tubes purchased each month are used that month. Actual activity for the month of November 2012, when 1,500 tests were conducted, resulted in the following:

Direct materials (3,050 test tubes)	$ 4,270
Direct labor (1,600 hours)	36,800
Variable overhead	7,400
Fixed overhead	14,000

Monthly budgeted fixed overhead is $14,000. Revenues for the month were $75,000, and selling and administrative expenses were $4,000.

Instructions

(a) Compute the price and quantity variances for direct materials and direct labor. (a) LQV $2,500 U

(b) Compute the total overhead variance.

(c) Prepare an income statement for management.

(d) Provide possible explanations for each unfavorable variance.

***P22-6A** Haslett Corporation uses standard costs with its job order cost accounting system. In January, an order (Job No. 12) for 1,900 units of Product B was received. The standard cost of one unit of Product B is as follows.

Journalize and post standard cost entries, and prepare income statement. (SO 4, 5, 7, 9), **AP**

Direct materials	3 pounds at $1.00 per pound	$ 3.00
Direct labor	1 hour at $8.00 per hour	8.00
Overhead	2 hours (variable $4.00 per machine hour; fixed $2.25 per machine hour)	12.50
Standard cost per unit		$23.50

Normal capacity for the month was 4,200 machine hours. During January, the following transactions applicable to Job No. 12 occurred.

1. Purchased 6,250 pounds of raw materials on account at $1.06 per pound.
2. Requisitioned 6,250 pounds of raw materials for Job No. 12.
3. Incurred 2,100 hours of direct labor at a rate of $7.75 per hour.
4. Worked 2,100 hours of direct labor on Job No. 12.
5. Incurred manufacturing overhead on account $25,800.
6. Applied overhead to Job No. 12 on basis of standard machine hours allowed.

7. Completed Job No. 12.
8. Billed customer for Job No. 12 at a selling price of $70,000.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions.
(b) Post to the job order cost accounts.
(c) Prepare the entry to recognize the total overhead variance.
(d) Prepare the January 2012 income statement for management. Assume selling and administrative expenses were $2,000.

(d) NI $19,300

Compute overhead controllable and volume variances. (SO 10), **AP**

***P22-7A** Using the information in P22-1A, compute the overhead controllable variance and the overhead volume variance.

Compute overhead controllable and volume variances. (SO 10), **AP**

***P22-8A** Using the information in P22-2A, compute the overhead controllable variance and the overhead volume variance.

Compute overhead controllable and volume variances. (SO 10), **AP**

***P22-9A** Using the information in P22-3A, compute the overhead controllable variance and the overhead volume variance.

Compute overhead controllable and volume variances. (SO 10), **AP**

***P22-10A** Using the information in P22-5A, compute the overhead controllable variance and the overhead volume variance.

Problems: Set B

Compute variances. (SO 4, 5), **AP**

P22-1B Korte Corporation manufactures a single product. The standard cost per unit of product is as follows.

Direct materials—2 pounds of plastic at $5 per pound	$10
Direct labor—2 hours at $12 per hour	24
Variable manufacturing overhead	8
Fixed manufacturing overhead	6
Total standard cost per unit	$48

The master manufacturing overhead budget for the month based on normal productive capacity of 20,000 direct labor hours (10,000 units) shows total variable costs of $80,000 ($4 per labor hour) and total fixed costs of $60,000 ($3 per labor hour). Normal productive capacity is 20,000 direct labor hours. Overhead is applied on the basis of direct labor hours. Actual costs for November in producing 9,700 units were as follows.

Direct materials (20,000 pounds)	$ 98,000
Direct labor (19,600 hours)	239,120
Variable overhead	79,100
Fixed overhead	59,000
Total manufacturing costs	$475,220

The purchasing department normally buys the quantities of raw materials that are expected to be used in production each month. Raw materials inventories, therefore, can be ignored.

Instructions

(a) Compute all of the materials and labor variances.
(b) Compute the total overhead variance.

(a) MPV $2,000 F

Compute variances, and prepare income statement. (SO 4, 5, 7), **AP**

P22-2B Vasquez Manufacturing Company uses a standard cost accounting system to account for the manufacture of exhaust fans. In July 2012, it accumulates the following data relative to 1,800 units started and finished.

Cost and Production Data	Actual	Standard
Raw materials		
Units purchased	21,000	
Units used	21,000	22,000
Unit cost	$3.40	$3.00
Direct labor		
Hours worked	3,450	3,600
Hourly rate	$11.80	$12.50
Manufacturing overhead		
Incurred	$101,500	
Applied		$108,000

Manufacturing overhead was applied on the basis of direct labor hours. Normal capacity for the month was 3,400 direct labor hours. At normal capacity, budgeted overhead costs were $20 per labor hour variable and $10 per labor hour fixed. Total budgeted fixed overhead costs were $34,000.

Jobs finished during the month were sold for $280,000. Selling and administrative expenses were $25,000.

Instructions

(a) Compute all of the variances for (1) direct materials and (2) direct labor. (a) LQV $1,875 F

(b) Compute the total overhead variance.

(c) Prepare an income statement for management. Ignore income taxes.

P22-3B Herzog Clothiers manufactures women's business suits. The company uses a standard cost accounting system. In March 2012, 15,700 suits were made. The following standard and actual cost data applied to the month of March when normal capacity was 20,000 direct labor hours. All materials purchased were used in production.

Compute and identify significant variances. (SO 4, 5, 6), **AN**

Cost Element	Standard (per unit)	Actual
Direct materials	5 yards at $6.80 per yard	$547,200 for 76,000 yards ($7.20 per yard)
Direct labor	1.0 hours at $11.50 per hour	$166,880 for 14,900 hours ($11.20 per hour)
Overhead	1.0 hours at $9.30 per hour (fixed $6.30; variable $3.00)	$120,000 fixed overhead $49,000 variable overhead

Overhead is applied on the basis of direct labor hours. At normal capacity, budgeted fixed overhead costs were $126,000, and budgeted variable overhead costs were $60,000.

Instructions

(a) Compute the total, price, and quantity variances for (1) materials and (2) labor. (a) MPV $30,400 U

(b) Compute the total overhead variance.

(c) Which of the materials and labor variances should be investigated if management considers a variance of more than 5% from standard to be significant?

P22-4B Omega Manufacturing Company uses a standard cost accounting system. In 2012, 50,000 units were produced. Each unit took several pounds of direct materials and 2 standard hours of direct labor at a standard hourly rate of $12.00. Normal capacity was 96,000 direct labor hours. During the year, 200,000 pounds of raw materials were purchased at $1.00 per pound. All materials purchased were used during the year.

Answer questions about variances. (SO 4, 5), **AN**

Instructions

(a) If the materials price variance was $8,000 unfavorable, what was the standard materials price per pound?

(b) If the materials quantity variance was $24,000 favorable, what was the standard materials quantity per unit? (b) 4.5 pounds

(c) What were the standard hours allowed for the units produced?

(d) If the labor quantity variance was $10,800 unfavorable, what were the actual direct labor hours worked?

(e) If the labor price variance was $25,225 favorable, what was the actual rate per hour?

(f) If total budgeted manufacturing overhead was $792,000 at normal capacity, what was the predetermined overhead rate per direct labor hour? (f) $8.25 per DLH

(g) What was the standard cost per unit of product?

(h) How much overhead was applied to production during the year?

(i) Using selected answers above, what were the total costs assigned to work in process?

P22-5B Crone Labs performs steroid testing services to high schools, colleges, and universities. Because the company deals solely with educational institutions, the price of each test is strictly regulated. Therefore, the costs incurred must be carefully monitored and controlled. Shown below are the standard costs for a typical test.

Compute variances, prepare an income statement, and explain unfavorable variances. (SO 4, 5, 7), **AP**

Direct materials (1 petri dish @ $2 per dish)	$ 2.00
Direct labor (0.5 hours @ $20 per hour)	10.00
Variable overhead (0.5 hours @ $8 per hour)	4.00
Fixed overhead (0.5 hours @ $4 per hour)	2.00
Total standard cost per test	$18.00

The lab does not maintain an inventory of petri dishes. Therefore, the dishes purchased each month are used that month. Actual activity for the month of May 2012, when 2,500 tests were conducted, resulted in the following.

Direct materials (2,530 dishes)	$ 5,313
Direct labor (1,240 hours)	26,040
Variable overhead	10,100
Fixed overhead	5,700

Monthly budgeted fixed overhead is $6,000. Revenues for the month were $58,000, and selling and administrative expenses were $2,000.

Instructions

(a) LQV $200 F

(a) Compute the price and quantity variances for direct materials and direct labor.
(b) Compute the total overhead variance.
(c) Prepare an income statement for management.
(d) Provide possible explanations for each unfavorable variance.

Journalize and post standard cost entries, and prepare income statement. (SO 4, 5, 7, 9), **AP**

***P22-6B** Freeze Manufacturing Company uses standard costs with its job order cost accounting system. In January, an order (Job No. 84) was received for 5,500 units of Product D. The standard cost of 1 unit of Product D is as follows.

Direct materials—1.4 pounds at $4.00 per pound	$ 5.60
Direct labor—1 hour at $9.00 per hour	9.00
Overhead—1 hour (variable $7.40; fixed $8.00)	15.40
Standard cost per unit	$30.00

Overhead is applied on the basis of direct labor hours. Normal capacity for the month of January was 6,000 direct labor hours. During January, the following transactions applicable to Job No. 84 occurred.

1. Purchased 8,100 pounds of raw materials on account at $3.60 per pound.
2. Requisitioned 8,100 pounds of raw materials for production.
3. Incurred 5,100 hours of direct labor at $9.25 per hour.
4. Worked 5,100 hours of direct labor on Job No. 84.
5. Incurred $87,650 of manufacturing overhead on account.
6. Applied overhead to Job No. 84 on the basis of direct labor hours.
7. Transferred Job No. 84 to finished goods.
8. Billed customer for Job No. 84 at a selling price of $280,000.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions.
(b) Post to the job order cost accounts.
(c) Prepare the entry to recognize the total overhead variance.

(d) NI $55,015

(d) Prepare the January 2012 income statement for management. Assume selling and administrative expenses were $61,000.

Compute overhead controllable and volume variances. (SO 10), **AP**

***P22-7B** Using the information in P22-1B, compute the overhead controllable variance and the overhead volume variance.

Compute overhead controllable and volume variances. (SO 10), **AP**

***P22-8B** Using the information in P22-2B, compute the overhead controllable variance and the overhead volume variance.

Compute overhead controllable and volume variances. (SO 10), **AP**

***P22-9B** Using the information in P22-3B, compute the overhead controllable variance and the overhead volume variance.

Compute overhead controllable and volume variances. (SO 10), **AP**

***P22-10B** Using the information in P22-5B, compute the overhead controllable variance and the overhead volume variance.

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Waterways Continuing Problem

(This is a continuation of the Waterways Problem from Chapters 14 through 21.)

WCP22 Waterways Corporation uses very stringent standard costs in evaluating its manufacturing efficiency. These standards are not "ideal" at this point, but the management is working toward that as a goal. This problem asks you to calculate and evaluate the company's variances.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to find the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP22-1 Tryon Professionals, a management consulting firm, specializes in strategic planning for financial institutions. Joe Barto and Lori Dobson, partners in the firm, are assembling a new strategic planning model for use by clients. The model is designed for use on most personal computers and replaces a rather lengthy manual model currently marketed by the firm. To market the new model, Joe and Lori will need to provide clients with an estimate of the number of labor hours and computer time needed to operate the model. The model is currently being test-marketed at five small financial institutions. These financial institutions are listed below, along with the number of combined computer/labor hours used by each institution to run the model one time.

Financial Institutions	Computer/Labor Hours Required
Midland National	25
First State	45
Financial Federal	40
Pacific America	30
Lakeview National	30
Total	170
Average	34

Any company that purchases the new model will need to purchase user manuals for the system. User manuals will be sold to clients in cases of 20, at a cost of $300 per case. One manual must be used each time the model is run because each manual includes a nonreusable computer-accessed password for operating the system. Also required are specialized computer forms that are sold only by Tryon. The specialized forms are sold in packages of 250, at a cost of $50 per package. One application of the model requires the use of 50 forms. This amount includes two forms that are generally wasted in each application due to printer alignment errors. The overall cost of the strategic planning model to clients is $12,000. Most clients will use the model four times annually.

Tryon must provide its clients with estimates of ongoing costs incurred in operating the new planning model, and would like to do so in the form of standard costs.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following.

(a) What factors should be considered in setting a standard for computer/labor hours?
(b) What alternatives for setting a standard for computer/labor hours might be used?
(c) What standard for computer/labor hours would you select? Justify your answer.
(d) Determine the standard materials cost associated with the user manuals and computer forms for each application of the strategic planning model.

MANAGERIAL ANALYSIS

***BYP22-2** Al Finney and Associates is a medium-sized company located near a large metropolitan area in the Midwest. The company manufactures cabinets of mahogany, oak, and other fine woods for use in expensive homes, restaurants, and hotels. Although some of the work is custom, many of the cabinets are a standard size.

One such non-custom model is called Luxury Base Frame. Normal production is 1,000 units. Each unit has a direct labor hour standard of 5 hours. Overhead is applied to production based on standard direct labor hours. During the most recent month, only 900 units were produced; 4,500 direct labor hours were allowed for standard production, but only 4,000 hours were used. Standard and actual overhead costs were as follows.

	Standard (1,000 units)	Actual (900 units)
Indirect materials	$ 12,000	$ 12,300
Indirect labor	43,000	51,000
(Fixed) Manufacturing supervisors salaries	22,000	22,000
(Fixed) Manufacturing office employees salaries	13,000	11,500
(Fixed) Engineering costs	27,000	25,000
Computer costs	10,000	10,000
Electricity	2,500	2,500
(Fixed) Manufacturing building depreciation	8,000	8,000
(Fixed) Machinery depreciation	3,000	3,000
(Fixed) Trucks and forklift depreciation	1,500	1,500
Small tools	700	1,400
(Fixed) Insurance	500	500
(Fixed) Property taxes	300	300
Total	$143,500	$149,000

Instructions

(a) Determine the overhead application rate.
(b) Determine how much overhead was applied to production.
(c) Calculate the total overhead variance, controllable variance, and volume variance.
(d) Decide which overhead variances should be investigated.
(e) Discuss causes of the overhead variances. What can management do to improve its performance next month?

REAL-WORLD FOCUS

BYP22-3 Glassmaster Co. is organized as two divisions and one subsidiary. One division focuses on the manufacture of filaments such as fishing line and sewing thread; the other division manufactures antennas and specialty fiberglass products. Its subsidiary manufactures flexible steel wire controls and molded control panels.

The annual report of Glassmaster provides the following information.

GLASSMASTER COMPANY
Management Discussion

Gross profit margins for the year improved to 20.9% of sales compared to last year's 18.5%. All operations reported improved margins due in large part to improved operating efficiencies as a result of cost reduction measures implemented during the second and third quarters of the fiscal year and increased manufacturing throughout due to higher unit volume sales. Contributing to the improved margins was a favorable materials price variance due to competitive pricing by suppliers as a result of soft demand for petrochemical-based products. This favorable variance is temporary and will begin to reverse itself as stronger worldwide demand for commodity products improves in tandem with the economy. Partially offsetting these positive effects on profit margins were competitive pressures on sales prices of certain product lines. The company responded with pricing strategies designed to maintain and/or increase market share.

Instructions
(a) Is it apparent from the information whether Glassmaster utilizes standard costs?
(b) Do you think the price variance experienced should lead to changes in standard costs for the next fiscal year?

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING ON THE WEB

BYP22-4 The Balanced Scorecard Institute *(www.balancedscorecard.org)* is a great resource for information about implementing the balanced scorecard. One item of interest provided at its website is an example of a balanced scorecard for a regional airline.

Address: **http://www.balancedscorecard.org/portals/0/pdf/regional_airline.pdf**, or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Instructions
Go to the address above and answer the following questions.
(a) What are the objectives identified for the airline for each perspective?
(b) What measures are used for the objectives in the customer perspective?
(c) What initiatives are planned to achieve the objective in the learning perspective?

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP22-5 The setting of standards is critical to the effective use of standards in evaluating performance.

Instructions
Explain the following in a memo to your instructor.
(a) The comparative advantages and disadvantages of ideal versus normal standards.
(b) The factors that should be included in setting the price and quantity standards for direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead.

ETHICS CASE

BYP22-6 At Timmons Manufacturing Company, production workers in the Painting Department are paid on the basis of productivity. The labor time standard for a unit of production is established through periodic time studies conducted by DeVito Management Consultants. In a time study, the actual time required to complete a specific task by a worker is observed. Allowances are then made for preparation time, rest periods, and clean-up time. Don Carmen is one of several veterans in the Painting Department.

Don is informed by DeVito that he will be used in the time study for the painting of a new product. The findings will be the basis for establishing the labor time standard for the next 6 months. During the test, Don deliberately slows his normal work pace in an effort to obtain a labor time standard that will be easy to meet. Because it is a new product, the DeVito representative who conducted the test is unaware that Don did not give the test his best effort.

Instructions
(a) Who was benefited and who was harmed by Don's actions?
(b) Was Don ethical in the way he performed the time study test?
(c) What measure(s) might the company take to obtain valid data for setting the labor time standard?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP22-7 From the time you first entered school many years ago, instructors have been measuring and evaluating you by imposing standards. In addition, many of you will pursue professions that administer professional examinations to attain recognized certification. Recently, a federal commission presented proposals suggesting all public colleges and universities should require standardized tests to measure their students' learning.

Instructions
Read the article at **www.signonsandiego.com/uniontrib/20060811/news_1n11colleges.html**, and answer the following questions.
(a) What areas of concern did the panel's recommendations address?
(b) What are possible advantages of standard testing?
(c) What are possible disadvantages of standard testing?
(d) Would you be in favor of standardized tests?

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 1140 How Do Standards Help a Business? **Q:** How will the creation of such standards help a business or organization? **A:** A business or organization may use the data to compare its performance relative to others with regard to common practices such as processing a purchase order or filling a sales order. Armed with this information, an organization can determine which areas to focus on with improvement campaigns.

p. 1143 How Can We Make Susan's Chili Profitable? **Q:** How might management use this raw material cost information? **A:** Management might decide to increase the price of its chili. Or, it might revise its recipes to use cheaper ingredients. Or, it might eliminate some products until ingredients are available at costs closer to standard. Regarding the waste due to dull blades, management should reconsider its maintenance policy, to balance the cost of maintenance versus the cost of wasted product.

p. 1156 It May Be Time to Fly United Again **Q:** Which of the perspectives of a balanced scorecard were the focus of United's CEO? **A:** Improving on-time flight departures is an objective within the internal process perspective. Customer intent to fly United again is an objective within the customer perspective.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. c **2.** b **3.** d **4.** a **5.** b **6.** c **7.** b [(6,300 × \$1.00) − (6,000 × \$1.00)] **8.** a [(14,800 × \$8.00) − (15,000 × \$8.00)] **9.** d **10.** a **11.** b **12.** d **13.** c **14.** d ***15.** c ***16.** c

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

chapter 23

INCREMENTAL ANALYSIS AND CAPITAL BUDGETING

the navigator

- Scan **Study Objectives**
- Read **Feature Story**
- Scan **Preview**
- Read **Text and Answer** *Do it!* p. 1191 p. 1193 p. 1196 p. 1201 p. 1206
- Work **Using the Decision Toolkit**
- Review **Summary of Study Objectives**
- Work **Comprehensive** *Do it!* p. 1209
- Answer **Self-Test Questions**
- Complete **Assignments**
- Go to **WileyPLUS** for practice and tutorials

study objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

1. Identify the steps in management's decision-making process.
2. Describe the concept of incremental analysis.
3. Identify the relevant costs in accepting an order at a special price.
4. Identify the relevant costs in a make-or-buy decision.
5. Give the decision rule for whether to sell or process materials further.
6. Identify the factors to consider in retaining or replacing equipment.
7. Explain the relevant factors in whether to eliminate an unprofitable segment.
8. Determine which products to make and sell when resources are limited.
9. Contrast annual rate of return and cash payback in capital budgeting.
10. Distinguish between the net present value and internal rate of return methods.

the navigator

SOUP IS GOOD FOOD

When you hear the word *Campbell*, what is the first thing that comes to mind? Soup. Campbell *is* soup. It sells 38 percent of all the soup—including homemade—consumed in the United States.

But can a company survive on soup alone? In an effort to expand its operations and to lessen its reliance on soup, Campbell Soup Company (*www.campbellsoup.com*) in 1990 began searching for an additional line of business. Campbell's management believed it saw an opportunity in convenient meals that were low in fat, nutritionally rich, and had therapeutic value for heart patients and diabetics. This venture would require a huge investment—but the rewards were potentially tremendous.

The initial investment required building food labs, hiring nutritional scientists, researching prototype products, constructing new production facilities, and marketing the new products. Management predicted that with an initial investment of roughly $55 million, the company might generate sales of $200 million per year.

By 1994 the company had created 24 meals, and an extensive field-study revealed considerable health benefits from the products. Unfortunately, initial sales of the new product line, called Intelligent Quisine, were less than stellar. In 1997 Campbell hired a consulting firm to evaluate whether to continue the project. Product development of the new line was costing $20 million per year—a sum that some managers felt could be better spent developing new products in other divisions, or expanding overseas operations. In 1998 Campbell discontinued the project.

Campbell was not giving up on growth, but simply had decided to refocus its efforts on soup. The company's annual report stated management's philosophy: "Soup will be our growth engine." Campbell has sold off many of its non-soup businesses and in a recent year introduced 20 new soup products.

Source: Vanessa O'Connell, "Food for Thought: How Campbell Saw a Breakthrough Menu Turn into Leftovers," *Wall Street Journal* (October 6, 1998).

the navigator

INSIDE CHAPTER 23 . . .

- **The Pressure to Outsource** *(p. 1193)*
- **High Stakes for Large TVs** *(p. 1202)*

preview of chapter 23

An important purpose of management accounting is to provide relevant information for decision making. Examples of these decisions include the following: (1) Campbell Soup's decision to produce "therapeutic meals" rather than some other food product. (2) Boeing's strategic decisions to spend $5 billion to build a plane for the 21st century—the B-777—and to cancel development of a larger version of the B-747. (3) The Coca-Cola Company's decision to spend $750 million to build twelve plants in Russia.

This chapter begins with an explanation of management's decision-making process. It then considers the topics of incremental analysis and capital budgeting. The content and organization of Chapter 23 are as follows.

Incremental Analysis and Capital Budgeting

Incremental Analysis	Capital Budgeting
• Management's decision-making process	• Evaluation process
• Accept special-price order	• Annual rate of return
• Make or buy	• Cash payback
• Sell or process further	• Discounted cash flow: NPV and IRR
• Retain or replace equipment	
• Eliminate unprofitable segment	
• Allocate limited resources	

the navigator

section one

Incremental Analysis

study objective 1

Identify the steps in management's decision-making process.

Management's Decision-Making Process

Making decisions is an important management function. Management's decision-making process does not always follow a set pattern, because decisions vary significantly in their scope, urgency, and importance. It is possible, though, to identify some steps that are frequently involved in the process. These steps are shown in Illustration 23-1.

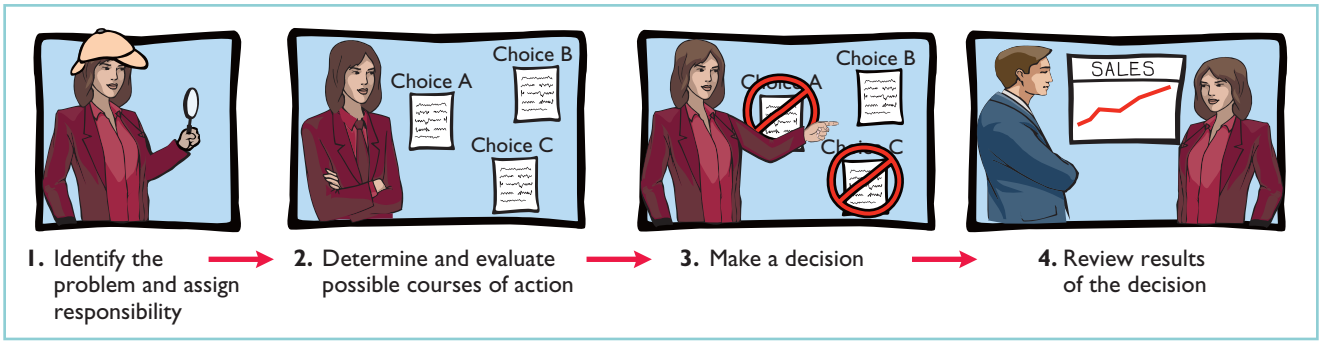


Illustration 23-1
Management's decision-making process

Accounting's contribution to the decision-making process occurs primarily in Steps 2 and 4—evaluating possible courses of action and reviewing the results. In Step 2, for each possible course of action, accounting provides relevant revenue and cost data. These show the expected overall effect on net income. In Step 4, accounting prepares internal reports that review the actual impact of the decision.

In making business decisions, management ordinarily considers both financial and nonfinancial information. *Financial information* is related to revenues and costs and their effect on the company's overall profitability. *Nonfinancial information* relates to such factors as the effect of the decision on employee turnover, the environment, or the overall image of the company in the community. Although the nonfinancial information can be as important as the financial information, we focus primarily on financial information that is relevant to the decision.

THE INCREMENTAL ANALYSIS APPROACH

study objective 2

Describe the concept of incremental analysis.

Decisions involve a choice among alternative courses of action. Suppose that you were deciding whether to purchase or lease a computer for use in doing your accounting homework. The financial data relate to the cost of leasing versus the cost of purchasing. For example, leasing involves periodic lease payments; purchasing requires "up-front" payment of the purchase price. In other words, the financial data relevant to the decision are the data that vary among the possible alternatives. The process used to identify the financial data that change under alternative courses of action is called **incremental analysis**. In some cases, when you use incremental analysis, both costs **and** revenues will change. In other cases, only costs **or** revenues will change.

Alternative Terminology

Incremental analysis is also called *differential analysis* because the analysis focuses on differences.

Just as your decision to buy or lease a PC affects your future, similar decisions, on a larger scale, affect a company's future. Incremental analysis identifies the probable effects of those decisions on future earnings. Such analysis inevitably involves estimates and uncertainty. Gathering data for incremental analyses may involve market analysts, engineers, and accountants. In quantifying the data, the accountant is expected to produce the most reliable information available at the time the decision must be made.

HOW INCREMENTAL ANALYSIS WORKS

The following example illustrates the basic approach in incremental analysis.

Incremental Analysis.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D
1		Alternative A	Alternative B	Net Income Increase (Decrease)
2	Revenues	$125,000	$110,000	$ (15,000)
3	Costs	100,000	80,000	20,000
4	Net income	$ 25,000	$ 30,000	$ 5,000
5				

Illustration 23-2 Basic approach in incremental analysis

This example compares alternative B with alternative A. The net income column shows the differences between the alternatives. In this case, incremental revenue will be $15,000 less under alternative B than under alternative A, but a $20,000 incremental cost saving will be realized.[1] Thus, alternative B will produce $5,000 more net income than alternative A.

Incremental analysis sometimes involves changes that at first glance might seem contrary to your intuition. For example, sometimes variable costs *do not change* under the alternative courses of action. Also, sometimes fixed costs *do change*. For example, direct labor, normally a variable cost, is not an incremental cost in deciding between two new factory machines if each asset requires the

[1]Although income taxes are sometimes important in incremental analysis, they are ignored in the chapter for simplicity's sake.

same amount of direct labor. In contrast, rent expense, normally a fixed cost, is an incremental cost in a decision to continue occupancy of a building or to purchase or lease a new building.

Types of Incremental Analysis

A number of different types of decisions involve incremental analysis. The more common types of decisions are:

1. Accept an order at a special price.
2. Make or buy.
3. Sell or process further.
4. Retain or replace equipment.
5. Eliminate an unprofitable business segment.
6. Allocate limited resources.

We consider each of these types of analysis in the following pages.

ACCEPT AN ORDER AT A SPECIAL PRICE

study objective 3

Identify the relevant costs in accepting an order at a special price.

Sometimes, a company has an opportunity to obtain additional business if it is willing to make a major price concession to a specific customer. To illustrate, assume that Sunbelt Company produces 100,000 automatic blenders per month, which is 80% of plant capacity. Variable manufacturing costs are $8 per unit. Fixed manufacturing costs are $400,000, or $4 per unit. The blenders are normally sold directly to retailers at $20 each. Sunbelt has an offer from Mexico Co. (a foreign wholesaler) to purchase an additional 2,000 blenders at $11 per unit. Acceptance of the offer would not affect normal sales of the product, and the additional units can be manufactured without increasing plant capacity. What should management do?

Helpful Hint This is a good example of different costs for different purposes. In the long-run all costs are relevant, but for this decision only costs that change are relevant.

If management makes its decision on the basis of the total cost per unit of $12 ($8 + $4), the order would be rejected, because costs ($12) would exceed revenues ($11) by $1 per unit. However, since the units can be produced within existing plant capacity, the special order **will not increase fixed costs**. The relevant data for the decision, therefore, are the variable manufacturing costs per unit of $8 and the expected revenue of $11 per unit. Thus, as shown in Illustration 23-3, Sunbelt will increase its net income by $6,000 by accepting this special order.

Illustration 23-3
Incremental analysis—accepting an order at a special price

Accepting an order at a special price.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D
1		Reject Order	Accept Order	Net Income Increase (Decrease)
2	Revenues	$0	$22,000	$ 22,000
3	Costs	0	16,000	(16,000)
4	Net income	$0	$ 6,000	$ 6,000
5				

Two points should be emphasized: First, we assume that sales of the product in other markets are not affected by this special order. If other sales are affected, then Sunbelt must consider the lost sales in making the decision. Second, if Sunbelt is operating at full capacity, it is likely that the special order

would be rejected. Under such circumstances, the company would have to expand plant capacity. In that case, the special order would have to absorb these additional fixed manufacturing costs, as well as the variable manufacturing costs.

before you go on...

Do it! Cobb Company incurs a cost of $28 per unit, of which $18 is variable, to make a product that normally sells for $42. A foreign wholesaler offers to buy 5,000 units at $25 each. Cobb will incur shipping costs of $1 per unit. Compute the increase or decrease in net income Cobb will realize by accepting the special order, assuming Cobb has excess operating capacity. Should Cobb Company accept the special order?

SPECIAL ORDERS

Action Plan

- Identify all revenues that will change as a result of accepting the order.
- Identify all costs that will change as a result of accepting the order, and net this amount against the change in revenues.

Solution

	Reject	Accept	Net Income Increase (Decrease)
Revenue	$–0–	$125,000	$125,000
Costs	–0–	95,000*	(95,000)
Net income	$–0–	$ 30,000	$ 30,000

*(5,000 × $18) + (5,000 × $1)

Given the result of the analysis, Cobb Company should accept the special order.

Related exercise material: **BE23-3, Do it! 23-1, E23-2,** and **E23-3.**

the navigator

MAKE OR BUY

study objective 4
Identify the relevant costs in a make-or-buy decision.

When a manufacturer assembles component parts in producing a finished product, management must decide whether to make or buy the components. For example, General Motors Corporation may either make or buy the batteries, tires, and radios used in its cars. Similarly, Hewlett-Packard Corporation may make or buy the electronic circuitry, cases, and printer heads for its printers. Boeing recently sold some of its commercial aircraft factories in an effort to cut production costs and focus instead on engineering and final assembly rather than manufacturing. The decision to make or buy components should be made on the basis of incremental analysis.

To illustrate the analysis, assume that Baron Company incurs the following annual costs in producing 25,000 ignition switches for motor scooters.

Direct materials	$ 50,000
Direct labor	75,000
Variable manufacturing overhead	40,000
Fixed manufacturing overhead	60,000
Total manufacturing costs	$225,000
Total cost per unit ($225,000 ÷ 25,000)	**$ 9.00**

Illustration 23-4 Annual product cost data

Or, instead of making its own switches, Baron Company might purchase the ignition switches from Ignition Inc. at a price of $8 per unit. The question again is, "What should management do?"

At first glance, it appears that management should purchase the ignition switches for $8, rather than make them at a cost of $9. However, a review of operations indicates that if Baron purchases the ignition switches from Ignition Inc., it will eliminate *all* of its variable costs but only $10,000 of its fixed

manufacturing costs. Thus, $50,000 of the fixed manufacturing costs will remain if the ignition switches are purchased. The relevant costs for incremental analysis, therefore, are as follows.

Illustration 23-5
Incremental analysis—make or buy

Incremental Analysis - Make or buy.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D
1		Make	Buy	Net Income Increase (Decrease)
2	Direct materials	$ 50,000	$ 0	$ 50,000
3	Direct labor	75,000	0	75,000
4	Variable manufacturing costs	40,000	0	40,000
5	Fixed manufacturing costs	60,000	50,000	10,000
6	Purchase price (25,000 × $8)	0	200,000	(200,000)
7	Total annual cost	$225,000	$250,000	$ (25,000)
8				

Ethics Note In the make-or-buy decision, it is important for management to take into account the social impact of its choice. For instance, buying may be the most economically feasible solution, but such action could result in the closure of a manufacturing plant that employs many good workers.

This analysis indicates that Baron Company will incur $25,000 of additional costs by buying the ignition switches. Therefore, Baron should continue to make the ignition switches, even though the total manufacturing cost is $1 higher than the purchase price. The reason is that if the company purchases the ignition switches, it will still have fixed costs of $50,000 to absorb.

Opportunity Cost

The foregoing make-or-buy analysis is complete only if the productive capacity used to make the ignition switches cannot be converted to another purpose. If there is an opportunity to use this productive capacity in some other manner, then this opportunity cost must be considered. **Opportunity cost** is the potential benefit that may be obtained by following an alternative course of action.

To illustrate, assume that through buying the switches, Baron Company can use the released productive capacity to generate additional income of $28,000. This lost income is an additional cost of continuing to make the switches in the make-or-buy decision. This opportunity cost therefore is added to the "Make" column, for comparison. As shown, it is now advantageous to buy the ignition switches.

Illustration 23-6
Incremental analysis—make or buy, with opportunity cost

Incremental Analysis - Make or buy with opportunity cost.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D
1		Make	Buy	Net Income Increase (Decrease)
2	Total annual cost	$225,000	$250,000	$(25,000)
3	Opportunity cost	28,000	0	28,000
4	Total cost	$253,000	$250,000	$ 3,000
5				

The qualitative factors in this decision include the possible loss of jobs for employees who produce the ignition switches. In addition, management must assess how long the supplier will be able to satisfy the company's quality control standards at the quoted price per unit.

before you go on...

Do it! Juanita Company must decide whether to make or buy some of its components. The costs of producing 166,000 electrical cords for its floor lamps are as follows.

Direct materials	$90,000	Variable overhead	$32,000
Direct labor	$20,000	Fixed overhead	$24,000

Instead of making the electrical cords at an average cost per unit of $1.00 ($166,000 ÷ 166,000), the company has an opportunity to buy the cords at $0.90 per unit. If the company purchases the cords, all variable costs and one-fourth of the fixed costs will be eliminated.

(a) Prepare an incremental analysis showing whether the company should make or buy the electrical cords. (b) Will your answer be different if the released productive capacity will generate additional income of $5,000?

MAKE OR BUY

Action Plan

- Look for the costs that change.
- Ignore the costs that do not change.
- Use the format in the chapter for your answer.
- Recognize that opportunity cost can make a difference.

Solution

(a)

	Make	Buy	Net Income Increase (Decrease)
Direct materials	$ 90,000	$ –0–	$ 90,000
Direct labor	20,000	–0–	20,000
Variable manufacturing costs	32,000	–0–	32,000
Fixed manufacturing costs	24,000	18,000	6,000
Purchase price	–0–	149,400	(149,400)
Total cost	$166,000	$167,400	$ (1,400)

This analysis indicates that Juanita Company will incur $1,400 of additional costs if it buys the electrical cords.

(b)

	Make	Buy	Net Income Increase (Decrease)
Total cost	$166,000	$167,400	$ (1,400)
Opportunity cost	5,000		5,000
Total cost	$171,000	$167,400	$ 3,600

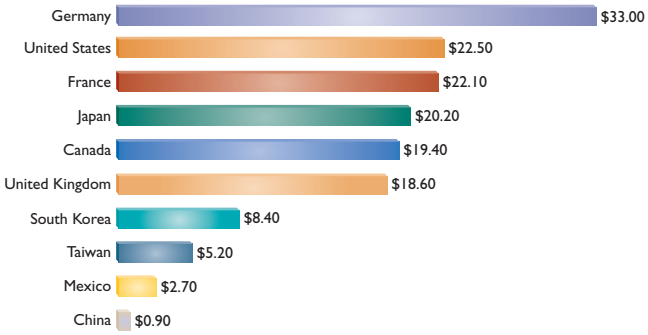
Yes, the answer is different: The analysis shows that net income will be increased by $3,600 if Juanita Company purchases the electrical cords.

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE23-4,** **Do it!** **23-2,** and **E23-4.**

Accounting Across the Organization

The Pressure to Outsource



Consider the make-or-buy decision faced by Superior Industries International, Inc., a big aluminum-wheel maker in Van Nuys, California. For years, president Steve Borick had ignored the possibility of Chinese manufacturing. Then Mr. Borick started getting a blunt message from General Motors and Ford, with whom Superior does 85% of its business: Match the prices of Chinese wheel suppliers. Both auto makers said separately that if Superior could not agree to the lower prices, they would go directly to Chinese manufacturers or turn to other North American wheel-makers.

Stories like this, repeated in various industries, illustrate why manufacturers engage in overseas *off-shoring* (outsourcing). For example, compare the relative labor costs in major auto-producing nations, in dollars per hour, to see why incremental analysis often leads to outsourcing production to countries like China.

Source: Norihiko Shirouzu, "Big Three's Outsourcing Plan: Make Parts Suppliers Do It," *Wall Street Journal* (June 10, 2004), p. A1.

? What are the disadvantages of outsourcing to a foreign country? (See page 1228.)

SELL OR PROCESS FURTHER

study objective 5

Give the decision rule for whether to sell or process materials further.

Many manufacturers have the option of selling products at a given point in the production cycle or continuing to process with the expectation of selling them at a higher price. For example, a bicycle manufacturer such as Schwinn could sell its 10-speed bicycles to retailers either unassembled or assembled. A furniture manufacturer such as Ethan Allen could sell its dining room sets to furniture stores either unfinished or finished. The sell-or-process-further decision should be made on the basis of incremental analysis. The basic decision rule is: **Process further as long as the incremental revenue from such processing exceeds the incremental processing costs.**

Assume, for example, that Woodmasters Inc. makes tables. The cost to manufacture an unfinished table is $35, computed as follows.

Illustration 23-7
Per unit cost of unfinished table

Direct material	$15
Direct labor	10
Variable manufacturing overhead	6
Fixed manufacturing overhead	4
Manufacturing cost per unit	**$35**

The selling price per unfinished unit is $50. Woodmasters currently has unused productive capacity that is expected to continue indefinitely. Management concludes that some of this capacity can be used to finish the tables and sell them at $60 per unit. For a finished table, direct materials will increase $2 and direct labor costs will increase $4. Variable manufacturing overhead costs will increase by $2.40 (60% of direct labor). No increase is anticipated in fixed manufacturing overhead. Illustration 23-8 shows the incremental analysis on a per unit basis.

Illustration 23-8
Incremental analysis—sell or process further

Incremental Analysis - Sell or process further.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D
1		Sell	Process Further	Net Income Increase (Decrease)
2	Sales per unit	$50.00	$60.00	$10.00
3	Cost per unit			
4	Direct materials	15.00	17.00	(2.00)
5	Direct labor	10.00	14.00	(4.00)
6	Variable manufacturing overhead	6.00	8.40	(2.40)
7	Fixed manufacturing overhead	4.00	4.00	0.00
8	Total	35.00	43.40	(8.40)
9	Net income per unit	$15.00	$16.60	$ 1.60
10				

Helpful Hint Current net income is known. Net income from processing further is an estimate. In making its decision, management could add a "risk" factor for the estimate.

It is advantageous for Woodmaster to process the tables further. The incremental revenue of $10.00 from the additional processing is $1.60 higher than the incremental processing costs of $8.40.

RETAIN OR REPLACE EQUIPMENT

study objective 6

Identify the factors to consider in retaining or replacing equipment.

Management often has to decide whether to continue using an asset or replace it. To illustrate, assume that Jeffcoat Company has a factory machine with a book value of $40,000 and a remaining useful life of four years. A new machine is available that costs $120,000. It is expected to have zero salvage value at the end of its four-year useful life. If Jeffcoat acquires the new machine, variable manufacturing costs are expected to decrease from $160,000 to $125,000 annually,

and the old unit will be scrapped. The incremental analysis for the four-year period is as follows.

Incremental Analysis - Retain or replace equipment.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1		Retain Equipment		Replace Equipment		Net Income Increase (Decrease)
2	Variable manufacturing costs	$640,000	a	$500,000	b	$140,000
3	New machine cost			120,000		(120,000)
4	Total	$640,000		$620,000		$ 20,000
5						
6	[a](4 years × $160,000)					
7	[b](4 years × $125,000)					
8						

Illustration 23-9
Incremental analysis—retain or replace equipment

In this case, it is advantageous to replace the equipment. The lower variable manufacturing costs related to the new equipment more than offset its purchase cost.

One other point about Jeffcoat's decision: **The book value of the old machine does not affect the decision.** Book value is a **sunk cost**, which is a cost that cannot be changed by any present or future decision. Sunk costs **are not relevant in incremental analysis**. In this example, if the company retains the asset, book value is depreciated over its remaining useful life. Or, if the company acquires the new unit, book value is recognized as a loss of the current period. Thus, the effect of book value on current and future earnings is the same regardless of the replacement decision. However, **any trade-in allowance or cash disposal value of the existing asset is relevant** to the decision, because the company will not realize this value if the old asset is continued in use.

ELIMINATE AN UNPROFITABLE SEGMENT

study objective 7
Explain the relevant factors in whether to eliminate an unprofitable segment.

Management sometimes must decide whether to eliminate an unprofitable business segment. For example, in recent years many airlines have quit servicing certain cities or have cut back on the number of flights; and Goodyear recently quit producing several brands in the low-end tire market. Again, the key is to **focus on the relevant costs—the data that change under the alternative courses of action**. To illustrate, assume that Martina Company manufactures tennis racquets in three models: Pro, Master, and Champ. Pro and Master are profitable lines. Champ (highlighted in color in the table) operates at a loss. Condensed income statement data for the three segments are:

	Pro	Master	Champ	Total
Sales	$800,000	$300,000	$100,000	$1,200,000
Variable expenses	520,000	210,000	90,000	820,000
Contribution margin	280,000	90,000	10,000	380,000
Fixed expenses	80,000	50,000	30,000	160,000
Net income	$200,000	$ 40,000	$ (20,000)	$ 220,000

Illustration 23-10
Segment income data

It might be expected that total net income will increase by $20,000 to $240,000 if Martina Company eliminates the unprofitable Champ line of racquets. However, **net income may decrease if that line is discontinued**. The reason is that the other products will have to absorb the fixed expenses allocated to the Champ racquets. To illustrate, assume that the $30,000 of fixed costs

Helpful Hint A decision to discontinue a segment based solely on the bottom line–net loss–is inappropriate.

applicable to the unprofitable segment are allocated ⅔ and ⅓ to the Pro and Master product lines, respectively. Fixed expenses will increase to $100,000 ($80,000 + $20,000) in the Pro line and to $60,000 ($50,000 + $10,000) in the Master line. Illustration 23-11 shows the revised income statements.

Illustration 23-11
Income data after eliminating unprofitable product line

	Pro	Master	Total
Sales	$800,000	$300,000	$1,100,000
Variable expenses	520,000	210,000	730,000
Contribution margin	280,000	90,000	370,000
Fixed expenses	100,000	60,000	160,000
Net Income	$180,000	$ 30,000	$ 210,000

Total net income has decreased $10,000 ($220,000 − $210,000). This result is also obtained in the following incremental analysis of the Champ racquets.

Illustration 23-12
Incremental analysis–eliminating an unprofitable segment

Incremental Analysis - Eliminating an unprofitable segment.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

	A	B	C	D
1		Continue	Eliminate	Net Income Increase (Decrease)
2	Sales	$100,000	$ 0	$(100,000)
3	Variable costs	90,000	0	90,000
4	Contribution margin	10,000	0	(10,000)
5	Fixed costs	30,000	30,000	0
6	Net income	$ (20,000)	$(30,000)	$ (10,000)
7				

The loss in net income is attributable to the contribution margin ($10,000) that the company will not realize if it discontinues the segment.

In deciding on the future status of an unprofitable segment, management should consider the effect of elimination on related product lines. It may be possible for continuing product lines to obtain some or all of the sales lost by the discontinued product line. In some businesses, services or products may be linked—for example, free checking accounts at a bank, or coffee at a donut shop. In addition, management should consider the effect of eliminating the product line on employees who may have to be discharged or retrained.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Which alternative should the company choose?	All relevant costs and opportunity costs	Compare relevant cost of each alternative.	Choose the alternative that maximizes net income.

before you go on...

UNPROFITABLE SEGMENTS

Do it! Lambert, Inc. manufactures several types of accessories. For the year, the knit hats and scarves line had sales of $400,000, variable expenses of $310,000, and fixed expenses of $120,000. Therefore, the knit hats and scarves line had a net loss of $30,000. If Lambert eliminates the knit hats and scarves line, $20,000 of fixed costs will remain. Prepare an analysis showing whether the company should eliminate knit hat and scarves line.

Solution

	Continue	Eliminate	Net Income Increase (Decrease)
Sales	$400,000	$ 0	$(400,000)
Variable costs	310,000	0	310,000
Contribution margin	90,000	0	(90,000)
Fixed costs	120,000	20,000	100,000
Net income	$ (30,000)	$(20,000)	$ 10,000

The analysis indicates that Lambert should eliminate the knit and scarves line because net income will increase $10,000.

Action Plan

- Identify the revenues that will change as a result of eliminating a product line.
- Identify all costs that will change as a result of eliminating a product line, and net the amount against the revenues.

the navigator

Related exercise material: **BE23-7,** **Do it!** **23-3, E23-8,** and **E23-9.**

ALLOCATE LIMITED RESOURCES

study objective 8

Determine which products to make and sell when resources are limited.

Companies, like individuals, face limited resources. For a retail department store, the limited resource may be floor space. For a manufacturing company, the limited resource may be raw materials, direct labor hours, or machine capacity. As discussed in Chapter 19, when a company has limited resources, management must decide which products to make and sell in order to maximize net income.

To illustrate, assume that Collins Company manufactures deluxe and standard pen and pencil sets. The limiting resource is machine capacity, which is 3,600 hours per month. Relevant data consist of the following.

	Deluxe Sets	Standard Sets
Contribution margin per unit	$8	$6
Machine hours required	0.4	0.2

Illustration 23-13 Contribution margin and machine hours

The deluxe sets may appear to be more profitable: They have a higher contribution margin ($8) than the standard sets ($6). However, the standard sets take fewer machine hours to produce than the deluxe sets. Therefore, Collins needs to find the **contribution margin per unit of limited resource**—in this case, contribution margin per machine hour. This is obtained by dividing the contribution margin per unit of each product by the number of units of the limited resource required for each product, as shown in Illustration 23-14.

Helpful Hint CM alone is not enough in this decision. The key factor is CM per unit of limited resource.

	Deluxe Sets	Standard Sets
Contribution margin per unit (a)	$8	$6
Machine hours required (b)	0.4	0.2
Contribution margin per unit of limited resource [(a) ÷ (b)]	**$20**	**$30**

Illustration 23-14 Contribution margin per unit of limited resource

The computation shows that the standard sets have a higher contribution margin per unit of limited resource. This suggests that, given sufficient demand for standard sets, the company should shift the sales mix to standard sets or should increase machine capacity. If Collins Company is able to increase machine capacity from 3,600 hours to 4,200 hours, the additional 600 hours could be used to produce either the standard or deluxe pen and pencil sets. The total contribution margin under each alternative is found by

multiplying the machine hours by the contribution margin per unit of limited resource, as shown below.

Illustration 23-15
Incremental analysis—computation of total contribution margin

	Produce Deluxe Sets	Produce Standard Sets
Machine hours (a)	600	600
Contribution margin per unit of limited resource (b)	$20	$30
Contribution margin [(a) × (b)]	**$12,000**	**$18,000**

From this analysis, we see that to maximize net income, Collins should use all of the increased capacity to make and sell the standard sets.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
How many units of product A and B should we produce in light of a limited resource?	Contribution margin per unit, limited resource required per unit	Contribution margin per unit of limited resource = Contribution margin per unit / Limited resource per unit	Any additional capacity of limited resource should be applied toward the product with higher contribution margin per unit of limited resource.

section two

Capital Budgeting

Individuals make capital expenditures when they buy a new home, car, or television set. Similarly, businesses make capital expenditures when they modernize plant facilities or expand operations. Companies like Campbell Soup must constantly determine how to invest their resources. Other examples: Hollywood studios recently built 25 new sound stage projects to allow for additional filming in future years. Also, Union Pacific Resources Group Inc. announced that it would cut its capital budget by 19% in order to use the funds to reduce its outstanding debt.

In business, as for individuals, the amount of possible capital expenditures usually exceeds the funds available for such expenditures. Thus, the resources available must be allocated (budgeted) among the competing alternatives. The process of making capital expenditure decisions in business is known as **capital budgeting**. Capital budgeting involves choosing among various capital projects to find the one(s) that will maximize a company's return on its financial investment.

Evaluation Process

Many companies follow a standard process in capital budgeting. At least once a year, top management requests proposals for projects from each department. A capital budgeting committee screens the proposals and submits its findings to the officers of the company. The officers, in turn, select the projects they believe to be most worthy of funding. They submit this list to the board of directors. Ultimately, the directors approve the capital expenditure budget for the year.

The involvement of top management and the board of directors in the process demonstrates the importance of capital budgeting decisions. These decisions often have a significant impact on a company's future profitability. In fact, poor capital budgeting decisions have led to the bankruptcy of some companies.

Accounting data are indispensable in assessing the probable effects of capital expenditures. To provide management with relevant data for capital budgeting decisions, you should be familiar with the quantitative techniques that may be used. The three most common techniques are: (1) annual rate of return, (2) cash payback, and (3) discounted cash flow. We demonstrate each of these techniques in the following sections. To illustrate the three quantitative techniques, assume that Tappan Company is considering an investment of $130,000 in new equipment. The new equipment is expected to last 10 years. It will have zero salvage value at the end of its useful life. Tappan uses the straight-line method of depreciation for accounting purposes. The expected annual revenues and costs of the new product that will be produced from the investment are:

Sales		$200,000
Less: Costs and expenses		
Manufacturing costs (exclusive of depreciation)	$145,000	
Depreciation expenses ($130,000 ÷ 10)	13,000	
Selling and administrative expenses	22,000	180,000
Income before income taxes		20,000
Income tax expense		7,000
Net income		$ 13,000

Illustration 23-16 Estimated annual net income from capital expenditure

Annual Rate of Return

The **annual rate of return technique** is based directly on accounting data. It indicates **the profitability of a capital expenditure** by dividing expected annual net income by the average investment. Illustration 23-17 shows the formula for computing annual rate of return.

study objective 9

Contrast annual rate of return and cash payback in capital budgeting.

Expected Annual Net Income ÷ Average Investment = Annual Rate of Return

Illustration 23-17 Annual rate of return formula

Expected annual net income is obtained from the projected income statement. Tappan Company's expected annual net income is $13,000. Average investment is derived from the following formula.

$$\text{Average investment} = \frac{\text{Original Investment} + \text{Value at End of Useful Life}}{2}$$

Illustration 23-18 Formula for computing average investment

The "value at the end of useful life" is the asset's salvage value, if any.

For Tappan Company, average investment is $65,000 (($130,000 + $0) ÷ 2). The expected annual rate of return for Tappan Company's investment in new equipment is therefore 20%, computed as follows:

$$\$13{,}000 \div \$65{,}000 = 20\%$$

Management then compares this annual rate of return with its required **minimum rate of return** for investments of similar risk. The minimum rate of return is generally based on the company's **cost of capital**. The **cost of capital** is the rate of return that management expects to pay on all borrowed and

Alternative Terminology The minimum rate of return is also called the *hurdle rate* or *cutoff rate.*

Helpful Hint A capital budgeting decision based on only one technique may be misleading. It is often wise to analyze the investment from a number of different perspectives.

equity funds. The cost of capital is a company-wide (or sometimes a division-wide) rate; it does not relate to the cost of funding a specific project.

The annual rate of return decision rule is: **A project is acceptable if its rate of return is greater than management's minimum rate of return. It is unacceptable when the reverse is true.** When companies use the rate of return technique in deciding among several acceptable projects, **the higher the rate of return for a given risk, the more attractive the investment**.

The principal advantages of this technique are simplicity of calculation and management's familiarity with the accounting terms used in the computation. A major limitation of the annual rate of return approach is that it does not consider the time value of money. For example, no consideration is given as to whether cash inflows will occur early or late in the life of the investment. As explained in Appendix D at the back of the book, recognition of the time value of money can make a significant difference between the future value and the present value of an investment.

Cash Payback

The **cash payback technique** identifies the time period required to recover the cost of the capital investment from the annual cash inflow produced by the investment. Illustration 23-19 presents the formula for computing the cash payback period.

Illustration 23-19 Cash payback formula

Cost of Capital Investment	÷	Net Annual Cash Flow	=	Cash Payback Period

Helpful Hint Net annual cash flow can also be approximated by net cash provided by operating activities from the statement of cash flows.

Net annual cash flow is approximated by taking net income and adding back depreciation expense. Depreciation expense is added back because depreciation on the capital expenditure does not involve an annual outflow of cash. Accordingly, the depreciation deducted in determining net income must be added back to determine net annual cash flows.

In the Tappan Company example, net annual cash flow is $26,000, as shown below.

Illustration 23-20 Computation of net annual cash flow

Net income	$ 13,000
Add: Depreciation expense	13,000
Net annual cash flow	**$26,000**

The cash payback period in this example is therefore five years, computed as follows.

$$\$130{,}000 \div \$26{,}000 = 5 \text{ years}$$

Evaluation of the payback period is often related to the expected useful life of the asset. For example, assume that at Tappan Company a project is unacceptable if the payback period is longer than 60% of the asset's expected useful life. The five-year payback period in this case is 50% of the project's expected useful life. Thus, the project is acceptable.

It follows that when companies use the payback method to decide among acceptable alternative projects, **the shorter the payback period, the more attractive the investment**. This is true for two reasons: First, the earlier the investment is recovered, the sooner the company can use the cash funds for other purposes. Second, the risk of loss from obsolescence and changed economic conditions is less in a shorter payback period.

The preceding computation of the cash payback period assumes **equal** cash flows in each year of the investment's life. In many cases, this assumption is

not valid. In the case of **uneven** cash flows, the company determines the cash payback period when the cumulative net cash flows from the investment equal the cost of the investment.

To illustrate, assume that Chen Company proposes an investment in a new website that is estimated to cost $300,000. Illustration 23-21 shows the proposed investment cost, net annual cash flows, cumulative net cash flows, and the cash payback period.

Illustration 23-21 Net annual cash flow schedule

Year	Investment	Net Annual Cash Flow	Cumulative Net Cash Flow
0	$300,000		
1		$ 60,000	$ 60,000
2		90,000	150,000
3		90,000	240,000
4		120,000	360,000
5		100,000	460,000
		Cash payback period = **3.5 years**	

As Illustration 23-21 shows, at the end of year 3, cumulative cash flow of $240,000 is less than the investment cost of $300,000. However, at the end of year 4 the cumulative net cash flow of $360,000 exceeds the investment cost. The net cash flow needed in year 4 to equal the investment cost is $60,000 ($300,000 − $240,000). Assuming the net cash flow occurs evenly during year 4, we then divide this amount by the annual net cash flow in year 4 ($120,000) to determine the point during the year when the cash payback occurs. Thus, we get 0.50 ($60,000/$120,000), or half of the year, and the cash payback period is 3.5 years.

The cash payback method may be useful as an initial screening tool. It may be the most critical factor in the capital budgeting decision for a company that desires a fast turnaround of its investment because of a weak cash position. Like the annual rate of return, cash payback is relatively easy to compute and understand.

However, cash payback is not ordinarily the only basis for the capital budgeting decision because it ignores the expected profitability of the project. To illustrate, assume that Projects X and Y have the same payback period, but Project X's useful life is double the useful life of Project Y's. Project X's earning power, therefore, is twice as long as Project Y's. A further—and major—disadvantage of this technique is that it ignores the time value of money.

before you go on...

Do it! Rochelle Company is considering purchasing new equipment for $250,000. The equipment has a 5-year useful life, and depreciation would be $50,000 (assuming straight-line depreciation and zero salvage value). The purchase of the equipment should increase net income by $25,000 each year for 5 years. (a) Compute the annual rate of return. (b) Compute the cash payback period.

CAPITAL BUDGETING

Action Plan

- Use appropriate formulas:
- Annual rate of return = Expected annual net income ÷ Average investment.
- Average investment = (Original investment + Value at end of useful life) ÷ 2.
- Cash payback period = Cost of capital investment ÷ Net annual cash flow.
- Net annual cash flow = Net income + Depreciation expense.

Solution

(a) Average investment = ($250,000 + 0) ÷ 2 = $125,000
Annual rate of return = $25,000 ÷ $125,000 = 20%
(b) Net annual cash flow = $25,000 + $50,000 = $75,000
Cash payback period = $250,000 ÷ $75,000 = 3.3 years

Related exercise material: **BE23-9, BE23-10, Do it! 23-4,** and **E23-11.**

the navigator

Management Insight

High Stakes for Large TVs

Building a new factory to produce 50-inch-plus TV screens can cost $4 billion at a time when prices for flat screens are tumbling. Now the makers of those giant liquid-crystal displays are wondering whether such investments are worth the gamble.

If LCD makers decide to hold off on building new factories, price declines for wide-screen TVs could slow in two or three years as production falls behind added consumer demand. Experts also say a slowdown in factory building could also bring welcome relief for the industry by reducing its volatile profit swings.

Since 2000, LCD makers have been on a nonstop construction binge, building new factories to produce the latest generation of screens arriving every 18 months or so. Now, with the eighth generation of screens, the cost to build new factories is higher than ever—running between $3 billion to $4 billion each. And, this generation of factories is optimized for screens measuring 50 inches or more diagonally, which so far is a much smaller potential market than that targeted by previous screen generations.

Source: Evan Ramstad, "The 50-Inch Screen Poses a Gamble," *Wall Street Journal* (June 8, 2006), p. B3.

? In building factories to manufacture 50-inch TV screens, how might companies build risk factors into their financial analyses? (See page 1228.)

Discounted Cash Flow

study objective 10

Distinguish between the net present value and internal rate of return methods.

The **discounted cash flow technique** is generally recognized as the best conceptual approach to making capital budgeting decisions. This technique considers both the estimated total net cash flows from the investment and the time value of money. The expected total net cash flow consists of the sum of the annual net cash flows plus the estimated liquidation proceeds when the asset is sold for salvage at the end of its useful life. But because liquidation proceeds are generally immaterial, we ignore them in subsequent discussions.

Two methods are used with the discounted cash flow technique: (1) net present value, and (2) internal rate of return. **Before we discuss the methods, we recommend that you examine Appendix D if you need a review of present value concepts.**

NET PRESENT VALUE METHOD

The **net present value (NPV) method** involves discounting net cash flows to their present value and then comparing that present value with the capital outlay required by the investment. The difference between these two amounts is referred to as **net present value (NPV)**. Company management determines what interest rate to use in discounting the future net cash flows. This rate, often referred to as the **discount rate** or **required rate of return**, is discussed in a later section.

Ethics Note Discounted future cash flows may not take into account all of the important considerations needed to make an informed capital budgeting decision. Other issues, for example, could include worker safety, product quality, and environmental impact.

The NVP decision rule is this: **A proposal is acceptable when net present value is zero or positive**. At either of those values, the rate of return on the investment equals or exceeds the required rate of return. When net present value is negative, the project is unacceptable. See Illustration 23-22 (next page).

When making a selection among acceptable proposals, **the higher the positive net present value, the more attractive the investment**. The next two sections demonstrate use of this method. In each case, we assume that the investment has no salvage value.

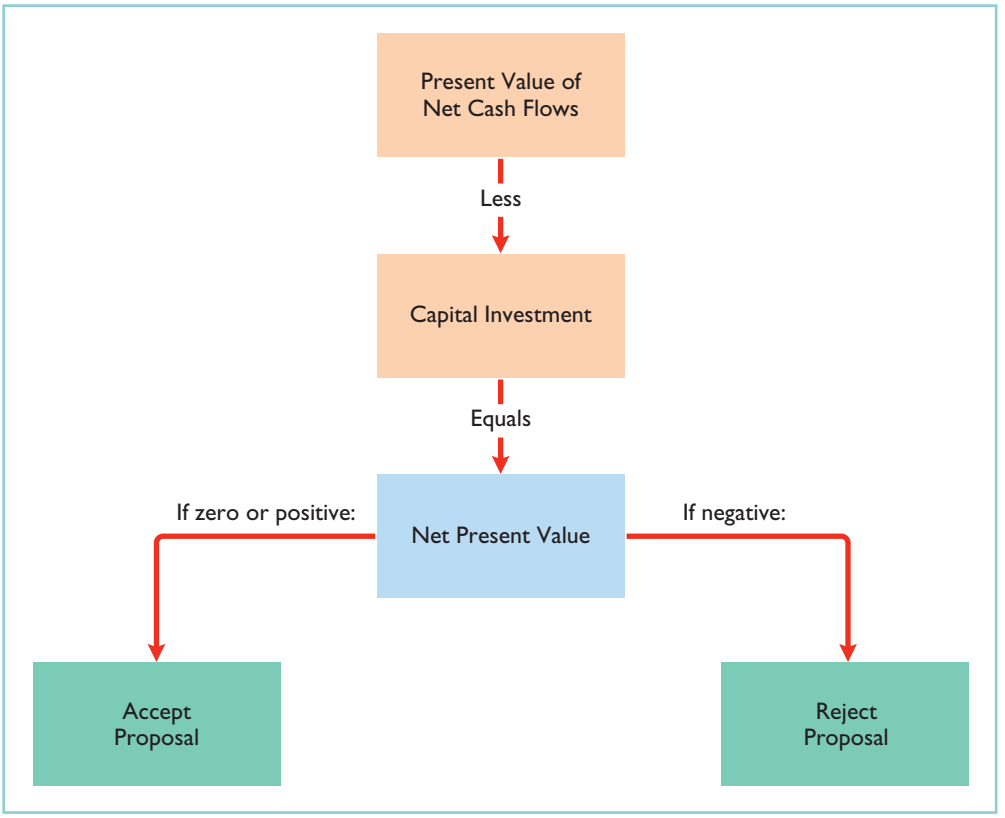


Illustration 23-22 Net present value decision criteria

Equal Net Annual Cash Flows

Tappan Company's net annual cash flows are $26,000. If we assume this amount **is uniform over the asset's useful life**, we can compute the present value of the net annual cash flows by using the present value of an annuity of 1 for 10 periods (in Table 4, Appendix D). The computations at rates of return of 12% and 15%, respectively, are:

	Present Values at Different Discount Rates	
	12%	15%
Discount factor for 10 periods	5.65022	5.01877
Present value of net annual cash flows:		
$26,000 × 5.65022	$146,906	
$26,000 × 5.01877		$130,488

Illustration 23-23 Present value of net annual cash flows

The analysis of the proposal by the net present value method is as follows.

	12%	15%
Present value of net annual cash flows	$146,906	$130,488
Capital investment	130,000	130,000
Positive (negative) net present value	**$ 16,906**	**$ 488**

Illustration 23-24 Computations of net present value

Helpful Hint The ABC Co. expects equal cash flows over an asset's 5-year useful life.

What discount factor should it use in determining present values if management wants (1) a 12% return or (2) a 15% return?
Answer: Using Table 4 in Appendix D, the factors are (1) 3.60478 and (2) 3.35216.

The proposed capital expenditure is acceptable at a required rate of return of both 12% and 15% because the net present values are positive.

Unequal Net Annual Cash Flows

When net annual cash flows are unequal, we cannot use annuity tables to calculate their present value. Instead, we use tables showing the **present value of a single future amount for each net annual cash flow**.

To illustrate, assume that Tappan Company management expects the same aggregate net annual cash flow ($260,000) over the life of the investment. But because of a declining market demand for the new product over the life of the equipment, the net annual cash flows are higher in the early years and lower in the later years. The present value of the net annual cash flows is calculated as follows using Table 3 in Appendix D.

Illustration 23-25
Computing present value of unequal annual cash flows

Year	Assumed Net Annual Cash Flows	Discount Factor 12%	Discount Factor 15%	Present Value 12%	Present Value 15%
	(1)	(2)	(3)	(1) × (2)	(1) × (3)
1	$ 36,000	.89286	.86957	$ 32,143	$ 31,305
2	32,000	.79719	.75614	25,510	24,196
3	29,000	.71178	.65752	20,642	19,068
4	27,000	.63552	.57175	17,159	15,437
5	26,000	.56743	.49718	14,753	12,927
6	24,000	.50663	.43233	12,159	10,376
7	23,000	.45235	.37594	10,404	8,647
8	22,000	.40388	.32690	8,885	7,192
9	21,000	.36061	.28426	7,573	5,969
10	20,000	.32197	.24719	6,439	4,944
	$260,000			$155,667	$140,061

Therefore, the analysis of the proposal by the net present value method is as follows.

Illustration 23-26
Analysis of proposal using net present value method

	12%	15%
Present value of net annual cash flows	$155,667	$140,061
Capital investment	130,000	130,000
Positive (negative) net present value	**$ 25,667**	**$ 10,061**

In this example, the present values of the net annual cash flows are greater than the $130,000 capital investment. Thus, the project is acceptable at both a 12% and 15% required rate of return. The difference between the present values using the 12% rate under equal cash flows ($146,906) and unequal net annual cash flows ($155,667) is due to the pattern of the net cash flows.

DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Should the company invest in a proposed project?	Cash flow estimates, discount rate	Net present value = Present value of net cash flows less capital investment	The investment is financially acceptable if net present value is positive.

INTERNAL RATE OF RETURN METHOD

The **internal rate of return method** differs from the net present value method in that it finds the **interest yield of the potential investment**. The **internal rate of return** (IRR) is the interest rate that will cause the present value of the proposed capital expenditure to equal the present value of the expected net annual cash flows. The determination of the internal rate of return involves two steps.

Step 1. Compute the internal rate of return factor. The formula for this factor is:

Capital Investment	÷	Net Annual Cash Flows	=	Internal Rate of Return Factor

Illustration 23-27 Formula for internal rate of return factor

The computation for the Tappan Company, assuming equal net annual cash flows,[2] is:

$$\$130{,}000 \div \$26{,}000 = 5.0$$

Step 2. Use the factor and the present value of an annuity of 1 table to find the internal rate of return. Table 4 of Appendix D is used in this step. The internal rate of return is the discount factor that is closest to the internal rate of return factor for the time period covered by the net annual cash flows.

For Tappan Company, the net annual cash flows are expected to continue for 10 years. Thus, it is necessary to read across the period-10 row in Table 4 to find the discount factor. The row for 10 periods is reproduced below for your convenience.

TABLE 4
PRESENT VALUE OF AN ANNUITY OF 1

(*n*) Periods	5%	6%	8%	9%	10%	11%	12%	15%
10	7.72173	7.36009	6.71008	6.41766	6.14457	5.88923	5.65022	**5.01877**

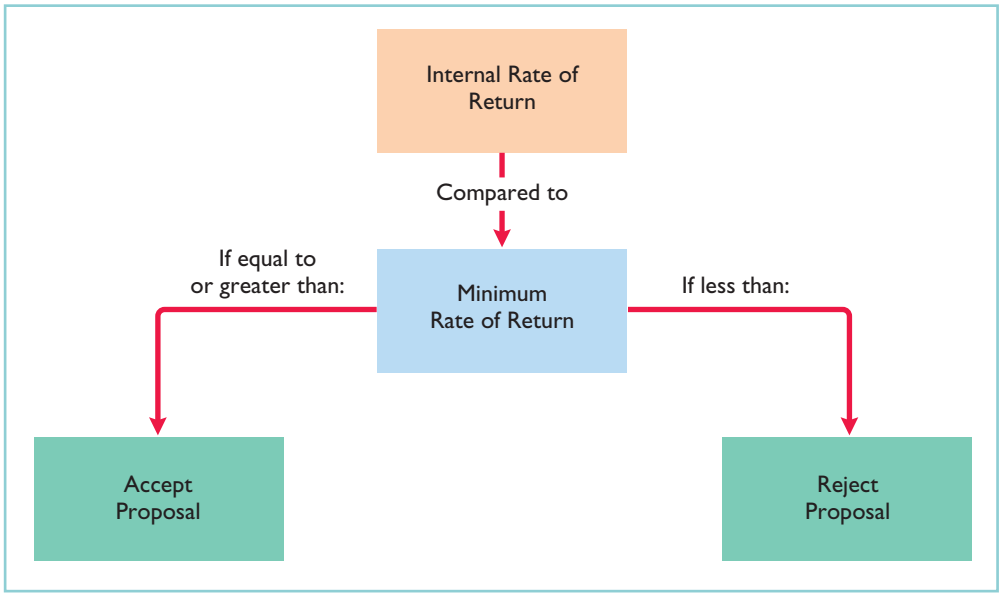
In this case, the closest discount factor to 5.0 is 5.01877, which represents an interest rate of approximately 15%. The rate of return can be further determined by interpolation, but since we are using estimated net annual cash flows, such precision is seldom required.

Once managers know the internal rate of return, they compare it to the company's required rate of return (the discount rate). The IRR decision rule is as follows: **Accept the project when the internal rate of return is equal to or greater than the required rate of return. Reject the project when the internal rate of return is less than the required rate of return.** Illustration 23-28 (page 1206) shows these relationships. Assuming the minimum required rate of return is 10% for Tappan Company, the project is acceptable because the 15% internal rate of return is greater than the required rate.

The IRR method is widely used in practice. Most managers find the internal rate of return easy to interpret.

[2]When net annual cash flows are equal, the internal rate of return factor is the same as the cash payback period.

Illustration 23-28
Internal rate of return decision criteria



DECISION TOOLKIT

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION			HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Should the company invest in a proposed project?	Estimated cash flows and the required rate of return (hurdle rate)	Internal rate of return	=	Interest rate that results in a net present value of zero	If the internal rate of return exceeds the required rate of return for the project, then the project is financially acceptable.

COMPARING DISCOUNTED CASH FLOW METHODS

Illustration 23-29 compares the two discounted cash flow methods—net present value and internal rate of return. When properly used, either method provides management with relevant quantitative data for making capital budgeting decisions.

Illustration 23-29
Comparison of discounted cash flow methods

Item	Net Present Value	Internal Rate of Return
1. Objective	Compute net present value (a dollar amount).	Compute internal rate of return (a percentage).
2. Decision rule	If net present value is zero or positive, accept the proposal. If net present value is negative, reject the proposal.	If internal rate of return is equal to or greater than the minimum required rate of return, accept the proposal. If internal rate of return is less than the minimum rate, reject the proposal.

before you go on...

DISCOUNTED CASH FLOW

Do it! Watertown Paper Corporation is considering adding another machine for the manufacture of corrugated cardboard. The machine would cost $900,000. It would have an estimated life of 6 years and no salvage value. The company estimates that annual cash inflows would increase by $400,000 and that annual cash outflows would increase by $190,000. Management has a required rate of return of 9%.

(a) Calculate the net present value on this project, and discuss whether it should be accepted.
(b) Calculate the internal rate of return on this project, and discuss whether it should be accepted.

Action Plan

- Compute net annual cash flow: Estimated annual cash inflows – Estimated annual cash outflows.
- Use the NPV technique to calculate the difference between net cash flows and the initial investment.
- Accept the project if the net present value is positive.
- Compute the IRR factor: Capital investment ÷ Net annual cash flows.
- Look up the factor in the present value of an annuity table to find the internal rate of return.
- Accept the project if the internal rate of return is equal to or greater than the required rate of return.

Solution

(a)

Estimated annual cash inflows	$400,000
Estimated annual cash outflows	190,000
Net annual cash flow	$210,000

	Cash Flow	9% Discount Factor	Present Value
Present value of net annual cash flows	$210,000	4.48592*	$942,043
Capital investment			900,000
Net present value			$ 42,043

*Table 4, Appendix D

Since the net present value is greater than zero, Watertown should accept the project.

(b) $900,000 ÷ 210,000 = 4.285714. Using Table 4 of Appendix D and the factors that correspond with the six-period row, 4.285714 is between the factors for 10% and 11%. Since the project has an internal rate that is greater than 10% and the required rate of return is only 9%, Watertown should accept the project.

Related exercise material: **BE23-11, BE23-12, BE23-13, Do it! 23-5, E23-12, E23-13, E23-14,** and **E23-15.**

the navigator

USING THE DECISION TOOLKIT

Suppose Hewlett-Packard Company must decide whether to make or buy some of its components from Solectron Corp. The cost of producing 50,000 electrical connectors for its printers is $110,000, broken down as follows.

Direct materials	$60,000	Variable overhead	$12,000
Direct labor	$30,000	Fixed overhead	$8,000

Instead of making the electrical connectors at an average cost per unit of $2.20 ($110,000 ÷ 50,000), the company has an opportunity to buy the connectors at $2.15 per unit for a total price of $107,500 ($2.15 × 50,000). If the connectors are purchased, all variable costs and one-half of the fixed costs will be eliminated.

Instructions

(a) Prepare an incremental analysis showing whether the company should make or buy the electrical connectors.
(b) Will your answer be different if the released productive capacity resulting from the purchase of the connectors will generate additional income of $25,000?

Solution

(a)

	Make	Buy	Net Income Increase (Decrease)
Direct materials	$ 60,000	$ –0–	$ 60,000
Direct labor	30,000	–0–	30,000
Variable manufacturing costs	12,000	–0–	12,000
Fixed manufacturing costs	8,000	4,000*	4,000
Purchase price	–0–	107,500	(107,500)
Total cost	$110,000	$111,500	$ (1,500)

*(8,000 × ½)

This analysis indicates that Hewlett-Packard will incur $1,500 of additional costs if it buys the electrical connectors. HP therefore would choose to make the connectors.

(b)

	Make	Buy	Net Income Increase (Decrease)
Total cost	$110,000	$111,500	$ (1,500)
Opportunity cost	25,000	–0–	25,000
Total cost	$135,000	$111,500	$23,500

Yes, the answer is different. The analysis shows that if additional capacity is released, net income will be increased by $23,500 if the electrical connectors are purchased. In this case, HP would choose to purchase the connectors.

the navigator

Summary of Study Objectives

1 **Identify the steps in management's decision-making process.** Management's decision-making process is: (a) identify the problem and assign responsibility, (b) determine and evaluate possible courses of action, (c) make the decision, and (d) review the results of the decision.

2 **Describe the concept of incremental analysis.** Incremental analysis identifies financial data that change under alternative courses of action. These data are relevant to the decision because they will vary in the future among the possible alternatives.

3 **Identify the relevant costs in accepting an order at a special price.** The relevant information in accepting an order at a special price is the difference between the variable costs to produce the special order and expected revenues.

4 **Identify the relevant costs in a make-or-buy decision.** In a make-or-buy decision, the relevant costs are (a) the manufacturing costs that will be saved, (b) the purchase price, and (c) opportunity costs.

5 **Give the decision rule for whether to sell or process materials further.** The decision rule for whether to sell or process materials further is: Process further as long as the incremental revenue from processing exceeds the incremental processing costs.

6 **Identify the factors to consider in retaining or replacing equipment.** The factors to consider in determining whether equipment should be retained or replaced are the effects on variable costs and the cost of the new equipment. Also, any trade-in allowance or cash disposal value of the existing asset must be considered.

7 **Explain the relevant factors in whether to eliminate an unprofitable segment.** In deciding whether to eliminate an unprofitable segment, determine the contribution margin, if any, produced by the segment and the disposition of the segment's fixed expenses.

8 **Determine which products to make and sell when resources are limited.** When a company has limited resources, find the contribution margin per unit of limited resource. Then multiply this amount by the units of limited resource to determine which product maximizes net income.

9 **Contrast annual rate of return and cash payback in capital budgeting.** The *annual rate of return* is obtained by dividing expected annual net income by the average investment. The higher the rate of return, the more attractive the investment. The *cash payback* technique identifies the time period to recover the cost of the investment. The formula is: Cost of capital expenditure divided by estimated net annual cash flow equals cash payback period. The shorter the payback period, the more attractive the investment.

10 **Distinguish between the net present value and internal rate of return methods.** Under the *net present value* method, compare the present value of future net cash flows with the capital investment to determine net present value. The NPV decision rule is: Accept the project if net present value is zero or positive. Reject the investment if net present value is negative.

Under the *internal rate of return* method, find the interest yield of the potential investment. The IRR decision rule is: Accept the project when the internal rate of return is equal to or greater than the required rate of return. Reject the project when the internal rate of return is less than the required rate.

the navigator

DECISION TOOLKIT A SUMMARY

DECISION CHECKPOINTS	INFO NEEDED FOR DECISION	TOOL TO USE FOR DECISION	HOW TO EVALUATE RESULTS
Which alternative should the company choose?	All relevant costs and opportunity costs	Compare relevant cost of each alternative.	Choose the alternative that maximizes net income.
How many units of product A and B should we produce in light of a limited resource?	Contribution margin per unit, limited resource required per unit	Contribution margin per unit of limited resource = Contribution margin per unit / Limited resource per unit	Any additional capacity of limited resource should be applied toward the product with higher contribution margin per unit of limited resource.
Should the company invest in a proposed project?	Cash flow estimates, discount rate	Net present value = Present value of future cash flows less capital investment	The investment is financially acceptable if net present value is positive.
Should the company invest in a proposed project?	Estimated cash flows and the required rate of return (hurdle rate)	Internal rate of return = Interest rate that results in a net present value of zero	If the internal rate of return exceeds the specified discount rate (hurdle rate) for the project, then the project is financially acceptable.

Glossary

Annual rate of return technique *(p. 1199)* Determines the profitability of a capital expenditure by dividing expected annual net income by the average investment.

Capital budgeting *(p. 1198)* The process of making capital expenditure decisions in business.

Cash payback technique *(p. 1200)* Identifies the time period required to recover the cost of a capital investment from the net annual cash flow produced by the investment.

Cost of capital *(p. 1199)* The rate of return that management expects to pay on all borrowed and equity funds.

Discounted cash flow technique *(p. 1202)* Considers both the estimated total net cash flows from the investment and the time value of money.

Incremental analysis *(p. 1189)* The process of identifying the financial data that change under alternative courses of action.

Internal rate of return (IRR) *(p. 1205)* The rate that will cause the present value of the proposed capital expenditure to equal the present value of the expected net annual cash flows.

Internal rate of return method *(p. 1205)* Finds the interest yield of the potential investment.

Net present value (NPV) *(p. 1202)* The difference that results when the original capital outlay is subtracted from the discounted net cash flows.

Net present value method *(p. 1202)* Discounts net cash flows to their present value and then compares that present value to the capital outlay required by the investment.

Opportunity cost *(p. 1192)* The potential benefit that may be obtained from following an alternative course of action.

Sunk cost *(p. 1195)* A cost that cannot be changed by any present or future decision.

Comprehensive Do it!

Sierra Company is considering a long-term capital investment project called ZIP. The project will require an investment of $120,000, and it will have a useful life of 4 years. Annual net income for ZIP is expected to be: Year 1 $12,000; Year 2 $10,000; Year 3 $8,000; and Year 4 $6,000. Depreciation is computed by the straight-line method with no salvage value. The company's cost of capital is 12%.

Action Plan

- To compute annual rate of return, divide expected annual net income by average investment.
- To compute cash payback, divide cost of the investment by net annual cash flows.
- Recall that net annual cash flow equals annual net income plus annual depreciation expense.
- Be careful to use the correct discount factor in using the net present value method.

Instructions

(Round all computations to two decimal places.)

(a) Compute the annual rate of return for the project.
(b) Compute the cash payback period for the project. (Round to two decimals.)
(c) Compute the net present value for the project. (Round to nearest dollar.)
(d) Should the project be accepted? Why?

Solution to Comprehensive Do it!

(a) $9,000 (($12,000 + $10,000 + $8,000 + $6,000) ÷ 4) ÷ ($120,000 ÷ 2) = 15%

(b) Depreciation expense is $120,000 ÷ 4 years = $30,000.
Net annual cash flows are:

Year 1	$12,000 + $30,000 = $42,000
Year 2	$10,000 + $30,000 = $40,000
Year 3	$8,000 + $30,000 = $38,000
Year 4	$6,000 + $30,000 = $36,000

Cumulative net cash flows would be $82,000 ($42,000 + $40,000) at the end of year 2 and $120,000 ($42,000 + $40,000 + $38,000) at the end of year 3. Since the cumulative net cash flows at the end of year 3 exactly equal the initial cash investment of $120,000, the cash payback period is 3 years.

(c)

Year	Discount Factor	Net Annual Cash Flow	Present Value
1	.89286	$42,000	$37,500
2	.79719	40,000	31,888
3	.71178	38,000	27,048
4	.63552	36,000	22,879
			119,315
		Capital investment	120,000
		Negative net present value	$ (685)

(d) The annual rate of return of 15% is good. However, the cash payback period is 75% of the project's useful life, and net present value is negative. The recommendation is to reject the project.

the navigator

WILEY PLUS
Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Self-Test Questions

Answers are on page 1228.

(SO 1) **1.** Three of the steps in management's decision-making process are: (1) Review results of decision. (2) Identify the problem. (3) Make the decision. The steps are performed in the following order.
(a) (1), (2), (3). (c) (2), (1), (3).
(b) (3), (2), (1). (d) (2), (3), (1).

(SO 2) **2.** Incremental analysis is the process of identifying the financial data that:
(a) do not change under alternative courses of action.
(b) change under alternative courses of action.
(c) are mixed under alternative courses of action.
(d) No correct answer is given.

(SO 3) **3.** It costs a company $14 of variable costs and $6 of fixed costs to produce product A that sells for $30. A foreign buyer offers to purchase 3,000 units at $18 each. If the special offer is accepted and produced with unused capacity, net income will:
(a) decrease $6,000. (c) increase $12,000.
(b) increase $6,000. (d) increase $9,000.

(SO 3) **4.** Jobart Company is currently operating at full capacity. It is considering buying a part from an outside supplier rather than making it in-house. If Jobart purchases the part, it can use the released productive capacity to generate additional income of $30,000 from producing a different product. When conducting incremental analysis in this make-or-buy decision, the company should:
(a) ignore the $30,000.
(b) add $30,000 to other costs in the "Make" column.
(c) add $30,000 to other costs in the "Buy" column.
(d) subtract $30,000 from the other costs in the "Make" column.

(SO 4) **5.** In a make-or-buy decision, relevant costs are:
(a) manufacturing costs that will be saved.
(b) the purchase price of the units.
(c) opportunity costs.
(d) All of the above.

(SO 5) **6.** The decision rule in a sell-or-process-further decision is: Process further as long as the incremental revenue from processing exceeds:
(a) incremental processing costs.
(b) variable processing costs.
(c) fixed processing costs.
(d) No correct answer is given.

(SO 5) **7.** Walton, Inc. makes an unassembled product that it currently sells for $55. Production costs are $20. Walton is considering assembling the product and selling it for $68. The cost to assemble the product is estimated at $12. What decision should Walton make?
(a) Sell before assembly; net income per unit will be $12 greater.
(b) Sell before assembly; net income per unit will be $1 greater.
(c) Process further; net income per unit will be $13 greater.
(d) Process further; net income per unit will be $1 greater.

(SO 6) **8.** In a decision to retain or replace equipment, the book value of the old equipment is a(n):
(a) opportunity cost. (c) incremental cost.
(b) sunk cost. (d) marginal cost.

(SO 7) **9.** If an unprofitable segment is eliminated:
(a) net income will always increase.
(b) variable expenses of the eliminated segment will have to be absorbed by other segments.
(c) fixed expenses allocated to the eliminated segment will have to be absorbed by other segments.
(d) net income will always decrease.

(SO 7) **10.** A segment of Hazard Inc. has the following data.

Sales	$200,000
Variable costs	$140,000
Fixed costs	$100,000

If this segment is eliminated, 50% of the fixed costs will be eliminated, and the rest will be allocated to the remaining segments. What should Hazard do?
(a) Eliminate the segment; net income will be $50,000 greater.
(b) Eliminate the segment; net income will be $10,000 greater.
(c) Keep the segment; net income will be $200,000 greater.
(d) Keep the segment; net income will be $10,000 greater.

11. If the contribution margin per unit is $15 and it takes 3.0 machine hours to produce the unit, the contribution margin per unit of limited resource is: (SO 8)
(a) $25. (c) $45.
(b) $5. (d) No correct answer is given.

12. Which of the following is *incorrect* about the annual rate of return technique? (SO 9)
(a) The calculation is simple.
(b) The accounting terms used are familiar to management.
(c) The timing of the net cash flows is not considered.
(d) The time value of money is considered.

13. What is a weakness of the cash payback approach? (SO 9)
(a) It uses accrual-based accounting numbers.
(b) It ignores the time value of money.
(c) It is complicated to compute.
(d) It cannot be used if a project has uneven net annual cash flows.

14. A project should be accepted if its internal rate of return exceeds: (SO 10)
(a) zero.
(b) the rate of return on a government bond.
(c) the company's required rate of return.
(d) the rate the company pays on borrowed funds.

15. A positive net present value means that the: (SO 10)
(a) project's rate of return is less than the cutoff rate.
(b) project's rate of return exceeds the required rate of return.
(c) project's rate of return equals the required rate of return.
(d) project is unacceptable.

Go to the book's companion website, **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, for additional Self-Test Questions.

the navigator

Questions

1. What steps are frequently involved in management's decision-making process?

2. Your roommate, Tom Jones, contends that accounting contributes to most of the steps in management's decision-making process. Is your roommate correct? Explain.

3. "Incremental analysis involves the accumulation of information concerning a single course of action." Do you agree? Why?

4. Mike Greer asks your help concerning the relevance of variable and fixed costs in incremental analysis. Help Mike with his problem.

5. What data are relevant in deciding whether to accept an order at a special price?

6. Finney Company has an opportunity to buy parts at $7 each that currently cost $10 to make. What manufacturing costs are relevant to this make-or-buy decision?

7. Define the term "opportunity cost." How may this cost be relevant in a make-or-buy decision?
8. What is the decision rule in deciding whether to sell a product or process it further?
9. Your roommate, Janet Nelson, is confused about sunk costs. Explain to your roommate the meaning of sunk costs and their relevance to a decision to retain or replace equipment.
10. Marcus Inc. has one product line that is unprofitable. What circumstances may cause overall company net income to be lower if the unprofitable product line is eliminated?
11. How is the contribution margin per unit of limited resources computed?
12. Describe the process a company may use in screening and approving the capital expenditure budget.
13. Your classmate, Susan Menke, is confused about the factors that are included in the annual rate of return technique. What is the formula for this technique?
14. Mario Diaz is trying to understand the term "cost of capital." Define the term, and indicate its relevance to the decision rule under the annual rate of return technique.
15. Jack Nieman claims the formula for the cash payback technique is the same as the formula for the annual rate of return technique. Is Jack correct? What is the formula for the cash payback technique?
16. What are the advantages and disadvantages of the cash payback technique?
17. Two types of present value tables may be used with the discounted cash flow technique. Identify the tables and the circumstance(s) when each table should be used.
18. What is the decision rule under the net present value method?
19. Identify the steps required in using the internal rate of return method.
20. Michener Company uses the internal rate of return method. What is the decision rule for this method?

Brief Exercises

Identify the steps in management's decision-making process.
(SO 1), K

BE23-1 The steps in management's decision-making process are listed in random order below. Indicate the order in which the steps should be executed.

__Make a decision.
__Identify the problem and assign responsibility.
__Review results of the decision.
__Determine and evaluate possible courses of action.

Determine incremental changes.
(SO, 2), AN

BE23-2 Timo Company is considering two alternatives. Alternative A will have sales of $150,000 and costs of $100,000. Alternative B will have sales of $180,000 and costs of $120,000. Compare Alternative A to Alternative B showing incremental revenues, costs, and net income.

Determine whether to accept a special order.
(SO 3), AN

BE23-3 In Harley Company it costs $30 per unit ($20 variable and $10 fixed) to make a product that normally sells for $45. A foreign wholesaler offers to buy 4,000 units at $23 each. Harley will incur special shipping costs of $1 per unit. Assuming that Harley has excess operating capacity, indicate the net income (loss) Harley would realize by accepting the special order.

Determine whether to make or buy a part.
(SO 4), AN

BE23-4 Vintech Manufacturing incurs unit costs of $8 ($5 variable and $3 fixed) in making a subassembly part for its finished product. A supplier offers to make 10,000 of the part at $5.30 per unit. If the offer is accepted, Vintech will save all variable costs but no fixed costs. Prepare an analysis showing the total cost saving, if any, Vintech will realize by buying the part.

Determine whether to sell or process further.
(SO 5), AN

BE23-5 Martell Inc. makes unfinished bookcases that it sells for $60. Production costs are $30 variable and $10 fixed. Because it has unused capacity, Martell is considering finishing the bookcases and selling them for $72. Variable finishing costs are expected to be $8 per unit with no increase in fixed costs. Prepare an analysis on a per unit basis showing whether Martell should sell unfinished or finished bookcases.

Determine whether to retain or replace equipment.
(SO 6), AN

BE23-6 Ridley Company has a factory machine with a book value of $90,000 and a remaining useful life of 4 years. A new machine is available at a cost of $200,000. This machine will have a 4-year useful life with no salvage value. The new machine will lower annual variable manufacturing costs from $600,000 to $440,000. Prepare an analysis showing whether the old machine should be retained or replaced.

BE23-7 Rivto, Inc. manufactures golf clubs in three models. For the year, the Eagle line has a net loss of $20,000 from sales $200,000, variable expenses $180,000, and fixed expenses $40,000. If the Eagle line is eliminated, $34,000 of fixed costs will remain. Prepare an analysis showing whether the Eagle line should be eliminated.

Determine whether to eliminate an unprofitable segment. (SO 7), **AN**

BE23-8 In Morgan Company, data concerning two products are: Contribution margin per unit—Product A $11, Product B $12; machine hours required for one unit—Product A 2, Product B 2.5. Compute the contribution margin per unit of limited resource for each product.

Show allocation of limited resources. (SO 8), **AP**

BE23-9 Foley Company is considering purchasing new equipment for $300,000. It is expected that the equipment will produce annual net income of $10,000 over its 10-year useful life. Annual depreciation will be $30,000. Compute the cash payback period.

Compute the cash payback period for a capital investment. (SO 9), **AP**

BE23-10 Quayle Oil Company is considering investing in a new oil well. It is expected that the oil well will increase annual revenues by $130,000 and will increase annual expenses by $80,000 including depreciation. The oil well will cost $490,000 and will have a $10,000 salvage value at the end of its 10-year useful life. Calculate the annual rate of return.

Compute annual rate of return. (SO 9), **AP**

BE23-11 Dobbs Company is considering two different, mutually exclusive capital expenditure proposals. Project A will cost $395,000, has an expected useful life of 10 years, a salvage value of zero, and is expected to increase net annual cash flows by $70,000. Project B will cost $270,000, has an expected useful life of 10 years, a salvage value of zero, and is expected to increase net annual cash flows by $50,000. A discount rate of 9% is appropriate for both projects. Compute the net present value of each project. Which project should be accepted?

Compute net present value. (SO 10), **AN**

BE23-12 Daley Company is evaluating the purchase of a rebuilt spot-welding machine to be used in the manufacture of a new product. The machine will cost $170,000, has an estimated useful life of 7 years, a salvage value of zero, and will increase net annual cash flows by $33,740. What is its approximate internal rate of return?

Calculate internal rate of return. (SO 10), **AP**

BE23-13 Gamma Company accumulates the following data concerning a proposed capital investment: cash cost $225,000, net annual cash flow $34,000, present value factor of cash inflows for 10 years 6.71 (rounded). Determine the net present value, and indicate whether the investment should be made.

Compute net present value of an investment. (SO 10), **AN**

Do it! Review

Do it! 23-1 Mann Company incurs a cost of $35 per unit, of which $20 is variable, to make a product that normally sells for $58. A foreign wholesaler offers to buy 6,000 units at $31 each. Mann will incur additional costs of $2 per unit to imprint a logo and to pay for shipping. Compute the increase or decrease in net income Mann will realize by accepting the special order, assuming Mann has sufficient excess operating capacity. Should Mann Company accept the special order?

Evaluate special order. (SO 3), **AN**

Do it! 23-2 Kendry Company must decide whether to make or buy some of its components. The costs of producing 60,000 switches for its generators are as follows.

Evaluate make-or-buy opportunity. (SO 4), **AN**

Direct materials	$30,000	Variable overhead	$45,000
Direct labor	$42,000	Fixed overhead	$60,000

Instead of making the switches at an average cost of $2.95 ($177,000 ÷ 60,000), the company has an opportunity to buy the switches at $2.75 per unit. If the company purchases the switches, all the variable costs and one-third of the fixed costs will be eliminated.

(a) Prepare an incremental analysis showing whether the company should make or buy the switches. (b) Would your answer be different if the released productive capacity will generate additional income of $30,000?

Do it! 23-3 Shaw Corporation manufactures several types of accessories. For the year, the gloves and mittens line had sales of $500,000, variable expenses of $375,000, and fixed expenses of $150,000. Therefore, the gloves and mittens line had a net loss of $25,000. If Shaw eliminates the line, $40,000 of fixed costs will remain.

Analyze whether to eliminate unprofitable segment. (SO 7), **AN**

Prepare an analysis showing whether the company should eliminate the gloves and mittens line.

Compute capital budgeting measures.
(SO 9), **AP**

Do it! 23-4 Bonita Company is considering purchasing new equipment for $350,000. The equipment has a 5-year useful life, and depreciation would be $70,000 (assuming straight-line depreciation and zero salvage value). The purchase of the equipment should increase net income by $40,000 each year for 5 years. (a) Compute the annual rate of return. (b) Compute the cash payback period.

Compute discounted cash flow measures.
(SO 10), **AN**

Do it! 23-5 Benjamin Box Corporation is considering adding another machine for the manufacture of corrugated cardboard. The machine would cost $700,000. It would have an estimated life of 6 years and no salvage value. The company estimates that annual cash inflows would increase by $300,000 and that annual cash outflows would increase by $140,000. Management has a required rate of return of 9%.

(a) Calculate the net present value on this project, and discuss whether it should be accepted. (b) Calculate the internal rate of return on this project, and discuss whether it should be accepted.

Exercises

Analyze statements about decision making and incremental analysis.
(SO 1, 2), **C**

E23-1 Sieber has prepared the following list of statements about decision making and incremental analysis.

1. The first step in management's decision-making process is, "Determine and evaluate possible courses of action."
2. The final step in management's decision-making process is to actually make the decision.
3. Accounting's contribution to management's decision-making process occurs primarily in evaluating possible courses of action and in reviewing the results.
4. In making business decisions, management ordinarily considers only financial information because it is objectively determined.
5. Decisions involve a choice among alternative courses of action.
6. The process used to identify the financial data that change under alternative courses of action is called incremental analysis.
7. Costs that are the same under all alternative courses of action sometimes affect the decision.
8. When using incremental analysis, some costs will always change under alternative courses of action, but revenues will not.
9. Variable costs will change under alternative courses of action, but fixed costs will not.

Instructions
Identify each statement as true or false. If false, indicate how to correct the statement.

Make incremental analysis for special order.
(SO 3), **E**

E23-2 Reid Company manufactures toasters. For the first 8 months of 2012, the company reported the following operating results while operating at 75% of plant capacity.

Sales (400,000 units)	$4,000,000
Cost of goods sold	2,400,000
Gross profit	1,600,000
Operating expenses	900,000
Net income	$ 700,000

Cost of goods sold was 70% variable and 30% fixed. Operating expenses were 60% variable and 40% fixed.

In September, Reid Company receives a special order for 40,000 toasters at $6.00 each from Salono Company of Mexico City. Acceptance of the order would result in $8,000 of shipping costs but no increase in fixed operating expenses.

Instructions
(a) Prepare an incremental analysis for the special order.
(b) Should Reid Company accept the special order? Why or why not?

E23-3 Peters Company produces golf discs which it normally sells to retailers for $7 each. The cost of manufacturing 20,000 golf discs is:

Make incremental analysis for special-order decision.
(SO 3), **E**

Materials	$ 10,000
Labor	30,000
Variable overhead	20,000
Fixed overhead	40,000
Total	$100,000

Peters also incurs 5% sales commission ($0.35) on each disc sold.

Wade Corporation offers Peters $4.75 per disc for 5,000 discs. Wade would sell the discs under its own brand name in foreign markets not yet served by Peters. If Peters accepts the offer, its fixed overhead will increase from $50,000 to $55,000 due to the purchase of a new imprinting machine. No sales commission will result from the special order.

Instructions
(a) Prepare an incremental analysis for the special order.
(b) Should Peters accept the special order? Why or why not?
(c) What assumptions underlie the decision made in part (b)?

E23-4 Winters Inc. has been manufacturing its own shades for its table lamps. The company is currently operating at 100% of capacity. Variable manufacturing overhead is charged to production at the rate of 50% of direct labor cost. The direct materials and direct labor cost per unit to make the lamp shades are $4.00 and $6.00, respectively. Normal production is 40,000 table lamps per year.

Make incremental analysis for make-or-buy decision.
(SO 4), **S**

A supplier offers to make the lamp shades at a price of $13.50 per unit. If Winters Inc. accepts the supplier's offer, all variable manufacturing costs will be eliminated, but the $40,000 of fixed manufacturing overhead currently being charged to the lamp shades will have to be absorbed by other products.

Instructions
(a) Prepare the incremental analysis for the decision to make or buy the lamp shades.
(b) Should Winters Inc. buy the lamp shades?
(c) Would your answer be different in (b) if the productive capacity released by not making the lamp shades could be used to produce income of $35,000?

E23-5 Angie Donohue recently opened her own basketweaving studio. She sells finished baskets in addition to the raw materials needed by customers to weave baskets of their own. Angie has put together a variety of raw material kits, each including materials at various stages of completion. Unfortunately, owing to space limitations, Angie is unable to carry all varieties of kits originally assembled and must choose between two basic packages.

Make incremental analysis for further processing of materials.
(SO 5), **E**

The basic introductory kit includes undyed, uncut reeds (with dye included) for weaving one basket. This basic package costs Angie $12 and sells for $27. The second kit, called Stage 2, includes cut reeds that have already been dyed. With this kit the customer need only soak the reeds and weave the basket. Angie is able to produce the second kit by using the basic materials included in the first kit and adding one hour of her own time (to produce two kits), which she values at $18 per hour. Because she is more efficient at cutting and dying reeds than her average customer, Angie is able to make two kits of the dyed reeds, in one hour, from one kit of undyed reeds. The kit of dyed and cut reeds sells for $33.

Instructions
Determine whether Angie's basketweaving shop should carry the basic introductory kit with undyed and uncut reeds, or the Stage 2 kit with reeds already dyed and cut. Prepare an incremental analysis to support your answer.

E23-6 Bryant Bikes could sell its bicycles to retailers either assembled or unassembled. The cost of an unassembled bike is as follows.

Make incremental analysis for sell-or-process-further decision.
(SO 5), **E**

Direct materials	$150
Direct labor	70
Variable overhead (70% of direct labor)	49
Fixed overhead (30% of direct labor)	21
Manufacturing cost per unit	$290

The unassembled bikes are sold to retailers at $400 each.

Bryant currently has unused productive capacity that is expected to continue indefinitely; management has concluded that some of this capacity can be used to assemble the bikes and sell them at $450 each. Assembling the bikes will increase direct materials by $5 per bike, and direct labor by $20 per bike. Additional variable overhead will be incurred at the normal rates, but there will be no additional fixed overhead as a result of assembling the bikes.

Instructions

(a) Prepare an incremental analysis for the sell-or-process-further decision.
(b) Should Bryant sell or process further? Why or why not?

Make incremental analysis for retaining or replacing equipment.
(SO 6), E

E23-7 Brown Enterprises uses a word processing computer to handle its sales invoices. Lately, business has been so good that it takes an extra 3 hours per night, plus every third Saturday, to keep up with the volume of sales invoices. Management is considering updating its computer with a faster model that would eliminate all of the overtime processing.

	Current Machine	New Machine
Original purchase cost	$15,000	$21,000
Accumulated depreciation	6,000	—
Estimated operating costs	24,000	20,000
Useful life	5 years	5 years

If sold now, the current machine would have a salvage value of $5,000. If operated for the remainder of its useful life, the current machine would have zero salvage value. The new machine is expected to have zero salvage value after 5 years.

Instructions

Should the current machine be replaced? (Ignore the time value of money.)

Make incremental analysis for elimination of division.
(SO 7), E

E23-8 Sara Casper, a recent graduate of Rolling's accounting program, evaluated the operating performance of Klumpe Company's six divisions. Sara made the following presentation to the Klumpe board of directors and suggested the Western Division be eliminated. "If the Western Division is eliminated," she said, "our total profits would increase by $16,870."

	The Other Five Divisions	Western Division	Total
Sales	$1,664,200	$ 98,200	$1,762,400
Cost of goods sold	978,520	76,470	1,054,990
Gross profit	685,680	21,730	707,410
Operating expenses	527,940	38,600	566,540
Net income	$ 157,740	$(16,870)	$ 140,870

In the Western Division, cost of goods sold is $56,000 variable and $20,470 fixed, and operating expenses are $12,000 variable and $26,600 fixed. None of the Western Division's fixed costs will be eliminated if the division is discontinued.

Instructions

Is Sara right about eliminating the Western Division? Prepare a schedule to support your answer.

Make incremental analysis for elimination of a product line.
(SO 7), E

E23-9 Newton Company makes three models of phasers. Information on the three products is given below.

	Stunner	Double-Set	Mega-Power
Sales	$300,000	$500,000	$200,000
Variable expenses	150,000	200,000	140,000
Contribution margin	150,000	300,000	60,000
Fixed expenses	120,000	225,000	90,000
Net income	$ 30,000	$75,000	$ (30,000)

Fixed expenses consist of $300,000 of common costs allocated to the three products based on relative sales, and additional fixed expenses of $30,000 (Stunner), $75,000 (Double-Set), and $30,000 (Mega-Power). The common costs will be incurred regardless of how many models are produced. The other fixed expenses would be eliminated if a model is phased out.

Tim Hunt, an executive with the company, feels the Mega-Power line should be discontinued to increase the company's net income.

Instructions

(a) Compute current net income for Newton Company.
(b) Compute net income by product line and in total for Newton Company if the company discontinues the Mega-Power product line. (*Hint:* Allocate the $300,000 common costs to the two remaining product lines based on their relative sales.)
(c) Should Newton eliminate the Mega-Power product line? Why or why not?

E23-10 Murphy Company manufactures and sells three products. Relevant per unit data concerning each product are given below.

Compute contribution margin and determine the product to be manufactured. (SO 8), **E**

	Product		
	A	**B**	**C**
Selling price	$11	$12	$15
Variable costs and expenses	$ 4	$ 8	$ 9
Machine hours to produce	2	1	2

Instructions

(a) Compute the contribution margin per unit of the limited resource (machine hour) for each product.
(b) Assuming 3,000 additional machine hours are available, which product should be manufactured?
(c) Prepare an analysis showing the total contribution margin if the additional hours are (1) divided equally among the products, and (2) allocated entirely to the product identified in (b) above.

E23-11 Alameda Service Center just purchased an automobile hoist for $15,000. The hoist has a 5-year life and an estimated salvage value of $1,080. Installation costs were $2,900, and freight charges were $820. Alameda uses straight-line depreciation.

Compute cash payback period and annual rate of return. (SO 9), **AP**

The new hoist will be used to replace mufflers and tires on automobiles. Alameda estimates that the new hoist will enable his mechanics to replace four extra mufflers per week. Each muffler sells for $65 installed. The cost of a muffler is $35, and the labor cost to install a muffler is $10.

Instructions

(a) Compute the payback period for the new hoist.
(b) Compute the annual rate of return for the new hoist. (Round to one decimal.)

E23-12 Buford Manufacturing Company is considering three new projects, each requiring an equipment investment of $22,000. Each project will last for 3 years and produce the following cash inflows.

Compute cash payback period and net present value. (SO 9, 10), **E**

Year	AA	BB	CC
1	$ 7,000	$ 9,500	$13,000
2	9,000	9,500	10,000
3	15,000	9,500	9,000
Total	$31,000	$28,500	$32,000

The equipment's salvage value is zero. Buford uses straight-line depreciation. Buford will not accept any project with a payback period over 2 years. Buford's minimum required rate of return is 12%.

Instructions

(a) Compute each project's payback period, indicating the most desirable project and the least desirable project using this method. (Round to two decimals.)
(b) Compute the net present value of each project. Does your evaluation change? (Round to nearest dollar.)

Compute annual rate of return, cash payback period, and net present value.
(SO 9, 10), AP

E23-13 Stromski Company is considering a capital investment of $150,000 in additional productive facilities. The new machinery is expected to have a useful life of 5 years with no salvage value. Depreciation is by the straight-line method. During the life of the investment, annual net income and cash inflows are expected to be $18,000 and $48,000, respectively. Stromski has a 12% cost of capital rate, which is the minimum acceptable rate of return on the investment.

Instructions
(Round to two decimals.)

(a) Compute (1) the annual rate of return and (2) the cash payback period on the proposed capital expenditure.
(b) Using the discounted cash flow technique, compute the net present value.

Determine internal rate of return.
(SO 10), E

E23-14 House Company is considering three capital expenditure projects. Relevant data for the projects are as follows.

Project	Investment	Annual Income	Life of Project
22A	$240,000	$13,300	6 years
23A	270,000	21,000	9 years
24A	288,000	20,000	8 years

Annual income is constant over the life of the project. Each project is expected to have zero salvage value at the end of the project. House Company uses the straight-line method of depreciation.

Instructions
(a) Determine the internal rate of return for each project. Round the internal rate of return factor to three decimals.
(b) If House Company's minimum required rate of return is 11%, which projects are acceptable?

Compute net present value and recommend project.
(SO 10), E

E23-15 Pfeifer Corporation is considering investing in two different projects. It could invest in both, neither, or just one of the projects. The forecasts for the projects are as follows.

	Project A	Project B
Capital investment	$200,000	$300,000
Net annual cash flows	$ 50,000	$ 65,000
Length of project	5 years	7 years

The minimum rate of return acceptable to Pfeifer is 10%.

Instructions
(a) Compute the net present value of the two projects.
(b) What capital budgeting decision should Pfeifer make?
(c) Project A could be modified. By spending $20,000 more initially, the net annual cash flows could be increased by $10,000 per year. Would this change Pfeifer's decision?

Exercises: Set B and Challenge Exercises

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Exercise Set B and Challenge Exercises.

Problems: Set A

Make incremental analysis for special order, and identify nonfinancial factors in decision.
(SO 3), E

P23-1A Marin Company is currently producing 16,000 units per month, which is 80% of its production capacity. Variable manufacturing costs are currently $8.00 per unit. Fixed manufacturing costs are $56,000 per month. Marin pays a 9% sales commission to its sales people, has $30,000 in fixed administrative expenses per month, and is averaging $320,000 in sales per month.

A special order received from a foreign company would enable Marin Company to operate at 100% capacity. The foreign company offered to pay 75% of Marin's current selling price per unit. If the order is accepted, Marin will have to spend an extra $2.00 per

unit to package the product for overseas shipping. Also, Marin Company would need to lease a new stamping machine to imprint the foreign company's logo on the product, at a monthly cost of $2,500. The special order would require a sales commission of $3,500.

Instructions

(a) Compute the number of units involved in the special order and the foreign company's offered price per unit.

(b) What is the manufacturing cost of producing one unit of Marin's product for regular customers? (b) Fixed manufacturing cost per unit $3.50

(c) Prepare an incremental analysis of the special order. Should management accept the order?

(d) What is the lowest price that Marin could accept for the special order to earn net income of $1.20 per unit? (d) Cost per unit $11.50

(e) What nonfinancial factors should management consider in making its decision?

P23-2A The management of Peterson Manufacturing Company has asked for your assistance in deciding whether to continue manufacturing a part or to buy it from an outside supplier. The part, called Tropica, is a component of Peterson's finished product.

Make incremental analysis related to make or buy; consider opportunity cost, and identify nonfinancial factors. (SO 4), **E**

An analysis of the accounting records and the production data revealed the following information for the year ending December 31, 2012.

1. The Machinery Department produced 36,000 units of Tropica.
2. Each Tropica unit requires 10 minutes to produce. Three people in the Machinery Department work full time (2,000 hours per year) producing Tropica. Each person is paid $11.00 per hour.
3. The cost of materials per Tropica unit is $2.00.
4. Manufacturing costs directly applicable to the production of Tropica are: indirect labor, $5,500; utilities, $1,300; depreciation, $1,600; property taxes and insurance, $1,000. All of the costs will be eliminated if Tropica is purchased.
5. The lowest price for a Tropica from an outside supplier is $3.90 per unit. Freight charges will be $0.30 per unit, and a part-time receiving clerk at $8,500 per year will be required.
6. If Tropica is purchased, the excess space will be used to store Peterson's finished product. Currently, Peterson rents storage space at approximately $0.60 per unit stored per year. Approximately 6,000 units per year are stored in the rented space.

Instructions

(a) Prepare an incremental analysis for the make-or-buy decision. Should Peterson make or buy the part? Why? (a) Buy = $159,700

(b) Prepare an incremental analysis, assuming the released facilities can be used to produce $10,000 of net income in addition to the savings on the rental of storage space. What decision should now be made?

(c) What nonfinancial factors should be considered in the decision?

P23-3A Johnson Manufacturing Company has four operating divisions. During the first quarter of 2012, the company reported total income from operations of $61,000 and the following results for the divisions.

Compute contribution margin, and prepare incremental analysis concerning elimination of divisions. (SO 7), **E**

	Division			
	Denver	**Miami**	**San Diego**	**Tacoma**
Sales	$455,000	$730,000	$920,000	$515,000
Cost of goods sold	380,000	480,000	576,000	430,000
Selling and administrative expenses	120,000	207,000	246,000	120,000
Income (loss) from operations	$ (45,000)	$ 43,000	$ 98,000	$ (35,000)

Analysis reveals the following percentages of variable costs in each division.

	Denver	**Miami**	**San Diego**	**Tacoma**
Cost of goods sold	95%	80%	90%	90%
Selling and administrative expenses	80	60	70	60

Discontinuance of any division would save 60% of the fixed costs and expenses for that division.

Top management is deeply concerned about the unprofitable divisions (Denver and Tacoma). The consensus is that one or both of the divisions should be eliminated.

Instructions

(a) Compute the contribution margin for the two unprofitable divisions.

(b) (1) Unavoidable fixed cost $17,200

(b) Prepare an incremental analysis concerning the possible elimination of (1) the Denver Division and (2) the Tacoma Division. What course of action do you recommend for each division?

(c) Prepare a columnar condensed income statement using the CVP format for Johnson Manufacturing Company, assuming (1) the Denver Division is eliminated, and (2) the unavoidable fixed costs and expenses of the Denver Division are allocated 30% to Miami, 50% to San Diego, and 20% to Tacoma.

(d) Compare the total income from operations with the Denver Division ($61,000) to total income from operations without this division.

Compute annual rate of return, cash payback, and net present value.
(SO 9, 10), **E**

P23-4A Sanchez Corporation is considering three long-term capital investment proposals. Relevant data on each project are as follows.

	Project		
	Brown	**Red**	**Yellow**
Capital investment	$190,000	$220,000	$250,000
Annual net income:			
Year 1	25,000	20,000	26,000
2	16,000	20,000	24,000
3	13,000	20,000	23,000
4	10,000	20,000	17,000
5	8,000	20,000	20,000
Total	$ 72,000	$100,000	$110,000

Salvage value is expected to be zero at the end of each project. Depreciation is computed by the straight-line method. The company's minimum rate of return is the company's cost of capital which is 12%.

Instructions

(a) Red 18.2%

(a) Compute the annual rate of return for each project. (Round to one decimal.)

(b) Compute the cash payback period for each project. (Round to two decimals.)

(c) Brown $2,206

(c) Compute the net present value for each project. (Round to nearest dollar.)

(d) Rank the projects on each of the foregoing bases. Which project do you recommend?

Compute annual rate of return, cash payback, and net present value.
(SO 9, 10), **E**

P23-5A Cindy Justus is the managing director of the Wichita Day Care Center. Wichita is currently set up as a full-time child care facility for children between the ages of 12 months and 6 years. Cindy is trying to determine whether the center should expand its facilities to incorporate a newborn care room for infants between the ages of 6 weeks and 12 months. The necessary space already exists. An investment of $25,000 would be needed, however, to purchase cribs, high chairs, etc. The equipment purchased for the room would have a 5-year useful life with zero salvage value.

The newborn nursery would be staffed to handle 12 infants on a full-time basis. The parents of each infant would be charged $200 weekly, and the facility would operate 52 weeks of the year. Staffing the nursery would require two full-time specialists and five part-time assistants at an annual cost of $103,800. Food, diapers, and other miscellaneous supplies are expected to total $14,000 annually.

Instructions

(a) Determine (1) annual net income and (2) net cash flow for the new nursery.

(b) (1) 16%

(b) Compute (1) the annual rate of return and (2) the cash payback period for the new nursery. (Round to two decimals.)

(c) Assuming that Wichita can borrow the money needed for expansion at 10%, compute the net present value of the new room. (Round to the nearest dollar.)

(d) What should Wendy conclude from these computations?

Compute net present value and internal rate of return.
(SO 10), **E**

P23-6A Stratton Testing is considering investing in a new testing device. It has two options: Option A would have an initial lower cost but would require a significant expenditure for rebuilding after 5 years. Option B would require no rebuilding expenditure, but its maintenance costs would be higher. Since the option B machine is of initial higher quality, it is expected to have a salvage value at the end of its useful life. The following estimates were provided. The company's cost of capital is 9%.

	Option A	Option B
Initial cost	$90,000	$170,000
Net annual cash flows	$20,000	$32,000
Cost to rebuild (end of year 5)	$26,500	$0
Salvage value	$0	$27,500
Estimated useful life	8 years	8 years

Instructions

(a) Compute the (1) net present value, and (2) internal rate of return for each option. (*Hint:* To solve for internal rate of return, experiment with alternative discount rates to arrive at a net present value of zero.) (a) (1) $3,473

(b) Which option should be accepted?

Problems: Set B

P23-1B Sanchez Inc. manufactures basketballs for the National Basketball Association (NBA). For the first 6 months of 2012, the company reported the following operating results while operating at 90% of plant capacity.

Make incremental analysis for special order, and identify nonfinancial factors in decision. (SO 3), **E**

	Amount	Per Unit
Sales	$4,500,000	$50.00
Cost of goods sold	3,150,000	35.00
Selling and administrative expenses	360,000	4.00
Net income	$ 990,000	$11.00

Fixed costs for the period were: cost of goods sold $900,000, and selling and administrative expenses $135,000.

In July, normally a slack manufacturing month, Sanchez receives a special order for 9,000 basketballs at $32 each from the European Basketball Association (EBA). Acceptance of the order would increase variable selling and administrative expenses $0.50 per unit because of shipping costs but would not increase fixed costs and expenses.

Instructions

(a) Prepare an incremental analysis for the special order. (a) Cost of goods sold $225,000

(b) Should Sanchez Inc. accept the special order?

(c) What is the minimum selling price on the special order to produce net income of $5.00 per ball?

(d) What nonfinancial factors should management consider in making its decision?

P23-2B The management of Carpenter Manufacturing Company is trying to decide whether to continue manufacturing a part or to buy it from an outside supplier. The part, called BIZBE, is a component of the company's finished product.

Make incremental analysis related to make or buy; consider opportunity cost, and identify nonfinancial factors. (SO 4), **E**

The following information was collected from the accounting records and production data for the year ending December 31, 2012.

1. 6,000 units of BIZBE were produced in the Machining Department.
2. Variable manufacturing costs applicable to the production of each BIZBE unit were: direct materials $4.75, direct labor $4.60, indirect labor $0.45, utilities $0.35.
3. Fixed manufacturing costs applicable to the production of BIZBE were:

Cost Item	Direct	Allocated
Depreciation	$1,100	$ 900
Property taxes	500	200
Insurance	900	600
	$2,500	$1,700

All variable manufacturing and direct fixed costs will be eliminated if BIZBE is purchased. Allocated costs will have to be absorbed by other production departments.

4. The lowest quotation for 6,000 BIZBE units from a supplier is $66,000.
5. If BIZBE units are purchased, freight and inspection costs would be $0.30 per unit, and receiving costs totaling $750 per year would be incurred by the Machining Department.

Instructions

(a) (1) $70,250

(a) Prepare an incremental analysis for BIZBE. Your analysis should have columns for (1) Make BIZBE, (2) Buy BIZBE, and (3) Net Income Increase/Decrease.
(b) Based on your analysis, what decision should management make?
(c) Would the decision be different if Carpenter Manufacturing has the opportunity to produce $6,000 of net income with the facilities currently being used to manufacture BIZBE? Show computations.
(d) What nonfinancial factors should management consider in making its decision?

Compute contribution margin, and prepare incremental analysis concerning elimination of divisions.
(SO 7), E

P23-3B Maris Manufacturing Company has four operating divisions. During the first quarter of 2012, the company reported aggregate income from operations of $135,000 and the divisional results shown below.

	Division			
	I	II	III	IV
Sales	$510,000	$390,000	$ 310,000	$170,000
Cost of goods sold	300,000	250,000	270,000	150,000
Selling and administrative expenses	60,000	80,000	65,000	70,000
Income (loss) from operations	$150,000	$ 60,000	$ (25,000)	$ (50,000)

Analysis reveals the following percentages of variable costs in each division.

	I	II	III	IV
Cost of goods sold	70%	80%	75%	90%
Selling and administrative expenses	40	50	60	70

Discontinuance of any division would save 50% of the fixed costs and expenses for that division.

Top management is very concerned about the unprofitable divisions (III and IV). Consensus is that one or both of the divisions should be discontinued.

Instructions

(a) Compute the contribution margin for Divisions III and IV.

(b) (2) Unavoidable fixed costs $18,000

(b) Prepare an incremental analysis concerning the possible discontinuance of (1) Division III and (2) Division IV. What course of action do you recommend for each division?
(c) Prepare a columnar condensed income statement for Maris Manufacturing, assuming Division IV is eliminated. Use the CVP format. Division IV's unavoidable fixed costs are allocated equally to the continuing divisions.
(d) Reconcile the total income from operations ($135,000) with the total income from operations without Division IV.

Compute annual rate of return, cash payback, and net present value.
(SO 9, 10), E

P23-4B Sadler Corporation is considering three long-term capital investment proposals. Each investment has a useful life of 5 years. Relevant data on each project are as follows.

	Project Ric	Project Rac	Project Roe
Capital investment	$140,000	$150,000	$180,000
Annual net income:			
Year 1	13,000	18,000	27,000
2	13,000	17,000	22,000
3	13,000	13,000	16,000
4	13,000	12,000	13,000
5	13,000	9,000	12,000
Total	$ 65,000	$ 69,000	$ 90,000

Depreciation is computed by the straight-line method with no salvage value. The company's cost of capital is 15%.

Instructions

(a) Compute the annual rate of return for each project. (Round to one decimal.) (a) Roe 20%

(b) Compute the cash payback period for each project. (Round to two decimals.)

(c) Compute the net present value for each project. (Round to nearest dollar.) (c) Ric (2,561)

(d) Rank the projects on each of the foregoing bases. Which project do you recommend?

P23-5B Ellen Jackson is an accounting major at a midwestern state university located approximately 60 miles from a major city. Many of the students attending the university are from the metropolitan area and visit their homes regularly on the weekends. Ellen, an entrepreneur at heart, realizes that few good commuting alternatives are available for students doing weekend travel. She believes that a weekend commuting service could be organized and run profitably from several suburban and downtown shopping mall locations. Ellen has gathered the following investment information.

Compute annual rate of return, cash payback, and net present value. (SO, 9, 10), **E**

1. Six used vans would cost a total of $96,000 to purchase and would have a 3-year useful life with negligible salvage value. Ellen plans to use straight-line depreciation.
2. Ten drivers would have to be employed at a total payroll expense of $70,000.
3. Other annual out-of-pocket expenses associated with running the commuter service would include Gasoline $28,000, Maintenance $2,800, Repairs $3,500, Insurance $3,200, Advertising $1,500. (Exclude interest expense.)
4. Ellen has visited several financial institutions to discuss funding for her new venture. The best interest rate she has been able to negotiate is 10%. Use this rate for cost of capital.
5. Ellen expects each van to make ten round trips weekly and carry an average of five students each trip. The service is expected to operate 30 weeks each year. Each student will be charged $16.00 for a round-trip ticket.

Instructions

(a) Determine the annual (1) net income, and (2) net cash flow for the commuter service. (a) (1) Net income $3,000

(b) Compute (1) the annual rate of return, and (2) the cash payback period. (Round to two decimals.) (b) (2) 2.74 years

(c) Compute the net present value of the commuter service. (Round to the nearest dollar.)

(d) What should Ellen conclude from these computations?

P23-6B Colorado Clinic is considering investing in new heart-monitoring equipment. It has two options: Option A would have an initial lower cost but would require a significant expenditure for rebuilding after 4 years. Option B would require no rebuilding expenditure, but its maintenance costs would be higher. Since the option B machine is of initial higher quality, it is expected to have a salvage value at the end of its useful life. The following estimates were made of the cash flows. The company's cost of capital is 8%.

Compute net present value, and internal rate of return. (SO 10), **E**

	Option A	Option B
Initial cost	$135,000	$203,000
Net annual cash flows	$31,000	$40,000
Cost to rebuild (end of year 4)	$50,000	$0
Salvage value	$0	$10,000
Estimated useful life	8 years	8 years

Instructions

(a) Compute the (1) net present value and (2) internal rate of return for each option. (*Hint:* To solve for internal rate of return, experiment with alternative discount rates to arrive at a net present value of zero.) (a) (1) Option B $32,269

(b) Which option should be accepted?

Problems: Set C

Visit the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, and choose the Student Companion site to access Problem Set C.

Comprehensive Problem: Chapters 14 to 23

CP23 You would like to start a business manufacturing a unique model of bicycle helmet. In preparation for an interview with the bank to discuss your financing needs, you develop answers to the following questions. A number of assumptions are required; clearly note all assumptions that you make.

Instructions

(a) Identify the types of costs that would likely be involved in making this product.

(b) Set up five columns as indicated.

	Product Costs			
Item	**Direct Materials**	**Direct Labor**	**Manufacturing Overhead**	**Period Costs**

Classify the costs you identified in (a) into the manufacturing cost classifications of product costs (direct materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead) and period costs.

(c) Assign hypothetical monthly dollar figures to the costs you identified in (a) and (b).

(d) Assume you have no raw materials or work in process beginning or ending inventories. Prepare a projected cost of goods manufactured schedule for the first month of operations.

(e) Project the number of helmets you expect to produce the first month of operations. Compute the cost to produce one bicycle helmet. Review the result to ensure it is reasonable; if not, return to part (c) and adjust the monthly dollar figures you assigned accordingly.

(f) What type of cost accounting system will you likely use—job order or process costing?

(g) Explain how you would assign costs in either the job order or process costing system you plan to use.

(h) Classify your costs as either variable or fixed costs. For simplicity, assign all costs to either variable or fixed, assuming there are no mixed costs, using the format shown.

Item	**Variable Costs**	**Fixed Costs**	**Total Costs**

(i) Compute the unit variable cost, using the production number you determined in (e).

(j) Project the number of helmets you anticipate selling the first month of operations. Set a unit selling price, and compute both the contribution margin per unit and the contribution margin ratio.

(k) Determine your break-even point in dollars and in units.

(l) Prepare projected operating budgets (sales, production, direct materials, direct labor, manufacturing overhead, selling and administrative expense, and income statement). You will need to make assumptions for each of the following:

Direct materials budget:	Quantity of direct materials required to produce one helmet; cost per unit of quantity; desired ending direct materials (assume none).
Direct labor budget:	Direct labor time required per helmet; direct labor cost per hour.
Budgeted income statement:	Income tax expense is 45% of income from operations.

(m) Prepare a cash budget for the month. Assume the percentage of sales that will be collected from customers is 75%, and the percentage of direct materials that will be paid in the current month is 75%.

(n) Determine a relevant range of activity, using the number of helmets produced as your activity index. Recast your manufacturing overhead budget into a flexible monthly budget for two additional activity levels.

(o) Identify one potential cause of materials, direct labor, and manufacturing overhead variances for your product.

(p) Assume that you wish to purchase production equipment that costs $720,000. Determine the cash payback period, utilizing the monthly cash flow that you computed in part (m) multiplied by 12 months (for simplicity).

(q) Identify any nonfinancial factors that should be considered before commencing your business venture.

Waterways Continuing Problem

(This is a continuation of the Waterways Problem from Chapters 14 through 22.)

WCP23 Waterways Corporation puts much emphasis on cash flow when it plans for capital investments. The company chose its discount rate of 8% based on the rate of return it must pay its owners and creditors. Using that rate, Waterways then uses different methods to determine the best decisions for making capital outlays. Waterways is considering buying five new backhoes to replace the backhoes it now has. This problem asks you to evaluate that decision, using various capital budgeting techniques.

Go to the book's companion website, at **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**, to see the completion of this problem.

broadening your perspective

DECISION MAKING ACROSS THE ORGANIZATION

BYP23-1 Shellhammer Company is considering the purchase of a new machine. The invoice price of the machine is $170,000, freight charges are estimated to be $4,000, and installation costs are expected to be $6,000. Salvage value of the new equipment is expected to be zero after a useful life of 4 years. Existing equipment could be retained and used for an additional 4 years if the new machine is not purchased. At that time, the salvage value of the equipment would be zero. If the new machine is purchased now, the existing machine would be scrapped. Shellhammer's accountant, Tracy Greene, has accumulated the following data regarding annual sales and expenses with and without the new machine.

1. Without the new machine, Shellhammer can sell 10,000 units of product annually at a per unit selling price of $100. If the new unit is purchased, the number of units produced and sold would increase by 20%. The selling price would remain the same.
2. The new machine is faster than the old machine, and it is more efficient in its usage of materials. With the old machine, the gross profit rate will be 25% of sales. With the new machine, the rate will be 28% of sales.
3. Annual selling expenses are $135,000 with the current equipment. Because the new equipment would produce a greater number of units to be sold, annual selling expenses are expected to increase by 10% if it is purchased.
4. Annual administrative expenses are expected to be $100,000 with the old machine and $113,000 with the new machine.
5. The current book value of the existing machine is $36,000. Shellhammer uses straight-line depreciation.
6. Shellhammer's management wants a minimum rate of return of 15% on its investment and a payback period of no more than 3 years.

Instructions

With the class divided into groups, answer the following. (Ignore income tax effects.)

(a) Prepare an incremental analysis for the 4 years showing whether Shellhammer should keep the existing machine or buy the new machine.
(b) Calculate the annual rate of return for the new machine. (Round to two decimals.)
(c) Compute the payback period for the new machine. (Round to two decimals.)
(d) Compute the net present value of the new machine. (Round to the nearest dollar.)
(e) On the basis of the foregoing data, would you recommend that Shellhammer buy the machine? Why?

MANAGERIAL ANALYSIS

BYP23-2 Koonce Company manufactures private-label small electronic products, such as alarm clocks, calculators, kitchen timers, stopwatches, and automatic pencil sharpeners. Some of the products are sold as sets, and others are sold individually. Products are studied as to their sales

potential, and then cost estimates are made. The Engineering Department develops production plans, and then production begins. The company has generally had very successful product introduction. Only two products introduced by the company have been discontinued.

One of the products currently sold is a multi-alarm clock. The clock has four alarms that can be programmed to sound at various times and for varying lengths of time. The company has experienced a great deal of difficulty in making the circuit boards for the clocks. The production process has never operated smoothly. The product is unprofitable at the present time, primarily because of warranty repairs and product recalls. Two models of the clocks were recalled, for example, because they sometimes caused an electric shock when the alarms were being shut off. The Engineering Department is attempting to revise the manufacturing process, but the revision will take another 6 months at least.

The clocks were very popular when they were introduced, and since they are private-label, the company has not suffered much from the recalls. Presently, the company has a very large order for several items from Kmart Stores. The order includes 5,000 of the multi-alarm clocks. When the company suggested that Kmart purchase the clocks from another manufacturer, Kmart threatened to rescind the entire order unless the clocks were included.

The company has therefore investigated the possibility of having another company make the clocks for them. The clocks were bid for the Kmart order, based on an estimated $5.50 cost to manufacture, as follows.

Circuit board, 1 each @ $1.00	$1.00
Plastic case, 1 each @ $0.50	0.50
Alarms, 4 @ $0.15 each	0.60
Labor, 15 minutes @ $12/hour	3.00
Overhead, $1.60 per labor hour	0.40

Koonce could purchase clocks to fill the Kmart order for $9 from Silver Star, a Korean manufacturer with a very good quality record. Silver Star has offered to reduce the price to $7.50 after Koonce has been a customer for 6 months, placing an order of at least 1,000 units per month. If Koonce becomes a "preferred customer" by purchasing 15,000 units per year, the price would be reduced still further to $4.50.

Alpha Products, a local manufacturer, has also offered to make clocks for Koonce. It has offered to sell 5,000 clocks for $5 each. However, Alpha Products has been in business for only 6 months. It has experienced significant turnover in its labor force, and the local media have reported that the owner may soon face tax-evasion charges. The owner of Alpha Products is an electronic engineer, however, and the quality of the clocks is likely to be good.

If Koonce decides to purchase the clocks from either Silver Star or Alpha, all the costs to manufacturer could be avoided, except a total of $5,000 in overhead costs for machine depreciation. The machinery is fairly new and has no alternate use.

Instructions

(a) What is the difference in profit under each of the alternatives if the clocks are to be sold for $13.00 each to Kmart?

(b) What are the most important nonfinancial factors that Koonce should consider when making this decision?

(c) What should Koonce do in regard to the Kmart order? What should it do in regard to continuing to manufacture the multi-alarm clocks? Be prepared to defend your answer.

REAL-WORLD FOCUS

BYP23-3 Founded in 1983, the Beverly Hills Fan Company is located in Woodland Hills, California. With 23 employees and sales of less than $10 million, the company is relatively small. Management feels that there is potential for growth in the upscale market for ceiling fans and lighting. They are particularly optimistic about growth in Mexican and Canadian markets.

Presented on the next page is information from the president's letter in the company's annual report.

BEVERLY HILLS FAN COMPANY
President's Letter

An aggressive product development program was initiated during the past year resulting in new ceiling fan models planned for introduction next year. Award-winning industrial designer Ron Rezek created several new fan models for the Beverly Hills Fan and L.A. Fan lines, including a new Showroom Collection, designed specifically for the architectural and designer markets. Each of these models has received critical acclaim, and order commitments for next year have been outstanding. Additionally, our Custom Color and special-order fans continued to enjoy increasing popularity and sales gains as more and more customers desire fans that match their specific interior decors. Currently, Beverly Hills Fan Company offers a product line of over 100 models of contemporary, traditional, and transitional ceiling fans.

Instructions

(a) What points did the company management need to consider before deciding to offer the special-order fans to customers?
(b) How would incremental analysis be employed to assist in this decision?

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING ON THE WEB

BYP23-4 Campbell Soup Company is an international provider of soup products. Management is very interested in continuing to grow the company in its core business, while "spinning off" those businesses that are not part of its core operation.

Address: **www.campbellsoups.com,** or go to **www.wiley.com/college/kimmel**

Steps

1. Go to the home page of Campbell Soup Company at the address shown above.
2. Choose **Our Company** and then **Investor Center**.
3. Choose **Financial Reports**.
4. Choose the 2008 annual report, or the current annual report if 2008 is no longer available.

Instructions

Review the financial statements and management's discussion and analysis, and answer the following questions.

(a) What was the total amount reported as "Purchases of Plant Assets" in the 2008 statement of cash flows? How does this amount compare with the previous year?
(b) What range of interest rates does the company report on its long-term liabilities in the notes to its financial statements?
(c) Assume that this year's capital expenditures are expected to increase cash flows by $42 million. What is the expected internal rate of return (IRR) for these capital expenditures? (Assume a 10-year period for the cash flows.)

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY

BYP23-5 Refer back to E23-11 to address the following.

Instructions

Prepare a memo to Megan Comer, your supervisor. Show your calculations from E23-11, parts (a) and (b). In one or two paragraphs, discuss important nonfinancial considerations. Make any assumptions you believe to be necessary. Make a recommendation, based on your analysis.

ETHICS CASE

BYP23-6 Landon Company operates in a state where corporate taxes and workmen's compensation insurance rates have recently doubled. Landon's president has assigned you the task of preparing an economic analysis and making a recommendation about whether to move the company's entire operation to Missouri. The president is slightly in favor of such a move because Missouri is his boyhood home, and he also owns a fishing lodge there.

You have just completed building your dream house, moved in, and sodded the lawn. Your children are all doing well in school and sports and, along with your spouse, want no part of a

move to Missouri. If the company does move, so will you because your town is a one-industry community, and you and your spouse will have to move to have employment. Moving when everyone else does will cause you to take a big loss on the sale of your house. The same hardships will be suffered by your coworkers, and the town will be devastated.

In compiling the costs of moving versus not moving, you have latitude in the assumptions you make, the estimates you compute, and the discount rates and time periods you project. You are in a position to influence the decision singlehandedly.

Instructions

(a) Who are the stakeholders in this situation?
(b) What are the ethical issues in this situation?
(c) What would you do in this situation?

"ALL ABOUT YOU" ACTIVITY

BYP23-7 Managerial accounting techniques can be used in a wide variety of settings. As we have frequently pointed out, you can use them in many personal situations. They also can be useful in trying to find solutions for societal issues that appear to be hard to solve.

Instructions

Read the *Fortune* article "The Toughest Customers: How Hardheaded Business Metrics Can Help the Hard-core Homeless," by Cait Murphy, available at *http://money.cnn.com/magazines/fortune/fortune_archive/2006/04/03/8373067/index.htm*. Answer the following questions.

(a) How does the article define "chronic" homelessness?
(b) In what ways does homelessness cost a city money? What are the estimated costs of a chronic homeless person to various cities?
(c) What are the steps suggested to address the problem?
(d) What is the estimated cost of implementing this program in New York? What results have been seen?
(e) In terms of incremental analysis, frame the relevant costs in this situation.

Answers to Insight and Accounting Across the Organization Questions

p. 1193 The Pressure to Outsource **Q:** What are the disadvantages of outsourcing to a foreign country? **A:** Possible disadvantages of outsourcing are that the supplier loses control over the quality of the product, as well as the timing of production. Also, the company exposes itself to price changes caused by changes in the value of the foreign currency. In addition, shipping large, heavy products such as tires is costly, and disruptions in shipping (due to strikes, weather, etc.) can cause delays in the final assembly of vehicles. As a result of the outsourcing, the company will have to reassign, or even lay off, many skilled workers. Not only is this very disruptive to the lives of those employees, it also hurts morale of the remaining employees. As more U.S. employers begin to use robotic automation in their facilities, they are able to reduce the amount of labor required and thus are beginning to be able to compete more favorably with foreign suppliers.

p. 1202 High Stakes for Large TVs **Q:** In building factories to manufacture 50-inch TV screens, how might companies build risk factors into their financial analyses? **A:** One approach is to use sensitivity analysis. Sensitivity analysis uses a number of outcome estimates to get a sense of the variability among potential returns. In addition, more distant cash flows can be discarded or given a low weighting because of their high uncertainty.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. d **2.** b **3.** c **4.** b **5.** d **6.** a **7.** d [($68 − $55) − $12] **8.** b **9.** c **10.** d [($200,000 − $140,000 − $100,000) > [$0 − ($100,000 × 50%)] **11.** b ($15 ÷ 3.0) **12.** d **13.** b **14.** c **15.** b

Remember to go back to the navigator box on the chapter opening page and check off your completed work.

appendix A

SPECIMEN FINANCIAL STATEMENTS: TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC.

The Annual Report

Once each year, a corporation communicates to its stockholders and other interested parties by issuing a complete set of audited financial statements. The **annual report**, as this communication is called, summarizes the financial results of the company's operations for the year and its plans for the future. Many annual reports are attractive, multicolored, glossy public relations pieces, containing pictures of corporate officers and directors as well as photos and descriptions of new products and new buildings. Yet the basic function of every annual report is to report financial information, almost all of which is produced by the corporation's accounting system.

Tootsie Roll Annual Report Walkthrough

The content and organization of corporate annual reports have become fairly standardized. Excluding the public relations part of the report (pictures, products, and propaganda), the following items are the traditional financial portions of the annual report:

Financial Highlights
Letter to the Stockholders
Management's Discussion and Analysis
Financial Statements
Notes to the Financial Statements
Management's Report on Internal Control
Management Certification of Financial Statements
Auditor's Report
Supplementary Financial Information

In this appendix, we illustrate current financial reporting with a comprehensive set of corporate financial statements that are prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and audited by an international independent certified public accounting firm. We are grateful for permission to use the actual financial statements and other accompanying financial information from the annual report of a large, publicly held company, Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.

Financial Highlights

Companies usually present the financial highlights section inside the front cover of the annual report or on its first two pages. This section generally reports the total or per share amounts for five to ten financial items for the current year and one or more previous years.

The financial information herein is reprinted with permission from the Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc. 2009 Annual Report. The complete financial statements for Tootsie Roll Industries are also available on the book's companion website.

Corporate Profile

Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc. has been engaged in the manufacture and sale of confectionery products for 113 years. Our products are primarily sold under the familiar brand names: Tootsie Roll, Tootsie Roll Pops, Caramel Apple Pops, Child's Play, Charms, Blow Pop, Blue Razz, Cella's chocolate covered cherries, Tootsie Dots, Tootsie Crows, Junior Mints, Junior Caramels, Charleston Chew, Sugar Daddy, Sugar Babies, Andes, Fluffy Stuff cotton candy, Dubble Bubble, Razzles, Cry Baby, Nik-L-Nip and El Bubble.

Ellen R.Gordon, President and Chief Operating Officer and Melvin J.Gordon, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer.

Corporate Principles

We believe that the differences among companies are attributable to the caliber of their people, and therefore we strive to attract and retain superior people for each job.

We believe that an open family atmosphere at work combined with professional management fosters cooperation and enables each individual to maximize his or her contribution to the Company and realize the corresponding rewards.

We do not jeopardize long-term growth for immediate, short-term results.

We maintain a conservative financial posture in the deployment and management of our assets.

We run a trim operation and continually strive to eliminate waste, minimize cost and implement performance improvements.

We invest in the latest and most productive equipment to deliver the best quality product to our customers at the lowest cost.

We seek to outsource functions where appropriate and to vertically integrate operations where it is financially advantageous to do so.

We view our well known brands as prized assets to be aggressively advertised and promoted to each new generation of consumers.

We conduct business with the highest ethical standards and integrity which are codified in the Company's "Code of Business Conduct and Ethics."

Financial items from the income statement and the balance sheet that typically are presented are sales, income from continuing operations, net income, earnings per share, dividends per common share, and the amount of capital expenditures. The financial highlights section from **Tootsie Roll Industries' Annual Report** is shown on page A-3. Above, we have also included Tootsie Roll's discussion of its corporate principles and corporate profile.

Letter to the Stockholders

Nearly every annual report contains a letter to the stockholders from the chairman of the board or the president, or both. This letter typically discusses the company's accomplishments during the past year and highlights significant events such as mergers and acquisitions, new products, operating achievements, business philosophy, changes in officers or directors, financing commitments, expansion plans, and future prospects. The letter to the stockholders signed by Melvin J. Gordon, Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer, and Ellen R. Gordon, President and Chief Operating Officer, of Tootsie Roll Industries is shown on the next pages.

To Our Shareholders

Net product sales in 2009 were $496 million as compared with 2008 net product sales of $492 million. Most of our core brands posted solid results and Halloween was once again our largest selling season of the year.

Net earnings grew to $53 million from $39 million in 2008. The increase in earnings was attributable to margin improvements stemming from selected price increases and product weight adjustments as well as from lower energy and fuel costs and from foreign income tax benefits.

Commodity and packaging costs have risen significantly in recent years. While some of these costs abated during 2009, as a whole they remain at historically high levels. We are challenged to look for every feasible way to keep our operations lean and costs in check so that we can continue to deliver maximum value to our consumers.

We take a long-term view of our business and strive to implement measures that improve our operating results without jeopardizing the long-term strength of the Company and its well known brands. As a value oriented confectioner, we deem it essential to be a low cost producer and actively pursue investments in the latest technology to keep us so.

To that end, capital expenditures in 2009 were $21 million. In addition to new state of the art equipment installations at a number of our plants, a portion of this figure was directed toward the latest phase of implementing our enterprise resource planning system, a comprehensive system of leading edge business software.

During 2009 we paid cash dividends of 32 cents per share and again distributed a 3% stock dividend. This was the sixty-seventh consecutive year the Company has paid cash dividends and the forty-fifth consecutive year that a stock dividend was distributed. We also repurchased 937,956 shares of common stock on the open market for an aggregate cost of $21 million.

We ended 2009 with $158 million in cash and investments and we remain poised to continue investing in our business, improving manufacturing productivity and quality, supporting our brands, paying dividends and repurchasing common stock. We also continue to seek appropriate complementary business acquisitions.

Financial Highlights

	December 31, 2009	2008
	(in thousands except per share data)	
Net Product Sales	$495,592	$492,051
Net Earnings	53,475	38,777
Working Capital	155,812	129,967
Net Property, Plant and Equipment	220,721	217,628
Shareholders' Equity	652,485	634,770
Average Shares Outstanding*	56,072	56,799
Per Share Items*		
Net Earnings	$0.95	$0.68
Cash Dividends Paid	.32	.32

*Adjusted for stock dividends.

Sales and Marketing

During 2009 we again used carefully executed promotions to drive sales. Targeted initiatives, directed to the trade and to consumers, help to move our products into distribution and subsequently to move them off the retail shelf.

Retailers are highly selective as to the products they carry and consumers have many choices in the candy isle. We find that emphasizing high sell-through and attractive profit margins to the trade and high quality at an attractive value to the consumer is a winning strategy.

Our diverse and highly recognizable brand portfolio remains popular across all trade channels. We have a range of offerings suitable for virtually every major consumer group. Our product line undergoes continual refinement in order to retain its appeal to ever-evolving preferences and life styles. The candy marketplace is highly competitive and we are vigilant in keeping our products contemporary even as they remain iconic.

Halloween has long been our largest selling period with third quarter sales nearly double those of any other quarter in the year. We posted strong results in all major trade classes including grocery, mass merchandisers, warehouse clubs, dollar stores and drug chains. Especially popular at Halloween are our large bags of Child's Play and other mixed candy assortments,

which are offered in a variety of merchandising presentations.

Our bagged goods have traditionally been limited to "lay down" format that is commonly found on retailer's shelves. In addition to "lay down" bags, in 2009 we introduced a number of packs in a "vertical" format. These gusseted bags really do "stand up" on the shelf and offer a more visible, billboard-like front panel with room for expanded graphic content while creating an enhanced consumer value perception.

Other traditional merchandising presentations such as pallet packs, off shelf displays and display ready cases also continue to generate high sales volume in our Halloween packaged goods line. We continue to have some of the top selling theater box and home video items. This line was expanded in 2009 with two new Dots items that made trick-or-treating tastier. Candy Corn Dots are the classic Halloween flavor in a new gumdrop format and Bat Dots are black gumdrops with a new, mouth-watering "blood orange" flavor.

Candy Corn and Bat Dots

In addition to full size theater boxes, these two new frightfully good confections were packed in mini-boxes and, together with Ghost Dots, formed the new Dots Halloween Mix. Each bag of this mix features "spook-tacular" Halloween designs, and is metallized to ensure fresh gumdrops for every trick-or-treater.

Halloween Dots Mini Mix

Other additions to our Halloween offerings promoted the apple theme which is so readily associated with the fall season. Apple Orchard is a mix of three mouth watering caramel apple pop flavor profiles: sour green apple, tart red Macintosh and sweet Golden Delicious. All three apple flavored hard candies are blended with luscious caramel.

Another Halloween item, Caramel Apple Sugar Babies in snack size pouches, have a caramel center encased in a tart green apple shell. The caramel apple combination is a delicious hit.

Apple Orchard Pops

Our unique line of wax candy products was expanded with the addition of Nik-L-Nip fruit flavored mini drinks individually wrapped and packed in a 60 count bag for sharing. For fun, we introduced Mr. Stache, a chewable wax candy moustache. These items designed for sharing are perfect for kids parties, trick or treating or anytime.

Mr. Stache Wax Candy

Blow Pop sales were boosted by the introduction of an innovative new Super Blow Pop counter display. This gravity fed dispenser has a small foot print so it can be used as a counter display or it can be attached to a power wing if counter space is not available. Vivid graphics on the prominent display panel increase exposure and promote trial of this classic confection.

Blow Pop Counter Display

Our Andes Crème de Menthe thins have a strong selling history during the Thanksgiving and Christmas holiday seasons. Andes has also had great success selling outside the candy aisle with Andes Crème de

Menthe Baking Chips, which have grown every year since their introduction.

Building on this success, in 2009 we introduced Andes Crème de Menthe Cookies. Rich chocolate mint Andes cookies feature a crunchy cocoa cookie center, covered in a melt-in-your-mouth minty green layer, and enveloped in a rich layer of delicious chocolate. This decadent chocolate mint cookie parallels the iconic Andes Crème de Menthe thins candy, with its rectangular shape, three layers and a green center, for instant consumer recognition. Andes cookies were a sensational seasonal success for Halloween and Christmas.

Andes Crème de Menthe Cookies

Advertising and Public Relations

We again promoted our long-standing "How Many Licks" Tootsie Pop message through campaigns on several children's channels on cable television in 2009. This renowned theme was further reinforced by a How Many Licks Sweepstakes that encouraged entrants to guess the correct number of licks it would take to get to the chewy Tootsie Roll center. Having evaluated thousands of estimates, we can only conclude that the answer to this riddle remains "the world may never know!"

On a whimsical note, in 2009 Tootsie Roll was featured as its own category on the long running game show *Jeopardy*. Also, Tootsie Pops were profiled on the Travel Channel's special interest program *Extreme Mega Factories*. Repeated showing of segments such as these generate extensive exposure and awareness among viewing consumers.

Tootsie Rolls became kosher certified during 2009, making our flagship product available to a whole new group of consumers. This announcement received wide press coverage and we heard positive feedback from many enthusiastic consumers. Also, our Chairman Melvin Gordon was honored with the Kettle Award, the candy industry's highest tribute, in recognition of his lifetime achievements and dedication to the industry.

Purchasing

Although energy costs decreased during 2009 from the record levels of 2008, other commodity prices generally remained at historically high levels. Cost decreases in edible oils, dairy products and corn based sweeteners were largely offset by surging sugar prices. In packaging, decreases in the cost of films and folding cartons were more than offset by increases in corrugated and specialty papers.

Competitive bidding, selective hedging and leveraging our high volume of purchases are some of the means we use to mitigate rising costs to the greatest extent feasible. We also embarked on an extensive internal review of cost drivers during 2009 which is a key element in our ongoing efforts to eliminate waste. A number of cost-saving ideas were identified during this review and have been implemented across all of our plants.

Supply Chain

We continue to invest capital and resources in projects that keep our production and distribution facilities as efficient as possible, support evolving distribution patterns, improve quality and promote growing product lines. Much of this is driven by technology, which offers continuing advancements in automation that we can incorporate on the shop floor.

2009 was also the third year of a multi-year, company-wide enterprise resource planning system upgrade. The scope of this project is comprehensive, affecting nearly every facet of the Company. We are carefully phasing in this implementation to achieve maximum results.

International

Sales and profits in Mexico were lower in 2009 due to the devaluation of the peso. Although we promote our products in many countries throughout the world, our export business continued to be adversely affected by the relative strength of the U.S. dollar, which increases the relative cost of our products in foreign markets. Canadian sales were ahead of 2009 but profits declined due to product mix, higher commodity costs and foreign exchange rates.

In Appreciation

We wish to express our appreciation to our many loyal employees, customers, suppliers, sales brokers and distributors throughout the world for their support in 2009. We also thank our fellow shareholders as we remain committed to the pursuit of excellence in every aspect of our operations and face the increasing challenges of today's business environment.

Melvin J. Gordon

Melvin J. Gordon
Chairman of the Board and
Chief Executive Officer

Ellen R. Gordon

Ellen R. Gordon
President and
Chief Operating Officer

Management Discussion and Analysis

The management discussion and analysis (MD&A) section covers three financial aspects of a company: its results of operations, its ability to pay near-term obligations, and its ability to fund operations and expansion. Management must highlight favorable or unfavorable trends and identify significant events and uncertainties that affect these three factors. This discussion obviously involves a number of subjective estimates and opinions. The MD&A section of Tootsie Roll's annual report is presented below.

Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

(in thousands except per share, percentage and ratio figures)

FINANCIAL REVIEW

This financial review discusses the Company's financial condition, results of operations, liquidity and capital resources, significant accounting policies and estimates, new accounting pronouncements, market risks and other matters. It should be read in conjunction with the Consolidated Financial Statements and related footnotes that follow this discussion.

FINANCIAL CONDITION

The Company's overall financial position remains very strong as a result of its 2009 net earnings and related cash flows provided by operating activities.

During 2009, the Company's cash flows from operating activities aggregated $75,281 compared to $57,042 in 2008. The Company used its cash flows to pay cash dividends of $17,825, repurchase and retire $20,723 of its outstanding shares, and make capital expenditures of $20,831. In addition, the Company's net working capital increased from $129,967 at December 31, 2008 to $155,812 at December 31, 2009.

As of December 31, 2009, the Company's aggregate cash, cash equivalents and investments, including all long-term investments in marketable securities, was $157,789 compared to $136,680 at December 31, 2008, an increase of $21,109. The 2009 amount reflects a $4,524 appreciation in market value of trading securities. The Company invests in trading securities to provide an economic hedge for its deferred compensation liabilities, as further discussed herein and in Note 7 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

Shareholders' equity increased from $634,770 at December 31, 2008 to $652,485 as of December 31, 2009, principally reflecting 2009 net earnings of $53,475 less cash dividends and share repurchases of $17,825 and $20,723, respectively.

The Company has a relatively straight-forward financial structure and has historically maintained a conservative financial position. Except for an immaterial amount of operating leases, the Company has no special financing arrangements or "off-balance sheet" special purpose entities. Cash flows from operations plus maturities of short-term investments are expected to be adequate to meet the Company's overall financing needs, including capital expenditures, in 2010. Occasionally, the Company considers possible acquisitions, and if the Company were to pursue and complete such an acquisition, that could result in bank borrowings.

Results of Operations

2009 vs. 2008

Net product sales were $495,592 in 2009 compared to $492,051 in 2008, an increase of $3,541 or 1%. Although the increase in 2009 consolidated sales benefited from higher U.S. domestic sales, they were adversely affected by declines in export sales and sales of the Company's Mexican subsidiary when translated into U.S. dollar sales from a devalued foreign currency.

Product cost of goods sold were $318,645 in 2009 compared to $333,314 in 2008, a decrease of $14,669 or 4.4%. Product cost of

goods sold reflects a $2,876 increase in deferred compensation expense in 2009 compared to 2008. This increase principally results from changes in the market value of investments in trading securities relating to compensation deferred in previous years and is not reflective of current operating results. Adjusting for the aforementioned, product cost of goods sold as a percentage of net product sales favorably decreased from 68.1% in 2008 to 64.1% in 2009, a decrease of 4.0% as a percent of sales. This improvement principally reflects the benefits of selective price increases, product weight declines (indirect price increases) and the favorable effects of foreign currency exchange rates on products manufactured in Canada and principally sold in the United States. Ingredient unit costs favorably decreased by approximately $700 in 2009. However, the Company was adversely affected by approximately $400 of packaging material unit cost increases in 2009 compared to 2008. The Company generally experienced significant cost increases in sugar and cocoa. However, the Company experienced favorable declines in dairy products, corn syrup and edible oils.

Due to the seasonal nature of the Company's business and corresponding variations in product mix, gross margins have historically been lower in the second half of the year, and second half of 2009 and 2008 were consistent with this trend.

Selling, marketing and administrative expenses were $103,755 in 2009 compared to $95,254 in 2008, an increase of $8,501 or 8.9%. Selling, marketing and administrative expenses reflect an $8,982 increase in deferred compensation expense in 2009 compared to 2008. This increase principally results from changes in the market value of investments in trading securities relating to compensation deferred in previous years and is not reflective of current operating results. Adjusting for the aforementioned, selling, marketing and administrative expenses favorably decreased from $100,711 in 2008 to $100,230 in 2009, a decrease of $481 or 0.5%. As a percent of net product sales, these expenses decreased from 20.5% of net product sales in 2008 to 20.2% of product sales in 2009. The favorable decrease in such expenses principally resulted from lower freight, delivery and warehousing and distribution expenses partially offset by higher incentive compensation awards. Such higher incentive awards are due to the substantial improvement in 2009 results compared to 2008.

Selling, marketing and administrative expenses include $38,628 and $45,570 of freight, delivery and warehousing and distribution expenses in 2009 and 2008, respectively. Freight, delivery and warehousing and distribution expenses decreased from 9.3% of net product sales in 2008 to 7.8% of net product sales in 2009, primarily due to lower energy costs including lower freight fuel surcharges.

The Company believes that the carrying values of its trademarks and goodwill have indefinite lives as they are expected to generate cash flows indefinitely. In accordance with current accounting guidance, goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible assets are assessed at least annually for impairment as of December 31 or whenever events or circumstances indicate that the carrying values may not be recoverable from future cash flows. As of December 31, 2009, management ascertained that certain trademarks were impaired, and recorded a pre-tax charge of $14,000. This 2009 impairment charge was principally driven by an increase in the discount rate required by market participants. No impairments of intangibles were recorded in 2008.

The fair values of indefinite lived intangible assets are primarily assessed using the present value of estimated future cash flows. Management believes that all assumptions used for the impairment tests are consistent with those utilized by market participants performing similar valuations. The Company's fair value estimates based on these assumptions were used to prepare projected financial information which it believes to be reasonable. Actual future results may differ from those projections and the differences may be material. Holding all other assumptions constant at the test date, a 100 basis point increase in the discount rate or a 100 basis point decrease in the royalty rate would reduce the fair value of certain trademarks by approximately 14% and 10%, respectively, indicating potential additional impairment of approximately $14,000 and $10,000, respectively, as of December 31, 2009.

Earnings from operations were $62,079 in 2009 compared to $66,527 in 2008, a decrease of $4,448. Earnings from operations includes changes in deferred compensation liabilities relating to corresponding changes in the market value of trading securities that hedge these liabilities as discussed above. Adjusting for the aforementioned deferred compensation charges of $11,858 and excluding the nonrecurring $14,000 non-cash impairment charge in 2009 relating to

trademarks as discussed above, operating earnings were $80,603 and $59,193 in 2009 and 2008, respectively, an increase of $21,410 or 36.2%. Management believes this comparison is more reflective of the underlying operations of the Company. This increase principally reflects the favorable improvement in product cost of goods sold and gross profit margins, and more favorable freight, distribution and warehousing expenses as discussed above.

Other income (expense), net, was $2,100 in 2009 compared to $(10,618) in 2008, an increase of $12,718. This increase principally reflects the $11,858 favorable net change in the fair value of trading securities investments used to hedge deferred compensation liabilities, offset by a pre-tax impairment charge of $4,400 in 2009 to write down to market value the Company's 50% investment in a Spanish joint venture, and a pre-tax charge of $5,140 in prior year 2008 to write down to market value an auction rate security as discussed below.

The Company has a 50% interest in a Spanish joint venture which is accounted for under the equity method. As of December 31, 2009, management determined, based on operating losses and expectations of future results, that the carrying value of this asset was impaired. As a result, the Company recorded a pre-tax impairment charge of $4,400 in the fourth quarter 2009, resulting in an adjusted carrying value of $4,961 as of December 31, 2009. The fair value was primarily assessed using the present value of estimated future cash flows. Other income (expense), net also includes the operating results of the Company's joint venture which was a loss of $233 and $477 in 2009 and 2008, respectively.

As of December 31, 2009 and 2008, the Company's long-term investments include $7,710 and $8,410 ($13,550 original cost), respectively, of Jefferson County Alabama Sewer Revenue Refunding Warrants, originally purchased with an insurance-backed AAA rating. This is an auction rate security (ARS) that is classified as an available for sale security. Due to adverse events related to Jefferson County and its bond insurance carrier, Financial Guaranty Insurance Company (FGIC), as well as events in the credit markets, the auctions for this ARS failed throughout 2008 and 2009 (and subsequent to December 31, 2009). As such, the Company estimated the fair value of this ARS as of December 31, 2009 and 2008 utilizing a valuation model with Level 3 inputs. This valuation model considered, among others items, the credit risk of the collateral underlying the ARS, the credit risk of the bond insurer, interest rates, and the amount and timing of expected future cash flows including assumptions about the market expectation of the next successful auction.

During the prior year fourth quarter of 2008, the Company determined that the market decline in fair value of its Jefferson County ARS became other-than-temporarily impaired, as defined, and recorded a pre-tax impairment of $5,140. During the fourth quarter of 2009, the Company further evaluated this investment and concluded that an additional decline in the market value was temporary because it was not related to further credit impairment and recorded this $700 of additional decline in the market value as a charge to accumulated other comprehensive loss. Notwithstanding, the Company continues to receive all contractual interest payments on its ARS on a timely basis, there has been no default, it is insured by FGIC and the Company has the intent and ability to hold this ARS until recovery of its amortized cost basis.

The Company has classified this ARS as non-current and has included it in long-term investments at December 31, 2009 and 2008 because the Company believes that the current financial conditions of Jefferson County and FGIC, as well as the conditions in the auction rate securities market, may take more than twelve months to resolve. Future evaluations of the fair value of this ARS could also result in additional other-than-temporary classification of declines in market value, and therefore result in additional charges to earnings.

Other income (expenses), net also includes the results of the Company's trading securities which provide an economic hedge to the Company's deferred compensation liabilities. The income (expense), on such trading securities was $4,524 and $(7,334) in 2009 and 2008, respectively. Such income or (expense) was substantially offset by a like amount of (expense) or income in aggregate product cost of goods sold and selling, marketing, and administrative expenses in the respective years as discussed above. The 2009 income principally reflects market appreciation in the equity markets in 2009, and the 2008 (expense) principally reflects the market decline in the equity markets in 2008.

The consolidated effective tax rate was 16.7% and 30.6% in 2009 and 2008, respectively. This favorable decrease in the effective tax rate principally reflects the release of Canadian income tax valuation allowances

in 2009. Prior to fourth quarter 2009, Canadian income tax valuation allowances were recorded against Canadian deferred tax assets as a result of losses generated in 2009 and prior years. These Canadian income tax losses were principally the result of interest expense deductions for income tax purposes relating to an intercompany financing transaction which was eliminated in the Company's consolidated financial statements. Because the realization of such prior net operating loss (NOL) carry-forward benefits were not more-likely-than-not, a full valuation allowance was recorded as of December 31, 2008, and through third quarter 2009. In response to the Fifth Protocol to the Canada-U.S. Income Tax Convention (Treaty), during fourth quarter 2009 the Company decided to restructure its Canadian operations effective January 1, 2010. This restructuring eliminated the inter-company financing structure and related interest deduction for Canadian income taxes effective January 1, 2010. Going forward, management now expects its Canadian operation to report taxable income rather than losses for the foreseeable future. Accordingly, management determined that the Canadian NOL carry-forward benefits were more-likely-than-not realizable as of December 31, 2009. As such, the Company reversed approximately $10,700 of valuation allowances as a credit to income tax expense as of December 31, 2009. Management believes that its assessment is based on reasonable assumptions and is in accordance with accounting guidance regarding the release of valuation allowances on deferred tax assets. See also Note 4 to the Consolidated Financial Statements for further discussion. The Treaty also provided for the phase-out of Canadian withholding tax rates for interest and allowed the Company to qualify for the 0% withholding rate effective January 1, 2010, resulting in a current tax benefit of $1,500 in 2009.

Net earnings were $53,475 in 2009 compared to $38,777 in 2008, and earnings per share were $.95 and $.68 in 2009 and 2008, respectively, an increase of $.27 or 40%. Earnings per share did benefit from the reduction in average shares outstanding resulting from common stock purchases in the open market by the Company. Average shares outstanding decreased from 56,799 in 2008 to 56,072 in 2009.

2008 vs. 2007

Net product sales were $492,051 in 2008 compared to $492,742 in 2007, a decrease of $691 or 0.1%. Although 2008 domestic sales increased by 0.5%, the reported consolidated net sales reflect declines in sales outside of the U.S., including the effects of a stronger dollar, which offset these domestic sales increases.

Product cost of goods sold were $333,314 in 2008 compared to $327,695 in 2007, an increase of $5,619 or 1.7%. This increase reflects a $1,877 decrease in deferred compensation expense principally resulting from the decline in the market value of investments in trading securities relating to compensation deferred in previous years. Adjusting for the aforementioned, product cost of goods sold as a percentage of net sales increased from 64.5% in 2007 to 68.1% in 2008, an increase of 3.6% as a percent of sales. This increase principally reflects significant cost increases in major ingredients, as well as higher labor and fringe benefits, including health insurance benefits, the adverse effects of foreign currency exchange rates on products manufactured in Canada and principally sold in the United States, and generally higher plant energy costs. In 2008, increases in ingredient costs approximated $9,300, however, the Company benefited from an approximate $1,200 decrease in overall packaging material costs. The Company generally experienced significant cost increases in substantially all of its major ingredients, including sugar, corn syrup, vegetable oils, dextrose, cocoa, chocolate and gum base inputs. The adverse impact of changes in Canadian exchange rates as discussed above approximated $900 in 2008.

Due to the seasonal nature of the Company's business and corresponding variations in product mix, gross margins have historically been lower in the second half of the year, and second half of 2008 and 2007 were consistent with this trend.

Selling, marketing and administrative expenses were $95,254 in 2008 compared to $97,821 in 2007, a decrease of $2,567 or 2.6%. This decrease reflects a $5,457 decrease in deferred compensation expense principally resulting from the decline in the market value of investments in trading securities relating to compensation deferred in previous years. Adjusting for the aforementioned, selling, marketing and administrative expenses increased by $2,890 or 3.0%, and as a percent of net product sales increased from 19.9% of net product sales in 2007 to 20.5% of net product sales in 2008. These expenses include $45,570 and $41,775 of freight, delivery and warehousing and distribution expenses in 2008 and 2007 respectively. Freight, delivery and warehousing and distribution expenses increased from 8.5% of net product sales in 2007 to 9.3% of net product sales

in 2008, primarily due to higher energy costs including higher freight fuel surcharges.

Earnings from operations were $66,527 in 2008 compared to $70,852 in 2007, a decrease of $4,325 or 6.1%. Earnings from operations includes changes in deferred compensation liabilities relating to corresponding changes in the market value of trading securities that hedge these liabilities as discussed above. Adjusting for the aforementioned, operating earnings were $59,193 and $72,850 in 2008 and 2007, respectively, a decrease of $13,657 or 18.7%. This decrease principally reflects the decrease in gross profit resulting from higher input costs, principally ingredients and freight and delivery, as discussed above.

Goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible assets are assessed at least annually for impairment as of December 31 or whenever events or circumstances indicate that the carrying values may not be recoverable from future cash flows. No impairments were recorded in either 2008 or 2007

Other income (expense), net, was $(10,618) in 2008 compared to $6,315 in 2007, a decrease of $16,933. This decrease principally reflects a $5,140 write-down to market value of an investment security and $9,332 relating to changes in the fair value of trading securities investments during 2008 used to hedge deferred compensation liabilities, both of which are discussed below.

As of December 31, 2008, the Company's long-term investments include $8,410 ($13,550 original cost) of Jefferson County Alabama Sewer Revenue Refunding Warrants originally purchased with an AAA rating. As discussed above, the Company estimated the fair value of this ARS utilizing a valuation model with Level 3 inputs. During the fourth quarter 2008, the Company determined that the market decline in fair value of its Jefferson County ARS became other than temporary, as defined, and recorded an after-tax impairment of $3,328 ($5,140 pre-tax charge). Previous to fourth quarter 2008, the Company concluded that the decline in market value was temporary, as defined, and recorded declines in the market value to accumulated other comprehensive income.

Other income (expenses), net includes the results of the Company's trading securities which hedge the Company's deferred compensation liabilities. The income (expense) on such trading securities was $(7,334) and $1,998 in 2008 and 2007, respectively; such income or (expense) was substantially offset by a like amount of (expense) or income in aggregate product cost of goods sold and selling, marketing, and administrative expenses in the respective years. The 2008 (expense) of $(7,334) principally reflects the market declines in the equity markets in 2008.

Other income (expense), net also includes the results of the Company's 50% interest in a Spanish joint venture, accounted for under the equity method, which was a loss of $(477) in 2008 compared to income of $182 in 2007.

The consolidated effective tax rate was 30.6% and 33.1% in 2008 and 2007, respectively. The decrease in the effective tax rate principally reflects approximately $1,400 of reduction in tax positions resulting from the effective settlement of a state income tax audit, and approximately $700 relating to changes in foreign income tax expense due to the favorable effects of certain tax treaty provisions between the U.S. and Canada. In addition, the 2007 effective tax rate was adversely impacted by $1,040 relating to the adoption of an interpretation of accounting guidance relating to uncertain income tax positions. During 2008 and 2007, the Company recorded $3,218 and $3,145 of valuation allowances, respectively, relating to its Canadian subsidiary tax loss carry-forwards to reduce the future income tax benefits to amounts expected to be realized.

Net earnings were $38,777 in 2008 compared to $51,625 in 2007, and earnings per share were $.68 and $.89 in 2008 and 2007, respectively, a decrease of $.21 or 24%. 2008 results were adversely affected by higher input costs, primarily relating to ingredients and freight and delivery, as well as the items discussed above in other income (expense), net. Earnings per share did benefit from the reduction in average shares outstanding resulting from common stock purchases in the open market by the Company. Average shares outstanding decreased from 58,227 in 2007 to 56,799 in 2008.

The Company has taken actions and implemented programs, including selected price increases as well as cost reduction programs, with the objective of recovering some of these higher input costs. However, these actions have not allowed the Company to recover all of these increases in ingredient and other input costs in 2008.

LIQUIDITY AND CAPITAL RESOURCES

Cash flows from operating activities were $75,281, $57,042 and $90,064 in 2009, 2008 and 2007, respectively. The $18,239 increase in cash flows from

operating activities from 2008 to 2009 principally reflects an increase of $14,698 in net income in 2009 compared to 2008, an increase of $13,260 of non-cash pre-tax impairment charges in 2009, changes in deferred income taxes, including the release of $10,700 of Canadian deferred income tax asset valuation allowances, the Company's 2008 investment in a voluntary employee association trust (VEBA) of $16,050 which is controlled solely by the Company as discussed herein, and changes in other current assets and liabilities, principally inventories and accounts receivable.

As discussed above, during 2009 the Company recorded pre-tax non-cash impairment charges of $14,000 and $4,400 relating to certain trademarks and its 50% owned Spanish joint venture, respectively; and during prior year 2008, the Company recorded a pre-tax non-cash impairment charge of $5,140 relating to its Jefferson County ARS investment.

During 2008, the Company contributed $16,050 to a VEBA trust to fund the estimated future costs of certain employee health, welfare and other benefits. The Company used the funds, as well as investment income in this VEBA trust, to pay the actual cost of such benefits during 2009 and will continue to do so through 2011. At December 31, 2009, the VEBA trust holds $12,678 of aggregate cash, cash equivalents and investments; this asset value is included in prepaid expenses in the Company's current and other assets.

Cash flows from investing activities reflect capital expenditures of $20,831, $34,355, and $14,767 in 2009, 2008 and 2007, respectively. Capital expenditures in prior year 2008 reflect $12,400 relating to the purchase of real estate that the Company placed into service as a distribution center in 2009. The 2009 and 2008 capital additions include $2,326 and $4,755, respectively, relating to computer systems and related implementation.

The Company had no bank borrowing or repayments in 2007, 2008, or 2009, and had no outstanding bank borrowings as of December 31, 2008 or 2009.

Financing activities include common stock purchases and retirements of $20,723, $21,109, and $27,300 in 2009, 2008 and 2007, respectively. Cash dividends of $17,825, $17,557, and $17,542 were paid in 2009, 2008 and 2007, respectively. The increase in cash dividends each year reflects the annual 3% stock dividend issued in each of these years less the effects of Company Common Stock purchases and retirements.

SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES AND ESTIMATES

Preparation of the Company's financial statements involves judgments and estimates due to uncertainties affecting the application of accounting policies, and the likelihood that different amounts would be reported under different conditions or using different assumptions. The Company bases its estimates on historical experience and other assumptions, as discussed herein, that it believes are reasonable. If actual amounts are ultimately different from previous estimates, the revisions are included in the Company's results of operations for the period in which the actual amounts become known. The Company's significant accounting policies are discussed in Note 1 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

Following is a summary and discussion of the more significant accounting policies which management believes to have a significant impact on the Company's operating results, financial position, cash flows and footnote disclosure.

Revenue recognition

Revenue, net of applicable provisions for discounts, returns, allowances and certain advertising and promotional costs, is recognized when products are delivered to customers based on a customer purchase order, and collectability is reasonably assured. The accounting for promotional costs is discussed under "Customer incentive programs, advertising and marketing" below.

Provisions for bad debts are recorded as selling, marketing and administrative expenses. Write-offs of bad debts did not exceed 0.05% of net product sales in each of 2009, 2008 and 2007, and accordingly, have not been significant to the Company's financial position or results of operations.

Intangible assets

The Company's intangible assets consist primarily of acquired trademarks and related goodwill. In accordance with accounting guidance, goodwill and other indefinite-lived assets are not amortized, but are instead subjected to annual testing for impairment unless certain triggering events or circumstances are noted. The Company performs its annual testing impairment testing as of December 31. The Company may utilize third-party professional valuation firms to assist in the determination of certain intangibles.

The impairment test is performed by comparing the carrying value

of the asset with its estimated fair value, which is calculated using estimates, including discounted projected future cash flows. These projected future cash flows are dependent on a number of factors including the execution of business plans, achievement of projected sales, including but not limited to future price increases, projected operating margins, and projected capital expenditures. Such operating results are also dependent upon future ingredient and packaging material costs, exchange rates for products manufactured or sold in foreign countries, operational efficiencies, cost savings initiatives, and competitive factors. Although the majority of the Company's trademarks relate to well established brands with a long history of consumer acceptance, projected cash flows are inherently uncertain. A change in the assumptions underlying the impairment analysis, including but not limited to a reduction in projected cash flows, the use of a different discount rate to discount future cash flows or a different royalty rate applied to the Company's trademarks, could cause impairment in the future. See above discussion and Note 12 to the Consolidated Financial Statements regarding the impairment of certain trademarks in 2009.

Customer incentive programs, advertising and marketing

Advertising and marketing costs are recorded in the period to which such costs relate. The Company does not defer the recognition of any amounts on its consolidated balance sheet with respect to such costs. Customer incentives and other promotional costs are recorded at the time of sale based upon incentive program terms and historical utilization statistics, which are generally consistent from year to year. The liabilities associated with these programs are reviewed quarterly and adjusted if utilization rates differ from management's original estimates. Such adjustments have not historically been material to the Company's operating results.

Split dollar officer life insurance

The Company provides split dollar life insurance benefits to certain executive officers and records an asset equal to the cumulative premiums paid. The Company will fully recover these premiums in future years under the terms of the plan. The Company retains a collateral assignment of the cash surrender values and policy death benefits payable to insure recovery of these premiums.

Valuation of long-lived assets

Long-lived assets, primarily property, plant and equipment, and investment in joint ventures accounted for under the equity method are reviewed for impairment as events or changes in business circumstances occur indicating that the carrying value of the asset may not be recoverable. The Company may utilize third-party professional valuation firms as necessary to assist in the determination of the fair value of long-lived assets or investments accounted for under the equity method. The estimated cash flows produced by assets, asset groups, or investments accounted for under the equity method result in an estimated fair value and are compared to the asset carrying value to determine whether impairment exists. Such estimates involve considerable management judgment and are based upon assumptions about expected future operating performance, and cash flows in the case of investments accounted for under the equity method. As a result, actual cash flows could differ from management's estimates due to changes in business conditions, operating performance, and economic and competitive conditions. See above discussion and Note 6 regarding the impairment of the Company's Spanish joint venture recorded in 2009.

Income taxes

Deferred income taxes are recognized for future tax effects of temporary differences between financial and income tax reporting using tax rates in effect for the years in which the differences are expected to reverse. The Company records valuation allowances in situations where the realization of deferred tax assets, including those relating to net operating tax losses, is not more-likely-than-not; and the Company adjusts and releases such valuation allowances when realization becomes more-likely-than-not as defined by accounting guidance. The Company periodically reviews assumptions and estimates of the Company's probable tax obligations using informed judgment, projections of income and losses, and historical experience.

Valuation of investments

Investments, primarily municipal bonds and mutual funds, are reviewed for impairment at each reporting period by comparing the carrying value or amortized cost to the fair market value. The Company may utilize third-party professional valuation firms as necessary to assist in the determination of the value of investments using a valuation model with Level 3 inputs as defined. In the event that an investment security's fair value is below carrying value or amortized cost, the Company will record an

other-than-temporary impairment or a temporary impairment based on accounting guidance. See above discussion and Note 10 regarding Jefferson County ARS.

Other matters

In the opinion of management, other than contracts for foreign currency forwards and raw materials, including currency and commodity hedges and outstanding purchase orders for packaging, ingredients, supplies, and operational services, all entered into in the ordinary course of business, the Company does not have any significant contractual obligations or future commitments. The Company's outstanding contractual commitments as of December 31, 2009, all of which are generally normal and generally recurring in nature, are summarized in the chart on page 13.

RECENT ACCOUNTING PRONOUNCEMENTS

In February 2008, the FASB delayed the effective date of guidance for non-financial assets and non-financial liabilities, except for items that are recognized or disclosed at fair value in the financial statements on a recurring basis until fiscal and interim periods beginning after November 15, 2008. The non-financial assets and non-financial liabilities for which the Company has applied the fair value provisions of this guidance include long-lived assets, goodwill and other intangible assets. See Note 10 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

During the first quarter of 2009, the Company adopted the authoritative guidance for disclosures about derivative instruments and hedging activities. It requires qualitative disclosures about objectives and strategies for using derivatives, quantitative disclosures about fair value amounts of derivative instruments and related gains and losses, and disclosures about credit-risk-related contingent features in derivative agreements. The adoption did not impact the Company's financial condition, results of operations or cash flow.

In April 2009, the FASB issued guidance on (1) estimating the fair value of an asset or liability when the volume and level of activity for the asset or liability have significantly decreased and (2) identifying transactions that are not orderly. It is effective for interim and annual periods ending after June 15, 2009. The Company's adoption of the guidance during second quarter 2009 did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In April 2009, the FASB amended the other-than-temporary impairment guidance for debt securities to make the guidance more operational and to improve the presentation and disclosure of other-than-temporary impairments on debt and equity securities. It is effective for interim and annual periods ending after June 15, 2009. The Company's adoption of the guidance during second quarter 2009 did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In April 2009, the FASB issued guidance which required disclosures about the fair value of financial instruments in interim reporting periods of publicly traded companies as well as in annual financial statements. It is effective for interim periods ending after June 15, 2009. The Company's adoption of the guidance during second quarter 2009 did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements. See Note 10 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

In May 2009, the FASB issued guidance which established general standards of accounting for, and disclosure of, events that occur after the balance sheet date but before financial statements are issued. It includes a requirement to disclose the date through which subsequent events were evaluated. See Note 1 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

In June 2009, the FASB issued guidance which establishes the FASB Accounting Standards Codification to become the source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles to be applied by non-governmental entities. It is effective for interim or annual financial periods ending after September 15, 2009. The Company adopted this guidance during the third quarter of fiscal year 2009.

MARKET RISKS

The Company is exposed to market risks related to commodity prices, interest rates, investments in marketable securities, equity price and foreign exchange.

The Company's ability to forecast the direction and scope of changes to its major input costs is impacted by significant volatility in crude oil, sugar, corn, soybean and edible oils, cocoa and dairy products markets. The prices of these commodities are influenced by changes in global demand, changes in weather and crop yields, changes in governments' farm policies, including mandates for bio-fuels and environmental matters, including global warming, and fluctuations in the U.S. dollar relative to dollar-denominated commodities in world markets. The Company believes that its competitors face the same or similar challenges.

In order to address the impact of rising input and other costs, the Company periodically reviews each item in its product portfolio to ascertain if price increases, weight declines (indirect price increases) or other actions may be taken. These reviews include an evaluation of the risk factors relating to market place acceptance of such changes and their potential effect on future sales volumes. In addition, the estimated cost of packaging modifications associated with weight changes is evaluated.

The Company also maintains ongoing cost reduction and productivity improvement programs under which cost savings initiatives are encouraged and progress monitored. The Company is not able to accurately predict the outcome of these cost savings initiatives and their effects on its future results.

Commodity future and foreign currency forward contracts

Commodity price risks relate to ingredients, primarily sugar, cocoa, chocolate, corn syrup, dextrose, soybean and edible oils, milk, whey and gum base ingredients. The Company believes its competitors face similar risks, and the industry has historically adjusted prices to compensate for adverse fluctuations in commodity costs. The Company, as well as competitors in the confectionery industry, have taken actions, including price increases and selective product weight declines (indirect price increases) to mitigate rising input costs for ingredients, energy, freight and delivery. Although management seeks to substantially recover cost increases over the long-term, there is risk that price increases and weight declines cannot be fully passed on to customers and, to the extent they are passed on, they could adversely affect customer and consumer acceptance and resulting sales volume.

The Company utilizes commodity futures contracts and options programs as well as annual supply agreements to hedge and plan for anticipated purchases of certain ingredients, including sugar, in order to mitigate commodity cost fluctuation. The Company also purchases forward foreign exchange contracts to hedge its costs of manufacturing certain products in Canada for sale and distribution in the United States, and periodically does so for purchases of equipment or raw materials from foreign suppliers. Such commodity futures and currency forward contracts are cash flow hedges and are effective as hedges as defined by accounting guidance. The unrealized gains and losses on such contracts are deferred as a component of accumulated other comprehensive loss and are recognized as a component of product cost of goods sold when the related inventory is sold. The Company has elected not to apply hedge accounting to commodity options contracts.

The potential change in fair value of commodity and foreign currency derivative instruments held by the Company at December 31, 2009, assuming a 10% change in the underlying contract price, was $3,018. The analysis only includes commodity and foreign currency derivative instruments and, therefore, does not consider the offsetting effect of changes in the price of the underlying commodity or foreign currency. This amount is not significant compared with the net earnings and shareholders' equity of the Company.

Interest rates

Interest rate risks primarily relate to the Company's investments in tax exempt marketable securities, including ARS, with maturities or auction dates of generally up to three years.

The majority of the Company's investments, which are classified as available for sale, have historically been held until they mature, which limits the Company's exposure to interest rate fluctuations. The accompanying chart summarizes the maturities of the Company's investments in debt securities at December 31, 2009.

Less than 1 year	$ 8,607
1–2 years	7,858
2–3 years	10,328
Over 3 years	7,710
Total	$34,503

The Company had no outstanding debt at December 31, 2009 or 2008 other than $7,500 in an industrial revenue bond in which interest rates reset each week based on the current market rate. Therefore, the Company does not believe that it has significant interest rate risk with respect to its interest bearing debt.

Investment in marketable securities

As stated above, the Company invests primarily in tax exempt marketable securities, including ARS, with maturities or auction dates generally up to three years. The Company utilizes professional money managers and maintains investment policy guidelines which emphasize quality and liquidity in order to minimize the potential loss exposures that could result in the event of a default or other adverse event, including failed auctions.

However, given events in the municipal bond and ARS markets, including failed auctions, the

Company continues to monitor these investments and markets, as well as its investment policies. Nonetheless, the financial markets have been experiencing unprecedented events, and future outcomes are less predictable than in the past.

Equity price

Equity price risk relates to the Company's investments in mutual funds which are principally used to fund and hedge the Company's deferred compensation liabilities. At December 31, 2009, the Company has investments in mutual funds, classified as trading securities, of $32,238. Any change in the fair value of these trading securities is completely offset by a corresponding change in the respective hedged deferred compensation liability.

Foreign currency exchange

Foreign currency exchange risk principally relates to the Company's foreign operations in Canada and Mexico, as well as periodic purchase commitments of machinery and equipment from foreign sources.

Certain of the Company's Canadian manufacturing costs, including local payroll and plant operations, and a portion of its packaging and ingredients are sourced in Canadian dollars. The Company purchases Canadian forward contracts to receive Canadian dollars at a specified date in the future and uses its Canadian dollar collections on Canadian sales as a partial hedge of its overall Canadian manufacturing obligations sourced in Canadian dollars. The Company also periodically purchases and holds Canadian dollars to facilitate the risk management of these currency changes.

From time to time the Company may use forward foreign exchange contracts and derivative instruments to mitigate its exposure to foreign exchange risks, as well as those related to firm commitments to purchase equipment from foreign vendors. As of December 31, 2009 the Company held foreign exchange forward contracts with a fair value of $3,674.

RISK FACTORS

The Company's operations and financial results are subject to a number of risks and uncertainties that could adversely affect the Company's operating results and financial condition. Significant risk factors, without limitations that could impact the Company are the following: (i) significant competitive activity, including advertising, promotional and price competition, and changes in consumer demand for the Company's products; (ii) fluctuations in the cost and availability of various ingredients and packaging materials; (iii) inherent risks in the marketplace, including uncertainties about trade and consumer acceptance and seasonal events such as Halloween; (iv) the effect of acquisitions on the Company's results of operations and financial condition; (v) the effect of changes in foreign currencies on the Company's foreign subsidiaries operating results, and the effect of the fluctuation of the Canadian dollar on products manufactured in Canada and marketed and sold in the United States in U.S. dollars; (vi) the Company's reliance on third party vendors for various goods and services; (vii) the Company's ability to successfully implement new production processes and lines; (viii) the effect of changes in assumptions, including discount rates, sales growth and profit margins and the capability to pass along higher ingredient and other input costs through price increases, relating to the Company's impairment testing and analysis of its goodwill and trademarks; (ix) changes in the confectionery marketplace

Open Contractual Commitments as of December 31, 2009

Payable in	Total	Less than 1 year	1 to 3 Years	3 to 5 Years	More than 5 Years
Commodity options	$12,405	$12,405	$ —	$ —	$ —
Foreign currency hedges	17,772	14,200	3,572	—	—
Purchase obligations	18,340	18,340	—	—	—
Interest bearing debt	7,500	—	—	—	7,500
Operating leases	3,281	1,058	1,139	723	361
Total	$59,298	$46,003	$4,711	$723	$7,861

Note: Commodity options and foreign currency hedges reflect the notional amounts. The above amounts exclude deferred income tax liabilities of $44,582, liabilities for uncertain tax positions of $21,101, postretirement health care and life insurance benefits of $16,674 and deferred compensation and other liabilities of $39,839 because the timing of payments relating to these items cannot be reasonably determined.

including actions taken by major retailers and customers; (x) customer, consumer and competitor response to marketing programs and price and product weight adjustments, and new products; (xi) dependence on significant customers, including the volume and timing of their purchases, and availability of shelf space; (xii) increases in energy costs, including freight and delivery, that cannot be passed along to customers through increased prices due to competitive reasons; (xiii) any significant labor stoppages, strikes or production interruptions; (xiv) changes in governmental laws and regulations including taxes and tariffs; (xv) the risk that the market value of Company's investments could decline including being classified as "other-than-temporary" as defined; and (xvi) the potential effects of current and future macroeconomic conditions.

Forward-looking statements

This discussion and certain other sections contain forward-looking statements that are based largely on the Company's current expectations and are made pursuant to the safe harbor provision of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. Forward-looking statements can be identified by the use of the words such as "anticipated," "believe," "expect," "intend," "estimate," "project," and other words of similar meaning in connection with a discussion of future operating or financial performance and are subject to certain factors, risks, trends and uncertainties that could cause actual results and achievements to differ materially from those expressed in the forward-looking statements. Such factors, risks, trends and uncertainties which in some instances are beyond the Company's control, including the overall competitive environment in the Company's industry, changes in assumptions and judgments discussed above under the heading "Significant Accounting Policies and Estimates", and factors identified and referred to above under the heading "Risk Factors."

The risk factors identified and referred to above are believed to be significant factors, but not necessarily all of the significant factors that could cause actual results to differ from those expressed in any forward-looking statement. Readers are cautioned not to place undue reliance on such forward-looking statements, which are made only as of the date of this report. The Company undertakes no obligation to update such forward-looking statements.

Management's Report on Internal Control and Management Certifications of Financial Statements

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 requires managers of publicly traded companies to establish and maintain systems of internal control on the company's financial reporting processes. In addition, the act requires the company's top management to provide certifications regarding the accuracy of the financial statements. The reports of Tootsie Roll are shown on page A-17.

Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

The management of Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc. is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting, as such term is defined in the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (SEC) Rule 13a-15(f). Our management conducted an evaluation of the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2009 as required by SEC Rule 13a-15(c). In making this assessment, we used the criteria established in *Internal Control—Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (the COSO criteria). Based on our evaluation under the COSO criteria, our management concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was effective as of December 31, 2009.

The effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2009 has been audited by PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report which appears on page 27.

Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.

Chicago, Illinois
March 1, 2010

Financial Statements and Accompanying Notes

The standard set of financial statements consists of: (1) a comparative income statement for three years, (2) a comparative balance sheet for two years, (3) a comparative statement of cash flows for three years, (4) a statement of retained earnings (or stockholders' equity) for three years, and (5) a set of accompanying notes that are considered an integral part of the financial statements. The auditor's report, unless stated otherwise, covers the financial statements and the accompanying notes. The financial statements and accompanying notes plus some supplementary data and analyses for Tootsie Roll Industries follow.

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF

Financial Position

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES (in thousands)

Assets

	December 31, 2009	December 31, 2008
CURRENT ASSETS:		
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 90,990	$ 68,908
Investments	8,663	17,963
Accounts receivable trade, less allowances of $2,356 and $1,923	37,512	31,213
Other receivables	8,397	2,983
Inventories:		
Finished goods and work-in-process	35,570	34,862
Raw materials and supplies	20,817	20,722
Prepaid expenses	8,562	11,328
Deferred income taxes	1,367	609
Total current assets	211,878	188,588
PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT, at cost:		
Land	21,559	19,307
Buildings	102,374	89,077
Machinery and equipment	296,787	279,100
Construction in progress	6,877	20,701
	427,597	408,185
Less—Accumulated depreciation	206,876	190,557
Net property, plant and equipment	220,721	217,628
OTHER ASSETS:		
Goodwill	73,237	73,237
Trademarks	175,024	189,024
Investments	58,136	49,809
Split dollar officer life insurance	74,642	74,808
Prepaid expenses	8,068	10,333
Investment in joint venture	4,961	9,274
Deferred income taxes	11,580	824
Total other assets	405,648	407,309
Total assets	$838,247	$813,525

(The accompanying notes are an integral part of these statements.)

(in thousands except per share data)

Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity

	December 31, 2009	2008
CURRENT LIABILITIES:		
Accounts payable	$ 9,140	$ 13,885
Dividends payable	4,458	4,401
Accrued liabilities	42,468	40,335
Total current liabilities	56,066	58,621
NONCURRENT LIABILITES:		
Deferred income taxes	44,582	45,410
Postretirement health care and life insurance benefits	16,674	15,468
Industrial development bonds	7,500	7,500
Liability for uncertain tax positions	21,101	19,412
Deferred compensation and other liabilities	39,839	32,344
Total noncurrent liabilities	129,696	120,134
SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY:		
Common stock, $.69-4/9 par value— 120,000 shares authorized— 35,802 and 35,658, respectively, issued	24,862	24,762
Class B common stock, $.69-4/9 par value— 40,000 shares authorized— 19,919 and 19,357, respectively, issued	13,833	13,442
Capital in excess of par value	482,250	470,927
Retained earnings, per accompanying statement	145,928	142,872
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(12,396)	(15,241)
Treasury stock (at cost)— 67 shares and 65 shares, respectively	(1,992)	(1,992)
Total shareholders' equity	652,485	634,770
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	$838,247	$813,525

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF

Earnings, Comprehensive Earnings and Retained Earnings

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES

(in thousands except per share data)

	For the year ended December 31,		
	2009	2008	2007
Net product sales	$495,592	$492,051	$492,742
Rental and royalty revenue	3,739	3,965	4,975
Total revenue	499,331	496,016	497,717
Product cost of goods sold	318,645	333,314	327,695
Rental and royalty cost	852	921	1,349
Total costs	319,497	334,235	329,044
Product gross margin	176,947	158,737	165,047
Rental and royalty gross margin	2,887	3,044	3,626
Total gross margin	179,834	161,781	168,673
Selling, marketing and administrative expenses	103,755	95,254	97,821
Impairment charges	14,000	—	—
Earnings from operations	62,079	66,527	70,852
Other income (expense), net	2,100	(10,618)	6,315
Earnings before income taxes	64,179	55,909	77,167
Provision for income taxes	10,704	17,132	25,542
Net earnings	$ 53,475	$ 38,777	$ 51,625
Net earnings	$ 53,475	$ 38,777	$ 51,625
Other comprehensive earnings (loss)	2,845	(3,514)	810
Comprehensive earnings	$ 56,320	$ 35,263	$ 52,435
Retained earnings at beginning of year	$142,872	$156,752	$169,233
Net earnings	53,475	38,777	51,625
Cash dividends	(17,790)	(17,492)	(17,421)
Stock dividends	(32,629)	(35,165)	(46,685)
Retained earnings at end of year	$145,928	$142,872	$156,752
Earnings per share	$ 0.95	$ 0.68	$ 0.89
Average Common and Class B Common shares outstanding	56,072	56,799	58,227

(The accompanying notes are an integral part of these statements.)

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF

Cash Flows

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES (in thousands)

	For the year ended December 31,		
	2009	2008	2007
CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES:			
Net earnings	$ 53,475	$ 38,777	$ 51,625
Adjustments to reconcile net earnings to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Depreciation	17,862	17,036	15,859
Impairment charges	14,000	—	—
Impairment of equity investment in joint venture	4,400	—	—
Loss from joint venture	233	477	—
Return on investment in joint venture	—	—	1,419
Other than temporary impairment	—	5,140	—
Amortization of marketable securities	320	396	521
Purchase of trading securities	(1,713)	(491)	(84)
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Accounts receivable	(5,899)	(261)	2,591
Other receivables	(2,088)	(33)	7
Inventories	(675)	1,352	6,506
Prepaid expenses and other assets	5,203	(15,139)	283
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	(2,755)	967	(3,234)
Income taxes payable and deferred	(11,731)	8,642	13,481
Postretirement health care and life insurance benefits	1,028	3,394	1,272
Deferred compensation and other liabilities	3,316	(2,385)	(12)
Other	305	(830)	(170)
Net cash provided by operating activities	75,281	57,042	90,064
CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES:			
Proceeds from sale of real estate and other assets	—	—	434
Return of investment in joint venture	—	—	1,206
Capital expenditures	(20,831)	(34,355)	(14,767)
Purchase of available for sale securities	(11,331)	(33,977)	(59,132)
Sale and maturity of available for sale securities	17,511	61,258	28,914
Net cash used in investing activities	(14,651)	(7,074)	(43,345)
CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES:			
Shares repurchased and retired	(20,723)	(21,109)	(27,300)
Dividends paid in cash	(17,825)	(17,557)	(17,542)
Net cash used in financing activities	(38,548)	(38,666)	(44,842)
Increase in cash and cash equivalents	22,082	11,302	1,877
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of year	68,908	57,606	55,729
Cash and cash equivalents at end of year	$ 90,990	$ 68,908	$ 57,606
Supplemental cash flow information:			
Income taxes paid	$ 22,364	$ 12,728	$ 11,343
Interest paid	$ 182	$ 252	$ 537
Stock dividend issued	$ 32,538	$ 35,042	$ 46,520

(The accompanying notes are an integral part of these statements.)

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES ($ in thousands except per share data)

NOTE 1—SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES:

Basis of consolidation:

The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc. and its wholly-owned subsidiaries (the Company), which are primarily engaged in the manufacture and sales of candy products. All significant intercompany transactions have been eliminated.

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

Certain reclassifications have been made to the prior year financial statements to conform to the current year presentation.

Revenue recognition:

Products are sold to customers based on accepted purchase orders which include quantity, sales price and other relevant terms of sale. Revenue, net of applicable provisions for discounts, returns, allowances and certain advertising and promotional costs, is recognized when products are delivered to customers and collectability is reasonably assured. Shipping and handling costs of $38,628, $45,570, and $41,775 in 2009, 2008 and 2007, respectively, are included in selling, marketing and administrative expenses. Accounts receivable are unsecured. Revenues from a major customer aggregated approximately 22.9%, 23.5% and 22.4% of net product sales during the years ended December 31, 2009, 2008 and 2007, respectively.

Cash and cash equivalents:

The Company considers temporary cash investments with an original maturity of three months or less to be cash equivalents.

Investments:

Investments consist of various marketable securities with maturities of generally up to three years. The Company classifies debt and equity securities as either available for sale or trading. Available for sale are not actively traded and are carried at fair value. The Company follows current fair value measurement guidance and unrealized gains and losses on these securities are excluded from earnings and are reported as a separate component of shareholders' equity, net of applicable taxes, until realized. Trading securities relate to deferred compensation arrangements and are carried at fair value. The Company invests in trading securities to economically hedge changes in its deferred compensation liabilities.

The Company regularly reviews its investments to determine whether a decline in fair value below the cost basis is other than temporary. If the decline in fair value is judged to be other than temporary, the cost basis of the security is written down to fair value and the amount of the write-down is included in other income (expense), net. Further information regarding the fair value of the Company's investments is included in Note 10 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

Derivative instruments and hedging activities:

During the first quarter of 2009, the Company adopted the new authoritative guidance for disclosures about derivative instruments and hedging activities. This guidance requires qualitative disclosures about objectives and strategies for using derivatives, quantitative disclosures about fair value amounts of derivative instruments and related gains and losses, and disclosures about credit-risk-related contingent features in derivative agreements. The adoption of this standard did not impact the Company's consolidated financial statements.

From time to time, the Company enters into futures contracts. Commodity futures are intended and are effective as hedges of market price risks associated with the anticipated purchase of certain raw materials (primarily sugar). Foreign currency forward contracts are intended and are effective as hedges of the Company's exposure to the variability of cash flows, primarily related to the foreign exchange rate changes of products manufactured in Canada and sold in the United States, and periodic equipment purchases from foreign suppliers denominated in a foreign currency. The Company does not engage in trading or other speculative use of derivative instruments.

The Company's foreign currency forward contracts are accounted for as cash flow hedges and are recorded on the balance sheet at fair value. Changes therein are recorded in accumulated other comprehensive loss, net of tax, and are reclassified to earnings in the periods in which earnings are affected by the hedged item. Realized gains/losses are recorded as foreign exchange gains/losses in other income (expense), net.

As of December 31, 2009, the Company had foreign currency forward contracts outstanding with a notional amount of $17,772 that hedged its exposure to changes in foreign currency exchange rates for its costs of manufacturing certain products in Canada for the U.S. market. The fair value of foreign currency forward contracts, using Level 1 inputs, as discussed in Note 10, resulted in an asset of $3,674 as of December 31, 2009 which is included in other receivables. In entering into these contracts, the Company has assumed the risk that might arise from the possible inability of counterparties to meet the terms of their contracts and does not expect any significant losses from counterparty defaults.

During 2009, the Company recorded $3,365 of net derivative gains in accumulated other comprehensive loss which is a component of shareholders' equity in the statement of financial position. The Company also recognized a gain of $989, related to foreign currency contracts settled during 2009. At December 31, 2009, the Company expects to reclassify existing net gains of approximately $1,871 from accumulated other comprehensive loss to net earnings during the next twelve months.

As of December 31, 2009, the Company had commodity options contracts with a notional value of $12,405. These options have not been designated as hedges. The fair value of $1,686 is included in other receivables. In 2009 the Company recorded a gain of $1,562 in cost of goods sold.

Inventories:

Inventories are stated at cost, not to exceed market. The cost of substantially all of the Company's inventories ($53,724 and $53,557 at December 31, 2009 and 2008, respectively) has been determined by the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method. The excess of current cost over LIFO cost of inventories approximates $13,107 and $12,432 at December 31, 2009 and 2008, respectively. The cost of certain foreign inventories ($2,663 and $2,027 at December 31, 2009 and 2008, respectively) has been determined by the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method. Rebates, discounts and other cash consideration received from vendors related to inventory purchases is reflected as a reduction in the cost of the related inventory item, and is therefore reflected in cost of sales when the related inventory item is sold.

Property, plant and equipment:

Depreciation is computed for financial reporting purposes by use of the straight-line method based on useful lives of 20 to 35 years for buildings and 5 to 20 years for machinery and equipment. Depreciation expense was $17,862, $17,036 and $15,859 in 2009, 2008 and 2007, respectively.

Carrying value of long-lived assets:

The Company reviews long-lived assets to determine if there are events or circumstances indicating that the amount of the asset reflected in the Company's balance sheet may not be recoverable. When such indicators are present, the Company compares the carrying value of the long-lived asset, or asset group, to the future undiscounted cash flows of the underlying assets to determine if an impairment exists. If applicable, an impairment charge would be recorded to write down the carrying value to its fair value. The determination of fair value involves the use of estimates of future cash flows that involve considerable management judgment and are based upon assumptions about expected future operating performance. The actual cash flows could differ from management's estimates due to changes in business conditions, operating performance, and economic conditions. No impairment charges of long-lived assets were recorded by the Company during 2009, 2008 and 2007.

Postretirement health care and life insurance benefits:

The Company provides certain postretirement health care and life insurance benefits. The cost of these postretirement benefits is accrued during employees' working careers. The Company also provides split dollar life benefits to certain executive officers. The Company records an asset equal to the cumulative insurance premiums paid that will be recovered upon the death of a covered employee(s) or earlier under the terms of the plan. Split dollar premiums paid were $1,586 in 2007. No premiums were paid in 2009 and 2008.

Goodwill and intangible assets:

In accordance with authoritative guidance, goodwill and intangible assets with indefinite lives are not amortized, but rather tested for impairment at least annually unless certain interim triggering events or circumstances require more frequent testing. All trademarks have been assessed by management to have indefinite lives because they are expected to generate cash flows indefinitely. The Company has completed its annual impairment testing of its goodwill and trademarks at December 31 of each of the years presented. As of December 31, 2009, management ascertained that certain trademarks were impaired, and recorded a pre-tax charge of $14,000. No impairments of intangibles were recorded in 2008 and 2007.

This determination is made by comparing the carrying value of the asset with its estimated fair value, which is calculated using estimates including discounted projected future cash flows. Management believes that all assumptions used for the impairment tests are consistent with those utilized by market participants performing similar valuations.

Income taxes:

Deferred income taxes are recorded and recognized for future tax effects of temporary differences between financial and income tax reporting. The Company records valuation allowances in situations where the realization of deferred tax assets is not more–likely-than-not. Federal income taxes

are provided on the portion of income of foreign subsidiaries that is expected to be remitted to the U.S. and become taxable, but not on the portion that is considered to be permanently invested in the foreign subsidiary.

Foreign currency translation:

The U.S. dollar is used as the functional currency where a substantial portion of the subsidiary's business is indexed to the U.S. dollar or where its manufactured products are principally sold in the U.S. All other foreign subsidiaries use the local currency as their functional currency. Where the U.S. dollar is used as the functional currency, foreign currency remeasurements are recorded as a charge or credit to other income (expense), net in the statement of earnings. Where the foreign local currency is used as the functional currency, translation adjustments are recorded as a separate component of accumulated other comprehensive (loss).

Joint venture:

The Company's 50% interest in two companies is accounted for using the equity method. The Company records an increase in its investment in the joint venture to the extent of its share of the joint venture's earnings, and reduces its investment to the extent of losses and dividends received. A dividend of $861 was paid in 2007 by the joint venture. No dividends were paid in 2009 and 2008.

As of December 31, 2009, management determined that the fair value of the asset was less than the carrying value. As a result, the Company recorded a pre-tax impairment charge $4,400 in the fourth quarter 2009, resulting in an adjusted carrying value of $4,961 as of December 31, 2009. The fair value was primarily assessed using the present value of estimated future cash flows.

Comprehensive earnings:

Comprehensive earnings includes net earnings, foreign currency translation adjustments and unrealized gains/losses on commodity and/or foreign currency hedging contracts, available for sale securities and certain postretirement benefit obligations.

Earnings per share:

A dual presentation of basic and diluted earnings per share is not required due to the lack of potentially dilutive securities under the Company's simple capital structure. Therefore, all earnings per share amounts represent basic earnings per share.

The Class B Common Stock has essentially the same rights as Common Stock, except that each share of Class B Common Stock has ten votes per share (compared to one vote per share of Common Stock), is not traded on any exchange, is restricted as to transfer and is convertible on a share-for-share basis, at any time and at no cost to the holders, into shares of Common Stock which are traded on the New Stock Exchange.

Use of estimates:

The preparation of consolidated financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the U.S. requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported. Estimates are used when accounting for sales discounts, allowances and incentives, product liabilities, assets recorded at fair value, income taxes, depreciation, amortization, employee benefits, contingencies and intangible asset and liability valuations. For instance, in determining the annual post-employment benefit costs, the Company estimates the cost of future health care benefits. Actual results may or may not differ from those estimates.

Recent accounting pronouncements:

In February 2008, the FASB delayed the effective date of guidance for non-financial assets and non-financial liabilities, except for items that are recognized or disclosed at fair value in the financial statements on a recurring basis until fiscal and interim periods beginning after November 15, 2008. The non-financial assets and non-financial liabilities for which the Company has applied the fair value provisions of this guidance include long lived assets, goodwill and other intangible assets. See Note 10 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

During the first quarter of 2009 the Company adopted the authoritative guidance for disclosures about derivative instruments and hedging activities. It requires qualitative disclosures about objectives and strategies for using derivatives, quantitative disclosures about fair value amounts of derivative instruments and related gains and losses, and disclosures about credit-risk-related contingent features in derivative agreements. The adoption did not impact the Company's financial condition, results of operations or cash flow.

In April 2009, the FASB issued guidance on (1) estimating the fair value of an asset or liability when the volume and level of activity for the asset or liability have significantly decreased and (2) identifying transactions that are not orderly. It is effective for interim and annual periods ending after June 15, 2009. The Company's adoption of the guidance during second quarter 2009 did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In April 2009, the FASB amended the other-than-temporary impairment guidance for debt securities to make the guidance more operational and to improve the presentation and disclosure of other-than-temporary impairments on debt and equity securities. It is effective for interim and annual periods ending after June 15, 2009. The Company's adoption of the guidance during second quarter 2009 did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In April 2009, the FASB issued guidance which required disclosures about the fair value of financial instruments in interim reporting periods of publicly traded companies as well as in annual financial statements. It is effective for interim periods ending after June 15, 2009. The Company's adoption of the guidance during second quarter 2009 did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements. See Note 10 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

In May 2009, the FASB issued guidance which established general standards of accounting for, and disclosure of, events that occur after the balance sheet date but before financial statements are issued. It includes a requirement to disclose the date through which subsequent events were evaluated. See Note 1 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

In June 2009, the FASB issued guidance which establishes the FASB Accounting Standards Codification to become the source of authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles to be applied by non-governmental entities. It is effective for interim or annual financial periods ending after September 15, 2009. The Company adopted this guidance during the third quarter of fiscal year 2009.

NOTE 2—ACCRUED LIABILITIES:

Accrued liabilities are comprised of the following:

	December 31,	
	2009	2008
Compensation	$ 9,254	$11,028
Other employee benefits	2,309	2,552
Taxes, other than income	1,899	1,755
Advertising and promotions	19,350	17,345
Other	9,656	7,655
	$42,468	$40,335

NOTE 3—INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT BONDS:

Industrial development bonds are due in 2027. The average floating interest rate was 0.5% and 2.6% in 2009 and 2008, respectively. See Note 10 to the Consolidated Financial Statements for fair value disclosures.

NOTE 4—INCOME TAXES:

The domestic and foreign components of pretax income are as follows:

	2009	2008	2007
Domestic	$69,779	$50,313	$69,250
Foreign	(5,600)	5,596	7,917
	$64,179	$55,909	$77,167

The provision for income taxes is comprised of the following:

	2009	2008	2007
Current:			
Federal	$22,239	$ 6,856	$21,785
Foreign	500	502	(702)
State	1,665	355	737
	24,404	7,713	21,820
Deferred:			
Federal	(23)	8,733	2,671
Foreign	(12,987)	264	918
State	(690)	422	133
	(13,700)	9,419	3,722
	$10,704	$17,132	$25,542

Significant components of the Company's net deferred tax liability at year end were as follows:

	December 31,	
	2009	2008
Deferred tax assets:		
Accrued customer promotions	$ 4,475	$4,299
Deferred compensation	10,667	9,788
Postretirement benefits	5,983	5,447
Other accrued expenses	5,705	4,785
Foreign subsidiary tax loss carry forward	14,001	6,068
Tax credit carry forward	1,286	2,540
Unrealized capital loss	6,393	1,799
	48,510	34,726
Valuation reserve	(912)	(8,506)
Total deferred tax assets	$47,598	$26,220
Deferred tax liabilities:		
Depreciation	$29,657	$23,696
Deductible goodwill and trademarks	30,585	25,292
Accrued export company commissions	4,179	4,313
Employee benefit plans	4,437	5,614
Inventory reserves	2,311	2,463
Prepaid insurance	363	392
Accounts receivable	57	455
Deferred gain on sale of real estate	7,644	7,972
Total deferred tax liabilities	$79,233	$70,197
Net deferred tax liability	$31,635	$43,977

At December 31, 2009, the tax benefits of foreign subsidiary tax loss carry forwards expiring by year are as follows: $1,083 in 2014, $2,586 in 2015, $354 in 2026, $619 in 2027, $6,365 in 2028, and $2,994 in 2029.

Also at December 31, 2009, the amounts of the foreign subsidiary tax credit carry forwards expiring by year are as follows: $152 in 2010, $152 in 2011, $152 in 2012, $152 in 2013, $152 in 2014, $152 in 2015, $222 in 2016 and $152 in 2017. A valuation allowance has been established for these carry forward credits to reduce the future income tax benefits to amounts expected to be realized.

The effective income tax rate differs from the statutory rate as follows:

	2009	2008	2007
U.S. statutory rate	35.0%	35.0%	35.0%
State income taxes, net	1.7	1.0	0.9
Exempt municipal bond interest	(0.6)	(1.9)	(1.4)
Foreign tax rates	(4.8)	(0.7)	(1.6)
Release of prior period valuation allowances	(13.1)	—	—
Qualified domestic production activities deduction	(2.0)	(1.4)	(1.9)
Tax credits receivable	(0.4)	(1.3)	—
Reserve for uncertain tax benefits	1.9	0.6	1.3
Other, net	(1.0)	(0.7)	0.8
Effective income tax rate	16.7%	30.6%	33.1%

In connection with the acquisition in 2004 of Concord Confections, a Canadian subsidiary, the Company established an inter-company financing structure which included a loan from the U.S. parent to the Canadian subsidiary. By December of 2006, significant operating losses had accumulated in Canada and management determined that the realization of the net operating loss carry forward benefits was not more-likely-than-not, and provided a full tax valuation allowance. Consistent with relevant accounting guidance, these benefits continued to be reserved through 2008 and through the third quarter of 2009.

In December of 2008, a new U.S./Canada income tax treaty (Treaty) was ratified which effectively denies certain inter-company interest benefits to the U.S. shareholder of a Canadian company. Accordingly, in December of 2009, the Company decided to recapitalize its Canadian operations effective January 1, 2010. During the fourth quarter of 2009, the Company considered of all the evidence and relevant accounting guidance related to this recapitalization and based on reasonable assumptions, the Company concluded that it was more-likely-than-not that it would realize substantially all of the deferred tax assets related to the Canadian net operating loss carry forward benefits because it is expected that sufficient levels of income will be generated in the foreseeable future. As a result, the Company released $8.4 million of prior period valuation allowances and $2.3 million of allowances that were provided through the first nine months of 2009.

The Treaty also introduced a phase out of the withholding tax on payments from Canada to the U.S. allowing the Company to qualify for a zero percent withholding rate in 2010 if certain requirements of the Treaty were met. On January 4, 2010, the Canadian subsidiary repaid accrued interest to its U.S. parent in a manner consistent with these requirements. As a result, $1.5 million of withholding taxes accrued for 2007 and 2008 and through the third quarter of 2009 were released in the fourth quarter of 2009.

The Company has not provided for U.S. federal or foreign withholding taxes on $5,294 and $3,445 of foreign subsidiaries' undistributed earnings as of December 31, 2009 and December 31, 2008, respectively, because such earnings are considered to be permanently reinvested. It is not practicable to determine the amount of income taxes that would be payable upon remittance of the undistributed earnings.

The Company adopted the provisions of the authoritative guidance relating to unrecognized tax benefits effective January 1, 2007. The Company recognizes interest and penalties related to unrecognized tax benefits in the provision for income taxes on the Consolidated Statements of Earnings.

At December 31, 2009 and 2008, the Company had unrecognized tax benefits of $16,816 and $15,138, respectively. Included in this balance is $8,819 and $7,727, respectively, of unrecognized tax benefits that, if recognized, would favorably affect the annual effective income tax rate. As of December 31, 2009 and 2008, $4,285 and $4,274, respectively, of interest and penalties were included in the Liability for Uncertain Tax Positions.

A reconciliation of the beginning and ending balances of the total amounts of unrecognized tax benefits is as follows:

	2009	2008	2007
Unrecognized tax benefits at January 1	$15,138	$15,867	$14,987
Increases in tax positions for the current year	3,414	1,404	1,895
Reductions in tax positions for lapse of statute of limitations	(890)	(1,225)	(1,015)
Reductions in tax positions for effective settlements	(846)	(908)	—
Unrecognized tax benefits at December 31	$16,816	$15,138	$15,867

The Company is subject to taxation in the U.S. and various state and foreign jurisdictions. The Company remains subject to examination by U.S. federal and state and foreign tax authorities for the years 2006 through 2008. With few exceptions, the Company is no longer subject to examinations by tax authorities for the year 2005 and prior.

The Company is not currently subject to a U.S. federal examination. The Company's Canadian subsidiary is currently subject to examination by the Canada Revenue Agency for tax years 2005 and 2006. The Company is unable to determine the outcome of the examination at this time. In addition, the Company is currently subject to various state tax examinations. One of those state examinations has been effectively settled and the corresponding liability for unrecognized tax benefits has been reduced. Although the Company is unable to determine the ultimate outcome of the ongoing examinations, the Company believes that its liability for uncertain tax positions relating to these jurisdictions for such years is adequate.

Beginning in 2008, statutory income tax rates in Canada will be reduced five percentage points with the final rate reduction coming in 2014. Accordingly, the Company's Canadian subsidiary has revalued its deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the rate in effect for the year the differences are expected to reverse. Additional deferred tax expense of $1.5 million was recognized during the current period.

NOTE 5—SHARE CAPITAL AND CAPITAL IN EXCESS OF PAR VALUE:

	Common Stock		Class B Common Stock		Treasury Stock		Capital in Excess of Par Value
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	
	(000's)		(000's)		(000's)		
Balance at January 1, 2007	35,364	$24,558	18,390	$12,771	(62)	$(1,992)	$438,648
Issuance of 3% stock dividend	1,056	733	550	383	(1)	—	45,404
Conversion of Class B common shares to common shares	48	34	(48)	(34)	—	—	—
Purchase and retirement of common shares	(1,064)	(739)	—	—	—	—	(26,561)
Balance at December 31, 2007	35,404	24,586	18,892	13,120	(63)	(1,992)	457,491
Issuance of 3% stock dividend	1,043	724	565	391	(2)	—	33,927
Conversion of Class B common shares to common shares	100	69	(100)	(69)	—	—	—
Purchase and retirement of common shares	(889)	(617)	—	—	—	—	(20,491)
Balance at December 31, 2008	35,658	24,762	19,357	13,442	(65)	(1,992)	470,927
Issuance of 3% stock dividend	1,064	739	580	403	(2)	—	31,396
Conversion of Class B common shares to common shares	18	12	(18)	(12)	—	—	—
Purchase and retirement of common shares	(938)	(651)	—	—	—	—	(20,073)
Balance at December 31, 2009	35,802	$24,862	19,919	$13,833	(67)	$(1,992)	$482,250

Average shares outstanding and all per share amounts included in the financial statements and notes thereto have been adjusted retroactively to reflect annual three percent stock dividends.

While the company does not have a formal or publicly announced stock repurchase program, the Company's board of directors periodically authorizes a dollar amount for share repurchases.

Based upon this policy, shares were purchased and retired as follows:

Year	Total Number of Shares Purchased	Average Price Paid Per Share
2009	938	$22.05
2008	889	$23.71
2007	1,064	$25.61

NOTE 6—OTHER INCOME (EXPENSE), NET:

Other income (expense), net is comprised of the following:

	2009	2008	2007
Interest and dividend income	$1,439	$ 3,451	$3,497
Gains (losses) on trading securities relating to deferred compensation plans	4,524	(7,334)	1,998
Interest expense	(243)	(378)	(535)
Impairment of equity investment in joint venture	(4,400)	—	—
Joint venture income (loss)	(233)	(477)	182
Foreign exchange gains (losses)	951	(963)	656
Other than temporary impairment	—	(5,140)	—
Capital gains (losses)	(38)	88	228
Insurance recovery	—	—	128
Miscellaneous, net	100	135	161
	$2,100	$(10,618)	$6,315

As of December 31, 2009, management determined that the carrying value of an equity investment in a joint venture was impaired as a result of accumulated losses from operations and review of future expectations. The Company recorded a pre-tax impairment charge of $4,400 resulting in an adjusted carrying value of $4,961 as of December 31, 2009. The fair value was primarily assessed using the present value of estimated future cash flows.

NOTE 7—EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS:

Pension plans:

The Company sponsors defined contribution pension plans covering certain non-union employees with over one year of credited service. The Company's policy is to fund pension costs accrued based on compensation levels. Total pension expense for 2009, 2008 and 2007 approximated $4,178, $3,944 and $3,589, respectively. The Company also maintains certain profit sharing and retirement savings-investment plans. Company contributions in 2009, 2008 and 2007 to these plans were $1,011, $1,003 and $873, respectively.

The Company also contributes to multi-employer defined benefit pension plans for its union employees. Such contributions aggregated $1,633, $1,392 and $1,257 in 2009, 2008 and 2007, respectively. Although the Company has been advised that the plan is currently in an underfunded status, the relative position of each employer associated with the multi-employer plan with respect to the actuarial present value of benefits and net plan assets is not determinable by the Company.

Deferred compensation:

The Company sponsors three deferred compensation plans for selected executives and other employees: (i) the Excess Benefit Plan, which restores retirement benefits lost

due to IRS limitations on contributions to tax-qualified plans, (ii) the Supplemental Plan, which allows eligible employees to defer the receipt of eligible compensation until designated future dates and (iii) the Career Achievement Plan, which provides a deferred annual incentive award to selected executives. Participants in these plans earn a return on amounts due them based on several investment options, which mirror returns on underlying investments (primarily mutual funds). The Company economically hedges its obligations under the plans by investing in the actual underlying investments. These investments are classified as trading securities and are carried at fair value. At December 31, 2009 and 2008, these investments totaled $32,238 and $26,001, respectively. All gains and losses in these investments, which are recorded in other income (expense), net, are equally offset by corresponding increases and decreases in the Company's deferred compensation liabilities. The Company recorded a gain of $4,524 in 2009 and a loss of $7,334 in 2008 on these investments.

Postretirement health care and life insurance benefit plans:

The Company provides certain postretirement health care and life insurance benefits for corporate office and management employees. Employees become eligible for these benefits based upon their age, service and date of hire and if they agree to contribute a portion of the cost. The Company has the right to modify or terminate these benefits. The Company does not fund postretirement health care and life insurance benefits in advance of payments for benefit claims.

Amounts recognized in accumulated other comprehensive loss (pre-tax) at December 31, 2009 are as follows:

Prior service credit	$ (877)
Net actuarial loss	2,523
Net amount recognized in accumulated other comprehensive loss	$1,646

The estimated actuarial loss and prior service credit to be amortized from accumulated other comprehensive income into net periodic benefit cost during 2010 are $253 and $(125), respectively.

The changes in the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation at December 31, 2009 and 2008 consist of the following:

	December 31,	
	2009	2008
Benefit obligation, beginning of year	$15,468	$13,214
Service cost	704	646
Interest cost	853	740
Actuarial (gain)/loss	(38)	1,172
Benefits paid	(313)	(304)
Benefit obligation, end of year	$16,674	$15,468

Net periodic postretirement benefit cost included the following components:

	2009	2008	2007
Service cost—benefits attributed to service during the period	$ 704	$ 646	$ 667
Interest cost on the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation	853	740	694
Net amortization	140	33	90
Net periodic postretirement benefit cost	$1,697	$1,419	$1,451

For measurement purposes, the 2010 annual rate of increase in the per capita cost of covered health care benefits was assumed to be 6.0% for pre-age 65 retirees, 7.5% for post 65 retirees and 9.0% for prescription drugs; these rates were assumed to decrease gradually to 5.0% for 2014 and remain at that level thereafter. The health care cost trend rate assumption has a significant effect on the amounts reported. The weighted-average discount rate used in determining the accumulated postretirement benefit obligation was 5.84% and 5.6% at December 31, 2009 and 2008, respectively.

Increasing or decreasing the health care trend rates by one percentage point in each year would have the following effect:

	1% Increase	1% Decrease
Postretirement benefit obligation	$2,337	$(1,930)
Total of service and interest cost components	$ 258	$ (209)

The company estimates future benefit payments will be $539, $584, $693, $782 and $911 in 2010 through 2014, respectively, and a total of $5,976 in 2015 through 2019. The future benefit payments are net of the annual Medicare Part D subsidy of approximately $1,062 beginning in 2010.

NOTE 8—COMMITMENTS:

Rental expense aggregated $1,180, $1,311 and $1,090 in 2009, 2008 and 2007, respectively.

Future operating lease commitments are not significant.

NOTE 9—SEGMENT AND GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION:

The Company operates as a single reportable segment encompassing the manufacture and sale of confectionery products. Its principal manufacturing operations are located in the United States and Canada, and its principal market is the United States. The company also manufactures and sells confectionery products in Mexico, and exports products to Canada and other countries worldwide.

The following geographic data include net product sales summarized on the basis of the customer location and long-lived assets based on their physical location.

	2009	2008	2007
Net product sales:			
United States	$455,517	$448,268	$445,820
Foreign	40,075	43,783	46,922
	$495,592	$492,051	$492,742
Long-lived assets:			
United States	$176,044	$172,299	$155,340
Foreign	44,677	45,329	46,061
	$220,721	$217,628	$201,401

NOTE 10—FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS:

Current accounting guidance defines fair value as the price that would be received in the sale of an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. Guidance requires disclosure of the extent to which fair value is used to measure financial assets and liabilities, the inputs utilized in calculating valuation measurements, and the effect of the measurement of significant unobservable inputs on earnings, or changes in net assets, as of the measurement date. Guidance establishes a three-level valuation hierarchy based upon the transparency of inputs utilized in the measurement and valuation of financial assets or liabilities as of the measurement date. Level 1 inputs include quoted prices for identical instruments and are the most observable. Level 2 inputs include quoted prices for similar assets and observable inputs such as interest rates, foreign currency exchange rates, commodity rates and yield curves. Level 3 inputs are not observable in the market and include management's own judgments about the assumptions market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability. The use of observable and unobservable inputs is reflected in the hierarchy assessment disclosed in the table below.

As of December 31, 2009 and 2008, the Company held certain financial assets that are required to be measured at fair value on a recurring basis. These included derivative hedging instruments related to the foreign currency forward contracts and purchase of certain raw materials, investments in trading securities and available for sale securities, including an auction rate security (ARS). The Company's available for sale and trading securities principally consist of municipal bonds and mutual funds that are publicly traded.

The following tables present information about the Company's financial assets measured at fair value as of December 31, 2009 and 2008, and indicate the fair value hierarchy and the valuation techniques utilized by the Company to determine such fair value:

	Estimated Fair Value December 31, 2009			
	Total Fair Value	Input Levels Used		
		Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Cash and equivalents	$ 90,990	$ 90,990	$ —	$ —
Auction rate security (ARS)	7,710	—	—	7,710
Available-for-sale securities, excluding ARS	26,851	—	26,851	—
Foreign currency forward contracts	3,674	3,674	—	—
Commodity option contracts	1,686	1,686	—	—
Trading securities	32,238	32,238	—	—
Total assets measured at fair value	$163,149	$128,588	$26,851	$7,710

	Estimated Fair Value December 31, 2008			
	Total Fair Value	Input Levels Used		
		Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Cash and equivalents	$ 68,908	$68,908	$ —	$ —
Auction rate security (ARS)	8,410	—	—	8,410
Available-for-sale securities excluding ARS	33,361	—	33,361	—
Foreign currency forward contracts	349	349	—	—
Trading securities	26,001	26,001	—	—
Total assets measured at fair value	$137,029	$95,258	$33,361	$8,410

Available for sale securities which utilize Level 2 inputs consist primarily of municipal bonds, which are valued based on quoted market prices or alternative pricing sources with reasonable levels of price transparency.

A summary of the aggregate fair value, gross unrealized gains, gross unrealized losses, realized losses and amortized cost basis of the Company's investment portfolio by major security type is as follows:

	December 31, 2009				
			Unrealized		
Available for sale:	Amortized Cost	Fair Value	Gains	Losses	Realized Losses
Auction rate security (ARS)	$ 8,410	$ 7,710	$ —	$(700)	$ —
Municipal bonds	26,502	26,793	291	—	—
Mutual funds	56	58	2	—	—
	$34,968	$34,561	$293	$(700)	$ —

	December 31, 2008				
			Unrealized		
Available for sale:	Amortized Cost	Fair Value	Gains	Losses	Realized Losses
Auction rate security (ARS)	$13,550	$ 8,410	$ —	$ —	$(5,140)
Municipal bonds	33,003	33,303	300	—	—
Mutual funds	56	58	2	—	—
	$46,609	$41,771	$302	$ —	$(5,140)

As of December 31, 2008, the Company's long-term investments included an auction rate security (ARS), Jefferson County Alabama Sewer Revenue Refunding Warrants, reported at a fair value of $8,410, after reflecting a $5,140 other-than-temporary impairment against its $13,550 par value. This other-than-temporary impairment was recorded in other income (expense), net in 2008. As of December 31, 2008, this ARS was determined to be other-than-temporarily impaired due to the duration and severity of the decline in fair value. An other-than-temporary impairment must be recorded when a credit loss exists; that is when the present value of the expected cash flows from a debt security is less than the amortized cost basis of the security. The Company determined the 2008 loss to be 100% related to credit loss. The Company estimated the fair value of this ARS utilizing a valuation model with Level 3 inputs as of December 31, 2008. This valuation model considered, among other items, the credit risk of the collateral underlying the ARS, the credit risk of the bond insurer, interest rates, and the amount and timing of expected future cash flows including the Company's assumption about the market expectation of the next successful auction. During the fourth quarter of 2009, the Company further evaluated this investment and concluded that an additional decline in the fair market value was temporary, as defined, and recorded $700 of such additional decline in the fair market value as a charge to accumulated other comprehensive loss. The impairment recorded in 2009 is considered temporary as it relates to liquidity and timing of cash flows and does not represent further credit loss.

The Company classified this ARS as non-current and has included it in long-term investments on the Consolidated Statements of Financial Position at December 31, 2009 and 2008, because the Company believes that the current condition of the ARS market may take more than twelve months to improve and the Company has the ability and intent to hold the security for the foreseeable future.

Based on market conditions, the Company changed its valuation methodology for the ARS to a discounted cash flow analysis during the first quarter of 2008. Accordingly, these securities changed from Level 2 to Level 3 within the accounting guidance hierarchy.

The following tables present additional information about the Company's financial instruments (all ARS) measured at fair value on a recurring basis using Level 3 inputs at December 31, 2009 and 2008:

	2009	2008
Balance at January 1	$8,410	$ —
Transfers to Level 3	—	27,250
Other-than-temporary impairment loss recognized in earnings	—	(5,140)
Unrealized loss recognized in other comprehensive loss	(700)	—
Sales, net	—	(13,700)
Balance at December 31	$7,710	$ 8,410

The $7,500 carrying amount of the Company's industrial revenue development bonds at December 31, 2009 and 2008 approximates its estimated fair value as the bonds have a floating interest rate.

In addition to assets and liabilities that are recorded at fair value on a recurring basis, guidance requires the Company

to record assets and liabilities at fair value on a nonrecurring basis generally as a result of impairment charges. Assets measured at fair value on a nonrecurring basis during 2009 are summarized below:

	Twelve Months Ended December 31, 2009					
	Pre-Impairment Cost Basis	2009 Impairment Charge	New Cost Basis	Level Used to Determine New Cost Basis		
				Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Investment in joint venture	$ 9,361	$ 4,400	$ 4,961	$—	$—	$ 4,961
Trademarks	189,024	14,000	175,024	—	—	175,024
Total	$198,385	$18,400	$179,985	$—	$—	$179,985

As discussed in Note 6, during the fourth quarter of 2009 the Company recognized an impairment of $4,400 in an equity method investment based on Level 3 inputs.

As discussed in Note 12, during the fourth quarter of 2009 the Company recognized a trademark impairment of $14,000 based on Level 3 inputs.

NOTE 11—COMPREHENSIVE EARNINGS (LOSS):

The following table sets forth information with respect to accumulated other comprehensive earnings (loss):

	Foreign Currency Translation Adjustment	Unrealized Gain (Loss) on			Accumulated Other Comprehensive Earnings (Loss)
		Investments	Derivatives	Postretirement and Pension Benefits	
Balance at January 1, 2007	$(11,224)	$ (149)	$ (271)	$ (893)	$(12,537)
Unrealized gains (losses)	(272)	469	(462)	588	323
(Gains) losses reclassified to net earnings	—	(61)	1,202	—	1,141
Tax effect	—	(151)	(273)	(230)	(654)
Net of tax amount	(272)	257	467	358	810
Balance at December 31, 2007	(11,496)	108	196	(535)	(11,727)
Unrealized gains (losses)	(2,296)	(4,923)	504	(1,484)	(8,199)
(Gains) losses reclassified to net earnings	—	5,055	(467)	—	4,588
Tax effect	(500)	(49)	(13)	659	97
Net of tax amount	(2,796)	83	24	(825)	(3,514)
Balance at December 31,2008	(14,292)	191	220	(1,360)	(15,241)
Unrealized gains (losses)	1,183	(709)	4,341	109	4,924
(Gains) losses reclassified to net earnings	—	—	(1,015)	—	(1,015)
Tax effect	(118)	263	(1,232)	23	(1,064)
Net of tax amount	1,065	(446)	2,094	132	2,845
Balance at December 31, 2009	$(13,227)	$ (255)	$ 2,314	$(1,228)	$(12,396)

NOTE 12—GOODWILL AND INTANGIBLE ASSETS:

All of the Company's intangible indefinite-lived assets are trademarks.

As of December 31, 2009, management ascertained certain trademarks were impaired, and recorded a pre-tax charge of $14,000. The principal driver of this impairment charge was an increase in the discount rate required by market participants. The fair value of indefinite-lived intangible assets was primarily assessed using the present value of estimated future cash flows. No impairments of intangibles were recorded in 2008.

The changes in the carrying amount of trademarks for 2009 and 2008 were as follows:

	2009	2008
Original cost	$193,767	$193,767
Accumulated impairment losses as of January 1	(4,743)	(4,743)
Balance at January 1	$189,024	$189,024
Current year impairment losses	(14,000)	—
Balance at December 31	$175,024	$189,024
Accumulated impairment losses as of December 31	$(18,743)	$ (4,743)

The Company has no accumulated impairment losses of goodwill.

Auditor's Report

All publicly held corporations, as well as many other businesses and organizations (both profit and not-for-profit, large and small), engage the services of independent certified public accountants (CPAs) for the purpose of obtaining an objective, expert report on their financial statements. Based on a comprehensive examination of the company's accounting system, accounting records, and the financial statements, the outside CPA issues the auditor's report.

The standard auditor's report should identify who and what was audited and indicate the responsibilities of management and the auditor relative to the financial statements. The report should clearly state that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and discusses the nature and limitations of the audit. Finally, the report should express an informed opinion as to (1) the fairness of the financial statements and (2) their conformity with generally accepted accounting principales. The report of PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP appearing in Tootsie Roll's annual report is shown below.

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Board of Directors and Shareholders of Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.:

In our opinion, the accompanying consolidated statements of financial position and the related consolidated statements of earnings, comprehensive earnings and retained earnings, and of cash flows present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc. and its subsidiaries at December 31, 2009 and December 31, 2008, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2009 in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Also in our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2009, based on criteria established in *Internal Control—Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO). The Company's management is responsible for these financial statements and financial statement schedules, for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, included in Management's Report on Internal Control

over Financial Reporting on page 14 of the 2009 Annual Report to Shareholders. Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements and on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our integrated audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement and whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects. Our audits of the financial statements included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, and evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. Our audit of internal control over financial reporting included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, and testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk. Our audits also included performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinions.

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (i) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (ii) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (iii) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP

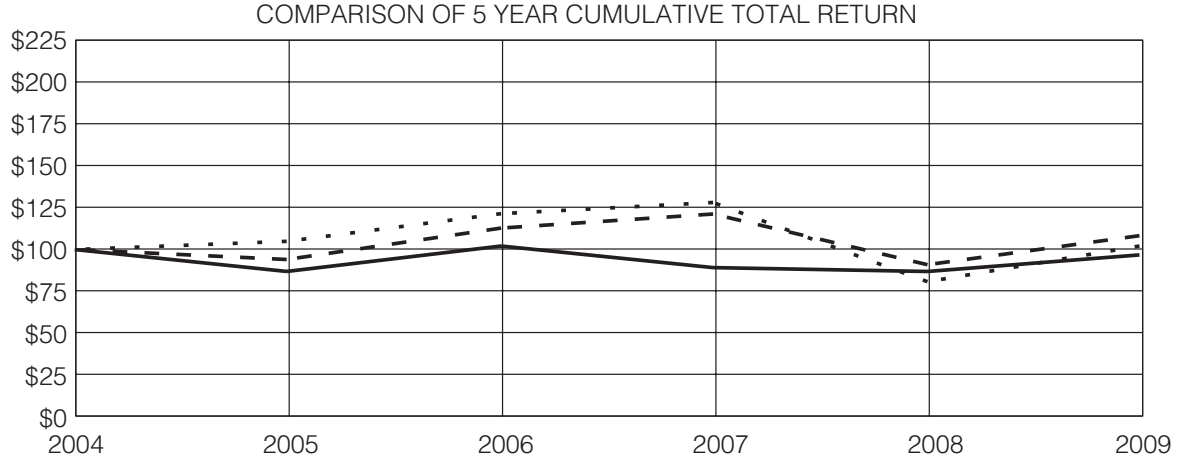
Chicago, IL
March 1, 2010

Supplementary Financial Information

In addition to the financial statements and the accompanying notes, companies often present supplementary financial information. Tootsie Roll has provided stock performance information, quarterly financial data, and a five-year summary of earnings and financial highlights, which are presented on the following pages.

Performance Graph

The following performance graph compares the Company's cumulative total shareholder return on the Company's Common Stock for a five-year period (December 31, 2004 to December 31, 2009) with the cumulative total return of Standard & Poor's 500 Stock Index ("S&P 500") and the Dow Jones Industry Food Index ("Peer Group," which includes the Company), assuming (i) $100 invested on December 31 of the first year of the chart in each of the Company's Common Stock, S&P 500 and the Dow Jones Industry Food Index and (ii) the reinvestment of dividends.



	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009
TR	$100.00	$86.88	$102.10	$89.18	$86.87	$96.78
DJ	$100.00	$94.04	$112.85	$121.27	$90.93	$108.29
S&P	$100.00	$104.91	$121.48	$128.16	$80.74	$102.11

Quarterly Financial Data (Unaudited)

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES

	(Thousands of dollars except per share data)				
2009	First	Second	Third	Fourth	Total
Net product sales	$94,054	$107,812	$183,408	$110,318	$495,592
Product gross margin	33,335	39,005	65,701	38,906	176,947
Net earnings	8,320	10,338	27,247	7,570	53,475
Net earnings per share	0.15	0.18	0.49	0.14	0.95
2008					
Net product sales	$90,341	$101,591	$184,687	$115,432	$492,051
Product gross margin	29,712	32,850	59,293	36,882	158,737
Net earnings	6,453	7,246	19,715	5,363	38,777
Net earnings per share	0.11	0.13	0.35	0.09	0.68

The 2009 fourth quarter net earnings included the release of tax valuation allowances, charges related to the impairment of an equity investment in joint venture and impairment charges related to certain trademarks as discussed in Notes 4, 6 and 12 to the Consolidated Financial Statements, respectively.

The 2008 fourth quarter net earnings included a charge for the other-than-temporary impairment of an auction rate security as discussed in Note 10 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

Net earnings per share is based upon average outstanding shares as adjusted for 3% stock dividends issued during the second quarter of each year. The sum of the per share amounts may not equal annual amounts due to rounding.

2009-2008 QUARTERLY SUMMARY OF TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC. STOCK PRICES AND DIVIDENDS PER SHARE

STOCK PRICES*

	2009		2008	
	High	Low	High	Low
1st Qtr	$25.77	$19.46	$26.33	$21.80
2nd Qtr	$24.42	$21.82	$27.26	$23.27
3rd Qtr	$24.64	$22.67	$31.35	$23.67
4th Qtr	$28.06	$23.60	$28.88	$21.45

*NYSE—Closing Price

Estimated Number of shareholders at February 2010:

Common Stock	18,000
Class B Common Stock	5,000

DIVIDENDS

	2009	2008
1st Qtr	$.08	$.08
2nd Qtr	$.08	$.08
3rd Qtr	$.08	$.08
4th Qtr	$.08	$.08

NOTE: In addition to the above cash dividends, a 3% stock dividend was issued on April 9, 2009 and April 10, 2008. Cash dividends are not restated to reflect 3% stock dividends.

Five Year Summary of Earnings and Financial Highlights

TOOTSIE ROLL INDUSTRIES, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES

(Thousands of dollars except per share, percentage and ratio figures)

(See management's comments starting on page 5)

	2009	2008	2007	2006	2005
Sales and Earnings Data (2)(3)(4)					
Net product sales	$ 495,592	$492,051	$492,742	$495,990	$487,739
Product gross margin	176,947	158,737	165,047	184,723	188,056
Interest expense	243	378	535	726	2,537
Provision for income taxes	10,704	17,132	25,542	28,796	36,425
Net earnings	53,475	38,777	51,625	65,919	77,227
% of net product sales	10.8%	7.9%	10.5%	13.3%	15.8%
% of shareholders' equity	8.2%	6.1%	8.1%	10.5%	12.5%
Per Common Share Data (1)(3)(4)					
Net earnings	$ 0.95	$ 0.68	$ 0.89	$ 1.12	$ 1.29
Cash dividends declared	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.29
Stock dividends	3%	3%	3%	3%	3%
Additional Financial Data (2)(3)(4)					
Working capital	$ 155,812	$129,967	$141,754	$128,706	$132,940
Net cash provided by operating activities	75,281	57,042	90,064	55,656	82,524
Net cash provided by (used in) investing activities	(14,651)	(7,074)	(43,345)	11,026	21,872
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	(38,548)	(38,666)	(44,842)	(79,959)	(92,379)
Property, plant & equipment additions	20,831	34,355	14,767	39,207	14,690
Net property, plant & equipment	220,721	217,628	201,401	202,898	178,760
Total assets	838,247	813,525	812,725	791,639	813,696
Long term debt	7,500	7,500	7,500	7,500	7,500
Shareholders' equity	652,485	634,770	638,230	630,681	617,405
Average shares outstanding (1)	56,072	56,799	58,227	59,048	59,980

(1) Adjusted for annual 3% stock dividends.
(2) Certain reclassifications have been made to prior year numbers to conform to current year presentation.
(3) The 2009 data included the release of tax valuation allowances, charges related to the impairment of an equity investment in joint venture and impairment charges related to certain trademarks as discussed in Notes 4, 6 and 12 to the Consolidated Financial Statements, respectively.
(4) The 2008 data included a charge for the other-than-temporary impairment of an auction rate security. Further information is included in Note 10 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

appendix B

SPECIMEN FINANCIAL STATEMENTS: THE HERSHEY COMPANY

THE HERSHEY COMPANY

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF INCOME

For the years ended December 31, In thousands of dollars except per share amounts	2009	2008	2007
Net Sales	**$5,298,668**	$5,132,768	$4,946,716
Costs and Expenses:			
Cost of sales	**3,245,531**	3,375,050	3,315,147
Selling, marketing and administrative	**1,208,672**	1,073,019	895,874
Business realignment and impairment charges, net	**82,875**	94,801	276,868
Total costs and expenses	**4,537,078**	4,542,870	4,487,889
Income before Interest and Income Taxes	**761,590**	589,898	458,827
Interest expense, net	**90,459**	97,876	118,585
Income before Income Taxes	**671,131**	492,022	340,242
Provision for income taxes	**235,137**	180,617	126,088
Net Income	**$ 435,994**	$ 311,405	$ 214,154
Net Income Per Share—Basic—Class B Common Stock	**$ 1.77**	$ 1.27	$ .87
Net Income Per Share—Diluted—Class B Common Stock	**$ 1.77**	$ 1.27	$ .87
Net Income Per Share—Basic—Common Stock	**$ 1.97**	$ 1.41	$ .96
Net Income Per Share—Diluted—Common Stock	**$ 1.90**	$ 1.36	$ .93
Cash Dividends Paid Per Share:			
Common Stock	**$ 1.1900**	$ 1.1900	$ 1.1350
Class B Common Stock	**1.0712**	1.0712	1.0206

The notes to consolidated financial statements are an integral part of these statements.

THE HERSHEY COMPANY

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS

December 31, In thousands of dollars	2009	2008
ASSETS		
Current Assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	**$ 253,605**	$ 37,103
Accounts receivable—trade	**410,390**	455,153
Inventories	**519,712**	592,530
Deferred income taxes	**39,868**	70,903
Prepaid expenses and other	**161,859**	189,256
Total current assets	**1,385,434**	1,344,945
Property, Plant and Equipment, Net	**1,404,767**	1,458,949
Goodwill	**571,580**	554,677
Other Intangibles	**125,520**	110,772
Deferred Income Taxes	**4,353**	13,815
Other Assets	**183,377**	151,561
Total assets	**$ 3,675,031**	$ 3,634,719
LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY		
Current Liabilities:		
Accounts payable	**$ 287,935**	$ 249,454
Accrued liabilities	**546,462**	504,065
Accrued income taxes	**36,918**	15,189
Short-term debt	**24,066**	483,120
Current portion of long-term debt	**15,247**	18,384
Total current liabilities	**910,628**	1,270,212
Long-term Debt	**1,502,730**	1,505,954
Other Long-term Liabilities	**501,334**	504,963
Deferred Income Taxes	**—**	3,646
Total liabilities	**2,914,692**	3,284,775
Commitments and Contingencies	**—**	—
Stockholders' Equity:		
The Hershey Company Stockholders' Equity		
Preferred Stock, shares issued: none in 2009 and 2008	**—**	—
Common Stock, shares issued: 299,192,836 in 2009 and 299,190,836 in 2008	**299,192**	299,190
Class B Common Stock, shares issued: 60,708,908 in 2009 and 60,710,908 in 2008	**60,709**	60,711
Additional paid-in capital	**394,678**	352,375
Retained earnings	**4,148,353**	3,975,762
Treasury—Common Stock shares, at cost: 131,903,468 in 2009 and 132,866,673 in 2008	**(3,979,629)**	(4,009,931)
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	**(202,844)**	(359,908)
The Hershey Company stockholders' equity	**720,459**	318,199
Noncontrolling interests in subsidiaries	**39,880**	31,745
Total stockholders' equity	**760,339**	349,944
Total liabilities and stockholders'equity	**$ 3,675,031**	$ 3,634,719

The notes to consolidated financial statements are an integral part of these balance sheets.

THE HERSHEY COMPANY

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS

For the years ended December 31, In thousands of dollars	2009	2008	2007
Cash Flows Provided from (Used by) Operating Activities			
Net income	**$ 435,994**	$ 311,405	$ 214,154
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided from operations:			
Depreciation and amortization	**182,411**	249,491	310,925
Stock-based compensation expense, net of tax of $19,223, $13,265 and $10,634, respectively	**34,927**	23,583	18,987
Excess tax benefits from exercise of stock options	**(4,455)**	(1,387)	(9,461)
Deferred income taxes	**(40,578)**	(17,125)	(124,276)
Business realignment and impairment charges, net of tax of $38,308, $61,553 and $144,928, respectively	**60,823**	119,117	267,653
Contributions to pension plans	**(54,457)**	(32,759)	(15,836)
Changes in assets and liabilities, net of effects from business acquisitions and divestitures:			
Accounts receivable—trade	**46,584**	31,675	40,467
Inventories	**74,000**	7,681	45,348
Accounts payable	**37,228**	26,435	62,204
Other assets and liabilities	**293,272**	(198,555)	(31,329)
Net Cash Provided from Operating Activities	**1,065,749**	519,561	778,836
Cash Flows Provided from (Used by) Investing Activities			
Capital additions	**(126,324)**	(262,643)	(189,698)
Capitalized software additions	**(19,146)**	(20,336)	(14,194)
Proceeds from sales of property, plant and equipment	**10,364**	82,815	—
Business acquisitions	**(15,220)**	—	(100,461)
Proceeds from divestitures	**—**	1,960	—
Net Cash (Used by) Investing Activities	**(150,326)**	(198,204)	(304,353)
Cash Flows Provided from (Used by) Financing Activities			
Net change in short-term borrowings	**(458,047)**	(371,393)	195,055
Long-term borrowings	**—**	247,845	—
Repayment of long-term debt	**(8,252)**	(4,977)	(188,891)
Cash dividends paid	**(263,403)**	(262,949)	(252,263)
Exercise of stock options	**28,318**	36,996	50,497
Excess tax benefits from exercise of stock options	**4,455**	1,387	9,461
Contributions from noncontrolling interests in subsidiaries	**7,322**	—	—
Repurchase of Common Stock	**(9,314)**	(60,361)	(256,285)
Net Cash (Used by) Financing Activities	**(698,921)**	(413,452)	(442,426)
Increase (Decrease) in Cash and Cash Equivalents	**216,502**	(92,095)	32,057
Cash and Cash Equivalents as of January 1	**37,103**	129,198	97,141
Cash and Cash Equivalents as of December 31	**$ 253,605**	$ 37,103	$ 129,198
Interest Paid	**$ 91,623**	$ 97,364	$ 126,450
Income Taxes Paid	**252,230**	197,661	253,977

The notes to consolidated financial statements are an integral part of these statements.

THE HERSHEY COMPANY

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY

In thousands of dollars	Preferred Stock	Common Stock	Class B Common Stock	Additional Paid-in Capital	Retained Earnings	Treasury Common Stock	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)	Noncontrolling Interests in Subsidiaries	Total Stockholders' Equity
Balance as of January 1, 2007	$—	$299,085	$60,816	$298,243	$3,965,415	$(3,801,947)	$(138,189)	$ —	$683,423
Net income					214,154				214,154
Other comprehensive income							110,210		110,210
Comprehensive income									324,364
Dividends:									
Common Stock, $1.135 per share					(190,199)				(190,199)
Class B Common Stock, $1.0206 per share					(62,064)				(62,064)
Conversion of Class B Common Stock into Common Stock		10	(10)						—
Incentive plan transactions				1,426		2,082			3,508
Stock-based compensation				29,790					29,790
Exercise of stock options				5,797		54,588			60,385
Repurchase of Common Stock						(256,285)			(256,285)
Noncontrolling interests in subsidiaries								30,598	30,598
Balance as of December 31, 2007	—	299,095	60,806	335,256	3,927,306	(4,001,562)	(27,979)	30,598	623,520
Net income					311,405				311,405
Other comprehensive loss							(331,929)		(331,929)
Comprehensive loss									(20,524)
Dividends:									
Common Stock, $1.19 per share					(197,839)				(197,839)
Class B Common Stock, $1.0712 per share					(65,110)				(65,110)
Conversion of Class B Common Stock into Common Stock		95	(95)						—
Incentive plan transactions				(422)		12,989			12,567
Stock-based compensation				18,161					18,161
Exercise of stock options				(620)		39,003			38,383
Repurchase of Common Stock						(60,361)			(60,361)
Noncontrolling interests in subsidiaries								1,147	1,147
Balance as of December 31, 2008	—	299,190	60,711	352,375	3,975,762	(4,009,931)	(359,908)	31,745	349,944
Net income					435,994				435,994
Other comprehensive income							157,064		157,064
Comprehensive income									593,058
Dividends:									
Common Stock, $1.19 per share					(198,371)				(198,371)
Class B Common Stock, $1.0712 per share					(65,032)				(65,032)
Conversion of Class B Common Stock into Common Stock		2	(2)						—
Incentive plan transactions				(355)		4,762			4,407
Stock-based compensation				44,704					44,704
Exercise of stock options				(2,046)		34,854			32,808
Repurchase of Common Stock						(9,314)			(9,314)
Noncontrolling interests in subsidiaries								8,135	8,135
Balance as of December 31, 2009	$—	$299,192	$60,709	$394,678	$4,148,353	$(3,979,629)	$(202,844)	$39,880	$760,339

The notes to consolidated financial statements are an integral part of these statements.

SPECIMEN FINANCIAL STATEMENTS: ZETAR PLC

CONSOLIDATED INCOME STATEMENT

FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30 APRIL 2009

	Note	2009 Adjusted results £'000	2009 Adjusting items £'000	2009 Total £'000	2008 Adjusted results £'000	2008 Adjusting items £'000	2008 Total £'000
Continuing operations							
Revenue	3	**118,602**	**—**	**118,602**	109,216	—	109,216
Cost of sales		**(93,857)**	**—**	**(93,857)**	(83,938)	—	(83,938)
Gross profit		**24,745**	**—**	**24,745**	25,278	—	25,278
Distribution costs		**(4,777)**	**—**	**(4,777)**	(5,013)	—	(5,013)
Administrative expenses							
– Other administrative expenses		**(13,917)**	**—**	**(13,917)**	(11,541)	—	(11,541)
– One-off items	4	**—**	**(1,508)**	**(1,508)**	—	—	—
– Amortisation of intangible assets	14	**—**	**(456)**	**(456)**	—	(675)	(675)
– Share-based payments	9	**—**	**116**	**116**	—	(377)	(377)
Operating profit		**6,051**	**(1,848)**	**4,203**	8,724	(1,052)	7,672
Interest income	8	**47**	**—**	**47**	116	—	116
Finance costs	8	**(1,556)**	**(680)**	**(2,236)**	(1,733)	(144)	(1,877)
Profit from continuing operations before taxation		**4,542**	**(2,528)**	**2,014**	7,107	(1,196)	5,911
Tax on profit from continuing activities	10	**(1,241)**	**—**	**(1,241)**	(2,034)	179	(1,855)
Net result from continuing operations		**3,301**	**(2,528)**	**773**	5,073	(1,017)	4,056
Net result from discontinued operations	11	**—**	**(5,836)**	**(5,836)**	—	(811)	(811)
Net result for the period		**3,301**	**(8,364)**	**(5,063)**	5,073	(1,828)	3,245
Basic (losses)/earnings per share (p)	12			**(42.9)**			29.5
Diluted (losses)/earnings per share (p)	12			**(42.6)**			25.9
Adjusted basic earnings per share (p)	12	**28.0**			46.2		
Adjusted diluted earnings per share (p)	12	**27.8**			40.5		

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET

AT 30 APRIL 2009

	Note	2009 £'000	2008 £'000
Non-current assets			
Goodwill	13	**30,821**	32,363
Other intangible assets	14	**623**	1,002
Property, plant and equipment	15	**15,283**	18,545
Deferred tax asset	21	**198**	167
		46,925	52,077
Current assets			
Inventories	16	**14,319**	13,364
Trade and other receivables	17	**19,190**	15,253
Derivative financial asset	30	**—**	72
Cash at bank	26	**5,405**	3,175
		38,914	31,864
Total assets		**85,839**	83,941
Current liabilities			
Trade and other payables	18	**(23,763)**	(20,337)
Performance related contingent consideration		**(220)**	(876)
Current tax liabilities		**(252)**	(687)
Obligations under finance leases	19	**(214)**	(470)
Derivative financial instruments	30	**(607)**	—
Borrowings and overdrafts	20	**(15,712)**	(9,289)
		(40,768)	(31,659)
Net current (liabilities)/assets		**(1,854)**	205
Non-current liabilities			
Performance related contingent consideration		**(300)**	(2,555)
Deferred tax liabilities	21	**(1,575)**	(1,448)
Obligations under finance leases	19	**(167)**	(369)
Borrowings and overdrafts	20	**(4,676)**	(7,609)
		(6,718)	(11,981)
Total liabilities		**(47,486)**	(43,640)
Net assets		**38,353**	40,301
Equity			
Share capital	22	**1,324**	1,151
Share premium account	23	**28,252**	26,449
Merger reserve		**3,411**	3,411
Equity reserve	24	**2,719**	1,431
Retained earnings	24	**2,647**	7,859
Total equity attributable to equity holders of the parent		**38,353**	40,301

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN EQUITY

FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30 APRIL 2009

	Attributable to equity holders of the parent					
	Share capital £'000	Share premium account £'000	Merger reserve £'000	Equity reserve £'000	Retained earnings £'000	Total £'000
Balance at 1 May 2007	1,073	22,673	3,229	621	4,914	32,510
Profit for the year	—	—	—	—	3,245	3,245
Exchange gain on translation of foreign operation	—	—	—	557	—	557
Issue of new ordinary shares	78	3,776	182	—	—	4,036
Purchase of own shares	—	—	—	—	(300)	(300)
Share-based payment charge	—	—	—	377	—	377
Deferred tax on share-based payments	—	—	—	(124)	—	(124)
Balance at 30 April 2008	1,151	26,449	3,411	1,431	7,859	40,301
Loss for the year	—	—	—	—	(5,063)	(5,063)
Exchange gain on translation of foreign operations	—	—	—	1,404	—	1,404
Issue of new ordinary shares	173	1,803	—	—	—	1,976
Purchase of own shares	—	—	—	—	(149)	(149)
Prior year share-based payment reversal	—	—	—	(116)	—	(116)
Balance at 30 April 2009	**1,324**	**28,252**	**3,411**	**2,719**	**2,647**	**38,353**

CONSOLIDATED CASH FLOW STATEMENT

FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30 APRIL 2009

	Note	2009 £'000	2008 £'000
Cash flow from operating activities			
Profit on ordinary activities before taxation		2,014	5,911
Finance costs		2,236	1,877
Interest income		(47)	(116)
Share-based payments		(116)	377
Depreciation (including trademark amortisation)	15	2,346	1,989
Loss on sale of plant and equipment		22	6
Amortisation of intangible assets		457	675
One-off items		1,388	—
Net movement in working capital		(2,469)	(1,011)
Increase in inventories		(1,299)	(2,646)
(Increase)/decrease in receivables		(4,504)	4,075
Decrease/(increase) in payables		3,334	(2,440)
Cash flow from continuing operations		5,831	9,708
Cash flow from discontinued operations		(1,002)	(1,260)
Total cash flow from operations		4,829	8,448
Net interest paid	8	(1,510)	(1,646)
Tax paid		(782)	(1,682)
Cash generated from activities in continuing operations		3,539	6,380
Cash flow generated from operating activities in discontinued operations		(1,002)	(1,260)
Total cash flow from operating activities		2,537	5,120
Cash flow from investing activities			
Purchase of property, plant and equipment		(3,847)	(3,722)
Proceeds from sale of plant and equipment		42	26
Disposal of subsidiary	11	(220)	—
Total cash impact of acquisitions		(879)	(3,733)
Acquisitions of businesses (including contingent consideration)		(879)	(2,814)
Net borrowings assumed on acquisition		—	(919)
Net cash outflow from continuing investing activities		(4,904)	(7,429)
Net cash outflow from discontinued investing activities		—	(5,244)
Net cash flow from investing activities		(4,904)	(12,673)
Cash flow from financing activities			
Net proceeds from issue of ordinary share capital		1,976	3,851
Purchase of own shares		(149)	(300)
Proceeds from new borrowings		—	5,000
Repayment of borrowings		(3,536)	(4,819)
Finance lease repayments		(457)	(472)
Minority interest dividends paid		—	—
Net cash flow from financing activities		(2,166)	3,260
Net decrease in cash and cash equivalents		(4,533)	(4,293)
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of the year		(3,331)	917
Effect of foreign exchange rate movements		(263)	45
Cash and cash equivalents at end of the year		(8,127)	(3,331)
Cash and cash equivalents comprise:			
Cash at bank	26	5,405	3,175
Bank overdraft	26	(13,532)	(6,506)
		(8,127)	(3,331)

appendix D

TIME VALUE OF MONEY

study objectives

After studying this appendix, you should be able to:

1. Distinguish between simple and compound interest.
2. Solve for future value of a single amount.
3. Solve for future value of an annuity.
4. Identify the variables fundamental to solving present value problems.
5. Solve for present value of a single amount.
6. Solve for present value of an annuity.
7. Compute the present value of notes and bonds.
8. Compute the present values in capital budgeting situations.
9. Use a financial calculator to solve time value of money problems.

Would you rather receive $1,000 today or a year from now? You should prefer to receive the $1,000 today because you can invest the $1,000 and earn interest on it. As a result, you will have more than $1,000 a year from now. What this example illustrates is the concept of the **time value of money**. Everyone prefers to receive money today rather than in the future because of the interest factor.

Nature of Interest

Interest is payment for the use of another person's money. It is the difference between the amount borrowed or invested (called the **principal**) and the amount repaid or collected. The amount of interest to be paid or collected is usually stated as a rate over a specific period of time. The rate of interest is generally stated as an annual rate.

The amount of interest involved in any financing transaction is based on three elements:

1. **Principal (p):** The original amount borrowed or invested.
2. **Interest Rate (i):** An annual percentage of the principal.
3. **Time (n):** The number of years that the principal is borrowed or invested.

SIMPLE INTEREST

Simple interest is computed on the principal amount only. It is the return on the principal for one period. Simple interest is usually expressed as shown in Illustration D-1.

study objective 1

Distinguish between simple and compound interest.

Illustration D-1 Interest computation

Interest	=	Principal p	×	Rate i	×	Time n

For example, if you borrowed $5,000 for 2 years at a simple interest rate of 12% annually, you would pay $1,200 in total interest, computed as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Interest} &= p \times i \times n \\ &= \$5{,}000 \times .12 \times 2 \\ &= \$1{,}200 \end{aligned}$$

COMPOUND INTEREST

Compound interest is computed on principal **and** on any interest earned that has not been paid or withdrawn. It is the return on (or growth of) the principal for two or more time periods. Compounding computes interest not only on the principal but also on the interest earned to date on that principal, assuming the interest is left on deposit.

To illustrate the difference between simple and compound interest, assume that you deposit $1,000 in Bank Two, where it will earn simple interest of 9% per year, and you deposit another $1,000 in Citizens Bank, where it will earn compound interest of 9% per year compounded annually. Also assume that in both cases you will not withdraw any cash until three years from the date of deposit. Illustration D-2 shows the computation of interest to be received and the accumulated year-end balances.

Illustration D-2 Simple versus compound interest

Bank Two

Simple Interest Calculation	Simple Interest	Accumulated Year-End Balance
Year 1 $1,000.00 × 9%	$ 90.00	$1,090.00
Year 2 $1,000.00 × 9%	90.00	$1,180.00
Year 3 $1,000.00 × 9%	90.00	$1,270.00
	$ 270.00	

$25.03 Difference

Citizens Bank

Compound Interest Calculation	Compound Interest	Accumulated Year-End Balance
Year 1 $1,000.00 × 9%	$ 90.00	$1,090.00
Year 2 $1,090.00 × 9%	98.10	$1,188.10
Year 3 $1,188.10 × 9%	106.93	$1,295.03
	$ 295.03	

Note in Illustration D-2 that simple interest uses the initial principal of $1,000 to compute the interest in all three years. Compound interest uses the accumulated balance (principal plus interest to date) at each year-end to compute interest in the succeeding year—which explains why your compound interest account is larger.

Obviously, if you had a choice between investing your money at simple interest or at compound interest, you would choose compound interest, all other things—especially risk—being equal. In the example, compounding provides $25.03 of additional interest income. For practical purposes, compounding assumes that unpaid interest earned becomes a part of the principal, and the accumulated balance at the end of each year becomes the new principal on which interest is earned during the next year.

Illustration D-2 indicates that you should invest your money at a bank that compounds interest. Most business situations use compound interest. Simple interest is generally applicable only to short-term situations of one year or less.

section one

Future Value Concepts

study objective 2

Solve for future value of a single amount.

Future Value of a Single Amount

The **future value of a single amount** is the value at a future date of a given amount invested, assuming compound interest. For example, in Illustration D-2, $1,295.03 is the future value of the $1,000 investment earning 9% for three

years. The $1,295.03 could be determined more easily by using the following formula.

$$FV = p \times (1 + i)^n$$

Illustration D-3 Formula for future value

where:

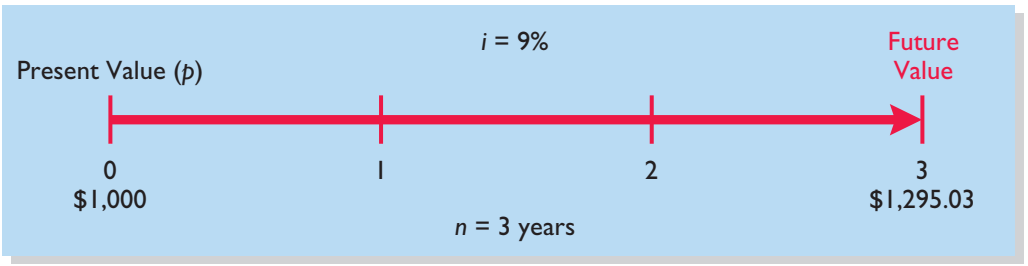
FV = future value of a single amount
p = principal (or present value; the value today)
i = interest rate for one period
n = number of periods

The $1,295.03 is computed as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} FV &= p \times (1 + i)^n \\ &= \$1{,}000 \times (1 + .09)^3 \\ &= \$1{,}000 \times 1.29503 \\ &= \$1{,}295.03 \end{aligned}$$

The 1.29503 is computed by multiplying (1.09 × 1.09 × 1.09). The amounts in this example can be depicted in the time diagram shown in Illustration D-4.

Illustration D-4 Time diagram



Another method used to compute the future value of a single amount involves a compound interest table. This table shows the future value of 1 for n periods. Table 1 on the next page is such a table.

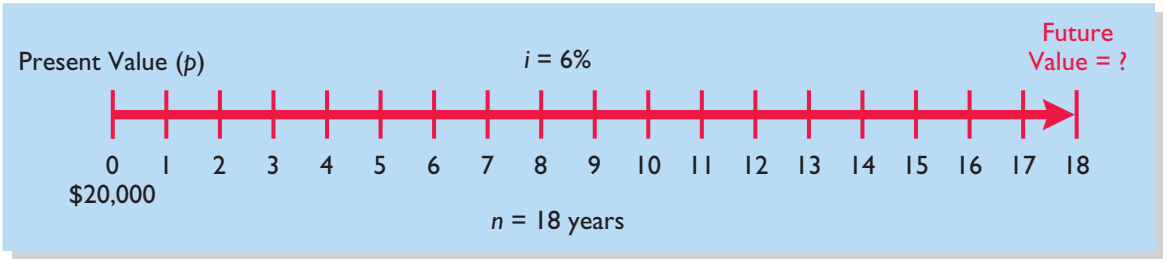
In Table 1, n is the number of compounding periods, the percentages are the periodic interest rates, and the 5-digit decimal numbers in the respective columns are the future value of 1 factors. In using Table 1, you would multiply the principal amount by the future value factor for the specified number of periods and interest rate. For example, the future value factor for two periods at 9% is 1.18810. Multiplying this factor by $1,000 equals $1,188.10—which is the accumulated balance at the end of year 2 in the Citizens Bank example in Illustration D-2. The $1,295.03 accumulated balance at the end of the third year can be calculated from Table 1 by multiplying the future value factor for three periods (1.29503) by the $1,000.

The demonstration problem in Illustration D-5 (page D-4) shows how to use Table 1.

TABLE 1 Future Value of 1

(*n*) Periods	4%	5%	6%	8%	9%	10%	11%	12%	15%
0	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000
1	1.04000	1.05000	1.06000	1.08000	1.09000	1.10000	1.11000	1.12000	1.15000
2	1.08160	1.10250	1.12360	1.16640	1.18810	1.21000	1.23210	1.25440	1.32250
3	1.12486	1.15763	1.19102	1.25971	1.29503	1.33100	1.36763	1.40493	1.52088
4	1.16986	1.21551	1.26248	1.36049	1.41158	1.46410	1.51807	1.57352	1.74901
5	1.21665	1.27628	1.33823	1.46933	1.53862	1.61051	1.68506	1.76234	2.01136
6	1.26532	1.34010	1.41852	1.58687	1.67710	1.77156	1.87041	1.97382	2.31306
7	1.31593	1.40710	1.50363	1.71382	1.82804	1.94872	2.07616	2.21068	2.66002
8	1.36857	1.47746	1.59385	1.85093	1.99256	2.14359	2.30454	2.47596	3.05902
9	1.42331	1.55133	1.68948	1.99900	2.17189	2.35795	2.55803	2.77308	3.51788
10	1.48024	1.62889	1.79085	2.15892	2.36736	2.59374	2.83942	3.10585	4.04556
11	1.53945	1.71034	1.89830	2.33164	2.58043	2.85312	3.15176	3.47855	4.65239
12	1.60103	1.79586	2.01220	2.51817	2.81267	3.13843	3.49845	3.89598	5.35025
13	1.66507	1.88565	2.13293	2.71962	3.06581	3.45227	3.88328	4.36349	6.15279
14	1.73168	1.97993	2.26090	2.93719	3.34173	3.79750	4.31044	4.88711	7.07571
15	1.80094	2.07893	2.39656	3.17217	3.64248	4.17725	4.78459	5.47357	8.13706
16	1.87298	2.18287	2.54035	3.42594	3.97031	4.59497	5.31089	6.13039	9.35762
17	1.94790	2.29202	2.69277	3.70002	4.32763	5.05447	5.89509	6.86604	10.76126
18	2.02582	2.40662	2.85434	3.99602	4.71712	5.55992	6.54355	7.68997	12.37545
19	2.10685	2.52695	3.02560	4.31570	5.14166	6.11591	7.26334	8.61276	14.23177
20	2.19112	2.65330	3.20714	4.66096	5.60441	6.72750	8.06231	9.64629	16.36654

John and Mary Rich invested $20,000 in a savings account paying 6% interest at the time their son, Mike, was born. The money is to be used by Mike for his college education. On his 18th birthday, Mike withdraws the money from his savings account. How much did Mike withdraw from his account?



Answer: The future value factor from Table 1 is 2.85434 (18 periods at 6%). The future value of $20,000 earning 6% per year for 18 years is **$57,086.80** ($20,000 × 2.85434).

Illustration D-5
Demonstration problem–
Using Table 1 for *FV* of 1

Future Value of an Annuity

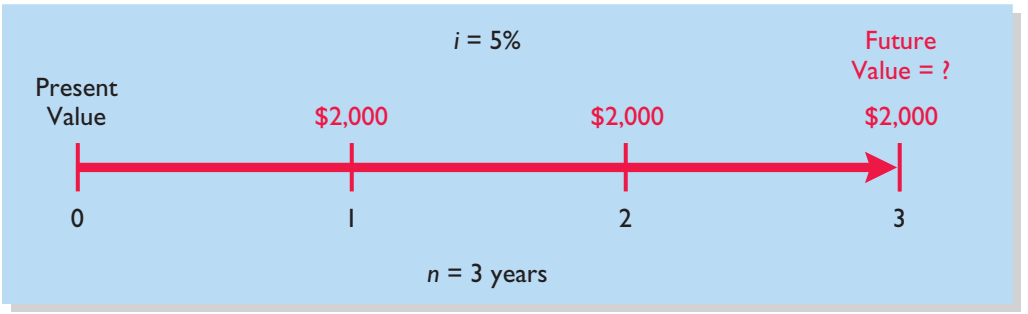
study objective 3
Solve for future value of an annuity.

The preceding discussion involved the accumulation of only a single principal sum. Individuals and businesses frequently encounter situations in which a **series** of equal dollar amounts are to be paid or received at evenly spaced time intervals (periodically), such as loans or lease (rental) contracts. Such payments or receipts of equal dollar amounts are referred to as **annuities**.

The **future value of an annuity** is the sum of all the payments (receipts) plus the accumulated compound interest on them. In computing the future value of an annuity, it is necessary to know (1) the interest rate, (2) the number of compounding periods, and (3) the amount of the periodic payments or receipts.

To illustrate the computation of the future value of an annuity, assume that you invest $2,000 at the end of each year for three years at 5% interest compounded annually. This situation is depicted in the time diagram in Illustration D-6.

Illustration D-6 Time diagram for a three-year annuity



The $2,000 invested at the end of year 1 will earn interest for two years (years 2 and 3), and the $2,000 invested at the end of year 2 will earn interest for one year (year 3). However, the last $2,000 investment (made at the end of year 3) will not earn any interest. The future value of these periodic payments could be computed using the future value factors from Table 1, as shown in Illustration D-7.

Illustration D-7 Future value of periodic payment computation

Invested at End of Year	Number of Compounding Periods	Amount Invested	×	Future Value of 1 Factor at 5%	=	Future Value
1	2	$2,000	×	1.10250		$2,205
2	1	$2,000	×	1.05000		2,100
3	0	$2,000	×	1.00000		2,000
				3.15250		**$6,305**

The first $2,000 investment is multiplied by the future value factor for two periods (1.1025) because two years' interest will accumulate on it (in years 2 and 3). The second $2,000 investment will earn only one year's interest (in year 3) and therefore is multiplied by the future value factor for one year (1.0500). The final $2,000 investment is made at the end of the third year and will not earn any interest. Thus $n = 0$ and the future value factor is 1.00000. Consequently, the future value of the last $2,000 invested is only $2,000 since it does not accumulate any interest.

Calculating the future value of each individual cash flow is required when the periodic payments or receipts are not equal in each period. However, when the periodic payments (receipts) are **the same in each period**, the future value can be computed by using a future value of an annuity of 1 table. Table 2 (page D-6) is such a table.

TABLE 2 Future Value of an Annuity of 1

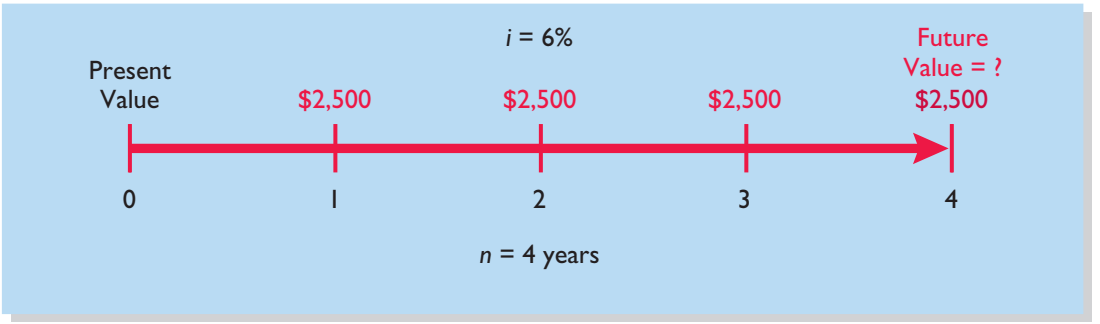
(*n*) Periods	4%	5%	6%	8%	9%	10%	11%	12%	15%
1	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000
2	2.04000	2.05000	2.06000	2.08000	2.09000	2.10000	2.11000	2.12000	2.15000
3	3.12160	3.15250	3.18360	3.24640	3.27810	3.31000	3.34210	3.37440	3.47250
4	4.24646	4.31013	4.37462	4.50611	4.57313	4.64100	4.70973	4.77933	4.99338
5	5.41632	5.52563	5.63709	5.86660	5.98471	6.10510	6.22780	6.35285	6.74238
6	6.63298	6.80191	6.97532	7.33592	7.52334	7.71561	7.91286	8.11519	8.75374
7	7.89829	8.14201	8.39384	8.92280	9.20044	9.48717	9.78327	10.08901	11.06680
8	9.21423	9.54911	9.89747	10.63663	11.02847	11.43589	11.85943	12.29969	13.72682
9	10.58280	11.02656	11.49132	12.48756	13.02104	13.57948	14.16397	14.77566	16.78584
10	12.00611	12.57789	13.18079	14.48656	15.19293	15.93743	16.72201	17.54874	20.30372
11	13.48635	14.20679	14.97164	16.64549	17.56029	18.53117	19.56143	20.65458	24.34928
12	15.02581	15.91713	16.86994	18.97713	20.14072	21.38428	22.71319	24.13313	29.00167
13	16.62684	17.71298	18.88214	21.49530	22.95339	24.52271	26.21164	28.02911	34.35192
14	18.29191	19.59863	21.01507	24.21492	26.01919	27.97498	30.09492	32.39260	40.50471
15	20.02359	21.57856	23.27597	27.15211	29.36092	31.77248	34.40536	37.27972	47.58041
16	21.82453	23.65749	25.67253	30.32428	33.00340	35.94973	39.18995	42.75328	55.71747
17	23.69751	25.84037	28.21288	33.75023	36.97351	40.54470	44.50084	48.88367	65.07509
18	25.64541	28.13238	30.90565	37.45024	41.30134	45.59917	50.39593	55.74972	75.83636
19	27.67123	30.53900	33.75999	41.44626	46.01846	51.15909	56.93949	63.43968	88.21181
20	29.77808	33.06595	36.78559	45.76196	51.16012	57.27500	64.20283	72.05244	102.44358

Table 2 shows the future value of 1 to be received periodically for a given number of periods. It assumes that each payment is made at the **end** of each period. We can see from Table 2 that the future value of an annuity of 1 factor for three periods at 5% is 3.15250. The future value factor is the total of the three individual future value factors was shown in Illustration D-7. Multiplying this amount by the annual investment of $2,000 produces a future value of $6,305.

The demonstration problem in Illustration D-8 shows how to use Table 2.

Illustration D-8
Demonstration problem—Using Table 2 for *FV* of an annuity of 1

John and Char Lewis' daughter, Debra, has just started high school. They decide to start a college fund for her and will invest $2,500 in a savings account at the end of each year she is in high school (4 payments total). The account will earn 6% interest compounded annually. How much will be in the college fund at the time Debra graduates from high school?



Answer: The future value factor from Table 2 is 4.37462 (4 periods at 6%). The future value of $2,500 invested each year for 4 years at 6% interest is **$10,936.55** ($2,500 × 4.37462).

section two

Present Value Concepts

Present Value Variables

study objective 4

Identify the variables fundamental to solving present value problems.

The **present value** is the value now of a given amount to be paid or received in the future, assuming compound interest. The present value, like the future value, is based on three variables: (1) the dollar amount to be received (future amount), (2) the length of time until the amount is received (number of periods), and (3) the interest rate (the discount rate). The process of determining the present value is referred to as **discounting the future amount**.

In this textbook, we use present value computations in measuring several items. For example, Chapter 10 computed the present value of the principal and interest payments to determine the market price of a bond. In addition, determining the amount to be reported for notes payable and lease liabilities involves present value computations.

Present Value of a Single Amount

study objective 5

Solve for present value of a single amount.

To illustrate present value, assume that you want to invest a sum of money today that will provide $1,000 at the end of one year. What amount would you need to invest today to have $1,000 one year from now? If you want a 10% rate of return, the investment or present value is $909.09 ($1,000 ÷ 1.10). The formula for calculating present value is shown in Illustration D-9.

Present Value = Future Value ÷ $(1 + i)^n$

Illustration D-9 Formula for present value

The computation of $1,000 discounted at 10% for one year is as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= FV \div (1 + i)^n \\ &= \$1{,}000 \div (1 + .10)^1 \\ &= \$1{,}000 \div 1.10 \\ &= \$909.09 \end{aligned}$$

The future amount ($1,000), the discount rate (10%), and the number of periods (1) are known. The variables in this situation can be depicted in the time diagram in Illustration D-10.

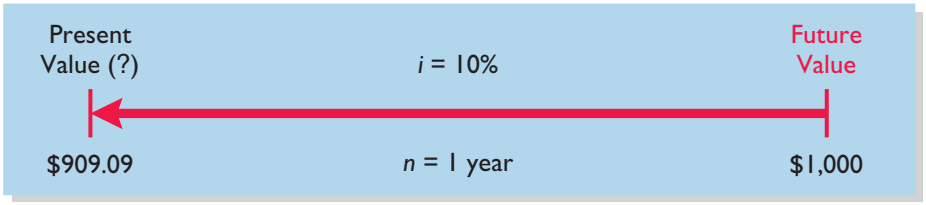
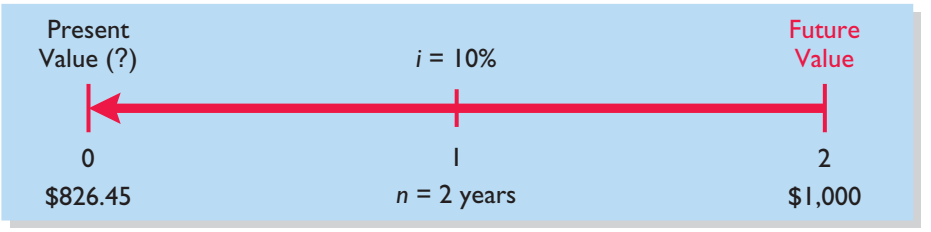


Illustration D-10 Finding present value if discounted for one period

If the single amount of $1,000 is to be received **in two years** and discounted at 10% [$PV = \$1{,}000 \div (1 + .10)^2$], its present value is $826.45 [($1,000 ÷ 1.21), depicted as shown in Illustration D-11 on the next page.

Illustration D-11
Finding present value if discounted for two periods



The present value of 1 may also be determined through tables that show the present value of 1 for *n* periods. In Table 3 below, *n* is the number of discounting periods involved. The percentages are the periodic interest rates or discount rates, and the 5-digit decimal numbers in the respective columns are the present value of 1 factors.

When using Table 3, the future value is multiplied by the present value factor specified at the intersection of the number of periods and the discount rate.

TABLE 3 Present Value of 1

(*n*) Periods	4%	5%	6%	8%	9%	10%	11%	12%	15%
1	.96154	.95238	.94340	.92593	.91743	.90909	.90090	.89286	.86957
2	.92456	.90703	.89000	.85734	.84168	.82645	.81162	.79719	.75614
3	.88900	.86384	.83962	.79383	.77218	.75132	.73119	.71178	.65752
4	.85480	.82270	.79209	.73503	.70843	.68301	.65873	.63552	.57175
5	.82193	.78353	.74726	.68058	.64993	.62092	.59345	.56743	.49718
6	.79031	.74622	.70496	.63017	.59627	.56447	.53464	.50663	.43233
7	.75992	.71068	.66506	.58349	.54703	.51316	.48166	.45235	.37594
8	.73069	.67684	.62741	.54027	.50187	.46651	.43393	.40388	.32690
9	.70259	.64461	.59190	.50025	.46043	.42410	.39092	.36061	.28426
10	.67556	.61391	.55839	.46319	.42241	.38554	.35218	.32197	.24719
11	.64958	.58468	.52679	.42888	.38753	.35049	.31728	.28748	.21494
12	.62460	.55684	.49697	.39711	.35554	.31863	.28584	.25668	.18691
13	.60057	.53032	.46884	.36770	.32618	.28966	.25751	.22917	.16253
14	.57748	.50507	.44230	.34046	.29925	.26333	.23199	.20462	.14133
15	.55526	.48102	.41727	.31524	.27454	.23939	.20900	.18270	.12289
16	.53391	.45811	.39365	.29189	.25187	.21763	.18829	.16312	.10687
17	.51337	.43630	.37136	.27027	.23107	.19785	.16963	.14564	.09293
18	.49363	.41552	.35034	.25025	.21199	.17986	.15282	.13004	.08081
19	.47464	.39573	.33051	.23171	.19449	.16351	.13768	.11611	.07027
20	.45639	.37689	.31180	.21455	.17843	.14864	.12403	.10367	.06110

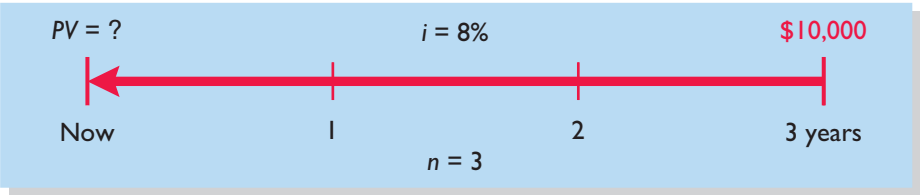
For example, the present value factor for one period at a discount rate of 10% is .90909, which equals the $909.09 ($1,000 × .90909) computed in Illustration D-10. For two periods at a discount rate of 10%, the present value factor is .82645, which equals the $826.45 ($1,000 × .82645) computed previously.

Note that a higher discount rate produces a smaller present value. For example, using a 15% discount rate, the present value of $1,000 due one year from now is $869.57 versus $909.09 at 10%. Also note that the further removed from the present the future value is, the smaller the present value. For example, using the same discount rate of 10%, the present value of $1,000 due in **five years** is $620.92. The present value of $1,000 due in **one year** is $909.09, a difference of $288.17.

The following two demonstration problems (Illustrations D-12 and D-13) illustrate how to use Table 3.

Illustration D-12
Demonstration problem—Using Table 3 for *PV* of 1

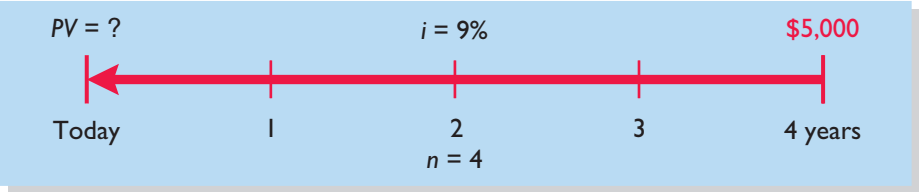
Suppose you have a winning lottery ticket and the state gives you the option of taking $10,000 three years from now or taking the present value of $10,000 now. The state uses an 8% rate in discounting. How much will you receive if you accept your winnings now?



Answer: The present value factor from Table 3 is .79383 (3 periods at 8%). The present value of $10,000 to be received in 3 years discounted at 8% is **$7,938.30** ($10,000 × .79383).

Illustration D-13
Demonstration problem—Using Table 3 for *PV* of 1

Determine the amount you must deposit today in your SUPER savings account, paying 9% interest, in order to accumulate $5,000 for a down payment 4 years from now on a new car.



Answer: The present value factor from Table 3 is .70843 (4 periods at 9%). The present value of $5,000 to be received in 4 years discounted at 9% is **$3,542.15** ($5,000 × .70843).

Present Value of an Annuity

study objective 6
Solve for present value of an annuity.

The preceding discussion involved the discounting of only a single future amount. Businesses and individuals frequently engage in transactions in which a series of equal dollar amounts are to be received or paid at evenly spaced time intervals (periodically). Examples of a series of periodic receipts or payments are loan agreements, installment sales, mortgage notes, lease (rental) contracts, and pension obligations. As discussed earlier, these periodic receipts or payments are **annuities**.

The **present value of an annuity** is the value now of a series of future receipts or payments, discounted assuming compound interest. In computing the present value of an annuity, it is necessary to know (1) the discount rate, (2) the number of discount periods, and (3) the amount of the periodic receipts or payments. To illustrate the computation of the present value of an annuity, assume

that you will receive $1,000 cash annually for three years at a time when the discount rate is 10%. This situation is depicted in the time diagram in Illustration D-14. Illustration D-15 shows computation of the present value in this situation.

Illustration D-14 Time diagram for a three-year annuity

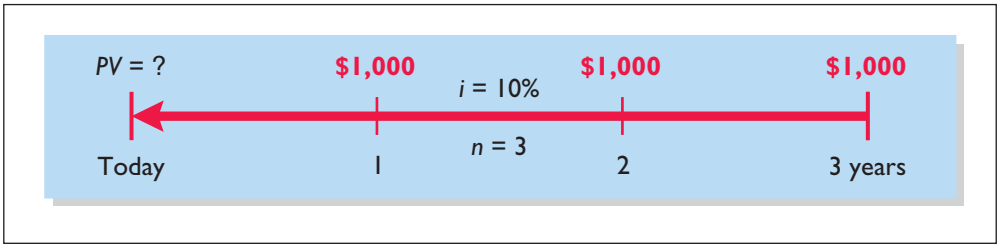


Illustration D-15 Present value of a series of future amounts computation

Future Amount	×	Present Value of 1 Factor at 10%	=	Present Value
$1,000 (one year away)		.90909		$ 909.09
1,000 (two years away)		.82645		826.45
1,000 (three years away)		.75132		751.32
		2.48686		$2,486.86

This method of calculation is required when the periodic cash flows are not uniform in each period. However, when the future receipts are the same in each period, an annuity table can be used. As illustrated in Table 4 below, an annuity table shows the present value of 1 to be received periodically for a given number of periods.

TABLE 4 Present Value of an Annuity of 1

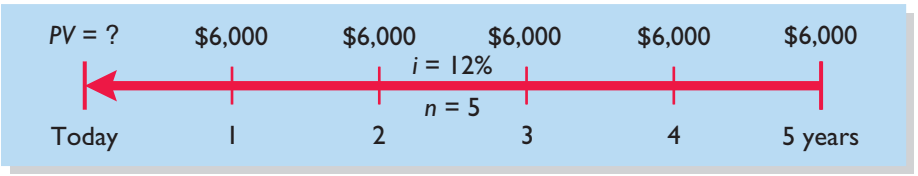
(*n*) Periods	4%	5%	6%	8%	9%	10%	11%	12%	15%
1	.96154	.95238	.94340	.92593	.91743	.90909	.90090	.89286	.86957
2	1.88609	1.85941	1.83339	1.78326	1.75911	1.73554	1.71252	1.69005	1.62571
3	2.77509	2.72325	2.67301	2.57710	2.53130	2.48685	2.44371	2.40183	2.28323
4	3.62990	3.54595	3.46511	3.31213	3.23972	3.16986	3.10245	3.03735	2.85498
5	4.45182	4.32948	4.21236	3.99271	3.88965	3.79079	3.69590	3.60478	3.35216
6	5.24214	5.07569	4.91732	4.62288	4.48592	4.35526	4.23054	4.11141	3.78448
7	6.00205	5.78637	5.58238	5.20637	5.03295	4.86842	4.71220	4.56376	4.16042
8	6.73274	6.46321	6.20979	5.74664	5.53482	5.33493	5.14612	4.96764	4.48732
9	7.43533	7.10782	6.80169	6.24689	5.99525	5.75902	5.53705	5.32825	4.77158
10	8.11090	7.72173	7.36009	6.71008	6.41766	6.14457	5.88923	5.65022	5.01877
11	8.76048	8.30641	7.88687	7.13896	6.80519	6.49506	6.20652	5.93770	5.23371
12	9.38507	8.86325	8.38384	7.53608	7.16073	6.81369	6.49236	6.19437	5.42062
13	9.98565	9.39357	8.85268	7.90378	7.48690	7.10336	6.74987	6.42355	5.58315
14	10.56312	9.89864	9.29498	8.24424	7.78615	7.36669	6.98187	6.62817	5.72448
15	11.11839	10.37966	9.71225	8.55948	8.06069	7.60608	7.19087	6.81086	5.84737
16	11.65230	10.83777	10.10590	8.85137	8.31256	7.82371	7.37916	6.97399	5.95424
17	12.16567	11.27407	10.47726	9.12164	8.54363	8.02155	7.54879	7.11963	6.04716
18	12.65930	11.68959	10.82760	9.37189	8.75563	8.20141	7.70162	7.24967	6.12797
19	13.13394	12.08532	11.15812	9.60360	8.95012	8.36492	7.83929	7.36578	6.19823
20	13.59033	12.46221	11.46992	9.81815	9.12855	8.51356	7.96333	7.46944	6.25933

Table 4 shows that the present value of an annuity of 1 factor for three periods at 10% is 2.48685.[1] This present value factor is the total of the three individual present value factors, as shown in Illustration D-15. Applying this amount to the annual cash flow of $1,000 produces a present value of $2,486.85.

The following demonstration problem (Illustration D-16) illustrates how to use Table 4.

Illustration D-16
Demonstration problem—Using Table 4 for *PV* of an annuity of 1

Kildare Company has just signed a capitalizable lease contract for equipment that requires rental payments of $6,000 each, to be paid at the end of each of the next 5 years. The appropriate discount rate is 12%. What is the present value of the rental payments—that is, the amount used to capitalize the leased equipment?



Answer: The present value factor from Table 4 is 3.60478 (5 periods at 12%). The present value of 5 payments of $6,000 each discounted at 12% is **$21,628.68** ($6,000 × 3.60478).

Time Periods and Discounting

In the preceding calculations, the discounting was done on an annual basis using an annual interest rate. Discounting may also be done over shorter periods of time such as monthly, quarterly, or semiannually.

When the time frame is less than one year, it is necessary to convert the annual interest rate to the applicable time frame. Assume, for example, that the investor in Illustration D-14 received $500 **semiannually** for three years instead of $1,000 annually. In this case, the number of periods becomes six (3 × 2), the discount rate is 5% (10% ÷ 2), the present value factor from Table 4 is 5.07569 (6 periods at 5%), and the present value of the future cash flows is $2,537.85 (5.07569 × $500). This amount is slightly higher than the $2,486.86 computed in Illustration D-15 because interest is computed twice during the same year. That is, during the second half of the year, interest is earned on the first half-year's interest.

Computing the Present Value of a Long-Term Note or Bond

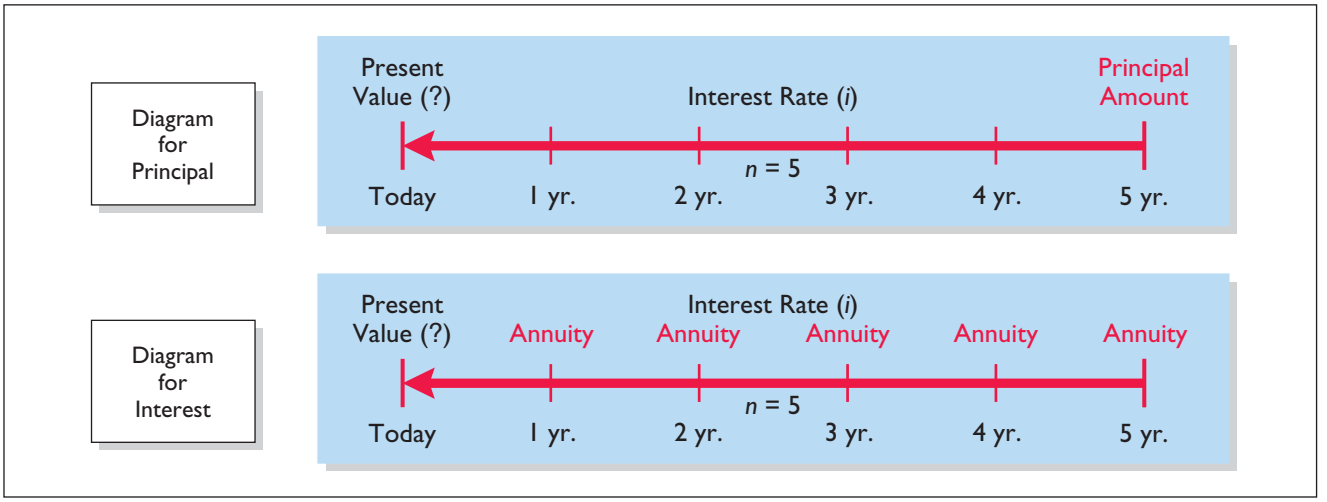
study objective 7
Compute the present value of notes and bonds.

The present value (or market price) of a long-term note or bond is a function of three variables: (1) the payment amounts, (2) the length of time until the amounts are paid, and (3) the discount rate. Our illustration (on the next page) uses a five-year bond issue.

[1]The difference of .00001 between 2.48686 and 2.48685 is due to rounding.

The first variable (dollars to be paid) is made up of two elements: (1) a series of interest payments (an annuity) and (2) the principal amount (a single sum). To compute the present value of the bond, both the interest payments and the principal amount must be discounted—two different computations. The time diagrams for a bond due in five years are shown in Illustration D-17.

Illustration D-17
Present value of a bond time diagram



When the investor's market interest rate is equal to the bond's contractual interest rate, the present value of the bonds will equal the face value of the bonds. To illustrate, assume a bond issue of 10%, five-year bonds with a face value of $100,000 with interest payable **semiannually** on January 1 and July 1. If the discount rate is the same as the contractual rate, the bonds will sell at face value. In this case, the investor will receive (1) $100,000 at maturity and (2) a series of ten $5,000 interest payments [($100,000 × 10%) ÷ 2] over the term of the bonds. The length of time is expressed in terms of interest periods—in this case—10, and the discount rate per interest period, 5%. The following time diagram (Illustration D-18) depicts the variables involved in this discounting situation.

Illustration D-18
Time diagram for present value of a 10%, five-year bond paying interest semiannually

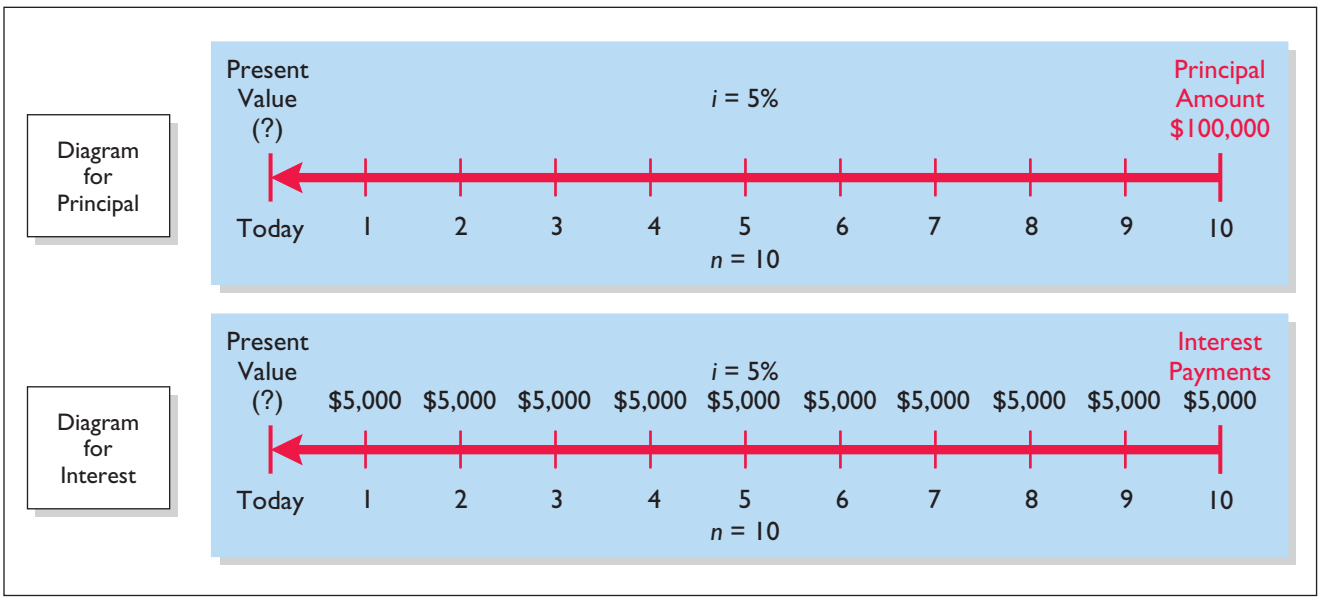


Illustration D-19 shows the computation of the present value of these bonds.

Illustration D-19
Present value of principal and interest–face value

10% Contractual Rate—10% Discount Rate	
Present value of principal to be received at maturity	
$100,000 × *PV* of 1 due in 10 periods at 5%	
$100,000 × .61391 (Table 3)	$ 61,391
Present value of interest to be received periodically over the term of the bonds	
$5,000 × *PV* of 1 due periodically for 10 periods at 5%	
$5,000 × 7.72173 (Table 4)	38,609*
Present value of bonds	**$100,000**

*Rounded

Now assume that the investor's required rate of return is 12%, not 10%. The future amounts are again $100,000 and $5,000, respectively, but now a discount rate of 6% (12% ÷ 2) must be used. The present value of the bonds is $92,639, as computed in Illustration D-20.

Illustration D-20
Present value of principal and interest–discount

10% Contractual Rate—12% Discount Rate	
Present value of principal to be received at maturity	
$100,000 × .55839 (Table 3)	$ 55,839
Present value of interest to be received periodically over the term of the bonds	
$5,000 × 7.36009 (Table 4)	36,800
Present value of bonds	**$92,639**

Conversely, if the discount rate is 8% and the contractual rate is 10%, the present value of the bonds is $108,111, computed as shown in Illustration D-21.

Illustration D-21
Present value of principal and interest–premium

10% Contractual Rate—8% Discount Rate	
Present value of principal to be received at maturity	
$100,000 × .67556 (Table 3)	$ 67,556
Present value of interest to be received periodically over the term of the bonds	
$5,000 × 8.11090 (Table 4)	40,555
Present value of bonds	**$108,111**

The above discussion relied on present value tables in solving present value problems. Calculators may also be used to compute present values without the use of these tables. Many calculators, especially financial calculators, have present value (*PV*) functions that allow you to calculate present values by merely inputting the proper amount, discount rate, periods, and pressing the PV key. We discuss the use of financial calculators in the next section.

Computing the Present Values in a Capital Budgeting Decision

study objective 8

Compute the present values in capital budgeting situations.

The decision to make long-term capital investments is best evaluated using discounting techniques that recognize the time value of money. To do this, many companies calculate the present value of the cash flows involved in a capital investment.

To illustrate, Nagel-Siebert Trucking Company, a cross-country freight carrier in Montgomery, Illinois, is considering adding another truck to its fleet because of a purchasing opportunity. Navistar Inc., Nagel-Siebert's primary supplier of overland rigs, is overstocked and offers to sell its biggest rig for $154,000 cash payable upon delivery. Nagel-Siebert knows that the rig will produce a net cash flow per year of $40,000 for five years (received at the end of each year), at which time it will be sold for an estimated salvage value of $35,000. Nagel-Siebert's discount rate in evaluating capital expenditures is 10%. Should Nagel-Siebert commit to the purchase of this rig?

The cash flows that must be discounted to present value by Nagel-Siebert are as follows.

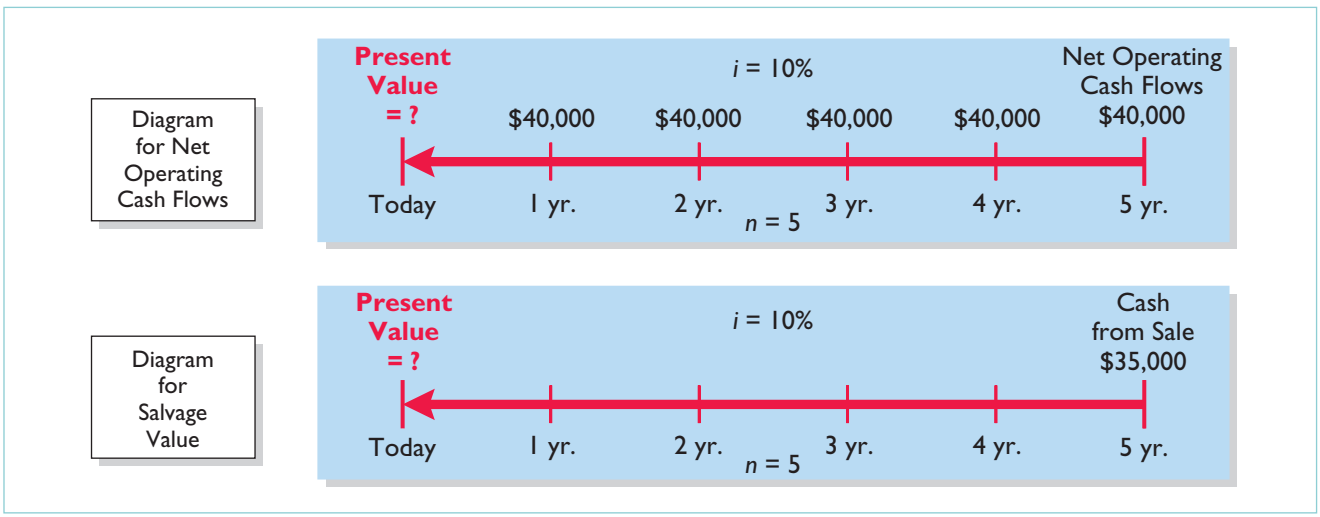
Cash payable on delivery (today): $154,000.

Net cash flow from operating the rig: $40,000 for 5 years (at the end of each year).

Cash received from sale of rig at the end of 5 years: $35,000.

The time diagrams for the latter two cash flows are shown in Illustration D-22.

Illustration D-22
Time diagrams for Nagel-Siebert Trucking Company



Notice from the diagrams that computing the present value of the net operating cash flows ($40,000 at the end of each year) is **discounting an annuity** (Table 4), while computing the present value of the $35,000 salvage value is **discounting a single sum** (Table 3). The computation of these present values is shown in Illustration D-23.

Illustration D-23
Present value computations at 10%

Present Values Using a 10 Percent Discount Rate	
Present value of net operating cash flows received annually over 5 years:	
$40,000 × PV of 1 received annually for 5 years at 10%	
$40,000 × 3.79079 =	$151,631.60
Present value of salvage value (cash) to be received in 5 years	
$35,000 × PV of 1 received in 5 years at 10%	
$35,000 × .62092 =	21,732.20
Present value of cash **inflows**	173,363.80
Present value cash **outflows** (purchase price due today at 10%):	
$154,000 × PV of 1 due today	
$154,000 × 1.00000 =	154,000.00
Net present value	**$ 19,363.80**

Because the present value of the cash receipts (inflows) of $173,363.80 ($151,631.60 + $21,732.20) exceeds the present value of the cash payments (outflows) of $154,000.00, the net present value of $19,363.80 is positive, and **the decision to invest should be accepted**.

Now assume that Nagel-Siebert uses a discount rate of 15%, not 10%, because it wants a greater return on its investments in capital assets. The cash receipts and cash payments by Nagel-Siebert are the same. The present values of these receipts and cash payments discounted at 15% are shown in Illustration D-24.

Illustration D-24
Present value computations at 15 percent

Present Values Using a 15 Percent Discount Rate	
Present value of net operating cash flows received annually over 5 years at 15%:	
$40,000 × 3.35216	$134,086.40
Present value of salvage value (cash) to be received in 5 years at 15%	
$35,000 × .49718	17,401.30
Present value of cash **inflows**	$151,487.70
Present value of cash **outflows** (purchase price due today at 15%):	
$154,000 × 1.00000	154,000.00
Net present value	**$ (2,512.30)**

Because the present value of the cash payments (outflows) of $154,000 exceeds the present value of the cash receipts (inflows) of $151,487.70 ($134,086.40 + $17,401.30), the net present value of $2,512.30 is negative, and **the investment should be rejected**.

The above discussion relied on present value tables in solving present value problems. As we show in the next section, calculators may also be used to compute present values without the use of these tables. Some calculators, especially the "business" or financial calculators, have present value (PV) functions that allow you to calculate present values by merely identifying the proper amount, discount rate, periods, and pressing the PV key.

section three

Using Financial Calculators

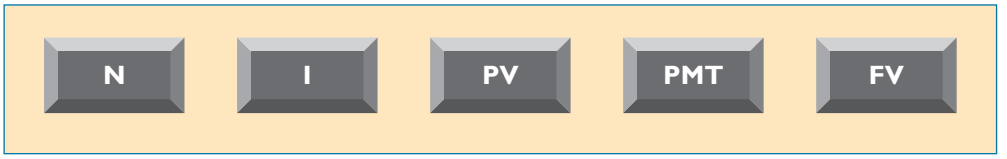
study objective 9

Use a financial calculator to solve time value of money problems.

Business professionals, once they have mastered the underlying concepts in sections 1 and 2, often use a financial calculator to solve time value of money problems. In many cases, they must use calculators if interest rates or time periods do not correspond with the information provided in the compound interest tables.

To use financial calculators, you enter the time value of money variables into the calculator. Illustration D-25 shows the five most common keys used to solve time value of money problems.[2]

Illustration D-25
Financial calculator keys



where:

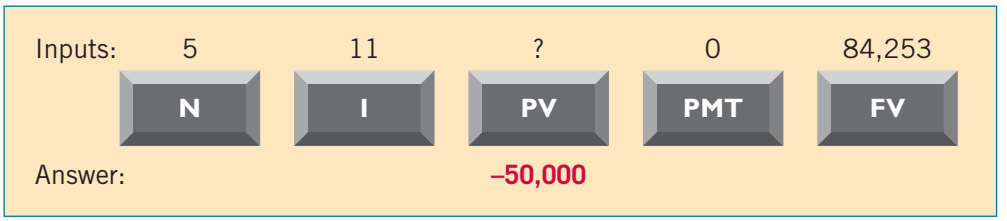
N = number of periods
I = interest rate per period (some calculators use I/YR or i)
PV = present value (occurs at the beginning of the first period)
PMT = payment (all payments are equal, and none are skipped)
FV = future value (occurs at the end of the last period)

In solving time value of money problems in this appendix, you will generally be given three of four variables and will have to solve for the remaining variable. The fifth key (the key not used) is given a value of zero to ensure that this variable is not used in the computation.

Present Value of a Single Sum

To illustrate how to solve a present value problem using a financial calculator, assume that you want to know the present value of $84,253 to be received in five years, discounted at 11% compounded annually. Illustration D-26 depicts this problem.

Illustration D-26
Calculator solution for present value of a single sum



[2]On many calculators, these keys are actual buttons on the face of the calculator; on others, they appear on the display after the user accesses a present value menu.

Illustration D-26 shows you the information (inputs) to enter into the calculator: N = 5, I = 11, PMT = 0, and FV = 84,253. You then press PV for the answer: −$50,000. As indicated, the PMT key was given a value of zero because a series of payments did not occur in this problem.

PLUS AND MINUS

The use of plus and minus signs in time value of money problems with a financial calculator can be confusing. Most financial calculators are programmed so that the positive and negative cash flows in any problem offset each other. In the present value problem above, we identified the $84,253 future value initial investment as a positive (inflow); the answer −$50,000 was shown as a negative amount, reflecting a cash outflow. If the 84,253 were entered as a negative, then the final answer would have been reported as a positive 50,000.

Hopefully, the sign convention will not cause confusion. If you understand what is required in a problem, you should be able to interpret a positive or negative amount in determining the solution to a problem.

COMPOUNDING PERIODS

In the problem above, we assumed that compounding occurs once a year. Some financial calculators have a default setting, which assumes that compounding occurs 12 times a year. You must determine what default period has been programmed into your calculator and change it as necessary to arrive at the proper compounding period.

ROUNDING

Most financial calculators store and calculate using 12 decimal places. As a result, because compound interest tables generally have factors only up to five decimal places, a slight difference in the final answer can result. In most time value of money problems, the final answer will not include more than two decimal places.

Present Value of an Annuity

To illustrate how to solve a present value of an annuity problem using a financial calculator, assume that you are asked to determine the present value of rental receipts of $6,000 each to be received at the end of each of the next five years, when discounted at 12%, as pictured in Illustration D-27.

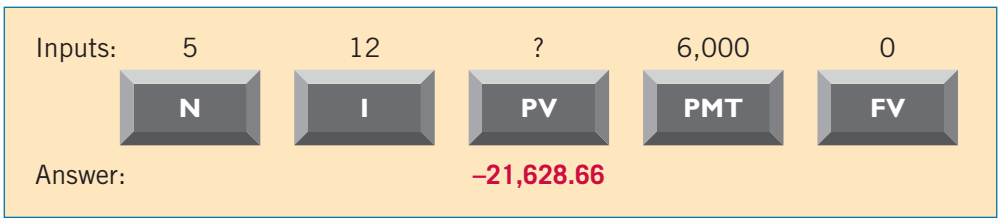


Illustration D-27
Calculator solution for present value of an annuity

In this case, you enter N = 5, I = 12, PMT = 6,000, FV = 0, and then press PV to arrive at the answer of −$21,628.66.

Useful Applications of the Financial Calculator

With a financial calculator, you can solve for any interest rate or for any number of periods in a time value of money problem. Here are some examples of these applications.

AUTO LOAN

Assume you are financing the purchase of a used car with a three-year loan. The loan has a 9.5% stated annual interest rate, compounded monthly. The price of the car is $6,000, and you want to determine the monthly payments, assuming that the payments start one month after the purchase. This problem is pictured in Illustration D-28.

Illustration D-28
Calculator solution for auto loan payments

Inputs:	36	9.5	6,000	?	0
	N	I	PV	PMT	FV
Answer:				–192.20	

To solve this problem, you enter N = 36 (12 × 3), I = 9.5, PV = 6,000, FV = 0, and then press PMT. You will find that the monthly payments will be $192.20. Note that the payment key is usually programmed for 12 payments per year. Thus, you must change the default (compounding period) if the payments are other than monthly.

MORTGAGE LOAN AMOUNT

Let's say you are evaluating financing options for a loan on a house. You decide that the maximum mortgage payment you can afford is $700 per month. The annual interest rate is 8.4%. If you get a mortgage that requires you to make monthly payments over a 15-year period, what is the maximum home loan you can afford? Illustration D-29 depicts this problem.

Illustration D-29
Calculator solution for mortgage amount

Inputs:	180	8.4	?	–700	0
	N	I	PV	PMT	FV
Answer:			71,509.81		

You enter N = 180 (12 × 15 years), I = 8.4, PMT = −700, FV = 0, and press PV. With the payments-per-year key set at 12, you find a present value of $71,509.81—the maximum home loan you can afford, given that you want to keep your mortgage payments at $700. Note that by changing any of the variables, you can quickly conduct "what-if" analyses for different situations.

Summary of Study Objectives

1 **Distinguish between simple and compound interest.** Simple interest is computed on the principal only, while compound interest is computed on the principal and any interest earned that has not been withdrawn.

2 **Solve for future value of a single amount.** Prepare a time diagram of the problem. Identify the principal amount, the number of compounding periods, and the interest rate. Using the future value of 1 table, multiply the principal amount by the future value factor specified at the intersection of the number of periods and the interest rate.

3 **Solve for future value of an annuity.** Prepare a time diagram of the problem. Identify the amount of the periodic payments, the number of compounding periods, and the interest rate. Using the future value of an annuity of 1 table, multiply the amount of the payments by the future value factor specified at the intersection of the number of periods and the interest rate.

4 **Identify the variables fundamental to solving present value problems.** The following three variables are fundamental to solving present value problems: (1) the future amount, (2) the number of periods, and (3) the interest rate (the discount rate).

5 **Solve for present value of a single amount.** Prepare a time diagram of the problem. Identify the future amount, the number of discounting periods, and the discount (interest) rate. Using the present value of a single amount table, multiply the future amount by the present value factor specified at the intersection of the number of periods and the discount rate.

6 **Solve for present value of an annuity.** Prepare a time diagram of the problem. Identify the amount of future periodic receipts or payment (annuities), the number of discounting periods, and the discount (interest) rate. Using the present value of an annuity of 1 table, multiply the amount of the annuity by the present value factor specified at the intersection of the number of periods and the interest rate.

7 **Compute the present value of notes and bonds.** Determine the present value of the principal amount: Multiply the principal amount (a single future amount) by the present value factor (from the present value of 1 table) intersecting at the number of periods (number of interest payments) and the discount rate. Determine the present value of the series of interest payments: Multiply the amount of the interest payment by the present value factor (from the present value of an annuity of 1 table) intersecting at the number of periods (number of interest payments) and the discount rate. Add the present value of the principal amount to the present value of the interest payments to arrive at the present value of the note or bond.

8 **Compute the present values in capital budgeting situations.** Compute the present values of all cash inflows and all cash outflows related to the capital budgeting proposal (an investment-type decision). If the **net** present value is positive, accept the proposal (make the investment). If the **net** present value is negative, reject the proposal (do not make the investment).

9 **Use a financial calculator to solve time value of money problems.** Financial calculators can be used to solve the same and additional problems as those solved with time value of money tables. Enter into the financial calculator the amounts for all of the known elements of a time value of money problem (periods, interest rate, payments, future or present value), and it solves for the unknown element. Particularly useful situations involve interest rates and compounding periods not presented in the tables.

Glossary

Annuity *(p. D-4)* A series of equal dollar amounts to be paid or received at evenly space time intervals (periodically).

Compound interest *(p. D-2)* The interest computed on the principal and any interest earned that has not been paid or withdrawn.

Discounting the future amount(s) *(p. D-7)* The process of determining present value.

Future value of a single amount *(p. D-2)* The value at a future date of a given amount invested, assuming compound interest.

Future value of an annuity *(p. D-5)* The sum of all the payments or receipts plus the accumulated compound interest on them.

Interest *(p. D-1)* Payment for the use of another person's money.

Present value *(p. D-7)* The value now of a given amount to be paid or received in the future assuming compound interest.

Present value of an annuity *(p. D-9)* The value now of a series of future receipts or payments, discounted assuming compound interest.

Principal *(p. D-1)* The amount borrowed or invested.

Simple interest *(p. D-1)* The interest computed on the principal only.

WILEY PLUS
Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Brief Exercises

(Use tables to solve exercises BED-1 to BED-25.)

Compute the future value of a single amount. (SO 2), AP

BED-1 Randy Owen invested $8,000 at 5% annual interest, and left the money invested without withdrawing any of the interest for 12 years. At the end of the 12 years, Randy withdrew the accumulated amount of money. (a) What amount did Randy withdraw, assuming the investment earns simple interest? (b) What amount did Randy withdraw, assuming the investment earns interest compounded annually?

Use future value tables. (SO 2, 3), C

BED-2 For each of the following cases, indicate (a) to what interest rate columns and (b) to what number of periods you would refer in looking up the future value factor.

(1) In Table 1 (future value of 1):

	Annual Rate	Number of Years Invested	Compounded
Case A	6%	3	Annually
Case B	8%	4	Semiannually

(2) In Table 2 (future value of an annuity of 1):

	Annual Rate	Number of Years Invested	Compounded
Case A	5%	8	Annually
Case B	6%	6	Semiannually

Compute the future value of a single amount. (SO 2), AP

BED-3 Joyce Company signed a lease for an office building for a period of 12 years. Under the lease agreement, a security deposit of $9,200 is made. The deposit will be returned at the expiration of the lease with interest compounded at 4% per year. What amount will Joyce receive at the time the lease expires?

Compute the future value of an annuity. (SO 3), AP

BED-4 Bates Company issued $1,000,000, 10-year bonds and agreed to make annual sinking fund deposits of $78,000. The deposits are made at the end of each year into an account paying 5% annual interest. What amount will be in the sinking fund at the end of 10 years?

Compute the future value of a single amount and of an annuity. (SO 2, 3), AP

BED-5 Frank and Maureen Fantazzi invested $6,000 in a savings account paying 4% annual interest when their daughter, Angela, was born. They also deposited $1,000 on each of her birthdays until she was 18 (including her 18th birthday). How much was in the savings account on her 18th birthday (after the last deposit)?

Compute the future value of a single amount. (SO 2), AP

BED-6 Hugh Curtin borrowed $34,000 on July 1, 2012. This amount plus accrued interest at 9% compounded annually is to be repaid on July 1, 2017. How much will Hugh have to repay on July 1, 2017?

Use present value tables. (SO 5, 6), C

BED-7 For each of the following cases, indicate (a) to what interest rate columns and (b) to what number of periods you would refer in looking up the discount rate.

(1) In Table 3 (present value of 1):

	Annual Rate	Number of Years Involved	Discounts per Year
Case A	12%	6	Annually
Case B	10%	11	Annually
Case C	6%	9	Semiannually

(2) In Table 4 (present value of an annuity of 1):

	Annual Rate	Number of Years Involved	Number of Payments Involved	Frequency of Payments
Case A	12%	20	20	Annually
Case B	10%	5	5	Annually
Case C	8%	4	8	Semiannually

BED-8 (a) What is the present value of $28,000 due 9 periods from now, discounted at 10%?
(b) What is the present value of $28,000 to be received at the end of each of 6 periods, discounted at 9%?

Determine present values. (SO 5, 6), **AP**

BED-9 Chaffee Company is considering an investment that will return a lump sum of $750,000 five years from now. What amount should Chaffee Company pay for this investment to earn a 9% return?

Compute the present value of a single amount investment. (SO 5), **AP**

BED-10 Lloyd Company earns 10% on an investment that will return $480,000 eight years from now. What is the amount Lloyd should invest now to earn this rate of return?

Compute the present value of a single amount investment. (SO 5), **AP**

BED-11 Arthur Company is considering investing in an annuity contract that will return $45,000 annually at the end of each year for 15 years. What amount should Arthur Company pay for this investment if it earns a 5% return?

Compute the present value of an annuity investment. (SO 6), **AP**

BED-12 Kaehler Enterprises earns 8% on an investment that pays back $90,000 at the end of each of the next 6 years. What is the amount Kaehler Enterprises invested to earn the 8% rate of return?

Compute the present value of an annuity investment. (SO 6), **AP**

BED-13 Hanna Railroad Co. is about to issue $300,000 of 10-year bonds paying a 9% interest rate, with interest payable semiannually. The discount rate for such securities is 8%. How much can Hanna expect to receive for the sale of these bonds?

Compute the present value of bonds. (SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

BED-14 Assume the same information as BED-13 except that the discount rate was 10% instead of 8%. In this case, how much can Hanna expect to receive from the sale of these bonds?

Compute the present value of bonds. (SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

BED-15 Tomas Taco Company receives a $64,000, 6-year note bearing interest of 6% (paid annually) from a customer at a time when the discount rate is 8%. What is the present value of the note received by Tomas?

Compute the present value of a note. (SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

BED-16 Gleason Enterprises issued 9%, 8-year, $2,600,000 par value bonds that pay interest semiannually on October 1 and April 1. The bonds are dated April 1, 2012, and are issued on that date. The discount rate of interest for such bonds on April 1, 2012, is 10%. What cash proceeds did Gleason receive from issuance of the bonds?

Compute the present value of bonds. (SO 5, 6, 7), **AP**

BED-17 Mark Barton owns a garage and is contemplating purchasing a tire retreading machine for $18,000. After estimating costs and revenues, Mark projects a net cash flow from the retreading machine of $3,300 annually for 8 years. Mark hopes to earn a return of 10 percent on such investments. What is the present value of the retreading operation? Should Mark purchase the retreading machine?

Compute the present value of a machine for purposes of making a purchase decision. (SO 6, 7), **AP**

BED-18 Frazier Company issues an 8%, 5-year mortgage note on January 1, 2012, to obtain financing for new equipment. Land is used as collateral for the note. The terms provide for semiannual installment payments of $46,850. What were the cash proceeds received from the issuance of the note?

Compute the present value of a note. (SO 6), **AP**

BED-19 Leffler Company is considering purchasing equipment. The equipment will produce the following cash flows: Year 1, $38,000; Year 2, $40,000; and Year 3, $50,000. Leffler requires a minimum rate of return of 10%. What is the maximum price Leffler should pay for this equipment?

Compute the maximum price to pay for a machine. (SO 6, 7), **AP**

BED-20 If Colleen Mooney invests $4,172.65 now and she will receive $10,000 at the end of 15 years, what annual rate of interest will Colleen earn on her investment? (*Hint:* Use Table 3.)

Compute the interest rate on a single amount. (SO 5), **AN**

BED-21 Wayne Kurt has been offered the opportunity of investing $25,490 now. The investment will earn 10% per year and at the end of that time will return Wayne $80,000. How many years must Wayne wait to receive $80,000? (*Hint:* Use Table 3.)

Compute the number of periods of a single amount. (SO 5), **AN**

BED-22 Joanne Quick made an investment of $9,128.55. From this investment, she will receive $1,000 annually for the next 20 years starting one year from now. What rate of interest will Joanne's investment be earning for her? (*Hint:* Use Table 4.)

Compute the interest rate on an annuity. (SO 6), **AN**

BED-23 Patty Schleis invests $5,146.12 now for a series of $1,000 annual returns beginning one year from now. Patty will earn a return of 11% on the initial investment. How many annual payments of $1,000 will Patty receive? (*Hint:* Use Table 4.)

Compute the number of periods of an annuity. (SO 6), **AN**

Compute the present value of a machine for purposes of making a purchase decision.
(SO 8), AP

BED-24 Barney Googal owns a garage and is contemplating purchasing a tire retreading machine for $14,280. After estimating costs and revenues, Barney projects a net cash flow from the retreading machine of $2,900 annually for 8 years. Barney hopes to earn a return of 11% on such investments. What is the present value of the retreading operation? Should Barney Googal purchase the retreading machine?

Compute the maximum price to pay for a machine.
(SO 8), AP

BED-25 Ramos Company is considering purchasing equipment. The equipment will produce the following cash flows: Year 1, $30,000; Year 2, $40,000; Year 3, $50,000. Ramos requires a minimum rate of return of 12%. What is the maximum price Ramos should pay for this equipment?

Determine interest rate.
(SO 9), AP

BED-26 Carly Simon wishes to invest $18,000 on July 1, 2012, and have it accumulate to $50,000 by July 1, 2022.

Instructions
Use a financial calculator to determine at what exact annual rate of interest Carly must invest the $18,000.

Determine interest rate.
(SO 9), AP

BED-27 On July 17, 2012, James Taylor borrowed $60,000 from his grandfather to open a clothing store. Starting July 17, 2018, James has to make 10 equal annual payments of $8,860 each to repay the loan.

Instructions
Use a financial calculator to determine what interest rate James is paying.

Determine interest rate.
(SO 9), AP

BED-28 As the purchaser of a new house, Carrie Underwood has signed a mortgage note to pay the Nashville National Bank and Trust Co. $8,400 every 6 months for 20 years, at the end of which time she will own the house. At the date the mortgage is signed, the purchase price was $198,000 and Underwood made a down payment of $20,000. The first payment will be made 6 months after the date the mortgage is signed.

Instructions
Using a financial calculator, compute the exact rate of interest earned on the mortgage by the bank.

Various time value of money situations.
(SO 9), AP

BED-29 Using a financial calculator, solve for the unknowns in each of the following situations.

(a) On June 1, 2012, Holly Golightly purchases lakefront property from her neighbor, George Peppard, and agrees to pay the purchase price in seven payments of $16,000 each, the first payment to be payable June 1, 2013. (Assume that interest compounded at an annual rate of 6.9% is implicit in the payments.) What is the purchase price of the property?

(b) On January 1, 2012, Sammis Corporation purchased 200 of the $1,000 face value, 7% coupon, 10-year bonds of Malone Inc. The bonds mature on January 1, 2020, and pay interest annually beginning January 1, 2013. Sammis purchased the bonds to yield 8.65%. How much did Sammis pay for the bonds?

Various time value of money situations.
(SO 9), AP

BED-30 Using a financial calculator, provide a solution to each of the following situations.

(a) Lynn Anglin owes a debt of $42,000 from the purchase of her new sport utility vehicle. The debt bears annual interest of 7.8% compounded monthly. Lynn wishes to pay the debt and interest in equal monthly payments over 8 years, beginning one month hence. What equal monthly payments will pay off the debt and interest?

(b) On January 1, 2012, Roger Molony offers to buy Dave Feeney's used snowmobile for $8,000, payable in five equal annual installments, which are to include 7.25% interest on the unpaid balance and a portion of the principal. If the first payment is to be made on December 31, 2012, how much will each payment be?

appendix E

REPORTING AND ANALYZING INVESTMENTS

study objectives

After studying this appendix, you should be able to:

1. Identify the reasons corporations invest in stocks and debt securities.
2. Explain the accounting for debt investments.
3. Explain the accounting for stock investments.
4. Describe the purpose and usefulness of consolidated financial statements.
5. Indicate how debt and stock investments are valued and reported in the financial statements.
6. Distinguish between short-term and long-term investments.

Why Corporations Invest

study objective 1
Identify the reasons corporations invest in stocks and debt securities.

Corporations purchase investments in debt or equity securities generally for one of three reasons. First, a corporation may **have excess cash** that it does not need for the immediate purchase of operating assets. For example, many companies experience seasonal fluctuations in sales. A Cape Cod marina has more sales in the spring and summer than in the fall and winter. The reverse is true for an Aspen ski shop. Thus, at the end of an operating cycle, many companies may have cash on hand that is temporarily idle until the start of another operating cycle. These companies may invest the excess funds to earn—through interest and dividends—a greater return than they would get by just holding the funds in the bank. The role that such temporary investments play in the operating cycle is depicted in Illustration E-1.

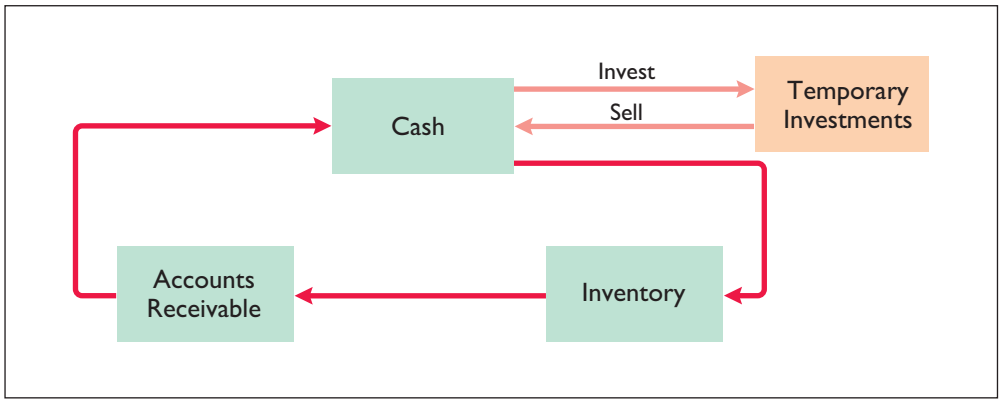


Illustration E-1
Temporary investments and the operating cycle

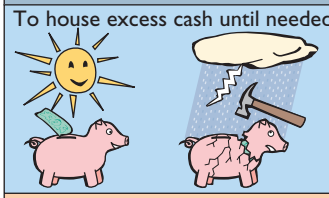
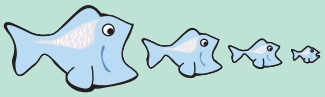
A second reason some companies such as banks purchase investments is to generate **earnings from investment income**. Although banks make most of their earnings by lending money, they also generate earnings by investing in debt and equity securities. Banks purchase investment securities because loan demand varies both seasonally and with changes in the economic climate. Thus, when loan demand is low, a bank must find other uses for its cash.

Pension funds and mutual funds are corporations that also regularly invest to generate earnings. However, they do so for *speculative reasons*. That is, they are speculating that the investment will increase in value and thus result in positive returns. Therefore, they invest primarily in the common stock of other corporations.

Third, companies also invest for **strategic reasons**. A company may purchase a noncontrolling interest in another company in a related industry in which it wishes to establish a presence. Alternatively, a company can exercise some influence over one of its customers or suppliers by purchasing a significant, but not controlling, interest in that company. Or, a corporation may choose to purchase a controlling interest in another company in order to enter a new industry without incurring the costs and risks associated with starting from scratch.

In summary, businesses invest in other companies for the reasons shown in Illustration E-2.

Illustration E-2 Why corporations invest

Reason	Typical Investment
To house excess cash until needed 	Low-risk, high-liquidity, short-term securities such as government-issued securities
To generate earnings	Banks and financial institutions often purchase debt securities, while mutual funds and index funds purchase stock securities
To meet strategic goals 	Stocks of companies in a related industry or in an unrelated industry that the company wishes to enter

Accounting for Debt Investments

study objective 2

Explain the accounting for debt investments.

Debt investments are investments in government and corporation bonds. In accounting for debt investments, companies must make entries to record (1) the acquisition, (2) the interest revenue, and (3) the sale.

RECORDING ACQUISITION OF BONDS

At acquisition, the cost principle applies. Cost includes all expenditures necessary to acquire these investments, such as the price paid plus brokerage fees (commissions), if any.

For example, assume that Kuhl Corporation acquires 50 Doan Inc. 12%, 10-year, $1,000 bonds on January 1, 2012, for $54,000, including brokerage fees of $1,000. Kuhl records the investment as:

A	=	L	+	SE
+54,000				
−54,000				

Cash Flows
−$54,000

Jan. 1	Debt Investments	54,000	
	Cash		54,000
	(To record purchase of 50 Doan Inc. bonds)		

RECORDING BOND INTEREST

The Doan Inc. bonds pay interest of $3,000 semiannually on July 1 and January 1 ($50,000 × 12% × $\frac{1}{2}$). The entry for the receipt of interest on July 1 is:

July 1	Cash	3,000	
	Interest Revenue		3,000
	(To record receipt of interest on Doan Inc. bonds)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+3,000				+3,000 Rev

Cash Flows
+$3,000

If Kuhl Corporation's fiscal year ends on December 31, it accrues the interest of $3,000 earned since July 1. The adjusting entry is:

Dec. 31	Interest Receivable	3,000	
	Interest Revenue		3,000
	(To accrue interest on Doan Inc. bonds)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+3,000				+3,000 Rev

Cash Flows
no effect

Kuhl reports Interest Receivable as a current asset in the balance sheet. It reports Interest Revenue under "Other revenues and gains" in the income statement.

Kuhl records receipt of the interest on January 1 as follows.

Jan. 1	Cash	3,000	
	Interest Receivable		3,000
	(To record receipt of accrued interest)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+3,000 −3,000				

Cash Flows
+$3,000

A credit to Interest Revenue at this time would be incorrect. Why? Because the company earned and accrued the interest revenue in the preceding accounting period.

RECORDING SALE OF BONDS

When Kuhl sells the bond investments, it credits the investment account for the cost of the bonds. The company records as a gain or loss any difference between the net proceeds from the sale (sales price less brokerage fees) and the cost of the bonds.

Helpful Hint The accounting for short-term debt investments and long-term debt investments is similar. Any exceptions are discussed in more advanced courses.

Assume, for example, that Kuhl Corporation receives net proceeds of $58,000 on the sale of the Doan Inc. bonds on January 1, 2013, after receiving the interest due. Since the securities cost $54,000, Kuhl has realized a gain of $4,000. It records the sale as follows.

Jan. 1	Cash	58,000	
	Debt Investments		54,000
	Gain on Sale of Debt Investments		4,000
	(To record sale of Doan Inc. bonds)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+58,000 −54,000				+4,000 Rev

Cash Flows
+$58,000

Kuhl reports the gain on the sale of debt investments under "Other revenues and gains" in the income statement and reports losses under "Other expenses and losses."

Accounting for Stock Investments

study objective 3

Explain the accounting for stock investments.

Stock investments are investments in the capital stock of corporations. When a company holds stock (and/or debt) of several different corporations, the group of securities is an **investment portfolio**.

The accounting for investments in common stock depends on the extent of the investor's influence over the operating and financial affairs of the issuing corporation (the **investee**). Illustration E-3 shows the general guidelines.

Illustration E-3
Accounting guidelines for stock investments

Investor's Ownership Interest in Investee's Common Stock	Presumed Influence on Investee	Accounting Guidelines
Less than 20%	Insignificant	Cost method
Between 20% and 50%	Significant	Equity method
More than 50%	Controlling	Consolidated financial statements

Companies are required to use judgment instead of blindly following the guidelines.[1] We explain and illustrate the application of each guideline next.

HOLDINGS OF LESS THAN 20%

In the accounting for stock investments of less than 20%, companies use the cost method. Under the **cost method**, companies record the investment at cost and recognize revenue only when cash dividends are received.

Recording Acquisition of Stock

At acquisition, the cost principle applies. Cost includes all expenditures necessary to acquire these investments, such as the price paid plus brokerage fees (commissions), if any.

Assume, for example, that on July 1, 2012, Sanchez Corporation acquires 1,000 shares (10% ownership) of Beal Corporation common stock at $40 per share plus brokerage fees of $500. The entry for the purchase is:

A	=	L	+	SE
+40,500				
−40,500				

Cash Flows
−$40,500

July 1	Stock Investments	40,500	
	Cash		40,500
	(To record purchase of 1,000 shares of Beal common stock)		

[1]Among the factors that companies should consider in determining an investor's influence are whether (1) the investor has representation on the investee's board of directors, (2) the investor participates in the investee's policy-making process, (3) there are material transactions between the investor and the investee, and (4) the common stock held by other stockholders is concentrated or dispersed.

Recording Dividends

During the time the company holds the stock, it makes entries for any cash dividends received. Thus, if Sanchez Corporation receives a $2 per share dividend on December 31, the entry is:

Dec. 31	Cash (1,000 × $2)	2,000	
	Dividend Revenue		2,000
	(To record receipt of a cash dividend)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+2,000				+2,000 Rev

Cash Flows
+$2,000

Sanchez reports Dividend Revenue under "Other revenues and gains" in the income statement.

Recording Sale of Stock

When a company sells a stock investment, it recognizes the difference between the net proceeds from the sale (sales price less brokerage fees) and the cost of the stock as a gain or a loss.

Assume, for instance, that Sanchez Corporation receives net proceeds of $39,500 on the sale of its Beal Corporation stock on February 10, 2013. Because the stock cost $40,500, Sanchez has incurred a loss of $1,000. It records the sale as:

Feb. 10	Cash	39,500	
	Loss on Sale of Stock Investments	1,000	
	Stock Investments		40,500
	(To record sale of Beal common stock)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+39,500				
				−1,000 Exp
−40,500				

Cash Flows
+$39,500

Sanchez reports the loss account under "Other expenses and losses" in the income statement, and would show a gain on sale under "Other revenues and gains."

HOLDINGS BETWEEN 20% AND 50%

When an investor company owns only a small portion of the shares of stock of another company, the investor cannot exercise control over the investee. But when an investor owns between 20% and 50% of the common stock of a corporation, it is presumed that the investor has significant influence over the financial and operating activities of the investee. The investor probably has a representative on the investee's board of directors. Through that representative, the investor begins to exercise some control over the investee—and the investee company in some sense becomes part of the investor company.

For example, even prior to purchasing all of Turner Broadcasting, Time Warner owned 20% of Turner. Because it exercised significant control over major decisions made by Turner, Time Warner used an approach called the equity method. Under the **equity method, the investor records its share of the net income of the investee in the year when it is earned**. An alternative might be to delay recognizing the investor's share of net income until a cash dividend is declared. But that approach would ignore the fact that the investor and investee are, in some sense, one company, making the investor better off by the investee's earned income.

Under the **equity method**, the company initially records the investment in common stock at cost. After that, it adjusts the investment account **annually** to show the investor's equity in the investee. Each year, the investor does the following: (1) It increases (debits) the investment account and increases (credits)

revenue for its share of the investee's net income.[2] (2) The investor also decreases (credits) the investment account for the amount of dividends received. The investment account is reduced for dividends received because payment of a dividend decreases the net assets of the investee.

Recording Acquisition of Stock

Assume that Milar Corporation acquires 30% of the common stock of Beck Company for $120,000 on January 1, 2012. The entry to record this transaction is:

A	=	L	+	SE
+120,000				
−120,000				

Cash Flows
−$120,000

Jan. 1	Stock Investments	120,000	
	Cash		120,000
	(To record purchase of Beck common stock)		

Recording Revenue and Dividends

For 2012, Beck reports net income of $100,000. It declares and pays a $40,000 cash dividend. Milar must record (1) its share of Beck's income, $30,000 (30% × $100,000), and (2) the reduction in the investment account for the dividends received, $12,000 ($40,000 × 30%). The entries are:

A	=	L	+	SE
+30,000				+30,000 Rev

Cash Flows
no effect

(1)

Dec. 31	Stock Investments	30,000	
	Revenue from Investment in Beck Company		30,000
	(To record 30% equity in Beck's 2012 net income)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+12,000				
−12,000				

Cash Flows
+$12,000

(2)

Dec. 31	Cash	12,000	
	Stock Investments		12,000
	(To record dividends received)		

After Milar posts the transactions for the year, the investment and revenue accounts are as shown in Illustration E-4.

Illustration E-4
Investment and revenue accounts after posting

Stock Investments				
Jan. 1		120,000	Dec. 31	**12,000**
Dec. 31		**30,000**		
Dec. 31	Bal.	138,000		

Revenue from Investment in Beck Company		
	Dec. 31	**30,000**

During the year, the investment account increased by $18,000. This $18,000 is Milar's 30% equity in the $60,000 increase in Beck's retained earnings ($100,000 − $40,000). In addition, Milar reports $30,000 of revenue from its investment, which is 30% of Beck's net income of $100,000.

[2]Conversely, the investor increases (debits) a loss account and decreases (credits) the investment account for its share of the investee's net loss.

Note that the difference between reported income under the cost method and reported revenue under the equity method can be significant. For example, Milar would report only $12,000 of dividend revenue (30% × $40,000) if it used the cost method.

HOLDINGS OF MORE THAN 50%

study objective 4

Describe the purpose and usefulness of consolidated financial statements.

A company that owns more than 50% of the common stock of another entity is known as the **parent company**. The entity whose stock is owned by the parent company is called the **subsidiary (affiliated) company**. Because of its stock ownership, the parent company has a **controlling interest** in the subsidiary company.

When a company owns more than 50% of the common stock of another company, it usually prepares **consolidated financial statements**. Consolidated financial statements present the assets and liabilities controlled by the parent company. They also present the total revenues and expenses of the subsidiary companies. Companies prepare consolidated statements **in addition to** the financial statements for the individual parent and subsidiary companies.

Helpful Hint If the parent (A) has three wholly owned subsidiaries (B, C, and D), there are four separate legal entities but only one economic entity from the viewpoint of the shareholders of the parent company.

As noted earlier, prior to acquiring all of Turner Broadcasting, Time Warner accounted for its investment in Turner using the equity method. Time Warner's net investment in Turner was reported in a single line item—Other investments. After the merger, Time Warner instead consolidated Turner's results with its own. Under this approach, Time Warner included the individual assets and liabilities of Turner with its own assets. That is, Turner's plant and equipment were added to Time Warner's plant and equipment, its receivables were added to Time Warner's receivables, and so on. A similar sort of consolidation went on when AOL merged with Time Warner.

Consolidated statements are useful to the stockholders, board of directors, and management of the parent company. Consolidated statements indicate to creditors, prospective investors, and regulatory agencies the magnitude and scope of operations of the companies under common control. For example, regulators and the courts undoubtedly used the consolidated statements of AT&T to determine whether a breakup of AT&T was in the public interest. Listed here are three companies that prepare consolidated statements and some of the companies they have owned. Note that one, Disney, is Time Warner's arch rival.

PepsiCo	Cendant	The Walt Disney Company
Frito-Lay	Howard Johnson	Capital Cities/ABC, Inc.
Tropicana	Ramada Inn	Disneyland, Disney World
Quaker Oats	Century 21	Mighty Ducks
Pepsi-Cola	Coldwell Banker	Anaheim Angels
Gatorade	Avis	ESPN

Valuing and Reporting Investments

study objective 5

Indicate how debt and stock investments are valued and reported in the financial statements.

The value of debt and stock investments may fluctuate greatly during the time they are held. For example, in a 12-month period, the stock of Time Warner hit a high of $58\frac{1}{2}$ and a low of 9. In light of such price fluctuations, how should companies value investments at the balance sheet date? Valuation could be at cost, at fair value (market value), or at the lower-of-cost-or-market value.

Many people argue that fair value offers the best approach because it represents the expected cash realizable value of securities. **Fair value** is the amount for which a security could be sold in a normal market. Others counter that, unless a security is going to be sold soon, the fair value is not relevant because the price of the security will likely change again.

CATEGORIES OF SECURITIES

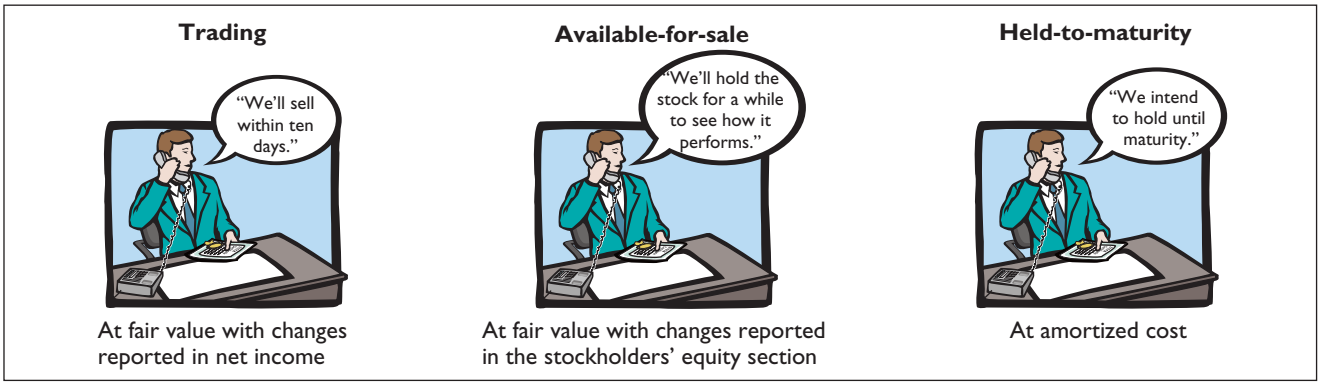
International Note A recent U.S. accounting standard gives companies the "option" of applying fair value accounting, rather than historical cost, to certain types of assets and liabilities. This makes U.S. accounting closer to international standards.

For purposes of valuation and reporting at a financial statement date, debt and stock investments are classified into three categories of securities:

1. **Trading securities** are bought and held primarily for sale in the near term to generate income on short-term price differences.
2. **Available-for-sale securities** are held with the intent of selling them sometime in the future.
3. **Held-to-maturity securities** are debt securities that the investor has the intent and ability to hold to maturity.[3]

Illustration E-5 shows the valuation guidelines for these securities. **These guidelines apply to all debt securities and all stock investments in which the holdings are less than 20%.**

Illustration E-5
Valuation guidelines



Trading Securities

Trading securities are held with the intention of selling them in a short period of time (generally less than a month). *Trading* means frequent buying and selling. As indicated in Illustration E-5, companies adjust trading securities to fair value at the end of each period (an approach referred to as **mark-to-market** accounting); they report changes from cost **as part of net income**. The changes are reported as **unrealized gains or losses** because the securities have not been sold. The unrealized gain or loss is the difference between the **total cost** of trading securities and their **total fair value**. Companies classify trading securities as a current asset.

As an example, Illustration E-6 shows the costs and fair values for investments classified as trading securities for Pace Corporation on December 31, 2012. Pace Corporation has an unrealized gain of $7,000 because total fair value ($147,000) is $7,000 greater than total cost ($140,000).

Illustration E-6
Valuation of trading securities

Trading Securities, December 31, 2012

Investments	Cost	Fair Value	Unrealized Gain (Loss)
Yorkville Company bonds	$ 50,000	$ 48,000	$(2,000)
Kodak Company stock	90,000	99,000	9,000
Total	$140,000	$147,000	**$ 7,000**

[3]This category is provided for completeness. The accounting and valuation issues related to held-to-maturity securities are discussed in more advanced accounting courses.

The fact that trading securities are a short-term investment increases the likelihood that Pace will sell them at fair value for a gain. Pace records fair value and the unrealized gain through an adjusting entry at the time it prepares financial statements. In the entry, the company uses a valuation allowance account, Market Adjustment—Trading, to record the difference between the total cost and the total fair value of the securities. The adjusting entry for Pace Corporation is:

Helpful Hint Companies report an unrealized gain or loss in the income statement because of the likelihood that the securities will be sold at fair value since they are a short-term investment.

Dec. 31	Market Adjustment—Trading	7,000	
	Unrealized Gain—Income		7,000
	(To record unrealized gain on trading securities)		

A	=	L	+	SE
+7,000				+7,000 Rev

Cash Flows
no effect

The use of the Market Adjustment—Trading account enables the company to maintain a record of the investment cost. Actual cost is needed to determine the gain or loss realized when the securities are sold. The company adds the debit balance (or subtracts a credit balance) of the Market Adjustment—Trading account to the cost of the investments to arrive at a fair value for the trading securities.

The fair value of the securities is the amount companies report on the balance sheet. They report the unrealized gain on the income statement under "Other revenues and gains." The term *income* in the account title indicates that the gain affects net income. If the total cost of the trading securities is greater than total fair value, an unrealized loss has occurred. In such a case, the adjusting entry is a debit to Unrealized Loss—Income and a credit to Market Adjustment—Trading. Companies report the unrealized loss under "Other expenses and losses" in the income statement.

The market adjustment account is carried forward into future accounting periods. No entries are made to this account during the period. At the end of each reporting period, a company adjusts the balance in the account to the difference between cost and fair value at that time. It closes the Unrealized Gain—Income account or Unrealized Loss—Income account at the end of the reporting period.

Available-for-Sale Securities

As indicated earlier, available-for-sale securities are held with the intent of selling them sometime in the future. If the intent is to sell the securities within the next year or operating cycle, a company classifies the securities as current assets in the balance sheet. Otherwise, it classifies them as long-term assets in the investments section of the balance sheet.

Companies also report available-for-sale securities at fair value. The procedure for determining fair value and unrealized gain or loss for these securities is the same as that for trading securities. To illustrate, assume that Elbert Corporation has two securities that are classified as available-for-sale. Illustration E-7 provides information on the cost, fair value, and amount of the unrealized gain or loss on December 31, 2012. There is an unrealized loss of $9,537 because total cost ($293,537) is $9,537 more than total fair value ($284,000).

Illustration E-7
Valuation of available-for-sale securities

Available-for-Sale Securities, December 31, 2012

Investments	Cost	Fair Value	Unrealized Gain (Loss)
Campbell Soup Corporation			
8% bonds	$ 93,537	$103,600	$10,063
Hershey Foods stock	200,000	180,400	(19,600)
Total	$293,537	$284,000	$(9,537)

Both the adjusting entry and the reporting of the unrealized loss from Elbert's available-for-sale securities differ from those illustrated for trading securities. The differences result because these securities are not going to be sold in the near term. Thus, prior to actual sale it is much more likely that changes in fair value may reverse the unrealized loss. Therefore, Elbert does not report an unrealized loss in the income statement. Instead, it reports it as **a separate component of stockholders' equity**. In the adjusting entry, Elbert identifies the market adjustment account with available-for-sale securities, and identifies the unrealized gain or loss account with stockholders' equity. The adjusting entry for Elbert Corporation to record the unrealized loss of $9,537 is:

Helpful Hint The entry is the same regardless of whether the securities are considered short-term or long-term.

A	=	L	+	SE
				−9,537 Eq
−9,537				

Cash Flows
no effect

Dec. 31	Unrealized Gain or Loss—Equity	9,537	
	Market Adjustment—Available-for-Sale		9,537
	(To record unrealized loss on available-for-sale securities)		

Ethics Note Recently, the SEC accused investment bank Morgan Stanley of overstating the value of certain bond investments by $75 million. The SEC stated that, in applying fair value accounting, Morgan Stanley used its own more optimistic assumptions rather than relying on external pricing sources.

If total fair value exceeds total cost, Elbert would record the adjusting entry as an increase (debit) to Market Adjustment—Available-for-Sale and a credit to Unrealized Gain or Loss—Equity.

For available-for-sale securities, the company carries forward the Unrealized Gain or Loss—Equity account to future periods. At each future balance sheet date, the account is adjusted with the market adjustment account to show the difference between cost and fair value at that time.

BALANCE SHEET PRESENTATION

For balance sheet presentation, companies must classify investments as either short-term or long-term.

Short-Term Investments

study objective 6
Distinguish between short-term and long-term investments.

Short-term investments (also called **marketable securities**) are securities held by a company that are (1) **readily marketable** and (2) **intended to be converted into cash** within the next year or operating cycle, whichever is longer. Investments that do not meet **both criteria** are classified as **long-term investments**. In a recent survey of 600 large U.S. companies, 202 reported short-term investments.

Helpful Hint Trading securities are always classified as short-term. Available-for-sale securities can be either short-term or long-term.

READILY MARKETABLE. An investment is readily marketable when it can be sold easily whenever the need for cash arises. Short-term paper[4] meets this criterion because a company can readily sell it to other investors. Stocks and bonds traded on organized securities markets, such as the New York Stock Exchange, are readily marketable because they can be bought and sold daily. In contrast, there may be only a limited market for the securities issued by small corporations and no market for the securities of a privately held company.

INTENT TO CONVERT. Intent to convert means that management intends to sell the investment within the next year or operating cycle, whichever is longer. Generally, this criterion is satisfied when the investment is considered a resource that the company will use whenever the need for cash arises. For example, a ski resort may invest idle cash during the summer months with the intent to sell the securities to buy supplies and equipment shortly before the next winter season. This

[4]Short-term paper includes (1) certificates of deposits (CDs) issued by banks, (2) money market certificates issued by banks and savings and loan associations, (3) Treasury bills issued by the U.S. government, and (4) commercial paper issued by corporations with good credit ratings.

investment is considered short-term even if lack of snow cancels the next ski season and eliminates the need to convert the securities into cash as intended.

Because of their high liquidity, companies list short-term investments immediately below Cash in the current assets section of the balance sheet. Short-term investments are reported at fair value. For example, Weber Corporation would report its trading securities as shown in Illustration E-8.

Illustration E-8 Balance sheet presentation of short-term investments

WEBER CORPORATION Balance Sheet (partial)	
Current assets	
Cash	$21,000
Short-term investments, at fair value	**60,000**

Long-Term Investments

Companies generally report long-term investments in a separate section of the balance sheet immediately below "Current assets," as shown in Illustration E-9. Long-term investments in available-for-sale securities are reported at fair value. Investments in common stock accounted for under the equity method are reported at equity.

Illustration E-9 Balance sheet presentation of long-term investments

WEBER CORPORATION Balance Sheet (partial)		
Investments		
Bond sinking fund	$100,000	
Investments in stock of less than 20% owned companies, at fair value	**50,000**	
Investment in stock of 20%–50% owned company, at equity	**150,000**	
Total investments		$300,000

PRESENTATION OF REALIZED AND UNREALIZED GAIN OR LOSS

Companies must present in the financial statements gains and losses on investments, whether realized or unrealized. In the income statement, companies report gains and losses, as well as interest and dividend revenue, in the nonoperating activities section under the categories listed in Illustration E-10.

Illustration E-10 Nonoperating items related to investments

Other Revenue and Gains	Other Expenses and Losses
Interest Revenue	Loss on Sale of Investments
Dividend Revenue	Unrealized Loss—Income
Gain on Sale of Investments	
Unrealized Gain—Income	

As indicated earlier, companies report an unrealized gain or loss on available-for-sale securities as a separate component of stockholders' equity. To illustrate, assume that Muzzillo Inc. has common stock of $3,000,000, retained earnings of $1,500,000, and an unrealized loss on available-for-sale securities of $100,000.

Illustration E-11 shows the financial statement presentation of the unrealized loss.

Illustration E-11
Unrealized loss in stockholders' equity section

MUZZILLO INC. Balance Sheet (partial)	
Stockholders' equity	
Common stock	$3,000,000
Retained earnings	1,500,000
Total paid-in capital and retained earnings	4,500,000
Less: **Unrealized loss on available-for-sale securities**	**(100,000)**
Total stockholders' equity	$4,400,000

Note that the presentation of the loss is similar to the presentation of the cost of treasury stock in the stockholders' equity section. (It decreases stockholders' equity.) An unrealized gain would be added in this section. Reporting the unrealized gain or loss in the stockholders' equity section serves two important purposes: (1) It reduces the volatility of net income due to fluctuations in fair value. (2) It informs the financial statement user of the gain or loss that would occur if the company sold the securities at fair value.

Companies must report, as part of a more inclusive measure called *comprehensive income,* items such as unrealized gains and losses on available-for-sale securities, which affect stockholders' equity but are not included in the calculation of net income. For example, Tootsie Roll reported other comprehensive income in 2009 of $2,845,000. Note 11 to Tootsie Roll's financial statements shows that one component of this amount was unrealized gains and losses on investment securities. Comprehensive income is discussed more fully in Chapter 13.

STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS PRESENTATION

As shown previously in Illustrations E-8, E-9, and E-11, the balance sheet presents a company's investment accounts at a point in time. The "Investing activities" section of the statement of cash flows reports information on the cash inflows and outflows during the period that resulted from investment transactions.

Illustration E-12 presents the cash flows from investing activities from a recent statement of cash flows of The Walt Disney Company. From this information, we learn that Disney received $1,530 million from the sale or redemption of investments during the year.

Illustration E-12
Statement of cash flows presentation of investment activities

THE WALT DISNEY COMPANY Statement of Cash Flows (partial) (in millions)	
Investing Activities	
Investments in parks, resorts and other property	$(1,566)
Acquisitions	(588)
Dispositions	—
Proceeds from sale of investments	**1,530**
Other	6
Cash used by investing activities	$ (618)

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Identify the reasons corporations invest in stocks and debt securities. Corporations invest for three common reasons: (a) They have excess cash. (b) They view investment income as a significant revenue source. (c) They have strategic goals such as gaining control of a competitor or supplier or moving into a new line of business.

2 Explain the accounting for debt investments. Entries for investments in debt securities are required when companies purchase bonds, receive or accrue interest, and sell bonds.

3 Explain the accounting for stock investments. Entries for investments in common stock are required when companies purchase stock, receive dividends, and sell stock. When ownership is less than 20%, the cost method is used—the investment is recorded at cost. When ownership is between 20% and 50%, the equity method should be used—the investor records its share of the net income of the investee in the year it is earned. When ownership is more than 50%, consolidated financial statements should be prepared.

4 Describe the purpose and usefulness of consolidated financial statements. When a company owns more than 50% of the common stock of another company, consolidated financial statements are usually prepared. These statements are especially useful to the stockholders, board of directors, and management of the parent company.

5 Indicate how debt and stock investments are valued and reported in the financial statements. Investments in debt and stock securities are classified as trading, available-for-sale, or held-to-maturity for valuation and reporting purposes. Trading securities are reported as current assets at fair value, with changes from cost reported in net income. Available-for-sale securities are also reported at fair value, with the changes from cost reported in stockholders' equity. Available-for-sale securities are classified as short-term or long-term depending on their expected realization.

6 Distinguish between short-term and long-term investments. Short-term investments are securities held by a company that are readily marketable and intended to be converted to cash within the next year or operating cycle, whichever is longer. Investments that do not meet both criteria are classified as long-term investments.

Glossary

Available-for-sale securities *(p. E-8)* Securities that are held with the intent of selling them sometime in the future.

Consolidated financial statements *(p. E-7)* Financial statements that present the assets and liabilities controlled by the parent company and the total revenues and expenses of the subsidiary companies.

Controlling interest *(p. E-7)* Ownership of more than 50% of the common stock of another entity.

Cost method *(p. E-4)* An accounting method in which the investment in common stock is recorded at cost and revenue is recognized only when cash dividends are received.

Debt investments *(p. E-2)* Investments in government and corporation bonds.

Equity method *(p. E-5)* An accounting method in which the investment in common stock is initially recorded at cost, and the investment account is then adjusted annually to show the investor's equity in the investee.

Fair value *(p. E-7)* Amount for which a security could be sold in a normal market.

Held-to-maturity securities *(p. E-8)* Debt securities that the investor has the intent and ability to hold to their maturity date.

Long-term investments *(p. E-10)* Investments that are not readily marketable or that management does not intend to convert into cash within the next year or operating cycle, whichever is longer.

Mark-to-market *(p. E-8)* A method of accounting for certain investments that requires that they be adjusted to their fair value at the end of each period.

Parent company *(p. E-7)* A company that owns more than 50% of the common stock of another entity.

Short-term investments (marketable securities) *(p. E-10)* Investments that are readily marketable and intended to be converted into cash within the next year or operating cycle, whichever is longer.

Stock investments *(p. E-4)* Investments in the capital stock of corporations.

Subsidiary (affiliated) company *(p. E-7)* A company in which more than 50% of its stock is owned by another company.

Trading securities *(p. E-8)* Securities bought and held primarily for sale in the near term to generate income on short-term price differences.

WILEY PLUS
Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Self-Test Questions

Answers are at the end of the appendix.

(SO 1) **1.** Which of the following is *not* a primary reason why corporations invest in debt and equity securities?
(a) They wish to gain control of a competitor.
(b) They have excess cash.
(c) They wish to move into a new line of business.
(d) They are required to by law.

2. Debt investments are initially recorded at: (SO 2)
(a) cost.
(b) cost plus accrued interest.

(c) book value.
(d) None of the above

(SO 2) **3.** Stan Free Company sells debt investments costing $26,000 for $28,000 plus accrued interest that has been recorded. In journalizing the sale, credits are:
(a) Debt Investments and Loss on Sale of Debt Investments.
(b) Debt Investments, Gain on Sale of Debt Investments, and Bond Interest Receivable.
(c) Stock Investments and Bond Interest Receivable.
(d) The correct answer is not given.

(SO 3) **4.** Karen Duffy Company receives net proceeds of $42,000 on the sale of stock investments that cost $39,500. This transaction will result in reporting in the income statement a:
(a) loss of $2,500 under "Other expenses and losses."
(b) loss of $2,500 under "Operating expenses."
(c) gain of $2,500 under "Other revenues and gains."
(d) gain of $2,500 under "Operating revenues."

(SO 3) **5.** The equity method of accounting for long-term investments in stock should be used when the investor has significant influence over an investee and owns:
(a) between 20% and 50% of the investee's common stock.
(b) 20% or more of the investee's bonds.
(c) more than 50% of the investee's common stock.
(d) less than 20% of the investee's common stock.

(SO 3) **6.** Assume that Horicon Corp. acquired 25% of the common stock of Sheboygan Corp. on January 1, 2012, for $300,000. During 2012, Sheboygan Corp. reported net income of $160,000 and paid total dividends of $60,000. If Horicon uses the equity method to account for its investment, the balance in the investment account on December 31, 2012, will be:
(a) $300,000. (c) $400,000.
(b) $325,000. (d) $340,000.

(SO 3) **7.** Using the information in the previous question, what entry would Horicon make to record the receipt of the dividend from Sheboygan?
(a) Debit Cash and credit Revenue from Investment in Sheboygan Corp.
(b) Debit Dividends and credit Revenue from Investment in Sheboygan Corp.
(c) Debit Cash and credit Stock Investment.
(d) Debit Cash and credit Dividend Revenue.

(SO 3) **8.** You have a controlling interest if:
(a) you own more than 20% of a company's stock.
(b) you are the president of the company.
(c) you use the equity method.
(d) you own more than 50% of a company's stock.

(SO 4) **9.** Which of these statements is *false*?
Consolidated financial statements are useful to:
(a) determine the profitability of specific subsidiaries.
(b) determine the aggregate profitability of enterprises under common control.
(c) determine the breadth of a parent company's operations.
(d) determine the full extent of aggregate obligations of enterprises under common control.

10. At the end of the first year of operations, the total cost of the trading securities portfolio is $120,000 and the total fair value is $115,000. What should the financial statements show? (SO 5)
(a) A reduction of an asset of $5,000 and a realized loss of $5,000.
(b) A reduction of an asset of $5,000 and an unrealized loss of $5,000 in the stockholders' equity section.
(c) A reduction of an asset of $5,000 in the current assets section and an unrealized loss of $5,000 under "Other expenses and losses."
(d) A reduction of an asset of $5,000 in the current assets section and a realized loss of $5,000 under "Other expenses and losses."

11. In the balance sheet, Unrealized Loss—Equity is reported as a: (SO 5)
(a) contra asset account.
(b) contra stockholders' equity account.
(c) loss in the income statement.
(d) loss in the retained earnings statement.

12. If a company wants to increase its reported income by manipulating its investment accounts, which should it do? (SO 5)
(a) Sell its "winner" trading securities and hold its "loser" trading securities.
(b) Hold its "winner" trading securities and sell its "loser" trading securities.
(c) Sell its "winner" available-for-sale securities and hold its "loser" available-for-sale securities.
(d) Hold its "winner" available-for-sale securities and sell its "loser" available-for-sale securities.

13. At December 31, 2012, the fair value of available-for-sale securities is $41,300 and the cost is $39,800. At January 1, 2012, there was a credit balance of $900 in the Market Adjustment—Available-for-Sale account. The required adjusting entry would be: (SO 5)
(a) Debit Market Adjustment—Available-for-Sale for $1,500, and credit Unrealized Gain or Loss—Equity for $1,500.
(b) Debit Market Adjustment—Available-for-Sale for $600, and credit Unrealized Gain or Loss—Equity for $600.
(c) Debit Market Adjustment—Available-for-Sale for $2,400, and credit Unrealized Gain or Loss—Equity for $2,400.
(d) Debit Unrealized Gain or Loss—Equity for $2,400, and credit Market Adjustment—Available-for-Sale for $2,400.

14. To be classified as short-term investments, debt investments must be readily marketable and be expected to be sold within: (SO 6)
(a) 3 months from the date of purchase.
(b) the next year or operating cycle, whichever is shorter.
(c) the next year or operating cycle, whichever is longer.
(d) the operating cycle.

Questions

1. What are the reasons that companies invest in securities?
2. (a) What is the cost of an investment in bonds?
   (b) When is interest on bonds recorded?
3. Kate Denton is confused about losses and gains on the sale of debt investments. Explain these issues to Kate:
   (a) How the gain or loss is computed.
   (b) The statement presentation of gains and losses.
4. Quiddich Company sells bonds that cost $40,000 for $45,000, including $1,000 of accrued interest. In recording the sale, Quiddich books a $5,000 gain. Is this correct? Explain.
5. What is the cost of an investment in stock?
6. To acquire Bailey Corporation stock, Harris Co. pays $60,000 in cash plus $1,500 broker's fees. What entry should be made for this investment, assuming the stock is readily marketable?
7. (a) When should a long-term investment in common stock be accounted for by the equity method?
   (b) When is revenue recognized under the equity method?
8. Spock Corporation uses the equity method to account for its ownership of 30% of the common stock of English Packing. During 2012, English reported a net income of $80,000 and declares and pays cash dividends of $10,000. What recognition should Spock Corporation give to these events?
9. What constitutes "significant influence" when an investor's financial interest is less than 50%?
10. Distinguish between the cost and equity methods of accounting for investments in stocks.
11. What are consolidated financial statements?
12. What are the valuation guidelines for trading and available-for-sale investments at a balance sheet date?
13. Diana Malt is the controller of G-Products, Inc. At December 31, the company's investments in trading securities cost $74,000 and have a fair value of $70,000. Indicate how Diana would report these data in the financial statements prepared on December 31.
14. Using the data in question 13, how would Diana report the data if the investment were long-term and the securities were classified as available-for-sale?
15. Roso Company's investments in available-for-sale securities at December 31 show total cost of $202,000 and total fair value of $210,000. Prepare the adjusting entry.
16. Using the data in question 15, prepare the adjusting entry assuming the securities are classified as trading securities.
17. Where is Unrealized Gain or Loss—Equity reported on the balance sheet?
18. What purposes are served by reporting Unrealized Gains (Losses)—Equity in the stockholders' equity section?
19. Kraemer Wholesale Supply owns stock in Matlin Corporation, which it intends to hold indefinitely because of some negative tax consequences if sold. Should the investment in Matlin be classified as a short-term investment? Why?

Brief Exercises

BEE-1 Pegasus Corporation purchased debt investments for $40,800 on January 1, 2012. On July 1, 2012, Pegasus received cash interest of $1,660. Journalize the purchase and the receipt of interest. Assume no interest has been accrued.

Journalize entries for debt investments.
(SO 2), **AP**

BEE-2 On August 1, Jewel Company buys 1,000 shares of ABC common stock for $35,000 cash plus brokerage fees of $600. On December 1, the stock investments are sold for $38,000 in cash. Journalize the purchase and sale of the common stock.

Journalize entries for stock investments.
(SO 3), **AP**

BEE-3 Faye Company owns 25% of Trish Company. For the current year, Trish reports net income of $150,000 and declares and pays a $60,000 cash dividend. Record Faye's equity in Trish's net income and the receipt of dividends from Trish.

Journalize transactions under the equity method.
(SO 3), **AP**

BEE-4 Cost and fair value data for the trading securities of Hayden Company at December 31, 2012, are $62,000 and $59,600, respectively. Prepare the adjusting entry to record the securities at fair value.

Prepare adjusting entry using fair value.
(SO 5), **AP**

BEE-5 For the data presented in BEE-4, show the financial statement presentation of the trading securities and related accounts.

Indicate statement presentation using fair value.
(SO 6), **AN**

BEE-6 In its first year of operations, Kearney Corporation purchased available-for-sale stock securities costing $72,000 as a long-term investment. At December 31, 2012, the fair value of the securities is $69,000. Prepare the adjusting entry to record the securities at fair value.

Prepare adjusting entry using fair value.
(SO 5), **AP**

Indicate statement presentation using fair value.
(SO 6), AN

BEE-7 For the data presented in BEE-6, show the financial statement presentation of the available-for-sale securities and related accounts. Assume the available-for-sale securities are noncurrent.

Prepare investments section of balance sheet.
(SO 6), AP

BEE-8 Sydney Corporation has these long-term investments: common stock of Russ Co. (10% ownership) held as available-for-sale securities, cost $108,000, fair value $112,000; common stock of Thomas Inc. (30% ownership), cost $210,000, equity $230,000; and a bond sinking fund of $150,000. Prepare the investments section of the balance sheet.

Exercises

Journalize debt investment transactions, and accrue interest.
(SO 2), AP

EE-1 Justin Corporation had these transactions pertaining to debt investments:

Jan. 1 Purchased 90 10%, $1,000 Graham Co. bonds for $90,000 cash plus brokerage fees of $1,200. Interest is payable semiannually on July 1 and January 1.
July 1 Received semiannual interest on Graham Co. bonds.
July 1 Sold 30 Graham Co. bonds for $32,000 less $400 brokerage fees.

Instructions
(a) Journalize the transactions.
(b) Prepare the adjusting entry for the accrual of interest at December 31.

Journalize stock investment transactions, and explain income statement presentation.
(SO 3), AN

EE-2 Rojas Company had these transactions pertaining to stock investments:

Feb. 1 Purchased 1,200 shares of MJ common stock (2% of outstanding shares) for $8,000 cash plus brokerage fees of $400.
July 1 Received cash dividends of $2 per share on MJ common stock.
Sept. 1 Sold 500 shares of MJ common stock for $5,500 less brokerage fees of $100.
Dec. 1 Received cash dividends of $1 per share on MJ common stock.

Instructions
(a) Journalize the transactions.
(b) Explain how dividend revenue and the gain (loss) on sale should be reported in the income statement.

Journalize transactions for investments in stock.
(SO 3), AP

EE-3 Glyder Inc. had these transactions pertaining to investments in common stock:

Jan. 1 Purchased 1,200 shares of Bethke Corporation common stock (5% of outstanding shares) for $58,000 cash plus $1,200 broker's commission.
July 1 Received a cash dividend of $7 per share.
Dec. 1 Sold 900 shares of Bethke Corporation common stock for $48,000 cash less $800 broker's commission.
31 Received a cash dividend of $7 per share.

Instructions
Journalize the transactions.

Journalize and post transactions under the equity method.
(SO 3), AP

EE-4 On January 1, Jackson Corporation purchased a 25% equity investment in Batchelor Corporation for $150,000. At December 31, Batchelor declared and paid a $80,000 cash dividend and reported net income of $380,000.

Instructions
(a) Journalize the transactions.
(b) Determine the amount to be reported as an investment in Batchelor stock at December 31.

Journalize entries under cost and equity methods.
(SO 3), AP

EE-5 These are two independent situations:

1. Angel Cosmetics acquired 12% of the 300,000 shares of common stock of Chic Fashion at a total cost of $14 per share on March 18, 2012. On June 30, Chic declared and paid a $75,000 dividend. On December 31, Chic reported net income of $244,000 for the year. At December 31, the market price of Chic Fashion was $16 per share. The stock is classified as available-for-sale.

2. Randell Inc. obtained significant influence over Gatos Corporation by buying 25% of Gatos's 30,000 outstanding shares of common stock at a total cost of $11 per share on January 1, 2012. On June 15, Gatos declared and paid a cash dividend of $35,000. On December 31, Gatos reported a net income of $120,000 for the year.

Instructions
Prepare all the necessary journal entries for 2012 for (a) Angel Cosmetics and (b) Randell Inc.

EE-6 At December 31, 2012, the trading securities for Lynette, Inc., are as follows.

Prepare adjusting entry to record fair value, and indicate statement presentation.
(SO 5, 6), **AP**

Security	Cost	Fair Value
A	$18,100	$16,000
B	12,500	14,800
C	23,000	18,000
Total	$53,600	$48,800

Instructions
(a) Prepare the adjusting entry at December 31, 2012, to report the securities at fair value.
(b) Show the balance sheet and income statement presentation at December 31, 2012, after adjustment to fair value.

EE-7 Data for investments in stock classified as trading securities are presented in EE-6. Assume instead that the investments are classified as available-for-sale securities with the same cost and fair value data. The securities are considered to be a long-term investment.

Prepare adjusting entry to record fair value, and indicate statement presentation.
(SO 5, 6), **AN**

Instructions
(a) Prepare the adjusting entry at December 31, 2012, to report the securities at fair value.
(b) Show the statement presentation at December 31, 2012, after adjustment to fair value.
(c) Carla Sagen, a member of the board of directors, does not understand the reporting of the unrealized gains or losses on trading securities and available-for-sale securities. Write a letter to Ms. Sagen explaining the reporting and the purposes it serves.

EE-8 Redfield Company has these data at December 31, 2012:

Prepare adjusting entries for fair value, and indicate statement presentation for two classes of securities.
(SO 5, 6), **AN**

Securities	Cost	Fair Value
Trading	$110,000	$122,000
Available-for-sale	100,000	96,000

The available-for-sale securities are held as a long-term investment.

Instructions
(a) Prepare the adjusting entries to report each class of securities at fair value.
(b) Indicate the statement presentation of each class of securities and the related unrealized gain (loss) accounts.

Problems

PE-1 Knuth Farms is a grower of hybrid seed corn for DeKalb Genetics Corporation. It has had two exceptionally good years and has elected to invest its excess funds in bonds. The following selected transactions relate to bonds acquired as an investment by Knuth Farms, whose fiscal year ends on December 31.

Journalize debt investment transactions and show financial statement presentation.
(SO 2, 5, 6), **AN**

2012

Jan. 1 Purchased at par $600,000 of Sullivan Corporation 10-year, 7% bonds dated January 1, 2012, directly from the issuing corporation.
July 1 Received the semiannual interest on the Sullivan bonds.
Dec. 31 Accrual of interest at year-end on the Sullivan bonds.

Assume that all intervening transactions and adjustments have been properly recorded and the number of bonds owned has not changed from December 31, 2012, to December 31, 2014.

2015

Jan. 1 Received the semiannual interest on the Sullivan bonds.
Jan. 1 Sold $300,000 of Sullivan bonds at 110. The broker deducted $7,000 for commissions and fees on the sale.
July 1 Received the semiannual interest on the Sullivan bonds.
Dec. 31 Accrual of interest at year-end on the Sullivan bonds.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the listed transactions for the years 2012 and 2015.
(b) Assume that the fair value of the bonds at December 31, 2012, was $586,000. These bonds are classified as available-for-sale securities. Prepare the adjusting entry to record these bonds at fair value.
(c) Show the balance sheet presentation of the bonds and interest receivable at December 31, 2012. Assume the investments are considered long-term. Indicate where any unrealized gain or loss is reported in the financial statements.

Journalize investment transactions, prepare adjusting entry, and show financial statement presentation.
(SO 2, 3, 5, 6), AN

PE-2 In January 2012, the management of Sarah Company concludes that it has sufficient cash to purchase some short-term investments in debt and stock securities. During the year, the following transactions occurred.

Feb. 1 Purchased 1,200 shares of NJF common stock for $50,600 plus brokerage fees of $1,000.
Mar. 1 Purchased 500 shares of SEK common stock for $18,000 plus brokerage fees of $500.
Apr. 1 Purchased 70 $1,000, 8% CRT bonds for $70,000 plus $1,200 brokerage fees. Interest is payable semiannually on April 1 and October 1.
July 1 Received a cash dividend of $0.80 per share on the NJF common stock.
Aug. 1 Sold 200 shares of NJF common stock at $42 per share less brokerage fees of $350.
Sept. 1 Received $2 per share cash dividend on the SEK common stock.
Oct. 1 Received the semiannual interest on the CRT bonds.
Oct. 1 Sold the CRT bonds for $77,000 less $1,300 brokerage fees.

At December 31, the fair values of the NJF and SEK common stocks were $39 and $30 per share, respectively.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions and post to the accounts Debt Investments and Stock Investments. (Use the T account form.)
(b) Prepare the adjusting entry at December 31, 2012, to report the investments at fair value. All securities are considered to be trading securities.
(c) Show the balance sheet presentation of investment securities at December 31, 2012.
(d) Identify the income statement accounts and give the statement classification of each account.

Journalize transactions, prepare adjusting entry for stock investments, and show balance sheet presentation.
(SO 3, 5, 6), AN

PE-3 On December 31, 2011, Maxell Associates owned the following securities that are held as long-term investments.

Common Stock	Shares	Cost
A Co.	1,000	$48,000
B Co.	5,000	36,000
C Co.	1,200	24,000

On this date, the total fair value of the securities was equal to its cost. The securities are not held for influence or control over the investees. In 2012, the following transactions occurred.

July 1 Received $2.00 per share semiannual cash dividend on B Co. common stock.
Aug. 1 Received $0.50 per share cash dividend on A Co. common stock.
Sept. 1 Sold 1,000 shares of B Co. common stock for cash at $9 per share less brokerage fees of $800.
Oct. 1 Sold 300 shares of A Co. common stock for cash at $54 per share less brokerage fees of $600.
Nov. 1 Received $1 per share cash dividend on C Co. common stock.
Dec. 15 Received $0.50 per share cash dividend on A Co. common stock.
31 Received $2.20 per share semiannual cash dividend on B Co. common stock.

At December 31, the fair values per share of the common stocks were: A Co. $47, B Co. $7, and C Co. $24.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the 2012 transactions and post to the account Stock Investments. (Use the T account form.)
(b) Prepare the adjusting entry at December 31, 2012, to show the securities at fair value. The stock should be classified as available-for-sale securities.
(c) Show the balance sheet presentation of the investments and the unrealized gain (loss) at December 31, 2012. At this date, Maxell Associates has common stock $2,000,000 and retained earnings $1,200,000.

PE-4 Coakley Company acquired 30% of the outstanding common stock of Ginger Inc. on January 1, 2012, by paying $1,800,000 for 60,000 shares. Ginger declared and paid a $0.50 per share cash dividend on June 30 and again on December 31, 2012. Ginger reported net income of $800,000 for the year.

Prepare entries under cost and equity methods, and prepare memorandum.
(SO 3), **AN**

Instructions

(a) Prepare the journal entries for Coakley Company for 2012, assuming Coakley cannot exercise significant influence over Ginger. (Use the cost method.)
(b) Prepare the journal entries for Coakley Company for 2012, assuming Coakley can exercise significant influence over Ginger. (Use the equity method.)
(c) The board of directors of Coakley Company is confused about the differences between the cost and equity methods. Prepare a memorandum for the board that explains each method and shows in tabular form the account balances under each method at December 31, 2012.

PE-5 Here is Maple Company's portfolio of long-term available-for-sale securities at December 31, 2011:

Journalize stock transactions, and show balance sheet presentation.
(SO 3, 5, 6), **AN**

	Cost
1,400 shares of Wickham Inc. common stock	$73,500
1,200 shares of Kerry Corporation common stock	84,000
800 shares of H. Kelso Corporation preferred stock	33,600

On December 31, the total cost of the portfolio equaled the total fair value. Maple had the following transactions related to the securities during 2012.

Jan.	20	Sold 1,400 shares of Wickham Inc. common stock at $55 per share less brokerage fees of $1,100.
	28	Purchased 400 shares of $10 par value common stock of M. McLain Corporation at $78 per share plus brokerage fees of $480.
	30	Received a cash dividend of $1.25 per share on Kerry Corporation common stock.
Feb.	8	Received cash dividends of $0.40 per share on H. Kelso Corporation preferred stock.
	18	Sold all 800 shares of H. Kelso preferred stock at $35 per share less brokerage fees of $360.
July	30	Received a cash dividend of $1.10 per share on Kerry Corporation common stock.
Sept.	6	Purchased an additional 600 shares of the $10 par value common stock of M. McLain Corporation at $82 per share plus brokerage fees of $800.
Dec.	1	Received a cash dividend of $1.50 per share on M. McLain Corporation common stock.

At December 31, 2012, the fair values of the securities were:

Kerry Corporation common stock	$65 per share
M. McLain Corporation common stock	$77 per share

Maple uses separate account titles for each investment, such as Investment in Kerry Corporation Common Stock.

Instructions

(a) Prepare journal entries to record the transactions.
(b) Post to the investment accounts. (Use separate T accounts for each investment.)

(c) Prepare the adjusting entry at December 31, 2012, to report the portfolio at fair value.
(d) Show the balance sheet presentation at December 31, 2012.

Prepare a balance sheet. (SO 6), AP

PE-6 The following data, presented in alphabetical order, are taken from the records of Texton Corporation.

Accounts payable	$ 150,000
Accounts receivable	90,000
Accumulated depreciation—buildings	180,000
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	52,000
Allowance for doubtful accounts	6,000
Bond investments	400,000
Bonds payable (10%, due 2023)	350,000
Buildings	900,000
Cash	63,000
Common stock ($5 par value; 500,000 shares authorized, 240,000 shares issued)	1,200,000
Discount on bonds payable	20,000
Dividends payable	50,000
Equipment	275,000
Goodwill	190,000
Income taxes payable	70,000
Investment in Jansen Inc. stock (30% ownership), at equity	240,000
Land	410,000
Inventory	170,000
Notes payable (due 2013)	70,000
Paid-in capital in excess of par value	464,000
Prepaid insurance	16,000
Retained earnings	310,000
Short-term stock investment, at fair value	128,000

Instructions
Prepare a balance sheet at December 31, 2012.

Answers to Self-Test Questions

1. d **2.** a **3.** b **4.** c **5.** a **6.** b $300,000 + (($160,000 − $60,000) × .25) **7.** c **8.** d **9.** a **10.** c **11.** b **12.** c **13.** c ($41,300 − $39,800) + $900 **14.** c

appendix F

PAYROLL ACCOUNTING

study objectives

After studying this appendix, you should be able to:

1 Discuss the objectives of internal control for payroll.

2 Compute and record the payroll for a pay period.

3 Describe and record employer payroll taxes.

Payroll and related fringe benefits often make up a large percentage of current liabilities. Employee compensation is often the most significant expense that a company incurs. For example, General Motors recently reported total employees of 386,000 and labor costs of $21.6 billion. Add to labor costs such fringe benefits as health insurance, life insurance, disability insurance, and so on, and you can see why proper accounting and control of payroll are so important.

Payroll accounting involves more than paying employees' wages. Companies are required by law to maintain payroll records for each employee, file and pay payroll taxes, and comply with numerous state and federal tax laws related to employee compensation. Accounting for payroll has become much more complex due to these regulations.

Payroll Defined

The term "payroll" pertains to both salaries and wages. Managerial, administrative, and sales personnel are generally paid **salaries**. Salaries are often expressed in terms of a specified amount per month or per year rather than an hourly rate. For example, the faculty and administrative personnel at the college or university you are attending are paid salaries. In contrast, store clerks, factory employees, and manual laborers are normally paid **wages**. Wages are based on a rate per hour or on a piecework basis (such as per unit of product). Frequently, the terms "salaries" and "wages" are used interchangeably.

The term "payroll" does not apply to payments made for services of professionals such as certified public accountants, attorneys, and architects. Such professionals are independent contractors rather than salaried employees. Payments to them are called **fees**, rather than salaries or wages. This distinction is important because government regulations relating to the payment and reporting of payroll taxes apply only to employees.

Internal Control of Payroll

Internal control was introduced in Chapter 7. As applied to payrolls, the objectives of internal control are (1) to safeguard company assets against unauthorized payments of payrolls, and (2) to ensure the accuracy and reliability of the accounting records pertaining to payrolls.

study objective 1

Discuss the objectives of internal control for payroll.

Irregularities often result if internal control is lax. Overstating hours, using unauthorized pay rates, adding fictitious employees to the payroll, continuing terminated employees on the payroll, and distributing duplicate payroll checks are all methods of stealing from a company. Moreover, inaccurate records will result in incorrect paychecks, financial statements, and payroll tax returns.

Payroll activities involve four functions: hiring employees, timekeeping, preparing the payroll, and paying the payroll. For effective internal control, these four functions should be assigned to different departments or individuals. To illustrate these functions, we will examine the case of Academy Company and one of its employees, Michael Jordan.

Hiring Employees

Human Resources department documents and authorizes employment.

HIRING EMPLOYEES

The human resources (personnel) department is responsible for posting job openings, screening and interviewing applicants, and hiring employees. From a control standpoint, this department provides significant documentation and authorization. When an employee is hired, the human resources department prepares an authorization form. The one used by Academy Company for Michael Jordan is shown in Illustration F-1.

Illustration F-1
Authorization form prepared by the human resources department

ACADEMY COMPANY

Employee Name Jordan, (LAST) Michael (FIRST) (MI) Starting Date 9/01/10
Classification Skilled-Level 10 Social Security No. 329-36-9547
Department Shipping Division Entertainment

NEW HIRE	Classification Clerk Salary Grade Level 10 Trans. from Temp. ☐ Rate $ 10.00 per hour Bonus N/A Non-exempt ☒ Exempt ☐
RATE CHANGE	New Rate $ 12.00 Effective Date 9/1/11 Present Rate $ 10.00 Merit ☒ Promotion ☐ Decrease ☐ Other Previous Increase Date None Amount $ per Type
SEPARATION	Resignation ☐ Discharge ☐ Retirement ☐ Reason Leave of absence ☐ From to Type Last Day Worked
APPROVALS	BEW (BRANCH OR DEPT. MANAGER) 9-1-11 (DATE) EMW (DIVISION V.P.) 9-1-11 (DATE) James E. Speer (PERSONNEL DEPARTMENT)

The authorization form is sent to the payroll department, where it is used to place the new employee on the payroll. A chief concern of the human resources department is ensuring the accuracy of this form. The reason is quite simple: one of the most common types of payroll frauds is adding fictitious employees to the payroll.

The human resources department is also responsible for authorizing changes in employment status. Specifically, they must authorize (1) changes in pay rates and (2) terminations of employment. Every authorization should be in writing,

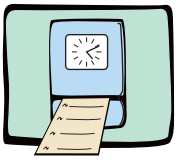
and a copy of the change in status should be sent to the payroll department. Notice in Illustration F-1 that Jordan received a pay increase of $2 per hour.

TIMEKEEPING

Another area in which internal control is important is timekeeping. Hourly employees are usually required to record time worked by "punching" a time clock. Times of arrival and departure are automatically recorded by the employee by inserting a time card into the clock. Michael Jordan's time card is shown in Illustration F-2.

In large companies, time clock procedures are often monitored by a supervisor or security guard to make sure an employee punches only one card. At the end of the pay period, each employee's supervisor approves the hours shown by signing the time card. When overtime hours are involved, approval by a supervisor is usually mandatory. This guards against unauthorized overtime. The approved time cards are then sent to the payroll department. For salaried employees, a manually prepared weekly or monthly time report kept by a supervisor may be used to record time worked.

Timekeeping



Supervisors monitor hours worked through time cards and time reports.

PAY PERIOD ENDING

No. 17 1/14/12

NAME Michael Jordan

EXTRA TIME			REGULAR TIME		
		1st Day	A.M. IN		8:58
			NOON OUT		12:00
			NOON IN		1:00
			P.M. OUT		5:01
		2nd Day	A.M. IN		9:00
			NOON OUT		11:59
			NOON IN		12:59
			P.M. OUT		5:00
	THIS	3rd Day	A.M. IN		8:59
			NOON OUT		12:01
			NOON IN		1:01
			P.M. OUT		5:00
5:00		4th Day	A.M. IN		9:00
9:00	SIDE		NOON OUT		12:00
			NOON IN		1:00
			P.M. OUT		5:00
	OUT	5th Day	A.M. IN		8:57
			NOON OUT		11:58
			NOON IN		1:00
			P.M. OUT		5:01
		6th Day	A.M. IN		8:00
			NOON OUT		1:00
			NOON IN		
			P.M. OUT		
		7th Day	A.M. IN		
			NOON OUT		
			NOON IN		
			P.M. OUT		
TOTAL 4			TOTAL		40

Illustration F-2
Time card

PREPARING THE PAYROLL

The payroll is prepared in the payroll department on the basis of two inputs: (1) human resources department authorizations and (2) approved time cards. Numerous calculations are involved in determining gross wages and payroll deductions. Therefore, a second payroll department employee, working independently, verifies all calculated amounts, and a payroll department supervisor then approves the payroll. The payroll department is also responsible for preparing (but not signing) payroll checks, maintaining payroll records, and preparing payroll tax returns.

Preparing the Payroll

Two (or more) employees verify payroll amounts; supervisor approves.

Paying the Payroll

Treasurer signs and distributes checks.

PAYING THE PAYROLL

The payroll is paid by the treasurer's department. **Payment by check minimizes the risk of loss from theft, and the endorsed check provides proof of payment.** For good internal control, payroll checks should be prenumbered, and all checks should be accounted for. All checks must be signed by the treasurer (or a designated agent). Distribution of the payroll checks to employees should be controlled by the treasurer's department. Many employees have their pay credited electronically to their bank account. To control such disbursements, receipts detailing gross pay, deductions, and net pay are provided to employees.

Occasionally the payroll is paid in currency. In such cases it is customary to have a second person count the cash in each pay envelope. The paymaster should obtain a signed receipt from the employee upon payment.

Determining the Payroll

study objective 2

Compute and record the payroll for a pay period.

Determining the payroll involves computing three amounts: (1) gross earnings, (2) payroll deductions, and (3) net pay.

GROSS EARNINGS

Gross earnings is the total compensation earned by an employee. It consists of wages or salaries, plus any bonuses and commissions.

Total **wages** for an employee are determined by multiplying the hours worked by the hourly rate of pay. In addition to the hourly pay rate, most companies are required by law to pay hourly workers a minimum of $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the regular hourly rate for overtime work in excess of 8 hours per day or 40 hours per week. In addition, many employers pay overtime rates for work done at night, on weekends, and on holidays.

Helpful Hint The law that governs pay rates is the Federal Fair Labor Standards Act. It applies to all companies involved in interstate commerce.

Michael Jordan's time card (Illustration F-2, page F-3) shows that he worked 44 hours for the weekly pay period ending January 14. The computation of his gross earnings (total wages) is shown in Illustration F-3.

Illustration F-3
Computation of total wages

Type of Pay	Hours	×	Rate	=	Gross Earnings
Regular	40	×	$12	=	$ 480
Overtime	4	×	18	=	72
Total wages					**$552**

This computation assumes that Jordan receives $1\frac{1}{2}$ times his regular hourly rate ($12 × 1.5) for his overtime hours. Union contracts often require that overtime rates be as much as twice the regular rates.

The **salary** for an employee is generally based on a monthly or yearly rate. These rates are then prorated to the payroll periods used by the company. Most executive and administrative positions are salaried. Federal law does not require overtime pay for employees in such positions.

Ethics Note Bonuses often reward outstanding individual performance; but successful corporations also need considerable teamwork. A challenge is to motivate individuals while preventing an unethical employee from taking another's idea for his or her own advantage.

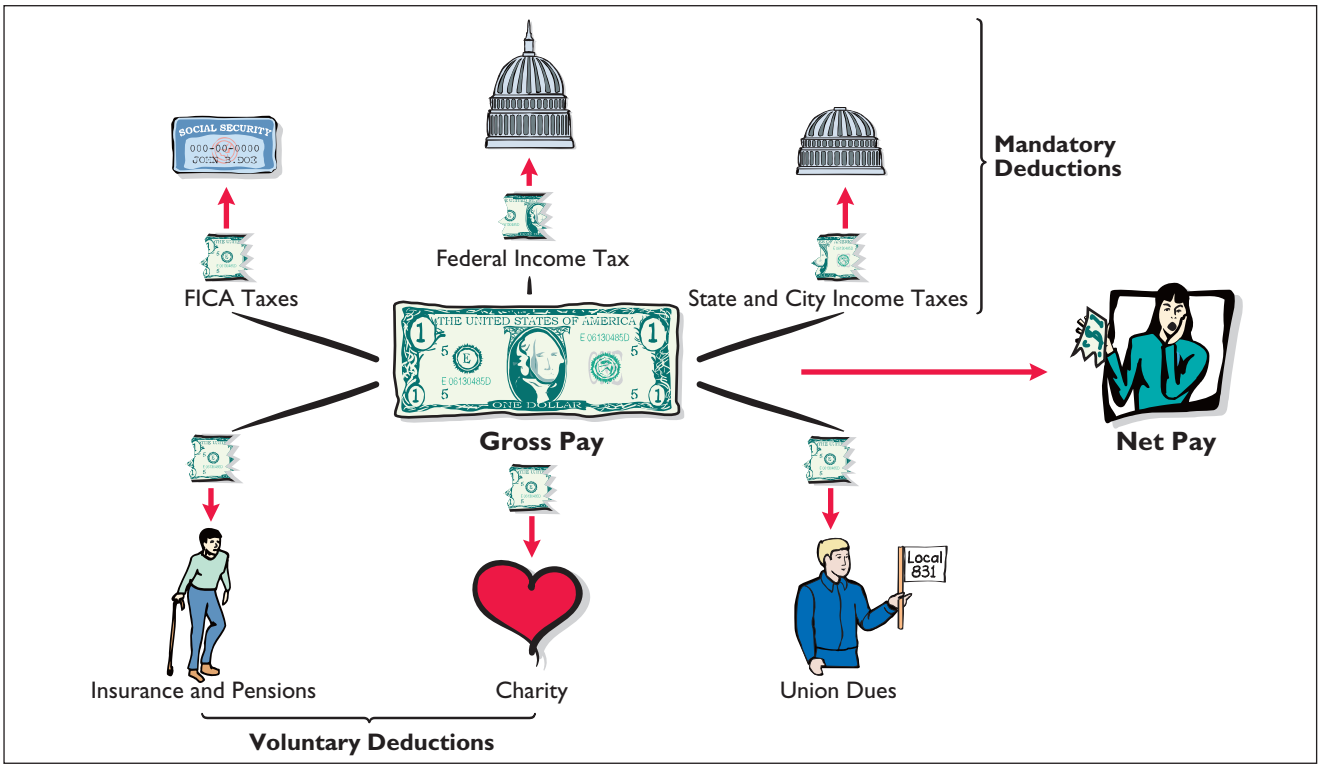
Many companies have **bonus** agreements for management personnel and other employees. A recent survey found that over 94% of the largest U.S. manufacturing companies offer annual bonuses to their key executives. Bonus arrangements may be based on such factors as increased sales or net income. Bonuses may be paid in cash and/or by granting executives and employees the opportunity to acquire shares of company stock at favorable prices (called stock option plans).

PAYROLL DEDUCTIONS

As anyone who has received a paycheck knows, gross earnings are usually very different from the amount actually received. The difference is due to **payroll deductions**. Such deductions do not result in payroll tax expense to the employer.

The employer is merely a collection agent, and subsequently transfers the amounts deducted to the government and designated recipients. Payroll deductions may be mandatory or voluntary. Mandatory deductions are required by law and consist of FICA taxes and income taxes. Voluntary deductions are at the option of the employee. Illustration F-4 summarizes the types of payroll deductions.

Illustration F-4 Payroll deductions



FICA Taxes

In 1937 Congress enacted the Federal Insurance Contribution Act (FICA). **FICA taxes are designed to provide workers with supplemental retirement, employment disability, and medical benefits.** In 1965, Congress extended benefits to include Medicare for individuals over 65 years of age. The benefits are financed by a tax levied on employees' earnings. FICA taxes are commonly referred to as **Social Security taxes**.

The tax rate and the tax base for FICA taxes are set by Congress. When FICA taxes were first imposed, the rate was 1% on the first $3,000 of gross earnings, or a maximum of $30 per year. The rate and base have changed dramatically since that time! In 2010, the rate was 7.65% (6.2% Social Security plus 1.45% Medicare) on the first $102,000 of gross earnings for each employee.[1] For purpose of illustration in this appendix, we will assume a rate of 8% on the first $100,000 of gross earnings, or a maximum of $8,000. Using the 8% rate, the FICA withholding for Jordan for the weekly pay period ending January 14 is $44.16 ($552 × 8%).

Income Taxes

Under the U.S. pay-as-you-go system of federal income taxes, employers are required to withhold income taxes from employees each pay period. The amount to be withheld is determined by three variables: (1) the employee's gross earnings;

[1]The Medicare provision also includes a tax of 1.45% on gross earnings in excess of $102,000. In the interest of simplification, we ignore this 1.45% charge in our end-of-chapter assignment material. We assume zero FICA withholdings on gross earnings above $100,000.

(2) the number of allowances claimed by the employee; and (3) the length of the pay period. The number of allowances claimed typically includes the employee, his or her spouse, and other dependents. **To indicate to the Internal Revenue Service the number of allowances claimed, the employee must complete an Employee's Withholding Allowance Certificate (Form W-4).** As shown in Illustration F-5, Michael Jordan claims two allowances on his W-4.

Illustration F-5
W-4 form

Form **W-4** Department of the Treasury Internal Revenue Service

Employee's Withholding Allowance Certificate

► For Privacy Act and Paperwork Reduction Act Notice, see page 2.

OMB No. 1545-0010
2012

1 Type or print your first name and middle initial: Michael
Last name: Jordan
2 Your social security number: 329-36-9547

Home address (number and street or rural route): 2345 Mifflin Ave.
3 ☐ Single ☒ Married ☐ Married, but withhold at higher Single rate.
Note: *If married, but legally separated, or spouse is a nonresident alien, check the Single box.*

City or town, State, and ZIP code: Hampton, MI 48292
4 If your last name differs from that on your social security card, check here and call 1-800-772-1213 for a new card . . . . . ► ☐

5 Total number of allowances you are claiming (from line H above or from the worksheet on page 2 if they apply) . . . 5 2
6 Additional amount, if any, you want withheld from each paycheck . . . . . 6 $
7 I claim exemption from withholding for 2005, and I certify that I meet BOTH of the following conditions for exemption:
• Last year I had a right to a refund of ALL Federal income tax withheld because I had NO tax liability AND
• This year I expect a refund of ALL Federal income tax withheld because I expect to have NO tax liability.
If you meet both conditions, enter "Exempt" here . . . . . ► 7

Under penalties of perjury, I certify that I am entitled to the number of withholding allowances claimed on this certificate or entitled to claim exempt status.

Employee's signature ► Michael Jordan Date ► September 1, 2012

8 Employer's name and address (Employer: Complete 8 and 10 only if sending to the IRS)
9 Office code (optional)
10 Employer identification number

Cat. No. 102200

Withholding tables furnished by the Internal Revenue Service indicate the amount of income tax to be withheld. Withholding amounts are based on gross wages and the number of allowances claimed. Separate tables are provided for weekly, biweekly, semimonthly, and monthly pay periods. The withholding tax table for Michael Jordan (assuming he earns $552 per week) is shown in Illustration F-6. For a weekly salary of $552 with two allowances, the income tax to be withheld is $49.

Illustration F-6
Withholding tax table

MARRIED Persons — **WEEKLY** Payroll Period
(For Wages Paid in 2012)

If the wages are –		And the number of withholding allowances claimed is –										
At least	But less than	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
		The amount of income tax to be withheld is –										
490	**500**	56	48	40	32	24	17	9	1	0	0	0
500	**510**	57	49	42	34	26	18	10	3	0	0	0
510	**520**	59	51	43	35	27	20	12	4	0	0	0
520	**530**	60	52	45	37	29	21	13	6	0	0	0
530	**540**	62	54	46	38	30	23	15	7	0	0	0
540	**550**	63	55	48	40	32	24	16	9	1	0	0
550	**560**	65	57	**49**	41	33	26	18	10	2	0	0
560	**570**	66	58	51	43	35	27	19	12	4	0	0
570	**580**	68	60	52	44	36	29	21	13	5	0	0
580	**590**	69	61	54	46	38	30	22	15	7	0	0
590	**600**	71	63	55	47	39	32	24	16	8	1	0
600	**610**	72	64	57	49	41	33	25	18	10	2	0
610	**620**	74	66	58	50	42	35	27	19	11	4	0
620	**630**	75	67	60	52	44	36	28	21	13	5	0
630	**640**	77	69	61	53	45	38	30	22	14	7	0
640	**650**	78	70	63	55	47	39	31	24	16	8	0
650	**660**	80	72	64	56	48	41	33	25	17	10	2
660	**670**	81	73	66	58	50	42	34	27	19	11	3
670	**680**	83	75	67	59	51	44	36	28	20	13	5
680	**690**	84	76	69	61	53	45	37	30	22	14	6

Most states (and some cities) also require **employers** to withhold income taxes from employees' earnings. As a rule, the amounts withheld are a percentage (specified in the state revenue code) of the amount withheld for the federal income tax. Or they may be a specified percentage of the employee's earnings. For the sake of simplicity, we have assumed that Jordan's wages are subject to state income taxes of 2%, or $11.04 (2% × $552) per week.

There is no limit on the amount of gross earnings subject to income tax withholdings. In fact, the higher the earnings, the higher the amount of taxes withheld.

Other Deductions

Employees may voluntarily authorize withholdings for charitable, retirement, and other purposes. All voluntary deductions from gross earnings should be authorized in writing by the employee. The authorization(s) may be made individually or as part of a group plan. Deductions for charitable organizations, such as the United Way, or for financial arrangements, such as U.S. savings bonds and repayment of loans from company credit unions, are made individually. Deductions for union dues, health and life insurance, and pension plans are often made on a group basis. We will assume that Jordan has weekly voluntary deductions of $10 for the United Way and $5 for union dues.

NET PAY

Net pay is determined by subtracting payroll deductions from gross earnings. For Michael Jordan, net pay for the pay period is $432.80, computed as shown in Illustration F-7. Assuming that Michael Jordan's wages for each week during the year are $552, total wages for the year are $28,704 (52 × $552). Thus, all of Jordan's wages are subject to FICA tax during the year. Let's assume that Jordan's department head earns $2,000 per week, or $104,000 for the year. Since we are assuming that only the first $100,000 is subject to FICA taxes, the maximum FICA withholdings on the department head's earnings would be $8,000 ($100,000 × 8%).

Alternative Terminology Net pay is also called *take-home pay.*

Gross earnings		$ 552.00
Payroll deductions:		
FICA taxes	$44.16	
Federal income taxes	49.00	
State income taxes	11.04	
United Way	10.00	
Union dues	5.00	119.20
Net pay		**$432.80**

Illustration F-7
Computation of net pay

Recording the Payroll

Recording the payroll involves maintaining payroll department records, recognizing payroll expenses and liabilities, and recording payment of the payroll.

MAINTAINING PAYROLL DEPARTMENT RECORDS

To comply with state and federal laws, an employer must keep a cumulative record of each employee's gross earnings, deductions, and net pay during the year. The record that provides this information is the **employee earnings record**. Michael Jordan's employee earnings record is shown in Illustration F-8 (next page).

ACADEMY COMPANY
Employee Earnings Record
for the Year 2012

Name	Michael Jordan	Address	2345 Mifflin Ave.
Social Security Number	329-36-9547		Hampton, Michigan 48292
Date of Birth	December 24, 1970	Telephone	555-238-9051
Date Employed	September 1, 2010	Date Employment Ended	
Sex	Male	Exemptions	2
Single _____	Married x		

2012		Gross Earnings				Deductions						Payment	
Period Ending	Total Hours	Regular	Overtime	Total	Cumulative	FICA	Fed. Inc. Tax	State Inc. Tax	United Fund	Union Dues	Total	Net Amount	Check No.
1/7	42	480.00	36.00	516.00	516.00	41.28	43.00	10.32	10.00	5.00	109.60	406.40	974
1/14	44	480.00	72.00	552.00	1,068.00	44.16	49.00	11.04	10.00	5.00	119.20	432.80	1028
1/21	43	480.00	54.00	534.00	1,602.00	42.72	46.00	10.68	10.00	5.00	114.40	419.60	1077
1/28	42	480.00	36.00	516.00	2,118.00	41.28	43.00	10.32	10.00	5.00	109.60	406.40	1133
Jan. Total		1,920.00	198.00	2,118.00		169.44	181.00	42.36	40.00	20.00	452.80	1,665.20	

Illustration F-8
Employee earnings record

A separate earnings record is kept for each employee. It is updated after each pay period. The cumulative payroll data on the earnings record are used by the employer to: (1) determine when an employee has earned the maximum earnings subject to FICA taxes, (2) file state and federal payroll tax returns (as explained later in the appendix), and (3) provide each employee with a statement of gross earnings and tax withholdings for the year. Illustration F-12 (on page F-12) shows this statement.

In addition to employee earnings records, many companies find it useful to prepare a **payroll register**. This record accumulates the gross earnings, deductions, and net pay by employee for each pay period. It provides the documentation for preparing a paycheck for each employee. Academy Company's payroll register is presented in Illustration F-9. It shows the data for Michael Jordan in the wages section. In this example, Academy Company's total weekly payroll is $17,210, as shown in the gross earnings column.

Illustration F-9 Payroll register

ACADEMY COMPANY
Payroll Register
for the Week Ending January 14, 2012

		Earnings			Deductions						Paid		Accounts Debited	
Employee	Total Hours	Regular	Over-time	Gross	FICA	Federal Income Tax	State Income Tax	United Way	Union Dues	Total	Net Pay	Check No.	Office Salaries Expense	Wages Expense
Office Salaries														
Arnold, Patricia	40	580.00		580.00	46.40	61.00	11.60	15.00		134.00	446.00	998	580.00	
Canton, Matthew	40	590.00		590.00	47.20	63.00	11.80	20.00		142.00	448.00	999	590.00	
Mueller, William	40	530.00		530.00	42.40	54.00	10.60	11.00		118.00	412.0	1010	530.00	
Subtotal		5,200.00		5,200.00	416.00	1,090.00	104.00	120.00		1,730.00	3,470.00		5,200.00	
Wages														
Bennett, Robin	42	480.00	36.00	516.00	41.28	43.00	10.32	18.00	5.00	117.60	398.40	1025		516.00
Jordan, Michael	44	480.00	72.00	552.00	44.16	49.00	11.04	10.00	5.00	119.20	432.80	1028		552.00
Milroy, Lee	43	480.00	54.00	534.00	42.72	46.00	10.68	10.00	5.00	114.40	419.60	1040		534.00
Subtotal		11,000.00	1,010.00	12,010.00	960.80	2,400.00	240.20	301.50	115.00	4,017.50	7,992.50			12,010.00
Total		16,200.00	1,010.00	17,210.00	1,376.80	3,490.00	344.20	421.50	115.00	5,747.50	11,462.50		5,200.00	12,010.00

Note that this record is a listing of each employee's payroll data for the pay period. In some companies, a payroll register is a journal or book of original entry. Postings are made from it directly to ledger accounts. In other companies, the payroll register is a memorandum record that provides the data for a general journal entry and subsequent posting to the ledger accounts. At Academy Company, the latter procedure is followed.

RECOGNIZING PAYROLL EXPENSES AND LIABILITIES

From the payroll register in Illustration F-9, a journal entry is made to record the payroll. For the week ending January 14, the entry is:

				A = L + SE
Jan. 14	Office Salaries Expense	5,200.00		−5,200.00 Exp
	Wages Expense	12,010.00		−12,010.00 Exp
	FICA Taxes Payable		1,376.80	+1,376.80
	Federal Income Taxes Payable		3,490.00	+3,490.00
	State Income Taxes Payable		344.20	+344.20
	United Fund Payable		421.50	+421.50
	Union Dues Payable		115.00	+115.00
	Salaries and Wages Payable		11,462.50	+11,462.50
	(To record payroll for the week ending January 14)			

Cash Flows
no effect

Specific liability accounts are credited for the mandatory and voluntary deductions made during the pay period. In the example, debits to Office Salaries and Wages Expense are used for gross earnings because office workers are on a salary and other employees are paid on an hourly rate. In other companies, there may be debits to other accounts such as Store Salaries or Sales Salaries. The amount credited to Salaries and Wages Payable is the sum of the individual checks the employees will receive.

RECORDING PAYMENT OF THE PAYROLL

Payment by check is made either from the employer's regular bank account or a payroll bank account. Each paycheck is usually accompanied by a detachable **statement of earnings** document. This shows the employee's gross earnings, payroll deductions, and net pay for the period and for the year-to-date. The Academy Company uses its regular bank account for payroll checks. The paycheck and statement of earnings for Michael Jordan are shown in Illustration F-10 (next page).

Following payment of the payroll, the check numbers are entered in the payroll register. The entry to record payment of the payroll for Academy Company is as follows.

				A = L + SE
Jan. 14	Salaries and Wages Payable	11,462.50		−11,462.50
	Cash		11,462.50	−11,462.50
	(To record payment of payroll)			

Cash Flows
−11,462.50

Many medium- and large-size companies use a payroll processing center that provides payroll record-keeping services. Companies send the center payroll information about employee pay rates and hours worked. The center maintains the payroll records and prepares the payroll checks. In most cases, it costs less to process the payroll through the center than if the company did so internally.

Illustration F-10
Paycheck and statement of earnings

AC

ACADEMY COMPANY
19 Center St.
Hampton, MI 48291

No. 1028

January 14, 2012 62—1113 / 610

Pay to the order of Michael Jordan $ 432.80

Four Hundred Thirty-two and 80/100 Dollars

City Bank & Trust
P.O. Box 3000
Hampton, MI 48291

For Payroll

Randall E. Barnes

⑆003244771⑈ 1028

DETACH AND RETAIN THIS PORTION FOR YOUR RECORDS

NAME				SOC. SEC. NO.		EMPL. NUMBER	NO. EXEMP	PAY PERIOD ENDING
Michael Jordan				329-36-9547			2	1/14/12
REG. HRS.	O.T. HRS.	OTH. HRS. (1)	OTH. HRS. (2)	REG. EARNINGS	O.T. EARNINGS	OTH. EARNINGS (1)	OTH. EARNINGS (2)	GROSS
40	4			480.00	72.00			$552.00
FED. W/H TAX	FICA	STATE TAX	LOCAL TAX	OTHER DEDUCTIONS				NET PAY
49.00	44.16	11.04		(1) 10.00	(2) 5.00	(3)	(4)	432.80

YEAR TO DATE								
FED. W/H TAX	FICA	STATE TAX	LOCAL TAX	OTHER DEDUCTIONS				NET PAY
92.00	85.44	21.36		(1) 20.00	(2) 10.00	(3)	(4)	$839.20

Helpful Hint Do any of the income tax liabilities result in payroll tax expense for the employer? *Answer:* No. The employer is acting only as a collection agent for the government.

Employer Payroll Taxes

study objective 3
Describe and record employer payroll taxes.

Payroll tax expense for businesses results from three taxes **levied on employers** by governmental agencies. These taxes are: (1) FICA, (2) federal unemployment tax, and (3) state unemployment tax. These taxes plus such items as paid vacations and pensions are collectively referred to as **fringe benefits**. As indicated earlier, the cost of fringe benefits in many companies is substantial.

FICA TAXES

We have seen that each employee must pay FICA taxes. An employer must match each employee's FICA contribution. The matching contribution results in **payroll tax expense** to the employer. The employer's tax is subject to the same rate and maximum earnings applicable to the employee. The account, FICA Taxes Payable, is used for both the employee's and the employer's FICA contributions. For the January 14 payroll, Academy Company's FICA tax contribution is $1,376.80 ($17,210.00 × 8%).

FEDERAL UNEMPLOYMENT TAXES

Helpful Hint FICA taxes are paid by both the employer and employee. Federal unemployment taxes and (in most states) the state unemployment taxes are borne entirely by the employer.

The Federal Unemployment Tax Act (FUTA) is another feature of the federal Social Security program. **Federal unemployment taxes** provide benefits for a limited period of time to employees who lose their jobs through no fault of their own. Under provisions of the Act, the employer is required to pay a tax of 6.2% on the first $7,000 of gross wages paid to each employee during a calendar year. The law allows the employer a maximum credit of 5.4% on the federal rate for contributions to state unemployment taxes. Because of this provision, state unemployment tax laws generally provide for a 5.4% rate. The effective federal unemployment tax rate thus becomes 0.8% (6.2% − 5.4%). This tax is borne **entirely by the employer**. There is no deduction or withholding from employees.

The account Federal Unemployment Taxes Payable is used to recognize this liability. The federal unemployment tax for Academy Company for the January 14 payroll is $137.68 ($17,210.00 × 0.8%).

STATE UNEMPLOYMENT TAXES

All states have unemployment compensation programs under state unemployment tax acts (SUTA). Like federal unemployment taxes, **state unemployment taxes** provide benefits to employees who lose their jobs. These taxes are levied on employers.[2] The basic rate is usually 5.4% on the first $7,000 of wages paid to an employee during the year. The basic rate is adjusted according to the employer's experience rating: Companies with a history of unstable employment may pay more than the basic rate. Companies with a history of stable employment may pay less than 5.4%. Regardless of the rate paid, the credit on the federal unemployment tax is still 5.4%.

The account State Unemployment Taxes Payable is used for this liability. The state unemployment tax for Academy Company for the January 14 payroll is $929.34 ($17,210.00 × 5.4%).

RECORDING EMPLOYER PAYROLL TAXES

Employer payroll taxes are usually recorded at the same time the payroll is journalized. The entire amount of gross pay ($17,210.00) shown in the payroll register in Illustration F-9 is subject to each of the three taxes mentioned above. Accordingly, the entry to record the payroll tax expense associated with the January 14 payroll is:

Jan. 14	Payroll Tax Expense	2,443.82	
	FICA Taxes Payable		1,376.80
	Federal Unemployment Taxes Payable		137.68
	State Unemployment Taxes Payable		929.34
	(To record employer's payroll taxes on January 14 payroll)		

A	=	L	+	SE
				−2,443.82 Exp
		+1,376.80		
		+137.68		
		+929.34		

Cash Flows
no effect

Separate liability accounts are used instead of a single credit to Payroll Taxes Payable. Why? Because these liabilities are payable to different taxing authorities at different dates. The liability accounts are classified in the balance sheet as current liabilities since they will be paid within the next year. Payroll Tax Expense is classified on the income statement as an operating expense. Illustration F-11 summarizes the types of employer payroll taxes.

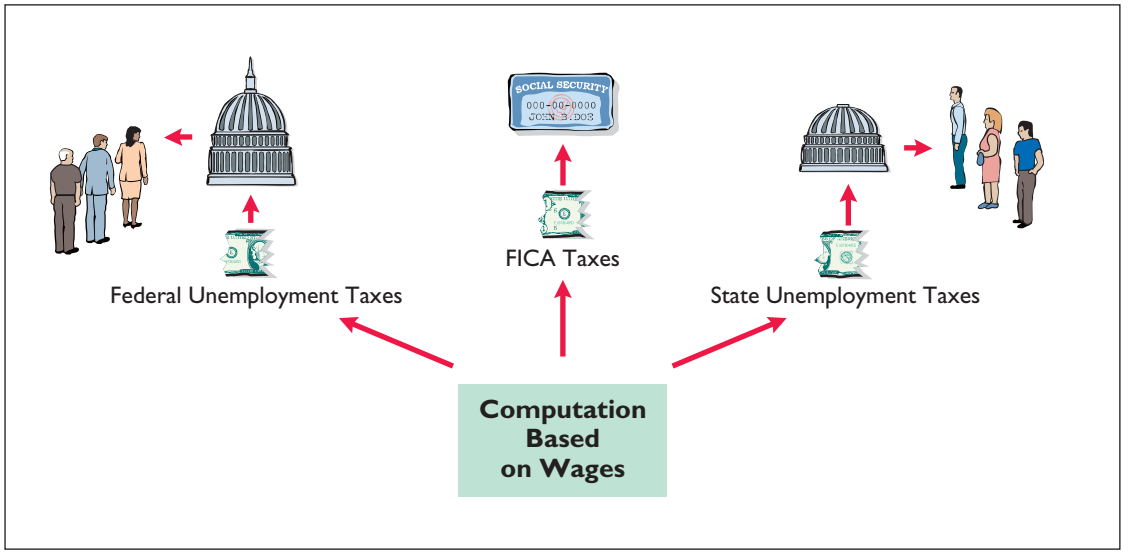


Illustration F-11
Employer payroll taxes

[2]In a few states, the employee is also required to make a contribution. In this textbook, including the homework, *we will assume that the tax is only on the employer*.

Filing and Remitting Payroll Taxes

Preparation of payroll tax returns is the responsibility of the payroll department. Payment of the taxes is made by the treasurer's department. Much of the information for the returns is obtained from employee earnings records.

For purposes of reporting and remitting to the IRS, FICA taxes and federal income taxes that were withheld are combined. **The taxes must be reported quarterly**, no later than one month following the close of each quarter. The remitting requirements depend on the amount of taxes withheld and the length of the pay period. Remittances are made through deposits in either a Federal Reserve bank or an authorized commercial bank.

Federal unemployment taxes are generally filed and remitted **annually** on or before January 31 of the subsequent year. Earlier payments are required when the tax exceeds a specified amount. State unemployment taxes usually must be filed and paid by the **end of the month following each quarter**. When payroll taxes are paid, payroll liability accounts are debited, and Cash is credited.

The employer is also required to provide each employee with a **Wage and Tax Statement (Form W-2)** by January 31 following the end of a calendar year. This statement shows gross earnings, FICA taxes withheld, and income taxes withheld for the year. The required W-2 form for Michael Jordan, using assumed annual data, is shown in Illustration F-12.

The employer must send a copy of each employee's Wage and Tax Statement (Form W-2) to the Social Security Administration. This agency subsequently furnishes the Internal Revenue Service with the income data required.

Illustration F-12
W-2 form

22222 | Void ☐ | a Employee's social security number: 329-36-9547 | For Official Use Only ▶ OMB No. 1545-0008

b Employer identification number (EIN): 36-2167852

c Employer's name, address, and ZIP code:
Academy Company
19 Center St.
Hampton, MI 48291

d Control number

e Employee's first name and initial: Michael | Last name: Jordan | Suff.

2345 Mifflin Ave.
Hampton, MI 48292

f Employee's address and ZIP code

1 Wages, tips, other compensation: 26,300.00
2 Federal income tax withheld: 2,248.00
3 Social security wages: 26,300.00
4 Social security tax withheld: 2,104.00
5 Medicare wages and tips: 26,300.00
6 Medicare tax withheld
7 Social security tips
8 Allocated tips
9 Advance EIC payment
10 Dependent care benefits
11 Nonqualified plans
12a See instructions for box 12 Code
13 Statutory employee ☐ Retirement plan ☐ Third-party sick pay ☐
12b Code
14 Other
12c Code
12d Code

15 State	Employer's state ID number	16 State wages, tips, etc.	17 State income tax	18 Local wages, tips, etc.	19 Local income tax	20 Locality name
MI	423-1466-3	26,300.00	526.00			

Form **W-2** Wage and Tax Statement 2012 Department of the Treasury—Internal Revenue Service

Copy A For Social Security Administration — Send this entire page with Form W-3 to the Social Security Administration; photocopies are **not** acceptable.

For Privacy Act and Paperwork Reduction Act Notice, see back of Copy D.

Cat. No. 10134D

Summary of Study Objectives

1 **Discuss the objectives of internal control for payroll.** The objectives of internal control for payroll are (1) to safeguard company assets against unauthorized payments of payrolls, and (2) to ensure the accuracy of the accounting records pertaining to payrolls.

2 **Compute and record the payroll for a pay period.** The computation of the payroll involves gross earnings, payroll deductions, and net pay. In recording the payroll, Salaries (or Wages) Expense is debited for gross earnings, individual tax and other liability accounts are credited for payroll deductions, and Salaries (Wages) Payable is credited for net pay. When the payroll is paid, Salaries and Wages Payable is debited, and Cash is credited.

3 **Describe and record employer payroll taxes.** Employer payroll taxes consist of FICA, federal unemployment taxes, and state unemployment taxes. The taxes are usually accrued at the time the payroll is recorded by debiting Payroll Tax Expense and crediting separate liability accounts for each type of tax.

Glossary

Bonus *(p. F-4)* Compensation to management personnel and other employees, based on factors such as increased sales or the amount of net income.

Employee earnings record *(p. F-7)* A cumulative record of each employee's gross earnings, deductions, and net pay during the year.

Employee's Withholding Allowance Certificate (Form W-4) *(p. F-6)* An Internal Revenue Service form on which the employee indicates the number of allowances claimed for withholding federal income taxes.

Federal unemployment taxes *(p. F-10)* Taxes imposed on the employer that provide benefits for a limited time period to employees who lose their jobs through no fault of their own.

FICA taxes *(p. F-5)* Taxes designed to provide workers with supplemental retirement, employment disability, and medical benefits.

Gross earnings *(p. F-4)* Total compensation earned by an employee.

Net pay *(p. F-7)* Gross earnings less payroll deductions.

Payroll deductions *(p. F-4)* Deductions from gross earnings to determine the amount of a paycheck.

Payroll register *(p. F-8)* A payroll record that accumulates the gross earnings, deductions, and net pay by employee for each pay period.

Salaries *(p. F-1)* Specified amount per month or per year paid to managers and administrative personnel.

Statement of earnings *(p. F-9)* A document attached to a paycheck that indicates the employee's gross earnings, payroll deductions, and net pay.

State unemployment taxes *(p. F-11)* Taxes imposed on the employer that provide benefits to employees who lose their jobs.

Wage and Tax Statement (Form W-2) *(p. F-12)* A form showing gross earnings, FICA taxes withheld, and income taxes withheld which is prepared annually by an employer for each employee.

Wages *(p. F-1)* Amounts paid to employees based on a rate per hour or on a piece-work basis.

WILEY PLUS
Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Questions

1. You are a newly hired accountant with Westbrook Company. On your first day, the controller asks you to identify the main internal control objectives related to payroll accounting. How would you respond?
2. What are the four functions associated with payroll activities?
3. What is the difference between gross pay and net pay? Which amount should a company record as wages or salaries expense?
4. Which payroll tax is levied on both employers and employees?
5. Are the federal and state income taxes withheld from employee paychecks a payroll tax expense for the employer? Explain your answer.
6. What do the following acronyms stand for: FICA, FUTA, and SUTA?
7. What information is shown on a W-4 statement? On a W-2 statement?
8. Distinguish between the two types of payroll deductions and give examples of each.
9. What are the primary uses of the employees earnings record?
10. (a) Identify the three types of employer payroll taxes.
    (b) How are tax liability accounts and Payroll Tax Expense classified in the financial statements?

Brief Exercises

Identify payroll functions.
(SO 1), C

BEF-1 Rodriguez Company has the following payroll procedures.
(a) Supervisor approves overtime work.
(b) The human resources department prepares hiring authorization forms for new hires.
(c) A second payroll department employee verifies payroll calculations.
(d) The treasurer's department pays employees.

Identify the payroll function to which each procedure pertains.

Compute gross earnings and net pay.
(SO 2), AP

BEF-2 Erica Chambers' regular hourly wage rate is $14, and she receives an hourly rate of $21 for work in excess of 40 hours. During a January pay period, Erica works 45 hours. Erica's federal income tax withholding is $95, and she has no voluntary deductions. Compute Erica Chambers' gross earnings and net pay for the pay period.

Record a payroll and the payment of wages.
(SO 2), AP

BEF-3 Data for Erica Chambers are presented in BEF-2. Prepare the journal entries to record (a) Erica's pay for the period and (b) the payment of Erica's wages. Use January 15 for the end of the pay period and the payment date.

Record employer payroll taxes.
(SO 3), AP

BEF-4 In January, gross earnings in Gel Company totaled $70,000. All earnings are subject to 8% FICA taxes, 5.4% state unemployment taxes, and 0.8% federal unemployment taxes. Prepare the entry to record January payroll tax expense.

Exercises

Compute net pay and record pay for one employee.
(SO 2), AP

EF-1 Donna Garland's regular hourly wage rate is $16.00, and she receives a wage of 1½ times the regular hourly rate for work in excess of 40 hours. During a March weekly pay period, Donna worked 42 hours. Her gross earnings prior to the current week were $8,000. Donna is married and claims three withholding allowances. Her only voluntary deduction is for group hospitalization insurance at $15.00 per week.

Instructions
(a) Compute the following amounts for Donna's wages for the current week.
  (1) Gross earnings.
  (2) FICA taxes. (Assume an 8% rate on maximum of $100,000.)
  (3) Federal income taxes withheld. (Use the withholding table in the text, page F-6.)
  (4) State income taxes withheld. (Assume a 2.0% rate.)
  (5) Net pay.
(b) Record Donna's pay, assuming she is an office computer operator.

Compute maximum FICA deductions.
(SO 2), AP

EF-2 Employee earnings records for Carnahan Company reveal the following gross earnings for four employees through the pay period of December 15.

C. Mendez	$93,500	D. Roberts	$99,100
L. Church	$98,600	T. Windsor	$100,000

For the pay period ending December 31, each employee's gross earnings is $3,000. The FICA tax rate is 8% on gross earnings of $100,000.

Instructions
Compute the FICA withholdings that should be made for each employee for the December 31 pay period. (Show computations.)

Prepare payroll register and record payroll and payroll tax expense.
(SO 2, 3), AP

EF-3 Gonzalez Company has the following data for the weekly payroll ending January 31.

	Hours								
Employee	**M**	**T**	**W**	**T**	**F**	**S**	**Hourly Rate**	**Federal Income Tax Withholding**	**Health Insurance**
M. Mozart	8	8	9	8	10	3	$10	$34	$10
E. Donnelly	8	8	8	8	8	2	12	37	15
K. Renn	9	10	8	8	9	0	13	58	15

Employees are paid 1½ times the regular hourly rate for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours per week. FICA taxes are 8% on the first $100,000 of gross earnings. Gonzalez Company is subject to 5.4% state unemployment taxes and 0.8% federal unemployment taxes on the first $7,000 of gross earnings.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the payroll register for the weekly payroll.
(b) Prepare the journal entries to record the payroll and Gonzalez's payroll tax expense.

EF-4 Selected data from a February payroll register for Skywalker Company are presented below. Some amounts are intentionally omitted.

Compute missing payroll amounts and record payroll.
(SO 2), **AP**

Gross earnings:		State income taxes	$ (3)
Regular	$8,900	Union dues	100
Overtime	(1)	Total deductions	(4)
Total	(2)	Net pay	$7,660
Deductions:		Accounts debited:	
FICA taxes	$ 800	Warehouse wages	(5)
Federal income taxes	1,140	Store wages	$4,000

FICA taxes are 8%. State income taxes are 3% of gross earnings.

Instructions

(a) Fill in the missing amounts.
(b) Journalize the February payroll and the payment of the payroll.

EF-5 According to a payroll register summary of Sterrett Company, the amount of employees' gross pay in December was $800,000, of which $70,000 was not subject to FICA tax and $760,000 was not subject to state and federal unemployment taxes.

Determine employer's payroll taxes and record payroll tax expense.
(SO 3), **AP**

Instructions

(a) Determine the employer's payroll tax expense for the month, using the following rates: FICA 8%, state unemployment 5.4%, federal unemployment 0.8%.
(b) Prepare the journal entry to record December payroll tax expense.

Problems

PF-1 Selected payroll procedures of Waegelein Company are described below.

Identify internal control weaknesses and make recommendations for improvement.
(SO 1), **AN**

1. Department managers interview applicants, and on the basis of the interview either hire or reject the applicants. When an applicant is hired, the applicant fills out a W-4 form (Employee's Withholding Allowance Certificate). One copy of the form is sent to the human resources department, and one copy is sent to the payroll department as notice that the individual has been hired. On the copy of the W-4 sent to payroll, the managers manually indicate the hourly pay rate for the new hire.
2. The payroll checks are manually signed by the chief accountant and given to the department managers for distribution to employees in their department. The managers are responsible for seeing that any absent employees receive their checks.
3. There are two clerks in the payroll department. The payroll is divided alphabetically; one clerk has employees A to L and the other has employees M to Z. Each clerk computes the gross earnings, deductions, and net pay for employees in the section and posts the data to the employee earning records.

Instructions

(a) Indicate the weaknesses in internal control.
(b) For each weakness, describe the control procedures that will provide effective internal control. Use the following format for your answer:

(a) Weaknesses	(b) Recommended Procedures

Prepare payroll register and payroll entries.
(SO 2, 3), **AN**

PF-2 Stine Hardware has four employees who are paid on an hourly basis plus time-and-a half for all hours worked in excess of 40 a week. Payroll data for the week ended March 15, 2012, are presented below.

Employee	Hours Worked	Hourly Rate	Federal Income Tax Withholdings	United Fund
Joe Feldon	40	$14.00	$?	$5.00
Mary Norten	42	13.00	?	5.00
Andy Renfro	44	13.00	60	8.00
Kim Cheng	46	13.00	51	5.00

Feldon and Norten are married. They claim 0 and 4 withholding allowances, respectively. The following tax rates are applicable: FICA 8%, state income taxes 3%, state unemployment taxes 5.4%, and federal unemployment 0.8%. The first three employees are sales clerks (store wages expense). The fourth employee performs administrative duties (office wages expense).

Instructions

(a) Net pay $1,862.06

(a) Prepare a payroll register for the weekly payroll. (Use the wage-bracket withholding table in the text for federal income tax withholdings.)
(b) Journalize the payroll on March 15, 2012, and the accrual of employer payroll taxes.
(c) Journalize the payment of the payroll on March 16, 2012.

(d) Cash paid $586.64

(d) Journalize the deposit in a Federal Reserve bank on March 31, 2012, of the FICA and federal income taxes payable to the government.

Journalize payroll transactions and adjusting entries.
(SO 2, 3), **AN**

PF-3 The payroll liability accounts shown below are included in the ledger of Ludwick Company on January 1, 2012.

FICA Taxes Payable	$ 760.00
Federal Income Taxes Payable	1,004.60
State Income Taxes Payable	108.95
Federal Unemployment Taxes Payable	288.95
State Unemployment Taxes Payable	1,954.40
Union Dues Payable	870.00
U.S. Savings Bonds Payable	360.00

In January, the following transactions occurred.

Jan. 10	Sent check for $870.00 to union treasurer for union dues.
12	Deposited check for $1,764.60 in Federal Reserve bank for FICA taxes and federal income taxes withheld.
15	Purchased U.S. Savings Bonds for employees by writing check for $360.00.
17	Paid state income taxes withheld from employees.
20	Paid federal and state unemployment taxes.
31	Completed monthly payroll register, which shows office salaries $14,600, store wages $28,400, FICA taxes withheld $3,440, federal income taxes payable $1,684, state income taxes payable $360, union dues payable $400, United Fund contributions payable $1,888, and net pay $35,228.
31	Prepared payroll checks for the net pay and distributed checks to employees.

At January 31, the company also makes the following accrued adjustments pertaining to employee compensation.

1. Employer payroll taxes: FICA taxes 8%, federal unemployment taxes 0.8%, and state unemployment taxes 5.4%.
2. Vacation pay: 6% of gross earnings.

Instructions

(b) Payroll tax expense $6,106.00; vacation benefits expense $2,580

(a) Journalize the January transactions.
(b) Journalize the adjustments pertaining to employee compensation at January 31.

PF-4 For the year ended December 31, 2012, Bradburn Electrical Repair Company reports the following summary payroll data.

Prepare entries for payroll and payroll taxes, and prepare W-2 data.
(SO 2, 3), **AN**

Gross earnings:	
Administrative salaries	$180,000
Electricians' wages	470,000
Total	$650,000
Deductions:	
FICA taxes	$ 45,200
Federal income taxes withheld	188,000
State income taxes withheld (2.6%)	16,900
United Fund contributions payable	32,500
Hospital insurance premiums	20,300
Total	$302,900

Bradburn Company's payroll taxes are: FICA 8%, state unemployment 2.5% (due to a stable employment record), and 0.8% federal unemployment. Gross earnings subject to FICA taxes total $565,000, and gross earnings subject to unemployment taxes total $145,000.

Instructions

(a) Prepare a summary journal entry at December 31 for the full year's payroll.
(b) Journalize the adjusting entry at December 31 to record the employer's payroll taxes.
(c) The W-2 Wage and Tax Statement requires the following dollar data.

(a) Wages payable $347,100
(b) Payroll tax expense $49,985

Wages, Tips, Other Compensation	Federal Income Tax Withheld	State Income Tax Withheld	FICA Wages	FICA Tax Withheld

Complete the required data for the following employees.

Employee	Gross Earnings	Federal Income Tax Withheld
Anna Hillman	$59,000	$28,500
Sharon Wainwright	28,000	10,800

appendix G

SUBSIDIARY LEDGERS AND SPECIAL JOURNALS

study objectives

After studying this appendix, you should be able to:

1 Describe the nature and purpose of a subsidiary ledger.

2 Explain how special journals are used in journalizing.

3 Indicate how a multi-column journal is posted.

section one

Expanding the Ledger—Subsidiary Ledgers

Nature and Purpose of Subsidiary Ledgers

study objective 1

Describe the nature and purpose of a subsidiary ledger.

Imagine a business that has several thousand charge (credit) customers and shows the transactions with these customers in only one general ledger account—Accounts Receivable. It would be virtually impossible to determine the balance owed by an individual customer at any specific time. Similarly, the amount payable to one creditor would be difficult to locate quickly from a single Accounts Payable account in the general ledger.

Instead, companies use subsidiary ledgers to keep track of individual balances. A **subsidiary ledger** is a group of accounts with a common characteristic (for example, all accounts receivable). The subsidiary ledger frees the general ledger from the details of individual balances. A subsidiary ledger is an addition to, and an expansion of, the general ledger.

Two common subsidiary ledgers are:

1. The **accounts receivable** (or **customers'**) **subsidiary ledger**, which collects transaction data of individual customers.
2. The **accounts payable** (or **creditors'**) **subsidiary ledger**, which collects transaction data of individual creditors.

In each of these subsidiary ledgers, individual accounts are usually arranged in alphabetical order.

The detailed data from a subsidiary ledger are summarized in a general ledger account. For example, the detailed data from the accounts receivable subsidiary ledger are summarized in Accounts Receivable in the general ledger. The general ledger account that summarizes subsidiary ledger data is called a **control account**. An overview of the relationship of subsidiary ledgers to the general ledger is shown in Illustration G-1 (next page). The general ledger control accounts and subsidiary ledger accounts are shown in green color. Note that cash and stockholders' equity in this illustration are not control accounts because there are no subsidiary ledger accounts related to these accounts.

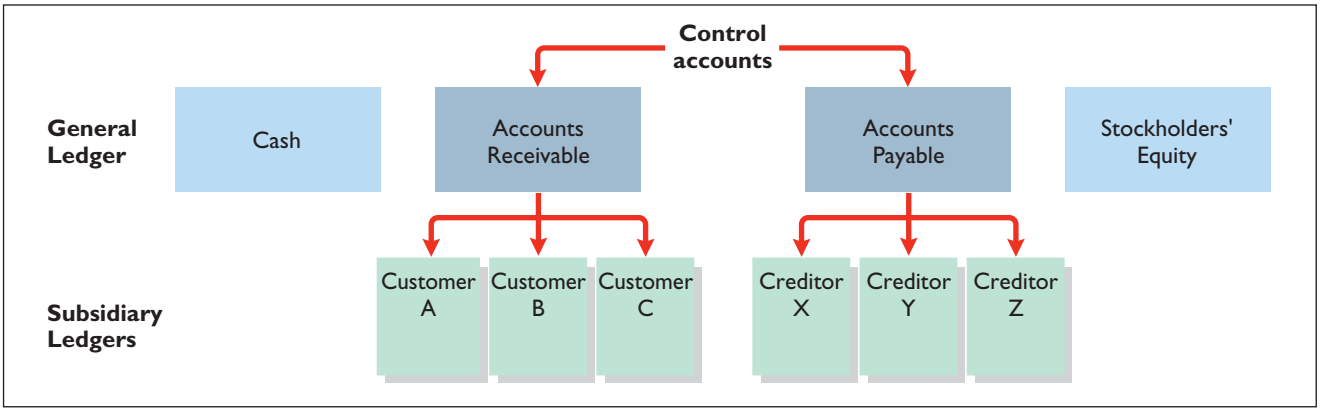


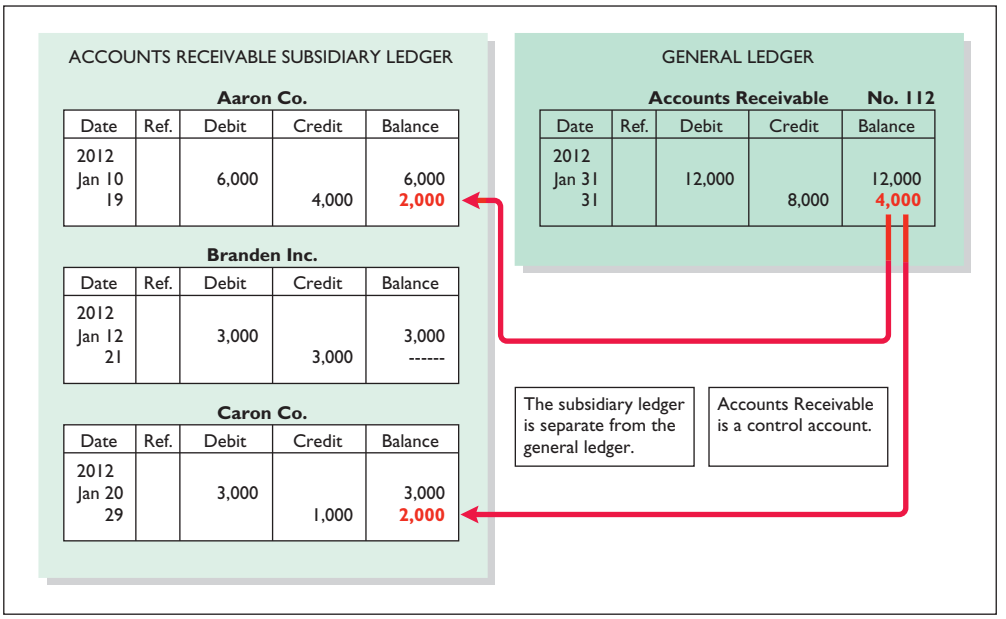
Illustration G-1
Relationship of general ledger and subsidiary ledgers

Each general ledger control account balance must equal the composite balance of the individual accounts in the related subsidiary ledger at the end of an accounting period. For example, the balance in Accounts Payable in Illustration G-1 must equal the total of the subsidiary balances of Creditors X + Y + Z.

SUBSIDIARY LEDGER EXAMPLE

An example of a control account and subsidiary ledger for Larson Enterprises is provided in Illustration G-2. (The explanation column in these accounts is not shown in this and subsequent illustrations due to space considerations.)

Illustration G-2
Relationship between general and subsidiary ledgers



The example is based on the transactions listed below.

Illustration G-3 Sales and collection transactions

Credit Sales			Collections on Account		
Jan. 10	Aaron Co.	$ 6,000	Jan. 19	Aaron Co.	$4,000
12	Branden Inc.	3,000	21	Branden Inc.	3,000
20	Caron Co.	3,000	29	Caron Co.	1,000
		$12,000			$8,000

The total debits ($12,000) and credits ($8,000) in Accounts Receivable in the general ledger are reconcilable to the detailed debits and credits in the subsidiary accounts. Also, the balance of $4,000 in the control account agrees with the total of the balances in the individual accounts (Aaron Co. $2,000 + Branden Inc. $0 + Caron Co. $2,000) in the subsidiary ledger.

As shown, postings are made monthly to the control accounts in the general ledger. This practice allows monthly financial statements to be prepared. Postings to the individual accounts in the subsidiary ledger are made daily. Daily posting ensures that account information is current. This enables the company to monitor credit limits, bill customers, and answer inquiries from customers about their account balances.

ADVANTAGES OF SUBSIDIARY LEDGERS

Subsidiary ledgers have several advantages. They:

1. **Show transactions affecting one customer or one creditor in a single account**, thus providing up-to-date information on specific account balances.
2. **Free the general ledger of excessive details.** As a result, a trial balance of the general ledger does not contain vast numbers of individual account balances.
3. **Help locate errors in individual accounts** by reducing the number of accounts in one ledger and by using control accounts.
4. **Make possible a division of labor** in posting. One employee can post to the general ledger while someone else posts to the subsidiary ledgers.

section two

Expanding the Journal—Special Journals

study objective 2

Explain how special journals are used in journalizing.

So far you have learned to journalize transactions in a two-column general journal and post each entry to the general ledger. This procedure is satisfactory in only the very smallest companies. To expedite journalizing and posting, most companies use special journals **in addition to the general journal**.

A **special journal** is used to record similar types of transactions. Examples would be all sales of merchandise on account, or all cash receipts. The special journals a company uses depends largely on the types of transactions that occur frequently. Most merchandising enterprises use the journals shown in Illustration G-4 to record transactions daily.

Illustration G-4 Use of special journals and the general journal

Sales Journal	Cash Receipts Journal	Purchases Journal	Cash Payments Journal	General Journal
Used for: All sales of merchandise on account	Used for: All cash received (including cash sales)	Used for: All purchases of merchandise on account	Used for: All cash paid (including cash purchases)	Used for: Transactions that cannot be entered in a special journal, including correcting, adjusting, and closing entries

If a transaction cannot be recorded in a special journal, it is recorded in the general journal. For example, if you had special journals only for the four types of transactions shown in Illustration G-4, purchase returns and allowances would be recorded in the general journal. So would sales returns and allowances. Similarly, **correcting**, **adjusting**, **and closing entries are recorded in the general journal**. Other types of special journals may sometimes be used in some situations. For example, when sales returns and allowances are frequent, special journals may be used to record these transactions.

Special journals **permit greater division of labor** because several people can record entries in different journals at the same time. For example, one employee may journalize all cash receipts, and another may journalize all credit sales. Also, the use of special journals **reduces the time needed to complete the posting process**. With special journals, some accounts may be posted monthly, instead of daily, as will be illustrated later in the chapter.

Sales Journal

The **sales journal** is used to record sales of merchandise on account. Cash sales of merchandise are entered in the cash receipts journal. Credit sales of assets other than merchandise are entered in the general journal.

JOURNALIZING CREDIT SALES

Helpful Hint Postings are also made daily to individual ledger accounts in the inventory subsidiary ledger to maintain a perpetual inventory.

Karns Wholesale Supply uses a **perpetual inventory** system. Under this system, each entry in the sales journal results in one entry **at selling price**—a debit to Accounts Receivable (a control account) and a credit of equal amount to Sales—and another entry at cost. The entry **at cost** is a debit to Cost of Goods Sold and a credit of equal amount to Merchandise Inventory (a control account). The sales journal for Karns Wholesale Supply is shown in Illustration G-5. (It uses assumed credit sales transactions for sales invoices 101–107.) A sales journal with two amount columns, like that in Illustration G-5, shows a transaction at both selling price and cost on a single line. The reference (Ref.) column is not used in journalizing. It is used in posting the sales journal, as explained in the next section. Also, note that, unlike the general journal, an explanation is not required for each entry in a special journal. Finally, note that each invoice is prenumbered to ensure that all invoices are journalized.

Illustration G-5
Journalizing credit sales–perpetual inventory system

KARNS WHOLESALE SUPPLY
Sales Journal S1

Date	Account Debited	Invoice No.	Ref.	Accts. Receivable Dr. Sales Cr.	Cost of Goods Sold Dr. Merchandise Inventory Cr.
2012					
May 3	Abbot Sisters	101		10,600	6,360
7	Babson Co.	102		11,350	7,370
14	Carson Bros.	103		7,800	5,070
19	Deli Co.	104		9,300	6,510
21	Abbot Sisters	105		15,400	10,780
24	Deli Co.	106		21,210	15,900
27	Babson Co.	107		14,570	10,200
				90,230	62,190

POSTING THE SALES JOURNAL

Postings from the sales journal are made **daily to the individual accounts receivable** in the subsidiary ledger. Posting **to the general ledger** is made **monthly**. Illustration G-6 shows both the daily and monthly postings.

Illustration G-6 Posting the sales journal

Karns Wholesale Supply
SALES JOURNAL
S1

Date	Account Debited	Invoice No.	Ref.	Accts. Receivable Dr. Sales Cr.	Cost of Goods Sold Dr. Merchandise Inventory Cr.
2012					
May 3	Abbot Sisters	101	✓	10,600	6,360
7	Babson Co.	102	✓	11,350	7,370
14	Carson Bros.	103	✓	7,800	5,070
19	Deli Co.	104	✓	9,300	6,510
21	Abbot Sisters	105	✓	15,400	10,780
24	Deli Co.	106	✓	21,210	15,900
27	Babson Co.	107	✓	14,570	10,200
				90,230	62,190
				(112) / (401)	(505) / (120)

Totals are posted at the end of the accounting period to the general ledger.

Individual amounts are posted daily to the subsidiary ledger.

ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE SUBSIDIARY LEDGER

Abbot Sisters

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 3	S1	10,600		10,600
21	S1	15,400		26,000

Babson Co.

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 7	S1	11,350		11,350
27	S1	14,570		25,920

Carson Bros.

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 14	S1	7,800		7,800

Deli Co.

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 19	S1	9,300		9,300
24	S1	21,210		30,510

GENERAL LEDGER

Accounts Receivable **No. 112**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 31	S1	90,230		90,230

Merchandise Inventory **No. 120**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 31	S1		62,190	62,190[1]

Sales **No. 401**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 31	S1		90,230	90,230

Cost of Goods Sold **No. 505**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 31	S1	62,190		62,190

The subsidiary ledger is separate from the general ledger.

Accounts Receivable is a control account.

[1]The normal balance for Merchandise Inventory is a debit. But, because of the sequence in which we have posted the special journals, with the sales journals first, the credits to Merchandise Inventory are posted before the debits. This posting sequence explains the credit balance, in Merchandise Inventory, which exists only until the other journals are posted.

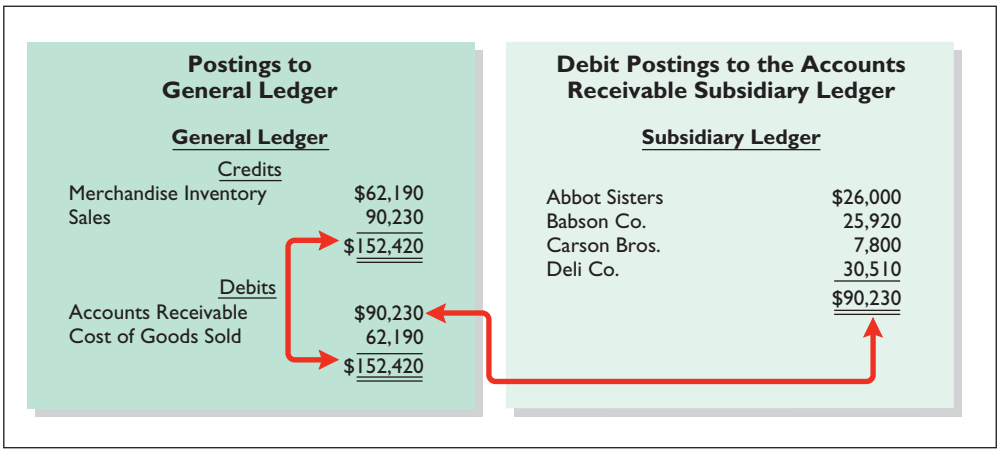
A check mark (✓) is inserted in the reference posting column to indicate that the daily posting to the customer's account has been made. A check mark (✓) is used in this illustration because the subsidiary ledger accounts are not numbered. At the end of the month, the column totals of the sales journal are posted to the general ledger. Here, the column totals are a debit of $90,230 to Accounts

Receivable (account No. 112), a credit of $90,230 to Sales (account No. 401), a debit of $62,190 to Cost of Goods Sold (account No. 505), and a credit of $62,190 to Merchandise Inventory (account No. 120). Insertion of the account numbers below the column total indicates that the postings have been made. In both the general ledger and subsidiary ledger accounts, the reference **S1** indicates that the posting came from page 1 of the sales journal.

PROVING THE LEDGERS

The next step is to "prove" the ledgers. To do so, we must determine two things: (1) The total of the general ledger debit balances must equal the total of the general ledger credit balances. (2) The sum of the subsidiary ledger balances must equal the balance in the control account. The proof of the postings from the sales journal to the general and subsidiary ledger is shown in Illustration G-7.

Illustration G-7 Proving the equality of the postings from the sales journal



ADVANTAGES OF THE SALES JOURNAL

The use of a special journal to record sales on account has a number of advantages. First, the one-line entry for each sales transaction **saves time**. In the sales journal, it is not necessary to write out the four account titles for each transaction. Second, only totals, rather than individual entries, are posted to the general ledger. This **saves posting time and reduces the possibilities of errors in posting**. Finally, **a division of labor results**, because one individual can take responsibility for the sales journal.

Cash Receipts Journal

All receipts of cash are recorded in the **cash receipts journal**. The most common types of cash receipts are cash sales of merchandise and collections of accounts receivable. Many other possibilities exist, such as receipt of money from bank loans and cash proceeds from disposal of equipment. A one- or two-column cash receipts journal would not have space enough for all possible cash receipt transactions. Therefore, a multiple-column cash receipts journal is used.

Generally, a cash receipts journal includes the following columns: debit columns for cash and sales discounts; and credit columns for accounts receivable, sales, and "other" accounts. The Other Accounts category is used when the cash receipt does not involve a cash sale or a collection of accounts receivable. Under a perpetual inventory system, each sales entry is accompanied by another entry that debits Cost of Goods Sold and credits Merchandise Inventory for the cost of the merchandise sold. This entry may be recorded separately. A six-column cash receipts journal is shown in Illustration G-8.

Illustration G-8
Journalizing and posting the cash receipts journal

Karns Wholesale Supply
CASH RECEIPTS JOURNAL
CR1

Date	Account Credited	Ref.	Cash Dr.	Sales Discounts Dr.	Accounts Receivable Cr.	Sales Cr.	Other Accounts Cr.	Cost of Goods Sold Dr. Mdse. Inv. Cr.
2012								
May 1	Common Stock	311	5,000				5,000	
7			1,900			1,900		1,240
10	Abbot Sisters	√	10,388	212	10,600			
12			2,600			2,600		1,690
17	Babson Co.	√	11,123	227	11,350			
22	Notes Payable	200	6,000				6,000	
23	Carson Bros.	√	7,644	156	7,800			
28	Deli Co.	√	9,114	186	9,300			
			53,769	781	39,050	4,500	11,000	2,930
			(101)	(414)	(112)	(401)	(x)	(505)/(120)

Individual amounts are posted daily to the subsidiary ledger.

Totals are posted at the end of the accounting period to the general ledger.

ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE SUBSIDIARY LEDGER

Abbot Sisters

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 3	S1	10,600		10,600
10	CR1		10,600	--------
21	S1	15,400		15,400

Babson Co.

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 7	S1	11,350		11,350
17	CR1		11,350	--------
27	S1	14,570		14,570

Carson Bros.

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 14	S1	7,800		7,800
23	CR1		7,800	-------

Deli Co.

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 19	S1	9,300		9,300
24	S1	21,210		30,510
28	CR1		9,300	21,210

Accounts Receivable is a control account.

The subsidiary ledger is separate from the general ledger.

GENERAL LEDGER

Cash **No. 101**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 31	CR1	53,769		53,769

Accounts Receivable **No. 112**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 31	S1	90,230		90,230
31	CR1		39,050	51,180

Merchandise Inventory **No. 120**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 31	S1		62,190	62,190
31	CR1		2,930	65,120

Notes Payable **No. 200**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 22	CR1		6,000	6,000

Common Stock **No. 311**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 1	CR1		5,000	5,000

Sales **No. 401**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 31	S1		90,230	90,230
31	CR1		4,500	94,730

Sales Discounts **No. 414**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 31	CR1	781		781

Cost of Goods Sold **No. 505**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 31	S1	62,190		62,190
31	CR1	2,930		65,120

Additional credit columns may be used if they significantly reduce postings to a specific account. For example, a loan company, such as Household International, receives thousands of cash collections from customers. A significant saving in posting would result from using separate credit columns for Loans Receivable and Interest Revenue, rather than using the Other Accounts credit column. In contrast, a retailer that has only one interest collection a month would not find it useful to have a separate column for Interest Revenue.

JOURNALIZING CASH RECEIPTS TRANSACTIONS

To illustrate the journalizing of cash receipts transactions, we will continue with the May transactions of Karns Wholesale Supply. Collections from customers relate to the entries recorded in the sales journal in Illustration G-5. The entries in the cash receipts journal are based on the following cash receipts.

May	1	Stockholders invest $5,000 in the business in common stock.
	7	Cash sales of merchandise total $1,900 (cost, $1,240).
	10	A check for $10,388 is received from Abbot Sisters in payment of invoice No. 101 for $10,600 less a 2% discount.
	12	Cash sales of merchandise total $2,600 (cost, $1,690).
	17	A check for $11,123 is received from Babson Co. in payment of invoice No. 102 for $11,350 less a 2% discount.
	22	Cash is received by signing a note for $6,000.
	23	A check for $7,644 is received from Carson Bros. in full for invoice No. 103 for $7,800 less a 2% discount.
	28	A check for $9,114 is received from Deli Co. in full for invoice No. 104 for $9,300 less a 2% discount.

Further information about the columns in the cash receipts journal (see Illustration G-8) is listed below.

Debit Columns:

1. **Cash.** The amount of cash actually received in each transaction is entered in this column. The column total indicates the total cash receipts for the month.
2. **Sales Discounts.** Karns includes a Sales Discounts column in its cash receipts journal. By doing so, it is not necessary to enter sales discount items in the general journal. As a result, the collection of an account receivable within the discount period is expressed on one line in the appropriate columns of the cash receipts journal.

Helpful Hint When is an account title entered in the "Account Credited" column of the cash receipts journal? *Answer:* A *subsidiary ledger* title is entered whenever the entry involves a collection of accounts receivable. A *general ledger* account title is entered whenever the entry involves an account that is not the subject of a special column (and an amount must be entered in the Other Accounts column). No account title is entered there if neither of the foregoing applies.

Credit Columns:

3. **Accounts Receivable.** The Accounts Receivable column is used to record cash collections on account. The amount entered here is the amount to be credited to the individual customer's account.
4. **Sales.** The Sales column records all cash sales of merchandise. Cash sales of other assets (plant assets, for example) are not reported in this column.
5. **Other Accounts.** The Other Accounts column is used whenever the credit is other than to Accounts Receivable or Sales. For example, in the first entry, $5,000 is entered as a credit to Common Stock. This column is often referred to as the **sundry accounts column**.

Debit and Credit Column:

6. **Cost of Goods Sold and Merchandise Inventory.** This column records debits to Cost of Goods Sold and credits to Merchandise Inventory.

In a multi-column journal, generally only one line is needed for each entry. Debit and credit amounts for each line must be equal. When the collection from Abbot Sisters on May 10 is journalized, for example, three amounts are indicated. Note also that the Account Credited column is used to identify both general ledger and subsidiary ledger account titles. General ledger accounts are illustrated in the May 1 and May 22 entries. A subsidiary account is illustrated in the May 10 entry for the collection from Abbot Sisters.

When the journalizing of a multi-column journal has been completed, the amount columns are totaled, and the totals are compared to prove the equality of debits and credits. The proof of the equality of Karns's cash receipts journal is shown in Illustration G-9. Totaling the columns of a journal and proving the equality of the totals is called **footing** and **cross-footing** a journal.

Debits	
Cash	$53,769
Sales Discounts	781
Cost of Goods Sold	2,930
	$57,480

Credits	
Accounts Receivable	$39,050
Sales	4,500
Other Accounts	11,000
Merchandise Inventory	2,930
	$57,480

Illustration G-9 Proving the equality of the cash receipts journal

POSTING THE CASH RECEIPTS JOURNAL

Posting a multi-column journal involves the following steps.

study objective 3
Indicate how a multi-column journal is posted.

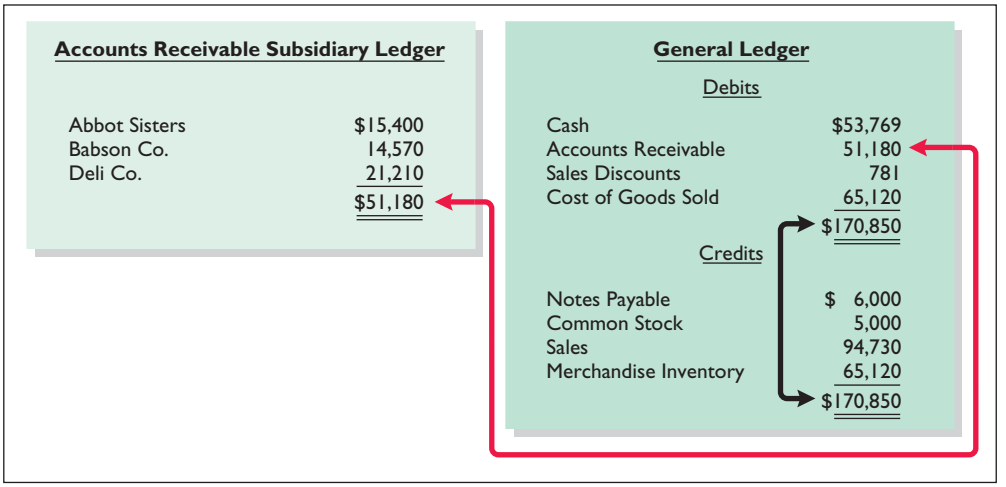
1. All column totals except for the Other Accounts total are posted **once at the end of the month** to the account title(s) specified in the column heading (such as Cash or Accounts Receivable). Account numbers are entered below the column totals to show that they have been posted. Cash is posted to account No. 101, accounts receivable to account No. 112, merchandise inventory to account No. 120, sales to account No. 401, sales discounts to account No. 414, and cost of goods sold to account No. 505.
2. The **individual amounts comprising the Other Accounts total are posted separately** to the general ledger accounts specified in the Account Credited column. See, for example, the credit posting to Common Stock. The total amount of this column is not posted. The symbol (X) is inserted below the total to this column to indicate that the amount has not been posted.
3. The individual amounts in a column, posted in total to a control account (Accounts Receivable, in this case), are posted **daily to the subsidiary ledger** account specified in the Account Credited column. See, for example, the credit posting of $10,600 to Abbot Sisters.

The symbol **CR** is used in both the subsidiary and general ledgers to identify postings from the cash receipts journal.

PROVING THE LEDGERS

After posting of the cash receipts journal is completed, it is necessary to prove the ledgers. As shown in Illustration G-10 (on the next page), the general ledger totals are in agreement. Also, the sum of the subsidary ledger balances equals the control account balance.

Illustration G-10 Proving the ledgers after posting the sales and the cash receipts journals



Purchases Journal

All purchases of merchandise on account are recorded in the **purchases journal**. Each entry in this journal results in a debit to Merchandise Inventory and a credit to Accounts Payable. When a one-column purchases journal is used (as in Illustration G-12, page G-11), other types of purchases on account and cash purchases cannot be journalized in it. For example, credit purchases of equipment or supplies must be recorded in the general journal. Likewise, all cash purchases are entered in the cash payments journal. As illustrated later, where credit purchases for items other than merchandise are numerous, the purchases journal is often expanded to a multi-column format.

JOURNALIZING CREDIT PURCHASES OF MERCHANDISE

Entries in the purchases journal are made from purchase invoices. The journalizing procedure is similar to that for a sales journal. In contrast to the sales journal, the purchases journal may not have an invoice number column, because invoices received from different suppliers will not be in numerical sequence. To assure that all purchase invoices are recorded, some companies consecutively number each invoice upon receipt and then use an internal document number column in the purchases journal.

Karns Wholesale Supply made the assumed credit purchases shown in Illustration G-11. The purchases journal for Karns Wholesale Supply is shown in Illustration G-12.

Illustration G-11 Credit purchases transactions

Date	Supplier	Amount
5/6	Jasper Manufacturing Inc.	$11,000
5/10	Eaton and Howe Inc.	7,200
5/14	Fabor and Son	6,900
5/19	Jasper Manufacturing Inc.	17,500
5/26	Fabor and Son	8,700
5/29	Eaton and Howe Inc.	12,600

Helpful Hint Postings to subsidiary ledger accounts are done daily because it is often necessary to know a current balance for the subsidiary accounts.

POSTING THE PURCHASES JOURNAL

The procedures for posting the purchases journal are similar to those for the sales journal. In this case, postings are made **daily** to the **accounts payable**

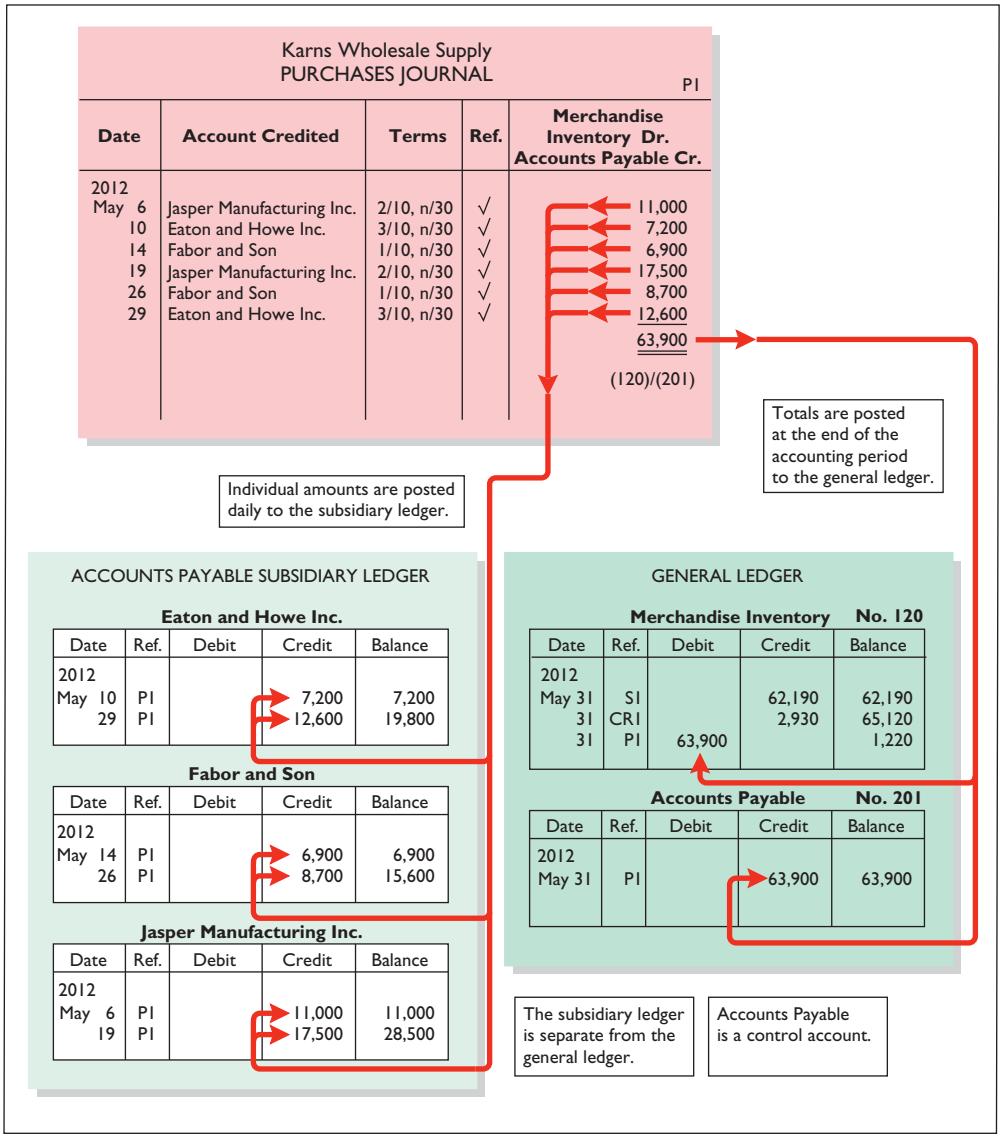


Illustration G-12
Journalizing and posting the purchases journal

Helpful Hint A single-column purchases journal needs only to be footed to prove the equality of debits and credits.

ledger and **monthly** to Merchandise Inventory and Accounts Payable in the general ledger. In both ledgers, P1 is used in the reference column to show that the postings are from page 1 of the purchases journal. Proof of the equality of the postings from the purchases journal to both ledgers is shown as follows.

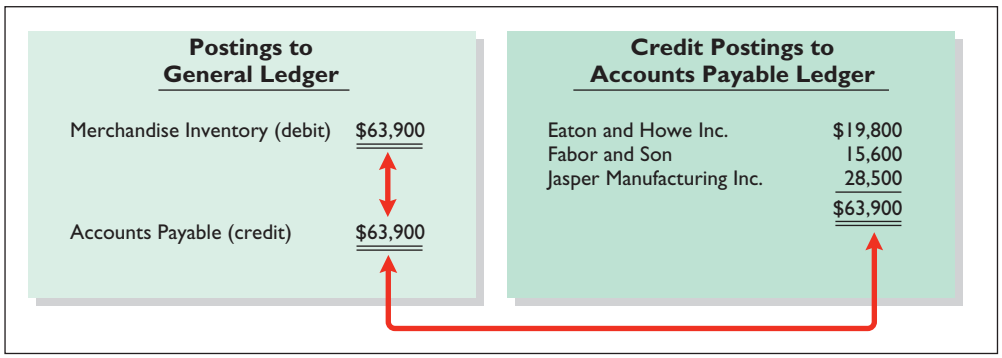


Illustration G-13
Proving the equality of the purchases journal

Helpful Hint A multi-column purchases journal must be footed and cross-footed to prove the equality of debits and credits.

EXPANDING THE PURCHASES JOURNAL

Some companies expand the purchases journal to include all types of purchases on account. Instead of one column for merchandise inventory and accounts payable, they use a multiple-column format. The multi-column format usually includes a credit column for accounts payable and debit columns for purchases of merchandise, of office supplies, of store supplies, and other accounts. Illustration G-14 is an example of a multi-column purchases journal for Hanover Co. The posting procedures are similar to those illustrated earlier for posting the cash receipts journal.

Illustration G-14 Multi-column purchases journal

HANOVER CO.
Purchases Journal P1

Date	Account Credited	Ref.	Accounts Payable Cr.	Merchandise Inventory Dr.	Office Supplies Dr.	Store Supplies Dr.	Other Accounts Dr.		
							Account	Ref.	Amount
2012									
June 1	Signe Audio	✓	2,000		2,000				
3	Wright Co.	✓	1,500	1,500					
5	Orange Tree Co.	✓	2,600				Equipment	157	2,600
30	Sue's Business Forms	✓	800			800			
			56,600	43,000	7,500	1,200			4,900

Cash Payments Journal

Alternative Terminology The cash payments journal is sometimes called the *cash disbursements journal*.

All disbursements of cash are entered in a **cash payments journal**. Entries are made from prenumbered checks. Because cash payments are made for various purposes, the cash payments journal has multiple columns. A four-column journal is shown in Illustration G-15 (next page).

JOURNALIZING CASH PAYMENTS TRANSACTIONS

The procedures for journalizing transactions in this journal are similar to those described earlier for the cash receipts journal. Each transaction is entered on one line, and for each line there must be equal debit and credit amounts. The entries in the cash payments journal in Illustration G-15 are based on the following transactions for Karns Wholesale Supply.

May 1 Check No. 101 for $1,200 issued for the annual premium on a fire insurance policy.
3 Check No. 102 for $100 issued in payment of freight when terms were FOB shipping point.
8 Check No. 103 for $4,400 issued for the purchase of merchandise.
10 Check No. 104 for $10,780 sent to Jasper Manufacturing Inc. in payment of May 6 invoice for $11,000 less a 2% discount.
19 Check No. 105 for $6,984 mailed to Eaton and Howe Inc. in payment of May 10 invoice for $7,200 less a 3% discount.
23 Check No. 106 for $6,831 sent to Fabor and Son in payment of May 14 invoice for $6,900 less a 1% discount.
28 Check No. 107 for $17,150 sent to Jasper Manufacturing Inc. in payment of May 19 invoice for $17,500 less a 2% discount.
30 Check No. 108 for $500 issued to stockholders as a cash dividend.

Illustration G-15
Journalizing and posting the cash payments journal

Karns Wholesale Supply
CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL

CP1

Date	Ck. No.	Account Debited	Ref.	Other Accounts Dr.	Accounts Payable Dr.	Merchandise Inventory Cr.	Cash Cr.
2012							
May 1	101	Prepaid Insurance	130	1,200			1,200
3	102	Mdse. Inventory	120	100			100
8	103	Mdse. Inventory	120	4,400			4,400
10	104	Jasper Manuf. Inc.	√		11,000	220	10,780
19	105	Eaton & Howe Inc.	√		7,200	216	6,984
23	106	Fabor and Son	√		6,900	69	6,831
28	107	Jasper Manuf. Inc.	√		17,500	350	17,150
30	108	Dividends	332	500			500
				6,200	42,600	855	47,945
				(x)	(201)	(120)	(101)

Individual amounts are posted daily to the subsidiary ledger.

Totals are posted at the end of the accounting period to the general ledger.

ACCOUNTS PAYABLE SUBSIDIARY LEDGER

Eaton and Howe Inc.

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 10	P1		7,200	7,200
19	CP1	7,200		-------
29	P1		12,600	12,600

Fabor and Son

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 14	P1		6,900	6,900
23	CP1	6,900		-------
26	P1		8,700	8,700

Jasper Manufacturing Inc.

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 6	P1		11,000	11,000
10	CP1	11,000		--------
19	P1		17,500	17,500
28	CP1	17,500		--------

Accounts Payable is a control account.

The subsidiary ledger is separate from the general ledger.

GENERAL LEDGER

Cash **No. 101**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 31	CR1	53,769		53,769
31	CP1		47,945	5,824

Merchandise Inventory **No. 120**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 3	CP1	100		100
8	CP1	4,400		4,500
31	S1		62,190	(57,690)
31	CR1		2,930	(60,620)
31	P1	63,900		3,280
31	CP1		855	2,425

Prepaid Insurance **No. 130**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 1	CP1	1,200		1,200

Accounts Payable **No. 201**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 31	P1		63,900	63,900
31	CP1	42,600		21,300

Dividends **No. 332**

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
May 30	CP1	500		500

Note that whenever an amount is entered in the Other Accounts column, a specific general ledger account must be identified in the Account Debited column. The entries for checks No. 101, 102, and 103 illustrate this situation. Similarly, a subsidiary account must be identified in the Account Debited column whenever an amount is entered in the Accounts Payable column. See, for example, the entry for check No. 104.

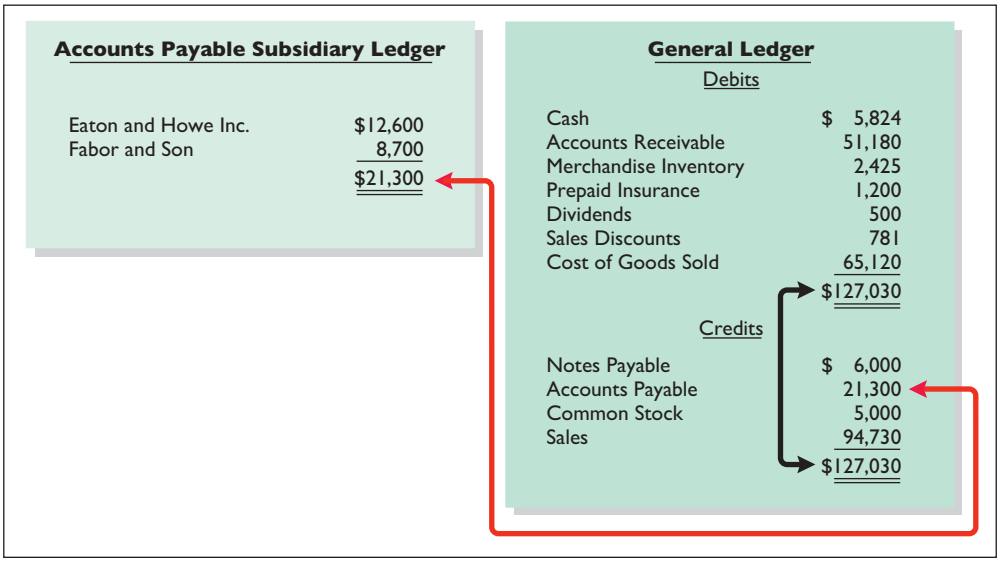
After the cash payments have been journalized, the columns are totaled. The totals are then balanced to prove the equality of debits and credits.

POSTING THE CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL

The procedures for posting the cash payments journal are similar to those for the cash receipts journal. The amounts recorded in the Accounts Payable column are posted individually to the subsidiary ledger and in total to the control account. Merchandise Inventory and Cash are posted only in total at the end of the month. Transactions in the Other Accounts column are posted individually to the appropriate account(s) affected. No totals are posted for this column.

The posting of the cash payments journal is shown in Illustration G-15 (on the previous page). Note that the symbol **CP** is used as the posting reference. After postings are completed, the equality of the debit and credit balances in the general ledger should be determined. In addition, the control account balances should agree with the subsidiary ledger total balance. The agreement of these balances is shown in Illustration G-16.

Illustration G-16
Proving the ledgers after postings from the sales, cash receipts, purchases, and cash payments journals



Effects of Special Journals on General Journal

Special journals for sales, purchases, and cash substantially reduce the number of entries that are made in the general journal. **Only transactions that cannot be entered in a special journal are recorded in the general journal.** For example, the general journal may be used to record such transactions as granting of credit to a customer for a sales return or allowance, granting of credit from a supplier for purchases returned, acceptance of a note receivable from a customer, and purchase of equipment by issuing a note payable. Also, correcting, adjusting, and closing entries are made in the general journal.

The general journal has columns for date, account title and explanation, reference, and debit and credit amounts. When control and subsidiary accounts are not involved, the procedures for journalizing and posting of transactions are the same as those described in earlier chapters. When control and subsidiary accounts are involved, two changes from the earlier procedures are required:

1. In **journalizing**, both the control and the subsidiary accounts must be identified.
2. In **posting**, there must be a **dual posting**: once to the control account and once to the subsidiary account.

To illustrate, assume that on May 31, Karns Wholesale Supply returns $500 of merchandise for credit to Fabor and Son. The entry in the general journal and the posting of the entry are shown in Illustration G-17. Note that if cash is received instead of credit granted on this return, then the transaction is recorded in the cash receipts journal.

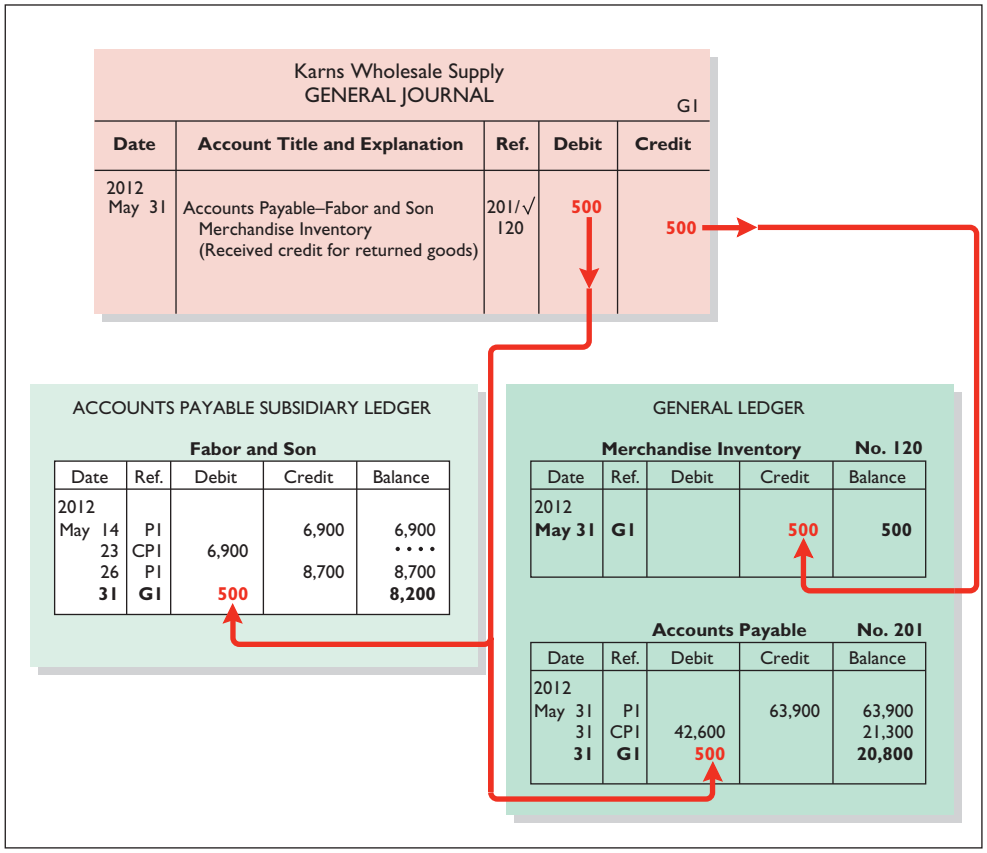


Illustration G-17
Journalizing and posting the general journal

Observe in the journal that two accounts are indicated for the debit, and two postings ("201/✓") are indicated in the reference column. One amount is posted to the control account and the other to the creditor's account in the subsidiary ledger.

Summary of Study Objectives

1 Describe the nature and purpose of a subsidiary ledger. A subsidiary ledger is a group of accounts with a common characteristic. It facilitates the recording process by freeing the general ledger from details of individual balances.

2 Explain how special journals are used in journalizing. A special journal is used to group similar types of transactions. In a special journal, generally only one line is used to record a complete transaction.

3 Indicate how a multi-column journal is posted. In posting a multi-column journal:

(a) All column totals except for the Other Accounts column are posted once at the end of the month to the account title specified in the column heading.

(b) The total of the Other Accounts column is not posted. Instead, the individual amounts comprising the total are posted separately to the general ledger accounts specified in the Account Credited column.

(c) The individual amounts in a column posted in total to a control account are posted daily to the subsidiary ledger accounts specified in the Account Credited column.

Glossary

Accounts payable (creditors') subsidiary ledger *(p. G-1)* A subsidiary ledger that collects transaction data of individual creditors.

Accounts receivable (customers') subsidiary ledger *(p. G-1)* A subsidiary ledger that collects transaction data of individual customers.

Cash payments journal *(p. G-12)* A special journal used to record all cash paid.

Cash receipts journal *(p. G-6)* A special journal used to record all cash received.

Control account *(p. G-1)* An account in the general ledger that summarizes a subsidiary ledger.

Purchases journal *(p. G-10)* A special journal used to record all purchases of merchandise on account.

Sales journal *(p. G-4)* A special journal used to record all sales of merchandise on account.

Special journal *(p. G-3)* A journal that is used to record similar types of transactions, such as all credit sales.

Subsidiary ledger *(p. G-1)* A group of accounts with a common characteristic.

WILEY PLUS
Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Questions

1. What are the advantages of using subsidiary ledgers?
2. (a) When are postings normally made to (1) the subsidiary accounts and (2) the general ledger control accounts? (b) Describe the relationship between a control account and a subsidiary ledger.
3. Identify and explain the four special journals discussed in the chapter. List an advantage of using each of these journals rather than using only a general journal.
4. V. Cruz Company uses special journals. A sale made on account to K. Allman for $435 was recorded in a sales journal. A few days later, K. Allman returns $70 worth of merchandise for credit. Where should V. Cruz Company record the sales return? Why?
5. A $500 purchase of merchandise on account from Bowie Company was properly recorded in the purchases journal. When posted, however, the amount recorded in the subsidiary ledger was $50. How might this error be discovered?
6. Why would special journals used in different businesses not be identical in format? Can you think of a business that would maintain a cash receipts journal but not include a column for accounts receivable?
7. The cash and the accounts receivable columns in the cash receipts journal were mistakenly overadded by $4,000 at the end of the month. (a) Will the customers' ledger agree with the Accounts Receivable control account? (b) Assuming no other errors, will the trial balance totals be equal?
8. One column total of a special journal is posted at month-end to only two general ledger accounts. One of these two accounts is Accounts Receivable. What is the name of this special journal? What is the other general ledger account to which that same month-end total is posted?
9. In what journal would the following transactions be recorded? (Assume that a two-column sales journal and a single-column purchases journal are used.)
   (a) Recording of depreciation expense for the year.
   (b) Credit given to a customer for merchandise purchased on credit and returned.
   (c) Sales of merchandise for cash.
   (d) Sales of merchandise on account.
   (e) Collection of cash on account from a customer.
   (f) Purchase of office supplies on account.
10. In what journal would the following transactions be recorded? (Assume that a two-column sales journal and a single-column purchases journal are used.)
   (a) Cash received from signing a note payable.
   (b) Investment of cash by stockholders of the company.
   (c) Closing of the expense accounts at the end of the year.
   (d) Purchase of merchandise on account.
   (e) Credit received for merchandise purchased and returned to supplier.
   (f) Payment of cash on account due a supplier.
11. What transactions might be included in a multiple-column purchases journal that would not be included in a single-column purchases journal?
12. Give an example of a transaction in the general journal that causes an entry to be posted twice (i.e., to two accounts), one in the general ledger, the other in the subsidiary ledger. Does this affect the debit/credit equality of the general ledger?
13. Give some examples of appropriate general journal transactions for an organization using special journals.

Brief Exercises

Identify subsidiary ledger balances.
(SO 1), C

BEG-1 Presented on the next page is information related to Varberg Company for its first month of operations. Identify the balances that appear in the accounts receivable subsidiary ledger and the accounts receivable balance that appears in the general ledger at the end of January.

Credit Sales			Cash Collections		
Jan. 7	Brown Co.	$8,000	Jan. 17	Brown Co.	$7,000
15	Ford Co.	6,000	24	Ford Co.	5,000
23	Jones Co.	9,000	29	Jones Co.	9,000

BEG-2 Identify in what ledger (general or subsidiary) each of the following accounts is shown.

1. Rent Expense
2. Accounts Receivable—Olsen
3. Notes Payable
4. Accounts Payable—Innis

Identify subsidiary ledger accounts. (SO 1), C

BEG-3 Identify the journal in which each of the following transactions is recorded.

1. Cash sales
2. Payment of cash dividends
3. Cash purchase of land
4. Credit sales
5. Purchase of merchandise on account
6. Receipt of cash for services performed

Identify special journals. (SO 2), C

BEG-4 Indicate whether each of the following debits and credits is included in the cash receipts journal. (Use "Yes" or "No" to answer this question.)

1. Debit to Sales
2. Credit to Merchandise Inventory
3. Credit to Accounts Receivable
4. Debit to Accounts Payable

Identify entries to cash receipts journal. (SO 2), C

BEG-5 Costello Computer Components Inc. uses a multi-column cash receipts journal. Indicate which column(s) is/are posted only in total, only daily, or both in total and daily.

1. Accounts Receivable
2. Sales Discounts
3. Cash
4. Other Accounts

Indicate postings to cash receipts journal. (SO 3), C

BEG-6 Yates Co. uses special journals and a general journal. Identify the journal in which each of the following transactions is recorded.

(a) Purchased equipment on account.
(b) Purchased merchandise on account.
(c) Paid utility expense in cash.
(d) Sold merchandise on account.

Identify transactions for special journals. (SO 2), C

BEG-7 Identify the special journal(s) in which the following column headings appear.

1. Sales Discounts Dr.
2. Accounts Receivable Cr.
3. Cash Dr.
4. Sales Cr.
5. Merchandise Inventory Dr.

Identify transactions for special journals. (SO 2), C

Exercises

EG-1 Wei Company uses both special journals and a general journal as described in this appendix. On June 30, after all monthly postings had been completed, the Accounts Receivable control account in the general ledger had a debit balance of $350,000; the Accounts Payable control account had a credit balance of $87,000.

The July transactions recorded in the special journals are summarized below. No entries affecting accounts receivable and accounts payable were recorded in the general journal for July.

Determine control account balances, and explain posting of special journals. (SO 1, 2), AP

Sales journal	Total sales $161,400
Purchases journal	Total purchases $54,360
Cash receipts journal	Accounts receivable column total $141,000
Cash payments journal	Accounts payable column total $47,500

Instructions

(a) What is the balance of the Accounts Receivable control account after the monthly postings on July 31?
(b) What is the balance of the Accounts Payable control account after the monthly postings on July 31?
(c) To what account(s) is the column total of $161,400 in the sales journal posted?
(d) To what account(s) is the accounts receivable column total of $141,000 in the cash receipts journal posted?

EG-2 Presented below is the subsidiary accounts receivable account of Quincy Smith.

Explain postings to subsidiary ledger. (SO 1), C

Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
2012				
Sept. 2	S31	61,000		61,000
9	G4		14,000	47,000
27	CR8		47,000	—

Instructions

Write a memo that explains each transaction.

Post various journals to control and subsidiary accounts.
(SO 1, 2), **AP**

EG-3 On September 1 the balance of the Accounts Receivable control account in the general ledger of Albert Company was $11,960. The customers' subsidiary ledger contained account balances as follows: Fleming $2,440, Park $2,640, Stiner $2,060, Zander $4,820. At the end of September the various journals contained the following information.

Sales journal: Sales to Zander $800; to Fleming $1,350; to Henry $1,030; to Stiner $1,100.

Cash receipts journal: Cash received from Stiner $1,310; from Zander $2,300; from Henry $410; from Park $1,800; from Fleming $1,240.

General journal: An allowance is granted to Zander $220.

Instructions

(a) Set up control and subsidiary accounts and enter the beginning balances. Do not construct the journals.
(b) Post the various journals. Post the items as individual items or as totals, whichever would be the appropriate procedure. (No sales discounts given.)
(c) Prepare a list of customers and prove the agreement of the controlling account with the subsidiary ledger at September 30, 2012.

Record transactions in sales and purchases journals.
(SO 1, 2), **AP**

EG-4 Spears Company uses special journals and a general journal. The following transactions occurred during September 2012.

Sept.	2	Sold merchandise on account to S. Daily, invoice no. 101, $480, terms n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $300.
	10	Purchased merchandise on account from L. Dayne $600, terms 2/10, n/30.
	12	Purchased office equipment on account from B. Shafer $6,500.
	21	Sold merchandise on account to L. Perez, invoice no. 102 for $800, terms 2/10, n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $480.
	25	Purchased merchandise on account from F. Trent $900, terms n/30.
	27	Sold merchandise to M. Deitrich for $700 cash. The cost of the merchandise sold was $420.

Instructions

(a) Draw a sales journal (see Illustration G-6) and a single-column purchase journal (see Illustration G-12). (Use page 1 for each journal.)
(b) Record the transaction(s) for September that should be journalized in the sales journal and the purchases journal.

Record transactions in cash receipts and cash payments journals.
(SO 1, 2), **AP**

EG-5 Cole Co. uses special journals and a general journal. The following transactions occurred during May 2012.

May	1	R. Cole invested $60,000 cash in the business in exchange for common stock.
	2	Sold merchandise to J. Simon for $6,000 cash. The cost of the merchandise sold was $4,200.
	3	Purchased merchandise for $9,000 from L. M. Howe using check no. 101.
	14	Paid salary to S. Little $700 by issuing check no. 102.
	16	Sold merchandise on account to B. Jones for $900, terms n/30. The cost of the merchandise sold was $630.
	22	A check of $9,000 is received from R. Wyatt in full for invoice 101; no discount given.

Instructions

(a) Draw a multiple-column cash receipts journal (see Illustration G-8) and a multiple-column cash payments journal (see Illustration G-15). (Use page 1 for each journal.)
(b) Record the transaction(s) for May that should be journalized in the cash receipts journal and cash payments journal.

Explain journalizing in cash journals.
(SO 2), **C**

EG-6 Oliver Company uses the columnar cash journals illustrated in the textbook. In April, the following selected cash transactions occurred.

1. Made a refund to a customer for the return of damaged goods.
2. Received collection from customer within the 3% discount period.

3. Purchased merchandise for cash.
4. Paid a creditor within the 3% discount period.
5. Received collection from customer after the 3% discount period had expired.
6. Paid freight on merchandise purchased.
7. Paid cash for office equipment.
8. Received cash refund from supplier for merchandise returned.
9. Paid cash dividend to stockholders.
10. Made cash sales.

Instructions

Indicate (a) the cash journal, and (b) the columns in the cash journal that should be used in recording each transaction.

EG-7 Ramirez Company has the following selected transactions during March.

Journalize transactions in general journal and post.
(SO 1, 2), **AP**

Mar. 2 Purchased equipment costing $6,000 from Briggs Company on account.
5 Received credit memorandum for $300 from Redbone Company for merchandise damaged in shipment to Ramirez.
7 Issued a credit memorandum for $400 to Sparks Company for merchandise the customer returned. The returned merchandise had a cost of $260.

Ramirez Company uses a one-column purchases journal, a sales journal, the columnar cash journals used in the text, and a general journal.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions in the general journal.
(b) In a brief memo to the president of Ramirez Company, explain the postings to the control and subsidiary accounts.

EG-8 Below are some typical transactions incurred by Costello Company.

Indicate journalizing in special journals.
(SO 2), **C**

1. Payment of creditors on account.
2. Return of merchandise sold for credit.
3. Collection on account from customers.
4. Sale of land for cash.
5. Sale of merchandise on account.
6. Sale of merchandise for cash.
7. Received credit for merchandise purchased on credit.
8. Sales discount taken on goods sold.
9. Payment of employee wages.
10. Paid a cash dividend to stockholders.
11. Depreciation on building.
12. Purchase of office supplies for cash.
13. Purchase of merchandise on account.

Instructions

For each transaction, indicate whether it would normally be recorded in a cash receipts journal, cash payments journal, sales journal, single-column purchases journal, or general journal.

EG-9 The general ledger of Karlstad Company contained the following Accounts Payable control account (in T-account form). Also shown is the related subsidiary ledger.

Explain posting to control account and subsidiary ledger.
(SO 1, 3), **C**

GENERAL LEDGER

Accounts Payable

Feb. 15	General journal	1,400	Feb. 1	Balance	26,025
28	?	?	5	General journal	265
			11	General journal	550
			28	Purchases	13,900
			Feb. 28	Balance	9,840

ACCOUNTS PAYABLE LEDGER

Pryor

	Feb. 28	Bal. 4,600

Orbison

	Feb. 28	Bal. ?

Gates

	Feb. 28	Bal. 2,000

Instructions

(a) Indicate the missing posting reference and amount in the control account, and the missing ending balance in the subsidiary ledger.

(b) Indicate the amounts in the control account that were dual-posted (i.e., posted to the control account and the subsidiary accounts).

Prepare purchases and general journals. (SO 1, 2), AP

EG-10 Selected accounts from the ledgers of Jose Gomez Company at July 31 showed the following.

GENERAL LEDGER

Store Equipment No. 153

Date	Explanation	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
July 1		G1	3,600		3,600

Merchandise Inventory No. 120

Date	Explanation	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
July 15		G1	400		400
18		G1		100	300
25		G1		200	100
31		P1	8,400		8,500

Accounts Payable No. 201

Date	Explanation	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
July 1		G1		3,600	3,600
15		G1		400	4,000
18		G1	100		3,900
25		G1	200		3,700
31		P1		8,400	12,100

ACCOUNTS PAYABLE LEDGER

Agler Equipment Co.

Date	Explanation	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
July 1		G1		3,600	3,600

Dunlap Co.

Date	Explanation	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
July 14		P1		1,100	1,100
25		G1	200		900

Benton Co.

Date	Explanation	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
July 3		P1		2,000	2,000
20		P1		700	2,700

Fogelson Co.

Date	Explanation	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
July 12		P1		500	500
21		P1		600	1,100

Cerner Materials

Date	Explanation	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
July 17		P1		1,400	1,400
18		G1	100		1,300
29		P1		2,100	3,400

Galant Transit

Date	Explanation	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance
July 15		G1		400	400

Instructions

From the data, prepare:

(a) the single-column purchases journal for July.

(b) the general journal entries for July.

Determine correct posting amount to control account. (SO 3), AP

EG-11 Moreno Products uses both special journals and a general journal as described in this appendix. Moreno also posts customers' accounts in the accounts receivable subsidiary ledger. The postings for the most recent month are included in the subsidiary T accounts below.

Dolan

Bal.	340	250
	200	

Rambo

Bal.	150	150
	290	

Moses

Bal.	–0–	145
	145	

Voris

Bal.	120	120
	190	
	170	

Instructions
Determine the correct amount of the end-of-month posting from the sales journal to the Accounts Receivable control account.

Problems

PG-1 Moran Company's chart of accounts includes the following selected accounts.

Journalize transactions in cash receipts journal; post to control account and subsidiary ledger.
(SO 1, 2, 3), **AP**

101 Cash	401 Sales
112 Accounts Receivable	414 Sales Discounts
120 Merchandise Inventory	505 Cost of Goods Sold
311 Common Stock	

On April 1 the accounts receivable ledger of Moran Company showed the following balances: Collins $1,550, Harris $1,200, Fleetwood Co. $2,900, and Smith $1,700. The April transactions involving the receipt of cash were as follows.

Apr.	1	Stockholders invested additional cash in the business, $6,000, for common stock.
	4	Received check for payment of account from Smith less 2% cash discount.
	5	Received check for $620 in payment of invoice no. 307 from Fleetwood Co.
	8	Made cash sales of merchandise totaling $7,245. The cost of the merchandise sold was $4,347.
	10	Received check for $800 in payment of invoice no. 309 from Collins.
	11	Received cash refund from a supplier for damaged merchandise $550.
	23	Received check for $1,500 in payment of invoice no. 310 from Fleetwood Co.
	29	Received check for payment of account from Harris.

Instructions
(a) Journalize the transactions above in a six-column cash receipts journal with columns for Cash Dr., Sales Discounts Dr., Accounts Receivable Cr., Sales Cr., Other Accounts Cr., and Cost of Goods Sold Dr./Merchandise Inventory Cr. Foot and crossfoot the journal.
(b) Insert the beginning balances in the Accounts Receivable control and subsidiary accounts, and post the April transactions to these accounts.
(c) Prove the agreement of the control account and subsidiary account balances.

(a) Balancing totals $19,615

(c) Accounts receivable $1,530

PG-2 Manilow Company's chart of accounts includes the following selected accounts.

Journalize transactions in cash payments journal; post to control account and subsidiary ledger.
(SO 1, 2, 3), **AP**

GLS

101 Cash	201 Accounts Payable
120 Merchandise Inventory	332 Dividends
130 Prepaid Insurance	505 Cost of Goods Sold
157 Equipment	

On October 1 the accounts payable ledger of Manilow Company showed the following balances: Gibson Company $1,700, Milo Co. $2,500, Newsome Co. $1,400, and Pagan Company $3,700. The October transactions involving the payment of cash were as follows.

Oct.	1	Purchased merchandise, check no. 63, $700.
	3	Purchased equipment, check no. 64, $800.
	5	Paid Gibson Company balance due of $1,700, less 2% discount, check no. 65, $1,666.
	10	Purchased merchandise, check no. 66, $2,250.
	15	Paid Newsome Co. balance due of $1,400, check no. 67.
	16	A cash dividend is paid in the amount of $400, check no. 68.
	19	Paid Milo Co. in full for invoice no. 610, $1,400 less 2% cash discount, check no. 69, $1,372.
	29	Paid Pagan Company in full for invoice no. 264, $2,600, check no. 70.

Instructions
(a) Journalize the transactions above in a four-column cash payments journal with columns for Other Accounts Dr., Accounts Payable Dr., Merchandise Inventory Cr., and Cash Cr. Foot and crossfoot the journal.

(a) Balancing totals $11,250

(b) Insert the beginning balances in the Accounts Payable control and subsidiary accounts, and post the October transactions to these accounts.
(c) Prove the agreement of the control account and the subsidiary account balances.

(c) Accounts payable $2,200

Journalize transactions in multi-column purchases journal; post to the general and subsidiary ledgers.
(SO 1, 2, 3), **AP**

PG-3 The chart of accounts of Renteria Company includes the following selected accounts.

112 Accounts Receivable	401 Sales
120 Merchandise Inventory	412 Sales Returns and Allowances
126 Supplies	505 Cost of Goods Sold
157 Equipment	610 Advertising Expense
201 Accounts Payable	

In July the following selected transactions were completed. All purchases and sales were on account. The cost of all merchandise sold was 70% of the sales price.

July 1 Purchased merchandise from Carlin Company $7,000.
2 Received freight bill from Johnson Shipping on Carlin purchase $400.
3 Made sales to Nance Company $1,300, and to Franklin Bros. $1,900.
5 Purchased merchandise from Flynn Company $3,200.
8 Received credit on merchandise returned to Flynn Company $300.
13 Purchased store supplies from Beran Supply $720.
15 Purchased merchandise from Carlin Company $3,600 and from Ruiz Company $2,900.
16 Made sales to Martin Company $3,450 and to Franklin Bros. $1,570.
18 Received bill for advertising from Marlin Advertisements $600.
21 Made sales to Nance Company $310 and to Randee Company $2,300.
22 Granted allowance to Nance Company for merchandise damaged in shipment $40.
24 Purchased merchandise from Flynn Company $3,000.
26 Purchased equipment from Beran Supply $600.
28 Received freight bill from Johnson Shipping on Flynn purchase of July 24, $380.
30 Made sales to Martin Company $4,900.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the transactions above in a purchases journal, a sales journal, and a general journal. The purchases journal should have the following column headings: Date, Account Credited (Debited), Ref., Other Accounts Dr., and Merchandise Inventory Dr., Accounts Payable Cr.
(b) Post to both the general and subsidiary ledger accounts. (Assume that all accounts have zero beginning balances.)
(c) Prove the agreement of the control and subsidiary accounts.

(a) Purchases journal:
Accounts Payable $22,400
Sales journal:
A/R $15,730

(c) Accounts Receivable $15,690

Journalize transactions in special journals.
(SO 1, 2, 3), **AP**

GLS

PG-4 Selected accounts from the chart of accounts of Cross Company are shown below.

101 Cash	401 Sales
112 Accounts Receivable	412 Sales Returns and Allowances
120 Merchandise Inventory	414 Sales Discounts
126 Supplies	505 Cost of Goods Sold
157 Equipment	726 Salaries and Wages Expense
201 Accounts Payable	

The cost of all merchandise sold was 60% of the sales price. During January, Cross completed the following transactions.

Jan. 3 Purchased merchandise on account from Carr Co. $10,000.
4 Purchased supplies for cash $80.
4 Sold merchandise on account to Hartman $7,250, invoice no. 371, terms 1/10, n/30.
5 Issued a debit memorandum to Carr Co. and returned $300 worth of damaged goods.
6 Made cash sales for the week totaling $3,150.
8 Purchased merchandise on account from Law Co. $4,500.
9 Sold merchandise on account to Mays Corp. $5,800, invoice no. 372, terms 1/10, n/30.

Jan. 11 Purchased merchandise on account from Hoble Co. $3,700.
13 Paid in full Carr Co. on account less a 2% discount.
13 Made cash sales for the week totaling $5,340.
15 Received payment from Mays Corp. for invoice no. 372.
15 Paid semimonthly salaries of $14,300 to employees.
17 Received payment from Hartman for invoice no. 371.
17 Sold merchandise on account to Piper Co. $1,200, invoice no. 373, terms 1/10, n/30.
19 Purchased equipment on account from Johnson Corp. $5,500.
20 Made cash sales for the week totaling $3,200.
20 Paid in full Law Co. on account less a 2% discount.
23 Purchased merchandise on account from Carr Co. $7,800.
24 Purchased merchandise on account from Levine Corp. $4,690.
27 Made cash sales for the week totaling $3,730.
30 Received payment from Piper Co. for invoice no. 373.
31 Paid semimonthly salaries of $13,200 to employees.
31 Sold merchandise on account to Hartman $9,330, invoice no. 374, terms 1/10, n/30.

Clark Company uses the following journals.

1. Sales journal.
2. Single-column purchases journal.
3. Cash receipts journal with columns for Cash Dr., Sales Discounts Dr., Accounts Receivable Cr., Sales Cr., Other Accounts Cr., and Cost of Goods Sold Dr./Merchandise Inventory Cr.
4. Cash payments journal with columns for Other Accounts Dr., Accounts Payable Dr., Merchandise Inventory Cr., and Cash Cr.
5. General journal.

Instructions

Using the selected accounts provided:

(a) Record the January transactions in the appropriate journal noted.
(b) Foot and cross-foot all special journals.
(c) Show how postings would be made by placing ledger account numbers and check-marks as needed in the journals. (Actual posting to ledger accounts is not required.)

(a) Sales journal:
A/R $23,580

PG-5 Presented below are the purchases and cash payments journals for Garison Co. for its first month of operations.

Journalize in sales and cash receipts journals; post; prepare a trial balance; prove control to subsidiary; prepare adjusting entries; prepare an adjusted trial balance.
(SO 1, 2, 3), **AP**

PURCHASES JOURNAL **P1**

Date	Account Credited	Ref.	Merchandise Inventory Dr. Accounts Payable Cr.
July 4	J. Eaton		6,800
5	W. Foley		7,500
11	R. Gamble		3,920
13	M. Hill		15,300
20	D. Jacob		8,800
			42,320

CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL **CP1**

Date	Account Debited	Ref.	Other Accounts Dr.	Accounts Payable Dr.	Merchandise Inventory Cr.	Cash Cr.
July 4	Store Supplies		600			600
10	W. Foley			7,500	75	7,425
11	Prepaid Rent		6,000			6,000
15	J. Eaton			6,800		6,800
19	Dividends		2,500			2,500
21	M. Hill			15,300	153	15,147
			9,100	29,600	228	38,472

In addition, the following transactions have not been journalized for July. The cost of all merchandise sold was 65% of the sales price.

July	1	The founder, R. Garison, invests $80,000 in cash in exchange for common stock.
	6	Sell merchandise on account to Hardy Co. $5,400 terms 1/10, n/30.
	7	Make cash sales totaling $4,000.
	8	Sell merchandise on account to D. Marlowe $3,600, terms 1/10, n/30.
	10	Sell merchandise on account to L. Clinton $4,900, terms 1/10, n/30.
	13	Receive payment in full from D. Marlowe.
	16	Receive payment in full from L. Clinton.
	20	Receive payment in full from Hardy Co.
	21	Sell merchandise on account to S. Kane $4,000, terms 1/10, n/30.
	29	Returned damaged goods to J. Eaton and received cash refund of $450.

Instructions

(a) Open the following accounts in the general ledger.

101 Cash	332 Dividends
112 Accounts Receivable	401 Sales
120 Merchandise Inventory	414 Sales Discounts
127 Store Supplies	505 Cost of Goods Sold
131 Prepaid Rent	631 Supplies Expense
201 Accounts Payable	729 Rent Expense
311 Common Stock	

(b) Cash receipts journal balancing totals $98,350

(b) Journalize the transactions that have not been journalized in the sales journal, the cash receipts journal (see Illustration G-8), and the general journal.

(c) Post to the accounts receivable and accounts payable subsidiary ledgers. Follow the sequence of transactions as shown in the problem.

(d) Post the individual entries and totals to the general ledger.

(e) Prepare a trial balance at July 31, 2012.

(f) Determine whether the subsidiary ledgers agree with the control accounts in the general ledger.

(g) The following adjustments at the end of July are necessary.
(1) A count of supplies indicates that $140 is still on hand.
(2) Recognize rent expense for July, $500.
Prepare the necessary entries in the general journal. Post the entries to the general ledger.

(h) Prepare an adjusted trial balance at July 31, 2012.

Journalize in special journals; post; prepare a trial balance.
(SO 1, 2, 3), **AP**

GLS

PG-6 The post-closing trial balance for Rivera Co. is as follows.

RIVERA CO.
Post-Closing Trial Balance
December 31, 2012

	Debit	Credit
Cash	$ 41,500	
Accounts Receivable	15,000	
Notes Receivable	45,000	
Merchandise Inventory	23,000	
Equipment	6,450	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		$ 1,500
Accounts Payable		43,000
Common Stock		86,450
	$130,950	$130,950

The subsidiary ledgers contain the following information: (1) accounts receivable—N. Alspar $2,500, B. Cole $7,500, S. Devine $5,000; (2) accounts payable—S. Field $10,000, A. Gantler $18,000, and D. Harms $15,000. The cost of all merchandise sold was 65% of the sales price.

The transactions for January 2013 are as follows.

Jan.	3	Sell merchandise to B. Terrel $4,000, terms 2/10, n/30.
	5	Purchase merchandise from S. Warren $2,500, terms 2/10, n/30.
	7	Receive a check from S. Devine $3,500.
	11	Pay freight on merchandise purchased $300.
	12	Pay rent of $1,000 for January.
	13	Receive payment in full from B. Terrel.
	14	Post all entries to the subsidiary ledgers. Issue a credit memo to acknowledge receipt of damaged merchandise of $700 returned by N. Alspar.
	15	Send D. Harms a check for $14,850 in full payment of account, discount $150.
	17	Purchase merchandise from D. Milton $1,600, terms 2/10, n/30.
	18	Pay salaries of $4,300.
	20	Give A. Gantler a 60-day note for $18,000 in full payment of account payable.
	23	Total cash sales amount to $8,600.
	24	Post all entries to the subsidiary ledgers. Sell merchandise on account to B. Cole $7,700, terms 1/10, n/30.
	27	Send S. Warren a check for $950.
	29	Receive payment on a note of $40,000 from S. Lava (short-term, non-interest-bearing note).
	30	Return merchandise of $500 to D. Milton for credit. Post all journals to the subsidiary ledger.

Instructions

(a) Open general and subsidiary ledger accounts for the following.

101 Cash	311 Common Stock
112 Accounts Receivable	401 Sales
115 Notes Receivable	412 Sales Returns and Allowances
120 Merchandise Inventory	414 Sales Discounts
157 Equipment	505 Cost of Goods Sold
158 Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	726 Salaries and Wages Expense
200 Notes Payable	727 Office Salaries Expense
201 Accounts Payable	729 Rent Expense

(b) Record the January transactions in a sales journal, a single-column purchases journal, a cash receipts journal (see Illustration G-8), a cash payments journal (see Illustration G-15), and a general journal.

(c) Post the appropriate amounts to the general ledger.

(d) Prepare a trial balance at January 31, 2013.

(e) Determine whether the subsidiary ledgers agree with controlling accounts in the general ledger.

appendix H

ACCOUNTING FOR PARTNERSHIPS

study objectives

After studying this appendix, you should be able to:

1. Identify the characteristics of the partnership form of business organization.
2. Explain the accounting entries for the formation of a partnership.
3. Identify the bases for dividing net income or net loss.
4. Describe the form and content of partnership financial statements.
5. Explain the effects of the entries to record the liquidation of a partnership.

Partnership Form of Organization

The Uniform Partnership Act provides the basic rules for the formation and operation of partnerships in most states in the United States. This act defines a **partnership** as an association of two or more persons to carry on as co-owners of a business for profit. Partnerships are common in retail establishments and in small manufacturing companies. Also, accountants, lawyers, and doctors find it desirable to form partnerships with other professionals in their field. Professional partnerships vary in size from a medical partnership of 3 to 5 doctors, to 150 to 200 partners in a large law firm, to more than 2,000 partners in an international accounting firm.

CHARACTERISTICS OF PARTNERSHIPS

study objective 1

Identify the characteristics of the partnership form of business organization.

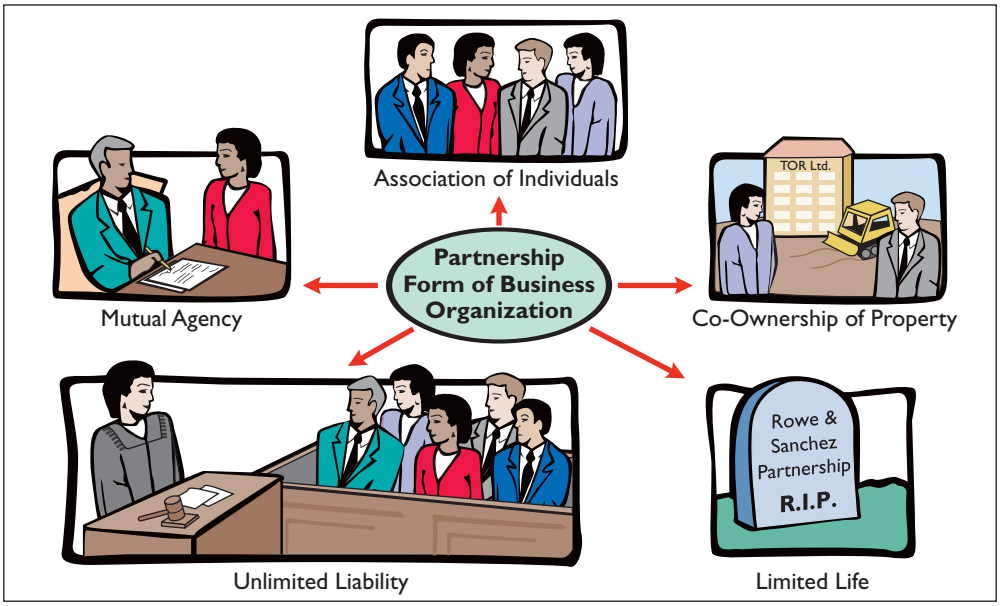
Partnerships are fairly easy to form. They can be formed simply by a verbal agreement or, more formally, by putting in writing the rights and obligations of the partners. Partners who have not put their agreement in writing sometimes have found that the characteristics of partnerships can lead to later difficulties. The principal characteristics of the partnership form of business organization are shown in Illustration H-1 (page H-2) and explained in the following sections.

Association of Individuals

The voluntary association of two or more individuals in a partnership may be based on as simple an act as a handshake. However, it is preferable to state the agreement in writing. Under the Uniform Partnership Act, a partnership is a legal entity for certain purposes. For instance, property (land, buildings, equipment) can be owned in the name of the partnership, and the firm can sue or be sued. **A partnership also is an accounting entity for financial reporting purposes.** Thus, the purely personal assets, liabilities, and transactions of the partners are excluded from the accounting records of the partnership.

The net income of a partnership is not taxed as a separate entity. But, a partnership must file an information tax return showing partnership net income and each partner's share of that net income. Each partner's share is taxable at

Illustration H-1
Partnership characteristics



personal tax rates, regardless of the amount of net income withdrawn from the business during the year.

Mutual Agency

Helpful Hint Because of mutual agency, an individual should be extremely cautious in selecting partners.

Mutual agency means that each partner acts on behalf of the partnership when engaging in partnership business. The act of any partner is binding on all other partners. This is true even when partners act beyond the scope of their authority, so long as the act appears to be appropriate for the partnership. For example, a partner of a grocery store who purchases a delivery truck creates a binding contract in the name of the partnership, even if the partnership agreement denies this authority. On the other hand, if a partner in a law firm purchased a snowmobile for the partnership, such an act would not be binding on the partnership. The purchase is clearly outside the scope of partnership business.

Limited Life

A partnership does not have unlimited life. It may be ended voluntarily at any time through the acceptance of a new partner or the withdrawal of a partner. A partnership may be ended involuntarily by the death or incapacity of a partner. Thus the life of a partnership is indefinite. **Partnership dissolution** occurs whenever a partner withdraws or a new partner is admitted. Dissolution of a partnership does not necessarily mean that the business ends. If the continuing partners agree, operations can continue without interruption by forming a new partnership.

Unlimited Liability

Each partner is **personally and individually liable** for all partnership liabilities. Creditors' claims attach first to partnership assets. If these are insufficient, the claims then attach to the personal resources of any partner, irrespective of that partner's equity in the partnership. Because each partner is responsible for all the debts of the partnership, each partner is said to have **unlimited liability**.

Co-Ownership of Property

Partnership assets are owned jointly by the partners. If the partnership is dissolved, the assets do not legally revert to the original contributor. Each partner

has a claim on total assets equal to the balance in his or her respective capital account. This claim does not attach to specific assets that an individual partner contributed to the firm. Similarly, if a partner invests a building in the partnership valued at $100,000 and the building is later sold at a gain of $20,000, that partner does not personally receive the entire gain.

Partnership net income (or net loss) is also co-owned. **If the partnership contract does not specify to the contrary, all net income or net loss is shared equally by the partners.** As you will see later, though, partners may agree to unequal sharing of net income or net loss.

ORGANIZATIONS WITH PARTNERSHIP CHARACTERISTICS

With surprising speed, states are creating special forms of business organizations that have partnership characteristics. These new organizations are being adopted by many small companies. These special forms are: limited partnerships, limited liability partnerships, limited liability companies, and "S" corporations.

Limited Partnerships

In a **limited partnership**, one or more partners have **unlimited liability** and one or more partners have **limited liability** for the debts of the firm. Those with unlimited liability are called **general partners**. Those with limited liability are called **limited partners**. Limited partners are responsible for the debts of the partnership up to the limit of their investment in the firm. This organization is identified in its name with the words "Limited Partnership," or "Ltd.," or "LP." For the privilege of limited liability, the limited partner usually accepts less compensation than a general partner and exercises less influence in the affairs of the firm.

Limited Liability Partnership

Most states allow professionals such as lawyers, doctors, and accountants to form a **limited liability partnership** or "LLP." The LLP is designed to protect innocent partners from malpractice or negligence claims resulting from the acts of another partner. LLPs generally carry large insurance policies in case the partnership is guilty of malpractice.

Limited Liability Companies

A new, hybrid form of business organization with certain features like a corporation and others like a limited partnership is the **limited liability company**, or "LLC" (or "LC"). An LLC usually has a limited life. The owners, called **members**, have limited liability like owners of a corporation. Whereas limited partners do not actively participate in the management of a limited partnership (LP), the members of a limited liability company (LLC) can assume an active management role. For income tax purposes, the IRS usually classifies an LLC as a partnership.

"S" Corporations

An **"S" corporation** is a corporation that is taxed in the same way that a partnership is taxed. To qualify as an "S" corporation, the company must have 75 or fewer stockholders, all of whom must be citizens or residents of the United States. The advantage of an "S" corporation (also called a Sub-Chapter "S" corporation) is that, like a partnership and unlike a corporation, it does not pay income taxes.

ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF PARTNERSHIPS

Why do people choose partnerships? One major advantage of a partnership is that the **skills and resources of two or more individuals can be combined**. For example, a large public accounting firm such as Ernst & Young must have expertise in auditing, taxation, and management consulting. In addition, a partnership is **easily formed and is relatively free from governmental regulations and restrictions**. A partnership does not have to contend with the "red tape" that a corporation must face. Also, decisions can be made quickly on substantive matters affecting the firm; there is no board of directors that must be consulted.

On the other hand, partnerships also have some major disadvantages: **mutual agency**, **limited life**, and **unlimited liability**. Unlimited liability is particularly troublesome. Many individuals fear they may lose not only their initial investment but also their personal assets, if those assets are needed to pay partnership creditors. As a result, partnerships often find it difficult to obtain large amounts of investment capital. That is one reason why the largest business enterprises in the United States are corporations, not partnerships.

The advantages and disadvantages of the partnership form of business organization are summarized in Illustration H-2.

Illustration H-2
Advantages and disadvantages of a partnership

Advantages	Disadvantages
Combining skills and resources of two or more individuals	Mutual agency
Ease of formation	Limited life
Freedom from governmental regulations and restrictions	Unlimited liability
Ease of decision making	

THE PARTNERSHIP AGREEMENT

Ideally, the agreement of two or more individuals to form a partnership should be expressed in writing. This written contract is often called the **partnership agreement** or **articles of co-partnership**. The partnership agreement contains such basic information as the name and principal location of the firm, the purpose of the business, and date of inception. In addition, relationships among the partners should be specified, such as:

1. Names and capital contributions of partners.
2. Rights and duties of partners.
3. Basis for sharing net income or net loss.
4. Provision for withdrawals of assets.
5. Procedures for submitting disputes to arbitration.
6. Procedures for the withdrawal or addition of a partner.
7. Rights and duties of surviving partners in the event of a partner's death.

We cannot overemphasize the importance of a written contract. The agreement should be drawn with care and should attempt to anticipate all possible situations, contingencies, and disagreements. The help of a lawyer is highly desirable in preparing the agreement.

Basic Partnership Accounting

We now turn to the basic accounting for partnerships. The major accounting issues relate to forming the partnership, dividing income or loss, and preparing financial statements.

FORMING A PARTNERSHIP

study objective 2

Explain the accounting entries for the formation of a partnership.

Each partner's initial investment in a partnership is entered in the partnership records. These investments should be recorded at the **fair value of the assets at the date of their transfer to the partnership**. The values assigned must be agreed to by all of the partners.

To illustrate, assume that A. Rolfe and T. Shea combine their proprietorships to start a partnership named U.S. Software. The firm will specialize in developing financial modeling software packages. Rolfe and Shea have the following assets prior to the formation of the partnership.

Illustration H-3 Book and fair values of assets invested

	Book Value		Fair Value	
	A. Rolfe	T. Shea	A. Rolfe	T. Shea
Cash	$ 8,000	$ 9,000	**$ 8,000**	**$ 9,000**
Office equipment	5,000		**4,000**	
Accumulated depreciation	(2,000)			
Accounts receivable		4,000		**4,000**
Allowance for doubtful accounts		(700)		**(1,000)**
	$11,000	$12,300	**$12,000**	**$12,000**

The entries to record the investments are:

Investment of A. Rolfe

Cash	8,000	
Office Equipment	4,000	
A. Rolfe, Capital		12,000
(To record investment of Rolfe)		

A	=	L	+	OE
+8,000				
+4,000				
				+12,000

Cash Flows
+8,000

Investment of T. Shea

Cash	9,000	
Accounts Receivable	4,000	
Allowance for Doubtful Accounts		1,000
T. Shea, Capital		12,000
(To record investment of Shea)		

A	=	L	+	OE
+9,000				
+4,000				
−1,000				
				+12,000

Cash Flows
+9,000

Note that neither the original cost of the office equipment ($5,000) nor its book value ($5,000 − $2,000) is recorded by the partnership. The equipment is recorded at its fair value, $4,000. Because the equipment has not been used by the partnership, there is no accumulated depreciation.

In contrast, the gross claims on customers ($4,000) are carried forward to the partnership. The allowance for doubtful accounts is adjusted to $1,000 to arrive at a cash (net) realizable value of $3,000. A partnership may start with an allowance for doubtful accounts because it will continue to collect existing accounts receivable, some of which are expected to be uncollectible. In addition, this procedure maintains the control and subsidiary relationship between Accounts Receivable and the accounts receivable subsidiary ledger.

After the partnership has been formed, the accounting for transactions is similar to any other type of business organization. For example, all transactions with outside parties, such as the purchase or sale of merchandise inventory and the payment or receipt of cash, should be recorded the same for a partnership as for a corporation.

The steps in the accounting cycle described in Chapter 4 also apply to a partnership. For example, the partnership prepares a trial balance and journalizes and posts adjusting entries. A work sheet may be used. There are minor differences in journalizing and posting closing entries and in preparing financial statements, as explained in the following sections.

DIVIDING NET INCOME OR NET LOSS

Partnership net income or net loss is shared equally unless the partnership contract indicates otherwise. The same basis of division usually applies to both net income and net loss. It is customary to refer to this basis as the **income ratio**, the **income and loss ratio**, or the **profit and loss (P&L) ratio**. Because of its wide acceptance, we will use the term **income ratio** to identify the basis for dividing net income and net loss. A partner's share of net income or net loss is recognized in the capital accounts through closing entries.

Closing Entries

Four entries are required in preparing closing entries for a partnership. The entries are:

1. Debit each revenue account for its balance, and credit Income Summary for total revenues.
2. Debit Income Summary for total expenses, and credit each expense account for its balance.
3. Debit Income Summary for its balance, and credit each partner's Capital account for his or her share of net income. Or, credit Income Summary, and debit each partner's Capital account for his or her share of net loss.
4. Debit each partner's Capital account for the balance in that partner's drawing account, and credit each partner's drawing account for the same amount.

The first two entries are the same as in a corporation. The last two entries are different because (1) there are two or more owners' capital and drawing accounts, and (2) it is necessary to divide net income (or net loss) among the partners.

To illustrate the last two closing entries, assume that AB Company has net income of $32,000 for 2012. The partners, L. Arbor and D. Barnett, share net income and net loss equally. Drawings for the year were Arbor $8,000 and Barnett $6,000. The last two closing entries are:

Dec. 31	Income Summary	32,000	
	L. Arbor, Capital ($32,000 × 50%)		16,000
	D. Barnett, Capital ($32,000 × 50%)		16,000
	(To transfer net income to partners' capital accounts)		
31	L. Arbor, Capital	8,000	
	D. Barnett, Capital	6,000	
	L. Arbor, Drawing		8,000
	D. Barnett, Drawing		6,000
	(To close drawing accounts to capital accounts)		

Assume that the beginning capital balance is $47,000 for Arbor and $36,000 for Barnett. The capital and drawing accounts will show the following after posting the closing entries.

Illustration H-4
Partners' capital and drawing accounts after closing

L. Arbor, Capital			
12/31 Clos.	8,000	1/1 Bal.	47,000
		12/31 Clos.	16,000
		12/31 Bal.	55,000

D. Barnett, Capital			
12/31 Clos.	6,000	1/1 Bal.	36,000
		12/31 Clos.	16,000
		12/31 Bal.	46,000

L. Arbor, Drawing			
12/31 Bal.	8,000	12/31 Clos.	8,000

D. Barnett, Drawing			
12/31 Bal.	6,000	12/31 Clos.	6,000

The partners' capital accounts are permanent accounts; their drawing accounts are temporary accounts. Normally, the capital accounts will have credit balances and the drawing accounts will have debit balances. Drawing accounts are debited when partners withdraw cash or other assets from the partnership for personal use.

Income Ratios

study objective 3
Identify the bases for dividing net income or net loss.

As noted earlier, the partnership agreement should specify the basis for sharing net income or net loss. The following are typical income ratios.

1. A fixed ratio, expressed as a proportion (6:4), a percentage (70% and 30%), or a fraction (2/3 and 1/3).
2. A ratio based either on capital balances at the beginning of the year or on average capital balances during the year.
3. Salaries to partners and the remainder on a fixed ratio.
4. Interest on partners' capital balances and the remainder on a fixed ratio.
5. Salaries to partners, interest on partners' capital, and the remainder on a fixed ratio.

The objective is to settle on a basis that will equitably reflect the partners' capital investment and service to the partnership.

A fixed ratio is easy to apply, and it may be an equitable basis in some circumstances. Assume, for example, that Hughes and Lane are partners. Each contributes the same amount of capital, but Hughes expects to work full-time in the partnership and Lane expects to work only half-time. Accordingly, the partners agree to a fixed ratio of 2/3 to Hughes and 1/3 to Lane.

A ratio based on capital balances may be appropriate when the funds invested in the partnership are considered the critical factor. Capital ratios may also be equitable when a manager is hired to run the business and the partners do not plan to take an active role in daily operations.

The three remaining ratios (items 3, 4, and 5) give specific recognition to differences among partners. These ratios provide salary allowances for time worked and interest allowances for capital invested. Then, any remaining net income or net loss is allocated on a fixed ratio. Some caution needs to be exercised in working with these types of income ratios. These ratios pertain exclusively to **the computations that are required in dividing net income or net loss** among the partners.

Salaries to partners and interest on partners' capital are not expenses of the partnership. Therefore, these items do not enter into the matching of expenses with revenues and the determination of net income or net loss. For a partnership, as for other entities, salaries expense pertains to the cost of services performed by employees. Likewise, interest expense relates to the cost of borrowing from creditors. But partners, as owners, are not considered either

employees or **creditors**. Therefore, when the income ratio includes a salary allowance for partners, some partnership agreements permit the partner to make monthly withdrawals of cash based on their "salary." Such withdrawals are debited to the partner's drawing account.

Salaries, Interest, and Remainder on a Fixed Ratio

Under income ratio (5) in the list above, the provisions for salaries and interest must be applied **before** the remainder is allocated on the specified fixed ratio. **This is true even if the provisions exceed net income. It is also true even if the partnership has suffered a net loss for the year.** Detailed information concerning the division of net income or net loss should be shown below net income on the income statement.

To illustrate this income ratio, assume that Sara King and Ray Lee are co-partners in the Kingslee Company. The partnership agreement provides for: (1) salary allowances of $8,400 to King and $6,000 to Lee, (2) interest allowances of 10% on capital balances at the beginning of the year, and (3) the remainder equally. Capital balances on January 1 were King $28,000, and Lee $24,000. In 2012, partnership net income is $22,000. The division of net income is as follows.

Illustration H-5 Income statement with division of net income

KINGSLEE COMPANY
Income Statement (partial)
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Sales	$200,000
Net income	$ 22,000

Division of Net Income

	Sara King	Ray Lee	Total
Salary allowance	$ 8,400	$ 6,000	$ 14,400
Interest allowance on partners' capital			
Sara King ($28,000 × 10%)	2,800		
Ray Lee ($24,000 × 10%)		2,400	
Total interest allowance			5,200
Total salaries and interest	11,200	8,400	19,600
Remaining income, $2,400			
($22,000 − $19,600)			
Sara King ($2,400 × 50%)	1,200		
Ray Lee ($2,400 × 50%)		1,200	
Total remainder			2,400
Total division of net income	**$12,400**	**$9,600**	**$22,000**

The entry to record the division of net income is:

A	=	L	+	OE
				−22,000
				+12,400
				+9,600

Cash Flows
no effect

Dec. 31	Income Summary	22,000	
	Sara King, Capital		12,400
	Ray Lee, Capital		9,600
	(To close net income to partners' capital)		

Now let's look at a situation in which the salary and interest allowances exceed net income. Assume that Kingslee Company's net income is only $18,000.

In this case, the salary and interest allowances will create a deficiency of $1,600 ($19,600 − $18,000). The computations of the allowances are the same as those in the preceding example. Beginning with total salaries and interest, we complete the division of net income as follows.

	Sara King	Ray Lee	Total
Total salaries and interest	$ 11,200	$ 8,400	$ 19,600
Remaining deficiency ($1,600)			
($18,000 − $19,600)			
Sara King ($1,600 × 50%)	(800)		
Ray Lee ($1,600 × 50%)		(800)	
Total remainder			(1,600)
Total division	**$10,400**	**$7,600**	**$18,000**

Illustration H-6 Division of net income—income deficiency

PARTNERSHIP FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

study objective 4

Describe the form and content of partnership financial statements.

The financial statements of a partnership are similar to those of a corporation. The income statement for a partnership is identical to the income statement for a corporation except for the additional section that reports the division of net income, as shown earlier.

The owners' equity statement for a partnership is called the **partners' capital statement**. Its function is to explain the changes in each partner's capital account and in total partnership capital during the year. The partners' capital statement for Kingslee Company is shown below. It is based on the division of $22,000 of net income in Illustration H-5. The statement includes assumed data for the additional investment and drawings.

KINGSLEE COMPANY
Partners' Capital Statement
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

	Sara King	Ray Lee	Total
Capital, January 1	$ 28,000	$ 24,000	$ 52,000
Add: Additional investment	2,000		2,000
Net income	12,400	9,600	22,000
	42,400	33,600	76,000
Less: Drawings	7,000	5,000	12,000
Capital, December 31	**$35,400**	**$28,600**	**$64,000**

Illustration H-7 Partners' capital statement

Helpful Hint Partners' capital may change due to (1) additional investment, (2) drawings, and (3) net income or net loss.

The partners' capital statement is prepared from the income statement and the partners' capital and drawing accounts.

The balance sheet for a partnership is the same as for a corporation except for the owner's equity section. In a partnership, the capital balances of each partner are shown in the balance sheet. The owners' equity section for Kingslee Company is shown in Illustration H-8 (page H-10).

Illustration H-8
Owners' equity section of a partnership balance sheet

KINGSLEE COMPANY Balance Sheet (partial) December 31, 2012		
Total liabilities (assumed amount)		$115,000
Owners' equity		
Sara King, Capital	$35,400	
Ray Lee, Capital	28,600	
Total owners' equity		64,000
Total liabilities and owners' equity		$179,000

Admission and Withdrawal of Partners

We have seen how the basic accounting for a partnership works. Another issue relates to the accounting for the addition or withdrawal of a partner. From an economic standpoint, the admission or withdrawal of a partner is often of minor significance in the continuity of the business. For example, in large public accounting or law firms, partners are added or dropped without any change in operating policies. Because the accounting for the admission or withdrawal of a partner is complex, it is discussed in more advanced accounting courses.

Liquidation of a Partnership

study objective 5
Explain the effects of the entries to record the liquidation of a partnership.

The liquidation of a partnership terminates the business. It involves selling the assets of the firm, paying liabilities, and distributing any remaining assets to the partners. Liquidation may result from the sale of the business by mutual agreement of the partners, from the death of a partner, or from bankruptcy. In contrast to partnership dissolution, **partnership liquidation** ends both the legal and economic life of the entity.

From an accounting standpoint, liquidation should be preceded by completing the accounting cycle for the final operating period. This includes preparing adjusting entries and financial statements. It also involves preparing closing entries and a post-closing trial balance. Thus, only balance sheet accounts should be open as the liquidation process begins.

In liquidation, the sale of noncash assets for cash is called **realization**. Any difference between book value and the cash proceeds is called the **gain or loss on realization**. To liquidate a partnership, it is necessary to:

1. Sell noncash assets for cash and recognize a gain or loss on realization.
2. Allocate gain/loss on realization to the partners based on their income ratios.
3. Pay partnership liabilities in cash.
4. Distribute remaining cash to partners on the basis of their **capital balances**.

Each of the steps must be performed in sequence. Creditors must be paid **before** partners receive any cash distributions. Each step also must be recorded by an accounting entry.

When a partnership is liquidated, all partners may have credit balances in their capital accounts. This situation is called **no capital deficiency**. Or, at least one partner's capital account may have a debit balance. This situation is termed a **capital deficiency**. To illustrate each of these conditions, assume that the Ace Company is liquidated when its ledger shows the assets, liabilities, and owners' equity accounts listed in Illustration H-9.

Illustration H-9 Account balances prior to liquidation

Assets		Liabilities and Owners' Equity	
Cash	$ 5,000	Notes payable	$15,000
Accounts receivable	15,000	Accounts payable	16,000
Inventory	18,000	R. Arnet, Capital	15,000
Equipment	35,000	P. Carey, Capital	17,800
Accum. depr.—equipment	(8,000)	W. Eaton, Capital	1,200
	$65,000		$65,000

NO CAPITAL DEFICIENCY

The partners of Ace Company agree to liquidate the partnership on the following terms: (1) The noncash assets of the partnership will be sold to Jackson Enterprises for $75,000 cash. And (2) the partnership will pay its partnership liabilities. The income ratios of the partners are 3:2:1, respectively. The steps in the liquidation process are as follows.

1. The noncash assets (accounts receivable, inventory, and equipment) are sold for $75,000. The book value of these assets is $60,000 ($15,000 + $18,000 + $35,000 − $8,000). Thus a gain of $15,000 is realized on the sale. The entry is:

(1)

			A	= L	+ OE
Cash	75,000		+75,000		
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	8,000		+8,000		
Accounts Receivable		15,000	−15,000		
Inventory		18,000	−18,000		
Equipment		35,000	−35,000		
Gain on Realization		15,000			+15,000
(To record realization of noncash assets)					

Cash Flows
+75,000

2. The gain on realization of $15,000 is allocated to the partners on their income ratios, which are 3:2:1. The entry is:

(2)

			A	= L	+ OE
Gain on Realization	15,000				−15,000
R. Arnet, Capital ($15,000 × 3/6)		7,500			+7,500
P. Carey, Capital ($15,000 × 2/6)		5,000			+5,000
W. Eaton, Capital ($15,000 × 1/6)		2,500			+2,500
(To allocate gain to partners' capital accounts)					

Cash Flows
no effect

3. Partnership liabilities consist of Notes Payable $15,000 and Accounts Payable $16,000. Creditors are paid in full by a cash payment of $31,000. The entry is:

(3)

			A	= L	+ OE
Notes Payable	15,000			−15,000	
Accounts Payable	16,000			−16,000	
Cash		31,000	−31,000		
(To record payment of partnership liabilities)					

Cash Flows
−31,000

4. The remaining cash is distributed to the partners on the basis of **their capital balances**. After the entries in the first three steps are posted, all partnership accounts, including Gain on Realization, will have zero balances except for four accounts: Cash $49,000; R. Arnet, Capital $22,500; P. Carey, Capital $22,800; and W. Eaton, Capital $3,700, as shown in Illustration H-10 (page H-12).

Cash		R. Arnet, Capital		P. Carey, Capital		W. Eaton, Capital	
Bal. 5,000	(3) 31,000		Bal. 15,000		Bal. 17,800		Bal. 1,200
(1) 75,000			(2) 7,500		(2) 5,000		(2) 2,500
Bal. 49,000			**Bal. 22,500**		**Bal. 22,800**		**Bal. 3,700**

Illustration H-10 Ledger balances before distribution of cash

The entry to record the distribution of cash is as follows.

A	=	L	+	OE
−49,000				−22,500
				−22,800
				−3,700

Cash Flows
−49,000

(4)

R. Arnet, Capital	22,500	
P. Carey, Capital	22,800	
W. Eaton, Capital	3,700	
Cash		49,000
(To record distribution of cash to partners)		

After this entry is posted, all partnership accounts will have zero balances.

Helpful Hint Zero balances after posting is a quick proof of the accuracy of the cash distribution entry.

A word of caution: **Cash should not be distributed to partners on the basis of their income-sharing ratios.** On this basis, Arnet would receive three-sixths, or $24,500, which would produce an erroneous debit balance of $2,000. The income ratio is the proper basis for allocating net income or loss. **It is not a proper basis for making the final distribution of cash to the partners.**

Schedule of Cash Payments

Some accountants prepare a cash payments schedule to determine the distribution of cash to the partners in the liquidation of a partnership. The **schedule of cash payments** is organized around the basic accounting equation. The schedule for the Ace Company is shown in Illustration H-11. The numbers in parentheses refer to the four required steps in the liquidation of a partnership. They also identify the accounting entries that must be made. The cash payments schedule is especially useful when the liquidation process extends over a period of time.

Illustration H-11 Schedule of cash payments, no capital deficiency

ACE COMPANY
Schedule of Cash Payments

Item		Cash	+	Noncash Assets	=	Liabilities	+	R. Arnet Capital	+	P. Carey Capital	+	W. Eaton Capital
Balances before liquidation		5,000	+	60,000	=	31,000	+	15,000	+	17,800	+	1,200
Sales of noncash assets and allocation of gain	**(1)&(2)**	**75,000**	**+**	**(60,000)**	**=**			**7,500**	**+**	**5,000**	**+**	**2,500**
New balances		80,000	+	–0–	=	31,000	+	22,500	+	22,800	+	3,700
Pay liabilities	**(3)**	**(31,000)**			**=**	**(31,000)**						
New balances		49,000	+	–0–	=	–0–	+	22,500	+	22,800	+	3,700
Cash distribution to partners	**(4)**	**(49,000)**			**=**			**(22,500)**	**+**	**(22,800)**	**+**	**(3,700)**
Final balances		–0–		–0–		–0–		–0–		–0–		–0–

CAPITAL DEFICIENCY

A capital deficiency may be caused by recurring net losses, excessive drawings, or losses from realization suffered during liquidation. To illustrate, assume that Ace Company is on the brink of bankruptcy. The partners decide to liquidate by

having a "going-out-of-business" sale. Merchandise is sold at substantial discounts, and the equipment is sold at auction. Cash proceeds from these sales and collections from customers total only $42,000. Thus, the loss from liquidation is $18,000 ($60,000 − $42,000). The steps in the liquidation process are as follows.

1. The entry for the realization of noncash assets is:

(1)			A	= L	+ OE
Cash	42,000		+42,000		
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment	8,000		+8,000		
Loss on Realization	18,000				−18,000
Accounts Receivable		15,000	−15,000		
Inventory		18,000	−18,000		
Equipment		35,000	−35,000		
(To record realization of noncash assets)					

Cash Flows
+42,000

2. The loss on realization is allocated to the partners on the basis of their income ratios. The entry is:

(2)			A	= L	+ OE
R. Arnet, Capital ($18,000 × 3/6)	9,000				−9,000
P. Carey, Capital ($18,000 × 2/6)	6,000				−6,000
W. Eaton, Capital ($18,000 × 1/6)	3,000				−3,000
Loss on Realization		18,000			+18,000
(To allocate loss on realization to partners)					

Cash Flows
no effect

3. Partnership liabilities are paid. This entry is the same as in the previous example.

(3)			A	= L	+ OE
Notes Payable	15,000			−15,000	
Accounts Payable	16,000			−16,000	
Cash		31,000	−31,000		
(To record payment of partnership liabilities)					

Cash Flows
−31,000

4. After posting the three entries, two accounts will have debit balances—Cash $16,000, and W. Eaton, Capital $1,800. Two accounts will have credit balances—R. Arnet, Capital $6,000, and P. Carey, Capital $11,800. All four accounts are shown below.

Illustration H-12 Ledger balances before distribution of cash

Cash		R. Arnet, Capital		P. Carey, Capital		W. Eaton, Capital	
Bal. 5,000	(3) 31,000	(2) 9,000	Bal. 15,000	(2) 6,000	Bal. 17,800	(2) 3,000	Bal. 1,200
(1) 42,000			**Bal. 6,000**		**Bal. 11,800**	**Bal. 1,800**	
Bal. 16,000							

Eaton has a capital deficiency of $1,800, and thus owes the partnership $1,800. Arnet and Carey have a legally enforceable claim for that amount against Eaton's personal assets. The distribution of cash is still made on the basis of capital balances. But the amount will vary depending on how Eaton's deficiency is settled. Two alternatives are presented below.

Payment of Deficiency

If the partner with the capital deficiency pays the amount owed the partnership, the deficiency is eliminated. To illustrate, assume that Eaton pays $1,800 to the partnership. The entry is:

A	=	L	+	OE
+1,800				
				+1,800

Cash Flows
+1,800

(a)

Cash	1,800	
W. Eaton, Capital		1,800
(To record payment of capital deficiency by Eaton)		

After posting this entry, account balances are as follows.

Cash		R. Arnet, Capital		P. Carey, Capital		W. Eaton, Capital	
Bal. 5,000	(3) 31,000	(2) 9,000	Bal. 15,000	(2) 6,000	Bal. 17,800	(2) 3,000	Bal. 1,200
(1) 42,000							(a) 1,800
(a) 1,800			**Bal. 6,000**		**Bal. 11,800**		**Bal. –0–**
Bal. 17,800							

Illustration H-13 Ledger balances after paying capital deficiency

The cash balance of $17,800 is now equal to the credit balances in the capital accounts (Arnet $6,000 + Carey $11,800). Cash now is distributed on the basis of these balances. The entry is:

A	=	L	+	OE
				−6,000
				−11,800
−17,800				

Cash Flows
−17,800

R. Arnet, Capital	6,000	
P. Carey, Capital	11,800	
Cash		17,800
(To record distribution of cash to the partners)		

After this entry is posted, all accounts will have zero balances.

Nonpayment of Deficiency

If a partner with a capital deficiency is unable to pay the amount owed to the partnership, the partners with credit balances must absorb the loss. The loss is allocated on the basis of the income ratios that exist between the partners with credit balances.

For example, the income ratios of Arnet and Carey are 3:2, or 3/5 and 2/5, respectively. Thus, the following entry would be made to remove Eaton's capital deficiency.

A	=	L	+	OE
				−1,080
				−720
				+1,800

Cash Flows
no effect

(a)

R. Arnet, Capital ($1,800 × 3/5)	1,080	
P. Carey, Capital ($1,800 × 2/5)	720	
W. Eaton, Capital		1,800
(To record write-off of capital deficiency)		

After posting this entry, the cash and capital accounts will have the following balances.

Illustration H-14 Ledger balances after nonpayment of capital deficiency

Cash		R. Arnet, Capital		P. Carey, Capital		W. Eaton, Capital	
Bal. 5,000	(3) 31,000	(2) 9,000	Bal. 15,000	(2) 6,000	Bal. 17,800	(2) 3,000	Bal. 1,200
(1) 42,000		(a) 1,080		(a) 720			(a) 1,800
Bal. 16,000			**Bal. 4,920**		**Bal. 11,080**		**Bal. –0–**

The cash balance of $16,000 now equals the sum of the credit balances in the capital accounts (Arnet $4,920 + Carey $11,080). The entry to record the distribution of cash is:

			A = L + OE
R. Arnet, Capital	4,920		−4,920
P. Carey, Capital	11,080		−11,080
Cash		16,000	−16,000
(To record distribution of cash to the partners)			

Cash Flows
−16,000

After this entry is posted, all accounts will have zero balances.

Summary of Study Objectives

1 **Identify the characteristics of the partnership form of business organization.** The principal characteristics of a partnership are: (a) association of individuals, (b) mutual agency, (c) limited life, (d) unlimited liability, and (e) co-ownership of property.

2 **Explain the accounting entries for the formation of a partnership.** When a partnership is formed, each partner's initial investment should be recorded at the fair value of the assets at the date of their transfer to the partnership.

3 **Identify the bases for dividing net income or net loss.** Net income or net loss is divided on the basis of the income ratio, which may be (a) a fixed ratio, (b) a ratio based on beginning or average capital balances, (c) salaries to partners and the remainder on a fixed ratio, (d) interest on partners' capital and the remainder on a fixed ratio, and (e) salaries to partners, interest on partners' capital, and the remainder on a fixed ratio.

4 **Describe the form and content of partnership financial statements.** The financial statements of a partnership are similar to those of a corporation. The principal differences are: (a) the division of net income is shown on the income statement, (b) the owners' equity statement is called a partners' capital statement, and (c) each partner's capital is reported on the balance sheet.

5 **Explain the effects of the entries to record the liquidation of a partnership.** When a partnership is liquidated, it is necessary to record the (a) sale of noncash assets, (b) allocation of the gain or loss on realization, (c) payment of partnership liabilities, and (d) distribution of cash to the partners on the basis of their capital balances.

Glossary

Capital deficiency *(p. H-10)* A debit balance in a partner's capital account after allocation of gain or loss.

General partner *(p. H-3)* A partner who has unlimited liability for the debts of the firm.

Income ratio *(p. H-6)* The basis for dividing net income and net loss in a partnership.

Limited liability company *(p. H-3)* A form of business organization, usually classified as a partnership and usually with limited life, in which partners, who are called *members*, have limited liability.

Limited liability partnership *(p. H-3)* A partnership of professionals in which partners are given limited liability and the public is protected from malpractice by insurance carried by the partnership.

Limited partner *(p. H-3)* A partner who has limited liability for the debts of the firm.

Limited partnership *(p. H-3)* A partnership in which one or more general partners have unlimited liability and one or more partners have limited liability for the obligations of the firm.

No capital deficiency *(p. H-10)* All partners have credit balances after allocation of gain or loss.

Partners' capital statement *(p. H-9)* The owners' equity statement for a partnership which shows the changes in each partner's capital balance and in total partnership capital during the year.

Partnership *(p. H-1)* An association of two or more persons to carry on as co-owners of a business for profit.

Partnership agreement *(p. H-4)* A written contract expressing the voluntary agreement of two or more individuals in a partnership.

Partnership dissolution *(p. H-2)* A change in partners due to withdrawal or admission, which does not necessarily terminate the business.

Partnership liquidation *(p. H-10)* An event that ends both the legal and economic life of a partnership.

"S" corporation *(p. H-3)* Corporation, with 75 or fewer stockholders, that is taxed like a partnership.

Schedule of cash payments *(p. H-12)* A schedule showing the distribution of cash to the partners in a partnership liquidation.

WILEY PLUS
Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Questions

1. The characteristics of a partnership include the following: (a) association of individuals, (b) limited life, and (c) co-ownership of property. Explain each of these terms.
2. Rene Leno is confused about the partnership characteristics of (a) mutual agency and (b) unlimited liability. Explain these two characteristics for Rene.
3. Nancy Hirsch and Ted Christy are considering a business venture. They ask you to explain the advantages and disadvantages of the partnership form of organization.
4. Peggy Black and Glenda Barclay form a partnership. Black contributes land with a book value of $50,000 and a fair value of $75,000. Black also contributes equipment with a book value of $52,000 and a fair value of $57,000. The partnership assumes a $20,000 mortgage on the land. What should be the balance in Black's capital account upon formation of the partnership?
5. Don Norbert, S. Joyce, and Terry Moore have a partnership called Thomas Crest. A dispute has arisen among the partners. Norbert has invested twice as much in assets as the other two partners, and he believes net income and net losses should be shared in accordance with the capital ratios. The partnership agreement does not specify the division of profits and losses. How will net income and net loss be divided?
6. Robert Astro and Mitch Wyrick are discussing how income and losses should be divided in a partnership they plan to form. What factors should be considered in determining the division of net income or net loss?
7. Holly Canter and Bret Saver have partnership capital balances of $40,000 and $80,000, respectively. The partnership agreement indicates that net income or net loss should be shared equally. If net income for the partnership is $24,000, how should the net income be divided?
8. Andrea Gant and Mark Waller share net income and net loss equally. (a) Which account(s) is (are) debited and credited to record the division of net income between the partners? (b) If Andrea Gant withdraws $30,000 in cash for personal use in lieu of salary, which account is debited and which is credited?
9. Partners Gina Carolton and B. Mosley are provided salary allowances of $30,000 and $25,000, respectively. They divide the remainder of the partnership income in a ratio of 60 : 40. If partnership net income is $50,000, how much is allocated to Carolton and Mosley?
10. Are the financial statements of a partnership similar to those of a corporation? Discuss.
11. Jeff Dinkel and Rick Barnes are discussing the liquidation of a partnership. Jeff maintains that all cash should be distributed to partners on the basis of their income ratios. Is he correct? Explain.
12. In continuing their discussion, Rick says that even in the case of a capital deficiency, all cash should still be distributed on the basis of capital balances. Is Rick correct? Explain.
13. Jane, Kent, and Tracy have income ratios of 5 : 3 : 2 and capital balances of $34,000, $31,000, and $28,000, respectively. Noncash assets are sold at a gain. After creditors are paid, $119,000 of cash is available for distribution to the partners. How much cash should be paid to Kent?
14. Before the final distribution of cash, account balances are: Cash $25,000; B. Robertson, Capital $19,000 (Cr.); L. Mitchell, Capital $12,000 (Cr.); and T. Wynne, Capital $6,000 (Dr.). Wynne is unable to pay any of the capital deficiency. If the income-sharing ratios are 5 : 3 : 2, respectively, how much cash should be paid to L. Mitchell?

Brief Exercises

Journalize entries in forming a partnership.
(SO 2), AP

BEH-1 Carla Cardosa and Kent Nasser decide to organize the ALL-Star partnership. Cardosa invests $15,000 cash, and Nasser contributes $10,000 cash and equipment having a book value of $3,500. Prepare the entry to record Nasser's investment in the partnership, assuming the equipment has a fair value of $7,000.

Prepare portion of opening balance sheet for partnership.
(SO 2), AP

BEH-2 C. Held and G. Kamp decide to merge their proprietorships into a partnership called Heldkamp Company. The balance sheet of Kamp Co. shows:

Accounts receivable	$16,000	
Less: Allowance for doubtful accounts	1,200	$14,800
Equipment	20,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation	8,000	12,000

The partners agree that the net realizable value of the receivables is $12,500 and that the fair value of the equipment is $10,000. Indicate how the four accounts should appear in the opening balance sheet of the partnership.

BEH-3 Frankenstein Co. reports net income of $70,000. The income ratios are Franken 60% and Stein 40%. Indicate the division of net income to each partner, and prepare the entry to distribute the net income.

Journalize the division of net income using fixed income ratios.
(SO 3), **AP**

BEH-4 LAR Co. reports net income of $65,000. Partner salary allowances are Logan $20,000, Adamle $5,000, and Ren $5,000. Indicate the division of net income to each partner, assuming the income ratio is 50:30:20, respectively.

Compute division of net income with a salary allowance and fixed ratios.
(SO 3), **AP**

BEH-5 Mick&Nick Co. reports net income of $24,000. Interest allowances are Mick $6,000 and Nick $5,000; salary allowances are Mick $15,000 and Nick $10,000; the remainder is shared equally. Show the distribution of income on the income statement.

Show division of net income when allowances exceed net income.
(SO 3), **AP**

BEH-6 After liquidating noncash assets and paying creditors, account balances in the CAB Co. are Cash $21,000, C Capital (Cr.) $9,000, A Capital (Cr.) $7,000, and B Capital (Cr.) $5,000. The partners share income equally. Journalize the final distribution of cash to the partners.

Journalize final cash distribution in liquidation.
(SO 5), **AP**

Exercises

EH-1 Greg Wayne has owned and operated a proprietorship for several years. On January 1, he decides to terminate this business and become a partner in the firm of Petry and Wayne. Wayne's investment in the partnership consists of $15,000 in cash, and the following assets of the proprietorship: accounts receivable $14,000 less allowance for doubtful accounts of $2,000, and equipment $20,000 less accumulated depreciation of $4,000. It is agreed that the allowance for doubtful accounts should be $3,000 for the partnership. The fair value of the equipment is $17,500.

Journalize entry for formation of a partnership.
(SO 2), **AP**

Instructions
Journalize Wayne's admission to the firm of Petry and Wayne.

EH-2 B. Langer and W. Howard have capital balances on January 1 of $50,000 and $40,000, respectively. The partnership income-sharing agreement provides for (1) annual salaries of $20,000 for Langer and $12,000 for Howard, (2) interest at 10% on beginning capital balances, and (3) remaining income or loss to be shared 70% by Langer and 30% by Howard.

Prepare schedule showing distribution of net income and closing entry.
(SO 3), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Prepare a schedule showing the distribution of net income, assuming net income is (1) $55,000 and (2) $30,000.
(b) Journalize the allocation of net income in each of the situations above.

EH-3 In Salton Co., beginning capital balances on January 1, 2012, are Ken Salz $20,000 and Carol Toni $18,000. During the year, drawings were Salz $8,000 and Toni $3,000. Net income was $32,000, and the partners share income equally.

Prepare partners' capital statement and partial balance sheet.
(SO 4), **AP**

Instructions
(a) Prepare the partners' capital statement for the year.
(b) Prepare the owners' equity section of the balance sheet at December 31, 2012.

EH-4 Baylee Company at December 31 has cash $20,000, noncash assets $100,000, liabilities $55,000, and the following capital balances: Bay $45,000 and Lee $20,000. The firm is liquidated, and $120,000 in cash is received for the noncash assets. Bay and Lee income ratios are 55% and 45%, respectively.

Prepare cash distribution schedule.
(SO 5), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare a cash distribution schedule.

EH-5 Data for the Baylee partnership are presented in EH-4.

Journalize transactions in a liquidation.
(SO 5), **AP**

Instructions
Prepare the entries to record:
(a) The sale of noncash assets.
(b) The allocation of the gain or loss on liquidation to the partners.
(c) Payment of creditors.
(d) Distribution of cash to the partners.

Journalize transactions with a capital deficiency.
(SO 5), AP

EH-6 Prior to the distribution of cash to the partners, the accounts in the NIM Company are: Cash $30,000, Norris Capital (Cr.) $18,000, Iwick Capital (Cr.) $14,000, and Moon Capital (Dr.) $2,000. The income ratios are 5:3:2, respectively.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the entry to record (1) Moon's payment of $2,000 in cash to the partnership and (2) the distribution of cash to the partners with credit balances.
(b) Prepare the entry to record (1) the absorption of Moon's capital deficiency by the other partners and (2) the distribution of cash to the partners with credit balances.

Problems

Prepare entries for formation of a partnership and a balance sheet.
(SO 2, 4), AP

GLS

PH-1 The post-closing trial balances of two proprietorships on January 1, 2012, are presented below.

	High Company		Lowe Company	
	Dr.	Cr.	Dr.	Cr.
Cash	$ 14,000		$13,000	
Accounts receivable	17,500		26,000	
Allowance for doubtful accounts		$ 3,000		$ 4,400
Merchandise inventory	26,500		18,400	
Equipment	45,000		28,000	
Accumulated depreciation—equipment		24,000		12,000
Notes payable		20,000		15,000
Accounts payable		20,000		31,000
High, Capital		36,000		
Lowe, Capital				23,000
	$103,000	$103,000	$85,400	$85,400

High and Lowe decide to form a partnership, High Lowe Company, with the following agreed upon valuations for noncash assets.

	High Company	Lowe Company
Accounts receivable	$17,500	$26,000
Allowance for doubtful accounts	4,500	4,000
Merchandise inventory	30,000	20,000
Equipment	25,000	18,000

All cash will be transferred to the partnership, and the partnership will assume all the liabilities of the two proprietorships. Further, it is agreed that High will invest $3,000 in cash, and Lowe will invest $18,000 in cash.

Instructions

(a) Prepare separate journal entries to record the transfer of each proprietorship's assets and liabilities to the partnership.
(b) Journalize the additional cash investment by each partner.
(c) Prepare a balance sheet for the partnership on January 1, 2012.

(a) High, Capital $42,000
Lowe, Capital $27,000

(c) Total assets $176,000

Journalize divisions of net income and prepare a partners' capital statement.
(SO 3, 4), AP

PH-2 At the end of its first year of operations on December 31, 2012, LMN Company's accounts show the following.

Partner	Drawings	Capital
Lois Lang	$23,000	$48,000
Mary Miley	14,000	30,000
Sue Norton	10,000	25,000

The capital balance represents each partner's initial capital investment. Therefore, net income or net loss for 2012 has not been closed to the partners' capital accounts.

Instructions

(a) Journalize the entry to record the division of net income for the year 2012 under each of the following independent assumptions.
   (1) Net income is $28,000. Income is shared 6:3:1.
   (2) Net income is $34,000. Lang and Miley are given salary allowances of $18,000 and $10,000, respectively. The remainder is shared equally.
   (3) Net income is $22,000. Each partner is allowed interest of 10% on beginning capital balances. Lang is given a $15,000 salary allowance. The remainder is shared equally.

(a) (1) Lang $16,800
(2) Lang $20,000
(3) Lang $18,700

(b) Prepare a schedule showing the division of net income under assumption (3) above.

(c) Prepare a partners' capital statement for the year under assumption (3) above.

(c) Lang $43,700

PH-3 The partners in JRS Company decide to liquidate the firm when the balance sheet shows the following.

Prepare entries with a capital deficiency in liquidation of a partnership.
(SO 5), **AP**

GLS

JRS COMPANY
Balance Sheet
May 31, 2012

Assets		Liabilities and Owners' Equity	
Cash	$ 27,500	Notes payable	$ 13,500
Accounts receivable	25,000	Accounts payable	27,000
Allowance for doubtful accounts	(1,000)	Wages payable	3,800
Merchandise inventory	34,500	S. Jenner, Capital	36,000
Equipment	21,000	J. Richards, Capital	20,000
Accumulated depreciation—equipment	(5,500)	Mick Sutter, Capital	1,200
Total	$101,500	Total	$101,500

The partners share income and loss 5:3:2. During the process of liquidation, the following transactions were completed in the following sequence.

1. A total of $53,000 was received from converting noncash assets into cash.
2. Gain or loss on realization was allocated to partners.
3. Liabilities were paid in full.
4. Mick Sutter paid his capital deficiency.
5. Cash was paid to the partners with credit balances.

Instructions

(a) Prepare the entries to record the transactions.

(b) Post to the cash and capital accounts.

(c) Assume that Sutter is unable to pay the capital deficiency.
   (1) Prepare the entry to allocate Sutter's debit balance to Jenner and Richards.
   (2) Prepare the entry to record the final distribution of cash.

ACCOUNTING FOR SOLE PROPRIETORSHIPS

study objectives

After studying this appendix, you should be able to:

1. Identify the differences in equity accounts between a corporation and a sole proprietorship.
2. Understand what accounts increase and decrease owner's equity.
3. Describe the differences between a retained earnings statement and an owner's equity statement.
4. Explain the process of closing the books for a sole proprietorship.

study objective 1

Identify the differences in equity accounts between a corporation and a sole proprietorship.

Chapter 1 identified three forms of business organization. Two forms, the sole proprietorship and the partnership, were discussed only briefly. Emphasis was placed on the corporate form in Chapter 1 as well as in subsequent chapters.

The purpose of this appendix is to discuss and illustrate the accounting for the operations and financial condition of a sole proprietorship. **The primary difference between accounting and reporting for a sole proprietorship and a corporation involves accounting for equity transactions.** Because a sole proprietorship has a single owner rather than numerous stockholders, a sole proprietorship uses a permanent **owner's capital account**, such as "Sally Jones, Capital," instead of Common Stock and Retained Earnings. In a sole proprietorship there is no need to separate owner's investments from net income retained for dividends because the sole proprietor does not declare or receive dividends. Instead, withdrawals by the owner of cash or other assets from the business for personal use are recorded in a temporary **drawing** account. The different equity accounts are contrasted as shown in Illustration I-1.

Corporation	Sole Proprietorship
Stockholders' equity	Owner's equity
Common stock	Owner's name, capital
Retained earnings	

Illustration I-1
Equity section of the balance sheet—corporation vs. proprietorship

For purposes of comparing the accounting for a corporation with a sole proprietorship, the illustrations in this Appendix I assume a sole proprietorship owned by R. Neal and named Sierra Company. **Except for equity transactions, we use the same accounts, amounts, and transactions as those of Sierra Corporation presented in Chapters 1 through 4.**

Owner's Equity in a Sole Proprietorship

study objective 2

Understand what accounts increase and decrease owner's equity.

The ownership claim on total assets is known as **owner's equity**. It is equal to total assets minus total liabilities.

INCREASES IN OWNER'S EQUITY

In a proprietorship, owner's equity is increased by owner's investments and revenues.

Investments by Owner

Investments by owner are the assets the owner puts into the business. These investments increase owner's equity.

Revenues

Revenues are the gross increase in owner's equity resulting from business activities entered into for the purpose of earning income.

DECREASES IN OWNER'S EQUITY

In a proprietorship, owner's equity is decreased by owner's drawings and expenses.

Drawings

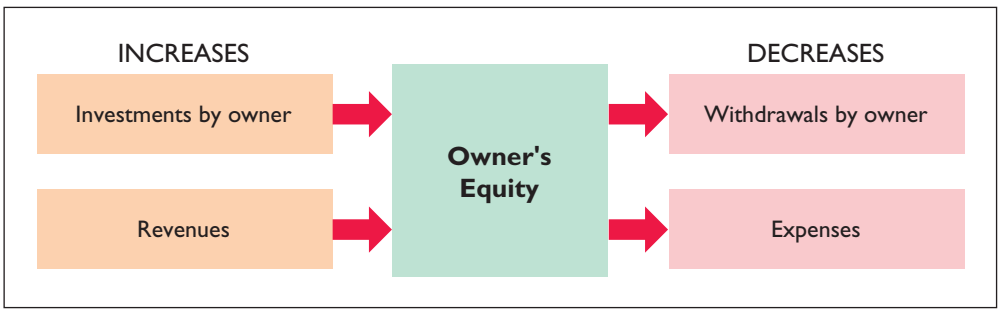
An owner may withdraw cash or other assets for personal use. These withdrawals could be recorded as a direct decrease of owner's equity. However, it is generally considered preferable to use a separate classification called **drawings** to determine the total withdrawals for each accounting period. **Drawings decrease owner's equity.**

Expenses

Expenses are the cost of assets consumed or services used in the process of earning revenue. They are **decreases in owner's equity that result from operating the business.**

In summary, owner's equity is increased by an owner's investments and by revenues from business operations. In contrast, owner's equity is decreased by an owner's withdrawals of assets and by expenses. These relationships are shown in Illustration I-2. **Net income** results when revenues exceed expenses. A **net loss** occurs when expenses exceed revenues.

Illustration I-2
Increases and decreases in owner's equity



Recording Transactions of a Proprietorship

Chapter 3 described the basic steps employed in the accounting process as follows:

Analyze transactions.
Record transactions in the journal.
Post journal entries to the general ledger.
Prepare a trial balance.

These same steps apply to all forms of business. Illustration 3-3 (page 110) presented the impact of Sierra's transactions on its accounting equation. Illustration I-3 shows how the same transactions would have been recorded for a sole proprietor. The only differences are related to the accounts used to record equity transactions. Those differences are highlighted here in red.

Illustration I-3 Summary of transactions

	Assets						=	Liabilities				Owner's Equity	
	Cash	+	Supplies	+	Prepaid Insurance	+	Equipment	=	Notes Payable	+	Accounts Payable	+	Unearned Service Revenue	+	R. Neal, Capital	
(1)	+$10,000							=							+$10,000	Investment by owner
(2)	+5,000								+$5,000							
	15,000							=	5,000					+	10,000	
(3)	−5,000						+$5,000									
	10,000					+	5,000	=	5,000					+	10,000	
(4)	+1,200												+$1,200			
	11,200					+	5,000	=	5,000			+	1,200	+	10,000	
(5)	+10,000														+10,000	Service Revenue
	21,200					+	5,000	=	5,000			+	1,200	+	20,000	
(6)	−900														−900	Rent Expense
	20,300					+	5,000	=	5,000			+	1,200	+	19,100	
(7)	−600				+$600											
	19,700			+	600	+	5,000	=	5,000			+	1,200	+	19,100	
(8)			+$2,500								+$2,500					
	19,700	+	2,500	+	600	+	5,000	=	5,000	+	2,500	+	1,200	+	19,100	
(10)	−500			+											−500	Drawings
	19,200	+	2,500	+	600	+	5,000	=	5,000	+	2,500	+	1,200	+	18,600	
(11)	−4,000														−4,000	Salaries Expense
	$15,200	+	$2,500	+	$600	+	$5,000	=	$5,000	+	$2,500	+	$1,200	+	$14,600	
	$23,300								$23,300							

Financial Statements for a Proprietorship

study objective 3

Describe the differences between a retained earnings statement and an owner's equity statement.

Chapter 4 described accounting for adjusting entries. A sole proprietor makes the same types of adjustments as a corporation. After recording and posting all of the adjustments, an adjusted trial balance is prepared. Illustrations I-4 (page I-4) and I-5 (page I-5) show how the adjusted trial balance is used to prepare a sole proprietor's financial statements.

The primary differences between these statements and those of a corporation (presented in Illustrations 4-27 and 4-28, pages 184 and 185) relate to the way equity is reported. A sole proprietor prepares an **owner's equity statement** rather than a retained earnings statement and uses different titles for the equity items shown on the balance sheet.

SIERRA COMPANY
Adjusted Trial Balance
October 31, 2012

Account	Debit	Credit
Cash	$15,200	
Accounts Receivable	200	
Supplies	1,000	
Prepaid Insurance	550	
Equipment	5,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		$ 40
Notes Payable		5,000
Accounts Payable		2,500
Interest Payable		50
Unearned Service Revenue		800
Salaries Payable		1,200
R. Neal, Capital		10,000
Drawing	500	
Service Revenue		**10,600**
Salaries Expense	**5,200**	
Supplies Expense	**1,500**	
Rent Expense	**900**	
Insurance Expense	**50**	
Interest Expense	**50**	
Depreciation Expense	**40**	
	$30,190	$30,190

SIERRA COMPANY
Income Statement
For the Month Ended October 31, 2012

Revenues		
Service revenue		$10,600
Expenses		
Salaries expense	$5,200	
Supplies expense	1,500	
Rent expense	900	
Insurance expense	50	
Interest expense	50	
Depreciation expense	40	
Total expenses		7,740
Net income		$ 2,860

SIERRA COMPANY
Owner's Equity Statement
For the Month Ended October 31, 2012

R. Neal, Capital, October 1	$ –0–
Add: Investments by owner	10,000
R. Neal, Capital	10,000
Net income	2,860
	12,860
Less: Drawings	500
R. Neal, Capital, October 31	$12,360

To balance sheet

Illustration I-4
Preparation of the income statement and owner's equity statement from the adjusted trial balance

Closing the Books of a Proprietorship

study objective 4
Explain the process of closing the books for a sole proprietorship.

At the end of the accounting period, the temporary account balances are transferred to the permanent owner's equity account, Owner's Capital, through the preparation of closing entries. **Closing entries** for a proprietorship formally recognize in the ledger the transfer of net income (or net loss) and owner's drawing to owner's capital. The results of these entries are shown in the owner's equity statement.

Journalizing and posting closing entries is a required step in the accounting cycle. (See Illustration 4-31 on page 188 for Sierra Corporation.)

In preparing closing entries for a proprietorship, each income statement account could be closed directly to owner's capital. However, to do so would result in excessive detail in the permanent owner's capital account. Instead, the revenue and expense accounts are closed, in the same manner as for a corporation, to another temporary account, **Income Summary**. Only the net income or net loss is transferred from this account to Owner's Capital.

SIERRA COMPANY
Adjusted Trial Balance
October 31, 2012

Account	Debit	Credit
Cash	$15,200	
Accounts Receivable	200	
Supplies	1,000	
Prepaid Insurance	550	
Equipment	5,000	
Accumulated Depreciation—Equipment		$ 40
Notes Payable		5,000
Accounts Payable		2,500
Interest Payable		50
Unearned Service Revenue		800
Salaries Payable		1,200
R. Neal, Capital		10,000
R. Neal, Drawing	500	
Service Revenue		10,600
Salaries Expense	5,200	
Supplies Expense	1,500	
Rent Expense	900	
Insurance Expense	50	
Interest Expense	50	
Depreciation Expense	40	
	$30,190	$30,190

SIERRA COMPANY
Balance Sheet
October 31, 2012

Assets		
Cash		$15,200
Accounts receivable		200
Supplies		1,000
Prepaid insurance		550
Equipment	$5,000	
Less: Accumulated depreciation—equipment	40	4,960
Total assets		$21,910
Liabilities and Owner's Equity		
Liabilities		
Notes payable		$ 5,000
Accounts payable		2,500
Interest payable		50
Unearned service revenue		800
Salaries payable		1,200
Total liabilities		9,550
Owner's equity		
R. Neal, Capital		12,360
Total liabilities and owner's equity		$21,910

Capital Balance at Oct. 31 from Owner's Equity Statement in Illustration I-4

Illustration I-5
Preparation of the balance sheet from the adjusted trial balance

Closing entries for a proprietorship may be prepared directly from the adjusted balances in the ledger, from the income statement and balance sheet columns of the work sheet, or from the income and owner's equity statements. Separate closing entries could be prepared for each nominal account, but the following four entries accomplish the desired result more efficiently:

1. Debit each revenue account for its balance, and credit Income Summary for total revenues.
2. Debit Income Summary for total expenses, and credit each expense account for its balance.
3. Debit Income Summary and credit Owner's Capital for the amount of net income.
4. Debit Owner's Capital for the balance in the Owner's Drawing account, and credit Owner's Drawing for the same amount.

Helpful Hint Owner's Drawing is closed directly to Capital and *not* to Income Summary because Owner's Drawing is not an expense.

The four entries are referenced in the diagram of the closing process shown in Illustration I-6 and in the journal entries in Illustration I-7, both on page I-6. The posting of closing entries is shown in Illustration I-8 (page I-7).

If there were a net loss because expenses exceeded revenues, entry 3 in Illustration I-6 would be reversed: Credit Income Summary and debit Owner's Capital.

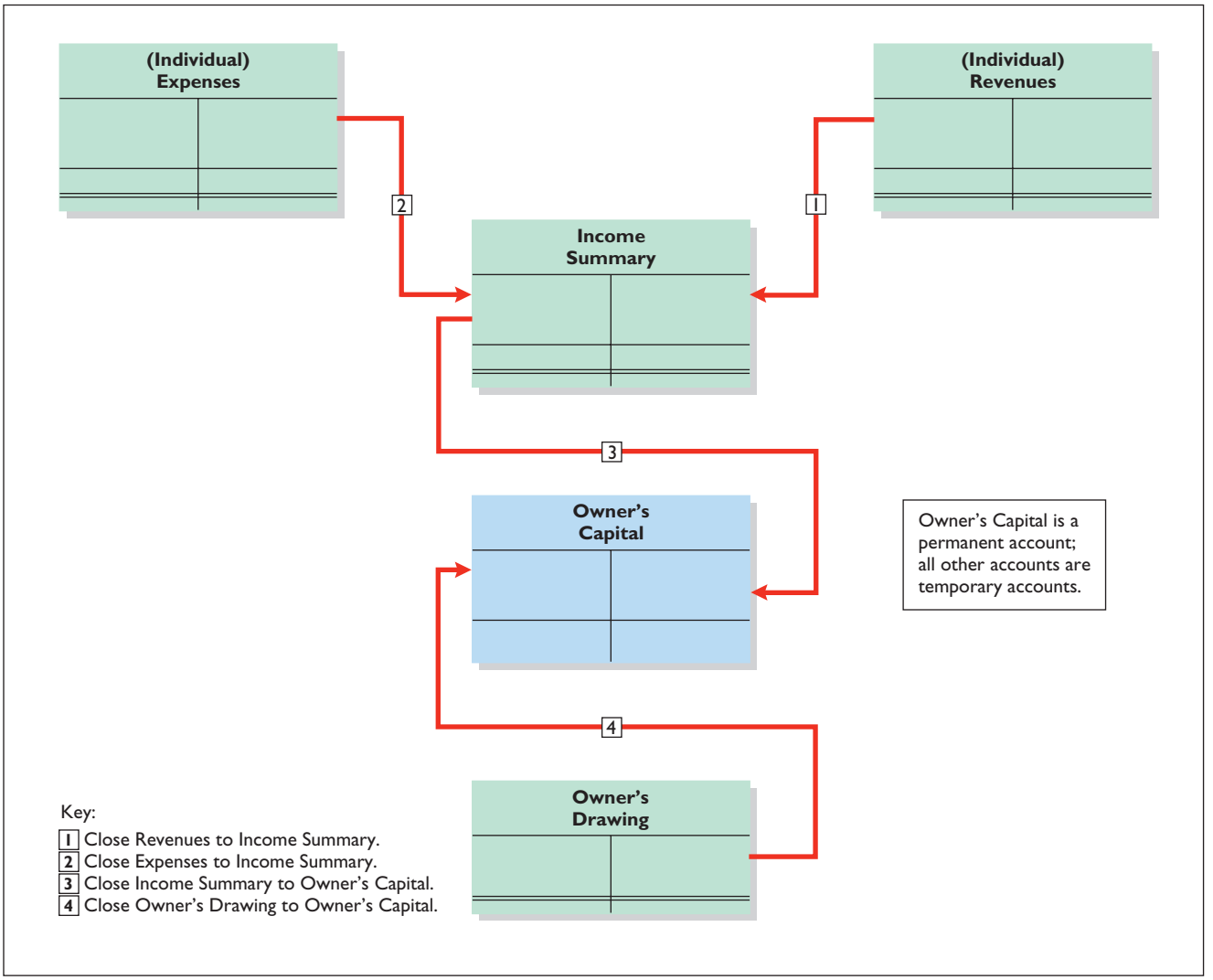


Illustration I-6
Diagram of closing process

Illustration I-7
Closing entries journalized

Helpful Hint Income Summary is a very descriptive title: Total revenues are closed to Income Summary, total expenses are closed to Income Summary, and the balance in the Income Summary is a net income or net loss.

GENERAL JOURNAL

Date	Account Titles and Explanation	Debit	Credit
	Closing Entries		
2012	(1)		
Oct. 31	Service Revenue	10,600	
	Income Summary		10,600
	(To close revenue account)		
	(2)		
31	Income Summary	7,740	
	Salaries Expense		5,200
	Supplies Expense		1,500
	Rent Expense		900
	Insurance Expense		50
	Interest Expense		50
	Depreciation Expense		40
	(To close expense accounts)		
	(3)		
31	Income Summary	2,860	
	R. Neal, Capital		2,860
	(To close net income to owner's capital)		
	(4)		
31	**R. Neal, Capital**	500	
	R. Neal, Drawing		500
	(To close drawings to owner's capital)		

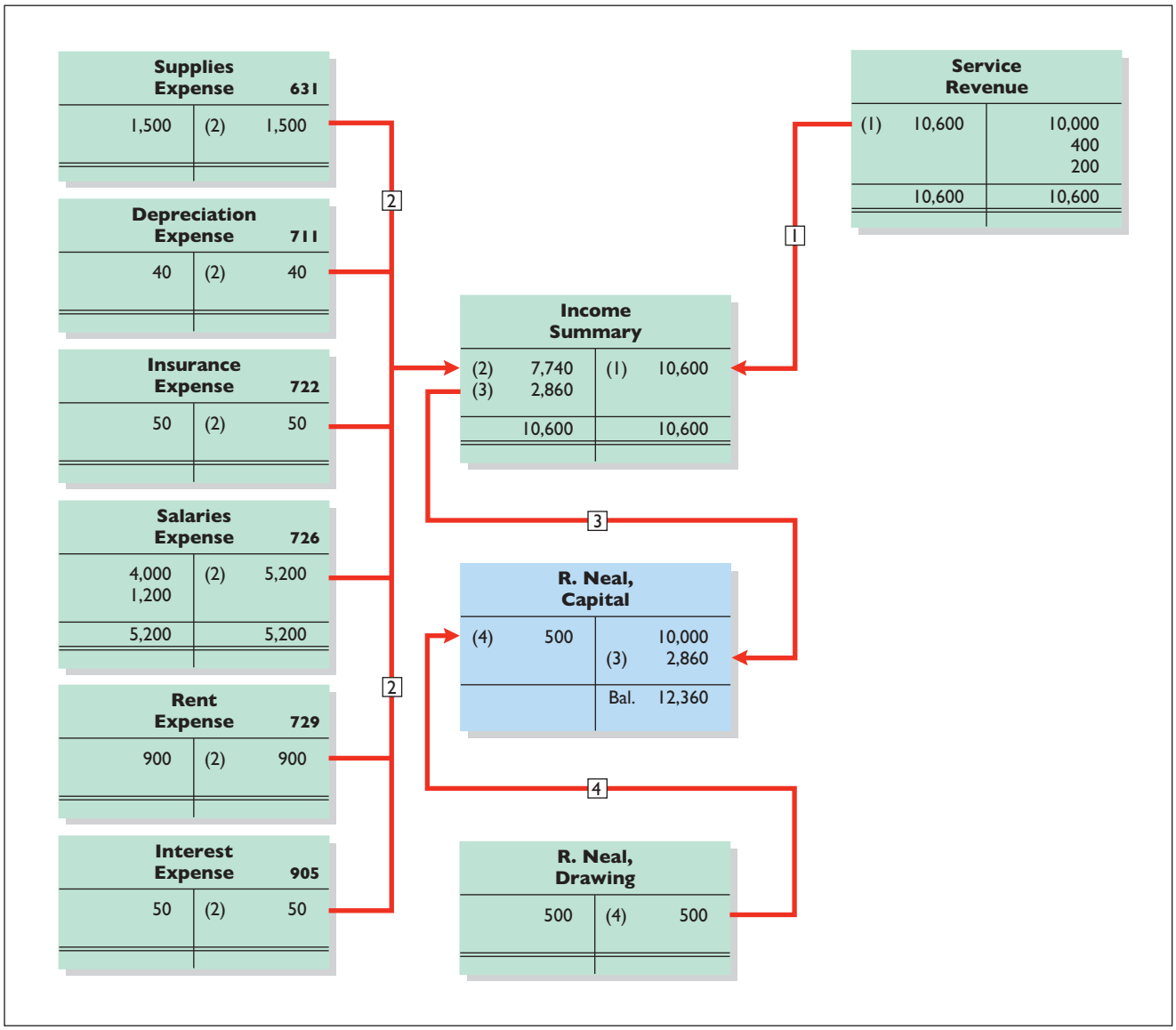


Illustration I-8
Posting of closing entries

Preparing a Post-Closing Trial Balance for a Proprietorship

After all closing entries are journalized and posted, the **post-closing trial balance** is prepared from the ledger. A post-closing trial balance is a list of all permanent accounts and their balances after closing entries are journalized and posted. As with a corporation, **the purpose of a proprietorship post-closing trial balance is to prove the equality of the permanent account balances that are carried forward into the next accounting period**. Since all temporary accounts will have zero balances, **the post-closing trial balance will contain only permanent—balance sheet—accounts**.

Summary of Study Objectives

1 **Identify the differences in equity accounts between a corporation and a sole proprietorship.** A sole proprietorship uses a permanent owner's equity Capital account instead of Common Stock and Retained Earnings. Withdrawals of cash or other assets by the owner for personal use are recorded in a temporary Drawing account.

2 Understand what account transactions increase and decrease owner's equity. Investments by the owner and revenue increase owner's equity. Owner's drawings and expenses decrease owner's equity.

3 Describe the differences between a retained earnings statement and an owner's equity statement. A sole proprietor prepares an owner's equity statement rather than a retained earnings statement. The owner's equity statement shows the beginning balance in the owner's capital account (instead of retained earnings, as shown in the retained earnings statement), plus any investments made by the owner, less any drawings (in place of dividends, shown in the retained earnings statement).

4 Explain the process of closing the books for a sole proprietorship. In closing the books for a sole proprietorship, separate entries are made to close revenues and expenses to Income Summary, Income Summary to Owner's Capital, and Owner's Drawing to Owner's Capital.

Glossary

Drawings *(p. I-2)* Withdrawal of cash or other assets from a sole proprietorship for the personal use of the owner.

Investments by owner *(p. I-2)* The assets put into the business by a sole proprietor.

Owner's equity *(p. I-2)* The ownership claim on the total assets of a sole proprietorship.

Owner's equity statement *(p. I-3)* The financial statement prepared for a sole proprietorship to summarize the changes in owner's equity for a specific period of time.

Self-Test, Brief Exercises, Exercises, Problem Set A, and many more resources are available for practice in WileyPLUS

Questions

1. What is the basic accounting equation for a sole proprietorship?
2. What are the differences in the equity accounts of a sole proprietorship versus those of a corporation?
3. What items affect owner's equity, and in what direction?
4. In February 2012, Jim Grant invested an additional $10,000 in his business, Grant's Pharmacy, which is organized as a proprietorship. Grant's accountant, Ronny Jones, recorded this receipt as an increase in cash revenues. Is this treatment appropriate? Why or why not?
5. What are the steps in preparing an owner's equity statement?
6. Identify the account(s) debited and credited in each of the required closing entries for a sole proprietorship, assuming the company has net income for the year.

Brief Exercises

Determine effect of transactions on basic accounting equation. (SO 2), C

BEI-1 Presented below are three business transactions. On a sheet of paper, list the letters (a), (b), (c) with columns for assets, liabilities, and owner's equity. For each column, indicate whether the transactions increased (+), decreased (−), or had no effect (NE) on assets, liabilities, and owner's equity.

(a) Invested cash in the business.
(b) Withdrawal of cash by owner.
(c) Received cash from a customer who had previously been billed for services provided.

Determine effect of transactions on owner's equity. (SO 2), C

BEI-2 Presented below are three transactions. Mark each transaction as affecting owner's investment (I), owner's drawing (D), revenue (R), expense (E), or not affecting owner's equity (NOE).

(a) Received cash for services performed
(b) Paid cash to purchase equipment
(c) Paid employee salaries

Indicate debit and credit effects and normal balance. (SO 2), C

BEI-3 For each of the following accounts, indicate the effects of (a) a debit and (b) a credit on the accounts and (c) the normal balance of the account.

1. Accounts Payable.
2. Advertising Expense.
3. Service Revenue.
4. Accounts Receivable.
5. A. L. Frankum, Capital.
6. A. L. Frankum, Drawing.

Exercises

EI-1 An analysis of the transactions made by Gutierrez & Co., a certified public accounting firm, for the month of August is shown below. Each increase and decrease in owner's equity is explained.

Analyze transactions and compute net income.
(SO 2), **AP**

	Cash	+ Accounts Receivable	+ Supplies	+ Office Equipment	= Accounts Payable	+ Owner's Equity Gutierrez, Capital	
1.	+$12,000					+$12,000	Investment
2.	−2,000			+$5,000	+$3,000		
3.	−750		+$750				
4.	+2,600	+$3,700				+6,300	Service Revenue
5.	−1,500				−1,500		
6.	−2,000					−2,000	Drawings
7.	−650					−650	Rent Expense
8.	+450	−450					
9.	−2,900					−2,900	Salaries Expense
10.					+500	−500	Utilities Expense

Instructions

(a) Describe each transaction that occurred for the month.
(b) Determine how much owner's equity increased for the month. (b) Increase in O.E. $12,250
(c) Compute the amount of net income for the month. (c) Net income $2,250

EI-2 Presented below is information related to the sole proprietorship of John Newman, attorney.

Prepare an owner's equity statement.
(SO 3), **AP**

Legal service revenue—2012	$360,000
Total expenses—2012	211,000
Assets, January 1, 2012	85,000
Liabilities, January 1, 2012	62,000
Assets, December 31, 2012	168,000
Liabilities, December 31, 2012	70,000
Drawings—2012	?

Instructions

Prepare the 2012 owner's equity statement for John Newman's legal practice. Capital, Dec. 31 $98,000

EI-3 The adjusted trial balance of Hanlon Company at the end of its fiscal year is:

Prepare income statement, owner's equity statement, and balance sheet.
(SO 1, 2, 3, 4), **AP**

HANLON COMPANY
Adjusted Trial Balance
July 31, 2012

No.	Account Titles	Debits	Credits
101	Cash	$ 14,940	
112	Accounts Receivable	8,780	
157	Equipment	15,900	
167	Accumulated Depreciation		$ 5,400
201	Accounts Payable		4,220
208	Unearned Rent Revenue		1,800
301	J. D. Hanlon, Capital		45,200
306	J. D. Hanlon, Drawing	14,000	
404	Commission Revenue		65,100
429	Rent Revenue		6,500
711	Depreciation Expense	4,000	
720	Salaries Expense	55,700	
732	Utilities Expense	14,900	
		$128,220	$128,220

Instructions

(a) Prepare an income statement and an owner's equity statement for the year. Hanlon did not make any capital investments during the year. (a) Net loss $3,000
(b) Prepare a classified balance sheet at July 31. (b) Total assets $34,220

Problems

Prepare income statement, owner's equity statement, and balance sheet.
(SO 1, 2, 3, 4), **AP**

PI-1 On May 1, Robert Neupert started Skyline Flying School, a company that provides flying lessons, by investing $45,000 cash in the business. Following are the assets and liabilities of the company on May 31, 2012, and the revenues and expenses for the month of May.

Cash	$ 6,500	Notes Payable	$30,000
Accounts Receivable	7,200	Rent Expense	1,200
Equipment	64,000	Repair Expense	400
Lesson Revenue	8,600	Fuel Expense	2,500
Advertising Expense	500	Insurance Expense	400
		Accounts Payable	800

Robert Neupert made no additional investment in May, but he withdrew $1,700 in cash for personal use.

Instructions

(a) Prepare an income statement and owner's equity statement for the month of May and a balance sheet at May 31.

(b) Prepare an income statement and owner's equity statement for May assuming that the data above need to be adjusted for the following items: (1) $900 of revenue was earned and billed but not collected at May 31, and (2) $3,300 of fuel expense was incurred but not paid.

(a) Net income $3,600
Owner's equity $46,900
Total assets $77,700
(b) Net income $1,200
Owner's equity $44,500

Prepare financial statements, closing entries, and post-closing trial balance.
(SO 1, 2, 3, 4), **AP**

GLS

PI-2 The adjusted trial balance columns of the work sheet for Sherrick Company are as follows.

SHERRICK COMPANY
Adjusted Trial Balance
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Account No.	Account Titles	Adjusted Trial Balance Dr.	Adjusted Trial Balance Cr.
101	Cash	20,800	
112	Accounts Receivable	15,400	
126	Supplies	2,300	
130	Prepaid Insurance	4,800	
151	Office Equipment	44,000	
152	Accumulated Depreciation—Office Equipment		18,000
200	Notes Payable		20,000
201	Accounts Payable		8,000
212	Salaries Payable		3,000
230	Interest Payable		1,000
301	B. Sherrick, Capital		36,000
306	B. Sherrick, Drawing	12,000	
400	Service Revenue		79,000
610	Advertising Expense	12,000	
631	Supplies Expense	3,700	
711	Depreciation Expense	6,000	
722	Insurance Expense	4,000	
726	Salaries Expense	39,000	
905	Interest Expense	1,000	
	Totals	165,000	165,000

Instructions

(a) Prepare an income statement, owner's equity statement, and a classified balance sheet. $10,000 of the notes payable become due in 2013. B. Sherrick did not make any additional investments in the business during 2012.

(b) Prepare the closing entries.

(a) Net income $13,300
Current assets $43,300
Current liabilities $22,000

(c) Post the closing entries. Use the three-column form of account. Income summary is No. 350.
(d) Prepare a post-closing trial balance.

(d) Post-closing trial balance $87,300

PI-3 The adjusted trial balance columns of the work sheet for Jake Mann Company, owned by Jake Mann, are as follows.

Prepare financial statements, closing entries, and post-closing trial balance.
(SO 1, 2, 3, 4), **AP**

JAKE MANN COMPANY
Adjusted Trial Balance
For the Year Ended December 31, 2012

Account No.	Account Titles	Adjusted Trial Balance Dr.	Adjusted Trial Balance Cr.
101	Cash	13,600	
112	Accounts Receivable	15,400	
126	Supplies	1,500	
130	Prepaid Insurance	2,800	
151	Office Equipment	34,000	
152	Accumulated Depreciation—Office Equipment		8,000
200	Notes Payable		16,000
201	Accounts Payable		6,000
212	Salaries Payable		3,000
230	Interest Payable		500
301	Jake Mann, Capital		25,000
306	Jake Mann, Drawing	10,000	
400	Service Revenue		88,000
610	Advertising Expense	12,000	
631	Supplies Expense	5,700	
711	Depreciation Expense	4,000	
722	Insurance Expense	5,000	
726	Salaries Expense	42,000	
905	Interest Expense	500	
	Totals	146,500	146,500

Instructions
(a) Prepare an income statement, owner's equity statement, and a classified balance sheet (*Note:* $10,000 of the notes payable become due in 2013.) Jake Mann did not make any additional investments in the business during the year.
(b) Prepare the closing entries. Use J14 for the journal page.
(c) Post the closing entries. Use the three-column form of account. Income Summary is No. 350.
(d) Prepare a post-closing trial balance.

(a) Net income $18,800
Current assets $33,300
Current liabilities $19,500

(d) Post-closing trial balance $67,300

PHOTO CREDITS

Chapter 1 Page 2: Kristoffer Tripplaar/Alamy. Page 3: ©Kristoffer Tripplaar/Alamy. Page 6: Karen Roach/iStockphoto. Page 7: Josef Volavka/iStockphoto. Page 8: Gemunu Amarasinghe/AP Photo. Page 12: Peter McBride/Getty Images, Inc. Page 15: Lynn Goldsmith/Corbis Images.

Chapter 2 Opener: LEW STAMP/AKRON BEACON JOURNAL/NewsCom. Page 47: LEW STAMP/AKRON BEACON JOURNAL/NewsCom. Page 50: Lowell Sannes/iStockphoto. Page 51: (top) Denis Vorob'yev/iStockphoto. Page 51: (bottom) Nikki Ward/iStockphoto. Page 53: (top) Onur Dongel/iStockphoto. Page 53: (bottom) Vladislav Gurfinkel/iStockphoto. Page 55: Pixtal/SuperStock. Page 57: Pixtal/SuperStock. Page 58: Pixtal/SuperStock. Page 60: Jorge Salcedo/iStockphoto. Page 61: Stacey Newman/iStockphoto. Page 64: Toru Hanai/©AP/Wide World Photos. Page 65: SUPERSTOCK.

Chapter 3 Opener: Paul Connors/AP Photo. Page 101: Paul Connors/AP Photo. Page 109: Enviromatic/iStockphoto. Page 115: Jonathan Daniel/Getty Images, Inc. Page 119: Koichi Kamoshida/AsiaPac/Getty Images.

Chapter 4 Opener: James Lauritz/Digital Vision/Getty Images, Inc. Page 163: James Lauritz/Digital Vision/Getty Images, Inc. Page 166: Dan Chippendale/iStockphoto. Page 167: NewsCom. Page 174: Apcuk/iStockphoto. Page 178: Günay Mutlu/iStockphoto. Page 193: Curt Pickens/iStockphoto.

Chapter 5 Opener: Stone/Getty Images. Page 227: Stone/Getty Images. Page 231: Ben Blankenburg/iStockphoto. Page 238: ©AP/Wide World Photos. Page 242: Heizfrosch/iStockphoto. Page 248: Matt Detrich/The Indianapolis Star/©AP/Wide World Photos.

Chapter 6 Opener: VCG/FPG International/Getty Images. Page 281: VCG/FPG International/Getty Images. Page 283: Alexey Dudoladov/iStockphoto. Page 284: Yin Yang/iStockphoto. Page 294: ©AP/Wide World Photos. Page 296: PhotoDisc, Inc./Getty Images. Page 298: ©Jaap Hart/iStockphoto. Page 299: Digital Vision/Getty Images.

Chapter 7 Opener: Valerie Loiseleux/iStockphoto. Page 335: Valerie Loiseleux/iStockphoto. Page 345: (top) ©Tom Nulens/iStockphoto. Page 345: (bottom) ©Catherine Yeulet/iStockphoto. Page 357: AFP PHOTO/Timothy A. CLARY/NewsCom.

Chapter 8 Opener: ©cogal/iStockphoto. Page 397: ©cogal/iStockphoto. Page 406: (center) ©Derek Latta/iStockphoto. Page 406: (bottom) ©P_Wei/iStockphoto. Page 409: iStockphoto. Page 412: Tomasz Szymanski/iStockphoto. Page 413: Andy Dean/iStockphoto. Page 414: ©Derek Latta/iStockphoto. Page 419: ©Peter Baxter/iStockphoto. Page 421: Margreet De Groot/iStockphoto.

Chapter 9 Opener: ©Linda & Colin McKie/iStockphoto. Page 447: ©Linda & Colin McKie/iStockphoto. Page 452: iStockphoto. Page 465: Justin Sullivan/Getty Images. Page 471: iStockphoto.

Chapter 10 Opener: Tony Savino/Corbis. Page 505: Tony Savino/Corbis. Page 513: Nicolas McComber/iStockphoto. Page 523: (top) PhotoDisc, Inc./Getty Images. Page 523: (bottom) PhotoDisc, Inc./Getty Images. Page 526: Yenwen Lu/iStockphoto. Page 528: Geoffrey Hammond/iStockphoto. Page 529: Scott Mills/Alamy Images.

Chapter 11 Opener: Andy Mead/YCJ/Icon SMI/NewsCom. Page 569: Andy Mead/YCJ/Icon SMI/NewsCom. Page 573: Paul Sakuma/©AP/Wide World Photos. Page 579: RICK BOWMER/©AP/Wide World Photos. Page 588: Dietmar Klement/iStockphoto. Page 590: pagadesign/iStockphoto. Page 591: Dane Steffes//iStockphoto.

Chapter 12 Opener: Rudi Von Briel/PhotoEdit. Page 623: Rudi Von Briel/PhotoEdit. Page 626: Lisa Gee and Elle Wagner/John Wiley & Sons. Page 629: Neil Barclay/Retna. Page 641: PhotoDisc, Inc./Getty Images. Page 645: Justin Sullivan/Getty Images. Page 645: (bottom) Justin Sullivan/Getty Images. Page 646: Justin Sullivan/Getty Images.

Chapter 13 Opener: Daniel Acker/Bloomberg/Getty Images, Inc. Page 685: Daniel Acker/Bloomberg/Getty Images, Inc. Page 689: Kenneth C. Zirkel/iStockphoto. Page 700: SuperStock. Page 701: Palto/iStockphoto. Page 704: Steve Cole/PhotoDisc, Inc./Getty Images.

Chapter 14 Opener: Christopher Farina/©Corbis-Bettmann. Page 747: Christopher Farina/©Corbis-Bettmann. Page 750: Peter Kramer/Getty Images, Inc. Page 755: Glowimaes/Getty Images, Inc. Page 764 David Joyner/iStockphoto. Page 791: Perry Kroll/iStockphoto.

Chapter 15 Opener: Tim Mccaig/iStockphoto. Page 797: Tim Mccaig/iStockphoto. Page 800: iStockphoto. Page 811: Andrew Johnson/iStockphoto

Chapter 16 Opener: Lou Dematties/Reuters/©Corbis. Page 845: iStockphoto. Page 849: MTV Games/Scripps Howard Photo Service/NewsCom

Chapter 17 Opener: iStockphoto. Page 889: iStockphoto. Page 897: Oleksiy Maksymenko Photography/Alamy. Page 900: Jeffrey Hochstrasser/iStockphoto. Page 903: Sam Greenwood/ Getty Images, Inc. Page 908: Ramona Heim/iStockphoto

Chapter 18 Opener: iStockphoto. Page 939: iStockphoto. Page 942: UgurhanBetin/iStockphoto. Page 946: Pidjoe/ iStockphoto. Page 952: Digital Vision/Getty Images. Page 956: Yael/Retna

Chapter 19 Opener: Paul Sakuma/©AP/Wide World Photos. Page 977: Paul Sakuma/©AP/Wide World Photos. Page 982: Warchi/iStockphoto. Page 987: Dem10/iStockphoto. Page 989: Liv Friis-Larsen/iStockphoto. Page 993: Digital Vision

Chapter 20 Opener: Vladimir Melnikov/iStockphoto. Page 1031: Vladimir Melnikov/iStockphoto. Page 1034: Thinkstock/Comstock/Getty Images, Inc. Page 1036: Diane Bondareff/©AP/Wide World Photos. Page 1049: Wolfgang Rattya/ Reuters/Corbis. Page 1053: AP/Wide World Photos

Chapter 21 Opener: Marcus Clackson/iStockphoto. Page 1079: Marcus Clackson/iStockphoto. Page 1089: Eric IsselÇe/iStockphoto. Page 1093: Khuong Hoang/iStockphoto. Page 1102: Brentmelissa/iStockphoto. Page 1103: Kyodo/©AP/Wide World Photos

Chapter 22 Opener: Dominik Pabis/iStockphoto. Page 1137: Dominik Pabis/iStockphoto. Page 1140: SpotX/ iStockphoto. Page 1156: PhotoDisc, Inc./Getty Images. Page 1143: Hywit Dimyadi/iStockphoto

Chapter 23 Opener: SpxChrome/iStockphoto. Page 1185: SpxChrome/iStockphot. Page 1200: Dmitry Kutlayev/ iStockphoto

COMPANY INDEX

A
Abitibi Consolidated Inc., 29
Adelphia, 66
adidas, 435, 544, 569, 570, 582, 596
Advanced Micro Devices (AMD), 438, 644
Ag-Chem, 359
AHold NV, 224
AIG, 7, 43
AirTran Airways, 447–449, 460, 461, 464–467, 641
AirWays Corp., 447
Allegiant Airlines, 764
Alliance Atlantis Communications Inc., 488
Allied Signal, 766
Alternative Distributor Corp., 390–391
Amazon.com, 13, 34, 469, 589–590, 629, 677–678
AMD, *See* Advanced Micro Devices
American Airlines, 173, 447, 508, 750
American Cancer Society, 570
American Eagle Outfitters, 82
American Express Company, 401, 417, 537, 897
American Greetings Corporation, 327
American Pharmaceutical Partners, 61
Amerisource Bergen Coup., Inc., 421
Anchor Glass Container Corporation, 793, 794
Apple, 6, 167, 223, 467
Aptara Corp., 755
AT&T, 750, 897, E:7

B
Baan NV, 224
Bally Total Fitness, 36
Bank of America, 36
Bank One Corporation, 109
Barnes and Noble, 469, 730
Ben & Jerry's Homemade, Inc., 839, 840, 844
Berkshire Hathaway, 588
Best Buy Company, 47, 48, 55–63, 65, 69, 70, 96, 174, 223, 275, 298, 330
Blockbuster Inc., 20, 90–91
Bob Evans Farms, Inc., 76, 497, 725
Boeing Capital Corporation, 73, 452
Boeing Company, 36, 79, 94–95, 447, 462, 547
Boise Cascade Corporation, 478
BP, 294
Bristol-Myers Squibb, 191, 292, 703
Burton Snowboards, 761

C
Callaway Golf Company, 61, 80
Cal State-Northridge Student Union, 29
Campbell Soup Company, 34, 292, 456, 483, 750
Canadian National Railway Company, 544
Canwest Global Communications Corporation, 661
Carrefour SA, 273
Caterpillar, Inc., 281, 282, 293, 299–300, 417, 449, 570, 845, 897, 910
Caterpillar Financial Services, 417
Cendant, E:7
Cerberus, 505
Chase, 109
Chase Manhattan, 34
Chicago Bears, 115, 158
Chicago Cubs, 115, 158
Chieftain International, Inc., 156
Chrysler, 505, 755
Cisco Systems, 13, 187, 702
Citigroup, 5, 7, 58, 164, 409, 562
Clark Equipment Company, 893
Clark-Hurth, 893
CNH Global, 300
The Coca-Cola Company, 5, 42, 426, 472, 473, 665, 740, 755, 766, 840, 841
Columbia Sportswear Company, 661
Commonwealth Edison, 583
Compaq Computer, 747, 748
Compumotor, 893
Computer Associates International, 166, 176
ConAgra Foods, 191, 242, 584
Consumers Packaging Inc., 793
Continental Bank, 452
Cooper Tire & Rubber Company, 51
Costco Wholesale Corporation, 238, 626
Countrywide Financial Corporation, 413
Craig Consumer Electronics, 284
Cypress Semiconductor Corporation, 661

D
Daimler, 756
Daimler-Benz, 505
DaimlerChrysler, 505
Dayton Hudson, 359
Deere & Company, 317, 412
Dell Computer, 283, 747, 748, 750, 751, 754, 755, 765–766, 910
Dell Financial Services, 452
Deloitte and Touche, 39
Delta Air Lines, Inc., 65, 164, 173, 358, 359, 462
Dick's Sporting Goods, 757
Discover, 417
Dow Chemical, 13
Duke Energy, 7
Dun & Bradstreet, 693
Dunkin' Donuts, Inc., 65
DuPont, 249, 398
Dynegy, Inc., 7, 637

E
EarthLink, 582
Eastman Kodak Company, 61, 624
East Valley Hospital, 935
Electronic Data Services (EDS), 747
Eli Lily, 337
Enron Corporation, 7, 43, 47, 242, 522, 572, 703, 751, 752
Equifax, 397
Eskimo Pie Corporation, 28
ExxonMobil, 5, 294, 352, 752, 798, 840

F
Facebook, 573
Fannie Mae, 109
Federal Express (FedEx), 430–431, 487, 750
Fiat/Chrysler, 42
Fidelity Investments, 101, 129, 766
Fitch, Inc., 701
Florida Citrus, 688
FMCC (Ford Motor Credit Corp.), 417
Foley Hoag LLP, 93
Ford Motor Company, 7, 120, 295, 324, 398, 417, 505, 506, 525, 528–529, 641, 755, 756, 855, 869
Ford Motor Credit Corp. (FMCC), 417

G
Gap, Inc., 93
Gatorade, 468
GE, *See* General Electric
GE Capital, 417
General Dynamics Corp., 687
General Electric (GE), 6, 191, 242, 337, 398, 417, 440, 547, 570, 584, 703, 752, 811
General Mills, 456, 693, 698, 709–719, 840, 903
General Motors Corporation, 5–7, 61, 96, 102–103, 320, 426, 505, 506, 509, 524, 537, 570, 574, 702, 723, 750, 755, 766, 798
Global Crossing, 522, 752
Goldman Sachs, 7, 811
Google, 13, 468, 593, 623, 703
Grant Thronton LLP, 29
Gulf Oil, 574

H
Harley-Davidson, 910
HealthSouth, 7
Hechinger Co., 560–561
Hershey Foods Corporation, 21, 38, 92, 155, 220, 273, 326, 389, 440, 496, 560, 615–616, 677, 739, 844, B:1–B:4
Hewlett-Packard, 58, 747, 748, 750, 754, 755, 758, 763, 897, 936
hhgregg, 59, 60, 62
Hilton, 452, 765, 767
H.J. Heinz Company, 79
Home Depot, 283, 560–561
Host Marriott Corporation, 616
H&R Block, 841
Hughes Aircraft, 687, 897
Humana Corporation, 192–194

I
IBM, 752, 798, 897, *See* International Business Machines (IBM)
Ideal Manufacturing Company, 935
InBev, 440
Institute of Management Accountants (IMA), 753, 794
Intel Corporation, 42, 249, 359, 398, 413, 414, 438, 469, 644–645, 855
InterContinental, 452
International Business Machines (IBM), 41, 48, 191, 242, 570, 588, 629, 690–691
International Harvester, 3
International Outsourcing Services, LLC, 117
IT&T, 3

J
J. Crew, 48
JCPenney Company, Inc., 359, 399–400, 427, 626
JetBlue Airways Corporation, 474–475
Jiffy Lube, 841
John Deere Capital Corporation, 452
John Deere Company, 897
J.P. Morgan Leasing, 452

K
Kansas Farmers' Vertically Integrated Cooperative, Inc. (K-VIC), 130–132
Kellogg Company, 32, 87, 593, 629, 641, 693, 705–706, 840, 848, 850, 851, 853, 855, 860, 862, 864
Kinko's Print Shop, 869
Kmart Corporation, 228, 248, 249, 274, 276, 412
Kohl's Corporation, 626
Kraft Foods, 117
Krispy Kreme Doughnuts, Inc., 144, 166, 556
Krogers, 247, 292

L
Laser Recording Systems, 221
LDK Solar, 629
Lease Finance Corporation, 452
Leslie Fay, 284, 329
Linens 'n Things, 412
Loews Corporation, 577
Louis Vuitton, 750
Lucent, 751

M
McDonald's Corporation, 7, 42, 467, 484, 537, 548, 666
McDonnell Douglas, 94–95
McKesson Corporation, 228, 329, 359, 406, 414–416, 418, 420, 421
Mahany Welding Supply, 900
Manitowoc Company, 301–302
The Marcus Corporation, 52–53
Marriott, 191, 452, 470
Marriott International, 616
MasterCard, 417
Mattel Corporation, 364–365
Maxwell Car Company, 505
Mayo Clinic, 811
McDonnell Douglas, 73
Merck and Co., 30, 247, 703
Merrill Lynch, 7
Microsoft Corporation, 5, 6, 61, 96, 103, 119, 158, 236, 249, 449, 467, 593, 623, 629, 639–643, 723, 749, 849
Microsystems Inc., 595
Minnesota Mining and Manufacturing Company (3M), 398, 428, 548
Moody's Investment Service Inc., 693, 701
Morgan Stanley, E:10
Morrow Snowboards, Inc., 231
Motley Fool, 47
Motorola, 689, 752
Movie Gallery Inc., 90–91
MSN.com, 710

N
NASCAR, 903
NEC Corporation, 224
Nestlé, 42
Net Nanny Software International Inc., 91
Nike, Inc., 33, 249, 435, 467, 468, 484, 569–572, 575, 577, 579, 580, 582, 584, 587, 593, 594, 596, 641, 703, 728, 752
Nissan, 755, 756
Nordstrom, Inc., 81, 449, 729
Nortel Networks, 406, 704
The North Face, Inc., 34
Northwest Airlines Corporation, 36, 460
Novartis AG, 527

O
Office Depot, Inc., 228, 297, 431
Office Max, 191
Oracle Corporation, 29, 640, 642, 643

P
Packard Bell, 413, 414
PairGain Technologies, 47
Parker Hannifin, 893
Parlex Corporation, 836
Parmalat, 43, 393, 636
PepsiCo, Inc., 6, 117, 242, 316, 665, 740, E:7
Pilgrim's Pride, 191, 242
Pratt and Whitney, 765, 811
Precor Company, 908
PricewaterhouseCoopers, 40, 41, 811, A:32–A:33
Procter & Gamble, 7, 53, 577, 591, 689, 757, 897
Promodes SA, 273

Proview, 887
Prudential Real Estate, 7
PurchasePro.com, 765

Q
Quad Graphic9, 798
Quaker Oats Company, 295, 869

R
Radio Shack, 247
RBC Financial Group, 203
The Receivables Exchange, 419
Reebok International Ltd., 292, 569, 581
REL Consultancy Group, 60
Rhino Foods, 6
Rite Aid Corporation, 398
Royal Ahold, 43, 393
Royal Dutch Shell, 294

S
SafeNet, 576
Safeway, 247
Salvation Army, 570
Sam's Club, 246
SAP AG, 765
Sara Lee Corporation, 592, 755
Satyam Computer, 393
Schering-Plough, 73
The Scotts Company, 441
Sears, Roebuck & Company, 203, 227, 249–250, 418
Sears Holdings Corporation, 61, 242, 249, 418
Shell, 470
Sherwin Williams, 840
Snap-On Tools, 738
Softbank Corporation, 471
Sony, 42
Southwest Airlines Co., 29, 32, 50, 203, 447–449, 452, 458–459, 465–467, 527, 551–552, 629, 703
Sportsco Investments, 29
Sports Illustrated, 508
Springfield ReManufacturing Corporation, 3
Standard Oil Company of California, 478
Standard & Poor's, 693, 701
Stanley Black & Decker Manufacturing Company, 292, 738
Staples, 725
Starbucks, 329, 629
Stephanie's Gourmet Coffee and More, 335–336, 341, 343
Subway, 470
Super Bakery, Inc., 889, 890, 936
SUPERVALU, 603

T
Target Corporation, 86, 228, 246–249, 274, 283, 297, 352, 359, 626, 734
Tektronix Inc., 590, 897
Texas Instruments Inc., 80
3M, *See* Minnesota Mining and Manufacturing Company
Tiffany and Co., 247
Time Warner, 6, 51, 616, E:5, E:7
Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc., 3, 5, 9–10, 16–17, 19–21, 27, 38, 40, 75, 92, 99, 102, 137, 155, 200, 220, 257, 273, 311, 326, 372, 389, 426, 440, 482, 496, 542, 560, 602, 615–616, 659, 677, 723, 739, A:1–A:36, E:12
Topps Company, Inc., 725
Toronto Blue Jays, 203
Toyota Motor Corporation, 42, 470, 523–526, 755
Trek, 7
True Value Hardware, 283
Turner Broadcasting, E:5, E:7
Tweeter Home Entertainment, 69–70

U
Ultimate Electronics, 203
United Airlines, 6, 173, 447, 509, 624
United States Steel Corp., 513, 629
United Stationers Inc., 228
USAir, 513
US Bancorp Equipment Finance, 452
USX, 840

V
Valujet, 447, 448
Viacom, 616
Visa, 417
Vodafone Airtouch, 42

W
Wachovia, 401
Walgreen Drugs, 228, 292
Wal-Mart Stores, Inc., 86, 227, 228, 231, 232, 236, 239–241, 243, 246–250, 273, 274, 276, 283, 297–298, 330, 352, 449, 593, 626, 641, 734, 767
The Walt Disney Company, 6, 798, E:7, E:12
Walt Disney Productions, 65
Warner Bros. Motion Pictures, 869
Waste Management Company, 109
Welch Company, 767
Wells Fargo & Company, 606
Wendy's International, 292, 449, 617
Western States Fire Apparatus, Inc., 797, 798
Weyerhaeuser Co., 688
Whitehall-Robins, 397, 398, 405
Williams Company, 704
Winnebago Industries, Inc., 312
WorldCom, Inc., 7, 43, 163, 191, 461, 522, 572, 699, 703, 752

X
Xerox Corporation, 39, 163, 191, 751

Y
Yahoo!, Inc., 50, 83, 623, 693

Z
Zetar plc, 45, 96, 99, 160, 225, 278, 332, 445, 503, 564, 567, 621, 681, 682, 745, C:1–C:4

SUBJECT INDEX

A
ABC, *see* Activity-based costing
ABM (activity-based management), 901, 912
Absorption costing:
  defined, 1006
  variable costing vs., 996–1005
Accelerated-depreciation method, 456, 476, 477, 479
Accounts. *See also specific accounts*
  in accounting information system, 111–116
    debits and credits, 111–114
    expansion of basic equation, 104, 116
    stockholders' equity relationships, 113–116
  chart of, 120, 133
  debit and credit columns in, 111–112
  defined, 133
  permanent (real), 186–188, 197
  temporary, 186–187, 197
  uncollectible, 401–404, 423
Accounting:
  accrual-basis, *see* Accrual-basis accounting
  basic accounting equation, 3
    defined, 13, 23
    expansion, 104, 116, 654
    transaction analysis, 103–104, 109–110
  cash-basis:
    accrual basis accounting vs., 166–167
    defined, 197
    liquidity and solvency ratios, 642–643
  defined, 5, 22
  double-entry system, 112, 133
  managerial, *see* Managerial accounting
  market-to-market, E-8, E-10
  and non-accounting careers, 7
  as recruiting tool, 6
  responsibility, 1078–1079, 1091–1106
    controllable vs. noncontrollable revenues/costs, 1092, 1093
    for cost centers, 1096–1097
    defined, 1110
    for investment centers, 1099–1102
    performance evaluation, 1102–1104
    for profit centers, 1097–1099
    reporting system, 1093–1096
  time periods in, 164–169
Accounting cycle:
  for manufacturing company, 770–773
  steps in, 190
Accounting information system, 100–132
  accounting transactions in, 102–110, 133
    analyzing, 103–109
    dividend payments, 108
    employee salary payments in cash, 108–109
    hiring of new employees, 108
    insurance policy purchases in cash, 107
    investment of cash by stockholders, 104–105
    note issues in exchange for cash, 105
    office equipment purchases in cash, 105
    receipt of cash in advance from customer, 105–106
    rent payments, 107
    services supplied for cash, 106–107
    supply purchases on account, 108
  accounts in, 111–116
    debits and credits, 111–114
    expansion of basic equation, 104, 116
    stockholders' equity relationships, 113–116
  accuracy in, 109
  business activities in, 9
  cash in, 130
  defined, 102, 133
  for IFRS, 159
  mistakes in, 101
  recording process, 116–128
    chart of accounts, 120
    illustration, 120–128
    journalizing, 117–119, 127
    ledger entries, 119–120, 128
    posting, 120, 128
  trial balance, 129
Accounting principle, change in, 690, 720
Accounting scandals, 751, 752
Accounting standards, FASB/IASB project on, 44, 67, 159, 502, 565
Accounting transactions, 102–110, 133. *See also* Transaction analysis
  analyzing, 103–109
  dividend payments, 108
  employee salary payments in cash, 108–109
  hiring of new employees, 108
  insurance policy purchases in cash, 107
  investment of cash by stockholders, 104–105
  note issues in exchange for cash, 105
  office equipment purchases in cash, 105
  receipt of cash in advance from customer, 105–106
  rent payments, 107
  services supplied for cash, 106–107
  supply purchases on account, 108
Accounts payable, 635, G-10, G-11
Accounts payable subsidiary ledger, G-1, G-16
Accounts receivable, 399–407
  in accounting information system, 106–107
  aging the accounts receivable, 404, 423
  defined, 398–399, 423

management of, 412–420
accelerating cash receipts, 417–420
evaluating liquidity, 415–416
extending credit, 412–413
monitoring collections, 413–414
payment period establishment, 413
and operating activities, 10
recognizing, 399–400
and statement of cash flows, 634
valuing, 400–402
allowance method, 402–403, 423
direct write-off method, 401, 423
Accounts receivable subsidiary ledger, G-1, G-16
Accruals:
adjusting entries for, 175–180
expenses, 177–180
interest, 177–178
of interest receivable, 410–411
revenues, 172–177
salaries, 179–180
Accrual-basis accounting, 162–194
accounting cycle, 190
adjusted trial balance and financial statements, 183–186
adjusting entries, 167–182, 195–197
accruals, 175–180
accrued expenses, 168, 177–180
accrued revenues, 168, 175–177
deferrals, 169–174
prepaid expenses, 168, 169–172
relationships, 181–182
unearned revenues, 168, 172–174
worksheets, 195–196
cash basis accounting vs., 166–167, 178
closing entries in, 186–189, 197
defined, 71, 166, 197
earnings management, 190–191, 197
expense recognition principle, 165
IFRS vs. GAAP on, 224–225
post-closing trial balance, 188–189, 197
revenue recognition principle, 164–166, 197
and statement of cash flows, 191–192, 629, 630
timing issues in, 164–167
Accrued expenses, 168, 177–180, 197
Accrued interest, 177–178
Accrued revenues, 168, 175–177, 197
Accrued salaries, 179–180
Accumulated depreciation, 51
Accumulated profit or loss, 620
Accuracy, 109, 163
Acquisitions, 42
Activities:
batch-level, 903, 904, 912
business, *see* Business activities
classification of, 894
defined, 891, 912
facility-level, 903, 904, 912
levels of, 903, 904, 940, 943
noncash, 625–626, 652–653
nonoperating, 242–243
non-value-added, 901–903, 913
product-level, 903, 904, 913
purchasing, 339
sales, 339–340
unit-level, 903, 913
value-added, 901–903, 913
Activity base, 807, 890
Activity-based costing (ABC), 888–912
allocating overhead to cost pools, 894
assigning overhead costs to products, 895–896
benefits of, 899
circumstances for using, 900–901
classification of activity levels, 903–905
comparing unit costs, 896–897
computing overhead rates, 895, 896
defined, 774, 912
identifying activities, 894
identifying cost drivers, 894–895
limitations of, 899–900
in managerial accounting, 766
for manufacturing overhead costs, 1142
popularity of, 808
for service companies, 766, 905–909
and traditional costing, 890–897, 905–906
value-added vs. non-value-added activities, 901–903
Activity-based management (ABM), 901, 912
Activity cost pools, 891, 892, 894, 899, 903, 912
Activity index, 940, 941, 959, 1085, 1088, 1142
Additions and improvements, 460, 479
Adjusted cash balance, 355–357
Adjusted cash balance per books, 356
Adjusted trial balance, 183–185 197, I-3
Adjusting entries, 167–182, 195–197
for accruals, 175–180
expenses, 168, 177–180
interest, 177–178
revenues, 168, 175–177
salaries, 179–180
for bank reconciliation, 356
for deferrals, 169–174
for depreciation, 171–172
improper, 191
for insurance, 170–171
prepaid expenses, 168–172
for recovery of uncollectible accounts, 403–404
relationships of, 181–182
for supplies, 169–170
unearned revenues, 168, 172–174
worksheets, 195–196
Administrative expenses, 10. *See also* Selling and administrative expense budget
Advertising, 1034
Affiliated companies, E-7, E-13
Aging schedule, 413
Aging the accounts receivable, 404, 423
Airline industry, 447
baggage handling, 897
cost structures in, 993
deregulation of, 764
product costing in, 764
Allowances:
purchase, 233–234, 251–252, 254
sales, 237–238, 252, 254
Allowance for doubtful accounts, 402–403
Allowance method (for uncollectible accounts), 402–403, 423
Amortization:
of bonds:
discount, 518–519, 531–532
premium, 519–520, 532–533, 536–537
defined, 479
effective-interest, 533–537, 539
of intangible assets, 468–469, 473
straight-line, 455–456, 479, 531–533, 539
Amortizing the premium, 519–520
Annual rate of return, 1199–1200, 1209
Annual recurring expenditures, 451
Annual reports, 704
auditor's report section of, 19–20
defined, 22, A-1
MD&A section of, 19
notes to financial statements section of, 19
and SOX, 572
for Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc., A-1–A-36
Annuities:
defined, D-9, D-19
future value of, D-4–D-6, D-19
present value of, D-9–D-11, D-17, D-19
Approvals, 804
Articles of co-partnership, H-4
Assets:
and accrued revenues, 175–176
adjusting, on balance sheets, 169, 170, 176, 181
current, *see* Current assets

Assets (*contd.*)
debit/credit procedures for, 112–113
defined, 9, 22, 43
depreciable, 453
and dividends, 585
fixed, 9, 51, 448, 639. *See also* Plant assets; Property, plant, and equipment
intangible, *see* Intangible assets
long-lived, *see* Long-lived assets
net, 96
noncash, 633–634, 654–656
obsolescence of, 452
operating, 1099–1102
plant, *see* Plant assets
and prepaid expenses, 169
record keeping and custody of, 340–341
return on, *see* Return on assets
useful life, 171
Asset turnover ratio, 466, 479, 717, 720
Auditors:
defined, 20
internal, 343, 369, 752
reports of, 19–20, 22–23, A-32–A-33
Authorization forms, F-2
Authorized stock, 576, 599
Auto loans, D-18
Automation, 765, 808, 942, 991
Automotive industry, 505, 524–526
Available-for-sale securities, 691–692, 720, E-9–E-10, E-13
Average collection period, 415–416, 423, 711, 720
Average cost method (inventory costing), 290–291, 305, 308

B

B2B (business-to-business) commerce, 765
Backdating sales, 166, 176
Background checks, of employees, 344
Bad debts expense, 401–403, 406, 423. *See also* Uncollectible accounts
Balanced scorecard, 767, 774, 1153–1158, 1164
Balance sheets, 13–14, 23
adjusting entries for, 168, 175, 181
assets, 169, 170, 176, 181
liabilities, 174, 178, 180, 181
stockholders' equity, 169, 174, 176, 178
budgeted, 1046, 1049–1051, 1056
classified, 48–54, 58–62
current assets, 49–50
current liabilities, 52
defined, 48, 71
IFRS vs. GAAP, 96–98
intangible assets, 51
long-term investments, 50
long-term liabilities, 52–53
property, plant, and equipment, 51
stockholders' equity, 53
comparative, 629
defined, 13, 23
depreciation on, 454
effects of cost flow methods on, 293
for Hershey Foods Corporation, B-2
IFRS vs. GAAP on, 591
inventory errors' effects on, 307
investments on, E-10–E-11
liabilities on, 522
liquidity on, 58
long-lived assets on, 472–473
long-term notes payable on, 538
manufacturing costs, 760–761
for partnerships, H-9–H-10
securities on, E-9
for sole proprietorships, I-3
solvency on, 60–62
and statement of cash flows, 639, 653
stockholders' equity on, 590–592
for Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc., 16, 17
using, 58–62
for Zetar Plc, C-2
Banks, 351–358
and cash controls, 351–358
and compound interest, D-2
errors by, 353–355
line of credit from, 524
Bank memoranda, 355
Bank reconciliation, 352–358, 368
Bank statements, 352–353, 368
Barnum, P. T., 8
Basic accounting equation:
defined, 13, 23
expansion of, 104, 116, 654
and transaction analysis, 103–104, 109–110
Batch-level activities, 903, 904, 912
Batch of goods, 798–799
Behavioral principles, 1102–1103
Benefits, employee, 802, 1141, F-1, F-10
Benford's Law, 699
Billing, sales of receivables and, 417
Boards of directors:
and capital budgets, 1198, 1199
composition of, 753
defined, 774
in organizational structure, 751
Bonds, 512–521
amortizing:
effective-interest, 533–537, 539
straight-line, 531–533, 539
callable and convertible, 512–513, 539
common stock vs., 594–595
computing present value of, D-11–D-15
defined, 512, 539
issuing, 513–520
at discount, 516–519, 531–532, 534–536, 539
at face value, 513, 515–516
at premium, 517, 519–520, 532–533, 536–537, 539
procedures for, 513
market value of, 513–515
recording procedures for, E-2–E-3
retirements of, 520–521
secured and unsecured, 512, 539
Bond certificates, 513, 539
Bonding, 344, 368
Bond interest expense, 534
Bond interest paid, 519, 534
Bonds payable, 9, 517, 638, 652
Bonuses, F-4, F-13
Book errors, 356
Book (carrying) value, 172, 197
of bonds, 518, 521, 534
declining, 476
of plant assets, 453
as sunk cost, 1195
Borick, Steve, 1193
Borrowing, cost of, 518, 519. *See also* Loans
Bowerman, Bill, 569, 570
Bowline, Lyle, 1031
Break-even analysis, 951–954, 980, 992
Break-even point, 951–954, 959, 985–987, 992
Break-even sales:
in dollars, 985–987
in units, 984–985
Brock, Paula, 1089
Brokerage firms, 991
Budgets. *See also* Budgeting
capital expenditure, 1036, 1046
cash, 362, 363, 368, 1046–1049, 1056
defined, 1032, 1056
financial, 1036, 1046–1051, 1056
flexible, 1083–1091, 1103, 1110
developing, 1085
example, 1086–1088
purpose of, 1083–1084
reports, 1088–1089
governmental, 1053
master, 1036–1037, 1041, 1056, 1081, 1082
merchandise purchases, 1051, 1052, 1056
operating, 1038–1046
budgeted income statement, 1044–1046
defined, 1036, 1056

direct labor budget, 1042–1043
direct materials budget, 1040–1041
manufacturing overhead budget, 1043–1044
production budget, 1039–1040
sales budget, 1038–1039
selling and administrative expense budget, 1044
standards vs., 1038–1039
static, 1081–1083, 1110
Budgetary control, 1078–1091
defined, 1080, 1110
flexible budgets, 1083–1091, 1103
developing, 1085
example, 1086–1088
purpose of, 1083–1084
reports, 1088–1091
management by exception, 1090
static budget reports, 1081–1083
Budgetary slack, 1035, 1056
Budget committees, 1034, 1056
Budgeted balance sheets, 1046, 1049–1051, 1056
Budgeted income statements, 1044–1046, 1056
Budgeting, 1030–1055
and accounting, 1032–1033
benefits of, 1033
capital, *see* Capital budgeting
effective, 1033
financial budgets, 1046–1051
budgeted balance sheet, 1049–1051
cash budget, 1046–1049
and human behavior, 1034–1035
length of budget period, 1033–1034
and long-range planning, 1036
master budget, 1036–1037
for merchandisers, 1051–1052
for not-for-profit organizations, 1053
operating budgets, 1038–1046
budget income statement, 1044–1046
direct labor budget, 1042–1043
direct materials budget, 1040–1041
manufacturing overhead budget, 1043–1044
production budget, 1039–1040
sales budget, 1038–1039
selling and administrative expense budget, 1044
process of, 1034
for service companies, 1052–1053
unethical practices in, 752–753
Budget period, 1033–1034
Budget reports, 1080–1083, 1088–1091
Buffett, Warren, 588, 685
Buildings:
cost of, 450
depreciation of, 453–460
and statement of cash flow, 637, 652
Businesses, purchases of, 471
Business activities, 9–11
financing, 9, 656
cash, 130
cash flow classification, 625, 626
statement of cash flows, 15, 61–62, 638, 652–653
investing, 9–10, 625
cash, 130
cash flow classification, 626, 656
statement of cash flows, 15, 61–62, 637, 652
operating, 10, 625
cash, 130
cash flow classification, 626, 656
net income vs. net cash provided/used by, 625, 626, 629
statement of cash flows, 15, 61–62, 630–637, 648–652
Business environment, 981–982
Business organization, 4–5, 573–574. *See also* Corporations
Business-to-business (B2B) commerce, 765
Buyer, freight costs incurred by, 233
Buying, making vs., 1191–1193
By-laws (corporations), 574

C

Callable bonds, 512, 539
Canceled checks, 353
Capital:
on balance sheets, 591
contributed, 577–578
for corporations, 5, 571, 576
cost of, 1199–1200, 1209
earned, 577
legal, 577, 599
paid-in, 577–578, 599
balance sheets, 590
net losses, 589
stock dividends, 585
stock splits, 588
working, 59, 60, 72
Capital accounts, H-7
Capital budgeting, 1184–1186, 1198–1208
annual rate of return, 1199–1200
cash payback, 1200–1202
defined, 1209
discounted cash flow, 1202–1207
internal rate of return method, 1205–1206
net present value method, 1202–1204, 1206
evaluation process, 1198–1199
Capital deficiency, H-10–H-15
Capital expenditures, 61, 62, 449, 460–461, 479
Capital expenditure budget, 1036, 1046
Capitalizing, retained earnings, 586
Capital leases, 452, 479, 527, 539
Capital stock, 590. *See also* Common stock
Captive finance companies, 417
Carrying (book) value, 172, 197
of bonds, 518, 521, 534
declining, 476
of plant assets, 453
Cash, 9–10, 368, 393. *See also* Statement of cash flows
as asset, 59
bonding of employees handling, 344
cash equivalents, 358–359, 368, 393
crediting/debiting, 112
defined, 346
and dividends, 584
electronic funds transfer (EFT), 357
employee salaries paid in, 108–109
income taxes paid in, 651–652
insurance policy purchase by, 107
interest paid in, 651
internal control:
bank statements, 352–353, 368
disbursements, 349–351
receipts, 346–349
reconciling bank accounts, 352–358, 368
use of banks, 351–358
internal control of, 335, 346–358
investing and financing transactions, 625
and investments by corporations, E-1
managing/monitoring, 359–364
net change in, 639, 653
notes issued in exchange for, 105
office equipment purchased by, 105
and operating, financing and investing activities, 130
operating expenses paid in, 650–651
and partnership liquidation, H-12
petty cash fund, 351, 366–369
reporting of, 358–359
restricted, 359, 369
and sales of receivables, 417
services supplied for, 106–107
in statement of cash flows (T approach), 654–656
stockholders' investment of, 104–105
suppliers paid in, 649–650
Cash advances, 105–106
Cash balance, 355–357

Cash-basis accounting:
accrual basis accounting vs., 166–167
defined, 197
liquidity and solvency ratios, 642–643
Cash budgets, 362, 363, 368, 1046–1049, 1056
Cash debt coverage ratio, 643, 656, 714, 720
Cash disbursements, 349–351, 362, 363
Cash disbursement section (cash budget), 1047
Cash dividends, 584–585, 599
Cash equivalents, 358–359, 368, 393
Cash equivalent price, 449, 479
Cash flow(s). *See also* Statement of cash flows
anticipated, 1046
assessing liquidity and solvency with, 641–643
budgeting on basis of, 1053
company evaluation using, 639–643
discounted, 1202–1207
internal rate of return method, 1205–1206
net present value method, 1202–1204, 1206
discounted future, 1202
free, 61–62, 71, 639–641, 714, 720
generation of future, 624
impact of product life cycle on, 628–629
net annual, 1200, 1203–1204
periodic, D-10
price to cash flow, 641
and receivables, 420
Cash management:
cash budgets as component of, 1049
principles of, 360–364
Cashouts, 335
Cash payback, 1200–1202, 1209
Cash payments, H-12, H-15
Cash payments journal, G-12–G-14, G-16
Cash (net) realizable value, 402, 409, 423
Cash receipts, 346–349, 362, 363
accelerating, 417–420
and statement of cash flows, 648–649
Cash receipts journal, G-6–G-10, G-16
Cash receipts section (cash budget), 1046–1047
Cash sales, credit card sales as, 417–418
Casualty losses, 242
CEOs (chief executive officers), 751–753, 774
Certified Public Accountants (CPAs), 20, 23
CFOs (chief financial officers), 752, 753
Change in accounting principle, 690, 720
Changes in equity, statement of, C-3
Changes since base period, 694
Channel stuffing, 703
Charitable payroll deductions, F-7
Charters, of corporations, 571, 574
Chart of accounts, 120, 133
Checks:
canceled, 353
and cash payments journal, G-12
NSF, 353, 356, 369
outstanding, 354, 369
payroll payment by, F-4
Check register, 350
Chief executive officers (CEOs), 751–753, 774
Chief financial officers (CFOs), 752, 753, 774
China, 51, 178, 764, 1193
Chrysler, Walter, 505
CIM (computer-integrated manufacturing), 765
Circulation figures (newspapers), 1153
Classified balance sheets, 48–54, 58–62
current assets on, 49–50
current liabilities on, 52
defined, 48, 71
IFRS vs. GAAP on, 96–98
intangible assets on, 51
long-term investments on, 50
long-term liabilities on, 52–53
property, plant, and equipment on, 51
stockholders' equity on, 53
Closing entries, 186–189, 197
with liquidation of partnerships, H-10
for manufacturing operations, 772–773
for partnerships, H-6–H-7
for sole proprietorships, I-4–I-7
CM, *see* Contribution margin
Collection, of receivables, 360, 417
Collection agents, 508
Collection period, average, 415–416, 423, 711, 720
Collusion, 345
Combined statement of income and comprehensive income, 691
Common costs, 1097
Common-size analysis (vertical analysis), 696–699, 720
Common stock, 53, 574
accounting for, 577–579
bonds vs., 594–595
debit/credit procedures for, 113
defined, 9, 23
and statements of cash flow, 638, 652
Common stockholders' equity, return on, 594–595, 599
Communication (internal control), 338
Company officers, 5
Comparability of information, 65, 71
Comparative analysis, 693–699
horizontal, 694–696
vertical, 696–699, 720
Comparative balance sheets, 629
Comparative rankings, 1094
Comparative statements, 629
Compensation, 572, 1093
Competition, 1093
Component depreciation, 500
Composition, of current assets, 59
Compounding periods, D-17
Compound interest, D-2, D-19
Compound interest tables, D-3
Comprehensive income, 686, 690–692, 720, 743, E-12
Computers, 765
Computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM), 765
Concentration of credit risk, 414, 423
Confirmatory value of financial information, 65
Conservatism, 295
Consigned goods, 284–285, 308
Consistency of information, 65, 71
Consolidated financial statements, E-7, E-13
Construction, of buildings, 450
Consumerism, 227
Consumption, 227
Contingencies, 526–527, 539, 565
Contingent liabilities, 565
Contra accounts:
asset, 172, 197
and bonds, 517
revenue, 238, 253
Contracts, cost-plus, 811
Contractual interest rate, 513, 516, 539
Contributed capital, 577–578. *See also* Paid-in capital
Contribution margin (CM):
and break-even point, 952
and break-even sales, 984
defined, 948, 959, 978
and limited resources, 1197
and target net income, 955
Contribution margin per unit, 949–950
Contribution margin per unit of limited resource, 988–989
Contribution margin ratio, 950, 959, 986, 991

Control, *see* Budgetary control; Internal control
Control accounts, 804, 805, 810, G-14, G-16
Control activities (internal control), 338
Control environment (internal control), 337
Controllability, of item, 1090
Controllable costs, 1092, 1093, 1096–1098, 1110
Controllable margin, 1098, 1100, 1101, 1110
Controller (corporations), 572, 752, 774, 1034
Controlling interest, E-7
Controlling operations, 750, 751, 1080. *See also* Budgetary control
Conversion costs, 848, 851, 852, 862, 866
Conversion rate (e-commerce), 982
Convertible bonds, 512–513, 539
Co-ownership, H-2–H-3
Copyrights, 470, 479
Corporations, 4–5, 570–575, 599
  characteristics of, 570–574
  defined, 4, 23
  forming, 574
  investments by, E-1–E-2
  measures of performance, 593–595
  multinational, 42
  privately held, 570, 599
  publicly held, 570, 599
  S corporations, 573–574, H-3, H-15
  stockholder rights in, 574–575
Correct cash balance (adjusted cash balance), 355–357
Costs. *See also* Cost accounting systems; Expenses
  assigning, 809–810
  of bonds, 515–520, E-2
  of buildings, 450
  and buying vs. leasing, 452
  of capital, 1199–1200, 1209
  capital expenditures, 449
  controllable, 1092, 1093, 1110
  of copyrights, 470
  current replacement, 295–296, 308
  defined, 449
  depreciable, 455, 459, 479
  as depreciation factor, 454
  of ending inventory, 288–290
  of equipment, 451
  fixed:
    budgeting, 1083, 1085
    contribution margin, 952
    controllable, 1098
    cost behavior analysis, 941–945, 947
    cost data, 1088
    cost structure, 990, 991, 993
    cost-volume-profit analysis, 948, 978
    defined, 959
    income statements, 1005
    operating leverage, 992
    responsibility accounting, 1097, 1100
  flow of, for merchandising operations, 229–231
  of franchises, 470–471
  freight, 232–233, 251–252
  of goodwill, 471
  of land, 449–450
  of land improvements, 450
  in LCM method, 295–296
  of licenses, 470–471
  and managerial accounting, 754–756
  manufacturing, 754–764
    accumulating, 801–803
    assigning, to Work in Process, 803–809
    balance sheet, 760–761
    cost of goods manufactured schedule, 758–760
    direct materials, 755
    income statement, 757–758
    labor, 755, 765, 774, 802, 805–807
    manufacturing overhead, 755–756, 774, 802, 807–809, 814–816
    process cost system, 844–846
    raw materials, 802, 804–805
    service industry, 763–764
    static budget reports for, 1083
  noncontrollable, 1092, 1093, 1110
  opportunity, 1192, 1209
  overhead, 890, 892–896, 899, 900
  of patents, 468, 469
  of plant assets, 449–453
  product, 756, 774. *See also* Cost accounting systems
  realizable, 224
  research and development, 469–470
  in responsibility accounting, 1091
  revenue expenditures, 449
  standard, 1165. *See also* Standard costs
  sunk, 1195, 1209
  of trademarks and trade names, 470
  weighted average unit cost, 290–291, 308
Cost accounting systems:
  defined, 819
  as function of managerial accounting, 749
  job order, *see* Job order cost system
  process, *see* Process cost system
Cost allocations, depreciation and, 171, 172, 453
Cost behavior analysis, 940–947
  defined, 959
  fixed costs, 941–945, 947
  mixed costs, 944–947
  relevant range, 942–944
  variable costs, 940–945, 947
Cost-benefit tradeoff, 855
Cost centers, 845, 1096–1097, 1110
Cost constraint, 67, 71
Cost data, 1088
Cost drivers:
  and activity classification, 903
  defined, 891, 912
  identifying, 894–895
Cost flows:
  job order cost system, 800, 810, 812
  for merchandising operations, 229–231
  in process cost system, 843–844
Cost flow assumptions, 287–291
  average cost method, 290–291, 305, 308
  consistent use of, 295
  FIFO, 288–289
  financial statement and tax effects on, 292–293
  LIFO, *see* Last-In, First-Out
Costing, inventory, 286–296
  average cost method, 290–291, 305, 308
  consistent use of methods, 295
  cost flow assumptions, 287–291
  FIFO method, *see* First-In, First-Out (FIFO)
  financial statements and methods of, 292–293
  LIFO method, *see* Last-In, First-Out (LIFO)
  lower-of-cost-or-market-method, 295–296, 308
  in perpetual inventory systems, 303–305
  specific identification method, 286, 308
Cost method, 580, E-4–E-5, E-13
Cost of borrowing (bonds), 518, 519
Cost of goods, estimated, 1052
Cost of goods manufactured, 757–760, 772, 774
Cost of goods manufactured schedule, 758–760, 814
Cost of goods purchased, 757
Cost of goods sold, 10
  and costing methods, 286, 289, 290, 292–293
  defined, 228, 253
  on income statements, 241
  and inventory errors, 306
  and manufacturing costs, 757

Cost of goods sold (*contd.*)
in periodic inventory system, 230, 244–245
in perpetual inventory system, 230
and variances, 1152
Cost of Goods Sold account, 800, 810, 812, 846, G-6
Cost-plus contracts, 811
Cost principle, 67, 71, 449
Cost reconciliation schedules, 853, 863–864, 866
Cost structure:
cost-volume-profit analysis, 990–992
defined, 1006
Cost-volume-profit (CVP) analysis, 940, 947–958, 976–995
break-even analysis, 951–954, 980, 992
and changes in business environment, 981–982
components of, 948
contribution margin per unit, 949–950
contribution margin ratio, 950, 991
cost structure, 990–992
CVP income statement, 948–950, 978–979
defined, 959
margin of safety, 956, 980–981, 992
operating leverage, 992–993
sales mix, 984–990
break-even sales in dollars, 985–987
break-even sales in units, 984–985
defined, 984, 1006
limited sources for determining, 988–989
target net income, 954–956, 980
Cost-volume-profit (CVP) graphs, 953–956, 959
Cost-volume-profit (CVP) income statements, 948–950, 959, 978–979, 999
CPAs (Certified Public Accountants), 20, 23
Cr., *see* Credits
Credit:
bank line of, 524
extending, 412–413
supplies purchases by, 108
terms of, 234
Credits (Cr.), 111–114
for assets and liabilities, 112–113, 116
defined, 111, 133
for stockholders' equity, 113–114, 116
Credit balances, 111, 112, 114
Credit cards:
retailers' own, 399–400, 416
sales using, 417–418
Credit crisis, 413, 419
Creditors, 6, 9, 12, 14
Creditors' subsidiary ledger, G-1
Credit purchases, G-10
Credit risk, concentration of, 414, 423
Credit sales, G-4
Cumulative dividends, 582, 599
Current assets:
on classified balance sheet, 49–50
composition of, 59
defined, 71
inventories as, 282
noncash, 633–635
types of, 50
Current cash debt coverage ratio, 642, 656, 710, 720
Current liabilities, 59, 506–512
bond interest payable, 519
and bonds issued at face value, 516
on classified balance sheet, 52
defined, 71, 506, 539
maturities of long-term debt, 509
notes payable, 506–507
payroll and payroll taxes payable, 510–512
sales tax payable, 507–508
and statement of cash flows, 633, 635
unearned revenues, 508–509
Current ratios, 59, 71, 300, 700, 710, 720
Current replacement cost, 295–296, 308
Current results in relation to base period, 694
Custody of assets, recordkeeping and, 340–341
Customers:
cash receipts from, 648–649
extending credit to, 412–413
investigations of, 413
as users of financial information, 7
Customer perspective (balanced scorecard), 1153, 1165
Customers' subsidiary ledger, G-1
Cutoff rate (minimum rate of return), 1108, 1199
CVP analysis, *see* Cost-volume-profit analysis
CVP (cost-volume-profit) graphs, 953–956, 959
CVP income statements, *see* Cost-volume-profit income statements

D

Daily budget reports, 1080, 1081
Data:
budget, 1035, 1092, 1139
cost, 1088
inaccurate cost, 800
production, 1088
reporting, 814–816
Data entry, 814
Days in inventory, 297, 308, 712, 720
Debits (Dr.), 111–114
for assets and liabilities, 112–113, 116
defined, 111, 133
for stockholders' equity, 113–114, 116
Debit balances:
in allowance accounts, 405
in asset accounts, 111, 112
defined, 111
in expense accounts, 114
Debt, 14. *See also* Liabilities
Debt covenants, 528
Debt financing, 60–61, 594–595
Debt investments, E-2–E-3, E-13
Debt masking, 526
Debt to equity ratio, 60, 713
Debt to total assets ratio, 60–61, 71, 525, 713, 720
Decentralization, 1092, 1110
Decision-making, 751, 1186–1190
Declaration date (dividends), 585, 599
Declared dividends, 584
Decline phase (product life cycle), 629
Declining-balance depreciation method, 456, 476–477, 479
Declining book value, 476
Deductions (payroll accounting), F-4–F-8, F-13
Defects, 766
Deferrals, adjusting entries for, 169–174
Deficit, 589–590, 599
Degree of operating leverage, 992–993, 1006
Deposits in transit, 354, 368
Depreciable cost, 455, 459, 479
Depreciation, 197, 479. *See also* Amortization
accelerated-depreciation method, 456, 476, 477, 479
accumulated, 51
adjusting entries for, 171–172
component, 500
and cost allocations, 171, 172, 453
declining-balance method, 456, 476–477, 479
defined, 51, 453
disclosure of, in notes, 458–459
double-declining-balance method, 456, 476–477
factors in computing, 454
and fixed costs, 942
and income taxes, 458
methods of, 454–459
periodic revision of, 459–460
of plant assets, 453–460, 473, 476–478

prorating, 456, 477
straight-line method, 455–456, 479
units-of-activity method, 456–457, 477–479
Depreciation expenses, 632–633, 651
Depreciation schedule, 455–457
Deregulation, 764
Differential analysis, *see* Incremental analysis
Direct deposit payment, F-4
Direct fixed costs, 1097, 1110
Directing operations, 750
Direct labor budget, 1042–1043, 1056
Direct labor costs, 755, 842. *See also* Direct labor variances
and activity-based costing, 890–891
defined, 774
effect of automation on, 765
job order cost system, 805–807
and traditional costing, 906
Direct labor price standard, 1141–1142, 1165
Direct labor quantity standard, 1142, 1165
Direct labor variances, 1147–1149
Direct materials budget, 1040–1041, 1056
Direct materials costs, 755, 774, 806, 842, 890, 1139
Direct materials price standard, 1141, 1165
Direct materials quantity standard, 1141, 1165
Direct materials variances, 1145–1147
Direct method (statement of cash flows), 630, 646–653, 656
investing and financing activities, 652–653
net change in cash, 653
operating activities, 648–652
preparation of, 648–653
Direct write-off method (for uncollectible accounts), 401, 423
Disbursements, cash, 349–351, 362, 363
Disclosures:
clarity of, 242
of depreciation, 458–459
full disclosure principle, 67, 71, 626
Discontinued operations, 687, 720
Discounts:
bonds at, 517–519, 531–532, 534–536, 539
defined, 517
"Korean discount," 64
purchase, 234–235, 252–254
sales, 238–239, 252–254
Discounted cash flow, 1202–1207
comparison of methods, 1206
defined, 1209
internal rate of return method, 1205–1206
net present value method, 1202–1204, 1206
Discounting, 514, D-7, D-11, D-19
Discount period, 234, D-9
Discount rate, 1202, D-8, D-9
Dishonored notes, 411, 423
Disposal of plant assets, 462–464
Dividends, 584–589, 599
cash, 584–585, 599
in cash flow analysis, 61, 62
cumulative, 582, 599
debit/credit procedures for, 114
declaration, payment, and record dates for, 585, 599
declared, 584
defined, 12, 23
and free cash flow, 639
large and small stock, 586
payment of, 114, 584
payout ratio, 593
preferred stock, 56, 582–583
reporting, 584
and statements of cash flows, 624, 653
stock, 585–587, 598, 599
and stock splits, 587–589
Dividends in arrears, 582–583, 599
Dividend revenue, 242
Division of labor, G-3, G-4
Documents:
controls for, 341, 347, 350
in job order cost flow, 813
prenumbering of, 341
in process cost flow, 842
source, 117, 341
Documentation, 236, 341, 461
Dollar-value LIFO, 287n.1
Dot-com boom, 163, 685, 1031
Double-declining-balance depreciation method, 456, 476–477
Double-entry system, 112, 133
Double taxation, 573
Down payments, and plant asset leasing, 452
Dr., *see* Debits
Drawings (sole proprietorships), I-2, I-8
The Dun & Bradstreet Reference Book of American Business, 413
Duties, segregation of, 339–341, 347, 350, 400

E

Earned capital, 577
Earnings, 53. *See also* Income
and corporate performance, 594
from investment income, E-1–E-2
predicting, 12
quality of, 190–191, 197, 701–704, 720
quality of earnings ratio, 247–248
retained, *see* Retained earnings
for Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc., A-20, A-36
Earnings management, 190–191, 197, 242, 461
Earnings per share (EPS), 55–56, 71, 718, 720
Ebbers, Bernie, 461
E-commerce, 765, 982
Economic conditions, 1034
Economic entity assumption, 66, 71
Economic resources, partnerships and, 4
EDP (electronic data processing), 102
Effective-interest amortization, 533–537, 539
Effective-interest rate, 534, 539
EFT (electronic funds transfer), 357, 368
Electronic data processing (EDP) systems, 102
Electronic funds transfer (EFT), 357, 368
Employees. *See also* Direct labor costs
background checks and bonding of, 344
cash salary payments to, 108–109
control of costs and revenues by, 1092
efficiency of, 1149
evaluation of, 900
hiring of, 108, F-2–F-3
in organizational structure, 752
receivables from, 399
rotation of duties, 344
theft by, 345, 351. *See also* Internal control
Employee earnings records, F-7, F-13
Employee's Withholding Allowance Certificate (Form W-4), F-6, F-13
Employer taxes, F-10–F-12
Employment, 946
Ending inventory, cost of, 288–290
The End of Work (Jeremy Rifkin), 227
Enterprise resource planning (ERP) software, 765
Environmental standards, 1138
EPS, *see* Earnings per share
Equal Employment Opportunity Act, 1138
Equipment:
cost of, 451
depreciation of, 453–460
losses/gains on sale of, 633, 651
office, 105
in property, plant, and equipment, 9, 51, 72, 448

Equipment (*contd.*)
retaining vs. replacing, 1194–1195
and statement of cash flow, 637, 652
Equity:
debt to equity ratio, 60, 713
defined, 44
owner's, I-2, I-8. *See also* Owner's equity statement
and sole proprietorships, I-1, I-2
in statement of cash flows (T approach), 654, 655
statement of changes in equity, C-3
stockholders', *see* Stockholders' equity
trading on the equity, 716
Equity method (investment reporting), E-5–E-7, E-13
Equivalent units, 847–850
computing, 851–852
under FIFO method, 859–860
production cost report, 850, 853–854
weighted-average method, 847–849
Equivalent units of production, 847, 851–852, 862, 866
ERP (enterprise resource planning) software, 765
Errors:
by banks, 353–355
book, 356
on income statements, 12
in inventory accounting, 306–307
irregularity vs., 129
locating, in accounts, G-3
Ethics issues:
adjusting entries, 177
backdating sales, 176
bad debts expense, 406
bonuses, F-4
business acquisitions, 454
cash equivalents, 359
cash flow from operations, 637
discounted future cash flows, 1202
documentation, 117
earnings management, 242
employee theft, 345
equivalent units, 848
fair value accounting for investments, E-10
financial disclosures, 242
financial reporting, 7–8, 12, 15, 236
inventory fraud, 284
irregularities vs. errors, 129
lease accounting, 527
liabilities on balance sheets, 522
make-or-buy decisions, 1192
managerial accounting, 752–753
managers' compensation, 572
net income, 625
revenue recognition principle, 166
revenue reporting, 163
specific identification method, 286
treasury stock, 581
Eurich, Beecher, 839
Euronext, 576
Exclusive right, 51
Exotic Newcastle Disease, 1089
Expected input, 1052
Expected output, 1052
Expenditures:
annual recurring, 451
capital, 449, 460–461, 479
cash flow analysis, 61, 62
improper, 449
revenue, 449, 479
timing of, 361
during useful life of assets, 460–461
Expenses. *See also* Costs
in accrual- vs. cash-basis accounting, 166, 167
accrued, 168, 177–180, 197
adjusting, on income statements, 170, 180, 181
administrative, marketing, selling, and interest, 10
bad debts, *see* Bad debts expense
bond interest, 534
debit/credit procedures for, 114
defined, 10, 23, 44
depreciation, 632–633, 651
fixed, 1044, 1083
interest, 10, 178, 242, 450, 518, 534
operating, 241, 470–471
cash payments, 650–651
improper capitalization, 703
multiple-step income statements, 241
payroll, F-9
prepaid:
adjusting entries, 169–172
defined, 168
depreciation, 171–172
insurance, 170–171
statement of cash flows, 634–635
supplies, 169–170
in profit margin ratio, 247–248
research and development, 470–471
on single-step income statements, 239–240
in sole proprietorships, I-2
and stockholders' equity, 107, 114
Expense recognition principle, 165, 477
External users of financial information, 6–7
Extraordinary items, 688–689, 720

F
Face value:
of bonds, 513, 515–516
defined, 539
of notes, 409
Facility-level activities, 903, 904, 912
Factors, 418–420, 423
Factory Labor account:
and job order cost system, 800, 803, 805
and process cost system, 842, 844
Factory labor costs, 802, 805–806, 844–845
Fair Labor Standards Act, 1138
Fair market value, 449
Fair value, 409, E-7, E-9, E-13
and goodwill, 471
of plant assets, 453
for stock dividends, 586
total, E-8
Fair value accounting, 67, 409, 444–445, E-8, E-10
Faithful representation of financial information, 65, 71
FASB, *see* Financial Accounting Standards Board
Favorable variances, 1145, 1152
Federal Insurance Contribution Act taxes, *see* FICA taxes
Federal Unemployment Tax Act (FUTA), F-10
Federal unemployment taxes, F-10, F-13
Federal Unemployment Taxes Payable account, F-10
Fees, F-1
FICA (Federal Insurance Contribution Act) taxes, 510n.1, 511, F-5, F-8, F-10, F-12, F-13
FIFO, *see* First-In, First-Out
Film ratings, 1102
Finance, accounting and, 7
Finance charges, for credit cards, 417
Finance companies, captive, 417
Finance directors, 5
Financial accounting, 749
Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), 64, 71
on accounting standards framework, 44, 67, 159, 502, 565
on debt and equity instruments, 565
on fair value accounting, 409, 444–445
on financial statements, 98, 240, 277, 620, 681, 744
on income, 690, 743
on receivables valuation, 409
on revenue recognition, 224–225
on statement of cash flows methods, 630

Financial analysis, 684–706
comparative analysis, 693–699
horizontal, 694–696
vertical, 696–699, 720
IFRS vs. GAAP on, 743–744
quality of earnings, 701–704
ratio analysis, 699–701, 708–719
liquidity ratios, 710–712
profitability ratios, 701, 715–719
solvency ratios, 700, 712–714
sustainable income, 686–693
changes in accounting principle, 690
comprehensive income, 690–692
irregular items, 687–689
Financial budgets, 1046–1051, 1056
budgeted balance sheet, 1049–1051
cash budget, 1046–1049
defined, 1036
Financial calculators, D-16–D-18
Financial crisis, 526, 1044
Financial highlights (Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.), A-1–A-2
Financial information. *See also* Accounting information system; Financial reporting
in financial statements, 11–21. *See also* Financial statements
irregularities and errors in, 129
nonfinancial vs., 1189
usefulness of, 64–65, 72
users and uses of, 5–8, 11–21
Financial literacy, 3
Financial managers, 901
Financial markets, 42
Financial performance measures, 1098, 1153, 1155
Financial perspective (balanced scorecard), 1153, 1165
Financial position, statement of, A-18–A-19
Financial pressure (in fraud triangle), 337
Financial ratings, 701
Financial reporting. *See also* Financial statements
accuracy in, 163
assumptions in, 66
clarity of, 242
constraints in, 67
ethics in, 7–8. *See also* Ethics issues
in financial accounting, 749
job order cost system, 814–816
online systems for, 1090
principles, 1103
principles in, 66–67
quality of, 191, 236
relevance of, 65
useful information in, 64–65
variances, 1151–1152
Financial reporting system, 1093–1096, 1098, 1100, 1110
Financial services industry, 764
Financial statements, 3–21, 46–70. *See also specific statements*
adjusting entries on, *see* Adjusting entries
analysis, 56–62
comparative analysis, 693–699
IFRS vs. GAAP, 743–744
quality of earnings, 701–704
ratio analysis, 699–701, 708–719
sustainable income, 686–693
annual report information on, 19–20
and business activities, 9–11
classified balance sheet, 48–54, 58–62
consolidated, A-17–A-36, E-7, E-13
depreciation on, 454
FASB and IASB project on, 98, 240, 277, 620, 681, 744
financial reporting concepts in, 63–68
and forms of business organization, 4–5
for Hershey Foods Corporation, B-1–B-4
and IFRS, 42–44
interrelationships of, 16–18
liabilities on, 522
long lived assets on, 472–473
long-term notes payable on, 538
notes to, *see* Notes to financial statements
for partnerships, H-9–H-10
preparing, from adjusted trial balance, 184–185
ratio analysis, 54–55
receivables on, 411–412
of sole proprietorships, I-3–I-5
stockholders' equity on, 590–592
for Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc., 16–17, A-1–A-36
types of, 11–21
and users of financial information, 5–8
variances on, 1152–1153
Financing:
on cash budget, 362, 363
debt, 60–61, 594–595
leasing and, 527
off-balance-sheet, 526–528
and statements of cash flows, 625
Financing activities, 9, 656
as cash flow classification, 625, 626
cash for, 130
on statement of cash flows, 15, 61–62, 638, 652–653
Financing section (cash budget), 1047
Finding Nemo (film), 1102
Finished goods inventory, 282, 308
Finished Goods Inventory account, 760, 800, 809–810, 846
First-In, First-Out (FIFO), 288–289, 859–865
and cash flows, 294
defined, 308
equivalent units under, 859–860
example, 860–864
financial statement and tax effects of, 292–294
in perpetual inventory systems, 304
and quality of earnings, 702
and weighted average, 864–865
Fiscal year, 65, 164, 197
FISH assumption, 289
Fixed assets, 9, 51, 448, 639. *See also* Plant assets; Property, plant, and equipment
Fixed costs:
budgeting for, 1083, 1085
and contribution margin, 952
controllable, 1098
cost behavior analysis, 941–945, 947
cost data for, 1088
and cost structure, 990, 991, 993
and cost-volume-profit analysis, 948, 978
defined, 959
on income statements, 1005
and operating leverage, 992
and responsibility accounting, 1097, 1100, 1110
Fixed expenses, 1044, 1083
Flexible budgets, 1083–1091, 1103
defined, 1110
developing, 1085
example, 1086–1088
purpose of, 1083–1084
reports, 1088–1091
Float, 335
FOB (free on board) destination, 232, 284, 308
FOB (free on board) shipping point, 232, 284, 308
Forecast, sales, 1034, 1038, 1056
Form W-2 (Wage and Tax Statement), F-12, F-13
Form W-4 (Employee's Withholding Allowance Certificate), F-6, F-13
Forrest, Brian, 939
Franchises, 470–471, 479
Fraud, 336–337. *See also* Internal control
and capital expenditures, 461
and comparative analysis, 699
defined, 336, 369
and documentation, 117

Fraud (*contd.*)
inventory, 284, 285, 306
and issuance of stock, 576
and missing internal controls, 339–344
and payroll liabilities, 511
Ponzi scheme, 357
and receivables, 400
and sales of merchandise, 237
and statements of cash flows, 636
Fraud triangle, 336–337, 369
Free cash flow, 61–62, 71, 639–641, 656, 720
Free on board destination, *see* FOB destination
Free on board shipping point, *see* FOB shipping point
Freight costs:
in periodic inventory system, 251–252
in perpetual inventory system, 232–233
Freight-in, 251–252
Freight-out, 233
Fringe benefits, *see* Benefits, employee
Full disclosure principle, 67, 71, 626
FUTA (Federal Unemployment Tax Act), F-10
Future value:
of annuity, D-4–D-6, D-19
of single amount, D-2–D-4, D-19

G

GAAP (generally accepted accounting principles), 63, 71
absorption costing, 1003
accounting information systems, 159
accrual-basis accounting, 224–225
capital categories of balance sheets, 591
capital in balance sheets, 591
cash-basis of accounting, 166
classified balance sheets, 96–98
financial analysis, 743–744
financial statements, 11
IFRS vs., 43
internal controls, 393–394
inventories, 295, 330–331
leases, 527
liabilities, 534, 564–565
loans and receivables, 418, 444–445
long-lived assets, 500–502
materiality constraint, 67
merchandising operations, 276–277
revenue and expense recognition for, 165
statements of cash flows, 625, 680–681
stockholders' equity, 619–620
Gains:
on disposal, 462–463
from nonoperating activities, 242
on realization, H-10
realized, E-11
on sales, 462–463, 633
unrealized, E-8, E-9, E-11
Gardner, Tom and David, 47
Geneen, Harold, 3
General journal, 117, 133, 181, 188, G-14–G-15
General ledger, 119, 133, 182, 798, G-1–G-3, G-8
Generally accepted accounting principles, *see* GAAP
General management, accounting and, 7
General partners, H-3, H-15
Gift cards, 174
Globalization, 764
Going concern assumption, 66, 71
Goods:
batch of, 798–799
consigned, 284–285, 308
in transit, 284
Goodwill, 471, 479
Gordon, Ellen R., A-2
Gordon, Melvin J., A-2
Governmental budgets, 1053
Government regulations, for corporations, 572
Graham, Benjamin, 685
Graphs:
cost-volume-profit, 953–956, 959
performance, A-34
total budgeted costs on, 1087
Gross earnings, 802, F-4, F-13
Gross profit, 240, 241, 246, 253
Gross profit rate:
calculating, 717–718, 720
defined, 253
in merchandising operations, 245–246
Growth phase (product life cycle), 628

H

Harris, Franco, 889
Hedges, 361
Held-to-maturity securities, E-8, E-13
Herold, Cameron, 1079
High-low method (cost behavior analysis), 945–946, 959
Hiring, transaction analysis for, 108
Hirshfield, Leo, 3, 9
Historical cost accounting, E-8
Honor, of notes receivable, 410
Horizontal analysis, 694–696, 720
Hub-and-spoke approach (airline industry), 993
Human behavior, 1034–1035
Human element, in internal control, 345
Human resource controls, 237, 344–345, 347, 350, 511, F-2
Hurdle rate (minimum rate of return), 1108, 1199

I

IAASB (International Auditing and Assurance Standards), 394
Iacocca, Lee, 505
IAS 1 (revised), 393, 564, 743
IAS 7, 564, 680
IAS 8, 620
IAS 16, 500
IAS 18, 224
IAS 36, 500
IAS 38, 500
IASB, *see* International Accounting Standards Board
Ideal standards, 1140, 1165
IFRS, *see* International Financial Reporting Standards
IMA (Institute of Management Accountants), 753
IMA Statement of Ethical Professional Practice, 753
Immaterial items, 67
Impairments, 461, 479
Improper adjusting entries, 191
Improvements, 460, 479
Income:
comprehensive, 686, 690–692, 720, 743, E-12
and cost flow assumptions, 292–293
defined, 43, 44
FASB and IASB on, 690, 743
for merchandising companies, 228
net, *see* Net income
pro forma, 702, 720
residual, 1108–1110
and ROI, 1100–1101
sustainable, 686–693, 720, 868–869
change in accounting principle, 690
comprehensive income, 690–692
defined, 686
discontinued operations, 687
extraordinary items, 688–689
irregular items, 687–689
and unearned revenues, 173
Income and loss ratio, H-6
Income from operations, 240, 242
Income ratios, H-6–H-8, H-15
Income statements:
adjusting entries for, 168, 175, 181
expenses, 170, 180, 181
interest expense, 178
net income, 170, 173, 176, 178
revenues, 173, 176, 181

budgeted, 1044–1046, 1056
cash flow information from, 630
combined statement of income and comprehensive income, 691
and comprehensive income, 692, 743
cost-volume-profit, 948–950, 959, 978–979, 999
defined, 11–12, 23
depreciation on, 454
effects of cost flow methods on, 292–293
errors on, 12
extraordinary items on, 688
for Hershey Foods Corporation, B-1
inventory errors' effects on, 306–307
manufacturing costs on, 757–758
for merchandising operations, 236, 239–245
costs of goods sold, 244–245
gross profit, 240, 241
nonoperating activities, 242–243
operating expenses, 241
sales revenues, 241
multiple-step, 240–241
nonoperating activities on, 242–243
operating activities on, 625, 626
for partnerships, H-9
single-step, 239–240
of Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc., 16, 17
using, 55–56
variances on, 1152–1153
for Zetar Plc, C-1
Income Summary account, 187, 197, 772, I-4
Income taxes, 10, 458, 651–652, F-5–F-7, F-12
Income taxes payable, 10, 635
Incremental analysis, 1184–1198
defined, 1209
management's decision-making process, 1186–1190
types of, 1190–1198
accepting an order at special price, 1190–1191
allocating limited resources, 1197–1198
eliminating unprofitable segment, 1195–1197
make or buy, 1191–1193
retaining or replacing equipment, 1194–1195
selling or processing further, 1194
Indefinite life (intangible assets), 468
Independent internal verification, 342–344, 347
of capital expenditures, 461
and cash controls, 350, 353
and inventory fraud, 285
and issuance of stock, 576
of payroll liabilities, 511
of receivables, 400
and statements of cash flows, 636
of write-offs, 699
India, 764
Indirect fixed costs, 1097, 1110
Indirect labor costs, 755, 774, 805
Indirect materials, 755, 774
Indirect method (statement of cash flows), 630–639, 656
defined, 630
investing and financing activities, 637–638
net change in cash, 639
operating activities, 630–637
Industry average comparisons, 55, 693, 709
Industry trends, 1034
Inflation, 191, 292–293, 1137
Information:
financial, *see* Financial information
in internal control, 338
mis-, 47
nonfinancial, 1189
Information technology, 42
Initial public offerings (IPOs), 573
Institute of Management Accountants (IMA), 753
Insurance, 107, 170–171
Intangible assets, 467–472, 479
accounting for, 468–469
amortization of, 468–469, 473
on classified balance sheet, 51
copyrights, 470
defined, 71, 448, 467
financial statement presentation of, 472–473
franchises, 470–471
goodwill, 471
licenses, 470–471
patents, 468, 469
and research/development, 469–470
sources of, 468
trademarks and trade names, 470
Intercompany comparisons, 55, 693, 709
Interest:
accrued, 177–178
bond, E-3
bond interest paid, 519, 534
cash payments for, 651
compound, D-2, D-19
controlling, E-7
defined, D-1, D-19
and discounts, 235
effective-interest amortization, 533–537, 539
on notes payable, 507
on notes receivable, 408–409
and partnerships, H-7, H-8
in present value of bonds, 514
simple, D-1, D-19
and time value of money, D-1–D-2
Interest coverage (times interest earned ratio), 713–714
Interest expenses, 10, 178, 242, 450, 518, 534
Interest paid, bond, 519
Interest payable, 10
Interest rates:
bond prices and, 516, 517
contractual (stated), 513, 516, 539
effective-, 534, 539
market, 514, 516, 517, 539
Interest receivable, accrual of, 410–411
Interest revenues, 10, 242
Internal auditors, 343, 369, 752
Internal control, 334–358, 369
of cash, 335, 346–351
bank statements, 352–353, 368
disbursements, 349–351
receipts, 346–349, 362, 363
reconciling bank accounts, 352–358, 368
use of banks, 351–358
controller's responsibility for, 752
documentation procedures, 341
and establishment of responsibility, 338–339
and fraud, 336–337
capital expenditures, 461
comparative analysis, 699
inventory fraud, 285
issuance of stock, 576
missing internal controls, 339–344
payroll liabilities, 511
receivables, 400
sales of merchandise, 237
statements of cash flows, 636
human resource, 344–345
IFRS vs. GAAP on, 393–394
independent internal verification, 342–344
limitations of, 345–346
management's report on, A-16–A-17
payroll accounting, F-1–F-4
hiring employees, F-2–F-3
paying payroll, F-4
preparing payroll, F-3
timekeeping, F-3
for petty cash replacement, 367
physical, 341–342
and Sarbanes-Oxley Act, 168, 337, 393
and segregation of duties, 339–341
Internal process perspective (balanced scorecard), 1154, 1165

Internal rate of return (IRR), 1205–1206, 1209
Internal rate of return method (discounted cash flow), 1205–1206, 1209
Internal Revenue Service (IRS), 458, F-6, F-12
Internal users of financial information, 5–6, 748
International Accounting Standards Board (IASB), 42–44, 64, 71, 331
  on accounting standards framework, 44, 159, 502, 565
  on debt and equity instruments, 565
  on fair value accounting, 409, 444–445
  on financial statements, 98, 240, 277, 620, 681, 744
  on income, 743
  on revenue recognition, 224–225
International Auditing and Assurance Standards (IAASB), 394
International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS), 42–44, 64, 71
  on accounting information systems, 159
  on accrual-basis accounting, 224–225
  on asset valuation, 51, 449
  on capital in balance sheets, 591
  on classified balance sheets, 96–98
  on financial analysis, 743–744
  on financial statements, 11
  on internal controls, 393–394
  on inventories, 295, 330–331
  on leases, 527
  on liabilities, 564–565
  on loans and receivables, 444–445
  on long-lived assets, 500–502
  on merchandising operations, 276–277
  on research and development costs, 470
  on statements of cash flows, 625, 680–681
  on stockholders' equity, 619–620
International issues:
  accrual-basis accounting, 178
  fair value accounting, 409
  globalization, 764
  goodwill, 471
  Korean discount, 64
  LIFO, 294
  sales and cash management, 361
International not-for-profits, 8
Internet:
  ad space revenue, 163
  bulletin boards, 47
  e-commerce on, 765, 982
  and inefficiencies, 952
Intracompany comparisons, 55, 693, 709
Introductory phase (product life cycle), 628
Inventory, 10, 280–302. *See also* Inventory systems
  analysis of, 296–300
  and balanced scorecard, 767
  on balance sheets, 760
  and cash management, 360
  classification of, 282–283
  costing of, 286–296
    average cost method, 290–291, 305, 308
    consistent use, 295
    cost flow assumptions, 287–291
    FIFO method, *see* First-In, First-Out (FIFO)
    financial statements and tax effects, 292–294
    LIFO method, *see* Last-In, First-Out (LIFO)
    lower-of-cost-or-market method, 295–296, 308
    in perpetual inventory systems, 303–305
    requisitions, 804
    specific identification method, 286, 308
  days in inventory, 297, 308, 712, 720
  determining ownership of goods, 284–285
  determining quantities of, 283–285
  and direct materials budget, 1040
  effects of cost flow methods on, 292, 293
  ending, 288–290
  errors in accounting for, 306–307
  finished goods, 282, 308
  fraud in accounting for, 284, 285, 306
  IFRS vs. GAAP on, 295, 330–331
  income statement effects on, 306–307
  just-in-time, 283, 297, 308, 765–766, 910–912
  merchandise, 282
  physical, 230, 283
  and production budget, 1039
  recording of product costs as, 755
  and standard costs, 1152
  and statement of cash flows, 634
Inventory systems:
  and flow of costs, 229–231
  periodic, 230, 251–253
    cost of goods sold, 230, 244–245
    defined, 254
    and income statements, 757
    merchandise transactions, 251
    perpetual vs., 244–245, 253, 287
    physical inventories, 283
    purchases of merchandise, 251–252
    recording transactions, 251
    sales of merchandise, 252–253
  perpetual, 230, 231, 254
    average cost method, 305
    and cash receipts journal, G-6
    cost accounting system, 798
    cost of goods sold, 230
    defined, 230, 254
    FIFO, 304
    inventory cost flow methods, 303–305
    LIFO, 304–305
    periodic vs., 244–245, 253, 287
    physical inventories, 283
    purchases of merchandise, 232
    sales of merchandise, 236–239
  and physical inventories, 283
Inventory turnover ratio, 296–299, 308, 711–712, 720
Inventory write-downs, 295
Investee, E-4
Investigations, of loan customers, 413
Investing activities, 9–10, 625
  as cash flow classification, 626, 656
  cash for, 130
  on statement of cash flows, 15, 61–62, 637, 652
Investments, 10
  on balance sheets, 50, E-10–E-11
  of cash, 361
  cash inflows and outflows for, 626
  by corporations, E-1–E-2
  debt, E-2–E-3, E-13
  liquid, 361
  long-term, 50, 72, E-10, E-11, E-13
  by owner, I-2, I-8
  in partnerships, H-5
  readily marketable, E-10
  risk-free, 361
  short-term, E-10–E-11, E-13
  for speculation, E-2
  on statement of cash flows, E-12
  stock, E-4–E-7, E-13
  valuing and reporting, E-7–E-12
Investment centers, 1096, 1099–1102, 1110
Investment portfolio, E-4
Investors, 6, 12
Investor issues:
  accounting system accuracy, 109
  current ratios, 700
  debt covenants, 528
  debt financing, 61

debt masking, 526
financial ratings and returns, 701
inventory systems, 231
net income vs. net cash provided/used by operating activities, 629
Ponzi schemes, 357
restructuring charges, 689
revenue reporting, 167
stock quotes, 579
stock splits, 588
Invoices, 231, 236, 254
iPhone, 167
IPOs (initial public offerings), 573
IRR (internal rate of return), 1205–1206, 1209
Irregularities, in financial information, 129
IRS, *see* Internal Revenue Service

J
Japan, 283, 897
Jean, Wyclef, 8
JIT inventory, *see* Just-in-time inventory
Job cost sheets, 803–806, 808, 809, 819, 842
Job order cost system, 798–818, 993
accumulating manufacturing costs, 801–803
advantages of, 813–814, 855
assigning costs to Cost of Goods Sold, 800, 810, 812
assigning costs to Finished Goods, 800, 809–810
assigning manufacturing costs to Work in Process, 800, 803–809
cost flow, 800, 810, 812
defined, 819
disadvantages of, 813–814
process cost system vs., 841–843
reporting data, 814–816
for service companies, 810–811
and standard cost accounting system, 1160
Journals, 117, 133, 181, 188
Journalizing, 117–119
account titles in, 118
adjusting entries in, 181
and bond issues, 515
defined, 133
illustration of, 127
and stock splits, 588
Just-in-time (JIT) inventory, 283, 297, 308
benefits of, 912
defined, 774, 910, 912
elements of, 911–912
and managerial accounting, 765–766
objective of, 911

K
Kindle, 1038
Knight, Philip, 569–572
"Korean discount," 64

L
Labor:
division of, G-3, G-4
and variable costs, 941
Labor costs:
direct, 755, 842. *See also* Direct labor budget
and activity-based costing, 890–891
defined, 774
effect of automation on, 765
job order cost system, 805–807
factory, 802, 805–806, 844–845
indirect, 755, 774, 805
Labor price variance, 1148, 1149, 1165. *See also* Direct labor variances
Labor quantity variance, 1148, 1165. *See also* Direct labor variances
Labor unions, 7
Land:
cost of, 449–450
and depreciation, 453
and statement of cash flow, 637, 652
Land improvements:
cost of, 450
depreciation of, 453–460
Large stock dividend, 586
Last-in, First-out (LIFO), 289–290
and cash flows, 294
defined, 308
dollar-value, 287n.1
financial statement and tax effects of, 292–294
in perpetual inventory systems, 304–305
and quality of earnings, 702
LCM (lower-of-cost-or-market), 295–296, 308
Lean manufacturing practices, 747, 750, 946
Learning and growth perspective (balanced scorecard), 1154, 1165
Leases:
capital, 452, 479, 527, 539
and fixed costs, 942
IFRS vs. GAAP on, 527
operating, 452, 479, 527, 539
of plant assets, 452
Least squares regression analysis (cost behavior analysis), 945
Ledger, 117, 119–120, 133, 182
Ledger accounts, 1161–1162
Lee, Bryan, 119
Legal capital, 577, 599
Legal costs, of defending patents, 469
Legal existence, of corporations, 571
Legal liability, form of business and, 5
Lessee, 452, 479
Lessor, 452, 479
Letter to the stockholders (Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.), A-2–A-16
Leveraging, 716, 720
Liabilities, 504–529
adjusting, on balance sheet, 174, 178, 180, 181
analysis of, 523–526
liquidity, 523–524
solvency, 524–526
contingent, 565
current, 59, 506–512
bond interest payable, 519
bonds issued at face value, 516
classified balance sheet, 52
defined, 71, 506, 539
maturities of long-term debt, 509
notes payable, 506–507
payroll and payroll taxes payable, 510–512
sales tax payable, 507–508
statement of cash flows, 633, 635
unearned revenues, 508–509
debit/credit procedures for, 112–113, 116
defined, 13, 23, 44
delayed payment of, 360–361
dividends in arrears as, 583
financial statement presentation of, 522–523
and form of business, 5
IFRS vs. GAAP on, 534, 564–565
long-term, 512–521, 539. *See also* Bonds
classified balance sheet, 52–53
current maturities of, 509
defined, 72, 506, 539
financing activities, 626
notes payable, 537–538
negative bank balance, 359
off-balance sheet financing of, 526–528
with partnerships, H-2
payroll, 510–512, F-9
and plant asset leasing, 452
and statement of cash flows, 522–523, 654, 655
of stockholders, 571
Licenses, 470–471, 479, 574
Life, of corporation, 571
LIFO, *see* Last-in, First-out
LIFO conformity rule, 293
LIFO reserve, 299–300, 308
Limited liability companies (LLCs), H-3, H-15

Limited liability partnerships (LLPs), H-3, H-15
Limited life:
and intangible assets, 468, H-2
of partnerships, H-4
Limited partnerships, H-3, H-15
Linear relationship (cost behavior analysis), 942–944
Line positions, 752, 774
Liquidation, 583, H-10–H-15
Liquid investments, 361
Liquidity, 641–643
on balance sheet, 58–60
defined, 72
listing of inventories in order of, 760
of receivables, 415–416
Liquidity ratios, 709–712
average collection period, 415–416, 423, 711, 720
current cash debt coverage ratio, 642, 656, 710, 720
current ratio, 59, 71, 300, 700, 710, 720
days in inventory, 297, 308, 712, 720
defined, 59, 72, 720
in financial analysis, 700
on financial statements, 54, 523–524
inventory turnover ratio, 296–299, 308, 711–712, 720
receivables turnover ratio, 415–416, 423, 711, 720
working capital, 59, 60, 72
LISH assumption, 288
LLCs (limited liability companies), H-3, H-15
LLPs (limited liability partnerships), H-3, H-15
Loans:
auto and mortgage, 537, D-18
IFRS and GAAP on, 418, 444–445
Loan customers, investigations of, 413
London Stock Exchange, 576
Long-lived assets, 446–478
financial statement presentation of:
balance sheets, 472–473
statement of cash flows, 473
IFRS vs. GAAP on, 500–502
intangible assets, 467–472, 479
accounting, 468–469
amortization, 468–469, 473
defined, 71, 448, 467
financial statements, 51, 472–473
types, 469–472
and investing activities, 626
plant assets, *see* Plant assets
Long-range planning, 1036, 1056
Long-term debt, *see* Long-term liabilities
Long-term investments, 50, 72, E-10, E-11, E-13
Long-term liabilities, 512–521, 539. *See also* Bonds
on classified balance sheet, 52–53
current maturities of, 509
defined, 72, 506, 539
and financing activities, 626
notes payable, 537–538
Long-term notes, D-11–D-15
Long-term notes payable, 537–538
Losses:
accumulated, 620
casualty, 242
and direct write-off method, 401
on disposal, 462, 463
net, 10, 23, 589, H-6–H-9
from nonoperating activities, 242
on realization, H-10
realized, E-11–E-12
on sales, 463, 633, 651
unrealized, 691–692, E-8, E-9, E-11–E-12
Lower-of-cost-or-market (LCM), 295–296, 308
Luxury-goods manufacturers, 750

M

McCollick, Sharon, 359
Machine hours, 808, 890, 891, 988
MACRS (Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System), 458
Madoff, Bernard, 357
Mail receipts, 348–349
Make-or-buy decisions, 1191–1193
Maker, 407, 423
Management:
and accounting, 7
and activity-based costing, 899
and annual reports, 704
and budgeting, 1033, 1034, 1198, 1199
compensation of, 572
and convertible bonds, 513
of corporations, 571–572
decision-making process, 1186–1190
by exception, 1090, 1110
and extending credit, 413
and fiscal year, 65
functions of, 750–751
and initial public offerings, 573
and inventory, 283, 298
and leases, 452
and liquidity, 60
and long-range planning, 1035
and marketing ROI, 465
net income and net cash provided/used by operating activities, 626
open-book, 3
organizational structure of, 751–752
performance evaluation of, 1102–1103
and profitability, 119
and receivables, 419
and responsibility accounting, 1091, 1092
and return policies, 238
review of sales mix by, 985
and SOX, 345, 572
and static budget reports, 1082, 1083
and strategic errors, 248
Management accounting, *see* Managerial accounting
Management discussion and analysis (MD&A):
defined, 19, 23
for Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc., 19, A-6–A-16
Management's report on internal control (Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.), A-16–A-17
Managerial accounting, 746–769. *See also* Management
activity-based costing in, 766
and balanced scorecard, 767
and business ethics, 752–753
defined, 748, 774
financial accounting vs., 749
and just-in-time inventory methods, 765–766
manufacturing costs, 754–764
balance sheet, 760–761
cost of goods manufactured schedule, 758–760
direct labor, 755
direct materials, 755
income statement, 757–758
manufacturing overhead, 755–756
service industry, 763–764
and product quality, 766
product vs. period costs, 756
and technological change, 765
and theory of constraints, 766
value chain in, 764–765
Manufacturing costs, 754–764
accumulating, 801–803
assigning, to Work in Process, 803–809
balance sheet, 760–761
cost of goods manufactured schedule, 758–760
direct materials, 755
income statement, 757–758
labor, 755, 765, 774, 802, 805–807
overhead, 755–756, 774, 802, 807–809, 814–816
process cost system, 844–846
raw materials, 802, 804–805

service industry, 763–764
static budget reports for, 1083
Manufacturing operations:
accounting cycle for, 770–773
fixed costs of, 942
inventory classification for, 282
operating cycle for, 359
use of activity-based costing in, 766
Manufacturing Overhead account:
and job order cost system, 800, 803–805
and process cost system, 842, 844
Manufacturing overhead budget, 1043–1044, 1056
Manufacturing overhead costs, 755–756. *See also* Manufacturing overhead variances
defined, 774
job order cost system, 802, 807–809, 814–816
process cost system, 845
and variable costing, 998
Manufacturing overhead standards, 1142–1143
Manufacturing overhead variances, 1150–1151, 1162–1164
Manufacturing Summary account, 772
Margin (income) measure, 1100
Margin of safety, 956, 959, 980–981, 992
Margin of safety ratio, 956, 992
Market(s):
financial, 42
in LCM method, 295–296
stock, 576
Marketable securities, E-13. *See also* Short-term investments
Marketing, accounting in, 7
Marketing expenses, 10
Marketing managers, 5, 900
Marketing ROI (return on investment), 465
Market interest rate, 514, 516, 517, 539
Market research studies, 1034
Market share, 1034
Market-to-market accounting, E-8, E-10
Market value:
an intangible assets, 468
of bonds, 513–515
and impairment, 461
of stock, 577
Markup, gross profit and, 246
Master budget, 1036–1037, 1041, 1056, 1081, 1082
Matching principle, 165
Materiality, 67, 72, 1090
Materials requisition slips, 804, 819, 844
Materials variances, 1145–1147
materials price variance, 1145, 1152, 1165
materials quantity variance, 1145, 1147, 1165
Maturity dates, 539
of bonds, 513, 520–521
notes, 408, 410
Maturity phase (of product life cycle), 629
MD&A, *see* Management discussion and analysis
Medicare, F-5
Merchandise inventory, 282
Merchandise Inventory account, G-6, G-10, G-11
Merchandise purchases, 231–235, 251–252, 1056
Merchandise purchases budgets, 1051, 1052
Merchandising operations, 226–250
budgeting for, 1051–1052
flow of costs, 229–231
gross profit rate, 245–246
IFRS vs. GAAP on, 276–277
income statement presentation, 236, 239–245
costs of goods sold, 244–245
gross profit, 240, 241
nonoperating activities, 242–243
operating expenses, 241
sales revenues, 241
inventory classification in, 282
manufacturing costs, 757, 758, 761
operating cycles, 226, 359–360
periodic inventory system, 251–253
cost of goods sold, 230, 244–245
perpetual vs., 253
purchases of merchandise, 251–252
recording transactions, 251
sales of merchandise, 252–253
perpetual inventory system, 229–239
cost of goods sold, 230
periodic vs., 253
purchases of merchandise, 231–235
sales of merchandise, 236–239
profitability of, 245–248
profit margin ratio, 247–248
recording purchases, 231–235, 251–252
recording sales, 236–239, 252–253
statement of cash flows for, 248–249
Merchandising profit, 241
Mergers and acquisitions, 42
Minimum rate of return, 1108, 1199
Minus signs (financial calculators), D-17
Misinformation, 47
Mixed costs:
cost behavior analysis, 944–947
defined, 959
Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System (MACRS), 458
Monetary unit assumption, 66, 72
Money, time value of, *see* Time value of money
Monitoring (internal control), 338
Monthly budget reports, 1080
Mortgages, 537, D-18
Mortgage notes payable, 537–539
Moser, Thomas, 942
Motion Picture Association of America, 1102
Moving average method (inventory costing), 305
Multi-column format (journals), G-12
Multinational corporations, 42
Multiple-step income statements, 240–241
Mutual agency, H-2, H-4

N

Nasdaq stock market, 576
Near-term obligations, 19
Net (purchase discounts), 234
Net annual cash flow, 1200, 1203–1204
Net assets, 96
Net cash provided/used by operating activities:
conversion of net income to, 630–637, 648–652
net income vs., 625, 626, 629
Net income. *See also* Income statement(s); Statement of cash flows
adjusting, on income statements, 170, 173, 176, 178
at break-even point, 951
defined, 10, 23
in EPS calculation, 55
and errors in ending inventory, 306
ethics issues with, 625
on multiple-step income statements, 240–241
net cash provided/used by operating activities from, 630–637, 648–652
net cash provided/used by operating activities vs., 625, 626, 629
with partnerships, H-3, H-6–H-9
predicting earnings with, 12
and ROI, 1100
in sole proprietorships, I-2
in specific identification costing method, 286
target, 954–956, 959, 980
and trading securities, E-8
and variable costing, 1003–1005

Net losses, 10, 23, 589, H-6–H-9
Net pay, F-7, F-13
Net present value (NPV), 1202, 1209
Net present value (NPV) method, 1202–1204, 1206, 1209
Net realizable value, 402, 409, 423
Net sales, 241, 254
"New Economy," 977
Newspapers, 1153
New York Stock Exchange, 576
No capital deficiency situation, H-10–H-12, H-15
Nominal (temporary) accounts, 186–187, 197
Noncash activities, 625–626, 652–653
Noncash assets, 633–635, 654–656
Noncontrollable costs, 1092, 1093, 1110
Nonfinancial information, 1189
Nonfinancial performance measures, 1098, 1153, 1155
Nonoperating activities, 242–243
Nonpayment of deficiency, H-15–H-16
Non-recurring charges, 689
Nontrade receivables, 399
Non-value-added activities, 901–903, 913
No-par value stock, 577, 579, 599
Normal balances, 112–114
Normal capacity, 1142, 1165
Normal range, *See* Relevant range
Normal standards, 1140, 1165
Norton, Terry, 397
Notes, dishonored, 411, 423
Notes payable, 9, 506–507, 537–539
Notes receivable, 407–411, 423
  collection of, 356
  defined, 399
  disposing of, 410–411
  honor of, 410
  interest for, 408–409
  maturity date, 408
  recognizing, 409
  valuing, 409
Notes to financial statements:
  defined, 19, 23
  depreciation disclosure in, 458–459
  investing and financing activities in, 626
  for Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc., A-22–A-32
Not-for-profit organizations:
  boards of directors, 751
  budgeting for, 1053
  international, 8
  responsibility accounting in, 1092
NPV (net present value), 1202, 1209
NPV method, *see* Net present value method
NSF (not sufficient funds) checks, 353, 356, 369

O

Obsolescence, 452–454
Off-balance-sheet financing, 526–528
Office equipment, 105
Officers, company, 5
Off-shoring, 1193. *See also* Outsourcing
Olympic Games, 1049
One-time items, in earnings management, 191
Online investor bulletin boards, 47
Online reporting systems, 1090
Open-book management, 3
Operating activities, 10
  as cash flow classification, 626, 656
  cash for, 130
  net income vs. net cash provided/used by, 625, 626, 629
  on statement of cash flows, 15, 61–62, 630–637, 648–652
Operating assets, 1099–1102
Operating budgets, 1038–1046
  budgeted income statement, 1044–1046
  defined, 1036, 1056
  direct labor budget, 1042–1043
  direct materials budget, 1040–1041
  manufacturing overhead budget, 1043–1044
  production budget, 1039–1040
  sales budget, 1038–1039
  selling and administrative expense budget, 1044
Operating cycle, 50
  defined, 72
  in manufacturing vs. merchandising companies, 359–360
  of service vs. merchandising companies, 226
Operating expenses, 241, 470–471
  cash payments for, 650–651
  of franchises, 470–471
  improper capitalization of, 703
  on multiple-step income statements, 241
Operating leases, 452, 479, 527, 539
Operating leverage:
  cost-volume-profit analysis, 992–993
  defined, 1006
Operations:
  controlling, 750, 751, 1080
  discontinued, 687, 720
  income from, 240, 242
  manufacturing, 282, 359
    accounting cycle for, 770–773
    fixed costs of, 942
    inventory classification for, 282
    operating cycle for, 359
    use of activity-based costing in, 766
  and MD&A in annual reports, 19
  merchandising, *see* Merchandising operations
  planning, 750
  production, 807
Operations costing, 855, 866
Opinions, unqualified, 20
Opportunity (in fraud triangle), 336–337
Opportunity cost, 1192, 1209
Ordinary items, 689
Ordinary repairs, 460, 479
Organizational structure, of corporations, 572, 751–752, 1033
Organization charts, 751
Orr, Mike, 1137
Outsourcing, 991, 1193
Outstanding checks, 354, 369
Outstanding stocks, 581, 599
Overapplied overhead, 815, 816, 819
Overhead controllable variance, 1150, 1162–1163, 1165. *See also* Manufacturing overhead variances
Overhead costs:
  and activity-based costing, 890, 892–896, 899, 900
  manufacturing, 755–756. *See also* Manufacturing overhead variances
    defined, 774
    job order cost system, 802, 807–809, 814–816
    process cost system, 845
    and variable costing, 998
Overhead rate:
  in activity-based costing, 895, 896
  predetermined, 807, 812, 819, 820, 890. *See also* Standard predetermined overhead rate
Overhead variances, 1162–1164. *See also* Manufacturing overhead variances
Overhead volume variance, 1150, 1163–1165
Over-the-counter receipts, 347–348
Overtime hours, F-3, F-4
Owner's Capital account, I-1, I-4
Owner's equity, I-2, I-8
Owner's equity statement, I-3, I-8
Ownership:
  business, *see* Partnerships; Sole proprietorships
  of goods, 284–285
  and stock dividends, 586
  stockholder rights of, 571, 574–575

P
Paid-in capital, 577–578, 599
on balance sheets, 590
and net losses, 589
and stock dividends, 585
and stock splits, 588
Paper profit, 293
Parent companies, E-7, E-10
Participative budgeting, 1034–1035, 1056
Partners' capital statement, H-9, H-15
Partnerships, 4, 5, 23, H-1–H-15
admission of partners, H-10
advantages of, H-4
agreements, H-4, H-15
characteristics of, H-1–H-3
defined, H-15
disadvantages of, H-4
dissolution of, H-2, H-15
dividing net income/net loss, H-6–H-9
financial statements, H-9–H-10
formation of, H-5–H-6
liquidation of, H-10–H-15
types of, H-3
withdrawal of partners, H-10
Par value, stock splits and, 587
Par value stock, 577, 599
Patents, 468, 469, 479
Payables, 635. *See also* Notes payable
Payee, 407, 423
Payment date (dividends), 585, 599
Payment of deficiency, H-13–H-14
Payment period, establishing, 413
Payout ratio, 593, 599, 719, 720
Payroll accounting, F-1–F-12
deductions, F-4–F-8
employer taxes, F-10–F-12
gross earnings, F-4
internal control, F-1–F-4
hiring employees, F-2–F-3
paying payroll, F-4
preparing payroll, F-3
timekeeping, F-3
net pay, F-7
recording payroll, F-7–F-10
Payroll liabilities, 510–512
Payroll register, F-8–F-9, F-13
Payroll taxes, 511, 512
and direct labor price standard, 1141
employer taxes, F-10–F-12
as factory labor cost, 802
Payroll Taxes Payable account, F-11
PCAOB (Public Company Accounting Oversight Board), 64, 72
P-E (price-earnings) ratio, 703, 718–720
Percentage of receivables basis, 404–406, 423
Performance evaluation, 900, 1093, 1102–1104, 1109, 1153
Performance graph (Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.), A-34
Performance measures, 1098
Performance standards, *see* Standards (performance)
Period costs:
defined, 774
product costs vs., 756
Periodic cash flows, D-10
Periodic interest expense, 534
Periodic inventory systems, 230, 251–253
cost of goods sold in, 244–245
defined, 254
entries in perpetual vs., 253
and income statements, 757
perpetual vs., 244–245, 287
physical inventories in, 283
purchases of merchandise, 251–252
recording transactions, 251
sales of merchandise, 252–253
Periodicity assumption, 164, 197
Periodic receipts, D-9
Permanent accounts, 186–188, 197
Perpetual inventory systems, 230
average cost method in, 305
and cash receipts journal, G-6
cost of goods sold in, 230
defined, 254
entries in periodic vs., 253
FIFO in, 304
inventory cost flow methods in, 303–305
LIFO in, 304–305
as part of cost accounting system, 798
periodic vs., 244–245, 287
physical inventories in, 283
purchases of merchandise in, 232
sales of merchandise in, 236–239
Peterschmidt, David, 977
Petty cash fund, 351, 366–369
Phantom profit, 293
Physical controls, 237, 341–342, 347, 350
Physical custody of assets, record-keeping and, 340–341
Physical inventories, 230, 283
Physical units, 850, 866
Physical unit flow, 850–851, 860–862
Planning:
budgetary, *see* Budgeting
defined, 1032
enterprise resource, 765
long-range, 1036, 1056
profit, 947
Planning operations, 750
Plant and equipment, 448. *See also* Property, plant, and equipment
Plant assets, 448–467, 479
accounting for, 453–464
analyzing, 464–467
asset turnover ratio for, 466
costs, 449–453
book/fair value, 453
buildings, 450
buying vs. leasing, 452
equipment, 451
land, 449–450
land improvements, 450
declining-balance method, 476–477
defined, 448
depreciation, 453–460, 473, 476–478
declining balance method, 456, 476–477
disclosure, 458–459
double declining balance method, 456
factors in computing, 454
income taxes, 458
methods, 454–459
periodic revision, 459–460
straight-line method, 455–456
units-of-activity method, 456–457, 477–478
disposal of, 462–464
expenditures during useful life, 460–461
financial statement presentation of, 472–473
impairments, 461
profit margin ratio for, 466–467
in property, plant, and equipment assets, 9, 51, 72, 448
retirement of, 463–464
return on assets ratio for, 464–465
sale of, 462–463
Plus signs (financial calculators), D-17
Policies, compliance with, 752
Ponzi schemes, 357
Portfolio, investment, E-4
Post-closing trial balance, 188–189, 197
for liquidation of partnerships, H-10
for sole proprietorships, I-7
Posting, 120
adjusting entries, 182
closing entries, 188–189
defined, 133
illustration of, 128
special journals, G-5–G-6, G-10–G-11, G-14
Practical range, *see* Relevant range
Predetermined overhead rate, 807, 812, 819, 890. *See also* standard predetermined overhead rate

Predictive value of financial information, 65
Preferred stocks, 56, 582–583, 599
Premium (bonds issued at):
amortization of, 519–520, 532–533, 536–537
defined, 517, 539
Prenumbered documents, 341
Prepaid expenses (prepayments), 197
adjusting entries for, 169–172
defined, 168
depreciation, 171–172
insurance, 170–171
and statement of cash flows, 634–635
supplies, 169–170
Present value, 539
of annuity, D-9–D-11, D-17, D-19
of bonds, 514–515, D-11–D-15
defined, D-7, D-19
of long-term notes, D-11–D-15
of single amount, D-7–D-9, D-16–D-17
variables in, D-7
Presidents, corporate, 1034
Price(s):
cash equivalent, 449, 479
changes in, 1034
labor price variance, 1148, 1149, 1165. *See also* Direct labor variances
selling, 247–248, 951, 1038
Price-earnings (P-E) ratio, 703, 718–720
Price to cash flow, 641
Principal, 514, D-1, D-2, D-19
Privately held corporations, 570, 599
Process cost system, 799, 838–858
assigning manufacturing costs, 844–846
computing physical unit flow, 850–851
computing unit production costs, 852–853
cost flow in, 843–844
defined, 819, 866
equivalent units, 847–850
computing, 851–852
production cost report, 850, 853–854
weighted-average method, 847–849
example, 850–855
job order cost system vs., 841–843
preparing cost reconciliation schedule, 853
for service companies, 841
uses of, 840–841
Product costs:
cost accounting systems for determining, *see* Cost accounting systems
defined, 774
period costs vs., 756
Production budget, 1039–1040, 1056
Production cost reports, 850, 853–854, 864–866
Production data, 1088
Production departments, 1149
Production managers, 900
Production operations, 807
Production supervisors, 5
Productivity, 854
Product-level activities, 903, 904, 913
Product life cycle, 628–629, 656
Product lines, 900
Product quality, 753, 766
Profit. *See also* Cost-volume-profit analysis
accumulated/retained, 620
gross, 240, 241, 246, 253
and marketing ROI, 465
merchandising, 241
paper (phantom), 293
Profitability, 119, 245–248, 594, 814, 1199
Profitability ratios:
asset turnover ratio, 466, 479, 717, 720
defined, 72, 720
earnings per share, 55–56, 71, 718, 720
in financial analysis, 701, 709, 715–719
on financial statements, 54
gross profit rate:
calculating, 717–718, 720
defined, 253
merchandising operations, 245–246
payout ratio, 593, 599, 719, 720
price-earnings ratio, 703, 718–720
profit margin ratio, 247–248, 254, 466–467, 716, 720
return on assets ratio, 464–465, 479, 715–716, 720
return on common stockholders' equity ratio, 594–595, 599, 715, 720
Profit and loss (P&L) ratio, H-6
Profit centers, 1096–1099, 1110
Profit margin ratio, 247–248, 254, 466–467, 716, 720
Profit planning, 947
Pro forma income, 702, 720
Promissory note, 407–408, 423
Promotion, 1034
Promotion programs, 1093
Property, co-ownership of, H-2–H-3
Property, plant, and equipment, 9, 51, 72, 448. *See also* Equipment; Plant assets
Property taxes payable, 10
Pro rata, 584
Prorating, of depreciation, 456, 477
"Proving the ledgers," G-6, G-9
Provisions, 565
Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), 64, 72
Publicly held corporations, 570, 599
Pull approach (inventory), 911
Purchases:
of buildings, 450
of businesses, 471
credit, G-10
of merchandise, 231–235, 251–252
prorating depreciation of, 456, 477
Purchase allowances, 233–234, 251–252, 254
Purchase discounts:
defined, 234, 254
in periodic inventory system, 252–253
in perpetual inventory system, 234–235
Purchase invoices, 231, 254
Purchases journal, G-10–G-12, G-16
Purchase returns, 233–234, 252, 254
Purchasing activities, assignment of, 339
Push approach (inventory), 910

Q

Quality, product, 753, 766
Quality of earnings, 190–191, 197, 701–704, 720
Quality of earnings ratio, 248–249, 254
Quarterly financial data, of Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc., A-35

R

Radio frequency identification (RFID), 298
Rankings, 1094
Rate of return:
annual, 1199–1200, 1209
internal, 1205–1206, 1209
minimum, 1108, 1199
required, 1202
on sales, *see* Profit margin ratio
Ratings, financial, 701
Ratios, 54, 72. *See also specific ratios*
Ratio analysis, 54–55, 699–701, 708–719
defined, 72
Liquidity ratios, 709–712
average collection period, 415–416, 423, 711, 720
current cash debt coverage ratio, 642, 656, 710, 720
current ratio, 59, 71, 300, 700, 710, 720
days in inventory, 297, 308, 712, 720

defined, 59, 72, 720
financial analysis, 700
financial statements, 54, 523–524
inventory turnover ratio, 296–299, 308, 711–712, 720
receivables turnover ratio, 415–416, 423, 711, 720
working capital, 59, 60, 72
Profitability ratios:
asset turnover ratio, 466, 479, 717, 720
defined, 72, 720
earnings per share, 55–56, 71, 718, 720
financial analysis, 701, 709, 715–719
financial statements, 54
gross profit rate, 245–246, 253, 717–718, 720
payout ratio, 593, 599, 719, 720
price-earnings ratio, 703, 718–720
profit margin ratio, 247–248, 254, 466–467, 716, 720
return on assets ratio, 464–465, 479, 715–716, 720
return on common stockholders' equity ratio, 594–595, 599, 715, 720
Solvency ratios:
cash debt coverage ratio, 643, 656, 714, 720
debt to equity ratio, 60, 713
debt to total assets ratio, 60–61, 71, 525, 713, 720
defined, 72, 720
financial analysis, 700, 709, 712–714
financial statements, 54, 524–526
free cash flow, 61–62, 71, 639–641, 656, 714, 720
times interest earned ratio, 525–526, 539, 713–714, 720
Rationalization (in fraud triangle), 337
Raw and In-Process Inventory account, 912
Raw materials, 282, 308
cost of, 1141
direct, 755
and direct materials budget, 1040
variances, 1146
Raw materials costs, 802, 804–805, 844
Raw Materials Inventory account, 760
and job order cost system, 800, 801, 803
and process cost system, 842, 844
Real (permanent) accounts, 186–188, 197
Real estate, accounting in, 7
Realizable revenues and costs, 224
Realization, H-10
Realized gains, E-11
Reasonable assurance, of safeguarding, 345
Receipts:
cash. *See also* Cash receipts journal; Cash receipts section
accelerating, 417–420
internal control for, 346–349, 362, 363
and statement of cash flows, 648–649
mail, 348–349
over-the-counter, 347–348
for petty cash, 351
Receivables, 396–421, 423. *See also* Accounts receivable
accounts receivable, 399–407
estimated uncollectibles, 402–403
estimating allowances, 404–407
recognizing, 399–400
recovery of uncollectibles, 403–404
valuing, 400–402
write-offs of uncollectibles, 403
and cash flow, 420
collection of, 360, 417
defined, 398
financial statement presentation of, 411–412
IFRS vs. GAAP on, 444–445
managing, 412–421
accelerating cash receipts, 417–420
evaluating liquidity, 415–416
extending credit, 412–413
monitoring collections, 413–414
payment period establishment, 413
nontrade, 399
notes receivable, 407–411, 423
collection, 356
defined, 399
disposal, 410–411
honor, 410
interest, 408–409
maturity date, 408
recognizing, 409
valuing, 409
percentage of receivables basis, 404–406, 423
sales of, 417–420
trade, 399, 423
types of, 398–399
The Receivables Exchange, 419
Receivables turnover ratio, 415–416, 423, 711, 720
Recession:
and employment, 946
inventory fraud during, 306
Reconciliation, bank, 352–358, 368
Reconciliation method, *see* Indirect method (statement of cash flows)
Record date (dividends), 585, 599
Recording industry, 15
Recording process (accounting information system), 116–128
chart of accounts, 120, 133
illustration of, 120–128
journalizing, 117–119, 127, 133
ledger entries, 119–120, 128, 133
posting, 120, 128, 133
Recordkeeping, custody of assets and, 340–341
Recovery, of uncollectible accounts, 403–404
Regulations, for corporations, 572, 752, 1138
Regulatory agencies, 7. *See also specific agencies*
Related activities, assignment of, 339–340
Relevance of financial information, 65, 72
Relevant range, 942–944, 959, 1085
Reliability of information, 65
Rent, 107, 242
Repairs, ordinary, 460, 479
Reports:
annual, *see* Annual reports
budget, 1080–1081, 1088–1089
Reported revenue, 163
Reporting, *see* Financial reporting
Required rate of return, 1202
Requisition slips, *see* Materials requisition slips
Research and development costs, 479
Reserves, 619, 620
Residual income, 1108–1110
Residual value, 500
Responsibility:
of CEOs, 751, 752
establishment of, 338–339, 347, 350
Responsibility accounting, 1078–1079, 1091–1106
controllable vs. noncontrollable revenues/costs, 1092, 1093
for cost centers, 1096–1097
defined, 1110
for investment centers, 1096, 1099–1102
performance evaluation, 1093, 1102–1104
for profit centers, 1096–1099
reporting system, 1093–1096, 1098, 1100, 1110
Restatements, 12
Restricted cash, 359, 369
Restructuring charges, 689

Retailers, 228
cash controls for, 347–348
credit card sales advantages, 418
credit cards of, 399–400, 416
sales taxes payable for, 507–508
Retained earnings, 53, 577, 589–590, 599
capitalizing, 586
and closing entries, 186–187
debit/credit procedures for, 113–114
defined, 13, 23
and dividends, 584
restrictions, 590
and statements of cash flow, 638, 652–653
and stock dividends, 585
stockholders' equity in, 113–114, 589–590
and stock splits, 588
Retained earnings restrictions, 590, 599
Retained earnings statement, 12–13, 16
defined, 13, 23
of Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc., 16, 17
Retained profits, 620
Retirement (of plant assets), 463–464
Retirement payroll deductions, F-7
Return(s):
and financial ratings, 701
purchase, 233–234, 252, 254
rate of, *see* Rate of return
Return on assets:
and balanced scorecard approach, 767
and profit margin ratio, 466–467
and stockholders' equity, 594–595
Return on assets ratio, 464–465, 479, 715–716, 720
Return on common stockholders' equity ratio, 594–595, 599, 715, 720
Return on investment (ROI):
and balanced scorecard, 1154
defined, 1110
disadvantages of using, 1108
improving, 1101–1102
judgmental factors in, 1100–1101
marketing, 465
residual income vs., 1108–1109
and responsibility accounting, 1099–1102
Revenue(s):
in accrual- vs. cash-basis accounting, 166, 167
accrued, 168, 175–177, 197
adjusting, on income statement, 173, 176, 181
and allowance method, 402
and cash advances, 105
contra revenue account, 238, 253
controllable vs. noncontrollable, 1092, 1093
debit/credit procedures for, 114
defined, 10, 23
dividend, 242
improper recognition of, 702–703
inflation of, 191
interest, 10, 242
Internet ad space, 163
realizable, 224
recognition principle, 164–166
rent, 242
reporting of, 163, 167
in responsibility accounting, 1091
sales, 10, 228, 237, 241, 254
service, 10
on single-step income statements, 239–240
in sole proprietorships, I-2
and stockholders' equity, 106, 114
from stocks, recording, E-6–E-7
unearned, 168, 172–174, 197, 508–509
Revenue expenditures, 449, 479
Revenue recognition principle, 164–166, 197
Reversing entries, 190, 197
RFID (radio frequency identification), 298
Rifkin, Jeremy, 227
Risk assessment (internal control), 338
Risk-free investment, 361
ROI, *see* Return on investment
Rolling Stones, 956
Rounding, D-17

S

Salaries:
accrued, 179–180
defined, F-1, F-13
gross earnings, F-4
in partnerships, H-7–H-9
payment of cash for, 108–109
and time reports, F-3
Sales:
backdating, 166, 176
of bonds, E-3
break-even, 984–987
of business organizations, 4
and cash management, 361
credit, G-4
gains on, 462–463, 633
losses on, 463, 633, 651
of merchandise, 236–239, 252–253
with national credit cards, 417–418
net, 241, 254
of plant assets, 462–463
of receivables, 417–420
Sales activities, assignment of, 339–340
Sales budget, 1038–1039
Sales discounts, 238–239, 252–254
Sales forecast, 1034, 1038, 1056
Sales invoices, 236, 254
Sales journal, G-4–G-6, G-16
Sales mix, 948, 984–990
break-even sales in dollars, 985–987
break-even sales in units, 984–985
defined, 984, 1006
limited sources for determining, 988–989
Sales returns, 237–238, 252, 254
Sales revenues, 10, 228, 237, 241, 254
Sales taxes and sales tax payable, 10, 507–508
Sales volume, gross profit and, 246
Salvage value, 454, 476
Sarbanes-Oxley Act (SOX), 8, 23, 369, 774
and annual reports, 572
compliance with, 43
consequences of, 753
and corporate management, 572
and errors on income statements, 12
and fraud, 337
human resources responsibilities, 345
and internal control, 168, 393
and management's report on internal control, A-16
and quality of financial reporting, 191
Scandals, accounting, 751, 752
Scatter diagram method (cost behavior analysis), 945
Schedule(s):
aging, 413
of cash payments, H-12, H-15
cost reconciliation, 853, 863–864, 866
depreciation, 455–457
for statements of cash flows, 626, 652
S corporations, 573–574, H-3, H-15
Scott, Susan, 797
Scudramore, Brian, 1079
SEC, *see* Securities and Exchange Commission
Secured bonds, 512, 539
Securities:
available-for-sale, 691–692, 720, E-9–E-10, E-13
on balance sheets, E-9
held-to-maturity, E-8, E-13
marketable, E-13. *See also* Short-term investments
trading, 691, 720, E-8–E-9, E-13
Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), 64, 72, 159, 526, 572
Securities exchanges, 576
Segments, 1092, 1110, 1195–1197

Segregation of duties, 339–341, 347, 350, 400
Seller, freight costs incurred by, 233
Selling and administrative expense budget, 1044, 1056, 1083
Selling expenses, 10
Selling price:
  in profit margin ratio, 247–248
  unit, 951, 1038
Selling products, 1194
Service charges, bank, 356
Service Contracts in Process account, 811
Service industry(-ies):
  activity-based costing for, 766, 905–909
  budgeting for, 1052–1053
  job order cost system for, 810–811
  management functions in, 750
  operating cycles of, 229
  process cost system for, 841
  product costing for, 763–764
Service life, 453, 454. *See also* Useful life
Service revenues, 10
Shareholders, 5. *See also* Stockholders
Short-term investments, E-10–E-11, E-13
Shrinkage, 230
Simple interest, D-1, D-19
Single amounts:
  future value of, D-2–D-4
  present value of, D-7–D-9, D-16–D-17
Single-step income statements, 239–240
Small stock dividend, 586
Social Security Administration, F-12
Social Security taxes, 510, 511, F-5
Software, enterprise resource planning, 765, 774
Sole proprietorships, 4, 5, 23, I-1–I-7
  closing books of, I-4–I-7
  financial statements, I-3–I-5
  owner's equity in, I-2
  preparing post-closing trial balance for, I-7
  recording transactions of, I-3
Solvency, 641–643
  on balance sheet, 60–62
  and debt, 595
  defined, 72
Solvency ratios:
  cash debt coverage ratio, 643, 656, 714, 720
  debt to equity ratio, 60, 713
  debt to total assets ratio, 60–61, 71, 525, 713, 720
  defined, 72, 720
  in financial analysis, 700, 709, 712–714
  on financial statements, 54, 524–526
  free cash flow, 61–62, 71, 639–641, 656, 714, 720
  times interest earned ratio, 525–526, 539, 713–714, 720
Source documents, 117
South Korea, 64
SOX, *see* Sarbanes-Oxley Act
Special journals, G-3–G-15
  cash payments journal, G-12–G-14
  cash receipts journal, G-6–G-10
  defined, G-16
  and general journals, G-14–G-15
  purchases journal, G-10–G-12
  sales journal, G-4–G-6
Specific identification method, 286, 308
Speculation, investments for, E-2
Spreadsheets, 1051
Stack, Jack, 3
Staff positions, 752, 774
Standards (performance):
  ideal vs. normal, 1140, 1165
  need for, 1138–1139
  variances from, 1144–1153
Standard costs, 1136–1153
  advantages of, 1139
  case study, 1140–1143
  defined, 1165
  and need for standards, 1138–1139
  setting, 1139–1144
  variances:
    direct labor, 1147–1149
    direct materials, 1145–1147
    manufacturing overhead, 1150–1151
    reporting, 1151–1152
    from standards, 1144–1153
    statement presentation, 1152–1153
Standard cost accounting system, 1159–1162
  defined, 1165
  journal entries, 1160–1161
  ledger accounts, 1161–1162
Standard hours allowed, 1150, 1165
Standard predetermined overhead rate, 1142, 1165
Stated (contractual) interest rate, 513, 516, 539
Stated value:
  of stock, 577, 579, 599
  for stock dividends, 586
  and stock splits, 587
Statements, *see* Bank statements; Financial statements
Statement of cash flows, 15–16, 622–645
  and accrual-basis accounting, 191–192, 629, 630
  analysis of, 61–62
  business activities on, 61–62
  classifications on, 625–626
  and corporate life cycle, 628–629
  defined, 15, 23
  direct method, 630, 646–653, 656
    investing and financing activities, 652–653
    net change in cash, 653
    operating activities, 648–652
    preparation, 648–653
  effect of cash flow assumptions on, 294
  evaluating companies with, 639–643
  Financial Accounting Standards Board on, 630
  financing activities on, 15, 61–62, 638, 652–653
  format of, 627
  for Hershey Foods Corporation, B-3
  IFRS vs. GAAP on, 625, 680–681
  indirect method, 630–639, 656
    defined, 630
    investing and financing activities, 637–638
    net change in cash, 639
    operating activities, 630–637
  investing activities on, 15, 61–62, 637, 652
  investments on, E-12
  liabilities on, 522–523, 633, 635
  long-lived assets on, 473
  for merchandising operations, 248–249
  operating activities on, 15, 61–62, 630–637, 648–652
  preparation of, 629–639
  stockholders' equity on, 592
  T-account approach, 654–656
  for Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc., 16, 17, A-21
  usefulness of, 624–625
  for Zetar Plc, C-4
Statement of changes in equity, C-3
Statement of comprehensive income, 743
Statement of earnings, A-20, F-9, F-13
Statement of financial position, A-18–A-19
Statement of gross earnings, F-8
Statement of stockholders' equity:
  analysis of, 56–57
  defined, 72
  for Hershey Foods Corporation, B-4
State unemployment taxes, F-10, F-11, F-13
State unemployment tax acts (SUTA), F-11

State Unemployment Taxes payable account, F-11
Static budget, 1081–1083, 1110
Static budget reports, 1081–1083
Stock:
amounts received from issuing, 12
authorized, 576, 599
capital, 590
certificate of, 574
common, *see* Common stock
investments in, E-4–E-7, E-13
issue of, 576
no-par value, 577, 579, 599
outstanding, 581, 599
par value, 577, 599
preferred, 582–583, 599
recording procedures for, E-4–E-7
treasury, 579–581, 599
Stock certificates, 574
Stock dividends, 585–587, 598, 599
Stockholders, 5
cash investments by, 104–105
creditors owed and claims of, 9
letters to, A-2–A-16
limited liability of, 571
in organizational structure, 751
rights of, 574–575
Stockholders' equity, 568–596
adjusting, on balance sheets, 169, 174, 176, 178
and available-for-sale securities, 691–692, E-10
on classified balance sheet, 53
common stock, 113–114
and corporate performance, 593–595
and corporations, 570–575
debit/credit procedures for, 113–114
defined, 13, 23
dividends, 114, 584–589, 598
and expenses, 107
financial statement presentation of, 590–592
and financing activities, 626
IFRS vs. GAAP on, 619–620
preferred stock, 582–584
relationships of accounts affecting, 115
retained earnings, 113–114, 589–590
return on common, 594–595, 599, 715, 720
and revenues/expenses, 106, 114
statement of:
analysis, 56–57
defined, 72
for Hershey Foods Corporation, B-4
on statement of cash flows, 592
stock issues, 575–579
treasury stock, 579–581
Stock-outs, 750
Stock quotes, reading, 579
Stock splits, 587–589, 599
Straight-line amortization, 455–456, 479, 531–533, 539
Straight-line relationship (cost behavior analysis), 942–944
Strategic goals, of corporations, E-2
Su, Vivi, 397
Subsidiary (affiliated) companies, E-7, E-13
Subsidiary ledgers, G-1–G-3, G-8
defined, G-1, G-16
job cost sheets in, 803–804
postings to, G-10, G-14
and sales journal, G-5, G-6
Summary entry:
defined, 819
function of, 802
Summary of earnings and financial highlights (Tootsie Roll Industries, Inc.), A-36
Sunk cost, 1195, 1209
Suppliers:
cash payments to, 649–650
dependable, 911
and direct materials budget, 1040
Supplies:
adjusting entries for, 169–170
purchases on account, 108
Sustainable income, 686–693, 720, 868–869
change in accounting principle, 690
comprehensive income, 690–692
defined, 686
discontinued operations, 687
extraordinary items, 688–689
irregular items, 687–689
SUTA (state unemployment tax acts), F-11

T

T accounts, 111, 133
Target net income, 954–956, 959, 980
Taxes:
for corporations, 573
double taxation, 573
effects of cost flow methods on, 293–294
and forms of business, 5
income, 10, 458, 651–652, F-5–F-7, F-12
payroll, 511, 512, F-5–F-8, F-10–F-12
and plant asset leasing, 452
property, 10
sales, 10, 507–508
Social Security, 510, 511, F-5
Taxes payable, 10, 507–508, 635
Taxing authorities, 7
Teamwork, 1093
Technological change:
and activity-based costing, 891
for job order cost systems, 814
and managerial accounting, 765
and sales forecasting, 1034
Telecommunications industry, deregulation of, 764
Televisions, 1202
Temporary accounts, 186–187, 197
Theft, 237, 345, 351. *See also* Internal control
Theory of constraints, 766, 774, 989, 1006
Tilton, Glenn, 1156
Time clock, F-3
Time diagrams, D-14
Timekeeping, F-3
Time lags (in bank accounts), 353, 354
Timeliness of financial information, 65, 72
Time periods (discounting), D-11
Time period assumption, 66, 165
Times interest earned ratio, 525–526, 539, 713–714, 720
Time tickets, 805, 806, 819
Time value of money, 513–514, 539, D-1–D-18
and cash payback technique, 1201
computing present value, D-11–D-15
future value of annuity, D-4–D-6
future value of single amount, D-2–D-4
interest, D-1–D-2
present value of annuity, D-9–D-11, D-17
present value of single amount, D-7–D-9, D-16–D-17
present value variables, D-7
time periods and discounting, D-11
using financial calculators, D-16–D-18
Tokyo Stock Exchange, 576
"Tone at the top," 337
Total cost of work in process, 758, 774
Total fair value, E-8
Total labor variance, 1148, 1165
Total manufacturing costs, 758, 759, 774
Total materials variance, 1145
Total overhead variance, 1150, 1165. *See also* Manufacturing overhead variances
Total quality control system, 912
Total quality management (TQM) systems, 766, 774
Total standard cost per unit, 1143
Total units (costs) accounted for, 851, 853, 866

Total units (costs) to be accounted for, 850, 853, 866
TQM (total quality management) systems, 766, 774
Trademarks, 470, 479
Trade names, 470, 479
Trade receivables, 399, 423
Trading on the equity, 716
Trading securities, 691, 720, E-8–E-9, E-13
Traditional costing, 890–897, 905–906
Transactions, accounting, *see* Accounting transactions
Transaction analysis, 103–109, 121
  defined, 103
  for hiring of new employees, 108
  for investment of cash by stockholders, 104–105
  for note issued in exchange for cash, 105
  for payments, 107–109
  for purchases, 105, 107, 108
  purpose of, 121
  for receipt of cash in advance from customer, 105–106
  for services provided for cash, 106–107
Treasurers, 369, 572, 752, 774, 1034
Treasury stocks, 579–581, 599
Trends, industry, 1034
Trend analysis (horizontal analysis), 694–696, 720
Trial balance, 129
  adjusted, 183–185, 197
  adjusting entries and, 167
  defined, 129, 133
  limitations of, 129
  post-closing, 188–189, 197
True cash balance, 355
Turnover:
  asset turnover ratio, 466, 479, 717, 720
  inventory turnover ratio, 296–299, 308, 711–712, 720
  and profit margin ratio, 247
  receivables turnover ratio, 415–416, 423, 711, 720

U

Uncollectible accounts, 401–404, 423
Uncollectible Accounts Expense, 401. *See also* Bad debts expense
Underapplied overhead, 815, 816, 819
Understandability of financial information, 65, 72
Unearned revenues, 168, 172–174, 197, 508–509
Unemployment taxes, F-10–F-11, F-13
Unfavorable variances, 1144, 1152
Uniform Partnership Act, H-1
Unions, labor, 7
Unit costs:
  comparing, 896–897
  computation of, 842
U.S. Congress, 753, F-5
U.S. Patent Office, 469, 470
Unit-level activities, 903, 913
Units-of-activity depreciation method, 456–457, 477–479
Unit production costs, 852–853, 862–863, 866
Unit sales volume, 1038
Unit selling prices, 951, 1038
Unit variable costs, 951
Unlimited liability, H-2, H-4
Unprofitable segments, 1195–1197
Unqualified opinions, 20
Unrealized gains, E-8, E-9, E-11
Unrealized losses, 691–692, E-8, E-9, E-11–E-12
Unsecured bonds, 512, 539
Useful information, in financial reporting, 64–65
Useful life, 171, 197
  as depreciation factor, 453, 454
  expenditures during, 460–461
  of intangible assets, 468–469
Users of financial information, 5–8

V

Vacations, 344
Valuation:
  of accounts receivable, 400–403
  of assets, 449–453
  and depreciation, 171, 172, 453
  of investments, E-7–E-12
  of notes receivable, 409
Value:
  book (carrying), 172, 197, 1195
    bonds, 518, 521, 534
    declining, 476
    plant assets, 453
  cash (net) realizable, 402, 409, 423
  declining book, 476
  face, 539
    bonds, 513, 515–516
    notes, 409
  fair, 409, 453, E-7, E-9, E-13. *See also* Fair value accounting
    and goodwill, 471
    plant assets, 453
    stock dividends, 586
    total, E-8
  fair market, 449
  future:
    of annuity, D-4–D-6
    of single amount, D-2–D-4
  market:
    bonds, 513–515
    and impairment, 461
    intangible assets, 468
    stock, 577
  measurement of, 750
  par, 587
  present, 539
    of annuity, D-9–D-11, D-17
    bonds, 514–515
    of bonds, 514–515
    computing, D-11–D-15
    of single amount, D-7–D-9, D-16–D-17
    variables, D-7
  residual, 500
  salvage, 454, 476
  stated, 599
    stock, 577, 579, 599
    stock dividends, 586
    stock splits, 587
  time value of money, 513–514, 539, D-1–D-18
  total fair, E-8
Value-added activities, 901–903, 913
Value chain:
  defined, 774
  in managerial accounting, 764–765
Variable costs, 959
  budgeting for, 1085
  cost behavior analysis, 940–945, 947
  cost data for, 1088
  and cost structure, 990, 991
  and cost-volume-profit analysis, 948, 978
  on income statements, 1005
  and operating leverage, 992
  unit, 951
Variable costing:
  absorption costing vs., 996–1005
  defined, 1006
  format, 1152
Variances, from standards, 1144–1153
  defined, 1144, 1165
  direct labor, 1147–1149
  direct materials, 1145–1147
  manufacturing overhead, 1150–1151, 1162–1164
  reporting, 1151–1152
  and standard cost accounting system, 1159, 1160
  statement presentation, 1152–1153
Verifiability of financial information, 65, 72
Verification, independent internal, 342–344
Vertical analysis, 696–699, 720
Virtual close, 187
Volume index, *see* Activity index
Vouchers, 350, 369
Voucher register, 350
Voucher system, 349–351, 369

W
W-2 Form (Wage and Tax Statement), F-12, F-13
W-4 Form (Employee's Withholding Allowance Certificate), F-6, F-13
Wages, F-1, F-4, F-13
Wage and Tax Statement (Form W-2), F-12, F-13
Wages payable, 10
Weekly budget reports, 1081
Weighted-average contribution margin, 984, 985, 987
Weighted-average method:
  defined, 866
  and equivalent units, 847–849
  and FIFO method, 864–865
  and unit cost, 290–291, 308
Wholesalers, 228
Withdrawal, of partners, H-10
Working capital, 59, 60, 72
Work in Process account, 282, 308, 842, 1160
Work in Process Inventory account, 760, 800, 803–809
Worksheets, 195–197, 771–772
Write-downs, 295, 461
Write-offs:
  and fraud, 699
  of uncollectible debt, 401, 403, 423

X
Xbox, 119, 849

Y
Year-end balance, 815–816

Z
Zuckerberg, Mark, 573

RAPID REVIEW
Chapter Content

ACCOUNTING CONCEPTS (Chapters 2–4)

Fundamental Qualities	Enhancing Qualities	Assumptions	Principles	Constraints
Relevance	Comparability	Monetary unit	Cost	Materiality
Faithful representation	Consistency	Economic entity	Fair value	Cost
	Verifiability	Periodicity	Full disclosure	
	Timeliness	Going concern	Revenue recognition	
	Understandability	Accrual basis	Expense recognition	

BASIC ACCOUNTING EQUATION (Chapter 3)

Basic Equation

Assets = Liabilities + Stockholders' Equity

Expanded Basic Equation

Debit / Credit Rules

Assets	=	Liabilities	+	Common Stock	+	Retained Earnings	−	Dividends	+	Revenues	−	Expenses
Dr. + / Cr. −		Dr. − / Cr. +		Dr. − / Cr. +		Dr. − / Cr. +		Dr. + / Cr. −		Dr. − / Cr. +		Dr. + / Cr. −

INVENTORY (Chapters 5 and 6)

Ownership

Freight Terms	Ownership of goods on public carrier resides with:
FOB Shipping point	Buyer
FOB Destination	Seller

ADJUSTING ENTRIES (Chapter 4)

	Type	Adjusting Entry	
Deferrals	1. Prepaid expenses	Dr. Expenses	Cr. Assets
	2. Unearned revenues	Dr. Liabilities	Cr. Revenues
Accruals	1. Accrued revenues	Dr. Assets	Cr. Revenues
	2. Accrued expenses	Dr. Expenses	Cr. Liabilities

Note: Each adjusting entry will affect one or more income statement accounts and one or more balance sheet accounts.

Interest Computation

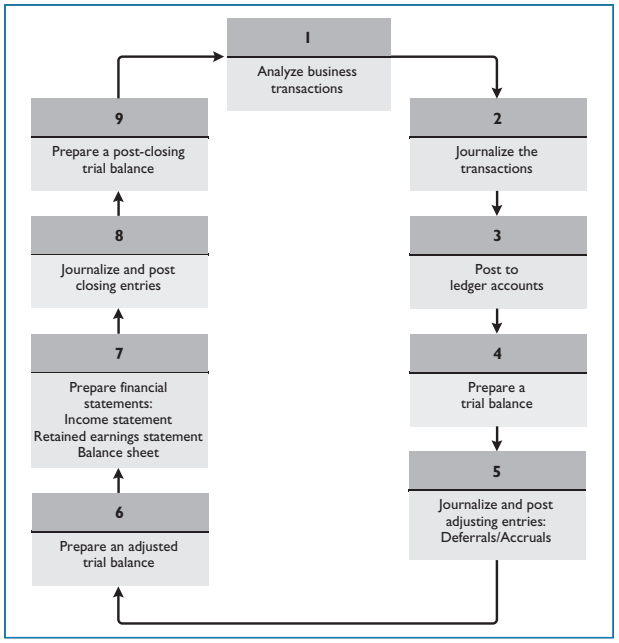
Interest = Face value of note × Annual interest rate × Time in terms of one year

CLOSING ENTRIES (Chapter 4)

Purpose

1. Update the Retained Earnings account in the ledger by transferring net income (loss) and dividends to retained earnings.
2. Prepare the temporary accounts (revenue, expense, dividends) for the next period's postings by reducing their balances to zero.

ACCOUNTING CYCLE (Chapter 4)



Perpetual vs. Periodic Journal Entries

Event	Perpetual	Periodic
Purchase of goods	Inventory Cash (A/P)	Purchases Cash (A/P)
Freight (shipping point)	Inventory Cash	Freight-in Cash
Return of goods	Cash (or A/P) Inventory	Cash (or A/P) Purchase Returns and Allowances
Sale of goods	Cash (or A/R) Sales Cost of Goods Sold Inventory	Cash (or A/R) Sales No entry
End of period	No entry	Closing or adjusting entry required

FRAUD, INTERNAL CONTROL, AND CASH (Chapter 7)

Principles of Internal Control

Establishment of responsibility
Segregation of duties
Documentation procedures
Physical controls
Independent internal verification
Human resource controls

The Fraud Triangle

Bank Reconciliation

Bank	Books
Balance per bank statement	Balance per books
Add: Deposits in transit	Add: Unrecorded credit memoranda from bank statement
Deduct: Outstanding checks	Deduct: Unrecorded debit memoranda from bank statement
Adjusted cash balance	Adjusted cash balance

Note: 1. Errors should be offset (added or deducted) on the side that made the error.
2. Adjusting journal entries should only be made for items affecting books.

STOP AND CHECK: Does the adjusted cash balance in the Cash account equal the reconciled balance?

RAPID REVIEW
Chapter Content

RECEIVABLES (Chapter 8)

Two Methods to Account for Uncollectible Accounts

Direct write-off method	Record bad debts expense when the company determines a particular account to be uncollectible.
Allowance method	At the end of each period, estimate the amount of uncollectible receivables. Debit Bad Debts Expense and credit Allowance for Doubtful Accounts in an amount that results in a balance in the allowance account equal to the estimate of uncollectibles. As specific accounts become uncollectible, debit Allowance for Doubtful Accounts and credit Accounts Receivable.

Steps to Manage Accounts Receivable

1. Determine to whom to extend credit.
2. Establish a payment period.
3. Monitor collections.
4. Evaluate the receivables balance.
5. Accelerate cash receipts from receivables when necessary.

PLANT ASSETS (Chapter 9)

Computation of Annual Depreciation Expense

Straight-line	$\frac{\text{Cost} - \text{Salvage value}}{\text{Useful life (in years)}}$
***Declining-balance**	Book value at beginning of year × Declining balance rate* *Declining-balance rate = 1 ÷ Useful life (in years)
***Units-of-activity**	$\frac{\text{Depreciable cost}}{\text{Useful life (in units)}}$ × Units of activity during year

Note: If depreciation is calculated for partial periods, the straight-line and declining-balance methods must be adjusted for the relevant proportion of the year. Multiply the annual depreciation expense by the number of months expired in the year divided by 12 months.

BONDS (Chapter 10)

Premium	Market interest rate < Contractual interest rate
Face Value	Market interest rate = Contractual interest rate
Discount	Market interest rate > Contractual interest rate

Computation of Annual Bond Interest Expense

Interest expense = Interest paid (payable) + Amortization of discount
(OR − Amortization of premium)

***Straight-line amortization**	$\frac{\text{Bond discount (premium)}}{\text{Number of interest periods}}$	
***Effective-interest amortization (preferred method)**	Bond interest expense	Bond interest paid
	Carrying value of bonds at beginning of period × Effective-interest rate	Face amount of bonds × Contractual interest rate

STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY (Chapter 11)

No-Par Value vs. Par Value Stock Journal Entries

No-Par Value	Par Value
Cash Common Stock	Cash Common Stock (par value) Paid-in Capital in Excess of Par Value

Comparison of Dividend Effects

	Cash	Common Stock	Retained Earnings
Cash dividend	↓	No effect	↓
Stock dividend	No effect	↑	↓
Stock split	No effect	No effect	No effect

*Items with asterisk are covered in appendix.

STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS (Chapter 12)

Cash flows from operating activities (**indirect method**)

Net income			
Add:	Amortization and depreciation	$ X	
	Losses on disposals of assets	X	
	Decreases in current assets	X	
	Increases in current liabilities	X	
Deduct:	Increases in current assets	(X)	
	Decreases in current liabilities	(X)	
	Gains on disposals of assets	(X)	
Cash provided (used) by operating activities			$ X

Cash flows from operating activities (**direct method**)

Cash receipts		
(Examples: from sales of goods and services to customers, from receipts of interest and dividends)	$ X	
Cash payments		
(Examples: to suppliers, for operating expenses, for interest, for taxes)	(X)	
Cash provided (used) by operating activities		$ X

FINANCIAL STATEMENT ANALYSIS (Chapter 13)

Discontinued operations	Income statement (presented separately after "Income from continuing operations")
Extraordinary items	Income statement (presented separately after "Discontinued operations")
Changes in accounting principle	In most instances, use the new method in current period and restate previous years' results using new method. For changes in depreciation and amortization methods, use the new method in the current period, but do not restate previous periods.

Income Statement and Comprehensive Income

Sales	$ XX
Cost of goods sold	XX
Gross profit	XX
Operating expenses	XX
Income from operations	XX
Other revenues (expenses) and gains (losses)	XX
Income before income taxes	XX
Income tax expense	XX
Income before irregular items	XX
Irregular items (net of tax)	**XX**
Net income	**XX**
Other comprehensive income items (net of tax)	**XX**
Comprehensive income	**$ XX**

MANAGERIAL ACCOUNTING (Chapter 14)

Characteristics of Managerial Accounting

Primary Users	Internal users
Reports	Internal reports issued as needed
Purpose	Special purpose for a particular user
Content	Pertains to subunits, may be detailed, use of relevant data
Verification	No independent audits

Types of Manufacturing Costs

Direct materials	Raw materials directly associated with finished product
Direct labor	Work of employees directly associated with turning raw materials into finished product
Manufacturing overhead	Costs indirectly associated with manufacture of finished product

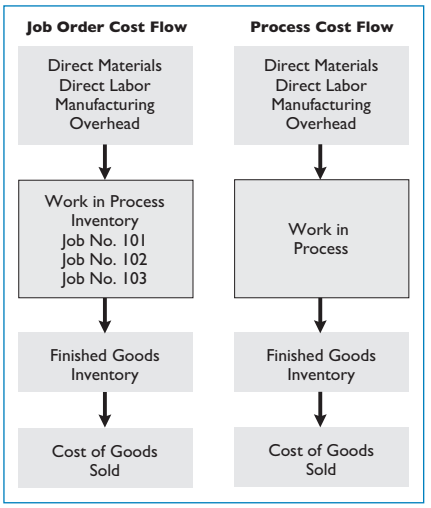
RAPID REVIEW
Chapter Content

JOB ORDER AND PROCESS COSTING (Chapters 15 and 16)

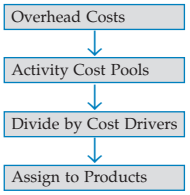
Types of Accounting Systems

Job order	Costs are assigned to each unit or each batch of goods
Process cost	Costs are applied to similar products that are mass-produced in a continuous fashion

Job Order and Process Cost Flow



ACTIVITY-BASED COSTING (Chapter 17)



Activity-based costing involves the following four steps:

1. Identify and classify the major activities involved in the manufacture of specific products, and allocate the manufacturing overhead costs to the appropriate cost pools.
2. Identify the cost driver that has a strong correlation to the costs accumulated in the cost pool.
3. Compute the overhead rate for each cost driver.
4. Assign manufacturing overhead costs for each cost pool to products, using the overhead rates (cost per driver).

COST-VOLUME-PROFIT (Chapters 18 and 19)

Types of Costs

Variable costs	Vary in total directly and proportionately with changes in activity level
Fixed costs	Remain the same in total regardless of change in activity level
Mixed costs	Contain both a fixed and a variable element

CVP Income Statement Format

	Total	Per Unit
Sales	$xx	$xx
Variable costs	xx	xx
Contribution margin	xx	$xx
Fixed costs	xx	
Net income	$xx	

Contribution margin per unit = Unit selling price − Unit variable costs

Break-even point in units = Fixed costs ÷ Unit contribution margin*

Break-even point in dollars = Fixed costs ÷ Contribution margin ratio*

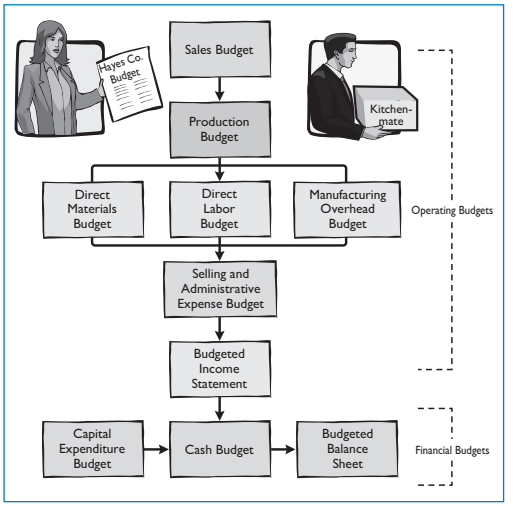
Required sales in units for target net income = (Fixed costs + Target net income) ÷ Contribution margin per unit

Degree of operating leverage = Contribution margin ÷ Net income

*For multiple products, use weighted-average.

BUDGETS (Chapter 20)

Components of the Master Budget



RESPONSIBILITY ACCOUNTING (Chapter 21)

Types of Responsibility Centers

Cost	Profit	Investment
Expenses only	Expenses and Revenues	Expenses and Revenues and ROI

Return on Investment

Return on investment (ROI) = Investment center controllable margin ÷ Average investment center operating assets

STANDARD COSTS (Chapter 22)

Standard Cost Variances

Total materials variance = Materials price variance + Materials quantity variance

Total labor variance = Labor price variance + Labor quantity variance

Total overhead variance = Overhead controllable variance + Overhead volume variance

RAPID REVIEW
Chapter Content

Balanced Scorecard

Linked process across perspectives:

Financial → Customer → Internal Process → Learning and Growth

Materials price variance = AQ × AP − AQ × SP

Materials quantity variance = AQ × SP − SQ × SP

Labor price variance = AH × AR − AH × SR

Labor quantity variance = AH × SR − SH × SR

* **Overhead controllable variance** = Actual overhead − Overhead budgeted

* **Overhead volume variance** = Fixed overhead rate × (Normal capacity − Standard hours allowed)

*Appendix coverage

INCREMENTAL ANALYSIS AND CAPITAL BUDGETING (Chapter 23)

Incremental Analysis

1. Identify the relevant costs associated with each alternative. Relevant costs are those costs and revenues that differ across alternatives. Choose the alternative that maximizes net income.
2. Opportunity costs are those benefits that are given up when one alternative is chosen instead of another one. Opportunity costs are relevant costs.
3. Sunk costs have already been incurred and will not be changed or avoided by any future decision. Sunk costs are not relevant costs.

Annual Rate of Return

Annual rate of return = Expected annual net income ÷ Average investment

Cash Payback

Cash payback period* = Cost of capital investment ÷ Net annual cash flow

*For uneven cash flows, you must calculate year-by-year

Discounted Cash Flow Approaches

Net Present Value	Internal Rate of Return
Compute net present value (a dollar amount). If net present value is zero or positive, accept the proposal. If net present value is negative, reject the proposal.	Compute internal rate of return (a percentage). If internal rate of return is equal to or greater than the minimum required rate of return, accept the proposal. If internal rate of return is less than the minimum rate, reject the proposal.

INVESTMENTS (Appendix E)

Comparison of Long-Term Bond Investment and Liability Journal Entries

Event	Investor	Investee
Purchase / issue of bonds	Debt Investments Cash	Cash Bonds Payable
Interest receipt / payment	Cash Interest Revenue	Interest Expense Cash

Comparison of Cost and Equity Methods of Accounting for Long-Term Stock Investments

Event	Cost	Equity
Acquisition	Stock Investments Cash	Stock Investments Cash
Investee reports earnings	No entry	Stock Investments Investment Revenue
Investee pays dividends	Cash Dividend Revenue	Cash Stock Investments

RAPID REVIEW
Financial Statements

Order of Preparation	Date
1. Income statement	For the period ended
2. Retained earnings statement	For the period ended
3. Balance sheet	As of the end of the period
4. Statement of cash flows	For the period ended

Income Statement (perpetual inventory system)

Name of Company
Income Statement
For the Period Ended

Sales revenues		
Sales	$ X	
Less: Sales returns and allowances	X	
Sales discounts	X	
Net sales		$ X
Cost of goods sold		X
Gross profit		X
Operating expenses		
(Examples: store salaries, advertising, delivery, rent, depreciation, utilities, insurance)		X
Income from operations		X
Other revenues and gains		
(Examples: interest, gains)	X	
Other expenses and losses		
(Examples: interest, losses)	X	X
Income before income taxes		X
Income tax expense		X
Net income		$ X

Income Statement (periodic inventory system)

Name of Company
Income Statement
For the Period Ended

Sales revenues			
Sales		$ X	
Less: Sales returns and allowances		X	
Sales discounts		X	
Net sales			$ X
Cost of goods sold			
Beginning inventory		X	
Purchases	$ X		
Less: Purchase returns and allowances	X		
Net purchases	X		
Add: Freight in	X		
Cost of goods purchased		X	
Cost of goods available for sale		X	
Less: Ending inventory		X	
Cost of goods sold			X
Gross profit			X
Operating expenses			
(Examples: store salaries, advertising, delivery, rent, depreciation, utilities, insurance)			X
Income from operations			X
Other revenues and gains			
(Examples: interest, gains)		X	
Other expenses and losses			
(Examples: interest, losses)		X	X
Income before income taxes			X
Income tax expense			X
Net income			$ X

Retained Earnings Statement

Name of Company
Retained Earnings Statement
For the Period Ended

Retained earnings, beginning of period	$ X
Add: Net income (or deduct net loss)	X
	X
Deduct: Dividends	X
Retained earnings, end of period	$ X

STOP AND CHECK: Net income (loss) presented on the retained earnings statement must equal the net income (loss) presented on the income statement.

Balance Sheet

Name of Company
Balance Sheet
As of the End of the Period

Assets

Current assets			
(Examples: cash, short-term investments, accounts receivable, inventory, prepaids)			$ X
Long-term investments			
(Examples: investments in bonds, investments in stocks)			X
Property, plant, and equipment			
Land		$ X	
Buildings and equipment	$ X		
Less: Accumulated depreciation	X	X	X
Intangible assets			X
Total assets			$ X

Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity

Liabilities	
Current liabilities	
(Examples: notes payable, accounts payable, accruals, unearned revenues, current portion of notes payable)	$ X
Long-term liabilities	
(Examples: notes payable, bonds payable)	X
Total liabilities	X
Stockholders' equity	
Common stock	X
Retained earnings	X
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$ X

STOP AND CHECK: Total assets on the balance sheet must equal total liabilities plus stockholders' equity; and, ending retained earnings on the balance sheet must equal ending retained earnings on the retained earnings statement.

Statement of Cash Flows

Name of Company
Statement of Cash Flows
For the Period Ended

Cash flows from operating activities	
Note: May be prepared using the direct or indirect method	
Cash provided (used) by operating activities	$ X
Cash flows from investing activities	
(Examples: purchase / sale of long-term assets)	
Cash provided (used) by investing activities	X
Cash flows from financing activities	
(Examples: issue / repayment of long-term liabilities, issue of stock, payment of dividends)	
Cash provided (used) by financing activities	X
Net increase (decrease) in cash	X
Cash, beginning of the period	X
Cash, end of the period	$ X

STOP AND CHECK: Cash, end of the period, on the statement of cash flows must equal cash presented on the balance sheet.

TOOLS FOR ANALYSIS

Liquidity

Working capital	Current assets – Current liabilities	p. 59
Current ratio	$\frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$	p. 59
Current cash debt coverage ratio	$\frac{\text{Cash provided by operations}}{\text{Average current liabilities}}$	p. 643
Inventory turnover ratio	$\frac{\text{Cost of goods sold}}{\text{Average inventory}}$	p. 297
Days in inventory	$\frac{\text{365 days}}{\text{Inventory turnover ratio}}$	p. 297
Receivables turnover ratio	$\frac{\text{Net credit sales}}{\text{Average net receivables}}$	p. 415
Average collection period	$\frac{\text{365 days}}{\text{Receivables turnover ratio}}$	p. 415

Solvency

Debt to total assets ratio	$\frac{\text{Total liabilities}}{\text{Total assets}}$	p. 60
Cash debt coverage ratio	$\frac{\text{Cash provided by operations}}{\text{Average total liabilities}}$	p. 644
Times interest earned ratio	$\frac{\text{Net income + Interest expense + Tax expense}}{\text{Interest expense}}$	p. 529
Free cash flow	Cash provided by operations – Capital expenditures – Cash dividends	p. 62

Profitability

Earnings per share	$\frac{\text{Net income – Preferred stock dividends}}{\text{Average common shares outstanding}}$	p. 56
Price-earnings ratio	$\frac{\text{Stock price per share}}{\text{Earnings per share}}$	p. 703
Gross profit rate	$\frac{\text{Gross profit}}{\text{Net sales}}$	p. 246
Profit margin ratio	$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Net sales}}$	p. 247
Return on assets ratio	$\frac{\text{Net income}}{\text{Average total assets}}$	p. 467
Asset turnover ratio	$\frac{\text{Net sales}}{\text{Average total assets}}$	p. 468
Payout ratio	$\frac{\text{Cash dividends declared on common stock}}{\text{Net income}}$	p. 593
Return on common stockholders' equity ratio	$\frac{\text{Net income – Preferred stock dividends}}{\text{Average common stockholders' equity}}$	p. 594